INDEX

The Works of Saint Augustine
A Translation for the 21st Century
Compilation of Indexes to 
The Works of St. Augustine 
A Translation for the 21st Century

About the Augustinian Heritage Institute

In 1990, the Augustinian Heritage Institute was founded by John E. Rotelle, OSA to oversee the English translation of The Works of Saint Augustine, A Translation for the 21st Century. This project was started in conjunction with New City Press. At that time, English was the only major Western language into which the Works of Saint Augustine in their entirety had not yet been attempted. Existing translations were often archaic or faulty and the scholarship was outdated. These new translations offer detailed introductions, extensive critical notes, both a general index and scriptural index for each work as well as the best translations in the world.

The Works of Saint Augustine, A Translation for the 21st Century in its complete form will be published in 49 volumes. To date, 41 volumes have been published.

About New City Press of the Focolare

New City Press is one of more than 20 publishing houses sponsored by the Focolare, a movement founded by Chiara Lubich to help bring about the realization of Jesus’ prayer: “That all may be one” (John 17:21). In view of that goal, New City Press publishes books and resources that enrich the lives of people and help all to strive toward the unity of the entire human family. We are a member of the Association of Catholic Publishers.
Augustinian Heritage Institute

Board of Directors

+John E. Rotelle, O.S.A. (1939–2002), founding director
Joseph L. Farrell, O.S.A.          David Hunter
Joseph T. Kelley                  Patricia H. Lo
Jane E. Merdinger                 Boniface Ramsey
James Wetzel                      Jonathan Yates

Translation Advisory Board

Allan D. Fitzgerald, O.S.A.      Edmund Hill, O.P.
Joseph McGowan                   Boniface Ramsey

THE WORKS OF SAINT AUGUSTINE
A Translation for the 21st Century

The Index
Compilation of Indexes to The Works of St. Augustine A Translation for the 21st Century

Compiled and Edited by
Steven Cordiviola

Original Indexes Prepared by
Michael Dolan
Joseph Sprug
Kathleen Strattan

New City Press
Hyde Park, New York
PREFACE

In 1990, the Augustinian Heritage Institute, in conjunction with New City Press, began translating Saint Augustine's entire corpus into English. At that time, English was the only major Western language into which the Complete Works had not yet been attempted. Existing translations were often archaic or faulty and the scholarship was outdated. Augustine's writings are useful to anyone interested in patristics, church history, and theology. New City Press is proud to offer the best modern translations available.

Saint Augustine’s complete works will be translated into 49 books (see list of books here or download a pdf from http://www.newcitypress.com/media/Landingpages/Complete_Works_Saint_Augustine.pdf). To date, 41 books have been translated and published by NCP. The first was *Sermons 1-19*.

New City Press is one of more than 20 publishing houses sponsored by the Focolare, a movement founded by Chiara Lubich to help bring about the realization of Jesus’ prayer: “That all may be one” (John 17:21). In view of that goal, New City Press publishes books and resources that enrich the lives of people and help all to strive toward the unity of the entire human family. We are a member of the Association of Catholic Publishers.
USING THIS COMPILATION

This PDF is a simple collection of indexes from each book containing the Works of St. Augustine published by New City Press since 1990. No new indexes were created nor was any index edited except to separate the multiple titles that might appear in a single book. In addition, no effort was made to standardize the indexes so there may appear an obvious difference in some indexes from one book to another. Future editions of this compilation may improve on the overall appearance if there is a significant number of requests for such an edition. As future books are published by New City Press, their indexes will be added to this compilation.

The indexes are arranged alphabetically by the English translation of the original Latin title. For each index there is a cover page with the Latin title and pertinent information of the New City Press book that contains the work. The index that follows uses the title that appears in the New City Press edition of the books (rather than its original Latin title) and the header, footer, and watermark identify the NCP book containing that index.

Most indexes have 2 parts: Scripture Index and Subject (or General) Index. Although some of the earlier publications may differ slightly, for the most part the first numeral in the Index is the book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers. Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes. Page numbers are never used.

Scripture indexes are usually separated into Old and New Testaments sections. Each has the name of the scripture book as a heading followed by individual lines with biblical chapter and verse and the reference to the section of the work. For example:

Micah
4:1-3 XVIII, 30
5:2-4 XVIII, 30
6:6-8 X, 5

Users should keep this structure in mind when searching for specific scripture chapter and verse. For Sermons, the numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section. In the Exposition of the Psalms, the numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the psalm.

In this compilation PDF, each work has been book-marked for easy navigation. At the beginning of the book marks is a direct link to Advanced Search, a function available on almost all Adobe PDF readers. This feature can also be accessed using Edit→Advanced Search (Shift+Control+F for pc and Command+Shift+F for Mac users). Advanced Search is much more powerful that the simple Find function. The Advanced Search dialog box has an additional Show More Options, where users can select options such as whole-words only. The results of an Advanced Search will provide a quick method to navigate the pdf to the relevant index (see Figure 1).
Figure 1.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum</td>
<td>Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichee</td>
<td>Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichee</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad Catholicos fratres / De unitate ecclesie</td>
<td>To the Catholic Members of the Church / On the Unity of the Church</td>
<td>To the Catholic Members of the Church / On the Unity of the Church</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad inquisitiones Januarii</td>
<td>Responses to Januarius</td>
<td>Responses to Januarius (Letters 54-55)</td>
<td>Letters 1-99 (Vol. II/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus</td>
<td>To Simplicianus, on Various Questions</td>
<td>To Simplicianus, on Various Questions</td>
<td>Responses to Miscellaneous Questions (Vol. I/12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adnotationes in Job</td>
<td>Comments on Job</td>
<td>Comments on Job</td>
<td>Old Testament (Vol. I/14) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversus Judaeos</td>
<td>Against the Jews</td>
<td>Answer to the Jews</td>
<td>Old Testament (Vol. I/14) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breviculus conlationis cum Donatistis</td>
<td>A Summary of the Meeting with the Donatists</td>
<td>A Summary of the Meeting with the Donatists</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confessiones</td>
<td>Confessions</td>
<td>Confessions</td>
<td>The Confessions (Vol. I/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conlatio cum Maximino Arianorum episcopo</td>
<td>Debate with Maximinus, an Arian Bishop</td>
<td>Debate with Maximinus, an Arian Bishop</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Academicos</td>
<td>Against the Skeptics</td>
<td>Answer to the Skeptics</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum</td>
<td>Against Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani</td>
<td>Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra adversarium legis et prophetarum</td>
<td>Against Adversaries of the Law and the Prophets</td>
<td>Answer to Enemies of the Law and the Prophets</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Cresconium grammaticum partis Donati</td>
<td>Against Cresconius, a Donatist Grammarian</td>
<td>Answer to Cresconius, a Donatist Grammarian</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Donatistas post conlationem</td>
<td>Against the Donatists, After the Conference</td>
<td>Answer to the Donatists, after the Conference</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum</td>
<td>Against Two Letters of the Pelagians</td>
<td>Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians II (Vol. I/24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti</td>
<td>Against the “Foundation Letter” of Mani</td>
<td>Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra epistulam Parmeniani</td>
<td>Against the Letter of Parmenian</td>
<td>Answer to the Letter of Parmenian</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Faustum Manichaeum</td>
<td>Against Faustus, a Manichee</td>
<td>Answer to Faustus, a Manichee</td>
<td>Answer To Faustus, A Manichee (Vol. I/20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Felicem Manichaeum</td>
<td>Against Felix, a Manichee</td>
<td>Answer to Felix, a Manichee</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Gaudentium Donatistarum episcopum</td>
<td>Against Gaudentius, a Donatist Bishop</td>
<td>Answer to Gaudentius, a Bishop of the Donatists</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Julianum</td>
<td>Against Julian</td>
<td>Answer to Julian</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians II (Vol. I/24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Julianum opus imperfectum</td>
<td>Against Julian, an Unfinished Work</td>
<td>Unfinished Work in Answer to Julian</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians III (Vol. I/25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra litteras Petiliani</td>
<td>Against the Letters of Petilian</td>
<td>Answer to the Letters of Petilian</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Maximinun Arianum</td>
<td>Against Maximinus, an Arian</td>
<td>Answer to Maximinus, an Arian</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra mendacium</td>
<td>Against Lying</td>
<td>Answer to Lying</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contra Priscillianistas et Origenistas</td>
<td>Against the Priscillians and the Origenists</td>
<td>To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillians and Origenists</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra Secundinum Manichaeum</td>
<td>Against Secundinus, a Manichee</td>
<td>Answer to Secundinus, a Manichee</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra sermonem Arianorum</td>
<td>Against an Arian Sermon</td>
<td>Answer to an Arian Sermon</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De adulterinis conjugiis</td>
<td>On Adulterous Marriages</td>
<td>Adulterous Marriages</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De agone christiano</td>
<td>On the Christian Struggle</td>
<td>The Christian Struggle</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De anima et eius origine</td>
<td>On the Soul and Its Origin</td>
<td>The Soul and Its Origin</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De animae quantitate</td>
<td>On the Greatness of the Soul</td>
<td>The Greatness of the Soul</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De baptismo</td>
<td>On Baptism</td>
<td>Baptism</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De beata vita</td>
<td>On the Happy Life</td>
<td>The Happy Life</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De bono conjugali</td>
<td>On the Good of Marriage</td>
<td>The Good of Marriage</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De bono viduitatis</td>
<td>On the Good of Widowhood</td>
<td>The Good of Widowhood</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De catechizandis rudibus</td>
<td>On Catechizing Beginners</td>
<td>Instructing Beginners in Faith</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De civitatis Dei</td>
<td>On the City of God</td>
<td>The City of God</td>
<td>The City of God (books 1-22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De continentia</td>
<td>On Continence</td>
<td>Continence</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De correctione Donatistarum</td>
<td>On the Correction of the Donatists</td>
<td>The Correction of the Donatists (Letter 185)</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy I (Vol. I/21) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De correptione et gratia</td>
<td>On Admonition and Grace</td>
<td>Rebutti and Grace</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De cura pro mortuis gerenda</td>
<td>On the Care of the Dead</td>
<td>The Care to Be Taken of the Dead</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De dialectica</td>
<td>On Dialectic</td>
<td>Dialectic</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De disciplina christiana</td>
<td>On Christian Discipline</td>
<td>Christian Discipline (Sermon 399.2)</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De diversi quaestionibus octoginta tribus</td>
<td>Eighty-Three Different Questions</td>
<td>Eighty-Three Different Questions</td>
<td>Responses to Miscellaneous Questions (Vol. I/12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De doctrina christianae</td>
<td>On Christian Teaching</td>
<td>Teaching Christianity</td>
<td>Teaching Christianity (Vol. I/11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De dono perseverantiae</td>
<td>On the Gift of Perseverance</td>
<td>The Gift of Perseverance</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De duabus animaburs</td>
<td>On the Two Souls</td>
<td>The Two Souls</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De excidio urbis Romae</td>
<td>On the Sack of the City of Rome</td>
<td>The Sack of the City of Rome</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De fide et symbolo</td>
<td>On Faith and the Creed</td>
<td>Faith and the Creed</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De fide rerum invisibilium</td>
<td>On Faith in the Unseen</td>
<td>Faith in the Unseen</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Genesi ad litteram</td>
<td>On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis</td>
<td>The Literal Meaning of Genesis</td>
<td>On Genesis (Vol. I/13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus</td>
<td>On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis, an Unfinished Book</td>
<td>Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis</td>
<td>On Genesis (Vol. I/13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De gestis Pelagii</td>
<td>On Genesis, Against the Manichees</td>
<td>On Genesis, a Refutation of Manichees</td>
<td>On Genesis (Vol. I/13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De grammatica</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>The Deeds of Pelagius</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De gratia Christi et de peccato originali</td>
<td>On the Grace of Christ and Original Sin</td>
<td>The Grace of Christ and Original Sin</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De gratia et libero arbitrio</td>
<td>On Grace and Free Will</td>
<td>On Grace and Free Choice</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De haeresibus</td>
<td>On Heresies</td>
<td>Heresies</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De immortalitate animae</td>
<td>On the Immortality of the Soul</td>
<td>The Immortality of the Soul</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De libero arbitrio</td>
<td>On Free Will or On Free Choice</td>
<td>Free Will</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De magistro</td>
<td>On the Teacher</td>
<td>The Teacher</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De mendacio</td>
<td>On Lying</td>
<td>Lying</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum</td>
<td>On the Catholic and the Manichean Ways of Life</td>
<td>The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De musica</td>
<td>On Music</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Dialogues II (Vol. I/4) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De natura boni</td>
<td>On the Nature of the Good</td>
<td>The Nature of the Good</td>
<td>The Manichean Debate (Vol. I/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De nuptiis et concupiscientia</td>
<td>On Marriage and Concupiscence</td>
<td>Marriage and Desire</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians II (Vol. I/24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus</td>
<td>On Eight Questions from Dulcitius</td>
<td>Eight Questions of Dulcius</td>
<td>Responses to Miscellaneous Questions (Vol. I/12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De octo quaestionibus ex Veteri Testamento</td>
<td>On Eight Questions from the Old Testament</td>
<td>Eight Questions from the Old Testament</td>
<td>Old Testament (Vol. I/14) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De opere monachorum</td>
<td>On the Work of Monks</td>
<td>The Work of Monks</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De ordine</td>
<td>On Order</td>
<td>On Order</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De origine animae et de sententia Jacobi</td>
<td>On the Origin of the Soul and On a Verse in James</td>
<td>The Origin of the Soul and The Opinion of the Apostle James (Letters 166-67)</td>
<td>Letters 156 -210 (Vol. II/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De patientia</td>
<td>On Patience</td>
<td>Patience</td>
<td>Morality and Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum</td>
<td>On the Merits and Forgiveness of Sins and on Infant Baptism</td>
<td>The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and The Baptism of Little Ones</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De perfectione justitiae hominis</td>
<td>On the Perfection of Human Righteousness</td>
<td>The Perfection of Human Righteousness</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De praedestinatione sanctorum</td>
<td>On the Predestination of the Saints</td>
<td>The Predestination of the Saints</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians IV (Vol. I/26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De retorica</td>
<td>The Rhetoric</td>
<td>Rhetoric</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De sancta virginitate</td>
<td>On Holy Virginity</td>
<td>Holy Virginity</td>
<td>Marriage and Virginity (Vol. I/9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De sermone Domini in monte</td>
<td>On the Lord’s Sermon on the Mount</td>
<td>The Lord’s Sermon on the Mount</td>
<td>The New Testament I and II (Vol. I/15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De spiritu et littera</td>
<td>On the Spirit and the Letter</td>
<td>The Spirit and the Letter</td>
<td>Answer to the Pelagians I (Vol. I/23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De symbolo ad catechumenos</td>
<td>On the Creed to Catechumens</td>
<td>On the Creed to the Catechumens (Sermon 398)</td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Trinitate</td>
<td>On the Trinity</td>
<td>The Trinity</td>
<td>The Trinity (Vol. I/5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De unico baptismo contra Petilianum</td>
<td>On the One Baptism in Answer to Petilian</td>
<td>The One Baptism in Answer to Petilian</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De utilitate credendi</td>
<td>On the Advantage of Believing</td>
<td>The Advantage of Believing</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De utilitate ieiunii</td>
<td>On the Value of Fasting</td>
<td>The Value of Fasting (Sermon 400)</td>
<td>Morality &amp; Christian Asceticism (Vol. I/10) *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De videndo Dei</td>
<td>On Seeing God</td>
<td>On Seeing God (Letter 147)</td>
<td>Letters 100-155 (Vol. II/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enarrationes in Psalmos</td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms</td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms</td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 1-32 (Vol. III/15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 33-50 (Vol. III/16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 51-72 (Vol. III/17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 73-98 (Vol. III/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 99-120 (Vol. III/19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Expositions of the Psalms 121-150 (Vol. III/20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enchiridion (De fide, spe, et caritate)</td>
<td>Enchiridion (On Faith, Hope, and Love)</td>
<td>The Enchiridion on Faith, Hope, and Charity</td>
<td>On Christian Belief (Vol. I/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epistulae</td>
<td>Letters</td>
<td>Letters</td>
<td>Letters 1-99 (Vol. II/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epistulae ad Romanos inchoata expositio</td>
<td>Unfinished Commentary on the Letter to the Romans</td>
<td>Unfinished Commentary on the Epistle to the Romans</td>
<td>Letters 100-155 (Vol. II/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Letters 156-210 (Vol. II/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Letters 211-270 (Vol. II/4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Title</th>
<th>Traditional Translation</th>
<th>NCP Translation</th>
<th>Volume in NCP Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expositio quarandam propositionum ex epistula apostoli ad Romanos</td>
<td>Commentary on Statements in the Letter of Paul to the Romans</td>
<td>Commentary on Certain Statements in the Epistle of Paul to the Romans</td>
<td>The New Testament III (Vol. I/17)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gesta cum Emerito</td>
<td>Proceedings with Emeritus</td>
<td>Proceedings with Emeritus</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locutionum in Heptateuchum</td>
<td>Sayings in the Heptateuch</td>
<td>Expressions in the Heptateuch</td>
<td>Old Testament (Vol. I/14)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memorandum Augustinum</td>
<td>Memorandum to Augustine</td>
<td>Memorandum to Augustine</td>
<td>Arianism and Other Heresies (Vol. I/18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quaestiones evangeliorum</td>
<td>Questions on the Gospels</td>
<td>Questions on the Gospels</td>
<td>Letters 100 -155 (Vol. II/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quaestiones expositae contra paganos numero sex</td>
<td>Six Questions Against Pagans</td>
<td>Six Questions in Answer to Pagans (Letter 102)</td>
<td>Old Testament (Vol. I/14)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quaestiones XVII in Mattheaeum</td>
<td>Seventeen Questions on Matthew</td>
<td>Seventeen Questions on Matthew</td>
<td>Revisions (Vol. I/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retractions</td>
<td>Reconsiderations</td>
<td>Revisions</td>
<td>The Donatist Controversy II (Vol. I/22)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermo ad Caesariensis ecclesiae plebem</td>
<td>A Sermon to the People of the Church of Caesarea</td>
<td>A Sermon to the People of the Church of Caesarea</td>
<td>Sermons 1-19 (Vol. III/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Sermons -Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Sermons -Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Sermons 20-50 (Vol. III/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones (Dolbeau)</td>
<td>Dolbeau Sermons</td>
<td>Sermons (Newly Discovered)</td>
<td>Sermons 51-94 (Vol. III/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones ad populum 1–396</td>
<td>Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Sermons to the People</td>
<td>Sermons 94A-147A (Vol. III/4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 1-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermons 148-183 (Vol. III/5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 20-50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermons 184-229Z (Vol. III/6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 51-94</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermons 230-272B (Vol. III/7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 94A-147A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermons 273-305A (Vol. III/8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 184-229Z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermons 341-400 (Vol. III/10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 273-305A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermons Vol 1-10 (Vol. III/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 306-340A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermones Vol 11 (Vol. III/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 341-400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermones Vol 11 (Vol. III/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermones 1-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sermones Vol 1-10 (Vol. III/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soliloquies</td>
<td>Soliloquies</td>
<td>Soliloquies</td>
<td>Dialogues I (Vol. I/3)*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Volume not yet published by New City Press  **Index to be published in Volume III/13
Augustine undertook this greatest piece of writing with the conviction that God wanted him to make this confession. The book in fact is an extended poetic, passionate and intimate prayer. Second Edition includes an annotated bibliography by William Harmless, S.J.

Translation and introduction by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Published by New City Press in:

The Confessions

Hardcover (2nd Edition): 978-1-56548-468-9, 6 x 9 in., 43
Pocket: 978-1-56548-154-1, 4½ x 7 in., 320 pp., 2001
Paperback (2nd Edition): 978-1-56548-445-0, 6 x 9 in., 43

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Volume I/1

#### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII, 8, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:2 Matthew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII, 12, 15; 2:7:13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII, 3, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 3, 4; 34:10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 8, 9; 4:10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 12, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII, 8, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII, 22, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 19, 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 20, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 21, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22.28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 24, 35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 21, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 22, 32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 22, 32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29-30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 25, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII, 12, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>113:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII, 10, 16; 4:27:16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>113:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 31, 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 28:28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17:1(17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V, 5, 8;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>121:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>122:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI, 13, 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2(1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 8;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>18:27(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 26, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3(2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>28:27(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-4(2-3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>34:27(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5(4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>39(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6(5)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>39(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>39(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8(7)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>39(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9(8)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>39(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 10, 24; 18(19):13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>21:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10(8)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 4, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18(19):13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5(19):4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32:17(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII, 25, 38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, 18, 28;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40(27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40(27)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Confessions**
Volume I/1
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprung)

Citations are to book [Roman number], chapter, and paragraph (in parentheses).

Abraham, III,7(13)
Abraham’s bosom, IX,3(6)
abundance, XIII,26(40)
abyss, XII,21(30), XIII,5(6), XIII,8(9), XIII,12(13), XIII,13(14),XIII,14(15), XIII,21(30), XIII,23(34)
formless matter, XII,3(3), XII,8(8), XII,17(24,25), XII,22(31)
Academics (philosophers), V,10(19)
accidents:
Aristotle’s categories, IV,16(28)
actors, IV,14(22)
Adam, I,9(14), VIII,9(21), VIII,10(22), IX,13(34), XIII,20(28)
death in, V,9(16)
Adeodatus, IX,4(7), IX,6(14), IX,12 (29)
admiration: pride, X,36(59)
adolescence, I,12(19), II,10(18), VIII,7(17)
hope for academic success, II,3(8)
lust, II,3(7)
pretted obscenities, II,3(7)
sexual awakening, II,1(1)
sixteenth year, II,3(5,6), II,6(12)
adoption [children of God], XI,2(4), XIII,13(14)
adultery, I,10(25), II,3(7)
adults: frivolous pursuits, I,9(15)
adversity, X,28(39)
Aeneas, I,13(21), II,22
affection, IV,14(22) p73
tamed to gentleness, XIII,23(34)
temptation, X,36(59)
unclean, IV,6(11)
Africa, VI,15(25), VIII,6(14), IX,3(6)
IX,8(17)
allegorical exegesis, XIII,33(48)
almsgiving, XIII,23(34)
Alypius, Bishop of Thagaste, VI,7(11,12), VIII,6(13,14), VIII,8(19), VIII,11(27), VIII,12(28,29), IX,4(7,8)
arrested as a thief, VI,9(14,15)
baptized, IX,6(14)
chaste; complete continence, VI,12(21)
Christ as godhead and flesh, VII,9(25)
conversion, VIII,12(30)
dissuades Augustine from taking a wife, VI,12(21)
integrity, VI,10(16)
life after death, VI,16(26)
tentative desire for marriage, VI,12(22)
ambition (worldly), II,6(13), IV,16(30), VI,11(19), VIII,7(18), X,36(59)
Ambrose, Saint, VI,3(3)ff
availability, VI,11(18)
heart, VI,3(4)
hymn by, XI,27(35)
Isaiah recommended by, IX,5(13)
meeting, in Milan, V,13(23)
monastery in Milan, VIII,6(15)
Monica and, VI,1(1)
mourners (hymn), IX,12(32)
offerings at tombs of martyrs, VI,2(2)
persecuted, IX,7(15)
prone to hoarseness, VI,3(3)
secret mouth of his heart, VI,3(3)
silent reading, VI,3(3)
Simplicianus’ baptism, VIII,2(3)
vision, IX,7(16)
ancestors: cult of, VI,2(2)
angels, VIII,2(4), VIII,3(6), X,42(67), XII,9(9), XII,27(37), XIII,8(9), XIII,15(18), XIII,19(25), XIII,38(53)
made by the good Creator, VII,3(5)
Manichean fable, III,10(18), IV,1(1)
praise God, VII,13(19)
ranks of, XII,22(31)
rebellious, I, 17(27)
anger, II, 16(13), IV, 15(24), V, 2(2),
IX, 4(10), IX, 9(21), XIII, 14(15)
animals, III, 6(10), X, 17(26), X, 25(36),
X, 35(57), XIII, 21(30),
XIII, 23(33), XIII, 25(38)
astrology, VII, 6(8)
beauty, X, 6(10)
creation (6th day), XIII, 21(29)
domestic; goodness, XIII, 21(31)
held not made by God, XIII, 30(45)
intelligence, VII, 17(23)
See also wild animals.

Antony of Egypt:
Ponticianus gives account of,
VIII, 6(14), VIII, 7(16) p73
sell all you possess …, VIII, 12(29)
Apollinarist heretics, VII, 19(25)
apostles: mountains, XIII, 2(3)
appeite, X, 31(44)
arctitect: Alypius assisted by,
VI, 9(15)
Arian heresy, IX, 7(15)
artifacts, X, 34(53)
Aristotle: Categories, IV, 15(28,29)
armor, III, 7(13)
arrogance, III, 16(16), X, 42(67),
XIII, 21(30)
ask, seek, knock, XII, 1(1), XIII, 38(53)
astrology:
animals, VII, 6(8)
Firminus and slave-boy born at
same time, VII, 6(8)
luck, not skill, VII, 6(9)
rejected, IV, 3(4), VII, 6(8,10)
aronomy, V, 3(4), V, 5(8), X, 35(56)
Athenians, Saint, X, 33(50)
Athenians, VII, 4(9)
atmosphere, VII, 1(12)
attachment, XIII, 21(29), XIII, 22(32)
attention:
present events, XI, 28(37,38),
XII, 15(18)
present of present things, XI, 20(26)
attitude, IV, 14(23)
Augustine, Saint:
See adolescence.
age 19 to 28 (see all “IV” citations).
See baptism.
beaten at school, I, 9(14), I, 14(23)
boyhood: going to school, I, 9(14)
career as teacher renounced, IX, 2(2)
See catechumenate.

cohabitation with unnamed girl,
IV, 2(2)
common-law wife dismissed,
VI, 15(25)
conversion, VIII, pages 184-208

disappointed with Faustus, V, 6(10)
effect of Cicero’s Hortensius on,
III, 4(7)
experience: attaining That Which
Is, VII, 17(23)
father of, IX, 9(19)
finds some enlightenment, VI, 4(5)
grief for death of Monica,
IX, 12(29)-IX, 13(37)
grief: carnal affections, IX, 13(34)
health problem (lungs and voice),
IX, 2(4)
illness in Rome, V, 9(16)
See infancy.
Latin and Greek studies, I, 13(20)
lost book(s) on beauty, IV, 13(20),
IV, 14(21,27)
lustful habit, VIII, 5(10)
See Monica, Saint.
moves to Rome, V, 8(14)

near to death (in boyhood), I, 11(17)

need for Christ the mediator,
VII, 18(24)
one life, with Monica, IX, 12(30)
See parents. p73

post-adolescence; entering youth,
VII, 1(1)

projected marriage, VI, 13(23)
punishment as schoolboy, I, 9(14)
reputation for wisdom, VII, 20(26)
self-taught, I, 8(13)
sixteenth year, II, 3(5)
son by common-law wife, VI, 15(25)

studies (boyhood), I, 9(15), I, 12(19)
unwilling to learn (boyhood), I, 12(19)
urge to excel (as a child), I, 19(30)
weeping for Monica, IX, 12(33)

authority:
biblical, VI, 5(8)
judgment and, XIII, 23(33,34)
scripture, XII, 16(23)
over sea creatures, XIII, 20(26)

authors:
intention must be sought, XII, 18(27)
avarice, See greed.
awareness: mutable, XII, 15(18)
Volume I/1

awe, XII,14(17)
babies:
crying, I,6(8)
minds of, are not innocent, I,7(11)
sin and, I,7(11)
Babylon, II,3(8)
baptism, XIII,20(26,28), XIII,21(29)
Augustine baptized, IX,6(14)
deferred, I,11(17-18)
desire for, V,9(16)
Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, XIII,12(13)
forgiveness of sin, IX,2(4), IX,4(12)
iccurring sin after, I,11(17)
making fun of, IV,4(8)
new birth (Monica), IX,13(34)
rebirth, IX,3(6)
Victorinus, VIII,2(4-5)
bath: Greek word for, IX,12(32)
beasts, See animals.
beatitude(s), XI,1(1), XII,11(12), XIII,3(4), XIII,4(5)
beauty:
Augustine’s book(s) on, IV,13(20), IV,14(21), IV,15(27)
creation and Creator, XI,4(6)
creatures’ reply, X,6(9,10)
existence and, XIII,2(3)
form of material things, II,5(10)
God; and created things, X,34(53)
heaven and earth endowed with, XII,2(2)
love of God, XII,15(21)
physical bodies, XIII,28(43)
human faculties, II,6(12)
late have I loved you . . ., X,27(38)
lowest goods, II,5(11)
material forms; harmony, IV,15(24)
p73
material objects, IV,13(20), VII,17(23)
mind that admits its limitations, V,7(12)
norm for its use, X,34(53)
perceived by the spirit, VI,16(26)
praise God, IV,12(18)
sensuality, X,35(55)
thief, II,6(12)
whole of creation, XIII,35(50)
beggar, VI,6(9,10)
Beginning:

Son of God (in the Beginning), XIII,5(6)
See also under creation.
behavior: demonic, III,3(6)
being(s), XII,6(6), XII,7(7)
all exists because of God, XI,5(7)
collectively all that exists is ex-
ceedingly good, VII,12(18)
creation and creator, XI,4(6)
defined by God; each particularly,
VII,15(21)
evil as nonbeing, XII,11(11)
existence depends on God’s know-
ing, VII,4(6)
potential to be created and formed,
XII,22(31)
spacial dimension, VII,1(1)
three questions, X,10(17)
Being Itself (idipsum), IX,4(11)
belief:
earth and sea, XIII,21(29)
See also faith
grace gives power to see,
VII,21(27)

innumerable things held as true,
VI,5(7)
listening with view to action,
XIII,21(30)
parents of Augustine, I,11(17)
waters of unbelief, XIII,21(30)
witnessing, I,5(6)
benevolence, spiteful, III,2(3)
betrothal, VIII,3(7)
Bible (sacred scripture):
ascertaining author’s intention,
XII,18(27)
attacks on, XII,14(17)
author: one of many true meanings
in mind, XII,32(43)
authority of scriptures, VI,5(8),
XIII,15(16), XIII,23(34)
burning interest in, XI,22(28)
distaste for scripture, III,5(9)
hidden meaning, XII,10(10)
intention of author, XII,30(41)
learn by reading your word,
XIII,15(18)
meanings: in the beginning . . ., XII,20(29)
inner meaning of your words,
XL,2(4)
truth, XII,30(41), XII,31(42),

The Confessions
The Confessions

XII,32(43) meeting the minds of many people, XII,31(42) mysteries in, VI,5(8) mystery; growth through study of, III,5(9) pick up and read, VIII,12(29) power to lay pride low, XIII,15(17) praying for understanding, XI,2(2,3) refusal to believe scriptures, VI,5(7) respect for, XII,16(23) scripture given as "a vault overhead," XIII,15(16) seek God’s will in, XII,23(32) spiritual meaning, VI,4(6) spring: each draws whatever truth he can …, XII,27(37) submission of intellect to, XIII,23(33) Truth communicated to Moses, XII,32(43) truth still there to be found, XII,31(42) vault provided for us, XIII,18(23) word remains till end of the world, XIII,15(18) birds, III,6(10), X,17(26), XIII,20(26,28), XIII,21(29), XIII,23(34), XIII,25(38), XIII,32(47) birth horoscopes, IV,3(5), VII,6(8,9) bishops, V,13(23) blessings, XIII,18(22,23), XIII,25(38) blindness: glory and, III,3(6) body and soul, beauty of the body, XIII,28(43) body’s obedience to soul, VIII,8(20) creation, VII,3(4) perishable body weighs down the soul, VII,17(23) seeking God, X,6(9) soul imparts life; energy, X,6(10) See also spirit book, the, See Bible. books: Alypius tempted by, VI,10(16) bosom (gospel word), IX,3(6) bosom of Abraham, IX,3(6) bread, VII,16(22), X,31(46) breasts, I,7(11) brotherly love, X,4(5) Caesar, V,3(5) canticles, IX,6(14) care, XI,2(3), XIII,26(39) Carthage, I,13(22), II,3(5), III,1(1), IV,7(12), IV,8(13), V,8(14), VI,7(11), VI,9(14), VI,10(17), VII,2(3), X,16(25), X,21(30) Cassiciacum, IX,3(5), IX,4(7) catechumenate, I,11(17), VIII,2(4), V,14(25), IX,4(8) categories (Aristotle), IV,16(28,29) Catholic Church, VI,4(5), VII,1(1), VII,5(7), VII,7(11), VIII,6(14), IX,13(37) unconquered, V,14(24) Catholic doctrine, VI,5(7) Catholic faith, V,10(20), V,14(24), VI,3(4), VI,11(18) Catiline, II,5(11) cattle: chewing cud, X,14(22) celibacy, VI,3(3), VI,12(22) censers: hearts as, X,4(5) certainty, VIII,12(29), XI,12(14), XII,16(23), XII,24(33) chance: astrology, IV,3(5,6) horoscopes, VII,6(9) p73 change, I,4(4), I,6(9,10), III,7(13), IV,15(26), XI,4(6), XI,7(9), XII,6(6), XII,11(13), XII,17(25), XII,19(28), XII,28(38), XIII,3(4), XIII,8(9), XIII,16(19) beginning/ceasing to exist, XI,8(10) changeable = not eternal, XII,15(18) dying, or rising to new life, XI,7(9) God “prior” to act of creation, XI,10(12) no alteration in God, XII,11(11,12) past and future in created things, XI,11(13) charity, III,2(3), IV,12(19), IV,16(31), VIII,3(6), IX,2(3), X,34(52), X,37(61), XII,23(32), XII,25(35), XIII,6(7) believes without stint, X,3(3,4) distributing worldly goods to the poor, XIII,34(49) Holy Spirit, IV,4(7) humility the foundation of, VII,20(26) lawful use of the commandment, XII,30(41) more than easy provision, XIII,17(21)
seeking author’s intention, XII,18(27)
tolerance for ignorance, V,5(9)
way of excellence, XIII,7(8)
chastisement, IX,4(12)
chastity, II,7(15), VIII,7(17), IX,9(19),
   X,30(41), XIII,23(34)
please, not yet …, VIII,7(17)
cheating, I,19(30)
cherubim, XII,22(31)
childhood, XI,18(23)
children:
of darkness, XIII,14(15)
desire for harmful objects, I,7(11)
discipline; training, IX,8(18),
   IX,9(22)
of God, VIII,4(9)
not to remain babies, XIII,22(32)
sensual person as, XIII,18(23)
spiritual, XIII,18(22)
choice:
   conflicting impulses in one person,
      VIII,10(24)
   perverse, VI,6(9)
Christ, See Jesus Christ.
Christian life:
   live for him who died for us,
      X,43(70)
   Monica’s example, IX,13(34)
   teach me, heal me, X,43(70)
Christians:
   forbidden to teach rhetoric,
      VIII,5(10)
Christology, See Incarnation; Jesus Christ;
   Word of God.
Church, I,11(17), IV,16(31), V,10(19),
   V,13(23), VI,5(7), VI,11(18),
   VIII,1(2), VIII,2(4), IX,4(7),
   IX,6(14); IX,8(17)
   body of Christ, VI,4(5)
   heresies and, VII,19(25)
   judgment of gifted persons,
      XIII,23(33)
   predestined before time began,
      XIII,34(49)
   spiritual and carnal members,
      XIII,12(13)
Cicero, III,4(7), III,5(9), V,6(11),
   VIII,7(17)
circus, VI,7(11,12), VIII,6(15), X,35(57)
city on high, XII,15(20) p73
clouds, XIII,15(17,18)
cogitating, X,11(18)
coin, lost, X,18(27)
coincidence, IV,3(6)
colors, X,8(13), X,34(51)
commandment:
   “give what you command; command
      what you will,” X,29(40), X,31(45)
   commendation, X,37(60)
   community:
      dream of an ideal commune,
         VI,14(24)
   compassion, III,2(2), XIII,17(21)
   composition (songs), III,7(14)
   conceit, XII,25(34)
   concupiscence, VI,12(22),
      X,30(41,42,43), X,35(54)
   conduct of life:
      frivolity and futility, VIII,11(26)
   pursuit of created things, X,34(53)
   confession(s) (witnessing), VIII,2(3,4),
      IX,7(16), IX,8(17), IX,13(37),
      X,1(1), X,2(2), X,3(4), XI,2(3),
      XII,16(23), XII,24(33), XII,26(36),
      XII,30(41), XII,32(43)
   dialogue with God, X,2(2)
   love as motive for writing, II,1(1)
   motives for, X,2(2)
   opening prayer, I,1(1)
   people hearing my confessions,
      X,3(3)
   presumption and, VII,20(26)
   shouts of love, X,2(2)
   what I am now [as I write], X,3(4),
      X,4(6)
   conscience, I,18(29), V,6(11), VIII,7(18),
      X,2(2), X,3(4), X,30(41)
   consciousness:
      tension; time, XI,26(33)
   consolation:
      friends, IV,8(13)
   conspiracy, II,8(16)
   constellations, XIII,30(45)
   contemplation, XII,12(15), XII,15(19),
      XII,17(24), XIII,18(22,23)
   contentment, X,31(45), XIII,26(39)
   continence:
      fruitful mother of children,
         VIII,11(27)
gift of God, VI,11(20), X,31(45) ordered; God’s gift, X,29(40), X,37(60,61), XIII,26(40) conversion (of life), XIII,2(3), XIII,4(5), XIII,10(11), XIII,12(13), XIII,22(32) acknowledging truth, XI,8(10) let it be now, VIII,11(25) let me delay a little longer, VIII,5(12) miracles and, XIII,27(42) converts, VIII,4(9), IX,8(17) corpse: mangled, X,35(55) correction: p73 agent of God, without knowing it, VI,7(12) unwholesome soul, IX,8(18) corruption, VII,2(3), VII,4(6), IX,1(1) counsel: God’s response is clear; not all hear clearly, X,26(37) courage, VIII,8(19), IX,11(28) craftsmen, X,34(53), XI,5(7) created things: transience, IV,10(15) creation: all good things (substances), VII,12(18) all good things: places and times, VIII,3(8) all manner of beings in, I,7(12) all together = “exceedingly” good, XIII,28(43), XIII,32(47), XIII,34(49) attitudes toward goodness of, XIII,31(46) beauty in, II,6(12) coeternal with God, XII,22(31) concerted witness to God, VIII,1(2) corporeal nature (earth), XII,28(39), XIII,2(3) creator: not our God but a hostile intelligence, XIII,30(45) day 2: the vault, XII,13(16), XIII,15(16) day 3, XIII,17(20) day 4: lamps of wisdom and knowledge, XIII,18(22) day 5: sea creatures, XIII,20(26) day 6: animals, XIII,21(29) day 7: rest, XIII,35(50) See also earth. epochs of “time” before, XI,13(15) eternal, XI,10(12) eternity of the creator, XI,30(40), XII,15(18) exceedingly good; will pass away, XIII,35(50) failing to find God in, XIII,31(46) Father (“God”), XIII,5(6) filled with God’s infinite being, VII,5(7) finding Truth, V,3(5) first stage: “beginning,” XII,28(39) Genesis account (“had I been Moses …”), XII,26(36) God acting before creation, XI,30(40) God looked “seven or eight times,” XIII,29(44) God [singular] made man, XIII,22(32) God’s goodness, XIII,2(2) God’s will “prior” to act of creation, XI,10(12) goodness of all things, VII,5(7), VII,16(22) heaven and earth (cover all creation), XI,12(14), XI,30(40), XII,2(2), XII,7(7), XII,13(16), XII,17(24,25) held to have been created by another, XIII,30(45) Holy Spirit poised over, XIII,4(5), XIII,5(6), XIII,6(7) in the beginning . . . , XI,3(5), I,9(11), XI,31(41), XII,7(7), XII,8(8), XII,12(15), XII,13(16), XII,15(20), XII,17(24,25,26), XII,20(29), XII,24(33), XIII,24(36) primal matter, XIII,29(40) the Trinity, XIII,5(6) increase and multiply, XIII,24(35) intellectual, XII,9(9) intelligible and sensible, XII,20(29) p73 let there be . . . (thought of in human terms), XII,27(37) light, XIII,3(4), XIII,8(9), XIII,10(11), XIII,12(13) made out of nothing; not from God’s substance, XII,28(38) Manichean, III,6(10) material thing pre-heaven and earth, XL,6(8) matter capable of being formed, XIII,6(10) no temporality in, XIII,29(44) not a new act of God’s will,
Volume I/1

XII,15(18) not forsaken by God, V,2(2)
only nonbeing (evil) is not from God,
XII,11(11)
order: God’s house, XII,15(19)
praise due to God, I,7(12), V,1(1)
praising God, I,1(1)
precedence in eternity, XII,29(40)
reality of God seen through,
VII,17(23)
seen through the Spirit, XIII,31(46)
seven times: all things made are
good, XIII,28(43)
sings praise to God, XIII,33(48)
Son (Beginning), XIII,5(6)
souls and bodies, VII,3(4)
spiritual (light), XIII,3(4)
spiritual and corporeal, III,6(10),
XII,2(2), XII,9(9), XII,12(15),
XII,14(17), XII,17(24,26),
XII,21(30), XIII,2(2),
XIII,24(37)
spiritual nature (heaven), XII,28(39),
XIII,2(3)

VII,38(53)
upper and lower regions, XII,21(30)
waters gathered; dry land,
XIII,17(20)
we see things because they exist,

XIII,38(53)
what words? what utterance? XI,6(8)
whatever you say shall be; comes to be,
XI,7(9)
when matter received form,
XII,22(31)
whole of, imagined, VII,5(7)
Wisdom, XII,19(28), XIII,2(2)
Wisdom as the Beginning,
XII,28(39)
Word: all uttered simultaneously,
XI,7(9)
Word: how did you speak? XI,6(8)
creatures:
all praise God, VII,13(19)
base love of, X,6(10)
co-eternity, XII,11(11,12), XII,15(19)
entire pleasure in God alone,
XII,11(12)
formlessness, XII,11(14)
God’s substance, XIII,2(2)
goodness is holding fast to God,
XII,15(22), XIII,2(3)
higher, lower, totality, VII,13(19)
looking for God in, X,6(8)
loved instead of creator, II,3(6)
not pleasing to some, XIII,30(45)
praise for God’s gifts, I,7(12)
pursuit of, forsaking the creator,
X,34(53)
seeking pleasure in, I,20(31)
subject to time, XII,28(38)
tell me something about God, X,6(9)
unaffected by passage of time,
XII,12(15)
credulity, VI,5(7)
Creed, VIII,2(5)
Creusa, I,13(22)
criminal acts, II,5(11), II,7(15), III,9(17),
IV,15(24,25)
crimes against the person; motives,
III,8(16)
cross-beam, XI,26(33)
cup of cold water, XIII,26(41)
curiosity, I,14(23), II,6(13), III,3(5),
X,35(54,55), X,37(60), X,42(67),
XIII,21(30)
customs: transgressions against, III,8(15)
Cyprian (martyr), V,8(15)

Danæ, I,16(26)
danger: falling in love with, VI,12(22)
darkness, VI,10(17), VII,20(26),
VIII,10(22), IX,4(10), X,5(7),
XI,2(2), XI,9(11), XI,25(32),
XII,3(3), XII,8(8), XII,10(10),
XII,17(25), XII,21(30), XIII,2(3),
XIII,6(7), XIII,8(9), XIII,10(11),
XIII,12(13), XIII,14(15),
XIII,19(25), XIII,34(49)
powers of; fight, VII,2(3)
realm (Manichean), III,6(11)

David, King, III,7(13), X,31(46)
dawn: prediction, XI,18(24)
day, XIII,18(23), XIII,19(25), XIII,24(35)
constitution of: time or movement,
XI,23(30)
whole day includes night, XI,23(30)
death, VI,6(9), VI,12(22), VIII,7(18),
XIII,14(15)
Christ’s body; Augustine’s soul,
V,9(16)
The Confessions

Debt annulled by Christ’s death, VII,21(27)
Devil presides over, VII,21(27)
Earned by sin, X,42(67)
Fear of dying, IV,6(11), VI,16(26), VII,5(7)
Friend of Augustine, IV,4(8,9)
Incarnation and, IV,12(19)
Life tending toward, X,17(26)
Mourning for, IX,12(29)
Not loving God, I,13(21)
Not to see the face of God, I,5(5)
One word dies so next can be heard, IV,10(15)
Seeking happiness in realm of, IV,12(18)
Unpredictable, VI,11(19)
Devil, V,3(3), X,42(67)
Devils, I,4(4)
Deep calls unto deep, XIII,13(14)
Desire, II,5(10), III,1(1), IX,8(17), X,56(58), XI,2(4), XI,9(11), XI,22(28), XIII,1(1), XIII,9(10)
Prayers, IV,5(10) p73
Sensual, X,37(60)
Soul dies by craving, XIII,21(30)
For things other than God, VI,6(9)
Universal, for happiness, X,20(29), X,21(31), X,23(33)
Despair, VI,1(1)
Destructability: goodness, VII,12(18)
Destruction: harmful; it diminishes the good, VII,12(18)
Deus, creator omnium (hymn), XI,27(35)
Devil, V,3(3), X,42(67)
Origin, VII,5(7)
Seduction; death, VII,21(27)
Soul of Victorinus, VIII,4(9)
Trounced in relation to strength of his hold, VIII,4(9)
Devotion, IX,4(8), IX,6(14), X,33(49), XI,1(1)
Dialogue: God’s primacy in, X,2(2)
Dido, I,13(21)
Dignity, XI,31(41), XIII,2(2), XIII,23(33)
Disagreement, IV,8(13)
Discernment, III,7(13), III,11(19), XII,20(29), XIII,18(23)
Will of God, XIII,22(32)
Discipline, VI,6(9), IX,9(20)
Students in Carthage/Rome, V,8(14)
Discord, IV,15(24)
Disintegration, IV,15(24)
Divination, IV,3(4,6), VII,6(8)
Dogs:
Astrology, VII,6(8)
Universal, for happiness, X,20(29), X,21(31), X,23(33)
Despair, VI,1(1)
Dysad, IV,15(24)
Earth, I,2(2), VIII,11(27), XIII,21(30), XIII,24(35)
Believers on, XIII,21(29)
Blessings on, XIII,18(23)
Created, XI,4(6), XI,5(7)
Dominion over, XIII,23(33)
Dry, XIII,17(20), XIII,19(24)
Endowed with beauty, XII,2(2)
Formless matter, XII,3(3), XII,4(4), XII,8(8), XII,19(28), XII,22(31)
Invisible and unorganized, XII,13(16), XII,17(24), XII,21(30), XIII,5(6), XIII,12(13)
Lower part of creation, VII,13(19)
Made in the beginning, XII,12(15), XII,13(16), XIII,5(6)
Mutability, XII,8(8)
Primal formlessness, XII,9(9), XII,13(16), XII,17(25) p73
Yields its increase, XIII,17(21), XIII,19(24)
Earthly goods, See temporal goods.
Eastern Church:
Singing of hymns and psalms, IX,7(15)

Volume I/1
Volume I/1

eating:
  assimilating the truth of God, VII,10(16)
  necessity, X,31(43)
  pleasure, VIII,3(7)
  scandal, X,31(46)
  sufficient to maintain health, X,31(44)
eclipse, V,3(4,6), V,5(9)
education, I,16(26), V,12(22)
Egypt, VII,9(15)
Elect (company of saints in Rome), V,10(18)
elements: fight against caverns of darkness, II,6(11)
Elijah:
  fed by widow, XIII,26(41)
  meat, X,31(46)
eloquence, I,16(26), III,4(7), IV,14(21), V,3(3), V,6(10), V,13(23), VII,7(11), VIII,5(10), X,21(30)
Elpidius, V,11(21)
emootions:
  memory; recall, X,14(21,22), X,17(26), X,25(36)
  pleasure in, III,2(3)
end of the world, IX,11(28), XIII,15(18)
endurance, X,28(39)
enemy, IV,9(14)
joyment: remembering, X,21(30,31)
enjoyment: remembering, X,21(30,31)
envy, II,6(13), X,28(39)
motive for crime, III,8(16)
Epaphroditus, XIII,26(39)
Epicurus, VI,16(26)
equality: created goods, VII,12(18)
error, I,16(26), IV,15(26), XII,32(43)
memory, X,13(20)
Esau and Jacob (twins), VII,6(10), VII,9(15), X,31(46)
esteem, IV,14(22), VI,7(11)
eternal life, I,11(17), V,3(4), VII,7(11), IX,10(23), XIII,21(31)
Ambrose, VI,1(1)
rest; Sabbath, XIII,36(51)
rich young man ..., XIII,19(24)
eternity, IV,16(31), XI,1(1)ff, XI,11(13), XII,11(13), XII,15(19), XII,16(23), XIII,21(31)
God's ever-present eternity, XI,13(16)

God's "today," XI,13(16)
joys of, VIII,10(24)
knowing the truth, VII,10(16)
no phase of time is coeternal, XI,14(17)
nothing passes; whole is present, XI,11(13)
precedence in creation, XII,29(40)
time preceded by, XII,15(20)
word: one eternal speaking, XI,7(9)
eucharist:
  fish as metaphor or symbol, XIII,21(29), XIII,23(34) p73
holy Victim made available to us, IX,13(36)
sacrament celebrated at martyrs' shrines, VI,2(2)
eulogy, IV,14(21), X,37(61)
eunuch for kingdom of heaven, II,2(3), VIII,1(2)
evangelists:
  God's spokesmen, XIII,20(26), XIII,21(29,31)
evangelization: run, holy fires ..., XIII,19(25)
Eve, XIII,13(14)
evil, See good and evil。
Evodius, IX,8(17), IX,12(31)
evolving, XII,28(38)
example, XIII,21(30), XIII,25(38)
converts, VIII,4(9)
exegesis, XIII,23(34)

existence:
  beauty and, XIII,2(3)
  created beings; goodness, XIII,38(53)
  form and, XII,6(6)
  future and past, XI,17(22), XI,18(23), XI,20(26)
  gift of being, XIII,1(1)
  gift of God, I,20(31)
  numbers, X,12(19)
  presentiments, XI,18(24)
  source, XI,5(7)
  three questions, X,10(17)
  voice proclaiming creation, XI,4(6)
  whatever exists is good, VII,12(18)
  without God, nothing exists, I,2(2)

expectation:
  operation of mind, XI,28(37,38)
  present of future things, XI,20(26), XII,15(18)

expenses, XIII,26(40,41)
Volume I/1

formlessness, XII,4(4), XII,6(6), XII,9(9), XII,11(14), XII,3(3), XII,6(6), XII,12(15), XII,17(25), XII,19(28), XII,21(30), XI,22(31), XIII,5(6), XIII,34(49)
no succession of time in, xii,13(16), xii,15(22)
fornication, I,13(21), II,3(7), II,6(14), X,30(41)
free will, VII,19(25)
friendship, I,20(31), II,2(2), II,5(10), II,9(17), III,1(1), III,2(3), VII,7(11), VIII,3(8), VIII,6(13)
consolation at Carthage, IV,8(13)
dear in One who is never lost, IV,9(14)
death of Augustine’s friend, IV,4(8)
emulation, XIII,21(31)
estee for friends, IV,9(14)
genuine, IV,4(7)
half one’s own soul, IV,6(11)
ideal community, VI,14(24)
kinship with other souls, IV,12(18)
loved for their own sake, VI,16(26)
mortal things, IV,6(11)
signs, IV,8(13)
frivolity, VIII,11(26)
fruit:
flower and, XII,29(40)
fruit-bearing plants, XIII,26(41), XIII,27(42)
gift and, XIII,26(41), XIII,27(42)
upright will of the giver, XIII,26(41)
future life:
what we shall be has not yet appeared, XIII,15(18)
future time, See time.
games, I,19(30), II,4(9)
gang-mentality, II,8(16)
garden:
at Ostia, IX,10(23)
struggle in, VIII,8(19)
Genesis, Book of, XII,14(17), XII,22(31), XII,26(36)
allegorical interpretation of Gn 1, XIII,12(13)
genitives, VII,9(15), IX,5(13), XIII,20(26), XIII,34(49)
gentleness, VIII,20(26), XIII,21(31), XIII,23(34),
Gervasius (martyr), IX,7(16)
gifts:
day and night, XIII,19(24)
fruit and, XIII,26(41), XIII,27(42)
from God, I,20(31)
knowing those bestowed on us by God, XIII,31(46)
spiritual, XIII,18(23)
welcoming, XIII,26(41)
gladiatorial entertainments, VI,8(13)
gladness, VIII,4(9)
glory, II,6(13), III,3(6), VI,6(10), XII,15(21), XIII,19(25)
love and, V,1(1)
pride, X,36(59)
gluttony, I,19(30), X,31(45,47)
God:
abiding ever in himself, VII,11(17)
absolute Truth, X,24(35)
Aristotle’s ten predicates, IV,16(29)
artistry; creation, IV,15(24)
attributes, I,1(1), V,12(22)
Augustine’s boyhood, I,9(14)
beatitude; simplicity, XIII,3(4)
beauty, II,6(12), VII,17(23), XII,11(12)
being and living = one reality, I,6(10)
being contained, I,2(2), I,3(5)
Being Itself; unity, IX,4(11), XII,7(7), XII,17(25), XIII,11(12)
beliefs about, VII,20(26)
bounding soul to ever-abiding God, IV,11(16)
“book” read by the angels, XIII,15(18)
causality, I,6(9)
change and time, I,6(10)
changeless, IV,16(29)
commands in conflict with customs, III,8(15)
constancy, XIII,15(18)
See creation.
cultivator of the heart, II,3(5)
devouring fire, V,3(4)
eternal, IV,11(17), XI,29(39)
eternal Reason, XI,8(10)
eternal substance, XI,10(12)
eternal “time,” VII,15(21)
eternally at rest, XIII,38(53)
ever working, ever resting, XIII,37(52)
existence before any “before,” I,6(9)
extistence believed, VI,5(7,8)
The Confessions

exists in all fullness, XIII,16(19)
extended through space (false notion), VII,14(20), VII,20(26)
failure to find, VI,1(1)
Father’s love for us, X,43(69)
fight; powers of darkness, VII,2(3)
filling heaven and earth, I,2(2), I,3(3)
finding (paradox), I,6(10)
fleeing from face of, V,2(2)
foolish not to know God, VIII,1(2)
friends dear in One who is never lost, IV,9(14) p73
friendship with, VIII,6(15)
goodness abides in, IV,16(31),
VII,3(5), XIII,4(5)
goodness and beauty, XI,4(6)
greatness and beauty, IV,16(29)
happiness, IV,16(29)
He Is, XIII,31(46)
healer, IV,3(5), IV,7(12)
highest good, II,6(12), II,10(18),
III,6(10)
See Holy Spirit.
hunger for Truth, III,1(1), III,6(10)
See image of God.
immortality, XII,11(11)
immutability, VII,1(1), VII,3(4),
VII,17(23), XII,12(15)
imperishable, VII,1(1), VII,9(15)
incorruptible, VII,2(3), VII,4(6)
indestructible, VII,4(6)
infinite, V,10(20), VII,5(7),
VII,14(20)
invisible reality, VII,17(23),
VII,20(26)
See Jesus Christ.
joy in, about, because of = happy life,
X,22(32)
joy of upright souls, II,5(10)
knowing; calling on, I,1(1), I,2(2)
known in memory, X,24(35)
larger/smaller “parts” of, I,3(3)
law of, ever unchanged, III,7(13)
life of souls, III,6(10)
Light, X,40(65), XIII,3(4),
XIII,16(19), XIII,24(36)
looking for, in creatures, X,6(8)
looking for, in himself, X,8(12)
lost because of lie, X,41(66)
loud and clear, XII,11(11)
materialistic notions about, VII,1(1)
mounting to, VII,17(23)
my true life, X,17(26)
not wounded by sorrow, III,2(3)
onimpotence, I,2(2)
oniscience, I,5(6)
only the Spirit knows the reality of,
XIII,31(46)
paradoxes, I,4(4)
particles (Manichean fable), III,10(18),
IV,16(31)
passing years, XIII,18(22)
poured into us, I,3(3)
See praise.
prayer:
Ambrose, VI,3(4)
let me know you, X,1(1)
to the Father, XI,2(4)
turn us toward yourself, IV,10(15)
present always, I,3(3), III,6(11),
XI,11(13)
proof: all beings have existence from
God, VII,20(26)
See providence.
reality seen through created things,
VII,17(23)
ruler over all creation, III,8(15)
See seeking God.
silence, I,18(29), II,2(2), II,3(7) p73
See Son of God.
speaking about/failing to speak about,
I,4(4)
spirituality of, III,7(12)
steadfast permanence, XII,28(38)
striving to comprehend, VII,1(1)
striving to reach, IV,15(26)
supreme substance, VII,16(22)
sweetness that does not deceive,
II,1(1)
tempting: signs and wonders,
X,35(55)
That Which Is, VII,17(23)
thought of, as a man, XII,27(37)
See Trinity.
true Good, XII,16(23)
true Light, IV,15(25)
truth, VII,6(10), VII,15(21),
IX,10(23), X,37(62), X,41(66),
XII,2(4), XII,3(5), XI,8(10),
XL3(40), XII,10(10),
XII,15(18), XII,16(23),
XII,22(31), XII,25(34,35),
XIII,24(36), XIII,25(38),
XIII,29(44)
truth itself, I,5(6)
Truth, Love, Eternity, VII,10(16)
truth: promises, XII,1(1)
unchangeable, VII,1(1), VII,17(23), XI,31(41), XII,11(11)
unity, XIII,22(32)
unvarying substance, XII,15(18)
voice in my inward ear, XII,11(11)
where are you? XIII,14(15)
what do I love when I love God, X,6(8)
will and power of, VII,4(6)
Wisdom, V,8(15), XII,7(7), XII,15(20)
See Word of God.
you alone are our rest, VI,16(26)

Godhead:
joy, XIII,11(12)
unchangeable, XIII,9(10)
godlessness, XIII,23(33), XIII,34(49)
false joy, X,22(32)
godliness, IV,16(31)
gods: imitation of, I,16(25)
gold: idolatry, VII,9(15)
good and evil:
confess the source, X,2(2)
conflicting impulses, VIII,10(24)
deprived of all good = non-existence, VII,12(18)
destructability; harm, VII,12(18)
edward as non-being, VII,13(19)
ed as non-substance, IV,15(24), V,10(20), VII,12(18)
existence related to the Almighty will, VII,5(7)
free will, VII,3(5)
God’s gifts; man’s sin, X,4(5)
good out of evil, IX,8(18)
lower/higher goods, II,5(11)
non-being (evil) is not from God, XII,11(11)
origin of evil, III,7(12), V,3(4-7,11)
personal awareness, VIII,8(19)
relativity, VII,13(19)
seeking origin in an evil way, VII,5(7)
students in Rome, V,12(22)
supreme good/evil, IV,15(24)
thinking that a good is evil, XIII,31(46)
two natures (one person), VIII,10(22,23)
villainy = non-substance, VII,16(22)
where evil resides, VII,4(6)
good life, I,19(30), X,37(60)
good works, VI,2(2), X,37(60), XIII,19(24), XIII,23(33), XIII,26(39,40)
anticipated; rewarded, XIII,1(1)
Monica, IX,9(22)
goodness:
all created things, XII,7(7)
all good is from God, I,6(7)
animals, XIII,21(31)
confess: attribute to God, X,2(2)
created things: inner vision, XIII,38(53)
creation and creator, XI,4(6)
derived from God; love, IV,12(18), XIII,1(1)
fullness of good things, XII,16(23)
God’s essence, VII,3(5)
inform matter, XII,28(38)
kinds actions from, X,33(50)
lacking in unformed state, XIII,4(5)
peace; the will, XIII,9(10)
seeing creation in God’s Spirit, XIII,31(46)
goods, II,5(10,11)
gospel, XIII,20(27)
gossip, IX,9(21), X,35(57)
grace, II,7(15), VIII,1(1), VIII,5(12), X,3(4), X,35(56), X,39(64), XI,2(4), XI,3(5), XII,20(29), XIII,3(4), XIII,18(22), XIII,23(33)
freedom from death-laden body, VII,21(27)
give what you command …, X,29(40)
healing: power to see, VII,21(27)
gravity, XIII,9(10)
Great Bear, V,4(7)
greed, II,5(11), II,6(13), II,9(17), III,8(16), III,9(17), IV,2(2), VI,5(8), VIII,10(24), X,31(44,46), XIII,19(24)
Greek language, X,12(19), X,20(29), XI,3(5)
Greek studies, I,13(20), I,14(23)
grief, IV,5(10), IV,9(14)
grotesque, XII,6(6)

The Confessions
The Confessions

guests, XIII,27(42)
guilt:
  failure to love, IV,9(14)
  Manichean, IV,3(4)
  punishment and, III,3(5)
  rebellious, III,8(16)
gullibility, VI,9(14)

habit, I,7(11), VIII,7(18), VIII,11(26), IX,8(17), X,40(65)
carnal; tyranny, VII,17(23)
force of, VIII,5(11)
hardens into compulsion, VIII,5(10)
ruined little by little, IX,8(18)
sexual images, X,30(41)
truth and, VIII,9(21)
willing, VIII,5(12)
happiness (the happy life), VI,6(9,10), VI,11(19,20), VI,16(26), VIII,7(17), IX,3(6), IX,10(26), X,20(29), XIII,4(5)
ardent desire for God; strength lacking, X,23(33)
body and senses and perception of, X,21(30)
experience; remembering, X,21(31)
everyone aspires to, III,2(3)
happy life not seen with eye, X,21(30)
higher goods, I,5(11)
joy in, about, because of God, X,22(32)
joy in the truth, X,23(33)
knowing God, V,4(7)
made happy by hope for, X,20(29)
proud = enemy of, X,36(59)
quest for temporal, XIII,17(20)
remembering, X,14(21)
seeking, in realm of death, IV,12(18)
universal desire for, X,20(29), X,21(31), X,23(33)
unwilling to find joy in God, X,23(33)
harmony: material forms; beauty, IV,15(24)
harvest, XIII,18(22)
hatred:
  engendered by truth, X,23(34)
  perfect, V,12(22)
healing, V,1(1), V,9(16), VI,4(6), VI,5(8), VI,7(12), VI,9(14), VII,21(27), VIII,1(2), VIII,7(17), VIII,11(27), IX,4(8,12), IX,8(18), IX,13(34), X,3(4), X,30(42), X,36(58), X,39(64), X,43(69,70), XI,9(11), XI,31(41), XIII,18(23)
health, I,11(18), V,10(18), X,15(23)
care of self, I,20(31)
maintaining, X,31(44)

Hearers (company of saints in Rome), V,10(18)

hearing, X,33(49)

hearth, I,5(5,6), I,8(13), I,14(23), II,3(5), II,4(9), II,8(16), III,4(7,8), III,6(10), IV,4(9), IV,6(11), IV,9(14), IV,11(16), IV,14(23), V,1(1), V,3(5), V,6(11), V,9(17), V,14(24), VI,2(2), VI,3(3), VI,6(9), VI,11(20), VII,1(1,2,11), VII,21(27), VIII,1(1), VIII,3(6), VIII,8(19), VIII,10(24), VIII,11(25), VIII,12(28), IX,1(1), IX,4(7), IX,8(17), IX,10(23,24), IX,11(27), IX,12(29,31), IX,13(34), X,3(4), X,33(49), X,34(52), X,35(56,57), X,37(60), X,37(62), X,39(64), X,41(66), XI,2(3), XI,11(13), XI,25(32), XII,1(1), XII,6(6), XII,10(10), XII,15(22), XII,16(23), XII,25(34), XIII,6(7), XIII,7(8), XIII,9(10), XIII,14(15), XIII,26(40), XIII,38(53)

affections and movements of,
  IV,14(22)
censers, X,4(5)
dragging heavy hearts along the ground, VIII,6(15)
escaping itself, IV,7(12)
Monica, IX,9(22)
presence of God, IV,12(18,19)
pure; delight, XIII,21(29)
see also soul
treasure, XIII,19(24)
quiescent until it rests in God, I,1(1)
word heard in, VII,10(16)

heaven:
  all creatures praise God, VII,13(19)
  “containing” God, I,2(2)
  created, XI,4(6), XI,5(7)
  heaven above our heaven, XIII,8(9)
made in the beginning, XII,12(15), XII,13(16), XIII,5(6)

heaven and earth:

Volume I/1
contemplating, XIII,32(47)
Genesis creation account, XII,19(28), XII,24(33), XIII,2(2)
Head and body of the Church, XIII,34(49)
potential of formless matter, XII,19(28), XII,28(39)
primal matter, XII,29(40)
spiritual and corporeal creatures, XIII,24(37)
heaven’s heaven, XII,2(2), XII,8(8), XII,9(9), XII,11(12), XII,13(16), XII,15(20), XII,21(30), XIII,5(6)
heavenly bodies, See stars.
heavens (material), XII,8(8)
Hebrew language, XI,3(5)
hell, I,2(2), III,6(11), IV,12(19), XI,12(14)
heresy, III,11(21), VII,19(25)
Hierius, IV,14(21)
Hippocrates, IV,3(5)
holiness: love of, VIII,6(15)
holy of holies, XII,22(28)
Holy Spirit, III,4(8), IV,12(19), V,5(8,9), VII,21(27), IX,4(9), IX,7(15), XII,15(22), XII,17(24), XII,30(41), XIII,13(14), XIII,38(53)
broods over all that is mutable, XIII,10(11)
charity, IV,4(7)
enabling us to love God in what he has made, XIII,34(49)
Gift (only Person said to be “Gift”), XIII,9(10)
gifts of, XIII,18(23)
God seeing or saying through, XIII,29(44)
holiness of, XIII,7(8)
hovering over our inner being, XIII,14(15)
hovering over the waters, XII,22(31), XIII,4(5), XIII,7(8), XIII,9(10)
hovering overhead, XIII,6(7), XIII,34(49)
insight of intelligent minds, XIII,23(33)
judgment by person endowed with, XIII,23(34)
knowledge of God’s gifts to us, XIII,31(46)
love of God in our hearts, XIII,7(8)
Manichees; name, III,6(10)
persons exercising authority; judgment, XIII,23(33)
rest in, XIII,8(9), XIII,9(10)
resting on people, XIII,4(5)
supereminent love, XIII,7(8)
third person of Trinity, XIII,4(5)
tongues like fire, XIII,19(25)
truth in the bible, XII,32(43)
Homer, I,14(23), I,16(25)
homicide: motives, II,5(11)  p73
honesty:
Augustine as teacher, IV,2(2)
proven to be trustworthy, VI,10(16)
honor, I,17(27), I,18(28), II,6(13), X,37(61)
parents and children, XIII,19(24)
pride, X,36(59)
hope, VI,6(10), IX,4(11), IX,3(34), X,1(1), X,4(6), X,43(69), XI,1(1), XI,9(11), XI,22(28), XIII,13(14), XIII,14(15)
effects of, IV,6(11)
happiness, X,20(29)
mercy, X,29(40), X,35(57), X,36(58)
rest in God’s holiness, XIII,38(53)
weeping, IV,5(10)
worldly, IX,10(26)
horoscopes, IV,3(5), VII,6(8,9)
house of God: eternal life, XII,15(22)
human(-s; condition; -kind; race), I,18(29), IX,12(31), XIII,20(28)
abyss, IV,14(22)
acknowledgement of, IX,13(34)
breeding, XIII,24(37)
cherishing as more than human, IV,7(12)
commanded to increase and multiply, XIII,24(35) ff
dominion over the heavenly vault, XIII,23(34)
dust, X,31(45)
hiding from truth, X,23(34)
image and likeness of God, XIII,22(32), XIII,32(47), XIII,34(49)
limited dominion, XIII,23(34)
male and female, XIII,23(33)
one life, one mind, one essence, XIII,11(12)
questioning; understanding, X,6(10)
relations, see friendship
the word (“h”uman), I,18(29)
The Confessions

trial: being, knowledge, will, XIII,11(12)
humility:
   Alypius, IX,6(14)
   Christ’s example, X,43(68)
   God in the heart, XI,31(41)
hunger:
   Jews led to murmur by, X,31(46)
   Paul on, XIII,26(39)
husband and wife:
   Monica’s plan for peacemaking, IX,9(19-20)
   hymns, IX,6(14), IX,7(16)
   practice of singing established, IX,7(15)
   I am who am, VII,10(16)
   ideas: of future events, XI,18(24)
idolatry, VII,9(15)
   ignorance, II,6(13), XI,4(6), XII,5(5), XIII,12(13)
   tolerance, V,5(9)
   image of God:
   God in form of human body, VI,3(4), VI,11(18), VII,1(1)
   grounds for, III,7(12) p73
   prayer, VI,3(4)
   preserving, VII,7(11)
   soul as, VII,9(15)
   images:
      sense-impressions; memory, X,8(13,14)
      imagination, XII,6(6)
      imitation, XII,21(30)
      imitation of Christ, XIII,21(31)
   immortality, III,4(7), VI,16(26), VII,19(25)
   immutability:
      total fulfillment found in, XII,12(15)
      impression: measuring time, XI,27(36)
      impulses: conflicting, VIII,10(24)
      impurity, III,2(3), X,42(67)
      In the Beginning … See creation.
   Incarnation:
      Augustine’s early idea of, V,10(20)
      defiled by flesh, V,10(20)
      flesh held as make-believe, IX,3(6)
      human creature, mortal flesh, IV,12(19), V,10(19)
      humility of the Word, VII,18(24)
      mystery of Word made flesh, VII,19(25)
      Photinus on, VII,19(25)
      increase and multiply (command), XIII,24(35-37)
      individual differences:
         meeting the minds of many, XII,31(42)
   infancy:
      Augustine learning to speak, I,8(13)
      childish sins, I,19(30)
      described, I,7(7-12)
      desires, I,6(8)
      infants, See babies.
      information, X,35(54)
      inner sense (common sense), I,20(31)
      innocence, II,6(13), II,7(15), II,10(18)
      infants, I,7(11)
   inspiration:
      personal, VII,6(10)
      truth, XIII,25(38)
      integrity, IV,2(2)
      intellect, XIII,34(49)
      intelligence, I,9(15), I,17(27), II,6(12), II,5(9), IV,16(30), V,3(4), VIII,3(6), XII,13(16), XIII,32(47)
      animals, VII,17(23)
      insight into Spirit of God, XIII,23(33)
      intention, IX,8(18), XII,23(32), XIII,26(39)
   intoxication, VI,6(10)
   invoking: God unknown, I,1(1)
   irreligion: fleeing from God’s face, V,2(2)
   Isaac, III,7(13), X,34(52)
   Isaiah (prophet), IX,5(13)
   Israel, IX,10(24), X,34(52)
   Italy, IX,6(14)
   Jacob, III,7(13), X,34(52) p73
   Jacob and Esau (twins), VII,6(10), VII,9(15)
   jealousy, III,8(16), XIII,13(14)
   infants, I,7(11)
   Jerusalem (eternal), IX,3(7), X,35(56), XII,16(23), XIII,9(10)
   Jesus Christ:
      authority of teaching, VII,19(25)
      coeternal with the Father, VII,21(27)
      crucifixion: a phantom, V,9(16)
      devil finds nothing deserving death in, VII,21(27)
      died a true death; intercedes for us, IX,4(9)

Volume I/1
The Confessions

Volume I/1

dying: his love for us, X,43(69)

excellence and wisdom of,
VII,19(25)

faith in his passion, X,43(68)

gentle and humble of heart,
VII,9(14), VII,21(27)

godhead and flesh (Alypius),
VII,19(25)

good because he is God, XIII,19(24)

See grace.

helper and redeemer, IX,1(1)

his Father, XI,2(4)

human nature, VII,19(25)

humility of, VIII,2(3)

immortal; sinless, X,42(67)

See Incarnation.

Manichees; name, III,6(10)

mediator, X,42(67), X,43(68),
XI,29(39)

mediator between God and human-
kind, VII,18(24)

mediator by way of his humanity,
X,43(68)

Monica’s training, IX,8(17)

name not found in Cicero, III,4(8)

name: spread of knowledge of,
IX,2(3)

Paul; Bridegroom, XIII,13(14)

perfect man, VII,19(25)

power to lay down his life, X,43(69)

prayer to, XI,2(4)

put on the Lord . . ., VIII,12(29)

regarded as no more than a man,
VII,19(25)

resurrection; glory, IX,4(9)

sacrifice, X,43(69)

tempted by bread, X,31(46)

true Mediator, X,43(68)

understanding the charity of,
XIII,7(8)

victor and victim, X,43(69)

Way, V,3(5), VIII,1(1)

wisdom and knowledge, X,43(70)

John the Baptist, X,31(46)

joke, II,9(17), IV,8(13), XI,12(14)

Jordn river, XIII,12(13)

Joseph of Egypt, X,34(52)

Joshua, XI,23(30)

joy, I,1(1), II,10(18), IV,1(1), IV,5(10),
IV,11(17), IV,15(27), V,8(15),
VI,1(1), VI,3(4), VI,4(6), VI,5(8),
VI,6(10), VII,7(11), VIII,3(8),
VIII,11(27), IX,4(10), IX,10(24),
X,1(1), X,2(2), X,39(64), XI,2(3),
XII,16(23), XIII,13(14), XIII,14(15),
XIII,18(22,23), XIII,26(39),
XIII,31(46)

battle with sorrow, X,28(39)

Godhead, XIII,11(12)

memory, X,14(21,22), X,21(30)

Paul, XIII,26(40,41)

repentance of sinners, VIII,3(6)

shared, VIII,4(9)

spirit fed by, XIII,27(42)

tears, VIII,3(6)

true, X,22(32)

truth; happy life, X,23(33)

judging, See judgment.

judgment:

authority; persons exercising,
XIII,23(33,34)

distinction between spiritual/carnal
people, XIII,23(33)

judging everything (dominion),
XIII,23(33)

muddbound races of this world,
XIII,23(33)

on one who eats, X,31(46)

persons gifted with the Spirit,
XIII,23(33)

Spirit-filled persons, XIII,23(33,34)

judgment day, VI,16(26), IX,4(10),
XIII,22(32)

Julian (emperor), VIII,5(10)

Juno, I,17(27)

Jupiter, I,16(25,26)

just judgment, XIII,17(21)

just person: welcoming, XIII,26(41)

justice, II,4(9), II,6(12), II,10(18),
III,7(13,14), V,12(22), VI,10(16),
VII,16(22), X,37(61), X,43(68),
XIII,15(20)

characteristics: consistency, etc.,
III,7(14)

justification, X,2(2), X,43(68), XII,15(20)

Justina, IX,7(15)

killing: enjoyment, II,5(11)

kindness, X,33(50)

king: right to command, III,8(15)

kingdom of God, XI,2(4)

kingdom of heaven, XIII,21(29)

The Confessions
knocking, XII,12(15)
knowledge, II,6(13), XIII,14(15), XIII,20(27)
ability to put into words, XIII,18(23)
do not even know what I know, XI,25(32)
of God, XIII,26(40)
knowing all at once, XII,13(16)
perverted, X,35(55)
pertension to, XIII,21(30)
puffed up with, VII,20(26)
Spirit of God, XIII,31(46)
thirst for, XIII,24(37)
triad: being, knowledge, will, XIII,11(12)
vast, XI,31(41)
way of unknowing, XII,5(5)
zeal for, X,35(54)

land, XIII,21(29), XIII,32(47)
language:
elegant or plain, V,6(10) p73
learning words, I,8(13)
Latin language, X,12(19), X,20(29), XI,3(5)
Latin studies, I,13(20)
laughter, I,6(8), I,14(23), II,9(17), X,12(19)
law:
courts, III,3(6)
doers of; not judges, XIII,23(33)
excellent if used lawfully, XII,18(27)
transgressions against human codes, III,8(15)
law of God, III,7(13), VIII,11(27), XI,2(2,3,4)
delight in, VIII,5(12)
God’s law is truth, IV,9(14)
God’s law vs law of sin, VII,21(27)
learning, X,10(17), X,13(20), XIII,20(27)
Lebanon, VIII,2(4), IX,4(7)
legal profession, IX,2(2)
leisure, VI,14(24)
liberal arts, IV,1(1), IV,16(30), V,3(3), V,6(11), VIII,2(3)
liberal education, X,9(16), X,17(26)
license: bad habit, IX,8(18)
lie (lying), I,5(6), VI,6(9), IX,2(4), X,3(3), XII,25(34), XIII,20(27)
Augustine to Monica, V,8(15)
being thought to be what it is not, VII,15(21)

life:
body derives life from spirit, X,40(65)
breathing, into mortal bodies, XIII,14(15)
See also conduct of life.
dying state leading to life, I,6(7)
See also existence.
lived of myself (evil), XII,10(10)
Manichean, IV,15(24)
miserable, IV,6(11)
origin of creatures, I,6(10)
power of; tending toward death, X,17(26)
pre-birth, I,6(9)
soul and, X,6(10)
time of testing without respite, X,28(39)
triad: being, knowledge, will, XIII,11(12)
wage due to justice, X,43(68)
light, IX,4(11), X,34(51,52), XII,3(3), XIII,13(14), XIII,14(15), XIII,18(23), XIII,19(25), XIII,24(35)
creation, XIII,12(13), XIII,32(47)
creation, XIII,3(4), XIII,4(5), XIII,8(9), XIII,10(11)
in Light we see light, XIII,16(19)
margin, VII,10(16)
light and Light, XII,15(20)
listening, XI,8(10), XI,9(11)
literary studies, I,13(22)
literary work, IX,4(7)
literature:
Augustine’s studies, I,13(20)
Christians forbidden to teach, VIII,5(10) p73
memory, X,9(16)
profession, VIII,6(13)
liturgy:
comfort and encouragement in, IX,7(15)
logic, X,9(16)
logical priority, XII,29(40)
longing, XI,2(3,4)
Lord, See God.
lost objects:
memory and, X,18(27,28)
love, I,13(22), I,15(24), II,6(13), VII,18(24), IX,4(8,9), XI,2(3), XII,14(17), XII,30(41)
ardent desire for God; strength lacking, X,23(33)
arousing, II,6(13)
beauty of corporeal things, IV,12(18)
belief and, X,3(3)
carnal; delight in, II,2(2)
command; variety of ways, XII,24(36)
creatures say: love God, X,6(8)
criminal acts, II,6(12)
death in not loving God, I,13(21)
enamored with idea of, III,1(1)
exhortation, VIII,4(9)
forsaken, IV,11(16)
glory, V,1(1)
God, what am I loving when I love you, X,6(8)
guilt for failure to love, IV,9(14)
human and divine, I,6(7)
human substitute for God, IV,8(13)
interpretations of words and, XII,18(27)
late have I loved you . . ., X,27(38)
looking for, III,1(1)
love for loving God, XI,1(1)
loving and being loved, III,1(1)
loving something, not for God’s sake, X,29(40)
making light of torments, I,9(15)
mercy of God and, II,7(15)
order of creation, XII,15(19)
praise, love, and the listener, IV,14(21)
prayer for, VIII,1(1)
prayer: set me on fire! X,29(40)
shapely things, X,27(38)
soul purged by, XI,29(39)
time; light; fire, XII,15(21)
truth and hatred, X,23(34), XII,25(34)
truth; happy life, X,23(33)
two commandments, XII,25(35)
warring loves in a single soul, IV,14(22)
weight that carries me, XIII,9(10)
what entices and attracts, IV,13(20)
wise man receiving correction, VI,7(12)
worthy of fraternal love, X,4(5)
love of God (our love for God), IV,2(3), XII,10(10), XII,11(12), XII,16(23), XIII,33(48)
gratitude for created goods, IV,12(18)

lust opposed to, VIII,5(12)
poured into our hearts, XIII,31(46)
prayer for, XIII,8(9)
pride as impediment, X,36(59)
things He has made for us, XIII,34(49)
whole heart, soul, and mind, III,8(15)
wholly sufficient, XII,15(19)
love of neighbor, XIII,17(21), XIII,19(24)
lust, I,10(16), I,16(26), I,18(28,29), II,2(4), II,3(6,7), III,1(1), III,2(3), III,8(15), IV,1(1), IV,2(2), V,8(15), VI,12(22), VI,16(26), VIII,5(10), VIII,7(17), IX,1(1), X,35(55), XII,21(30)
eyes, X,35(54)
love of God and, VIII,5(12)
luxuries, X,34(53)
lying, See lie.
Macedonia, XIII,25(38), XIII,26(40)
Madaura, II,3(5)
magic, X,42(67)
malice, II,4(9), VII,3(4), VIII,7(17)
Mani, V,3(6), V,5(8), V,7(12,13)
Manichees:
Augustine’s early years,
III,6(10)-III,12(21)
continence, VI,7(12)
decision to leave, V,14(25)
Elpidius and, V,11(21)
fabulous philosophy, V,10(19)
falsehood, V,14(25)
motive for leaving Rome, V,13(23)
nature myths, V,7(12)
philosophy; evil, V,3(3), V,10(20)
pride, IX,4(8)
substances, VIII,10(24)
mankind, See human.
mariage, II,2(3,4), II,3(8), IV,2(2), VI,11(19), VI,12(22), VIII,1(2), VIII,3(7), IX,3(6), X,30(41)
contract; wives as slaves, IX,9(19)
preoccupations of un/married man, II,2(3)
martyrs:
coercion; ordeal, I,14(23)
offerings at tombs of, VI,2(2)
shrines, VI,2(2)
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
flesh of her Son, V,10(20)
Mass:
Monica’s desire, IX,13(36)
materialism:
massive substances (Manichean), V,11(21)
spiritual realities, VI,4(6)
mathematicians (astrologers), IV,3(4)
mathematics: memory, X,12(19)
matter:
bodily things, XII,5(5)
created formless, XIII,33(48)
eternity, VII,5(7)
form and, XII,3(3)
See also formless matter; formlessness.
itself made from nothing, XII,29(40)
potential to be formed, XII,19(28)
prior to what is made of it, XII,29(40)
unformed seeds of things, XII,17(26)
maturity, XIII,34(49)
measure: cubit, XI,26(33)
measuring time, See time.
Medea, III,6(11)
medicine, IV,3(5)
meditation:
devout reflection, XIII,23(34)
sleep, VIII,5(12)
memory, I,20(31), VII,17(23)
delight: God is known in, X,24(35)
effort to remember, X,8(12)
emotional experiences, X,14(21), X,17(26), X,25(36)
error, X,13(20)
fields and vast mansions, X,8(12)
forgetfulness, X,16(24,25)
God dwelling in, X,25(36)
great faculty, X,8(15)
images captured, stored, recalled, X,9(16), X,10(17,18)
imminence of, X,8(14,15)
knowledge of truth, X,23(33)
life of happiness in, X,20(29)
lost, forgotten items, X,18(27)
memory-pictures, III,6(10)
mind: identity, X,14(21), X,17(26), X,25(36)
mind’s “stomach,” X,14(21)

passions disturbing the soul, X,14(22)
past events live on in mind,
XI,18(23), XI,28(37,38), XII,15(18)
present of past things, XI,20(26)
primary image in, X,15(23)
call, X,13(20)
recalling sense-images at will,
X,8(13,15)
search memory itself for lost item,
X,19(28)
sense-impressions, X,8(13), X,15(23)
sexual images, X,30(41)
vaastness of, X,40(65)
whereabouts do you dwell, O God,
X,25(36)
Men, See humans.
measurement, X,12(19)
mercy, I,5(5,6), I,6(7), I,10(16), I,15(24), I,18(28), I,2(4), II,7(15),
III,1(1), III,2(2,3), III,5(3), III,8(16,
III,10(18), IV,3(4), IV,4(7),
IV,16(31), V,1(1), V,8(14,15),
V,9(17), V,10(20), VI,1(1), VI,5(7),
VI,7(12), VI,8(13), VI,10(17),
VI,11(20), VII,6(8), VII,7(11),
VII,9(13), VIII,1(1), VIII,11(26),
IX,1(1), IX,2(4), IX,4(9,12),
IX,8(17), IX,9(21), IX,12(32),
IX,13(34,35), X,3(4), X,4(5), X,6(8),
X,24(35), X,28(39), X,31(45),
X,34(53), X,35(57), X,38(63),
X,43(68), XI,1(1), XI,2(3,4),
XI,9(11), XI,22(28), XI,29(39),
XII,16(23), XII,24(33), XII,30(41),
XIII,1(1), XIII,15(18), XIII,23(34)
hope, X,29(40), X,35(57), X,36(58)
solid promise, X,32(48)
merit:
gift(s) of God, IX,13(34)
pride, X,36(59)
messengers, XIII,20(26), XIII,21(29)
metrical foot, III,7(14)
Milan, VI,10(17), VIII,6(13), IX,5(13), IX,7(15)
monastery, VIII,6(15)
teaching post in, V,13(23)
military service: desire for, X,21(31)
milk, VII,18(24)
"mind," VII,12(12), VII,10(16), X,11(18),
X,35(54), X,37(61), XI,18(23,24),

The Confessions
mockery, I,6(7) p73
Monad, IV,15(24)
monasteries: proliferation, VIII,6(15)
Monica, Saint, II,3(6,7,8)
assured re. “a son of tears like yours,”
III,11(21)
Augustine’s birth in the spirit,
V,9(16)
Augustine’s moving to Rome,
V,8(15)
baptism of Augustine, V,9(16)
beautiful in her husband’s eyes,
IX,9(19)
Cassiciacum, IX,4(8)
comes to Milan, VI,11(1)
consoled by a vision, III,11(19)
death of, IX,8(17),
IX,11(28)-IX,13(37)
body prepared for burial, IX,12(31)
burial place provided for,
IX,11(27-28)
burial, IX,12(32)
dying, IX,11(27)
for her her sins, IX,13(35)
last illness: affection for Augustine,
IX,12(30)
rest in peace, IX,13(37)
devout attitude, IX,12(33)
efforts toward Augustine’s marrying,
VI,13(23)
Eve, V,8(15)
husband of, IX,9(19)
influence of piety, I,11(17)
joy at conversion of Augustine,
VIII,12(30)
nursing, I,6(7)
offerings at tombs of martyrs, VI,2(2)
piety; wine, VI,2(2)
prayers, V,9(17)
presence of God in, IX,9(22)
revelations and fantasies, VI,13(23)
safe trip (to Milan) promised in
dream, VI,1(1)
service to the baptized, IX,9(22)
spelling: ‘Monnica’, IX,13(37)
trained by servant, IX,8(17)
tears; prayers, V,7(13), V,8(15),
V,9(17), VI,1(1)
tribute to, IX,8(17)
Valentinian’s persecution, IX,7(15)
virtues and faith, IX,12(29)
virtues; practices, V,9(17)
The Confessions

vision: rule of faith, VIII,12(30)
visions and assurances, V,9(17)
wine swiller, IX,8(18)
monks: lives of, VIII,6(15)
monstrous sights, X,35(55)
moon, IX,10(24)
mortality, I,1(1)
Moses, III,7(13), XI,2(4), XI,3(5),
XII,9(9), XII,14(17), XII,15(22),
XII,16(23), XII,17(24), XII,20(29),
XII,23(32), XII,24(33),
XII,25(34,35), XII,30(41),
XII,32(43)
intention: cannot see his thoughts,
XII,25(35), XII,26(36)
mother, III,11(19)
movement: time, XI,24(31)
murmuring, X,31(46)
mutability, See change. p73
mystical experience:
Augustine and Monica, IX,10(24)
natural philosophy, V,5(8)
nature(s):
extended mass, X,6(10)
matter capable of receiving form, XII,15(19)
number present in us, VIII,10(23)
Nebridius, IV,3(6), VI,7(11), VI,10(17),
VII,2(3), VII,6(8), VIII,6(13,14),
IX,3(5,6), IX,4(7)
life after death, VI,16(26)
necromancy, X,35(56)
needs, X,31(47), XI,2(2,4), XIII,21(29)
gifts supplying, XIII,26(41)
gospel, XIII,20(27)
moral sense, II,4(9)
succoring obligation, XIII,17(21)
neighbor:
command to love, III,8(15),
X,37(61,62), XII,26(36)
nest, XII,27(37,38)
ever:
meaning: timelessness, XI,30(40)
New Testament:
Manichean teaching, V,11(21)
night, XIII,18(23), XIII,19(25)
Noah, X,31(46)
non-beings, VII,11(17), XII,6(6)
non-existence: deprived of all good,
VII,12(18)
nothingness, VII,1(1), XII,6(6), XII,8(8),
XII,12(15), XII,15(22), XII,19(28),
XIII,33(48)
numbers:
memory, X,15(23)
principle of, X,12(19)
remembering, X,21(30)
obedience, I,9(14), XIII,8(9)
oculence, I,16(26), II,3(7)
ocean, XII,8(8)
oil poured into water, XIII,9(10)
old age, IV,10(15)
Old Testament:
Ambrose's sermons, VI,4(6)
interpretation, III,7(13)
spiritual sense, V,14(24)
onimpotence, VII,5(7)
parody of, II,6(14)
onmipresence, V,2(2), V,9(16), VI,3(4),
VIII,3(8), IX,8(18)
Onesiphorus, XIII,25(38)
oratory, I,16(25), I,18(29)
order, VII,13(19), VIII,3(8), IX,8(18),
XII,9(9), XII,15(19), XIII,9(10),
XIII,17(20), XIII,34(49)
no order where no form exists,
XII,15(22)
Orestes, IV,6(11)
original sin, V,9(16), VIII,10(22)
born to misery, X,20(29) p73
mortality: clothed in skins,
XIII,15(16)
Ostia, IX,8(17), IX,10(23), IX,11(28)
pagans, VI,2(2), XIII,21(29)
pain:
curative, VII,8(12)
human condition, VIII,3(8)
remembering, X,14(21)
will of God, II,2(4)
Paraclete, IX,4(9)
parents, I,9(14), I,10(16), I,11(17),
I,19(30), II,3(6,8), III,4(7), IX,9(22),
IX,13(37)
belief in being born of, VI,5(7)
brual place, IX,11(28)
honoring, XIII,19(24)
failings:
memory: disturbing the soul,
X,14(22)
past time, See time.
patience, IX,2(4), IX,13(37), XI,9(11), XII,25(34)
patriarchs, III,7(14)
Patricius (Monica’s husband), IX,9(19,22), IX,13(37)
Paul, Saint
adapt yourself to me …, XIII,21(31)
Augustine’s discovery of, VII,21(27)
Bridegroom’s friend, XIII,13(14)
hardships, XIII,25(38)
him who strengthens me …, X,31(45)
joy, XIII,26(40)
least of the apostles, VIII,4(9)
letters; Ponticianus, VIII,6(14)
“pick it up and read” (Rom 13:13-14), VIII,12(29)
peace, I,5(5), I,16(26), II,2(3), IV,12(18), IV,15(24), X,36(59), X,43(68), XII,11(12), XII,16(23), XIII,7(8), XIII,35(50)
burning for, after your touch, X,27(38)
comprehending of the Trinity, XIII,11(12)
goodness of will, XIII,9(10)
pen, as tongue, XI,2(2), XII,6(6)
peacemaking:
Monica’s gift, IX,9(21)
pear tree, II,4(9), II,6(12), II,8(16)
pearl, VIII,1(2)
Pelusium, VIII,2(3)
penitence, X,42(67)
bodily senses, IX,10(24)
emotions, III,2(3)
hearing, X,33(49,50)
misfortunes of others, III,8(16)
sadness in theater, III,2(2)
sensual, X,35(55)
temporal life, IX,10(26)
poetry:
art of, III,7(14)
contest, IV,2(3)
Ponticianus:
re. Antony of Egypt, VIII,6(14-15), VIII,7(16,18)
poor:
rich and, VIII,4(9)
sell your possessions …, XIII,19(24)
possessions:
all received from God, XIII,14(15)
appropriating what is for all to enjoy, XII,25(34)
ideal community, VI,14(24)
sell, give to the poor, XIII,19(24)
potter’s wheel, XI,23(29)
power, I,1(1)
powers of darkness, VII,2(3)
praise, I,1(1), L,6(9,10), I,7(12), I,17(27), I,19(30), III,11(21), IV,1(1), IV,10(15), IV,12(18), V,1(1), VI,7(12), VIII,1(1), VIII,2(3), IX,1(1), IX,4(12), IX,7(16), IX,9(22), X,6(8), X,34(52,53), X,35(57), X,37(60,61,62), X,38(63), X,43(70), XI,2(3), XI,5(7),
praise:
- all creatures praise God, VII,13(19)
- love for man praised, IV,14(21)
- out of the mouths of infants . . ., XIII,15(17)
- praiseworthy, IV,14(22) p73
- pride, X,36(59)

prayer(s):
- in boyhood, I,9(14)
- desire in, IV,5(10)
- God hears plea of Monica’s heart, III,11(19)
- Monica’s prayer apparently unanswered, V,8(15)
- Monica’s, for Augustine, III,11(20), VI,2(2)
- petitions, XI,1(1)
- for understanding scriptures, XI,2(2,3)

preachers, I,1(1), XIII,21(29)

preaching:
- Ambrose, V,13(23)
- purpose, XIII,23(34)

precedence: order of choice, XII,29(40)

prediction:
- astrology, IV,3(5), VII,6(9)
- future events; present causes or signs, XI,18(24)
- seer; future events, XI,18(23)

pregnant women, I,6(9)

Presence of God, II,6(14), III,6(11), IV,12(18), V,2(2), XI,2(3), XII,11(12), XIII,14(15)

hiding from, XIII,21(30)

larger/smaller portions of space, VII,1(2)

return to our own hearts, IV,12(19)

presentiment of future events, XI,18(24)

presumption:
- confession and, VII,20(26)

exegesis; Moses’ intent, XII,25(34)


third great temptation, X,36(58,59)
Pyldades, IV.6(11)
quarrel, IX.8(18)

rationality:
  supreme good/evil, IV.15(24)

raven:
  Elijah and, XIII.26(41)

reading, I.8(13), I.13(20,21), III.11(21),
  IV.8(13), IV.16(28,29), V.3(3),
  V.7(13), VI.3(3), VII.21(27),
  VIII.2(4), VIII.6(13.15), VIII.10(24)
reality, III.6(10), III.7(12), V.5(9),
  XII.5(5)
  abiding unchangingly, VII.11(17)
  astrology, VII.6(9)
  evil; fear, VII.5(7)
  God’s own Spirit, XIII.31(46)
  held in memory, X.20(29)
  memory, X.16(24)
  mind and sensible things, XIII.18(22)
  mind, VII.1(2)
  spiritual, VI.4(6)
reason, X.33(49), XIII.24(37), XIII.32(47)
  discursive, VII.17(23)
  subject to change, VII.17(23)
recall, See memory.
reconciliation:
  Jesus the mediator, X.42(67)
  Monica’s gift, IX.9(21)
redemption:
  Christ died for all, X.43(70)
  faith (Old Testament) in his future
  passion, X.43(68)
  he came to save sinners, IV.12(19)
  Monica’s death, IX.13(36) P53
remembrance, See memory.
renewal, XIII.13(14)
repentance:
  re-creation, XIII.12(13)
  singing and, X.33(50)
  sinners; joy, VIII.3(6)
  reputation; VI.11(19), VII.20(26),
  VIII.1(2)
research, VII.7(18)
rest, XIII.7(8), XIII.8(9), XIII.9(10)
  eternal life, XIII.36(51,52)
  in God, IX.4(11)
restlessness, X.8(9)
resurrection of the dead, IX.3(5)
revelation:
  authority, XIII.15(16)
  meanings in light of truth, XII.30(41)
  Monica’s dreams, VI.13(23)
  reverence, V.5(8), V.10(20), VI.5(8),
  VII.21(27), VIII.1(2), VIII.7(17),
  IX.8(17)
  reward for welcoming, XIII.26(41)
rhetoric:
  Augustine selling his skills, IV.1(1)
  Christians forbidden to teach,
  VIII.5(10)
  learning to excel in, II.2(4), II.3(5)
  profession, IV.3(5)
  professor; teaching, IV.2(2), V.7(13),
  VI.7(11)
  school of, III.3(6)
  teaching in Rome, V.12(22)
  teaching post in Milan, V.13(23)
  Victorinus, VIII.2(5)
rich: poor and, VIII.4(9)
rich young man: what must I do …?
  XIII.19(24)
riches, See wealth.
righteousness, III.7(13), XI.2(4),
  XIII.2(3), XIII.18(22)
Romanianus, VI.14(24)
Rome, VI.10(16), VIII.2(4), IX.3(5)
  Augustine moves to, V.8(14)
  Manichees in, V.10(19)
rule of faith:
  vision of Augustine standing on,
  XIII.11(19), VIII.12(30)
Sabbath, XIII.36(50,51)
sacraments, I.11(17), XIII.34(49)
sea creatures, XIII.20(26,28)
sacrifice, I.17(27), III.3(5), IV.1(1),
  IV.2(3), IV.3(4), IV.16(30), V.1(1),
  V.3(4), VIII.12(28), IX.4(10),
  XI.2(3)
  praise, X.34(53)
sadness, X.37(61)
  drama; pleasure in, III.2(2,3)
  enjoying sad feelings, III.2(3)
  love of, III.2(4)
  memory, X.14(21,22)
saints, XIII.20(26)
  spiritual gifts, XIII.34(49)
  saints (company of saints in Rome),
  V.10(18) p73
  salt, I.11(17)
The Confessions

salvation, I,5(5), I,11(17), I,18(29), VI,11(18), VII,21(27), VIII,3(6), VIII,4(9), IX,1(1), IX,6(14), IX,8(18), X,23(33), X,35(56), XI,9(11), XIII,13(14), XIII,14(15), XIII,18(22)
Ambrose’s teaching, V,13(23), VI,2(2)
Monica’s prayers, V,9(17)
proclamation (Victorinus), VIII,2(5)
providence, V,7(13), V,8(14), V,10(18)
scandal: eating, X,31(46)
scriptures, See bible.
sea, XIII,20(27,28), XIII,23(33,34), XIII,24(37), XIII,27(42), XIII,32(47)
bitter unbelief, XIII,21(29)
creation, XIII,17(20)
sea creatures:
day five of creation, XIII,20(26)
seasons, IV,8(13)
seed-bearing plants, XIII,17(21)
seeding, XIII,25(38)
seeking God, III,6(11), XI,2(4), XIII,21(30)
life of happiness sought, X,20(29)
praise the Lord, I,1(1), X,43(70)
question all creatures, X,6(9)
seer: predictions, XI,18(23)
self:
-abhorrence, VIII,7(17)
-confidence, VII,18(24)
-control, XIII,34(49)
deceit, I,5(6)
esteepest, X,38(63)
-importance, XIII,21(30)
-indulgence, I,5(24), X,31(44), XIII,21(30)
-knowledge, X,3(3), X,5(7), X,37(62)
-memory, recall, X,8(14,15)
-mind and, X,17(26)
opinions of others on, X,37(61)
purification, VII,10(16)
-reliance, VI,8(13)
-restraint, XIII,25(38)
satisfaction, X,39(64)
Seneca, V,6(11)
senses, II,5(10), II,6(12), X,40(65), XI,5(7), XI,18(23), XII,27(37), XIII,23(34)
animal, X,6(10)
apprehension; thought, XII,5(5)
empowered by the soul, X,7(11)
enjoyment, X,21(30)
images captured, stored, recalled, X,10(17,18)
impressions in memory, X,8(13), X,15(23)
late have I loved you ...., X,27(38)
memory and, X,8(12,15)
number: use; principle, X,12(19)
pleasure, IX,10(24), X,35(54,55)
remembering eloquence, X,21(30)
seeking God, X,6(9) p73
soul and, VII,17(23)
sensuality, X,32(48), X,33(50), XIII,18(23)
sensual enjoyment, X,33(49)
seraphim, XII,22(31)
serpents, XIII,25(38)
servants; service:
-ordered to serve, X,4(6)
-prayer; brothers, XI,2(3)
-servicing God, III,9(17), XIII,1(1), XIII,27(42)
-will of God; best servant, X,26(37)
seventh day, XIII,36(51)
sexuality:
-male and female, XIII,23(33), XIII,32(47)
shadows, XIII,14(15)
shame, VIII,6(15), VIII,10(22), VIII,11(25,27)
sharing, XIII,26(40)
shipwreck, VIII,3(7)
shows, I,10(16), I,19(30), IV,1(1), V,7(11,12)
sick, VII,16(22), VIII,3(7)
sight:
-concupiscence of the eyes, X,34(51), X,35(55)
-language usage, X,35(54)
-over-indulgence of the eyes, X,34(51,52)
signs, I,6(8,10), I,13(22), XII,23(32), XIII,18(23), XIII,21(29,30)
multiple ways; understanding, XIII,24(36,37)
Volume I/1

sea creatures, XIII,20(26)  signs and wonders, X,35(55)
silence, VI,3(3), IX,10(25), X,2(2), X,34(51), XI,27(34,36), XII,3(3), XII,16(23)
Simplicianus, VIII,1(1), VIII,2(3,4), VIII,5(10)
simplicity, II,6(13), IX,4(10), XIII,3(4)
Trinity, XIII,11(12)
auction, intention, circumstances, III,9(17)
Augustine’s excesses, II,3(8)
boyhood, I,13(22)
chastised for, VII,10(16)
chief kinds of, III,8(16)
cleansing, I,5(6)
conceived in iniquity, I,7(12)
effects, X,41(66)
even infants are not free from, I,7(11)
feasting on, II,6(12)
God as disposer of, I,10(16)
God not harmed by, XII,11(11)
God’s anger, IX,4(10)
growing worse, I,19(30)
hate for, VIII,7(16)
hidden sins, X,37(60)
incurred after baptism, I,13(17)
just punishment, VIII,5(11)
love of, VIII,5(12)
license, IV,3(4)
love of, II,4(9)
original, V,9(16), VIII,10(22), X,20(29), XIII,15(16)
pleasure: company of others, II,8(16), II,9(17)
pleasure in creatures, I,20(31)
prisoner of law of, VII,21(27)
punishment, XI,30(40)
responsibility, V,10(18)
restraints against, I,11(18)
root of, VII,3(5)
spurious mediator, X,42(67)
will moving away from God, XII,11(11)
singing, X,33(49,50)
sinner: joy over repentance, VIII,3(6)
size, III,7(12), V,10(19)
skepticism: Academics, V,10(19)
skill, XI,5(7)
sky, XII,8(8), XII,13(16), XII,21(30), XII,22(31), XIII,20(26), XIII,32(47)
slaves, I,6(8), I,9(30), III,3(5)
sleep, III,6(10), VIII,5(12), X,30(41,42)
sloth, II,6(13)
smell, X,32(48)
smiling, I,6(8)
snakes, XIII,21(30,31)
social order, III,8(15), III,9(17)
Solomon, III,6(11)
Son of God:
  coeternal with the Father, XI,13(16), XIII,5(6)
  form of God the Father, VII,9(14)
  identical to the Father, in nature, VII,9(14)
  our wisdom, V,3(5)
song:
  composition, III,7(14)
  familiarity with, XI,31(41)
  sound and, XII,29(40)
sorcerers, XI,17(22)
sorrow, IV,5(10), IV,8(13), IV,9(14), IV,10(15), V,8(15), VIII,3(8), IX,4(10), IX,12(32)
battle with joy, X,28(39)
memory, X,14(21)
mercy and, III,2(2,3)
sadness and pleasure in theater, III,2(2)
value, III,2(3)
soul, I,13(22), I,15(24), I,17(27), II,4(9), II,5(10), II,6(14), IV,2(3), IV,4(7,9), IV,7(12), IV,11(16,17), IV,12(18), IV,14(23), VI,6(9,10), VII,21(27), VIII,7(18,19), IX,10(25), IX,12(30), X,1(1), X,2(2), X,30(42), XI,2(3), XIII,14(15), XIII,21(29)
animals symbolize impulses of, XIII,21(30)
anxiety, VII,5(7)
barbarism, XIII,16(19) p73
athirst for God, XIII,17(21)
bodily death and, VI,11(19)
See also body and soul.
clinging to created things, IV,10(15)
condition known in God’s sight, XIII,23(33)
corruption, VII,2(3)
cure of sickness of, V,14(25)
damaged by vice, III,8(16)
darkness, VII,20(26), XIII,8(9), XIII,12(13)
death of, V,9(16)
devoted to life of the mind, XIII,18(22)
dies by craving, XIII,21(30)
disordered; punishment, I,12(19)
faculties, XIII,32(47)
falling into error, IV,15(26)
forsaking fountain of life, XIII,21(30)
fount of life: God, XIII,16(19)
fullness of Son of God received, VII,9(14)
God entering, I,5(6)
God’s dwelling, XIII,1(1)
God, the life of, III,6(10)
see also heart
healed only by believing, VI,4(6)
healed; redemption, IV,12(19)
hiding from truth; truth hides from soul, X,23(34)
image of God, VII,9(15)
inner power; data from senses, VII,17(23)
instability, VII,19(25)
nature of, IV,15(24)
let God ravish, X,34(51)
life drawn from God, X,20(29)
mounting to God, X,7(11)
maturity, XIII,20(28)
origin, I,6(7)
passions disturbing, X,14(22)
pilgrim-soul, XII,15(21)
poor health of, III,1(1)
rising to God, V,1(1)
sea (analogy), XIII,17(20)
secret deserving inspiration, VII,6(10)
seeking God, XIII,21(30)
self-control, XIII,34(49)
See also spiritual life.
surrendered to God, X,4(6)
tempestuous changes in, XI,29(39)
thirsting for God, XII,11(13), XIII,13(14)
torn apart by two wills, VIII,5(10)
torn by conflicting impulses, VIII,10(24)
transformed by faith, X,3(4)
viciously inclined, IV,15(25)
wholesomeness, VII,14(20)
worldly hankering, XIII,22(32)
sound:
measuring, XI,27(34,36) p73
memory, X,9(16)
song and, XII,29(40)
sowing, XIII,18(22)
space:
quality, VII,1(1-2), VII,7(11)
truth and, VII,10(16)
speaking:
drawl, XI,26(33)
hearing; succession of syllables, IV,11(17)
one word dies so next can be heard, IV,10(15)
selling the art of, VIII,6(13)
skills of the tongue, I,9(14)
speech, IX,10(24), XIII,24(36)
spirit, IV,15(24), VIII,18(19), X,34(52), XIII,2(3)
bodies attributed to, VII,5(7)
feeds on joy, XIII,27(42)
flesh lusts against, VIII,5(11)
knows inside of the person, X,3(3), X,5(7)
life of body and, X,40(65)
light of goodness, VI,16(26)
Spirit-filled persons, XIII,23(33)
struggle with flesh, X,23(33)
uncleanness, XIII,7(8)
spiritual direction, VIII,1(1)
spiritual life:
see also God; heart; mind; soul; will ascend even to God, IV,12(19)
burden, if I am not full of You, X,28(39)
clear sight, VII,8(12)
crushed hearts, V,3(3)
distinguishing carnal people, XIII,23(33)
eating; transformation, VII,10(16)
lacking in necessary strength, X,23(33)
toward maturity, XIII,20(28)
spring (of water), XII,27(37)
stargazers, IV,3(6)
stars:
beauty of, I,6(12)
Mani’s error, V,5(8)
makers of time, XI,23(29)
stealing, I,19(30), II,4(9), II,6(12), II,9(17)

Volume I/1
Volume I/1

beauty, II,6(12)
pear tree, II,4(9), II,9(17)
perversity, II,6(14), II,8(16)
stomach: memory and, X,14(21)
storm at sea, VIII,3(7)
student years at Carthage (Book III)
Manichees, III,6(10)
sex, III,1(1)
theatrical shows, III,2(2)
students:
bad discipline at Carthage, V,8(14)
Roman depravity, V,12(22)
study:
Augustine’s boyhood, I,9(15), I,12(19) p73
law-court as goal, III,3(6)
stupidity, II,6(13)
substance:
Aristotle’s categories, IV,16(28)
destructability; evil, VII,12(18)
duality, VII,14(20)
imperishable, VIII,1(1)
main genus of, IV,16(28)
material idea of, VII,1(1)
matter and form, XII,19(28)
spiritual, V,14(25), VI,3(4)
villainy, VII,16(22)
suffering:
love; making light of torments, I,9(15)
theater; sadness; pleasure, III,2(3)
sun, VII,1(2), IX,10(24), XIII,18(23)
course in a “day,” XI,23(30)
stood still (for Joshua), XI,23(30)
sunrise: prediction, XI,18(24)
superstition, IV,2(3), VI,7(12), VII,6(8), VIII,7(17)
supreme good:
indestructability, VII,12(18)
sweetness, XIII,30(45)
syllables, IV,11(17), XI,27(35)
time, XI,28(29), XI,26(33), XI,27(35)
Symmachus (prefect), V,13(23)
sympathy, III,2(3)
talkativeness, VII,6(8)
tantrum, I,6(8), I,7(11)
taste, X,31(43)
*Teacher, The*, IX,6(14)
teacher(-s; -ing), I,14(23), V,5(9), VI,7(12)
eternal Truth; changeable creature, XI,8(10)
food is owed to, XIII,25(38)
future events, XI,19(25)
physical strain, IX,2(4)
salaries, I,16(26)
tears, IV,7(12), IV,9(14), V,2(2), V,8(15), VIII,12(28), IX,6(14), IX,12(29,33), X,1(1), X,33(50), X,37(60), XII,11(13), XIII,13(14)
joy, VIII,3(6)
Joan’s prayer, III,11(21)
temporal goods, IX,4(10), X,28(39), XIII,34(49)
happiness, XIII,17(20)
immortality and, VII,19(25)
prosperity, VIII,10(24)
eyes, X,34(53)
pride, the third great temptation, X,36(59)ff
put to the test by, X,37(60)
tenses:
memory, attention, expectation, XI,20(26), XII,15(18) p73
tension:
consciousness, XI,26(33)
Terence, I,16(26)
testimony: believing, VI,5(7)
Thagaste, I,3(5), IV,4(7), IV,7(12)
thanksgiving, I,20(31)
theater:
sadness; tears, III,2(4)
theatrical shows, X,35(56)
thief, See stealing.
Thessalonica, XIII,26(40)
thirst, IX,8(17), XIII,17(21)
*This is my beloved Son* (voice from cloud), XI,6(8)
thought, X,11(18)
time, IV,8(13), XI,1(1), XII,11(13,14), XIII,33(48)
abiding providence; place, VII,15(21)
before its creation, XII,15(20)
being derived from God, XII,15(20,21)
The Confessions

Bible speaks in terms of time,
XIII,29(44)
century as “present” time, XI,15(19)
coeternity, XI,30(40), XII,15(19)
created thing, XII,15(20), XIII,15(18)
creature of God, XI,14(17)
current month as “present,” XI,15(19)
created, XII,15(20), XIII,15(18)
day not “present” all at once,
XI,15(20)
distinct periods, XIII,18(22)
duration, XI,15(19), XI,21(27),
XI,23(29), XI,24(31)
epochs of, before creation, XI,13(15)
See also eternity
See also coeternity
See also present
See also eternity
formless matter and, XII,29(40)
future:
becomes past, XI,13(16)
becomes present, XI,17(22)
event still to come announced,
XI,18(24)
non-existent, XI,28(37)
past and, XI,11(13), XII,15(18)
God eternally at work, VII,15(21)
God’s “today” is eternity, XI,13(16)
hour; minutes, XI,15(20)
ignorance of, XI,25(32)
intervals of, XI,16(21), XII,15(18)
looking always on God’s face,
XII,15(21)
mind expects; attends; remembers,
XI,28(37)
movement of a body, XI,24(31),
XI,26(33)
movements of heavenly bodies,
XI,23(29,30)
mysterious, XI,22(28)
no “then” when there was no time,
XI,13(15)
no easy answer to what time is,
XI,14(17)
no past/present/future if nothing exists, XI,14(17)
our years; God’s “today,” I,6(10)
passage of, XII,19(28), XIII,32(47)
past and future, XI,11(13), XI,18(23)
past grows as future dwindles,
XI,27(36)
past/future as real beings, XI,14(17),
XI,18(23)
potential for change, XII,15(21)
precious, XI,2(2)
predetermined plan, XIII,34(49)
See also eternity
See also prediction
See also present:
as “long” time, XI,15(19,20)
reduced to vanishing-point,
XI,15(20)
prior to created wisdom, XII,15(20)
referred to as “long” or “short,”
XI,15(18,20), XI,22(28)
segments of, XI,21(27)
strain or tension, XI,23(30)
succession of, XII,13(16), XII,15(22)
successive periods of, XII,9(9)
syllables long and short, XI,23(29),
XI,26(33), XI,27(35)
teaching future events, XI,19(25)
temporal seeing, repose after time,
XIII,37(52)
tends to non-being, XI,14(17)
tenses: memory, attention, expectation, XI,20(26),
XII,15(18)
tension of consciousness, XI,20(26)
three “present” times, XI,20(26)
three tenses, or present only?
XI,17(22)
totality of current year, XI,15(19)
world of, XIII,21(31)
timidity, II,6(13)
tippling, IX,8(17)
Tobit, X,34(52)
tolerance:
ignorance and charity, V,5(9)
tongue, See speaking; speech.
tongues, XIII,18(23), XIII,24(36)
like fire, XIII,19(25)
sign to unbelievers, XIII,21(29)
toothache, IX,4(12)
torture, I,9(15)
touch, II,5(10)
towel, X,9(16)
treasure: heart, XIII,19(24)
trees, XIII,25(38)
Owning; knowing, V,4(7)
triad:
being, knowledge, will, XIII,11(12)
The Confessions

Volume I/1

Trier:
court officials, VIII,6(15)

Trinity:
creation and, XII,7(7), XIII,5(6)
creator of whole created universe,
XIII,5(6)
Holy Spirit poised over the waters,
XII,9(10) p73
let us make man ..., XIII,22(32)
Persons; mutual relationships,
XIII,11(12)
three coexistent acts, XIII,11(12)
trip within ourselves, XIII,11(12)
understanding, XIII,11(12)
unity, XIII,11(12), XIII,22(32)
Wisdom, XIII,5(6)
troubles, X,28(39)
Troy, I,13(22)
trust, VIII,11(27)

truth, III,6(10), IV,12(18), IV,14(23),
IV,15(24,25,27), IV,16(31),
V,3(3,5), V,6(10), V,10(18,19),
V,14(24), VI,1(1), VI,10(17),
VI,11(18), IX,6(14), IX,10(24),
X,1(1), X,34(53), X,37(61,62),
X,40(65), XI,1(1), XI,3(5), XI,5(7),
XI,7(9), XI,27(34), XII,28(38),
XII,30(41), XII,31(42),
XIII,18(22,23), XIII,22(32),
XIII,23(33), XIII,24(37)
accusing; enlightening, X,23(34)
advent; desire; strength lacking,
X,23(33)
author's intention, XII,18(27),
XII,23(32)
beauty, II,6(13)
believing as "spring:" each drawing truth
from, XII,27(37)
chance, VII,6(10)
common bounty for all lovers of,
XII,28(34)
conversion, XI,8(10)
convinced by, VIII,5(12)
deviser and, VII,21(27)
dialogue with God, X,2(2)
divergent opinions, XIII,24(36,37)
doubt re. existence of, VII,10(16)
entrusting truth to Truth, IV,11(16)
epochal; unchangeable, VII,17(23)
finite/infinite space, VII,10(16)
God's law, IV,9(14)
habit and, VIII,9(21)
happy life, X,23(33)
hated and, X,23(34)
hearing about oneself; knowing one-
self, X,3(3)
hiding/hidden: the soul, X,23(34)
immutable, XII,25(35)
imnumerable things believed as true,
VI,5(7)
inspiration, XIII,25(38)
knowledge of, VII,10(16), X,23(33)
language; words, X,12(19)
longing to be certain, VI,4(6)
love for, X,23(33)
memory and, X,10(17), X,23(33)
modesty, VII,2(4)
perception uncertain, VIII,5(11)
private property, XII,25(34)
stories about the past, XI,17(22)
quest for, VI,11(19)
scarcity of, III,6(11)
seek beyond corporeal forms,
VII,20(26)
seeking God, X,6(10)
true Teacher, XI,8(10)
unclear, VIII,7(18)
twins: astrology, VII,6(10)
unbelief, See belief; faith.
unbelievers, XIII,34(49)
uncleanness, X,31(46)
understanding, XIII,15(17), XIII,20(27),
XIII,22(32), XIII,23(33), XIII,38(53)
human power to question, X,6(10)
multiple ways; mind, XIII,24(36)
seeking, XIII,10(11)
underworld, I,2(2)

union with God, I,9(15), XII,11(12)
unity, IV,15(24)

bond of friendship, II,5(10)
human powers, XIII,11(12)

universe:
creation, XI,5(7), XIII,32(47)
first formless, then formed,
XII,29(40)
primal matter, XII,29(40)
term: heaven and earth, XII,17(25)
Trinity and the creation, XIII,5(6)

vainglory, X,38(63)
Valentinian (boy-emperor), IX,7(15)
vandalism, V,12(22)
vanity, III,4(7), IV,11(16), IV,15(26), V,5(8), VI,11(18), VII,16(22), VIII,2(4)
vault of heaven, XIII,15(16,17,18), XIII,18(22), XIII,19(25), XIII,20(27), XIII,21(29), XIII,23(33,34), XIII,24(35), XIII,32(47), XIII,34(49)
veneration: temptation, X,36(59)
verbal skills, III,4(7)
verbosity, I,4(4)
Verecundus (convert), VIII,6(13), IX,3(5,6)
vice, II,6(12,13), III,9(17), IV,15(24,25) damage to the soul, III,8(16) punished, III,8(15)
Viciperusus:
conversion, VIII,2(3-5), VIII,4(9)
death and soul of, VIII,4(9)
proclamation of faith, VIII,2(5)
reading scriptures, VIII,2(4)
translator, VIII,2(3)
Victorious emperor, VIII,3(7)
Virtue, VIII,3(7)
Vindicianus, VII,6(8)
Vindictiveness, III,9(17)
violence, III,9(17)
Virgil, I,14(23)
Virgin birth, VII,19(25)
Virginity, VIII,11(27)
dedicated, VIII,6(15)
Virtue, IV,15(24), X,39(64) p73
fell, VI,7(12)
Vision(s):
 future life: seeing God as He is, XIII,15(18)
Monica’s, re. Augustine, III,11(19)-III,11(20) pledges bearing God’s signature, V,9(17)
vocation, IX,8(18), XI,29(39)
voice, XI,27(34)
word(s) of creation, XI,6(8)
waste, VI,7(11)
Waters, XII,12(15), XIII,21(29), XIII,32(47)
above the vault, XIII,15(18)
Holy Spirit hovered over, XII,22(31)
oil and, XIII,9(10)
sea creatures, XIII,20(26,27)
waterfalls, XIII,13(14)
way of life, VI,2(2)
weakness, X,3(4), X,4(6), X,35(57), XI,2(2), XII,23(32), XII,27(37), XIII,15(18), XIII,17(21), XIII,19(25)
wealth, I,12(19), V,12(22), IX,1(1) used for concupiscences, X,37(60)
weeping, IX,12(33)
comfort, IV,4(9)
hope and, IV,5(10)
relief to the wretched, IV,5(10)
weight: proper place, XIII,9(10)
welcoming, XIII,26(41), XIII,27(42)
well-being, XIII,1(1)
whales, XIII,20(26), XIII,27(42)
wheel: time, XI,23(29)
wholesomeness (of soul), VII,14(20), IX,8(18)
Wickedness, XIII,19(24)
wife abuse, IX,9(19)
Wild beasts:
 living soul, XIII,21(31)
symbols, XIII,21(30)
Will:
 conflicting impulses, VIII,10(24)
contradictory wills, VIII,10(23)
crippled by struggle, VIII,8(19)
evil = free decision of will, VII,3(5)
faculty to act; will to act, VIII,8(20)
lust = perverted will, VIII,5(10)
mind commands, VIII,9(21)
repetitive, XII,15(18)
sin: moving away from God, XII,11(11)
Triad: being, knowledge, will, XIII,11(12)
two wills:
one carnal, one spiritual, VIII,5(10)
partial non-willing, VIII,9(21)
two natures, VIII,10(22)
villainy, VII,16(22)
upright; and welcoming, XIII,27(42)
wholehearted, VIII,10(22)
will is already the doing, VIII,8(20)
will that a certain volition exist, VIII,9(21) p73
Will of God:
conversion, IX,1(1)
discerning for ourselves, XIII,22(32)
eternal, XI,6(8), XIII,15(18)
freedom for humans, XI,1(1)
give what you command …, X,29(40), X,31(45), X,37(60)
identical with God, XII,28(38)
only once and all together and eternally, XII,15(18)
pain used to make known, II,2(4)
powerful, IX,4(12)
your best servant …, X,26(37)
prior to act of creation, XI,10(12)
searching for, XII,23(32), XII,24(33)
unchangeable, XIII,4(5), XIII,16(19)
wind, XIII,19(25)
wine, VI,2(2), IX,8(17)
problem drinking, IX,8(18)
wisdom, I,1(1), V,3(5), V,5(8), VI,10(17), VI,11(18,19), VII,6(8), VII,9(14), VII,19(25), VII,20(26), VIII,6(13), VIII,7(17), IX,3(6), IX,10(24,25), XI,9(11), XII,17(25), XIII,15(17), XIII,19(24,25), XIII,20(27), XIII,23(33), XIII,24(36)
creation, XII,28(39)
eldest of created things, XII,15(20)
eloquence, V,6(10)
exhortation to, III,4(8)
first of all creatures, XII,15(20)
gift of speaking with, XIII,18(23)
living in accord with, XIII,2(3)
love of, III,4(8)
quest for, III,4(7)
reverence, VIII,1(2)
wisdom and Wisdom, XII,15(20)
wise man:
correcting; love, VI,7(12)
wives:
subservient status, IX,9(19)
woman/women:
equality, XIII,32(47)
learning from, I,6(10)
subordinate to man, XIII,32(47), XIII,34(49)
wonders, XII,8(8), XIII,21(29)
Word of God, V,3(5), VII,2(3), IX,10(25)
abides forever, XI,6(8), XIII,15(18)
born of the Father, VII,9(14)
coeternal with the Father, XI,7(9), XII,20(29)
creation shaped and conformed, XIII,2(3)
eternal life, XIII,21(31)
eternal Word as “the Beginning,” XI,8(10)
God creates in his Word, XI,5(7)
immutability, VII,19(25)
in the beginning …, VII,9(13)
inner ear attuned to, XI,6(8)
Jesus the mediator, X,43(68)
Light, VII,9(13)
maker of all things, XI,2(4)
no cessation or succession, XI,7(9)
remoteness; incarnation, X,43(69)
silent, in eternity, XI,6(8)
speaks to us (in Jesus), XI,8(10)
untouched by time, XIII,29(44)
Wisdom, VII,18(24)
words, IV,11(17)
influence, I,16(26)
learning to speak, I,8(13)
sacramental power, XIII,20(28)
trained in use of, I,20(31)
thruhs, X,12(19)
voiced (?) words of creation, XI,6(8)
work(s):
God’s providential abiding, VII,15(21)
God’s works are done through humans, XIII,37(52)
good because they are God’s gift, XIII,36(51), XIII,38(53)
See also good works.
works of mercy, XIII,17(21), XIII,18(22), XIII,24(37), XIII,25(38), XIII,34(49)
world:
creation; form, XII,4(4), XII,17(25), XIII,32(47)
endowed with beauty, XII,2(2)
figuratively called a sea, XIII,17(20)
made from formless matter, XII,8(8), XII,17(25)
philosophy, V,3(3)
presence of God who made it, IV,12(19)
questioned; seeking God, X,6(9)
worldliness, VI,10(17), VI,11(19), X,28(39), XIII,13(14), XIII,21(30,31), XIII,22(32)
appendix, XIII,21(29), XIII,22(32)
enslavement, VIII,6(13)
world affairs, II,2(3)
worship, V,3(5), VIII,5(10), XIII,15(17)
commanded; bounty granted, XIII,1(1)
joy; reward, X,22(32)
worth:
totality of higher/lower creatures, VII,13(19)
pleasure in, II,6(14), II,8(16)
“wreckers” (students), III,3(6)
wrongdoing, X,36(59), XIII,38(53)
depaved actions, I,16(25)
presence of God, IV,12(18)
right thing done unwillingly, I,12(19)
year:
current; present time, XI,15(19)
yoke, X,36(58)
zeal, XIII,24(37), XIII,34(49)
Index from
Life of Saint Augustine
Possidius, Vita s. Augustini
(Life of Saint Augustine)

Published by New City Press in:

Revisions

Translation, notes and introduction by Boniface Ramsey, Roland Teske, SJ, editor,
Boniface Ramsey, series editor

Composed in his old age, Augustine reviews nearly all his writings, summarizing, correcting, and
even expressing regret on occasion. Includes an appendix with the Indiculus of Possidius.

Volume I/2 Books/Autobiographical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-360-6, 6 x 9 in., 227 pp., 2010
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-360-6, 6 x 9 in., 227 pp., 2010

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will
improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:1, 15.24, 16.25, 1:26, 1:28, 2:2, 2:4, 2:7, 3:24, 6:7, 6:22, 7:5, 31:41</td>
<td>I, 10, 1; I, 22, 4; II, 6, 1; I, 18; I, 10, 2; II, 6, 1; I, 10, 1; I, 10, 3; II, 24, 1; I, 26, 2; II, 54; II, 55, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td>10:10, 15:11, 16:14</td>
<td>II, 1, 2; II, 1, 2; II, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>17:20</td>
<td>II, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>38:8, 40:19 LXX</td>
<td>II, 7, 3; I, 15, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>22:1, 24:4, 24:7, 39:6, 43:22, 73:27</td>
<td>II, 36; I, 4, 3; I, 9, 5; I, 26, 2; I, 7, 2; I, 19, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>8:35 LXX, 9:18 LXX, 10:19 Prol, 18:22</td>
<td>I, 10, 2; I, 22, 4; II, 19; I, 19, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>1:2, 12:7, 6:8</td>
<td>I, 7, 3; I, 1, 3; I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>1:13, 8:7</td>
<td>I, 21, 2; I, 26, 2; I, 7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>10:9, 11:14, 34:25</td>
<td>I, 10, 3; I, 21, 2; I, 26, 2; I, 21, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>59:2, 65:17, 66:22</td>
<td>I, 5, 2; I, 4, 3; I, 4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>5:9, 5:18, 5:19</td>
<td>I, 19, 1; I, 19, 3; I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:9, 5:18, 5:19</td>
<td>I, 19, 1; I, 19, 3; I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Revisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21-22</td>
<td>I, 22, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>I, 3, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 7, 5; I, 19, 3; I, 19, 6; II, 18; II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26-28</td>
<td>II, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>I, 19, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I, 19, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>I, 19, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>I, 22, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:36</td>
<td>Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>I, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>I, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>I, 19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:10</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15</td>
<td>I, 22, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:46</td>
<td>II, 36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Luke**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>I, 8, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>I, 15, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>I, 26, 2; II, 55, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>II, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>I, 19, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>II, 15, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>I, 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>I, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>I, 13, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>II, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>I, 19, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>II, 15, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>I, 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>I, 21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>I, 13, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 11, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 23, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 23, 1; I, 26, 2; II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>I, 9, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>I, 9, 5; I, 15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
<td>I, 15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>I, 23, 1; II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>I, 23, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>I, 22, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>I, 7, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>I, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12-13</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>I, 23, 2; I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>I, 23, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:29</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>I, 13, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>I, 7, 4; I, 14, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14</td>
<td>I, 13, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:45</td>
<td>I, 10, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Books and Chapters</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:50</td>
<td>I, 17; II, 3</td>
<td>Colossians 1:14-15 I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
<td>2 Thessalonians 1:11 II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>II, 3</td>
<td>1 Timothy 1:13 I, 9, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54</td>
<td>I, 23, 1</td>
<td>2:5 I, 11, 1; I, 19, 8; I, 24, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-56</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
<td>2 Timothy 1:9 II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>I, 19, 2</td>
<td>2:20 II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hebrews 12:16 I, 26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>I, 14, 1; II, 37</td>
<td>12:29 I, 7, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
<td>James 1:1 II, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:19 Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:20 I, 26, 2; II, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:1-2 Prol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 Peter 3:13 I, 4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 John 5:16 I, 19, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jude 19 II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td>Revelation 21:1 I, 3, 2; I, 4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I, 24, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>I, 24, 2; II, 24, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>I, 22, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 9, 5; I, 24, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>I, 24, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>I, 10, 3; I, 15, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-18</td>
<td>II, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25,27</td>
<td>I, 7, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>I, 19, 9; II, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>I, 23, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>I, 26, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the commas are the Chapter, then the Section numbers. (In Chapter I,26, in A Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions, these are also followed by Question numbers.)

Aaron, sons of, II,43(70),2; II,55(82),2
“abomination,” I,1,2
Abraham, II,16(43); II,22(49),2
sacrifice of, II,43(70),2
sons of, I,22(21),3
Academica (Cicero), I,1,4
Academics, I,1; I,1,4
Adam, I,1,2; II,24(51),2
See also original sin
made into a living soul, I,10(9),3
Adimantus, I,22(21)
adoption, II,7(34),2
adultery, I,19(18),6
See also fornication
adulterous marriages, II,57(84)
advantage of believing, I,14
afflicted: On account of you we are being afflicted, I,7(6),2
African councils, II,50(77)
Africanus, Julius, II,7(34),2
Against Lying, I,27(26)
Against the Party of Donatus, II,5(32)
ages of human race, I,26(25),2,44
Alaric, King, II,43(70),1
Albina, II,50(77)
Ambrose, St., I,21(20),1; II,1(28),1; II,4(31),2
angels, II,28(55)
angelic bodies, I,26(25),2,47
But of the day and hour no one knows, I,26(25),2,60
the devil and his, I,15(14),7; II,14(41)
highest and lowest, I,26(25),2,67
“holy angels,” the term, I,11(10),4
ordained by angels in the hand of the mediator, II,24(51),2
souls of, I,11(10),4; I,16(15),2
as spirits, II,14(41)
anger, I,19(18),4
animals, I,10(9),2; I,26(25),2,13
See also specific animals, e.g., sheep
the animal man, II,27(54)
body as animal, I,10(9),3; I,13(12),4
irrational, and happiness, I,26(25),2,5
lowest angels and, I,26(25),2,67
Anne, II,22(49),1
anointing, I,26(25),2,61
Answer to the Academics, I,1,2
Answer to an Adversary of the Law and the Prophets, II,58(85)
Answer to Centurius, One of the Donatists, Presented, II,19(46)

Volume I/2
Answer to a Certain Donatist, II,28(55)
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean, II,55(82),3
Answer to Hilary, II,11(38)
Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean, II,10(37)
Antioch, I,13(12),3
Apollinarians, I,26(25),2,80
apostles; apostolic writings,
I,19(18),2; I,22(21),1–2
See also Paul
as truthful, I,24(23),1
Arians, II,52(79)
Ask and you shall receive, I,19(18),9
astonishment, I,3,2
astrology, I,8(7),2; I,26(25),2,45
Augustine:
confessions of, II,6(33)
“rendering an account to myself,” I,8(7),3
self-description, II,43,1
Aurelius, bishop of Carthage,
II,15(42),1; II,21(48)
authority:
believing and, I,14(13),3
of the Old Testament, II,4(31),2
baptism, I,13(12),7; II,18(45)
See also re-baptism
competentes, I,17(16)
and concupiscence, I,15(14),2
Donatists and, II,18(45); II,34(61)
the “good thief,” I,26(25),2; II,55,3
of infants, I,15(14),2; II,33(60);
II,37(64)
by Jesus, I,26(25),2,62
John the Baptist, I,26(25),2,62
Keep away from alien water,
II,19(46)
The One Baptism, II,34(61)
beauty:
changeable, I,11(10),4
of images, I,26(25),2,78
love and, I,26(25),2,36
love of (philocalia), I,1,3
lowest, I,11(10),4
and members of the saints,
II,7(34),3
beetles, I,7(6),6; II,15(42),2
believable things, I,26(25),2,48
believing
See also faith
advantage of, I,14
and authority, I,14(13),3
birds, I,10(9),2; II,15(42),2
Consider the birds of the air and
the lilies of the field,
II,21(48)
birth, I,19(18),5
bishops, I,17(16)
boasting, II,11(28),1
body; bodies
See also specific topics, e.g.,
resurrection of the body;
senses
angelic, I,26(25),2,47
as animal, I,10(9),3
body of death, I,26(25),2,66
as from earth, I,1,3
earthly and heavenly, I,17(16)
as from God, I,26(25),2,10
and soul, I,5,3
when the soul departs, I,11(10),4
Boniface, bishop of Rome, II,61(88)
born: “him who has always been
born,” I,26(25),2,37
breadth and length and height and
depth, II,36(63)
burdens: Bear one another’s burdens,
I,26(25),2,71
Caecilian, I,21(20),3; II,27(54);
II,28(55); II,34(61)
Caelestius, II,33(60); II,50(77)
Caesarea, II,51(78)
calling, I,26(25),2,68; II,31(58)
the called and the chosen, I,23(22),3
In the womb I sanctified you, I,26(25),2,68
Canaan, II,7(34),3
Carthage, I,21(20),3; I,23(22),1; II,11(38); II,15(42),1; II,17(44); II,21(48); II,31(58); II,36(63)
See also Conference of Carthage councils of, II,50(77)
Casae Nigrae, I,21(20),3
Catholic Church; catholica, I,14(13),6
See also Church: specific topics truth of, I,10(9),1
unity of, II,59(86)
as universal, II,17(44)
Catholic Way of Life, I,7
Cicero, I,1,4; I,26(25),2,31
See also Academics circumcision, I,10(9),2; I,14(13),1
City of God, II,43(70)
City of God, the book, I,17(16); I,26(25),2,47; II,16(43); II,41(68); II,43(70),1
two cities, II,43(70),2
clay, II,18(45)
Colossians, Epistle to, I,26(25),2,74
Colossians, Epistle to, II,3(30)
commandments, I,19(18),3–4
See also law competentes, I,17(16)
concupiscence, I,15(14),2;
II,23(22),1; I,24(23),2;
II,7(34),3
See also desire; flesh
conduct, I,3,3
Conference of Carthage, II,28(55);
II,33(60); II,38(65)–40(67);
II,46(73); II,59(86)
A Summary of the Conference, II,39(66)
Confessions, II,6(33)
Consortia, I,26(25),2,44
choice, free. See free choice choosing, I,13(12),9
Christian combat, II,3(30)
Christianity, I,13(12),3; II,31(58)
See also faith; religion; specific topics, e.g., salvation instructing beginners in, II,14(41)
teaching, II,4(31)
Church
See also Catholic Church eschatological, I,7(6),5; I,19,9;
II,18
that has no spot or wrinkle, I,19(18),9; II,18(45)
of this world, I,17(6),5; I,19,9;
II,18
upon this rock I will build my Church, I,21(20),1
Cicero, I,1,4; I,26(25),2,31
See also Academics
City of God, II,43(70)
City of God, the book, I,17(16); I,26(25),2,47; II,16(43); II,41(68); II,43(70),1
two cities, II,43(70),2
clay, II,18(45)
Colossians, Epistle to, I,26(25),2,74
Colossians, Epistle to, II,3(30)
commandments, I,19(18),3–4
See also law competentes, I,17(16)
concupiscence, I,15(14),2;
II,23(22),1; I,24(23),2;
II,7(34),3
See also desire; flesh
conduct, I,3,3
Conference of Carthage, II,28(55);
II,33(60); II,38(65)–40(67);
II,46(73); II,59(86)
A Summary of the Conference, II,39(66)
Confessions, II,6(33)
Conference of Carthage, II,28(55);
II,33(60); II,38(65)–40(67);
II,46(73); II,59(86)
A Summary of the Conference, II,39(66)
Confessions, II,6(33)
Conference of Carthage, II,28(55);
II,33(60); II,38(65)–40(67);
II,46(73); II,59(86)
A Summary of the Conference, II,39(66)
corpses, I,26(25),2,51

corruption; corruptible things,
I,22(21),3

creation, I,15(14),1; I,26(25),2,19

See also world; specific topics
and equality, I,26(25),2,41

freed from slavery to destruction,
I,26(25),2,67

man and, I,26(25),2,30

And thus it was done, II,54(81)
twofold, I,13(12),2

Cresconius (Donatist grammarian),
II,26(53)

crime

See also punishment

and free choice, I,9(8),3

and God’s justice, I,9(8),3

cross, I,26(25),2,25

See also thief

my God, why have you forsaken
me, II,36(63)

Cyprian, I,1,3; II,1(28),1; II,18(45);
II,28(55)

Dardanus, Claudius Postumus,
II,49(76)
darkness, II,36(63)

David, King, I,26(25),2,61;
II,1(28),2; II,16(43)
death, I,19(18),5

See also resurrection of the body
care to be taken of the dead,
II,64(91)
corpses, I,26(25),2,51

as from God, I,26(25),2,21

God did not make death,
I,26(25),2,21

“God seeks the death of no one;”
I,21(20),2
grieving death of a friend,
II,6(33),2

life after, II,43(70),1

necessity of dying,
I,26(25),2,66

and procreation of children,
II,22(49),1; II,53(80)
sin and, I,13(12),4; I,19(18),7;
I,26(25),2,66;
I,26(25),2,70

swallowed up in victory,
I,23(22),1; I,26(25),2,70

“they will not sense death,”
II,33(60)

Where, O death, is your strife?,
I,19(18),2
deformity, II,62(89)
demons, I,13(12),6
demonic divination, II,30(57)

Deogratias, II,31(58)
desire

See also concupiscence; lust;

sexual relations
marriage and, II,53(80)
devil, I,15(14),7

Book of Job, I,15(14),7

and his angels, I,15(14),7; II,14(41)
dialectic, I,6
diet. See food
discipline: knowledge and, I,5,2
discipline (punishment). See
discipline (punishment)
disciplines, I,6

See also liberal disciplines

Donatists, II,5(32); II,36(63)

See also Conference of Carthage
answer to “certain Donatist,”
II,28(55)

and baptism, II,18(45)

Centurius, II,19(46)
correction of, II,48(75)

Cresconius, II,26(53)

Donatus, answer to, I,21

Emeritus, II,46(73); II,51(78)

Gaudentius of Thamugadi,
II,59(86)

and Maximianists, II,29(56);
II,35(62)

Notice to the Donatists about the
Maximianists, II,29(56)

Revisions
and one baptism, II,34(61)
Parmenian, II,17(44)
proofs and testimonies in answer to, II,27(54)
psalm against, I,20(19)
dove, I,26(25),2,43
Dulcitius, II,59(86); II,65(92)
earth
See also creation; world
new heaven and the new earth, I,4,3
Easter, I,26(25),2,81; II,30(57)
Ecclesiasticus, Book of, I,21(20),3; II,4(31),2
Egyptians, I,26(25),2,53
Eight Questions of Dulcitius, II,65(92)
Eighty-three Questions, Miscellany of, I,26
“elect” (Manicheans), II,10(37)
Elia, I,19(18),3; II,1(28),2
Elisha, I,19(18),3
Emeritus, Donatist bishop, II,46(73); II,51(78)
Enchiridion, II,63(90)
enemies, I,19(18),5
enjoyment: use and, II,15(42),2
error, I,9(8),5; I,10(9),1; I,13(12),2
See also heretics; sin; specific topics and groups, e.g., Manicheans; Maximianists
Esau. See under Jacob: and Esau eternal fire, I,7(6),6
eternal law, I,16(15),2
eternal times, I,26(25),2,72
evangelists: agreement among, II,16(43)
evile, I,26(25),2,3–4; I,26(25),2,6
See also sin
the evil that I hate is what I do, I,9(8),5
and free choice, I,9(8),1–2
and God as creator, I,26(25),2,21
and loving bodily things,
I,15(14),7–8
Manichean views and, I,9(8),2; I,15(14),7
nature of, I,15(14),7
and nature of the good, II,9(36)
“no evil is natural,” I,10(9),3
origin of, I,9(8),2; I,16(15),1
sin as voluntary, I,13(12),5
souls and, I,15(14),6
source of, I,15(14),3
Sufficient for the day is its own evil, I,19(18),9
Excellence of Marriage, II,22(49),1
Expressions from Genesis, II,54(81)

faith
See also Christianity
advantage of believing, I,14
as among God’s gifts, I,23(22),2
calling as preceding, I,26(25),2,68
charity with, I,23(22),2
and the creed, I,17
hope and charity, II,63(90)
instructing beginners in, II,14(41)
and knowing, I,14(13),3
without works, I,26(25),2,76
and works, I,23(22),3; II,38(65)

Faith and Works, II,38(65)
false things, I,1,4
See also lying
the Father, I,26(25),2,23
See also God
But on the day and hour no one knows, I,26(25),2,60
Son as likeness of, I,18(17)
and Son as one, I,4,3
fathers, II,55(82),3
See also under Joseph: having two fathers
Faustus, a Manichean, II,7(34); II,25(52); II,55(82),3
fear, I,26(25),2,33–34; I,26(25),2,77
Felix, a Manichean, II,8(35)
Felix of Apthungi, II,27(54); II,34(61)
fire, II,59(86)
eternal, I,7(6),6
I am a consuming fire, I,7(6),5
firmament, II,6(33),2
fish:
loaves and fishes, I,26(25),2,61
one hundred and fifty-three,
I,26(25),2,57
flesh
See also body; concupiscence;
desire
Flesh and blood will not possess
the kingdom of God,
I,17(16); II,3(30)
The flesh lusts against the spirit,
I,9(8),5
spirit and, I,9(8),5; I,24(23),2;
I,26(25),2,66; II,1(28),1
The Word was made flesh,
II,36(63)
Fonteius of Carthage, I,26(25),2,12
food, I,19(18),9; I,26(25),2,39
in the Book of Genesis, I,10(9),2
manna, II,20(47)
old law and, II,37(64)
foolishness, I,14(13),4
force, II,5(32)
foreknowledge, I,23(22),2
forgiveness
See also remission of sin
Forgive us our debts, I,19(18),3;
I,19(18),6; II,18(45);
II,33(60)
fornication, I,19(18),6; I,26(25),2,83;
II,15(42),3
See also adultery
For Orosius in Refutation of the
Priscillianists and the
Origenists, II,44(71)
fortitude, I,7(6),3
See also virtues
Fortunatianus, bishop of Sicca,
II,41(68)
Fortunatus, II,8(35)
debate with, I,16
fortune, I,1,2; I,3,2
The Foundation (Mani), II,2(29)
four-footed flying creatures,
II,15(42),2
free choice, I,9(8); I,26(25),2,2;
II,1(28),1; II,8(35)
See also sin; will
evil and, I,9(8),1–2; I,16(15),1
grace and, I,9(8),2; I,9(8),6;
II,66(93)
Free Choice, I,9(8); I,13(12),5;
I,14(13),4
fruit, I,10(9),2; I,22(21),4
Galatians, Epistle to, I,24(23)
“gather together again,” I,13(12),9
Gaudentius of Thamugadi, II,59(86)
Genesis, Book of:
An Unfinished Literal
Commentary on Genesis,
I,18(17)
Expressions from Genesis,
II,54(81)
On Genesis against the
Manicheans, I(13)12,8
literal meaning of, I,15(14),7;
II,24(51)
The Literal Meaning of Genesis,
I,18(17); II,24(51),1
Manicheans, two books against,
I,10
unfinished literal commentary,
I,18
genitals, II,7(34),3
gentiles, I,10(9),2
gift of the Holy Spirit, I,23(22),1–3
glory, I,19(18),9; I,26(25),2,67
God, I,26(25),2,19–20
See also Father; specific topics,
e.g., creation; mercy
city of, II,43(70)
created spirits and, I,26(25),2,54
inheritance of, I,26(25),2,75
Revisions

it is good for me to cling to God,
I,26(25),2,54
knowledge, God’s, I,26(25),2,17
knowledge of (knowing God), I,2;
I,4,3; I,26(25),2,35
and man’s highest good, I,1,4
nature of, II,49(76)
as not subject to necessity,
I,26(25),2,22
our love for, I,7(6),4–5
presence of, II,49(76)
seeing God, II,41(68)
as spirit, II,41(68)
talking back to, I,26(25),2,68
temple of, II,49(76)
and true religion, I(13)12,1
gods, pagan, II,43(70),1
gold, I,26(25),2,53; II,18(45)
Gomorrah, II,1(28),1
good:
accomplishing/doing, I,22(21),4;
I,23(22),3
changeable and unchangeable,
I,9(8),3
eternal, I,9(8),3
evil as coeternal with (Manichean
view), I,15(14),7
good will as great good, I,9(8),3
I do not do the good that I will,
but the evil that I hate,
I,9(8),5
major, middle, minor, I,9(8),4;
I,9(8),6
man’s highest, I,1,4
nature of, II,9(36)
sin, a good person and, I,15(14),2
good works. See merit; works
gospels, I,22(21),1–2; II,12(39)
See also specific gospels and
topics, e.g., loaves and
fishes
lack of trust in, II,16(43)
questions on, II,12(39)
Goths, II,43(70),1
grace, I,9(8),6; I,15(14),8;
I,26(25),2,66; II,36(63)
enemies of, II,37(64)
and free choice, I,9(8),2; I,9(8),6;
II,66(93)
If the Son has set you free, then
you will truly be free,
II,8(35)
and justification, II,33(60)
and the law, I,23(22),1–2; II,1(28),1
and merit/works, I,23(22),2;
II,31(58)
nature and, I,15(14),8; II,42(69)
and original sin, II,50(77)
and peace, I,24(23),2; I,25(24)
Pelagian positions and, I,9(8),3–4
rebuке and, II,67(94)
and regeneration, II,38(65)
A remnant was saved through
grace’s choosing,
I,23(22),2
and sin unto death, I,19(18),7
Grace and Free Choice, II,66(93)
Grammar, I,6
Greeks; Greek language, I,7(6),3;
II,7(34),3; II,17(44);
II,63(90)
See also specific topics, e.g.,
Septuagint
grief, II,6(33),2
guilt, I,15(14),2; I,15(14),5–6
See also sin
Hadrumentum, monks at, II,66(93)
hair, long, II,21(48)
Ham, II,7(34),3
happiness; happy life, I,1,2–4;
I,2; I,9(8),3; I,14(13),4;
I,26(25),2,5
the greatest happiness, I,14(13),2
and hope, I,4,3
love and, II,15(42),2
and loving spiritual things,
I,15(14),8
the soul and, I,4,3

Volume I/2
hate
   No one ever hates his own flesh,
   I,26(25),2,36
   for parents and children
   (explanation of),
   I,19(18),5

   The pride of those who hate you,
   I,19(18),8

   “hearers” (Manicheans), II,10(37)

   See also specific topics, e.g.,
   resurrection of the body
   Jesus in, I,26(25),2,42

   new heaven and the new earth,
   I,4,3

   returning “more safely” to, I,1,3

   today you will be with me in
   paradise, I,26(25),2,62

Hebrews, Epistle to, II,22(49),2
Hebrews (people), II,16(43)
Heli, II,7(34),2
hell, I,7(6),6

   See also punishment

Heptateuch:
   seven books of questions,
   II,55(82)
   seven books on expressions,
   II,54(81)

heresy; heretics, II,28(55)

   See also error; schism; individual
   names/groups, e.g.,
   Donatists; Jovinian

heretics, “recent.” See Pelagians
high priests, II,55(82),2
Hilary, II,11(38)
Holy of Holies, II,55(82),2
Holy Spirit, I,23(22),2; I,24(23),2
   as dove, I,26(25),2,43
   gift of, I,23(22),1–3
   sin against, I,25(24)
   honor, II,18(45)
Honoratus, I,14(13); II,36(63)
Honorius, Emperor, II,26(53);
   II,51(78)

hope:
   faith, charity and, II,63(90)
   happiness and, I,4,3

   by hope we have been saved,
   I,26(25),2,67
   soul and, I,4,3

human beings
   See also man; specific topics, e.g.,
   death
   as either foolish or wise,
   I,14(13),4
   superior to animals, I,26(25),2,13
   human nature, I,13(12),8
   human race, ages of, I,26(25),2,44

   hymns, II,11(38)

   ideas, I,26(25),2,46

   ignorance: I obtained mercy because
   I acted in ignorance, I,9(8),5
   image of God, I,18(17);
   I,26(25),2,51; I,26(25),2,67
   Adam and, II,24(51),2

   image of the invisible God,
   I,26(25),2,74
   the Son as, I,18(17)
   images, beauty of, I,26(25),2,78
   immortality, I,22(21),3

   See also under soul: immortality of
   of Christ, I,24(23),1
   incense, II,55(82),2
   incorruption, I,22(21),3

infants
   See also under baptism; original sin

   Pelagian beliefs regarding,
   I,15(14),2; I,15(14),6;
   II,33(60)

   infinity, I,26(25),2,32
   Innocent, bishop of Rome, II,50(77)
   intellect, I,26(25),2,15

   See also knowledge; mind
   intelligible world, I,3,2

   invisible things, I,11(10),1

   image of the invisible God,
   I,26(25),2,74
Revisions

Isaac, II,1(28),1
Israelites, I,10(9),2; I,26(25),2,49;
I,26(25),2,53
Jacob (father of Joseph husband of
Mary), II,7(34),2
Jacob (Old Testament):
and Esau, I,23(22),2;
I,26(25),2,68
putting rods in the water,
II,55(82),1
James, Epistle of, II,32(59)
phrase of, II,45(72)
Januarius, II,20(47)
Jeremiah, II,4(31),2
Jerome, St., II,45(72)
Jesus Christ
See also Son of God; specific
topics, e.g., cross;
resurrection of the Lord
and ages of human race,
I,26(25),2,44
body of, I,26(25),2,14
as born of woman, I,26(25),2,11
and Christianity existing before,
I,13(12),3
as in his mother’s womb and in
heaven, I,26(25),2,42
as immortal, I,24(23),1
priesthood of, I,26(25),2,61
second coming of, I,19(18),9
as wisdom of God, I,26(25),2,42
as “wise man,” II,16(43)
Jews, I,22(21),3
See also Hebrews; Israelites
Job, II,13(40)
Book of, I,15(14),7
John the Baptist, I,26(25),2,58;
I,26(25),2,62
Jonah, II,31(58)
Joseph (husband of Virgin Mary):
having two fathers, II,7(34),2;
II,12(39); II,16(43);
II,55(82),3
Joshua, II,54(81)
Jovinian, II,22(49),1
Judges, II,54(81)
Julian of Eclanum, II,53(80);
II,62(89)
justice:
commandments of, II,33(60)
God’s, I,9(8),3
wisdom as teaching, I,7(6),3
justification, II,33(60)
kingdom:
Flesh and blood will not possess
the kingdom of God,
I,17(16)
My kingdom is not of this world,
I,3,2
thy kingdom come, I,3,2
Kingdoms, Book of, II,1(28),2;
II,55(82)
kingship, I,26(25),2,61
knowledge
See also intellect; learning; mind;
truth; understanding;
wisdom
and discipline, I,5,2
faith and, I,14(13),3
God’s, I,26(25),2,17
knowing God, I,2; I,4,3;
I,26(25),2,35
reason and, I,14(13),3
senses and, I,14(13),3
lambs, II,55(82),1
Latin, I,1,3; I,3(30); I,7(6),2–3;
I,13(12),9; I,20(19);
II,24(51)
Laurence, II,63(90)
law
See also Old Testament; specific
topics, e.g., food
eternal, I,16(15),2
fulfilling, I,26(25),2,71
given through Moses, I,22(21),2
grace and, I,23(22),1–2;
II,1(28),1
observation of, I,10(9),2

Volume I/2
a person is subject to the law for as long as he lives, I,26(25),2,66

reason for, I,24(23),2

spirit and, I,14(13),1; I,24(23),2

as spiritual, I,23(22),1;
I,26(25),2,66; II,1(28),1

“under the law we were like children.” I,26(25),2,44

Whoever observes the whole law but goes against it in one part, II,45(72)

law and the prophets, I,22(21),1–2; I,25(24); II,58(85)

Lazarus, I,26(25),2,65

learning

See also knowledge; truth as remembering/recalling, I,8(7),2

the soul and, I,8(7),2

Lent, I,26(25),2,81

letter, spirit and. See under spirit: and letter

liberal disciplines, I,3,2; I,4,4; I,6

libido, I,22(49),2

life, I,15(14),1

See also creation; man after death, II,43(70),1

as from God, I,21(20),2

likeness of God. See image of God

Literal Meaning of Genesis, I,18(17); I,24(51),1

loaves and fishes, I,26(25),2,61

locusts, I,55(42),2

Lordly Man, I,19(18),8

love

See also charity for another man, I,13(12),8

for enemies, I,19(18),5

for God, I,7(6),4–5

of God and neighbor, I,16(15),2;
I,22(21),2

and happiness, I,15(42),2

of this world, I,11(10),4

what should be loved,
I,26(25),2,35

Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
I,26(25),2,82

Luke, Gospel of, I,26(25),2;
II,7(34),2; II,12(39);
II,16(43); II,55(82),3

See also gospels; specific topics

lust. See concupiscence; desire; flesh
lying, I,27; I,27(26); II,60(87)

Against Lying, I,27(26)

On Lying, I,27(26)

magicians, I,26(25),2,79

magnitude of the soul, I,8

maidens, I,26(25),2,55

Majorinus, I,21(20),1

man

See also human beings; human nature; human race

the animal man, II,27(54)

and creation, I,26(25),2,30

found form as a man, I,26(25),2,73

image of God, I,18(17);
I,26(25),2,51;
I,26(25),2,67

I regret having made man,
I,26(25),2,52

“One man ought not to be loved by another man as blood brothers are loved,”
I,13(12),8

Son of God appearing in,
I,26(25),2,43

what is best in, I,1,2

Manicheans, I,9(8),6; II,7(34),1;
II,62(89)

Adimantus, answer to, I,22(21)

books on Genesis against, I,10

and Catholic way of life, I,7

“elect” and “hearers,” II,10(37)

Faustus, II,7(34); II,25(52);
II,55(82),3

Felix, II,8(35)
Revisions

Fortunatus, I,16; II,8
The Foundation (Mani), II,2(29)
Honoratus, I,14(13)
and nature of the good, II,9(36)
Secundinus, II,10(37)
two natures, I,13(12),1
two souls, I,15
Manichean Way of Life, I,7(6),1; I,7(6),6
Manlius Theodorus, I,2
manna, II,20(47)
Marcellinus, II,33(60); II,37(64)
Marcionites, II,58(85)
marrige:
   adulterous, II,57(84)
   conjugal chastity, II,53(80)
   and desire, II,53(80)
   excellence of, II,22(49)
   love for wives, I,26(25),2,36
   original sin and, II,53(80)
   renouncing, I,26(25),2,83
Marriage and Desire, II,53(80)
martyrs
   See also individual names
   of Milan, I,13(12),7
   Mary, the Virgin, II,12(39)
   mathematicians, I,26(25),2,45
   Mathan, II,7(34),2
   Matthew, Gospel of, I,19(18),1; II,7(34),2; II,12(39); II,55(82),3
   See also gospels; specific topics
   Mauritania Caesarea, II,51(78)
   Maximianists, II,26(53); II,29(56); II,51(78)
   book on (in answer to the
   Donatists), II,35(62)
measure:
   God does not give the Spirit
   according to measure,
   I,19(18),3
   In the measure that you have
   measured out, II,31(58)
   medicine, I,8(7),2
   Melania, II,50(77)
   Melchi, II,7(34),2
   mercy, I,15(14),8; I,26(25),2,68
   and faithfulness, I,23(22),4
   I obtained mercy because I acted
   in ignorance, I,9(8),5
   merit, I,15(14),8
   See also intellect; knowledge;
   thoughts
   and man’s highest good, I,1,4
   as understood, I,5,2
   and what is best in man, I,1,2
   miracles, I,13(12),7; I,14(13),5
   Abraham’s sacrifice as,
   II,43(70),2
   by Pharaoh’s magicians,
   I,26(25),2,79
   mirror: We see now through a mirror
   in obscurity, I,14(13),2
   Miscellany of Eighty-three
   Questions, I,26(25)
   monks, II,21(48)
   Valentine and, II,66(93)
   moon, II,7(34),3
   Moses, I,22(21),2; I,26(25),2,79;
   II,54(81)
   mothers, II,55(82),3
   Mount Sinai, II,4(31),2
   Muses, I,3,2
   music, I,6; I,11
   mysteries, I,14(13),1
   Nathan, I,26(25),2,61; II,16(43)
   nature; natures, I,13(12),8
   God as creator of natures,
   I,10(9),1
   of the good, II,9(36)

Volume I/2
Revisions

grace and, I,15(14),8; II,42(69)
human, I,13(12),8
“no evil as natural,” I,10(9),3
origin and, I,15(14),6
sin and, I,1,2; I,15(14),7
souls and, I,15(14),6–7;
I,26(25),2,40
will and, I,15(14),6
Nature and Grace, I,9(8),3; II,42(69)
necessity: God as not subject to,
I,26(25),2,22
necromancer, II,1(28),2
neighbor, love for. See under love: of
God and neighbor
neo-Platonic philosophy. See
Academics; Plato
nether regions, I,5,3; II,24(51),2
New Testament, I,22(21),2
See also gospels
grace of, I,9(8),2; II,36(63)
Noah, II,7(34),3; II,54(81)
Notes on Job, II,13(40)
Notice to the Donatists about the
Maximianists, II,29(56)
numbers:
immutable, I,11(10),1
of wisdom, I,11(10),2
Numidia, II,40(67)
obedience, II,14(41)
offices, two (kingship and
priesthood), I,26(25),2,61
old age, I,26(25),2,44
Old Testament, I,9(8),6; I,22(21),2
See also Heptateuch; law; specific
books and topics
authority of, II,4(31),2
Manichean beliefs and, I,9(8),6
the Septuagint, I,7(6),2
“omen,” the word, I,1,2
The One Baptism, II,34(61)
order, I,3
as from God, I,13(12),8
proper, I,15(14),7
and things that fall away, I,7(6),6
Orient, II,47(74)

Origen; Origenists, I,7(6),6; II,44(71)
origin: and nature, I,15(14),6
original sin, I,9(8),6; I,15(14),2;
II,50(77); II,62(89)
See also Adam
and death, I,13(12),4; I,13(12),8
infants and, I,13(12),5–6;
I,14(13),4; I,15(14),5;
II,33(60); II,45(72)
and marriage, II,53(80)
Pelagian view of, I,9(8),6
origin of the soul. See under soul:
origin of
Orosius: For Orosius in Refutation
of the Priscillianists and the
Origenists, II,44(71)
pabulum, I,10(9),3
pagans; paganism, II,43(70),1
See also specific topics, e.g.,
liberal disciplines
and mercy, I,23(22),4
“omen,” the word, I,1,2
six questions explained in answer
to, II,31(58)
paradise. See heaven
parents, I,19(18),5
Parmenian, Donatist bishop of
Carthage, II,17(44)
Passover, I,10(9),2
patriarchs, II,22(49),1
Paul, the apostle, I,3(30); I,14(13),1;
I,23(22),1; II,27(54)
See also specific topics and
epistles
as sent through Christ, I,24(23),1
Paulinus, bishop of Nola, II,64(91)
peace:
grace and, I,24(23),2; I,25(24)
peacemakers, I,19(18),1–2
Pelagians, I,15(14),2; I,23(22)1–2;
II,22(49),2; II,36(63);
II,49(76); II,61(88)
See also individual names, e.g.,
Julian of Eclanum

Revisions
baptism of infants, II,33(60)
condemned by bishops of Rome, II,50(77)
and free will, I,9(8),3–6
grace, positions on, I,9(8),3–4
original sin and marriage, II,53(80)
overthrowing, I,23(22),1
punishment and remission of sins, II,33(60)
“the recent heretics,” I,9(8),3–4; I,10(9),2; II,22,2; II,33; II,36; II,53
three books for Marcellinus, II,33(60)
Pelagius, I,9(8),3; II,33(60); II,42(69); II,50(77)
deeds of, II,47(74)
perfection, I,19(18),2–3
spiritual, I,7(6),5
Peter, a Spanish presbyter, II,56(83)
Petilian, a Donatist, II,25(52)
book for Constantine on one baptism, II,34(61)
phantom, I,26(25),2,14
Pharaoh’s magicians, I,26(25),2,79
philocalia, I,1,3
philosophers
See also individual names
piety and virtue, I,3,2
philosophia, I,1,3
Pinianus, II,50(77)
Plato; Platonists, I,1,4; I,4,4; I,11(10),4; II,4(31),2
intelligible world, I,3,2
soul, idea of, I,8(7),2
Pliny the Elder, I,7,6
Pollentius, II,57(84)
Porphyry (famous Sicilian), I,4,3; II,31(58)
Porphyry (philosopher), II,31(58)
prayer, II,33(60)
Forgive us our debts, I,19(18),3; I,19(18),6; II,18(45); II,33(60)
vs. rebuke, II,67(94)
predestination, I,9(8),2
pride, prologue, 3; II,14(41)
The pride of those who hate you, I,19(18),8
priests; priesthood, I,26(25),2,61
high priests, I,55(82),2
priesthood of Christ, I,20(25),2,61
Priscillianists, I,44(71); II,60(87)
Proofs and Testimonies in Answer to the Donatists, II,27(54)
prophetic words, I,10(9),3
prophets, I,26(25),2,61
See also individual names
providence, I,26(25),2,27
prudence, I,7(6),3
psalm against the party of Donatus, I,20(19)
Psalms, Book of, I,11(38); II,36(63)
punishment, I,9(8),3; I,9(8),5; I,15(14),2; I,23(22),3
ecclesiastical disciplining, II,17(44)
of sin, I,15(14),2; II,33(60)
Whom the Lord loves he corrects, I,26(25),2,82
of the wicked, I,26(25),2,21
Punishment and Remission of Sins, II,33(60); II,37(64)
On Purifying the Mind in order to See God, I,26(25),2,12
Pythagoras, I,3,3
quadragesima, I,26(25),2,81
queens, I,26(25),2,55
quem, I,4,2
Questions on the Gospels, II,12(39)
quinquagesima, I,26(25),2,81
reason, I,14(13),4; I,19(18),1
See also mind
knowing and, I,14(13),3
the soul and, I,5,2
and what is best in man, I,1,2
rebaptism, I,21(20),3; II,26(53)
Rebecca, II,1(28),1
Rebuke and Grace, II,67(94)
“recent heretics.” See under Pelagians: “the recent heretics”
reconciliation, I,25(24)
redemption, I,26(25),2,74
regeneration, I,7(6),5; II,38(65); II,45(72); II,62(89)
religion
See also Christianity; specific topics, e.g.,
error binding our souls and, I,13(12),9
origin of word, I,13(12),9
perfect, I,13(12),2
true, I,13(12)
two praiseworthy persons in,
I,14(13),2
remission of sins, I,26(25),2,74;
II,33(60)
remnant: A remnant was saved through grace’s choosing,
I,23(22),2
Renatus, a monk, II,56(83)
repentance, I,26(25),2,68
Responses to the Questions of Januarius, II,20(47)
resurrection, II,31(58)
of Lazarus, I,26(25),2,65
of the saints, II,41(68)
resurrection of the body, I,11(10),3;
I,17(16)
and eternal law, I,16(15),2
Flesh and blood shall not possess the kingdom of God,
II,3(30)
to “pristine stability,” I,13(12),4
resurrection of the Lord, I,22(21),3;
I,24(23),1
righteousness, I,19(18),4
rock (Peter as; Christ as), I,21(20),1
Romans, Epistle to, I,23(22);
I,25(24); II,1(28),1
Rome, II,43(70),1
Rome, bishops of, II,50(77)
See also individual names
Rufus of Thessalonica, bishop,
II,61(88)
sabbath, I,14(13),1
The Sacraments, or Philosophy
(Ambrose), II,4(31),2
sacrifices, I,10(9),2; I,14(13),1;
II,31(58)
of Abraham, II,43(70),2
cattle, oblations of, I,26(25),2,49
to pagan gods, II,43(70),1
in visible fashion, I,26(25),2,49
saints, II,7(34),3
resurrection of, II,41(68)
salvation, II,31(58)
Samaritan woman, I,26(25),2,64
Samuel, II,1(28),2; II,43(70),2;
II,55(82),2
sanctification: In the womb I sanctified you, I,26(25),2,68
Sarah, I,22(21),2; II,1(28),1;
II,22(49),1
Saul, King, II,1(28),2
schism: schismatics, II,5(32);
II,27(54)
See also specific groups, e.g.,
Donatists
scripture, II,54(81)
See also New Testament; Old Testament; specific books and topics
sea, II,7(34),3
Secundinus, a Manichean, II,10(37)
“seed,” II,24(51),2
selecting (the word), I,13(12),9
senses, bodily, I,1,2; I,3,2; I,4,2–3;
I,26(25),2,9
See also specific topics, e.g.,
beauty
and knowing, I,14(13),3
sensible world, I,3,2
Septuagint, I,7(6),2
Sermon on the Mount, I,19(18);
I,22(21),2

Revisions
sERPENTS, I,10(9),2

This serpent which you fashioned to make a mockery of him, I,15(14),7

Sextus (philosopher), II,42(69)

sexual relations, II,22(49),1–2

See also concupiscence; desire; lust becoming unclean through, II,55(82),2
deformity and, II,62(89)

Increase and multiply, I,10(9),2

procreation of children, II,22(49),1; II,53(80)

and sin, I,10(9),2; I,13(12),8

shamefulness, II,18(45)
sheep: with variegated young, II,55(82),1

silver, I,26(25),2,53; II,18(45)

Simplician, II,1(28)
sin

See also evil; free choice; original sin; punishment; remission; wickedness and death, I,26(25),2,66; I,26(25),2,70
difference of sins, I,26(25),2,26

forgiveness/remission of, I,25(24); I,26(25),2,74; II,53(60)

and God’s mercy, I,26(25),2,68

a good person and, I,15(14),2

and God’s will, I,26(25),2,66; II,50(77)

and guilt, I,15(14),2; I,15(14),5–6

against the Holy Spirit, I,25(24)

involuntary, I,13(12),5

and the law, I,26(25),2,70

and loving bodily things, I,15(14),7–8

nature and, I,12; I,15(14),7

as outside the body, II,15(42),3

and repentance, I,26(25),2,68

and separation from God, I,5,2

“sin harms no one’s nature but one’s own,” I,10(9),3

as voluntary evil, I,13(12),5

and will, I,9(8),3; I,13(12),5; I,15(14),2–6; I,16(15),2; I,19(18),3; I,26(25),2,24

sinners: God hearing, I,3,3

sin unto death, I,19(18),7

Sirach, Jesus, II,4(31),2

Sixtus, bishop of Rome, II,42(69)
skepticism. See Academics

slavery:
to destruction, I,26(25),2,67

slave as master’s friend, I,8(7),4

sobriety, I,7(6),3

Sodom, II,1(28),1

Soliloquies, I,4; I,5,1

Solomon, II,19(46)

See also Wisdom of Solomon

re. the Son of God, II,31(58)

Son of God, I,26(25),2,16;

I,26(25),2,23

See also Jesus Christ

goodness according to Solomon, II,31(58)

But on the day and hour no one knows, I,26(25),2,60

equality of, I,26(25),2,50

and Father as one, I,4,3

as likeness of the Father, I,18(17)

as man, I,26(25),2,43

subjected to the one who has subjected everything to him, I,26(25),2,69

sons

See also Aaron, sons of the term, I,22(21),3

Soranus of Ephesus, II,62(89)
soul; souls, I,26(25),2,1

See also spirit

Adam as made into a living soul,

I,10(9),3; I,13(12),4

in an ensouled being, I,26(25),2,7

angels and, I,11(10),4; I,16(15),2

binding our souls, I,13(12),9

and body, I,5,3

conformation of, I,26(25),2,38

happy life and, I,2; I,4,3
as having one nature, I,26(25),2,40
immortality of, I,4,1; I,5;
I,11(10),4
as incorporeal creature, I,13(12),2
and learning, I,8(7),2
live or living, I,10(9),3
as made by God, I,16(15),2
magnitude of, I,8(7)
moved by itself, I,26(25),2,8
nature and, I,15(14),6–7
as not evil by nature, I,15(14),6
origin of, I,1,3; I,26(25),2,62;
II,45(72); II,56(83)
reason and, I,5,2
two souls, I,15
virtues of (Cicero), I,26(25),2,31
when soul departs from body,
I,11(10),4
will and, I,15(14),5–6
youth and old age co-existing in,
I,26(25),2,44
speaking: With much speaking
you will not escape sin,
prologue,2
Spirit, Holy. See Holy Spirit
spirit: spirits, I,26(25),2,54
See also under flesh: spirit and
angels as, II,14(41)
God as, II,41(68)
God does not give the Spirit
according to measure,
I,19(18),3
as from heaven, I,1,3
and letter, I,14(13),1; II,37(64)
The spirit returns to God who
gave us, I,1,3
spiritual persons, I,23(22),1
unclean, II,1(28),2
The Spirit and the Letter, I,14(13),1;
II,37(64)
substances, I,10(9),1; I,13(12),8
suffering, I,26(25),2,67
sun, II,7(34),3
superstition, I,13(12),9
Susanna, II,22(49),1
swearing, I,1,4
Syria Palaestina, II,47(74)
the Teacher, prologue,2; I,12(11);
I,26(25),2,44
On the Teacher, I,12(11)
teaching Christianity, II,4(31)
temperance, I,7(6),3; II,22(49),2
Temple: forty-six years building,
I,26(25),2,56
Theodosius, Emperor, II,51(78)
thief: the “good thief,” I,26,62; II,18;
II,55,3
thoughts
See also intellect; knowledge;
mind
seeing, I,26(25),2,47
tongues, speaking in, I,13(12),7
Trinity, I,13(12),1; I,26(25),2,18
fifteen books on, II,15(42)
Trinity, I,4,4; II,24(51),1
two fathers. See under Joseph:
having two fathers
two souls, I,15
Tyconius (Donatist scriptural
exegete), II,18(45)
unanimity: truth and, prologue,2
understanding, I,26(25),2,32
See also knowledge
Unfinished Commentary on the
Epistle to the Romans, I,25(24)
Unfinished Literal Commentary on
Genesis, I,18(17)
universe
Revisions

See also creation; world
up or down in, I,26(25),2,29
use: and enjoyment, II,15(42),2

Valentine, II,66(93)
Valerius, Count, II,53(80); II,62(89)
vanity, I,7(6),3
Victor, Vincent, I,26(25),2,62;
II,56(83)
victory, I,26(25),2,68; I,26(25),2,70
violence, II,5(32)

virginity:
consecrated, II,22(49),1
holy, II,23(50)
ten virgins, I,26(25),2,59; II,36(63)
virtue, I,9(8),4; I,26(25),2,31
four virtues, I,7(6),3
wisdom as teaching, I,7(6),3

waters, II,6(33),2
weeds, II,28(55)
wickedness, I,19(18),7
See also sin
Remove the wicked person from among yourselves,
II,17(44)
widows, I,1(28),2; II,55(82),3
marrying brother’s widow,
II,7(34),2; II,12(39);
II,16(43)
will
See also free choice; sin
definition of, I,15(14),3
God as readying, I,10(9),2; I,23(22),3
of God to make the world,
I,26(25),2,28
good will as great good, I,9(8),3
nature and, I,15(14),6
as in our power, I,9(8),3;
I,22(21),4
the power to do something,
II,1(28),2
soul and, I,9(8),3; I,15(14),5–6
wisdom
See also knowledge; truth
as acquired through the mind, I,4,1
“He himself begot the wisdom by which he is called wise,”
I,26(25),2,23
of human beings, I,14(13),4
love of (philosophia), I,1,3
of peacemakers, I,19(18),1
as teaching sobriety, justice, and virtue, I,7(6),3
as through Christ, I,4,3

Wisdom of God, Christ as,
I,26(25),2,42
Wisdom of Solomon (Book of Wisdom), I,7(6),3;
II,4(31),2; II,20(47)
wives
See also marriage; specific topics,
e.g., widows
love for, I,26(25),2,36
wood, II,18(45)
Word of God, I,26(25),2,63
The Word was made flesh,
II,36(63)

works, I,23(22),3; II,31(58)
See also under faith: and works;
merit
faith without works is useless,
I,26(25),2,76

world
See also creation
as ensouled, I,11(10),4
love of this world, I,11(10),4
My kingdom is not of this world,
I,3,2
a new heaven and a new earth,
I,3,2
will of God to make,
I,26(25),2,28

worlds, two:
sensible and intelligible, I,3,2
writing, prologue,3

youth, I,26(25),2,44

Zosimus, bishop of Rome, II,50(77)
Index from

The Trinity

*De Trinitate*
(On the Trinity)

In the first seven books Augustine searches the scriptures for clues to understanding the Trinity and then defends the orthodox statement of the doctrine against the Arians. In the last eight books Augustine seeks to understand the mystery of the divine Trinity by observing an analogous trinity in the image of God, which is the human mind; and in so doing, he also suggests a program for the serious Christian of spiritual self-discovery and renewal.

Translation, introduction and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, editor

In the first seven books Augustine searches the scriptures for clues to understanding the Trinity and then defends the orthodox statement of the doctrine against the Arians. In the last eight books Augustine seeks to understand the mystery of the divine Trinity by observing an analogous trinity in the image of God, which is the human mind; and in so doing, he also suggests a program for the serious Christian of spiritual self-discovery and renewal.

Volume I/5 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-446-7, 6 x 9 in., 471 pp., 2012

**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-610-2, 6 x 9 in., 632 pp., 2012

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture References

#### Old Testament

**Genesis**
- 16:10 II, 24
- 19:18 II, 25, 26
- 20:5 I, 2
- 1:1 I, 24
- 1:3 II, 17
- 1:3.6 II, 14
- 1:26 I, 14; VII, 12; XII, 6; XIV, 25
- 1:27 XII, 6, 7, 8, 10
- 2:20 XII, 20
- 2:24 XII, 3, 8
- 3:5 XI, 8
- 3:8 II, 18
- 3:9 II, 17, 18
- 3:11 XII, 20
- 3:14 XIII, 16
- 3:19 XIII, 16
- 4:14 II, 18
- 6:3 XIII, 16
- 6:7 I, 2
- 7:22 XIV, 22
- 9:6 IX, 17
- 12:1 II, 19; III, 25
- 12:7 II, 19; III, 25
- 18:1 II, 19, 34; III, 25
- 18:2 III, 25
- 18:33 II, 21
- 19:1 II, 21
- 19:17 II, 22
- 22:1 III, 25
- 22:10 III, 25
- 22:12 I, 23; III, 25
- 22:13 III, 25
- 22:15 III, 25
- 24:17 II, 26
- 33:11 II, 27
- 33:13 II, 27, 28
- 33:18 II, 27
- 33:20 II, 28
- 33:21 II, 30
- 33:22 II, 31

**Numbers**
- 11:17 V, 15
- 21:9 III, 20

**Deuteronomy**
- 6:4 V, 12; VII, 8; XV, 51
- 6:5 X, 9; XIV, 18
- 6:13 I, 13; II, 19

**Job**
- 7:1 IV, 5
- 28:28 XIV, 1, 15

**Psalms**
- 1:2 I, 5
- 2:7 II, 19, 33
- 3:8 XII, 7
- 5:5 I, 17
- 5:13 II, 1
- 7:14 IX, 14
- 8:6 IV, 17
- 8:8 II, 33
- 9:2 X, 9
- 9:17 XIV, 17
- 10:3 XIII, 8
- 11:5 VIII, 9, 18; XIV, 18
- 14:1 XIII, 2
- 14:2 XV, 2
- 15:2.1 IV, 6
- 16:11 I, 17
- 17:8 I, 2
- 17:11 XV, 50
- 18:28 IX, 2
- 18:29 XII, 7
- 19:1.5 IV, 15
- 19:3 IV, 29
- 19:6 I, 24
- 22:1 IV, 6
- 22:27 XIV, 16

---

**The Trinity**
The Trinity

24:7 I, 24
27:4 I, 20, 31
31:20 I, 31
31:23 IV, 1
32:1 II, 31
32:4 II, 31
32:8 III, 19
34:5 XIV, 18
36:10 VII, 4
38:10 XIV, 18
39:3 XV, 13
39:6 II, 28; XIV, 6, 19
45:5 XII, 7
45:8 II, 11; III, 20
49:12 XII, 16
50:7 III, 20
57:7 IV, 7
59:9 XIV, 18
59:17 XV, 27
62:5 XV, 27
63:8 VI, 7
68:9 IV, 2
68:18 IV, 17; XIII, 14; XV, 34
69:4 XIII, 18
71:5 XV, 27
72:18 I, 11
73:1 I, 31
73:23 XIV, 16
73:26 IV, 1
73:27, 28 VI, 7
77:9 XIII, 16
80:2 V, 9
82:6 I, 13
85:12 IV, 24
86:10 V, 9
88:5 XIII, 18
90:1 V, 17; XV, 5
91:16 I, 17
94:8 XIV, 17
94:11 XV, 51
94:12-15 XIII, 17
94:16 XIII, 17
102:26 III, 8
102:27 I, 2
102:28 V, 9
103:3 XIV, 23
104:4 III, 9
104:6 V, 9
105:3 XV, 2
105:4 I, 5; IX, 1
110:1 II, 19
110:3 I, 24
112:7 I, 31
112:8 I, 16
122:3 III, 8
139:6 XV, 13
139:7 II, 7
139:8 II, 7; V, 9
143:2 II, 28; IV, 5
146:6 IV, 25
148:8 III, 19; XIV, 22

Proverbs

8:22 I, 24
8:25 I, 24
9:8 XIV, 2
10:19 XV, 51
19:21 XV, 38
30:15 XV, 15

Ecclesiastes

1:18 IV, 1
3:21 XIV, 22

Song of Songs

1:10 I, 16
1:11 I, 17

Wisdom

1:7 III, 3
1:13 IV, 15
2:1 XV, 17
3:9 VIII, 11
6:7 XV, 8
6:24 XIV, 1
6:25 I, 8
7:7 II, 27
7:24 IV, 18
7:25 IV, 27
7:26 IV, 27, 28
7:27 II, 14; IV, 27
8:1 II, 7, 25, 30; III, 6; IV, 18
9:10 IV, 27, 28
9:14-16 III, 21
9:15 II, 28; III, 10; IV, 5;
         VIII, 3
9:17 III, 21
11:20 III, 16; XI, 18
12:18 XIII, 21
13:1-5 XV, 3
16:24 II, 11; III, 6

Sirach

1:5 XV, 20
18:7 IX, 1

Volume I/5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>XI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>VII, 12; XV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>II, 23; III, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>II, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:11</td>
<td>XV, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35:10</td>
<td>I, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48:16</td>
<td>II, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>55:6</td>
<td>XV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>61:1</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66:1</td>
<td>II, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>II, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>7:9-14</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>VIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:21</td>
<td>III, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>I, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>IV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>IV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, 17, 28, 30, 31; VIII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>XV, 20, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>XV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>V, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>XII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>VIII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>IX, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>XI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>XV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:3</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>XV, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>II, 15; IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>XV, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>I, 16; VII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>VIII, 11; IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>VIII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>XIII, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>IV, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:15</td>
<td>II, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:31</td>
<td>XIII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:11</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:16</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>XIII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>I, 7; II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:7</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:23</td>
<td>I, 24, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>II, 28; XIV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:39</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>VI, 7; VIII, 10; XV, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:19</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:31</td>
<td>I, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:32</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>XIV, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:37</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:41.34</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:38</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:19</td>
<td>XV, 46, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>I, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>I, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>V, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>VIII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>I, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:39</td>
<td>IV, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:42</td>
<td>IV, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>IV, 5; XV, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Trinity**
## The Trinity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>John 1:1</th>
<th>I, 9; II, 9, 27; VI, 3, 4; VII, 4; XV, 19, 20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>VII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-6</td>
<td>IV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-14</td>
<td>XIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>I, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>I, 12, 14, 22, 26, 31; II, 14, 15, 25, 28; IV, 3, 25, 26; VII, 4; XII, 5, 6; XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>IV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>IV, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>IV, 3, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>VII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>II, 7; III, 3; VII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>II, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>V, 17; XIII, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>I, 9; II, 9; IV, 4, 28; VII, 4; XIII, 12, 22, 24; XIV, 24; XV, 20, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>II, 11; XV, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19-21</td>
<td>IV, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>IV, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>III, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>IV, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>XV, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-14</td>
<td>XV, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>V, 10, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>V, 12; XV, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>I, 11; II, 3, 5; XV, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>I, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>I, 29, 30; II, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>I, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>I, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>I, 22, 26, 29, 30; II, 3, 4; VII, 4; XV, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>I, 30; II, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>I, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:36; 14:31</td>
<td>I, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:46</td>
<td>III, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>I, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>I, 22, 26; II, 4, 5; XV, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37</td>
<td>XV, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>IV, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:38</td>
<td>XV, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>II, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>I, 24; V, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
<td>IV, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:42</td>
<td>II, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:50</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>I, 17, 22, 25; II, 3; V, 4, 10; VI, 3; VII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:36</td>
<td>II, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:51</td>
<td>IV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>I, 7; II, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:44</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:47</td>
<td>I, 26, 27, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48</td>
<td>I, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49-50</td>
<td>I, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:50</td>
<td>I, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>II, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>XV, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9-11</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>IV, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15-17</td>
<td>I, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>I, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>I, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>I, 18, 28, 30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:22</td>
<td>I, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>VII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:25</td>
<td>I, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>II, 7; IV, 26, 29; XV, 45, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>I, 15, 18; VI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>XIII, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>XIV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume I/5

| 15:15 | I, 23 |
| 15:25 | XV, 30 |
| 15:26 | II, 5; IV, 29; V, 12, 15; XV, 45; 48, 51; XII, 5 |
| 16:6  | I, 18 |
| 16:7  | I, 24; II, 7 |
| 16:12 | I, 23 |
| 16:13 | I, 18; II, 5, 23 |
| 16:14 | II, 5 |
| 16:15 | I, 22 |
| 16:19 | I, 25 |
| 16:22 | I, 20, 31 |
| 16:25 | I, 21 |
| 16:26 | I, 21 |
| 16:27 | I, 21 |
| 16:28 | II, 7; IV, 28, 30 |
| 17:1.5| II, 6 |
| 17:3  | I, 17, 30, 31; IV, 24; VI, 10; XIV, 25 |
| 17:4  | II, 1, 6 |
| 17:5  | I, 31 |
| 17:10 | I, 22 |
| 17:19 | II, 9 |
| 17:20 | IV, 12 |
| 17:22 | IV, 12; VI, 4 |
| 17:23 | IV, 12 |
| 17:24 | V, 17 |
| 19:11 | III, 12 |
| 19:30 | IV, 16; XIV, 22 |
| 20:17 | I, 18; IV, 6 |
| 20:22 | IV, 29; XV, 45 |
| 20:28 | IV, 6 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acts of the Apostles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 16:6 | I, 18 |
| 16:7 | I, 24; II, 7 |
| 16:12| I, 23 |
| 16:13| I, 18; II, 5, 23 |
| 16:14| II, 5 |
| 16:15| I, 22 |
| 16:19| I, 25 |
| 16:22| I, 20, 31 |
| 16:25| I, 21 |
| 16:26| I, 21 |
| 16:27| I, 21 |
| 16:28| II, 7; IV, 28, 30 |
| 16:29| I, 1, 6 |
| 17:3 | I, 17, 30, 31; IV, 24; VI, 10; XIV, 25 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Romans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Trinity

1 Corinthians
1:21 IV, 28
1:24 I, 10; VI, 1, 2; VII, 1, 2, 4; XV, 5, 31
1:25 XIII, 18
1:30 VII, 4
1:32 I, 23
1:36 I, 24, 28
1:41 I, 18; V, 15
1:24 VII, 11
2:15 I, 18
2:1 I, 23
2:1-2 I, 3
3:6 III, 14
3:7 III, 11
3:8 VI, 4
3:12 XV, 16
3:16 VII, 6
3:19 XIV, 1
3:22 VI, 10
4:5 I, 17
4:7 V, 15; XIV, 21
5:6 XIV, 4
6:15 I, 13
6:16 VI, 4
6:17 VI, 4, 6, 7, 9; XIV, 20
6:18 XII, 15
6:19 I, 13, 23; VII, 6
6:20 I, 13; II, 23
6:21 IV, 1
8:2 IX, 1
8:3 VIII, 10
8:5 II, 19
8:6 I, 12
10:4 II, 11
10:11 III, 24
10:13 XII, 15, 20
11:3 I, 12
11:3 VI, 10
11:7 VII, 12; XII, 9, 10, 12; XV, 14
11:10 XII, 10
12:2 XV, 34
12:3 IX, 15
12:6 IV, 29; V, 14
12:7 XIII, 24
12:7-11 V, 14
12:8 XII, 22, 25; XIII, 24;
XIV, 3
12:9 XV, 34
12:10 III, 18
12:11 XV, 36
12:13 XV, 33
13:4 VIII, 11; XV, 41
13:12 I, 3, 4, 16, 28, 31; II, 6, 28; III, 1, 9, 10; V, 1; VI, 2, 12; VII, 6; VIII, 3; IX, 1; XII, 22; XIV, 5, 23; XV, 3, 4, 6, 15, 21, 40, 44

2 Corinthians
1:17 XV, 20
1:18 XV, 24
1:19-20 XV, 23
2:10 VII, 8
3:13 XV, 20
3:17 II, 19
3:18 XIV, 23; XV, 14
4:6 IV, 10
4:13 III, 22
4:16 IV, 5, 6; XI, 1; XIV, 23
5:6 I, 17; II, 28
5:7 VIII, 6
5:21 XIII, 18
6:2-10 VIII, 13
10:17 XIII, 23
11:14 IV, 13
12:9 IV, 2

Galatians
2:20 II, 9; XIII, 15
3:19 III, 26
3:26 XII, 12

Volume I/5
### Volume I/5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4:4</th>
<th>I, 14, 22; II, 8, 9, 12; III, 3; IV, 10, 26, 28, 30; XV, 51</th>
<th>2:11</th>
<th>XIV, 22</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XV, 45</td>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>IX, 1</td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>XV, 14</td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>III, 8</td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>XIII, 5, 26; XV, 31</td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>VIII, 10</td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>I, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>VIII, 10</td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XII, 12; XIV, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>II, 28</td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>VII, 12; XI, 1; XII, 12; XIV, 23; XV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>V, 7; XIII, 15</td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>XV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>IV, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>VI, 7</td>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>XIII, 5</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>II, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>IV, 17; XIII, 14</td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>VII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8-11</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>II, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>I, 14, 16, 20; II, 26; XIII, 13, 23; XV, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>XII, 12; XIV, 22</td>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>XII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>XIV, 23</td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>IV, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>VII, 12</td>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>XII, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>IV, 10</td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>XIII, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>III, 14</td>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>III, 10</td>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>I, 2, 10; II, 1, 15, 32, 33, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>I, 12, 14, 31; II, 3, 20, 28; V, 4; VI, 5; VII, 5</td>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>I, 14, 18, 20, 21, 22; II, 5, 20</td>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>I, 22; III, 20 XIII, 22</td>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>XV, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-11</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I, 29</td>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>I, 13</td>
<td>1:13a</td>
<td>III, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>III, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>IX, 1</td>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>III, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>XV, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>I, 15</td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>II, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>XIII, 19; XV, 37</td>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>XIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15,17</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
<td>12:7.11</td>
<td>XIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>I, 24; VII, 5; XIV, 24</td>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>III, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>IX, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>I, 3; XIII, 24</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>XV, 20, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Trinity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Peter</th>
<th>2:22</th>
<th>XIII, 18</th>
<th>4:16</th>
<th>VIII, 10, 12; XV, 31</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 17</td>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>XV, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>VIII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>IV, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>VII, 4, 6; VIII, 3, 12</td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>IX, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>VIII, 12</td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>I, 9, 22, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>I, 17; II, 28; IV, 5; XII, 22; XIV, 23, 25; XV, 21</td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>VIII, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>VIII, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>XV, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>XV, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 21, 24</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>I, 28, 29, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>VIII, 3</td>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>XV, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 9, 22, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>XV, 44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/5**
Subject Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprung)
(the numbers refer to the particular book and its section)

A

Abraham:
“Now I know that you fear God,” I:23
voice of the Lord; appearance, II:19
three men at the oak of Mambre, II:19-21, 34; III:25
the Lord (i.e. angel) appeared to, III:24-25

Academics, on knowledge, XV:21

Acrobatic feats, IV:14

Action/activity:
foreshadowing joy, by Mary and Martha, I:20
temporal things; knowledge, XII:22

Adam and Eve:
Genesis: God walks/talks with Adam, II:17, 18
seeing God with physical eyes, II:18
hiding from God’s face, II:18
punishment of, XII:13
forbidden fruit, XII:17
sin; reconciliation through second Adam, XIII:21, 23
agriculture, agents in, III:14
Alexandria, VIII:9
allegory (enigma), XV:15

Angel(s):
sovereignties no longer needed, I:16
theophanies and utterances (O.T.), II:21-22; III:6; III:22-27; IV:30, 31
announcer or messenger, II:23
burning bush; angel of the Lord, II:23
representing God in manifestations, III:4
the making of physical manifestations, III:5
knowledge of our bodily changes, III:5
rebel angels, and wizards, III:13
good, do as God commands; bad, as God permits, III:13
divine limitations on good and bad, III:18
divine prohibition (bad angels), III:18
person of God represented by, III:19
marvelous acts, III:20
speaking in person of God; example, III:20
pillars of cloud and fire, III:21
God works through, even bad, angels, III:21
the “Lord” appeared to Abraham, III:25
sometimes called “men,” III:25
law proclaimed by (Stephen), III:26
mortal men made equal to, IV:12
past and future equally present to, IV:22

Wisdom, IV:27
Christ as model for, VII:5
all together do not make one God, VIII:3
time and, XII:10
said to tell God all things, XV:22
see also theophanies

Animals:
outer/inner man and, XII:1 sensing outside bodies, XII:2

Anna, IV:29
annunciation, date of, IV:9
apparitions, demonic, IV:14
appetite, in pursuit of knowledge, IX:18; XII:17

Arians:
substance-wise statements about God, V:4, 7
Christ: power and wisdom of God, VI:1
the Son as not true God, VI:10
ascension: equality with the Father, I:18

The Trinity
The Trinity

attention:
act of recall, XI:6
memory, inner sight, and will, XI:11-12
will, sensation, and memory, XI:14-15
recollection of things in memory, XIV:10
Augustine, Saint:

baptism:
made sons of God by, XII:12
the uncircumcised; the Holy Spirit, XV:35
sent in name of the trinity, XV:51

beauty:
perception of, IX:11
spirit roused by talk of, X:1
knowledge through senses, XIII:4

being:
change and, V:3
as genus or species word, VII:11

birth: beginnings from hidden seed, III:13
blasphemy: against the Son; against the Holy Spirit, I:22
blind, XI:2
bliss, see happiness

body (-ies):
temperies of the Holy Spirit, I:13
perishibility, IV:5
death: being forsaken by spirit, IV:16
size, color, shape, VI:8

covenant with the reader, I:5, 8
tongue and pen driven by Charity, III:1
would rather read than write, III:1
a word to critics, III:2

authority:
holding fast to, IX:1
justice combined with power, XIII:17
awareness, see mind

substance both simple and multiple, VI:8
division; part and whole in, IX:7
its image in our consciousness, IX:16
parts of soul we share even with animals, X:7
part(s) of highest value, X:9
visible; sense of sight, XI:2
limits of sensing set by, XI:14
consciousness, XII:1
traces of spiritual things in, XII:5
sinning against one’s own, XII:15
represented by serpent, not woman, XII:20
live, move, are — in him, XIV:16
see also senses

body and soul:
interaction of, III:15
need of healing and resurrection, IV:5
outer/inner parts of man, XIII:2

books: value of several authors, I:5
buying and selling, XIII:6

Cain, II:18
Carthage, VIII:9
Catholic Church:
judgment day: protection by right faith, I:31
faith: beholding Christ’s back (humanity), II:28
standing on the rock, II:30

cause:
primary and ultimate; example, III:8
visible and changing events, III:8
physical species and motions, III:9
generation of animals, III:15, 17

see also senses

Censure: not feared by lover of truth, II:1

certainty:
things minds know about themselves, X:14

see also knowledge

Volume I/5
The Trinity

chance:
made by God, without change in God, I:3
changeableness, and mortality, II:15
natural causes; will of God, III:19
the changeable and eternity, IV:24
being and, V:3
modifications, V:5
nothing simple; everything created, VI:8
“changeable” must not be thought of God, VIII:3
hope in soul being changeable, XIV:21

caracter:
praiseworthy: memory, understanding, and will, X:17
charity, see love
children: memory, understanding, and will, X:17
Christ, see Jesus Christ
christian life:
hidden with Christ in God, I:16
God inwardly effecting, III:14
partakers in his divinity, IV:4
Paul on how one should live, VIII:13
Christmas: date of [note 31], IV:9
church:
body of Christ, IV:12
house built after the captivity (devil), XV:34
prefigured: Christ anointed with Holy Spirit, XV:46
Cicero:
on the happy life, XIII:8
on four basic virtues, XIV:12
on living in philosophy, XIV:26
circus prodigies, IV:14
City of God, The:
on the soul, XIII:12
cogitation, see thought
commandment(s):
reward for keeping, I:18
eternal life, I:26
common good: self-enjoyment and, XII:17
consciousness:
sense knowledge, IX:16
intention: sense of seeing, XI:2
power of fabricating, XI:8
the outer man, XII:1
raised to highest in spiritual things, XII:1
not common to man and beast, XII:2, 3
found only inside self, XIV:8
faith and, XIV:11
virtues begin in, XIV:12
focus of book XI, XV:5
perceptions through, XV:21, 22
see also mind; thought
contemplation:
mediator will bring us to face to face vision, I:16
promise: eternal perfection, I:17
rejoicing in hope, I:17
reward of faith, I:17
the clean of heart, I:17
inseparability of persons, I:17
I will show myself to him, I:18
believers brought to, I:20
God will be all in all, I:20
of God; eternal life, I:31
eternal things; wisdom, XII:22
wisdom: the light shines in darkness, XIII:2
courage: Cicero on four basic virtues, XIV:12
covetousness:
true love opposed to, VIII:10
creature loved on its own account, IX:13
forsaking better things, XI:8
creation:
scripture’s words, when referring to God, I:2
of things in time, I:3
all things made through the Son/Word, I:9; XV:20
“all things were made through him” (Jn I:3), I:12; IV:3
Genesis: person(s) involved in, II:17
obedience to its maker; theophanies, III:6
God as inmost cause of, III:16
creator: the one who fashions things in their principles, III:18
one creation, one life, IV:3
interlock of, IV:4
the sixth day, IV:7

The Trinity
all should bear witness to creator, IV:25
both Father & Son are called origin, V:14
everlastingly lord, V:17
lower creatures; remote likeness to creator, XII:5
knowing the God who made them, XV:3
creator:
  his nature more excellent than created natures, XIV:16
  ranks above created things, XV:6
creature(s):
  every substance that is not God, I:9

enjoyment of created things, IX:13
all are known by God, XV:22
critics: a word to his readers, III:2
cross: prefigured by Moses’ arms outstretched, IV:20
crucifixion:
  the Lord of glory, in form of a servant, I:28
  “why have you forsaken me,” IV:6
  death; Jesus Christ; redemption
curiosity:
  distinguished from the studious person, X:3, 4

daniel:
  the Son: appearance in physical form, II:33
darkness:
  foolish minds of men, IV:3
  heart: the light shines in darkness, XIII:2
days: calculation, dark to light, IV:10
death:
  serpent stands for, III:20
  decay of the outer man, IV:5
  body and soul; difference, IV:5
  the Lord’s death: model for death of outer man, IV:6
  God as cause, IV:15
  little fear of, IV:15
  man’s inclination: flesh or spirit, IV:15
  companionship of Son of God, IV:17
  way chosen by God to free us from mortality, XIII:13
  devil using our sins to keep us fixed in, XIII:21
defect: finding fault with, IX:16
demons:
  unlike proud people, they cannot die, IV:18
  offer selves as mediators, XIII:22
desire:
  for temporal goods, IX:14
  directed to sensible things, XI:7
  see also covetousness

devil:
  airy body, IV:14
  died in spirit by godlessness, IV:15
  false mediator, IV:15, 18
  deceiver: mediator to death, IV:17
  temptation of Christ, IV:17
  death of the Lord and, IV:17
  in everlasting fire, IV:18
  desire to be worshipped, IV:19
  proudest of all spirits, IV:20
  handed over to, by original sin, XIII:16
  subject to the Almighty, XIII:16
  overcome by God’s justice, XIII:17, 18
  overcome (and man freed from) by Christ’s death, XIII:19, 22
  turned out of hearts; power limited, XIII:20
  undone by a rational creature: the God-man, XIII:22
  conquered by second Adam, XIII:23
  called “captivity which was taken captive,” XV:34
  overcome by blood of the Lamb, XV:44
discernment of spirits, III:18
discipline: meanings, XIV:1
divine persons, see persons; Trinity
divinity: not seen by human sight, I:11
doctrine: “my doctrine is not mine,” I:27
doubt:
Augustine’s goal: overcoming, I:4

things the mind knows with certainty, X:14

use of mind’s faculties, X:14
true/false words, XV:24
doctrine: Pentecostal, II:11
dreams: deluded by images, XI:7

earth:
love for the good things of this earth, VIII:4
Elijah: prayer; drought, III:11
enigma (allegory), XV:15
enjoyment:
use of created things, IX:13
will: things can be enjoyed or used, X:13
using, with actual joy, X:17
equality:
proven from scripture, I:7-13
“did not think it robbery…,” I:12; V:4; VI:5
ascension to the Father, I:18
Son hearkens to us with the Father, I:21
the Son in form of God, I:22
belief in Jesus, as we believe in the Father, I:27
the Son’s substance, no lesser good than the Father’s, I:31
scripture: substance of Father and Son, II:3
work of Father and Son is indivisible, II:3
the form-of-God rule, II:4
greater: one who sends; one is sent, II:7
three men at the oak of Mambre, II:20
the one sent (Son) and sender (Father), IV:26
Christ: power and wisdom of God, VI:1
in virtues, VI:6
Father and Son: same substance, VI:6
wisdom and charity in God, VI:7
one is as much as three together, VI:11
no single person is less than the trinity itself, VIII:1
when complete: mind, knowledge, love, IX:4
focus of book I, XV:5
man: in nature never equal to God, XV:26
error:
three types, thinking about God, I:1
remembering sensed thing falsely, XI:17
eternal life:
the Father’s word and commandment, I:26
the Son: begotten to unchangeable life, I:26
“he who listens to my word…,” I:30
sight not granted to the wicked, I:30
answer to young man asking about achieving, I:31
contemplation of God; everlasting joy, I:31
to know the one true God, I:31
the changeable and faith, IV:24
truth abides: immortal, imperishable, unchanging, IV:24
truth and faith, IV:24
eucharist:
unique sign, III:10
infants’ knowledge of the celebration, III:21
Eunomius (heretic), XV:38
Eve, see Adam and Eve
existence: no thing brings itself into, I:1
Exodus, The:
theophanies, II:23-27, 32
eyes, see seeing; sight

faith:
vigor of mind, I:4
love: through faith, to sight, I:21

beholding Christ’s back (humanity), II:28
resurrection of Christ gives value to, II:29
temporal/eternal things and, IV:24
things done in time for our sakes, IV:24
becomes truth by seeing, IV:24
following Christ; four stages, IV:24
“unless you believe…,” VII:12
firm assent, even if understanding is unclear, VIII:1
believing (hoping, loving) what it cannot yet see, VIII:6
fabrications of imagination, VIII:7
physical appearance irrelevant to, VIII:7
fabrication; false beliefs, VIII:8
help in knowing and loving God, VIII:13
certainty of, initiates knowledge, IX:1
acceptance of historical events, XIII:2
in things that are false, XIII:3
seen, with certainty, in the heart, XIII:3, 5
meaning not perceived by bodily sense, XIII:4
a thing of heart, not of bodily sense, XIII:5
comes by hearing, XIII:5
each has his own consciousness of, XIII:5
necessary in this mortal life, XIII:10
promise of immortality, XIII:12
necessary for happiness of body and soul, XIII:25
works through love, XIII:26
leads to true happiness, XIV:3
temporal thing, XIV:3
to be replaced by sight, XIV:4
retaining, observing, loving, XIV:5
in our (temporal only) consciousness, XIV:5
recollection: image hidden in memory, XIV:5
consciousness and, XIV:11
seeking God, XV:2
can have, without love, XV:32
purifies hearts, XV:44
fall of man: happiness not remembered, XIV:21
family, as a trinity, XII:5, 8
fancies:
desiring covetously, XI:8
memory and thought in, XI:17
Father:
distinct person, I:7
he alone, addressing his Son, I:7, 8
as greater than the Son, I:14
greater than Son (in form of servant), I:15
Philip, “whoever has seen me…,” I:17
Son shall tell you openly about Father, I:21
the Father’s doctrine is his Word, I:27
all judgment given to the Son, I:29, 30
the getting of being, II:2
“He gave the Son life,” II:4
nowhere said to have been sent, II:8
not sent; physical manifestations, II:12
delusions re texts on the Father
“alone,” II:14-15
appearing visibly to human eyes, II:18
voice at baptism & transfiguration of Jesus, II:18
the invisible and only God, II:20
scriptures: never found as “being sent,” II:22
never appeared to the patriarchs, II:32
never presented in bodily guise, II:34
said to have sent, not to have been sent, III:3
as known by someone in time, IV:28
source of all godhead, IV:29
voice heard, after the incarnation, IV:31
begetter of his own attributes, VI:2-3
wisdom begotten by, VI:2, 3
begetter of greatness, VI:3
as “greater,” VI:5
Arians: only true God, VI:10
Hilary on eternity in, VI:11
called so, with reference to Son, VII:1
question: powerful or wise, taken singly, VII:1
Christ: power of God, wisdom of God (text), VII:1-2, 4
as not wise with himself, but with the Son, XV:12
senses of Word of God and, XV:22
alone is called unbegotten, XV:47
see also God; persons; Trinity
The Trinity

fear:
senses shrinking from sensible things, XI:7

fire:
Pentecostal, II:11
Mount Sinai manifestation; Pentecost, II:26

flesh (a term for “man”), II:11

form:
observed by eye of the mind, IX:12
true knowledge of things, IX:12
observing and loving, X:2
begotten by visible object, XI:3

luminous body, changing colors, XI:4
likeness remains in memory, XI:6
things stored in memory, XI:13

friends:
analogy: knowledge and knower, IX:6

future:
philosophers, prophets, and historians, IV:21-22
foretelling: angels and the airy powers, IV:22
philosophers are not to be consulted, IV:23
guess at, from past things, XV:13

G

invisibly produces visible and sensible effects, III:10
the one creator, III:18
physical objects sometimes represent God’s person, III:19
unchangeable substance, therefore invisible, III:21
hearts purified, to see substance of, III:26
longing for God, IV:1
unchangeable: eternity, truth, will, IV:1
extent of his love for us, IV:2
cannot be measured by changeable things, V:1
think about always, V:1
accidental predications [Aristotle’s], V:2
substance or being, V:3
no modifications in, V:3, 5
unchangeable, V:5
nothing said of him modification-wise, V:6
substance-wise references to himself, V:7, 9
“you alone are the great God,” V:9
metaphors of time, place, etc., V:9
the one God is a trinity, V:9
predications about, V:11
his loving “temporally” is unthinkable, V:17
lord of time, V:17
past and future in, V:17
relationship modifications, V:17
said to be “angry,” V:17
Father of power and wisdom, VI:1, 2
virtues: simple multiplicity, VI:6
called great in multiple ways, VI:8
the trinity as only true God, VI:10
greatness of, not separate from being
God, VII:1
cause of his being, VII:2
to be, the same as to be wise, VII:2
truth in thinking/talking about, VII:7
being: I am who I am, VII:10
improperly called substance, VII:10
to be is to subsist, VII:10
able to know what he is not, VIII:3
godless:
getting further away from him who
alone can satisfy, X:7
forgetting God, as forgetting one’s
own life, XIV:17
result: weakness, darkness, XIV:18
light in the heart of man, XIV:21
transformed from, XV:14
love for:
divine causality, III:14
for the good things of this earth,
VIII:4
no changeable goods, without the
unchangeable good, VIII:5
failing to love the good that makes
things good, VIII:5
using/enjoying things badly, X:13
likeness to the highest good, XI:8
abstaining from evil, in time, XII:22
wisdom and knowledge, XII:22
God: source of goods making men
happy, XIII:10
devil imitated: devoted to power, not
justice, XIII:17
evils remain, after forgiveness of
[original] sin, XIII:20
making good use of evil, XIII:20
all works together for, for those who
love God, XIII:20
see also happiness; sin
good example:
building up one’s neighbor, II:28
good person:
good things from good treasure of his
heart, I:31
love for, even if never seen, X:1
good will: perversion of, XIII:17
good works:
rest, the eternal reward for, I:20
words from the heart, IX:14
services of mercy, XII:11
government:
chain of beings; hierarchy, III:9
The Trinity

Volume I/5

human affairs in hands of wise men, III:9

grace:
gratis: voluntary rain, IV:2 sons of God by, XIII:12
knowledge and, XIII:24
greatness:
predication, V:11
the equally true must be equally great, VIII:2
greed: root of all evils, XII:14
Greek works, III:1
guilt: purged by Christ’s death, IV:17

happiness:
fullness of, I:18
following God-made-man, VII:5
final end, XI:10
sequence of wills as ladder to, XI:10
loved, but not known, by all, XIII:7
variety of wishes re, XIII:7
in bodily pleasures, XIII:7
unhappiness from bad will, XIII:8
definition of the happy man, XIII:8-9
philosophers on the happy life, XIII:8, 10
having the good things wanted; not wanting
anything bad, XIII:9, 10, 11
eternal, XIII:10
waiting in hope of, XIII:10
adversity, XIII:10
immortality and, XIII:11
unhappy: not loving one’s life, XIII:11
all have desire for, XIII:11, 25
everlasting, XIII:12
wishing well and being able to do what you wish, XIII:17
eternal and temporal things, XIV:3
Cicero on four basic virtues, XIV:12
sin, and God’s justice, XIV:21
before the fall of man, XIV:21
men living in philosophy (Cicero), XIV:26

harmonia (the word), IV:4
hate: loving evil, is hating self, XIV:18
head: analogy with mind, IX:6
health, IV:24
hearing: love commonly results from, X:1
heart:
blessed are the clean of heart, I:17, 31
the blessed clean of heart, will see God, I:28, 30, 31

good things from good treasure of his heart, I:31
fancies of, IV:1
words from the heart, IV:6; IX:14
justice: light in the heart of man, XIV:21
seeking the Lord always, XV:2
what comes from the “mouth” of, XV:18
heaven:
will of God presiding in, III:9
direct contemplation of divine persons, XV:45
see also contemplation; eternal life
heretics:
use of the scriptures, I:6
only the Father is God, II:23
unbelievers in the Church, II:30
Hilary, on the trinity, VI:11
historians:
philosophers and the future, IV:21
history:
knowledge in awareness of, XIII:2
Holy Spirit:
distinct person, I:7
form of a dove, I:8
problem of begetting of, I:8
bodies as temples of, I:13
consubstantial and co-eternal, I:13
God, not creature, I:13
Spirit of truth, I:18
will teach you all truth, I:18
abode, along with Father and Son, I:19
advocate to be with you, I:19
“I shall send him to you,” I:25
“the Father will send in my name,” I:25
he will not speak from himself, II:5
neither a son, nor begotten, II:5
proceeds from the Father, II:5
The Trinity

glorifying the Father, II:6
the virgin birth, II:9
form of a dove, II:10, 11
created form not assumed by, II:11
sent; physical manifestations, II:12;
III:3; IV:30
as angel, II:23
Mount Sinai manifestation; Pentecost,
II:26
sent to the world (where he already
was), III:3
gift of knowledge (note 3), IV:1
not the Father’s and the Son’s, IV:29
not yet given (Jn VII:39), IV:29
procession of, IV:29
only person called gift of God, IV:29;
 XV:29, 33-36
manifestations, after the incarnation,
IV:31
called the gift of God, V:12
Spirit of both Father and Son, V:12,
13; VI:7; XV:27, 37
right to be called origin, V:14
to each is given a manifestation of,
V:14
Father and Son as origin, V:15
Spirit of Elijah, V:15
why not a Son also, V:15
being-gift by being given, V:16
proceeds from eternity, V:16
as gift, and as donation, V:17
unity and equality of substance, VI:7
as wisdom, VII:6
re being called Son, IX:17
as mother of the Son, XII:5
charity of God poured into our hearts,
XIII:14
mission: focus of books II-IV, XV:5
distinctively named charity, XV:29, 31
abiding in God, XV:31
love which is from God and is God,
 XV:32
nothing more excellent than this gift
of God, XV:32
gifts/endowments given through,
 XV:32, 34
living water, XV:33
distribution of, XV:34
speaking with tongues, XV:35
co-eternal with the Father, XV:36
not alone in being God-charity, XV:37
best fits name: will of God, XV:38
like him: will, love or esteem, XV:41
given by the Son, XV:45
given through laying on of hands,
 XV:46
sent from heaven by the Son, XV:46
proceeds from Father and Son, XV:47-
48
proceeds from the Father, XV:50
see also Pentecost; persons; Trinity
hope: eternal contemplation of God, I:17
human body, see body
human condition:
weakness; longing for God, IV:1
seeking eternity, truth, happiness, IV:2
men by nature; not just by sin, IV:4
see also death; sin
human mind, see mind humility:
look at self in God’s light, IV:1
love brought to perfection in, IV:2
made weak by being humbled, IV:2
Christ vs devil, IV:13
example of the Magi, IV:15
borne on the wood of the cross, IV:20
of the incarnation, VIII:7
Jesus: learn of me…, VIII:11
image of God:
made by the Father through the Son,
VII:5
refashioning, VII:5
let us [plural] make man, VII:12
similarity, not equality, VII:12
seeing the image in ourselves, IX:2
man as image of the trinity, IX:2;
 XII:6-8
the outer man (senses), XI:1
realized in father-mother-child, XII:8-
9
man or woman as, XII:9-10
woman with her husband, XII:10
no bodily sex in, XII:12
rational mind as, XII:12
preserved only when facing him,
 XII:16
attributed to the man only, XII:19
to be found in human soul, XIV:5, 6

Volume I/5
reform: turning to the Lord, XIV:22
full knowledge, with full vision, XIV:24
from blurred form to clear one, XV:14
being transformed into, XV:14, 21
word of man; Word of God, XV:20
memory, understanding, will, XV:39
see also trinities
images (perceptions):
mind hooked on bodily images, X:11
knowledge through senses, XIII:4
retained in memory, XIV:5
imagination:
fabricating physical features, VIII:7
desiring covetously, XI:8
immoderation, IX:15
immortality:
unchangingness, I:2, 10 partakers in life everlasting, I:10 “who alone has immortality,” I:11
controversy: Jesus pre-incarnation, II:15 invisible and unchangeable divine substance, II:16
happiness and, XIII:11
human reasoning, XIII:12
cease to desire; patiently wait, XIII:17
image of the Son, XIV:24
perfected on the last day, XIV:25
incarnation:
the Son alone, I:7, 8
true mediator, III:26; IV:12-19
his death as model, IV:6
his death as sacrifice [note 18], IV:6
materialistic thoughts about, IV:6
not to touch, until he has ascended, IV:6
burial; the new tomb, IV:9
death: 3 days in tomb, IV:9-10
consubstantial equality, IV:12
death: amazement of those present, IV:16
true mediator of life, IV:17
effects of his death on mankind, IV:17
death: doing the Father’s will, XIII:18
the devil overpowered by his death, XIII:18
crucified as man, rose as God, XIII:18
death for justice’s sake, XIII:18
power: rising from the dead, XIII:18
sin; reconciliation through second Adam, XIII:21
why should his death not have happened? XIII:21
no sin ever, XIII:23
treasures of wisdom and knowledge, XIII:24
power and wisdom: focus of book VI, XV:5, 9
thought of as blaspheming, XV:17
as man, received the Holy Spirit, XV:46
born of the Holy Spirit, XV:46
see also crucifixion; incarnation; persons; redemption; resurrection; Son of God; Word of God
Job: tested, III:12
John, apostle, evangelist:
on brotherly charity, VIII:12
beginning of his gospel (I:1-14), XIII:2
John the Baptist:
filled with Holy Spirit, IV:29; XV:46
historicity, XIII:2
witness to the light, XIII:4
joy:
foreshadowing by Mary and Martha, I:20
contemplation of God; eternal life, I:31
see also enjoyment
judgment day:
“it is not I that will judge,” I:26, 27
the Lord of glory, crucified, I:28
“I in turn will love him,” I:28
handing over the kingdom, I:28
the wicked will see him in form of man, I:28, 30
the Son of man will not judge, I:29
the Son in form of man, I:29, 30
the Son: visible to good and bad alike, I:30
the judge will not seem good to the wicked, I:31
“come, blessed of my Father,” I:31
“go into everlasting fire,” I:31
faith in the Catholic Church, I:31
our supreme good: sight of God, I:31
image of God perfected on, XIV:25
justice:
beauty of mind, VIII:9
knowing what “just” is, VIII:9
definition of a just mind, VIII:9
love men (neighbor) because of justice, VIII:9
form we judge by found in God, VIII:13
one loving perfectly is already just, IX:14
a property of good will, XIII:17
devil imitated: devoted to power, not justice, XIII:17
immortal, XIV:12
divine, XIV:15
meriting happiness, XIV:21
turning from light in the heart of man, XIV:21
justification:
justified in his blood, XIII:15, 18, 21
see also redemption

Volume I/5
The Trinity

K

kingdom of God:
handing over, to the Father, I:15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 21
Daniel: the Father giving, the Son receiving, II:33
know thyself, X:12
knowing oneself: beauty of, X:5
knowledge:
value, IV:1
certainty completed after this life, IX:1
equal with mind, when complete, IX:4
greater than the body known, IX:4
specific or generic, IX:9
a word, or only loved knowledge, IX:15
likeness to the thing known, IX:16
of quality, IX:16
ourselves made better by knowing God, IX:16
knowable, but not yet known, IX:18
preceded by inquisitiveness, IX:18
thing known co-generates knowledge of itself, IX:18
appetite for learning, IX:18
what mind knows, the whole of it knows, X:6
hankering after temporal things, XII:16

of changeable things, XII:17, 25
good within its proper limits, XII:21
necessary for virtue, XII:21
action; temporal things, XII:22
distinguished from wisdom, XII:23, 24;
XIII:2; XIV:11
conscious reasoning; sense images, XIII:4
grace and, XIII:24
of things human, XIV:3
only possible in the mind, XIV:8
needed, in temporal life, XIV:10, 13
knowables beget knowledge, XIV:13
man’s wisdom (Cicero), XIV:26
knowing something as true, XV:17
a word is born from, XV:19
certainty of being alive, XV:21
innumerable numbers, XV:21
two kinds of perceptions, XV:21
human: can be both lost and acquired, XV:22
for man: not the same to be as to know, XV:24
called word even before being formed, XV:25
everlasting, in the mind, XV:25
see also trinities

L

life:
God animates all things as they are born, III:11
forms; seed, III:13
life everlasting, see immortality
light:
Wisdom: brightness of eternal light, IV:27
God is (spiritual) light, VII:4
image of God, VII:5
not in God, not in light, VIII:12
literature, and truth, XIV:9
logic:
genus/species names, VII:7-8, 11
inadequacy of human speech, VII:9

The Trinity
look of the body: four “looks” brought to light, XI:16
Lot, two angels came to, II:21-22
love:
keeping the commandments, I:18
for us, by the three persons, I:21
through faith, to sight, I:21
building up one’s neighbor, II:28
yearning to behold God, II:28
brought to perfection in humility, IV:2
persuaded of God’s love for us, IV:2
substance of God, VI:7
for God, as being good itself, VIII:4
for good things of this earth, VIII:4
failing to love the good that makes things good, VIII:5
clinging to this good (God) in love, VIII:6
loving God before one knows him, VIII:6
believing the trinity which we do not know, VIII:8
what one believes but does not see, VIII:9
form and truth which the one loving sees in self, VIII:9
love men (neighbor) because of justice, VIII:9
loving oneself unjustly, VIII:9
ture love vs covetousness, VIII:10
abiding in God, VIII:10
definition of true love, VIII:10
scripture sometimes refers to only one love command, VIII:10
of God and neighbor (commands), VIII:10; XIV:18
cause of not seeing God: not loving brother, VIII:12
charity herself loved, VIII:12
God understood in brotherly charity, VIII:12
trinity seen in, VIII:12
our brother as ourselves, VIII:12
the two commandments cannot exist alone, VIII:12
unites good angels and men in bond of holiness, VIII:12
three: the lover, being loved, love, VIII:14; IX:2
what does loving itself mean? IX:2
with mind, one spirit, IX:2
in the knowledge of the lover, IX:8
kindled when hearing of great acts, IX:11
for creatures, related to creator, IX:13
as image or word, IX:17
mind does not beget love of itself, IX:18
for something quite unknown, X:1, 2, 3, 4
mind loves the very knowing of “know thyself,” X:5
involved with senses of the flesh, X:7
deserving, X:17
of body-seen; alienation, XI:9
of something not known, but only believed, XIII:26
command to love neighbor as self, XIV:18
straight, when God is loved, XIV:18
for things beneath mind, XIV:20
transferring: temporal to eternal, XIV:23
God is charity; love is God, XV:27, 28, 31, 37
nothing, if without love, XV:32
primordial function of memory, XV:41
human: likeness to the Holy Spirit, XV:43
see also covetousness; trinities

M
a triad cannot be called one man, XV:43
see also body; human condition; image of God; senses; soul

Martha and Mary, I:20
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
filled with Holy Spirit, IV:29

Volume I/5
physical appearance, VIII:7
materialism:
notions re God’s Word and Wisdom, II:14
mediator:
true: Jesus; false: devil, IV:13-19
see also Jesus Christ; Son of God
memory:
images stored in, IX:10, 11
self-awareness of remembering, X:13
image of divine trinity in the mind, X:17-19
thought; recollection, XI:6
memory, inner sight, and will, XI:11-12
gives light on things looked at in thoughts, XI:14
will, sensation, and attention, XI:14-15
remembering sensed thing falsely, XI:17
measure, XI:18
thoughts committed to, XII:23
false memories; dreams, XII:24
knowledge through senses, XIII:4
a confidential file of awareness, XIV:8
as limited to things past, XIV:14
foreseeing by (not by foresight), XV:13
knowledge and, XV:40
a likeness to the Father, XV:43
see also trinities
mercy: good works, XII:11
methheglin (the word), X:2
mind:
purification necessary, to see God, I:3
vigor through faith, I:4
darkness; foolish minds of men, IV:3
chief part of man, VI:10
its beauty cannot be seen, VIII:9
we know others from knowing our own, VIII:9
we know what (our) mind is, VIII:9
a just mind: seeing the inner truth, VIII:9
loving itself, IX:2
with love, one spirit, IX:2
must know itself in order to love, IX:3
knowledge, when it knows itself, IX:4, 6
love, when it loves itself, IX:4, 6
love and knowledge in, substantially, IX:5, 6
wholeness; knowing/loving itself completely, IX:7
change, with new knowledge, IX:11
word joined to mind with love, IX:15
as cause of its love of itself, IX:17
begets knowledge of itself, IX:18;
XIV:7
can know itself as in a mirror, X:5
love, when seeking to know itself, X:5
knows itself to be mind, X:6
commanded to know itself, X:7, 13, 16
tinking of itself as if it were a body, X:8
conceived of as a mortal, X:9
looks for things looked for by senses, X:10
used to being with bodily images, X:11
looking for itself as if it were absent, X:11
looking for/finding itself, X:11
things known with certainty, X:14
as substance; as subject, X:15
knows itself, even when looking for itself, X:16
rational performance of bodily/temporal actions, XII:3
looking for a trinity in, XII:4
image of God, XII:4, 12, 15, 20; XV:5
reaching for the eternal, XII:10
common nature of man, woman, XII:12
awareness: in temporal/eternal matters, XIII:1
awarenesses in, XIV:9; XV:18
inner-memory, -understanding, -will, XIV:10
chief capacity: knowing God, XIV:11
live, move, are — in him, XIV:16, 21
always remembers, understands, loves itself, XIV:18, 19
possessions, treasures, XIV:19
changeable, XV:10
image of the trinity, XV:11
pre-eminent in the soul, XV:11
power to see invisible things, XV:49
see also attention; consciousness; thought; trinities

The Trinity
ministry:
Paul on how God’s ministers should live, VIII:13

miracles:
- signs of divine power, III:11
- staff of Moses into serpent, III:11
- water into wine, III:11
- wonderful works of God, III:11
- witchcraft, III:12
- tell us something about God, III:19

mirror:
enigma: we see now through a mirror..., XV:14, 16, 21, 44

missions:
Old Testament theophanies, II:1-35
going forth from the Father, into the world, II:7
greater: one who sends; one is sent, II:7
sendings of Son and Holy Spirit, II:7-11
Son/Holy Spirit sent to where they already are, II:8
sent by the Father; yet, he sent himself, II:9
form of servant; form of God, II:9
sent: the one who appeared in the flesh, II:9
Son sent by Father and his Word, II:9
outward sights, II:10
symbolic actions (O.T.), II:11
questions re Holy Spirit’s physical manifestations, II:12
O.T., the Son and Holy Spirit, II:13
from world of spirit into public gaze, III:3
persons: O.T. manifestations, III:3
Son and Spirit in Old Testament, III:4

natural history:
- study, by philosophers, IV:21
natural phenomena:
- none is independent of God’s will, III:7
nature:
- serves the divine command, III:7
- phenomena as work of God, III:11

use of physical creatures for bodily guise, III:4
the one sent (Son) equal to the sender (Father), IV:26, 32
Son not sent because Father is greater, IV:27

moderation:
Cicero on four basic virtues, XIV:12
modification (the term), V:5
modifications:
- separable/inseparable, V:5
- whatever can be lost or diminished, V:6
relationship terms in God, V:17

Moses:
mision: lead people out of Egypt, II:23
Mount Sinai: the ten commandments, II:25-26
the Lord spoke to Moses face to face, II:27
favor in God’s sight, II:28
rod into serpent; meaning, III:20
appearance called both angel and Lord, III:24
belief in (Christ), III:26
cross prefigured by arms outstretched, IV:20
Spirit given to, V:15

Mount Sinai: the ten commandments, II:25-26

mouth:
- word from the heart, IX:14
- man defiled by what comes out of, XV:18
- of the body; of the heart, XV:18
music: fix in memory, XII:23

primary and secondary causes in,
- III:16-17
normal course of, III:19
sameness of nature and being in, VI:4
contemplation of (Cicero), XIV:12
needs: ministering; good works, I:20
neighbor: scripture on command to love,
- II:28; VIII:9, 10, 12; XIV:18
numbers, innumerable, XI:12; XV:21

Volume I/5
Volume I/5

numerical harmony:
  number 3, IV:10
  number 4 & 40, IV:7-8, 10
  number 6, IV:7-8, 10

obedience:
  reward of Christ’s obedience unto death, XIII:22
Old Testament:
  books included in “the law,” XV:30
  see also prophets; theophanies
omnipotence:
  humility of the incarnation, VIII:7
  omnipresence of God, II:7

original justice:
  carnal desires in paradise, XIII:23
original sin:
  handed over to devil’s power, XIII:16
  evils remain, after forgiveness of sin, XIII:20
outer man: recollection, XII:1
  see also body

paradise: as physical locality, II:18
passover: lamb slain at, III:26
patience: comes to us from God, XV:27
Paul, Saint, apostle:
  his knowledge of the people he taught, I:23
  proclaiming Jesus Christ, III:10
  why we love him, VIII:8, 9, 13
  a just mind, VIII:9
  mission given to, by Christ, XIII:19
Pentecost:
  the Holy Spirit alone, I:7, 8
  a violent wind; tongues as of fire, II:10, 11
  speaking in languages, IV:29
  given from heaven, XV:46
perfection: pressing on intently for, IX:1
persons:
  distinction of, in one God, I:7
  inseparable; work inseparably, I:7-8, 12, 15
  God and human bodies, I:13
  abode with those who love, and keep commandments, I:18
  each suffices by himself, I:18
  scripture shows one is from, not less, than other, II:3
  Holy Spirit, the Father also, glorifies Son, II:6
  presence everywhere (O.T. texts), II:7
  controversy re immortality, II:15
  invisible and unchangeable substance, II:16

voices heard by Adam, II:18
  the name “Lord,” II:19
  burning bush; angel of the Lord, II:23
  Mount Sinai: which person is not clear, II:26
  seeing, with the physical eye, II:27
  having been sent does not affect equality, III:3; IV:32
  acting through angels, III:26
  sender and sent are one, IV:29
  the Spirit of God is one, IV:29
  separate names; cannot be said as one, IV:30
  relationship-wise differences, V:6, 9, 11
  begetter, begotten and unbegotten (terms), V:7, 8
  trinitarian logic, V:8
  adding up in all three, to a singular, V:9
  “I and the Father are one,” V:10
  called both holy and spirit, V:12
  relationship-wise predication, V:14
  “in the beginning was the Word,” VI:3
  always in each other; never alone, VI:9
  supreme equality of, VI:10
  bounded or determined by each other, VI:11
  each in all, and all are one, VI:11
  Father, image, gift, VI:11
  called “Father,” “Son” with reference to each other, VII:2
  one being, one God, VII:6

The Trinity
The Trinity

terminology of Greeks and Latins, VII:7
genus/species names, VII:7-8
inadequacy of human terminology, VII:9
why we say “three persons,” VII:11
no one excels in greatness, VIII:2
partaking in the redemption, XIII:15
on being “greater,” (book VIII), XV:5
memory, understanding, will, XV:12
wisdom, understanding, memory, XV:12
each sees all things together, XV:23
all together: one charity, XV:28
wisdom of God, XV:29
intervals of time in processions of, XV:45
distinguishing generation from procession, XV:48
see also equality; missions; predication; processions; Trinity
Peter, apostle: boldly preaching Christ, II:30
Philip, apostle: "whoever has seen me"…, IV:26
philosophers:
  ridiculing Christ, IV:20-21
  historians and the future, IV:21
  not to be consulted re the future, IV:23
  calling themselves wise…, IV:23
  on the happy life, XIII:8, 10
  disbelief; without the mediator, XIII:24
  the term, since Pythagoras, XIV:2
  without faith, insufficient for happiness, XIV:26
  piety, XIV:1
pillars of cloud and fire, III:21
plagues of Egypt, III:12
Plato: on the soul, XII:24
pledge (the word), V:13
power:
  taking pleasure in, VIII:11
  devil imitated: devoted to power, not justice, XIII:17
  limited in this life, XIII:17
  desire power over your faults, XIII:17
  a triad without being triple (book VII), XV:5
praise:
  flattery, II:1
  wanted by all people, XIII:6
prayer to the trinity, XV:51
preaching:
  both good men and bad men can preach, III:14
predication:
  affirmations and denials, V:8
  substantive and relative, V:8, 11
  of each person by himself, VII:1
  of relationship, VII:2
presumption:
  holders of false presumptions, II:1
pride:
  devil: death, IV:13
  value the devil more than Christ, IV:18
  ashamed of the cross, IV:20
  greatness of this vice, IV:20
  obstacle to cleaving to God, XIII:22
priest: sacrifice for sin, IV:19
private property: greedy for more, XII:14
processions:
  love is God, XV:31
  intervals of time in, XV:45
  timeless, XV:47
  with no change in nature, XV:47
prophets:
  sometimes represent God’s person, III:19
  expression “says the Lord” used by, III:25
  foretelling the future, IV:22
  true piety of, IV:23
  O.T.: can include the psalms, XV:30
psalms: included with the prophets, XV:30
punishment: cause: deserts of the crime, IV:15
pure in heart:
  blessed: they shall see God, VIII:6
purification:
  of mind, to see God, I:3
  by one’s own power, IV:20
  adaptation to eternal things by temporal means, IV:24
Pythagoras, XIV:2

Volume I/5
quality: positive knowledge of, IX:16

reader(s): covenant with, I:5
reason:
  role in temporal affairs, XII:13
  knowledge of changeable things, XII:17
recollection:
  conscious attention to memory, XI:6
  will acting on attention, XI:8
  memory, inner sight, and will, XI:12
redemption:
  Christ died for us, still sinners, IV:2
  the many saved by the One, IV:11
  chains of many sins broken by Christ’s death, IV:17
  God chose to suffer death, XIII:13
  reconciliation through death of the Son, XIII:14, 21
  the Father did not spare the Son, XIII:15
  primacy of justice over power, XIII:17, 18
  devil overcome (and man freed from) by Christ’s death, XIII:19
  incarnation: way chosen by God, XIII:23
relationship:
  each being is something besides the relationship, VII:2
  being and subsisting, VII:9
  use of the plural, VII:12; VIII:1
remembering:

Sabellius, VII:9
sacrament: Word become flesh, IV:27
sacrifice:
  evil spirits and true sacrifice, IV:19
  four elements in each, IV:19
  offered for purification of human faults, IV:19
  one true mediator, IV:19

memory, inner sight, and will, XI:11-12
previous incarnations, XII:24
renewal:
  put on the new man, XIV:22
  reform: turning to the Lord, XIV:22
  stages; day by day progress, XIV:23, 25
see also spiritual life
repentance:
  soul resuscitated by, IV:5
  crucifixion of the inner man, IV:6
  cry for pity, XIV:18
resurrection (of Christ):
  Christ wants us to believe, II:29
  faith in, saves and justifies, II:29
  afterwards, many believed, II:31
  Christ bestowed two resurrections on us, IV:6
  model for our bodies’ resurrection, IV:6
  sacrament of our inner resurrection, IV:6
  called to new life, justified, IV:17
resurrection of the body:
  through his Spirit, IV:5
  pre-enacted by Christ, IV:6, 11
  end of the world, XIV:23
  image of the Son, XIV:24
resurrection of the dead:
  Jesus, mediator of life, IV:15
  faulted by philosophers, IV:21

sagacity: Cicero on four basic virtues, XIV:12, 14
saints:
  sharing in the selfsame, III:8
  demons and, IV:14
  loved, and predestined, by God, V:17
salvation: giver and receiver, V:15
salvator (the word), XIII:14

The Trinity
The Trinity

use of words taken from corporeal things, I:2
heretics’ use of, I:6
language: common human usage, I:23
see also theophanies
security: loss of sense of, X:7
seed: forms of life, III:13
seeing:
most excellent of the senses, XI:1
a trinity in the act of, XI:2
thing seen, the sight, conscious intention, XI:2
will to see has sight as its end, XI:10
see also sight
seeking God:
error: forsaking God’s inward presence, VIII:11
faith seeks, understanding finds, XV:2
self:
not knowing, not thinking, of self, X:7
loving, hating, XIV:18
self-enjoyment: a private good, XII:17
selfsame (the term), III:8
sending, see missions
senses/sensation:
images absorbed by, IX:10, 11
mind looks for things looked for by senses,
X:10
sensation divided in five parts, XI:1
analogies of the trinity in, XI:1-17
conscious soul and body senses, XI:2
necessary for memory of anything bodily, XI:14
material things, XII:17
power, in men and in animals, XII:20
knowledge through, XIII:4
the outer man (book XI), XV:5
perceptions through, XV:21
serpent:
stands for death, III:20
sensation represented by serpent, not woman, XII:20
sex: when not required for procreation, XIII:23
sex differences:
head-covering: man, woman, XII:12
man represents mind; woman, sensation, XII:20
sight:
visible form impressed on eyes, XI:2
visible object; seeing subject, XI:3
seeing double flame of candle, XI:4
role of will in sight, XI:5
form of body from which it is produced, XI:9
partly spiritual, XI:9
resting place of the will, XI:10
will, sensation, and attention, XI:14-15
sensation of, from external body,
XI:16
remembering sensed thing falsely, XI:17
number, XI:18
brutish, without mind, XIV:19
sign: hearing an unknown sign, X:2
Simeon, IV:29
sin:
few care about not sinning, IV:15
our death; Christ’s death, IV:15
road to death, IV:15
sacrifice for sin, IV:19
weight of love of temporal things,
IV:24
words from the heart, IX:14
list of objectives, XII:14
seeks to obtain things sensed through body, XII:15
in thought or in deed, XII:17-18
commission; remission, XIII:16
enemies of justice, XIII:21
singing: harmony, IV:4
Son of God:
distinct person, I:7
life everlasting, I:10
as servant: the Father’s inferior, I:14
equality: the form of God, I:14-21
“emptied himself; form of a servant,”
I:14, 18, 20, 21, 22, 31; II:20
the “Father is greater than I,” I:15, 18
the “Son himself shall be made subject….” I:15, 20
Holy Spirit will teach you all truth,
I:18
sufficing us, by himself, I:18
differing in substance, I:20
Jesus, in form of God, I:22
the Spirit of the Lord is upon me, I:22
Volume I/5

form of God; form of a servant, I:22, 24
glorifies his saints, I:24
whom he justified, them he also
 glorified, I:24
as judge on the last day, I:26
“ I speak just the Father told me,” I:26
begotten to unchangeable life, I:26
life in himself, I:26
the word the Son has spoken judges,
 I:26
“have not spoken as from myself,”
 I:26
texts: the Father has “given” to the
 Son, I:29
all judgment given to, I:29, 30
life in himself, I:30
the getting of being, II:2
God from God, II:2
lesser as to changeable human
 substance, II:3
birth in eternity (from the Father), II:3
doing only what he saw the Father
doing, II:3, 5
the form-of-God rule: equal to, yet
from, the Father, II:4
in form of servant: can do nothing of
himself, II:5
He was in the world (Jn I:10-11), II:7
mission: made of a woman, II:8
called a rock, II:11
God and man, II:11
lamb of God, II:11
held to be mortal before incarnation,
 II:15
said to be visible before incarnation,
 II:15
as having appeared to Abraham, II:20
back visible; face invisible, II:31
visible, in form of servant, II:31
appearance to Daniel in physical form,
 II:33 sent to the world (where he
already was), III:3
purpose: by faith to lead us to his
 truth, IV:24
purpose of his mission, IV:25
mission in this world, IV:30
“begotten” means the same as “son,”
 V:8
coeternal with the Father, VI:1, 3
“God from God, light from light,”
 VI:3
only the Son is Christ, VI:10
as Word, as Wisdom, VII:3
mercy: became man for us, XIII:12
Word made flesh, XIII:24
mission: focus of books II-IV, XV:5
called the Word, not thought, of God,
 XV:25
only person called Word of God,
 XV:29
“Son of his charity,” XV:37
begotten by will of God, XV:38
see also Jesus Christ; Wisdom; Word
of God
Son of man:
 will judge by his authority as Son of
 God, I:28, 30
power to do judgment, II:3
assumed by Word of God, II:11
soothsayers, IV:22, 23
sorrow: longing for God, IV:1
soul:
differing in substance, I:20
spiritual substance; invisible, II:14, 16
divine will uses the just and the bad
for his purposes, III:8
sharing in changeless wisdom, III:8
body’s life; changeable, IV:3
ungodliness as death of, IV:5
godless; returned to life, IV:5
death: why have you forsaken me,
 IV:6
lives more when it is wise, V:5
spirit received so as to be man, V:15
time of creation of, V:17
nature not simple but multiple, VI:8
simple; no mass spread, VI:8
whole in any part of body, VI:8
becoming wise, VII:2
expression: a good soul, VIII:4
turning away from highest good,
 VIII:5
some parts we share even with
animals, X:7
conceived of as fifth elementary
substance, X:9
pursuing likeness to God, XI:8
the inner man, where reason begins,
 XII:13
goal: higher things, not possessed
privately, XII:15
image of God, XIV:6

The Trinity
The Trinity

life immortal, XIV:6
rational and intellectual, XIV:6
of infants, XIV:7
reasoning about temporal things, XIV:10
called spirit, XIV:22
eternal, XIV:26
image of God, XV:1
mind belongs to, XV:11
Augustine’s soliloquy to, XV:50
see also body and soul; immortality; mind; spirit

speech: vocal sound as sign, XV:19, 20
spirit:
life; faith, IV:5
death: forsaken by God, IV:16
of more value than body, IV:16
by cleaving, made one with God’s Spirit, VI:4
virtues, VI:6
better, by cleaving to creator, VI:9
human: called true/great, VIII:3
each mind is spirit, XIV:22
the term, used in many ways, XIV:22
see also soul

spirits:
angel-messengers, III:9
airy bodies (demonic), IV:14
difficult concept: without bodies, VIII:3

spiritual life:
cannot see God’s face and live, II:28
dying to fleshly attachments, II:28
renewal; growth, IV:5
put falsehood aside, IV:6
renewal; repentance, IV:6
progress in time; not in this world, IV:28
the Word is sent to souls knowing him, IV:28
Word perceived according to one’s progress toward God, IV:28
when the lesser cleaves to the greater, VII:9
imitation (paradoxes), VII:5
mind intent on invisible things, XII:21
failing to live… in him, XIV:16
one spirit: cleaving to the Lord, XIV:20
see also renewal

Stephen, the martyr, III:24, 26
study: love as motivation for, X:2

substance:
argument: Father & Son differ in substance, V:4
hypostasis (Greek term), V:10
in predication, all are called together, VI:3
unity of Father and Son, VI:4
both simple and multiple, VI:8
Father and Son: each is one substance, VII:2
relationships, VII:2
terminology of Greeks and Latins, VII:7
predication as relationship, VII:9
changeable things, VII:10
subsisting, VII:10
mind, love, knowledge (in one being), IX:8
memory, understanding, and will, X:18
Father and Son: focus of book V, XV:5
qualitative predications, XV:8
suicide, IV:16
summary of books I-XIV, XIV:4-5
symbols: Old Testament phenomena, II:11

T

love of; conception of a word, IX:14
not satisfying, even when gotten, IX:14
dangerous advances into, XII:10
reason’s role in, XII:13
reasonable use of, XII:21
rational cognizance of, XII:25
needed: knowledge of human affairs, XIV:10

Volume I/5
no need to tell God our needs, XV:22
temptation: able to endure, XIII:20
ten commandments: Mount Sinai, II:25-26
theophanies (Old Testament), II:1-35
fire in the bush; speaking by the
Father, II:12
ascertaining which person(s) appeared,
II:13
creatures formed for; angels, II:13
Genesis: God walks/talks with Adam,
II:17, 18
Abraham: come away from your coun-
try…, II:19
the name “Lord,” II:19
three men at the oak of Mambre,
II:19-21
burning bush; angel of the Lord, II:23;
III:23
from the book of Exodus, II:23-27, 32
Exodus: pillar of cloud/fire, II:24
which person is not clear, II:24, 26
creature control; visible, perceptible,
II:25
Mount Sinai; the ten commandments,
II:25-26
Mount Sinai: which person is not
clear, II:26
creation serving God’s purposes, II:27
Moses demands: show me your
majesty, II:27
the Lord spoke to Moses face to face,
II:27
“you shall see my back,” II:28
to Moses: you cannot see my face and
live, II:28
soul ravished with desire for, II:28
God manifested in symbolic manner,
II:32
Daniel of the Ancient of Days, II:33
seeing God (persons) with bodily eyes,
II:34
senses of mortal man, II:35
identifying the one who appeared,
III:3
persons in bodily manifestations, III:3
achieved through created objects,
III:22
angels: testimony of New Testament,
III:22
angels as secondary agents of, III:22-
27
Son of God, called “angel,” III:23
the Lord (i.e. angel) said to Moses,
III:23
Stephen: angel appeared to Moses,
III:24
the Lord spoke through angels, III:26
manifestations (O.T./N.T.) differ,
III:26
pre-incarnation, work of angels, III:26
 likenesses of Christ, IV:11
seen by the fathers before he was sent,
IV:26
produced by trinity together, IV:30
produced before the incarnation, IV:31
theosebeia (the word), XIV:1
thought:
memory, innar sight, will, XI:6, 12
as sights seen in, XI:13
brought out from things stored in
memory, XI:13
sense experience basic to, XI:14
sight of, formed from internal
memory, XI:16
sinful pleasures, XII:18
formed on image retained in memory,
XIV:5
understanding belongs to, XIV:9
inner-words, XIV:10
word formed in act of thought, XIV:13
as sight of consciousness, XV:16
“they said to themselves… “, XV:17
awareness, XV:17
utterances of the heart, XV:18
our true word, XV:25
see also form; knowledge
time:
Jesus: future time as though it were
past, I:23
the day and the hour, I:23
the Son, begotten before creation, I:24
timelessly contained in eternal
Wisdom, II:9
the sixth age, IV:7
tripartite division of, IV:7
cycles of the year, IV:8
did not begin in time, V:17
God does not see in, XII:10
transformations: by angels, III:5
treasures: possessions, and the mind,
XIV:19
The Trinity

trinities (analogues of the divine trinity):
memory, understanding, will, IV:30; X:17-19; XIV:8, 10
the lover, being loved, love, VIII:14; IX:2
the mind, its love and knowledge, IX:4, 6, 7, 8, 15, 18
analogy: three rings from the same gold, IX:7
image, likeness, equality, IX:16
disposition, learning, practice, X:17
analogies from the outer man (senses), XI:1-17
thing seen, the sight, conscious intention, XI:2
memory, inner sight, and will, XI:6, 11-12; XIV:12, 13
senses, memory, attention, XI:14
looking for, in the mind, XII:4
family: male, female, offspring, XII:5, 8, 9
memory, thought, will, XII:25; XIII:26; XIV:8
memory, observation, love, XIV:4
none deservedly called image of God, XIV:4
memory, recollection: will, XIV:5
image, attention, will, XIV:11
the look, awareness, will, XIV:11
mind: remembering, understanding, loving itself, XIV:11, 13, 14
memory, sight, love, XIV:11; XV:39
virtues: retaining, looking, loving, XIV:12
memory, understanding, love, XIV:13; XV:42, 43
lover, what is loved, and love, XV:10
wisdom, knowledge, and love, XV:10
respective sizes, XV:43

Trinity:
goal: give people reasons for this teaching, I:4
inseparable substance, I:7
“all things were made through him,” I:12
awareness of, when persons are referred to singly, I:19
indivisible operation of one substance, I:25
work of Father and Son is indivisible, II:3
voices heard by Adam, II:18
thoughts inadequate to object, V:1
things-said-about are in singular, not plural, V:9, 11
“the Lord your God is one Lord,” V:12
relationships within, V:15
fitting traces appear in creation, VI:11
whoever understands, even in part, thank God, VI:11
the question: Three What? VII:7
“three persons,” why not “three Gods?”, VII:8
belief in, VII:12
comparison of things known to, VIII:8
seen in charity, VIII:12
remain firm in faith while searching for, IX:1
seeking to understand, IX:1
man made in image of, IX:17; XII:6-8; XIV:25
believe rather than see (unlike trinities), XV:10
quite different from image(s) of, XV:42
three persons, one God, XV:43
seeing, face to face, XV:44
believe scriptures, rather than demand proof, XV:49
see also Father; Holy Spirit; persons; Son of God; trinities
tropes (figures of speech), XV:15
trust:
no trust in our weakened selves, IV:2
truth:
praise/condemnation of the author, I:6
Holy Spirit will teach you all truth, I:18
censure not feared by lover of, II:1
wise man submits to eternal truth, III:8
divine: unchangeable, IV:1; IX:9
abides: immortal, imperishable, unchanging, IV:24
eternal life, IV:24
nothing is greater, unless more truly, VIII:2
God is truth: do not ask what truth is, VIII:3
searching re what is to be understood, IX:1
form; judgment of, IX:10, 11
wisdom and, XIII:24
light in the heart of man, XIV:21
knowing something as true, XV:17

understanding:
anger: people told they are unfit for, I:3
serious study, I:5
difficulties presented by scriptures, II:1
faint glimpse of truth re trinity, VII:9
firm faith, even if unclear, VIII:1
search truth about what is to be understood, IX:1
image of divine trinity in the mind, X:17-19
belongs to thought, XIV:9
as referring to things present, XIV:14
finding God, XV:2
likenesses useful for, XV:16
memory and love in, XV:41

Virgil, XIV:14, 18
virgin birth: working of Father and Son, II:9

virtues:

weakness: knowledge of one’s own, IV:1
widow: the “true” widow (Paul), XII:11
will:
perfecting the soul in good, VIII:5
no voluntary act without previously uttered word, IX:12
calling on, to direct mind, X:11
resting, delighted, in things for their own sakes, X:13
self-awareness of willing, X:13
image of divine trinity in the mind, X:17-19
desire directed to sensible things, XI:7
role in recalling, XI:7, 8
fixed on either inner or outer man, XI:8

role in sight and body-seen, XI:9, 10
its resting place, XI:10
memory, inner sight, and will, XI:11-12
memory, sensation, and attention, XI:14-15
as parent or offspring, XI:18
image in memory, joined to thought, XIV:5
name “will” best fits the Holy Spirit, XV:38
likeness to Holy Spirit, XV:41
see also trinities

wisdom (both divine and human):
the Son speaks with voice of, I:10
divine; unchangeable, II:14

The Trinity
The Trinity

seeing (Christ) with the physical eye, II:25
achieves what she wills, III:6
soul sharing in the selfsame, III:8
wise man: sharing in eternal truth, III:8
interaction of body and soul, III:15
soul is wisdomless when God leaves, IV:5
angels, IV:27
brightness of eternal light, IV:27
outflow of glory of God, IV:27
lost by the unwise, V:5
equal to the Father, VI:7
Christ: power of God, wisdom of God (text), VII:1-2, 4
called wise with reference to itself, VII:2
Father and Son: one Wisdom, VII:3, 4
as begotten or made (in scripture, VII:4
enlightening us, VII:4
the Father utters, to be his Word, VII:4
follow the Son by living wisely, VII:5
the Holy Spirit as, VII:6
feminine gender, XII:5
holding, dear in charity, XII:16
unchangeable, spiritual things, XII:17, 25
contemplation, XII:22
distinguished from knowledge, XII:23; XIII:2, 24
truth and, XIII:24
as worship of God, XIV:1
defined, by philosophy, XIV:3
knowledge and, XIV:11
worship: becoming wise, XIV:15
a triad without being triple (book VII), XIV:5
focus of books XII & XIV, XV:5
divine, XV:7
comprehending God’s wisdom, XV:13
we see now through a mirror…, XV:14
see also trinities

wish: unknown: the wishes of others, XIII:6, 7
witchcraft:
  miracles, III:12
  power from above, III:12 wizards:
  and rebel angels, III:13 as creators, III:18
their serpents stand for the dead, III:20
women:
touch Christ only after he has ascended, IV:6
image of the trinity, XII:9-10
head-covering: man, woman, XII:12
sensation represented by serpent, not woman, XII:20

Word of God:
same substance as the Father, I:9
after judgment day, I:15
begotten by the Father, I:26
the Father’s doctrine is his Word, I:27
without a beginning in time, II:9
in flesh; being flesh, II:11
son of man assumed by, II:11
materialistic ideas re, II:14
participation in, IV:4
contemplation in eternity, IV:26
“and the Word was with God,” VI:3
Christ: power of God, wisdom of God (text), VII:1
Father and Son are not together one Word, VII:3
word of man as likeness of, XV:20
likeness in works of man, XV:20
spoken by the prophets, XV:20
absolutely same as Father is, XV:23
begotten: the Father uttering himself, XV:23
truth cannot be false/lie, XV:23, 24
co-eternal with God himself, XV:25
distinctively called wisdom of God, XV:25
form of God, XV:25
counsel or will of the Father, XV:38

word(s):
temporal and passing, VII:4
no voluntary act without previously uttered word, IX:12
conceived by wanting, born by getting, IX:14
definition [Augustine’s usage], IX:15
love with knowledge, IX:15
rightly disliking things, IX:15
study of unknown words, X:2
meanings, sounds, XIII:4
without thought: no words, XIV:10
formed in act of thought, XIV:13

Volume I/5
begotten from knowledge, XV:19, 20
sign, XV:19, 20
as likeness of the Word of God, XV:20
knowledge; awareness; truth, XV:20
true word: beginning of a good work, XV:20
true word begotten from
consciousness, XV:22
human: dissimilar to Word of God, XV:22
human: false when mistaken, XV:24
human: somewhat like the Word of God, XV:24
birth; innermost mind, XV:40
work:
works of man: first uttered in the heart, XV:20
world:
cannot know God by [human] wisdom, IV:28
see also creation; temporal goods
worship:
wisdom as, XIV:1
becoming wise, XIV:15
writing:
reaction on first-time hearing about, X:1

Z

Zachary, IV:29
Books 1-10 contain Augustine's critique of the Roman religious, political, and intellectual tradition explaining that Rome's traditional gods were neither able to provide happiness in this life nor in the life to come.

Books 11-22 offer Augustine's Christian view of history, including the Christian view of human destiny. The Index for Books 1-22 is included.

Books 11-22 offer Augustine's Christian view of history, including the Christian view of human destiny. The Index for Books 1-22 is included.

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

*(Prepared by Michael Dolan)*

### OLD TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume 1/6</th>
<th>Volume 1/7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1-2</td>
<td>XI, 4; XII, 16</td>
<td>4:18-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>VIII, 11</td>
<td>4:25; XV, 8; XV, 15; XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>XI, 9</td>
<td>4:26; XV, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>XI, 20</td>
<td>5:1-2; XV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>XI, 33</td>
<td>5:2; XV, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-5</td>
<td>XI, 19</td>
<td>5:4-31; XV, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4.10.12.18.21.25</td>
<td>XI, 21</td>
<td>5:6; XV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>XXII, 30</td>
<td>5:7-8; XV, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>XIX, 15; XVI, 6</td>
<td>6:1-4; XV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XIV, 10; XIV, 21; XIV, 22; XXII, 24</td>
<td>6:2; XV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td>6:3; XV, 23; XV, 24; XX, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>XIII, 12; XIII, 15; XVI, 27</td>
<td>6:4; XV, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>XXII, 17</td>
<td>6:5-7; XV, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td>6:9; XVI, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>XIV, 13; XXII, 30</td>
<td>6:16; XVI, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td>6:19; XV, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>XIV, 17</td>
<td>6:20; XV, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XIII, 15; XIII, 23</td>
<td>7:10-11; XV, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>XIV, 11</td>
<td>7:22; XIII, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>XIV, 14</td>
<td>8:4-5; XV, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td>9:21; XVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>XIII, 15; XIII, 23; XX, 20</td>
<td>9:25; XVI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>XV, 15; XV, 17</td>
<td>9:26-27; XVI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td>10:5; XVI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td>10:8-12; XVI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>XV, 7</td>
<td>10:9; XVI, 4; XVI, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>XV, 8</td>
<td>10:10; XVI, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

The City of God
The City of God

Volume I/6 & I/7
Volume I/6 & I/7

2:35 XVII, 5
2:36 XVII, 5
7:10 XVII, 13
7:10-11 XVII, 13
7:12 XVII, 7
13:13-14 XVII, 6
13:14 XVII, 6
15:23 XVII, 7
15:26-29 XVII, 7
15:28 XVII, 7
15:29 XVII, 7
24:5 XVII, 6
24:6 XVII, 6; XVII, 10

Psals
3:3 XIV, 28
3:5 XVII, 18
4:7 XIV, 7
6:2 XVII, 4
6:5 XIII, 11
6:6 XX, 17
9:18 XIV, 9
10:3 III, 14
11:5 XIV, 7
12:6 XVII, 5
12:7 XII, 14
12:7-8 XII, 15
12:9 XII, 14
13:1 XVII, 11
14:1 V, 9
14:2 XVI, 10
14:3 XVI, 10
14:4 XVI, 10
16:2 X, 5; XIX, 23
16:9-10 XVII, 18
16:10 XVII, 4
16:11 XIV, 7
17:6 XI, 14
17:8 XVII, 5
17:15 XXI, 24
18:1 XIV, 28
18:43 XX, 30
18:43-44 XVII, 16
18:44 XVII, 16
18:45 XVI, 39
19:9 XIV, 9
19:12 XII, 7
22:16-17 XVII, 17
22:18 XVII, 17
22:27-28 XVII, 17
23:5 XVI, 41; XVII, 20
25:10 XII, 28
25:17 XIX, 6
26:2 XIV, 9
31:19 XXI, 18; XXI, 24
32:1 XVII, 20
32:11 XIV, 7
33:9 XI, 8
34:1 XI, 31
34:5 XXII, 29
34:8 XXI, 24
37:31 XXII, 2
38:9 XX, 17
39:2 XX, 17
40:2 XVIII, 35

The City of God
The City of God

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40:2-3</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
<td>73:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:4</td>
<td>VI, 1; XV, 21</td>
<td>73:16-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
<td>73:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td>73:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:5</td>
<td>XX, 30</td>
<td>73:22-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:5-8</td>
<td>XVII, 18</td>
<td>73:23-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:9</td>
<td>XVII, 18</td>
<td>73:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:9-10</td>
<td>XVII, 18</td>
<td>73:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:3</td>
<td>I, 29; XX, 17</td>
<td>73:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:6</td>
<td>XIII, 21</td>
<td>73:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:1-9</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
<td>74:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:6-7</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
<td>77:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9-17</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
<td>77:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:10</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
<td>78:47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:16</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
<td>79:2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:4-5</td>
<td>XI, 1</td>
<td>82:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:8</td>
<td>XII, 28</td>
<td>83:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:10</td>
<td>XXII, 30</td>
<td>83:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47:3</td>
<td>XVII, 4</td>
<td>84:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:1-2</td>
<td>XI, 1</td>
<td>84:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:2</td>
<td>XVII, 16</td>
<td>84:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:8</td>
<td>XI, 1</td>
<td>87:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:11</td>
<td>XV, 21</td>
<td>87:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:12-20</td>
<td>XVIII, 3</td>
<td>89:3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:20</td>
<td>VIII, 23</td>
<td>89:19-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:1</td>
<td>IX, 23</td>
<td>89:30-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:3</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
<td>89:32-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:3-5</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
<td>89:33-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:4</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
<td>89:36-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:5</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
<td>89:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:12-13</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
<td>89:39-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:14-15</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
<td>89:46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:3</td>
<td>XV, 20</td>
<td>89:47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:16-17</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
<td>89:48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:8</td>
<td>XV, 21</td>
<td>89:49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>XVI, 10</td>
<td>89:49-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:3</td>
<td>XVI, 10</td>
<td>89:50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:4</td>
<td>XVI, 10</td>
<td>89:52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:5</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
<td>90:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:9</td>
<td>XIII, 21</td>
<td>94:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:10-11</td>
<td>XVIII, 46</td>
<td>94:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>XVIII, 46</td>
<td>94:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>94:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:11-12</td>
<td>V, 9</td>
<td>95:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67:1-2</td>
<td>X, 32</td>
<td>95:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:20</td>
<td>X, 12</td>
<td>95:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:21</td>
<td>XVII, 19</td>
<td>96:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:22-23</td>
<td>XVII, 19; XVIII, 46</td>
<td>96:1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>XVII, 8; XVIII, 54</td>
<td>96:4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:11</td>
<td>XX, 28</td>
<td>96:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>XX, 6</td>
<td>101:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page Range</td>
<td>Volume</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:25-26</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:25-27</td>
<td>XX, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:27</td>
<td>XVII, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:1</td>
<td>XV, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:4</td>
<td>XI, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:24</td>
<td>XI, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:8</td>
<td>XX, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:15</td>
<td>XVII, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:1</td>
<td>XVII, 7; XVII, 14; XVII, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:2</td>
<td>XVII, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:4</td>
<td>XVI, 22; XVII, 17; XVIII, 35; XX, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:2</td>
<td>XIV, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:1</td>
<td>XXII, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:5</td>
<td>VIII, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:16</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>XXII, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>V, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:15</td>
<td>I, 12; XIII, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:16</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:20</td>
<td>XIV, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:81</td>
<td>X, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:119</td>
<td>XVI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:164</td>
<td>XI, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123:2</td>
<td>XX, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>XVII, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:2</td>
<td>IX, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:3</td>
<td>XIV, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>XIV, 14; XVII, 11; XX, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:15</td>
<td>XIX, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:5</td>
<td>XII, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:12-14</td>
<td>XIX, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:1-5</td>
<td>XI, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:2</td>
<td>XI, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:4</td>
<td>XII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>XI, 8; XI, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:8</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:11-12</td>
<td>II, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proverbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11-13</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>XIII, 20; XX, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>V, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>XVII, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1-5</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>XVI, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6</td>
<td>XX, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:12</td>
<td>XIV, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:16</td>
<td>XI, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:20</td>
<td>XXI, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ecclesiastes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>XII, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>XIV, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16-17</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13-14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>XX, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Song of Songs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>XVI, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>XV, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wisdom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>XX, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-21</td>
<td>XVII, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>XIV, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>XII, 26; XV, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13-15</td>
<td>XII, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>XXII, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>XIII, 16; XIV, 3; XIX, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>XI, 30; XII, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sirach**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XX, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:26</td>
<td>I, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>XIV, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>XXI, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>XII, 6; XIV, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>XIII, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>XXI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>XVI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:1</td>
<td>XXI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:3</td>
<td>XIII, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:5</td>
<td>XXI, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:23</td>
<td>XXI, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:24</td>
<td>X, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The City of God

33:14-15 XI, 18
36:1-5 XVII, 20
40:1 XXI, 14

Isaiah
2:2-3 X, 32
2:3 XVIII, 50; XVIII, 54
4:4 XX, 25
5:7 XVI, 2
7:14 XVIII, 46
10:22 XVII, 5; XVIII, 33;
XVIII, 46
10:23 XVII, 5
14:12 XI, 15
19:1 VIII, 23
26:11 XX, 12
26:19 XX, 21; XXII, 3
29:14 X, 28
40:26 XII, 19
42:1-4 XX, 30
42:4 XX, 30
45:8 XX, 17
48:12-16 XX, 30
48:16 XX, 30
52:13-53:12 XVIII, 29
53:7 XX, 24; XX, 30
54:1-5 XVIII, 29
56:5 XX, 22
57:16 XIII, 24
57:21 XIV, 8
65:17-19 XX, 21; XXII, 3
65:22 XX, 26
66:12-16 XX, 21
66:14 XX, 21
66:15-16 XX, 21
66:16 XX, 21
66:22-24 XX, 21
66:23 XX, 21; XX, 22
66:24 XX, 22; XXI, 9; XXI, 24

Jeremiah
1:5 XII, 26
16:19 XVIII, 33
16:20 VIII, 23; VIII, 24
17:5 XV, 18
17:9 XVIII, 33
23:5-6 XVIII, 33
23:24 XII, 26; XXII, 29
29:7 XIX, 26
31:31 XVIII, 33
31:31-33 XVII, 3

Lamentations
4:20 XVIII, 33

Baruch
3:26-28 XV, 23
3:36-37 XVIII, 33

Ezekiel
20:12 XXII, 30
28:13 XI, 15
28:15 XI, 15
33:6 I, 9
34:23-24 XVIII, 34
37:22-24 XVIII, 34

Daniel
3:57 XI, 9
7:13-14 XVIII, 34
7:15-16 XX, 23
7:17-22 XX, 23
7:18 XXII, 3
7:23-28 XX, 23
7:25 XX, 23
7:27 XXII, 3
12:1-2 XXII, 3
12:1-3 XX, 23
12:2 XX, 23
12:13 XX, 23

Hosea
1:10 XVIII, 28
1:11 XVIII, 28
3:4 XVIII, 28
3:5 XVIII, 28
6:2 XVIII, 28
6:6 XX, 24

Joel
2:13 XVIII, 32
2:28-29 XVIII, 30
2:32 XV, 18

Amos
4:12-13 XVIII, 28
13:11-12 XVIII, 28

Obadiah
17 XVIII, 31
## Volume I/6 & I/7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jonah</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XVIII, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Micah</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-3</td>
<td>XVIII, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2-4</td>
<td>XVIII, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-8</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nahum</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-2:1</td>
<td>XVIII, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Habakkuk</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2-3</td>
<td>XVIII, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>XVIII, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zechariah</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XVIII, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>XVIII, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-12</td>
<td>XVIII, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malachi</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10-11</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-7</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>XX, 28; XX, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-6</td>
<td>XX, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2-3</td>
<td>XX, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>XX, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XX, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>XX, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-16</td>
<td>XVIII, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>XX, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>XX, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-4:3</td>
<td>XVIII, 35; XX, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>XX, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>XX, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XX, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The City of God</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew

1:2 XV, 15
1:3 XV, 15
1:21 XVII, 18
1:23 XVIII, 46
3:2 XVIII, 48
4:9 XI, 33
4:17 XVIII, 48
4:19 XX, 30
5:8 XX, 21; XXII, 29
5:16 V, 14
5:19 XX, 9
5:20 XX, 9; XXI, 27
5:23-24 XXI, 27
5:28 XIV, 10
5:35 XVII, 4
5:45 I, 8; IV, 2
6:1 V, 14
6:2 V, 15
6:12 XIX, 27; XXI, 22; XXI, 27; XXII, 23
6:14 XXI, 27
6:14-15 XXI, 22
6:15 XXI, 27
6:19-21 I, 10
6:28-30 X, 14
7:12 XIV, 8
7:20 XVI, 2
8:22 V, 18; XX, 6; XX, 15
8:29 VIII, 23
9:13 X, 5
10:22 XIV, 9; XVII, 4; XXI, 25
10:27 XVIII, 32
10:28 I, 12; V, 18; XIII, 2; XVIII, 50
10:30 XII, 19
10:32 XIII, 7
10:33 V, 14
10:34 XX, 21
10:36 XIX, 5
10:37 XXI, 26
10:41 XXI, 27
11:13 XVII, 24
11:22 XX, 5
11:24 XX, 5
11:29 IV, 16
12:7 X, 5
12:27 XX, 5

12:41-42 XX, 5
13:37-43 XX, 5
13:39-41 XX, 9
13:41-43 XXI, 1
13:43 XXII, 19
13:52 XX, 4; XX, 9
15:24 XX, 30
16:16 VIII, 23
16:25 XIII, 7
18:7 XIX, 8
18:10 XI, 4; XI, 32; XXII, 29
18:15 XV, 6
18:18 XX, 9
18:35 XV, 6
19:4-6 XIV, 22
19:27 XVII, 4
19:28 XVII, 4; XX, 5
19:29 XX, 7
20:22 XVI, 2
21:38 XVII, 20
22:14 XVIII, 45; XVIII, 48
22:29 XXII, 17
22:30 XI, 32; XXII, 17
22:37-39 X, 3
22:39 I, 20; XXI, 27
22:40 X, 5
23:3 XX, 9
23:26 X, 25
24:12 XIV, 9; XIX, 8
24:13 XXI, 21
24:15 XVII, 5
24:21 XVI, 24
24:29 XX, 24
24:35 XX, 24
25:21 XX, 22
25:30 XX, 22
25:31-41 XX, 5
25:34 XX, 9; XX, 24; XXI, 24; XXI, 26
25:35 XVII, 18
25:40 XVII, 18
25:41 XX, 12; XXI, 10; XXI, 23; XXI, 26
25:45 XXI, 1; XXI, 27
25:46 XX, 5; XX, 16; XXI, 23; XXI, 24
26:21 XVII, 18
26:39 XVI, 2
28:19 XIII, 24
28:20 XX, 9

Volume I/6 & I/7
### Mark
- 1:2  XV, 23
- 1:24  IV, 21
- 3:27  XX, 7
- 9:43-44  XXI, 9
- 9:45-46  XXI, 9
- 9:47-48  XXI, 9
- 1:2  XV, 23
- 1:24  IV, 21
- 3:27  XX, 7
- 9:43-44  XXI, 9
- 9:45-46  XXI, 9
- 9:47-48  XXI, 9

### Luke
- 1:28  XVII, 4
- 1:33  XXII, 1
- 1:34  XVI, 24
- 2:14  XIV, 8
- 2:29-30  XVII, 4; XXII, 29
- 3:6  XXII, 29
- 3:8  XXI, 27
- 5:10  XX, 30
- 6:38  XXI, 11
- 11:20  XVI, 43
- 12:4  I, 12
- 12:7  XXII, 19
- 12:9  V, 14
- 16:9  XXII, 27
- 16:24  XXI, 3; XXI, 10
- 20:34  XV, 20
- 20:35  XV, 17
- 21:18  XXII, 12
- 23:24  XVIII, 32
- 24:44-47  X, 32
- 24:45-47  XVIII, 50

### John
- 1:1-5  X, 29
- 1:3  X, 24
- 1:6-9  X, 2
- 1:9  XI, 9
- 1:14  XV, 3; X, 29; XIV, 2; XVII, 4
- 1:16  X, 2
- 1:47  XVI, 38
- 1:51  XVI, 38
- 2:19  XVI, 41; XVIII, 35
- 3:5  XIII, 7; XXI, 27
- 3:8  XIII, 7
- 3:17  XVIII, 32
- 4:24  XIII, 24; XXII, 29
- 5:22  XX, 30
- 5:22-23  XX, 5
- 5:24  XX, 5
- 5:25  XX, 6; XX, 9

### Acts of the Apostles
- 1:6  XVIII, 53
- 1:7  XVIII, 53; XXII, 30
- 1:7-8  XVIII, 50
- 2:17-18  XVIII, 30
- 7:2  XVI, 16
- 7:2-3  XVI, 15
- 7:4  XVI, 15
- 7:22  XV, 27; XVIII, 37
- 9:4  XVII, 9
- 17:28  VIII, 10
- 17:30-31  XVIII, 54

### Romans
- 1:3  XVII, 8; XVIII, 28
- 1:17  IV, 20; XIX, 4; XX, 26
- 1:19-20  VIII, 10
- 1:21  X, 1
- 1:21-23  VIII, 10; VIII, 23
- 1:21-23.25  XIV, 28
- 1:25  IV, 29

---

**The City of God**
1:26 XIV, 23
2:4-6 I, 8
2:15-16 XX, 26
3:7 XIV, 4
3:20 XIV, 2; XIV, 4
3:20-22 XX, 4
3:23 XX, 21
4:3 XVI, 23
4:15 XVI, 27
5:5 XVII, 20
5:12 XIV, 11
5:14 XIV, 11
6:4 XX, 10
6:9 XII, 14; XVII, 11
6:13 XV, 7
6:22 XIX, 11
7:12-13 XIII, 5
7:17 XV, 7
7:25 X, 29
8:3 X, 22
8:6 XX, 21
8:10 XX, 15
8:10-11 XIII, 23
8:13 XIX, 9
8:14 XIX, 15
8:15 XIV, 9
8:18 IV, 18
8:24 XIII, 23
8:24-25 X, 25; XV, 18; XIX, 4
8:28 I, 10; XVIII, 51
8:28-29 XIII, 23
8:29 XVIII, 51; XXI, 24; XXII, 12
8:32 XVI, 32; XVII, 4; XXII, 24
8:37 XXII, 23
9:5 XV, 20
9:7 XVI, 34
9:8 XVI, 32; XVI, 34
9:14 XX, 1
9:21 XV, 1
9:22 XV, 2
9:23 XV, 2
9:27 XVIII, 33
9:28 XVII, 5
10:3 XVII, 4
10:17 XVII, 16
11:5 XVII, 5
11:11 XVIII, 46
11:20 XIV, 7
11:30-31 XXI, 24
11:32 XXI, 18; XXI, 24
11:33 I, 28; XX, 1
12:1 X, 6
12:2 X, 6; XXII, 16
12:3 XII, 16
12:3-6 X, 6
12:12 XVIII, 32; XVIII, 51
13:10 XXI, 25
14:3 XX, 10
14:9 XX, 9

1 Corinthians
1:19 X, 28
1:20-25 X, 28
1:25 XVI, 2
1:27 XVII, 20
1:30-31 XXI, 24
1:31 XVIII, 32
2:11 I, 26; XIII, 24
2:11-14 XIV, 4
3:1 XIV, 4; XXII, 21
3:3 XIV, 4
3:4 XIV, 4
3:7 XII, 26; XXII, 24
3:9 XVI, 5
3:11-15 XXI, 21
3:13-15 XXI, 26
3:15 XXI, 26
3:17 XVII, 8
3:20 XIX, 4
4:5 XXII, 29
4:7 XVII, 4
5:12 XX, 9
6:3 XX, 5
7:4 XVI, 25
7:25 XXI, 27
7:31 XX, 24
7:31-32 XX, 14
7:32 XXI, 26
7:33 XXI, 26
7:33 XXI, 26
8:1 IX, 20
8:5-6 IX, 23
10:4 XIII, 21; XVIII, 48
10:12 XX, 10
10:17 XVII, 5; XXI, 20; XXI, 25; XXII, 18
10:19-20 VIII, 24
11:19 XVI, 2
12:27 XXII, 18
13:9 XIX, 18; XXII, 29
13:9-10 XXII, 29

Volume I/6 & I/7
The City of God

Volume I/6 & I/7

13:10 XI, 31
13:11-12 XXII, 29
13:12 XXII, 29
15:21-22 XIII, 23
15:22 XX, 20
15:28 XIV, 28; XVIII, 48; XX, 22; XXII, 30
15:36 I, 20; XX, 20
15:38 XII, 26
15:39 XIV, 2
15:42-44 XIII, 23
15:44-45 XIII, 23
15:44-49 XIII, 24
15:45 XIII, 23
15:46 XIII, 23; XV, 1
15:47 XIII, 23; XVIII, 11
15:47-49 XIII, 23
15:51 XX, 20
15:52 XX, 20
15:54 XIV, 9
15:55-56 XX, 17
15:56 XIII, 5
15:57 XXII, 23

2 Corinthians
1:12 V, 12
3:18 XXII, 29
4:16 XIV, 3
5:1-4 XIV, 3
5:4 XX, 17
5:10 XVII, 4
5:14-15 XX, 6
6:7-10 XI, 18
6:10 XX, 7
6:14 XX, 9
7:8-11 XIV, 8
8:9 XVII, 4
9:7 XIV, 9
10:12 XII, 18
11:3 XIV, 7
11:14 II, 26; X, 10
11:29 XXI, 9
13:4 XVI, 2

Galatians
2:16 XIV, 2
3:6 XVI, 23
3:11 XIV, 2
3:17 XVI, 24
3:27 XIII, 23
4:9 XXII, 2
4:21-5:1 XV, 2
4:23 XV, 3
4:24 XVII, 7
4:26 XI, 7
4:30 XV, 2
5:6 XXI, 25
5:17 XV, 5; XV, 7; XIX, 4
5:19-21 XIV, 2; XXI, 25
5:21 XXI, 25
6:1 XIV, 9; XV, 6
6:2 XV, 6
6:3 XVII, 4
6:4 V, 12

Ephesians
1:4 XVIII, 48; XX, 7
1:18 XXII, 29
1:22-23 XXII, 18
4:9-10 XVII, 4
4:10-16 XXII, 18
4:12 XXII, 18
4:13 XXII, 12; XXII, 17; XXII, 18
4:15-16 XXII, 18
4:26 XV, 6
5:8 XI, 33
5:14 XX, 10
5:28-29 XV, 7

Philippians
1:18 XVI, 2
1:23 XIV, 7
2:7 XVIII, 35
2:8 XIV, 14
2:12 XIV, 7
2:13 XXII, 2
3:7 XVII, 4
3:19 XX, 21
4:7 XXII, 29

Colossians
1:16 VIII, 24
1:24 XXII, 18
2:8 VIII, 10
3:1 XVII, 4; XVIII, 28; XX, 10
3:1-2 XX, 9
3:2 XVII, 4
3:3 XVII, 4; XX, 15

The City of God
1 Thessalonians
4:4-5 XIV, 16
4:13-17 XX, 20
4:17 XX, 20; XX, 24
5:5 XI, 7; XI, 33
5:14-15 XV, 6

2 Thessalonians
2:1-12 XX, 19
2:6 XX, 19
2:7 XX, 19
2:7-8 XX, 19
2:8 XVIII, 53; XX, 19
2:9-10 XX, 19
2:10 XX, 19
2:11 XX, 19
2:12 XX, 19

1 Timothy
1:5 XIV, 24; XVII, 4
1:17 XV, 1
2:2 XIX, 26
2:5 IX, 17; XI, 2; XIII, 23;
 XV, 26; XVII, 5; XVII, 7;
 XVIII, 47
2:7 XIV, 2
2:14 XIV, 11
3:1 XIX, 19
5:8 XIX, 14
5:20 XV, 6
6:6-10 I, 10
6:17-19 I, 10

2 Timothy
2:9 XVIII, 4
2:19 XVIII, 51; XX, 7; XX, 8;
 XXI, 15
2:25-26 XXI, 24
3:2 XIV, 7
3:7 III, 1
3:12 XVIII, 51

Titus
1:2-3 XII, 17

Hebrews
5:6 XVIII, 35
9:15 XVII, 6
11:11 XVI, 28

11:17-19 XVI, 32
11:19 XVI, 32
13:2 XVI, 29
13:16 X, 5

James
1:2 XIV, 9
1:17 XI, 21
2:13 XXI, 22; XXI, 27
4:6 I; XI, 33; XVII, 4; XIX, 27

1 Peter
2:5 XVIII, 45; XVIII, 48
2:9 XVII, 5; XX, 10
5:5 XI, 33

2 Peter
2:4 XV, 23
2:10 XIV, 13
2:19 IV, 3; XIX, 15
3:3-13 XX, 18
3:7 XX, 18
3:8 XX, 7
3:10 XX, 24
3:11 XX, 24

1 John
1:8 XIV, 9; XX, 17; XX, 25
2:15 XIV, 7
2:17 XX, 24
2:18-19 XX, 19
2:19 XX, 8
3:2 XXII, 29
3:8 XI, 13
3:9 XX, 22
3:12 XV, 7
4:7 XVII, 4
4:18 XIV, 9; XXI, 24

Revelation
3:16 XIII, 24
4:6 XX, 16
14:13 XX, 9
19:16 IV, 15
20:1 XX, 7
20:1-6 XX, 7
20:2 XX, 7
20:3 XX, 7; XX, 8
20:4 XX, 9; XX, 13

Volume I/6 & I/7
The City of God

INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers. (Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes.)

Aaron, X:8; XVII:5 and n37
Abel, XV:21 and n107; XVIII:51
See also Cain
Cain and, as earthly city and heavenly city, XV:1, 5, 7, 15, 17–18
Abelard, Peter, XXII:30, n160
Abimelech, XVI:30, 36
aborted fetuses, XXII:12–13
Abraham, I:21, 26; X:8, 32; XVI:12–14
See also Isaac; Keturah; Lot; Sarah
birth of, XVIII:2
circumcision of, XV:16 and n76; XVI:23, 26
city of God, and Shem’s line of descent, XVI:10
departure from Haran, XVI:15
god’s first promise to, XVI:16–17, 24
god’s second promise to, XVI:18–20
god’s third promise to, XVI:21
history, from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
Mamre, vision at, XVI:22–24, 29–30
name as changed to, XVI:28
period from Noah to, XVI:1
sacrifice of, XVI:24
and Shem’s line of descent, XVI:10
and Sodom’s victory, XVI:22
sons of, XVI:25–28, 31–33
as symbolizing God the Father, XVI:32 and n125
as turning point, XVI:12–14
Academy, XII:14(13); XIX:1–2
See also Plato
New Academy, XIX:1–3, 18
Old Academy, XIX:1, 3–4
philosophers of, VIII:12
actors, II:4, 6, 25–27, 29; III:19; IV:26, 28; V:12; VI:5–7, 10
the Greeks and Romans on, II:9–14
Adam:
See also Eve; fall, man, original sin, paradise
all die in Adam, XIII:23
blindness of, XIV:17 and n100
disobedience of Adam and Eve,
XIII:15; XIV:1, 11–15; XXI:12
and Eve, as children, XV:12 and n51
and Eve, Christ and the Church as prophesied by, XXII:17 and n90
as married to Eve, XIV:10 and n72
and “monstrous races,” XVI:8–9
shame of Adam and Eve, XIV:17
adultery:
as common among the gods, III:3
Paris’s, III:3–5
Troy and, III:6
aediles, II:27 and n93
Aeneas; the Aeneid (Virgil), I:2–3; III:2–3, 5, 13–14; V:12; VIII:5; X:21; XV:19
deified, XVIII:21
the Elysian Fields, XXI:27
household gods, saving, III:11; VI:2; X:16
Italy, arrival in, XVIII:19
mind of, IX:4
as pious, I:3 and n13; III:14
and souls returning to bodies, X:30; XIV:5; XXII:26
Aesculapius, III:12 and n38, 17; IV:21–22, 27–28; VIII:5 and n23, 26; X:16
aether/Aether, IV:10–11; VII:6 and n23; VII:16, 23; VIII:16, 18, 21; IX:7, 13, 16, 18; X:9, 11, 27
affection, XV:22 and n114
See also love
Africa, V:18; XVI:6 and n42; XVI:17 and n77
See also specific topics, e.g., Punic Wars

Volume I/6 & I/7
Africanus (Scipio). See under Scipio family
afterlife. See eternal life
Agamemnon, XVIII:18 and n93
age:
  long lives of ancients (before the
  flood), XV:8–14
  of sexual maturity, and lines of
descent, XV:15
Varro on youth and old age, XXII:15
and n81
ages:
  ages of ages, XII:20(19)
biblical, XVI:43 and n185
division of, XVI:24 and n93; XVI:43;
XXII:30 and n168
  of the human race, X:14 and n69; X:32
agrarian laws: and civil wars, start of,
III:24
air
  See also under elements: four
airy bodies of demons, III:18 and n113
as province of Juno, X:21 and n100
Alaric, XXII:20 and n104
  See also Rome, sack of
Alba:
  the palladium, III:18 and n115
war with Rome, III:14 and n53
Alexander the Great (Alexander of
Macedon), IV:4 and n10; IV:7;
VII:5, 27; XIX:12
letter to his mother (spurious), VIII:25
and n22; VII:27; X:11(10)
and n21
allegory, XIII:21; XV:2, 7
the flood, history, and, XV:27
Alpyius, XXII:8 and nn34, 36
Ambrose of Milan, V:26 and nn102–103,
n110; VIII:11 and n46; X:23 and
n110
Gervasius and Protasius, XV:9 and
n37; XXII:8
On Virgins, I:26 and n80
Amos, XVIII:27–28
Anphion, XVIII:13 and n73
Anaxagoras, VIII:2 and n11; XVIII:37, 41
Anaximander, VIII:2 and n9; XVIII:25, 37
Anaximenes, VIII:2 and n10; VIII 5;
XVIII:37
Anchises, III:3 and nn10–11
Ancus Martius, III:15
Andromache, III:13 and n48
Anebo, letter from Porphyry to, X:11
  angels, I:12; II:19, 26; V:9–19 passim;
    VII:32; VIII:24–27; X:1, 7–17
  passim
See also demons (evil angels)
apostate, III:5
as blessed, VII:30; IX:15
creation of, XI:9, 32–34; XII:27(26);
XXII:1
demons, distinguishing from, IX:19;
X:9
and evil will, cause of first, XII:6
the fall, angelic, XI:11–13, 28; XII:9;
XXII:1
and the gods, IX:23
as God’s messengers, X:25–26, 30, 32
God’s speech with, XVI:6
good and evil, difference between (not
  nature but fault), XII:1–5
good and evil, separation of, XI:19–20
and good humans, VIII:25
good will of good angels, cause of,
XII:9
and happiness, X:2–3
holy, VIII:24–25; IX:5, 14–15, 18–23;
    XI:7, 29–31
Jacob, angel fighting, XVI:39 and
n151
knowledge of, IX:21–22 and n56;
    XI:7, 29–31
life in, VIII:6
light and darkness, XI:33
and Mamre, God’s appearance at,
    XVI:29 and n114
meaning of word, X:25 and n121;
    XVIII:35 and n165
miracles performed through, X:8, 12,
    16–18
and miseries of social life, XIX:9–10
and Neoplatonists’ “good gods,”
    VIII:24 and n97; IX:23
as not creators, XII:25(24), 27(26)
Platonic theory, XII:27(26)
Porphyry on, X:26–27
and sacrifice, X:16–20
separation of holy from fallen, XI:19–
20
and sex with women, III:5; XV:22–24
society of, XIX:9 and n24
souls of, VIII:24, 26
and the theurgic arts, X:26–27
Trinity, knowledge of, XI:29
two cities, formation of at level of angels, XI
two kinds of, XI:9–13
and voluntary causes, V:9
wills of, V:9–10
and worship, IX:23; X:15–17, 19–20, 24, 32
anger:
  God’s, IX:5 and n21; XV:25; XXI:24
  and lust, XIV:19
soul, three-part division of, XIV:19
  and n107
animal body, XIII:23
animals
  See also specific animals, e.g., mules from the ark, on islands, XVI:7
domestic, madness in, III:23
Egyptian cult of, II:22 and n78
and heat, XII:5; XXI:4
human beings transformed into,
  XVIII:16–19
seven pairs of clean animals, XV:27
  and n147
solitary and gregarious, XII:22(21);
  XIX:12
“anointed (one),” XVII:4 and nn34–35;
  XVII:10 and n71; XVIII:33 and n156
Antaeus, XVIII:13 and n76
anthropomorphism, XI:8; XV:25; XVII:5
  and n41–42
anthropomorphite error, XII:24(23) and n44
Antichrist:
  coming of (Paul’s testimony), XX:19
Daniel on, XX:23
last persecution by, XX:8, 13
the ten persecutions and, XVIII:52 and n253; XX:19 and nn56–57
Antiochus, king of Syria, III:11 and n32;
  XVIII:45
Antiochus of Ascalon, XIX:3 and 9
antipodes, XVI:9
Antisthenes, VIII:3 and n17
antitheses, XI:18
apatheia, XIV: summary, 2, 8–9 and n69
Aphrodite. See Venus
Apis, XVIII:5–6
apocryphal books, XV:23 and n127;
  XVIII:36 and n167; XVIII:38
Apollinaris of Laodicea; Apollinarianism,
  X:27 and n129; XIV:2 and n7; XIV:9
Apollo, III:17; IV:11, 21; VI:7; VII:2, 16;
  X:13; XVIII:10, 12–13
authority of, II:16
  the Cumaean Sibyl, X:27 and n132
  at Cumae (weeping image), III:2, 11
  and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and n3
oracles at Delphi, XIX:23 and n83
Sol (sun) identified with, XIX:23 and n87
apostles, V:14; XVIII:49
Apuleius, Lucius, IV:2 and n6; VIII:12
  and n55; VIII:22–24; IX:16;
  X:9–10
on demons, VIII:14–18; IX:3, 6–8,
  10–13; X:27
On the God of Socrates, VIII:14
The Golden Ass, XVIII:18 and n90
on human race as immortal, XII:10
on the passions, IX:3–4
Porphyry compared to, X:27
Aquila, XV:23 and n125; XVIII:43 and n199
Aratus of Soli, XVI:23 and n91
Arbogast, V:26 and nn104, 107
Arcadius, III:22 and n129
Archelaus, VIII:2 and n13
Areopagus, XVIII:10
Argives, the, XVIII:5–6, 15
Arians, XVIII:52 and n255
Arion of Methymna, I:14 and n52
Aristippus of Cyrene, VIII:3 and n16;
  IX:4 and n13
Aristonicus (Eumenes III), III:11 and n31
Aristotle, XI:4 and n11; XII:1 and n1;
  XVI:21 and n84; XVIII:4 and n196; XXII:11
in Christian literature, VIII:12 and n52
the four causes, V:9 and n20
Peripatetics, IX:4 and n9; XIX:4 and n15
work falsely attributed to, IV:2 and n6
ark, Noah’s, XV:24–27
animals from, on islands, XVI:7
Christ and Church as prophesied by,
  XV:25 and n39
dimensions of, and dimensions of
  human body, XV:26 and n137
hundred years spent in building, XV:27
  and n150

Volume I/6 & I/7
as symbol of Christ and the Church, XV:26–27 and n155; XVI:7; XVIII:38
wood of, as foreshadowing wood of the cross, XV:26 and n136
ark of the covenant/testimony, X:17–18 and n88; XVI:43 and n173
Artemis, XVIII:18 and n93
artists: three things expected in, XI:25
asbestos, XXI:5–6 and n16
ascension of Christ, XXII:5
Asia, XVI:17 and n77; XVIII:2
asking, seeking, and knocking, XVII:12 and n76
Assaracus, V:12 and n42
Assyria:
earthly city, as example of, XVIII:2, 27
end of, XVIII:21–22, 27
as “first Rome,” XVIII:2
the gods and, IV:6–7
kings of, XVIII:2
the name, XV:3 and n22
as powerful kingdom when Abraham was born, XVI:17
rise and fall of, IV:6–7
astrology; astrological fatalism, XVIII:39 and n188
See also fate
“auspicious” days, V:7
case of twins and, V:1–6
falsity of, V:5
astronomy, XVIII:39 and n188
Egyptian, XVIII:40
Athanaric, XVIII:52 and n255
Athena. See Minerva
Athens, XVIII:12, 41
founding of, XVIII:13 and n68
naming of, XVIII:9–10 and n53
Athens, Academy of. See Academy
Atlas, XVIII:8 and nn37–38; XVIII:39
Attic Nights (Aulus Gellius), IX:4–5
Attis, VI:7; VII:25 and n61
Augustus Caesar. See Caesar Augustus
Aulus Gellius, IX:4 and n12
Aurelius, XXII:8 and n35
authority
See also power
divine, and Christianity, XVIII:40
divine, philosophers as lacking, II:7
of the law, X:17
of Scripture, XI:3
avarice. See greed
Aventine Hill, XVIII:21 and n101
Aventinus, XVIII:21
Babylon:
earthly city, as symbolizing, XVIII:51 and n248
founding of, XVI:4–7
meaning of name, XVI:4; XVII:16; XVIII:41, 51 and n248
Rome as “second,” XVIII:2, 22
Babylon, “western,” XVIII:27 and n137
Babylonian Captivity of the Jews, XVIII:34, 45
rulers of Rome from Romulus to, XVIII:24–26
Bacchae; Bacchanalian rites, III:17 and n97; VI:9 and n27; XVIII:13
Bacchus. See Liber
Balbus, Quintus Lucilius, IV:30 and n114
baptism, I:35 and n96–97; XIII:23; XVIII:48 and n235; XXI:16 and n70
See also original sin; sacraments
the ark and, XV:25 and n39
On the Baptism of Infants (Augustine), XIII:4
and being anointed, XVII:4 and n34
circumcision of Abraham as prefiguring, XV:16 and n76
and cross, signing of, XX:29 and n139
at Easter, XXII:8 and n39
and Eve made from Adam’s rib, XXII:17 and n90
later in life, I:27 and n82
martyrdom as substitute for, XIII:7–8 and n10
pre-baptismal rituals, XV:20 and n102
and Red Sea crossing, X:26 and n124
the “rush to be baptized,” XXI:27 and n113
the unbaptized who die for confessing Christ, XIII:7
baptismal conferral of the Spirit (confirmation), IV:31 and n123
barbarians. See Rome, sack of barrenness
See also Sarah
woman who bore seven children, XVII:4, 20
basilicas, I:7
battle of the gods, II:25
beast, XX:9, 14
beauty, I:18; V:11, 13; VIII:6–7; X:6, 14, 16–17
See also specific topics, e.g., order of proportion/symmetry in, V:11; XI:22; XXII:19, 24, 30 of the universe, XI:18; XII:4
bees, XV:27 and n153
Bel, XVI:17; XVIII:2
Bellerophon, XVIII:13 and n72
Bellona, III:13, 25; IV:11, 21 and n86; IV:24, 34; V:12, 17, 22 rites of, VI:10 and n40 as Roman goddess of war, II:24 and n88
Berecynthia, II:4
See also Cybele
Bible. See Scriptures, sacred birds, XVI:24 bishops, XIX:14 and n44; XX:10 and n36 “watchman,” I:9 and n31 blessedness, XI:11–12 and n32 See also happiness eternal, XXII if possible for man, IX:14 blindness: of Adam and Eve, XIV:17 and n100 body; bodies See also flesh; resurrection of the body; spiritual body; specific topics, e.g., death; pleasure animal body, XIII:23 aspects of human, XXII:24 and n31 and blessedness, ultimate, XIII:16–17 corruptible, XII:16; XIII: summary, 16; XXII:26 and eternal fire/punishment, XXI:2, 9 good of, philosophers’ opinions on, VIII:8 and n39; XIX:2 of men vs. demons (Plotinus), IX:10 as not evil, XIV:5 in paradise, XIII:20 Platonic view of, XIII: summary, 16, 19–20; XIV:3 resurrected, XIII:22–23; XXII:12 as servant to soul, IX:9 and spiritual body, XIII: summary, 23 body of Christ, X:6 and n36; X:20 body of God See also world soul world thought to be, IV:12–13 book of life, XX:14–16 breath, V:9 God’s breathing into Adam/Jesus’ breathing on disciples, XIII:24 bronze serpent, X:8 and n51 Brutus, Junius, I:19; II:17; III:16; V:18 burial of the dead, I:10–13 Cacus, XIX:12 Caelestis, II:4 and n5; II:26 caelicolae, X:1 Caesars:
murder of by Fimbria, III:27 period of, XVIII:24 Caesar, (Gaius) Julius, IX:5 See also under Cato, Marcus Portius: suicide of Pompey, war with, III:13, 30 Venus believed to be grandmother of, III:3 Caesar Augustus, III:21–22; IV:2 and n5; XVIII:46; XIX:20; XXII:7 and n29 civil wars in time of, III:30–31 Cain, XV:1 See also Abel city founded by, XV:8 God speaking to, XV:7 and n18 lines of descent, XV:17–20 sacrifice of, and its rejection, XV:7 Cainan, XVI:3 and n27; XVI:10 Calvary, IV:31 and n123 Camillus, Marcus Furius, II:17 and n50; III:18; IV:7; V:18 Canaan, land of, XVI:24 fulfillment of God’s promise, XVII:2 God’s second and third promises to Abraham, XVI:18, 21 candle, Augustine’s poem on the paschal, XV:22 and n112 cannibalism, XXII:20 and n104; XXII:22 canonical Scriptures, XV:23; XVIII:38 and n183–184 Capitol at Rome, II:12 and n29; II:22, 24; III:12, 15, 17, 29; IV:9–10, 15, 23; VI:7, 10 Capitoline Hill, III:8 the Capitoline stone, II:29 and n100; IV:15 and n68 Marcus Pulvillus dedicating temple on, V:18 and n68 captivity, I:14–15
Carbo, Gaius Papirius, II:22 and n75; III:28
cardinal virtues, IV:20 and n78; V:20 and n85; XIX:4 and n12; XXII:24 and n129
“carnalities,” XIV:2
Carthage, VII:4 and n20; XVI:8 and n46
destruction of, I:30 and n87; II:18–20
Cataphrygians, XVI:34 and n130
Catholic Christianity:
  Augustine’s conversion to, XI:9 and n27
  lapsed Catholics, XXI:26–27
  sacraments and reality, XXI:20 and n80; XXI:25
  those who live evil lives in the Church, XXI:21 and n81; XXI:26–27
catholicity, X:32 and n148
Catiline (Lucius Sergius Catilina), I:5 and n21; III:2
  and pagan gods, capriciousness of, I:8 and n26; II:23
Cato, Marcus Portius (Cato the Younger), II:7; V:12 and n39; V:21; XIX:4 and n14
  and Carthage, I:30 and n87
  suicide of, I:23–24 and n74
  on wartime sack of city, I:5
causes:
  fortuitous, natural, and voluntary, V:9
  the four, V:9 and n20
celibates, XVI:36
  religious, XV:20 and n96
Celsus, XXI:2 and n1
centaurs, XVIII:13 and n69
Cerberus, XVIII:13 and n70
Ceres, VII:2; XVIII:13 and n67
rites of, VI:7; VII:20–21
certainty:
  Christian, XIX:18
  of existence, XI:26
  Chaeremon, X:11 and n60
  Chaldean Oracles, X:23, 27 and n127
  chance, IV:18 and n75, 33 and n125; V:9
  as not causing Rome’s greatness, V:1
  charity, XIV:7
  See also love
  right order of, XV:22
  chastity, I:16–19
  See also virginity; specific topics, e.g., rape
  fortitude and, I:18 and n58
marital, XV:26
  of widowhood, XV:26
childhood:
  difficulty of, XXI:14–15
  punishments of, XXII:22
children
  See also infants
  Christians accused of ritual murder of, XVIII:53 and n270
  and physical punishment, XXII:22 and n112
  plural reference to (Latin), XVI:40 and n160
  unborn, resurrection of, XXII:12–13 and n76
  children, begetting. See procreation, human
  Chimera, XVIII:13 and n72
  chrism, XV:38 and n146; XVII:6 and n46; XVII:16
  Christ
  See also Jesus Christ
  all Christians as Christs, XX:10 and n37
  the name, XVI:38 and n146; XVII:6 and n46; XVII:16; XVIII:23
  and n113; XVIII:33 and n156
Christianity; Christian faith
  See also Catholic Christianity; Church
  Augustine’s conversion to (Catholic), XI:9 and n27
  certainty of, XIX:18
  Christian belief, VII:29–32 and n71
  Christian pride, antidote to, V:17–18
  Christian times, complaints about, I:30 and divine authority, XVIII:40
  emperors, good Christian, V:24–25
  end of, XVIII:53 and n268
  evils occurring prior to, when gods were still worshiped, III:31
  as to last only 365 years (pagan belief), XVIII:54
  as not to blame for the fall of Rome, I:1–3
  Platonism and, VIII:9–12
  public teaching of, II:28
Christians
  See also specific topics, e.g., burial of the dead
  blamed for disasters, II:3 and n3; III:31
  in captivity, I:14–16
  false, I:35
and loss of riches, I:10
and style of life, XIX:18–20
as universal way of salvation, X:32
and n148
why God allows Christians to suffer, I:28–29
Christ, Christians as, XX:10 and n37
Christus. See “anointed one”
Chronicles (Eusebius of Caesarea). See under Eusebius of Caesarea:
Chronicles
Chrysippus, IX:4–5 and n15
Church
See also Catholic Christianity;
Christianity; prophecies of
Christ and the Church; specific
topics, e.g., ark: as symbol of
the Church; sacraments
as body and fulfillment of Christ,
XXII:18
as city of God, VIII:24 and n95; X:21
and n99; XIII:16; XVI:2 and
n16
kingdom of heaven, identified with,
XX:9 and n29
love for Christ, and belief in as divine,
XXI:6–7
the new Jerusalem, XX:17, 21
persecutions of, XVIII:50–53
perseverance in (and immorality of
life), XXI:25
prayers of, XXI:24
reprobates and good people in,
XVIII:49
as sacrament, XVI:7 and n44
sinners, allowing for presence of,
XX:9 and n29
spreading of, XVIII:50–51
churches, Christian: as places of
sanctuary, I:1–2, 7
Cicero, Marcus Tullius, II:8–10, 27;
XIV:8; XVIII:24; XXII:6 and
n19; XXII:20
On Divination, III:17 and n110
on foreknowledge and free will, V:
summary, 9
Hortensius, III:15 and n67
on republic/On the Republic, II:9, 12,
21; XIV:23; XIX: summary,
21; XXII:6 and n25–27
on stories about the gods, IV:26
on superstition, images of the gods,
religion of the populace, IV:30
“would-be philosopher,” II:27 and n92
Cinna, Lucius Cornelius, II:22 and n74;
III:27; V:26
circumcision:
of Abraham, XV:16 and n76; XV:23, 26
on the eighth day, XVI:27
cities, two, XI:33
See also city of God; city of man
and angels and women intermingling,
XV:22–24
color of, XIV:28
conflicts between: the flesh and spirit,
XV:5–6
contrast between/delineation of, XI:33;
XIV:28; XXII:6 and n21
course through time, XI–XIV
deaths, of, merited, XIX–XXII
eternal peace and, XIX:17
first man as beginning of, XII:28(27)
intermingling in this world, I:35
and lines of descent, XV:8, 21
origins of, XI–XIV
temporal goods and temporal evils of
both alike, XVIII:54 and n286
throughout history, XV–XVIII
two loves as having made two cities,
XIV: summary, 28
variety to be found in, XIV:1; XIX:17
city:
 miseries of social life, XIX:5–6
wartime sack of, I:5
City of God (Augustine):
best-known passage/summary of,
XIV:28 and n123
Book I, summation of, II:2; IV:1
Books II and III, summation of, IV:2
Books XI–XXII, subject/summary of,
I:35 and n98; X:1
Book XII, XII:11(10) and n20
final chapter in, XXII:30 and n160
purpose of/reason for writing, I:
preface–1 and n3
city of God, II:29; V:15; VI:4; X:6 and
n35
See also cities, two
Abel and, XV:1
among the peoples of earth, XVI:10
as born of grace, XV:2–3
Christ and, XXII:6 and n21
Church as, VIII:24 and n95; X:21 and
The City of God

Volume I/6 & I/7

cities, two
Assyrians and Romans as examples, XIV:2
Babylon as symbolizing, XVI:4
as born of nature, XV:2–3
Cain and, XV:1
characteristics of, XV:4–7
defining, VIII:24 and n95; XIV:28–V:1
first founder of, XV:5
goods of, XV:4–5
civic theology, VI:6–7
implied aim of Varro’s account, VI:8–9
no divinity in, VII:1
as not holding promise of eternal life, VII:12
civil strife, III:23–26
civil wars, Roman, I:30; II:18, 22; III:7, 13–14, 17; IV:23; V:25
Augustus, in time of, III:30–31
before coming of Christ, III:30
as evil internal to the Republic, III:23–26
gods and, II:23–25
Marius and Sulla, II:23–24; III:27–30; V:26
start of, III:24
clemency, I:7
clerics, XX:10 and n36
clouds, XVII:4 and n32
Codrus, king of the Athenians, XVIII:19–20
Collatinus, Lucius Tarquinius, I:19; II:17
colonies, XXII:8 and n53
common good, II:21; V:15, 18; XIX: summary
commonplace, the, IV:27 and n104
community, XVI:2 and n15
all things possessed in common, XVIII:54 and n276
Concord: temple of, III:25–26
concupiscence. See desire; lust confirmation, IV:31 and n123
Confusion, tower of, XVI:4–7
congruentia (proportion). See under beauty: role of proportion in
“constant dispositions,” XIV:8
Constantine, V:21 and n88; V:24–25 and n97–99
counsels; consulship, V:12
the first consuls, III:16
contemplation, XVII:16 and n94
contrapositions, XI:18
corpses, XX:10 and n35; XX:21
corruptible body, XII:16; XIII: summary, 16; XXII:26
cosmos, VII:6
covenants, XVI:27 and n107; XVI:31
See also New Testament; Old Testament
creation, VIII:10, 12
See also specific topics, e.g., order of the angels, XI:9, 32–34; XII:27(26); XXII:1
the creation serving the creator, X:13
date of man’s, XII:13(12)
days of, XI:7–8, 30–31
the divine Trinity in, XI:24–28
God as creator and sustainer, VII:30
God as sole creator, XII:25(24)–27(26)
and God’s rest, XI:6, 8; XXII:30
goodness of, and goodness of God, XI:21–23
harmony of, XI:22 and n46; XII:4; XIX:12
hierarchy of, XI:16
of the human race, XII:22(21)–24(23); XXII:1
and the immutability of God, XI:4–6
orderly structure of, V:11
reason for, XI:21–23

The City of God
The City of God

the seventh day, XI:6, 8, 31; XV:12; XXII:30
three questions in regard to any creature, XI:21, 23
time and, XI:4–6
traces of the Trinity in, XI:24–28
Creed, the, XVII:4 and n31; XX:1 and n2
Crete, XVIII:13 and n74
cross:
signing of on forehead, XX:29 and n139
trophy of, XVIII:32 and n149
wood of ark as foreshadowing, XV:26 and n136
cult statues/images, VI:7–8, 10; VII:10, 28
Cumaean Sibil, X:27 and n132; XVIII:23 and n116
Cupid, IV:10 and n46

See also Attis; Galli; Great Mother; Pessinus
rites of, II:4–6 and n6
temple dedicated to, III:12 and n39
cyclical theories, XII: summary, 14(13) and n26; XII:18(17)
ages of ages, XII:20(19)
refutation of, XII:21(20)
Cynicism; Cynic philosophers, XIV:20 and n108; XIX:1 and n7; XIX:18
Antisthenes, VIII:3
Théombrôtos, I:22
cynocephalus; cynocephali, II:14 and n37; III:12; XVI:8
Cyprian, VIII:27 and n108
Cyrus the Great, IV:7 and n18
Daedalus, XVIII:13 and n74
damnation, eternal. See eternal punishment
Danae, II:7 and n13; XVIII:13 and n78
darkness:
   angels as, XI:33
   God as separating light from, XI:19
David:
   as lyre player, XVII:14 and n86

from Moses to, XVI:43
prophetic anticipation of Christ, XVII:8–19
reign of, XVII:20
day of the Lord, XX:19
deacons, XX:21 and n76
death
See also fall; specific topics, e.g., martyrdom; punishment
as an evil, XIII:6
“before,” “after,” and “in,” XIII:9–11
burial of the dead, I:10–13
corpses, XX:10 and n35; XX:21
cult of the dead, VIII:26
dreadful types of, I:11–13
eternal, and supreme evil, XIX:4
friends’ deaths, sadness at, XIX:7 and n23
inevitability of, I:11
long life same as short one, I:11; XIII:10
meanings of, XIII: summary, 2, 12–15
odor of dead bodies, X:11, 19
as punishment, XIII:3–6
the refrigerium, VIII:27, n109
returns from the dead, XXII:28 and n149
of the saints, XIII:7–8, 20
sea, dead given up by, XX:15
second, XIII:2, 14, 23; XIV:1; XIX:28
of soul and body, XIII:2; XXI passim
threat of, XIII:12–15
as unable to inflict harm on the good, I:11; XV:24
without burial, I:11–13
death, life after. See eternal life;
   resurrection of the body
Decalogue, XV:20
deception. See lying
Decii, IV:20, 20 and n81; V:14, 18
Decius, XVIII:52 and n253
deity:
   deification of men, XVIII passim
   and divinity, VII:1; X:1
Demeter. See Ceres
“demon” of Socrates, VIII:14
demons, VIII:24–25; IX–X passim
See also eudaimones ("good demons")
Apuleius on, VIII:14–18; IX:3
bodies of, III:18 and n113; VIII:15; IX:9–12

Volume I/6 & I/7
Christian religion as exposing, VII:33
and contamination by human contact, IX:16–18
crime, as encouraging, II:25
difference among, VIII:27; IX:1
divinity, as claiming, II:10 and passim; XV:16
eternal punishment for, XXI:23
evil mediators, IX:15
fire as punishment for, XXI:10
good angels as not good demons, IX:19
good demons as logical impossibility, IX:2–3, 13–14
Hermes Trismegistus on, VIII:23
immortal body, vice-ridden soul, IX:9–11
Jesus and, IX:21
knowledge of, IX:20–22 and n55
and the martyrs/persecution, X:21–22
re. mediating between gods and humans, VIII:18–22; IX:9, 12–13, 15–16, 23
and miseries of social life, XIX:9–10
as not superior to humans, VIII:15
pagan gods as thought to be, I:31 and n90
passions, as subject to, IX:6–8
physical appearance of (in patristic literature), XXII:8 and n41
the Platonists on, VIII:14–18
pride of, IX:20–22
promises of, IX:18
re. happiness, IX:9–21
reason as attributed to, IX:3
souls of, VIII:24, 26; IX:6, 9–11
souls of men as, IX:11 and n32
“spirits of this lower air,” XVII:24 and n95
wills of, V:9; XI: summary; XII: summary
the word, IX:19–20 and n55
demon-worship:
demon-worshippers, IX:19 and n53
Porphyry and, X:26
Radagaisus, V:23 and n96
as wrong, VIII:17, 22; IX:23; X:9
descent, lines of. See lines of descent
Desert Fathers, V:26, n103
desire, XIV:7, 15
See also lust; passions
human misery, role in, XXII:22 and n109
Deucalion, XVIII:8 and n43, 10, 12 and n61
devil, XI:13–18
binding for a thousand years, XX:7–8
condemnation of, XX:14
eternal punishment for, XXI:17 and n76; XXI:23
fall of, XI:13–15, 33, XII:6, 9; XIV:11
Gog and Magog, XX:11
nature of, XIX:13
no salvation for, XXI:23
releasing of, XX:8
Diana, III:11; IV:11; VI:7; VII:2, 15–16
and n41
di consentes, IV:23 and n94
Dinah, XVI:40 and n159
Diocletian, I:26 and n80; XVIII:52 and n253
Diogenes of Apollonia, VIII:2 and n12
Diogenes of Sinope, XIV:20 and n108, 110
Diomedes, XVII:16
Dionysius. See Liber disasters
See also specific topics and events, e.g., war
as blamed on Christians, II:3 and n3; III:31
internal, III:23
pagan gods and, II:3; III:17–18, 20, 31
tears of Apollo’s statue as portent of, III:11
disciples, XVIII:49
discipline, God’s, I:8
disobedience. See under Adam:
disobedience of Adam and Eve
Dis Pater/Dispater, VII:16 and n43; VII:23
See also Orcus; Pluto
disturbances, VIII:17 and n70
four, XIV:5
of the mind, IX:4–5; XIV:9
divinity: deity and, VII:1; X:1
dog-headed men. See cynocephali
domination
See also authority; empire; power
and cult of gods used as tool by secular rulers, IV:32 and n124
difference between desire for glory and desire for domination, V:19
lust for, I: preface, 30–31; III:14; IV:6; V:13
Donatists, XXI:20 and n80
Maximus, XXII:8 and n47
double predestination, XV:1 and n2;  
XXII:24

dusii: Dusios, XV:23 and n118

earth
See also under elements: four; world all human life on earth as trial,  
XXI:14–15
bodies as, XX:24 and n95
each person as carrying his own “earth” around, XVII:4 and n29
eternal (Platonic view), XIII:17
femininity assigned to, VII:28 and n68
Gaia, XVIII:13 and n76
geocentric view of, XV:14 and n59
new, XX:16
earthly city. See city of this world earthly kingdoms. See kingdoms, earthly earthly possessions. See possessions
Easter:
baptism at, XXII:8 and n39
miracles at time of, XXII:8 and n63
eclipse of the sun, III:15
Eden, XIII:18 and n29
See also paradise
Edom, XVI:41; XVIII:47 and n230
education, II:3
See also teachers
and conversion to Christianity, XXII:5
of humanity, X:14–15
liberal disciplines, II:8 and n17; VI:2;  
XXII:5 and n11
secular, VI:2
the well-educated influencing the less well-educated to hate Christianity, II:3 and n4; IV:1;  
VI: preface
effeminacy, VII:25 and n64
Egypt, X:8
See also under individual names, e.g., Jacob; specific events
astronomy, Egyptian, XVIII:40
cult of animals, II:22 and n78
Egyptian empire/kingdom, XVI:17
Mizraim, XVI:11 and n64
religion of, VIII:23–24
years, Egyptian, XII:11(10); XV:12  
and n50
eighth day: symbolism of, XVI:26 and n103
Eleazar, XVIII:36 and n169; XVIII:42–43

elect, VII:1
elements:
fifth, XXII:11
the four, IV:9–10 and n33; VIII:5;  
XV:27 and n148
order of, XXII:11
of the universe, Jupiter and, IV:9–10
Eleusinian Mysteries, VII:20 and n54
eleven, the number, XV:20
Eli, XVIII:19
prophecy to, XVII:5–6
Elijah, IV:14 and n67
return of, XX:29
emotions, VIII:14; XIV:6–8
See also passions
the “constant dispositions,” XIV:8
in the first human beings, XIV:10
and future life, XIV:9
will and, XIV:4–6
emperors, V:21
See also individual names
Christian, V:24–25
empire (Roman Empire):
divine gift to Rome of, V:13–17
eternity of, belief in, IV:7 and n20
evaluation of, IV:3–5
God as giver of, V:11
good men and desire to extend, IV:15
Jupiter and, IV:9, 14
Rome’s expansion of, IV: summary,  
2–3, 8
empires, history of, XVIII passim
enemies of God, XII:3
enjoyment
See also pleasure
use and, VIII:8 and n40; XI:25; XV:7;  
XIX:13
Ennius, II:21; VII:27 and n67
ennoiai, VIII:7
Enoch, XV:8, 10, 13, 17, 19–21, 23 and n129; XVIII:38 and n182
translation of, XV:19
Enosh, XV:12, 15, 17–18, 21 and n107
ephebophilia, VII:25 and n64
Epictetus, IX:4 and n14
Epicurean philosophers, V:20; VIII:5, 7;  
XIV:2; XVIII:41
Epicurus, VI:5 and n15; VIII:5 and n26; XI:5; XII:12(11) and n23;  
XVIII:41; XIX:1
error; erroneous views, XXI:17–27
Erythraean Sibyl, XVIII:23 and n110

Volume I/6 & I/7
Volume I/6 & I/7

Esau, V:4 and n13; XVI:35 and n135
See also Idumeans
kings at time of birth, XVIII:3

Esdras, XVIII:35–36 and n167

essentia, XII:2 and n6
eternal death: and supreme evil, XIX:4, 28
eternal fire. See under fire
eternal life, XXI–XXII
See also heaven
gift of, XXII:21
and gods, worship of, VI:1
goods of, XXII:24
happiness in, worship of select gods as not bringing, VII:26–27
mystery of, VII:32
neither angels nor demons to be worshiped for sake of, IX:23
neither mythic nor civic theology as holding promise to, VI:12
pagan gods and, VI
of the saints, XXII:29
and supreme good, XIX:4
eternal pain, XXI:2–3
eternal peace, XIX:14, 17
eternal punishment, XXI passim
See also fire; hell; specific topics,
  e.g., double predestination;
tercession of the saints
devil and his angels to suffer, XXI:17–23
divine mercy and, XXI:17–22
as eternal, XXI:23
as final end, XXI–XXII passim
heretics and, XXI:19, 25
just correlation of sin and, XXI:11–12
the lost far outnumber the saved,
XXI:21 and n85; XXI:12 and n57
nature of, XXI:9
and order/beauty of creation, XI:18;
XVII:11 and n73; XXI:12
restoration, doctrine of, XXI:17 and n76
saints’ knowledge of, XX:22
eternity, XII:21(20) and n34
See also under resurrection of the body: eternity
“before eternal times,” XII:17(16) and n30
God as, XI:28; XII:1
time and, XII:15(14)–17(16)
Ethan the Ezrahite, XVII:12 and n74
ethics, VIII:8
eucharist, II:28 and n96; XVI:37 and n143; XVI:41 and n163; XVIII:49 and n243
See also sacraments
the ark and, XV:25 and n39
the body of Christ, X:6 and n36; X:20
and daily offering of sacrifice, X:20 and n96
eucharistic liturgy, XIV:13 and n81;
XX:9 and n32
and Eve made from Adam’s rib,
XXII:17 and n90
for exorcistic purpose, XXII:8 and n45
and manna in the desert, X:26 and n124
Melchizedek’s offering and, XVI:22
and n89
place for celebrating, XXII:8 and n45
and reconciliation, sacrament of,
XIX:9 and n33
sacraments and reality, XXI:20 and n80; XXI:25
saints memorialized in eucharistic prayer, XXII:10 and n68
eudaemonist position, IV:23 and n95
eudaimonos (“good demons”), IX:11 and n33
as logical impossibility, IX:13–14
Eudoxus of Cnidus, XVI:23 and n91
Eugenius, V:26 and nn104, 107
Euhemerus; euhemerism, VI:7 and n17;
VII:17 and n47; VII:27; XVIII:8 and n39
Eumenes III (Aristonicus), III:11 and n31
eunuchs, VII:25
Euphrates River, XVI:24
Europa, IV:27 and n107; XVIII:12 and n63
Europe, XVI:17 and n77
Eusebius of Caesarea, V:24 and nn97, 99;
XVI:22 and n88
Chronicles, XII:11(10) and n20;
XVI:16; XVIII passim
Eve
See also Adam; woman
as made from Adam’s side, XII:28(27);
XXII:17
evil, III passim
See also sin; suffering
as antithesis of good, XI:18 and n37;
XVII:11
bringing good out of, XXII:1 and n2
as deprivation of good, XI:9 and n27

The City of God
as emphasizing or distinguishing the good, XI:18 and n37; XVII:11
end of the wicked, XIX:28
failure to correct, I:9
the good as not hurt by actions of the wicked, I:10–29; IV:3 and n9
internal to the republic, III:23–26
Isaiah on, XX:21–22
Manichean view of matter as, XIV:5 and n15
mediators, evil, IX:15
and mercy of God, I:8
moral evils, XXII:22–23 and n31
as not natural, XI:17
origin of, XII:4–9
prior to Christianity, when gods were still worshiped, III:31
separate ends of good and, XX:21–22, 27; XXI:1
and suffering, I:33
supreme, XIX:1, 4, 28
temporal, of both cities, XVIII:54 and n286
temporal (sack of Rome), I:8–9
this life, evils of, XXII:22
in the universe, XI:22
will, as function of, XI: summary
evil spirits. See demons
evil will, V:1, 8–9; XI: summary; XII: summary
cause of first, XII:6–9
the first, XIV:11
as preceding the evil act, XIV:13
Evodius, XXII:8 and n60
existence, XI:27–28 and n61
certainty of, XI:26
existing and living, VII:6 and n29; XV:5, 7
God as supreme being (no being as contrary to), XII:2
Expositions of the Psalms (Augustine), XVII:15 and n93
eyes. See also blindness
vision of God, XXII:29 and n152
Fabius (Quintus Fabius Maximus Varrucosus Cunctator), I:6 and n25
fables of the poets, II:8
Fabricius (Gaius Fabricius Luscinus), V:18 and nn70, 73
faith. See also Christianity; rule of faith
in the incarnation, by righteous of ancient times, X:25
and justice, IV:20 and n78; XX:26 and n106
and the mediator, XI:2–3
Faith (goddess), IV:20
fall:
angelic, XI:11–13, 28; XXII:1
of the devil, XI:13–15, 33; XII:6, 9; XIV:11
hidden fall, notion of, XIV:13 and n83
human, XIII:1, 14; XIV:11–12
procreation before, XIV:21–22
sexuality before, XIII:24; XIV:23–24
fall of Rome. See Rome, sack of false gods. See gods, pagan
family, XIX:16 and n56
famine, I:10; III:16–18
fate, V:9
as chain of causes, V:8
as not causing Rome’s greatness, V:1
Faustus the Manichean, XVI:41
fear. See also passions
constraint of, II:18–20
two types of, XIV:9
Feast of Flight, II:6 and n9
Febris. See Fever
felicity. See happiness
Felicity (goddess), IV:18–25 and n73; V: preface, 16; VII:3
Rome’s late recognition of, IV:23
Virtue and, IV:21
fercula, II:4 and n7
Fever, II:14 and n38; III:12, 25; IV:15, 23
Figulus, Publius Nigidius, V:3 and n11
Fimbria, Gaius Flavius, III:7 and n17
Caesars, murder of, III:27
sack of Troy by, III:7–8
fire, VI:5 and n15
See also under elements: four; eternal punishment
the body and, XXI:2
of the Chaldeans, XVI:15 and n71
eternal, XI:11 and n32; XII:4; XXI:2, 4–7
evil spirits, as punishment for, XXI:10
of hell, as everlasting, XXI:10–22
positive qualities of eternal, XII:4
Volume I/6 & I/7

salvation through, XVI:24 and n97; XXI:26
Stoic beliefs regarding, VII:30 and n73; VIII:5 and n25
survival in eternal, XXI:4–7
of this world, VII:30 and n73
worm and, XX:22; XXI:2, 9, 24, 26
fish:
discovering something precious in stomach of, XXII:8 and n51
ichthus, XVIII:23 and n115
fixed rule. See rule of faith
Flaccianus, XVIII:23 and n112
flamens, II:15 and n41; II:20; III:27
flesh
See also body; specific topics, e.g., desire; pain
living according to, XIV:2
meaning of word, XIV:3
nature and properties of, XXI:8
as not evil, XIV:5
and sin, XIV:3
as symbolized by the wife, XV:7 and n24
vs. spirit, XIV:5–6; XXI:15–16
flies, XV:27
flood, the, XV:22
history, and allegory, XV:27
lines of descent from Cain and Seth down to, XV:17–20
long lives of ancients before, XV:8–14
Noah and the ark, XV:24–26
flood, Deucalion’s. See Deucalion
flood of Oggyus, XVIII:8
Flora, Mother, II:27 and n94; IV:8
foreign iniquity, IV:14–17
foreknowledge, divine:
and human freedom, V: summary, 9–10
sin and, XII:23(22); XIV:11, 26–27
form, XI:28 and n61
fortitude
See also cardinal virtues
and suicide, XIX:4
and virginity/chastity, I:18 and n58
fortuitous causes, V:9
Fortuna Barbata, IV:11; V:1
and Jupiter, IV:23, 29
fortune, V:9 and n25
See also chance
Fortune (goddess), IV:18–19
four, the number, XV:20 and n105
four disturbances, XIV:5
four elements. See under elements: the four
four hundred years, XV:8; XVI:24; XX:13
fratricide
See also Abel; Cain; Romulus
Rome and, III:6; XV:5
freedom of will
See also will
divine foreknowledge and, V: summary, 9–10
God’s creation of man with, XIV:11–16
in heaven, XXII:30
and necessity, V:10
sin and, XXII:30 and n163
friendship, XIX:8
of angels, XIX:9
frogs, XVI:7 and n43
fugalia (Feast of Flight), II:6 and n9
Furies, III:13 and n47
future life: emotions and, XIV:9
Gaia, XVIII:13 and n76
Galli, II:7 and n11; VI:7, 10 and n40; VII:24–26 and n58
Ganymede, IV:25 and n99; VII:26; XVIII:13 and n77
Garden of Eden, XIII:18 and n29
See also paradise
Gauls, II:17; III:17, 31; IV:7, 29; V:18; VIII:9
devotion to Mercury, VII:19 and n50
invasion of, III:29
Rome saved from, II:22 and n77; III:8
geese:
Rome saved from Gauls by, II:22 and n77; III:8
as sacred to Juno, II:22 and n77, 29; III:8
Gellius, Aulus, IX:4–5
Gemini, the two, XVIII:54 and n278
generations. See lines of descent
genius, VII:6 and n24; VII:13
Genius (god), VII:2
and Jupiter, VII:13
gentiles:
three prominent kingdoms of, XVI:17
and translation of Hebrew Scripture into Greek, XVIII:42
Gervasio and Protasius, XV:9 and n37; XXII:8

The City of God
The City of God

Getae, XX:11 and n40
giants, III:5; IV:30; XV:9 and n37; XVIII:13 and n76; XXII:8, 14 and intermingling of angels and women, XV:23
Nimrod, XVI:3–4, 11
gifts, divine:
and pagan gods, IV:24
seven, of the Holy Spirit, XI:31 and n68
gladiators, III:14, 26; V:22
revolt of, IV:5
goats:
difference between desire for glory and desire for domination, V:19
Roman love of, V:12
and virtue, proper end of, V:20
goal: as God, XI:2 and n5
goats, XVI:24 and n92
goatskins, XVI:37 and n141
three-year-old goat, XVI:43
God
See also foreknowledge; Trinity;
specific topics, e.g., mercy;
worship
as all in all, II:21; XIX:20
anger of, IX:5 and n21; XV:25; XXI:24
body of, IV:12
as creator and sustainer, VII:30
and the gods, demons, and contamination by human contact, IX:16–18
as Good, X:3
goodness of, and goodness of creation, XI:21–23
image of, XII:24(23)
immutability of, IV:31 and n122; XI: summary, 4–6; XII:2–4
judgment as often obscure, but nonetheless just, III:1; IV:7 and n20; IV:17; XV:6 and n16; XVIII:18; XX:2–3, 19; XXI:13
knowledge, God’s, XI:21; XII:19(18)
knowledge of (knowing God), XI:2; XXII:2
living according to, XIV:4
as Lord, XII:16(15) and n29
love for, X:3
the one true God and his works, VII:29–33
power of, XXI:4–7
promises of, XX:21–25; XXII:2–3
seeing face to face, XXII:29
as sole creator, XII:25(24)–27(26)
as supreme being (no being as contrary to), XII:2
sweetness as hidden, XXI:4–7
the true, justice and (against Porphyry), XIX:21–23
visible appearances of, X:12–13
vision of in heaven, XXII:30
will of, XI:21; XII:2–3
as working through humans, XI:8; XVI:5; XXII:2
God, city of. See city of God
goddesses.
See also under gods, below; individual names
Felicity and Fortune, IV:18–19
names, meanings of, IV:8 and nn22–27
and virtue the virtues, IV:20
gods, I–V; II:19; VII passim
See also theology; specific topics, e.g.,
demons: mediating between gods and humans
angels and, IX:23
and Assyrian rule, rise and fall of,
IV:6–7
banning of sacrifices, I:36
battle of, II:25
capriciousness of, II:23
“certain or uncertain,” III:12; VI:3
and civil wars, II:23–24
and contamination by human contact, IX:16–18
cult of, IV:32, 34; VI:7–8, 10; VII:10, 28
used as tool by secular rulers, IV:32 and n124
demons, as thought to be, I:31 and n90
descent from, men as claiming, III:4
death of earthly kingdoms, from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
death of earthly kingdoms at the time of Moses, XVIII:8
death of earthly kingdoms in the period of the Judges, XVIII:13–15
evil as not stopped by, III passim
demons, as thought to be, I:31 and n90
descent from, men as claiming, III:4
death of earthly kingdoms, from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
death of earthly kingdoms at the time of Moses, XVIII:8
death of earthly kingdoms in the period of the Judges, XVIII:13–15
evil as not stopped by, III passim
demons, as thought to be, I:31 and n90
descent from, men as claiming, III:4
death of earthly kingdoms, from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
death of earthly kingdoms at the time of Moses, XVIII:8
death of earthly kingdoms in the period of the Judges, XVIII:13–15
evil as not stopped by, III passim
demons, as thought to be, I:31 and n90
descent from, men as claiming, III:4
death of earthly kingdoms, from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
death of earthly kingdoms at the time of Moses, XVIII:8
death of earthly kingdoms in the period of the Judges, XVIII:13–15
evil as not stopped by, III passim
example of, II:25

Volume I/6 & I/7
exhortation to Romans to abandon, II:29
failure to provide moral guidance, II:4–6
failure to save the republic, II:22
functions/specific services of each, IV 8–29 passim; IV:34; VI:1, 9
good and evil divinities, II:11, 29; III:17
in Greece, cult of, XVIII:13
Hermes Trismegistus on, VIII:23–25
and human immorality, II:25
impotence of, VI
and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2
moral guidance, failure to provide, II:4–6
mother of gods, rites of, II:4–6
names, meanings of, IV:11 and nn49–63
names of, different for different functions, IV:11 and n48
naming of, for their gifts, IV:24–25 as of no help, I:14–16
after Numa’s reign, III:12
and Paris’s adultery, III:3–5
plebian, IV:11
Rome, as weakening, I:32–36; II:1–4
Rome, polytheism of, I–V
and Rome, disasters afflicting, II:3
Rome’s empire, as incapable of extending/preserving, IV:28
and Rome’s expansion, IV:8
secret moral teaching provided by, II:26–27
temples not respected as sanctuaries, I:4–6
theaters/theatrical shows and, I:31–34; IV:26
three views of, IV:27; VI:5
and Troy, fall of, III:2–5
Varro on, IV:22; VI:2–4
and virtue, public teaching of, II:6–7
what pagans think about their gods, IV:30
withdrawal of, II:22
worship of, for the sake of eternal life, VI
worship of, Romans exhorted to abandon, II:29
worship of, secret, IV:1, 1 and n2
worship of many gods, VIII:13
gods, “good” (Neoplatonist), VIII:24 and n97; IX:23
gods, greater: Jupiter and the elements of the universe, IV:9–10
gods, household. See household gods
gods, select. See select gods
gods, “gods,” the title, IX:23
Gog and Magog, XX:11
good, XI:28 and n61
See also common good; supreme good and advantages, IX:4
evil, bringing good out of, XXII:1 and n2
extrinsic, VIII:8
final, VIII:8
God as, X:3
the good as not hurt by actions of the wicked, I:10–29; IV:3 and n9
goods of this life, XXII:24
greatest, VI:1–12
Isaiah on, XX:21–22
Romans, goodness of, II:17
separate ends of the good and the evil, XX:21–22, 27; XXI:1
as suffering, I:9
temporal, I:8; XVIII:54 and n286
true, Psalm 73 and, X:25
the upright, great mystery within, XVI:2
why good people also suffered in sack of Rome, I:9
good life, I:11; II:4, 7; VIII:2
and society, XIX:5–7
goods
See also possessions; riches
advantages, IX:4 and n11
Gospel, XVIII:35 and n165
Gothic Christians, XVIII:52 and n255
Goths, I; III:29; V:23
See also Rome, sack of
Gracchi, II:21–22 and n63; III:26
and civil wars, start of, III:24
grace, divine, I:28; V:14, 19; VII: preface, 5; VIII:10–11, 23; X:6, 22
Augustine’s doctrine of, XV:21 and n110
and death, XIII:4
and demons, freedom from, IV:26, 31; X:10
heavenly city as born of, XV:2–3
and humility, I: preface
laws of, XXI:16
Platonism and, X:28–29
Porphyry, and, X:32
as relief from original sin, XXII:22
and sacraments, X:8 and n43
and salvation, XV:1 and n2
and second death, many as rescued
from, XIV:1
grammar, XIII:11 and n15
Gratian, V:25–26, 25 and n101
Great Mother (Mother of the Gods), II:4
and nn5–6; IV:10; VII:16 and n44; X:16 and n79
See also Cybele; Tellus
rites/worship of, II:4–5 and n6; V:7
Greece; Greek people
See also philosophers
cult of false gods in, XVIII:13
“fickle little Greeks,” I:4 and n19; IX:5 and n19
“frivolous and licentious,” II:14 and n33
Greeks and Romans on poets and actors, II:9–13
tears of Apollo’s statue as portent of disaster for, III:11
and Troy, I:4
greed, XII:8
insatiability of, VII:12 and n38
Greek language
See also under specific topics, e.g., Scriptures, sacred
dual form of nouns in, XX:23 and n85
superiority of as highly esteemed,
VIII:2 and n3, 10; XVIII:37
grief. See passions
gymnosophists, XIV:17; XV:20 and n97
Hadrian, IV:29 and n110
Hagar, XV:3; XVI:25–26
Ham, son of Noah. See under Noah
Hannah, prophecy of, XVII:4
Hannibal, II:9 and n19; IV:29
the Second Punic War, III:19–21 and n118
happiness, IV:15; X; XII:21(20) and n34
See also blessedness
angelic and human, X:2–3
and angels’ teaching to worship God alone, X:16
and the body, XIII:17
for both good and bad people, I:8–9
and n26; II:23
of Christian emperors, V:24–25
after death, VIII:5; X:1
demons and, IX:9–21
and empire, evaluation of, IV:3
of eternal life, XXII:30
God as giver of, IV:24–26
as greatest good, VI:11–12
hope and, XIX:20
in life after death, worship of select gods as not bringing, VII:26–27
life of, XIX:1–3
one source of, X:1–3
of paradise, XIV:25–26
philosophers re., XVIII:41
Stoics re., IX:4; XIX:1
and supreme good, XIX:1–4
true, V: preface, 24
ultimate, XII:21(20); XIII: summary
heaven, XXII:30
See also eternal life
Church on earth and, XX:9 and n29
earthly bodies and, XIII: summary, 18;
XXII:4, 11
masculinity assigned to, VII:28 and n68
new, XX:16
saints and the righteous as, XX:24 and n94
souls as, XX:24 and n95
Heber, XVI:3, 10–11
and the Hebrew language, XVI:11
Hebrew, the word, XVI:3 and n28;
XVI:11
Hebrew language/biblical Hebrew,
XVI:11 and n60; XX:30 and n122
See also under specific topics, e.g., Old Testament: translations
dual form of nouns in, XX:23 and n85
Heber and, XVI:11
as original language, XVI:11
as written language, XVIII:39 and n186
Hebrew prophets. See prophets
Hebrew Scripture. See under Scriptures, sacred
Hebrews, XVI:3 and n28
See also Jews
Hecate, XIX:23 and n84
Hector, III:13 and n48
hedonism, II:20 and n61
heifer, XVI:24
three-year-old, XVI:43
Helen of Sparta (Troy), IV:27 and n106
hell, XX:15
See also eternal punishment; fire
descent of Christ into, XX:15 and n50
eternity of hellfire, XI:11 and n33;
XXI passim
Helle, XVIII:13 and n71
Hera. See Juno
Heraclitus, VI:5 and n15
Hercules, XIV:20 and n110; XVIII:8,
12–13 and n76
Samson compared to, XVIII:19 and
n95
heresy; heretics, V:18; X:24
See also specific heresies, e.g.,
Donatists
argument for existence of, XVI:12
and n8
Church as strengthened by, XVIII:51
and eternal punishment, XXI:19, 25
trouble caused orthodox Christians by,
XVIII:51
hermeneia, VII:14
Hermes. See Mercury
Hermes Trismegistus, VIII:23–26 and
n86; XVIII:39 and n189
the art of making gods and the coming
abolition of the gods, VIII:23
the art of making gods as rooted in
error and unbelief, VIII:24–25
on the demons, VIII:23
lament of, VIII:26
heroes, VII:6 and n24; X:21
the term, X:21
Hesiod, XVIII:14 and n81
Hesperius, XXII:8 and n46
Hesychius of Salona, XX:5 and n13
Hexapla, the, XV:14, n65
Hippocrates, V:2 and n8; V:5; XXII:8
Hippolytus, XVII:21 and n118, XVII:53
and n267
Hippo Regius, XVI:8 and n48; XXII:8
and n48, 53
miracles in, XXII:8 and n63
Hippo Zaritus (Hippo Diarrhytus), XVI:8
and n48; XXII:8 and n48
history:
division into ages, XXII:30 and n168
the flood, allegory, and, XV:27
two cities throughout, XV–XVIII
Holy Spirit
See also Trinity
the number seven and, XI:31 and n68
relation to Father and Son, X:23 and
n110; X:29 and n136; XIII:24
and sacred Scripture, XVI:2 and n17;
XVIII:38
and the Septuagint translation, XV:14
and n66
seven gifts of, XI:31 and n68
and will of God, IX:22 and n62
Homer, III:2; IV:26, 30; V:8; IX:1, 7;
XVIII:14 and n81; XII:6
Iliad, XV:9; XVIII:16 and n84; XXI:8
homosexuality, VII:25 and n64
Honorianus, XVIII:54 and n286
hope:
happiness and, X:20
and reality, XIII:4 and n6; XV:18, 21;
XIX:1, 20
Horace, I:3; V:13
household: and miseries of social life,
XIII:5–6
household gods, I:3
Aeneas and, III:11; VI:2; X:16
human ingenuity, products of, XXII:24
and n31
humankind; humanity; the human race,
XII:22(21); XIII:1
See also specific topics, e.g., creation;
fall
ages of, X:14 and n69; X:32
all human life on earth as trial,
XII:14–15
common condition of all, I:6 and n24;
III:14
and contamination by human contact,
IX:16–18
as created, and after the fall, XIII:14
creation of, XII:22(21)–24(23), 28(27);
XIV:1; XXII:1
education of, X:14–15
history of, three periods in, XXI:15
and n68
kinship through first parents,
XII:22(21), 28(27)
moral ages of man, XXI:15 and n68
natural state of, and first evil will,
XIV:11
origin of, XII:10–13 and n20
“rational mortals,” IX:13; XII:1 and n1; XVI:8 and n49
social character of, XII: summary, 28(27)
“the whole mass has been condemned,” XIV:26 and n122; XV:1, 21; XXI:12
two groups of, XIV:28; XV:1–2
human nature:
Greek philosophers and, II:7
Trinity in, XI:25–29
human person:
body as intrinsic to nature of, I:13 and n43
definition of, IX:13; XVI:8 and n49
human society. See society
humility, XIV:13–14
of Christ, IX:20–22
grace and, I: preface
pride and, X:28–29
hymnody, VII:35
Iamblichus, VIII:12 and n54
Icarus, XVIII:23 and n115
ichthus, XVIII:23 and n115
idols; idol-worship, VIII:23–25
of Jereboam, XVII:22
Idumeans, XV:8 and n33; XVI:35, 42
ignorance: role in human misery, XXII:22
and n109
Ilia, III:5 and n14
Iliad (Homer), XV:9; XVIII:16 and n84;
XXI:8
Ilium. See Troy
image of God, XII:24(23)
immorality, human
See also evil; sin
gods as supposedly divine authority
for, II:25
and perseverance in the Church/
participation in sacraments,
XXI:25
immortality
See also eternal life; resurrection of
the body
demons and, IX:9–11
earthly bodies and, XIII:16–18
immortal beings and ascending order
of created things, XI:16
immutability of God. See under God:
immutability of
impassibility, XIV:9 and n69

See also apatheia
incarnation. See under Jesus Christ:
incarnation of
incubi, XV:23 and n117
individuals: God as granting power to,
V:21–23
infants, XVI:43 and n188; XXI:16
See also original sin
infancy, meaning of word, XVI:43;
XXI:16 and n72
at the resurrection, XXII:14
and sin, XV:1 and n2
infinity; infinite things, XI:5; XII:18–20
iniquity, foreign, IV:14–17
inner man, XVI:2
Innocentius, XXII:8 and n33; XXII:22
and n114
intellect. See mind
intelligible things, X:9
light, intelligible, X:2
sensible, contrast with, VIII:6; IX:17
intercession of the saints, XXI:18, 24
intermediaries. See mediators
Iphigenia, XVIII:18 and n93
Irenaeus: and Adam and Eve as children,
XV:12 and n51
Isaac, I:21; XVI:25–28
See also Rebecca
birth and sacrifice of, XVI:31–33
blessing of, XVI:37 and n144
God’s promise to, XVI:36
kings at time of birth, XVIII:3
as symbolizing Christ, XVI:32 and
n125
twins born to, XVI:35
Ishmael, XVI:25–28
Istis and Osiris, VI:10 and n41; VIII:26–27
and n105; X:11 and n61
Israel
See also under specific topics, e.g.,
kings
Canaan, land of, XVII:2
as earthly image of heavenly city,
XV:2
Jacob as, XVI:38–41
kingdom divided into Israel and Judah,
XVII: summary, 21
kings of, after Solomon, XVII:21–22
meanings for name, XVI:39 and n152;
XVII:13
substance of, XVII:10
Israelite kings, period of, XVIII:20

Volume I/6 & I/7
Jacob:
- angel who fought, XVI:39 and n151
- birth of, XVI:35
- blessing by Isaac of, XVI:37
- blessing of Judah by, XVI:41
- daughter of, XVI:40 and n159
- deceit by, XVI:37 and n142
- and Esau, V:4 and n13; XVI:35 and n135
- four women of, XVI:38
- as Israel, XVI:38–41
- and Joseph, XVI:38–42
- kings at time of, XVIII:3–4, 6
- the ladder, XVI:38
- seventy-five people coming to Egypt with, XVI:40 and n154

Janus, III:9 and n23; IV:11; VI:9 and n36; VII:2–3

Jupiter and, VII:9–10
naturalistic interpretation of, VII:7, 9–10

temple of, III:14 and n59
two faces of, VII:8

Jared, XV:13 and n56
Jereboam, XVII:22
Jeremiah, VIII:11 and n46; XVIII:33–34
Jerome, XIV:9 and n69; XV:11 and n44; XVI:15 and n71; XVIII: summary, 44 and n203
See also Vulgate; specific topics, e.g., Ogygus: flood of and the Hexapla, XV:14 and n65

Old Testament translation, XV:10 and n40
and Origen, XI:23 and n48
and Rufinus of Aquileia, XIX:5 and n19

Jerusalem, XVII:3, 16; XX:21
See also Temple, Solomon’s
capture of, and destruction of Temple, XVIII:25
meaning of name, XIX:11 and n26

Jerusalem, the new, XX:17, 21

Jesus Christ
See also under Christ: the name; prophecy; Trinity: second person of; specific topics, e.g., justice

ascension of, XXII:5

birth of, XVIII:35 and n162; XVIII:46
Church’s love for, and belief in as divine, XXII:6–7
coming of, in fulfillment of prophecy, XVIII:46–49
death and resurrection of, XVII:17, 18; XXII:5–7, 15, 25
disasters afflicting Rome prior to coming of, II:3

as God, XX:10
humility of, IX:20–22
incarnation of, IX:17; X:24–25, 29; XVII:11

as judge, XX:24, 30

life of, seeming contradictions in, XXII:5 and n9

as mediator, IX:15, 17; X:20, 24; XI:2
name of, XVII:18 and n106
passion of, XVII:17; XVIII:49 and n243

as perfect man, XXII:18

as physician/healer, V:14 and n56
priesthood of, X:3; XVII:17; XX:10

as principle, X:24

prophetic anticipation of, XVII:8–13
redemption effected by, VII:31

as sacrifice, X:20

as servant, X:20

as substance of Israel, XVII:10

Sibylline prophecies of, XVIII:23
“three incredible things,” XXII:5

Jews; the Jewish people, V:18; X:28; XVII:11 and n72
See also individual names; specific events; specific topics, e.g., priesthood
captivity, end of, XVIII:26
conversion of, XX:29
dispersion of, XVIII:46
and Elijah, coming of, XX:29
and the heavenly city, XVIII:47

history of, after the end of prophecy, XVIII:45

Jacob and Esau and, XVI:35 and n135
kingdom of, IV:34

as named for Judah, XV:8

other ancient races, XVIII:47–50

as people of God, XVIII:47 and n229

Seneca on, VI:11
unbelief of, XVII:19
and “You killed Christ” accusation, XX:30 and n125

Johannine Comma, V:11, n27

John of Lycopolis, V:26 and n103
Joseph:
and the true God (against Porphyry),
XIX:21–23
as virtue, XIX:4
Justin Martyr, VIII:11, nn46–47;
XVIII:32, n149
Justinus, Marcus Junianus, IV:6 and n13
just war. See under war: just
Juventas, IV:11, 29
Keturah, XVI:28 and n112
Abraham’s marriage to, XVI:34
killing: murder and, I:20–21
kingdom of heaven. See heaven
kingdoms, earthly:
God as granting power to, V:21–23
gods at the time of Moses, XVIII:8
gods in the period of the Judges,
XVIII:13–15
gods of, from Abraham to Exodus,
XVIII:2–7
as granted to both good and bad rulers,
V:21–23
Israelite kings, period of, XVIII:20
as not due to chance/fate, V:1
the one true God as giving, IV:33–34
rise and fall of, IV:7
without justice, IV:4
kings, V:12 and n34; XVIII passim
See also individual names; specific
locations
from Abraham to Exodus, XVIII:2–7
defath of, III:15
from Exodus to death of Joshua,
XVIII:11–12
expulsion of, III:16–18
Israelite, XVIII:20
kingship, transformation of (Saul and
Samuel), XVII:4, 6–7
period of, XVI:43
Rome liberated from, XVIII:26
unjust, tyrants, II:21
kinship relations
See also lines of descent; individual
names, e.g., Noah
of human beings through first parents,
XII:22(21), 28(27)
“kinsfolk,” XVI:19 and n80
and landed property, XVI:20 and n83
polygamy and, XV:16
knowledge
See also wisdom
of angels, IX:21–22 and nn56, 61;
XI:7, 29–31
demons and, IX:20–22 and n55
divine, XII:18(17)–20(19)
and existence, XI:27–28
forms of, and days of creation, XI:7–8
God’s, XI:21; XII:19(18)
knowing God, XI:2; XXII:2
Labdon, XVIII:19
Labeo, Cornelius, II:11 and n26; IX:19
and faith in the resurrection, XXII:28
on gods, good or bad, II:14; III:25;
VIII:13
Labyrinth, XVIII:13 and n74
lamb, paschal, XVI:43 and n176
Lamech, XV:8 and n31; XV:10–11, 13,
17, 20–21
landed property, XVI:20 and n83
languages
See also specific languages, e.g.,
Hebrew language
human, diversity of, XVI:4–7
people as divided by, XIX:7
Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and n3
Larentina/Larentia/Larenta, VI:7 and n19
larvae, IX:11 and n32
last judgment. See judgment, last
Latin language, XX:23 and n85
Latium, kings of, XVIII:20
latreia, VII:32; X:1, 3; XIX:17
Laurentines, XVIII:15
Lavinium, III:11 and n35; III:14; VII:21
and n55
the palladium, III:18 and n115
law
See also Old Testament
authority of, X:17
giving of, X:14–15
old, significance of sacrifices
commanded under, X:5–7
spiritual sense of, XX:27–29
lectisternia, Roman ceremony of, III:17
Leda, IV:27 and n107; VIII:5 and n23
lemures, IX:11 and n32
Levites, XX:21 and n76
libel, Roman law against. See Twelve
Tables
Liber, VI:9 and n26; VII:5 and n23
rites of, VII:20–21 and n55
liberal disciplines. See under education:
liberal disciplines
The City of God

Liber Pater, VII:2
lies. See lying
life, XII:1 and n4
See also existence; good life
all human life on earth as trial,
XXI:14–15
evils of, XXII:22
goods of, XXII:24
living and existing, VIII:6 and n29;
XV:5, 7
long life as same as short one, I:11;
XIII:10
style of, XIX:18–20
life, book of, XX:14–16
life, eternal. See eternal life
lifespan. See age
light:
angels as, XI:33
God as separating from darkness,
XI:19–20
intelligible, X:2
lines of descent:
from Cain and Seth down to the flood,
XV:17–20
of monstrous races, XVI:8–9
sexual maturity and, XV:15
from Shem, XVI:9–10
of the sons of Noah, XVI:3
two, the two cities as represented in,
XV:21
the two cities in lines of descent from
Cain and Seth, XV:8
Linus, XVIII:14 and n81; XVIII:37
liturgy, II:19 and n59, 28 and n96
eucharistic, XIV:13 and n81; XX:9
and n32
liturgical and devotional life in
Augustine’s day, XXII:8 and n63
Livty (Titus Livius), II:24; III:7
logic. See rational philosophy
Logos. See Word of God
longevity. See age
Lord:
day of the Lord, XX:19
the title, XII:16(15) and n29; XVII:8
and n65
Lord’s Prayer, XXI:22 and n84; XXI:27
Lot, X:8; XVI:19–20 and n80; XVI:29–30
escape from Sodom, XVI:30
rescue of, XVI:22
love, XIV:7
See also charity
affection, XV:22
to cherish, XIV:7
for the creator, XV:22
desire, XIV:7
for God, X:3
God as, XI:28; XII:1
God’s great, VII:31
for neighbors/others, XIX:14 and
nn41–42
passions and, XIV:6–8
right order in, XI:28; XV:22
Scriptural terms for, XIV:7
two loves as having made two cities,
XIV: summary, 28
and the will, XIV:6–8
Lucifer (morning star), XXI:8 and n35
Lucretia, I:19–22 and n59; II:17; III:15
Luna, VII:2
Luperci, XVIII:12 and n62; XVIII:17 and
n87
lust, I:9, 16; IV:8; VI:9; VII:24; IX:6;
XIV:7, 15
See also desire; procreation
anger and, XIV:19
fear that someone else’s lust may bring
defilement., I:18–19, 25, 28
and involuntary/guiltless arousal, I:25;
XIV:23–26
Platonists re., XIV:19
and power of will over body, XIV:24
sense of shame and, XIV:16–20, 26;
XV:16
soul, three-part division of, XIV:19
and n107
luxury, cultivation of, III:21
Lycurgas, II:16; X:13
Lydia, IV:6; XVI:17; XVIII:2
lying:
Jacob and, XVI:37 and n142
Sarah as Abraham’s “sister,” XVI:19
and n79; XVI:30
Maccabees (brothers and mother),
XVIII:36 and n169
magic arts, IV:34; VIII:16, 18–20; IX:1;
X:8–9; 16 and n75; X:18; XXI:6, 8
See also sorcery
Apuleius and, VIII:18–19 and nn84–85
Volume I/6 & I/7
The City of God
and Scipture, authority of, XI:2–3
Melchizedek, XVII:5 and n89; XVII:17, 20; XVIII:35; XX:21
blessing of, XVI:22 and n89
Christ as priest after order of, XX:10
Melito of Sardis, XVII:5 and n42
Menelaus, III:3 and n11; IV:27 and n106
Mercury, IV:11; VII:2, 19 and n50; VII:26–27
and Mars, VII:14–15
the name, VII:14 and n40
mercy, divine:
the all to whom God is merciful, XXI:24
for both good and bad people, I:8–9 and n26
divine justice and, XXI:24–27
and eternal punishment, XXI:17–22
mercies of old, XVII:12
and repentance, I:8
and Rome’s destruction, I:34
will he hold back his mercies in anger?, XXI:24
mercy, works of. See works of mercy
metamorphosis, of humans into animals, XVIII:16–19
Metellus (Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus), II:23 and n81; III:18 and n116; VI:2
and pagan gods, capriciousness of, I:8 and n26; II:23
Methuselah, XV:10–11 and n44; XV:13 and n58; XV:17, 20
Millenarianism, XX:7 and n18
mind, VII:23, 30; IX:6 and n23
as better than anything but God himself, XI:2 and n2
demons’ as subject to passions, IX:6
disturbances of, IX:4–5; XIV:9
masculine as symbolizing, XIV:22 and n113; XV:7 and n24
and reason, VII:31 and n74
Minerva, I:2 and n10; III:7–8; IV:10–11 and n34; VII:2–3, 15–16, 28
See also Capitol at Rome
Homer’s, IX:7
the Judgment of Paris, IV:27 and n106
and naming of Athens, XVIII:10 and n53
Minotaur, XVIII:13 and n68
miracles
See also oddities
angels, as performed through, X:8, 12, 16–18
ark of testimony, miracles associated with, X:17–18
demons and, XXII:10
in Hippo, XXII:8 and n63
magic arts, attributed to, XXI:6, 8
martyrs as performing, in Christ’s name, XXII:9–10
of the present, XXII:8 and n31
no rational account for, XXI:5
and sacrifice to God alone, X:8
“three incredible things,” XXI:5–7
visible, X:12–13
and visions, X:8 and n40
the world as, XXI:9
“mirror for princes,” V:24 and n97
misery, human, XIX:4–10; XXII:22
human afflictions, XXII:22 and n31
role of ignorance and desire in, XXII:22 and n109
Mithridates VI; Mithridatic Wars, II:24 and n87; III:22; V:22
massacre of Romans under, III:21–22
Mizraim, XVI:11 and n64
See also Egypt
modesty, XIV:20 and n108
See also shame
monks, XV:20 and n96
monophysitism, X:27 and n129
“monstrous races,” XVI:8–9
moon, VII:15–16 and nn41, 45
moral guidance/teaching:
failure of gods to provide, II:4–6
secret, provided by gods, II:26–27
morality, Roman, II:18–20
moral philosophy, VIII:4; XI:25
Platonists and, VIII:8
moral purity, I:16–18
Moses, X:8
earthly kingdoms and their gods at the time of, XVIII:8
law as given to, XVIII:39 and n186
from Moses to David, XVI:43
as Pentateuch author, XVIII:37 and n175
Moses, law of. See law
“mother of the gods.” See Great Mother
Mucius (Gaius Mucius Scaevola). See Scaevola, Gaius Mucius
mules, XV:27 and n154
murder, I:20–21

Volume I/6 & I/7
all killing as not, I:21
ritual, Christians accused of, XVIII:53
and n270
Musaeus, XVIII:14 and n81; XVIII:37
music: and order, XVII:14 and n87
mystery
See also teleta; specific mysteries, e.g.,
redemption
“a great mystery,” XVII:6 and n44
sacrament as, XVIII:49 and n242
theurgic consecrations, X:9 and n55
the upright, mystery within, XVI:2
mythical theology, VI:6–7
as not holding promise of eternal life,
VI:12
Nahor, XVI:13
Nathan, XVII:3, 8, 12; XVIII:38 and n184
naturalists; natural philosophy, VII:27–29;
VIII:1, 4; XI:25
Platonists and, VIII:6
Varro and, VII:28
natural wonders. See oddities
nature:
earthly city as born of, XV:2–3
wonders of, XXII:24 and n31
natures, V:9; VII:9, 30; VIII:3–4, 14, 26;
IX:12
as good in themselves, XI:17; XII:1–5
nature and properties, XXI:8
necromancy, VII:35
neighbors:
angels as, XIX:9 and n24
love for, XIX:14 and n41–42
Neoplatonists, VIII:4, n18; VIII:12, n54
See also Platonists; Plotinus; Porphyry
Chaldean Oracles, X:23, 27 and n127
“good gods” of, VIII:24 and n97;
IX:23
objection against, X:29 and n137
and the Trinity, XI:29
Neptune, IV:10–11, 34; VI:10; VII:2, 8,
16, 23, 28
and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and n3
wives of, VII:22
Nero, V:19
Antichrist, as thought to be, XX:19
and n57
persecution of, XVIII:52 and n259
New Academy. See under Academy
New Testament, IV:33; V:18; X:1 and
n13; X:23, 32
See also covenants; Scripture
and Old Testament, distinction
together, X:25
Old Testament citations in the, XV:14
and n67; XVIII:42–44
as revealed form of Old Testament,
XVI:26
translators, from Greek into Latin, X:1
and n13
Nigidius (Publius Nigidius Figulus), V:3
Nile River, XVI:24
Nimrod, XI:3–4, 11
Ninevah, XVI:3 and n21
destruction of, XVIII:44
Ninus, IV:6–7 and n14; XVI:3 and n21,
17; XVIII:2
ambition of, IV:6
Noah, XVIII:38
and the ark, XV:24–27
generations of the sons of, XVI:3
and his sons, prophetic significance of,
XVI:1–2
as image of Christ in his passion,
XV:27 and n9
line of descent, XV:20
and “monstrous races,” XVI:8–9
North Africa. See Africa; Hippo Regius;
Hippo Zarithus
Novatianists, XVI:34 and n130
Numantia, III:21
Numa Pompilius, II:16; III:9 and n22,
24; III:14–15; IV:23; VII:1
powers brought in after, III:12
peace of reign, III:9–11
rites instituted by, VII:34–35
numbers, XI:30 and n65; XX:5 and n7
See also specific numbers, e.g., seven
Numitor, III:5 and n14
nuns, XV:20 and n96
objections: limits on discussion of, II:1
Ocean, XVI:9 and n53
oddities, III:31 and n149; XIV:24 and
n119; XV:9, 23; XVI:7–9 and
n45; XVIII:18; XXI:4–8
See also miracles
Oedipus, XVIII:13 and n75
Ogygus, King, XXI:8 and n34
flood of, XVIII:8
Old Academy. See under Academy
Old Testament, IV:33; X:15, 25
See also covenants; law; Scripture
The City of God


Volume I/6 & I/7
The City of God

Volume I/6 & I/7

passions, XIV: summary, 8
See also emotions
Apuleius on, IX:3–4
in the city of God/of Christians, XIV:9–10
demons as subject to, IX:6–8
philosophic views of, IX:4–5
Scripture on, IX:5
virtue, as training in, IX:5
the will, love, and, XIV:6–8
Passover, III:15
paterfamilias, XIX:16 and n56
patience, I:8
patricians: conflict with plebeians, III:17
Paul, the Apostle, XIV:9 and n44
See also Hebrews, Epistle to; specific
topics, e.g., spiritual body
on coming of Antichrist, XX:19
on resurrection of the dead, XX:20
Paul of Samosata, XIX:23, n85
Paulinus of Nola, I:1 and n35; I:10 and n34
peace, III:9–11
and the city of God, XIX:26–27
definition of, XIX:13 and n36
earthly, XIX:14, 26–27
eternal, XIX:14, 17
meanings of, XIX:11; XX:21
of Numa’s reign, III:9–11
and order, XIX:12–13 and n34
origin of, XIX:17
place and, XIX:12 and n35
promised, XVII:13
universal desire for, XIX:12
Pecunia (Pecunius), IV:21; VII:11 and n37
Pegasus, XVIII:13 and n72
Pelagia, I:26 and n80
Pelagianism, XIV:9 and n69
Peleg, XVI:3, 10–11
penance, sacrament of. See reconciliation, sacrament of
Pentateuch, XVIII:37 and n175
Pentecost, IV:31 and n123
people, a: defining, XIX:24–25
Pericles, II:9 and n20
Peripatetics, IX:4 and n9; XIX:4 and n15
perjury, Laomedon’s, III:2
persecutions:
of the Church, XVIII:50–53
demons, persecution, and the martyrs, X:21–22
final, time of, XVIII:53
the last, XX:11–13
ten persecutions, XVIII:52 and n253
Persephone. See Proserpina
Perseus, III:11 and n32; XVIII:13 and n78
Pessinus, III:12 and n39
Peter, the Apostle:
on the destruction of this world, XX:18
sorcery, supposed act of, XVIII:53–54;
XXII:25
philosophy/philosophers, VI–X; VIII:1–2
and n1; XI:4 and n11
See also individual philosophers; specific
philosophies; specific
topics, e.g., cycles of time
on good of the body/good of the soul/
good of both, VIII:8 and n39;
XIX:2
the great, VIII:2 and n4
Hebrew prophets and, VIII:11;
XVIII:37 and n171
and human nature, II:7
Italian and Ionian schools of, VIII:2
as lacking divine authority, II:7
naked, XIV:17
natural, rational, and moral parts of,
VIII:4 and n21; XI:25
“philosophy,” the word, VIII:2
platonic division of, VIII:4
Plato’s predecessors, VIII:2
superiority of divine wisdom over,
XVIII:41
“those who wear the philosopher’s
cloak,” XIII:16 and n25
three parts of, VIII:4; XI:25
and the Trinity, VIII:4 and n21
and truth, II:7
two types of, VIII:2
“would-be philosophers,” II:27 and
n92
Phoebus. See Apollo
Photinus; Photinianism, XIX:23 and n85
Phryxus, XVIII:13 and n71
Picus, XVIII:15
piety, IV:23; X:1
pigeon, XVI:43 and n191
pirates, III:26; IV:4; V:22 and n90
place: and peace, XIX:12 and n35
plagues, III:16–18
ten, XVIII:52 and n253
Plato, II:7, 14; VIII:11–12 and nn46–47
See also Platonists, below
as above pagan gods, II:7, 14

The City of God
The City of God

Ar[111]t[141]le[155]s, VIII:12 and n52; IX:4
and n9
body, self-contradiction in view of,
XIII:19–20
on celestial bodies, XXII:26
in Christian literature, VIII:12 and n52
expressions of, X:30
on the corruptible body, XIII:16;
XXII:26
on creation, XI:21–22; XII:25
demi-gods, as ranked among, II:14;
VIII:13
and faith in the resurrection, XXII:28
on the gods, goodness of, VIII:13
“ideas,” VII:28; VIII:6; X:14
and a peacock, XXI:7 and n28
philosophy, three-part division of,
VIII:4; XI:25
Plotinus and, IX:10 and n30
on poets, II:14–16
and Porphyry, contradictions between,
XXII:26–28
predecessors of, VIII:2
Scriptures, familiarity with, VIII:11;
XI:21
and Socrates, VIII:4
on the soul, I:22 and n69; XXII:12
soul, three-part division of, XIV:19
and n107
style of, XXII:28
Timaeus, XIII:16 and n22; XXII:26
Platonists, VIII–XII passim
See also Neoplatonists; Plato: specific
topics, e.g., body
body and soul, view of, XIV:5
Christianity, closeness to, VIII:9–12
and Christ’s incarnation, X:29
re. contact between men and gods,
IX:16
on demons, VII:14–18; IX:7, 11–12
on happiness, X:1
and moral philosophy, VIII:8
and natural philosophy, VIII:6
Plato and, VIII:4 and n18
and polytheism, VIII:12
on punishment after death, XXI:3
and rational philosophy/logic, VIII:7
on resurrection of the body, XXII:11
on souls, IX:11; X:31
superiority/greater wisdom of, VIII:5–8;
X:14, 17
pleasure, XIV:15
bodily, XIX:1
and virtue, proper end of, V:20
plebeians: conflict with patricians, III:17
Pliny the Elder, XV:9, 12 and n.51; 27,
n153; XVI:8, n45; XXI:2, n2;
XXI:4, nn8, 10; XXII:28, n149
Plotinus, VIII:12 and n54; IX:17; X:2,
16, 30
See also Neoplatonists
on men and demons, IX:10
Plato, understanding of, IX:10 and n30
on providence, X:14
soul, immobility of, XIV:15 and n95;
XXI:3
on the Trinity, X:23
on vision of God, X:16
Pluto, II:15; IV:10–11; VI:7; VII:28
See also Dis Pater; Orcus
pu[277]me[265], XIII:24
po[277]es, XIII:24
poets:
  fables of, II:8
  the Greeks and Romans on, I:9–13
  Plato on, I:14–16
  slanders of the gods, poets’, IX:7
  theological, XVIII:14, 25, 37
polygamy, XVI:1 summary
  and kinship relations, XV:16
polytheism, VIII:13
See also pagan gods
Platonists and, VIII:12
of Rome, I–V
Pompey the Great, V:22, 25
Caesar, war with, III:13, 30
Pompius. See Numa Pompius
Porphyry, VIII:12 and n54; X: summary,
  9–32; XX:24; XXII:3, 25
See also Neoplatonists
Anebo, letter to, X:11
on angels and the theurgic arts,
  X:26–27
Apuleius, compared to, X:27
on Christ and God of the Hebrews,
  XIX:23 and n80
on cyclical theories, XII:21
on eternal life, XIII:19
failure to recognize the truth, X:28–29
inconsistency of, X:9, 26
against (justice and the true God),
  XIX:21–23
Philosophy from Oracles, XIX:23 and
  n82

Volume I/6 & I/7
Plato, corrections of, X:30
and Plato, contradictions between, XXII:26–28
on the soul, X:29–32; XII:21(20), 27(26): XIII:16–17, 19;
XXII:12, 26
liberation of, X:32
as needing to flee from all bodies to attain happiness with God,
X:29 and n139; XII:27(26); XIII:17
principles and purification of,
X:9–10, 23–24
on theurgy, X:9–10, 26–27
and universal way of salvation/soul’s liberation, X:32
portents (pagan), III:11, 23; IV:23
Poseidon, XVIII:13 and n76
Posidonius, V:2 and n9; V:5
possessions (material goods)
See also riches
eternal and temporal, X:25 and n120
loss of, I:10–13
Possidius, bishop of Calama, XIV:24 and n120; XXII:8 and n54
Postumius, II:24 and n86
poverty:
advantages of, IV:3 and n8
pagan Roman, V:18 and n70
voluntary, XVIII:54 and n276
power
See also authority; domination; empire
of God, X:28 and n133; XXI:7–8
God as granting both to kingdoms and individuals, V:21–23
of men of God, X:22
praise: lust for, V:13–14, 18
prayer:
Church, prayers of, XXI:24
eucharistic, memorializing saints in, XXII:10 and n68
the Lord’s Prayer, XXI:22 and n84; XXI:27
predestination:
Augustine’s doctrine of, XV:21 and n110
double, XV:1 and n2; XXII:24
presbyters, XX:10 and n36
Priam: and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2 and n3
Priapus, II:14 and n36; IV:11 and n65; IV:23, 34; VI:7, 9; VII:24 and n60
pride, XIV:13–14
See also vainglory
Christian, antidote to, V:17–18
and humility, X:28–29
and sin, XIV:13 and n80
priests; priesthood, XX:10 and n34
of Christ, X:3; XVII:17; XX:10
Christ as priest after order of Melchizedek, XX:10
and Levites, XX:21 and n76
transformation of (prophecy to Eli), XVII:5–6
principle, Christ as, X:24
Proclus, XXII:6 and n27
procreation, human:
before the fall, XIV:21–23, 26
lust and, XIV:21; XV:16
as purpose of marriage, XIV:18 and n104; XIV:22 and n113
prodigies (strange occurrences), III:31; XIV:24; XXII:4–5
See also oddities
Prometheus, XVIII:8 and n36, 43; XVIII:39
promises, divine
See also under individual names, e.g.,
Abraham: God’s promises to
and earthly Jerusalem, XVII:10
will of God and fulfillment of,
XXII:2–3
promises of demons, IX:18
property, landed, XVI:20 and n83
prophecies of Christ and the Church:
in apocrypha, XVII:20
Christ’s coming, in fulfillment of prophecy, XVIII:46–49
David and Solomon, XVII:8–13
David (Psalms), XVII:14–19
Old Testament, XVI:2
Old Testament prophets, XVIII:27–35
Solomon, XVII:20
Sibylline prophecy, XVIII:23
Virgil, X:27
prophecy, II:25; IV:34; VIII:16
antiquity of prophetic wisdom, XVIII:37–40
to Eli, XVII:5–6
of Hannah, mother of Samuel, XVII:4
Jewish history after the end of,
XVIII:45
and predictions, X:32
Scripture, prophetic witness of, VII:32
The City of God

after Solomon, XVII:21–24
three types of, XVII: summary, 3–4
prophets, XVII:24
age of, XVII:1–3
and the Greek philosophers, VIII:11;
XVIII:37 and n171
Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi, and
Esdras, XVIII:35–36
Hosea, Amos, Isaiah, Micah, Jonah,
and Joel, XVIII:27–30
Jeremiah and Zephaniah, XVIII:33–34
“minor,” the twelve, XVIII:27 and
n131; XVIII:29
Obadiah, Nahum, and Habakkuk,
XVIII:31–32
proportion. See under beauty: role of
proportion in
Proserpina, IV:8, 10–11; VI:7; VII:20 and
n54; VII:23–24, 28
prosperity. See riches
prostitution, II:20; IV:10; VI:7; VII:21,
27; XIV:18; XVIII:21; XXI:26
Proteus, X:11 and n58
providence, divine, I:8; X:14–15
all as governed by, V:11
angels and, X:15
and beauty of the universe, XI:18
Plotinus on, X:14
and the Roman Empire, V:21–22
prudence, XIX:4
See also cardinal virtues
Psalms, XVII:14–19
authorship of, XVII:14 and n90;
XVII:20 and n111
on death and resurrection of Christ,
XVII:18
on end of the world and Christ’s
coming as judge, XX:24
Expositions of the Psalms (Augustine),
XVII:15 and n93
prayer, use in, XX:21 and n74
Ptolemy, XV:14 and n59
Pulvillus, Marcus, V:18 and n68
Punic Wars, III:16–22
First Punic War, III:9, 18; V:22
Second Punic War, II:18; III:17
destruction of Saguntum, III:20
end of, II:9 and n18
Hannibal, III:19
Third Punic War, V:22 and n91
punishment
See also eternal punishment; judgment,
last
death as, XIII:3–6
fire as punishment for evil spirits,
XXI:10
the first, XIII:13
of first sin, XIV:15
physical, meted out to schoolchildren,
XXII:22 and n112
prescribed by law, XXI:11 and n53
purgatory; purgatorial punishment,
XX:25; XXI:13–14, 26 and n105
See also under fire: salvation through
purification
See also under soul: purification of
Christ as true principle of our, X:24
of men of God, X:22
of Neoplatonists (Porphyry), and true,
X:23–24
purity
See also chastity
moral, I:16–18
worship of select gods as not bringing,
VII:26–27
Pyrrhus, III:17 and n105; V:18 and n73
Pythagoras, VI:5 and n15; VII:35; VIII:2–
4, 9; XVIII:25
Quies, IV:16 and n70
quindecmviri, VI:3 and n13
Quirinus, II:15 and n41
Radagaisus, V:23 and n96
ram, XVI:24
three-year-old, XVI:43
rape, I:16–22
of Sabine women, II:17 and n47; III:13
and suicide, I:17, 19–22, 26; II:2 and
n2
and the victim’s character, I:16, 18
why God allows it, I:28
“rational mortals,” IX:13; XII:1 and n1;
XVI:8 and n49
rational philosophy/logic, VIII:3; XI:25
Platonists and, VIII:7
rational souls
See also mind
three-part division of, XIV:19 and
n107
reality:
  hope and, XIII:4 and n6; XV:18, 21;
  XIX:1, 20
  sacraments and, XXI:20 and n80;
  XXII:25
reason:
  as attributed to demons, IX:3
  mind and, VII:31 and n74
Rebecca:
  beauty of, XVI:36
  marrying Isaac, XVI:33
  twins of, XVI:35
reconciliation, sacrament of, XX:9 and n33; XXI:25
redemption:
  effected by Jesus Christ, VII:31
  mystery of, VII:32; XV:7 and n17;
  XV:17
refrigerium, VIII:27, n109
regeneration, sacrament of. See baptism
Regulus, Marcus Attilius, II:23; III:18,
  20; V:18
  fortitude of, I:24
  his loyalty to his gods, I:15 and n53;
  II:23
  and pagan gods, capriciousness of, I:8
  and n26; II:23
reincarnation, XII:21(20)
religion, X:3 and n27
  See also Christianity
  Egyptian, VIII:23–24
  false, advantage to civil rulers, IV:32
  Roman, Varro and his work on, VI:2–4
  the term, X:1
  vs. superstition (Varro), VI:9
religious celibates, XV:20 and n96
  religious terms, X:1
  religious women, XXII:8 and n49
  reliquaries, XXII:8 and n46
Remus. See under Romulus: and Remus
repentance: and God’s mercy, I:8
  republic, II:21; V:18; XIX: summary
  Cicero on, II:21; XIX: summary
  evils internal to, III:23–26
  the gods’ failure to save, II:22
  nature of, XIX:21, 24–25
  Scipio’s definition of, II:21; XIX:21
  Restitutus, XIV:24 and n120
  restoration, doctrine of (Origen), XXI:17
  and n76
  “resurrection”: name Seth as meaning,
  XV:21 and n107
resurrection, the second, XX: summary,
  5–6, 9, 14, 14
  resurrection of Christ, XVII:18
  miracle of world’s belief in, XXII:5–7,
  25
  “three incredible things,” XXII:5
  resurrection of the body, XIII passim;
  XX:14; XXII
  and aborted fetuses, XXII:12–13
  all will be made alive in Christ,
  XIII:23
  and Christ’s resurrection (“conformed
  to the Son of God”), XXII:15
  Daniel on, XX:23
  and deformities, XXII:12 and n78
deniers of, XXII:25
  eternity (immortality), IX:9–11, 17;
  X:29; XIII:16–18
faith in, XIII:18; XXII:11–21 and
  n102; XXII:30
  first and second, XX:5–8, 14–16
  heaven, earthly bodies and, XIII:
  summary, 18; XXII:4, 11
  infants and, XXII:14
  as intrinsic to nature of human being,
  I:13 and n43
  Isaiah on, XX:21
  John’s Gospel, testimonies from,
  XX:5–6
  Matthew’s Gospel, testimonies from,
  XX:5
  objections, reply to, XXII:4, 25–28
  pagans as mocking belief in, XXII:12
  Paul on, XX:20
  possibility of, XXII:11
  response to questions regarding,
  XXII:13, 19–21
  the resurrected body, XIII:20, 22–23;
  XXII:12–13, 18–21
  Revelation, testimonies from, XX:7–8
  some to eternal life and some to
  disgrace and eternal shame,
  XX:21–25; XXII:3
  the soul and, XX:10
  view that earthly bodies cannot be in
  heaven, XIII:18
  women’s bodies, resurrection of,
  XXII:17
retribution. See punishment
Rhinocorura (or Rhinocolura), XVI:24
  and n98
riches, II:20
desire for/possession of, I:10 and n33
loss of, I:10
perils of unfettered, I:30–31
right: and justice, XIX:21 and n74
righteous, struggles of: battle against the vices, XXII:23
rites, pagan. See under paganism
rites, sacred, II:4; VI:7
natural interpretation of, VI:8
ritual murder: Christians accused of, XVIII:53 and n270
River, the, XVII:8 and n64
Romans, XIX:24
extravagance of, I:30–31
love of glory, V:12
morality/moral character of, II:17–20; V:12, 15–16
natural “justice and goodness” of, II:17
temporal reward granted by God to, V:15
Rome, II–III passim
See also empire; kingdoms; specific topics, e.g., pagan gods
Alba, war with, III:14 and n53
as antidote to Christian pride, V:17–18
“conquered gods” of, I:2–3
corruption, and lust for domination, I:30–31
development of, IV
disasters afflicting, prior to coming of Christ, II:3
earthly city, as example of, XVIII:2, 27
empire, expansion of, IV: summary, 2–3, 8
empire as divine gift to, V:13–17
and eternity of empire, belief in, IV:7
and n20
example of, as antidote to Christian pride, V:17–18
false gods, exhortation to abandon, II:29
founding of, III:6; XV:5; XVIII:21–22, 27
geese as saving from Gauls, II:22 and n77; III:8
God’s providence and, V passim
greatness of, neither chance nor fate as causing, V:1
history of, V
household gods as not protecting, I:3
and justice, II:21; IV; XIX:21
liberation from domination of kings, XVIII:26
massacre under Mithridates, III:21–22
pagan gods as undermining, I:32–36;
II:1–4
polytheism of, I–V
religion of, Varro’s work on, VI:2–4
Rome’s gods as incapable of extending/preserving, IV:28
rulers from Romulus to Babylonian Captivity of the Jews, XVIII:24–26
as “second Babylon,” XVIII:2, 22
Troy and, III:6 and n16
Troy as “mother of the Roman people,” I:4 and n16
as “western Babylon,” XVIII:27 and n137
Rome, Capitol at. See Capitol at Rome
Rome, “first,” XVIII:2
Rome, sack/fall of, I; II:2; III:29 and n147
Alaric, king of the Goths, XXII:20 and n104
cannibalism during, XXII:20 and n104
Christianity and, I:1–3, 36
Christian suffering in, I:7–9
household gods as no protection, I:3
pagan gods and, I:32–36
temples not respected as sanctuaries, I:4–6
why the good also suffered in, I:8–9
Romulus, II:14–17, 20; III:9, 11–15; IV:5, 23; V:17; VI:10; VIII:5; XXII:6
and n20–21
deified, XVIII:24; XXII:6
founding of Rome, I:34 and n94; III:6; XV:5
parents of, II:15, 17 and n48; III:3, 5 and n14
Quirinus identified with, II:15 and n41
and Remus, I:34; II:14; III:5–6, 12, 14; VIII:5; XV:5
rulers of Rome from, XVIII:24–26
Rufinus of Aquileia:
Jerome and, XIX:5 and n19
and Origen, XI:23 and n48; XIX:5 and n19
rule of faith (regula fidei), X:23 and n111;
XI:32–33; XV:26
rulers, secular: cult of gods used as tool by, IV:32 and n124

Volume I/6 & I/7
ruma, IV:11
Rumina (Ruminus), IV:11, 21, 34; VI:10
and n42; VII:11 and n37; VII:14
Sabellians, X:24 and n112; XI:10 and n29
Sabine women, seizing and rape of, II:17
and n47; III:13
sacerdotes, XX:10 and n36
sacrament, I:35 and nn95–96; IV:31 and
n123; X:26; XVI:2 and n15
See also baptism; eucharist;
reconciliation
the ark and, XV:25 and n39
ark of the covenant as, X:17 and n88
Augustine’s interpretation (baptism
and the eucharist), X:26 and
n124; XV:26; XXII:17 and
n90
Church itself as, XVI:7 and n44
and Eve made from Adam’s rib,
XXII:17 and n90
food of the tree of life, XIII:20 and n41
incarnation of second person of Trinity
as, X:24–25 and nn113, 117
as mystery, XVIII:49 and n242
participation in (and immorality of
life), XXI:25
and reality, XI:20 and n80; XXI:25
“sacramentally prefigured,” XVI:43
and n191
the term, X:8 and n43
visible, X:15 and n73
sacred rites. See rites
sacrifice, X:20
Abraham’s, XVI:24
angels, sacrifice, and the worship of
God, X:19–20
the body of Christ, X:6 and n36; X:20
Christ as true, X:20
daily offering of (eucharist), X:20 and
n96
demons as demanding, II:10 and
passim; XV:16
as due to God alone, X:3–5, 8; XIX:22
God’s living, X:6; XII:9; XIX:23
miracles and, X:8
old law, significance of sacrifices
commanded under, X:5–7
to pagan gods, I:36
physical signs and inner realities,
sacrifices as signifying, X:5
pleasing to the Lord, XX:26
righteousness, offering in, XX:26 and
n106
the self directed to God in love, X:5–7
true, X:6
visible, reason for, X:19
works of mercy and, X:10; XX:24
saeculum, XVI:21 and n26; XVI:26
safety: and salvation, XXII:6 and n25
Sages, the Seven, VIII:2 and n8; XVIII:24
Saguntum; Saguntines, XXII:6
destruction of, III:20
saints, I:12–14, 24, 28, 35; V:13, 19; X:6,
12
See also martyrs
bodies of, in the resurrection, X:29;
XIII:20, 22
death of, XIII:7–8, 20
eternal life of, XXII:29
eternal reign of (Daniel on), XX:23
eucharistic prayer, memorializing in,
XXII:10 and n68
felicity of: seeing, loving, and praising
God, XXII:30
intercession of, XXI:18, 24
and martyrs, XXII:9 and n65
purification of, and their pure offering
to God (Malachi), XX:25–26
reign of saints with Christ, XX:11–13
reward of, V:16
sacrifices of, X:20
thousand-year reign of, XX:9–10
will the saints see God with the eyes of
the spiritual body?, XXII:29
Salacia, VII:22
salamander, XXI:4
Sallust, I:5; II:8–10, 17–18, 21–22; III:3,
10, 14, 16–17, 21; V:12, 19; VII:3
on the Athenians, XVIII:2
on body as servant to soul, IX:9
salvation, XVIII:32 and n152
Catholics and, XXI:20–21 and n80;
XXI:25–26
Christianity as universal way of, X:32
and n148
of the city of God, XV:27 and n151
and the devil/his angels, XXI:23
of the elect, XII:23(22)
The City of God

and grace, XV:1 and n2
the lost as to far outnumber the saved,
   XVI:21 and n85; XXI:12 and n57
restoration, doctrine of (Origen),
   XXI:17 and n76
safety and, XXII:6 and n25
through fire, XXI:26
and works of mercy, XXI:22
Samson, I:21 and n68; I:26
   and Hercules, XVIII:19 and n95
Samuel, X:8; XVII:4–5 and n37
and kingship, transformation of,
   XVII:6–7
sanctuaries:
   Christian churches as, I:1–2, 7
   temples of gods not respected as, I:4–6
Sarah, XVI:25
 as Abraham’s “sister,” XVI:19 and n79; XVI:30
barrenness of, XV:3
beauty of, XVI:30
chastity as trusted to God, XVI:19, 30
death of, XVI:32
meaning of names Sarah and Sarai,
   XVI:28 and n110
son promised to, XVI:26
Sardanapalus, II:20 and n61
Satan. See devil
Saturn, II:15; IV:10–11 and n36; IV:21,
   23, 27; VI:7–8 and n24; VII passim; VIII:5
and Jupiter, VII:13
Varo’s interpretation of, VII:19
Saul, XVI:43
   kingship, transformation of, XVII:6–7
Scaevola, Gaius Mucius, IV:21 and n79
Scaevola, Quintus Mucius, III:28
three views of the gods, IV:27
Scholasticism, XXI:20, n80
Scipio family, II:9, 12, 29
Scipio Aemilianus (Scipio Africanus
   the Younger), III:21; V:22 and n91
Scipio Nasica, Publius Cornelius
   (Africanus; Scipio the Elder),
   II:4–5 and n6; II:9 and n19;
   II:12–13; III:15; X:21
definition of a republic, II:21 and n62; XIX:21
maltreatment of, III:21
   against Roman extravagance, I:30–31 and n86–87
Scipio Nasica Corculum (son of P.
   Cornelius), I:30–33 and n87–88
scribe: trained for the kingdom of God,
   XX:4, 9
   Scriptures, sacred, II:28; IV:34; V:19;
   X:29, 32
See also apocryphal books; canonical
   Scriptures; New Testament;
   Old Testament; Septuagint;
   specific topics, e.g., creation
   as allowing variety of interpretations,
   XI: summary
   authority of, XI:3
   context of scriptural passages, XVII:15
   and n92
   faith, the mediator, and authority of,
   XI:2–3
   Greek and Hebrew versions, numerical
discrepancies between, XV:10–14
Holy Spirit and, XVI:2 and n17;
   XVIII:38
obscure passages in, XI:19; XVII:17
   and n98; XVII:17 and n54
Plato’s familiarity with, VIII:11; XI:21
   prophetic witness of, VII:32
   spiritual vs. literal meaning, XVI:2
   and n18
   superiority over human philosophy,
   XVIII:41
   translation of Hebrew into Greek (the
   Septuagint), XVIII:42–44
   truthfulness of, over vanity of human
   argumentation, XX:1, 30
   truth of, X:18
   and various legitimate interpretations
   of passages, XI:19 and n38;
   XI:32
sea: dead given up by, XX:15
second death. See under death: second
Second Punic War. See under Punic Wars:
   Second Punic War
Secular Games, III:18 and n111
   Secular learning, VI:2
   secular matters: toleration of diversity in,
   XIV:1; XIX:17 and n61
   secular rulers: cult of gods used as tool by,
   IV:32 and n124
   Segetia, IV:8 and n24; V:21

Volume I/6 & I/7
select gods:
- astral interpretation of, VII:15
- indecent acts attributed to, VII:4
- interpreted as the world and its parts, VII:16–18
- Jupiter and other, VII:13
- and their functions, VII:1–3
- Varro’s account of, absurdities and inconsistencies in, VII:3, 28
- Varro’s naturalistic interpretations of, VII:5–6
- worship of as bringing neither purity in this life nor happiness in life after death, VII:26–27

self: living according to, XIV: summary, 4
self, love of. See pride
Semiramis, XVIII:2
senate, VII:34 and n78
Seneca, Annaeus, V: summary, 8 and n16
- boldness of (re. civic theology), VI:10 and n37
- on the Jews, VI:11

senses:
- “present” as “before our senses,” XI:3
- as symbolized by the feminine, XIV:22
- and n113
- sensible things: intelligible, contrast with, VIII:6; IX:17
- sententia, XI:3 and n7
- Septimus Severus, XVIII:52 and n253
- Septuagint, VIII:11 and n45; XIV:13
- and n80; XV:10 and n40; XVIII:42–45
- See also under specific topics, e.g., Abraham: and Lot
- authority of, XVIII:43
- gentiles and, XVII:42
- the Hexapla, XV:14, n65
- the Holy Spirit and, XV:14 and n66
- and Ninevah, destruction of, XVIII:44
- translation by seventy (or seventy-two) translators, XV:11 and n45, 13; XVIII:42–44 and nn198–203; XIX:23 and n86
- Serapis, XVIII:5–6 and n28
- serpent: bronze, X:8 and n51
- servant:
- Christ as, X:20
- leadership as service, XIX:14 and n44

servants of God, XXII:8 and n36
Servile Wars, III:23, 26; IV:5; V:22 and n92
servile work, XXII:30 and n167
Seth, XV:8, 21 and n107
- lines of descent, XV:17–21
- seven, XV:20 and n105
- as perfect number/symbol of perfection, XI:31 and n68;
- XVII:4; XX:5; XXII:30
- seven pairs of clean animals, XV:27
- and n147
- as signifying totality, XX:5 and n7;
- XXII:30

Seven Sages. See Sages, the Seven seventh day. See under creation: the seventh day
seventy-five people accompanying Jacob to Egypt, XVI:40
seventy (or seventy-two) translators. See under Septuagint
seventy-two nations, XVI:3 and n30; XVI:11 and n61
Severus, Septimus, XVIII:52 and n253
Severus of Milevis, XXI:4 and n11
sexual intercourse, VI:9; X:11
See also procreation
- between angels and women, III:5;
- XV:23
- marriage and sexual pleasure, XXI:26
- and n108
- modesty regarding, XIV:20
- in public, XIV:20

sexuality, XIV: summary
See also specific topics, e.g., lust
- before the fall, XIII:24; XIV:23–24
- involuntary and guiltless arousal, I:25;
- XIV:23–26
- lust, sense of shame, and, XIV:16–20
- sexual maturity: age of, and lines of descent, XV:15
- shame: lust, human sexuality, and,
- XIV:16–20, 26; XV:16
- Shem: line of descent from, XVI:9–10
- sibling marriage, XV:16 and n74
- Sibylline Books, III:17–18, 17 and nn109, 111
- the quindecimviri, VI:3, 3 and n13
- Sibylline prophecies of Christ, XVIII:23
- Sibyls:
  - Cumaean Sibyl, X:27, 27 and n132;
  - XVIII:23 and n116
  - Erythraean Sibyl, XVIII:23 and n110
Sicyon; Sicyonians, XVI:17 and n75; XVIII:2–4, 6–8, 11, 19
Simplician, X:29 and n141
simplicity, divine, XI:10

sin; sinfulness
See also evil; original sin; specific topics, e.g., foreknowledge; punishment
catalogue of sins, XXII:22 and n107
cause of, XIV:3
Christians as sinners, I:9
Church, allowing for sinners in, XX:9 and n29
consequences of, XIV:1–3
corruption resulting from, XIV:3
crimes, XXI:27 and n115
as due to will, not nature, XI:17
enemies, being forced to sin by, I:27–28
of first humans, XIV:1, 11–15
free will and, XXI:30 and n163
goat as symbol of, XVI:24 and n92
one sin as not to be avoided for another, I:25
pride and, XIV:13 and n80
punishment of, XIV:15; XXI:11–12
sinlessness (Pelagian doctrine), XIV:9 and n69
and slavery, XIX:15–16 and n47
suicide and avoiding, I:25–29
temporal, and eternal punishment, XXI:11–12
“the whole mass has been condemned,” XIV:26 and n122; XV:1, 21; XXI:12
six: as perfect number, XI:30 and n65
six days/the sixth day, XX:7
sixth millennium, XX:7
Skeptics: Xenophanes (Xenophon) of Colophon, VII:17 and n46
sky, VII:8
slavery:
punishment and, XXI:11 and n54
sin and, XIX:15–16 and n47
Social Wars, III:23, 26
society:
angels and demons, XIX:9–10
divisions in, XVIII:2
household and city, XIX:5–6
miseries of, XIX:5–10
the world, XIX:7–8

Socrates, VIII:3–4 and n14
“demon” of, VIII:14
On the God of Socrates (Apuleius), VIII:14
and Plato, VIII:4
Sodom, X:8; XVI:22, 29–30 and n114
Sol, VII:2
Solomon:
prophecies of Christ and the Church, XVII:20
prophecy after, XVII:21–24
prophetic anticipation of Christ, XVII:8–13
rule of, XVII:8, 20
on things common to the good and evil alike, XX:3
Solon of Athens, II:16 and n42; VIII:2 and n8
“sons of God.” See angels sophoi, VIII:2; XVIII:24, 25
sorcery
See also magic arts
Peter’s supposed act of, XVIII:53–54; XXII:25
soul, VIII:26
See also under specific topics, e.g.,
demons: souls of of angels, VIII:24, 26
body as servant to soul, IX:9
Christ as having, X:27; XIV:2 and n7; XIV:9
and death, XIII:2
demons, souls of men as, IX:11 and n32
and eternal punishment, XXI:9
good of, philosophers’ opinions on, VIII:8 and n39; XIX:2
great, I:22
as having not always existed, X:31
image of God, man’s soul created in, XII:24(23)
immobility of, XIV:15 and n95; XXI:3
intellectual, X:27 and n128
manes, VIII:26 and n100; IX:11 and n32
as not coeternal with God, X:31
pain and, XIV:15; XXI:3
physical suffering and, I:14–19
Plato and, XIV:19 and n107; XXII:12
Platonist arguments regarding, IX:11; X:31
Plotinus on, XIV:15 and n95
purification of, X:9–10, 23–24, 26, 29; XII:27(26); XIII:17; XXII:12, 26
and resurrection of the body, XX:10
returning to bodies (the *Aeneid*), X:30; XIV:5; XXII:26
seventy-five souls, XIV:4
spiritual, X:27 and n128
Stoics and, IX:4; XIX:1
two-part division of, XIV:19 and n107
universal way of soul’s liberation, X:32; XI:2 and n5
soul, highest part of. *See* mind
soul of the world. *See* world soul
souls, rational. *See* rational souls
space, XI:5
Spartacus
*See also* Servile Wars
uprising of, III:26 and n137
War of, V:22 and n92
speech, VII:14
Speusippus, VIII:12 and n53
sphinx, XVIII:13 and n75
Spirit. *See* Holy Spirit
spirit:
flesh vs., XIV:5–6; XXI:15–16
living according to, XIV:2
spiritual body, XIII: summary, 19
animal body and, XIII:23
will the saints see God with eyes of the spiritual body?, XXII:29
stars, X:29
*See also* astrology
divinity of, IV:11; VII:6, 15, 23; IX:16; X:11, 26
Egyptian astronomy, XVIII:40
number of, XVI:23 and n91
as (or as not) ensouled and rational, XIII:16 and n23
select gods, astral interpretation of, VII:15
“visible gods,” IX:16
Stephen, Saint, XXII:8 and nn52, 63
Stoics, I:15 and n54; V:5, 8–10, 20 and n82; VIII:7; XVIII:41
*See also* specific topics, e.g., world soul
the “constant dispositions,” XIV:8
and cosmic fire, VII:30 and n73; VIII:5 and n25
and happiness, attainment of, IX:4;
XIX:1
and human evils, XIX:4
and human good, IX:4; XIX:1
one deity as called different names for different functions, IV:11 and n48
passionlessness, ideal of, XIV: summary, 2, 8–9 and n69
and philosophy, three-part division of, VIII:4 and n20
Posidonius, V:2 and n9
re. the passions, IX:4–5
virtue, understanding of, IX:4; XIX:1, 25 and n94
strange occurrences. *See* miracles; oddities
Strato, VI:10 and n38
suffering, human, I:8
Christian, forms of, I:10–18
due to first sin, XXII:22
evil and, I:33
human affictions, XXII:22 and n31
and the soul, I:14–19
spiritual advantage of, I:10–13
why God allows Christians to suffer, I:28–29
why the good also suffered in sack of Rome, I:8–9
suicide, I:16–29; XIV:27
to avoid sin, I:25–29
Cato, I:23–24
Christians and, I:20
and fear of suffering, I:17
fortitude and, XIX:4
and greatness of soul, I:22
Lucretia, I:19–22
martyr, I:26
moral purity and, I:16–18
natural instinct against, XI:27
rape and, I:17, 19–22, 26
Sulla, Lucius Cornelius, II:19 and nn57, 83
and Marius, II:23–24 and n79; III:7, 27–30
victory of, III:28
sun, VII:16 and n45
eclipse of, III:15
worship of, in antiquity, XIX:23 and n87
superstition, IV:29–30 and n116
religion vs. (Varro), VI:9
supreme evil. *See under* evil: supreme
supreme good, VIII:8
Christian view, XIX:4
the philosophers and, XIX:1–3
three views, XIX:2
Varro and, XIX:1–4
Sylvans, XV:23 and n117
symbols: and mystery of Christ’s redemption, VII:32
Symmachus, XVIII:43 and n199
Syracuse, I:6 and n24; III:14
tabernacle of the testimony. See ark of the covenant
Tarquin family; Tarquin ("the Proud"), I:19; II:17–18; III:12, 15–16;
IV:23, 29; V:12; X:16; XVIII:25
See also Collatinus, Lucius Tarquinius teachers:
contempt for, II:19 and n58
"teacher," the title, XVII:8 and n65
teleata, IV:31 and n118; X:9 and n55; X:23
and n107; X:28 and n135
Tellus, VII:2
rites of, VII:24–26
temperance, XIX:4
See also cardinal virtues
Temple, Solomon’s, XV:23; XVII:3, 5, 8, 10, 22–23; XVIII:20, 42, 54
destruction of, XVIII:25–26
rebuilding of, XVIII:36, 45 and n221;
XVIII:48
temples of gods: not respected as sanctuaries, I:4–6
temporal goods and evils, I:8
temptation, XIX:10
ten, the number, XV:20
ten persecutions, XVIII:52 and n253
ten plagues, XVIII:52 and n253
Terah, XVI:14
Terminus, IV:11, 21 and n89; IV:23 and n96; IV:29
Janus and, IV:11; VII:7
and Jupiter, IV:23, 29
Tertullian, II:3, n3; XII:16, n29; XVI:35, n130; XVII:17, n98
and seeming contradictions of Christ’s life, XXII:5 and n9
Thales of Miletus, VIII:2 and n8; VIII:5;
XVIII:24–25, 37
Thebes, XVIII:13 and n73
See also Oedipus
Theodosius I ("the Great"), III:22 and n129
as model Christian emperor, V:
summary, 25–26 and nn102, 110; XVIII:54 and n286
Theodotion, XVIII:43 and n199
theatrical performances, II:2–6, 8, 22–28; III:17
See also actors; poets
and the gods, I:31–34 and n90; IV:26
Theodotion, XVIII:43 and n199
theatrical performances, II:2–6, 8, 22–28; III:17
See also actors; poets
and the gods, I:31–34 and n90; IV:26
Thebes, XVIII:13 and n73
See also Oedipus
Theodosius I ("the Great"), III:22 and n129
as model Christian emperor, V:
summary, 25–26 and nn102, 110; XVIII:54 and n286
Theodotion, XVIII:43 and n199
theological poets, XVIII:14, 25, 37
theology, VIII:1 and n2
See also civic theology; mythical theology
intertwining of mythical and civic,
VI:6–7
neither mythical or civic as holding promise of eternal life, VI:12
Tarquins three types of, VI:5–10
Theomichus, I:22 and n69
Theseus, XVIII:13 and n68
Thessalonica, massacre at, V:26 and n110
theurgy; theurgic arts:
Porphyry on, X:9–10, 26–27
theurgic consecrations, X:9 and n55
thought: sententia, XI:3 and n7
thousand years, XX:7 and n18
binding of the devil for, XX:7–8
final, XX:7
regen of the saints, XX:9–10
three, the number, XV:20 and n105
“three incredible things,” XXII:5
threskeia, X:1
Tiberius, XXII:7 and n29
Timotheus (Plato), XIII:16 and n22;
XXII:26
time
See also ages; cyclical theories; more under specific topics, e.g.,
creation; eternity; years
beginning of, XI:6
course through, XV–XVIII
date of man’s creation, XII:13(12)
and divine knowledge, XII:18(17)–20(19)
end of, XVIII:53 and n267
and eternity, XII:15(14)–17(16)
and the immutability of God, XI:4–6
and infinity, XII:18(17)–20(19)
past and future, Augustine's view of,
XVII:4 and n27
Titus Latinius, IV:26; VIII:13

Volume I/6 & I/7
Titus Tatius, III:13; IV:23 and n92; VI:10 and n39
Torquatus, Titus Manlius, I:23 and n76; V:18
torture, I:10; XIX:6 and n21
Tower of Confusion, XVI:4–7
Trajan, IV:29 and n110; XXII:8 and n53
transformation, XVII:12 and n75
tree of life: days of, XX:26
trinities, natural (as suggesting the Trinity), V:11 and n27–28
cause, light and fount, VIII:10 and n43
everlasting, truth, and happiness, XII:21(20) and n34
Greek philosophy and, VIII:4 and n21; VIII:10 and n42
life, wisdom, and joy, XII:1 and n4
to live, to have intelligence and to be happy, VII:6 and n29
Trinity, Holy, V:11 and n27–28; VIII:4 and n21, 6 and n29; IX:15, 22 and n60; X:24 and n113; X:25 and n117; X:27 and n128
angels’ knowledge of, X:29
created (existence, form and order), XI:28 and n61
in creation, XI:24–28
and divine simplicity, XI:10
Genesis 1:26, trinitarian connotation of, XVI:6 and n38
Greek philosophy and, VIII:4 and n21, 10 and n42
in human nature, XI:25–29
Plotinus on, X:23
second person of, IX:22 and n60; X:24–25 and n113, 117
three persons of, V:11 and n27; X:23 and n110; X:29 and n136; XIII:24
uncreated (existence, wisdom and goodness), XI:28 and n61
Trinity, in Neoplatonism, XI:29
Trinity, The (Augustine), X:27, n128; XI:24 and n51
Triptolemus, XVIII:13 and n67
Trismegistus, XVIII:39 and n189
See also Hermes Trismegistus
Trojus, Pompeius, IV:6 and n13
Troy
See also under Paris: Judgment of and adultery, III:3–6
fall of, III:2–5; XVIII:16–19
the gods and Laomedon’s perjury, III:2
the gods and Paris’s adultery, III:3–5
household gods as not having protected, I:3
Juno’s sanctuary in, I:4
“mother of the Roman people,” I:4 and n16
the palladium, III:18 and n115
and Rome, III:6 and n16
sack of, by Fimbria, III:7–8
truth, I:16 and n56; XII:21(20) and n34; XX:3 and n6
See also wisdom
God as, XI:28; XII:1
Greek philosophers and, II:7
Porphyry’s failure to recognize, X:28–29
and role of ignorance in human misery, XXII:22 and n109
Scripture, truthfulness of, XX:1, 30
sources of, VIII:9 and n41
Tullus Hostilius, III:14–15; IV:23 and n93; VI:10
turtledove, XVI:43 and n191
twelve, XV:20 and n105
Twelve Tables, II:9 and n21; II:14; VIII:19
Twenty Martyrs, XXII:8 and n50
twins
See also Esau; Jacob
and astrological fatalism, V:1–6 and n7
different-sex, V:6
Jacob and Esau, V:4
two cities. See cities, two
Tychonius, XX:19 and n56
tyrrants, II:21
universe:
See evil in, XI:22
Jupiter and elements of, IV:9–10
universe, soul of. See world soul
Ur, XVI:15 and n71
use. See under enjoyment: use and
Uz, XVIII:47 and n230
vainglory
See also pride
as keeping other vices at bay, V:13
Valens, V:26 and n109; XVIII:52 and n254

The City of God
The City of God

Valentinian I, XVIII:52 and n252
Valentinian II, III:22 and n129; V:26 and
n102
Varro, Marcus Terentius, III:3–4 and n13;
VI–VII passim; XVIII:2 and n5;
XXI:8 and n31
See also specific topics, e.g., world
soul
on age (youth and old age), XXII:15
and n81
Antiquities, VI: summary, 3–4 and n12
beliefs/views of, IV:31
criticism of, VI:4–6
etymology of, XVIII:5 and n28
and faith in the resurrection, XXII:28
God, view of, IV:31; XIX:22
gods, theories about, VII:17
gods, three views of, IV:27 and n103;
VI:5
on gods, function of, IV:22
on gods, images of, and religion of the
populace, IV:31–32
Human and Divine Antiquities, IV:2
and n4
on images, IV:9, 31
On Philosophy, XIX:1 and n2
On the Race of the Roman People,
XVIII:2, 8, 13; XXI:8 and
n31; XXII:28
on religion, deception in, IV:9
on religion vs. superstition, VI:9
Roman religion, work on, VI:2–4
Saturn, interpretation of, VII:19
on select gods, VII:3, 5–6, 28
Serenæ and, VI:10
on supreme good, XIX:1–3
theology of, inconsistency in, VII:28
theology of, three types, VI:5–10
On the Worship of the Gods, VII:34
Venilia, VII:22
Venus, VII:2
and Anchises, III:3 and nn10–11
and Cupid, IV:10 and n46
Judgment of Paris, III:25; IV:27 and
n106; VII:15 and n42
Juno and, VII:15
and Mars, IV:10 and n46
the planet, XXI:8 and n35
rites of, VI:7
and Vesta, IV:10 and n45
and Vulcan, III:3 and n11; IV:10 and
n46
Vesta, III:18 and n114; III:28; IV:10–11
and n45; VI:2; VII:2, 16, 24;
VIII:5
Vestal virgins, III:5, 18 and n114; III:28;
IV:10; X:16; XVIII:21 and n103;
XXII:11 and n74
vices
See also specific topics, e.g., curiosity
battle against, XXII:23
other vices as overcoming, V:13;
XXI:16 and n73
of the Romans, I:33
struggle of virtues against, XIX:4
Victory, goddess, IV:14–17, 21, 24; V:17
Virgil, I:3–4, 16; II:22; III:2, 10–11;
IV:10; V:12, 19; VII:9; VIII:19;
X:27
See also Aeneas (the Aeneid)
and Plato, corrections of, X:30
on Saturn, VII:27
virginity, XV:26; XVI:36 and n139
See also celibates; chastity
the difference between virgin and non-
virgin, V:6 and n14
fortitude and, I:18
marriage vs., I:9; XVI:36
of Mary, XXII:8 and n61
pride in, danger of, I:28 and n83
virtue; the virtues, IV:20
See also specific virtues, e.g., fortitude
cardinal virtues, XIX:4 and n12;
XXII:24 and n129
earthly reward for earthly, V:13–17
as highest good of the soul (Varro),
XIX:3
and love of praise, V:13
“lover of virtue,” X:28 and n133
passions as training in, IX:5
proper end of: as neither pleasure nor
human glory, V:20
public teaching of, II:6–7
Roman, V:12
Stoic understanding of, IX:4; XIX:1,
25 and n94
struggle against the vices, XIX:4
temperance, prudence, and justice,
XIX:4
true religion as necessary for, XIX:25

Volume I/6 & I/7
Virtue (goddess), IV:20–21, 24; V:12; VII:3
visible appearances of the invisible God, X:12–13
visible Church. See Church
“visible gods,” IX:16
visible miracles, X:12–13
visions:
of God, in the world to come, XXII:29 and n152
miracles and, X:8 and n40
Vocian Law, III:21 and n126
volcanoes, XXI:4 and n7
Vulcan, III:3 and n11; IV:23; VI:1, 10, 16; VII:2; VIII:5
and Venus, III:3 and n11; IV:10–11 and n46
Vulgate, XIII:18 and n29; XIV:13 and n80; XVIII:43 and n201
See also under specific topics, e.g., Abraham: and Lot
war, III:16–18
See also civil wars; Rome, sack of, specific topics, e.g., sanctuaries; specific wars, e.g., Punic Wars
with Alba, III:14
divine providence, as used by, I:1
durations and outcomes of, V:22
in human history, I:2
just, I:21 and n65; I:26; IV:14–17; XV:4; XIX:7
misery of, XIX:7
peace as desired end, XIX:12
results of Roman, V:17
sack of city, wartime (Cato’s description), I:5
watchman, I:9 and n31
water
See also under elements: four angels and, XI:34
wealth. See riches
wickedness. See evil; sin
widowhood, XV:26
will, V:9–10
See also freedom of will
actions of, V:9
and emotions, XIV:4–6
evil, cause of first, XII:6–9; XIV:11
evil as function of, XI: summary; XII: summary
passions, love, and, XIV:6–8
sin and, XI:17
will of God
and fulfillment of the divine promise, XXII:2–3
in his creation, XI:21
wisdom, VII:6, 9; XI:28 and n61; XII:1 and n4–5
See also knowledge; truth
angelic and human, IX:22 and n61
and arrogance, VIII:2
God as, VIII:1
superiority of divine wisdom over human philosophy, XVIII:41
Wisdom of God, IX:22 and n60–61
wise men. See sophoi
witness: of the martyrs, XXII:9–10
woman; women
See also Eve
and angels, intermingling of, III:5; XV:22–24
Augustine’s view of reputation regarding, III:21 and n126; XXII:17–18 and n85
as made from man, XII:22(21);
XXII:17
religious, XXII:8 and n49
women’s bodies, resurrection of, XXII:17
Word of God (Logos):
made flesh, XVIII:46
soul of Christ and, X:27; XIV:2 and n7; XIV:9
and Wisdom of God, IX:22 and n60
work, servile, XXII:30 and n167
works of God, VII:29–33
works of mercy:
and sacrifice, X:6; XX:24
and salvation, XXI:22 and n82;
XXI:27
world
See also creation; earth; specific topics, e.g., order
age of, XII:13(12)–18(17)
beginning of, XI:5–6; XII:13(12)
beliefs regarding, XII:12(11) and n23;
XVIII:41
destruction of this world, XX:18
end of, XX:24
and the impure, VII:26 and n65
innumerable worlds, XI:5; XII:12(11)
and n23; XVIII:41

The City of God
The City of God

making use of vs. enjoying, VIII:8; XV:7 and n20
and miseries of social life, XIX:7–8
and the origin of humankind, XII:10–12(11)
threefold division of, XVI:17 and n77
visible, VIII:1
worship of, vs. worship of the true God, VII:27
world cycles. See cyclical theories
world soul, VII:27
God as, IV:12–13 and n66; IV:31
and its permeation of the world, VII:23–24
Jupiter and, IV:11; VII:14
Plotinus and soul of the universe, X:2
Varro’s belief regarding, VII:6, 23–24
worship of as not worship of the true God, VII:27
worm and fire, XX:22; XXI:2, 9, 24, 26
worship
See also under specific topics, e.g.,
demon-worship; gods (pagan)
as due to God alone, IV:11, 25; VII:1;
X:1, 7, 16
of God, true, X:3
of God for temporal benefits, as well
as eternal, X:14
of many gods, VIII:13
martyrs, Christians as not worshiping,
VIII:27
miracles, angels, and the worship of God, X:16
neither angels nor demons as to be worshiped, IX:23; X:3, 7
sacrifice, angels, and the worship of God, X:19–20
of the true God vs. world or world’s soul, VII:27
Xenocrates, VIII:12 and n53
Xenophanes (Xenophon) of Colophon,
VII:17 and n46
years, XV:13–14 and n56
Egyptian, XII:11(10); XV:12
Zedekiah, XVIII:25
Zeno of Citium, IX:4–5 and n15
Zethus, XVIII:13 and n73
Zeus. See Jupiter
Zion, XVII:16 and n94

Volume I/6 & I/7
Index from

On the Divination of Demons

(De divinatione daemonum)

Included in book:

On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, general introduction and introductions by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8

Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005
Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

Demonic Divination

Old Testament

- Psalms
  - 2:7-8 6, 13
  - 9:4-7 6, 14
  - 22:16-18 6, 13
  - 22:27-28 6, 13
- Isaiah
  - 51:7-8 6, 14

Zephaniah

- 2:11 6, 11

New Testament

- Mark
  - 4:39 6, 10
- 1 Corinthians
  - 1:20-25 6, 14

On Christian Belief
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

Demonic Divination

admiration, misplaced, 7–8
_Aeneid_ (Virgil), 11
airy bodies, 7–9; 11
angels: good and bad, 10

bodies, airy vs. earthy, 7–9; 11
body language, 9

Christians:
“foolishness” of, 14
persecution of, 13–14
circus performers, 8
curiosity, 7

demonic divination, 9
accuracy of, 10–12
capacity for, 1; 7–10
source of, 10
of temple’s destruction, 1; 10–11
demons
advantage had by, 7–9
human beings and, 7–8
misplaced admiration for, 7–8

nature of, 7
doctors, 7; 9; 10

envy: demons as envious, 8; 10
evil: God as permitting, 2–6
false gods. See idols
farmers, 7; 10
“foolishness” of Christians, 14

God:
evil, as permitting, 2–6
one true God, 12–13
punishment by, 3
upsetting demonic predictions, 10
gods, false. See idols

human beings:
admiration for demons, 7–8
pious, 8

idols, 3
banishment of, 12–13

On Christian Belief
Volume I/8

inventors of mechanical contrivances, 8
Juno, 11
Jupiter, 11
martyrs, 13
miracles, 13
omnipotence of God, 2–6
oracles:
genuine prophecy, 14
truthfulness of, 10
paganism:
decline of, 3; 14
God’s displeasure with, 3
and God’s superiority, 12–14
persecution of Christians, 13–14
philosophers, the great, 12
pontifical books, 5
pride, 8
prophecy
demonic (see demonic divination)
genuine, 10; 14
sacrifice, pagan, 3
sailors, 7; 10
Serapis, 11
temple of Serapis: destruction as predicted, 1; 10–11
truth, quest for, 7
Tumus, 11
Virgil, 11
wisdom: “foolishness” and, 14
Zephaniah, the prophet, 11

On Christian Belief
Index from
On Faith and the Creed
(De fide et symbolo)

Included in book:
On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, general introduction and introductions by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005
Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

Faith and the Creed

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>81:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Volume I/8

### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:8, 12:48, 22:30, 23:9</td>
<td>20, 9, 13, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1, 1:3, 1:9, 1:14, 2:4, 3:6, 4:24, 10:30, 14:6, 14:9, 14:28, 16:13, 20:17</td>
<td>18, 5, 6, 6, 9, 19, 19, 18, 3, 18, 18, 19, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:9, 1:17, 1:23, 5:5, 7:25, 8:15, 8:22, 10:10, 11:36</td>
<td>23, 1, 14, 19, 23, 19, 23, 1, 16, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Galatians
- 3:11

### Ephesians
- 2:3

### Philippians
- 2:6

### Titus
- 1:15

### Hebrews
- 10:38

### 1 John
- 4:16, 4:18

### Revelation
- 1:8
Volume I/8

**General Index**

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

**Faith and the Creed**

Acts of the Apostles, 15
angelic transformation, 24
Apollinarism, refutation of, 8
apostasy, 23
Arianism, refutation of, 5; 18
ascension of Christ, 12–13
belief: and understanding, 1; 25
birth, 10
birth of Christ, 8–10
body, 23
natural and spiritual, 13
resurrection of, 23–24
soul and, 10
Catholic Church, 1; 20–22; 21
Christianity, 1; 25
Church. See Catholic Church
clean of heart, the, 20
creation, 2; 5
creed, 1; 25
cross, the, 11
dead, 24
death of Christ, 11
Docetism, refutation of, 9
dualism: of Manicheans, 2
faith, 1; 25
family of Christ, 9
fear, 19
flesh, 24
forgiveness of sins, 20–22
gentiles, non-believing, 13
God. See also Trinity
clean of heart as seeing, 20
as creator, 2
the Father, 3–6; 14; 16–20
in heaven, 14
nature of, 7
omnipotence of, 2–3
Godhead, 19
gods: You are gods, 16
heaven: Christ in, 13–14
heretics and heresies, 1; 21.
See also Apollinarism; Arianism;
Docetism; Manicheanism
Holy Spirit, 8; 16–17; 19–20
See also Trinity
human beings: nature of, 8; 23
humility, 6
incarnation, the, 8–15; 18
Jesus Christ, 3
See also Trinity
ascension of, 12–13
birth of, 8–10
death of, 11
family of, 9
in heaven, 13–14
human nature of, 6; 8–15; 18
incarnation of, 8–15; 18
second coming of, 15
Son of God, 3; 5–6; 16–20
Word of God, 3–8; 10
judgment: of living and dead, 15
justification, 1
light, 6
Logos, divine, 4–7
love, 19; 21
Manicheanism, refutation of, 2–3; 9; 10;
13; 19; 23
Mary, the virgin, 8–9; 11
matter: nature of, 2; 19
Moses, 6
non-believing gentiles, 13
Old Testament, 6
original sin, 23
Pneumatomachians, 19
power of God: Word as, 3–4
pride, 6

On Christian Belief
Volume I/8

resurrection of the body, 23–24
Revelation, 15

salvation, 1; 8
schismatics, 21
See also heretics and heresies
second coming of Christ, 15
sin
  forgiveness of, 20–22
  original, 23
Son of God, 3; 5–6; 16–20
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity
soul, 8; 10; 23
spirit, 23
spiritual body, 13

Trinity, 16–20
truth, 19
  Word as, 3
unbelievers, 13
understanding: belief and, 1; 25
unity, 19–20

wisdom: and light, 6
wisdom of God:
  Word as, 3–4
  Word of God, 3–8; 10

On Christian Belief
Index from
On Faith and Works
(De fide et operibus)

Included in book:
On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8
Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

---

**Faith and Works**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:3-5</td>
<td>31:17</td>
<td>15:2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 10:6</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>14, 21</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47:2</td>
<td>7, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:2</td>
<td>14, 21</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/8

New Testament

Matthew
3:7-8 13, 19
5:20 26, 48
6:12 26, 48
9:16-17 6, 9
10:11 17, 51
11:12 21, 39
12:45 25, 47
13:25 19, 35
13:29-30 3, 4
13:39 17, 31
15:26-28 16, 30
18:15 26, 48
18:15-17 3, 4
18:18 3, 4
19:17 15, 25; 27, 49
19:18-19 16, 27
19:21 16, 27
22:10 17, 31
22:37-39 10, 16
22:40 22, 40
23:2-3 26, 48
23:15 26, 48
25:41 15, 25
25:44 15, 25
25:46 15, 25

Luke
3:12-14 13, 19
17:21 21, 39

John
3:5 26, 48
3:18 23, 43
5:14 20, 36
5:28-29 23, 42
17:3 22, 40

Acts of the Apostles
2:37-39 8, 12
2:38 11, 17
2:38-39 8, 13
2:38-41 8, 13
8:37-38 8, 14
8:38 8, 14

Romans
2:12 23, 42
2:18 14, 21
4:15 23, 43
5:5 21, 39; 23, 43
5:20 14, 21
7:7-8 23, 43
13:10 14, 21; 21, 39

14:21 3, 5
15:19 21, 37

1 Corinthians
2:2 10, 15
3:11 16, 27
3:11-15 15, 24
4:15 10, 15
5:1-5 2, 3
5:4-5 26, 48
5:5 3
5:9-13 2, 3
6:9-10 12, 18; 15, 25
6:11 12, 18; 15, 25
7:15 16, 28
7:32-33 16, 27
11:29 6, 9
13:2 14, 21; 15, 25
13:3 15, 25
15:3-4 10, 15

2 Corinthians
6:16 12, 18
12:21 26, 48

Galatians
4:31-5:1 23, 45
5:6 14, 21; 16, 27
5:18 23, 45
5:19-21 15, 25
5:21 18, 33
6:14 10, 15

Ephesians
3:17 16, 27
4:28 8, 13

Colossians
3:10 6, 9

1 Thessalonians
3:14-15 3

1 Timothy
1:10-11 16, 29
1:13 25, 47
1:20 2, 3
4:4 3, 5
8:20 3, 4

Hebrews
6:1-2 11, 17

On Christian Belief
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>14, 23; 15, 25, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>14, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>23, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>15, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:1-2</td>
<td>10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>25, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>22, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:3-4</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jude</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>25, 46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

Faith and Works

actors, 33
Acts of the Apostles, 12
adultery, 3; 20; 25
baptism and, 2; 8; 13; 15; 18; 25; 31–37; 49
and depraved world, 37
divorce and, 35
unknowing, 10
animals (Noah’s ark), 49
apostles, 11; 31
See also individual names
arguments, 25
Arians, 5
avarice, 25; 33
baptism, 1–8; 9–20; 36; 48; 49
access to, 1; 2; 8; 13; 15; 18; 25; 31–38; 49
and conscience, 25
and divorce, 2; 35
of the dying, 9
and faith, living vs. dead, 21–30
and good living (morality), 1–2; 9–20; 10;
17–19; 31–38; 48–49
of John the Baptist, 19; 34; 37
and new life, 12
the Red Sea, 17–18
and repentance, 12–13; 19
scripture and, 9–20
belief. See faith

believers. See Christians

Bible. See scripture
body, desires of. See carnal desires

Caecilian, 6
Canaanite woman, 30
carnal desires, 15; 43
catamites, 25
catechumens, 9–20; 49
See also baptism
Catholic Church. See Church
charity: love and, 25
See also love
Christ, See Jesus Christ
Christian behavior. See morality; works
Christian faith, the, 27
baptismal candidates and, 9–20
and good living (morality), 9–20
instruction in, 11
Christians
See also Church; morality; specific topics
converts, 48
lapsed, 35
and sin, 41–49
“the faithful,” 11

Christian unity. See unity
Church:
discipline by, 3–4; 6–7; 32; 34; 48; 49
good and wicked in, 1–8; 31–39; 49
Church unity. See unity
commandments
faith and, 20; 40
the first, 17
the holy commandment, 45–46
to love, 16; 40
rich man and, 20; 27; 49
compassion
See also tolerance
love and, 25
confession of sin: baptism, preparation for, 8–9
conscience, 25
carriage: baptism, preparation for, 8–9
converts, 48
Creed, the, 14; 36
Crispus, 15
crucifixion of Christ, 15
cursing, 3; 25
Cyprian, 35; 49
damnation, eternal, 25–27; 42–45; 49
dancers, 49
darnel. See under Church: good and wicked in
death faith, 21–30; 31–38; 40; 46
demons. See devils
demotion, 3
devil. See Satan
devils: faith of, 22; 27; 30; 38; 40
disciples, 31
See also individual names
discipline
See also punishment
after death, 4
by the Church, 3–4; 6–7; 32; 34; 48; 49
divorce, 28; 35
adultery and, 35
baptism and, 2
Donatists, 6
drunkenness, 3; 25; 33
divisions, 25
envy, 25
devil as envious, 3
eternal life, 25; 40; 42–43; 48–49
See also salvation
rich man and, 20; 27; 49
eternal punishment, 25–27; 42–45; 49
eunuch, baptism of, 14; 18
everlasting life. See eternal life
evil
See also under Church: good and wicked
in; sin
and eternal damnation, 42
Remove the evil from yourselves, 3
excommunication, 3–4; 6; 34; 48
exorcisms: baptism, preparation for, 8–9
faith, 11; 27; 39; 41
See also Christian faith, the; salvation and baptism (see baptism) in Christ, 14
Christ dwells in our hearts through faith, 27
and the commandments, 20
of devils, 22; 27; 30; 38; 40
faith that works through love, 21–30; 27; 42
grace and, 38
intellect and, 9–20
justification, 27
and the law, 21–30; 45
living vs. dead, 21–30; 31–40; 46
prayers of, 39
without love, 21; 25
without works, 21; 40
faithful, the, 11
fasting: baptism, preparation for, 8–9
fear: love and, 39
fire:
eternal, 25
purifying, 27
salvation through, 18; 24–28; 42–44; 47
fishermen, 32
flesh, lusts of. See carnal desires
forgiveness of sin:
at baptism, 36
ongoing, 41
fornication, 25; 29
See also adultery
baptism and, 17–18
foundation, Christ as, 24–28
freedom, 45
Gaius, 15
generosity, 25
gentiles, 44
gladiators, 33
gluttony, 25
God
See also Trinity; specific topics
believing in, worshiping, knowing, 41
“gold” and “wood.” See foundation, Christ as
good, achieving, 41
good and wicked people. See under Church:
good and wicked in
good living. See morality
Volume I/8

good works. See works
gospel, preaching, 14
grace, 21; 27; 38
and the law, 43–44
hatred, 25
health, physical: sin and, 36
heaven
See also eternal life
The kingdom of heaven is within you, 39
heresies, 25
See also specific groups and names
Herod, 35
Holy Spirit, 21; 30; 39; 47
See also Trinity; specific topics
homosexuality, 29
idolatry, 3; 17–18; 25; 34
illness, physical: sin and, 36
impurity, 25; 29; 34
intellect: and faith, 9–20
Israelites, 38
James, 21; 23; 30; 46
jealousy, 25
Jesus Christ
See also Trinity
crucifixion of, 15
dwells in our hearts through faith, 27
faith in, 14
as foundation, 24–28
gospel of, 14
as tolerant, 4
Jews, 43–44; 48
the Israelites, 38
John (apostle), 11; 21
John the Baptist, 19; 35; 37
Jovinian, 5
Jude, 21; 46
judging others, 3
judgment, 22; 27
eternal damnation, 42–45
justification, 21–30
and faith, 27
and works of love, 27
kidnappers, 29
kingdom of heaven: The kingdom of heaven is within you, 39
lapsed, the, 35
law:
faith and, 21–30; 39–40; 45
fulfillment of, 39
love and, 21; 40

sin and, 42–45
those who sin without the law, 42
two commandments and, 40
Letter and the Spirit, The (Augustine), 21
liars, 29
life, Christian. See morality
life, eternal. See eternal life
living faith. See under faith: living vs. dead
Lot’s wife, 47
love:
and charity, 25
commandments, two, 16; 40
and compassion, 25
faith active in, 21–30; 38–39
faith that works through love, 27; 42
faith without, 21; 25
fear and, 39
of God and neighbor, 20
grace and, 38
If I...do not have love, I am nothing, 21
and the law, 21; 39
of possessions, 27
of self and neighbor, 25
and sin, 25
works of, 27
lust. See carnal desires
Manicheans, 5
marriage, 2
chaste, 5
condemnation of, 5
continence in, 8–9
and divorce, 28; 35
as sacrament, 10
with unbelievers, 35
mercy, spirit of. See tolerance
morality (Christian way of life), 22; 41; 42; 48; 49
See also under baptism: morality and
two commandments and, 16; 40
Moses, 3
motivations for action, imperfect, 27
murder, 27; 29; 34
New Testament, 35; 45
Noah, 49
non-believers. See unbelievers
obscenity, 3; 25
Old Testament. See law
Paul, 11; 21; 24; 26–27
See also specific topics
1 Cor. 3, 27
faith and justification, 27
Romans, letter to, 44
unbeliever, as former, 47

On Christian Belief
On Christian Belief

penance, 4; 34; 48
perjurers, 29
persecution, 35
Peter, 11–13; 21; 22; 26; 37; 45–46
See also specific topics

Philip, 14; 18
Phinehas, 3
pimps, 33
Pinehas, 3
poor, charity toward, 25
possessions, 20; 27
prayers of faith, 39
Priscillianists, 5
property law, 10
prostitutes, 25; 33
do not be united to (see under adultery: 
  baptism and)
punishment
See also discipline
  eternal (see eternal punishment)
fear of vs. love, 39
purgatory, 29
purifying fire. See under salvation: through fire
quarrels, 25
Red Sea, 17–18
repentence, 19; 41
  and baptism, 12–13
  excommunication and, 34
  for works that are dead, 17; 36
  resurrection of eternal life, 42
  resurrection of judgment, 42
  rich young ruler, 27
  robbers, 3; 25
Romans, letter to, 44
salvation, 41–49
  See also under baptism: and morality; 
    eternal life
  baptism and, 1
  good works and, 1; 22–23
  through fire, 18; 24–28; 42–44; 47
Satan: as envious, 3
schisms, 49
  See also heresies; specific groups and 
    names
scripture. See law; New Testament; specific topics
sickness: sin and, 36
sin
  See also adultery; baptism; Church; 
    discipline by; Church: good and 
    wicked in
and Christ crucified, 15
Christians and, 41–49
confession of, 8–9
forgiveness of, 36; 41
and grace, 21
and health, physical, 36
of Israelites, 38
last judgment and, 27
and the law, 42–45
love and, 25
marriage and, 28
penance, 4; 34; 48
and punishment, 4; 34; 48
Remove the evil from yourselves, 3
and repentance, 12–13; 41
sinners, hardened: baptism of. See under 
  baptism: access to
sinners in the Church
  See under Church: discipline by;
    Church: good and wicked in
slander, 25; 33
sleep: While people were asleep, 35
Sodom, 47
sodomites, 25
Stephenas, 15
subordinationists, 5
swindlers, 25
tax collectors, 19; 37
Ten Commandments. See commandments
thieves, 3; 25
tolerance, 4; 6; 49
  See also under Church: good and 
    wicked in
Trinity, 5
unbelievers:
  Israelites as, 38
  marriage with, 35
Paul as former, 47
and repentance, 12–13
and sin, 41; 43–44; 47
unity, 6
virginity: and marriage, condemning, 5
wealth, 20; 27–28
wickedness. See evil; sin
wicked people. See under Church: good and 
  wicked in
Wisdom, Book of, 41
witchcraft, 25
“wood” and “gold.” See foundation, Christ as 
works, 17
  dead, 17; 36

Volume I/8
On Christian Belief

faith and, 21–30
faith without, 21; 25; 40; 49
justification and, 27
of love, 21–30
and salvation, 1; 22–23
world:
desires of, 21
possessions, love for, 27
Tear yourself...from this depraved world, 37
worthiness, 31
Index from

On Faith in the Unseen

(De fide rerum invisibilium)

Included in book:

On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8

Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Faith in the Unseen

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 22:18</td>
<td>3, 5, 4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:7-8</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:4-5</td>
<td>7, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-19</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28-29</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:7-9</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:9</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:11</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:7-8</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:10</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:11-18</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:12</td>
<td>6, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On Christian Belief
# On Christian Belief

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>68:22-24</td>
<td>6, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:6</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>2:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Is 7:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>16:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:19-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>2:11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>6:9, 13:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>23:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Volume I/8
Faith in the Unseen

Abraham, 5
apostles, 10
ascension of Christ, 7
belief. See faith
Bible. See scripture
birth of Christ, 5; 7
Catholic faith. See Christian faith; Church
children, 4
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian faith
See also Church; faith; prophecies
credibility of, 5–10
proof and, 5
signs, and truth of, 2–3; 5
spread of, 10
as unseen, 3
Christians: ill-disposed, 11
Church:
address in voice of, 5–7
as bride of Christ, 11
maternal love by, 5
unity, 11
crucifixion of Christ, 9
deceit, 2
deeds, 2–3
disciples, 10
eternal damnation, 8
eternal life, 8
faith
See also Christian faith
criticism of, refuting, 2–4
in the divine, 4
and human social life, 4
as knowledge, 2–3
necessity of, 2–4
nourishing, 11
opponents of, 1
rejection of, 4
and sense experience, 1
and signs, outward, 2–3
family, 4
friendship, 2–5; 8
future, 8
gestures, 2–3
goodwill. See friendship; love
hell (eternal damnation), 8
heretics, 11
history. See past
Holy Spirit, 10
human mind, 1–2
idolatry, 7; 10
Israel, 5
Jacob, 5
Jesus Christ, 10
ascension of, 7
birth of, 5; 7
crucified, 9
disciples chosen by, 10
Jewish ancestry of, 5
miracles of, 7
passion of, 7
resurrection of, 7
Jews:
On Christian Belief

Faith in the Unseen

Jesus, ancestry of, 5
scattering of, 9
writings of, 9
Judah, 5
judgment day, 8

kindness, 4
See also love
knowledge: faith and, 2–3

love, 2–4
maternal, by Church, 5

marriage, 4
martyrdom: of disciples, 10
Mary, the virgin, 5
mind, human, 1–2
miracles of Christ, 7

Old Testament prophecies, 5–11

parents, 4
passion of Christ, 7
past, the, 4; 8
proof: visible, prophecies as, 8
prophecies: fulfillment of, 5–11

resurrection of Christ, 7
resurrection of the dead, 8

scattering of the Jews, 9
scripture: prophecies, fulfillment of, 5–11
sense experience: faith and, 1–3
sight: and the unseen, 1; 3
signs: faith and, 2–3
See also prophecies

temples, 10
tongues, speaking in, 10
tradition. See past
trust, 2–4; 4
unity, Church, 11
unseen things
See also specific topics
Christian religion and, 3
past and future, 8

virgin birth, 5
vision: and the unseen, 1; 3

words, 2–3

Volume I/8
Index from

On the Advantage of Believing

(De utilitate credendi)

Included in book:

On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, general introduction and introductions by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005
Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.

New City Press of the Focolare
www.newcitypress.com
orders@newcitypress.com
1-800-462-5980
**Volume I/8**

**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

*The Advantage of Believing*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3-4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1-11</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22-26</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**On Christian Belief**
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

The Advantage of Believing

academics, the, 20; 25
Acts of the Apostles, 7
adultery, 6
Aeneid (Virgil), 10
Alexis (in Virgil’s Eclogue 2), 17

allegorical exegesis, 5–9
Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, 20
analogical exegesis, 5–9
Archimedes, 13
Aristotle, 13

On Christian Belief
Asper (Latin grammarian), 17
Augustine:
as former Manichean, 2; 13; 17; 20
spiritual journey of, 20; 36
authority, subjection to, 33–35
and being misled, 34
belief and, 25
the Catholic Church, 33
divine authority, 27–28; 34
and truth, acquiring, 2; 20–21
belief, 14–35; 25
See also faith
and authority, 25; 33–35
Catholic Church as demanding, 29
in Christ, 31–32
and credulity, 22–23; 25
and human society, 26–32
and imagined knowing, 22, 25
and knowing, 22, 25
reason and, 22
truth, search for, 14–20; 21–32
belief before insight, 22–32
negative arguments, 26–32
positive arguments, 23–24
Bible. See New Testament; Old Testament; text
Bible, methods of interpreting, 5–9
error, possible sources of, 10–12
body, 14
pleasures of, 10
Caecilius and Erucus, 16
Catholic Church, 14; 18–20; 31
authority of, 27–28; 33; 34
faith, as demanding, 29
and Old Testament, 4–5
primacy of, 35
and truth, quest for, 19–20
charity, 35
chastity, 35
children, parents and, 22; 26–32
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christianity, 19
See also Catholic Church
Augustine’s return to, 20
heretics, 19
Church. See Catholic Church
Cicero, 16; 25
circumcision, 9
Cornutus (Latin grammarian), 17
credulity, 22–23; 25
curiosity, 22
deceitfulness, 23
divine authority. See authority
divorce, 6
Donatus (Latin grammarian), 17
education, 2; 15–17; 22
Epicurus, 10; 13
Erusus, Caecilius and, 16
etiological exegesis, 5–9
evil: origin of, 36
See also sin
exegesis, four methods of, 5–9
explanation. See etiological exegesis
faith. See belief
families, 22; 26–32
fasting, 35
Faustus of Milevis, 20
foolish people: and wise people, 24; 27–28; 33–34
friendship, 23–24
Ganymedes of the Bucolics, 17
generosity, 35
God:
and divine authority, 27–28; 34
human wisdom and, 33
nature of, 36
as truth, 33
wisdom of, 33
grace: the law and, 9
grammarians, Latin, 17
Greek words, 5
gullibility. See credulity
heaven (life after death), 25
heretics and heresies, 19; 21
definition of, 1
Manicheans as (see Manicheans)
historical exegesis, 5–9
Holy Spirit, 7
human beings. See people
intelligence: foolish/wise persons, 24;
27–28; 33–34
Jesus Christ, 33–34
as authority, 27–28
belief in, 31–32
as wisdom of God, 33
knowledge:
belief before insight, 22–32
curiosity vs. studiousness, 22
and human intellect (see intelligence)
imagined, 22, 25
and opinion, 4; 25
rational insight and, 26–32
On Christian Belief
On Christian Belief

Virgil, 13; 17; 46

wisdom:
of God, 33
human, 24; 27–28; 33–34

truth and, 33

world:
disdain for, 35
worldly pursuits, 3
writings. See text
Translators and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8 Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### On Christian Belief

**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

**Enchiridion**

**Old Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>77:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:20</td>
<td>20, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>90:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14</td>
<td>111:2, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:4</td>
<td>26, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:31</td>
<td>115:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>148:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:7</td>
<td>24, 95; 27, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>15, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>13, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>28:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>38:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>21, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:1</td>
<td>22, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:9</td>
<td>17, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:1</td>
<td>14, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:5</td>
<td>13, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:10</td>
<td>9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1</td>
<td>14, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:10</td>
<td>9, 32; 20, 77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:35, LXX</td>
<td>28, 106</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ecclesiastes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30:24</td>
<td>20, 76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wisdom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>9, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:221</td>
<td>31, 118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sirach**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>18, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>17, 66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Isaiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>21, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>4, 13, 6, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:3</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jeremiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>30, 114</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ezekiel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
<td>13, 46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>2:32 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>2:4 7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>1:9 15, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>1:2-3 25, 98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>1:37; 15, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>13, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>21, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>21, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>5, 17; 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:40</td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>19, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>30, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11-13</td>
<td>30, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>7, 22; 19, 73; 21, 78; 22, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>22, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14-15</td>
<td>19, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>24, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>32, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:26</td>
<td>20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>24, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>18, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>18, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>29, 112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:38</td>
<td>11, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>14, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>21, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:37-41</td>
<td>20, 75; 20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>19, 72; 20, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:42</td>
<td>20, 76; 27, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61</td>
<td>22, 82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>10, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>12, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>27, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>10, 34; 11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>15, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>31, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:36</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>14, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>9, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>19, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>32, 121</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>20, 75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>12, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>7, 20; 31, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>10, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>8, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>14, 50; 20, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>14, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>14, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4-11</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>14, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>28, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>31, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>10, 33; 17, 64; 31, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>16, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11-13</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>9, 32; 25, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>25, 98; 25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:19</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20-21</td>
<td>25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>25, 98; 25, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-15</td>
<td>18, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>18, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>15, 56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**On Christian Belief**
### On Christian Belief

| 4:5 | 32.121 |
| 6:1 | 21.78  |
| 6:4-6 | 21.78 |
| 6:7 | 21.78  |
| 6:9-10 | 18.67 |
| 6:15 | 15.56  |
| 6:19 | 15.56  |
| 7:1 | 32.121 |
| 7:5 | 21.78  |
| 7:6 | 21.78  |
| 11:31-32 | 17.66 |
| 13:9.12 | 16.63 |
| 15:44 | 23.91  |
| 15:50 | 23.91  |

#### 2 Corinthians
| 5:10 | 29.110 |
| 5:20-21 | 13.41 |
| 11:14 | 16.60  |

#### Galatians
| 3:11 | 7.20  |
| 4:10-11 | 21.79; 21.80 |
| 5:6 | 2.8, 18.67 |
| 5:24 | 14.53  |

#### Ephesians
| 1:10 | 16.62 |
| 2:3 | 10.33; 25.98 |

#### Philippians
| 2:13 | 9.32  |
| 4:7 | 16.63  |

#### Colossians
| 1:16 | 15.58 |
| 1:18 | 15.56  |
| 1:19-20 | 16.62 |

| 3:1-3 | 14.53 |
| 3:4 | 14.54  |

#### 1 Timothy
| 1:5 | 32.121 |
| 2:1-2 | 27.103 |
| 2:3 | 27.103 |
| 2:4 | 24.97; 27.103 |

#### 2 Timothy
| 2:25 | 22.82  |

#### Titus
| 1:15 | 20.75  |

#### Hebrews
| 1:5 | 14.49 |
| 1:13 | 15.58 |
| 5:5 | 14.49 |
| 10:38 | 7.20  |
| 11:1 | 2.8   |

#### James
| 2:14 | 18.67 |
| 2:17 | 18.67 |
| 2:19 | 2.8   |
| 3:2 | 21.78 |

#### 2 Peter
| 2:4 | 15.57 |
| 2:19 | 9.30; 31.118 |

#### 1 John
| 1:8 | 17.64 |
| 4:8 | 21.121 |

---

**Volume I/8**
Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity

General Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

Enchiridion

abortion. See fetuses
Academics, the, 20
Adam, 104–105; 108
sin of (see original sin)
adultery, 19; 22; 78; 121
Aeneid (Virgil), 8; 11; 44
almsgiving, 70–77
for the dead, 110
angels, 14; 58; 61–63; 90
bodies of, 59
and Christ’s death, 61
and eternity, 100; 111
fallen, 23; 25; 27–29; 57; 61; 94
happiness of, 29
Peter and, 20
saints and, 29
Satan disguised as, 60
anger
See also wrath of God
of God vs. of humans, 33
Apostles’ Creed. See creed

babies. See infants
baptism, 39; 71
of infants, 97
of Jesus, 49
of John the Baptist, 49
and sin, 42–43; 68
baptismal catechesis. See creed; Lord’s Prayer
believers. See Christians
Bible. See scripture,
birth of Christ, 37
bodies, spiritual, 91
body
See also resurrection of the flesh; senses
death of, 25; 64
ensouled, 91
material of, 88–89
born again. See rebirth; salvation
catechesis, baptismal. See creed; Lord’s Prayer
Catholic faith
See also Christianity; Church

foundation of, 4; 4; 5
charity, 69–70; 117–121; 118; 121
See also almsgiving; 1 Corinthians 13:13;
love; works
faith, hope, and, 7–8
hope and, 114
and worship of God, 2
chastity, 22; 121
children, 46; 93; 161
See also infants
choice, free. See freedom
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian initiation. See creed; Lord’s Prayer
Christianity
See also Catholic faith; specific topics
document, 5
and the natural sciences, 9; 16
requirements of, 3
and sacred scripture, 3
Christian life, 3
Church, 56; 61
See also Catholic faith; specific topics
faith in, 56–63
in heaven, 57
penance, 65
and salvation, 65
Trinity and, 56
Cicero, 16; 17
circumcision, 67
cities, two, 111
concupiscence, 41; 78; 118
continence. See chastity
1 Corinthians 13:13; 3; 122
See also charity; faith; hope
corruption (flesh and blood), 91–92
corruption or contamination, 12–14
See also evil
creation, 9–22
creatures. See angels; humans
creed, 56; 114
Lord’s Prayer and, 7
crime, 64
cross, the:
redemption and, 41; 52–53
second crucifixion, doctrine of, 18
damnation, 27; 99–100; 111–113
See also eternal punishment
of the lost, 92
punishment of damned, alleviating, 110
death
See also eternal punishment; resurrection
of the flesh
of body, 25; 64
second, 92–93
to sin, 52 (see also baptism)
sin and, 106–107
soul after (before resurrection), 109–110
death of Christ
See cross; Jesus Christ: death of
deployment
See also error
and lying, 22
deeds (good works). See works
demons:
faith of, 8
second crucifixion doctrine, 18
desire, 24
wishes, worldly, 68
devil, 28
disguised as angel, 60
fall of, doctrine, 29
punishing humans, 49
devils (demons). See demons
doctrine, 4
Donatists, 17; 64
dualism. See Manichean dualism
Enchiridion: as handbook, 4; 6; 122
evils, 72
love for, 73–74
prayer for, 32
and spiritual bodies, 91
enlightenment, 103
ensouled body, 91
Epicurus, 16
error, 17; 19
See also heresies
evil and, 19; 21
sin and, 20–21
Esau, 98
eternal life, 69; 84–113
See also heaven; resurrection of the flesh
beliefs and, 19
good works and, 106–107
predestination to, 100
eternal punishment, 27; 69; 94; 111–113
See also damnation
beliefs and, 19
for the lost, 92
second death, 92–93
ever, 11
See also good; sin
causes of, 23
corruption or contamination, 12–14
deliverance from, 116
error as, 19; 21
God as permitting, 96
good arising from, 11; 15; 27; 100–102; 104–105
guileless in what is evil, 1
and natural science, 9; 16
as needing good to exist, 13–14
people, 13; 19
two contraries, 14
faith, 2–3; 5; 9–113.
See also Catholic faith; 1 Corinthians
13:13
and assever, 20
in Christ as redeemer, 23–55
and Christian doctrine, 5
in the Church, 56–63
definition of, 8
of demons, 8
in forgiveness of sins, 64–83
in God as creator, 9–22
as God-given, 31–32
and good works, 30–32; 67
in the Holy Spirit, 56–63
hope, and love, 3; 7–8
and reason, 4; 4
in resurrection of the flesh, 84–113
faith, confession of. See creed
Faith and Works (Augustine), 67
fall, the. See original sin
fear: hope and, 8
fetuses, 84–86
fire (purgatory), 67–69
flesh, 34
See also humanity
resurrection of (see resurrection of the
flesh)
foreknowledge, God’s, 100
forgiveness of sin, 64–83; 73–74; 115
almsgiving and (see almsgiving)
forgiving others, 73–74
fornication, 78
foundation, Christ as, 5; 68
four stages of humanity, 118–120
freedom (free will), 16; 25; 30–32; 106
See also God; grace; predestination; will
of God
friends, 72
Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity

Gift of God. See Holy Spirit
God
See also grace of God; mercy of God; Trinity; specific topics
as creator, 9–22
and human beings, 2–3
will of, 94–102
worship of, 2–3
wrath of, 33; 112
good
See also evil
all things as, 12
corrupt or contaminated, 12–13
deception by, 19
evil as needing, 13–14
increasing or decreasing, 12–14
people, 13; 19
two contraries, 14
good will. See love
good works. See works
grace of God, 30; 33; 52; 98–99
freely given, 107
good works and, 32
humanity, four stages of, 118
incarnate, 36; 40; 108
and merit, 106
and predestination, 100
Greeks, 9
guilt, 97

handbooks:
creed and Lord’s Prayer as, 7
Enchiridion as handbook (see Enchiridion)
happiness, 16; 24–25
of angels, 29
heaven, 62
See also eternal life
Church in, 57
heavenly bodies, 58
hell
See also eternal punishment
“sons of,” 39
herbs, 103
heresies, 4–5; 67
See also error; individual groups and names
Holy Spirit, 9; 33
See also Trinity
baptism of Jesus, 49
and Christ’s birth, 37–40
and the Church, 56
faith in, 56–63
as Gift of God, 40; 117
and love, 117; 121
sin against, 83
hope, 114–116

See also 1 Cor 13:13; Lord’s Prayer
and charity, 114
faith, and charity, 7–8
fear and, 8
and worship of God, 2
humanity, 99; 103
See also original sin; specific topics
fallen, 7; 25–26
four stages of, 118–120
as good, 13–23
immortality, loss of, 106
saints (see saints)
humility:
of Christian faith, 103
of God, 108
ignorance, 17; 24; 81
illness, 24
incarnation. See Jesus Christ
incorruption, 91–92
infants, 42–43; 46; 52; 66; 95; 97
See also children
injustice: God and, 98–99
Jacob, 21; 58; 98
James, 8; 67; 78
Jerome, 87; 87
Jerusalem, heavenly, 29
Jesus Christ, 5
See also mediator, Christ as; Trinity; specific topics
baptism of, 49
birth of, 37
death of, 25; 49; 52–53; 101 (see also cross)
divinity of, 35
as foundation, 5; 68
mysteries of, 53; 108
person of, 35
as redeemer, 23–55
redemptive sacrifice of, 41
resurrection of, 52–53
Job, 33
John the Baptist, 49
John (the evangelist), 36
judgment, 66
of living and dead, 54–55
mercy and, 94; 98–99
and predestination, 100
justice: God and, 98–102; 107
See also judgment; mercy of God
justification, 36; 50

kingdom of God: incorruption, 91
knowledge, secular, 9; 16
Laurence, questions by, 1; 3–4

On Christian Belief
law, 118–120
life
 See also humanity
beginning of, 86
life, eternal. See eternal life
Lord’s Prayer, 5; 7; 71; 116
creed and, 7
Luke, gospel of (five petitions), 116
Matthew, gospel of (seven petitions), 115
lost, the
grace and, 98
resurrection of, 92
love, 5
 See also charity
 for enemies, 73–74
faith, hope, and, 3; 7–8
Holy Spirit and, 117; 121
of neighbor as self, 76
primacy of, 117
Luke, gospel of, 116
lust. See concupiscence
lying, 18; 22
man. See humanity
Manichean dualism: refutation of, 9; 15
Mary, virgin mother, 34; 36–38; 40
massa damnata, 27
Matthew, gospel of, 115
mediator, Christ as, 33; 48; 61; 108; 118
mercy:
almsgiving as, 76
and judgment, 94
vessels of mercy, 112
mercy of God, 30–32; 98–102; 107
merit, 98–99; 106
miracles, 94
moon, 58
Moses, 118
mysteries of Christ, 53
 See also birth of Christ; justification
mediation, 108
mysticism, 53
natural sciences, 9; 16
non-believers. See lost, the
Novatians, 83
Old Covenant. See law
Origen, 18; 29
original sin, 7; 25–27; 30; 104–106; 108
 See also children; infants
and baptism, 42–51; 64
and mercy, 98
wrath of God, 33
orthodoxy
 See also Catholic faith
and heresy (see heresies)
parents: sin of, 46
Paul, 67; 100
 See also specific topics
Pauline triad (faith, hope, and charity). See 1 Corinthians 13:13
peace:
of God, 63
humanity, four stages of, 118
Pelagian controversy, 64; 99
 See evil: problem of; fall, the; grace:
necessity of; predestination; salvation: conditions for
penance, 65; 69; 71; 82; 94
penitence, 46
Peter, 20–21; 30; 57; 100
Pharaoh, 99
Pharisians, 75–76
philosophers
 See also individual names
“phusikoi,” 9
piety, 2
Porphyry, 86
prayer
 See also Lord’s Prayer
for enemies, 32
for everyone, especially upper class, 103
predestination, 100
pride, 28; 108
Priscillianists, 18
punishment
 See also eternal punishment; penance
death as, 107
of humans and angels, 100
and sacrifices for the dead, 110
purgatory, 67–69
questions, 1; 3–4
reason, 118
and faith, 4; 4
truth, defending by, 4
Rebecca, 98
rebirth, 46; 50–51; 64; 71
reconciliation, 79
redeemer. See Jesus Christ
redemption, 41
regeneration, 119
religion, 4
 See also faith
reason and, 4
repentance. See penance; penitence
resurrection of Christ, 52–53
resurrection of the flesh, 84–113
of fetuses, 84–86
of the lost, 92
of saints, 29
soul before (after death), 109
righteousness, 41
sacraments. See baptism; penance
sacrifice:
for the dead, 110
sins, as called, 41
saints, 29
bodies of, 91
eternal life of, 29
Sallust, 18
salvation, 118
See also rebirth
conditions for, 97
everyone...shall be saved, 7
doctrine, 30
through fire, 67–69
who wills everyone to be saved, 103
Satan. See devil
Savior. See Jesus Christ
schism, 67
See also error, heresies
scripture, sacred, 4; 98
and Christian life, 3
second coming. See judgment
second death, 92–93
senses, bodily, 4; 20
servanthood of Christ, 35
sexuality. See concupiscence
Siamese twins, 87
sickness, 24
sin
See also evil of ancestors, 47
and baptism, 42–43; 64
causes of, 81
Christ and, 41
and crime, 64
death to, 52
and desire (see concupiscence) and error, 20–21
forgiveness of, 64–83
and free will, 30–32
and grace, 52
habitual, 80
against the Holy Spirit, 83
humanity, four stages of, 118
of parents, 46
and penance, 65; 69; 71; 94
and penitence, 46
sacrifices as called, 41
singular and plural, 44–45
trivial and serious, 78–80
sin, original. See original sin
skepticism, 20
Son of God. See Jesus Christ; Trinity
sonship, meaning of, 39–40
souls:
between death and resurrection, 109–110
ensouled bodies, 91
spiritual bodies, 91
stars, 58
stealing, 22
suicide, 30; 106
sun, 58
temptation, 115–116
Ten Commandments. See commandments
theft, 22
time: and eternity, 111–113
1 Timothy 2:4, 103
tithing, 76
See also almsgiving
tree and fruits, 15–16
Trinity, 9–10, 37–40
and the Church, 56
truth, 97
defending by reason, 4
and error (see error)
and lying, 18
twins:
Jacob and Esau, 98
Siamese, 87
two cities, 111
unbelievers. See lost, the
unfairness: God and, 98–99
unhappiness, 24
vessels of mercy, 112
Virgil, 8; 11; 16; 17; 20; 44
Virgin Mary. See Mary, virgin mother
virtues, theological (three divine). See 1
Corinthians 13:13; faith; hope; love
vision: and Christian doctrine, 5
Volusianus, 34
weakness, 81
wealth: and almsgiving, 77
wickedness. See sin
will
See freedom; will of God (below)
will of God, 94–102
and human will, 97–102
wisdom, 1–2
as worship of God, 2–3
witness to Christ, 101
Word of God, 35–36
works
See also almsgiving; charity

On Christian Belief
on Christian Belief

and eternal life, 107
faith and, 30–32; 67
world:
desires of, 68
standards of, 77

worship of God, 2–3
as faith, hope, and charity (see faith, hope, charity)
wrath of God, 33; 111–113

Volume I/8
Index from
On True Religion
(De vera religione)

Included in book:
On Christian Belief

Translations and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, Ray Kearney, Michael G. Campbell, and Bruce Harbert, Introduction by Michael Fiedrowsicz, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains new translations of seven works: True Religion, The Advantage of Believing (De utilitate credendi), Faith and Creed (De fide et symbolo), Faith in the Unseen (De fide rerum invisibilium), Demonic Divination (De divinatione daemonum), Faith and Works (De fide et operibus), and Enchiridion on Faith, Hope and Charity (De vera religione, Enchiridion [De fide, spe, et caritate]).

Volume I/8
Books/Philosophical-Dogmatic

Paperback: 978-1-56548-234-0, 6 x 9 in., 372 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-233-3, 6 x 9 in., 376 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

True Religion

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume 1/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>55, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>49, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>46, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>34, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>34, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>12, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:10</td>
<td>35, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77:6</td>
<td>34, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:39</td>
<td>34, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>21, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>11, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>51, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>21, 41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume 1/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-4</td>
<td>38, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>38, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>52, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25.21</td>
<td>9, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>47, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>12, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>41, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>44, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>28, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>31, 58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On Christian Belief
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>On Christian Belief</th>
<th>Volume I/8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>23, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>44, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9-10</td>
<td>53, 103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>23, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>8, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:51</td>
<td>27, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55.54</td>
<td>12, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>31, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>31, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>3, 4; 38, 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>55, 107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>49, 95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:1</td>
<td>23, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Numbers refer only to sections of the works, not to chapters.

True Religion

Adam and Eve, 22–23; 38; 50; 83–84; 110
addictions. See desires
adolescents, 45; 48
allegory, 99
angels, 26; 28; 82; 110
angelic life, promise of, 50
of divine wrath, 75
evil, 107; 111–112
good, 20; 44; 111–112
animals, 53
worship of, 108–109
Arians, 9
art, 55–57; 101
atheism, 69–71
Augustine:
personal experiences of, 20
religion, concept of, 111; 113
authority:
function of, 45–51
reason and, 45–51
trustworthy, 46–47
and truth, uneducated as attaining, 3; 45–51
beauty, 35; 41; 55–57; 59–62; 67–68; 74; 101
of God, 21; 35; 61–62
low forms of, 75
poetic art and, 42–43
of the universe, 44; 76
being and nothingness, 21–29
Bible. See scripture
body, 21–22; 28–29; 40–41
See also pleasure; resurrection of the body; senses
soul as better than, 109
spirit as better than, 101
as “vanity,” 41
body, ethereal, 30
born again, 44–45
See also salvation
Caesar, 111
cardinal virtues, 29
Catholic Church, 10–12; 47
See also Christianity
charioteer, comparison of, 83–85
coveting, 89–90
See also greed
church, See Catholic Church; Christianity
Cicero, 3; 21
circumcision, 47
commandments:
to love, 24; 84–93; 101–106
concupiscence. See lust; pleasure
coveting, 89–90
See also greed
creation, 35; 68–69
value of, 44
On Christian Belief

worship of creatures, 68
curiosity:
fortune-tellers and oracles, consulting, 5–6
and knowledge, 101
the three desires, 94–100
damnation of sinners, 44
death, 21–22; 49
See also resurrection of the body
abortion of, 23–25
of others, 91
death, second. See second death
deception, 67
See also errors; falsehood
and lying, 61–62
not letting others deceive us, 78
demons:
consulting, 7
worship of, 108
desires, three, 68–106
See also curiosity; pleasure; pride
destroyers, 75
devil, 26
as temptor, 68–106
divination, 5
divine guidance. See authority
Donatists, 9
dualism. See Manichean dualism
Eden, garden of. See Adam and Eve
elders, 48
elements, the four, 52
Eleusinian mysteries, 8
enemies, 91
love for, 87; 92
evry, 86; 89–90
See also jealousy
coveting, 89
devil as envious, 26
Epicureans, 96
errors (religious), 7–20; 68; 107–111
See also false religion; heresies; individual
groups and descriptions
eternal life, 13; 49; 97
See also resurrection of the body
eternal punishment. See hell
eternity, 97–99; 101
ethical body, 30
ethics, completion of, 84–93; 101–106
and Christ’s earthly life, 30–31
eucharist, the, 8
Eve, 83
See also Adam and Eve
evil
See also sin; wickedness
definition of, 23
overcoming, 23–25
as perversion of the will, 21–29
as presuming good, 37
the problem of, 21–44
sin and, 48; 75
as substance, 38–40; 44
and universe, harmony of, 35–44
eyes, lust of. See lust; senses
faith, 103; 106
See also Christianity; religion
fallen man. See Adam and Eve
false religion, 68; 107–111
See also atheism; error; heresies;
 idolatry
falsehood, 66–67
See also deception; errors; lying
family, 87–89
faultiness. See evil
flesh
See also body
prudence of, 104
flesh-bound shapes, 45
form, 35
See also beauty
formula, 74; 79
See also numbers
fornication, 105
fortune-tellers, 5–6
freedom, 93; 111
Christianity and, 19
of human will, 27
and love, commandment of, 84–93;
101–106
sin and, 27–28
friends, 91
Gnostics, 9
God, 113
See also Trinity; specific topics
ascend to, 21–44; 49; 52–66; 72–100;
107–113
beauty of, 21; 35; 61–62
coming into world, 45
freedom to serve, 19
Jesus Christ as from, everything else as
through, 81
justice and benevolence of, 29
mercy of, 14; 19; 98
providence of, and all creatures, 74–76
union with, 111–113
worship of, 1–2; 18; 46–47; 112; 113
gods, pagan, 112
good:
evil as presuming, 37
God as author of, 35–26

Volume I/8
lower and higher, 38
matter as, 35
good looks. See beauty
grace of God, 19; 44–45; 103
law and, 50
gratitude, 91
greed, 3; 6; 24; 48; 65; 78
guidance, divine. See authority
happiness, 90–92
finding, 1
the Happy life, 84
harmony, 55–57
See also beauty
evil and, 35–44
healing of humankind, 45–51
healing spirits, 30
heavenly bodies, 109
hell, 48; 101; 105
damnation of sinners, 44
heresies, 8–9; 47
See also errors; individual groups and names
value of, 14–15
Holy Spirit, 8; 98–99; 112
See also God; Trinity
hope, 92; 103; 106
human beings
See also specific topics
ages of, 48–50
expelled from Paradise, 38
free will of (see freedom)
healing of human race, 45–51
human nature, 110
of ill will, 75
in image of God, 82
inner and outer self, 77
value of, 44
idolatry, 2; 47; 66–71; 67
impiety. See sin
incarnation. See Jesus Christ
injustice, 91
intellect
See also reason
and knowledge, 3–7
interiority, 72
jealousy, 89–91
Jesus Christ, 28; 81
See also Christianity; God; Trinity;
Wisdom of God; Word of God
as incarnation, 14; 30–32; 45–51
as mediator, 19
philosophy, as fulfillment of (see under philosophy: Christ as fulfillment of)
resurrection of, 14; 32; 72–83
three temptations, victory over, 68–106
as Wisdom of God, 71
Jews, 9–10
John the Baptist, 50
judgments, making, 50; 57–59
justice, 43; 91
exercising of the just, 44
of God, 29
knowledge, 102
and action, 33
curiosity and, 101
intellect and, 3–7
reason and authority, 45–51
striving for, goal of, 94–100
law, 33–34
See also Old Testament; scripture and grace, 50
life, 21–22; 52
eternal and temporal, 97
this life and the next, 102–103
logic, completion of, 94–100
love, 106
the commandments, 24; 84–93;
101–106
for enemies, 87; 92
faith, hope, and, 103
of family, 87–89
for God, 91; 93
lust, 3–4; 39–40; 48; 70–71; 78; 104–105; 107
See also pleasure; three desires
lying, 61
See also falsehood
and deception, 61–62
man. See human beings; specific topics
Manichaein dualism, 9; 16–17; 96; 108
See also errors; heresies
refutation of, 14; 35; 44
mathematics, 46
See also numbers
matter, as good, 35
mediator, Christ as, 19
medicine, science of, 34
mercy of God, 14; 19; 98
mind:
ascent of from things visible to God,
52–67
making bad use of, 104
soul and, 48
miracles, 31; 47
money. See wealth
mysteries, sacred, 8
Neoplatonism, 4–5

On Christian Belief
On Christian Belief

See also philosophy; Plato; individual names
See also scripture
nothingness, 21–22
numbers, 46; 52; 74; 79; 109
old age, 48
Old Testament, 33–34; 99
See also law; scripture
oracles, 5–6
original sin, 39
See also Adam and Eve; sin: origin of
pagan gods, 112
pagan philosophers, 2
See also philosophy; individual names
parables, 104–106
Paradise (garden of Eden). See Adam and Eve
patience, 91–92
perfection of the blessed, 44
philosophy, 7; 8; 12
See also Neoplatonism; individual names
Christ as fulfillment of, 1–11; 30–34; 72–106
inconsistency of philosophers, 1–2
three areas of, 30–34 (see also ethics; logic; physics)
Photinians, 9
physics, 32; 72–83
place and time, 65
Plato, 3–7
Platonism, 84
See also Neoplatonism; philosophy
salvation in terminology of, 101
pleasure, 107
See also senses
the three desires, 72–83
Plotinus, 76
poetic composition, 42–43
Porphyry, 5; 69
possessions
See also greed; wealth
coveting, 89
pride (the three desires), 84–93
punishment, 23–25; 48
See also hell
quarreling, 104
rationale, 44–45
rationale. See reason
rational soul, 82
reason, 52–53
and authority-based belief, 45–51
rationalism, 110
rebirth, 44–45
See also salvation
religion
See also Christianity
false, 107–111
God, union with, 111; 113
and philosophy, 8; 12
trueness, 12–13; 113
resurrection of Christ, 14; 32; 72–83
resurrection of the body, 11; 25; 50; 82; 103
See also eternal life
riches. See wealth
Romulus, 64
sacraments, 8
Truth and, 33
salvation, 13; 44–51; 101
Christianity and, 19
fundamental principle of, 8
in Platonist terminology, 101
Satan. See devil
schisms, 9; 47
See also errors; heresies; individual groups and names
scripture, 98–99
hidden meanings of, 51
history of, 51
purpose of, 100
Truth in, 33
the two Testaments, 33–34; 99
second death, 50; 101
self, inner and outer, 77
senses, 3; 18; 40; 45; 53–56; 62; 94–100
See also pleasure
beauty and (see beauty)
enslavement to, 31
feeble, 104
making good use of, 106
soul and, 49
serpent, 84
Serpentines, 9
sexual intercourse, 74; 102
“fraternal” manner of, 78
shape, 35
See also beauty
shapes:
flat-bound, 45
signs, visible, 47
sin, 39
See also evil; punishment; vices; wickedness
definition of, 48
and free will, 27–28
origin of, 25; 38; 43
and punishment, 23–25
singers, 90
sinners, damnation of, 44

Volume I/8
slavery:
  of soul vs. body, 110–111
Socrates, 2
Son of God. See Jesus Christ; Trinity
soul, 18–19; 23–25; 28
  ascent to God, 45–106
  as better than body, 109
  Eve as representing, 83
  healing, 44–51
  and mind, 48
  rational soul, 82
  “soulish,” 51
  spirit and, 25; 51; 85
  vices of, 38; 41
  the world soul, 22; 68
space, 80
spirit:
  as better than body, 87; 101
  soul and, 25; 51; 85
Stoics, 96
superstition, 111
swearing (oaths), 2
symmetry, 55–57
  See also beauty
talents, parable of, 104–106
temptation:
  three temptations, Christ as victor over,
     68–106
three desires, 68–106
  See also curiosity; pleasure; pride
time, 80
and place, 65
Trinity, 113
  mystery of, 12–13
  as one true God (see God)
true religion, 12–13; 113
  See also Christianity; God; Jesus Christ
Truth, 25; 47; 54–56; 72–73; 111; 113
  and inferior representations of, 94–97
  judging, unlawfulness of, 57–58
  steps leading to, 98–99
  true vs., 66–67
  uneducated as attaining, 45–51
ugliness, 76
unhappiness, 91
union with God, 112–113
unity, 61
  bodily and non-bodily, 59
universe:
  beauty of, 44; 76
  evil and, 35–44
vanity, 41; 61–62
vices, 83–85; 93; 101
virtues:
  cardinal, 29
  vices and, 93; 101
warfare, 104
wealth, 31
  possessions, 89
wedding feast, parable of, 104–106
weeping and gnashing of teeth, 104–105
wickedness, 21–22
  See also evil; sin
will, free. See freedom
Wisdom of God, 3; 8; 24; 30; 33; 35; 39;
  72; 75; 81; 100; 112
  See also Jesus Christ
  and allegory, 99
  fifth age and, 49
  Truth and, 57; 110
Word of God, 4; 28; 30; 45; 66; 79; 81; 113
  See also Jesus Christ
world
  See also three desires
  things of, 39
  worm, 77
worship of true God, 1–2; 18; 46–47; 112;
  113
worship of wrong things, 2; 39; 47; 68–69;
  108–112
  See also false religion
wrestling matches, 43
youth, 48

On Christian Belief
Index from

On Adulterous Marriages
(De adulterinis conjugiis)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine's works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis), and Continence (De continentia).

Volume I/9  Books/Pastoral

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/9

INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Marriage and Virginity
## Volume I/9

### Adulterous Marriages

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>7:3-4</td>
<td>I,21,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>I,17,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>76:11</td>
<td>I,24,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>28:2-5</td>
<td>II,14,15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>II,10,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>I,2,2; I,10,11; I,22,28; II,10,10; II,17,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II,14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>I,26,33; I,27,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>I,8,8; I,11,12; I,21,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:10-12</td>
<td>I,18,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>II,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>I,11,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11-12</td>
<td>I,9,10; II,9,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>I,21,27; I,22,28; I,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>6:37</td>
<td>II,14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>I,9,10; I,11,12; I,12,13; I,21,27; I,22,28; I,25; II,9,8; II,13,13; II,17,8; II,19,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>II,7,6; II,14,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>II,6,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>I,27,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>L,23,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:2-3</td>
<td>L,21,27; II,4,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>II,3,3; II,4; II,19,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>II,14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:12</td>
<td>L,26,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>L,14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>L,18,20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

1 Timothy
5:23 II,8,7
5:12 I,24,30
5:14-15 II,12

James
4:17 I,9,9
1 John
1:8 II,14,14

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section.

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

Adulterous Marriages

abstinence:
See also celibacy
adultery:
  baptism of adulterers, [166] 28,35
  changing Christ’s law (Pollentius), [175] 10,9
  Christ forgives sin of, [171] 6,5
  dissolving a marriage (Pollentius), [168] 2,2
  divorce and, [144] 1,1
  divorce as cause of, [145] 2,2
  flesh or spirit, [165] 25
  forcing wife to commit, [183] 17,18
  forgive adulterous spouse, [180] 15
  husbands punish adulterous wives, [179] 14,14
  marriage bond (Pollentius), [169] 4; [170] 5; [170-171] 5
  marriage bond not broken by, [178] 13,13
  pity for man forced to live in, [176] 11,11
  procreation as purpose of, [176] 12
  proof of, [173] 8,7
  second death, for eternity, [176] 11,11
  sinful spouse regarded as having died, [169] 3,3; [169] 4
  spouse is ill or far away, [178] 13,13
  wife may leave husband because of, [145] 3
  wife’s celibacy as cause, [146] 4,4
  winning people for Christ, [162] 22
  woman forgiven by Christ, [174] 9,8
  advice, [158] 22; [159] 19,23; [160] 20,24; [162] 26
Antoninus, Emperor, [173] 8,7

baptism, [171] 6,5
adulterers (dying), [166] 28,35
  dying catechumens, [165] 26,33;
  [166] 28,35
  excommunication and, [170] 5
  fear for those unable to answer for themselves, [165] 26,33
  forgiveness of sins, [181] 16,16; [182,183] 17,18
  uncertainty about intention, [166] 26,33

body and soul:
See also human body
carnal union, See sexual union.
catechumens:
  adultery as impediment, [181] 16,16
  last moments of life, [165-166] 26,33;
  [166] 28,35
celibacy (celibates), [178] 12
See also abstinence; chastity; virginity
  aspiring to perfection, [184] 18,19
  burden is Christ’s, [185] 19,20
  case: wife wants to be celibate, [146] 4,4
  circumstances preventing intercourse,
    [175] 10,9
  divorce for sake of, [145] 3
  free choice of, [185] 19,20
  gift from God, [184] 18,19
  inability for, [177] 12
  motivation, [184] 18,19
  not compulsory (Pollentius), [174] 10,9
  possible with God’s help, [184] 19,20
  reconciliation refused, [173] 9,8
  separation for sake of, [175] 10
See also sexual union
  vow: break to marry one who promises to convert, [164] 24,30
charity:
  law and, [155] 14,15
  staying with unbelieving spouse,
    [158] 22
  chastity (in marriage), [172] 7,6
  difficult for separated women, [183] 17,18
  help in preserving, [179] 14,14
  honor of earthly city, [173] 8,7
  male standards, [185-186] 20,21; 22
  marital, [185] 19,20; [186] 22
  same rule for men and women,
    [172,173] 8,7
  unbelieving spouse, [157] 20
  vow:
    free choice, [185] 19,20
    marriage would not be good,
      [155] 15,16
    mutual consent, [164] 24,30

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

donkeys, [156] 16,17
duty: free choice, [154] 14,15
eunuchs, [183-184] 18,19
made so for kingdom of heaven, [184] 18,19
evil, See good and evil.
excommunication:
sacrament of rebirth and, [170] 5
faith, [171] 6.5; [183] 18,19; [185] 19.20
lacking; adultery of the spirit, [156] 19
unbelieving spouse made holy . . . , [153] 13,14
withholding forgiveness and, [172] 7,6
fear, [186] 22;
flesh, [179] 13,13; [186] 20,21
See also body and soul
baptism of adulterers, [166] 28,35
food, [154] 14,15
everything is clean, [155] 14,15
forgiveness:
injustice of others, [179] 15
reconciliation of spouses, [171] 6.5
withholding; lack of faith, [172] 7,6
forgiveness of sin:
power of the keys, [174] 9.8
free will:
sin and, [156] 16,17
freedom of choice, [162] 26
Gehenna, [186] 22
Gentiles, [157] 20; [164] 25
gift (-s; -from God):
See also grace
glory, [185] 19.20
gods:
worship, [157] 20
good and evil:
doing evil to achieve the good, [163] 23,29
forbidden things, [155] 16,17
impossible for nonpermissible to be good, [155] 15,16
nothing good that is wrong, [164] 31
permittable distinguished from good, [155] 16,17
something not wrong is not always good, [165] 25
things permitted but not good, [156] 17,18
what is lawful may not be good, [155] 15,16
good works:
free offering as more pleasing, [155] 14,15
goodness:
permissible is not always good, [155] 15,16
grace, [157] 20; [183] 17,18
Gregorian Codex, [173] 8,7
heart:
unclean; spiritual understanding,
[166] 27,34
heaven:
eunuchs in, [184] 18,19
honor, [186] 22
human body:
authority, husband and wife, [147] 5.5; [149] 8,8
husband and wife:
adultery allows woman to separate,
[148] 7,7
adultery, celibacy, divorce, [145] 3
authority over one’s body, [145] 2.2;
[146] 4.4; [147] 5.5; [149] 8,8
bound as long as spouse lives, [178] 13,13
case: wife wants to practice celibacy,
[146] 4.4
consent to life of celibacy, [144] 1.1;
[145] 2.2; [146] 3
husband not adulterer, wife cannot
leave, [146] 3
marriage rules apply equally, [149] 8.8;
[172] 8,7
one spouse a nonbeliever, [165] 25
one with faith; the other without,
[153] 13,14
pardon for adultery, [179] 14,14
reconciliation after adultery, [171] 6.5
same religion; stay married to each
other, [160-161] 21,25
same rule of chastity, [173] 8.7
separation from nonbeliever, [155] 15,16
staying with unbelieving spouse,
[157] 21

Volume I/9
taking life of adulterous wife, [180] 15
wife is bound as long as husband is alive, [162] 27; [170] 4; [170-171] 5; [174] 9,8
wife leaves intending to remain unmarried, [146] 3
wife leaves non-adulterer husband, [148] 6,6; 7,7
wife leaves, should remain unmarried, [168] 2,2
wife should not leave; husband should not divorce, [144] 1,1; [146] 4,4
wife who leaves must stay unmarried, [144] 1,1; [145-146] 3; [162] 27
wives put up with adulterer, [147] 6,6

ignorance: sin, [150] 9,9

Jesus Christ, [181] 16,16; [186] 22
See also Christian life
See Church.
woman who committed adultery and, [171] 6,5; [172] 7,6
judging others, [165] 26,33
justice, [159] 19,23; [162] 22
salvation and, [158] 22
things permitted but not good, [156] 17,18
kindness, [182] 17

law:
- everything unlawful is not good, [155] 15,16
- love, obeying freely, [154] 14,15
- Lord’s Prayer: Forgive us our trespasses . . . , [180] 15
- love, [179] 13,13
- things done freely in, [154] 14,15
- unforced goodness of, [156] 17,18
- lust, [172] 8,7

marital act, See sexual union.
marriage (married people):
See also celibacy; divorce; husband and wife; separation
See adultery.
better, than to burn, [177] 12; [178] 12

Christians and pagans, [153] 13,14
See fidelity.
institution for sake of children, [177] 12
not a sin to marry (Paul), [164] 25; [177] 12
respectability of, [177] 12
rules apply equally, [149] 8,8; [172] 8,7
spouses of different faiths, [161] 21,25; 26
staying married is permissible and good, [155] 15,16
value = procreation, [178] 12
virginity and, [158] 22
women who cannot be celibate, [155] 15,16

marriage bond:
- adultery does not dissolve, [169] 4;
- broken only by death, [178] 13,13
- lasts until death, [170-171] 5
- not broken by adultery, [178] 13,13
- Pollentius on, [182,183] 17,18
- union with others; adultery, [174] 9,8
- woman bound as long as husband lives, [176] 10

marriage (Old Testament):
- command to divorce foreign wives, [157] 20
- duty of having children, [177] 12
- forbidden to marry foreigner, [157] 20

men:
- chastity equally required of, [172,173] 8,7
- laws of court re chastity, [173] 8,7
- standards of chastity, [185-186] 20,21; 22
- mercy, [172] 7,6; [179] 14,14
- mixed marriages, [153] 13,14
- Moses, [157] 20

murder:
- accusing Christ, [181] 16,16
- led to, by adultery, [181] 17
- preventing by allowing divorce and remarriage, [182] 17
- taking life of adulterer, [180] 15
- nonbelievers, See unbelievers.
Marriage and Virginity

obedience:
See also commandments
Onan, [177] 12

pardon, [179] 14,14
passion, [172] 8,7; [186] 20,21
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
listen to, for advice, [164] 25
slave of everyone, [154] 14,15; [157] 19
penance (sacrament), [171] 6,5; [183] 17,18
penitent: living in adultery, [181] 16,16
permissible things:
goodness, [155-156] 15,16-19
perversions, [184] 18,19
Pollentius, [144] 1,1ff; [160] 21,25ff;
[168] 1,1ff; [179] 14,14; [181] 16,16
prayer, [179] 13,13
marital duty and, [145] 2,2
priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
See also children; marriage
purpose of marriage, [177] 12
remarriage for purpose of, [176] 11,11
unnecessary for Christians, [177] 12
reason: sin and, [156] 16,17
reconciliation:
penitent living in adultery, [181] 16,16
refused, must adopt celibacy, [173] 9,8
redemption:
not all are redeemed, [155] 15,16
remarriage:
adultery, [145] 2,2
adultery and the marriage bond, [169] 5,8
desire to marry again, [186] 22
after divorce, [162] 27
divorced women, [183] 17,18
killing, to change adultery to marriage, [182] 17
motive for, [164] 24,30
permanent state of adultery, [181] 16,16,17; [184] 19,20
procreation as purpose, [176] 11,11
right denied wife who leaves husband, [144] 1,1
scandal, [148] 6,6
when divorce is allowed, [147] 6,6;
[148] 7,7
wife leaves husband adulterer, [168] 2,2
wife of deceased husband, [160] 21,25
wife, not adulteress, divorced, [149] 9,9; [163] 22
wife, who commits adultery, [149] 9,9
repentance, [178] 13,13; [181] 16,16
reward, [154] 14,15
sacraments:
dying catechumens, [166] 26,33
saints, [179] 13,13
salvation, [162] 22; [185] 19,20
hindering that of unbelievers, [158] 22
jeopardizing, [186] 22
Saul, King, [171] 6,5
scandal:
remarriage, [148] 6,6; [158] 22
second marriage(s), [144] 1,1
separation:
celibacy as motive for, [175] 10
 celibacy required if no reconciliation,
[178] 13,13
chastity difficult for women, [183] 17,18
husband refuses to be celibate, [168] 2,2
temptation, [186] 22
woman must remain unmarried, [178] 13,13
sermon on the mount, [151] 10,11
sexual restraint, See abstinence; continence.
sexual union:
disease preventing intercourse, [175] 10,9
experience; licit and illicit, [184] 18,19
shameful if conception is precluded,
[177] 12
spouses of a different religion, [160] 21,25
when wife is intolerable, [182] 17
sin:
See also consent; desire
doing something that is not good to do, [156] 16,17

Volume I/9
Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity

ignorance, [150] 9,9
knowing right thing to do, [150] 9,9
less serious, still as sin [150] 9,9
let whoever is without sin . . . , [172] 7,6; [179] 14,14
reason and free will, [156] 16,17
slaves, [165] 26,33
soul, See also body and soul.
spirit:
  See also Holy Spirit
spouses, See husband and wife.
sterility, [176] 11,11
strictness: encourages violence, [181] 16,16
Syria, [186] 20,21
tax: Christ’s example, [154] 14,15
temporal goods:
  promised (O.T.), [157] 20
Trinity: works are indivisible, [158] 21
truth, [179] 14,14
unbelievers:
  adultery in the heart, [157] 20
divorce (good) or not (better), [159] 19,23
leaving spouse is not forbidden, [157] 19
marriage to a believer, [153] 13,14
one spouse comes to belief, [161] 21,25; 26
separation and salvation of, [158] 22
understanding:
  unclean hearts, [166] 27,34
unmarried women:
  wife who leaves husband, [145] 3
violence:
  strictness encourages (Pollentius), [181] 16,16
virginity:
  marriage and, [158] 22
virgins:
  advised not to marry, [158] 22; [164] 25
virtue:
  honor due to, [186] 20,21
  men surpassing women in, [172] 8,7
vow:
  damnation; breaking a vow, [164] 24,30
  promise to convert, [164] 24,30
  unconditional, must be kept, [163] 24,30
wickedness:
  See also good and evil
  widow (-s; -hood):
    free to marry, [164] 25
  wives, See husband and wife.
  woman (women):
    See also husband and wife; unmarried
    women; virgins
    chaste and loyal wives, [183] 17,18
    male standards of chastity, [186] 20,21; 22
weaker sex, [186] 20,21
wrongdoing:
  acts contrary to authority of the Lord,
  [162] 27
  advice re something not forbidden,
  [160] 20,24
  choice between several wrong acts,
  [162] 27
  knowing right thing to do, [150] 9,9
  not good to do what is not wrong,
  [158] 22
zeal, [185] 19,20
Index from

On Continence

(*De continentia*)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine’s works: *The Excellence of Marriage* (*De bono conjugali*), *Holy Virginity* (*De sancta virginitate*), *The Excellence of Widowhood* (*De bono viduitatis*), *Adulterous Marriages* (*De adulterinis conjugiis*), and *Continence* (*De continentia*).

Volume I/9

Books/Pastoral

**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Continence

### Old Testament

#### Genesis
- 46:27 4,11

#### Psalms
- 14:1 2,4
- 29:7 14,32
- 30:7 14,32
- 34:14 7,17
- 41:4 7,18
- 65:2 4,11
- 66:4 14,30
- 94:19 11,25
- 103:2-3 7,18
- 103:3 11,25
- 119:133 5,12
- 141:3 1,2
- 141:3-4 2,3; 5,13

#### Wisdom
- 8:21 1,1; 13,28
- 9:15 8,21

#### Sirach
- 37:16 2,3

#### Jeremiah
- 17:5 4,10

### New Testament

#### Matthew
- 6:12 5,13; 6,15; 11,25
- 6:12-13 7,18
- 10:22 14,31
- 12:45 14,31
- 15:11 2,4
- 15:16-19 2,4
- 15:18 2,4
- 15:19 2,5
- 15:19-20 2,4
- 19:11 1,1
- 23:26 2,4

#### Luke
- 3:6 4,11
- 12:35 7,17
- 12:36 7,17
- 24:39 10,24

#### John
- 1:14 4,11
- 8:44 4,11
- 17:2 4,11

#### Romans
- 3:20 3,7; 4,11
- 4:15 3,7
- 5:20 3,7
- 6:12-13 2,4
- 6:12-14 3,8
- 6:13 14,31
- 6:14 5,12
- 7:7 3,7
- 7:17 13,29
- 7:18 3,6; 8,19; 8,20; 9,22
- 7:22-23 3,6
- 7:23 9,22
- 7:25 8,19
- 8:10 8,21
- 8:12-14 3,8
- 8:13 3,9; 4,10; 4,11; 5,12
- 8:14 5,12; 13,28
- 12:1 10,24
- 13:1 4,11
- 14:23 12,26

#### 1 Corinthians
- 1:13 11,25
- 1:30 11,25
- 1:31 14,32
- 3:1-3 11,25
- 3:3 4,11

## Marriage and Virginity
Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity
Continence

Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section.

Continence

abstinence:
See also celibacy
Adam:
human nature as created, [208] 21
adultery, [213] 12,26
false continence and, [214] 27

Angels, [204] 16
avarice, [216] 29
baptism, [205,206] 18
beauty:
three orderly pairs, [209] 23
blasphemy, [196] 4

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

body and soul:
created good, [207] 20
future life; qualities, [208] 21
See also human body
weighed down by corruptible body,
[208] 21
work to bring harmony in, [206] 8,19;
[212] 11,25

chance: sin blamed on, [203] 14
change:
created goodness subject to, [208] 21
human nature subject to, [205] 18
charity, [205] 7,17
preservation, [194] 1,1
chastity (in marriage), [217] 31
children:  
See procreation.
children of God, [215] 13,28
Christian life:
hidden with God in Christ, [215] 29
risen with Christ, [215] 29
Church:
carnal, [211] 11,25
Christ cares for, [209] 23
Christ’s love for, as model, [209] 9,22
healing of its infirmities, [212] 11,25
Manichee view of, [210] 12,26
no spot or wrinkle, [209] 9,22; [212]
11,25
nourishes and nurtures the flesh, [208] 21,[209] 9,22
persons: spiritual and carnal, [212]
11,25
restrained with corrections, [213]
11,25
subject to Christ, [211,212] 11,25
subordinate to Christ, [209] 23
conscience:
continence of the heart, [194] 2
consent:  
desires of the flesh, [207] 8,19; 20
devil’s suggestions, [203] 14
guilt in secret, [196] 14
lapse of the heart, [195] 2,3
mind withholds, [216] 29
consolation, [213] 11,25
continence, [202] 13; [217] 31
See also self-control
battle against human defect, [207] 20
conquering carnal desire, [202] 5,12
devil’s suggestions, [200] 4,10
evil impulses put to death by, [216]
29
faith requires works of, [216] 14,30
gift from God, [194] 1,1; [204] 7,17;
[213,214] 12,26; [217] 32
healing infirmities, [206] 18
justice joined to, [204] 7,17
maintained in the heart, [196] 5
mouth, lips, heart, [194] 2
nothing to do (in eternity), [207] 20
perverse motives, [213] 12,26
referring to reproductive organs,
[196] 5
resisting vices, [210] 23
restrain pleasures in conflict with
wisdom, [215] 13,28
restraint (fruit of the spirit), [199] 9
restraint and salvation, [215] 29
ruling over passion and desire, [215]
13,28
spirit and, [214] 13,28
struggle with evil desires, [197] 3,6
suppress some evils to have others,
[214] 13,28
sweetness; pleasurable, [198] 7
ture and false, [213] 12,26
ture faith and, [214] 12,26
unclean, [213] 12,26
weapons for justice, [199] 8
creation:
origin of all created good, [205] 18
crime, [213] 12,26
external deeds, [196] 4
darkness:
Manichees, [209] 9,22; [211] 10,24
death:  
enemy, [197] 3,6
it is not I who live . . . , [215] 29
living according to the flesh, [201] 11
deeds:
initiated internally, [197] 5
thoughts and, [195] 2,3
demons, [214] 27
desire:  
attention paid in shunning evil, [216]
29
carnal, [197] 5; 7; [200] 9; [206] 8,19
in marriage, [214] 27
consent, [207] 20
evil, [197] 3,6; 7
Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

good not fully accomplished, [207] 20
Manichee teaching, [205] 18; [209] 9,22
not consenting to evil, [197] 3,6
two uncreated natures (Manichee),
[209] 9,22

good works:
justice, [204] 7,17
lamps burning, [205] 7,17

goodness:
desire to do the good, [197] 3,6
does not dwell in flesh, [206] 8,19
failure to bring to completion, [207] 20
origin in God, [205] 18
perfected to supreme happiness, [208] 21
subject to change, [208] 21
superior and inferior: both good,
[210] 23

grace, [198] 8; [199] 9; [201] 5,12; [208] 21; [211] 10,24
bestows what is commanded, [198] 7
living by, [202] 13
loving what the law commands, [199] 8
guilt, [205] 18
refusing to acknowledge, [202] 13
secret; consent, [196] 4
word uttered in the heart, [195] 2,3

happiness:
perfect, [208] 21
harmony: body and soul, [212] 11,25
health, [205] 18; [208] 21; [218] 32
heart:
continence, [194] 2; [196] 5
evil thoughts from, [196] 4; [197] 5
lapsing into malicious talk, [204] 7,17
malicious talk, [202] 13
mouth (the word), [196] 4
what comes from the mouth . . . , [195] 4
heaven:
body and soul in eternal happiness,
[208] 21
mind turns to heavenly things, [216] 29
heretics, [214] 12,26
led by, [202] 5,12

hope:
placing, in human beings, [200] 4,10
human beings:
bodies are members of Christ, [211] 10,24
created with power to sin, [204] 16
deeds of, [215] 13,28
it is not I who live . . . , [215] 29
rational mind; living, [200] 11
soul and body redeemed, [213] 12,26

human body:
God put order in, [211] 10,24
living sacrifice holy and pleasing . . . ,
[211] 10,24
Manichee view vs Scripture, [210] 10,24
natural goodness, [212] 11,25
soul is to imitate body’s harmony,
[211] 10,24; [212] 11,25
spiritual death, [216] 29
weapon of sin, [217] 31

human condition:
trusting in our own powers, [198] 7
human nature:
goodness of, [205] 18
impaired, although created good,
[207] 20
one nature divided because of sin,
[208] 21
humility, [202] 13
husband and wife:
Christ and Church as models for,
[209] 23
flesh not given as model for wives,
[210] 23
husband cares; wife is honorably sub-
dordinate, [209] 23
love wives like their own bodies,
[209-210] 9,22
model: love of one’s own flesh, [209] 9,22

immortality, [197] 3,6
future life, [208] 21

innocence, [195] 2,3
Jesus Christ, [200] 9; [208] 21

See also Christian life
body not real (Manichee), [210] 23
See Church.
Manichee view: flesh not real, [210] 10,24

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

Volume I/9

model for husbands, [209] 23
real body: touch and see . . . , [210] 10,24
whole human nature, [213] 12,26
Word made flesh, [200] 11
justice, [198] 7; [199] 8
continence joined to, [204] 7,17
doing good, [204] 7,17
punishment for sin, [203,204] 6,15
lamps burning, [205] 7,17
law:
  good commanded but not granted, [198] 7; [199] 8
wrongdoing; power, [198] 7
lips: continence, [194] 2; [196] 4
loins girt, [205] 7,17
Lord’s Prayer:
  Forgive us our trespasses . . . , [202] 13; [204] 6,15; [206] 18; [212] 11,25
  Lead us not into temptation, [206] 18
love, [199] 8
model: love of the body, [209] 9,22
lust, [205] 7,17; [217] 31
lying, [196] 4
Manichees, [210] 23
blame sin on evil nature, [203] 14
on body of Christ, [210] 10,24
dualism, [205] 18; [209] 9,22
false continence, [213] 12,26
marital act, See sexual union.
  See also celibacy; divorce; husband and wife; separation
marriage (married people):
  abstaining from, [194] 1,1
marriage (Old Testament):
  purpose of sexual union, [214] 27
  martyr (+-; -dom), [204] 6,15
  mercy, [205-206] 18
  mind, [200] 11
  body rebels against law of, [197] 3,6
  consent to sin and, [216] 29
  sensual desires kept in check by,
    [207] 20
  serving law of God in, [207] 8,19;
    [208] 21; [209] 9,22
  mortality, [197] 3,6
mouth:
  continence, [194] 2
  guard on, [195] 2,3; [202] 13
  heart, [196] 4
obedience:
  See also commandments
  model for a woman, [210] 23
orderliness, [209] 23
pardon, [202] 13
passion, [213] 12,26; [216] 29
patience, [213] 12,26
peace, [205] 7,17; [208] 20; [211] 11,25
perfection:
  not in this mortal life, [207] 20
  perseverance, [217] 31
pleasure, [213] 12,26; [214] 27; [215] 13,28
inner self, [197] 3,6
pride, [202] 13; [217] 32
defending sin, [204] 7,17
priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
  See also children; marriage
prostitutes, [196] 4
providence, [217] 32
punishment:
  God’s justice, [203,204] 6,15
  immunity from, because of faith,
    [217] 31
purity, [197] 5
  clean first the interior, [195] 4
  heart and mouth, [195] 2,3
rebuke: walking in a human way, [201] 11
redemption:
  body and soul, [213] 12,26
  reward, [205] 7,17
saints, [204] 16
salvation, [205] 18; [208] 21; [211] 11,25;
  [215] 29
self-approval, [202] 13
self-control:
  motives, [214] 12,26
  service of errors, [214] 13,28
sensuality, [197] 3,6; [205] 7,17
  desires kept in check by mind,
    [207] 20
sexual union:
  unjust when a spouse refuses, [213] 12,26
Marriage and Virginity

sexuality:
  - devil's work (Manichee), [210] 23; [211] 10.24

sin:
  - See also consent; desire
  - body dead because of, [208] 21
  - consenting to bodily desires, [208] 20
  - defending with pride, [204] 7,17
  - desire and consent; mind and flesh, [207] 8,19
  - desire involved in, [215] 13.28
  - desires opposed to what is right, [212] 11.25
  - dominion by, [201-202] 5,12
  - excuses: fate; chance; devil; God; evil nature, [202-203] 14
  - humans created with power to, [204] 16
  - if we say we are without, [212] 11.25
  - inclinations to, [207] 20; [212] 11.25; [215] 29
  - interior speech, [195] 2,3
  - opportunity denied, [196] 4
  - power is the law, [198] 7
  - punishment; God's justice, [203.204] 6.15
  - reigning in the body, [217] 31
  - ruling the mortal body, [198] 8
  - unjust, [204] 6,15

slaves:
  - of sin, [216] 29

soul:
  - See also body and soul.
  - death of the body, [206] 8,19
  - term means the whole person, [201] 11

speech:
  - internal mouth of the heart, [194] 2
  - no word if heart is silent, [194] 2

spirit:
  - See also Holy Spirit
  - cares for the flesh, [209] 23
  - clinging to God's Spirit, [215] 29
  - desires of the flesh and, [197] 5; [199] 9; [205] 18; [208] 21;
  - [209] 9,22; [211,212] 11.25;
  - [217] 31
  - fruits of the, [199] 9
  - struggle with flesh, [206] 8,19

spiritual life:
  - hidden in God with Christ, [216] 14.30
  - seek the things that are above, [216] 29

spouses, See husband and wife.
sweetness, [198] 7

talk: malicious, [204] 7.17

thoughts: deeds and, [195] 2,3

vice, [197] 7; [210] 23; [216] 14.30

virtue, [217] 32

fighting for, [197] 7

vomiting, [195] 4

war:
  - flesh against spirit, [199] 9

wickedness:
  - two evils pass away forever, [208] 21

will:
  - future life, [208] 21

wisdom, [215] 13.28
  - gift of knowing, [214] 13.28

love of, [207] 20

wives, See husband and wife.

Word of God:
  - incarnate, [200] 11
  - origin of every deed, [195] 2,3

world, [213] 11.25

wrongdoing:
  - law and, [198] 7

Volume I/9
Index from

On Holy Virginity

(De sancta virginitate)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine’s works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis), and Continence (De continentia).

Volume I/9

Books/Pastoral

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Volume I/9

**INDEX OF SCRIPTURE**

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

**Holy Virginity, pages 62-108**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13,15</td>
<td>3:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30,30</td>
<td>53,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39,40</td>
<td>56:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>30,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48,48</td>
<td>56:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>66:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>39,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td>Daniel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>3:87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td>56,57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:7</td>
<td>13:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>20,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52,53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11,11; 37,38; 54,55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29,29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27,27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30,30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:5-6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32,32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38,39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:3-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proverbs</strong></td>
<td>Matthew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>5:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48,48</td>
<td>28,28; 32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wisdom</strong></td>
<td>5:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41,43</td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sirach</strong></td>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33,33</td>
<td>5:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43,44</td>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:19-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51,52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:11-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:25-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35,35; 50,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35,35; 50,51; 52,53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:4:50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:10-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1; 47; 9,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45,46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

4:8 51,52 4:18 38,39

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.
The number in brackets [ ] indicates the page;
the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section

Holy Virginity

abstinence:
See also celibacy
earthly advantage, [83] 25,25

Adam, [71] 6,6
adultery, [75] 15,15; [79] 20
divorce and, [81] 23,23

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

angels, [74] 13; [92] 38; [104] 53,54
apostles, [100] 48,48
atonement: Christ and our sins, [101] 50
authority, [105] 56,57

baptism:
  forgiveness of sins, [101] 48,48
beatitude:
  following Christ, [85] 28,28; [87] 32,32
beauty:
  interior, [104] 55,56
bible, [77] 17,17; [78] 19,19; [80,81] 22,22; [83] 25,25
  no lies in, [77] 18,18; [79] 20
birds, [102] 51,52
body and soul:
  See also human body
Canaanite woman, [88] 32,32
carnal union, See sexual union,
celibacy (celibates), [72] 8,8; [73] 10; [74] 13; [78] 18,18; [95] 40,41
  See also abstinence; chastity; virginity
eternal reward, [83] 25,25
eunuchs, [82] 24,24
gift from God, [97] 43
heaven and, [81] 22,22
humility needed by, [89] 33,33
  marriage not equal to, [78] 19,19
  Paul’s preference for, [80] 22,22
  See also sexual union
superior to marriage, [68] 1,1
virginity and, [98] 46
centurion, [88] 32,32; [91] 36,36
charity, [70] 5,5; [93] 38,39
chastity (in marriage), [72] 8,8; [77] 18,18; [87] 31,31; [90] 34
  becoming chaste after being unchaste, [97] 42
  conjugal, [72] 8,8; [74] 13
Susanna, [78] 20
  life in present world, [80] 22,22
  marriage as sin and, [79] 21,21
  perpetual, [76] 16,16; [78] 19,19; [80] 21,21
  married life and, [87] 31,31
  vow, [86] 29,29
  suitors and, [78] 18,18
childlikeness, [88] 32,32
children:
Christian education of, [74] 12; [82] 24,24
Church as mother of, [71] 7,7
not born as Christians, [71] 7,7
  See procreation, produced honorably, [73] 12
Christian life:
  Christ formed in Christians, [70] 5,5
  following Christ, [86] 29,29
  living for God, [91] 36,36
  married Christians follow Christ, [85] 28,28
  Christians:
    share in motherhood of Christ, [70] 5,5
Church:
  authority, [98] 46
  birth of consecrated virgins, [73] 12
  chastity of, [100] 48,48
  Christ’s mother; Christ’s virgin, [71] 6,6
  company of virgins, [92] 37
  eternal life, [83] 24,24
  holiness, [69] 2,2
  Holy Spirit resting over members of, [94] 39,40
  kingdom of heaven, [82] 24,24
  virgin and mother, [68] 2,2
clergy (clerical state):
clothes, [90] 34
commandments:
  disobeying is a sin, [74-75] 14,14
  grace and carrying out, [96] 41,42
  offerings and, [86] 30,30
confession:
  sins forgiven in, [101] 50; [103] 52,53
  virgins must confess faults, [101] 49,49
conjugal love, See chastity; husband and wife; sexual union.
consience, [90] 34
continence, See also self-control
Crispina, [98] 44,45
damnation, [74] 14,14; [80] 21,21
Daniel, [79] 20
denarius:
  wages that everyone receives, [83-84] 26,26
desire, [90] 34

Volume I/9
for gifts, [103] 52,53

devil, [77] 17,17; [87] 31,31; [103] 53,54
devotion, [72] 8,8
disciples, [89] 32,32
divorce, [75, 76] 15,15
authority of God, [81] 23,23
remarriage after, See remarriage.
divorce and adultery: See also remarriage

devotion, [72] 8,8
disobedience, [41] 13,13
eternal life, [74] 13; [78] 19,19; [83-84] 26,26
better gifts from God, [99] 46
Church and, [83] 24,24
everlasting name, [83] 25,25
forgiveness of sin, [75] 14,14
eunuchs, [81] 23,23
Christian, [82] 24,24
Isaiah’s prophecy, [82] 24,24
kingdom of God, [92] 37; [100] 47
special place in heaven, [83] 25,25
evil, See good and evil.
experience: strength, [103] 52,53
faith, [71] 7,7; [100] 48,48
family: spiritual, [69] 3,3
fasting, [90] 34
fear, [95] 40,41; [103] 52,53
holiness, [86] 30,30
freedom of choice:
re virginity, [86] 30,30
fruitfulness:
degrees of, [99] 46-47
hundredfold return, [98] 46

gift (-s; -from God): See also grace
desire for, [103] 52,53
eternal life and, [99] 46
fruits: hundredfold, sixtyfold, thirtyfold, [98] 45-46
hidden, [98] 44,45
many; varied, [99] 46
some greater/better than others, [99] 46
glory:
degrees of, [83] 26,26
superior perfection, [79] 21,21
good and evil:
chastity, [72] 8,8
pride afflicts the virtuous, [89] 34
good works, [83] 24,24
goodness:
give thanks for, [88] 32,32
gossipers, [89] 34
grace:
commands and, [96] 41,42
gift to know God’s gifts, [97] 42
greatness, [103] 52,53
humility and, [102] 51; [104] 53,54
humility proportionate with, [87] 31,31; [89] 33,33; [97] 43,44;
[104] 53,54

goodness:
give thanks for, [88] 32,32


goodness:
give thanks for, [88] 32,32


goodness:
give thanks for, [88] 32,32
Marriage and Virginity

Canaanite woman, [88] 32,32
ce! bible's need of, [89] 33,33
Christ as model for virgins, [92] 37
Christ's teaching on, [87] 32,32; [89] 33,33; [102] 51
commandment, [87] 31,31
divine warnings, [95] 39,40
exhortation to, [91] 36,36
false; a form of pride, [97] 43,44
gift from God, [96] 41,42
great persons, [102] 51
greatness and, [105] 56,57
Jesus as exemplar of, [90] 35,35
love produced by, [103] 52,53
most virtuous people, [101] 50
need for, [87] 31,31
poor in spirit, [87] 32,32
proportionate with greatness, [87] 31,31; [89] 33,33; [97] 43,44;
[104] 53,54
sin absolved by, [102] 50
Spirit dwells in a humble heart, [94] 39,40; [102] 51,52
virginity protected by, [102] 51,52
virgins are to follow Christ, [90] 55,55
whoever exalts . . . , [88] 32,32
husband and wife:
moral love, [104] 55,56
idleness, [89] 34
imitation of Christ, [85] 27,27
impurity, [92] 38
incurability, [74] 13
Isaiah: prophecy re eunuchs, [82] 24,24
Jesus Christ, [68] 1,1; [72] 9,9; [76] 16,16; [79] 20
See also Christian life
See Church.
contemplate the Savior, [104] 54,55
creator and creature, [104] 54,55
despised by children of human race, [92] 38
family relationships, [70] 5,5
humility, [92] 38
humble of heart, [91] 35,35;
[92] 37; [102] 51,52; [103] 52,53
learn of me for I am . . . , [90] 35,35; [92] 37; [102] 51
model of humility, [92] 37
prime example, [90] 35,35
suffering, [98] 44,45
teacher of humility, [87] 31,31; 32,32; [89] 33,33; [102] 51
sinlessness, [93] 38
Son of God; son of man, [85] 27,27;
[91] 35,35
spouse of virgins, [104-105] 55,56
virgins betrothed to, [73] 12
whoever does my Father's will . . . ,
[69] 3,3
John, Saint, Apostle, [84] 27,27
joy, [84] 27,27; [86] 29,29
judgment day: fear of, [93] 38,39
justice, [92] 37; [96] 41,42; [100] 47
justification, [94] 38,39; [105] 52,53
kinship:
physical and spiritual, [69] 3,3
Lamb of God, [84] 27,27; [95] 40,41; [101] 49,49
following Christ, [85] 28,28; [86] 29,29;
[95] 40,41
married people following, [102] 51,52
law, [93] 38,39
life: a trial, [101] 48,48
Lord's Prayer:
Forgive us our trespasses . . .
[100-101] 48,48
love, [68] 1,1; [84] 27,27; [87] 31,31; [92] 38; [96] 41,42; [104] 55,56
fear: loving/not loving, [93] 38,39
forgiven much; given much, [97] 42; [103] 52,53
for greater gifts; love more, [95-96] 40,41
greatest gift, [99] 47
licit; sacrificed, [105] 55,56
martyrdom, [104] 53,54
security, [103] 52,53
three young men (Daniel), [105] 56,57
virginity protected by, [102] 51,52
lust, [90] 34
lying, [77] 17,17; 18,18; [101] 49,49
marital act, See sexual union.
mariage (married people), [78] 20; [87] 30,30

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

afflicts the virtuous, [89] 34
deception re vocation, [105] 56,57
false humility, [97] 43,44
insulting sinners, [88] 32,32
virginity and, [68] 1,1
virgins refraining from marriage, [90] 34
priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
See also children; marriage
eunuchs and, [82] 24,24
prophets:
descendants, [72] 9,9
marriage (O.T.), [68] 1,1
prostitutes, [91] 36,36
punishment, [94] 38,39
rape, [73] 10
redemption, [75] 14,14; [93] 38; [104] 54,55
repentance, [96] 41,42
reward, [78] 19,19; [84] 26,26; [87] 31,31; [93] 38,39
saints, [84] 26,26
salvation, [75] 14,14; [93, 94] 38,39
Satan, [76] 16,16
scandal, [94] 39,40
self-control, [76] 16,16; [80] 21,21
self-glorification, [103] 52,53
self-satisfaction, [90] 34
sensuality, [92] 38
servant, great persons and, [102] 51
sexual restraint, See abstinence; continence.
sick people, [91] 36,36
sin:
See also consent; desire
avoiding, [96] 41,42; [100] 48,48
commandments, [74-75] 14,14
human frailty, [101] 50
if we say we are without . . . , [101] 49,49
mortal; venial, [76] 16,16
never entirely free from, [100] 48,48
pardon sins of others, [103] 52,53
pleasure in confessing, [101] 50
possibility of a sinless life, [102] 51
sinners, [100] 48,48
forgiven, [95] 40,41
humility, [91] 36,36
pride afflicting, [89] 34
proud treatment of, [88] 32,32
slaves, [89] 32,32
buying, to make Christians, [72] 9,9
Son of God:
become a created object, [91] 35,35
form of a slave, [70] 4,4
Son of Man:
no place to lay his head, [102] 51,52
song, [84] 27,27
soul, See also body and soul.
spinsters, [89] 34
spirit:
See also Holy Spirit
hidden strength in, [100] 47
spirituality.
kinship, [69] 3,3
spouses, See husband and wife.
sterility, [68] 1,1
strength, experience, [103] 52,53
suffering:
following Christ, [89] 32,32
fruitfulness of, [99] 46
test; martyrdom, [100] 47
superiority, [103] 52,53
Susanna, [78] 20
falsely accused, [79] 20
tax collector:
Pharisee and, [88] 32,32; [93] 38;
[97] 43,44
temporal goods:
fear of losing, [93] 38,39
temptation, [100] 47
Thecla, [98] 44,45
torture, [100] 47
truth, [77] 17,17; 18,18; [78] 19,19; [82] 24,24; [83] 25,25; [95] 40,41; [100] 47
unmarried persons:
pleasing the Lord, [80] 22,22
unmarried women:
concern for the Lord, [98] 44,45
free to love God, [95] 40,41
virgins and, [81] 22,22

Volume I/9
vain, [102] 51,52

virgin birth, [71] 6.6

virginity, [76] 16.16

angelic life on earth, [103] 53,54

approved rather than commanded, [70] 4,4

condemning marriage, [77] 18,18

consecrated: honorable, [72] 8.8

counsel, not a command, [75] 15,15

excellence of marriage does not surpass, [71] 7.7

fertility and, [69] 2.2

following Christ, [85] 28.28; [101] 49.49

gift corrupted by pride, [89] 33,33

heavenly immortality, [74] 13

holiness of, [94] 39,40

hundredfold fruit, [98] 46

lost, it does not return, [85] 27.27;

[101] 49,49

love: pride, [68] 1,1

marriage and, [68] 1,1; [100] 47

martyrdom ranked higher than, [99] 46

needs of the present time, [74] 13;

[75] 14,14; [78] 19.19; [80] 21.21

not compulsory, [86] 30.30

preservation, [71] 7.7

protected by love and humility, [102] 51,52

superior to physical motherhood, [72] 9.9; 10

willing company of virgins, [92] 37

virgins:

all women born as, [73] 10

betrothed to Christ, [73] 12

Church’s virginity and, [68] 2.2

commandment and, [75] 14.14

comparison with O.T. fathers and mothers, [68] 1,1

concerned with Lord’s interests, [98] 44.45

consecrated:

Christ’s mothers, [71] 6.6

Church gives birth to, [73] 12

conceiving Christ in the heart, [73] 11,11

consecration makes a virgin, [73] 11,11

greater glory in heaven, [74] 14.14

Mary as model, [69] 4.4

superior perfection, [73] 10

contemplate Incarnate Savior, [104] 54.55

envy of married Christians, [86] 29.29

faults to be confessed, [101] 49.49

follow Christ in humility, [90] 35.35

following the Lamb, [84] 27.27; [84] 27.27; [101] 49.49; [105] 52.53

free to love God, [95] 40.41

fruit of life of, [98] 46

hidden defects, [98] 44.45

holy fear, [93] 38.39

hoping to marry, [73] 11,11

Jesus as model for, [92] 37

love Christ as spouse, [104-105] 55.56

love more because of greater gifts, [95] 40.41

pretense of humility, [97] 43.44

sacredness, [105] 56.57

saved from many sins, [96] 41.42

special joy of, [85] 27.27

suitors and, [78] 18,18

superiority over others, [98] 44.45

unmarried women and, [81] 22.22

wanting to marry, [89-90] 34

wise, [97] 42

vocation:

holier calling; pride, [105] 56.57

wickedness, See also good and evil

widow (-s; -hood), [78] 19.19; [80] 21.21;

[89] 34

celibacy [78] 18,18

virgins and, [98,99] 46

will of God:

Christians as mothers of Christ, [70] 5.5

wisdom,

gift from God, [97] 42

wives, See husband and wife.

wolves (have holes), [102] 51,52

woman (women), See also husband and wife;

unmarried women; virgins

world, [105] 56.57

woe, because of scandals, [94] 39.40

Zacchaeus, [91] 36.36

Zebedee, sons of, [88] 32,32

Marriage and Virginity
Index from

On the Good of Marriage

(De bono conjugali)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, Introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine's works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugali), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugis), and Continence (De continencia).

Volume 1/9

Books/Pastoral

Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/9

INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

The Excellence of Marriage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13,15; 21,25; 22,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8,8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1 Corinthians          |                          |
| 4:5                    | 18,21                   |
| 6:19                   | 11,13                   |
| 7:4                    | 4.4; 6.6; 24,32          |
| 7:7                    | 10,10                   |
| 7:9                    | 10,10; 17,19; 21,25     |
| 7:10-11                | 24,32                   |
| 7:14                   | 11,13                   |
| 7:28                   | 10,11; 11,12; 18,21     |
| 7:29-34                | 10,10                   |
| 7:34                   | 11,13; 12,14; 22,27     |
| 7:36                   | 10,11; 11,12; 18,21     |
| 13:8                   | 8,8                     |

| 2 Corinthians          |                          |
| 10:12                  | 26,34                   |

| Galatians              |                          |
| 4:1                    | 22,27                   |

| Ephesians              |                          |
| 5:12                   | 8,8                     |

| Philippians            |                          |
| 4:12                   | 21,25                   |

| 1 Thessalonians        |                          |
| 4:5                    | 13,15                   |
| 4:17                   | 2                       |

| 1 Timothy              |                          |
| 1:5                    | 10,10                   |
| 2:9-10                 | 12,14                   |

Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

5:14 24,32
Hebrews 13:4 8,8
1 Peter

3:1-7 12,14
Revelation 14:4 23,31

Volume I/9
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [ ] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section

The Excellence of Marriage

Abraham, [50] 22; [52] 24; [59] 35
chasity, [53] 26; [54] 22,27
hand on his thigh, [51] 19
body and soul:
See also human body
burying the dead, [51] 20,23

Cato, [50] 18,21
celibacy (celibates), [47] 15; [48] 17,19
See also abstinence; chastity; virginity

Disposition; O.T. saints, [53-55] 22,27
marriages (O.T.) and, [51] 24
married persons, [58] 26,34
obedience and, [55] 29; [57] 24,32
obeying the commandments, [56] 31
service of Christ, [53] 26
See also sexual union

state of mind (O.T.), [57] 24,32
superior to marriage, [50] 19
virtue of mind, [52] 21,25; [53] 26;
[v54] 22,27
virtue of, compared with marriage,
[v55] 23,28

faithful observance of, [57] 24,32
honorable marriage, [43] 11,12
keeping the commandments, [56] 30
men with several wives (O.T.), [45] 13,15
virginal, [55] 30
children:
bounding of society, [33] 1,1
carnal desire for, [48] 17,19
chaste childbearing, [37] 5,5
good and bad, [47] 16,18
marriage bond, [38] 7
See procreation.
spiritual, [51] 19
universal purpose of marriage, [48] 17,19
Church:
churches arising from all nations, [49] 18,21
commandments:
loving obedience, [56] 30
compassion, [55] 23,28
concubinage:
desire for children and, [46] 14,16
conduct: devotion shown in, [44] 12,14
conjugal love, See chastity; husband and wife; sexual union.
See also self-control
creation:
fill the earth and rule . . . . , [33] 2
goodness of all things created, [50] 19
dead body:
purification after burying, [51] 20,23
symbol of sinfulness, [51] 20,23
death, [34] 2; [46] 15
marriage bond, [57] 24,32
desire:
for good things, when needed, [41] 9,9
sensual, [35] 3
devotion:
married women, [44] 12,14
dining, [40] 8
disposition: characteristics, [52] 21,25
divorce, [57] 24,32
childlessness and, [46] 15
Gentiles, [39] 8
husband and wife after, [39] 7
remarriage after, See remarriage.
sterile wife, [38] 7
divorce and adultery:
See also remarriage
adultery, [34] 3
drunkenness, [55] 29
eating, [40] 8; [47] 16,18; [53] 26
education, [51] 20,23
dead of the world, [41] 10,10
Eve, [56] 30
evil, See good and evil.
faith, [40] 8
unbelieving spouse made holy . . . . , [43] 13
fall of man:
procreation before, [33] 2
fasting, [40] 8; [42] 11
fidelity:
conjugal love, [43] 11,12
mutual, [35] 4,4
power of authority, [35] 4,4
sexual, [37] 6
first parents:
mortal in original state, [34] 2
flesh:
tribulation of, [45] 13,15
food:
sacrificed to idols, [47] 16,18
fornication, [37] 6; [38] 7; [42] 11; [47] 16,18
free will:
conjugal love, [39] 8
friendship, [33] 1,1; [40] 9,9
Gentiles:
divorce, [39] 8
gift (-s; -from God)
See also grace
glory, [59] 35
Goliath, [55] 29
good and evil:
comparative, [39] 8
goodness:
Marriage and Virginity

degree of, [55] 23,28

goods:
marriage necessary for, [40] 9,9

habitual disposition, [52] 21,25
health, [39] 8; [40] 9,9; [47] 16,18; [52] 21,25
heart, [44] 12,14
single, turned to God, [49] 18,21

heaven:
perfection of our unity, [49] 18,21

holiness:
concerns of married people, [42] 10,10
unnatural sexual relations and, [43] 11,12
Holy Spirit, [43] 13
homelessness, [40] 8
human body:
authority; husband and wife, [35] 4,4; [37] 6; [57] 24,32
benefit from drinking, [52] 21,25
care of slaves, [40] 8
chaste Christian wife, [43] 13
injury, [34] 2
spiritual, [34] 2
human condition, [34] 3; [41] 9,9
human nature, [33] 1,1
human race, [33] 1,1; [41] 9,9
humility, [44] 12,14; [58] 35
husband and wife:
adultery, [38] 7
authority over one’s body, [35] 4,4; [37] 6; [57] 24,32
bond of human society, [33] 1,1
care for the spouse, [38] 7
chaste sexual union, [40] 8
fidelity; conjugal love, [43] 11,12
holiness; and an unbelieving spouse, [43] 13
lascivious behavior, [46] 14,16
marital restriction, [49] 18,21
mutual fidelity, [35] 4,4
older people; love relationship, [35] 3
putting one’s spouse aside, not lawful, [34] 3
strength of union, [33] 1,1
temporal concerns, [41-42] 10,10
unreasonable insistence on marriage duty, [37] 6

illusion, [39] 8
immortality, [34] 2; [39] 8
Incarnation:
prophecy, [51] 19
womb of a virgin, [33] 2
incontinence, [42] 10,10
infertility, [46] 15
Isaac, [56] 31; [59] 35
Israelites; garments, [34] 2
Jacob, [59] 35
Jerusalem, [47] 16,18
Jesus Christ, [47] 15; [50] 19; [59] 35
See also Christian life
See Church.
Churches subject to, [49] 18,21
giving up possessions for, [40] 8
spiritually subject to, [57] 24,32
universal submission to, [49] 18,21
virtue of restraint, [53] 26
wedding guest, [34] 3
Job; patience, [52] 21,25
John the Baptist, Saint, [53] 26
John, Saint, Apostle, [53] 26

kinship:

bond, [33] 1,1
spiritual, [41] 9,9
knowledge, [39] 8

Lamb of God, [56] 31
law:
signs of the future, [51] 20,23
learning, [40] 9,9
love, [47] 16,18
unfailing, [39] 8
lust, [35] 3; [45] 13,15; [58] 26,34

Manichees, [53] 26; [57-58] 25,33
marital act, See sexual union.
marriage (married people):
See also celibacy; divorce; husband and wife; separation
abstinence and, [39] 8
See adultery.
benefits of, [34-35] 3
better, than to burn, [48] 17,19; [52] 21,25
celibacy superior to, [50] 19
chastity; celibates and, [54] 22,27

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity

comparison: O.T./N.T., [48] 17,19; [50] 22
concern with pleasing the Lord, [44] 12,14
excelsior; does not surpass virginity, [33] 1,1
See fidelity.
first act of intercourse, [46] 15
fornication and, [42] 11
goodness of, [41] 9,9
three elements, [57] 24,32
held dear, [52] 24
holiness in, [45] 13,15
honorable, [43] 11,12
improper union, [46] 17
indissolubility, [38] 7
leaving husband to marry another, [50] 18,21
lesser of two evils, [39] 8
Manichaeism refuted, [57-58] 25,33
monogamous, [49] 18,21
necessary for sake of other goods, [40] 9,9
not a sin to marry (Paul), [42] 11; [43] 11,12; [49] 18,21
remedy for sensuality, [37-38] 6
sacred contract, [38] 7
sanctity of the sacrament, [50] 18,21; [57] 24,32
self-control and, [41] 10,10; [42] 11
sexual union as purpose of, [30] 5,5; [48] 17,19
sterility and, [46] 15
true, [36] 5,5
virginity and, [55] 29
virtue of celibacy compared with, [55] 23,28
youthful incontinence and, [35] 3
marriage bond:
inflexible bond, [39] 7
not broken by divorce, [57] 24,32
marriage (Old Testament)
celibacy and, [51] 24
duty of having children, [45] 13,15; [47] 15,16,18
Levitical purity laws, [51] 20,23
married for Christ, [59] 35
matrimony used in unmatrimonial way, [56] 31
prophetic character, [50] 19; [58] 26,34
several wives, [45] 13,15
taking another woman to have children, [46] 15
wives as symbols of future Churches, [49] 18,21
married women:
devotion to God is rare, [44] 12,14
obedience (Peter), [44] 12,14
temporal concerns, [44] 13
Martha and Mary, [40] 8
martyr (-s, -dom):
virtue of, [52] 21,25
virtue of patience, [53] 26
Mary, Blessed Virgin, [40] 8; [59] 35
merit, [59] 35
Messiah:
prophecy concerning, [50] 19
mind:
development, [34] 2
mistress, [43] 11,12
mortality:
original sin, [33] 2
transformation to immortality, [34] 2
Moses:
divorce, [39] 8
nature:
superiors and subordinates, [48] 20
need:
wanting good things in time of, [41] 9,9
nonbelievers. See unbelievers.

obedience:
See also commandments
celibacy and the commandments, [55] 29; [56] 31
comparison: wife and virgin, [55] 30
mother of all virtues, [55] 30
virginity and, [56] 30
old age, [35] 3
ordination:
marital restriction, [49] 18,21
prerequisites for, [49] 18,21
purpose, [57] 24,32
original sin:
procreation and, [33] 2
original state: mortality, [34] 2
ownership, [46] 14,16
parents: sensual moderation, [35] 3
passion, [37] 5,5; [45] 13,15; [47] 16,18
Marriage and Virginity

patience:
  virtue of martyrs, [53] 26
perfection:
  giving up possessions, [40] 8
  having children in a spiritual way,
  [48] 17,19
  people compared, [55] 29
Peter, Saint, Apostle, [44] 12,14; [53] 26
pleasure, [47] 16,18
polyandry, [48] 20
polygamy:
  Manichees on, [58] 25,33
  rightness of, [48] 20
  sterile wife, [38] 7
  symbolism, [49] 18,21
possessions: voluntary poverty, [40] 8
power: unjust use of, [46] 14,16
prayer:
  excessive intercourse and, [42] 11
  marriage and sexual union, [45] 13,15; [51] 20,23
pregnancy, [49] 20
priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
  See also children; marriage
  before the fall of man, [33] 2
  descendants, [34] 2
  increase and multiply . . . , [33,34] 2
  instinct for (animals, birds, etc.), [50] 19
morality of intercourse, [38] 6
natural sociability, [35] 3
objective, [57] 24,32
Old Testament piety, [47] 16,18
physical union, [33] 2
propagation: marriage duty (O.T.), [41] 9,9; [50] 19
purpose of marriage, [35] 3
sexual moderation, [43] 11,12
temporal, [39] 8
prophets, [48] 16,18
purification:
  after burying the dead, [51] 20,23
  after emission of seed, [51] 20,23
  purity:
  laws, Levitical, [51] 20,23
rape, [49] 18,21
respectability, [48] 17,19
reward, [49] 18,21; [59] 35
sacrifices:
  eating food from, [47] 16,18
sacrilege, [40] 8
Sarah, [44] 12,14; [55] 22,27
Satan, [38] 6
seed: formlessness, [51] 20,23
self-control:
  chastity, [54] 22,27
  marriage for those lacking, [41] 10,10; [42] 11; [58] 25,33
sensuality, [37] 5,5; [41] 9,9; [42] 11; [44] 12,14
infidelity, [35] 4,4
  marriage as remedy for, [37] 6
  moderation (parents), [35] 3
  moderation in thing allowed, [43] 11,12
  satisfaction in marital sex, [38] 6
sexual ethics:
  circumstances of the times, [47] 15
  sexual restraint, See abstinence; continence.
ssexual union:
  angelic freedom from, [39] 8
  beyond need to procreate, [48] 17,19
  chaste; uncontrolled, [37] 5,5
  children as honorable fruit of, [33] 1,1
  Levitical purity laws, [51] 20,23
  moderation in, [47] 16,18; [58] 26,34
  mortal bodies, [33] 2; [34] 2
  nature’s plan, [58] 26,34
  perverted, [37] 6
  prayer time and, [42] 11; [45] 13,15; [51] 20,23
  propagation not the motive, [42] 11
  restriction vs complete abstinence, [45] 13,15
  seriousness in the pleasure, [35] 3
  time for refraining . . . , [45] 13,15
  true purpose of marriage, [36] 5,5
  unlawful relations (O.T.), [58] 25,33
  unnatural practice, [42] 11; [43] 11,12
  unreasonable use of rights, [37] 5,5
  women of faith, [40] 8
sin:
  See also consent; desire
  breach of trust, [36] 4,4
  death as punishment for, [34] 2
  improper use of goods, [40] 9,9
  mortal; venial, [38] 6; [41] 9,9
Volume I/9

Marriage and Virginity
Index from

On the Good of Widowhood

(De bono viduitatis)

Included in book:

Marriage and Virginity

Translation by Ray Kearney, introduction and notes by John E. Rotelle, OSA, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume presents new translations of five of Augustine's works: The Excellence of Marriage (De bono conjugiis), Holy Virginity (De sancta virginitate), The Excellence of Widowhood (De bono viduitatis), Adulterous Marriages (De adulterinis conjugiis), and Continence (De continentia).

Volume I/9

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-104-6, 6 x 9 in., 256 pp., 1998
Paperback: 978-1-56548-222-7, 6 x 9 in., 251 pp., 2005

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Volume I/9

**INDEX OF SCRIPTURE**

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

The Excellence of Widowhood

## Old Testament

**Genesis**
- 1:10-25 6,9
- 1:31 6,9

**Psalms**
- 45:2 19,23
- 45:13 19,23

**Ecclesiastes**
- 3:5 8,11

**Wisdom**
- 7:16 18,22
- 8:21 17,21

**Isaiah**
- 53:2 19,23

## New Testament

**Matthew**
- 6:13 17,21
- 10:22 20,25
- 19:11 9,12; 23,28
- 19:12 23,28
- 22:29-30 12,15
- 26:41 17,21

**Luke**
- 2:36-37 13,16
- 2:37 14,17

**John**
- 14:6 19,23

**Romans**
- 6:9 10,13
- 12:3 1,2
- 12:4 3,4

**1 Corinthians**
- 3:5-6 5,7
- 3:7 5,7

---

**Marriage and Virginity**
Marriage and Virginity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately. The number in brackets [] indicates the page; the other numbers indicate chapter and/or section

Volume I/9
The Excellence of Widowhood

Abraham, [118] 7
abstinence:
See also celibacy
adultery, [117] 6
broken vow of widowhood, [123] 11,14; [129] 17,21
consecrated virgins who marry, [122] 10,13
alms, [133] 21,26
angels, [124] 12,15
Anna (widow), [116] 4; [124] 13,16; [125] 14,17; [127] 16,20
exulted for chaste widowhood, [125] 13,16
recognized Christ in the virgin mother, [126] 18
Ruth and, [120] 7
three factors in merits of, [125] 18
worthy to be Christ’s prophetess, [119] 7

beauty:
interior, [131] 19,23
love keeps fresh, [131] 24
body and soul:
See also human body
carnal union, See sexual union.
Cataphrygians, [116] 6; [117] 7
celibacy (celibates), [120] 8,11; [124] 13,16
See also abstinence; chastity; virginity
attraction as gift, [127] 16,20
fruits of, [117] 7
if everyone were celibate . . . , [135] 23,28
lapse from the greater perfection, [121-122] 9,12
loving and preserving, [130] 18,22; [19,23
marriage and, [126] 15,19
See also sexual union
vow must be kept, [121] 8,11; [121-122] 9,12
charity, [114] 1,1; [117] 5
chastity (in marriage), [121] 9,12
beauty of, [131] 24
gift of God, [116] 4; [128,129] 17,21
spiritual pleasures, [133] 21,26
virgins and widows, [136] 29
vow:
to Christ, [122] 10,13
perseverance, [124] 13,16
pleasure that might have been, [123] 11,14
widow’s celibacy is better than, [117] 5
children:
care and education, [125] 18
child-bearing not a duty (Paul), [120] 8,11
heart or flesh, [132] 20,25
See procreation.
Church:
one husband, Christ, [122] 10,13
commandments:
grace and carrying out, [128] 17,21
grace and free will, [128] 17,21
wisdom and chastity, [129] 17,21
compassion, [134] 22,27
conjugal love, See chastity; husband and wife; sexual union.
conscience:
good name, [134] 22,27
continence, [120] 7; [121] 8,11; [121] 9,12; [126] 15,19; [129] 17,21
creation:
everything very good, [118-119] 9
damnation:
vowed to celibacy, desires to marry, [121] 9,12
desire:
restraint of, [132] 20,25
devotion:
widows judged by, [125] 14,17
divorce:
remarriage after, See remarriage.
divorce and adultery:
See also remarriage
encouragement, [114] 2; [135] 23,28
end of the world, [120] 8,11; [135] 23,28
evil, See good and evil.
example, [135] 23,28
excellence, [117] 6
eyes, [118] 9; [133] 21,26

Volume I/9
Marriage and Virginity
Marriage and Virginity

derive from, by one vowed to celibacy, [121-122] 9,12
See fidelity.
first and second, [122] 10,13
first marriage should be rejected, [120] 8,11
goodness of, [115] 3,4; [116] 4; [120,121] 8,11
holy in body and spirit, [118] 6,8
longing for, [132] 20,25
multiple, [123] 12,15
Paul does not condemn, [126] 15,19
renouncing, as gift, [127] 16,20
resurrection of the dead, [124] 12,15
temporal concerns, [130] 19,23
virginity and [126] 15,19
marriage (Old Testament)
chaste, [127] 15,19
purpose of sexual union, [119] 7
several wives, [45] 13,15; [119] 7
married women:
adulteress, [122] 10,13
free to remarry after husband dies, [124] 12,15
Mary, Blessed Virgin, [127] 16,20
mediation, [133] 21,26
merit:
widows, [124] 13,16
Messiah:
foreseen by Anna (prophetess), [119] 7
mind:
holy, [118] 6,8
mistress, [122] 10,13
money, [133] 21,26
moon, [118] 9
morality: encouragement, [114] 2
nonbelievers, See unbelievers.
Novationists, [116] 6; [117] 7
obedience:
See also commandments
passion, [132] 20,25
perception: senses, [133] 21,26
perfection:
love for the greater, [127] 16,20
perseverance, [132] 20,25
persuasion, [129] 18,22
Peter, Saint, Apostle, [117] 7
pleasure, [125] 18; [130] 19,23
comfort in carnal pleasure, [133] 21,26
polygamy:
Old Testament, [119] 7
praise: good name, [134] 22,27
prayer, [133] 21,26; [135] 29
thanks for gifts received, [129] 17,21
priesthood, See ordination.
procreation:
See also children; marriage
natural human desire, [121] 8,11
transcending desire for, [121] 8,11
prophets:
Christ and, [119] 7
prostitutes, [118] 6,8
remarriage:
unable to contain oneself, [120] 8,11
reputation:
maintaining a good name, [134] 22,27
resurrection of the dead:
marrriages after, [124] 12,15
reward, [135] 22,27
riches: desire for, [133] 21,26
Ruth, [116] 4; [119] 10; [120] 7
Sadducees, [123] 12,15
Sarah, [117] 7; [118] 6,8; [119] 10
Satan, [116] 5; [120] 8,11
second marriage(s):
honorable, [117] 5,7
honored less, [116] 6
multiple marriages, [123] 12,15
not condemned, [116] 4
not evil, [123] 11,14
widow is more blessed, [116] 4
senses, [133] 21,26
sensuality, [120] 8,11; [133] 21,26
sexual restraint, See abstinence; continence.
sexual union:
denial of pleasure of, [133] 21,26
exceeding purpose of having children, [116] 4
refusing the marital act, [116] 5
virgins and widows refrain from,
[129] 17,21
women of the O.T., [119] 7
Marriage and Virginity
Index from
Teaching Christianity

De doctrina christiana
(On Christian Teaching)

Published by New City Press in:

Teaching Christianity

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, introduction by Prosper Grech, OSA, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

This work is intended to help preachers present biblical teachings in an effective manner.

Volume I/11

Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-048-3, 6 x 9 in., 272 pp., 1996
Paperback: 978-1-56548-049-0, 6 x 9 in., 259 pp., 1996

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

*(prepared by Michael Dolan)*

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:26–27</td>
<td>I, 22, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8–9</td>
<td>III, 36, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9–10</td>
<td>III, 36, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>III, 36, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>III, 36, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:32–11:1</td>
<td>III, 36, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18–19</td>
<td>IV, 21, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:25</td>
<td>II, 22, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:14</td>
<td>I, 32, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 19:18</td>
<td>I, 22, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers 11:4</td>
<td>IV, 21, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:19</td>
<td>II, 13, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 6:5</td>
<td>I, 22, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2–3</td>
<td>II, 23, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>II, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit 4:15</td>
<td>III, 14, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5–7</td>
<td>III, 18, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:4</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>I, 23, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>I, 31, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>IV, 10, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:13</td>
<td>III, 34, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2</td>
<td>II, 16, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1</td>
<td>III, 35, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:2</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:14</td>
<td>I, 30, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:18</td>
<td>IV, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7–8</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>III, 37, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>IV, 23, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>I, 34, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>III, 24, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21–22</td>
<td>III, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Ecclesiastes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>III, 18, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Song of Songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>III, 32, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>II, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>III, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>IV, 5, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>IV, 15, 32; IV, 30, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>II, 21, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>II, 7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>III, 17, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>III, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:19</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:20</td>
<td>II, 31, 48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>II, 12, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:12</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:16–17</td>
<td>III, 32, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>II, 12, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10</td>
<td>III, 31, 44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Teaching Christianity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jeremiah</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>III, 11, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:30–31</td>
<td>IV, 14, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>I, 22, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:29</td>
<td>IV, 14, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:30</td>
<td>IV, 28, 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:11</td>
<td>III, 35, 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:17–19</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:23–29</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:24.28</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1–6</td>
<td>IV, 7, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luke</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:28–29</td>
<td>III, 35, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:29</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:37</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>IV, 21, 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>III, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>IV, 18, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:29–32</td>
<td>III, 36, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>John</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1–2</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>II, 28, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>I, 12, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:46</td>
<td>III, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>II, 16, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:33</td>
<td>III, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:38</td>
<td>III, 23, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:25</td>
<td>III, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>Prologue, 8; I, 34, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>IV, 21, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acts of the Apostles</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:35</td>
<td>III, 16, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>II, 40, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Romans</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 4, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21–23</td>
<td>II, 18, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5–9</td>
<td>III, 11, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 18, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3–5</td>
<td>IV, 7, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28–39</td>
<td>IV, 20, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33–34</td>
<td>III, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>II, 28, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30</td>
<td>III, 3, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>II, 12, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
<td>I, 5, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6–15</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>III, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:6–8</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>I, 35, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9–10</td>
<td>I, 30, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12–14</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>I, 33, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 28, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>I, 12, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>I, 11, 11; II, 13, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>I, 33, 36; 4, 16, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>Prologue, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7–8</td>
<td>IV, 21, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>III, 31, 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1–9</td>
<td>IV, 18, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:34</td>
<td>III, 2, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>II, 10, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:36</td>
<td>IV, 21, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>III, 24, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19–20</td>
<td>IV, 15, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:42</td>
<td>IV, 18, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28–30</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>IV, 28, 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>III, 35, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:6</td>
<td>III, 24, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>III, 17, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59; IV, 28, 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>II, 16, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37, 39–40</td>
<td>I, 26, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:51</td>
<td>III, 32, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26, 27</td>
<td>Prologue, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>I, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1–3</td>
<td>III, 35, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31, 30</td>
<td>I, 22, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:28–29</td>
<td>III, 35, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:29</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:37</td>
<td>I, 30, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>IV, 21, 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>III, 23, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>IV, 18, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:29–32</td>
<td>III, 36, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/11
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
<th>Volume I/11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>IV, 21, 46</td>
<td>2:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>III, 23, 33</td>
<td>3:12–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19–20</td>
<td>II, 23, 36</td>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>I, 39, 43</td>
<td>I, 26, 27; I, 35, 39; I, 36, 41; I, 40, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>I, 30,31; II, 7, 11</td>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>I, 39, 43</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13,14</td>
<td>II, 31, 49</td>
<td>2:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
<td>4:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:49</td>
<td>IV, 21, 47</td>
<td>4:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50,53</td>
<td>I, 19, 18</td>
<td>5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td>5:1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2–30</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td>IV, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>III, 5, 9</td>
<td>3:17–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 4, 4</td>
<td>4:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>I, 37, 41; II, 12, 17</td>
<td>4:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>I, 34, 38</td>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2–11</td>
<td>IV, 20, 42</td>
<td>1:9–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1–2</td>
<td>III, 2, 5</td>
<td>I, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>IV, 28, 61</td>
<td>1:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:5</td>
<td>II, 40, 61</td>
<td>2:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>IV, 7, 15</td>
<td>2:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>III, 24, 36</td>
<td>3:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>IV, 7, 15</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:16–30</td>
<td>IV, 7, 12</td>
<td>4:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>IV, 7, 13</td>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2–4</td>
<td>Prologue, 5</td>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15–18</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
<td>1:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td>2:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19–22</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
<td>2:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>III, 31, 44</td>
<td>3:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10–20</td>
<td>IV, 20, 43</td>
<td>IV, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21–26</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
<td>4:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 24, 25</td>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>III, 3, 7</td>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>III, 11, 17</td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td>Philemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15–18</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>III, 34, 48</td>
<td>James</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19–22</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>III, 31, 44</td>
<td>4:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10–20</td>
<td>IV, 20, 43</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21–26</td>
<td>IV, 20, 39</td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 24, 25</td>
<td>5:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>III, 3, 7</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>III, 11, 17</td>
<td>3:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
<td>2 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>III, 37, 55</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
<td>1 John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22–19</td>
<td>II, 41, 62</td>
<td>2:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>I, 16, 15; III, 34, 49</td>
<td>Revelation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>I, 24, 24; I, 24, 45</td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>III, 26, 37</td>
<td>21:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
<td>III, 34, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
<td>1 John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>IV, 27, 59</td>
<td>2:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>III, 33, 46</td>
<td>Revelation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Teaching Christianity

INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Citations are to: Prologue (P), Book(s) (Roman numbers), and section numbers

Abraham:
  Paul on, IV:39
  seed of, III:44
action: swayed by grand manner of speech, IV:55
affections: spiritual life, I:16
ambiguities (in the Bible):
  discussion and solutions, III:1
  figurative expressions, III:9
  grammatical construction, III:8
  metaphorical language, III:9
  obscurities, II:7, 14
  phrasing, III:2–5
  pronunciation, III:6–7
  sound/tone of syllables, III:7
Ambrose, Saint:
  equality of the Holy Spirit, IV:46
  Plato and, II:42
  on virginity, IV:48
  on women painting faces, IV:49
Amos (prophet): rhetoric, III:15–21
amulets, II:30
angels:
  apostate, II:35
  hopes in, I:36
  we are commanded to love, I:31, 33
animals:
  food, III:19
  natural to “love” themselves, I:27
  sensitive life, I:8
  signs, II:3
Anthony of Egypt, P:4
Antiphrasis, III:41
Apocalypse:
  angels of the seven Churches, III:42
  number of saints in, III:51
Apollo: temple of, II:27
apostles:
  apostolic sees, II:12
  neither puffed up nor cast down, III:29
arithmetic, II:56
arithmology, II:25
art: signs, II:39
arts and crafts, II:47, 58
arts and sciences:
  senses and reason, II:41, 58
  social life, II:58
assent: eloquence and, IV:29
astrologers, II:32–33
astronomy, II:46
audience:
  enduring the various styles of speech, IV:51, 52
  persuasion; three styles of speech, IV:55
  swaying, with the grand manner, IV:58
augurs, II:30, 37
Augustine, Saint:
  reply to fault-finders, P:3
Babel, Tower of, II:5; III:53
ballet, II:38
baptism, II:7, III:13
behavior: judging, III:19
being: things and the life that quickens, I:8

Volume I/11
Bible:
See also New Testament; Old Testament
accomplished investigators of, II:12
ambiguities in, See Ambiguities.
astrology and, II:35
authority undermined, I:41
better/truer ideas than we can think up, II:9
canonical scriptures, II:12–13
discovery of meaning; passing to others, I:1
dissemination; translations, II:6
duty of teachers of, IV:6
faith, hope and charity in, II:14
figurative expressions, II:23–24;
III:13, 33, 34
fruitful study of, II:14
Greek Septuagint, II:22
hidden meanings, III:42
intention of the author, III:38
interpretation; fault-finders, P:2
knowledge of the scriptures, II:63
Latin or English signs, II:21
length of times in (Tychonius), III:50
memorizing, II:14
metaphors in scripture, III:14, 39
mistaken understanding, I:41
natural sciences; encyclopedia, II:59
needed for instructing others, I:43
numbers in, II:59
old Itala Latin, II:22
past, present, and future in scripture, III:15
proper meaning of a passage (in translation), II:19
proper numbers, III:51
reading; discretion re ambiguous phrases, III:5
reasons why texts are not understood, I:15
rules for dealing with, P:1
rules of interpretation, III:34
rules of Tychonius, III:42–56
salutary work of the Holy Spirit, II:8
speaker poor in words, rich in use of scripture, IV:8
study: correction of copies, II:21
study: purpose, I:1
summary: love of God and neighbor, I:39, 40
task of searching scriptures, II:62
teaching: insights multiplied when given away, I:1
translations, II:16–19
understanding and communicating, IV:1
understanding obscurities in, P:8; J:14
understanding; three qualities, I:44
universal commands, III:25
value of history in study of, II:42
will of God in, III:1
words and names in (languages), II:59
words understood in several ways, III:38
yielding to authority of, II:10
blood relations, II:17
body and soul:
See also Human body
death of the body, I:18
dignity of the soul, I:20
mistaken ideas, I:24
number metaphors, II:25
soul gives life to body, I:28
soul’s abode in eternity, I:42
books and reading: understanding, IV:23
bread: the five loaves given to hungry crowd, I:1
Caesarea of Mauritania, IV:53
caring: motivation, I:35
Catachresis, III:40
celibacy, III:25
change, I:8
charity: chance, I:29
Christian life: fare for the journey, I:36
Christians: seed: word as sign, II:17
Church:
body/wife of Christ, I:15
building up; gifts of the Spirit, I:14
fishes (153) caught in net, II:25
keys given to, I:17
mixture, III:45
prophets and, IV:22
rules of Tychonius, III:44  
saints' role in, II:7  
spiritual death and resurrection, I:14  
superstitions and, II:7  

Cicero, IV:34  
cities, III:47  

clergy:  
   See also Preachers; Teachers  
speaking both wisely and eloquently  
on scripture, IV:8  

clothes: superstitions, II:31  

commandments:  
   figurative, III:24  
   need: what is above/next to us, I:27  
   Old Testament, in life today, III:26  
   ten commandments, II:26  
   universal (in the Bible), III:25  

common life: early Christians, III:10  

communication:  
   See also Eloquence; Preaching; Public  
speaking; Sermons  
am to be heard with understanding,  
delight, compliance, IV:56  
meaning of scriptures, IV:1  

compassion, I:31, 33, 35  
concupiscence, I:24  
conscience: good; hope, I:44; III:14  
constellations: animal names, II:32  
contraries: virtues and vices, I:13  
conversation: understanding, IV:23  
Cornelius (centurion ), P:6  
cosmetics: Cyprian and Ambrose  
on, IV:49  
counsel, II:11  
courage, II:10  
crafts, II:47, 58  
creation: worship, II:30  
creatures: God's use of us, I:35  
crime, III:22  
cross: sign, II:62  
customs, III:22  
Cyprian, Saint, II:61; IV:31, 45  
on virginity, IV:47  
on women painting faces, IV:49  

dates (dating events), II:42  

David, King:  
   psaltery, IV:19  
relations; justice, III:30–31  

death:  
   eternal, I:19  
   fear of God, II:9  
   remedy for, I:13  
   see God: die to this world, II:11  

definition (logic), II:53  

delight:  
   embellishments of moderate style,  
   IV:55  
enjoy; use, I:37  
function of eloquence, IV:27–30  
moderate manner of speech, IV:55  
pleasing style of speaking, IV:31  

demons, II:30, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 58  
despair, II:10  
devil, I:13; II:36; III:36  
rule of Tychonius, III:55  
dialectic, II:59  
discourse: rules, II:54, 59  
discovery, II:8  
dress, II:31, 39; III:20  
duty, II:47  

ever Church: Jerusalem, III:10  
   Egypt, II:61, 62, 63  
Egyptians, II:60  
Elijah, II:25  
eloquence:  
   See also delight; public speaking;  
understanding  

Volume I/11
Christian authors, IV:10–15
displayed in praising and blaming, IV:54
elocuence without wisdom, IV:7–8
fitting words to topic’s importance, IV:34
functions: teach, delight, sway, IV:27–31, 34, 56
mastery of, IV:4
moderate mode of speech, IV:57
rules of discourse, II:54; IV:20
speaking eloquently but also wisely, IV:61
when a speaker is lacking in, IV:7
youth and age, IV:9

emotions:
arousal by speaker’s style, IV:51
signs, II:3

end of the world: bodily death and resurrection, I:14
enemies: love of, I:30, 31

enjoyment:
audience, IV:34, 56
essence of, I:4
goal, I:4
God’s goodness, I:35
love of God and neighbor, III:16
love of the thing to be enjoyed, I:39
one another in God, I:35, 37
right to enjoy each other, I:34
temporal life; selves, I:21
things eternal and unchanging, I:20
use of this world, I:3, 4, 24
use with delight, I:37

Esau and Jacob, II:33; III:19
Esther, Queen, IV:63

eternal life:
godless and the godly, I:19
journey towards, I:38
life aim: unchanging life, I:21
love; possession of eternal things, I:42
Eucharist
sign, III:13
water mixed with wine, IV:45
Eusebius, II:59
exodus, II:61

faith:
authority of scripture undermined, I:41
breastplate of, III:37
gift, III:46
gives way to sight, I:42
metaphors in scripture, III:14
pretense, I:44
reaching everlasting sight, II:17
resurrection; support; hope, I:14
violation of trust, I:40
works and (Tychonius), III:46
false conclusions, II:49–51
falsehood:
defending truth against, IV:3
definition, II:53
delight in its being revealed, IV:28
fame, III:29
fates, II:46
fear of God: stages on way to wisdom, II:9–11
feelings, See Emotions.

fictions, II:39

fidelity: great, in minimal matters, IV:35

figurative speech, II:23–24; III:9, 13, 14, 23–25, 32–34, 56
Paul’s eloquence, IV:9–14
Set also Metaphors; Tropes.

flesh:

lusts against the spirit, I:25
word as sign, II:17

folly of God…, II:20

forgiveness of sin: keys given to the Church, I:17

fornication (false gods), III:12

fortitude, II:10

future: conjectures about, II:47

Genethliacs, II:32, 46
genus: rules of Tychonius, III:47–48
Teaching Christianity

gluttony, III:19

God:
- clinging to; immortality, I:23
- enjoyment of God alone, I:20
- goodness, I:35
- human thought: God excelling everything, I:7
- I am who I am, I:35
- inexpressible, I:6
- justice, I:35
- Language in praise of, IV:38
- learning about, IV:38
- mind must be purified to see God, I:10
- no other thought is more sublime, I:7
- praise and love of, II:57
- unchanging, I:8, 23, II:10
- unity, II:10
- uses us; does not enjoy us, I:34–35
- wisdom, I:8
- wish to be called neighbor, I:33

happiness:
- enjoying and using, I:3–4
- perfect; enjoyment, I:34
- truth re the happy life, II:55

hatred:
- lording it over others, I:23
- of self, I:24, 25

healing: wisdom incarnate, I:13

Hebrew literature, II:42

Hebrew names, II:23

Hesiod, II:27

Hilary, Saint, II:61

history:
- institution, II:44
- value in study of scripture, II:41

Holy Spirit:
- Ambrose on, IV:46
- bible and, III:13
- translations and, H:22
- early Christians, III:10
- given to us, P:5; IV:11
- preaching and, IV:32
- salutary work on the scriptures, II:8
- teachers and, IV:33

hope:
- gives way to bliss, I:42
- good conscience, I:44; III:14
- Paul on, IV:11
- placing, in human beings, I:36, 37
- resurrection and support of faith, I:14

hosanna (the word), II:16

Hosea, III:18

human beings:
- See also Signs
- both enjoyed and used, I:20
- learning from each other, P:6
- loved on God's account, I:28
- our "neighbor" includes all, I:32

human body:
- health and safety, I:26
- impossible not to love our bodies, I:22
- instruction on how to love, I:26, 27
- waging war against, I:25

humility: cure of fallen man, I:13

habitat: bad habits; lusts of the flesh, I:25

hands: Christ crucified, II:62

god:
- fornication, III:12
- images made with hands, III:11
- number of, I:7

golden rule, III:22

good and evil: tree of knowledge, III:52

good works:
- Christ's cross as sign, II:62
- precious ointment, III:18
- grammar, III:8, 40; IV:5
- greed, III:15–17, 26, 27

habit: bad habits; lusts of the flesh, I:25

Volume I/11
Volume I/11

hypocrisy: giving appearance of being good, IV:62
hyssop, II:24, 62

idols:
- pagan veneration, III:11
- superstitions, II:36

ignorance: understanding figurative expressions, II:24

immortality:
- body after resurrection, I:25
- health of the spirit, I:23

immutability, II:57

incarnation:
- coming of the Word; purpose, I:38
- Wisdom, the Word of God, I:11–12
- Wisdom’s healing art, I:13

inferior things, I:3, 24

institutions: human and divine, II:29, 38, 40, 58, 60

irony, III:41

Isaiah, P:7

Israel, III:48–49

Jeremiah, II:42

Jerome, Saint:
- Latin and Hebrew languages, IV:15
- music, IV:41

Jerusalem, II:63

Jesus Christ:
- See also incarnation
  - age questions, II:42
  - body; the temple, II:26
  - church and, See Church.
  - cross; sign, II:62
  - crucifixion; effect on past sins, I:16
  - enjoy the humanity of, I:34
  - feet anointed with ointment, III:18
  - his truth proclaimed by the not-truth, IV:59
  - learn of me…, II:62

model: death, resurrection and ascension, I:14
mystical body, See Church.
offered himself: the way, I:38
Plato and, II:42
resurrection; false logic, II:50, 52
resurrection; length of times problem, III:50
seed of Abraham, III:44
twofold body of (Tychonius), III:45
whoever gives a cup of cold water …. IV:37

Jesus son of Sirach, II:13

Jews:
- blood relations, II:17
- monotheism, II:42
- slavery; temporal things, III:10

Joseph of Egypt, IV:20
joy, See Delight; Enjoyment.

Julius Caesar, II:32

justice:
- customs and, III:22
- greatness, for speakers, IV:35
- hunger for, II:10
- temple to, II:28

Kedar, camps of, III:45

kindness:
- if your enemy is hungry…, fff:24
- love profiting one’s neighbor, III:16, 21

knowledge:
- illuminating our minds, I:9
- pride in, II:20, 62
- sciences, II:45, 50
- theological virtues, I:41

Lactantius, II:61

languages:
- barbarism; solecism, II:19
- bible study and, III:1, 40
- correctness of speech, II:19
- learning by hearing, P:5
- understanding scriptural signs, II:16
- unknown signs (foreign), II:21, 37, 59
Teaching Christianity

Latin language: meaning; word usage, III:7
lawsuits, IV:36
law:
  fulfillment, I:39, 44
  promises; rules of Tychonius, III:46
learning:
  feeding and, IV:26
  secular studies, II:58
  through signs, I:2
  wisdom and, II:57
letter signs [alphabet], II:5
liar, I:40
  See also Falsehood
life:
  beings and the life that quickens, I:8
  changeable vs unchangeable, I:9
  vegetative, I:8
  whoever loves his life..., III:24
lion (devil), III:36
literacy: teaching, P:9
logic:
  defining terms, II:53
  false conclusions, II:49–51
  logical inferences, II:49–51
  relationships, II:52
  rules of, II:50–51
love:
  building up, I:40
  built up by, II:62
  charity continues to grow, I:42
  charity will abide, I:43
  commanded to love angels, I:31, 33
  commands in scripture, III:15
  do not do to another..., III:22
  eternal reward, I:30
  eternal things; acquired/desired, I:42
  for inferior things, I:3, 24
  four kinds of things to be loved, I:22
  God, for God’s sake, III:23
  God and neighbor, I:27, 33, 39, 40; II:10
  God over all others, I:28
  greater care for those closely joined, I:29
  interpreting figurative expressions, III:23
  joy in God and neighbor, III:16
  metaphors in scripture, III:14
  ourselves; our bodies, I:22, 39
  profiling self, III:16
  pure heart, I:44
  right order of, I:27
  things; right order, I:28
  two commandments, II:7, 10
  whole heart, soul, mind, I:21, 27
love of neighbor (Love one another):
  commandment, I:20
  equal love for all, I:29
  favorite actor, I:30
  lording it over others, I:23
  love others for God’s sake, I:21; II:10
  luck: closer contact with some people, I:29
  mutual help; benefits, I:30
  neighbor as/of yourself, I:21, 27, 33; II:10
  perfection in, II:11; III:22–23
lust, III:20, 27, 29, 31, 32
magical arts, II:30
martyrs, I:22
mathematics, II:48
meaning: way of speaking and, III:7
Melchizedek, IV:45
memory: value of, II:14
Mercury (god), II:28
mercy, II:11
metaphors:
  example, III:40
  rules re figurative expressions, III:14
mind:
  effect of signs on, II:1
  rational, II:48
miser, I:26
mood: signs, II:2
moon, II:46

Volume I/11
morality:
censures in scripture, III:15
conventional, III:20
metaphors in scripture, III:14
Moses, II:25, 61; IV:59; P:7
Muses (the Nine), II:27
music:
Amos on, IV:19
Jerome and, IV:41
melodious sounds, II:27
number metaphors, II:26
narrative, II:45
natural sciences, II:45, 50, 59
neighbor:
See also Love of neighbor
love does no wrong to, I:32
who is neighbor? I:31
Neptune, III:11
new covenant, III:48
Noah: sons of, III:53
numbers:
fifty, II:25
forty (four times ten), II:25
metaphorical, in scripture, II:25–26, 59
proper, in scripture, III:51
seven, II:25
synecdoche, III:50
ten, II:25, 37
whole time, III:51
obedience:
audience, IV:34, 56
made docile to God, by God, IV:33
obscurities, See Ambiguities.
Old Testament:
commands retained for today, III:26
events literal and figurative, III:32
historical books, II:13
Latin versions to be corrected by
Greek, II:22
prophets, II:13
Optatus, Bishop, II:61
oratory: grand manner, IV:50
ox (sign), II:15
pagans, II:28; III:11
pain, I:26; II:3
paradise, III:52
passover, II:62
Paul, Saint, P:6; I:31, 32, 36
calm manner; style, IV:39–44
demons and, II:35
desire to cast off and be with Christ,
III:4
eloquent wisdom (examples), IV:9–15
grand manner of speaking, IV:42–44
knowledge of, IV:15
peace: wisdom, II:11
Pelagians, III:46
Pentecost, II:25
perfection: present/future life compared, I:43
persuasion:
effects of eloquence, IV:27–30
rhetoric, IV:3
universal task of eloquence, IV:55
Philemon, I:37
Philip, Saint, Apostle, P:7
philosophers, II:60
piety, II:9, 10
pity, I:33
Plato, II:42
Platonists, II:60
polygamy, III:20, 27–29, 31
pool of Siloam, II:23
Teaching Christianity

praise: eloquence, IV:54
duty: to speak wisely, if not eloquently, IV:8
elegance and feeling, IV:7
kinds of speaking, IV:6
learn speech and pronunciation of speakers, IV:5
minor/middling/ grand matters, IV:34–38
Paul’s rhetoric, IV:15
teachers of scripture, IV:6
purification:
for mind to see God, I:10
purge eyes with which God can be seen, II:11
understanding: cleaving to truth, II:17
Pythagoras, II:42
repentance:
coals of fire, III:24
death of previous way of life, I:18
remedial charms, II:30, 36
redemption: God’s Wisdom came and healed us, I:11
resurrection:
model: Christ and his Church, I:14
resurrection of the body:
changed for the better, I:18
false conclusions, II:49, 50, 52
remodeled on truth, I:20
rhetoric:
art of persuasion, IV:3
imitate good speakers, IV:8
mixing the three styles, IV:51
pauses, clauses, phrases, IV:11–13, 18, 41
rhetorical skills, IV:1
rules, IV:2, 4

prayer:
before preaching, IV:32
that God put good words in preacher’s mouth, IV:63
prayer before, IV:32
put words in God’s care, IV:32
praying:
help the silent listener, IV:25
holding attention, IV:25
importance of lifestyle, IV:59
pray to God for good words, IV:63
preachers (-ing):
help the silent listener, IV:25
holding attention, IV:25
importance of lifestyle, IV:59
preachers:
help the silent listener, IV:25
holding attention, IV:25
importance of lifestyle, IV:59
put words in God’s care, IV:32
qualities: eloquence, wisdom, life, IV:61
saying what they do not do, IV:60
suggestions and advice for, IV:22–26
those who cannot compose sermons, IV:62
preachers
compound experience, II:22
confrontation, IV:13
(voluntary) diligence, IV:20
help the silent listener, IV:25
holding attention, IV:25
importance of lifestyle, IV:59
pray to God for good words, IV:63
praying:
help the silent listener, IV:25
holding attention, IV:25
importance of lifestyle, IV:59
preachers:
repentance:
coals of fire, III:24
death of previous way of life, I:18
remedial charms, II:30, 36
redemption: God’s Wisdom came and healed us, I:11
resurrection:
model: Christ and his Church, I:14
resurrection of the body:
changed for the better, I:18
false conclusions, II:49, 50, 52
remodeled on truth, I:20
rhetoric:
art of persuasion, IV:3
imitate good speakers, IV:8
mixing the three styles, IV:51
pauses, clauses, phrases, IV:11–13, 18, 41
rhetorical skills, IV:1
rules, IV:2, 4

pride:
Babel, II:5
breaking, with hard labor, II:7
empty fame, III:29
God withstands the proud, III:33
hope in created things, I:36
lording it over others, I:23
puffed up by knowledge of signs, II:20
tower of Babel, III:53
problem solving, II:48; IV:39
procreation of children, III:27, 28
pronunciation: scriptural ambiguities, III:6–7
prophecy:
rules of Tychonius, III:43, 49
shall cease, I:43
prophets, II:13; III:21; IV:16
prostitute, III:20
providence, divine, I:39; II:60
Ptolemy, II:22
public speaking:
See also Eloquence; Preaching; Rhetoric; Teaching
diligent negligence, IV:24
duty: to speak wisely, if not eloquently, IV:8
purification:
for mind to see God, I:10
purge eyes with which God can be seen, II:11
understanding: cleaving to truth, II:17
Pythagoras, II:42
reading: rules for, P:9
reason, II:41
recapitulation (rule of Tychonius), III:52–54
remedial charms, II:30, 36
repentance:
coals of fire, III:24
death of previous way of life, I:18
resurrection:
model: Christ and his Church, I:14
rhetoric:
art of persuasion, IV:3
imitate good speakers, IV:8
mixing the three styles, IV:51
pauses, clauses, phrases, IV:11–13, 18, 41
rhetorical skills, IV:1
rules, IV:2, 4

Raca (the word), II:16
rational discourse, II:48
reason, II:41
recapitulation (rule of Tychonius), III:52–54
redemption: God’s Wisdom came and healed us, I:11
remedial charms, II:30, 36
repentance:
coals of fire, III:24
death of previous way of life, I:18
reputation: preachers’ personal life, IV:61
resurrection:
model: Christ and his Church, I:14
resurrection of the body:
changed for the better, I:18
false conclusions, II:49, 50, 52
remodeled on truth, I:20
rhetoric:
art of persuasion, IV:3
imitate good speakers, IV:8
mixing the three styles, IV:51
pauses, clauses, phrases, IV:11–13, 18, 41
rhetorical skills, IV:1
rules, IV:2, 4

Teaching Christianity

praise: eloquence, IV:54

prayer:
before preaching, IV:32
that God put good words in preacher’s mouth, IV:63

preachers (-ing):
help the silent listener, IV:25
holding attention, IV:25
importance of lifestyle, IV:59
pray to God for good words, IV:63

prayers:
before preaching, IV:32
put words in God’s care, IV:32

qualities: eloquence, wisdom, life, IV:61
saying what they do not do, IV:60
suggestions and advice for, IV:22–26

pride:
Babel, II:5
breaking, with hard labor, II:7
empty fame, III:29
God withstands the proud, III:33
hope in created things, I:36
lording it over others, I:23
puffed up by knowledge of signs, II:20
tower of Babel, III:53

problem solving, II:48; IV:39
procreation of children, III:27, 28

pronunciation:
scriptural ambiguities, III:6–7

prophecy:
rules of Tychonius, III:43, 49
shall cease, I:43

prophets, II:13; III:21; IV:16
prostitute, III:20
providence, divine, I:39; II:60
Ptolemy, II:22

public speaking:
See also Eloquence; Preaching; Rhetoric; Teaching
diligent negligence, IV:24
duty: to speak wisely, if not eloquently, IV:8

elegance and feeling, IV:7
kinds of speaking, IV:6
learn speech and pronunciation of speakers, IV:5
minor/middling/ grand matters, IV:34–38
Paul’s rhetoric, IV:15
teachers of scripture, IV:6

purification:
for mind to see God, I:10
purge eyes with which God can be seen, II:11
understanding: cleaving to truth, II:17

Pythagoras, II:42

Raca (the word), II:16

rational discourse, II:48

reading: rules for, P:9

reason, II:41

recapitulation (rule of Tychonius), III:52–54

redemption: God’s Wisdom came and healed us, I:11

remedial charms, II:30, 36

repentance:
coals of fire, III:24
death of previous way of life, I:18

reputation: preachers’ personal life, IV:61

resurrection:
model: Christ and his Church, I:14

resurrection of the body:
changed for the better, I:18
false conclusions, II:49, 50, 52
remodeled on truth, I:20

rhetoric:
art of persuasion, IV:3
imitate good speakers, IV:8
mixing the three styles, IV:51
pauses, clauses, phrases, IV:11–13, 18, 41
rhetorical skills, IV:1
rules, IV:2, 4

Volunteer I/11
self-advertisement, IV:14
wisdom and eloquence, IV:7
rhythm: rhetoric, IV:41
rule of faith, III:2.5

sacrifice: signs: Abraham; Isaac, I:2
saints: cutting people off from errors, II:7
salvation:
  homeopathic remedies, I:13
  ordering of time, I:39
  saved by God’s incarnate Wisdom, I:11
Samuel, II:35
Saul, King, II:35
scriptures, See Bible.
seasons, II:32
seed: word as sign, II:17
self:
  body and spirit, I:27
  hatred, I:24
self-advertisement, IV:14
self-indulgence: several wives, III:27, 28
self-love, I:21, 22, 26, 27, 39
senses:
  bodily, II:41
  signs, II:4
sensual persons: ideas about God, I:7
Septuagint: bible translation, II:22; IV:15
sermons:
  preach those of acknowledge masters, IV:62
  preacher who cannot compose his own, IV:62
  substance rather than words, IV:61
serpent, II:24; III:36
seventy, See Septuagint.

sexual relations: polygamy, III:27–28
Shem: sons of, III:53
shield, III:37
shorthand, II:40
sight, sense of, I:25
signs:
  See also words ambiguous, III:1
  ballet, II:38
  contraries or diverse realities, III:36
  convenient and necessary, II:39
  conventional or given, II:3
  definition, I:2
  evil spirits, II:37
  fictions and fables, II:39
  handed down by Christ and the apostles, III:13
  images; idols, III:11
  interpreting in a useless way, III:13
  kinds: description, II:1
  knowledge of languages, II:16; III:40
  letters: languages, II:37; III:40
  liberation from enslavement, III:12–13
  metaphorical, II:23
  mood, II:2
  natural, II:2
  proper or metaphorical, II:15–16; III:1
  puffed up by knowledge of, II:20
  remedy for ignorance of, II:16
  senses (sight, hearing, etc.), II:4
  things and, I:2
  things: rule of usage, III:35
  treating as things, III:9
  uncertain sense, III:36
  unknown language signs, II:21, 59
  verbal, II:4
simile:
  biblical usage, II:24
  contraries, III:36
sin:
  customs and, III:15
  forgiveness of; keys, I:17
  spiritual way blocked by past sins, I:16
  two categories, III:16
sinners:
  love of, I:28
restoration to health, I:13
supporting, III:24
slavery: carnal spirits, III:13
snake, II:24
Solecisms, II:19
Solomon, King, II:13, 63; III:31, 47
songs: three forms, II:27
Soothsayers, II:30, 44
sophisms, II:48
soul, See Body and soul.
speaking: speech, a spoken utterance, I:12; II:19
species: rules of Tychonius, III:47–48
speeches:
effect of calm, plain speaking, IV:54, 56
goal is to be believed, IV:56
grand manner; moderate opening, IV:52
moderate style; delight for hearers, IV:55
speaker applauded, IV:53, 56
spells and invocations, II:45
Spirit:
death of, I:18
flesh lusts against, I:25
health of the, I:23
mood betrayed by expressions, II:2
remodeled on truth, I:19
spiritual life:
figurative expressions, III:25
way traveled by affections, I:16
stars, II:32, 33, 34, 36, 46
style: lavish speech, IV:31
superstition:
Church cuts off from, II:7
folk, II:31
music; Muses, II:27, 28
pagan, II:60, 61
worship in, II:30
swaying:
See also Persuasion
function of eloquence, IV:27–30
syllable: right sounding, III:7

teachers (-ing):
function of eloquence, IV:27–30
grand words; good personal life, IV:61
Holy Spirit and, IV:33
methods/styles of speaking, IV:6
nature of eloquence in, IV:26
responsibility; problem solving, IV:39
speaking to the uneducated, IV:24
two kinds, II:29
temple of God:
God answers from his human temple, P:6
temple of Jerusalem:
number (forty-six year’s), II:26
temples: pagan, II:28
temporal goods:
clinging to, I:38
Jewish people, III:10
love; possession, I:42
tied up in love of this world, II:10
ten commandments, See Commandments.
ten-stringed psaltery, II:26
terms: defining, distinguishing, distributing, II:53
things:
joying and using, I:2ff
given away; increasing and decreasing, I:1
ourselves as, I:20
signs and, I:2; II:1
time: ordering of, I:39
Tobias, III:27
translations:
Hebrew, Syrian, Egyptian names, II:59
of the scriptures, II:6
words defying, II:16
Trinity:
each person is God; all are one God, I:5
equality in, I:38
equality; ambiguous phrase, III:3
number metaphors, II:25
teaching the unity of, IV:38
ultimate thing to be enjoyed, I:5, 37
tropes, III:40–41
antiphasis, III:41
catachresis, III:40
klímax (ladder), IV:11
synecdoche, III:50
trust: violation of, I:40
truth:
astrologers, II:32
belongs to God, II:28
cleaving to, II:11, 17
defense of, IV:3
delight in presentation of, IV:28, 29
desire for, I:38
eloquence, II:54, 55
teacher swayed by calm, plain style,
IV:55, 56
immutability, II:57
love of truth in words, IV:26
metaphors in scripture, III:14
pleasing, moving, obeying, IV:61
proclaimed by the not-truth, IV:59
seeking, I:25
twins, II:34
Tychonius: seven rules of, III:42–56
understanding:
audience, IV:34, 56
difficulty in, IV:23
everlasting sight, II:17
figurative expressions, II:24; III:13
obscuriies in scriptures, P:8
praying for, III:56
preaching and, IV:22, 25
unless you believe..., II:17
universe: sensual persons’ ideas about God, I:7
use:
directed toward God’s goodness, I:35
end of usefulness, III:21
enjoyment; perfect happiness, I:3, 34
essence of, I:4
unlawful; misuse, I:4
useful arts, II:40
Varro, II:27, 28
Venus, II:32
Vergil, II:56
vices: curing; contraries, I:13
Victorinus, II:61
virginity:
Ambrose on, IV:48
Cyprian on, IV:47
give your daughter, III:25
virtue:
interconnectedness of, I:41
temple to, II:28
theological; support, I:43
walking, II:55
water:
cup of cold water, IV:37
sign, III:36
weakness:
boasting about (Paul), IV:12, 13
of man..., II:20
will of God:
discovery of, II:6
seeking, in scriptures, II:14; III:1
Wisdom:
eloquence in scripture, IV:10–21
folly to the godless, I:13
God as unchangeable, I:8
incarnate, I:11–12
public speaking, IV:7–8
stages, after beginning of (fear), II:9–11
world unable to know God, I:12
women: painting faces, IV:49–50
Word of God: See Incarnation; Jesus Christ.

words:
arguing about, IV:61
letter signs, II:5
literal meaning. III:8
love the truth in, IV:26
metaphorical, e.g. “wrath” of God, III:17, 39
proper literal sense, III:9
proper or metaphorical, II:15–16;
III:1, 34
signifying thoughts, II:4
signs, I:2
sounded: speech, I:12

work: harrying the body, I:24

world:
dying to this world, II:11
unable to know God through wisdom, I:12
using and enjoying, I:4

worship:
angel, I:36
idols, II:30
spiritual freedom. III:13

wound: healing, I:13

wrongdoing: God’s justice, I:35
Index from

On Eight Questions from Dulcitius

(De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus)

Included in book:

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

Translation, introduction, and notes by Boniface Ramsey, Raymond Canning, editor, Boniface Ramsey, series editor

This volume contains three books: Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions (De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus), Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician (Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus), and Eight Questions of Dulcitius (De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus).

Volume I/12 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-277-7, 6 x 9 in., 301 pp., 2008

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Eight Questions of Dulcitius

Old Testament

Genesis
1:1 8, 2
1:2 8, 2
1:3 8, 2
1:3-4 8, 2
1:20 8, 3
1 Samuel
28:19 6, 4
Job
7:1 4, 2
Psalms
32:1-2 5, 2
112:1 4, 2
112:2 4, 1
112:3 4, 3
Wisdom
9:15 4, 2
Sirach
27:5 1, 12

Ezekiel
34:23-24 5, 3
37:22-24 5, 3
Hosea
3:4 5, 3
3:5 5, 3

New Testament

Matthew
1:25 1, 1
5:26 1, 1
13:26 1, 8
15:28 1, 8
19:17 1, 4
19:18-19 1, 6
19:21 1, 6
25:34 1, 13
25:41 1, 4
25:44 1, 4
25:46 1, 4
Luke
2:14 4, 2

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
### Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acts of the Apostles</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:21-22</td>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:22</td>
<td>1, 6; 1, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:23</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>6:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>4, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>5:19-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11-15</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>1, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:51</td>
<td>3, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>3:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>1, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>1, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15-17</td>
<td>James</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>1:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>3:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5-6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15-17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15-17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15-17</td>
<td>4:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>4:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>3:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>3:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume I/12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Eight Questions of Dulcitius
Abimelech, 7
Abraham, 7
Adam, 3,5
adultery, 1,4; 1,6; 1,10; 7
allegory, 3,4; 8,2
almsgiving, 1,10; 1,13; 2,4
angels, 1,4; 3,3; 6,3–4
avarice, 1,4
baptism, 1,10; 2,4; 7,3
sin after, 1
beatitude, 3,5
beauty: of virtue, 6,2
Bible. See scripture, sacred
blessed: and offspring of righteous and
unrighteous, 4
body, 6,4
See also resurrection of the body
after death, 2,2–4; 3,4–5; 4,2
body of Christ (eucharist), 1,14
Canaanite woman, 1,9
Catholic faith, 1,13–14
charity
See also love
teaching and, 3,6
children: offspring of the righteous, 4
the Church, 1,10; 2,2–4
circumcision, 1,10
commandments, 1,4
See also law
conversion, 7,2; 8,2
creation, 8
perfection of, 8,2–3
creed, 3,1
rule of faith, 3,4
cursed: and offspring of righteous and
unrighteous, 4
darkness, 4,2; 8,3
David, 4–5
death
See also body: resurrection of the body
escaping, with body intact, 3
and resurrection, 3
souls of the departed, 2
what happens after, 6,4
and when the Lord comes, 3
You will be with me, 6,4
decay, 6,4; 7,4
demons, 1,2; 1,5; 1,9; 6,4
devil, 1,4; 6,2–4
discipline, 1,14
See also punishment

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

drunkards, 1,4

earth
See also creation; world
eaven and, 8,2
t the effeminate, 1,4; 1,10
Egyptians, 7,2
Elijah, 3
enemies: enmities, 1,4
Enoch, 3
envy, 4,3
eternal fire, 1,4; 1,6; 1,13
See also hell; punishment
eternal life, 1,2; 1,4; 1,6; 5,3; 3,3
See also heaven
eucharist, 1,14; 2,4
evil spirits. See demons
Ezekiel, 5,3

faith:
and grace, 1,5
and love, 1,5–6; 1,9
rule of, 3,4
and salvation, 1
and works, 1
Faith, Hope and Charity (Augustine), 1,10
Faith and Works (Augustine), 1,10
family: offspring of the righteous, 4
the Father. See Trinity
Faustus the Manichean, 7,4
Felix, 2,2
fire, 1,1; 1,3–7; 1,10–14
See also hell
salvation by, 1,4; 1,6
fornication, 1,4; 1,10; 1,13
foundation, Christ as, 1

generations: the generation of the upright, 4,3
gentiles, 5,3
gluttony, 1,4
God. See also Trinity; specific topics
good: goodness:
the beauty of virtue, 6,2
holy, 8,2
grace, 1,5; 1,7; 3,5
greed, 1,4

heart: uprightness of, 4,3
heaven, 1,6; 3,3; 4,3
See also eternal life
and earth, 8,2
hell
See also eternal fire; punishment
as eternal, 1
and sin after baptism, 1

heresy, 1,4; 1,10
Hezekiah, King, 5,3
Holy Spirit, 8
Hosea, 5,3
husband. See marriage

idolatry, 1,4; 1,10
images, 6,3
immortality, 3,2–4; 3,6
impurity, 1,4; 1,14

James, 1,2
jealousy, 1,4
Jesus Christ, 8,2
See also specific topics
David and, 5
as foundation, 1
second coming of, 3
Jews, 5,3; 6,2; 6,4
Job, 4,2; 6,2
judgment, 3,3; 4,2

kingdom of God, 1

law, 1,4
highest, 6,4
of truth, 1,8
learning: teaching and, 1,6; 3,6
lies; lying, 6,4; 7,4
light, 6,2; 7,4; 8,2
love, 8,3
See also charity
faith and, 1,5–6; 1,9
for neighbor, 1,4
for self, 1,4
works of, 1

magic, 6,2
Manicheans, 7,4
marriage, 1,4; 1,7
Mercator, 3,2
mercy, 5,3
See also works
God’s, 4,2
works of, 1,4

names, 6,3
necromancer, 6
neighbor, 1,4

offerings, 2

pagans, 1,6
Paul, 5,3; 6,4
See also specific topics, e.g., faith;
salvation; works

Volume I/12
Volume I/12

Paulinus, bishop of Nola, 2,2
peace:
envying sinners’ peace, 4,3
“of that building in common,” 4,2
Pelagians, 3,2
perfection, 1,6
of creation, 8,2–3
phantasm, 6,3
Pharaoh, 6,3; 7
piety, 3,6
possessions, 1; 4,3
prophecy, 5,3
See also individual prophets, e.g., Samuel
punishment, 1,1; 1,3–4; 1,14; 2,4; 3,2; 6,4
See also eternal fire; hell
discipline, 1,14
purgative fire, 1,13

repentance, 1,4–5; 1,7; 1,10; 1,13; 5,2–3
resurrection of the body, 2,4; 3,2–3; 3,6
riches, 4,3
rich young ruler, 1,6; 6,4
righteousness: his righteousness remains forever, 4,3
and judgment, 3,4
offspring of the righteous, 4
rule of faith, 3,4

sacraments, 1,14; 2,4
See also baptism
sacred scripture. See scripture, sacred
salvation, 1
faith and, 1
by fire, 1,4; 1,6
works and, 1
Samuel, 6
Sarah, 7
Satan. See devil
Saul, Kings, 6
schism, 1,10
scripture, sacred, 1,10
seed, 4,3
sexual relations, 7
See also adultery

Simplician, bishop of Milan, 6
sin:
after baptism, 1
of David, 5
envying sinners’ peace, 4,3
g rave sinners, 1
and repentance, 5,2
slanders, 1,4
Son of God, 8,2
See also Jesus Christ
sorcery, 1,4
souls:
of the departed, 2
unconverted, fluid, 8
Spirit of God above the water, 8
spirits, 6
teaching:
and charity, 3,6
God and, 3,6
and learning, 1,6; 3,6
temple, 4,2–3
thieves, 1,4; 1,10
Trinity, 8
truth, 1,14; 6,2; 6,4
law of, 1,8
“The sweetness of truth must attract us,” 3,6
virtue, 6,2
water, 4,3; 8
wealth. See possessions; riches
wicked spirits. See demons
wife. See marriage
Word of God, 8,2
works:
dead, 1,7
faith and, 1
and salvation, 1
world
See also creation; earth; possessions; riches
 things of, 1,6; 1,11–12
Zacchaeus, 4,3

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Index from
Eighty-Three Different Questions
(De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus)

Included in book:
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

Translation, introduction, and notes by Boniface Ramsey, Raymond Canning, editor, Boniface Ramsey, series editor

This volume contains three books: Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions (De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus), Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician (Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus), and Eight Questions of Dulcitius (De octo Dulcitiis quaestionibus).

Volume I/12  Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-277-7, 6 x 9 in., 301 pp., 2008

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)
The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Miscellany of Eighty-three Questions

Revisions I, 26

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>John</th>
<th>Romans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
<th>Ephesians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
**Responses to Miscellaneous Questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Philippians</strong></td>
<td><strong>Hebrews</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7  1</td>
<td>12:16  1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colossians</strong></td>
<td><strong>James</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-15  1</td>
<td>2:20  1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Miscellany of Eighty-three Questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Philippians</strong></td>
<td><strong>Hebrews</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7  1</td>
<td>12:16  1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colossians</strong></td>
<td><strong>James</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-15  1</td>
<td>2:20  1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Old Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Books</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:31 LI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9 LXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:19 LXV, LXVII, 3; LXVIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:7 LII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46:27 LXXX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>13:4 LX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:8 LXXV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:5 LXXV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12 LXVI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:7 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51:11 LXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>63:8 XLV, 1; LXVI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65:2 LXXX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>73:28 LIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>96:6 LIXIX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:1 LXVIII, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>118:8-9 LXIX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>123:2 LXIX, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>141:5 LXIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>5:19 LXXI, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:24 LXX LI, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>1:2-3 LXVII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>6:8 LV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:1 LXVIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:1 LIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:15-18 LIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:8-9 XLV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>1:14 XXXVI, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Books</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>3:12 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9 LXXXI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:13 LXIX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53:3 LXIV, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>1:5 LXVIII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>5:8 LXVIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:16 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:43 LII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:44 LIII, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:2 LB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:9 LXIX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:1 LXXI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:22 LXXI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:23 LXV; LXVI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:24 LXXVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:26 LXXVI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:12 LXVII, 3; LXI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:15 LXXV, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:9 LVIII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:12 LIII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:14 LVIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:16 LXI, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:12 LXVIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:37 XXXV, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:13 LXI, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:36 LIX; 3; LX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:1 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:1-13 LIX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:3 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:4 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:5 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:6 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:7 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:8 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:9 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:10 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:11 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:12 LIX, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/12**
## Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>25:13 LIX, 3; LXXIX, 3; LXVII, 6; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>2:14 XXVII; 3:6 LXXIX, 3; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:46 LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:20 LXXIX, 3; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:12 LIII, 4; LXXIX, 3; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:8 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:42 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:27 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1 LXIII, LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:3 LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:4 XXXIX; LXIX, 3; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:10 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:14 LXIX, 1; LXXIX, 3; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:30 LXVI, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:9 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:10 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:11 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:11-12 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:12 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:13 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:13-14 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15-16 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:16 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:17 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:17-18 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:18 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:19-20 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:25 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:34 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:46 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:44 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:39 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:31-32 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:40 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:10 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:18 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:30 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:34 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:39 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:44 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:35 LXII, 4; LXIX, 1; LXXVI, 4; LXXVII, 2; LXXIX, 3; LXXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

8:17 LXVII, 2
8:18 LXVII; LXVII, 2
8:19 LXVII, 2
8:20 LXVII, 3; LXVII, 4
8:21 LXVII, 1; LXVII, 4
8:22 LXVII, 5
8:22-23 LXVII, 6
8:23 LXVII, 6
8:23.22 LXVII, 6
8:24 LXVII; LXVII, 6
8:35 LXIV, 7
9:13 LXVIII, 6
9:16 LXVIII, 5
9:18-19 LXVIII, 1
9:20 LXVIII; LXVIII, 1; LXVIII, 2
9:20-21 LXVIII, 3
9:21 LXVIII, 3
9:22 LXVIII, 4
9:23 LXVIII, 4

1 Corinthians
2:6 LXVIII, 3
2:11 LI, 4; LXIV, 3
2:12 LXVIII, 2
2:15 LXVIII, 2
3:1-2 LIII, 4
3:2-23 LVII, 1
4:3 LIX, 3
4:7 LXIX, 7
5:7 LXVIII, 3
6:11 LXXVI, 2
6:9-11 LXXVI, 2
7:10-11 LXXXIII
7:11 LXXXIII
7:12 LXXXIII
7:12-13 LXXXIII
8:11 LXXI, 7
9:22 LXXI, 4
10:7 LXIV, 3
10:11 LVII, 2
11:3 LVII, 1
12:3 LXII
12:12 LXIX, 10
12:27 LXIX, 10
12:30 LXIX, 4
13:10 LXV, 1
14:12 LXV
14:20 LXVI, 5
15:20 LXIX, 2
15:21-28 LXIX, 2
15:23-24 LXIX, 7
15:24 LXIX, 3; LXIX, 9
15:25 LXIX, 3
15:26 LXIX, 6
15:26-27 LXIX, 6
15:28 LXIX, 1
15:51 LX, 3
15:54-56 LXX
15:55 LXVII, 6; LXX

15:56 LXX

2 Corinthians
2:16 XXVII
4:16 LI, 1; LXIV, 2
5:5 LI, 4
5:7 LI, 7
11:2 LIX, 4

Galatians
3:16 LXXIX, 10
3:23 LXXI, 7
3:28-29 LXXIX, 10
5:6 LXXVI, 2
5:17 LXX
5:19-21 LXXVI, 2
5:21 LXXVI, 2
6:2 LXXI, 1
6:4 LXXXIII, 2
6:14 LXXV, 3

Ephesians
2:2 LXXIX, 2
4:8 LXXXIII, 2

Philippians
2:3 LXXI, 5
2:4 LXXI, 3
2:5 LXXI, 3
2:6 LXXI, 1
2:7 LXXI, 1; LXXXIII, 2
2:8 LXXXIII, 2
3:13-14, 16 LXXI, 7

Colossians
1:14-15 LXXXIV
3:2 XXIX

1 Thessalonians
5:2 LIX, 3
5:23 LI, 4

1 Timothy
1:8 LXVI, 4

Titus
1:2 LXXII

Hebrews
3:14 LXI, 5
9:17 LXXV, 1
12:6 LXXXIII, 3

James
5:12 LXXXIII, 3

Volume I/12
Volume I/12

1 Peter
1:24  LXI, 3

1 John
3:2   LXVII, 2; LXXV, 1; LXXXI, 2

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions

Aaron, LXI,2
Abel, LVIII,2
Abraham, LVIII,2; LXI,2; LXV; LXVII,5, 7; LXIX,10; LXXVI,1
accident, XXIV
actions
See also deeds; free choice; habit; vices; virtues
acting rightly, XXIV
divine, XXIV; LXII
and free choice, XXIV
For I do not do what I want, but I do what I hate,
LXVI,5
knowledge and, LVIII,2
and perfection, LVII,2
service, LXXXI,1
Acts of the Apostles, LXXIX,4
Adam, LVIII,2; LV; LXVI,5–6; LXIX,2
See also Fall; sin
adolescence, See ages of human existence
adoption, LXVII,2, 6
adulation; See flattery; praise
adultery, LXVI,1; LXXVI,2; LXXXIII
the Samaritan woman, LXIV
adulthood (maturity). See ages of human existence, below
ages, two, Christ as symbolizing, LXXXI,3
ages of human existence, XLIV; LI,3;
LXVII,1–2; LXVII,2, 7
See also time
allegory, LXI,1; LXV
amor, XXXV,2–XXXVI,1
angels, LX; LXVII,7; LXX; LXXX,3
angelic bodies, XLVII
angelic life, LXI,3
of error, LI,2
highest, LXVII,5
anger, XII; LI; LXXI,2; LXXX,3
See also enemies; hatred
animals, XXX; XXXVI,1; XXXIX; L;
LXVII,5
See also specific animals
bodies of, LXXVIII; LXXX,1
fleshy or animal person, LXVII,3;
LXVII,5
humans as differentiated from, VII; XIII;
LI; LXXX
two-footed, LXXVII
whether an irrational animal can be blessed, V
Anna, LXII
anointing, holy, LXI,2
See also baptism
anxiety, XXXIII
See also fear
apocryphal writing, LI,1
the Apollinarians, LXXX
apostles, XXXVI,1
See also, disciples; individual names; specific topics and events
Arianism, LXIX,1
the ark. See Noah
art, LXXVIII
ascension of Christ, LVI,2; LXII; LXXXI,2
assumption of humanity, Christ's. See Jesus
Christ: assumption of humanity
astrology, XLV
authority
See also law; power
of religion, XXXVI,1

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

avarice. See covetousness; greed

Babylon, LVIII,2
bad person/people
See also evil; sin; wickedness
providence by means of, XXVII
baptism, XXXVI,1; XLIX; LVII,2; LXI,2
See also conversion; John the Baptist;
regeneration; sacraments
Jesus as baptizing more than John, LXII
barley, LXI,1, 4
bearing one another’s burdens, LXXI
beasts. See animals
beatitude, LXIX,10; LXXXII,3
beauty, XXIII; XLIV
the body and, LXV,1
goodness and, XXX
highest, XLIV
of images, LXXVIII
intelligible, XXX
and numbers, LXXVIII
order and, LXXVIII
the soul and, XLV,1
temporal, XLV
of virtue, XXXVI,1
being. See creation; existence; reality
belief
See also faith
believable things, XLVIII
service and, LXXXI,1
and understanding, XLVIII; LXXXII,2
Bible. See scripture, sacred
birds, LXXXIV
eggs, LXXXIV
birth
See also rebirth
him who has always been born, XXXVII
and our will, LXXXI,4
the virgin birth, LVII,3
blessedness; blessed life, XLV,2
being completely happy or blessed,
LXXXIV.
and being wretched, XXXV
whether an irrational animal can be
blessed, V
blindness, XII; LXVIII,5
boastfulness. See pride
body, LXXXIII,1; LXXXI,1
See also corpse; death; flesh; resurrection
of the body; specific topics, e.g.,
health; senses
angelic, XLVII
beauty in, XLV,1
change and, LIV
creation and, LXVII,1, 5
as creature, LXVII,2
ethereal, XLVII
God’s own substance vs., LII
human vs. animal, LII
immutable, XLVII
life and, LIV
members of, LXXIX,10
numbers and, LVII,1–2
perfect, immortal, LVII,1
reason and, XXX
sacrament enacted in, LVII,2
and soul, VII; XLVII; LI; LIV; LVII,1
universe as bodily, XXIX
whether God has a body, LXXX,3
whether it comes from God, X
body of Christ, LXIX,10
See also Church
the Temple and, LVI
boldness, XXXI,1
See also courage
born. See birth; rebirth
bread
See also eucharist; loaves
breaking of, LXXI,3
bride and bridegroom, LI
See also marriage
children of the bridegroom, LXXXV,1
burdens: Bear one another’s burdens, LXXI
calling, LXV; LVIII
charity. See charity
Catholic faith, LXIX,1, 4; LXIX,1; LVII,7;
LXVIII,1; LXXI,4
See also Christianity; Church; specific
topics
cattle; cows, LXVII,5
golden, LXVII,4
sacrifice of, LXVII
chance, XXIV
and foretelling the future, XLV
change, IX; XXXIX; LXVI,2
See also motion; time
and the body, LIV
and eternity, XIX
good and, XXIV
habitus, LXIX,1
and ideas, XLVII,1
the mind and, XLV,1
and regret, LII
and the senses, IX
the soul and, LIV
and taking something into oneself,
XXXIX
time and, XIX
and truth, XLV,1
and the unchangeable, XIX; LXVII,1;
LIV; LXII; LXVII,7; LXXXIII,2–3;
LXXVIII
We shall all arise, but we shall not all be
changed, LXXI,3

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

the cross, XXV; LXXI,2
cupidity, XXXV,1
curiosity, LXVIII
See also knowledge: questions
custom; customary law, XXXI,1
damnation, LXVIII,3
See also punishment
darkness, XXXVI,4; LXV,5
See also evil; sin
David, LVIII,2; LXI
death
See also corpse: resurrection of the body
the body and, LXI, LXVI
Death and life are from the Lord God, XXI
fear of, XXV
God did not make death, XXI
as last enemy, LXIX,2, 6
law of, LXVI,1
and our will, LXX,4
preparation for, LX,3
sin and, LXVI, LXX
and the soul, LXVI,6
as swallowed up in victory, LXVII,6, LXX, LXV, LXVI,1
the wisdom of the flesh is death, LXVI,6
death of Christ. See cross
death penalty, LI, LXI
See also lying
decency, XXXI,1
deeds, XLVIII; LXV; LXXX,3
See also actions; works
good, XII; XXXI,1; XXXVI,1, 3
grace and, XXIV
and history, XLVIII
miraculous, XXXVI,3; LXXIX,3
praise and, LX,3
put to death the deeds of the flesh, LXVII,2; LXVI,2
temporal and human, XLVIII
deficiency. See evil: as deficiency in being
sinful, LXIX
dehiscent, IV
See also evil; sin
desire, LXI,1, 6; LXIV,8; LXVI,1–3, 6
See also covetousness; flesh; lust
and continence, XXXI,1
God handed over to them the desires of their hearts, LXIX,1
love; charity and, XXXV,1; XXXVI,1
passion and, LXVII
as perturbation, LXVII
renouncing, LXVII,2
Satan and, LXIX,2
of sinning, LXVI,1
of spiritual vs. temporal goods, LXVI,6
See also punishment
devil, XII; LXIV,7; LXIX,8; LXXIX,2, 5
devils (demons). See demons
diet. See food
dignity, XXXI,3
dilectio, XXXV,2–XXXVI,1
See also love
disciples, LVII,2; LXI,3; LXIX,9
See also apostles; individual names
specific topics and events
discipline: the number ten, LXXXI,1
discipline (correction), LIII,2; LXXIX,1
See also punishment
Whom the Lord loves he corrects, LXXXII
disobedience, children of, LXXI,2
disorder, XXVII
disposition, natural human, XXXVIII
divine providence, See providence, divine
doctors, LXXIII,3
dogs, LII,3, 3; LXVIII,1
dough, LXVIII,3
dove, XLIII
drunkenness, LXVII,2
eys, XXXIX
See also senses
of God, LI
earth
See also creation; world
the earthly, XXXVI,1; LV; LXVIII,3
earthly person, XXXVI,2; LXVIII,2
as elements, LXV
education, XXXV
See also teaching
the effeminate, LXXVI,2
effeminate, LXXVI,2
effeminate, LXXVI
eggs, LXIV
Egypt, LXI,2; LXVIII,5
gold and silver taken by Israel, LII
eight, the number, LV–LVI
eighty concubines, LV
elements, LXXVIII
the four, LXV
Elijah, LVIII,3
Elizabeth, LVIII,3; LXI,2
emotions, IX; XII; LI, LXXX,3
end:
Christ as, LXIX,7
infinity, XXXII
of the world/ages, LVII,2; LXV,2; LXIX,1
enemy; enemies:
death as, LXIX,2, 6

Volume I/12
deceiving, LIII,1, 4
enmities, LXXVI,2
he must reign until he puts all his enemies under his feet, LXIX,5–7
love for, LIII,4
Satan as the enemy, LXI,2
enjoyment
See also happiness; joy; pleasure of God, XXX
usefulness and, XXX
envy, LXXVI,2
See also jealousy
epistles of Paul, LXVI–LXXV
Epistle to the Romans. See Romans, Epistle
to
equality, II
creation and, XL1
and image, LXXIV
and likeness, LXXIV of the Son, I; LXIX; LXXI,3; LXXIII,2
equal return, XXXI,1
error, LXI,5; LXI,7; LXXIX,3
See also heresy; sin angels of, LIII,2
disguised by the name “Christian,” LXIX,1
Those who call you happy are leading you into error, LXI,3
Esau, LIII,2
eternal life, XXVII, 2; LXIV,5, 7; LXXIX,3; LXXX,2; LXXXII,3
See also heaven; immortality
eternal times, LXXII
eternity; the eternal, XIX; XXII; LXXXI,3; LXXXII
See also under change: the unchangeable
God as creator of, XXII
God as eternal, XXII
and immortality, XIX
and the mind, XXXV,2
that which is eternal, XXXV,2
ethereal body, XLVII
eucharist; LXI
See also sacraments evangelists, LXXX
See also John; Luke; Matthew
evil; VI; LXVI,6
See also devil; free choice; sin; wickedness
as deficiency in being or non-existence,
VI; XXII; LXVI,6
fear of, XXXVII
God and, XI
and God’s causality, III
humankind and, III–IV
left side, LVII; LXXXII,3
root of all, XXXV,1; XXXVI,1
will and, III–IV
evil spirits. See demons
excellence
See also under specific topics, e.g., God:
the most excellent of all things, XXXV,2
and spiritual things, XXXVIII; LXVIII,6
See also creation; humankind; life; reality of God, I; I
goodness and, VI; XXIV
and ideas, XLVI,2
life and, LI,2
and non-existence, VI; XXII; LXVI,6
eyes, XXXIX; XLIII; XLVII, I; LI, IX, 3;
LXIV; LXVI,3; LXVII, 5
See also blindness; senses; vision of God, II; LI, X
interior eye, LXI,2
Our eyes are on the Lord God until he have mercy on us, LXIX,5
faith, LXI,2, LXIX,9
See also belief; Christianity and the calling, LXVIII
the Church and, LXXXI,2
grace and, LXVIII,3
and the law, LXVI,1
living by, LXXXI,1
and merit, LXVIII,3; LXXXI,1
righteousness and, LXVII,1
and works, LXVII
the Fall, XXX
See also Adam: sin falsehoods. See deceit; lying false prophets, LXXXI,3
family, LXXX
See also children; generations:
parents and children, LXVIII,2
piety and, XXXII,1
priestly lineage, LXI,2
the Fates, LXXXII,2
the Father
See also God; Son of God: equality of;
Trinity
and the Son, XVI; XXIII; XXXVIII
fear, XXXVII–XXXIV
of death, XXV
of God, XXXV
and love, XXXIII–XXXVI; LXXXII,1
and righteousness, LXVII,1
and sin, LXVII
things that should not be feared, XXV
female sex. See sexes, male and female; women
defy, the number, LVII,2; LXXXI
fire, LXII

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

See also elements
first fruits of the spirit, LXVII,6; LXIX,2
first man. See Adam
fish:
one hundred fifty-three, LVII; LXXXI,3
two, LXI
five, the number, LIX,2
five husbands, See Samaritan woman
five loaves, LXI
eight, the number, LXI,3
five senses. See senses
five thousand, LXI,5
flattery; flatterers, LXI,3; LXIX,4
See also praise
flesh; the fleshly, LXVI,5–6; LXXX,2
See also body; desire; senses; Word of
God (made flesh)
all flesh is grass, LXI,3
fleshly Christians, LVII,2
fleshly goods, LXVI,6
and the law, LXVI,6
and the spirit, LXX
works of, LXVI,6
Fonteius of Carthage, XII
food, XXXIX; LXXIII,1
See also bread
enjoyment of, XXX
and hunger, LXXX,3
force, IV
foresight, XXXI
foretelling the future. See future: foretelling
forms, XLVI,2; LXIV,7
fornication, LXVI,2; LXXXIII
fortitude, XXXI,1–2; LXI,4
forty, the number, LVII,1–2; LXXXI
forty-six, the number, LX
four, the number, LVII,2; LXXXI,1
four elements. See elements
four phases in a single person, LXI,7;
LXVI,3–7
four thousand, LXI,5
free choice, II; XXIV
See also actions; will
and reward/punishment, XXIV
sin and, XXIV
freedom. See free choice; liberation
friendship, XXXI,3; XXXIX; LXI
See also love; specific topics, e.g.,
gratitude
with God, XXX
fruits of the spirit, LXVII,6; LXIX,2
future, LXI,8
See also time
absence of, XVII
Church of, LXXXI,2–3
the day or the hour no one knows, LX
foretelling, XLV,2
future age, LXXXI,3
generations, LIII; LXXXI,2–3; LXI,2
See also ages of human existence
gentiles, XXVII; LVII,2; LVIII,2; LXII
gentleness, XXXI,1

gifts
See also specific gifts, e.g., healing;
righteousness
of Church’s members, LXXIX,4
God’s, LIII,2; LXIV,4–5
the Holy Spirit, XLIII; LVII,2; LXIV,4–5
of the new covenant, LXXXI,1

gladness, LXI,3. See also happiness: joy

glorification, LXII; LXIV,4; LXVII,2
glory, XXXI,3; LXVII; LXXX,2
See also honor; praise
seeking, LXI,3
God, LI,1–2; LXXXI,3; LXXXI,4
See also creator; Father, Trinity; will of
God; specific topics, e.g., goodness;
justice: knowledge; mercy;
righteousness
as all in all, LXI,7
and creation, XVIII–XIX; XIX; XXVIII;
LII
enjoyment of, XXX
as eternal, XXIII
and evil, XXI
human emotions, describing in terms of,
LI
image and likeness of, LI; LXVII
inheritance of, LXXXV
invisible, LXXXIV
love for, XXXVII; XXXVI,4; LXVII,4
man as talking back to, LXVIII
members of, LXXX,3
nature of, XXX
as not subject to necessity, XXII; LXXX,4
omnipotence of, LXXXII,2–3
place of, XX
power of, LI
presence of, XII; LXI,3; LXXXI,3
gold, XXXVII,1; LIII
golden cows, LXIV,4
good; goodness, XXIII; LXXXI,3
See also free choice; righteousness; virtues
and beauty, XXX
and being/existence, V; XXIV
and change, XXIV
enjoyment of good things, XXX
and free choice, II
as from God, X
God as primordially good, LI,1
God vs. worldly, XXXVII,2
and the good, XXIII
highest, XXI; XXIV
knowing and loving, XXXV,2
and modality. VI
people who are good, XXXVI,3
power of the wicked over the good,
LXXIX,5
right side, LVII
and usefulness, XXX–XXXI
good deeds/works. See deeds; works
good will, XXVII; LXVIII,5; LXX

gospel. LVIII,1
See also New Testament; specific authors,
e.g., Matthew; specific topics and events
grace. LXI,7; LXVI; LXVIII
and acting rightly, XXIV
faith and, LXVIII,3; LXVI,1
and four phases of life, LXI,7; LXVI,3–7
and the law, LXVI,1
liberation by, LXVI
and merit/works, LXVIII,3; LXXVI,1
onset of, LXVI,1
seven loaves and, LXI,4
grandeur, XXXI,3
See also power
grateful, XXXI,3
See also covetousness
greed
See also covetousness
the avaricious, LXVII; LXVIII,2
and charity, XXXVI,1; XXXV; LXXVI,1;
LXVI,1; LXVII,2
for honor or praise, XXXVI,3–4

habits, XXIX; XXXVI; LXVIII; LXVI,3
of not sinning, XXXVI,1
habitus, LXVIII
happiness, V; XXXV; LXVII,7; LXVI,2
See also enjoyment; joy; pleasure
complete, LXIV
and fear, XXIV
Those who call you happy are leading you to error, LXX,3
unhappiness, XXX
hardening of the heart, LXVIII
hate; hatred
See also enemies
and clemency, XXXI,1
For I do not do what I want, but I do what I hate, LXVI,5
No one ever hates his own flesh, XXXVI
health; healing, XXX; LXIII,1; LXVIII,3
See also physicians; sickness
gift of, LXIX,4
hearing. See ears; senses
heart
hardening of, LXVIII
pure, LXI,3; LXVIII,3

heaven
See also eternal life; fifty, the number
the heavenly, XXXVI,1
the heavenly person, XXXVI,2; LXVIII,2
heavenly Jerusalem. See Jerusalem, heavenly hell. See damnation; free choice; punishment
heresy; heretics, LXVII,7; LXVIII,1;
LXVI,2; LXVIII,4; LXXX; LXXXI,3
See also error; schism
history, XXXVI,1; XLVIII
holiness
of the Church, LXI,7; LXII
Holy Spirit, LXIV,2; LXXXI,2
See also gifts; Trinity
dove, appearing as, XLIII
and human spirit, LI,4
perfection by, LXVII,2; LXVIII,3
pre-and post-resurrection, LXII; LXIV,7
sevenfold working of, LXI,4
homosexual acts, LXVI,2
honour, XXX
See also glory; praise
greed for, XXXVI,3–4
hope, LXIV,2; LXVII,3, 6
it is good to hope in the Lord rather than to hope in princes, LXIX,4
and salvation, LXVII
humanity, Christ’s assumption of
See Incarnation; Jesus Christ: assumption of humanity

humankind, LII
See also new person; old person; specific topics, e.g., life; mind; mortality; soul; sin
animals, as differentiated from, VI; XIII; LI,3; LXXX
and creation, LXVII; LXVII,5
as evil, III–IV
and the four phases of life, LXI,7;
LXVI,3–7
God as regretting having made, LII
as image and likeness of God, LI
inner and outer person, LI
and life, LI,3
natural disposition, virtue and tranquility, XXXVIII
nature, upbringing and habit, XXXVIII
providence and, XLIII; XLIX; LXVIII,2
six ages of, LXI,7; XLIV; LIII,1;
LXVIII,1–2; LXVI,2, 7
as talking back to God, LXVIII
whether everything has been created for use of, XXX
human nature, XXXVIII
humility, LXIV,3; LXIX,9; LXXI,5; LXXX,2
hunger, LXIX,3
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

See also food
husbands
See also bride and bridegroom; marriage; Samaritan woman and the law, LXVI,1–2
hypocrisy, XXXVI,1,3

ideas, XLVI
idolatry, LXIV,4; LXXVI,2
ignorance, XXVI
illness. See sickness
image of God:
  image of the invisible God, LXXIV
  and likeness of God, LI; LI,4; LXVII
loss of, LXVII,4
  the Son and, LI; LXIX,1
images:
  beauty of, LXXVIII
  experiencing even when not present to our senses, IX
false, IX
immortality, XIX; LVII,1; LXVI,3; LXIX,6; LXXIII,2–3
See also eternal life; eternity
perfect and immortal body and soul, LVII,1
the Incarnation, XLI–XLIV; LVII,1; LXIX,9
See also under Jesus Christ: assumption of humanity
as sacrament, LVII,2
infancy, LXI,5
See also ages of human existence
infinitude, XXXII
inheritance of God, LXXV
injustice, LXXII
See also justice
the inner person, XXXVI,1; LI; LXIV,2
intellect; intelligence, XXVIII,1
See also knowledge; mind; rational soul; thoughts; wisdom
divine, XLVI,2
prudence and, XXXI
and the rational soul, XLVI,2
and reason, XII
truth and, IX
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
invisible God, image of, LXXIV
invisible things, XXX, LXXXI,1
irrational beings, V; XXX; LIII,2
Isaac, LVIII,2
Israel, LXXV,5
See also Jews
children of, XLIX
taking gold and silver from Egyptians, LIII
Jacob, LVIII,2
James, LXXVI,1–2
jealousy, LI; LXXVI,2
Jerusalem, heavenly, LXI,2, 7
Jerusalem, temporal, LXI,3
Jesus Christ
See also ascension; cross; Incarnation;
resurrection of Christ; Son of God;
Trinity; wisdom of God; Word of God; specific topics, e.g., baptism;
truth
assumption of humanity, XI; XXV;
LXVII; LXV; LXIX,1–2, 10;
LXI,4; LXXIII,2; LXVII,2;
LXXIX,5; LXXXI,2–3
body and soul of, LXXXV,3–4
body of, XIV
as born of woman, XI
as both divine and human, LXXX
as both in his mother's womb and in heaven, XLI
boycott of, LXXV,2
coming of (re, six ages of human race), XLIV; LVII,2; LXIV,2
as the end, LXIX,7
 glorification of, LXII
as head of a man, LVII,1; LXIV,7
the head of Christ is God, LVII,1; LXIV,7
as king, LXI,2
as lacking ignorance, LXV
as not knowing the day and the hour, LX
passion of, LXIX,9; LXXXI,3
as priest, LXI
reign of, LXIX
risen, LXV,2; LXIX,1; LXXXI,2
second coming of, LXIX,8
as second man, LI,1
temptation of, LXI,2
two ages, as symbolizing, LXXXI,3
Jews, XXVI; XVII; LXXVII; LXII; LXVII; LXI,3
See also Israel; specific topics, e.g., law
Job, LXXIX,5
John, gospel of, LXII–LXV
John the Baptist, LVIII; LXII
John the evangelist, LXIV,4; LXXII,2–3
Joseph (husband of Mary), LXI,2
Joseph (Old Testament), LVIII,2; LXVII,5
joy, LIX,3; LXXIX,1; LXXXI,3; LXXVII,1;
LXXXII,2
See also enjoyment; happiness; pleasure
God's, LXXXI,3
Judah (tribe), LXI,2
judgment
and following God's will, LXXIX,5
judging others, LXVI,5–6
reason and, XXX

Volume I/12
The spiritual person judges all things, but he himself is judged by no one, LXVIII,2
jug, LXIV,8
justice, II; XXX–XXXI; LI,2–4; LXI,4; LXII; LXVII,3; LXVIII,3; LXXXII,3
See also law; punishment; reward
love and, XXXI
when God is thought to be unjust, LXXXII
kingship, LXI,2–4
knowledge, XXXV,1–2
See also curiosity; intellect; questions; thought; truth; understanding; wisdom
action and, LVIII,2
the day or the hour no one knows, LX
God as knowing also when he causes someone to know, LX
God’s, XVII
human life and, LVIII,2
humans as not given what it would not be worthwhile for them to know, LX
I do not know you, LX
as incomplete in this life, LXV
and love, XXXV,2
and merit, LXVIII,3
the mind and, XXXV,2
numbers and, LV
and possession, XXXV,1
and prudence, XXXI
truth and, LIV; LXVI,5–6
and what is grasped, IX
lamps, LXI,2–3
law, LXI
See also authority; commandments; justice; Old Testament; works customary, XXXI,1
faith and, LXVII,1
the five barley-loaves as signifying, LXI
and the flesh, LXVI,6
and four phases of life, LXI,7; LXVI,3–5, 7
fulfillment of, LXXI
as good, LXVI,4
and good will, XXVII
grace and, LXVI,1
as immutable, XXVII
lifelong subjection to, LXVI
of nature, XXXI,1
sin and, LXVI,1
statutory, XXXI,1
Lazarus, LXV; LXVII,7
learning, LXXIII,2
See also knowledge; teaching; wisdom
left hand/left side, LVII; LXXXI,3
Levi, tribe of, LXI,2
liberation from slavery to destruction, XI;
LXVII,7
life, LIV
See also eternal life; existence;
humankind; specific topics, e.g., necessity; time
all living things, XLVI,2
and being human, LI,3
and the body, LIV
Death and life are from the Lord God, XXI
and existence, LI,2
human, LXVIII,2
living well, XLIII
perfect, LXVII,4
and the soul, XIX; LIV
what gives life and what is given life, LIV
the wisdom of the spirit is life and peace, LXVI,6
light, XI; XXXVII; LXI,2; XLVII,3; LXVII,3; LXVIII,7; LXVIII,9; LXXII,1;
LXXXII,2
likeness, XXIII
and equality, LXXIV
and image, LXXIV
of man, LXXIII,2
likeness of God, LI,2, 4
See also God: image and likeness of distinction between image and likeness, LI,4
the Son as likeness of the Father, XXIII
living water, See Samaritan woman; water: living
loaves, LXI
logos, LXIII
the Lordly Man, XXXVII,2; LXVII,3; LXXV,2
Lord’s prayer, LXIX,4
love
See also charity; friendship
base, XXXV,1
Bear one another’s burdens, LXXI
and charity, XXXV,2
for Christ, LXI,6
for good, LIII,4
and eternity, XXXV,2
fear and, XXXIII–XXXV; LXXI,1
for God, XXXV,2; XXXVII,4; LXI,4
and justice, XXXI
and knowledge, XXXV,2
and the mind, XXXV,2
and motion, XXXV,1
for neighbor, XXXVII,4; LIII,4; LXI,4
perfect, XXXV,1–2
and possession, XXXV,1–2

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

and reason, XXXV, 2
and the soul, XXXV, 2
of this world, LXIV, 8 (see also desire)
threefold, for God, LXXXI, 1
what should be loved, XXXV
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
LXXXII
Luke, the evangelist, LXI, 2
lust, XXXIII; LXVI, 6
See also covetousness; desire
lying, LXXI, 4
See also deceit

to cover sin, LXXXVI, 1
magicians, LXXIX
magnanimity, XXXI, 1
maidens, LV
male sex. See men; sexes, male and female
malice, XXXIII; LXXIX, 5
man. See humankind
Manicheans, LXVII, 7; LXVIII, 1
manna, LXI, 2
marriage, LII; LXXXIII
See also bride and bridegroom; husbands;
Samaritan woman; wives
and jealousy, LII
and the law, LXVI, 1–2

pagan-Christian, LXXXIII
Martha, LXV
martyrs, XXXI, 2
Mary, XI; XLII; LXIII; LXI, 2; LXIX, 10
mass of sin, LXXVIII, 3
mathematics, XXXV, 1
See also numbers
mathematicians, XLV
Matthew, the evangelist, LVIII, 2; LXI, 2
maturity. See ages of human existence
medical treatment, LXXIII, 3
Melchizedek, LXI, 2
memory, XXXI
men
See also humankind; sexes, male and female
Christ as head of, LVII, 1; LXIV, 7
the head of woman is man, LVII, 1;
LXVII, 5
perfect mankind, LXI, 5
three kinds of, LVII, 2
mercy, LXVI, 3; LXVII, 3; LXVIII
and merit, LXVIII
Our eyes are on the Lord God until he
have mercy on us, LXIX, 5
vessels of, LXVIII, 3
and will, LXVIII, 5
merit
See also punishment; reward; works
faith and, LXVIII, 3; LXXXVI, 1
knowledge and, LXVIII, 3
mercy and, LXVIII
obtaining, LXVIII, 3
righteousness and, LXXVI, 1
and works, LXXVI, 1
milk, LII, 4; LVI; LXVIII, 3; LXXI, 1
mind, LXXX; LXXI, 1
See also intellect; knowledge; rational
soul; reason; thoughts;
understanding; specific topics, e.g.,
righteousness
as changeable, XLV, 1
and the eternal, XXXV, 2
and excellence, XXXV, 2
and knowledge, XXXV, 2
and love, XXXV, 2
pure, XII
soul and, VII: XLVI, 2
truth and, IX: XLIV, 1; LIV
and visible things, XLV, 1
and wisdom, XLV, 1
miracles, XXXVI, 2
as gift, LXXIX, 3
and greed for honor, LXXIV, 3
the loaves and fishes, LXI
performed by wicked spirits, LXXIX, 1
of Pharaoh’s magicians, LXXIX
visible, LXXIX, 1
modality, VI; IX
modesty, XXXI, 1, 3; LXIV, 3
mortality, LXXIII
Moses, LXI, 1; LXXIX; LXXIX, 3
See also law
mother
See also Mary
Church as, LXI, 4
motion; movement
See also change
four, the number, LVII, 2
linear, XXIX
love and, XXXV, 1
passions and, LXXX 
and place, VIII
whether the soul is moved by itself, VIII
the will and, VIII
mountains, LXI, 6
Nathan, LXI, 2
nature, XXXVIII
and justice, XXXI, 1
law of, XXXI, 1
nature, human, XXXVIII
natures: and existence, LXVIII, 6
necessity, subjection to, LXXV, 4; LXXI, 1
God and, XXII; LXXVI, 4
neighbor, LIII, 4; LXI, 4
love for, XXXVI, 4

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

of God, LII
grandeur, XXXI,3
and justice, LIII,3
princes and powers, LXIX,4, 9
of the wicked over the good, LXXIX,5
praise
See also flattery; honor
adulation, LXXI,3
and glory, XXXI,3
for good deeds, LIX,3
greed for, XXXVI,3–4
from human beings, LIX,3
prayer, LXIX,4
preaching, LVIII,1; LXIX,9
precedent, XXXI,1
pregnancy, LIX,4
conception, LVI
pregnant soul, LIX,3
presence, divine, XII; LIX,3; LXXXIX,3
the present
See also time
everything as present to God, XVII
pride, XXX; XXXVI,1, 3; LXIX,1
priesthood, LIX,2, 4
princes and powers, LXIX,4, 9
prophecy, LVIII,3
prophets, XLIV; LVIII,2; LXI,2
See also individual names
and anointing, LXI,2
false, LXXIX,3
providence, divine, XXIV; XXVII;
XXXVI,1; LIII
See also usefulness
and accident/chance, XXIV
and example, XXXVI,1
and individuals, XLIV
by means of a bad person, XXVII
and the order of things, XI; LII; LIII,2;
LXII
perfection by, XLIX
rebirth by, XLIX
and the universe, XXIV
usefulness as, XXX
and the whole human race, XLIV; XLIX;
LI,1; LXVII,2
prudence, XXXI,1; LXI,4
punishment, XXIV; LIII,1, 2–3
See also discipline; free choice; justice;
merit; suffering
death penalty, LIII,2
as deterrence from sin, XXXVI,1
case in committing sin as, LXXIX,1
hardening of the heart, LXVIII
infliction of (by humans), LIII,2
by means of a bad person, XXVII
penance, XXVI
righteous rule and, XXIV
and suffering of the wicked, XXI
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
LXXXII
purity
See also under specific topics, e.g., soul
and impurity, LXXI,2
quadragesima and quinquagesima, LXXXI
queens, LV
questions: three sorts of, XVIII
rational soul, XLVI,2; LV; LXXX,1
See also intellect; mind
reality, LV
See also existence; substances; truth
allegory and, LXV
reason, VII; XIII; XXX; LI,3; LXXX
See also knowledge; mind
and the body, XXX
and creation, XVI,2
and intellect, XII
perfected, XXX
perversion of, XXXVI,1
and virtue, XXX–XXXI
the word, LXIII
reasons: ideas and, XLVI,2
rebirth, XLIX
See also salvation
struggle with sin after, LXV; LXVI,5
recklessness, XXXI,2; XXXIV
redemption, LXXVII
See also salvation
Red Sea crossing, LXI,2
regeneration, XXXVI,2; LVII,2; LXXXI,3
See also baptism
regret, LII
reign of Christ/reign of the Father, LXIX
religion, XXXI,1; XXXVI,1; XLVI,2
See also Christianity
and superstition, XXXI,2
remission of sins, LXXIV
repentance, LXVII; LXVIII,5
reputation, XXXI,3
resurrection of Christ, LXII; LXXXI,3
risen Christ, LXVI,2; LXIX,2; LXXXI,2
resurrection of Lazarus, LXV
resurrection of the body, IX; XLVII; LXIX,3;
LXVI,7; LXIX,2, 10
revelation, divine, IX; LXI,1; LXVIII,1
revelation of the sons of God, LXVII,2
reward, XXIV; XXXVI,1; LIII,1
See also free choice; justice; merit
riches. See wealth
righteousness, LXXXI,3
See also goodness
and charity, LXVI,1

Volume I/12
Volume I/12

and correction, LXXXII
and faith/works, LXXXVI
and fear, LXVI,1
as gift, LXXVI
of God vs. human beings, XXIV; LXXXII
law of, LXVI,1
and merit, LXVI,1
the righteous person, LIX,3
sin and, LXIX,4; LXXXII,2
works of, LXXXIII,3
right hand/right side, LVII; LXXXI,3
risen body. See resurrection of the body
risen Christ, LXVI,2; LXIX,2
robbery: did not think it robbery to be equal to
God, LXXXII,3
Romans, Epistle to, LXVI–LXVIII
sabbath, LVIII,2
sacraments, XXXVI,2; XLIII; LVII,2; LIX,1;
LXIV,1
See also baptism
expression of, LXIV,1
the incarnation of Christ as, LVII,1
perversions of, LXXXII,1
of the Trinity, LVII,2
sacred scripture. See scripture, sacred
sacrifice, LXVII,6
of an afflicted spirit. XXVI
of cattle, by children of Israel, XLIX
sadness, LXI,3
See also suffering
saints, XXXVI,2; LXVII,1–2; LXXXIII,3
and the immutable body, XLVII
reign of, LVII,2
salvation, LXI,8; LXIV,8; LXVII; LXXXI,1
See also free choice; redemption;
baptism and, LXII
hope and, LXVII
numbers and, LVII,2
the scriptures and, LIII,2
the Samaritan woman, LXIV
sameness, IX
See also change
sanctification, LXVIII,6; LXX; LXVII,2
Satan. See devil
Sceva, sons of, LXXIX,4
seikhism, LXXX,4
See also error; heresy
scripture, sacred, XXXVI,1; LIII,2; LXVII,7;
LXVIII,1
See also New Testament; Old Testament;
specific topics
and salvation, LIII,2
truths presented in, LIII,2
second man, LI,1
self-respect, XXXI,1
self-restraint, LXVII,2

senses, five, IX; XXIX; LII,3; LII; LXI,1, 4;
LXIV,2, 7–8
the five barley loaves and, LXI
soul’s ascent from sensible world to God, IX
truth and, IX; LIV
service, LXXXI,1
seven, the number, LVII,3; LXI,8; LXXXI,1
sevenfold Church, LXI,8
seven loaves, LXI,4
sexes, male and female, XI
sexual behavior, LXVII,2
sickness, LXXXII,3
See also health; physicians
signs, LXVII,5
See also miracles
silver, LIII
Simeon, LXII
sin, LXV
See also Adam; error; evil; Fall; free
choice; punishment; redemption;
repentance, vices; wickedness
abortion of, LXI
creation and, LXVII
and death, LXV: LXIX
different kinds of, XXVI
case in committing, LXXIX,1
and error, LXVIII,3
fear and, LXXVII
and four phases of life, LXI,7; LXVI,3–7
and free choice, LXIV
I do not do what I want, but I do what I
hate, LXVI,5
image as lost because of, LXVII
and the law, LXVI; LXX
mass of, LXVIII,3
pardonable, XXVI
and punishment, XXIV
and rebirth, LXV; LXVI,5
remission of, LXXIV
and righteousness, LXIX,4; LXXXII,2
secret sinfulness, XXXVII,3
from sin he condemned sin in the flesh,
LXVI,6
and slavery, LXVI,5–6
and the soul, LXVI,1
and suffering, XXVII
and transgression, LXV,1–2, 5
truth and, LXVII,3
universal, LXXIII,4
and the will, LXVII,2–3, 3
six, the number, LV–LVI; LVII,3; LXVIII,2;
LXIV,2
six ages of human existence, XLIV; LIII;
LXVIII,2; LXIV,2, 7
See also specific ages, e.g., old age; youth
sixty queens, LV
slavery, LXVII,4

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

to destruction, XI; LXVII,7
sold under sin, LXVI,5–6
sleep, IX; LXI,3
Solomon, LXI,2; LXXI,1
Son of God, XVI; XXIII
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity
appearing as man, XLIII
equality of, L; LXIX; LXI,3; LXXIII,2
everything as made through, LXIX,1
the Father and, XXIII; XXXVIII
image of God, LI; LXIX,1
and sons of God, LXVII
subjected to the one who has subjected
everything to him, LXIX
sons of God, LXVII
imperfect, LXVIII,2
sorcery, LXVI,2
sorrow, XXXIII; LXXXI,2
See also suffering
soul, LXXX; LXXXI,1
See also body; and soul; rational soul; spirit; specific topics, e.g., emotions;
rebirth; virtues
ascend from sensible world to God, IX
beatitude and, LXXXII,3
beauty in, XLV,1
change and, LIV
conformation of, XXXVIII
conversion of, XXXVI
creation and, LXVII,1, 5
as creature, LXVII,2
dearth and, LXVI,6
and ethereal body, XLVII
fear and, XXXIII
God as superior to every soul, LIV
habits of, XXXI,1
immortal, LVII,1
and the law, LXVI,1
life and, XIX; LIV
love and, XXXV,2
and mind, VII; XLVII,2
and movement/motion, VIII
My soul has clung to you, XLV,1
one nature of, XL
part by which it excels, XLVI,2
perfect, LVII,1
powers of individual souls, LXXIX
pregnant, LIX,3
pure, XX; XLVI,1; LXI,3
sin and, LXVI,1
teaching and, LXXXIII,1
truth and, I
virtue and, XXXI,1
visage, XLVI,2
what the soul should be called in ensouled
beings, VII
whether God has a soul, LXXX,3
whether the soul exists of itself, I
whether the soul is moved by itself,
VIII
the will and, VII; XXVII; XL
space, XX; LXVII
See also universe
species, VI; X; XXIII; XLVI,2
spirit
See also first fruits of the spirit
afflicted, sacrifice of, XXVI
flesh vs., LXX
God as superior to every created spirit,
LIV
human, LI,4
truth and, LXVII,6
Spirit, Holy. See Holy Spirit
spirits:
creation and, LXVII,1, 5
unclean or wicked (see demons)
spiritual things, XXIX; XXXVI; LXVII,1
stags, LXXI,1
stars, IX; XLV,2
statutory law, XXXI,1
stubbornness, XXXI,2
substance, XXXIII–XXV; XXXVIII; XLVII;
LI,4; LXI; LXVI,6–7; LXIX,1–2
civil and, LXVI,6
suffering, LXVII
See also punishment; tribulation
all creation groans and is in pain,
LXVII,5–6
creatures and, LXVII,2
passion and, LXXVII
sin and, XXVII
tribulation, XXVII
Whom the Lord loves he corrects,
LXXXII
of the wicked, XXI
sun, IX; LXVII,5
superstition, XXXI,2; LXIV,7
swine, LXVIII,1
symbolism. See specific topics
talkativeness, LXI,2
talking back to God, LXVIII
taste. See senses
teachers; teaching, LXIV,3; LXXXIII,1
education, XXXV,1
temperance, XXX; XXXI,2; LXVII,2
the Temple in Jerusalem, LVI
forty-six years building, LVI
the temple of God, XX
temporality; temporal things, XXIII
See also desire; world
temptation of Christ, LXXI,2
ten, the number, LV; LVII,1; LXXXI,1
ten virgins, LI

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

water
See also baptism; Samaritan woman
living, LXIV,4
spiritual, LXIV,7
weakness, LXI,5
bearing one another’s burdens, LXXI,2
of the flesh, LXIV,3
and sin, XXVI
wealth, XXXV,1
See also gold
the well. See Samaritan woman
wickedness, XXIII
See also evil; sin
power of the wicked over the good,
LXXIX,5
providence by means of a bad person,
XXVII
and sin, XXVI
wicked spirits. See demons
will
See also free choice; necessity; specific
topics, e.g., conversion
cause of evil in, III–IV
change of, XL
and divine action, XXIV
mercy and, LXVII,5
sin and, LXVII,2–3
soul and, VIII; XXVII; XL
will of God, III; VIII; XXVIII; LXVIII,1, 4;
LXXX,4
wisdom, III; XXIII; LI,2–3; LXXIII,1, 2;
LXXXI,3
See also intellect; knowledge
beginning of, XXXVI,1, 4
and change, LXXII,1
completion of, XXXVI,4
discipline of wisdom, purpose of,
LXXXI,1
the mind and, XLV,1
We speak wisdom among the perfect,
LXVIII,3
the wisdom of the flesh is death, LXVI,6
wisdom of God, XVI; XXIII; XXV; LXII
and universe, law of, LXXIX,1
wives
See also bride and bridegroom; marriage
husbands’ love for, XXXVI
and the law, LXVI,1–2
women
See also sexes, male and female
and children, LXI,5, 8
Christ as born of woman, XI
the head of woman is man, LVII,1;
LXVII,5
Word of God, LXI,2; LXII–LXIII; LXI,3;
LXXV,2; LXXX,1–2
See also Jesus Christ; scripture, sacred
logos, LXIII
made flesh, LXIII,2–3; LXXX,2
words, XLIII
works, LIX,2–3
See also action; deeds; law; merit
faith and, LXXVI
merit and, LXVII,1
righteousness and, LXVII,1
world, XXVIII
See also creation; earth; forty, the
number; universe
divine action and, XXIV
end of, LVII,2; LVIII,2; LIX,2
love of (desire), LXIV,8
renouncing, LXXV,3
world, love of. See desire

yeast, LXVIII,3
youth, XLIV; LVIII,1
See also six ages of human existence
Christ as coming during youth of human
race, XLIV

Zechariah, LXII
zodiac, XLV,2

Volume I/12
Index from
To Simplicianus, on Various Questions
(Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus)

Included in book:
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

Translation, introduction, and notes by Boniface Ramsey, Raymond Canning, editor, Boniface Ramsey, series editor

This volume contains three books: Miscellany of Eighty-Three Questions (De diversis quaestionibus octoginta tribus), Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician (Ad Simplicianum de diversis quaestionibus), and Eight Questions of Dulcitius (De octo Dulcitii quaestionibus).

Volume I/12
Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-277-7, 6 x 9 in., 301 pp., 2008

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Volume I/12

**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

**Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician**

**Revisions II, 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td>Romans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>6:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td>7:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>7:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td>7:24-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>9:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>9:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Predestination of the Saints 4, 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>9:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>9:29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Letter 37, to Simplician**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14,13,15,17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15-16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Responses to Miscellaneous Questions**
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

55:19 II, 2, 5
82:1 II, 2, 3
84:10 I, 1, 10

Wisdom
1:7 II, 1, 5
7:24 II, 1, 1
9:15 I, 1, 13
11:24 I, 2, 8

Sirach
33:10-15 I, 2, 20
33:11 I, 2, 20
33:12 I, 2, 20
33:13-14 I, 2, 20
33:14 I, 2, 20
33:15 I, 2, 20
33:16 I, 2, 20
33:17 I, 2, 20

Jeremiah
23:24 II, 1, 5

New Testament

Matthew
5:6 I, 2, 16
7:22 II, 1, 9
7:23 II, 1, 9
11:30 I, 2, 19
16:17 II, 1, 3
16:23 II, 1, 3
20:16 I, 2, 10; I, 2, 13
25:12 I, 1, 8

Luke
1:6 I, 1, 15
2:14 I, 2, 10
18:13 II, 3, 4
22:31 II, 1, 4
23:43 I, 2, 19

John
1:11 I, 2, 18
1:12 I, 2, 19
1:17 I, 1, 17
1:48 I, 2, 14
1:49 I, 2, 14
3:5 I, 2, 2
3:36 II, 2, 2
8:47 I, 2, 18
13:35 II, 1, 9
19:11 II, 1, 4

Acts of the Apostles
7:55 II, 1, 5

Romans
1:18 II, 2, 2
4:4 I, 2, 3
4:15 I, 1, 3
5:5 I, 1, 17
5:14 I, 1, 4
5:20 I, 1, 15
1:24 I, 1, 15; I, 1, 17
7:5-6 I, 1, 15
7:6 I, 1, 1
7:7 I, 1, 1
7:8 I, 1, 4
7:9 I, 1, 4
7:9-10 I, 1, 4
7:10 I, 1, 4
7:11 I, 1, 5
7:12 I, 1, 6
7:13 I, 1, 6
7:14 I, 1, 7
7:15 I, 1, 8
7:16 I, 1, 9
7:17 I, 1, 9
7:18 I, 1, 10; I, 1, 11
7:21 I, 1, 1; I, 1, 12
7:22 I, 1, 13
7:23 I, 1, 13
7:24-25 I, 1, 1, I, 1, 14
8:16 II, 1, 5
8:26 II, 1, 5
8:33 I, 2, 6; II, 3, 5
9:9 I, 2, 3
9:10 I, 2, 3
9:10-11 I, 2, 1
9:11 I, 2, 4
9:11-12 I, 2, 3
9:12 I, 2, 4
9:13 I, 2, 4
9:14 I, 2, 9
9:15 I, 2, 9
9:16 I, 2, 10
9:17 I, 2, 15
9:18 I, 1, 15; I, 2, 15
9:19 I, 2, 15
9:20 I, 2, 16
9:20-21 I, 2, 17
9:21 I, 2, 20
9:22 I, 2, 18
9:23 I, 2, 18
9:24 I, 2, 19
9:25-26 I, 2, 19
9:27 I, 2, 19
9:28 I, 2, 19
9:29 I, 2, 1; I, 2, 19
10:8-10 I, 2, 19
10:14 I, 2, 7
11:5 I, 2, 22
11:5-7 I, 2, 19
11:33 I, 2, 16; I, 2, 22

Volume I/12
### Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:8-9</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>II, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>II, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>I, 1, 7; I, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>II, 2, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>I, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-11</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>II, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29-30</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>II, 1, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>II, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>I, 2, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>I, 1, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>I, 1, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>I, 1, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>II, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Galatians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 2, 21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ephesians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>I, 2, 3; I, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Philippians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>I, 2, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Timothy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>I, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>I, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Timothy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>I, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/12

General Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician

Abraham, I,2,3
actions: I do not do what I want, but I do what I hate, I,1,8; I,1,11
actors, I,2,22
Adam, I,1,4; I,2,16–17; I,2,19–20
adultery, I,1,17
Ahabs, King, II,6
almsgiving, I,2,2
angels, I,2,2; II,1,8; II,3,2–3; II,6
anger, I,2,16; II,2
animal persons, I,2,17
animals, II,1,2
See also specific animals
ark of the covenant, II,4,4
ass; donkey, II,2,2
astrology, I,2,3
Baal, II,1,7
Balaam, II,1,2: II,1,9
baptism, I,2,2; II,1,5; II,1,10
beasts. See animals
beauty, I,2,20

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician

of virtue, II,3,1
belief. See faith
birthdays, I,2,3
blessed life, I,2,10; I,2,16; I,2,20–21
boastfulness
See also pride
boasting in the Lord, I,2,21
body
See also specific topics, e.g., senses
corruptible, I,1,13
soul and, I,2,17
body of Christ:
the Church, I,2,2; II,1,8
death to law through, I,1,15; I,1,17
Book of Kings, II
Caiphas, II,1,1
calling, I,2,3; I,2,6–14 passim; I,2,18
See also chosen; hardening of the will
Cana, miracle at, I,2,14
catechumens, I,2,2
Catholic faith, The Gift of Perseverance
change: human beings, changeability of,
II,1,2; II,1,6
children:
in Christ, I,1,7; I,2,17
of God, I,2,19; II,1,5
of the promise, I,2,3
choice. See chosen (below); free choice
the chosen, I,2,4–6; I,2,10; I,2,13; I,2,19;
I,2,22; II,1,2; II,5
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christians
See also body of Christ; Church; specific
topics, e.g., grace; salvation
children in Christ, I,1,7; I,2,17
lukewarm, I,2,22
Church, I,2,2; II,1,10
See also body of Christ
clay, I,2,17
co-heirs in Christ, I,2,3
commandments, I,1,3–6; I,1,16–17
See also law
compassion, I,2,9–10
See also mercy
concupiscence. See desire; lust
condemnation, I,1,6
conversion, I,2,18; I,2,22
Cornelius, I,2,2
correction. See discipline; punishment
covetousness, I,1,2–1,4; I,1,9–10; I,1,13–17
See also desire
creation
See also earth
creator and created, I,2,17–18
order of creation, I,2,22
the cross, I,2,14; I,2,19
Cyprian, Revisions II,1,3; The Predestination
of the Saints 4,8
Daniel, II,1,1
David, II,1,4; II,1,6–7; II,4
death, I,1,1
law, sin, and, I,1,4–6; I,1,17
life after, II,3,3
deceit; deception, I,1,5; II,6
false sweetness of sin, I,1,5; I,1,7; I,1,9
demons, II,1; II,3
See also spirits
evil spirit of the Lord, II,1,1; II,1,4–6
desire, I,1,8–10
See also covetousness
devil, II,1,3–4; II,3,1–3
disciples, I,2,14
See also individual names; specific topics,
e.g., miracles
discipline: the abundance of discipline, I,2,20
See also punishment
Donatists, II,1,10
donkey, II,1,2
dreams, II,3,2
earth, II,1,15
See also creation
as good, II,1,2
Ecclesiasticus/Sirach, Book of, I,2,20
Elijah, II,4–5
effects; God’s vs. human, II,2
Epistle to the Romans. See Romans, Epistle
to
Esau, Jacob and, I,2,3–14
eternal life, I,2,2; I,2,22; II,1,8; II,1,10
See also heaven
evangelists
See also John the evangelist
the soothsaying spirit, II,3,3
evil, II,1,4
See also sin
God as making good use of, I,1,5; II,1,5
when I want to do good, evil is close at
hand, I,1,12
evil spirit of the Lord, II,1,1; II,1,4–6
excellence, I,2,8; I,2,17
faith, I,2,9; II,3,3
beginnings of, I,2,2
and evidence, I,2,21
grace and, I,1,11; I,2,2–14; I,2,19
and hardening of the will, I,2,14; I,2,18
and righteousness, I,2,7; I,2,21
and works, I,2,2; I,2,21

Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

fear:
of God, II.2,5

Work out your salvation with fear and trembling, I.2,12

the first man, I.1,4; I.2,17

flesh. See body; desire; Word made flesh

foreknowledge, I.2,5

God's, I.2,10

and regret, II.2

forgiveness, I.2,17

free choice, I.2,21

See also will

future, II.2.2

See also foreknowledge

gentiles, I.2,2; I.2,19

gift of the Holy Spirit, I.2,21; II.1,8; II.1,10–11

God

See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g., knowledge

divine vs. human qualities, II.2

plan of, I.2,6

purpose of, I.2,6; II.1

"the very thing that is called God," II.2,3

Gomorrah, I.2; I.2,19

good; goodness:

and conversion, I.2,18

and evil, working together for justice, II.1,5

God as making good use of evil, II.1,5

good does not dwell in me, I.1,10

good power to accomplish, I.1,11; I.1,14

of the law, I

when I want to do good, evil is close at hand, I.1,12

willing vs. doing, I.1,11–12

the will to accomplish good, I.1,11

good will, I.2,10–13

good works. See works

gospel, I.1,16–17; I.2,2; I.2,22; II.1,2–4; II.1,9; II.2,2; II.3,1

See also specific topics

grace, I.1,2; I.2; II.4

See also calling; chosen

beginnings of, I.1,11

and covetousness, I.1,3

and desire, I.1,9–10

and faith, I.1,11; I.2,2–14; I.2,19

and free choice of the will, Revisions II.1,2

guilt and, I.1,2

and human ability, I.1,11

and the law, I.1; I.1,6; I.1,9; I.1,11–12; I.1,15–16

love and, I.1,15

and merit, I.2,2–3

nothing good as preceding, I.2,3–14

the person who is not yet under grace, I.1,7; I.1,11–12

and rebirth, I.1,7

the remnant, I.2,19–20; I.2,22

and righteousness, I.2,22

and salvation, I.2,6; I.2,19

truth and, I.1,17

and works, I.2,2–3

guilt, I.2–5 passim; I.1,12; I.1,15; I.1,17;

I.2,21

See also sin

habit, I.1,10–11; II.1,2

hardening of the will, I.2,14–18 passim

hate; hatred:

God as hating nothing he has made, I.2,8; I.2,18

God's of Esau, I.2,8

For I do not do what I want, but I do what I hate, I.1,8; I.1,11

heaven, I.2,2; I.2,6; I.2,14; II.1,18; II.3,3

See also eternal life

and earth, II.1,15

Hebrew language, II.1,6–7

hell, II.3,3

See also punishment

heresy; heretics, I.2,22; II.1,10

See also specific groups

holiness, II.1,5

perfection of, II.2,4

Holy Spirit, II.1

See also Trinity

gift of, I.2,21; I.1,8; II.1,10–11

The letter kills, but the spirit gives life, I.1,17

humankind

See also man; persons; specific topics, e.g., grace; sin

animals, as differentiated from, II.1,2

changeability of, II.1,2; II.1,6

divine vs. human qualities, II.2

human nature, I.2,20

natures, first and second, I.1,10–11

images, II.3,2

injustice, I.2,8; I.2,16–17; I.2,22

See also justice

inner person, I.1,16

Isaac, I.2; I.2,1; I.2,3

Jacob and Esau, I.2,3–14

jealousy, II.2

Jesus Christ

Volume I/12
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions
Responses to Miscellaneous Questions

human, to accomplish good, I,1,11; I,1,14
prayer, I,2,1; I,2,21; II,4
preaching, I,1,17; I,2,7; I,2,10; I,2,14; I,2,19
the present, 2
pride, I,1,14; I,2,2–3; I,2,6; I,2,9; I,2,17;
I,2,21
prophecy; prophets, II,1; II,1,2; II,1,7
See also individual names
spirit of, I,1
without love, II,1,8–9
prostitutes, I
punishment, I,1,3–6; I,1,10–11; I,1,13; I,1,17;
I,2,16–20; II,1,3; II,1,5; II,2,3; II,3,3
See also discipline; law
and hardening of the will, I,2,14; I,2,18
merit and, II,6
mortality as, I,2,19
purpose of God, I,2,6; II,1
reality
See also truth
divine and human, II,2,3
Rebecca, I,2,1
regret, I,2,17
resurrection of Christ, I,2,14
revelation, II,6
reward, II,6
rich man, II,3,3
righteousness, I,1,14; I,1,17; I,2,3; I,2,6;
I,2,8; I,2,12
and eternal life, I,2,2; I,2,22
faith and, I,2,7; I,2,21
grace and, I,2,22
The righteous hand may wash in the
blood of the sinner, II,2,18
Roman's, Epistle to, I
sacraments, I,2,2; II,1,10
See also baptism
saints, I,2,3
salvation, I,1,17; I,2,18–19; I,2,22; II,1,10
See also remnant
grace and, I,2,6; I,2,19
Work out your salvation with fear and
trembling, I,2,12
Samuel, II,1,1; II,1,7; II,3
Sarah, I,2; I,2,1; I,2,3
Satan. See devil
Saul, King, II,1,1
I regret having made Saul king, II,2
and the necromancer, II,3
Saul (Paul), I,2,22
See also Paul
senses, I,2,2; II,1,1; II,3,3; II,3,3
Simeon, I,2,14
sin, I,1,11; I,2,18
See also Adam; covetousness; evil; guilt;
punishment; transgression; vice;
wickedness
false sweetness of, I,1,5; I,1,7; I,1,9
and grace, I,1,10
I do not do what I want, but I do what I
hate, I,1,18; I,1,11
and the law, I,1,1–6; I,1,17
The law entered in so that wrongdoing
might abound, I,1,16
original, I,1,10
repeated, I,1,10
sold under sin, I,1,7
transmission of, I,2,19
and the whole human race, I,2,16
Sirach/Ecclesiasticus, Book of, I,2,20
Sodom, I,2; I,2,1; I,2,19
soothsaying spirit, II,3,3
soul, I,1,3
and body, I,2,17
changeableness of, II,1,6
mind and, II,1,9
spirit of the law. See law
spirits, II,1,4–5
See also demons; Holy Spirit
divine spirits, II,1,1
evil spirit of the Lord, II,1,1; II,1,4–6
fallen vs. sublime and pure, II,6
God as employing, II,1; II,3
good and bad, II,1; II,3
and the Holy Spirit, II,1
most pure, II,6
a person's spirit, II,1,1
Saul's experience of, II,1
spirit of God, II,1
stars, I,2,3; I,2,8
stealing. See theft
Stephen, II,1,5
sun, I,2,8
talents, I,2,10
temple: For the temple of God is holy, I,2,2
thief; thief, I,2,14; I,2,17–19
time
See also specific topics, e.g.,
foreknowledge
and motion, I,2,14; II,2,2
tongues, II,1,8
transgression, I,1,3–6; I,1,12; I,1,14–15;
I,1,14–17
See also sin
Trinity, II,1,5–6
truth, II,3
See also knowledge; reality
grace and, I,1,17

Volume I/12
See also Jacob and Esau

unclean spirits. See demons understanding, II,3,3
See also knowledge and wisdom, II,2,3

vengeance, I,1,4
vessels of mercy, I,2,18–19
vice, I,1,6; II,3,1
See also sin
virtue, II,3,1
See also good
wages, I,2,3
water, II,1,5
See also baptism
turned to wine, I,2,14
wickedness, I,1,8; I,2,18
See also hardening of the will; sin widow, II,5
will, human, I,2,21

See also free choice; good will; specific
topics, e.g., faith
and accomplishing good, I,1,11
as chosen, I,2,22
God as willing that our will be both his and ours, I,2,10
and God’s mercy, I,2,12
grace and, I,2,3–14; Revisions II,1,2
hardening of, I,2,14–18 passim
will of God, I,2,15; I,2,17; II,1,15
wine, I,2,14
I have filled the winepress, I,2,20
wisdom: and knowledge, II,2,3
works, I,2,2
See also merit; pride
faith and, I,2,2; I,2,21
grace and, I,2,2–3
love and, I,2,21
wrongdoing
See also sin
The law entered in so that wrongdoing might abound, I,1,16

youth, II,2,5
Index from

On Genesis, Against the Manichees

(De Genesi adversus Manichaeos)

Included in book:

On Genesis

Translation, introduction, and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

This volume contains three works on the Book of Genesis: On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees (De Genesi adversus Manichaeos), Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus) and the third and longest, The Literal Meaning of Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram).

Volume I/13 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-175-6, 6 x 9 in., 540 pp., 2002
Paperback: 978-1-56548-201-2, 6 x 9 in., 539 pp., 2004

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td>I, 2, 3; I, 7, 11; II, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:2</td>
<td>I, 3, 5; I, 3, 6; I, 5, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:3</td>
<td>I, 4, 7; I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:3.6.9</td>
<td>I, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:4</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:4-5</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:5</td>
<td>I, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:6-8</td>
<td>I, 11, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:8</td>
<td>I, 11, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:9-10</td>
<td>I, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:11-13</td>
<td>I, 13, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:14-19</td>
<td>I, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:20</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:20-23</td>
<td>I, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:22</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:24</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:24-25</td>
<td>I, 26, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:26</td>
<td>I, 27, 32; I, 17, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:26-27</td>
<td>I, 23, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:27</td>
<td>I, 23, 35; II, 7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:27-28</td>
<td>I, 19, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:28</td>
<td>I, 20, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:31</td>
<td>I, 2, 4; I, 21, 32; II, 29, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:2-3</td>
<td>I, 25, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:2-3</td>
<td>I, 22, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:4</td>
<td>II, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:4—3:24</td>
<td>II, 1, 1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:5</td>
<td>II, 3, 4; II, 4, 5; II, 5, 6; II, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:6</td>
<td>II, 5, 6; II, 24, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:7</td>
<td>II, 7, 8; II, 8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:10</td>
<td>II, 10, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:15</td>
<td>II, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:17</td>
<td>II, 11, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 2:18</td>
<td>II, 11, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 1:3</td>
<td>I, 22, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 3:5</td>
<td>II, 24, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 33:15</td>
<td>II, 8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 36:8</td>
<td>II, 10, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 42:6</td>
<td>II, 16, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 142:5</td>
<td>II, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs 9:16-17</td>
<td>II, 27, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom 11:17</td>
<td>I, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom 11:20</td>
<td>I, 16, 26; I, 21, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Volume I/13

**On Genesis**
On Genesis

Sirach
2:5 II, 23, 35
10:9 II, 5, 6
10:12 II, 5, 6
10:13 II, 9, 12
18:1 I, 21, 32
27:5 II, 23, 35
34:25-26 II, 21, 31

Zechariah
12:1 II, 8, 11

New Testament

Matthew
5:34-35 I, 17, 27
5:48 I, 23, 35
13:38 II, 3, 4
22:37,39-40 II, 23, 35
25:30 II, 25, 38
25:41 II, 17, 26

Luke
12:2 II, 21, 32
18:8 I, 23, 35
20:34 I, 19, 30

John
1:9 I, 3, 6
1:14 II, 24, 37
4:14 II, 5, 6
5:17 I, 22, 33
6:27 II, 9, 12
8:25 I, 2, 3
8:44 II, 14, 20; II, 16, 24
15:15 I, 7, 11
16:12 I, 7, 11
16:28 II, 24, 37

Acts of the Apostles
10:13,15 I, 23, 35

Romans
1:3 II, 24, 37
5:3-4 II, 23, 35
7:14 II, 19, 29
7:25 I, 25, 43
8:26 I, 22, 34
13:10 II, 23, 36

1 Corinthians
1:24 II, 12, 16

2:11 II, 8, 11
3:1 I, 23, 35
11:3 II, 11, 15
11:7-12 II, 26, 40
11:19 I, 12; II, 25, 38
13:2 II, 23, 36
13:8 II, 5, 6
13:12 II, 5, 6
15:46 II, 8, 10
15:54 I, 20, 31

2 Corinthians
2:11 I, 14, 20
3:3 II, 12, 17
3:16 I, 22, 33
11:2-3 II, 13, 19
11:3 II, 26, 39; II, 26, 40
11:29 II, 23, 35
12:7 II, 28, 42

Galatians
5:24 I, 20, 31

Ephesians
2:2 I, 14, 20
4:22 I, 23, 35
4:24 I, 23, 35
5:24 II, 13, 19; II, 24, 37

Philippians
2:7 II, 24, 37

Colossians
3:9 I, 23, 35
3:10 I, 23, 35

1 Timothy
1:5 I, 2, 4
1:20 II, 28, 42
5:6 II, 21, 31

2 Timothy
2:25 II, 22, 34
4:4 II, 26, 39

Titus
1:1-2 I, 2, 3

Hebrews
12:6 II, 23, 35

1 Peter
1:22 II, 8, 10

Volume I/13
Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The Roman numerals in the Indexes are the chapter numbers.
The Arabic numbers are the paragraph numbers.

On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees

Abraham: in world history, I:36–37
abyss, darkness over, I:6
Adam, II:1(1)–2
See also Eve; human beings; man animals, as naming, II:16
Christ, as prophetic of, II:24(16), 37(24) “ensouled” and “enspirited,” II:10(8) explosion of, II:33(22)–34 fall of, II:41(27) has become like one of us, II:33(22)–34 as needing a helper, II:15(11)–15 in Paradise, II:10(8) (See also Paradise) punishment of, II:41(27) sleep of, meaning, II:16(12)–17 in world history, I:35(23)
Adam and Eve:
blaming others, II:25(17)
Christ and the Church, as pointing ahead to, II:37(24)
God, encounter with, II:24(16)
hiding from God, II:24(16)
Manichean vs. Catholic teachings regarding, II:42
nakedness of, II:23–24(16)
relationship between, II:18(13)–19
age of the world, See under world air
See also heaven (the sky)
cloudy, I:24(15)
the prince of the power of the air, II:20(14)
Albula River, II:13(10)
allegory, I:33(22); II:5(4)
See also specific topics
analogy, See specific topics
angel(s):
an angel of Satan to box my ears, II:42(28)
the Cherubim and the flaming sword, II:2, 35(23)–36
a veil over her head, for the sake of the angels, II:40
animals
See also specific kinds
Adam naming, II:16
beauty of, I:25(16)–26
carnivorous, I:31(20)
creation of, I:24(15)–26
feeding of, I:31(20)
God as blessing, I:39
harmful, I:25(16)–26
Kill and eat, I:40
as subject to us, I:28–29(18), 31(20)
anthropomorphism, I:27(17)
apostles, II:5(4)
Paul (See Paul)
art, divine, I:13(8), 25(16)
Assyrians, II:1(1), 14
astrology: curiosity leading to, II:27(18)
Babel, Tower of, I:36
Babylon, I:39
baptism, II:37(24)
beasts, See animals
beauty:
of animals, I:25(16)–26
the darkness as without, I:13(8)
God as craftsman, I:25(16)
of heaven (sky), I:17(11); II:8(7)

Volume I/13
Volume I/13

human, I:32(21); II:24(16)  
of speech, I:32(21)  
beginning:  
Christ as, I:3(2)  
“In the beginning,” I:3(2)–4  
belief, See faith  
believers, See Christians  
Bible, See New Testament; Old Testament; scripture  
language of (See language)  
birds, I:40  
See also animals  
creation of, I:24(15)  
blasphemy: avoiding, in exegesis, II:3(2)  
body (human)  
See also man; soul  
animal vs., I:28  
“ensouled,” II:10(8)  
perishable, II:30(20)  
before sin, II:8(7)  
soul to be lorded over, II:15(11)  
bread: “munch his bread,” II:30(20)

carnivores, I:31(20)  
Catholic teaching, See specific topics  
cattle, I:40  
chaos, I:9  
charity  
See also love  
if I do not have charity, I am nothing, II:36  
Cherubim and the flaming sword, II:2, 35(23)–36

childbirth: pain during, II:29(19)  
children:  
Increase and multiply, I:30(19)  
little ones in Christ, I:40  
Christ, See Jesus Christ  
Christians  
See also Church, Catholic; religion  
deepening of faith, I:2  
as friends of God, I:4, 11(7)  
have crucified their flesh, I:31(20)  
heretics leading astray, II:38(25)–41(27)  
seven stages in lives of, I:42–43(25)  
this book as for, II:43(29)

Church, Catholic  
See also Christians; faith; specific topics  
beliefs of (vs. Manichees), II:42(28)–43(29)  
Christ and, I:40; II:37(24)  
Eve, as prophetic of, II:37(24)  
fault of, II:43  
circumcision, I:40(22)  
clothes: fig leaves and skin tunics, II:32  
cloud(s), II:5(4)  
cloudy air called water, I:24(15)  
concupiscence, I:40

constellations:  
creation of, I:20(14)–23  
for signs and for times, I:20(14)–21

cosmos: creation of, I:10(6)  
craftsmen, God as, I:10(6), 25(16)  
creation  
See also earth; heaven; specific days (first, second, third...); specific subjects  
of the cosmos, I:10(6)  
figurative interpretation, I:1(1)–3(2)  
from formless matter (See formless matter)  
future events, as predicting, I:41(23)  
God saw that all things together were very good, I:32(21)  
historical commentary, I:3(2)–34(22)  
out of nothing, I:4, 10(6)  
prophetic interpretation, I:23, 35–41  
reason for, I:3(2)–4(2)  
seven days of, I:43(25) (See also seven days of creation)  
six days of, and six ages of the world, I:33(22)–42(23)  
as sudden, I:3(2)  
three main themes, as one of, II:7–8(8), 11  
universe, goodness and unity of, I:33(22); I:43(29)  
as “very good,” I:32(21)  
and world history, I:23, 35–41

Creator, God as:  
dualism vs., I:4(2), 6–11(7)  
Manichean arguments regarding, I:12  
resting on seventh day, I:33(22)–35(23), 41(23)

creatures  
See also specific kinds  
as made from nothing, I:4  
curiosity, I:40

darkness  
See also night  
as absence of light, I:7(4), 15(9)  
the darkness he called night, I:15(9)  
God as not making, I:15(9)  
as invisibility, I:12  
Manichean objections regarding, I:6(3)–7(4)

On Genesis
On Genesis

as nothing, I:7(4)

over the abyss, I:6

David, King, II:37(24)
in world history, I:37–38
day
See also evening; light; morning

See also evening; light; morning

dividing day and night, I:20(14)
evening and morning, I:16(10), 20(14), 22–23
lamps, the two, I:20(14), 22
demons: by finger of God casting out, I:27(17)
devil, the, See Satan
divination, II:27(18)
dry land: sea and, separation of, I:18(12)
dualism: vs. God as one Creator, I:4(2), 6–11(7)
earth:

beginning of, I:5(3)
creation of, I:4
formless matter, as made from, I:10(7)–12
invisible and shapeless, I:5(3)
Let the dry land appear, I:18(12)
eating, See food
Eden, Garden of, See Paradise
ego, II:42(15)
elephant, I:26
eternal fire
See also hell
serpent condemned to, II:26
eternity, I:3(2)–4
Ethiopia, II:1(1)
Euphrates River, II:13(10)
Eve
See also Adam and Eve; woman
Church, as prophetic of, II:37(24)
creation of, II:16(12)–17
“Life,” as named, II:31(21)–32
temptation of, II:20(14), 22(15)–23, 42(28)
evening, I:20(14), 22–23
and morning, order of, I:16(10)
evil
See also darkness; Satan; sin
justice of God and, I:4
as lack or absence, I:7(4)
nature of, II:43(29)
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)
exegesis: blasphemy, avoiding in, II:3(2)
eyes, II:23
faith, I:43(25)
deepening of, I:2
Jesus marvelling at, I:14
simple, Catholic as, II:38(25)
understanding, as before, I:17(11)
unfeigned, I:4
faithful, the, See Christians
fall, the, II:38(25)–41(27)
fifth day of creation, I:24(15)
fig leaves, II:23, 32
figurative interpretation, I:19(13), 34(22); II:3(2)
firmament
See also heaven (sky)
waters above and below, I:17(11)
fish, See animals
flood, the, I:35(23)–36
fodder, II:4(3)
food:

Kill and eat, I:40
“munch his bread,” II:30(20)
for the soul, II:12(9)
formless matter, I:10(7)–12
fortitude, II:13(10)–14, 18(13)
forth day of creation, I:20(14)–23
friends of God, See under Christians
fruit of the Spirit, II:38(25)
future:
creation as predicting, I:41(23)
prophecy, II:3(2)
Ganges River, II:13(10)
Garden of Eden, See Paradise
garments: fig leaves and skin tunics, II:32

On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees

Christians, as written for, II:43(29)
everyday usage in, I:10(6), 11(7), 34(22)
figurative and literal interpretations in,
II:3(2)
goal of, I:7(4)
historical commentary in, I:3(2)–34(22);
II:3(2), 4(3)–36(23)
prophetic interpretation in, II:23, 35–41;
II:3(2), 37(24)–41(27)
“the simple faithful,” as written for,
I:1(1), 2(2), 5(2), 9(5), 27(17)
symbolic interpretation in, I:23,
42–43(25)
three main themes of, II:7–8(8), 11 (See also under creation; image of God; salvation)

Genesis, book of:

as history and prophecy, II:3(2)
literal understanding not always possible,
II:3(2)
mysteries in, I:5(3); II:3(2)
as truth of God, I:7(4)

Volume I/13
On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees

Gentiles: Israel and, I:40(22)
Gihon River, II:13(10)

God

See also specific topics
as craftsman, I:10(6), 25(16)
before creation, I:3(2)–3
as Creator (See Creator, God as)
friends of (See under Christians)
humans as image of (See image of God)
justice of, I:4; II:41(27)
Manichean vs. Catholic teachings regarding, II:42
nature of, I:29(17); II:43(29)
Old Testament as truth of, I:7(4)
rebellion against, II:42(15)
Spirit of (See Spirit of God)
as Truth, II:24(16)
as unchangeable, II:7(6), 11
will of, I:4
Word of (See Word of God)
goood, goodness:
  of creation ("very good"), I:32(21)
of God, II:42(28)
  God saw the light that it was good, I:13(8)–14
human potential for, II:34
nature of, II:43(29)
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)

Good Samaritan, II:13(10)
greenery of the field, II:4(3)–5, 7(6)

hay, See greenery of the field
heart: of stone vs. flesh, II:17
heaven and earth, II:4(3)
formless matter, as made from, I:10(7)–12
heaven (sky)
  See also firmament
  beauty of, I:17(11)
  creation of, I:4
heaven (God's abode): Jesus Christ in, I:27(17)
heavenly bodies
  See also constellations; moon; stars; sun
as signs for times, I:21
hell, I:30(20)
Satan, doom of, II:25(17)
serpent condemned to eternal fire, II:26

heretics, I:2
See also Manichees
Christians, as leading astray, II:38(25)–41(27)
serpent as signifying, II:38(25)–40
Hexaemeron, the, I:41(23)
history, II:3(2)
creation and world history, I:23, 35–41
historical commentary of creation, I:3(2)–34(22)

and prophecy, Genesis as, II:3(2)
seven ages of human, I:35(23)–41
six (or seven) ages of the world,
I:35(23)–41

Holy Spirit
See also Spirit of God
pleading for us, I:34
human beings
See also man; specific topics
animals subject to, I:28–29(18), 31(20)
as changeable (See under God: as unchangeable)
in image and likeness of God,
I:27(17)–28, 40; II:9, 11
spiritual vs. carnal, I:40

idol-worship, I:39
illumination: theory of, II:23–24(16)
image and likeness of God, I:40
humans as, I:27(17)–28; II:9, 11
"In the beginning," I:3(2)
  Christ, as reference to, I:3(2)
  Manichean fault-finding with, I:3(2)–4
Increase and multiply, I:30(19)
integrity, I:4
invisible things, II:7(6)
Israel: and the Gentiles, I:40(22)
Jerusalem, II:13(10)
Jesus Christ (the Son)
See also Christians; faith; specific topics
  Adam as prophetic of, II:22(15), 24(16), 37(24)
as beginning, I:3(2)
and the Church, I:40; II:37(24)
the head of the man is Christ, II:15(11)
Jews as not recognizing, I:39
as made from the Father, I:4
at right hand of God, I:27(17)
second coming of, I:39, 41
as sinless, II:10(8)
as Wisdom of God, II:16(12)
as Word with the Father, I:3(2)
in world history, I:39

Jews:
  Abraham as father of, I:37
  Jesus, as not recognizing, I:39
  nation, growth of, I:39
  in slavery, I:38–39
Judas, II:20(14)
justice, I:4; II:13(10)–14, 41(27)
kings
See also individual names
sins of, I:39

On Genesis
On Genesis

lamps, two, I:20(14)
language:
beauty of, I:32(21)
biblical, I:20(14)
Hebrew, I:18(12)
metaphysical and analogical character in, I:20(14)
spoken, our need for after the fall, I:14–15(9)
lies, lying, II:33, 41(27)
See also truth
of Manichees, about Christ, II:39–40
Life: Eve as named, II:31(21)–32
light:
creation of, Manichean objections regarding, I:6(3)–7(4), 13(8)–14
darkness as absence of, I:7(4), 15(9)
God as marvelling at, I:14
God saw the light that it was good, I:13(8)–14
spiritual, I:6(3)
literal interpretation: of Genesis, as not always possible, II:3(2)
love:
charity (See charity)
commandment, II:36, 41(27)
of God and neighbor, II:36
God as testing our, I:34
from a pure heart and a good conscience, I:4
soul, loving our own, II:17
whom God loves he disciplines, II:35(23)
lust, I:30(19), 40
and self-restraint, I:31(20)
Macedonia: Mount Olympus, I:24(15)
man
See also Adam; human beings; woman
blowing of spirit of life into, II:10(8)–11
as glory of God; II:40
God’s punishment of, II:30(20)
the head of the man is Christ, II:15(11)
the head of the woman is the man, II:15(11)
helper, need for, II:15(11)
as made from mud of the earth, II:8(7)–9
mud, as made from, II:8(7)–9
in Paradise (See Paradise)
spirit of, meaning, II:10(8)–11
woman as glory of, II:40
Mani, teaching of, See Manichees
Manichees, Manicheans
See also heretics
beliefs of, II:7–8(8), 11, 42(28)–43(29) (See also specific subjects)
Church, teachings of, compared with, II:43(29)
deceitfulness of, II:38(25)
goal of Augustine’s refutation, I:7(4)
God as Creator, arguments regarding, I:3(2)–7(4)
as lying about Christ, II:39–40
Old Testament, opposition to, I:1(1)–2;
II:8(7), 42(28)
motion:
A man shall leave father and mother, II:19
spiritual, of Adam and Eve, II:18(13)
two in one flesh, II:37(24)
Mary, mother of Jesus, II:37(24)
matter: corporeal and incorporeal, I:17(11)
measure, number, and weight, I:26
moon
See also heavenly bodies
creation of, I:20(14)–23
people, as representing, I:38
morning, I:20, 22–23
and evening, order of, I:16(10)
mortality: sin, as resulting from, I:19(13)
mother of all the living, II:31(21)
Mount Olympus, I:24(15)
mud: man as made from, II:8(7)–9
mystery (-ies), I:5(3), 19(13)
in Genesis, I:5(3); II:3(2)
in the mud, II:8(7)–9
and sacraments, II:17
two in one flesh, II:19
of the universe, curiosity regarding,
II:27(18)
nakedness:
of Adam and Eve, II:19, 23–24(16)
as displeasing, II:38(26)
New Testament, I:27(17), 33(22)
night
See also darkness
dividing day and night, I:20(14)
lamps, the two, I:20(14), 22
Nile River, II:13(10)
Noah: in world history, I:35(23)–36
numbers: measure, number, and weight, I:26
occult, II:27(18)–28
old age: the fifth and sixth ages, I:39–40
Old Testament
See also New Testament
Manichean opposition to, I:1(1)–2;
II:8(7), 42(28)
Volume I/13
Volume I/13

riddles in, II:3(2)
as truth of God, I:7(4)
Olympus, Mount, I:24(15)
original sin, II:43(29)
good results of, II:42(28)
soul, as imputed to, II:5
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)

parable(s):
the Good Samaritan, II:13(10)
the prodigal son, II:34
Paradise (Garden of Eden)
See also specific topics and events
delights of Paradise, II:12(9)
as incorporeal (possibility), II:20(14)
man (Adam) alone in, II:15(11)–16
man’s work in, II:15(11)
rivers of, II:13(10)–14
parents: A man shall leave father and mother, II:19
Passover, I:40(22)
Paul, apostle, Saint:
on being led astray, II:39
on belonging to Jesus Christ, I:31(20)
change of God giving them repentance,
II:34
on charity (love), II:36
on Christ and the Church, II:37(24)
on the devil, II:20(14)
on fruit of the Spirit, II:38(25)
heart of stone vs. flesh, II:17
on heresies, I:2
Holy Spirit as pleading for us, I:34
inexpressible words, II:14
Manichean praise for, I:3(2)
Manichees deceiving by, II:18(13)
on marriage, II:19(13), 37(24)
on simplicity and chastity, II:19
so that the veil may be taken off, I:33(22)
on spiritual vs. “soulish,” II:10(8)–11
on truth and eternity, I:3(2)
veil may be taken off, I:33(22)
whom God loves he disciplines, II:35(23)
widow who lives for pleasure is dead, II:31(21)
on women, II:40, 42(28)
people, See human beings; man
Pishon River, II:13(10)
plants:
eating, I:40
fruitless and harmful, I:19(13)
greenery of the field, II:4(3)–5, 8(7)
prayer: Holy Spirit pleading for us, I:34
pride, I:40; II:6(5), 25(17), 42(15)
procreation: Increase and multiply, I:30(19)
prodigal son, II:34
prophecy, I:41(23); II:3(2)
and history, Genesis as, II:3(2)
prophet(s), II:5(4)
Law and (See Old Testament)
Sirach, II:6(5)
prudence, II:13(10)–14
purgatory, II:30(20)

questions: God as asking, II:24(16)
rain, I:24(15)

God had not yet rained, II:5(4)
religion: basic questions of, II:43(29)
reptiles, I:40
See also animals
creation of, I:24(15)
rest:
our eternal rest in God, I:33(22)–34
on seventh day, I:33(22)–35(23), 41(23)
riddles: in the Old Testament, II:3(2)
rivers: of Paradise, II:13(10)–14
sabbath, the, I:33(22)
sacraments: mysteries and, II:17
sacrifices: Israel regarding, I:40(22)
salt, II:23
salvation:
creation predicting God’s plan of,
I:34(22), 41(23)
history of, II:7–8(8), 11
Samaritan, the Good, II:13(10)
Satan
See also serpent
an angel of Satan to box my ears,
II:42(28)
doom of, II:25(17)
Eve, temptation of, II:42(28)
Manichean vs. Catholic teachings
regarding, II:42(28)
nature of, II:42(28)
the prince of the power of the air,
II:20(14)
serpent, as represented by, II:20(14)–21
Saul, King, I:37

scripture:
mysteries in, I:5(3), 19(13) (See also
mysteries)
various senses of, II:3(2)
seas, I:18(12)
second coming of Christ, I:39, 41
secrets, See mysteries

On Genesis
self-restraint: importance of, II:31(20)
senses, II:30(20)
snake:
  condemnation of, II:26–28
  Eve as blaming, II:25(17)
  heretics (Manichees), as referring to, II:38(25)–40
  non-Christian beliefs regarding, II:24(16), 39
  Satan, as representing, II:20(14)–21
  success of, reason for, II:22(15)–23
  tempting Eve (See under temptation)
  woman, enmity with, II:27(18)–28
serpents, I:40
seven days of creation
  See also specific days (first, second, third,...)
  and seven ages of human history, I:35–41
  and seven stages in lives of faithful, I:23, 42–43(25)
seventh day of creation:
  allegorical interpretation, I:33(22)–34
  God as resting on, I:33(22)–35(23), 41(23), 43(25)
sexual intercourse: Increase and multiply, I:30(19)
sheep
  See also animals
  little ones in Christ as like, I:40
  at Passover, I:40(22)
signs for times: heavenly bodies as for, I:21
  simplicity, II:19
sin, II:21
  See also darkness
  ego, II:42(15)
  Eve, temptation of, II:22(15)–23
  good results of, II:42(28)
  as harming self, II:43(29)
  Jesus Christ as sinless, II:10(8)
  mortality and, I:19(13)
  original (See original sin)
  pride, II:5(5), 42(15)
  rebellion against God, II:42(15)
  and sexual relations, I:30(19)
  sinful act, the, II:21(14)
  tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)
  Sirach, II:6(5)
six days of creation, I:35(23)–41
  See also creation
  and six days in our personal lives, I:43(25)
skin tunics, II:32
sky
  See also heaven
  beauty of, I:17(11)
slaves, slavery:
  I will not call you slaves any longer,
  I:11(7)
  of Jewish people, I:38–39
  snake, See serpent
  solid structure of heaven, See firmament;
  heaven (sky)
soul (human)
  See also body
  body, to be lorded over, II:15(11)
  food for, II:12(9)
  The greenery of the field and the fodder,
  II:4(3)
  “invisible creation,” II:4(3)
  loving our own, II:17
  at “midpoint in order of things”, (between
  God and body), II:12(9)
  My soul is troubled at myself, II:24(16)
  original sin imputed to, II:5
  pre-existing (theory), II:9–10(8)
  spiritual vs. “soulish,” II:10(8)–11
  and upright posture of body, I:28
speech, See language
  spirit: spiritual vs. “soulish,” II:10(8)–11
  Spirit of God: water, as borne over, I:8(5)–9,
  12, 18(12)
  spirit of life, II:10(8)–11
  spring coming up from the earth, II:6(5)–7(6)
stars
  See also heavenly bodies
  creation of, I:20(14)–23
  leaders, as representing, I:38
  stone: heart of, II:17
  sun
  See also heavenly bodies
  creation of, I:20(14)–23
  kingship, as signifying, I:38
  true light vs., I:6
  swearing: Do not swear, II:27(17)
  symbolism, See figurative interpretation
temperance, II:13(10)–14, 18(13)
temptation, II:21–23
  curiosity as, II:27(18)
  of Eve, II:20(14), 22(15)–23, 42(28)
  thorns and thistles, II:41(27)
  Tiber River, II:13(10)
  Tigris River, II:13(10)
time:
  eternity, I:3(2)–4
  God as creating, I:3(2)
  “In the beginning” (See “In the
  beginning”)
On Genesis

Volume I/13

times: signs for, I:21
Tower of Babel, I:36
tree of knowledge of good and evil, II:12(9)
tree of life, II:12(9), 34(22)
Cherubim and the flaming sword as guarding, II:35(23)–36
trees
See also plants
unfruitful, I:19(13)
truth:
of God, Old Testament as, I:7(4)
“munch his bread,” II:30(20)
nature of, II:24(16)
as unbearable, II:32
Truth (God as), II:24(16)
as inexpressible, II:13(10)
tunics of skin, II:32
unbelievers: devil at work in, II:20(14)
understanding: faith as preceding, I:17(11)
uneducated readers, this work as for, See Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees, On unformed matter, See formless matter
universe:
goodness of, II:43(29)
unity of, I:33(22)
veil:
so that the veil may be taken off, I:33(22)
woman to wear, II:40
virago, II:18(13)
Virgin Mary, II:37(24)
virginity: a chaste virgin, II:19
virtues: rivers as signifying, II:13(10)–14
water(s):
above and below the firmament, I:17(11)
cloudy air as called, I:24(15)
in creation, I:12
firmament, as divided by, I:17(11)
gathering of, I:18(12)
inhabitants, creation of, I:24(15)
Paradise, rivers of, II:13(10)–14
reptiles, I:40
sea and dry land, I:18(12)
Spirit of God borne over, I:8(5)–9, 12, 18(12)
spring coming up from the earth,
II:6(5)–7(6)
weight: measure, number, and weight, I:26
widow who lives for pleasure is dead,
II:31(21)
Wisdom of God, II:16(12)
woman, women
See also Eve; human beings; man
as glory of man, II:40, 42(28)
head-coverings for, II:40
the head of the woman is the man,
II:15(11)
as made for man, II:16(12)
punishment of, II:29(19)
and serpent, enmity between,
II:27(18)–28
a veil over her head, for the sake of the angels, II:40
Word of God, II:5(4)
Christ as, I:3(2); II:37
words, See language
world:
ages of, I:35(23)–43(25); II:4(3)
end of, I:34, 41
six ages of, six days of creation representing, I:33(22)–42(23)
world history: creation and, I:23, 35–41
Zion, II:13(10)
Index from
On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis
(De Genesi ad litteram)

Included in book:
On Genesis

Translation, introduction, and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
This volume contains three works on the Book of Genesis: On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees (De Genesi adversus Manichaeos), Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus) and the third and longest, The Literal Meaning of Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram).

Volume I/13 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-175-6, 6 x 9 in., 540 pp., 2002
Paperback: 978-1-56548-201-2, 6 x 9 in., 539 pp., 2004

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### The Literal Meaning of Genesis

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genesis</th>
<th>1:1</th>
<th>1:2</th>
<th>1:3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, 1, 2; I, 3, 7; I, 4, 9; I, 6, 12; I, 9, 15; I, 13, 27; V, 1, 1; V, 1, 2; V, 5, 16; VIII, 11, 24</td>
<td>I:1-3; I, 5, 11; I, 6, 12; I, 7, 13; I, 13, 27; I, 15, 30; II, 8, 19; V, 1, 1</td>
<td>I, 2, 4; I, 3, 7; I, 5, 11; I, 9, 15; I, 9, 17; I, 17, 32; I, 19, 38; II, 7, 15; II, 8, 16; IV, 20, 37</td>
<td>I:1-3; I, 4; I:4; I, 5; I, 6; I:6-8; I:7; I:9-10; I:11; I:11-12; I:11-13; I:12; I:12-13; I:14; I:14-19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.)

---

**Index of Scripture**

---

**On Genesis**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>II, 15, 32; II, 16, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>III, 7, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20-23</td>
<td>III, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>III, 12, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>III, 13, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-25</td>
<td>III, 11, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>VII, 22, 32; XI, 39, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-28</td>
<td>VI, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-28-29</td>
<td>VI, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-31</td>
<td>III, 19, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>III, 22, 34; VII, 22, 33; VII, 24, 35; IX, 17, 31; X, 2, 3; X, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27-28</td>
<td>III, 22, 34; VII, 28, 41; IX, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>III, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>VI, 6, 9; VIII, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>VII, 26, 37; VII, 28, 41; VII, 6, 12; VIII, 13, 28; XI, 21, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>IV, 1, 1; VI, 11, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>IV, 2, 6; IV, 12, 23; IV, 20, 37; VII, 28, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>V, 3, 5; V, 17, 35; V, 23, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>V, 3, 5; V, 4, 7; V, 5, 16; V, 11, 27; V, 23, 46; VI, 3, 4; VIII, 28, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-6</td>
<td>V, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>V, 2, 4; V, 6, 17; V, 23, 46; VII, 28, 41; VIII, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>V, 6, 19; V, 7, 20; V, 11, 27; V, 23, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>III, 22, 34; VI, 1, 1; VI, 11, 19; VII, 1, 1; VII, 16, 22; VIII, 17, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>VIII, 1, 1; VIII, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>V, 4, 11; VI, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>VII, 28, 41; VIII, 3, 6; VIII, 4, 8; VIII, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10-14</td>
<td>VIII, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>VIII, 10, 19; VIII, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>VIII, 8, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>VIII, 13, 28; VIII, 17, 36; VIII, 27, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>IX, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>IX, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18-22</td>
<td>VI, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>VI, 12, 22; VII, 28, 41; IX, 14, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19-24</td>
<td>IX, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>IX, 13, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>X, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23-24</td>
<td>IX, 19, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I, 1, 1; VI, 3, 4; VIII, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>XI, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25—3:24</td>
<td>XI, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>XI, 2, 4; XI, 29, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>XI, 30, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>XI, 30, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>XI, 30, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>XI, 31, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>VIII, 27, 50; XI, 33, 43; XI, 33, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XI, 34, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>XI, 34, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>XI, 35, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>XI, 35, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>XI, 36, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>XI, 36, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-19</td>
<td>XI, 38, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>III, 18, 28; VIII, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>XI, 38, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>XI, 39, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>XI, 39, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22-23</td>
<td>XI, 40, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>XI, 40, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>IV, 9, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>X, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:29</td>
<td>XII, 33, 64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exodus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>V, 16, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13,18</td>
<td>XII, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:17,18</td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20-23</td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:6-8</td>
<td>XII, 27, 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:5, LXX</td>
<td>VI, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:12-13</td>
<td>V, 15, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:23-25</td>
<td>V, 15, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:19</td>
<td>X, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:19</td>
<td>XI, 20, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XI, 18, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XI, 25, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>VI, 19, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>VIII, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-19:1</td>
<td>X, 18, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:6-7</td>
<td>XI, 5, 7; XI, 34, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:7</td>
<td>XI, 32, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:9</td>
<td>IV, 33, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:15</td>
<td>X, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:8</td>
<td>I, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>XI, 35, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:2</td>
<td>VI, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:11</td>
<td>I, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:12</td>
<td>VI, 12, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:12.20</td>
<td>III, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:13</td>
<td>VII, 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>Books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:5</td>
<td>VI, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:10</td>
<td>X, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:17</td>
<td>IV, 30, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:9</td>
<td>VIII, 12, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71:19</td>
<td>VIII, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:15</td>
<td>IX, 19, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>VIII, 11, 24; VIII, 12, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:19</td>
<td>VII, 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:39</td>
<td>X, 9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:2</td>
<td>X, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:8</td>
<td>IX, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:15</td>
<td>XI, 22, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:5</td>
<td>VI, 12, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:25</td>
<td>VI, 12, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:14</td>
<td>X, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:18</td>
<td>XI, 30, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:2</td>
<td>II, 9, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:24</td>
<td>V, 14, 31; V, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:26</td>
<td>XI, 20, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:29-30</td>
<td>X, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106:21</td>
<td>VIII, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:25</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:2</td>
<td>XI, 11, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:24</td>
<td>IV, 25, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124:8</td>
<td>IX, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:5</td>
<td>II, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:6</td>
<td>II, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:8</td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:8,9</td>
<td>II, 15, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:12</td>
<td>VI, 12, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:1</td>
<td>III, 7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:4</td>
<td>III, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:4-5</td>
<td>III, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>IV, 8, 15; VI, 12, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:7</td>
<td>III, 7, 9; III, 10, 14; V, 21, 42; IX, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:8</td>
<td>III, 6, 8; III, 10, 14; XII, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>IX, 18, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>VIII, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>V, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:12</td>
<td>XI, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>IX, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12,15,13</td>
<td>XI, 25, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>XII, 28, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>X, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>V, 21, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>X, 18, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>XII, 34, 66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

**On Genesis**
On Genesis

Acts of the Apostles

2:11 VIII, 1, 3
2:24 XII, 33, 63
10:10-14 XII, 14, 29
10:13, 19-15.28 XII, 11, 24
17:28 IV, 12, 23; IV, 18, 32;
V, 16, 34

Romans

1:17 VII, 26, 37
1:20 II, 8, 17; IV, 32, 49
1:21 XI, 34, 46
1:22 XI, 34, 46
5:12 IV, 9, 16
5:13 VI, 9, 15; VI, 24, 35;
X, 11, 18; X, 16, 29
5:14 XI, 42, 58
5:18-19 X, 11, 18
5:19 VIII, 14, 32; X, 16, 28;
X, 16, 29
9:16 IV, 13, 24
X, 12, 21
6:4 X, 19, 29
7:22-25 IX, 16, 26
7:23 X, 20, 36; XI, 1, 3;
XI, 34, 46; XI, 42, 59
7:24 X, 12; XI, 37, 50
7:25 X, 11, 18
7:26 XI, 34, 46
8:10 VI, 24, 36; IX, 16, 26
8:11 VI, 22, 33
9:11 VII, 25, 36; X, 7, 12
9:22-23 VIII, 14, 32
10:11 XI, 12, 16
11:20 XI, 8, 10
11:33 XI, 29, 37
1:17 II, 8, 18; V, 13, 29
1:36 VI, 24, 36; VIII, 25, 46;
VIII, 26, 48; XII, 24, 50
1:2-3 IV, 24, 41; IV, 32, 49;
V, 4, 10; XII, 34, 67
1:3-4 II, 6, 12; V, 13, 30
1:10 V, 17, 35
3:6 X, 22, 38
4:24 XII, 7, 18
5:17 IV, 11, 21; IV, 12, 23;
V, 4, 11; V, 11, 27; V, 20, 40;
V, 23, 45; VI, 3, 4; VII, 28, 41
5:21 V, 20, 40
5:26 IV, 12, 23; V, 14, 31
6:70 XI, 24, 31
8:25 I, 5, 10
8:44 XI, 16, 21
14:23 XI, 39, 53
16:13 IV, 34, 53
19:30 IV, 11, 21
20:22 X, 5, 8

1 Corinthians

1:24 VI, 12, 22
1:31 XI, 8, 10
2:9 VIII, 3, 7
2:15 XII, 24, 51
3:7 V, 6, 18; VIII, 8, 16;
IX, 15, 26; IX, 18, 35
10:4 VIII, 4, 8
10:11 I, 1, 1
11:7 III, 22, 34; XI, 42, 58
12:10 XII, 13, 28
12:12 XI, 24, 31
12:31 I, 7, 13
13:5-4 XI, 15, 19

On Genesis

Volume I/13
## Volume I/13

### On Genesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>XII, 28, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:35</td>
<td>VIII, 17, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:2</td>
<td>XII, 8, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>XII, 8, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:14</td>
<td>XII, 8, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>XII, 9, 20; XII, 24, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>XII, 8, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>VI, 26, 37; VIII, 14, 32; X, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:36-38</td>
<td>V, 20, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:41</td>
<td>II, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td>VI, 19, 30; XII, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44-49</td>
<td>VI, 19, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:45</td>
<td>VI, 23, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:48</td>
<td>X, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>IV, 34, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>VI, 20, 31; XII, 36, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54</td>
<td>VI, 24, 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:6.7</td>
<td>XII, 28, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>VII, 25, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>XII, 13, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>XII, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2-4</td>
<td>XII, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>XII, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-9</td>
<td>III, 15, 24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>X, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>IX, 16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20.16</td>
<td>XI, 24, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>IV, 9, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>XI, 37, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>X, 12, 20; X, 18, 32; XII, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22-23</td>
<td>XII, 24, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>VI, 28, 39; XI, 6, 8; XI, 18, 24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>VI, 9, 14; VI, 17, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>IX, 10, 17; X, 12, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>VIII, 12, 27; X, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>IX, 18, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8-11</td>
<td>V, 19, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>IX, 18, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>IX, 18, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>I, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21-24</td>
<td>VI, 26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>VI, 24, 35; XI, 42, 58; XII, 24, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23-24</td>
<td>III, 20, 30; XII, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:30</td>
<td>IV, 9, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>IV, 23, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>IX, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>I, 1, 1; VIII, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>XI, 25, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>V, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>I, 21, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9.17</td>
<td>XII, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>VI, 12, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>X, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>VI, 27, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>III, 20, 30; III, 20, 32; VI, 24, 35; XII, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>I, 19, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>X, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XII, 28, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>XI, 42, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>V, 19, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>XI, 15, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>VII, 28, 43; VIII, 19, 38; VIII, 27, 50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>X, 15, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Titus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>VI, 19, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4-10</td>
<td>X, 19, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9-10</td>
<td>IX, 18, 34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:14-15</td>
<td>XI, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>V, 18, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XI, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>IV, 9, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>XI, 25, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Peter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>IV, 23, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20.21.22</td>
<td>XI, 25, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On Genesis

Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The Roman numerals in the Indexes are the chapter numbers.
The Arabic numbers are the paragraph numbers.

The Literal Meaning of Genesis

Aaron, VI:24; IX:32; XII:55(27)
Abel, VIII:4; IX:19(11)
Abraham, VI:13(8), 20(12); XII:10
bosom of (See bosom of Abraham)
Christ hidden in loins of, X:34(19)–37(21)
God speaking to, VIII:37(18)
Levi hidden in loins of, IX:34;
X:34(19)–37(21)
at oak of Mamre, XI:46
offspring of, IX:19(11), 30; XI:31(24)
abyss: darkness over the abyss, I:3
Adam
    See also Eve: man; specific topics
    animals, as naming, IX:20(12)–22,
    24(14)–25; XI:40(31)
    body, “ensouled” and “enspirited,”
    VI:30(19)–39(28)
    command given to, VIII:28(13)–29
    companion for, ideal, IX:9(5)
    descendants of, X:19, 22(13), 24, 26(15), 29
    disobedience of, X:18(11)–19
    ecstasy, in (and waking from), IX:1(1),
    36(19)
    Eve made from, IX: X:1(1)–2
    eyes opened, VIII:31(14); XI:40(31)–41
    God speaking to, VIII:37(18), 49(27)–50;
    XI:43(33)–46
    has become like one of us, XI:53
    helper, needing, IX:5(3)–7, 9(5),
    20(12)–22
    mortality and immortality,
    VI:33(22)–34(23), 3-4(23)–35(24);
    XI:42(32)
    Paradise, as cultivator of, VIII:15(8)–22
    (See also Paradise)
    prophetic utterance of, IX:36(19)
soul of (See Adam—soul of (below))
“the form of the one to come;” VII:1(1)
whether created as child or adult,
VI:23(13)–24
woman, as naming, XI:51(38)
Adam—soul of:
breath of God as source, VII:1(1)–6(4);
X:1(1)–2
origin of, X:3(2)
other souls as made from, or not,
X:9(6)–11, 29–36
and the soul of Eve (See under Eve)

Adam and Eve:
- death and disease, becoming subject to, XI:42(32)
- fall of, XI
- hiding from God, XI:1(1), 44–46
- and history, beginning of, VIII:2(1)
- if they had not sinned, VIII:6, 24;
- XI:10(6)–11
- nakedness of (See nakedness)
- offspring of (See Abel; Cain; Seth)
- Paradise, expulsion from, XI:1(1), 54(40)–55
- punishment of, XI:1(1), 40(31)–41, 50(37)–51(38)
- sexual relationship of, IX:5(3)–19(11);
- XI:57
- sin, making excuses for, XI:47(35)–48
- sin of, VIII:31(14); XI:56(41)–57
- temptation of, VIII:31(14); XI:1(1), 6(4)
- and the tree of knowledge of good and evil (See tree of knowledge of good and evil)
- tunics of skin, God clothing with,
- XI:52(39)–53
- adultery, IX:12(7)–13(8)
- agriculture, VIII:15(8)–23
- air, the element
  - See also elements, the four
  - angels and demons as airy beings,
    - III:14(10); XII:34(17)
  - body, as present in, VII:20(13)
  - earth as below, II:5(2)
  - fire as above, II:6(3)
  - in Genesis, III:4(3), 8(6)
  - soul, as not in, VII:18(12)–19
  - soul governing body by, VII:21(15), 25(19)
  - spirit, as called, VII:30; XII:18
  - as water and above, II:7(4)–8
- angels
  - See also elements, the four
  - angels and demons as airy beings,
    - III:14(10); XII:34(17)
- body, as present in, VII:20(13)
- earth as below, II:5(2)
- fire as above, II:6(3)
- in Genesis, III:4(3), 8(6)
- soul, as not in, VII:18(12)–19
- soul governing body by, VII:21(15), 25(19)
- spirit, as called, VII:30; XII:18
- as water and above, II:7(4)–8
- air (the sky)
  - See also heaven; sky
  - animals of, as first, III:1(1)
  - in creation narrative, III:3(4)–5, 8(6)
  - flood changing to water, III:2(2)–3
- Albula River, the, VIII:13(7)
- allegorical interpretation, I:2, 34
  - as figurative (See figurative interpretation)
- angelic knowledge, II:16(8)–19;
  - IV:40(23)–42(25), 45(28)–51(33)
- See also day; evening; morning
  - creation of, IV:39(22), 46(29)–50;
  - V:9–10, 15
  - of creatures unknown to us, V:36(18)
  - human mind, in contrast to, IV:49(32)
  - mysteries of kingdom revealed to,
    - V:37(19)–39
- of a thing in itself (evening), IV:40(23)
- of a thing in the Word of God (day),
  - IV:40(23)
- of things being known straight from God
  - (morning), IV:39(22), 47(30)
  - time as different in, IV:46(29)–50
  - in Word of God, IV:40(23)–42(25);
  - V:9–10
- angel(s)
  - blessed life of, XI:22(17)–25(19)
  - bodies of, III:8(6), 15; XII:34(17)
  - company of as spiritual light, IV:39(22)
  - creation of, II:17–19; XI:25(19)
  - the devil as, XI:22(17) (See also Satan)
  - fallen and wicked, III:14(10)–15;
    - IV:41(24), 51(33); XI:29(22); 37
    - (See also demons; Satan)
  - in heaven, 46(29)
  - “hidden day” of creation, VII:7(5)
  - and human souls, VII:34(23); X:8(5)
  - humans, relationship with, VIII:47;
    - XI:23(18)–25(19) (See also angels: work and ministry of, below)
  - humans to be equal to after resurrection,
    - IV:41(21); VI:35(24)
  - kinds or categories of, XI:22(17),
    - 25(19)–26
  - knowledge of (See angelic knowledge
    - above)
  - of light, evil spirit masquerading as,
  - XII:28
  - a little less than the angels, VI:30(19)
  - marriage, regarding, IX:15
  - Peter rescued by, XII:30
  - revelations of, XII:58(30), 69(36)
  - and sin, XI:9(7)
  - supercelestial, IV:56(35); V:10
  - tree of life, as guarding, IX:1(1), 55
  - work and ministry of, IX:24(14)–30;
    - XI:33(18)–35; XII:69(36)
- animals
  - See also specific kinds
don’t according to their kinds, III:16(11)–20
- Adam naming, IX:20(12)–22, 24(14)–25;
  - XI:40(31)
- of air and waters as first, III:1(1)
- angels, ministry of, IX:24(14)–25
- beauty of, III:22(14)
- blessing given aquatic, III:21(13)
- bodies of dead, as eating, III:22(14)–23,
  - 26(17)
- creation of, III:16(11)–20; IX:1(1)–2
- dangerous, creation of, III:24(15)
- earth, as fashioned from, III:16(11)–17;
  - IX:1(1)–2
The Literal Meaning of Genesis

flying creatures (See birds)
harmful to each other, creation of, III:25(16)
Increase and multiply, III:21(13)
man’s authority over, IX:25
plants and, V:44(23)
poisonous, creation of, III:24(15)
souls of, VII:13–15
of waters and air as first, III:1(1)

Apocrypha: Sirach as apocryphal book (See Sirach)
apostle(s), VIII:5(2)
See also specific names
Paul (See Paul)
Assyrians, the, VIII:13(7)
astrology, II:29, 31(16), 35(17)–37; XII:46
atmosphere around the earth, See heaven(s); sky
avarice, XI:19(15)–10
pride and, XI:18(14)

Babel, Tower of, IX:21
babies, See children; infants
Babylon, King of, VIII:31(14); XI:31(24)
bad, badness, See evil; sin
Balaam, IX:32; XI:37
baptism, IV:24(13)
infant, X:18(11)–19, 23(14)–29(16), 39(23)
Basil of Caesarea (Saint): on waters above the heavens, II:7(4)–8
beasts, See animals; specific kinds

beauty:
of creation, I:14(8); III:37; IV:1(1)
of creatures, III:22(14)
of nature (gardening), VIII:16
of trees, V:11, 44(23)
beginning
See also time
“In the beginning” (See “In the beginning”)
Jesus Christ the Son as, I:9(4)–12(6)
Belshazzar, King, XII:23
Bible, See also Genesis; Old Testament; scripture; specific topics
exegesis, biblical (See exegesis)
figurative meaning in, I:1(1); VIII:8(4)
natural science and (See under science)
revelation over reason, I:40(20)

scripture, meanings of (See scripture)
studying, I:1(1)
two testaments in, I:1(1)
writers, intention of (criteria for interpretation), I:41(21)
birds
See also animals

the birds of the sky, II:7(4)
brooding over eggs and chicks, I:36(18)
Increase and multiply, III:21(13)
waters, as created from, III:9(7)–10, 14(10)–15
blasphemy: by Manichees, VIII:5(2)
“blessed life,” XI:22(17)–25(19)
Satan missing out on, XI:30(23)

bodies, heavenly. See heavenly bodies
bodily visions, See under visions: bodily
body, God as, VII:30

body (human)
See also specific topics
brain (See brain)
changeable in time and space, VIII:39(20)–44(23)
disorders of, VII:25(19)
elements present in, VII:20(13)
man’s, creation of, V:14
ours vs. Adam’s, VI:37(26)–35(24)
resurrection of (See resurrection of the dead)
soul, as embodying, VI:30(19)–39(28);
XII:41(19)
soul as governing and moving,
VII:21(15), 42; VIII:40(21)–43(23)
soul as not, VII:25(19)–26(20)
bosom of Abraham, VIII:9(5); X:41(25);
XII:62(33)–64
brain, VII:20(13)
three parts of, VII:24(18)

breath of God:
and resurrection of the dead, X:8(5)
soul of Adam (See Adam, soul of)
Bulla Regia, III:12

Cain, VIII:4; IX:8(4), 19(11)
carnal pleasures, See lust
Catholic Church: origin of, IX:35
Catholic faith, See specific topics
charity
See also love
in our hearts through the Holy Spirit,
IV:16(9)
children
See also infants
being like, I:36(18)
and history, beginning of, VIII:2(1)
procreation of, IX:5(3)–19(11)
simple faith of, earth as symbolizing, II:4
and sin, X:22(13)
Christians, Christianity
faith as above reason (science), I:40(20)–41(21) self-satisfied, and unbelievers, I:39(19); II:20(9); V:23(8) Church, Catholic: origin of, IX:35 city (-ies) See also specific names two loves in two cities, XI:20 clothing: fig leaves, XI:42(32) “the whole of a garment,” V:25(10) tunics of skin, XI:52(39)–53 cloud(s), I:26–27; II:7(4); III:14 pillar of, XII:9(4) as water above air, II:7(4)–8 concupiscence, See lust; nakedness constellations, See heavenly bodies; specific names conversion, I:3, 7(3), 10(5)–11, 17 corporeal visions, See under visions cosmos: elements of (See elements, the four) inhabitants as not visible, III:8(6) creation See also specific creatures and subjects account of, Holy Spirit as not inspiring complete, V:21(8) angelic knowledge of, V:9–10 (See also under angelic knowledge) both faith and reason in, I:28(14) creatures still unknown to us, V:36(18) days of (See days of creation; specific days (first day, second day)) as defying human understanding of nature, VI:23–25(14) God as not needing, IV:26(15)–28 God’s love for creatures, I:14(8) God’s work as continuing (See under God; work) narration of, explanation, II:16(8)–19 order in (six-day), II:26(13)–27; V:5(3) (See also under days of creation; specific subjects) reason for, I:10(6)–14 as simultaneous and/or one by one, IV:51(33)–55; V:5(3)–6, 35(17) (See also simultaneous creation) three aspects of, V:28(12) And thus it was made, God not saying, III:30(20)–32 of time (See under time) time and history as beginning with, I:4(2); V:12(5)–16; VIII:3(1) (See also time) two moments of, V:27(11) twofold account of, interpreting, VII:18(11) Wisdom of God, all life as created through, V:29(13)–33(15) (See also Wisdom of God) Word of God as source of, II:19(8); IV:39(22)–40(23); VI:21–22 (See also Word of God) creatures See also specific kinds God’s love for, I:14(8) known to angels but unknown to us, V:36(18) plants as earth’s, V:22 relationships among (See specific creatures) creeping creatures, See reptiles crops See also plants creation of, earth mentioned separately, II:25(12) the greenery of the field, V:7(4)–11 primordial reasons as influencing, VI:17(10) seeds as from, VI:9(6) crucifixion, IV:21(11) Daniel, III:21(15), 24(15); XII:10, 20(9), 23 darkness: as creatures unformed, I:32(17)–35 darkness over the abyss, I:3; IV:39(22) night, as called, IV:37(20) (See also night) not all darkness as night, I:24(12) day(s) See also evening; morning; night as (angelic) knowledge of a thing in the Word of God, IV:40(23), 41(24) (See also under angelic knowledge) creation narrative, meaning in, II:43(26) evening and morning, sequence of, I:24(12)–25 first in six-day account of creation, V:5(3) heavenly bodies as marking, II:28(14)–29 interpretation, as not metaphorical/allegorical, IV:45(28) light as called (See light) lights in firmament as marking, II:28(14)–29 and night, alternation of, IV:38(21) as spiritual reality, IV:45(28) sun as ruling, II:32(25) days of creation, IV See also simultaneous creation “hidden day,” VII:7(5) night not mentioned in, II:42(25)
as not normal, solar days, II:44(27); V:4(2) as one day recurring six (or seven) times, IV:37; V:1(1)–3, 5(3)–6 order in, II:26(13)–27; V:5(3) and simultaneous creation, both as occurring, IV:55(34)–55; V:5(3)–6, 35(17) six, the number, as corresponding to parts of, IV:2(2)–6 six days, understanding, IV:1(1) death: Adam and, VI:33(22)–34(23) Adam and Enoch becoming subject to, XI:42(32) bodily disorders causing, VII:25(19) disease and, IX:17 Elijah and Enoch as avoiding, XI:11 original sin and, VI:34(23)–35(24) and resurrection of the body (See resurrection of the dead) sin as bringing about, IX:14(9)–15 the soul at, XII:59(31)–61 (See also heaven (God’s abode); hell) deeds: Genesis as reporting, I:1(1) demon(s), XII:28 as airy beings, III:14(10); XII:34(17) angel of light, masquerading as, XII:28 bad angels, XI:37 (See also under angels) the devil and, XI:31(24) (See also Satan) power of, XI:35(28) demon-possession: demon-possessed men, visions of, XII:35–36 feigned, XII:47 demonic communication, XII:34(17)–38 devil, See Satan discernment (good and evil, knowledge of), XI:53 See also tree of knowledge of good and evil disease, IX:17 Adam and Eve becoming subject to, XI:42(32) divination, XII:27(13)–30 rejecting, II:35(17)–37 unusual cases of, XII:45(22)–48 Divine Word, See Word of God divorce, IX:12(7) donkey of Balaam, IX:32; XI:37 dragon(s), III:13(9) Satan as called, VII:14(10) This dragon which you fashioned to make fun of him, X:27(20) dreams, dreaming See also visions various kinds, XII:3(2)–5 wet dreams, XII:31(15) dry land, See earth dust: men as fashioned from, VII:1(1)–6(4) earth, element of See also elements, the four body, as present in, III:6(4); VII:20(13) earth (the world; dry land) See also heaven and earth air as above, II:5(2) appearance of, II:24(11) beasts fashioned from, IX:1(1)–2 creation of crops and trees mentioned separately from, II:25(12) as element (See earth, element of (above); elements) formless matter (See formless matter) heaven, as including, III:9(7)–10 as invisible and shapeless, I:3 “last of the elements of the cosmos,” V:14 place of creation, II:24(11) simple faith of little ones (symbolizing), II:4 in six-day account of creation, V:5(3) water as covering (See water) eating; See food ecstasy: different kinds of, XII:3(2)–5 Eden, Garden of, See Paradise Egypt, V:19(6)–20(7), 25(10) elements, the four See also air; earth; fire; water animals, corresponding, III:13(9) body, as present in, VII:20(13) five senses in relation to, III:6(4)–7(5) one changing into another, III:4(4) weights of, I:39; II:1(1)–8 Elijah, VIII:11; IX:11 Emmanuel, See Jesus Christ Enoch, VIII:2(1); IX:11 envy, X:18(14) See also avarice Esau: Jacob and, II:36; VI:14(9), 16(9) eternity: God as not changeable, VIII:39(20)–44(23), 48(26) time and, I:6 Ethiopia, VIII:13(7) Euphrates River, the, VIII:13(7) Eve See also Adam and Eve: woman Adam led into sin by, XI:58(42)–60 Adam naming, XI:51(38)
creation of, IX: 1(1)–2
as helper, IX: 3(3)–7, 9(5)
mother of all living, XI: 51(38)
and the serpent, XI: 38(30)–39
soul of, X: 1(1)–2, 17(10)
evening
See also day; light; morning; morning and evening
as (angelic) knowledge of a thing in itself; self-knowledge, IV: 39(22), 40(23), 47(30), 49(32), V: 36(18)
and morning, sequence of, I: 23(12)–25
evil
See also Satan; sin
before birth, VI: 14(9)
evile people, reason for creating, XI: 10(8)–15
good and, nature of, VIII: 31(14)–32
knowing and experiencing, VIII: 31(14)–32, 34(16)–35
the love of money, XI: 19(15)–20
people, bad as of service to good, XI: 10(8)–13(10)
punishment of wicked as benefiting the good, XI: 14(11)–15
exegesis, biblical:
Augustine’s early efforts at, VIII: 5(2)
avoiding rigidity in, I: 36(18)
divine words, depths of, I: 41(21)
figurative and literal interpretations, I: 1(1); VIII: 5(2)
multiple meanings of scripture, I: 1(1)
rashness in, avoiding, I: 37(18), 40(20); IV: 45(28); VII: 42(28); IX: 32(11); XII: 1(1)
science and, I: 21, 38–39(19)
three criteria of, I: 41(21)
eyes:
of Adam, as opened, VIII: 13(14); XI: 40(31)–41
eyesight/vision, I: 31; IV: 54; VII: 20(13)
facts that are narrated: literal interpretation as
(See literal interpretation)
faith:
creation as matter of, I: 28(14)
and reason, as complementary, I: 28(14); VII: 35(24); XII: 30(14)
rule of (criteria for Biblical interpretation), I: 41(21)
science and, I: 39(19)–41(21); II: 20(9); V: 23(8); XII: 30(14)
simple, of children, II: 1
faithfulness: of God (See grace of God)
fal of man, XI
blessedness before, XI: 23(18)–24
pride as reason for, XI: 7(5)
fal of Satan, See under Satan
farming (agriculture), VIII: 15(8)–23
twentieth day, male, “eternal diversity, “
III: 34(22) (See also Eve; woman)
fifth day of creation, III: 1(1); VII: 18(12)
fig leaves, XI: 42(32)
figurative meaning and interpretation, I: 1(1), 34(17); VIII: 8(4)
See also literal meaning; specific subjects
the fall, up until, VIII: 2(1)
spiriture as both literal and figurative,
I: 1(1)
fire: “pure and bright fire of heaven,”
VII: 27(21)
fire, element of
See also elements, the four
air as below, II: 6(3)
body, as present in, VII: 20(13)
soul acting through body by, III: 7(5)
firmament, II: 1(1)–4, 23(10)
lights in (See lamps in the heavens)
first day of creation, I: 18(10)–22
fish, III: 11(8)–12
See also animals
Increase and multiply, III: 21(13)
“reptiles of live souls,” III: 11(8)–12
flesh: carnal pleasures (See lust)
flood, the:
changing air to water, III: 2(2)–3
heavens as destroyed in, III: 2(2)–3
flying creatures, See birds
food:
man, provided for, III: 33(21)
trees as providing, V: 11
forbidden fruit, See tree of knowledge of good and evil
formless matter, I: 2, 9(4), 28–30
heaven and earth as, I: 28
as prior not in time but causality, V: 12(5)–16
as prior to things formed from it, I: 29(15)–30
formlessness, spiritual, I: 10(5)–11
fornication, IX: 12(7)–13(8)
fourth day of creation, II: 32(25)
sun, function of, I: 23(11)
fruit:
forbidden (See tree of knowledge of good and evil)
trees, unfruitful, III: 27(18)–28
future:
- revelation as unfolding, IX:23(13)
- events that are predicted, figurative interpretation as (See figurative interpretation)

Ganges River, the, VIII:13(7)
Garden of Eden, See Paradise
gardening (agriculture), VIII:15(8)–23
garments, See clothing

Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees, On, VII:5(2)
See also specific topics
contrasted to this work, VIII:5(2)
figurative interpretation in, VIII:5(2)

Genesis, book of
See also Bible; Old Testament; specific topics
days of, IV:56(35)
deeds, as reporting, I:1(1)
figurative, meaning as, I:1(1), 34(17)
literal, meaning as, I:1(1), 34(17);
VIII:2(1), 8(4)
Gihon River, the, VIII:13(7)
See also Nile

God
See also Trinity; specific topics
appearance of, IX:3(2)
creative power of, VI:23(13)–26(15)
divine providence (See providence, divine)
as eternal, VIII:48(26)
existence of all things dependent on,
IV:22(12)–23
experiencing face-to-face, XI:43(33);
XII:54–55(27)
I am who I am, V:34(16)
ideal relationship with, IV:39(22)
knowledge of (See under knowledge;
Wisdom of God)
as Light, XII:59(31)
as loving his creation, I:14(8)
as measure, number, and weight, IV:7(3)–8,
11(5)–15
nature of, V:34(16)
as near to us, V:34(16)
as not needing his creation, IV:26(15)–28
the Son as one with, I:9(4)–11 (See also
under Jesus Christ (the Son))
“the Lord God,” VIII:24(11)
as unchangeable, VIII:39(20)–44(23),
48(27)
voice of, I:4(2)–6; VIII:37(18); IX:3(2)–4;
XI:43(33)–44 (See also Word of God)
Wisdom of (See Wisdom of God)
Word of (See Word of God)
work as continuing, IV:22(12)–23;
V:27(11)–28(12), 40(20)–41;
VI:23(13)
work of, I:36(18)–37; IX:29(16)–30
gold, VIII:13(7); X:44(26)
good, goodness:
- before birth, VI:14(9)
and evil, nature of, VIII:31(14)–32
And God saw that it was good, I:11,
14(8), 35; III:36(24)–37
people, bad as of service to good,
XI:10(8)–13(10)
punishment of wicked as benefiting,
XI:14(11)–15
good and evil, knowledge of, XI:53
See also tree of knowledge of good and evil
- grace of God, IV:24(13); VII:22;
VIII:25(12)–27; IX:33(18)–35; X:24
See also under light: spiritual
justification (See justification)
My grace is enough for you, III:24(15)
mystery of, IX:34
and overcoming temptation, XI:22(17)
grain: rubbing in hands, I:41(21)
greenery of the field, V:4(2)

Hagar, VII:10
Havilah, land of, VIII:13(7)
hay: as made before it sprang up, V:7(4)–11
head-covering, XI:58(42)
hearing: speech as requiring hearer, I:16
heaven: “heavens of heavens,” I:15(9),
32(17); III:1(1)
heaven (abode of God), XII:59(31)–69(36)
angels in, 46(29)
form and shape as unimportant, II:9(20)
third heaven, XII:1(1)–14,
56(28)–59(31), 65(34)–67
three heavens, if more than, XII:57(29)
truth, as understanding (symbolizing), II:4
heaven and earth, I:1(1)–3, 8; II:27
as formless matter, I:28
second in six-day account of creation,
V:5(3)

heaven (the sky), III:5
See also air; firmament; sky
earth as including, III:9(7)–10
flood, as destroyed in, III:2(2)–3
solid structure of, II:1(1)
water above, II:9(5)
heaven (the starry firmament), II:6(3)
lamps in (See heavenly bodies, below;
lamps in heaven)
motion of, II:23
heavenly bodies
See also lamps in the heavens; specific names and kinds
animate or inanimate, II:38(18)
marking seasons, days, and years,
II:28(14)–29
“music of the spheres,” I:40(20)
for signs and times (See signs and times)
spirits, if ruled by, II:38(18)
Hebrew (language), I:36(18)
hell, VII:9(5); XII:60(32)–64, 66
and the bosom of Abraham (See bosom of Abraham)
heretics
See Manichees; specific topics and theories
hermaphrodites, III:34(22)
Hezekiah, VI:28(17)
“hidden day,” VII:7(5)
history
See also time
beginning of, VIII:2(1)
creation as basis of, I:4(2); VIII:3(1)
historical facts as figurative interpretation
(See figurative interpretation)
Holy Spirit
See also Trinity; specific topics
the breath of life, X:8(5)
Do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, IV:18
seven gifts of, 15
The Spirit of God was being borne over the
water, I:11–14(8), 36(18)
human beings
See also man; soul; woman; specific topics
gods, relationship with, VIII:46(25)–47;
XI:23(18)–25(19)
body, creation of, III:34(22) (See also
body)
God, ideal relationship with, IV:39(22)
God as working and guarding,
VIII:25(12)–27
And God saw that it was good, God not
saying about, III:36(24)–37
harmony with creation, achieving, IV:39(22)
knowledge of (See under knowledge)
mind of, vs. angelic mind, IV:49(32)
spirit, creation of, III:34(22)
spiritual element in, XII:49(23)
I am who I am, V:34(16)
ilness, See disease
image and likeness of God, VI:22
man as made in, III:29(19)–31;
IV:29(17)–30; VI:20(12)–22
And thus it was made, III:30(19)–32
immortality, III:20, 33(21); VI:31(20)
In the beginning, I:2
as Word of God, I:2 (See also beginning;
Word of God)
Increase and multiply, III:33(21)
infants:
baptism of, X:23(14)–29(16)
Before I formed you in the womb, I knew
you, X:23(14)–24
original sin and, X:22(13)–25
insects, VII:15
creation of, III:22(14)–23
intellect:
intellectual vision as not deceived,
XII:20(14)–30 (See also under
vision)
senses as inferior to, VII:20(14)
intelligence, See knowledge
intercourse, sexual, See sexual intercourse
Isaac, VII:10
Isaiah, XI:31(24)ISHMAEL, VII:10
Jacob, VII:8(4); VIII:8(4); XII:64
and Esau, II:36; VI:14(9), 16(9)
Jeremiah, VI:14(9)
Jerusalem, XII:56(28)
Jesus Christ (the Son)
See also Trinity
accepting the form of a slave, VI:30(19)
Adam as “the form of the one to come,”
VII:1(1)
as Beginning, I:9(4)–12(6)
in Christ shall all be made alive, VIII:32
as cornerstone, VII:8(4)
crucifixion of, IV:21(11)
a little less than the angels, VI:30(19)
as one with God the Father, I:9(4)–11
as sinless, VIII:32
soul of, X:32(18)–37(21)
as visible member of Trinity, VIII:50
without sin, X:37(21)
as Word of God, I:2, 9(4)–11 (See also
Word of God)
John, V:29(13)
Joseph, husband of Mary, XII:44(21)
Joseph, son of Jacob, XII:20(9)
journalists, XI:35(28)
Judah, XI:34(27)
one of you is the devil, XI:31(24)
justification, VI:26(37)–27, 35(24),
37(26)–38

On Genesis
On Genesis

kings, See individual names

knowledge:
  angelic (See angelic knowledge)
  different ways of knowing things, V:28(12)
  divine (See knowledge, divine (below))
  human, as limited, V:36(18); VI:23–25(14), 27(16)
  knowing God, IV:19; V:34(16)

knowledge, divine:
  foreknowledge, IV:19; V:29(13)–30, 36(18); VI:28(17)
  knowing God, or rather known by God, IV:19

knowledge of good and evil, tree of, See tree of knowledge of good and evil

lamps in the heavens, II:26(13), 28(14)–29
  light that preceded, IV:38(21)

land (dry land), See earth

language(s):
  space and time in, I:5; V:34(16)
  Syriac, I:36(18)
  voice of God, I:5 (See also under God; Word of God)

Lazarus (beggar), VII:9(5)
  finger of, X:41(25)

Let light be made, I:4(2), 7(3)–8, 15(9)–17, 38(19); II:15(7)
  intellectual creatures, words referring to, I:15(9)–17
  time, question of, I:15(9)–17

Levi, VI:13(8)
  Abraham, as hidden in loins of, IX:34;
    X:34(19)–37(21)

life:
  creation of, difficulties understanding, IX:29–30
  of the faithful vs. the corrupt, IV:40(23)
    as through God, II:12; V:29(13)–33(15);
    VII:48(26)
  walking now in the newness of life, IV:24(13)
  what was made in him is life, V:30–32
  life, tree of, See tree of life

Life, woman as named, XI:51(38)
  light, I:31–35; II:27
  angels, as company of, IV:39(22)
  bodily (corporeal), I:7(3)–8, 38(19);
    IV:39(22)
  before creation of sun, I:21–22
  day, as called, I:20; IV:37(20) (See also day)
  diffusion and contraction of, theory,
    I:30(16)–31

as enlightenment of intellectual creatures,
  I:32(17)–35
  first in six-day account of creation, V:5(3)
  God as, I:3; XII:59(31)
  lamps in the heavens (See lamps in the heavens)

Let light be made, I:4(2), 7(3)–8, 15(9)–17, 38(19); II:15(7)
  life of the faithful as, IV:40(23)
  nature of, I:7(3)–8
  soul, as not in, VII:18(12)–19
  soul governing body by, VII:21(15), 25(19)
  spiritual, I:7(3)–8, 22, 32(17)–35, 38(19);
    IV:39(22) (See also grace)
  as spiritual reality, IV:45(28)
  spiritual vs. corporeal, I:7(3)–8

likeness to God, See image and likeness of God

lion(s), VII:15
  Daniel in the lions’ den, III:24(15)
  Satan as called, VII:14(10)

literal meaning and interpretation, XI:2
  See also figurative meaning; specific subjects
  in Genesis, I:1(1), 34(17);
    VIII:1(1)–14(7)

literary meaning and interpretation, XI:2
  See also figurative meaning; specific subjects
  in Genesis, I:1(1), 34(17);
    VIII:1(1)–14(7)

Lord: “the Lord God,” VIII:24(11)
  love, I:13(7)
    dutiful, of God, XI:22(17)
    of God for creatures, I:14(8)
    holy, XI:19(15)–20
    love your neighbor as yourself;
      XII:22(11)
    of money (avarice), XI:19(15)–20
    two loves in two cities, XI:20
    unclean, XI:19(15)–20

Lucan (poet), III:2(2)

Lucifer, See Satan

luminaries of heaven, See heavenly bodies;
  lamps in the heavens; stars

lust, X:32(18); XI:15
  See also nakedness; sexuality, human
  carnal pleasures, X:20(12)–22(13)
  flesh and spirit lusting against each other,
    X:20(12)–21

“made,” “making,” III:29(19), 30(19)–32, 35(22)
meaning of, II:11–15(7)
And thus it was made, II:10(6)–13
God not saying, III:30(20)–32
meaning of, III:35(22)

male
See also Adam; man
and female, “eternal diversity,” III:34(22)

Mamre, oak of, XI:46

man
See also Adam; human beings; specific subjects
body and soul of (See body; soul)
breath of life given, VII:23(17)
creation of, III:29(19)–32; VI
dust from the earth, as fashioned from,
VII:1(1)–6(4)
the first (See Adam)
as image and glory of God, XI:58(42)
in image and likeness of God (See image and likeness of God)
other creatures, similarities and differences,
VI:20(12)–22
punishment of, XI:51(38)
soul of, VII
And thus it was made, God not saying,
III:30(20)–32
woman as made from, IX; X:1(1)–2
woman causing to sin, XI:58(42)

Manichees, Manicheans:
blasphemy by, VIII:5(2)
On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees (See Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees, On)
as heretics, XI:17(13)
Satan, not recognizing as of God, XI:17(13)
transmigration of souls, belief in,
VII:16(11)–18
two natures and two wills, doctrine of,
X:22(13)–23

marriage:
absent after resurrection, IX:15
of Adam and Eve (See Adam and Eve)
The Good of Marriage, Saint Augustine’s book, IX:12(7)
value of, IX:12(7)

Marsi, XI:35(28)
Martha, IV:25(14)
Mary, mother of Jesus, XII:44(21)
as Virgin, X:32(18)
Mary, sister of Martha, IV:25(14)
Mary, sister of Moses, XII:55(27)

meaning in the Bible, See exegesis; figurative meaning; literal meaning; specific topics
measure:
God without measure, IV:8
measure and number and weight,
III:25(16); IV:7(3)–12, 52;
VI:27(16)
mercy of God, X:24
money: love of, XI:19(15)

moon
See also heavenly bodies
creation, phase of, II:30(15)–32
night, as ruling, II:32(25)
shape of on first day (full or new),
II:30(15)–32
sun and stars, relative brilliance;
II:33(16)–34

morning
See also day; evening; light
phase (in angelic knowledge) of things
being known straight from God,
IV:39(22), 47(30)
morning and evening
See also evening
angelic knowledge of creation, as phases
in, IV:36(18), 39(22) (See also under angelic knowledge)
sequence of, I:23(12), 24(12)–25
seventh day, morning but no evening as having, IV:36

Moses, VI:20(12)
God revealed to, V:34(16); VIII:37(18);
XII:55(27)–56(28)
rod turned to serpent, VI:24
mother of all living, XI:51(38)
Mount Olympus, III:2(2)
“music of the spheres,” I:40(20)

mystery (-ies):
of grace, IX:34
of the kingdom, revealed to angels,
V:37(19)–39
of the Trinity (See Trinity)
nakedness
See also lust; sexuality, human
of Adam and Eve, XI:1(1), 3
Adam and Eve realizing,
XI:40(31)–42(32)
I was afraid, because I am naked, and I hid myself,
XI:45(34)–46
sin of Adam and Eve, theories,
XI:40(31)–41, 56(41)–57

mother of all living, XI:51(38)
Mount Olympus, III:2(2)
“music of the spheres,” I:40(20)

mystery (-ies):
of grace, IX:34
of the kingdom, revealed to angels,
V:37(19)–39
of the Trinity (See Trinity)
nakedness
See also lust; sexuality, human
of Adam and Eve, XI:1(1), 3
Adam and Eve realizing,
XI:40(31)–42(32)
I was afraid, because I am naked, and I hid myself,
XI:45(34)–46
sin of Adam and Eve, theories,
XI:40(31)–41, 56(41)–57

nature
See also specific topics
gardening, VIII:16
human understanding of, as limited,
VI:23–25(14), 27(16)
On Genesis

“The Nature of Things,” VII:16
Nebuchadnezzar, XII:20(9)
New Testament, See Bible; scripture; specific topics
night
See also day; darkness
and day, alternation of, IV:38(21)–39(22)
six days of creation, as not mentioned in, II:42(25)
Nile River, the, V:19(6)–20(7), 25(10); VIII:13(7)
Noah, IX:19(11)
numbers
See also specific numbers
measure and number and weight (See under measure)
six without number, IV:8
six as the perfect, IV:2(2)–6

oak of Mamre, XI:46
Ocean, IV:54
oil, II:2
Old Testament
See also Bible; scripture
Manichean blasphemy of, VIII:5(2)
Olympus, Mount, III:2(2), 3
omnipotence, VI:23(13)–24
original sin, VI:14(9)–16
in Adam all shall die, VIII:32
Christ as without, X:37(21)
and death of the body, VI:34(23)–35(24)
infants and (See under infants)
overcoming, IX:19(11)
the soul and, X:18(11)–19
“the whole batch or lump” of humans contracting, VI:16

pagans; XII:47
See also unbelievers
parables, VIII:13(7)
paradise, heavenly, See heaven (God’s abode)
Paradise (Garden of Eden), V:21; VIII
See also specific topics
account of, three ways of taking, VIII:1(1)–4
Adam and Eve expelled from, XI:1(1), 54(40)–55
Adam as cultivator of, VIII:15(8)–22
Genesis account as literal (historical), VIII:1(1)–4
interpretations, different, VIII:1(1)–4, 8(4)
man as put in to guard, VIII:19(10)–23
man as put in to work, VIII:15(8)–17(9)
plants and trees in, VI:5; VIII:6(3)–7
rivers of, VIII:13(7)–14 (See also specific names)
sixth day of creation, regarding, VIII:7
spring watering, V:21–22
as symbol of spiritual reality, VIII:2(1)
third day of creation, regarding, VIII:6(3)
paranormal communication, XII:34(17)–38
Paul, apostle, Saint:
on angels knowing mystery of the kingdom, V:38
on bodies, natural and spiritual, VI:30(19)
on body embodying soul, VI:30(19)
on charity, I:13(7)
on flesh lusting against spirit, X:20(12)
on head-coverings for women, XI:58(42)
in him we live and move and are, IV:23
knowing God, or rather known by God, IV:19
on mysteries of the kingdom, V:38
no good or evil before birth, teaching of, VI:14(9)–16
perfection, as lacking, III:24(15)
on pride and avarice, XI:19(15)
seeing God, XII:56(28)
third heaven, account of, XII:1(1)–14, 56(28)–57(29), 65(34)–67
a thorn in the flesh, as given, III:24(15)
women, regarding, XI:50(37), 58(42)
people, See human beings; man
perfection: Paul admitting lack of, III:24(15)
Peter, XII:24, 61
vision of, XII:24
Pharaoh, XII:20(9)
philosophers: on souls, human and animal, VII:13–15
philosophy: false, I:41(21)
Phison River, the, VIII:13(7)
plants, V:44(23)–45
See also specific kinds
creation of, V:7(4)–11
as earth’s creatures, V:22
gardening, VIII:16
the greenery of the field, V:4(2), 7(4)–11
in Paradise, VIII:6(3)–7
Platonic doctrine: transmigration of souls (See transmigration of souls)
poet: Lucan, III:2(2)
Preparation Day, IV:21(11)
pride, XI:19(15)–20
beginning of all sin, XI:7(5), 19(15)–20, 21(16)

Volume I/13
Volume I/13

fall, as reason for, XI:7(5)
of fallen angels, IV:41(24)
God condemning, XI:53
“prime matter”: concept of, I:2
problems, See trials
procreation
See also sexual intercourse
God’s plan for, IX:5(3)–7
prodigal son, VI:31(20)
prophecy: as figurative interpretation (See figurative interpretation)
providence, divine:
all things as governed by, V:40(20)–44(23)
evidence of, V:43(22)
twofold operation of, VIII:38(19)–39(20),
44(23)–45(24), 48(26)
quadrupeds, III:16(11)–17
questions (in exegesis): stating meanings by way
of, I:40(20)

rain:
God had not rained, V:17(6)–18

rapture:
two stages of, XII:53(26)–54

rashness, avoiding:
in exegesis (See under exegesis)
by readers, VII:43

reason:
creation as matter of, I:28(14)
and faith, as complementary, I:28(14);
VII:35(24); XII:30(14)
faith as above, I:40(20)–41(21)
thruths of revelation, precedence of, I:40(20)

Rebecca, VI:14(9)

religion:
Christianity (See Christianity)
false, I:41(21)
reproduction, III:21(13)
See also Increase and multiply; sexual intercourse

reptiles
See also animals
“reptiles of live souls,” III:11(8)–12
rest of Christ in tomb, IV:21(11)
rest of God, IV:16–19, 43(26)
from further creating, IV:22(12)–23
as in Himself, IV:26(15)–27(16), 56(35)
on the seventh day, IV:1(1), 15(8)–23,
25(14)–28, 45(20), 50, 56(35)
rest of man:
to be found in God, IV:27(16)–29(17)
our future rest in God, IV:21(11)
on the sabbath, IV:21(11)
resurrection of the dead, VI:30(19); IX:10(6);
XII:68(35)

bodies after, VI:30(19)–39(28); IX:6
the breath of life, X:8(5)
humans equal to angels after, IV:41(21);
VI:35(24); IX:15
no marriage after, IX:15
our renewal in, IV:37(26)–39(28)
revelation: as unfolding, IX:23(13)
rivers of Paradise, the four, VIII:13(7)
sabbath:
God resting on seventh day (See under seventh day)
Jewish and Christian, IV:24(13)
rest on, IV:21(11)
sacrament(s), XI:54(40)
a great sacrament in Christ and in the Church, I:1(1)
they shall be two in one flesh, I:1(1)
sacrifice: of Jesus Christ, IV:21(11)
saints, XI:32(25)
See also specific names
salvation:
See also baptism; conversion; grace
losing and winning back, III:24(15)
Sarah, VII:10; VIII:2(1); IX:32
Satan:
as angel, XI:22(17)
“blessed life,” as missing out on, XI:30(23)
“body” of, XI:31(24)–32(25)
creation of, XI:27(20)–30(23)
fall of, XI:21(16), 33(25)
Manichean beliefs regarding, XI:17(13)
nature of, XI:17(13)–18(14)
one of you is the devil, XI:31(24)
pride and avarice of, XI:18(14)
and the serpent, XI:4(2), 34(27)–37
sin of, VIII:31(14); XI:17(13)–18(14),
21(16)–22(17)
truth, as not grounded in, X:30(23)
wicked people, as head of, XI:31(24)

Saturn, II:9(5)

science:
exegesis, as criterion in, I:38–39(19)
faith and, I:39(19)–41(21); II:20(9);
V:23(8); XII:30(14)
revelation over reason, I:40(20)
scribe(s): a scribe learned in the kingdom of heaven, I:1(1)

scripture
See also Bible
as above science, I:40(20)–41(21)
advantage to studying, I:41(21)

On Genesis
On Genesis

as both literal and figurative, I:1(1)
multiple meanings of, I:1(1)
purpose of, I:40(20)
spiritual meaning in (See figurative interpretation) as twofold, I:1(1)
sea(s), I:26
in six-day account of creation, V:5(3)
seasons: lights in firmament as marking, II:28(14)–29
second day of creation, II work of, II
seeds, V:44(23)
of body and soul, X:37(21)
as from crops, V:9(6)
material, and primordial reasons, differences between, VI:9(6)
moisture, as growing from, V:20(7)
primordial reasons as influencing, V:44(23)–45; VI:17(10)
senses, IX:25
the five, VII:20(13)
four elements and, III:6(4)–7
intellet as superior, VII:20(14)
as separating men and animals from plants, VII:22(16)
serpent, VII:21
cleverness of, XI:4(2)
God as permitting devil to use, XI:5(3), 16(12)
punishment of, XI:49(36)
rod turned to, VI:24
Satan and, XI:4(2), 34(27)–37
subtlety of, XI:4(2), 36(29)–37
temptation, reason for use in, XI:16(12)
and the woman, XI:38(30)–39
Seth, VIII:4; IX:19(11)
seven, the number:
Holy Spirit, as dedicated to, V:15
seventh day, IV
as created, or just period of time, IV:37(20)
God as resting on, IV:16–23, 25(14)–28
(See also rest, of God) God as sanctifying, IV:25(14)–30
morning but no evening, as having, IV:31(18)–36
sexual intercourse:
immortality and, III:33(21)
Increase and multiply, III:33(21)
original sin and, III:33(21)
Paradise, as not happening in, IX:8(4), 13(8)–14(9), 16(10)–18
for procreation of children, IX:5(3)–7, 12(7), 19(11)

and sin, IX:10(6)–11
sin of Adam and Eve, theories, XI:56(41)–57

sexuality, human
See also nudity
Adam and Eve, relationship of, IX:13(8)–19(11)
and marriage (See marriage)
sexual intercourse (See sexual intercourse, above)
sin, regarding, IX:5(3)–19(11)

wet dreams, XII:31(15)
signs and times: problems with, II:28(14)–29
silver, X:44(26)
simultaneous creation, IV:51(33)–52;
V:1(1)–3, 5(3)–6
See also time
creatures as at once completed and just begun, VI:17(10)–19
ongoing development still as from, V:27(11)–28(12), 44(23)–45
and six-day creation, both as occurring, IV:53(34)–55; V:5(3)–6, 35(17)

sin
See also evil; specific sins
Adam led into by Eve, XI:58(42)–60
children and, X:22(13)
Christ as without, X:37(21)
evil people (See under evil)
God as not causing, I:32(17)
and human nature, XI:9(7)
Jesus Christ as without, VIII:32
life if Adam and Eve had not sinned (See under Adam and Eve)
original (See original sin)
pride as first (See under pride)
of Satan, XI:17(13)–18(14), 21(16)–22(17)
sexuality, regarding, IX:5(3)–19(11)
trying to avoid as bringing its opposite vice, XI:13(6)

Sirach, book of: on the sun, I:21
six, the number:
“days” of creation, importance in, IV:1(1)
perfection of, IV:2(2)–6, 13–14, 28, 39(22); V:10
six days of creation, See days of creation
sixth day of creation, IV:1(1)
God addressing people on, VI:13(8)
man created, III:29(19)–32
soul, creation of, VI:12(7)
work of, III
skin, tunics of, XI:52(39)–53

---

Volume I/13
The Literal Meaning of Genesis

Volume I/13

sky
See also air; heaven
the birds of the sky, II:7(4)
rotation or stillness of, II:23(10)
shape of, II:20(9)—22
slave(s), slavery: accepting the form of a slave,
VI:30(19)
solid structure, the, See firmament; heaven
Solomon: women evilly influencing, XI:59
Son of God, See “Beginning”; Jesus Christ;
Word of God
Song of Songs, VIII:2(1)
soul:
of Christ, X:32(18)—37(21)
spirit not meaning the same thing,
VI:30(10)—39(28)
soul (human), VII
See also specific topics
of Adam (See Adam—soul of)
angels and, VII:34(23); X:8(5)
and animal, VII:13—17
author’s previous books on, X:3(2)
body, as distinct from, VII:25(19)—26(20);
X:40(24)
body, as governing and moving,
VII:21(15), 25(19);
VIII:40(21)—43(23); XII:41(19)
as body, Tertullian’s belief, X:41(25)—45
the breath of life, VIII:40(21)—43(23);
X:8(5)
causal formula, creation and,
VII:32(22)—34(23)
changeable in time, but not space,
VII:39(20)—44(23)
composition of, VII:7(5)—9(6); 18—24(18)
corporeal (material), as not, VII:18—19,
27(21)—31; X:40(24)
creation of, VI:12(7); VII
at death, XII:59(31)—61 (See also heaven
(spiritual); hell)
difficulty of topic, VI:40(29)
“ensouled,” and “enspirited” body,
VI:30(19)—39(28); IX:6; XII:18
of Eve, X:1(1)—2, 17(10)
fire, as acting through body by, III:7(5)
Before I formed you in the womb, I knew
you, X:23(14)—24
I obtained a good soul by lot, X:30(17)—33
lust, as contributing to cause, X:20(12)—21
medical science regarding,
VII:20(13)—25(19)
origin of, three possibilities regarding,
X:4(3)—6, 9(6)—17(10)
philosophers regarding, VII:13—15
pre-existence of (theory), VI:15(9)
reunion with glorified body, XII:68(35)
scripture as nourishment for, I:40(20)
simultaneous creation and,
VII:35(24)—39
spiritual material and composition of,
VII:9(6)—13
transmigration of (See transmigration of
souls)
what it’s not, X:7(4), 40(24)
woman’s as made from man’s, idea,
X:1(1)—2
spirit:
air as called, VII:30; XII:18
meaning of, XII:20
soul not meaning the same thing,
VI:30(19)—39(28); IX:6; XII:18
spirit, as immaterial reality (different
meaning), XII:9(4)
Spirit of God, See Holy Spirit
spiritual, the word, XII:18—19(8)
spiritual formlessness, I:10(5)—11
spiritual light
See grace; light: spiritual
spiritual material (composition of soul),
VII:9(6)—13
spiritual meaning in scripture, See figurative
interpretation
spring: which watered the whole earth,
V:19—22, 24(9)—26
stars
See also heavenly bodies; lamps in the
heavens
sun and moon, relative brilliance,
II:33(16)—34
stone(s): rejected by the builders which
became a cornerstone, VII:8(4)
sun, I:21—22
See also heavenly bodies
day, as ruling, I:23(11); II:32(25)
fourth day, as created on, I:23(11)
moon and stars, relative brilliance,
II:33(16)—34
mythical beliefs regarding, I:22(11)
Sirach, book of, on, I:21
supercelestial angels, V:10
Syriac (language), I:36(18)
temptation: God as permitting, XI:6(4),
8(6)—9(7), 15
temptation of Adam and Eve, VIII:31(14);
XI:1(1), 6(4)
serpent, reason for use in, XI:16(12)
Tertullian:
Satan envying man, XI:18(14)
soul as body, belief in, X:41(25)–45
traducianism, theory of, X:1(1)
third day of creation, II
plants and trees in Paradise, VIII:6(3)–7
plants created on, II:25(12)
third heaven, XII:1(1)–14, 56(27)–57(29), 65(34)–67
thistles, III:27(18)–28; VII:21
thorns, III:27(18)–28; VII:21
Tiber River, the, VIII:13(7)
Tigris River, the, VIII:13(7)
time, V:35(17)
See also history; specific subjects
angelic knowledge and, IV:46(29)–50
creation as basis of, I:4(2); IV:52, 56(35); V:12(5)–16; VIII:3(1)
eternity and, difference between (See eternity
formless matter and, I:29(15)–30; V:12(5)–16
God as before time, timeless, V:35(17)
God had not rained, V:17(6)–18
heavenly bodies as reckoning, II:28(14)–29
“In the beginning” (See “In the beginning”) and light, creation of, I:15(9)–17
in six days of creation, nature of, V:12(5)–16
voice of God and, I:4(2)–6
world made and ruled in time, V:35(17)
times, signs and, See signs and times
Tower of Babel, IX:21
traducianism, theory of, X:1(1)
transmigration of souls, VII:13(9); XI:37
arguments against, VII:12–18
tree of knowledge of good and evil, VIII:12(6); XI:41
Adam, command given to, VIII:28(13)–30, 36(17)
historical and allegorical explanations, VII:8(4)–11
namimg of, VIII:33(15)–35
tree of life, VII:9(5)–11
angels guarding, XI:1(1), 55
historical and allegorical explanations, VIII:8(4)–11
trees
See also plants
beauty of, V:11, 44(23)
creation of, earth mentioned separately, II:25(12)
drew out from the earth...every tree, V:7(4)–11
unfruitful, III:27(18)–28

trials: self-knowledge as deeper through, III:24(15)

Trinity
See also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ
and creation of man, III:29(19)
mystery of, I:12(6)–14(8)
persons of, II:10(6)–14
troubles, See trials

truth:
eternal, IX:3(2)
of God (See also grace of God)
revelation over reason, I:40(20)
Satan not grounded in, X:30(23)
tunics of skin, XI:52(39)–53
Tyre, Prince of, VIII:31(14)

unbelievers:
and Christian know-it-alls, I:39
conversion of (See conversion)
way to faith, concern for, I:39(19); II:20(9); V:23(6)

unformed basic material/unformed matter, See formless matter

vegetation, See plants
vice. See sin
virginity:
Mary as Virgin, X:32(18)
value of, IX:12(7)
visions (sight), I:31; IV:54; VII:20(13)
visions, effect on, XII:42(20)

visions
See also dreams
after resurrection, XII:69(36)
body’s influence as limited, XII:42(20)–43
of boy in extreme pain, XII:37–38
causes of, XII:39(18)–41(19), 44(21)
of demon-possessed men, XII:35–36
divination (See divination)
God, experiencing face to face,
XII:54–55(27) (See also rapture)
Moses and Paul as experiencing,
XII:55(37)–56(28)
Peter, angel rescuing, XII:30
soul as deceived through, XII:52(25)
third heaven, Paul’s account of,
XII:1(1)–14, 56(28)–57(29), 65(34)–37
visions, three kinds of (bodily, intellectual, spiritual), XII:15(6)–18
bodily (corporeal), XII:29–30
compared, XII:15(6)–17, 15(6)–26,
On Genesis

Wisdom, book of:
I obtained a good soul by lot, X:30(17)–33
Wisdom of God, IV:23; VII:10
all things, all life as created through, V:29(13)–33(15)
what was made in him is life, V:30–32
woman
See also Eve
creation of, IX:16(15)–26
and head-covering, XI:58(31)
Paul’s teachings regarding (See under Paul)
punishment of, XI:50(37)
soul as made from man’s, idea, I:1(1)–2
Word, Wisdom of, II:16(8)–19
Word of God, I:10(5)–11; V:29(13)
See also Wisdom of God
all creation made from, II:19(8); IV:39(22)–40(23); VI:20–22
angelic knowledge in, IV:40(23)–41(24)
creation as from, II:19(8); IV:39(22)–40(23)
as eternal, I:6
God said, I:8
as how God says everything, I:9(4)
nature of, I:4(2)–6
reason for all creation as in, II:10(6)–14
same as Son of God, I:9(4)–11 (See also Jesus Christ (the Son))
what was made in him is life, V:30–32
work:
of God (See under God)
God as continuing, IV:22(12)–23; V:27(11)–28(12), 40(20)–41, 44(23)–46; VI:23(13)
humans, God as working and guarding, VIII:25(12)–27
man as put in Paradise for, VIII:15(8)–16
world, See earth
years: heavenly bodies as marking, II:28(14)–29
Index from

On the Literal Interpretation of Genesis, an Unfinished Book

(De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus)

Included in book:

Translation, introduction, and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

This volume contains three works on the Book of Genesis: On Genesis: A Refutation of the Manichees (De Genesi adversus Manichaeos), Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram liber imperfectus) and the third and longest, The Literal Meaning of Genesis (De Genesi ad litteram).

Volume I/13 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-175-6, 6 x 9 in., 540 pp., 2002
Paperback: 978-1-56548-201-2, 6 x 9 in., 539 pp., 2004

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>4, 11; 4, 13; 4, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>5, 19; 8, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>5, 22; 5, 23; 15, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>6, 26; 7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6-7</td>
<td>8, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>10, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>11, 34; 11, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>11, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>11, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>11, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>14, 44; 15, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>15, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>15, 50; 15, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>15, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>15, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>16, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>16, 55; 16, 57; 16, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>16, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:1</td>
<td>4, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:5</td>
<td>14, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:10</td>
<td>14, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5.2</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>10:9</th>
<th>18:1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3, 9</td>
<td>7, 28; 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43:30</td>
<td>4, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Amos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>5:8</th>
<th>14, 47</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>14, 47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.3</td>
<td>5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>16, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
<td>4, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>16, 61</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>16, 61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>5, 23</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>5, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>16, 62</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>16, 62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On Genesis

Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The Roman numerals in the Indexes are the chapter numbers.
The Arabic numbers are the paragraph numbers.

Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis

abyss: darkness over the abyss, 11(4)–12
aetiology: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
air, 18
ether, 9
humid, lower, 46
nature of, 14
pure, 45
allegory: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
allegory: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
gloss of, 7–8; 21

knowledge of, 20; 24; 27
animals
See also specific kinds
land, 53–45(16)
and man, creation of, 55–56
water, 48(15)–50
beasts, See animals
beauty, 58; 59
of creation, 10; 25
of heavenly bodies, 36(12)
of sky, 30

Volume I/13
beginning See also “In the beginning”
of day and of night, 42

Bible:
- human capacity for understanding, 41(13)
- interpretation (See exegesis; literal interpretation; specific subjects)
- Old Testament (See Old Testament)

birds, 44(14); 48(15)–50
- See also animals
- body (human): and soul, 8

Christians: “little ones,” 19(5)
Church, Catholic: faith, short summary of, 2–4(1)

cloud(s): Elijah begging for rain, 47
- See also heavenly bodies
- creation of, 8

creation
- See also specific subjects
- beauty of, 10
- Creator, as distinguished from, 2
- days of, as not ordinary days, 51
- Creator, God as, 2(1)

darkness:
- the darkness he called night, 26(6)
- darkness over the abyss, 11(4)–12
- light, as divided from, 23
- various meanings of, 24–25

David, King, 47
day(s), 38(13)
- See also light; morning and evening
- beginning of, 42
- of creation, as not ordinary days, 51
- evening and morning, 28(7)
- and God called the light day, 26(6)–27
- and heavenly bodies, 27, 36(12)

dualism: Creator God as excluding, 2(1)

earth
- See also heaven and earth
- God as naming, 33
- invisible and shapeless, 11(4); 14
- meaning of, in creation, 9
- elements, the four, 18
- Elijah, 47
- Elisha, 47

eternity
- See also time
- heavenly bodies and, 38(13)
ether, 9
evening, 28(7); 43
- See also day

evil:
- nature of, 3
- substantiality (rejection of Manichean thesis), 3(1)

exegesis
- See also specific topics
- basic facts necessary to, 6–10(3); 13(4); 18(4); 19–20(5)
- “four ways of expounding the law,” 5(2)
- human limitations, recognizing in, 19(5); 29(8); 30(9); 41(13)
- literal interpretation, problems with, 19(5)
- questions, importance of, 1(1); 27(6); 30(9)
- rashness, avoiding in, 1(1); 10(3); 19(5); 29(8); 30(9)
- of this work (See Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis)

faith: Catholic, short summary of, 2–4(1)

Father: God as, 60(16)–61
- See also God

fifth day of creation, 52

firmament
- See also heaven
- waters above vs., 29(8)–31

first day of creation: light made on, 20

fish, 44(14)
- See also animals

fruit, 34(11)–35

Genesis, See specific subjects

God
- See also Trinity
- as craftsman, 16
- as Creator (See Creator, God as)
- as Father, 60(16)–61
- human mind, divine likeness of, 60
- image and likeness of, 55–62
- the Trinity as one, 2(1) (See also Trinity)
- universe, divine likeness of, 59
- voice of, 19(5)
- Word of (See Word of God)

good, goodness: of things, natural, 3(1)

head-coverings, 61

heaven and earth, 9–13

heaven (sky), 29(8)–31

See also firmament

God as naming, 31
- “lamps” in, 36(12)–37
meaning of, in creation, 9
heavenly bodies, 29; 36(12)–37; 42
See also specific names and kinds
beauty of, 36(12)
day and night before creation of, 27
as “for days,” 36(12)
lamps fixed in the firmament, 36(12)–43
for signs and for times, 38(13)
hell, 25
heretics, 11(4); 24
See also Manichees
history: in Old Testament interpretation, 5(2)
Holy Spirit, 4; 56
See also Spirit of God
in Trinity, 2
human beings
See also man
reason and mind, divine likeness of, 60
Image and likeness of God, 55–62
differences between the Son and humans in,
57
“In the beginning”:
the Son as, 6(3)–7; 14
two hypotheses regarding, 6–8(3)
Jesus Christ (the Son), 2; 6(3); 18; 60(16)–61
See also Trinity
as the beginning, 6(3)
humanity made new through, 4
image of God, 55–62
as Word of God (See under Word of God)
lamps: fixed in the firmament, 36(12)–43
light, 19(5)–25
See also day
darkness, as divided from, 23
“from which everything...has its
beginning,” 20
and God called the light day, 26(6)–27
the goodness of, 22
heavenly bodies, 37–43
Let light be made, 8; 19(5)–21
literal interpretation:
problems with, 19(5)
“make,” “making”:
meaning of, 55–56
man:
and animals, creation of, 55–56
as image and likeness of God, 55–62
Manichees, Manicheans
See also heretics
dualism of (vs. the Creator God), 2(1)
evil, substantiality of (thesis, rejected
here), 3(1)
this work as aimed at, 11(4); 22–23(5)
Mary, mother of Jesus, 4
moon, 40
See also heavenly bodies
morning, 28(7); 43
See also day
New Testament: Old Testament (covenant) in
relation to, 5(2)
night
See also darkness; day
the darkness he called night, 26(6)
and heavenly bodies, creation of, 27
Old Testament:
four ways of interpreting, 5(2) (See also
exegesis)
Olympus, Mount, 44(14)
Paul, apostle, Saint:
on water, 13
on women, 6(3); 61
Phaenon, 29; 38(13)
Phaethon, 38(13)
planets, See heavenly bodies
plants, 34(11)–35
rain: Elijah begging for, 47
reptiles, 44(14); 48(15)–50
See also animals
rivers, 47
Saturn (Phaenon), 38(13)
scripture, See Bible
sea: God as naming, 33
seasons, 38(13)
signs: for signs and for times, 38(13)
sin:
evil and, 3 (See also evil)
punishment for, 3
sky, See air; heaven
Son, the, See Jesus Christ
soul (human):
and body, 8
pre-existing (theory), 3
spirit: the word, 18
Spirit of God:
meaning of, 16–18
water, as borne over, 11(4); 13; 15–17
springs, 47

On Genesis
On Genesis

stars, 42
   See also heavenly bodies
sun
   See also heavenly bodies
Phaethon, 38(13)

third day of creation: plants as created,
   34(11)–35

time:
   God as not needing, 28(7)
   heavenly bodies measuring, 38(13)
   “In the beginning” (See “In the beginning”) times, signs and, See signs
trees, 14; 34(11)–35
Trinity, the, 2
   See also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ
   Catholic teaching regarding, 2(1)
   man made to image and likeness of, 61

Unfinished Literal Commentary on Genesis
   See also exegesis
Manichees, as aimed at, 11(4); 22–23(5)
Old Testament, four ways of interpreting in,
   5(2)
   reason and faith both respected in, 1(1)
   two methodological principles in, 1(1)
universe: divine likeness of, 59

Virgin Mary, 4

water(s):
   animals of, 48(15)–50
   gathering of, 32(10)–33
   inhabitants of (See fish; reptiles)
   Paul on, 13
   sea, God as naming, 33
   Spirit of God as borne over, 11(4); 13;
      15–17
   springs and rivers, 47
   waters above vs. firmament, 29(8)–31
   as world’s basic material, 32(10)
wind, 15
Wisdom of God: Jesus as, 4
woman, women:
   See also Eve; man
   Paul on, 6(3); 61
Word of God: interpretations of meaning,
   19(5)
world, See earth
years, 38(13)

Volume I/13
Index from

On the Agreement among the Evangelists
(De consensu evangelistarum)

Included in book:

New Testament I and II

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Matthaum).

Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

**Agreement Among the Evangelists**  
*(Prepared by Michael Dolan)*

## OLD TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Evangelists</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>I, 28, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>I, 25, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:14</td>
<td>I, 14, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48:5-6</td>
<td>II, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>20:4</td>
<td>I, 26, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>I, 26, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, 26, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>I, 26, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>II, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>II, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:1-4</td>
<td>I, 30, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>I, 30, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>I, 30, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:5</td>
<td>II, 20, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43:1</td>
<td>II, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72:11</td>
<td>I, 27, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>75</td>
<td>I, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>87:3</td>
<td>II, 25, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>92:5-6</td>
<td>III, 13, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>96:5</td>
<td>I, 15, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110:4</td>
<td>I, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NEW TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>1:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:18-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:19-2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agreement Among the Evangelists</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:11 II, 12, 26; II, 12, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14 II, 15, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17 II, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17 II, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-4 II, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11 II, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12 II, 17, 34; II, 18, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13 II, 17, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18 II, 17, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25-5:3 II, 19, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14 IV, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28 II, 19, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29 II, 17, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1 II, 19, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1-2 II, 19, 43; II, 19, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5 II, 20, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5-6 II, 20, 48; II, 20, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10 II, 20, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13 II, 20, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14-15 II, 21, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16 II, 22, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16-17 II, 22, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18 II, 22, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19 II, 23, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22 II, 23, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-24 II, 24, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25 II, 24, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26 II, 24, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:27 II, 24, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1 II, 24, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1-2 II, 25, 57; II, 25, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2 II, 25, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8 II, 25, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9 II, 12, 25; II, 26, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10 II, 27, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11 II, 27, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12-13 II, 27, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14 II, 27, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15 II, 27, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17 II, 27, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18 II, 28, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24 II, 28, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:25-26 II, 28, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27 II, 29, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:34 II, 29, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:35-10:1 II, 30, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10 II, 30, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10 II, 30, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:40 IV, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:42 II, 30, 70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

16:4 II, 51, 106  21:41 II, 70, 134; II, 70, 136
16:4-6 II, 52, 107  21:42 II, 70, 135
16:12 II, 52, 107  21:44 II, 70, 133
16:19 II, 53, 108  22:15-17 II, 72, 140
16:20-21 II, 54, 110  22:33 II, 72, 140
16:23 II, 54, 110  22:34-40 II, 73, 141
16:24 II, 55, 111  22:41-46 II, 74, 143
16:27 II, 55, 111  22:42 II, 74, 143
16:28-17:1 II, 56, 112  23:1-3 II, 75, 144
17:1 II, 56, 113; III, 24, 66  23:39 II, 75, 144; II, 75, 145
17:9 II, 56, 112  24:1-2 II, 76, 146
17:10-13 II, 57, 115  24:3-5 II, 77, 147
17:14-15 II, 58, 116  24:7 II, 77, 150
17:20 II, 58, 116  24:14 II, 77, 148
17:22-23 II, 59, 117  24:15 II, 77, 149
17:24-25 II, 60, 118  24:16-18 II, 77, 150
17:27 II, 60, 118  24:18 II, 77, 150
18:1-3 II, 61, 119  24:20 II, 77, 151
18:22 II, 4, 12  25:40 IV, 5, 6
18:35 II, 61, 119  25:46 II, 77, 147
19:1-3 II, 62, 120  26:1-2 II, 78, 152
19:4 II, 62, 122  26:2-5.14 II, 78, 153
19:7 II, 62, 120  26:3-7 II, 79, 154
19:8 II, 62, 120  26:5 II, 78, 153
19:12 II, 62, 120  26:6 II, 78, 153
19:13 II, 63, 123  26:13 II, 79, 154
19:16 II, 63, 123  26:14 II, 78, 153
19:17 II, 63, 123  26:14-15 II, 80, 157
20:16 II, 63, 123  26:18 II, 80, 157
20:17-20 II, 64, 124  26:19 II, 80, 157
20:28 II, 64, 124  26:20-22 II, 80, 158
20:29 II, 65, 126  26:22 III, 1, 2
20:29-30 II, 65, 125  26:23-24 III, 1, 2
20:34 II, 65, 125  26:25 II, 80, 158; III, 1, 2
21:1-2 II, 66, 127  26:26 III, 1, 2
21:9 II, 66, 127; II, 70, 136  26:30-32 III, 2, 6
21:9.15 II, 68, 131  26:30-35 III, 3, 9
21:13 II, 67, 129  26:34 III, 2, 7
21:14-22 II, 68, 130  26:36 III, 4, 10
21:17 II, 68, 131  26:36-46 III, 4, 10
21:18 II, 68, 131  26:45-46 III, 4, 11
21:20 II, 68, 131  26:47-49 III, 5, 15
21:27 II, 69, 132; II, 70, 133; II, 70, 137  26:52 III, 5, 17
21:28 II, 70, 137  26:52-54 III, 5, 16
21:28-30 II, 70, 133  26:55 III, 5, 18
21:40 II, 70, 134  26:56 III, 5, 18
26:57 III, 6, 19
## Agreement Among the Evangelists

| 26:58 | III, 6, 19 |
| 26:59-60 | III, 6, 20 |
| 26:60-61 | III, 6, 20 |
| 26:62-64 | III, 6, 20 |
| 26:64 | III, 7, 27 |
| 26:65-66 | III, 6, 20 |
| 26:66 | III, 13, 50 |
| 26:67-68 | III, 6, 20 |
| 26:68 | I, 31, 48 |
| 26:69 | III, 6, 26 |
| 26:69-74 | III, 6, 22 |
| 26:71 | III, 6, 24 |
| 26:73 | III, 6, 25 |
| 26:75 | III, 6, 26 |
| 27:1-2 | III, 7, 27 |
| 27:3-10 | III, 7, 28 |
| 27:9-10 | III, 7, 31 |
| 27:11 | III, 8, 35 |
| 27:11-26 | III, 8, 32 |
| 27:17 | III, 8, 33 |
| 27:19 | III, 13, 44 |
| 27:22 | III, 8, 33; III, 13, 44 |
| 27:24 | III, 8, 33; III, 8, 34; III, 13, 44 |
| 27:27-29 | III, 9, 36 |
| 27:28 | III, 9, 36 |
| 27:30-31 | III, 9, 36 |
| 27:32 | III, 10, 37 |
| 27:33 | III, 11, 38 |
| 27:34 | III, 11, 38 |
| 27:35-36 | III, 12, 39 |
| 27:37 | I, 3, 5; III, 13, 40 |
| 27:38 | III, 14, 51 |
| 27:39-40 | III, 15, 52 |
| 27:41-43 | III, 15, 52 |
| 27:44 | III, 16, 53 |
| 27:45 | III, 17, 54 |
| 27:46 | III, 18, 55 |
| 27:46-47 | III, 17, 54 |
| 27:48 | III, 17, 54 |
| 27:49 | III, 17, 54 |
| 27:50 | III, 18, 55 |
| 27:51 | III, 19, 56 |
| 27:51-53 | III, 20, 57 |
| 27:54 | III, 20, 57; III, 21, 58 |
| 27:55-56 | III, 21, 58 |
| 27:57-58 | III, 22, 59 |
| 27:59-60 | III, 23, 60 |
| 27:61 | III, 24, 61 |
| 27:62-66 | III, 24, 62 |
| 28:1 | III, 24, 65 |
| 28:1-7 | III, 24, 63 |
| 28:5-7 | III, 24, 69; III, 25, 79 |
| 28:6 | III, 24, 63 |
| 28:7 | III, 25, 79; III, 25, 80; III, 25, 86 |
| 28:9 | III, 24, 69 |
| 28:10 | III, 24, 69; III, 25, 80 |
| 28:16-17 | III, 25, 81 |
| 28:16-20 | III, 25, 79 |
| 28:20 | II, 4, 9 |

### Mark

- 1:1-2 IV, 1, 2
- 1:1-4 II, 6, 18
- 1:7 II, 12, 29
- 1:7-8 II, 12, 26
- 1:11 II, 14, 31
- 1:14 II, 18, 42
- 1:21 IV, 1, 2
- 1:22 II, 17, 35
- 1:22-24 IV, 2, 3
- 1:26 IV, 2, 3
- 1:31 II, 22, 53
- 1:32 II, 22, 53
- 1:32-35 II, 22, 53
- 1:35 II, 22, 53
- 1:39 II, 19, 43; IV, 2, 3
- 1:40 II, 19, 43; IV, 3, 4
- 2:1-5 II, 25, 58
- 2:13-14 II, 26, 59
- 2:15 II, 27, 60
- 2:16 II, 27, 61
- 2:18 II, 27, 62
- 2:28 III, 24, 64
- 3:4 II, 35, 82
- 3:5 II, 35, 82
- 3:11-12 IV, 3, 4
- 3:13 II, 36, 83
- 3:13-16 IV, 3, 4
- 3:16 IV, 3, 4
- 3:17 II, 17, 39
- 3:31 II, 40, 87
- 4:38 II, 24, 55
- 4:40 II, 24, 55
- 4:41 II, 24, 55
- 5:20 IV, 3, 4
- 5:21 IV, 4, 5
- 5:21-22 II, 28, 64
- 5:30 II, 28, 65
- 6:3 II, 42, 90
- 6:6-7 II, 30, 70
- 6:8 II, 30, 71; II, 30, 74
- 6:9 II, 30, 75

---

**New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Agreement Among the Evangelists</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>II, 30, 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>II, 43, 91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>II, 43, 91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>IV, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:31</td>
<td>IV, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37</td>
<td>II, 46, 96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>II, 46, 96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:47-48</td>
<td>II, 47, 99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:48</td>
<td>II, 47, 99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:50</td>
<td>II, 47, 99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:34</td>
<td>IV, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:36-37</td>
<td>IV, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>IV, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>II, 51, 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>II, 53, 108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:38</td>
<td>II, 55, 111</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>II, 56, 113; III, 24, 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>II, 28, 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:38-39</td>
<td>IV, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:39</td>
<td>IV, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:40-41</td>
<td>IV, 6, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:41-43</td>
<td>IV, 6, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:50</td>
<td>IV, 6, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>IV, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>II, 63, 123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:46</td>
<td>II, 65, 126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>II, 68, 131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>II, 68, 131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>II, 70, 133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>II, 70, 134</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>II, 70, 135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>II, 73, 141; II, 73, 142</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:44</td>
<td>IV, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>II, 77, 148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>II, 77, 149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15</td>
<td>II, 77, 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:16</td>
<td>II, 77, 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:18</td>
<td>II, 77, 151</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>II, 78, 152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1-2.10</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:2</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:3</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:19</td>
<td>III, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>III, 2, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:35</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:36</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:41</td>
<td>III, 4, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:51-52</td>
<td>III, 5, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:54</td>
<td>III, 6, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:56</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:58-59</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:62</td>
<td>III, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:66</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:68-70</td>
<td>III, 6, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:69</td>
<td>III, 6, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:70</td>
<td>III, 6, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:70-72</td>
<td>III, 6, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:72</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>III, 7, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>III, 8, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>III, 8, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11-12</td>
<td>III, 8, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12-13</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>III, 8, 33; III, 13, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14</td>
<td>III, 8, 33; III, 13, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>III, 8, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16-19</td>
<td>III, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17</td>
<td>III, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:20</td>
<td>III, 9, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:23</td>
<td>III, 11, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>III, 12, 39; III, 13, 42;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:25</td>
<td>III, 13, 40; III, 13, 42;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>III, 13, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>III, 18, 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:36</td>
<td>III, 17, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:37</td>
<td>III, 18, 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:38</td>
<td>III, 19, 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:39</td>
<td>III, 20, 57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:40-41</td>
<td>III, 21, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:42-45</td>
<td>III, 22, 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:46</td>
<td>III, 23, 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:47</td>
<td>III, 24, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>III, 24, 65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:6-7</td>
<td>III, 25, 79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>III, 25, 80; III, 25, 86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9-11</td>
<td>III, 24, 69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>III, 25, 71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13</td>
<td>III, 25, 73; III, 25, 75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>III, 25, 75; III, 25, 81;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15-16</td>
<td>III, 25, 83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17-18</td>
<td>III, 25, 77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>III, 25, 77; III, 25, 83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19-20</td>
<td>III, 25, 77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:8</td>
<td>III, 24, 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Agreement Among the Evangelists

### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Range</th>
<th>Evangelist(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1-4</td>
<td>IV, 8, 9</td>
<td>9:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>IV, 9, 10</td>
<td>9:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5-56</td>
<td>II, 5, 17</td>
<td>9:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-35</td>
<td>II, 5, 14</td>
<td>9:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:57-2:21</td>
<td>II, 5, 17</td>
<td>9:57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22-39</td>
<td>II, 5, 17</td>
<td>9:59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:33</td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
<td>9:61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:40-41</td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
<td>10:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:40-52</td>
<td>II, 5, 17</td>
<td>10:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>II, 6, 18; II, 6, 19</td>
<td>10:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II, 12, 26</td>
<td>10:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II, 12, 26; II, 12, 29</td>
<td>11:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 44, 92</td>
<td>11:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>II, 14, 31</td>
<td>11:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>II, 1, 3; II, 3, 7</td>
<td>11:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13-14</td>
<td>II, 18, 42</td>
<td>11:37-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>II, 42, 90</td>
<td>13:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:35</td>
<td>IV, 2, 3</td>
<td>13:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:40-42</td>
<td>II, 22, 53</td>
<td>18:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>IV, 9, 10</td>
<td>18:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>II, 17, 37; II, 17, 41</td>
<td>18:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17-20</td>
<td>II, 25, 58</td>
<td>18:35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>II, 25, 57</td>
<td>19:47-20:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27-28</td>
<td>II, 26, 59</td>
<td>II, 69, 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27-29</td>
<td>II, 27, 60</td>
<td>20:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:30</td>
<td>II, 27, 61</td>
<td>20:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>II, 27, 61</td>
<td>20:15-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33</td>
<td>II, 27, 62</td>
<td>20:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:34</td>
<td>II, 27, 63</td>
<td>20:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>II, 35, 82</td>
<td>21:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 36, 83</td>
<td>21:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-20</td>
<td>II, 19, 45</td>
<td>21:21-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>II, 17, 40</td>
<td>21:31-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>II, 19, 44</td>
<td>21:31-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1-2</td>
<td>II, 20, 48</td>
<td>22:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3-7</td>
<td>II, 20, 49</td>
<td>22:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>II, 40, 87</td>
<td>22:39-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>II, 40, 87</td>
<td>22:41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>II, 24, 55</td>
<td>22:42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>II, 24, 55</td>
<td>22:45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:40-41</td>
<td>II, 28, 64</td>
<td>22:48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:41</td>
<td>II, 28, 64</td>
<td>22:49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:45</td>
<td>II, 28, 65</td>
<td>22:49-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:50</td>
<td>II, 28, 66</td>
<td>22:51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7-9</td>
<td>II, 43, 91</td>
<td>22:53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>II, 43, 91; II, 45, 93</td>
<td>III, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>II, 46, 96</td>
<td>III, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>John</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>II, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>II, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>II, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>II, 12, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:45-55</td>
<td>III, 6, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:54-58</td>
<td>III, 6, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:58</td>
<td>III, 6, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:59</td>
<td>III, 6, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:59-60</td>
<td>III, 6, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61-62</td>
<td>III, 6, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:63-23:1</td>
<td>III, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2</td>
<td>III, 8, 34; III, 8, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>III, 8, 34; III, 8, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:4-12</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:13-14</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15-23</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:16</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:18</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:20-21</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:22</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:22-23</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:23</td>
<td>III, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24-25</td>
<td>III, 8, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:26</td>
<td>III, 10, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34-35</td>
<td>III, 12, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:36-37</td>
<td>III, 17, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:39</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:45</td>
<td>III, 19, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:46</td>
<td>III, 18, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:47</td>
<td>III, 20, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:48-49</td>
<td>III, 21, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:50-52</td>
<td>III, 22, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:53</td>
<td>III, 23, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:54-24:9</td>
<td>III, 24, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:1</td>
<td>III, 24, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:5-8</td>
<td>III, 24, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:11</td>
<td>III, 24, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13-24</td>
<td>III, 25, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:24</td>
<td>III, 25, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:33</td>
<td>III, 25, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>III, 25, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36-40</td>
<td>III, 25, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:41-43</td>
<td>III, 25, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:44-49</td>
<td>III, 25, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>II, 12, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:50-51</td>
<td>III, 25, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40-43</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>IV, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>II, 12, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>II, 12, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>II, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>II, 15, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:42</td>
<td>II, 17, 34; II, 53, 109; IV, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:43</td>
<td>II, 17, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>II, 17, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>IV, 10, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>II, 17, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>IV, 10, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24-25</td>
<td>IV, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23-24</td>
<td>II, 18, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-3</td>
<td>II, 18, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:48</td>
<td>IV, 10, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>IV, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>IV, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>I, 4, 7; IV, 10, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>II, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35</td>
<td>IV, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>III, 25, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5-13</td>
<td>II, 46, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>II, 46, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>II, 46, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>II, 47, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15-18</td>
<td>II, 47, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16-17</td>
<td>II, 47, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26-27</td>
<td>IV, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:63</td>
<td>IV, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-7</td>
<td>IV, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31</td>
<td>II, 70, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-37</td>
<td>II, 70, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:37</td>
<td>II, 70, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:56</td>
<td>IV, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:39</td>
<td>III, 13, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>III, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:24</td>
<td>IV, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25-26</td>
<td>IV, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>I, 4, 7; IV, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1-2</td>
<td>II, 79, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:55</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1-2</td>
<td>II, 78, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>III, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21-22</td>
<td>III, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:23-27</td>
<td>III, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27-32</td>
<td>III, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:33-36</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:33-38</td>
<td>III, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:36</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:37</td>
<td>III, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:38</td>
<td>III, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Agreement Among the Evangelists
Agreement Among the Evangelists

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
### Agreement Among the Evangelists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:2-5</td>
<td>II, 30, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>II, 30, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews 11:33</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:37</td>
<td>III, 16, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James 1:13</td>
<td>II, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter 4:17-18</td>
<td>II, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation 5:5</td>
<td>I, 6, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers, then the Section numbers in parentheses. (Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes.)

Aaron, I:3(5); II:2(4), 5(17); IV:9(10)
Abba, Father, III:4(14)
abomination of desolation, II:77(149)
Abraham, I:3(5), 14(21), 26(41); II:1(2), 3(5), 4(10–11), 5(17), 12(26), 70(138); IV:10(16)
fulfilled promise to, I:25(39)
“Abrahews,” I:14(21) and n52; Revisions II, 16 (43)
active life; the active, I:5(8); IV:10(20)
Acts, apocryphal, IV:8(9) and n18
Acts of the Apostles, III:16(53), 25(74, 77); IV:8(9)
Adam, II:4(11)
adoption, II:3(5–6), 4(11)
adulteress, forgiven, IV:10(17)
adultery: in the heart, III:2(7)
aegis, I:21(29)
Aeschylus, III:16(53) and n73
Aesop, I:7(12)
age: end of the, II:77(147–51)
ages: predestined order of, I:12(19)
Akeldama (Field of Blood), III:7(28, 31)
Alexander, son of Simon of Cyrene, III:10(37)
Alexander of Macedon, I:23(33)
allegory, II:77(150–51); III:4(14), 7(30), 25(86)
altar, II:5(17), 30(73)
Andrew, II:17(34–35), 17(34–35, 37, 39, 41), 19(45), 46(95–96); IV:10(19)
See also apostles
angels
See also specific topics and events, e.g., resurrection of Jesus Christ the Annunciation, II:5(14)
Church to be brought to perfection of angelic fullness, II:75(145)
promise to Abraham, I:25(39)
anger, I:18(26), 33(51); II:35(82); IV:10(14)
Anna, II:5(15–17), 11(24)
Annas, II:6(18–19); III:6(24)
Annunciation of the Lord, II:5(14)
anointing, I:13(20), 14(22)
“anointed ones,” I:13(20); III:8(33)
Apocalypse, II:2
four living creatures of, I:6(9); IV:10(11)
apostles
See also disciples; specific topics and events
calling of/choosing the twelve, II:17(39–41), 19(45), 26(59)
the eleven, III:24(67, 69), 25(71–82, 85); IV:10(19)
as Gospel’s first preachers, I:1(1)–2(3); II:30(73–74); III:25(77, 86); IV:3(4), 8(9)
Jesus appearing to, III:25(70–83)
misson of, II:30(70)
names of, II:17(39–41), 53(109); IV:3(4)
sent forth by Jesus, II:30(70); IV:3(4), 8(9)
word heavens as signifying, I:30(46)
Archelaus, II:7(20–1023)
arrest of Jesus, III:5(15–18)
arrogance. See pride
ascension of the Lord, I:10(16), 35(54); III:25(76), 25(85)
ass: colt and, II:66(127–28)
astrology, I:23(36)
Augustine,
goal of, Introduction, p. 117
reason for undertaking this work, I:7(10)
authority
See also under Gospels: authority of of benefactors, III:3(9)
divine, IV:10(20)
he taught them as one who had

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Authority, II:17(35)
of the Holy Spirit, III:7(30–31)
of Jesus, II:74(143); IV:2(3)
of Jesus’ name, I:10(15), 14(22)
of Moses, II:62(121)
of Septuagint translation, II:66(128)
by what authority do you do these things? II:69(132)–70(133), 70(137–38)

Babylonian deportation, II:4(10)
baptism, II:7(31), 25(76, 79); IV:6(7) and n12, IV:10(11)
See also John the Baptist
Christ’s, II:4(11–13) and n38, II:7(20), 13(30)–15(32), 18(42), 42(90), 44(92); IV:6(7)
by disciples, II:18(42), 70(137)
Barabbas, III:8(32–33)
Bartholomew (Nathanael). See also apostles; Nathanael
Bartimaeus, II:65(125)
beauty, I:28(44), 31(47–48)
Beelzebul, II:38(85)
See also Satan
benefactors, III:3(9)
Bethany, II:68(130)–69(132); III:25(83)
anointing of Christ in, II:78(153)–79(156); IV:10(18–19)
Bethlehem, II:5(14–15, 17); III:25(71)
birds, II:75(145)
birth and boyhood of Jesus, III:5(14)–11(24)
blasphemy, I:7(11), 15(23), 26(41)–27(42), 33(51); II:40(87); III:6(20), 7(27)
bleeding woman, healing of, II:28(65)
blindness:
blind men of Jericho, II:65(125–26)
Jesus healing blind and lame in Temple, II:68(130)
man with blind and mute demon, II:37(84)
two blind men, healing, II:29(69), 65(125–26)
body
See also flesh
immortal, II:75(145)
unity between the members and the head, II:70(138)
body of Christ, III:25(72)
See also Church; eucharist
bread
See also eucharist; five loaves and two fishes miracle
beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, II:52(107)
children’s bread not to be given to dogs, II:49(103)
the seven loaves, II:50(104–5)
bread, feast of unleavened. See Passover
brethren:
children of, II:27(63)
friend of, IV:10(13)
he came out of his chamber like a bridegroom, II:30(46)
brothers
See also brethren
mother and brothers of Jesus, II:39(86)–40(87)
bray of Jesus, III:22(59)–24(62)
Caesars, the, I:23(32); III:13(40, 46)
Augustus, II:5(17)
paying tribute to, II:72(140); III:8(34–35)
Tiberius, II:6(18–19), 8(21)
Caiphas, II:78(153)–79(154)
Jesus brought before/led away from house, III:6(19–24)
Cana, IV:10(13)
wedding at, II:17(34, 38)
Canaanite woman’s daughter, II:49(103)
Capernaum, passim
and healing of paralytic, II:25(58)
sabbath teaching in synagogue, IV:1(2)–2(3)
Capitol, Roman, I:22(30), 23(31, 34, 36)
Catholic Christianity, I:1(2), 8(13); IV:5(6)
See also Church
centurion at Christ’s death, III:14(50), 20(57)–22(59)
centurion’s servant, healing of, II:20(48–50)
Cephas (Peter). See Peter, Apostle
certainty: omission and, II:41(88)
charity, IV:10(20)
chastity, I:23(32)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

chief priests, *passim*
accusing Jesus, III:8(32–35), 13(40, 44–47, 50), 25:70
children:
of the bridegroom, II:27(63)
children’s bread not to be given to dogs, II:49(103)
Christ laying hands on, II:63(123)
*Do not be children in your thinking, but be infants as to evil*, II:37(2)
of God, II:3(6)
humility, as example of, II:61(119)
more children for the one who is deserted than for the one who has a husband, I:31(47)
saying Hosanna in the Temple, II:68(130)
*unless you...become as little children*, II:61(119)
*choros*, I:23(35)
*chrisma*, I:13(20), 14(22); II:2(4)
Christ
*See also* Jesus Christ
the name, I:13(20), 14(22); II:2(4)
Christians, IV:6(7)
*See also* Catholic Christianity; specific topics
Christian times: complaints about human wellbeing during, I:33(51)
Christology: *homo assumptus/susceptus*, IV:10(20) and n71
chronology. See order; specific topics
Church
*See also* Catholic Christianity; specific topics, e.g., unity
to be brought to perfection of angelic fullness, II:75(145)
as called barren, I:31(47)
spread to all nations and languages, I:32(49)
*on this rock I will build my Church*, II:17(34), 53(109)
Cicero, Marcus Tullius, I:23(32–33, 35), 33(51)
circumcision, II:4(10), 5(15, 17)
cities: unrepentant, II:32(79)
Cleophas, III:25(70–71, 74–75, 82)
Mary, wife of, III:21(58)
cloth, parable of new, II:27(63)–28(64)
cloud: that covers the whole earth, IV:10(20) and n78
cloths. See tunics
colt: and ass, II:66(127–28)
coming of Christ:
prefiguring of, I:14(21), 24(37)
prophecy of, I:11(17)
commandments, I:26(41): II:5(17), 74(143), 75(145); III:24(67), 25(86); IV:10(20)
the great, II:73(141)
to love one another, III:2(5–6)
the two, II:73(141–42)
community, IV:5(6)–6(7)
compassion: of Jesus, II:30(70), 45(93), 50(104)
consecration, I:6(9)
contemplative life, the contemplative, I:7(12), 35(53); IV:10(20)
John the Evangelist as, I:5(8)
continence
*See also* virginity
in marriage, II:1(2)
contradiction: omission as not, II:12(27–28), 19(47), 41(88), 79(155); III:20(57)
created (that which is created):
faith and, I:35(53)
creator:
of all things, God as, I:24(37)
creature and, I:34(52); II:1(2), 3(6)
cross
*See also* crucifixion of Christ
if anyone wishes to come after me, let him...take up his cross and follow me, II:55(111)
of Jesus, carrying to crucifixion, III:10(37)
crown of thorns, I:31(48); III:8(35)–9(36), 13(46)
crucifixion of Christ, III:10(37)–21(58)
*See also* passion of Christ
damnation, II:30(71)
Daniel, II:77(149)
David, *passim*
how Christ is son of, I:2(4)–3(6);
II:2(4)–3(5), 74(143)
line up to, through prophet, Nathan, II:4(12); *Revisions* II,16 (43)
dawn, II:5(17), 22(53), 24(63), 65–67, 69, 25(75); III:24(65)
death
*See also* passion of Christ
Lazarus raised from the dead,

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
II:78(153)–79(154)
there are some standing here who
shall not taste death, II:56(112)
demons
See also unclean spirits
among the Gerasenes, II:28(64),
42(89)
blind and mute demon, healing man
with, II:37(84)
Canaanite woman’s daughter,
II:49(103)
cast out when gentiles abandon
superstitions and believe in him,
II:75(145)
“good,” I:18(26)
Jesus alleged to cast out demons by
Beelzebul, II:38(85)
legion of, II:24(56), 65(125)
mute demoniac, healing of, II:29(69)
seven, cast out from Mary Magdalene,
III:24(69)
someone who does not follow us,
casting out demons in your name,
II:63(123); IV:5(6)–6(7)
on the third day I complete my course,
II:75(145); III:25(80)
devil. See Satan
Diana, I:25(38)
disciples, II:17(34–41), 17(40), 53(108–9); IV:3(4)
See also apostles; specific topics and
events
as given power over unclean spirits,
II:30(70)
if you continue in my word, you will
truly be my disciples, II:70(138)
as including Judas, II:79(156)
as including more than the twelve,
II:70(138)
 names as written in heaven, IV:10(17)
the power to cure illnesses, IV:3(4)
“diversity of agreement” among Gospels,
II:66(128)
divine grace. See grace, divine
divine providence. See providence, divine
divorce, II:5(14, 17), 62(120–22)
doctrine, II:12(28)
See also Catholic Christianity
of Christ, I:14(22), 16(24), 32(50)
dogs: children’s bread not to be given to,
II:49(103)
Donatists, IV:5(6)
doves, II:14(31)–15(32)
duplicity, II:30(75)
eagle, I:6(9); II:45(94)
earth
See also under God: of the whole
earth; world
Jesus making signs on, IV:10(17)
earthquakes, III:20(57), 24(63, 69)
Egypt, I:25(39); II:5(16–17), 6(19)–7(20),
9(22), 11(24)
eight days: after eight days, II:56(113)
elders, passim
tradition of, II:48(102)
elements, 29(45)
eleven apostles. See under apostles: the
eleven
Elijah, II:56(112)–57(115)
Elizabeth, I:3(5); II:5(17)
Emmaus, III:25(70–72) and nn100, 104
Ennius, I:23(32)
Enoch, I:25(39)
ephatha, II:50(104)
eternal life; II:17(40), 77(147); III:25(86);
IV:10(15)
happiness of, I:5(8)
rich man asking about, II:63(123)
eternal punishment, II:77(147); III:25(86);
IV:6(7)
See also fire; Gehenna
eternity: truth and, I:35(53)
ether, I:23(31)
eucharist, III:25(72) and n104; IV:10(20)
and n87
Euhemerus, I:23(32)
Euripides, III:16(53) and n73
evangelists, four, I:2
See also individual names: specific
Gospels; specific topics, e.g., John
the Baptist
four creatures and, I:6(9); IV:8(9)
and four parts to the world, I:2(3)
as no more inconsistent than Greek
tragedians, III:16(53)
order of, I:2
the three evangelists, I:4(7)–6(9); II:17(37), 18(42), 27(61–62),
45(94), 56(112), 77(147); III:2(7),
13(41); IV:10(18, 20)
Eve, II:28(68)
evening, III:24(65)
evill, I:25(87)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

See also sin
expiation, I:3(5); II:4(11)
eyes. See blindness

faith:
and diversity of agreement among
Gospels, II:66(128)
like a mustard seed, II:24(55)
and reason, III:13(43)
and that which is created, I:35(53)
and truth, I:35(53)
whatever you ask for in prayer with
faith, you shall receive, II:68(130)
false gods. See idolatry; paganism
falsehood
See also duplicity
accounts containing variations, but
remaining true, II:12(28)
guarding against and judging,
II:66(128)
false witnesses. See witnesses, false
farms, III:25(71)
fasting, II:4(9), 5(17)
but this kind does not come out except
by prayer and fasting, II:58(116)
children of the bridegroom, II:27(63)
new cloth and new wine parables,
II:27(63)
questions asked Jesus about, II:27(62–
63)

Father, God the, I:7(11)
See also God
Father, the term, III:4(14)
fear, I:28(43–44)
feeding the multitudes. See five loaves
and two fishes miracle; seven loaves
miracle
fig tree, II:68(130)–69(132)

Filioque, IV:10(19) and n69
finger of God, II:38(85)
fire, I:30(46)
eternal, I:12(26), 44(92); III:25(86)
Gehenna, IV:6(7)
with the Holy Spirit and with fire,
II:12(26)
where their worm...quenched, IV:6(7)
and n10
fish
See also five loaves and two fishes
miracle
haul of, IV:9(10)
miracle of seven loaves and a few fish,
II:50(104–5)
from now on you shall catch men,
II:17(37, 39)
five hundred brethren. See under
brethren: five hundred
five loaves and two fishes miracle,
II:45(93)–48(102), 53(108), 66(127);
III:25(79), 79(155–56); IV:10(15)
flesh:
it is the spirit that gives life, but the
flesh is of no use, IV:10(15)
spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is
weak, III:4(10)
flood, the, I:25(39)
food: feeding the multitudes. See five
loaves and two fishes miracle; seven
loaves miracle
foreknowledge, IV:4(5)
forgiveness:

forgive your brother from your heart,
II:61(119)
of sins, II:4(13) and n38, 61(119);
III:25(74)
forty, the number, II:4(8–10)
forty days, III:25(84) and n155
forty generations, II:4(8–13)

four, the number, II:4(9)
four creatures, I:6(9); IV:10(11)
four evangelists. See evangelists, four
four parts to the world, I:2(3)
Gabbatha, III:8(35), 13(40, 46)
Galilee:
date of Jesus’ departure into, II:18(42)
and healing of paralytic, II:25(58)
I shall go before you to Galilee,
III:25(86)
and Jesus’ boyhood, II:8(21)–9(22)
Jesus’ post-resurrection appearance in,
III:25(79)
Jesus teaching in, II:42(89–90)

Gehenna, IV:6(7)
genealogy of Jesus, I:2(4)–3(6); II:1(2)–
3(7)
Matthew’s forty generations, II:4(8–
13)
Genesaret, II:48(102)
gentiles, passim
demons cast out when gentiles
abandon superstitions and believe in
him, II:75(145)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Gospel preached to, I:13(20); III:25(76)
Gerasenes, II:28(64), 42(89)
Gethsemane, III:4(10–14)
betrayal and apprehension of Jesus, III:5(15–18)

God
See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g.,
worship
as creator of all things, I:24(37)
and “diversity of agreement,” II:66(128)
glorified, III:1(4)
as immortal, I:35(53)
of Israel, I:13(20)–14(21), 25(39)–26(41), 31(47), 32(49–50), 34(52)
Jesus as God and only-begotten Son of God, I:8(13)
Jupiter thought by Varro to be, I:22(30)
love for, II:73(141–42)
Romans as not accepting, I:12(18)–34(52) passim
of Sabaoth, I:29(45)
Saturn thought to be, I:22(30)
Son and Father, I:7(11)
as true God, I:19(27)–21(29)
of the whole earth, I:14(21), 31(47), 32(49–50), 34(52)
gods, pagan. See under paganism
gold, I:28(44), 30(46); II:5(17), 30(73)
purged of its dross, I:30(46)
Golgotha, III:10(37)–11(38)
good; goodness:
and eternal life, II:63(123)
good life, II:1(1)
ten as number of righteousness, II:4(13)
Good Samaritan parable, II:73(142)
Gospel, preaching
See also under Jesus Christ: preaching of
among all nations, I:14(21);
II:77(148); III:25(74, 76)
apostles as first preachers, I:1(1)–2(3);
II:30(73–74); III:25(77, 86);
IV:3(4), 8(9)
to the gentiles, I:13(20); III:25(76)

interpretations, II:77(150–51);
III:4(14), 7(30), 25(86)
as always right, while not agreeing language, II:12(28)
authority of, I:1(2), 7(12)–8(13), 20(28); II:12(28), 21(51–52), 39(86); III:13(43), 13(48); IV:8(9)
discrepancies in order among,
II:19(44), 21(51)–23(54), 42(90)
diversity of agreement among,
II:66(128)
each as accurate, though incomplete,
II:24(55)
to Lord’s supper, II
from Lord’s supper to the end, III
Matthew compared with other
Gospels, II
omission as not contradiction,
II:12(27–28), 19(47), 41(88), 79(155); III:20(57)
passages specific to Mark, Luke, or John, IV
pluralism, possibility of, II:12(28)
real time and narrative proximity,
II:17(34)–18(42), 19(45–46);
III:4(11)
reason, and truth of, III:13(43)
similar, unreconcilable accounts among, II:29(69), 30(77), 50(104–5)
texts as emended by later scribes,
III:25(71)
as true, but containing variations,
II:12(28)
words and meaning, II:24(55)–25(57), 28(66), 30(72); III:4(14)

grace, divine, I:32(49); II:3(6), 4(11);
III:25(86)

Greek, I:23(33)
Greek tragedians: evangelists as no more inconsistent than, III:16(53)
Greek version of the Bible, II:14(31)

happiness, I:5(8)
See also joy
healing miracles. See miracles
heart: cleansing, I:5(8)
heaven, kingdom of. See kingdom of
heavens: apostles as signified by, I:30(46)
Hebrew language: Gospel of Matthew as written in, I:2(4)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Hebrews

See also Jews

“Abrahews,” I:14(21) and n52;
Revisions II,16 (43)

Heli, II:4(11)  
heretics, IV:5(6)–6(7)  
Herods, two, II:7(20)–11(24)  
Herod, King, II:5(14–17)  
putting children to death, I:6(9)  
Herod, tetrarch, II:6(18)–7(20)  
called a fox, II:75(145)  
hearing about Jesus’ works, II:43(91)–45(93)  
and John the Baptist, II:43(91)–45(93)  
mocking Christ, III:8(34)  
son of King Herod, II:7(20)

high priest (Caiaphas). See Caiaphas
Holy Spirit, II:4(11–13) and n38
See also Trinity
authority of, III:7(30–31)
baptism with the Holy Spirit and with fire, II:12(26)
blasphemy against, II:40(87)
the dove, II:14(31)–15(32)
finger of God, II:38(85)
homo assumptus/susceptus Christology, IV:10(20) and n71

hope, IV:10(20)
human beings, II:3(6–7); IV:10(15)
See also specific topics
pagan gods as deified, I:23(32)
humility:
children as example of, II:61(119)
the greater you are, the more you should humble yourself in all things, IV:10(20)

husband, I:31(47)
more children for the one who is deserted than for the one who has a husband, I:31(47)

idols; idolatry, I:14(21), 26(40)–28(44), 32(49–50)
See also paganism
destruction of, I:16(24), 21(29)
prophecy against, I:26(40–41)
immortality:
of the body, II:75(145)
of God, I:35(53)
Incarnation, I:2(4)
See also Word of God, incarnate

inity, II:27(61); IV:6(7)
See also sin
and justice, I:35(53)
Isaiah, I:31(47–48); II:6(18), 12(25), 22(53), 36(83), 42(90); III:16(53); IV:1(2)
Israel, I:26(41)
See also under God: of Israel; Jews
Israel (Jacob), I:25(39)

Jacob, I:25(39), 28(44); II:3(5, 7), 5(14, 17)
See also Israel
two wives of, I:5(8)
Jairus’s daughter, raising of, II:64(124, 126)
Jerusalem, II:8(21)–11(24)
Jesus entering, II:66(127)–67(129)
yearly trip to, II:10(23)–11(24)

Jesus Christ
See also passion of Christ; Son of God; Trinity; Word of God; specific Gospels; specific topics, e.g., miracles
arrest of, III:5(15–18)
as the beginning, IV:10(17)
betrayal of, III:5(15)
birth and boyhood of, II:5(14)–11(24)
burial of, III:22(59)–24(62)
calming the storm, II:24(55)
as carpenter, II:42(90)
Christ, the name, I:13(20)
coming to his own country, II:42(89)
crucifixion of, III:10(37)–21(58)
divinity as questioned, I:7(11)–8(13)
divinity of, I:4(7)
genealogy of, I:2(4)–3(6); II:1(2)–3(7), 4(8–13)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

as having written nothing himself,
I:7(11–12)–10(16)
thekingly character of, I:2(4)–3(6); IV:10(11)
as mediator, I:3(6), 35(53–54); IV:10(20)
as only-begotten Son of God and as God, I:8(13)
preaching of, II:17(36), 19(43), 30(70), 31(78), 42(90), 69(132); IV:2(3)
priestly character of, I:3(6), 6(9)
resurrection, appearances after, III:25(70–86)
resurrection, as eating after, III:25(74)
resurrection of, III:24(61–70), 25(86)
as saying the same thing often and at different places, II:61(119)
second coming of, II:77(147–51)
as servant, III:25(86)
as teacher, passim
temptation of, II:16(33)
ten appearances after resurrection, III:25(81)
trials of, III:6(19)–8(35)
who do people say that I, the Son of Man, am? II:53(108)
whose son is he? II:74(143)
as wisdom of God, I:35(53)

Jews, I:12(18), 26(40)
See also under God: of Israel; specific topics and events
Augustine’s anti-Semitism, III:13(42)
and n51, II:13(44) and n52
God of, Romans as not accepting, I:12(18)–34(52) passim
and the Lord’s crucifixion, III:13(50)
as not accepting idol worship, I:14(22)
one true God of, I:12(18)
people of God, I:14(21); II:3(5)
priesthood of, I:13(21)–14(22)
why God let Romans vanquish, I:13(20)

John, Gospel of, IV:10(11–20)
See also Gospels; specific topics, e.g., John the Baptist
divinity of Jesus in, I:4(7)

John, Apostle, II:17(35)
See also apostles; John, Gospel of; John the Evangelist; Zebedee, sons of

mother of, II:64(124)
mountain, vision of the Lord on, I:56(112)–57(115)

John the Baptist, II:17(37), 18(42), 53(108), 57(115), 67(129), 69(132)–70(133), 70(137); IV:10(19)
See also under baptism: of Christ
birth of, II:5(17)
a burning and shining lamp, IV:10(17)
death of, II:43(91)–45(93)
disciples of, II:27(62), 31(78)
the four evangelists on, II:5(17)–7(20), 12(25)–15(32)
Jesus thought by Herod to be, II:43(91)–45(93)
knowledge of Christ, II:15(32)
prefacing of, II:6(18)
in prison, II:31(78), 44(92)

John the Evangelist, I:4(7)
See also evangelists, four; John, Gospel of, John, Apostle; specific topics
as contemplative, I:5(8)
as symbolized by eagle, I:6(9); II:45(94)

Jonah, II:39(86), 51(106), 75(144); III:24(86)
Joseph, husband of Mary, II:5(14), 5(16–17), 42(90)
and fear for child’s safety, II:8(21)–11(24)
two fathers of, II:3(5–7), 4(11); Revisions II,16 (43)

Joseph, brother of James, III:21(58), 24(61)
Joseph of Arimathea, III:22(59)–23(60)
joy, II:5(17), 27(63); III:24(64), 25(74), 25(86); IV:10(20)

Judah:
city of, II:5(17)
tribe of, I:6(9), 25(39)

Judas, Apostle, II:19(45), 30(70)
See also apostles

Judas Iscariot, II:19(45), 78(153), 80(157–58); III:1(2–4)
See also apostles
agreement to betray Jesus, II:80(157)
betrayal of Jesus, III:5(15)
kiss of, III:5(15)
repentance of, III:7(28)
Satan entering into, III:1(3–4)
suicide of, III:7(28)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

as thief, II:79(156)
judgment, II:30(71)
Jupiter, I:22(30)–23(36), 25(38), 27(42)
thought by Varro to be God of Jews,
I:22(30)
justice, I:12(19), 14(21); III:13(48)
See also righteousness
eternal and temporal, I:35(53)
and iniquity, I:35(53)

kingdom of God, II:4(8), 19(44–45), 45(93); III:22(59)
you are not far from the kingdom of
God, II:73(141–42)
kingdom of heaven, II:12(25), 17(40),
19(44–45), 41(88), 61(119)
mariage of the king’s son parable,
II:71(139)
kingly character of Christ. See under Jesus
Christ: kingly character of
kings, I:2(4), 3(6), 25(39), 27(42), 31(47–48); III:3(9), 16(53)
as “anointed ones,” I:13(20); III:8(33)
Kronos, I:23(34–35)
lamb, I:31(47–48)
language
See also words
limitations of, II:12(28)
truth and, II:12(27–28)
languages: Church spreading to all,
I:32(49)
Last Supper. See Lord’s supper
Latium, I:23(34)
law
See also commandments
sin as going beyond, II:4(13)
lawyers, II:75(144)
Lazarus, II:78(153)–79(154); IV:10(18)
Leah, I:5(8)
leaven: beware of the leaven of the
Pharisees, II:52(107)
Lebbaeus, II:30(70)
Legion, legion of demons, II:24(56),
65(125)
Leon, I:23(33)
lepers; leprosy, IV:3(4)
cleansing of, II:19(43, 46), 20(48) and
n121, II:21(51)
Simon the leper, II:79(154–56)
Levi, II:17(39), 26(59–60)
See also Matthew the Apostle

lies. See falsehood
life; lives:
active and contemplative, IV:10(20)
good life, II:1(1)
river of this life, I:25(87)
light of the world, IV:10(17)
likenesses (idols). See idols
lion, I:6(9)
living creatures of the Apocalypse, I:6(9)
loaves and fishes miracles. See five loaves
and two fishes miracle; seven loaves
mace
Lord of hosts, I:28(44)–29(45)
Lord’s Day, III:24(66), 25(76); IV:10(20)
Lord’s supper, II:80(158); III:1(1–4);
IV:1(1), 7(8), 9(10), 10(19)
Gospels from, III
Gospels to, II
the Lord’s discourse, III:3(9)
Peter’s triple denial, predicted,
III:2(5–8)
love:
double, IV:10(20)
for God, II:73(141–42)
for neighbor, II:73(141–42)
a new commandment I give to you,
III:2(5–6)
Peter’s triple confession of, IV:10(20)
the two commandments, II:73(141–42)
Lucan, I:30(46)
Luke, Gospel of, IV:8(9)–9(10)
See also Gospels; specific topics,
e.g.,
John the Baptist
and genealogy of Jesus, II:3(5)
priestly character of Jesus in, I:3(6)
“The Travel Narrative,” II:62(123)
and n230
lunatic: but this kind does not come
out except by prayer and fasting,
II:58(116)
lust, II:77(150); III:2(7); IV:10(20)
adultery in the heart, III:2(7)
lying. See falsehood

Magadan, coast of, II:51(106)
magi, visit of, I:6(9); II:5(15–17), 11(24)
magic; magical arts, I:9(14), 11(17)
Malchus, III:5(16)
man.
See also human beings
“take up a man,” I:34(52), 35(54)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Mark,
See also evangelists, four; specific topics
Mark, Gospel of, IV:1(2)–7(8)
See also Gospels; specific topics, e.g., John the Baptist
as following Matthew, I:2(4)
Maro, I:23(31, 35)
maintenance:
  divorce, II:62(120–22)
of the king’s son, parable, II:71(139)
of Mary and Joseph, II:1(2)
to seven brothers, II:72(140)
virginity/continence in, II:1(2)
Martha, II:79(154)
martyrs; martyrdom, II:32(49); III:4(14)
Peter and Paul, I:10(16)
Stephen, I:10(16)
Mary, Mother of God, I:1(2)–3(6), 25(39), 26(41), 30(46); II:1(2)–2(4)
  See under Jesus Christ: birth and
  boyhood of
  mother and brothers of Jesus,
  II:39(86)–40(87)
  my soul magnifies the Lord, II:5(17)
Mary, wife of Cleophas, III:21(58)
Mary Magdalene, III:21(58), 24(61, 63, 65), 24(68)–25(70), 25(75, 79)
Mary of Bethany: anointing Jesus,
II:79(154)
Matthew, Apostle (Evangelist), II:19(45)
See also apostles; Matthew, Gospel of
  calling of, II:26(59–60)
Matthias, III:25(76)
meaning
  See under words: and meaning and truth, II:24(55)–25(57); III:4(14)
mediator; Christ as, I:3(6), 35(53–54);
IV:10(20)
mercy:
  divine, I:14(21); II:5(17); III:6(26);
  IV:6(7)
  I desire mercy and not sacrifice,
  II:27(61)
metropolis, III:25(71)
Minerva, I:23(32) and n76
miracles, I:9:14; II:45(94); III:7(30);
IV:10(13), 10(17) and n46
  See also loaves and fishes miracle
  among the Gerasenes, II:28(64), 42(89)
  behold, I cast out demons and
  perform cures today and tomorrow,
  II:75(145); III:25(80)
bleeding woman, healing, II:28(65)
blind and mute demon, II:37(84)
blind men, healing two, II:29(69), 65(125–26)
calming the storm, II:24(55)
at Cana, II:17(34, 38)
Canaanite woman’s daughter, healing,
II:49(103)
at Christ’s death, III:19(56)–20(57)
cures are performed when they live by
  his commandments, II:75(145)
demon-possessed man, healing,
II:28(64), 42(89)
demons cast out when gentiles
  abandon superstitions and believe in
  him, II:75(145)
disciples, and power to cure illnesses,
IV:3(4)
disciples given power over unclean
  spirits, II:30(70)
fig tree withering, II:68(130)–69(132)
healing of many, II:36(83)
Lazarus raised from the dead,
II:78(153)–79(154)
legion of demons let go into swine,
II:24(56)
leper, cleansing of, II:19(43–44),
19(46)–20(48) and n121, II:21(51)
lunatic, But this kind does not come
  out except by prayer and fasting,
II:58(116)
man who was sick for 38 years,
  healing, II:45(94); IV:10(14)
mute man, healing, II:29(69), 39(86)
paralytic, healing, II:25(57–58)
raising the ruler’s daughter, II:28(64, 66, 68)

Agreement Among the Evangelists
Agreement Among the Evangelists

on the sabbath, II:35(82), 45(94); IV:10(14)
of seven loaves and a few fish, II:50(104–5)
someone who does not follow us, casting out demons in your name, II:63(123); IV:5(6)–6(7)
Temple, Jesus healing blind and lame in, II:68(130)
unclean spirits cast out, II:17(35), 19(45), 30(70), 39(86), 75(144); IV:2(3)
walking on water, II:47(99)–48(102)
water turned to wine, II:17(34, 38)
withered hand, healing, II:35(82)
morals; morality, I:7(12); IV:10(20)
and “diversity of agreement” among Gospels, II:66(128)
mortality, I:35(53); II:3(6), 4(9, 11); IV:10(20)
Moses, I:25(39), 26(41); II:3(5), 4(9), 5(17), 56(112)–57(115)
authority of, II:62(121–22); III:25(74)
Pharisees on Moses’s seat, II:75(144)
mother and brothers of Jesus, II:39(86)–40(87)
mountain, sermon on. See Sermon on the Mount
mountain, vision on, II:56(112)–57(115); III:24(66)
after six days/after eight days, II:56(113)
mountains: let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains, II:77(150)
Mount of Olives discourse, II:77(147–51)
mustard seed, II:24(55)
mute man, healing, II:29(69), 39(86)
mystery, III:4(14), 25(72)
of a mediator, I:35(53–54)

Nathan, son of David, I:2(4)–3(5);
Revisions II,16 (43)
Nathan, the prophet, II:4(12)
Nathanael (Bartholomew), II:17(34), 19(45); III:25(78)
See also apostles
Nazareth, II:5(17)–6(18), 8(21)–9(24)
and healing of paralytic, II:25(58)
Jesus’ return to, teaching in, II:42(89–90)
necessities of life, II:30(74)
neighbor: love for, II:73(141–42)

new cloth and new wine parables, II:27(63)–28(64)
New Testament, I:27(42)
Nicodemus, III:23(60); IV:10(13)
Ninevites, II:39(86)
Noah, I:25(39)
non-believers. See unbelievers
numbers
See also specific numbers, e.g., four plural and singular, III:16(53)–17(54)
Scripture as speaking of whole numbers rather than parts, II:13(41)
symbolic, II:4(8–10); III:25(71)
obedience:
to God, I:41
the wind and sea obey him, II:24(55)
ointment, II:79(154–56)
Old Testament, I:27(42)
 omission:
and certainty, II:41(88)
as not contradiction, II:12(27–28), 19(47), 41(88), 79(155); III:20(57)
oracle; oracles, I:15(23), 18(26), 32(50)
promise to Abraham, I:25(39)
order
See also specific topics and events
Gospels, discrepancies in order among, II:19(44), 21(51)–23(54), 42(90)
Orestes, III:16(53) and n1
pagans; paganism, I passim; I:14(21), 15(23), 20(28), 26(41)
See also under specific topics, e.g., worship: of pagan gods
beliefs about Jesus and his disciples, I:7(11)
gods as deified humans, I:23(32)
Jupiter and Saturn, II:12(31–36)
as mocking their own gods, I:8(13)
slandering the Gospels, III:16(53)
worship of pagan gods, I:24(37), 25(38–39)
parables, II:40(87)–42(89), 66(127)
the Good Samaritan, II:73(142)
laborers in the vineyard, II:70(135)–72(140)
new cloth and new wine, II:27(63)–28(64)
two debtors, II:79(154)
the wedding feast, II:71(139)–72(140)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

paradise, II:4(11), 16(53)
paralytic, healing of, II:25(57–58)
parasceve, III:13(50)
passion of Christ, III:9(36)–21(58)
carrying the cross, III:10(37)
centurion’s amazement, III:20(57)
clothes divided by casting lots, III:12(39)
disciples told in advance of, II:54(110), 59(117), 64(124), 78(152)
earthquake, III:20(57)
hour of, III:13(40–50)
miracles at, III:19(56)–20(57)
potion offered to, III:14(51), 16(53)
Temple curtain torn, III:19(56)
time of, III:13(41)
utterances before death, III:18(55)
vinegar offered, III:17(54)
women at, III:21(58)
Passover, II:1(3), 5(17), 18(42), 45(94), 67(129); III:8(35), 13(40, 46, 50)
last, of Jesus, II:78(152–53), 80(157–58)
Paul, Apostle, passim; I:10(15–16)
Christ as not having addressed writing to, I:10(15–16)
shared feast day with Peter, I:10(16)
peace, II:5(17); IV:5(6)–6(7)
peace to you; it is I, III:25(74–75)
price of our, I:31(47)
Pentecost, II:1(4)
perseverance, IV:10(20)
Peter, Apostle, passim
See also apostles
Christ as not having addressed writing to, I:10(15–16)
confession of love, triple, IV:10(20)
cutting off high priest’s ear, III:5(16–17)
denial of, triple, III:2(5–8), 6(19–21), 6(25)
denial of Christ foretold, III:2(5)
Jesus committing his sheep to, IV:10(20)
the Lord’s appearance to, III:25(82–83) and n141
mother-in-law of, II:21(51–52)

mountain, vision of the Lord on, II:56(112)–57(115)
naming of, II:17(34), 53(109); IV:3(4)
repentance of, III:6(26)
as rock, II:17(34), 53(109)
shared feast day with Paul, I:10(16)
triple confession of love, IV:10(20)
triple denial of, III:2(5–8), 6(19–21), 6(25)
Pharisees, passim; II:62(120)
asking for a sign, II:39(86)
leaven of, II:52(107)
the Lord’s discourse against, II:75(144–45)
on Moses’s seat, II:75(144)
plotting to destroy Jesus, II:36(83)
why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners? II:27(61)
Philip, brother of Herod, II:6(18–19), 7(20)
Philip, Apostle, II:7(34, 37, 39), 19(45); IV:10(19)
See also apostles
and feeding of the multitude, II:46(95–96), 79(156)
philosophers, I:7(12), 15(23), 23(31), 29(45), 33(51)
See also individual philosophers
Platonic, I:23(35)
Pilate, Pontius:
giving Jesus’ body to Joseph, III:22(59)
giving Jesus up to be crucified, III:13(46)
Jesus brought before, III:7(27)
Jesus brought before, again, III:8(32–35)
message from wife, III:13(44, 46)
as wishing to release Jesus, III:13(44–46)
Plato, I:35(53)
Platonic philosophers, I:23(35)
pleasure, I:23(32); II:13(30), 77(151)
pluralism, II:12(28)
plural numbers, III:16(53)–17(54)
Porphyry, I:15(23)
potter’s field. See Akeldama (Field of Blood)
prayer:
act of leaving as, II:47(100)
but this kind does not come out except by prayer and fasting, II:58(116)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

threefold, of Christ, III:4(10–13)
whatever you ask for in prayer with faith, you shall receive, II:68(130)
preaching. See Gospel, preaching
predestined order of the ages, I:12(19)
Priapus, I:25(38)
pride: “diversity of agreement” as curative, II:66(128)
priesthood, I:13(20)–14(22); II:5(17), 35(54)
of the Jews, I:13(21)–14(22)
priestly character of Christ, I:3(6), 6(9)
prophecy, I:30(46)–32(49)
of Christ’s coming, I:11(17)
as fulfilled, I:26(40), 30(46)–31(47), 35(53–54)
against idolatry, I:26(40–41)
prophetic witness to Christ, I:13(20), 14(22), 19(27), 26(40); II:66(128), 70(137); III:7(31)
prophecy, pagan. See soothsayers
prophets
See also individual names
unity of, III:7(30–31)
providence, divine, I:1(2), 14(22), 35(53); III:7(30)
punishment, eternal, II:77(147); III:25(86); IV:6(7)
See also fire; Gehenna
purity, II:4(11); IV:10(20)
Pythagoras, I:7(12)
Rabboni, III:24(68–69)
Rachel, I:5(8); II:5(17)
rain, I:25(87); II:19(44)
rational soul, I:23(35), 35(53); IV:10(15)
“teachers,” II:20(49)
reading: and instruction in the Scriptures, I:10(15) and n41
reason:
faith and, III:13(43)
and truth of Gospel, III:13(43)
Remus, I:12(19)
repentance, II:12(26), 27(61); III:6(26), 25(74)
See also under individual names, e.g., Peter
resurrection of Jesus Christ, III:24(61–70), 25(86)
appearances after, III:25(70–86)
Jesus as eating after, III:25(74)
revelation, II:5(17); III:7(31), 25(86)
rich man, II:63(123)
righteousness: ten as number of, II:4(13)
robbers, II:73(142); III:5(18)
See also Barabbas; thieves
crucified with Jesus, III:13(46), 14(51), 16(53)–17(54)
rock; rocks:
now go into the rocks and hide yourselves in the earth, I:28(44)
Peter as rock, II:17(34), 53(109)
prudent man building on rock, not sand, II:19(44).
rocks split, and tombs were opened, III:20(57)
tomb of Jesus, III:23(60), 24(63, 67, 69)
rod, II:30(71–72) and n152
Romans: as not accepting God of the Jews, I:12(18)–34(52) passim
Rome, II:25(58)
See also Capitol, Roman
Romulus, I:23(32)
fratricide of, I:12(19)
ruler’s daughter, raising of, II:28(64, 66, 68)
Sabaoth, God of, I:29(45)
sabbath:
Capernaum synagogue, teaching in, IV:1(2)–2(3)
disciples plucking grain, II:34(81)
evening of, III:24(63, 65–66)
healing of man who was sick for 38 years, II:45(94); IV:10(14)
healing of man with withered hand, II:35(82)
pray that your flight may not be...on a sabbath, II:77(151)
sanctification of, I:22(30)
the Son of Man is Lord even of the sabbath, II:34(81)
sacraments, III:25(72) and n104; IV:5(6)–6(7)
See also baptism; eucharist
Sacred Scripture. See Scripture, Sacred
sacrifice, II:5(17)
I desire mercy and not sacrifice, II:27(61)
of the Lord, III:13(50)
pagan, I:16(24), 27(42)
the priest’s greatest, I:6(9)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

Sadducees, II:12(26), 52(107), 73(141)
saints, I:31(47); III:20(57)
salt: Have salt in yourselves, IV:6(7)
salvation, I:7(10), 35(53); II:5(17)
sand: foolish man building on, II:19(44).
Satan, II:38(85); III:1(3–4), 2(6), 3(9), 25(72)
Saturn, I:23(31–36)
the name, I:23(35)
thought to be God of Jews, I:22(30)
Saul (Paul), I:10(15–16)
See also Paul, Apostle
scribes, passim
every scribe who has been trained for the kingdom of heaven, II:41(88)
gospel texts as emended by, III:25(71)
and Pharisees, II:39(86), 48(102), 74(143)–75(144)
Scripture, Sacred, III:24(68–69)
See also specific topics and events
fulfillment of, I:30(46); II:42(90);
III:3(9), 17(54)
instruction in, I:10(15) and n41
Old and New Testaments, I:27(42)
as speaking of whole numbers rather than parts, II:13(41)
using part to refer to whole, III:24(65) and n155
second coming of Christ, II:55(111)
56(112), 77(147–51); III:6(20), 7(27)
senses, II:27(63)
Septuagint: creation of, II:66(128) and n244
Sermon on the Mount, delivery of, II:19(43–47)
servant: “he leads his servants by way of the form of a servant,” I:31(47);
III:25(86)
seven, the number, II:4(13)
seven brothers, II:72(140)
seven loaves miracle, II:50(104–5)
seventy-seven, II:4(13)
sheep, I:31(47–48)
shoes, II:30(71, 75)
Sibyls, I:20(28)
See also soothsayers
signs, II:4(8)
answer to those seeking, II:51(106)
on the earth, IV:10(17) and n46
scribes and Pharisees asking to see, II:39(86)
silver, I:28(44); II:30(73)

thirty pieces, II:80(157); III:7(28, 31)
Simeon, II:5(15–17), 11(24)
Simon of Cyrene, III:10(37)
Simon Peter. See Peter, Apostle
Simon the leper, II:79(154–56)
Simon the Zealot, II:19(45)
See also apostles
simplicity, II:30(75)
sin
See also iniquity; specific topics, e.g., forgiveness
cleansing of all, II:4(13)
and expiation, I:3(5); II:4(11)
as going beyond the law, II:4(13)
sinners, II:4(8, 12), 27(60–62), 79(154);
III:4(10–11)
Jesus eating with, II:27(60–61)
and tax collectors, II:27(60–61)
six days: after six days, II:56(113);
III:24(66)
Socrates, I:7(12), 18(26)
Sodom, II:32(79)
Solomon, I:2(4)–3(5); II:4(12)
sou, sonship, II:4(13) and n38
See also under David: how Christ is
son of whose son is he? II:74(143)
Son of God, II:1(2); III:20(57); IV:10(15)
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity
equality with the Father, II:3(6);
IV:10(11)
as only-begotten Son of God and as God, I:8(13)
Son of Man, II:1(2) and passim
See also Jesus Christ
soothsayers, I:20(28), 28(44), 32(50)
Sophocles, III:16(53) and n73
soul:
rational, I:23(35), 35(53); IV:10(15)
world soul idea, I:23(35)
speaking: writing and, I:1(2)
spirit, I:23(31, 34–35, 38)
Father, into your hands I commit my
spirit, III:18(55)–19(56), 21(58),
24(66)
ghost, III:25(74)
he who joins himself to the Lord is one
spirit, I:4(12)
it is the spirit that gives life, but the
flesh is of no use, IV:10(15)
the spirit indeed is willing, but the
flesh is weak, III:4(10)
Agreement Among the Evangelists

spirits, unclean. See unclean spirits
staff, II:30(71–74) and n152
whether or not disciples were to carry,
II:30(71)
Stephen, I:10(16)
stone: the stone that the builders rejected
has become the head of the corner,
II:70(135)
storm, calming of, II:24(55)
sunrise, III:24(65)
supertition, I:16(24), 23(35–36), 26(40–41); II:75(145)
supper, the Lord’s last. See Lord’s supper
swine: demons let go into, II:24(56)
symbolism, II:2(4)
tax collectors, II:27(60–61), 28(64)
taxes, II:60(118), 72(140); III:8(34–35)
teachers:
erroneous, II:74(143)
Jesus as teacher, passim
Rabboni, III:24(68–69)
Temple:
casting out of merchants, II:67(129–68(131)
children saying Hosanna in, II:68(130)
curtain torn at Christ’s death,
III:19(56)
destruction of, foretelling, II:76(146)
Jesus healing blind and lame,
II:68(130)
Jesus taken by his mother to, II:11(24)
by what authority do you do these
things? II:69(132)–70(133),
70(137–38)
temples, destruction of pagan, I:16(24)
temporal, the, I:12(19), 23(34), 35(53);
II:4(9–10), 12(28), 23(54), 30(70)
temptation, II:4(10), 18(42), 30(71); III:4(10)
of Christ, II:16(33), 42(90)
ten, the number, II:4(9)
as number of righteousness, II:4(13)
Ten Commandments. See commandments
Thaddeus (Judas, son of James),
II:19(45), 30(70)
See also apostles
thieves
See also robbers
Judas as thief, II:79(156)
third day: on the third day I complete my
course, II:75(145); III:25(80)

thirty silver pieces. See under silver: thirty
pieces of
Thomas, Apostle, II:19(45); III:25(74–78,
81–83, 85)
See also apostles
thorns, crown of. See crown of thorns
thunder, sons of, II:39(86), 53(109)
Timaeus (Plato), I:35(53)
time, II:13(40–41)
See also specific topics, e.g., eternity
ages, predestined order of, I:12(19)
end of the age, II:77(147–51)
real time and narrative proximity,
II:17(34)–18(42), 19(45–46),
20(48); III:4(11)
“Time” as father of gods, I:23(34)
transfiguration of Christ, II:47(100);
III:25(72)
transmigration, III:28(86)
“Travel Narrative,” II:62(123) and n230
trees:
fig tree, II:68(130)–69(132)
I see men like walking trees,
II:68(130)–69(132)

trials of Jesus, III:6(19)–8(35)
tribulation, II:4(8), 27(63)
tribute, paying: to Caesar, II:72(140);
III:8(34–35)
Trinity, I:5(8), 35(53); IV:10(20)
See also Holy Spirit; Son of God
the Filioque, IV:10(19) and n69
truth
See also under words: and meaning
Christ as bearing witness to, III:8(35);
IV:10(19)
despite varying accounts, II:12(28)
and “diversity of agreement” among
Gospels, II:66(128)
and eternity, I:35(53)
and faith, I:35(53)
and language, II:12(27–28)
and meaning, II:24(55)–25(57);
III:4(14)
and reason, III:13(43)
tunics, II:30(73), 30(75)
Tusculan Disputations (Cicero), I:23(32),
23(32–33)
twelve apostles. See apostles
unbelievers, I:7(10), 28(43); III:70(137)
unclean spirits, II:17(35), 19(45), 30(70),
75(144); IV:2(3)
house cleaned after departure, II:39(86)

unity:
of the flock, I:35(54); III:4(14), 25(72); IV:5(6)–6(7)
between the members and the head, II:70(138)
of the prophets, III:7(30–31)
of the Trinity, I:5(8), 35(53)
universe, I:24(37), 29(45)

vanity, I:7(10), 23(32); II:30(77)

Varro, Marcus Terentius:
as thinking God of Jews was Jupiter, I:22(30), 23(31, 33, 35), 27(42)

Venus, I:23(32), 25(38)
villages, III:25(71)
vinegar: offered to Christ on the cross, III:17(54)
vineyard:
hiring of workers for, II:63(123)
man with two sons, II:70(133)
parable of laborers in, II:70(135)–72(140)

Virgil, cited, I:23(31–34) and nn68–69, 74, 79

virgins, virginity, II:28(68)
in marriage, II:1(2)
virtues, IV:10(20)
two, I:5(8), 7(12)

water:
turned to wine, II:17(34, 38)
walking on water, II:47(99)–48(102)

wedding at Cana, II:17(34, 38)

wedding feast parable, II:71(139)–72(140)
wheat, II:12(26); III:2(6), 3(9)
wicked, the, III:25(86)
wind, I:25(87); II:19(44), 47(99)
est and west, north and south, II:4(9)
the wind and sea obey him, II:24(55)

wine:
in new wineskins, II:27(60)
parable of new, II:27(63)–28(64)
potion offered to Jesus, III:11(38)
water turned to, II:17(34, 38)

winter: pray that your flight may not be in winter, II:77(151)

wisdom of God, I:35(53)
supreme, I:23(35)

Agreement Among the Evangelists

Agreement Among the Evangelists

See also under prophecy: prophetic witness to Christ to Christ, I:8(13), 14(22)
Christ's, III:8(35); IV:10(19)
of the evangelists, III:1(1), 9(36)
of Scripture, III:1(2)
witnesses, false, III:6(20), 7(27)

women, II:28(68)

See also individual names and descriptions

at passion of Christ, III:21(58)
at tomb of Christ, III:24(63–64, 67–70)

word of God, II:12(28)

Word of God, incarnate, I:7(11), 30(46);
II:3(6), 6(18); IV:10(11–12, 16, 19–20) and n71

as one who took on flesh, not one who was changed into flesh, I:4(7)

words

See also language and meaning, II:24(55)–25(57), 28(66), 30(72); III:4(14)

world:
end of the age, II:77(147–51)
four parts to, I:2(3)
light of, IV:10(17)

world soul idea, I:23(35)
worm, IV:6(7) and n10

worship

See also idolatry

of God alone, I:18(26)–19(27), 21(29), 29(45)

writing:

Christ as having written nothing/writing wrongly attributed to, I:7(11)–10(16)

and speaking, I:1(2)

yoke:

my yoke is easy and my burden is light, II:33(80)

Zacchaeus, II:66(127)
Zebedee, sons of, II:17(39, 41); III:21(58), 25(78)

See also James the Apostle; John the Apostle

mother of, II:64(124)

sons of thunder, II:39(86), 53(109)
Zechariah, priest, I:3(5), 6(9); II:5(17)–6(19); IV:9(10)

Zechariah, prophet, III:7(29–31)
Index from

On the Lord’s Sermon on the Mount

(De sermone Domini in monte)

Included in book:

New Testament I and II

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Matthaeeum).

Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

**The Lord’s Sermon on the Mount**  
*(Prepared by Michael Dolan)*  

**OLD TESTAMENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Genesis   | 3:9 II, 5, 17  
|           | 3:19 I, 5, 15; I, 11, 30; I, 17, 53 |
| Exodus    | 21:24 I, 19, 56 |
| Deuteronomy | 13:3 II, 9, 31 |
| Psalms    | 2:1 I, 21, 72  
|           | 4:4 II, 3, 11  
|           | 12:6 II, 25, 87 |
|           | 22:18 I, 21, 72  
|           | 24:1 II, 21, 73 |
|           | 31:20 II, 10, 37 |
|           | 34:2 II, 1, 1; II, 11, 38 |
|           | 34:18 II, 5, 17 |
|           | 36:6 I, 1, 2  
|           | 45:13 I, 5, 13  
|           | 53:5 I, 7, 18  
|           | 57:7 I, 19, 58  
|           | 69:22 I, 21, 71  
|           | 73:27 RV I, 19 (18), 19 |
|           | 74:23 RV I, 19 (18), 20 |
|           | 76:1 II, 5, 19  
|           | 82:6-7 II, 4, 15  
|           | 95:7 II, 7, 27  
|           | 109:9 I, 21, 71  
|           | 110:1 I, 11, 30  
|           | 111:10 I, 1, 3; I, 4, 11  
|           | 115:16 II, 13, 44  
|           | 139:8-10 I, 11, 32  
|           | 142:5 I, 2, 4  
|           | 146:6 II, 21, 73  
|           | 148:8 I, 1, 3 |
| Proverbs  | 3:12 I, 20, 63  
|           | 18:22 RV I, 19 (18), 19 |
| Ecclesiastes | 1:14 I, I, 3 |
| Wisdom    | 1:1 I, 2, 8; II, 14, 48  
|           | 5:6 I, 23, 79  
|           | 7:26 I, 23, 79 |
| Sirach    | 1:14 I, 1, 3 |
|           | 1:16 I, 4, 11  
|           | 5:5-6 II, 14, 48 |
|           | 10:13 I, 1, 3  
|           | 10:13.12 I, 11, 32 |
|           | 27:5 II, 9, 32  
|           | 34:9 II, 9, 30 |
| Isaiah    | 1:2 II, 4, 15  
|           | 1:16 II, 12, 42  
|           | 5:6 I, 23, 79  
|           | 48:22 II, 24, 81 |
|           | 64:4 I, 4, 11  
|           | 66:1 II, 9, 32 |
| Jeremiah  | 12:13 II, 24, 79 |
| Hosea     | 6:6 I, 23, 80 |
| Habakkuk  | 2:4 I, 5, 13 |
| Malachi   | 1:6 II, 4, 15  
|           | 4:2 I, 23, 79 |
The Sermon on the Mount

NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew

4:11 I, 11, 29
5:1-2 I, 1, 2
5:3 I, 1, 3
5:4 I, 2, 4
5:5 I, 2, 5
5:6 I, 2, 6
5:7 I, 2, 7
5:8 I, 2, 8; II, 22, 76
5:9 Rv I, 19 (18), 17; I, 2, 9; II, 25, 86
5:10 I, 2, 9
5:11 I, 3, 10
5:11-12 I, 5, 13
5:12 I, 5, 15
5:13 I, 6, 16
5:14 I, 6, 17
5:14-16 II, 1, 2
5:15 I, 6, 17
5:16 I, 7, 18
5:17 I, 7, 19
5:18 Rv I, 19 (18), 18; I, 8, 20
5:19 Rv I, 19 (18), 18; I, 8, 20
5:20 Rv I, 19 (18), 18; I, 9, 21
5:21-22 I, 9, 22
5:22 Rv I, 19 (18), 18
5:23-24 I, 10, 26
5:25-26 I, 11, 29
5:26 II, 8, 28
5:27-28 I, 12, 33
5:29 I, 13, 37
5:30 I, 13, 38
5:31 I, 14, 39
5:32 I, 14, 39; I, 16, 48
5:33-37 I, 17, 51
5:34-35 II, 9, 32
5:38-42 I, 19, 56
5:40 II, 8, 28
5:41 I, 20, 67
5:43-48 I, 20, 69
5:44 I, 20, 63
5:45 I, 23, 79
6:1 II, 1, 2; II, 24, 80
6:2 II, 2, 5
6:3 II, 2, 6
6:4 II, 2, 9
6:5 II, 3, 10
6:6 II, 3, 11
6:7 II, 3, 12
6:8 II, 3, 12
6:9 II, 4, 15; II, 5, 19
6:9-13 II, 4, 15
6:10 II, 6, 20; II, 6, 21
6:11 II, 7, 25
6:12 Rv I, 19 (18), 18; II, 8, 28
6:13 I, 17, 51; II, 9, 30; II, 9, 35
6:16-18 II, 12, 40
6:19-21 II, 13, 44
6:22-23 II, 13, 45
6:24 II, 14, 47
6:25 I, 15, 42; II, 15, 49
6:26 II, 15, 51
6:27-28 II, 15, 51
6:28 II, 17, 57
6:28-30 II, 15, 52
6:31-33 II, 16, 53
6:32 II, 17, 56
6:33 II, 7, 25; II, 16, 53
6:34 Rv I, 19 (18), 20; II, 7, 25; II, 17, 56
6:35 II, 18, 59
7:2 I, 6, 17
7:3 II, 19, 63
7:4-5 II, 19, 64
7:6 II, 20, 67
7:7 Rv I, 19 (18), 20
7:7-8 II, 21, 71
7:8 II, 21, 73
7:9-11 II, 21, 73
7:11 Rv I, 19 (18), 21
7:12 II, 22, 74
7:13-14 II, 23, 77
7:15 II, 24, 78
7:15-16 II, 12, 41
7:16 II, 18, 59; II, 24, 78
7:16-20 II, 24, 78
7:18 II, 24, 79
7:22-23 II, 25, 84
7:23 II, 2, 5
7:24 II, 25, 87
7:24-27 I, 1, 1
7:26-29 II, 25, 87
9:8 I, 7, 18
10:25 I, 22, 75
11:12 I, 15, 40
11:21 I, 21, 72
11:28-30 II, 23, 77

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
## The Sermon on the Mount

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mark</th>
<th>Luke</th>
<th>John</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>I, 22, 75</td>
<td>1:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>I, 22, 75; II, 24, 79</td>
<td>3:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>II, 24, 79</td>
<td>4:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49-50</td>
<td>II, 6, 21</td>
<td>4:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14-15</td>
<td>II, 11, 39</td>
<td>5:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>II, 15, 50</td>
<td>5:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>II, 15, 50</td>
<td>6:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>I, 14, 39</td>
<td>6:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:27</td>
<td>II, 20, 70</td>
<td>6:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>I, 15, 40; II, 6, 20; II, 20, 70</td>
<td>6:45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:39-40</td>
<td>II, 22, 75</td>
<td>7:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>II, 22, 75</td>
<td>8:3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2</td>
<td>II, 24, 79</td>
<td>8:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 18; II, 24, 79</td>
<td>8:48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:22-23</td>
<td>II, 25, 85</td>
<td>11:33.35.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:35</td>
<td>II, 13, 44</td>
<td>16:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>I, 11, 29</td>
<td>18:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>II, 11, 38</td>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:52</td>
<td>I, 11, 29</td>
<td>11:27-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:8</td>
<td>I, 12, 35</td>
<td>23:2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:12</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
<td>23:4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:12-13</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>I, 5, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3-11</td>
<td>I, 16, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48</td>
<td>I, 5, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33.35.43</td>
<td>I, 12, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>II, 20, 67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:23</td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:25</td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-3</td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:4-5</td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>I, 17, 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>I, 5, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>I, 16, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-16</td>
<td>II, 9, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>I, 5, 13; II, 17, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>I, 11, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 22, 77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>II, 11, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>II, 6, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>II, 11, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>I, 12, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>II, 6, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>II, 4, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>II, 9, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>II, 12, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>I, 3, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>I, 4, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>I, 21, 71; I, 22, 76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>I, 22, 76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>II, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>I, 5, 13; II, 13, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:3-4</td>
<td>II, 18, 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I, 4, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>II, 20, 67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>I, 10, 27; II, 5, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>II, 18, 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 20, 65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>II, 18, 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>II, 25, 84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>I, 16, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10-11</td>
<td>I, 14, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12-13</td>
<td>I, 16, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 16, 45; I, 22, 73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>Book(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 22, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 14, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13-15</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 16, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 16, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 16, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 16, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:19</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 19, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20-22</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 19, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:26-27</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 6, 17; I, 22, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 9, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:32-33</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 17, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 25, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 25, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 17, 51; I, 17, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:1-8</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 17, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 12, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 6, 17; I, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 20, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 16, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20-21</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 19, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 7, 18; II, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 17, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 15, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 9, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 19, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19-23</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 24, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 10, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 17, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 13, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 12, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 25, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 13, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 15, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 12, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 18, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 18, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 8, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 21, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14-16</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 22, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 25, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 11, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rv I, 19 (18), 19; I, 22, 73</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Chapter numbers, then the Section numbers in parentheses. (Additional numbers, preceded by the letter n, indicate footnotes.)

Abraham, I:16(49) and n60
action; actions
   See also intention
   contemplation and, II:21(71)
   and disregarding people’s praise, II:1
   and sincere faith, I:10(27)
   and what is in a person’s heart, II:25
Acts of the Apostles, I:20(64), 22(73);
   II:17(57)
   Manichean rejection of, I:20(65) and n88
Acts of Thomas, I:20(65) and nn90–91
Acyndinus, I:16(50) and n63
adoption, II:16(54)
   into kingdom of God, I:23(78);
   II:11(38)
   as sons, I:23(78); II:4(15–16)
adultery, I:12(36), 14(39), 16(48)
   in the heart, I:12(33, 36)
   and spousal permission, I:16(49–50)
   and n62
adversaries
   See also enemies
   God as called adversary, I:11(32)
adversity, II:9(34), 15(49, 51), 16(53), 17(56–57)
Apocalypse, II:22(76)
Apostle, the (St. Paul).
   See Paul, the Apostle
apostles, I:6(17); II:16(54)
capability of, I:4(12); Revisions I:19(18):2
appetite, carnal, I:12(33–34)
   See also lust
approval, human, II:1(1), 1(4), 2(8), 22(76)
   See also praise
Aquila, II:17(57)
arrogance. See pride
ascension of the Lord, I:20(64)
asking, seeking, and knocking, II:21(71)
   and Revisions I:19(18):9
authority, I:20(65)
   in Christian history, I:19(61)
   Church, II:7(26)
divine, I:3(10), 11(32), 20(68)
he taught them as one having authority, II:27(87)
people in positions of, I:16(50)
to punish, I:20(63, 66)
of real-life moral struggle, I:16(49)
   and n62

The Sermon on the Mount
of Scripture, I:11(32)
and those who proclaim the Gospel,
II:16(54)
By what authority do you do these things, II:20(70)
avarice. See greed

baptism:
of John, II:20(70)
renunciation of Satan, I:11(31) and n36
Beatitudes, I:1(3)–5(15) and passim
See also maxims
and gifts of the Holy Spirit,
Introduction, pp. 13–15
number of, I:3(10), 4(11–12);
II:11(38)
perfection, ladder of, I:3(10)
and petitions of the Lord’s Prayer,
Introduction, pp. 13–15
beauty, I:5(13), 16(50)
of all natural beings in their own order
and according to their own kind,
I:12(34)
visible, II:5(18)
Beelzebul, I:22(75)
See also Satan
benevolence, I:11(31), 21(70)
Bible. See Scripture, Sacred
birds, II:5(17), 15(51–52), 17(57), 21(73)
blasphemy, I:10(27); II:18(59)
blessedness, I:1(3), 3(10), 5(13), 16(42);
II:6(21), 9(35)–10(36), 12(40, 43)
See also happiness
blessed life, II:3(14), 6(20), 21(71)
blood ties, I:15(41); Revisions I,19(18):5
body
See also flesh
of the earth, I:2(4); II:11(38)
earthly and heavenly, II:5(18)
food, making use of, II:17(56) and
Revisions I,19(18):9
injury to, I:16(46)
mastery of, I:6(17)
resurrection of, II:7(27) and n36
and soul, II:6(23)
the whole body, II:13(45)
body of Christ. See Church; eucharist
bread
See also daily bread
consecrated, II:7(27)
of life, II:7(25)
multitude fed on, II:9(31)
brother, I:15(41); II:17(57)
love for, II:12(43)
bushel, I:6(17)
Caesar, II:20(70)
Capernaum, I:21(72)
cardinal virtues, Introduction, n3
Catholic Christianity, I:5(14), 20(65);
II:6(22) and n24
See also Christian life; Christians;
Church
censure. See correction
charity, I:1(2), 5(13) and n23; II:1(3),
4(16), 9(30, 35), 12(43), 19(65)
See also love
fullness of the Law as, II:13(45),
17(58)
undermining, as sin, I:22(75)
chastity, I:14(39), 16(50)
See also virginity
marriage of fraternal companionship,
I:15(42)
cheeks, right and left, I:19(58)
children of God, II:11(38)
Chorazin, I:21(72) and n95
Christ
See also Jesus Christ
name of, II:25(84)
Christian life, I:1(1)
acting upon what we have heard from,
II:25
Christians as brothers, I:22(73)
Christian standard, I:20(66)
Christian warfare, I:18
living the Gospel, II:16
perfect way to lead, I:1(1)
Christians, II:12(41)
See also Catholic Christianity; Church
future, II:4(15)
in history, I:19(61)
Christology: homo assumptus (or
susceptus), I:19(61) and n77
Church, II:10(36)
See also Catholic Christianity
glorious, I:19(66) and Revisions
I,19(18):9
as it is and as it will be, II:19(66) and
Revisions I,19(18):9
the Lord’s Prayer and, II:6(24)
spouse of Christ, II:6(24)
wellbeing of, II:17(56)
circumcision, I:4(12)
clothing, II:15(51)–16(54)
See also coat and cloak, below
coat and cloak, I:19(56, 59–61), 20(66); II:8(28)
coheirs with Christ, I:23(78); II:4(16)
coming of Christ, I:11(29) and n33, I:16(49) and n61; II:10(36)
commandments, I:8(20)–9(21) and Revisions I,19(18):3–4; II:4(15)
See also Law
communion, II:1(3)
See also eucharist
compassion, I:19(61)–20(62, 66); II:2(6–7)
See also love; mercy
for enemies, II:2(6)
God’s, II:3(14)
of Jesus, II:2(6)
for the poor, II:24(80)
in rebuke or censure, II:19(64–65)
completion, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):3
See also perfection
condemnation
See also judgment
final, I:9(24), 22(76–77); II:6(22)
conscience, I:3(10), 20(68), 22(74); II:1(1), 2(9), 4(16), 9(32), 12(43)
and hating God, II:14(48) and Revisions I,19(18):8
consoler, I:12(36)
See also Holy Spirit
Constantius II, I:16(50) and n63
contemplation, I:3(10), 13(38); II:23(77), 25(84)
and action, II:21(71)
contempt, I:19(58); II:20(69–70)
continence. See chastity; virginity
 correction, II:9(34)
See also punishment
compassion in rebuke or censure, II:19(63–65)
punishment leading to, I:20(62–66)
counsel, I:4(11); II:11(38); Introduction, p. 15
cross; crucifixion of Peter, II:18(62)
curses, I:21(71)
Cyprian, Introduction, p. 11, and passim
daily bread, I:13(37)–18(54); II:4(15), 7(25–27), 10(37), 11(38); Introduction, p. 15
See also eucharist
darkness, II:13(46)
David, II:1(1)
day of judgment. See under judgment: day of
death, I:20(64) and n81; II:9(35)
See also mortality; original sin
sin that leads to, I:22(73–75) and Revisions I,19(18):7
three deaths, I:12(35)
debts; debtors:
   lending to others, I:20
trespasses, II:8(28–29) and n38
usury, II:8(28) and n41
deeds. See actions; works
demons, II:25(84–85)
desire
See also lust
for earthly possessions/attractions, I:1(3); II:13(44, 46), 14(47)
of the flesh, I:9(9), 12(34), 16(43, 46); Revisions I,19(18):1
will and, II:22(74)
devil, I:11(31); II:9(32), 14(47)
See also demons; Satan
no one can serve two masters, II:14(47–48)
disciples, II:9(33), 25(84)
See also apostles
righteousness of, I:9(21–25)
divided heart. See under heart: divided
divine precepts. See precepts, divine
divine providence. See providence, divine
divorce. See under marriage: and separation
doctrine, I:13(38)
See also Catholic Christianity
dogs, I:20(65); II:20(67)–21(71)
Donatism; Donatist schism, I:5(13) and n23
doves, II:19(66)
drink, II:10(37)
drunkenness, II:22(74), 24(81)
duplicity, II:14(48)
devil, I:11(30) and n35
See also world
beauty of, II:13(44)
blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth, I:2(4)
body of, I:2(4); II:11(38)
heaven and, II:5(18), 6(20–24), 10(36)
kingdom, earthly, I:1(2–3)
salt of, I:6(16–17)
sinners as, I:17(53); II:5(17), 6(22),
The Sermon on the Mount

10(36)
symbolism of, I:5(15); II:6(21–24)
thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven, II:6(22–24)
east: prayer facing, II:5(18) and n19
Egyptian magicians, II:25(85)
eight, I:4, 4(12)
See also under Beatitudes: number of
and Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12) and n22
eisenegkes, I:9(30) and n45
elements, I:11(30) and n35
Elijah, Revisions I,19(18):3; I:20(64)
Elisha, Revisions I,19(18):3
endurance, I:5(13); II:17(58)
enemies
See also specific topics, e.g., revenge
compassion for, II:2(6)
love for, I:15(40), 21(69)–22(77)
prayer for, I:21(69)–22(77); II:6(22), 8(29)
reconciling with, I:11(32)
yielding to and exceeding demands of, I:19(56)–20(68)
envy, II:24(81)
eternal life, I:2(6), 23(78); II:3(11), 6(23), 10(36)
eucharist, II:7(25) and n30, 7(26–27) and n32–36, I:10(37)
See also daily bread
Eve, I:12(34)
evil
See also sin
deliver us from evil, I:17(51); II:4(15), 9(35); Introduction, p. 15
returning good for, I:2(4), 19(57), 22(76)
there is no evil nature, I:11(32)
those who still love this world, II:21(73)
eyes:
an eye for an eye, I:19(56)
of the heart, II:22(76)
inner eye, II:3(14), 12(43)
as intention, II:13(45–46)
scandal through, I:13(37)
splinter in your brother’s eye...beam in your own eye, II:19(63–64)
undivided, I:15(45–46), 19(64), 22(75), 25
faith, II:24(81)
sincere, I:10(27); II:12(43)
falsehood. See lies
false prophets, II:24(78–81)
family (blood ties), I:15(41); Revisions I,19(18):5
fasting, I:12(34); I:12(40, 42), 24(80)
Father, God as, I:20(63)
See also God
fear, II:25(82)
beginning of wisdom, I:1(3), 4(11–12)
of God, I:1(3), 4(11–12); Introduction, p. 14
of the Lord, I:6(16)–10(28)
fidelity, marital, I:14(39), 18(54)
fifty, the number, I:4(12)
and Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12) and n22
fire, I:1(3); I:9(32), I:11(30) and n35, 24(78)
See also Gehenna; punishment from heaven, I:20(64)
firmament, spiritual, I:5(15); II:13(44)
flesh
See also desire; senses
earth as symbolizing, II:6(23)
and spirit, II:10(36)
woman as symbolizing, I:12(34) and nn40–41
works of, II:24(81)
food
See also daily bread
do not be anxious about what you are to eat, II:7(25)
as material, II:15(50)
in paradise, II:17(56) and Revisions I,19(18):9
for the soul, Scripture as, II:10(37)
spiritual, II:7(25, 27), 10(37)
work for the food which does not perish, II:7(25)
foolish man: building house on sand, I:1(1); II:25(87)
forgiveness, II:11(39)
for all wicked desire as, I:12(36)
idoctry as called, I:12(36)
as scrutinizing hearts, II:2(5)
seeing, II:12(43)
sons/children of, II:11(38)
who made heaven and earth, I:1(2)
gold, I:16(50), 19(59); II:13(44)
Golden Rule, II:22
good, II:9(32)

See also saints
for evil, I:2(4), 19(57), 22(76)
the good vs. the necessary, II:16(53)
joy, the good alone as possessing,
II:25(83)
knavish and righteous of God as our,
II:16(53)
supreme, I:3(10)
whatever good you wish...people should do to you, II:22(74), 24(81)
goodness, I:21(70), 23(79); II:14(48),
24(81)
See also righteousness
feigned, II:1(1)
good will, II:1(1), 4(15–16), 6(21),
11(31), 16(54), 18(61)
good works. See works
Gospel, passim; I:7(18), 16(50); II:9(31, 33)
living the Gospel, II:16(54)
preached to every nation, II:5(19)
preaching, purpose of, II:16(54–55)
proclaiming it as sons, not as slaves,
II:16(54)
grace, divine, II:4(16)
greed, II:13(45)
as idolatry, I:12(36), 16(46–47)
Greek versions of the Bible, I:17(51),
19(58); II:2(9), 22(74)
grief-stricken, the. See sorrowful
guile, II:24(80)
habit, I:12(34); II:6(23)
habitual sin, I:12(36)
Hagar, I:16(49) and n60
hands:
right and left, II:2(6–9)
scandal through, I:13
happiness, I:12(36–37); II:6(21)
See also blessedness
hardship. See trials
hatred, II:19(64), 20(66, 69)
for God, II:14(48)
haughtiness. See pride
head, the, II:12(42)
health, I:18(54), 19(61)
of mind, II:2(71)
The Sermon on the Mount

heart; hearts

See also undividedness
divided, II:11(38), 12(40, 43), 13(45–46), 14(48)–15(49), 18(59), 19(66), 22(74–75)

God as scrutinizing, II:2(5)
God to judge hidden secrets of,
II:9(32)
kind of heart demanded by God,
II:12(43)
purifying/cleansing, I:4(11); II:12(42)–13(44)
purity of, I:1(1)–22(76) passim;
II:1(1), 3(14), 13(45), 14(48), 17(56), 18(59), 22(74–75)

heathens, I:20(69); II:3(12)

See also gentiles

heaven, I:3(10), 4(12), 6(16)–10(28), 11(30) and n35; II:25(82)
See also eternal life; kingdom of heaven and earth, II:5(18), 6(20–24), 10(36)

God as seated in, I:17(53); II:5(17–18)

God’s throne, I:17(53); II:9(32)
holy souls, as referring to, I:17(53);
II:6(22)
in the Lord’s Prayer, II:5(17), 6(20–24)

righteous person as, II:5(17)
symbolism of, I:5(15); II:6(21–24)
yi will be done on earth as it is in heaven,
II:6(22–24)

heavenly Jerusalem, I:15(41); II:25(84)

Hebrew language, I:9(23); II:14(47)
Hebrews, Epistle to, II:7(27) and n37

hell. See Gehenna; punishment

heresy; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)
injury:
to the body, I:16(46)
offending/being offended, I:19(57)

injustice, I:20(66)
intellect, I:3(10)
See also mind; reason

intention, II:2(9), 12(42–43), 13(45–448), 18(59)–19(63), 20(68), 22(75)

and sincere faith, I:10(27)

idols; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)

image of God, I:4(12)
conformed to the image of his Son,
II:12(40)
immaterial, the, II:5(18)
immortality, I:5(15), 15(41); II:6(23)
in paradise, Revisions I,19(18):9

impediment, I:21(71–72)
impurity, II:13(45)
iniquity, II:2(5), 25(84)
See also sin

Jesus: will be done on earth as it is in heaven,
II:6(22–24)

heavenly Jerusalem, I:15(41); II:25(84)

Hebrew language, I:9(23); II:14(47)
Hebrews, Epistle to, II:7(27) and n37

hell. See Gehenna; punishment

heresy; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)
injury:
to the body, I:16(46)
offending/being offended, I:19(57)

injustice, I:20(66)
intellect, I:3(10)
See also mind; reason

intention, II:2(9), 12(42–43), 13(45–448), 18(59)–19(63), 20(68), 22(75)

and sincere faith, I:10(27)

idols; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)

image of God, I:4(12)
conformed to the image of his Son,
II:12(40)
immaterial, the, II:5(18)
immortality, I:5(15), 15(41); II:6(23)
in paradise, Revisions I,19(18):9

impediment, I:21(71–72)
impurity, II:13(45)
iniquity, II:2(5), 25(84)
See also sin

Jesus: will be done on earth as it is in heaven,
II:6(22–24)

heavenly Jerusalem, I:15(41); II:25(84)

Hebrew language, I:9(23); II:14(47)
Hebrews, Epistle to, II:7(27) and n37

hell. See Gehenna; punishment

heresy; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)
injury:
to the body, I:16(46)
offending/being offended, I:19(57)

injustice, I:20(66)
intellect, I:3(10)
See also mind; reason

intention, II:2(9), 12(42–43), 13(45–448), 18(59)–19(63), 20(68), 22(75)

and sincere faith, I:10(27)

idols; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)

image of God, I:4(12)
conformed to the image of his Son,
II:12(40)
immaterial, the, II:5(18)
immortality, I:5(15), 15(41); II:6(23)
in paradise, Revisions I,19(18):9

impediment, I:21(71–72)
impurity, II:13(45)
iniquity, II:2(5), 25(84)
See also sin

Jesus: will be done on earth as it is in heaven,
II:6(22–24)

heavenly Jerusalem, I:15(41); II:25(84)

Hebrew language, I:9(23); II:14(47)
Hebrews, Epistle to, II:7(27) and n37

hell. See Gehenna; punishment

heresy; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)
injury:
to the body, I:16(46)
offending/being offended, I:19(57)

injustice, I:20(66)
intellect, I:3(10)
See also mind; reason

intention, II:2(9), 12(42–43), 13(45–448), 18(59)–19(63), 20(68), 22(75)

and sincere faith, I:10(27)

idols; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)

image of God, I:4(12)
conformed to the image of his Son,
II:12(40)
immaterial, the, II:5(18)
immortality, I:5(15), 15(41); II:6(23)
in paradise, Revisions I,19(18):9

impediment, I:21(71–72)
impurity, II:13(45)
iniquity, II:2(5), 25(84)
See also sin

Jesus: will be done on earth as it is in heaven,
II:6(22–24)

heavenly Jerusalem, I:15(41); II:25(84)

Hebrew language, I:9(23); II:14(47)
Hebrews, Epistle to, II:7(27) and n37

hell. See Gehenna; punishment

heresy; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
I:12(36), 16(46–47)
injury:
to the body, I:16(46)
offending/being offended, I:19(57)

injustice, I:20(66)
intellect, I:3(10)
See also mind; reason

intention, II:2(9), 12(42–43), 13(45–448), 18(59)–19(63), 20(68), 22(75)

and sincere faith, I:10(27)

idols; idolatry: as fornication/greed as,
New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)

irrational animals, II:15(51)
Isaiah, I:4(11); II:25(87)
Israel, II:4(15), 5(19)

jealousy, II:24(81)
Jerusalem, I:17(51–52); II:17(57)

heavenly, I:15(41); II:25(84)
Jesus Christ
See also God; Son of God; specific topics and events, e.g., second coming of Christ
acting upon what we have heard from, II:25
ascension of, I:20(64)
Church as spouse of, II:6(24)

coheirs with, I:23(78); II:4(16)
coming to judge the living and the dead, I:11(29)
and enduring wrongs, I:19
law, as fulfilling, I:8(20)
name of, II:25(84)
as physician, I:19(57); II:17(58)
precepts of, I:15(40)
as rock, II:25(87)
suffering for, I:5
as teacher, I:1(2); II:3(12)
as teaching perfection, I:9
truths concealed by, II:20(67)

Jews, I:15(40)
to the Jews I became like a Jew, II:19(65)
Job, II:9(32)
John, Apocalypse of, I:22(76)
John, Apostle, I:22(73), 23(78)
John the Baptist, II:20(70)
Joseph, son of Jacob, II:9(32)
jot, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):3
joy, I:4(11), 5(13), 11(29); II:1(3), 9(31), 12(40)
for the foolish, II:3(10)
the good alone as possessing, II:24(81), 25(83)
oil, associated with, II:12(42) and n65

Judas Iscariot, I:21(71), 22(74); II:9(34), 17(57)
judge:

God, II:3(12)
the Son, I:11(29)
unjust, II:15(52) and n74
judgment, II:18–19

See also condemnation
and ascending order of punishment, I:9(22–24)
of Christ, I:11(29) and n33
day of, II:6(20, 22)
do not judge, lest you be judged, II:18(61–62)

God as never judging rashly or repaying by false measure, II:18(62)

God’s throne, I:17(53)

human, II:18
measure, II:18(62)
rash and false, warning against, II:18(60–62), 19(63–64, 66)

judgment from a lawsuit, I:19(59)
just, the. See righteous, the
justice, I:17(53), 23(79); II:10(37), 25(84)

See also righteousness
as cardinal virtue, Introduction, n3
of God, II:10(37)

iniquity and, II:25(84)
of Pharisees, I:9

killing: See murder

kingdom, earthly, I:1(2–3)

kingdom of God, I:2(9), 5(40); II:15(50), 25(83)

adoption into, I:23(78)
coming of, II:10(36)

living for/serving, II:16(53)–17(58)

and needs of this life, II:16(53)–17(58)

seek first the kingdom of God, II:7(25)

thy kingdom come, I:11(29–32);

Introduction, p. 14

kingdom of heaven, I:1(2–3), 2(9), 9(21); II:25(83)

See also heaven
each Beatitude as mentioning,

Introduction, p. 14

knowledge, I:4(11), 12(33–36); II:11(38);

Introduction, p. 14

See also wisdom

God as knowing everything, II:3(12)
knowledge inflates, love builds up, I:1(3)
kriakos anthropos. See Lordly Man

lamp

See also light
under a bushel, I:6(17)

language. See speech; specific languages, e.g., Punic

Last Judgment. See under judgment: day of

Latin:

language, I:9(23)
Scripture texts, I:19(58)

Law, II:4(15)

The Sermon on the Mount
The Sermon on the Mount

See also commandments
Christ as fulfilling, I:7(19)–9(21)
fullness of, II:13(45)
keeping, I:9(21)
natural law, II:9(32)
old, I:21(70) and n92
sum of, II:22(75)
lawsuit, judgment from, I:19(59)
Lazarus, I:12(35)
left hand. See under hands: right and left
lending to others, I:20
lewd behavior, Revisions I,19(18):6
lies; lying, II:2(9), 20(69)
and secret, discipline of, II:20(67) and n90
life, II:12(43), 15(49–50)
See also under blessedness: blessed life;
Christian life; eternal life
soul as standing for, II:15(50)
temporal, II:16(54)
way or path as metaphor for, I:11(31–32) and n37
light:
concealing (lamp under a bushel),
I:6(17), 7(19)
and darkness, of our actions, II:13(46)
dwelling within us, II:13(46)
for everything that is made manifest is light,
II:13(46)
of God, II:3(14)
heavenly lights, I:23(79)
interior, II:22(76)
of truth, II:9(32)
of the world, I:6(17); II:1(2)
lightning, I:20(64)
likeness of God. See under God: likeness of
litigation, II:8(28)
Lordly Man, I:6(20) and Revisions
I,19(18):8 and nn21–22
Lord’s Prayer, II:4(15)–11(39)
See also under Beatitudes: and
petitions of the Lord’s Prayer;
specific topics, e.g., daily bread
how it is divided, II:10
language of, II:5–9
opening lines of, II:5(17–18)
seven petitions of, II:11
temporal and eternal petitions in, II:10
love, I:1(2); II:4(16), 22(75)
See also charity; compassion
affection, II:4(16)
for brother, II:12(43)
for enemies, I:15(40), 21(69)–22(77)
for God, II:9(31)
knowledge inflates, love builds up,
I:1(3)
love does no wrong to the neighbor,
I:1(3)
for a maidservant, II:14(47)
for neighbor, I:5(13), 20(64), 21(70);
II:22(75–76)
for others, II:19(65), 22(75)
of the world, II:20(69), 21(73), 25(82)
lust
See also desire
committing adultery in the heart,
I:12(33, 36)
lying. See lies
magicians, II:25(85)
maidservant: love for, II:14(47)
malice, II:18(62)
mammon, II:14(47)
man:
every part of, II:9(35)
heaven as masculine, I:6(24) and n29
the inner person, II:12(42)
new man, I:4(12)
reason, as symbolizing, I:12(34) and
nn40–41
man, fellow. See brother; neighbor
Manicheanism, I:20(65); II:9(31–33),
24(79)
Man of the Lord, Christ. See Lordly Man
mantle (cloak), I:19(60)
mariage
See also specific topics, e.g., fidelity
Christ as spouse of Church, II:6(24)
Christian, and third parties, I:16
of fraternal companionship, I:15(42)
heaven and earth as husband and wife,
II:6(24)
old law and new law, I:14(39)
and remarriage, I:14(39) and n44
and separation, I:14(39)–16(50)
temporal relationships, I:15
an unbelieving spouse, I:16(44–45),
22(73)
martyrs, I:5(13) and n23, II:22(76–77);
II:15(50)
Stephen as protomartyr, I:22(76)
and their persecutors, II:18(62)
masters:
God as master, II:4(15)
no one can serve two masters,
II:14(47–48)

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
material, the; materiality, I:4(11), n35; II:n35
food as, II:15(50)
God believed to be by Manicheans, II:n35
materialism, II:2(7)
Matthew, Gospel of:
fifth chapter of, I
Mt 5:19-20, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):4
sixth and seventh chapters, II
maxims (Beatitudes):
eight, I:3(10)–4(11)
seven, II:25(87)
measure:
bushel, I:6(17)
God gives the Spirit without measure, I:6(17); Revisions I,19(18):3
judgment, II:18(62)
meek, blessedness of, I:2(4), 3(10)–4(12), 11(29–32); II:11(38), 23(77);
Introduction, p. 14
members: put to death your members which are on the earth, II:13(45)
merciful, the, I:2(7), 19(58)–23(80);
II:11(38); Introduction, p. 15
mercy:
of God, II:10(37), 14(48), 15(52)
I desire mercy rather than sacrifice, I:23(80)
military service, II:17(56)
mind
See also intellect; soul; spirit
health of, II:2(71)
purity of, II:10(37)
miracles, II:25(84–85)
Peter healing the cripple, II:2(6)
resurrection, I:2(35)
misery, I:23(80)
avoiding, I:11(39)
money
See also debt; riches
Jesus as keeping, II:17(57)
the Lord’s Prayer and, II:8(28)
tribute, paying, II:20(70)
women and, II:2(7)
morality
See also righteousness
Christian life, I:1(1)
mortality, incurred through sinning,
II:6(23), 9(35), 10(37), 17(56) and
Revisions I,19(18):9
Moses, I:14(39), 19(57); II:24(79), 25(85)
mother: heavenly Jerusalem as, I:15(41)
motivation. See Jerusalem as intention
mountain, I:1(3)
murder, I:9(21, 24)
natural law, II:9(32)
nature:
cannot be made by people, II:24(79)
law of, II:9(32)
there is no evil nature, I:11(32)
natures, two, II:24(79)
necessities; the necessary, I:15(40), 19(59); II:12(43), 15(49), 17(56–57)
difference between good and, II:16(53)
neighbor:
care for wellbeing of, I:19(57)
love for, I:5(13), 20(64), 21(70);
II:22(75–76)
new man, I:4(12)
new people, II:5(17)
New Testament: voice of, II:5(17)
non-Christians. See unbelievers
numbers; Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12)
and n22, I:19(61) and n78
See also under Beatitudes: number of,
specific numbers, e.g., seven
allegory, as suggesting, I:4(11–12), 19(61)
oaths. See swearing
obedience to God, I:4(11) and Revisions
I,19 (18):1; II:6(21), 7(26), 20(67)
oil: joy associated with, II:12(42) and n65
old law, I:21(70) and n92
Old Testament, I:4(12), 20(64); II:9(31)
See also law
heretics opposed to, II:9(31–32)
only-begotten son of God. See son of God, only-begotten
order: All natural beings in their own
order...are beautiful, I:12(34)
Origen, Introduction, p. 11, and passim
original sin, I:15(41) and Revisions
I,19(18):5
ostentation, I:19(59); II:12(40–41)
Our Father. See Lord’s Prayer
Paraclete. See Holy Spirit
paradise, I:12(34); Revisions I,19(18):9
food in, II:17(56) and Revisions
I,19(18):9
passions. See desire
The Sermon on the Mount

path: as metaphor for life, I:11(31–32) and n37
patience, I:5(13), 19(58); II:14(48), 17(58), 19(65), 24(81)
Paul, Apostle, passim
and enduring wrongs, I:19
to the Jews I became like a Jew; II:19(65)
response to chief priest, I:19(58)
Roman citizenship, I:19(58)
as supporting himself, II:16(54), 17(57)
peace, I:2(9), 11(31), 19(56); II:6(21, 23), 11(38), 25(86)
peacemakers, I:2(9)–3(10), 4(11–12), 23(77)–25(86); II:11(38), 25(86)
and wisdom, I:4(11); Revisions I,19(18):1–2; Introduction, p. 15
pears: before swine, II:20(68)–21(71)
of truth, holy, II:20(67)
penance, I:11(31); II:8(28)
penny, payment of last, I:11(30)
Pentecost, I:4(12); II:17(57)

people
See also man; specific topics
the new people, II:5(17)
perdition, II:23(77)
perfection:
the Beatitudes and, I:3
Christ as teaching, I:9
completion, I:8(20); Revisions I,19(18):3
ladder of, I:3
of law, I:8(20)
number three as signifying, I:19(61)
peace, as found in, I:2(9)
perjury, I:17(51–52)
persecution, I:2(9)–3(10), 4(12)–6(16), 22(73)
perseverance, I:3(10); II:21(73), 25(83)
person. See human being; man; specific topics
Peter, Apostle, I:20(64); II:9(33–34), 18(62)
crucifixion of, II:18(62)
healing the cripple, II:2(6)
threefold denial by, I:22(74)

petitions of the Lord’s Prayer
See Lord’s Prayer; Lord’s Prayer: petitions of
Pharisees, I:17(51); II:24(79)

righteousness of, I:9(21–25) and

Revisions I,19(18):4, I:21(70)
physician: Christ as, I:19(57) and n72; II:17(58)
piety, I:4(11), 11(29–32); Introduction, p. 14
pigs. See swine
pleasure, I:2(5), 3(10), 5(13), 12(33–36); II:6(23), 12(42)
poor, the. See poverty
poor in spirit, I:1(1, 3), 4(11), 6(16)–10(28); II:11(38); Introduction, p. 14
See also humility
possessions
See also riches
desire for earthly, I:1(3)
poverty; the poor:
compassion for the poor, II:24(80)
material, and of soul, II:8(28)
power
See also authority
to become sons of God, I:23(78)
praise, II:12(42)
See also approval, human in prayer, II:4(15)
prayer, I:17(51); II:3(10–14)
See also Lord’s Prayer
for enemies, I:21(69)–22(77); II:6(22), 8(29)
facing east, II:5(18) and n19
and God’s already knowing our needs, II:3(13–14)
God’s care for those who pray to him, II:15
how to pray, II:4(15)
secret, II:3(11), 4(15)
and sin against the Holy Spirit, I:22
and sincere faith, I:10(27)
standing to pray, II:5(18) and n19
preaching. See under Gospel
precepts, divine, II:2(8), 7(25–27)
predilection, I:4(11), 11(32)
sin and, I:1(3) and n5, I:11(32)
of those who hate you, I:11(32); II:14(48) and Revisions I,19(18):8
prison, I:11(29)
prophets; prophecy, I:10(27)
false prophets, II:24(78–81)
protomartyr, I:22(76)
providence, divine, I:16(49), 17(52); II:15(49–52), 24(79)
prudence: as cardinal virtue, Introduction, n3
Punic language, II:14(47) and n69

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
punishment
See also condemnation; correction; fire; Gehenna
ascending order of, I:9(22–24)
of darkness, I:11(29)
eternal, I:3(10), 11(30), 22(76); II:2(5)
by the judgment with which you judge you yourselves will be judged,
II:18(62)
and measure, I:6(17)
rebukes, II:19(66)
and retaliation, I:19(57)
sin and, I:9, 12(34)
trouble as, Revisions I,19(18): 9;
II:17(56)
purity of heart, I:1(1)–22(76) passim; II:1;
Introduction, p. 15
See also under heart: purifying as undivided, I:2(8)
purity of the mind, II:10(37)
purpose. See intention
raca, I:9(22–23, 25), 10(26, 28)
rain, I:1(3), 23(79)
rational and irrational animals, II:15(51)
rational soul, I:4(12)
rational thought, II:9(32)
reason, II:9(32)
See also intellect and affection, I:4(11) and Revisions I,19(18):1
flesh as subjected to, I:12(34) and nn40–41
man as symbolizing, I:12(34) and nn40–41
rational thought, II:9(32)
as subjected to Christ, I:12(34) and nn40–41
and truth, II:9(32)
rebirth, I:23(78)
of the new man, I:4(12)
rebukes, II:19(66)
See also correction reconciliation, I:10(26–27), 11(32)
regeneration, I:4(12)
regulator, God as, I:22(77)
religion, II:5(18)
repentance, I:11(30–31), 22(74);
II:14(48), 25(86)
rest, perpetual, II:17(58)
resurrection miracles, I:12(35)
resurrection of the body, II:7(27) and n36
resurrection of the Lord, I:4(12)
retaliation. See revenge
revelation, II:9(35)
revenge, I:19(56)–20(66); II:8(29)
reward, II:2(5)
in heaven, I:5(13)
outward, II:12(40)
rhetorical training, II:3(12) and n9
riches
See also possessions
mammon, II:14(47)
no one can serve two masters,
II:14(47)
the rich, warning to, II:4(16)
right and left, II:2(6–9)
cheeks, I:19(58)
hands, II:2(6–7)
righteous, the, II:6(20, 22), 10(36)
See also saints
righteousness, I:1(2), 2(6); II:5(18)
See also goodness; justice
and almsgiving, II:2(8)
and disregarding people’s praise, II:1
greater and lesser, I:12(33)
heaven, righteous person as, II:5(17), 6(22)
and hypocrisy, II:2(8)
of scribes and Pharisees and of disciples, I:9(21–25)
the sun of righteousness, I:23(79)
those who hunger and thirst for righteousness, I:2(6), 4(12), 13(37)–18(54); Introduction, p. 15
robbers, II:18(62)
rock:
Christ as, II:25(87)
wise man building house on, I:1(1);
II:25(87)
Roman citizenship, I:19(58)
sabbath, I:4(12), 22(30)
sacraments. See baptism; eucharist
Sacred Scripture. See Scripture, Sacred sacrifice, II:8(28)
See also idolatry
I desire mercy rather than sacrifice,
I:23(80)
Sadducees, II:20(70)
saints, I:2(4), 15(41), 19(61), 22(76–77);
II:1(3), 6(20–22), 17(57)
God’s temple, II:5(17)
and sinners, II:5(17), 6(22), 10(36)
salt of the earth, I:6(16–17)
salvation, I:4(12), 19(58), 22(76); II:2(6), 12(43), 20(70), 22(76)
sand, foolish man building house on, I:1(1); II:25(87)
Sarah, I:16(49) and n60
Satan, I:20(65); II:9(33)
See also devil
baptismal renunciation of, I:11(31) and n36
speaking with God, II:9(32)
tests through, II:9(32–34)
scandal: through right eye and right hand, I:13
schismatics, I:5(13) and n23
See also specific schisms, e.g., Donatism
scribes, I:9(21–25) and Revisions I,19(18):4; II:25(87)
Scripture, Sacred, I:1(3), 3(10–11), 11(30, 32), 22(74); II:4(15), 22(74), 25(83)
See also New Testament; Old Testament; specific topics, e.g., love
Augustine as quoting from memory, II:n40
as food for the soul, II:10(37)
the Vulgate, Introduction, p. 15
second coming of Christ, I:16(49) and n61; II:10(36), 11(38)
secrets; secrecy, II:2(7)
almsgiving in, II:2(9)
discipline of, II:20(67) and n90
fasting in, II:12(40)
God to judge people’s hidden secrets, II:9(32)
prayer in, II:3(11), 4(15)
See also justice, righteousness
senator, II:4(16)
senses, I:12(34); II:3(11)
separation. See under marriage: and separation
Sermon on the Mount:
perfect way to lead Christian life, I:1(1)
precepts of, call to put into action, I:1(1); II:25(87)
serpent, I:12(34); II:9(35)
seven, the number, I:4(11–12); II:25(87)
and Augustine’s numerology, I:4(12) and n22
Beatitudes and gifts of the Holy Spirit, I:3(10), 4(11–12); II:11(38)
petitions of the Lord’s Prayer, II:11
sheep: wolves in sheep’s clothing, II:12(41)
silver, I:19(59); II:13(44), 25(87)
sin, II:14(48), 18(62)
See also evil; original sin; punishment
degrees of, I:9(22, 24)
earth as referring to sinners, I:17(53);
II:5(17), 6(22)
forgiveness of, II:10(37), 11(39)
habitual, I:12
against the Holy Spirit, I:22(73–75)
and Revisions I,19(18):7
mortality merited by, II:17(56) and Revisions I,19(18):9
my son, do not add sin upon sin, II:14(48)
pride and, I:1(3), 11(32)
and punishment, I:9(24), 12(34)
reign of, I:22(77)
and repentance, I:11(31)
scandal through right eye and right hand, I:13
that leads to death, I:22(73–75) and Revisions I,19(18):7
three stages to, I:12(34–35)
travails, II:8(28)
single eye. See undivided eye
single heart. See under heart: undivided sinners, Revisions I,19(18):6; I:6(17), 11(30–31), 17(53), 20(65), 23(79); II:5(18), 6(22), 21(73)
See also debtors
as earth, II:5(17), 6(22)
saints and, II:5(17), 6(22), 10(36)
slaves; slavery, I:19(58–59); II:4(15)
Israel, II:4(15)
love for a maidservant, II:14 (47)
proclaiming Gospel as sons, not as slaves, II:16(54)
treatment of, by master, I:19(59)
snow, I:1(3); II:24(79)
soldiers, II:17(56)
Solomon, II:15(52)
Solomon, Wisdom of, I:23(79)
Son of God, only-begotten, Revisions I,19(18):8; I:23(79); II:6(20)
mediation of, II:5(19)
as Truth itself, I:2(9)
Son of Man, I:22(75)
sons:
of God, II:11(38)
proclaiming Gospel as sons, not as slaves, II:16(54)
sorrowful, blessedness of, I:12(33–36);
Introduction, p. 14
soul; souls, I:12(35); II:12(42), 25(83)
See also mind
angelic and human, II:9(33)
beauty of, I:5(13)
body and, II:6(23)
dignity of, II:5(18)
God dwelling within, II:5(18)
as incorporeal, II:15(50)
life, II:15(50)
poverty of, II:8(28)
rational, I:4(12)
of righteous and of sinners, II:5(18)
Scripture as food for, II:10(37)
as subject to divine authority, I:3(10)
trees, good or evil, II:24(79)
space: God as not restricted to dimensions of, II:5(17)
speech:
   excessive, II:3(12)
   and what is in a person’s heart, II:25
Spirit
   See also Holy Spirit
   God gives the Spirit without measure, I:6(17); Revisions I,19(18):3
spirit, II:3(14), 6(23)
   See also poor in spirit
   and flesh, II:10(36)
   heaven, II:6(23), 11(38)
   heaven as symbolizing, II:6(23)
   wind, as called, I:1(3)
spiritual food, II:7(25, 27), 10(37)
spiritual gifts. See gifts of the Holy Spirit
spiritual life: humility as basis, I:3(10)
surgeon
   See also marriage
   Christ as, II:6(24)
stages to sin, three, I:12(34–35)
standing while praying, II:5(18) and n19
Stephen, I:22(73), 22(77)
as protomartyr, I:22(76)
Stoicism, II:18(60) and n85
struggles. See trials
suffering
   See also persecution; trials
   for Christ, I:6(16)
sun, I:23(79)
superstition, I:16(45); II:9(32), 25(87)
Susanna, II:9(32)
swear, I:17(51–52)
swine, II:20(68)–21(71)
symbolism, II:6(22) and n23
   of the east, II:5(18) and n19
   of heaven and earth, I:5(15); II:6(21–24)
right/left, I:19(58); II:2(6–9)
woman/man as symbolizing flesh/
   reason, I:12(34) and nn40–41
teaching:
   Christ as teacher, I:1(2); II:3(12)
   and sincere faith, I:10(27)
temperance:
   as cardinal virtue, Introduction, n3
temple: God’s inner, I:10(27); II:5(17)–6(20)
temporal, the, passim
   See also earth; world; specific topics
   left hand, as pertaining to, II:2(9)
   love of, II:16(54)
temptation, II:4(15), 9, 10(37)–11(38),
   25(82)
   See also tests; trials
   kinds of, II:9(34)
   lead us not into temptation,
   Introduction, p. 15
ten Commandments. See commandments;
Law
Tertullian, Introduction, p. 11, and passim
tests, II:9(31–32)
   See also temptation; trials
   thieves, II:18(62)
Thomas, Apostle, I:20(65)
thorns, II:24(78–79)
thought, rational, II:9(32)
three, the number: as signifying
   perfection, I:19(61)
tomorrow, II:17(56)
do not be concerned about tomorrow,
   II:7(25)
transformation: promised to the righteous,
   I:4(12); II:6(23), 7(27) and n36
   tree of life, II:23(77)
trees, two, II:24(78–79)
trespasses, II:8(28) and n38; Introduction,
p. 15
   See also debts; sin
   trials, I:4(12), 18(55); II:9(30, 32) and
   n44, I:10(37)
   See also suffering; tests; trouble
   as producing patience, II:17(58)
two kinds of, II:25(82)
tribuution, I:3(10)
tribute, paying, II:20(70)
Trinity: three as signifying perfection,
   I:19(61) and n78
trouble: as punishment, II:17(56) and
   Revisions I,19(18):9
The Sermon on the Mount

truth, II:10(37)
See also wisdom; specific topics, e.g., false prophets
concealed by Christ, II:20(67)
light of, II:9(32)
light of, concealing (lamp under a bushel), I:6(17), 7(19)
pearls before swine, II:20(67)–21(71)
reason and, II:9(32)
and secret, discipline of, II:20(67) and n90
son of God as, I:2(9)
two natures, II:24(79)
unbelievers, I:16(45), 22(73); II:2(6–7), 25(84)
an an unbelieving spouse, I:16(44–45), 22(73)
understanding, I:19(58)–23(80); II:11(39), 25(83)
gift of the Holy Spirit, I:4(11); Introduction, p. 15
undivided eye, II:19(64)
undivided heart. See under heart: undivided
undividedness, II:20(67)
universe, I:17(53); II:5(17), 6(20)
observable parts of, I:11(30) and n35
unjust judge, II:15(52) and n74
unrighteous, the, I:20(67, 69), 23(79); II:6(20)
usury, II:8(28) and n41
vanity, I:1(3)
See also pride
vengeance. See revenge
vices, I:1(3) and n5, I:18(54), 20(63); II:18(61), 19(64)
See also specific vices, e.g., pride
virginity, I:16(44), 25(38)
marrige of fraternal companionship, I:15(42)
virtue; virtues, I:19(57)
See also specific virtues, e.g., humility
cardinal, Introduction, n3
visible miracles, II:25(84–85)
Vulgate, Introduction, p. 15

warfare, Christian, I:12(34), 18(54)
water, I:11(30) and n35
way: as metaphor for life, I:11(31–32) and n37
wheat, II:9(33), 24(79)
whitewashed wall, I:19(58), 21(72)
wicked, the, I:11(32), 23(79); II:9(32), 19(64), 24(81), 25(85)
See also evil; unrighteous wife
See also marriage
as “left hand,” II:2(7)
will, human, II:25(83)
bad people and, II:22(74), 24(81)
and desire, II:22(74)
will of God, I:2(6), 12(33–36); II:6(20–24)
Introduction, p. 14
wind, I:1(1, 3)
wisdom, I:2(9)–4(11); II:6(20), 9(35), 22(74), 23(77)–25(86)
asking, seeking, and knocking, II:21
beginning of, I:1(3); 4(11–12)
and fear of God, I:1(3), 4(11–12)
love of, II:3(11)
the narrow door, II:23
peacemakers and, I:4(11); Revisions I,19(18):1–2; II:11(38)
perfect, I:1(3)
pure and undivided eye, necessity of, II:25
searching for and acquiring, II:23(77)
supremacy of, I:3(10)
supreme, I:4(12)
wisdom of God, II:3(12)
Wisdom of Solomon, I:23(79)
wise man: building house on rocks, I:1(1); II:25(87)
wolves in sheep’s clothing, II:12(41)
woman; women:
earth as feminine, II:6(24) and n29
flesh, as symbolizing, I:12(34) and nn40–41
as sparing with money, II:2(7)
word of God: invisible, II:7(27)
words:
excessive, II:3(12)
and what is in a person’s heart, II:25
works, II:22(76)
bad people and, II:24(79)
the Lord will repay him according to his works, I:21(72)
motivations for performing, I:7(18); II:1(1)–3(12)
praise for, and God’s glory, I:7(18)
world

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
See also earth
end of, II:10(36)
history of, I:16(49) and n61
light of, I:6(17); II:1(2)
love of, II:20(69), 21(73), 25(82)
pleasures of, II:12(42)
Index from

Questions on the Gospels

(Quaestiones evangeliorum)

Included in book:

New Testament I and II

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Matthaem).

Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Questions on the Gospels

Index of Scripture

Questions on the Gospels
(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I, 30</td>
<td>I, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>I, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>I, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7</td>
<td>II, 33, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:9</td>
<td>II, 40, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:22</td>
<td>II, 33, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:5</td>
<td>II, 33, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:21</td>
<td>II, 38, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Sirach       |                |             |
| 3:18         | II, 47         |             |
| 5:6-7        | II, 36         |             |

| Isaiah       |                |             |
| 53:1         | II, 33, 3      |             |
| 57:19        | II, 2          |             |
| 62:10        | II, 2          |             |

| Ezekiel      |                |             |
| 14:14        | I, 12          |             |

New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th>New Testament I &amp; II (vol. I/15 &amp; I/16)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>II, 33, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>II, 45, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>II, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>I, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>I, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27-28</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>I, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>I, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:43</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>I, 9; I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:33</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:44</td>
<td>I, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:54</td>
<td>I, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:33</td>
<td>I, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>I, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>I, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>I, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:3</td>
<td>I, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verses</td>
<td>Volume/Chapters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>I, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>I, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:23</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:26</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:27</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:28</td>
<td>I, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:32</td>
<td>I, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:38</td>
<td>II, 51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>II, 51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:20</td>
<td>I, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:24</td>
<td>I, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:29</td>
<td>I, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:64</td>
<td>I, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:67</td>
<td>I, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18-19</td>
<td>II, 33, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>II, 33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:20</td>
<td>II, 33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21</td>
<td>II, 33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:23</td>
<td>II, 33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>II, 33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:27</td>
<td>II, 33, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:29</td>
<td>II, 33, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td>II, 33, 5; II, 33, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>II, 33, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>II, 8; II, 34, 2; II, 38, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>II, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13</td>
<td>II, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>II, 38, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>II, 38, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29</td>
<td>II, 38, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:31</td>
<td>II, 38, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>II, 39, 1; II, 39, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6</td>
<td>II, 39, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:7-10</td>
<td>II, 39, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:10</td>
<td>II, 39, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12-13</td>
<td>II, 40, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14</td>
<td>II, 40, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:31</td>
<td>II, 41; II, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:34</td>
<td>II, 44, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:35</td>
<td>II, 44, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5</td>
<td>II, 45, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:8</td>
<td>I, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>II, 38, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>II, 38, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:25</td>
<td>II, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:26</td>
<td>II, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:27</td>
<td>II, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>II, 46, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:36</td>
<td>II, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40-41</td>
<td>II, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>II, 38, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:28</td>
<td>II, 51, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>II, 48, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>II, 48, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:46</td>
<td>II, 38, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>II, 33, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:36</td>
<td>II, 46, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>II, 38, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4-5</td>
<td>II, 40, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>II, 39, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>II, 40, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
### New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2:13</th>
<th>II, 51, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>I, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>II, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>II, 38, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>II, 51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Corinthians
- 1:10 II, 33, 4; II, 40, 3
- 1:24 I, 14
- 1:25 I, 36
- 3:15 I, 15
- 7:25 II, 19
- 8:8 II, 11
- 13:12 II, 39, 1

#### 2 Corinthians
- 3:18 II, 39, 1
- 4:6 I, 7
- 5:19 II, 33, 3

#### Galatians
- 2:1-2 II, 40, 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2:9</th>
<th>II, 40, 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>II, 8; II, 51, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ephesians**
- 2:3 II, 38, 2

**Philippians**
- 1:17 II, 33, 2
- 1:23 II, 13
- 4:12-13 II, 11

**Colossians**
- 2:11 I, 2
- 3:5 I, 2
- 3:9 I, 2

**1 Timothy**
- 6:5 II, 33, 2

**1 Peter**
- 2:9 II, 40, 3

**1 John**
- 3:2 II, 39, 1
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numeral in the Index is the Book number. The numbers following the colons are the Question numbers, then the Paragraph numbers in parentheses.

Abraham, II:38,1,4–5
actions, II:15
See also works
Adam, I:19, 43; II:6(2) and n21, 38(2)
as old man, I:43
adoption, I:39; II:5(2)
ages of the earth, I:32 and n37, 41
Alexander the coppersmith, I:24
allegory, I:35
alms; almsgiving, II:34(1), 40(3)
altar, I:34
Ambrose, Introduction, pp. 321, 323
Ananias, II:40(3)
angels, II:17, 33(7), 38(5), 40
devil’s, II:19
“equal ones,” II:33(7) and n83
good and evil, I:10
Zechariah hearing from angel, your
prayer has been answered, II:1
anger, I:22
animal; animals, I:36; II:33(5), 39(2)
See also specific animals
that fell into a well, II:29(2)
Antichrist, I:21; II:33(6)
Apollo, II:42
apostate, I:32
apostles, II:3, 19, 38(5), 46(1)
See also disciples
appetite, II:21
Asaph, II:33(5)
ascension of the Lord, II:18
authority: of the Church, I:38; II:2
avarice. See greed
banquet: those invited to, II:30
baptism, II:6(1), 22, 40(3)
See also sacraments
Christ’s, II:6(1)
Barabbas, I:35
Barnabas, II:40(3)
beast of burden, II:19, 29(2)
beauty, II:49
bed, II:44(1)
no one lights a lamp and covers it
with a bucket or puts it under a bed,
II:12
the two in a bed and the two at the
millstone and the two in the field,
II:44
Beelzebul: and if I cast out demons by
Beelzebul, I:5
benevolence, II:15
Bethany, II:20
blessedness, II:19, 33(7)
See also happiness
blindness:
blind and mute man, I:4
blind man approaching Jericho, II:48
the blind presented to the Lord to be
cured, I:19
can a blind person lead a blind
person? II:9
two blind men, I:28
boastfulness. See pride
boat: Jesus teaching crowds from, II:2
body: bodies:
cadaver, I:42
human body as quadripartite, II:6(2)
and n23
immortality of, I:43
resurrection of, I:43
as signified by number four, II:6(2)
stature of the body to which they
could not add anything, II:28
where the body is, there the eagles will
be gathered, I:42
bosom of Abraham, II:38(1, 5)
bowl: cup and, II:16
bread:
on the bread and the fish and the egg,
II:22
man in middle of night asking for

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
three loaves, II:21
three loaves of, II:21
brethren, II:13, 38(3)
bridgroom’s guests, fast of, II:18
brothers: deceased, taking wife of,
Revisions II,12(39)
bulls, I:31
cadaver, I:42
camels, I:35; II:47
passing through eye of a needle, II:47
straining out a gnat but swallowing a camel, I:35
Canaanite woman’s daughter, I:18
carnal desire. See desire
catechesis, II:40(3)
Catholic faith
See also Church
rule of, II:40(4) and n125
centurion’s son, I:18
certainty, I:8 and n10; II:22, 33(7)
children, II:21, 49
as free, I:23
of God, I:39; II:39(1)
healing of, I:18
how often have I wanted to gather your children as a hen, I:36
and parents, I:16
sitting in the marketplace and shouting to one another, II:11
whoever scandalizes one of these little ones, I:24
of wisdom, II:11
of wrath, II:38(2)
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christian people: as royal priesthood, II:40(3)
Church, II:48(2)
See also Catholic faith; specific topics, e.g., unity
authority of, I:38; II:2
concupiscence, I:8
carnal desire in, II:2
community of, II:40(4)
and incarnate Word as wedding, I:31
as lightning, I:38
as loosing and binding, I:25
membership through faith, II:33(2)
as mother (person of), I:18
Peter as representing, II:6(2)
circumcision, I:2
city:
of living and eternal reasons, II:46(3)
of peace, II:19
clothing, II:13, 24, 45(1)
carnal, I:2
of Christ, II:51(3)
cloud: when you see a cloud rising from the west, II:27
coming of Christ, I:15, 20
commandments, I:19, 25; II:18, 33(5), 34(1), 46(1, 3)
See also Law
of love, I:33; II:14, 19, 42
completion. See perfection
cup and bowl, II:16
cross. See passion of Christ
darkness, II:15
if the light that is in you is darkness, II:15
night as signifying fall of man, I:7
day, I:7
deafness: the deaf presented to the Lord to be cured, I:19
defaults: the deaf presented to the Lord to be cured, I:19
dead, II:49
and life, II:38(2)
debt:
man who owed ten thousand talents, I:25
two debtors pardoned, II:45(1)
Decalogue, II:46(1)
See also commandments
demons, passim
and if I cast out demons by Beelzebul, I:5
legion of, I:13
“lower ones,” II:33(7) and n83
Questions on the Gospels

desire:
cleansing soul from, I:17
lust, I:8
temptation of, I:47
devil, passim; II:19, 31
children of, I:6
duplicit y of, II:31
disciples
See also apostles
a disciple is not above his teacher, II:9
Jesus walking on sea toward, I:15
plucking the ears and eating, I:2
seventy-two, I:14; II:14
told of Jesus’ future suffering, I:27
Docetists, II:51(3) and n174
document, I:8
dogs, II:38(1, 5)
dropsy, II:29(2)
duplicit y, II:31 and n58
dust, I:30
eagles: where the body is, there the eagles will be gathered, I:42
earth: ages of, I:32 and n37, 41
east: as lightning goes forth from the east and reaches all the way to the west, I:38
eating. See food
egg: on the bread and the fish and the egg, II:22
eight (or six) days, I:7
eleven, the number, II:6(2)
Elijah, I:21
Elizabeth, II:1
end of time, II:2
endurance, I:11
enemies: prayer for, II:45(2)
enigma; II:39(1)
error
See also heresy; schism of unbelievers, II:39(4)
eternal life, I:19, 31, 39(1–2), 45(1)
eternity, II:39(1)
of the Word, I:28
eucharist, II:39(3) and n117
See also sacraments
evening: when evening comes you say. It will be clear, for the sky is red, I:20
evil angels, I:10
eyes (vision), I:15
See also blindness

faith, I:8 and n10; II:33(2)
confession of, I:5; II:38(2)
do you think that he will find faith on earth? I:15
fervor of, I:11
increasing, II:39
like a mustard seed, I:22; II:39(2–3)
lowness of, I:22
sacrament of the teaching of the faith, II:40(3) and n121
faithful steward, II:26
fall of man: night as signifying, I:7
fasting, II:18
Father, God the
See also God
no one knows the Son except the Father, I:1
fatlings, I:31
fear: temptation of, I:47
field:
man in the field who should not return, II:42
two in a bed and the two at the millstone and the two in the field, II:44
fig tree, I:39; II:51(1)
finger, II:33(3)
of God, II:11, 17
tip of, II:38(2)
fire, I:20, 22
he will be saved, but as through fire, I:15
the man who often fell into the fire and at times into the water, I:22
fish: on the bread and the fish and the egg, II:22
five books, the, II:38(4) and n107, 46(3)
flight: pray that your flight may not be in winter or on the sabbath, I:37
food, II:11, 29
See also fasting; specific topics, e.g., Prodigal Son
the soul is more valuable than food, II:24
forgiveness, II:33(3)
seventy-seven times, II:6(1)
of sins, I:20; II:4, 6(1), 11, 13, 33(3)
four, the number, II:6(2)
freedom; free choice, I:33
children as free, I:23
therefore the sons are free, I:23

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Questions on the Gospels
Questions on the Gospels

iniquity, II:34(2), 45(1)
intellect, I:13; II:40(3), 41
intention, I:10; II:15
Isaiah, II:2
Israel, I:43; II:46(1)
See also Jews
itching of the flesh, I:39
Jacob, II:5(1) and Revisions II,12(39)
James, II:2, 40(3)
Jericho:
blind man whose sight was restored
when he approached Jericho, II:48(1)
Good Samaritan parable, II:19
the Lord’s departure from, I:28
as moon, II:19, 48(1)
Jerusalem, II:19
Good Samaritan parable, II:19
how often have I wanted to gather
your children as a hen, I:36
Jesus Christ
See also Son of God; specific topics
and events, e.g., passion of Christ
ascension of, II:18
body of, as real, II:51(3)
as end of the law, II:50
every planting that my Father has not
planted shall be uprooted, I:17
in the heart of the earth three days and
three nights, I:7
he pretended to go further, II:51
humility of, II:23
knowledge of, II:4
as mountain, I:29
no one knows the Son except the
Father, I:1
as only-begotten son, II:33(3)
the power of God and the wisdom of
God, I:14
as praying three times before being
handed over, I:47
resurrection of, I:28
suffering of, I:42
as teacher, II:40(2)
teaching crowds from a boat, II:2
in tomb for three days and three
nights, I:7
walking on the sea, I:15
as the way, I:28
Jews, passim; I:28–29; II:30, 38(5)
See also Israel
preaching Gospel to, II:48(1)
priesthood of, II:48(1)
Job, I:12; II:44(2)
John, First Epistle of, II:39(1), 39(1) and
n111
John, Apostle, II:2, 11, 39(1), 40(3), 45(2)
John the Baptist, II:1
Jonah, I:7
Joseph: two fathers of, II:5 and Revisions
II,12(39)
joy, I:37, 43; II:11, 18, 21, 33(3, 5–6)
Judah, II:33(6)
Judas Iscariot, I:40–41
judge: unjust, II:34(1), 45
judgment, I:30; II:27, 38(3), 46(2)
justice, I:10, 35; II:39(4), 45(2), 50
key of knowledge, II:23
king; kings:
who had twenty thousand men, II:31
who held wedding feast for his son, I:31
kingdom of God, I:5; II:11, 39(2), 47
rich man not entering, I:26
kingdom of heaven, I:31, 38(1), 40(4);
II:47
the kingdom of heaven suffers
violence, II:37
knowledge:
of Christ, II:4
of God, I:13
key of, II:23
lameness: the lame presented to the Lord
to be cured, I:19
lamps:
let your loins be girt and your lamps
burning, II:25
no one lights a lamp and covers it
with a bucket or puts it under a bed,
II:12
language; languages, II:18, 33(1), 40(3),
49
law
See also commandments
Christ as end of, II:50
two covenants of, I:13
the whole law depends on these two
commandments, I:33
law, worldly, I:41
Lazarus, rich man and, II:38
legion of demons, II:13

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Questions on the Gospels

lepers; leprosy, II:3
  cleansed, II:3
  ten lepers, II:40
Levites, II:9, 34(2)
lies; lying
  See also duplicity
  what does not count as a lie, II:51(1–2)
life:
  death and, II:38(2)
  before this one, I:40
light
  if the light that is in you is darkness, II:15
  light shines forth from the darkness, I:7
  no one lights a lamp and covers it
    with a bucket or puts it under a bed, II:12
  of your countenance, I:41
lightning, I:38
loins:
  let your loins be girt and your
    lamps burning, II:25
Lord (“master”), II:34(1) and n85
  Lord’s Day, I:7
lost sheep, II:32
Lot’s wife, II:43
love
  See also under commandments: of
    love
  as existing between two or more, I:27;
    II:14
  mystery of, I:27
lust, I:8; II:33(6)
  See also desire
mammon of iniquity, II:34(2), 45(1)
marketplace: children sitting in, and
  shouting to one another, II:11
marriage, II:49
Martha, II:20
martyrs, I:9; II:45(2)
Mary of Bethany, II:20
masters, two, II:36
men
  See also human beings
  three kinds of, I:12; II:44(2)
military service, I:9
millstone: two in a bed and the two at
  the millstone and the two in the field,
  II:44
mind, II:6(2)
  whole heart, whole soul, whole mind,
    I:12
miracles, I:18, 19, 22; II:4, 7, 40(1), 48(1)
moneylender, II:45(1)
moon, II:19, 48(1)
mortality, II:19, 21, 38(2), 48(1)
Moses, II:3, 40(1), 46(3)
  the five books, II:38(4) and n107,
    II:46(3)
mother:
  Church as, I:18
  wisdom of God, I:36
mountain, I:22
  the Lord revealing himself after six
days/eight days, I:7
  you shall say to this mountain, Rise
    up and throw yourself into the sea.,
    I:29
mulberry tree, II:39(3)
mustard seed:
  faith like, I:22; II:39(2–3)
  that becomes larger than all the plants,
    I:11
muteness:
  blind and mute man, I:4
  the mute presented to the Lord to be
    cured, I:19
mystery, II:48(1)
  deeper aspects of, II:2
  of love, I:27; II:14
  a mysterious purpose, II:5(1)
near
  See also under darkness
  signifying fall of man, I:7
nine, the number, II:32, 40(4)
Noah, I:12; II:44(2)
nobleman who went off to receive a
  kingdom, II:46
non-believers. See unbelievers
numerical symbolism, II:6(2), 32
  See also specific numbers, e.g.,
    seventy-seven
obedience, I:19, 24; II:39(2)
occupations, temporal, II:44(1)
oil, II:19, 34(2)
old man, Adam as, I:43
Questions on the Gospels

Old Testament: priesthood of, II:19
one, the number, II:31 and n58, II:32 and n61, II:40(4)
oneness, II:32
See also unity
only-begotten son of God, II:33(3)
Origen, Introduction, pp. 319, 323
original sin, II:38(2)

parables, II:45(2)
See also specific parables, e.g., Good Samaritan; Prodigal Son
as not lies, II:51(1–2)
paradise, II:38(5)
paralytic: lowered to Jesus through the roof, II:4
Parthians, Epistle to, II:39(1) and n111
sacraments of, II:39(3)
two disciples told beforehand of, I:27 and Revisions II,12(39)
passions, I:9
Paul, Apostle, passim; I:15; II:42
as supporting himself, II:19
peace, II:31
city of, II:19
disruption of, II:2
reconciliation of, II:19
of soul, II:11
supreme, II:39(2)
penance, I:8; II:6, 11, 32, 33(2) and n66, 33 and n66, 40(3)
perdition, I:30
perfection, II:32, 40(4)
persecution, I:15
perseverance, I:28; II:33(5), 38(5), 45(2)
Peter, Apostle, passim; I:15; II:2, 40(3)
following the Lord at a distance as he entered upon his passion, I:46
as representing the Church, II:6(2)
threefold denial by, I:45
Pharisees, I:16, 35; II:34(2), 37, 38(1)
now, you Pharisees clean what is outside the cup and the bowl, II:16
plants; planting:
every planting that my Father has not planted shall be uprooted., I:17
mustard seed, I:11
pleasure, I:22, 47; II:18
poor in spirit, II:47
possession, II:33(7)

power, I:14
of the Lord, II:6(1)
power of God and the wisdom of God, I:14
prayer:
for enemies, II:45(2)
Jesus as praying three times before being handed over, I:47
pray that you do not enter into temptation, II:50
Zechariah hearing from angel, your prayer has been answered, II:1
preaching. See Gospel, preaching
pregnancy, I:7
pride, I:22, 29; II:30, 38(1–2, 5), 40(4), 47
sin of, II:6(2)
priesthood, II:40(3); III:19
Prodigal Son parable, II:33(1–7), 51(1–2)
prophecy, II:1, 3
public service, I:9
punishment, I:25, 30; II:36, 38(2), 45(2)
purification, I:15
quadripartite body, II:6(2) and n23
reason, II:21
reconciliation, II:6(1), 19, 33(3)
red sky, I:20
repentance, II:33(2–3)
resurrection of the body, I:43
resurrection of the Lord, I:28
revelation, II:12, 40(3)
riches, II:34(2)–35, 37
rich man:
and Lazarus, II:38
man with dropsy compared to, II:29(2)
who does not enter the kingdom of God, I:26
righteousness, II:11, 38(3)
false, II:30
robbers, II:19, 37
rock: foundation on, II:10
roof: man who is on the roof, II:41
sabbath, I:7, 35
pray that your flight may not be in winter or on the sabbath, I:37
sacraments, I:43; II:38(5), 39(3) and n117, 40(3)
of His passion, II:39(3)
sacrament of the teaching of the faith, II:40(3) and n121

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
Questions on the Gospels

sacrifices, I:16, 34; II:3, 40(1)
Sadducees, I:32
saints, II:38(3), 39(1), 51(2)
life of saints after they rose from the
dead, II:49
salt, II:32
salvation, I:4, 15, 28; II:1, 7, 13, 19, 32,
33(5), 38(1–2), 46(2)
gentiles and, I:18
he will be saved, but as through fire,
I:15
of Israel, II:33(4–5), 46(1)
rich people and, I:26
Samaritans, II:40(4)
See also Good Samaritan parable
Samaritan woman, II:39(2)
Satan. See devil
scandal: whoever scandalizes one of these
little ones, I:24
scarlet garment, II:51(3)
schism; schismatics, I:38; II:2
scorpion, II:22
scribes, II:23, 34(2)
Scripture, Sacred, II:23, 33(4), 47, 51(2);
Introduction, pp. 319–24
See also specific topics
veil over, II:4
sea:
Jesus walking on, I:15
of this world, II:2
you shall say to this mountain, Rise
up and throw yourself into the sea.,
I:29
second coming of Christ, I:20, 38
sects, I:11
senses, I:41; II:40(2–3), 41
serpent, II:22
servants, II:39
man who owed ten thousand talents,
I:25
seven, the number, II:6(2)
seven brothers, one wife of, I:32
seven spiritual virtues, I:8 and n10
seventy-seven generations, II:6(1–2)
seventy-two disciples, II:14
sheep, lost, II:32
signs of the times, I:20
silver, thirty pieces of, I:41
simplicity, II:31 and n58
sin, I:7
See also forgiveness; punishment
carnal people in the Church, II:2
confession of, II:33(2)
fal of man, I:7
the number seventy-seven, II:6(1–2)
original, II:38(2)
of pride, II:6(2)
sinners, II:11, 32, 33(6), 38(1)
whoever scandalizes one of these little
ones, I:24
sincerity, II:33(2)
six days: after six days, I:7
sky: when evening comes you say, It will
be clear, for the sky is red, I:20
smoldering wick, I:3
Solomon, King, II:36
Son of God, I:28; II:33(3), 38(5)
See also Jesus Christ
no one knows the Son except the
Father, I:1
Son of Man, passim
See also Jesus Christ
son of the centurion, I:18
sons:
free, I:23
the Prodigal Son, II:33
soul, II:6(2)–7
desire, cleansing from, I:17
peace of, II:11
seeking Christ, II:4
value of, II:24
whole heart, whole soul, whole mind,
I:12
south wind blowing, II:27
speech. See language
steward, faithful, II:26
steward, unjust, II:34(1)
stone, I:50; II:22
whoever stumbles over this stone shall
be broken, I:30
suffering of Christ, I:42
See also passion of Christ
sun, I:14
superstitions, II:33(6)
symbolism, numerical. See specific
numbers
Synagogue, II:33(5)
talents: ten thousand, man who owed, I:25
taxes: and children as free, I:23
teachers, II:4, 9, 16, 23, 44(1)
Jesus as teacher, II:40(2)
teaching of the faith, sacrament of,
II:40(3) and n121
Questions on the Gospels

temperance, II:11
Temple, II:3

which is greater, the gold or the
Temple that makes the gold holy?
I:34, 35

temporal, the, I:13, 24, 28, 37, 41; II:10–
12, 31, 33(2), 34(1), 36, 39(4), 47, 49
See also specific topics, e.g., pleasure
habits, II:21
occupations, II:44(1)
temptation, II:31, 44(2)
of fear and of desire, I:47
pray that you do not enter into
temptation, II:50
ten, the number, II:6(2), 32, 40(4), 46(1)
Ten Commandments. See commandments
ten thousand talents, I:25
thieves: Good Samaritan parable, II:19
things: all things, II:33(7)
 thirty pieces of silver, I:41
three, the number, II:6(2)
three days and three nights in tomb, I:7
three days and three nights in whale’s
belly, I:7
threefold denial by Peter, I:45
threefold prayer of Jesus, I:12
three kinds of men, I:12; II:44(2)
three loaves of bread, II:21
three measures of wheat, I:12
time, end of, II:2
tithes, I:35; II:9
Titus, II:40(3)
tongue: death and life are in the hands of
the tongue, II:38(2)
tongues, gift of, II:18, 40(3)
tower: expenses for building, II:31
 treasure hidden in a field, I:13
tribulations; the tribulation, I:10, 15, 20;
II:18, 21, 27, 41, 43–44(1)
tribute, I:23
Trinity, II:6(2), 14, 21
“higher beings.” II:33(7) and n83
trustworthiness, II:35
truth: what does not count as a lie,
II:51(1–2)
twenty thousand men, king who had, II:31
two:
love as existing between two or more,
I:27; II:14
two in a bed and the two at the
millstone and the two in the field,
II:44
two, the number, II:31 and n58
two masters, II:36
unbelievers, I:5, 44; II:39(3–4)
unclean spirits, I:8; II:33(1)
unity, II:40(3–4), 44(2)
 oneness, II:32
unjust judge parable, I:45; II:34(1)
unjust steward parable, II:34(1)
unrighteous, the, II:38(3)
vanity, I:41; II:33(1)
vices, I:8
violence: the kingdom of heaven suffers
violence, II:37
vipers, I:6
virgins, I:9; II:19
virtues, I:8 and n10
vision, I:15
water:
Jesus walking on, I:15
the man who often fell into the fire
and at times into the water, I:22
wedding:
incarnate Word as, I:31
king’s wedding feast for his son, I:31
weeds, I:10
west:
cloud rising from, II:27
as lightning goes forth from the east
and reaches all the way to the west,
I:38
whale: Jonah and, I:7
wheat, I:10; II:34(2)
measure of wheat faithful steward
gives family, II:26
yeast hidden in three measures of, I:12
wicked, the, I:5, 30, 41; II:38(1)
widow: and unjust judge, II:45
wife: one wife of seven brothers, I:32
wind, I:30; II:27
wine, II:18, 19
winter: pray that your flight may not be in
winter, I:37
wisdom, II:20, 39(4), 41
children of, II:11
from where does he have this wisdom
and these powers? I:14
woman as, I:12
wisdom of God, I:14
 as mother, I:36

New Testament I & II (vol. I/15 & I/16)
wise man: building foundation on a rock,  
II:10
withered right hand, man with, II:7
witness; witnesses, II:38(4)
  *on the lips of two or three witnesses*
  *every word will stand firm*, I:27
woman; women, II:44(1)
  *as wisdom*, I:12
Word, incarnate, I:1, 28, 31; II:4, 19,  
33(6), 38(5), 49, 51(2) and n170
word of God, I:8; II:12, 51(2)
works, II:4, 15, 38(5)
  *darkness, as called*, II:15
world. See earth
wrath: children of, II:38(2)

yeast: hidden in three measures of wheat,  
I:12

Zechariah, II:1
Index from

Seventeen Questions on Matthew
(Quaestiones XVII in Mattheum)

Included in book:

New Testament I and II

Translations by Kim Paffenroth, Roland Teske, SJ and Michael Campbell, OSA, introduction by Roland Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains The Sermon on the Mount (De sermone Domini in monte), Agreement Among the Evangelists (De consensu evangelistarum), Questions on the Gospels (Quaestiones evangeliorum), and Seventeen Questions on Matthew (Quaestiones XVII in Mattheum).

Volume I/15 & Volume I/16 Books/Exegetical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-529-7, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014
Paperback: 978-1-56548-531-0, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 2014

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

Seventeen Questions on Matthew
(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

OLD TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>77:39</td>
<td>11, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>10:5</td>
<td>11, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>11, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:20-21</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>13 (14), 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:11</td>
<td>13 (14), 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NEW TESTAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:19-20</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:32</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:34-35</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:35</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:36</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:15</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:24</td>
<td>12, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:25</td>
<td>11, 1; 12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>12, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>12, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:28</td>
<td>12, 6; 12, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:29</td>
<td>12, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:29-30</td>
<td>12, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:30</td>
<td>12, 6; 12, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>14 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:41</td>
<td>12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:45-46</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:8</td>
<td>11, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39</td>
<td>13 (14), 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td>13 (14), 1; 13 (14), 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>13 (14), 1; 13 (14), 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>11, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:8-9</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>13 (14), 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:17-18</td>
<td>12, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Num.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(Prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first numbers in the Index are the Question numbers. The numbers following the colons are the Paragraph numbers.

adultery, 12(13); 16(17):2
angels, 8–9; (12):6–7
animals: rational and non-rational, 8
apostles, 11:1
authority, (12):7

Babylon, 3
beauty, 12(13)
birds, 5; 8; 11:1
  simple like doves, 8
blindness, 13(14)
boasting, 5
body: senses of, 16(17):3
brethren, 9
bridegroom:
  Christ as, 3
brothers, 16(17):1
bundles, (12):8

Catholic Christianity, 11:1, 3–4; (12):8
  See also Church
good Catholics, 11:4
charity, 1; (12):9
children (infants), 1
Christ
  See also Jesus Christ
  name of, (12):7
Church, 3
  See also Catholic Christianity; specific topics, e.g., unity
  Christ as bridegroom of, 3
  sacrament of, 11:2
city, worldly, 3
commandments, 4; 12(13)
communion, 11:1–3; (12):8
  See also unity
confessing Christ, 9
confession, 9
darkness: what I am saying to you in darkness, 2
David, 10
death:
  faith and, 6; 16(17):5
  let the dead bury their dead, 6
devil, 3; 11
  one renounces the devil who was his father, 3
disciples, 4; 10
doves, 8
drinking, 16(17):2
dust: shake the dust from your feet, 7
eating, 16(17):2
Ecclesiasticus, 9
Egypt, 3
end of all things, Christ as, 15(16)
enemies:
  the enemies of a man will be the members of his household, 3
  sowing weeds in the midst of wheat, 11
eternity, 12(13)
evil:
  avoiding, 8
  and violence, 8
evil sons, 11:1
eyes, 13(14)
faith, 11:4
  See also Catholic Christianity
  and death, 6; 16(17):5
family:
  the enemies of a man will be the members of his household, 3
  Joseph’s kin, 16(17):1
father: one renounces the devil who was his father, 3
Seventeen Questions on Matthew

fear:
- carnal, 2
- of darkness, 2
- of punishment, 11:3
- foxes, 5

gate: narrow, 8
- good seed, (12):6
- grain, 11:2–3; (12):5–6
  See also wheat

heresy; heretics, 11; (12):5, 7–8
- Holy Spirit, 2
  - and confidence of the truth, 2
  - and languages, gift of, 16(17):3
  - sword of, 3
- homo assumptus/susceptus, 16(17):4 and n48
- hope, 11:4; 13(14):2
- human beings, 8; 12:7; 12 (13)
  See also man; specific topics, e.g.,
  - languages
  - human race:
    - pernicious society of, 3
    - society, norms of, 16(17):2
  - humility, 5
    - the humble who have twofold charity, 1

incest, 16(17):2
infants, 1
Isaiah, 13(14):1–2

Jacob, 16(17):1
Jesus Christ
  See also Word of God
  - as bridegroom, 3
  - confessing, 9
  - as end of all things, 15(16)
  - the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head, 5
  - the Synagogue and, 3
  - Jews, 10; 13(14)
  - John, 13(14)
    - the “other evangelist,” 15(16)
  - Joseph: kin of, 16(17):1
  - justice, (12):7
    - of God, (12):7
    - and norms of human society, 16(17):2

kingdom of God, 15(16)
kingdom of heaven: as like a merchant

Laban, 16(17):1
languages, 13(14):3; 16(17):3
- lepers; leprosy, 4
- light: and the confidence of truth, 2
- liturgy, 9
- love: for neighbor, 12(13)

man
See also human beings
- homo assumptus/susceptus, 16(17):4
  and n48
- miracles, 5; 13(14):2
- mortality, 12(13)
- mountain, 4
- murder, 16(17):2
- narrow gate, 8
- neighbor: love for, 12(13)
- norms of human society, 16(17):2
- passion of Christ, 15(16)
- passions, 11:3
- peace: I have come not to bring peace but the sword, 3
- pearls, 12(13)
- penance; penitents, 11:3; 13(14):1–2
- people of God: against the worldly city, 3
- persecution, 9
- perseverance, 11:3
- praise: of God, 9
- pride, 13(14):2
- prudent like serpents, 8
- punishment: fear of, 11:3

robbery, 16(17):2
rooftops: proclaim on the rooftops, 2

sabbath: Lord of the sabbath, 10
sacrament of the Church, 11:2
salvation, 11:3; 15(16)
schism; schismatics, 11
scribes, 5; 15(16)
Scriptures, Sacred, 15(16)
See also specific topics
seekers, 11:4
senses of the body, 16(17):3
- serpents, 8 and n15
- servants, (12):6–7
sexual intercourse, 16(17):2
sheep, 8
   in the midst of wolves, 8
sin: confession of, 9
slaves; slavery, 16(17):2
society:
   norms of, 16(17):2
   pernicious, of human race, 3
Sodom, 3
Son of Man, 5; 11:4
sons, 11:2; 16(17):2
sword: of the Spirit, 3
Synagogue, 3

teachers, 11:4
temporal, the, 11:4; (12):7
Ten Commandments. See commandments
theft, 16(17):2
tongues. See languages
truth:
   confidence of, 2
   rule of, (12):7
unbelief, 13(14):2
unity, 11:2–3; (12):5

violence, 8
weeds, (12):5–9
   in the midst of wheat, 11(1–3)
wheat, 11:1; (12):7–9
   See also grain
will, human, 16(17):4
will of God, 16(17):4
wind: a bad son is spoiled by the wind,
   11:2
Wisdom, divine, 16(17):4
wolves, 8
word of God, 11:3
Word of God, incarnate, 3; 12(13);
   16(17):4
   sword of Spirit as, 3
worldly city, 3
Index from
Against Adversaries of the Law and the Prophets
(Contra adversarium legis et prophetarum)

Included in book:

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

*Prepared by Michael Dolan*

*(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)*

**Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>20:17</th>
<th>I,3,10; II,11,37</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>21:17</td>
<td>II,1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>21:24</td>
<td>II,11,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>I,11,15; I,12,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I,6,9; I,6,9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>I,13,17; I,13,17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I,21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>I,15,23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:17</td>
<td>II,4,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>II,5,18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>II,7,27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>II,1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Arianism And Other Heresies*
## Arianism And Other Heresies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book/Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| *I Samuel*  | 15:10-11 I,42  
|             | 15:11 I,42; I,10,35  
|             | 15:28-29 I,42 |
| *Psalms*    | 1:4 I,41  
|             | 7:4-5 I,35  
|             | 9:5 II,8,30  
|             | 12:4 I,11,14  
|             | 18:9 I,11,14  
|             | 33:6 I,11,14  
|             | 43:24 I,41  
|             | 44:7-8 II,3,12  
|             | 49:1 I,20,39; I,20,39  
|             | 49:1-2 I,18,37  
|             | 49:7 I,20,39  
|             | 49:7-14 I,18,37  
|             | 49:9 I,20,39  
|             | 49:14 I,20,39  
|             | 49:23 I,18,37  
|             | 95:1-2 I,11,15  
|             | 95:5 II,7,29  
|             | 100:1 II,8,30  
|             | 101:27-28 I,6,8  
|             | 102:8-13 I,17,34  
|             | 103:24 I,2,2  
|             | 109:1 I,20,39; II,2,6; II,3,12  
|             | 109:4 I,20,39; I,42  
|             | 110:2 I,6,9  
|             | 114:2 I,32  
|             | 115:10 II,7,27  
|             | 117:22 II,2,5; II,3,12  
|             | 117:22-23 II,4,16  
|             | 131:11 II,2,6  
| *Proverbs*  | 3:18 I,15,24  
|             | 16:18 I,15,23  
|             | 25:21 I,35  
| Song of Songs | 2:17 II,11,37  
|             | 4:6 II,11,37 |
| *Wisdom*    | 2:18 I,8,11  
|             | 2:23 I,23,48 |
| *Isaiah*    | 1:2 I,22,46; II,10,35  
|             | 1:4 I,22,46; II,10,35  
|             | 11:10 II,3,12  
|             | 28:16 II,2,5  
|             | 29:13 II,1,2  
|             | 33:6 I,17,34  
|             | 40:6 II,6,22  
|             | 40:7 II,6,22  
|             | 45:7 I,23,48; I,23,48; I,49; I,49; II,10,35  
|             | 53:4-8 II,3,12  
|             | 54:1-5 II,3,12  
|             | 59:20-21 II,2,4 |
| *Jeremiah*  | 14:15 II,4,16  
|             | 17:13 I,4,4 |
| *Lamentations* | 3:30 I,35 |
| *Ezekiel*   | 16:3 I,22,46  
|             | 18:23 I,17,34  
|             | 33:11 I,17,34  
|             | 43:8 I,4,1 |
| *Daniel*    | 7:13-14 II,3,12 |
| *Joel*      | 3:5 II,3,11 |
| *Malachi*   | 1:10 I,20,39  
|             | 1:11 I,20,39; I,20,39 |

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book/Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| *Matthew*    | 5:21-22 I,31  
|             | 5:39 I,36 |

**Volume I/18**
Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

1 Corinthians
1:4 II,6,21
1:24 I,2,2
2:6 II,2,3; II,2,6
2:14 II,2,6
5:1 II,2,6
5:7 I,18,37
8:7 I,19,38
9:9-10 II,4,13
9:19-22 II,2,3
10:1-4 II,1,1
10:14 I,19,38
10:15-17 I,19,38
10:20 I,19,38
10:20 II,7,28
10:21 I,18,37
11:19 I,51
11:19 II,3,12
12:28 II,7,28
15:50 II,6,22; II,6,22; II,6,22;
15:53 II,6,22
15:56 II,7,28

2 Corinthians
2:15-16 I,23,48; II,11,37
2:36 II,7,24; II,7,25; II,7,28
2:37 II,7,24; II,7,24; II,7,26;
2:37 II,7,28; II,7,28
3:7 II,7,24
3:8 II,7,25
3:9 II,7,28; II,7,28
3:13 II,7,26
4:4 II,7,29
4:6 II,11,15
4:13 II,7,27
5:21 I,14,18
8:14-15 II,7,27
12:13 I,15,23
14:29 II,3,12

Galatians
3:8 II,4,13
3:15-19 II,8,31
3:19 II,9,33
4:9 I,41
4:21-24 II,1,1
4:24.31 II,7,28
4:27 II,3,12
5:2 II,9,33
5:6 II,7,28
5:12 I,52

Ephesians
1:18 I,11,14
2:11-20 II,2,5
2:20 II,2,5
5:8 I,11,15; I,12,16
5:13 I,14,18
5:31-32 II,9,34

Volume I/18
Arianism And Other Heresies
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets

Aaron, order of, I,20,39
Abraham:
  charged with fornication, II,9,32
  faith, II,4,13
  Gospel holds him in great honor, II,9,32
Law vs promises to, II,8,31
manna, II,5,18
Paul charged with deceiving people, II,9,33
praised as perfect, II,9,33
son in his old age, II,4,13
two sons as signs of two testaments, II,9,34
Adam and Eve:
discernment of good and evil, I,14,18
God knew that he would sin, I,16,27
two women for first man, II,1,2
Addas, II,12,42
Adimantus, II,12,41; 42
affection: human, God’s commandment, I,42
alms: eternal reward, for very little, I,32
amazement: at unforeseen things, I,7,10
angels:
  promise for eternity, II,11,37
anger, II,11,37
animals: sacrifice; Old Law, I,18,37
antichrist: many among us, II,12,40
Apocrypha: used against Jewish prophets, II,4,14
Appeles, II,12,40
Arians, I,23,49
Augustine, Saint:
  Book II, closing, II,12,41-42
  summary of book to this point, II,10,35
author (unknown), I,1,1
baptism:
  foreshadowed; cleansing waters (Nm 19:13), II,6,23
Basilides, II,12,40
bearing injuries, II,11,37
beauty:
  changing, mortal creatures, I,6,8
beginning, See Creation.
belly: god, II,7,29

Arianism And Other Heresies
fear (O.T.) and charity (N.T.), II,7,25
sexual imagery defended, II,9,34
shocking language in, I,24,52
signs of testaments: two sons of Abraham, II,9,34
blood:
soul is the blood (Moses), II,6,21
books and reading:
attention refreshed at book’s end, I,24,53
Carpocrates, II,12,40
castration, I,24,52
Catholic Church:
spread through all lands, II,12,42
Cerdon, II,12,40
change: beings made of nothing, I,6,8
chastity: Lord of, II,12,38
Christians: light of the world, II,11,36
Church:
foretold by Isaiah, II,3,12
Israel according to the spirit, I,20,39
keys; forgiveness of sin, I,36
kingdom of God, II,5,20
members included in, II,5,20
sacrifice of praise, I,18,37; 20,39
Cicero, I,24,52
City of God, The, I,14,18
commandment (Old Law):
holy, good, and just, II,11,37
meant for life, led to death, II,7,28
cornerstone, II,2,5
corruption:
flesh and blood will not possess..., II,6,22
creation:
all things made in wisdom (Christ), I,2,2
coeternal beginning, I,2,2
darkness that was upon the deep, I,8,11
four translations of the Greek word for, I,23,48
goodness of human beings, I,6,9
heaven and earth: the beginning, I,2,2
humans able to sin, I,14,20
Manichee view, I,1,1
matter and form; goodness, I,5,7
waters gathered into one place, I,13,17
why God created both higher and lower things, I,4,5
why not better at the start? I,3,4
Cretans: liars, II,4,13
curse:
command given in power, I,16,27
terror when heard, I,24,52
darkness: meaning; creation, I,8,11
David, King, I,18,37
day: divided between dark and light, I,12,16
defect: harms by lessening goodness, I,5,7
demons: sacrifice to, I,19,38
desire: produced by sin, II,7,28
Deuteronomy, Book of, I,24,50
deaf;
desire to do harm, II,12,39
god of this world, II,7,29
power limited by God, II,12,39
serpent, man’s deceiver, I,15,23
discernment:
Adam: good and evil, I,14,18
human capability, I,14,19
tree of discernment, I,21
disciples: names written in heaven, I,44
duty: end and, II,7,26
ever:
meanings, I,10,13
Elijah, I,26; II,4,13
Emmaus: prophets, II,4,14
ded: duty and, II,7,26
enlightenment:
God blinds minds of some persons, II,8,30
Enoch, I,26
Ephesians, II,2,5
Epimenides, II,4,13
eternal life:
commandments of, II,11,37
kingdom of God, II,4,16
Eunuchs, I,24,52

evil, See Good and evil.

faith:
  centurion, I,7,10
  Jews “having the same Spirit of,” II,7,27
fall of man: tree of life, I,26
famine: spiritual, I,24,52
Faustus (Manichee), II,12,41
flesh:
  all flesh is grass, II,6,22
  corruption of, II,6,22
flood (biblical):
  punishment and prophecy, I,21,45
  spiritual, I,43
fool: calling a brother or sister fool, I,16,31
forgiveness:
  Christ’s mercy; Church’s keys, I,36
  of sin, II,11,37
form: capacity for goodness, I,5,7
genealogies: Jewish scriptures, II,1,1
Genesis, Book of, I,1,1
Gentiles: apostle to, II,2,4; 3,11
God:
  comes to know what he always knew, I,41
  cruelty, I,16,30
  descriptors; metaphors, I,40
  fathering evil human beings (Isaias), I,22,46
  foreknowledge of Adam’s sin, I,16,27
  incomprehensible light (O.T. & N.T.), I,11,14
  ineffable; why/how the Bible speaks, I,40
  jealousy, I,40
  life-giving breath of, I,22
  Lord of chastity (O.T.), II,12,38
  neither begins nor ceases to be, I,2,3
  not of the dead, but of the living, II,5,18
  paradoxical language about, I,42
  punishments by, I,16,28
  repentance, I,40,42
  same God in New Law as in Old, I,31
  source of evil, I,23,49
  uncreated light, I,12,16
  vengeance; Old Law, I,17,33
good and evil:
  bad tree bearing bad fruit, I,22,47,49
  charge: God (O.T.) brings forth evil from himself, I,23,48
  discernment; Adam and Eve, I,14,18
  evil cannot exist without good, I,5,7
  evil is privation of good, I,5,7
  filthiness of mind, I,24,50,52
  God as source of, I,23,49
  God fathering evil human beings (Isaias), I,22,46
  human discernment, I,14,19
  not to desire, II,7,28
  repay evil with good (Old Law), I,35
  shocking language in Scripture, I,24,52
  tree of discernment, I,21
good news, II,11,37
goodness:
  sinners have many sorts of, I,6,9
goods:
  earthly and heavenly things created, I,4,5
gospel:
  new law, perfection of the Old, I,16,31
  opposition with the Law (Paul), II,8,31
  preached to Gentiles, II,3,11
  veiled for some called Christians, II,7,29
grace:
  distinguishing Law from, II,7,24-25
  ministry of life in N.T., II,7,28
  Old Law becomes grace, II,3,10
  Spirit of Christ gives light, II,7,28
handicapped people, II,11,37
happiness, I,2,2; 2,3; 7,10

Arianism And Other Heresies
heaven and earth: meanings, I,10,13
Heli, the priest, I,16,30
hell:
   fires worse than most terrible death, I,16,29
heretics: antichrists, II,12,40
Holy Spirit:
   Law becomes grace through, II,3,10
   prophets filled by, II,3,9
   wished this statement to be made, II,9,34
human beings:
   created; seen as good, I,6,9
   human sacrifice, II,11,37
idols: worship of, I,19,38
incest, II,11,37
Isaac, II,4,13; 5,18; 9,33
Ishmael, II,9,33
Jacob, II,5,18
jealousy: God’s providence, I,40
Jesus Christ:
   accused of being evil, II,11,37
   amazed (so others would be amazed), I,7,10
   Christ means “anointed one,” II,3,12
   foreshadowings in Old Testament, II,7,27
   Lord of chastity and purity, II,12,38
   never deceived his own, II,11,37
   offspring of David, II,2,6
   perfeetion of the Law, II,7,26
   questioning by; “feigned” ignorance, I,43
   reply to heretical antitheses, II,11,37
   resurrection: biblical flood and, I,21,45
   resurrection: touch and see…, II,6,22
   sacrifice foreshadowed in Old Law, I,18,37
   sign: face of Moses, II,7,26
   sign: flesh to eat and blood to drink, II,9,34
Jews:
   scriptures as old wives’ tales, II,1,1
   traditions, II,1,2
John the Baptist:
   least in kingdom of heaven, II,5,20
judgment: God blinds by, II,8,30
justice: Law contrasted with grace, II,7,25
kingdom of God:
   Church as, II,5,20
   come, blessed of my Father, II,5,20
   eternal life, II,4,16
   flesh and blood will not possess, II,6,22
law (old law):
   antitheses between Christ and God of, II,11,36
   Christ: end of the Law, II,7,26
   good if used rightly (Paul), II,2,8
   grace distinguished from, II,7,24-25
   grace through charity given by Spirit, II,3,10
   holy, just, and good, II,7,28
   letter kills, II,7,28
   ministry of death, II,7,24;27
   Paul uses, preaching to Gentiles, II,2,5
   promises to Abraham and, II,8,31
   sin and, II,7,28
Lazarus, I,43
least in kingdom of heaven:
   two interpretations, II,5,20
life:
   breath of God: life-giving, I,22
   spiritual tree of, I,26
light:
   beginning from darkness, I,11,15
   created; seen as good, I,6,9; 7,10
   day and night divided, I,12,16
   God of both Testaments, I,11,14
love:
   growth; darkness in first days of creation, I,8,11
lust, II,11,37

Volume I/18
Mani, II,12,42
Manichees, I,1,1; 5; II,12,40; 42
manna, II,5,17-18
Marcion, II,12,40
Marcionites, I,1,1
marriage: chastity, II,11,37
matter:
  created, I,5,7
  unformed, I,9,12
Melchizedek, order of, I,20,39
mercy:
  God enlightens by, II,8,30
  ineffable God, I,40
  punishment for sin and, I,36
messiah:
  prophets foretold coming of Savior, II,3,9
Moses:
  Christ's words turned against, II,4,15
  day hours, I,12,16
  Emmaus, II,4,14
  face: glory of countenance, II,7,26
  Law given through, II,3,10
  mortality of soul, II,6,23
  words: soul is the blood, II,6,21
names:
  written in heaven; on earth, I,44
New Testament:
  language demands careful understanding, I,41
  promises made to Abraham, II,8,31
Noah, I,21,45
nothing:
  changing, mortal creatures made from, I,6,8
obedience:
  commended to human nature, I,14,19,21
  Samuel and Saul, I,42
Old Testament:
  foreshadowings of N.T. revelation, II,7,26
  indecent language in, I,24,50
  ministry of death, II,7,24; 27
  reading with “veil” removed, II,8,31
  olive tree, II,2,6
  parable: vineyard planted, II,4,16
  paradoxes: language about God, I,42
  parents: honoring, II,1,2
  patriarchs:
    Christ's words used against, II,5,17-19
  Patricius, II,12,40
Paul, Saint:
  apostle to the Gentiles, II,2,4
  charged with deceiving people, II,2,6,7; 9,33
  deception: all things to all, II,2,4
  exegetical ruse: five personages, II,2,3,5; 9,33
  little ones fed with milk, not poison, II,2,6
  prophets before the apostles, II,3,12
  taught Law as good, II,2,8
  use of Law and prophets, II,2,5
peace: I did not come to bring…., II,12,38
Peter, Saint, II,2,5
praise: sacrifice of, I,18,37
preachers: to Jews and Gentiles, II,3,11
pride: Heli, the priest, I,16,30
prophets:
  apocrypha used against, II,4,14
  before the apostles, II,3,12
  Christ's words turned against, II,4,15
  Cretans, II,4,13
  foretold coming of Savior, II,3,9
  Paul uses, preaching to Gentiles, II,2,5
punishment:
  carnal and spiritual, I,16,31
  Christ's threats greater than Old Law, I,33
  divine: not ignorance, not malice, I,16,28
  for not giving temporal food, I,32
  God of vengeance; Old Law, I,17,33
purity: Christ the lord of, II,12,38

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

rainbow, I,43
repetition, the, II,1,2; 2,6
resurrection of the body:
kingdom of God, II,6,22
Romans: Paul as apostle to, II,2,4
sabbath, II,11,37
sacraments: sacred signs, II,9,34
sacrifice(s):
  foreshadowing that to come,
  II,11,37
  foreshadowings of the Eucharist, I,42
  Old Law foreshadowed sacrifice of Christ, I,18,37
  Paul's statements on, I,19,38
  punishment for sacrilege, I,32
  visible; signs, I,16,30
sacilege: punishment for, I,32
salvation:
  flesh and blood; worldly pleasures, II,6,22
Samuel, and King Saul, I,42
Sarah: marital intercourse with, II,9,34
Saul, King, I,42
serpent, See Devil.
sexual imagery, II,9,34
signs:
  two testaments in two sons of Abraham, II,9,34
Simeon, I,11,15
Simon Magus, II,12,40
sin:
  humans created with possibility of, I,14,20
  making light of, I,32
man, dead through sin, kept from tree of life, I,15,24
mercy and punishment, I,36
ministry of condemnation, II,7,28
perversity; shameful passions, I,24,51
prohibition increases desire, II,7,28
song: light, I,11,15
soul:
  blood (Moses), II,6,21
  death of, I,16,30
  Moses; mortality, II,6,23
talent: parable, I,16,27
Tertullian, II,9,32
time:
  no beginning without an end, I,2,3
  tree: bad tree bearing bad fruit, I,22,47,49
  tree: of discernment, I,21
  tree: of life; spiritual, I,26
unbelievers, II,5,17
universe: inequalities in, I,4,5
veil:
  between Moses' face and the people, II,7,26
  understanding: Law to Gospel, II,7,29; 31
wealth, II,11,37
wedding garment:
  lack of; punishment, I,16,30
  mystical meanings, I,16,31
wisdom: spiritual tree of life, I,26
word of God: in the beginning..., I,5

Volume I/18
Index from
Against an Arian Sermon
(Contra sermonem Arianorum)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### An Arian Sermon and Answer to the Arian Sermon

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>31:13</td>
<td>XXXII,30; XXXII,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>I,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>XX; XXIX,27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalm</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>XI,9; XXVIII,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>V,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>XXVIII,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:3</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:20</td>
<td>XXXV,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109:1</td>
<td>9; XI,9; XII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Psalm</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20:6</td>
<td>(LXX) 5; V,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Volume I/18

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>26:10</td>
<td>XI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48:12-16</td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>3:87</td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>XI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>XIII; XXXIV,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>XI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>XXI,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:8</td>
<td>XXXII,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:10</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>9; XI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:38</td>
<td>IX,7; IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>6; VI,6; IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>XXXV,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>1:34-35</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:51</td>
<td>XXII,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:21</td>
<td>XXII,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:43</td>
<td>6; VI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:46</td>
<td>7; IX,7; IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1.3</td>
<td>I,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>II,3; XI,9; XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>XXXII,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>IX,7; IX,7; XII; XXVII,23; XXVII,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5:19 XIV; XXII,18; XXIII,20; XXVIII,26
5:19.23 XXIX,27
5:21 VIII
5:22 9; XI,9; XI,9
5:26 XVII
5:27 XI,9
5:30 9; XI,9
6:38 6; VI,6; VII; VII
6:44 XXX,28
8:18 XXXIV,32
8:28 32; XXXIV,32
8:29 34
8:42 4; III,4
10:18 IX,7
10:30 VIII; IX,7
12:49 6; VI,6
14:6 XXX,28
14:10 XIX
14:13 IX,7
14:16 34; XIX
14:25 XXX,28
14:26 XIX
14:28 VIII; IX,7
16:7 IV; XI; XXX,28
16:13 20; XXIII,20
16:14 19; XXII,18; XXIII,19
16:15 XXIII,19; XXIII,20
16:26 IV
16:28 V,5
16:32 III,4; III,4
17:3 I,1
17:4 19; XXIII,19
17:5 XXIII,19
17:5.4 XXXI,29
19:37 XI,9

Acts of the Apostles
2:31 IX,7
13:35 IX,7

Romans
3:20 IX,7
5:12 VII
5:19 VII
8:15 XXV,21
8:26-27 XXV,21

# Arianism And Other Heresies
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>XXVI,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XXII,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:15.19</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:19.20</td>
<td>XXIX,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>XXXVII; XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>6; VI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>4:30</td>
<td>XXV,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>2:5-8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:7.8</td>
<td>XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>6; 34; VI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>XXXIV,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:16</td>
<td>XXXIV,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>9; XI,9; XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>IX, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>V,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>XXVII,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>IX,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>1,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/18
Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

An Arian Sermon and Answer to the Arian Sermon

The Arian Sermon

adoration: persons of the Trinity, 19, 27
angels, 5
creation: Father’s will and command, 3, 4
God: foreknowledge; in the Trinity, 33
Holy Spirit:
    consolation, 9
different from the Son (nature, rank, etc.), 31
does not speak on his own, 20
relations of persons in the Trinity, 10-29
work and concern of, 30
Homoousians, 34
human beings:
    heirs to Christ’s Father, 5
    inferior grade of being, 5
    precious to God, 5
incarnation:
    will and command of the Father, 4, 6
Jesus Christ:
    crucifixion; his Father’s will, 7
divinity not lessened by his death, 7
established before all ages, 2, 4
firstborn of all creation, 1
foreknowledge of all things, 4
fulfilled Father’s plan of salvation, 8
human beings as coheirs of, 5
humility not pretended, 34
judgment office given to, 9
obedience (humble) and power, 34
obedient to his Father, unto death, 6
passion: Father, into your hands…, 7
passion: let this chalice pass…., 6
resurrection and ascension;
    Father’s will, 8
judgment day:
    Jesus in office of judge, 9
mankind, See human beings.
salvation:
    Jesus fulfilled Father’s plan of, 8
second Coming of Christ, 9
son of God:

Arianism And Other Heresies
can do nothing of himself, 20
relations of persons in the Trinity, 10-29
Trinity:
difference of three realities in, 27
Father greater than Son; Son
greater than Spirit, 24
goodness, wisdom, power of God, 22
interrelations of persons, 10-29
necessary distinction of persons, 32
procession of persons, 26

**Answer to the Arian Sermon**

Adam:
self-will, VII
sin entered world through, VII
adoption: sons by grace,
XVII,23
adoration: distinct from honoring,
XXIII,19
angels, V,5
words: trumpet of God, XIII
Apollinarian heresy, V,5
apostles, XXII,15
Arian Sermon: refutation com-
pleted, XXXIX
Arians, XXXVI,34
two Gods taught by, I,1

creation:
all things made through the Son,
II,3; XII
Son created, on Father’s order,
III,4
toil and weariness of Creator,
XXVIII,26
work of whole Trinity, XV

death: Adam’s sin; life in Christ,
VII
divine acts: difference in powers,
XIX

emperor: power of, XVIII
eternity: duration without time,
XXIV
Eunomians, XXXVI,34

faith:
Holy Spirit; distribution of grace,
XXXII,30
Father and son, XI,9
Father (God; Lord),See God; Trin-
ity.
flesh (the word), IX,7

**glory:**
Father and Son, XXXI,29
revelation; the Trinity, XXI,11

**God:**
See also Creation; Jesus Christ;
Son of God; Trinity
all things in all things, XXXVII
comforter of the saints, XIX
command to serve him (Father)
alone, XXIX,27
Father foreknew the Son,
XXXV,33
Father gave equality only to Son
and Spirit, XXIX,27
Father is life, XVII
Father to Son: words produced in
time, XIII
God is one (Dt 6:4), I,1
now knowing God, rather known
by God, XXV,21
time and, XXIV, XXXV,33
God(s) (Arian): unequal in nature,
I,1
good news, XXII,18
grace: adoption of sons, XXVII,23

holiness:
work of Christ and the Holy
Spirit, XXXII,30

Holy Spirit:
adoption as sons, XXV,21
advocacy and consolation, XVIII,
XIX
comfoter of the lowly, XIX
common Spirit of Father and
Word, XXII,20
crying “Abba, Father,” XXV,21
distinct from the Son, XXXIII,31
does not speak on his own,
XXIII,20
honoring and adoring, XXIII,19

**Volume I/18**
human body as temple of, XX, XXIX,27
human nature not taken up by, IV
if I do not go away…, XXX,28
inferiority of, XXII,15
intercession and consolation, XI,9
judgment day role, XX
made by Son’s power alone, XXVIII,26
made (Arian) by the Son, XXV,21
manifestation of the Son, XXVI,22
ministers of the Holy Trinity, XXII,15
principal work of the Son, XXVII,23
procession of, XXI,10
receiving what is mine, XXIII,19
resurrection of Christ as man, XV
sent by the Father, IV
Son of God adored with, XXX,28
truth, XXX,28
we do not pray as we ought …, XXV,21
will speak whatever he will hear, XXIII,20
with Christ, he teaches and makes holy, XXXII,30
works of the Trinity, XI,9; XVI
work: sanctification, XXXII,30
Homoousians, XXXVI,34
honor: adoration and, XXIII,19
human beings:
claim to be one with God, IX,7
heirs to Christ’s Father, V,5
less than the angels, V,5
precious value, V,5
trinity: memory, intelligence, will, XVI
human body:
temple of the Holy Spirit, XX, XXIX,27
human condition:
result of sin: a will of its own, VII
humility: example of Jesus, VIII
incarnation:
created in being assumed, VIII
flesh produced by whole Trinity, XV
form of a servant, VIII,
XXVIII,25, XXXVI,34,
XXXVIII
will of the Father, III,4, VII, XI,9
Word became flesh, IX,7, XII,
XXVII,23
intelligence: power of soul, XVI
Jesus Christ:
See also Son of God
acts: whatever he sees the Father doing, XXIII,20
Arians on Jn 17:3, I,1
ascension: shepherd returns with his sheep, X,8
coeternal one in time, XII,
XXXV,33
divinity (Arian), I,1
Father and I are one, IX,7
Father gave witness concerning me, XXXIV,32
Father greater than human nature of Christ, XI,9, XXVII,24
Father is greater than I, V,5; IX,7; XXXIII,31
Father’s will:
judge the world with justice, XI,9
sit at my right hand, XI,9, XII
form of man: form of God,
XXXIV,32
God from God, XI,9
human soul united to Word, IX,7
humanity and divinity, VIII, XI,9
humanity; form, XI,9
I am the truth, XXX,28
judge; does not see Father judging, XIV
made less than the angels, V,5,
XXXII,24
natures of God and man,
XXXIV,32
no one comes to me unless the Father…, XXX,28
obedience of, VII
obedient to his earthly father, VI,6
obedient to his Father, unto death, VI,6; XXXVIII
one mediator, the man Christ, IX,7
one person, two natures, VII

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

passion:
  abandoned into hands of men, IX,7
  divinity did not suffer, IX,7
  Father, into your hands… IX,7
  Father, let this chalice pass…, IX,7
  my soul is sad…, IX,7
  resurrection and ascension, X,8
  sanctification and the Spirit, XXXII,30
  sinlessness; great obedience, VII
  Son of God by nature, VIII
  Son of Man by grace, VIII
  soul of, V,5
  Spirit of the Lord is over me…, XXII,18
  testimony of Father at baptism of, VI,6
  This is my beloved Son, XIII, XV, XXXIV,32
twofold substance, one person, VII
under will and command of the Father, VI,6
unity of person, VIII, IX,7
we (Father and Jesus) will make our dwelling with…, XXX,28
Wisdom of God, IV
Word, soul, and flesh, IX,7
works of, XXXII,30
judges, human, XX
judgment day:
  first place to the Father, XI,9
  Holy Spirit, XX
  judge is also our advocate, XIX
lamp: flame; brightness, III,4, XXXIV,32
Mary, Blessed Virgin, IX,7
memory: power of soul, XVI
merit:
  Holy Spirit; distribution of grace, XXXII,30
nature: generation in, II,3
obedience:
  made just by obedience of Christ, VII
son and father, XI,9
willing/unwilling, VII
original sin: entrance into the world, VII
perfection:
  participation in divinity, XXVII,23
prayer:
  Spirit pleads with ineffable groans, XXV,21
Sabellians, XXXIV,32
sadness:
  do not sadden the Holy Spirit, XXV,21
salvation:
  plan; will of God, X,8
sanctification:
  work of the Holy Spirit, XXXII,30
service: latria, XXIX,27, XXXV,33
Solomon, King: temple, XX
Son of God:
  adored in the Holy Spirit, XXX,28
  begotten; immortal, IX,7
  begotten willingly or unwillingly, 2
  born before all ages, XXXVII
  can do nothing of himself, XXIII,20
  cannot do anything on his own, XIV
  coeternal with Father, 2
  crucified, VIII, IX,7
distinct from the Holy Spirit, XXXIII,31
does what the Father orders, XXII,18
emptied himself; began to be Christ, VIII
equality with God, VIII
existed before all ages, 2
Father gave life to, XVII
Father given glory through, XXXI,29
Father’s willingness to beget Son, XXVIII,26
firstborn of all creation, XXXIV,32

Volume I/18
foreknowledge, before he made all things, III,4
form of a servant, XXII,16, XXVIII,25, XXXVI,34, XXXVIII
full and perfect image of God, XXVI,22
humility; subject to the Father, XXXVI,34
ineffable mission, III,4
inferior power, XIII
judges according to Father’s laws, XVIII
just judge, XI,9; XVIII
made out of nothing [?], II,3
not “word from Word,” XVII
obedience; pre-incarnation, XXXVIII
obeys word of archangel, XIII
power and wisdom of God, XXVI,22
power to do what he sees Father doing, XIV, XXIII,20
same nature as Father, XXXVI,34
sent by Father, III,4, IV
subject to Father in age to come, XXXVII
whatever the Father does…, XXVIII,26
Son of Man:
judges as he hears, XVII
power to judge, XI,9
right hand of the Father, XII
senses and being, XIV
subjection, as man, XIV
unity of person of Jesus, VIII
soul:
flesh without, X,8
powers: memory, intelligence, will, XVI
Spirit:
human spirit pleads with groans…, XXV,21
time:
creature, XXXIV,32
made through Son of God, 2, XXXV,33
Trinity:
See also God; Holy Spirit; Son of God; Word
derivation of Persons, XXIII,19
differences not to be found in, XXXIII,31
different natures in (Arian), V,5
divine acts; difference in powers, XIX
equality; powers or functions, XVIII
Father and Son have same nature, II,3
Father and Son have the same works, XV
Father and Son (both) send Holy Spirit, XIX
Father and Son: differences found, XXXIV,32
Father/Son have one and same will, VII
honoring distinguished from adoring, XXIII,19
immutable nature of, VII
inequality in, V,5
likeness in the human soul, XVI
no difference in nature or power, XXIX,27
no other beings comparable to, IV
nothing done without the Holy Spirit, XV
one and same substance, XXXVI,34
one God, III,4; XXXV,33
one/identical nature of, XIV
only one Person had flesh, XV
orders; obedience, XXII,16
person as creature, XXVII,23
person is not “part” of, XXVII,23
persons’ works inseparable, IV; XI,9; XVI
sending of persons, XXI,14
serving God alone, XXIX,27
Son alone rose from the dead, XV
Son pleads, Spirit petitions, for us, XXV,21
spoke through the prophet, XXXII,30
subjection of persons in, XXII,16
subordination of the Holy Spirit, XX
three persons, one God, XV
virgin birth, XV

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

will: power of soul, XVI
will of God: Son’s will not opposed to, XVIII
witnessing: persons of the Trinity, XXI,13

word of God:
See also Incarnation; Jesus Christ;
Son of God
life given to Son, XVII
temporal words used by Father,
XIII

Volume I/18
Index from
Against Maximinus, an Arian
(Contra Maximinum Arianum)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Answer to Maximinus the Arian

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:1-27</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:26-27</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>II,XXVI,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>I,II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18</td>
<td>II,XXVI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td>II,XXVI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>I,X; II,XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:2-7</td>
<td>II,III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:24-30</td>
<td>II,XXVI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>II,XXVI,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>I,XIX; I,XIX; II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>II,XXVI,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>II,XXI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:11.13</td>
<td>II,XXVI,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>I,IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>I,X; II,XVI,1; II,XXVI,11; II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:4.13</td>
<td>I,X, I,IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>II,XXVI,1; II,XXVI,14; II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>I,IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:39</td>
<td>II,XXIX,1; II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>II,XXV,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>I,VIII; II,XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>I,XVIII; II,XXVIII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>II,XVI,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>II,XVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:6</td>
<td>II,XVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35:10</td>
<td>II,XXIII,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>44:7-8</td>
<td>II,XVI,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>44:8</td>
<td>II,XVI,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>81:6</td>
<td>II,XV,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:26-28</td>
<td>II,XXVI,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:27-28</td>
<td>II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>103:29-30</td>
<td>II,XXVII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>106:43</td>
<td>II,IX,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>109:3</td>
<td>I,VII; II,XXVIII,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>II,XXI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>I,XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>II,X,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48:12-16</td>
<td>II,XX,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>II,XXIV,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>12:3-4</td>
<td>II,XXVI,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>II,XXVIII,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>I,XIX; I,XIX; II,XXVI,10; II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>II,XXVII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II,XXII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:48</td>
<td>II,XXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:2-3</td>
<td>II,XXIV,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:10</td>
<td>II,IX,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>II,XXVIII,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:18-20</td>
<td>II,XXVI,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:19</td>
<td>II,XXIII,2; II,XXII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>II,XXVI,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:17-18</td>
<td>II,XXIII,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>II,XXIII,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

Luke
1:34-35    II,XXVII,2
2:52       II,XXIII,7
4:1        II,XVI,3; II,XXI,2
18:19      II,XXIII,5

14:34      II,XX,2
14:36      II,XX,2

John
1:1        II,XVII,4
1:13       I,IX
1:1-2.4    II,XXIII,7
1:3        II,XVII,1
1:14       II,XXII,3
1:18       II,IX,1
3:13       II,IX,1; II,XX,3
4:24       II,XV,2; II,XXII,3
5:19       II,XII,1; II,XII,3;
II,XIV,8; II,XX,4;
II,XXIII,4
5:21       II,XII,2; II,XX,4;
II,XXIII,7
5:22       II,XXVII,6
5:26       II,XIV,7
6:38       II,XX,3
6:46       I,III; II,IX,1
6:52       II,XVII,2
7:16       II,XX,3
7:39       II,XXII,3
8:18       II,XXII,3
8:25       II,XVIII,4
8:29       II,XIV,8
8:50       II,XXVIII,6
8:56       II,XXVI,8
9:4        II,XIV,8
10:18      II,XIV,9
10:30      I,X; II,XIV,3; II,XX,1;
II,XXII,2
11:41-42   II,XIV,8
12:50       II,XXIV
14:9        II,XXIV
14:16      II,XXVI,14
14:28      I,XV; I,XIX; II,XXV
15:26      II,XIV,1; II,XXII,3;
II,XXV,3
16:7        II,XXVI,14

16:15      II,IX,2; II,XI; II,XXI,1;
II,XX,3
16:32      II,XVIII,6
17:3        II,XV,4
17:11       I,XII
17:11-24    II,XXII,1
17:20-21    I,XII
17:21       I,XII
17:21-23    I,XII
17:24       II,XX,4
19:30       II,XXII,3
20:17       I,VII; II,XVI,1
20:22       II,XIV,1

Acts of the Apostles
1:11        II,XVI,1
2:38        II,XVII,1
4:32        II,XX,1; II,XXII,2
5:3-4       II,XXI,1
7:47-48     II,XXI,1
10:38       II,XVI,3
17:24       II,III
17:27-28    I,XII
22:35       II,XIV,7

Romans
1:7         II,XXIII,3
1:20        II,VII
6:6         I,II
6:10        I,II
8:3         I,II
8:11.9      II,XIV,1
8:26        I,X
8:32        II,XX,4
8:34        I,XIX
9:5         II,XXI,1
9:33-36     II,XXII,4
10:10       I,1
12:1        XXI,1
16:25-27    II,XXII,2
16:27       I,XVI; II,XIII,1

1 Corinthians
1:3         II,XXIII,3
1:24        I,XVI
2:8         II,XX,3
2:10        II,XV,4

Volume I/18
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>II,XV,4; II,XVII,1; II,XXIII,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>II,XX,1; II,XXII,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>I,XI; II,XXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>II,XIV,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>I,X; II,X,2; II,XX,1; II,XXII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>I,XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19.15</td>
<td>II,XXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19-20</td>
<td>II,XXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td>I,XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>I,X; II,X,1; II,XXIII,2; II,XXVI,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>II,XXIII,3; II,XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>II,XXIII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>II,XXI,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>II,XIV,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I,XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>II,XV,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-9</td>
<td>I,V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>II,XIV,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7.9</td>
<td>II,XV,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>II,II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>II,IX,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>II,IX,1; II,XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13-19</td>
<td>II,XII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>II,IX,1; II,XXII,1; II,XXVI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>II,XXVIII,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>II,XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>II,XXVI,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>II,IX,1; II,XXVI,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II,XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>II,XX,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II,XXII,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>II,XXIV,2; II,XXIV,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14</td>
<td>II,XII,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>II,XXXI,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:15-16</td>
<td>II,XXII,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Arianism And Other Heresies**
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Arianism And Other Heresies
Abraham: 
desired to see Christ’s day, II.XXVI,8
God seen by, II.XXVI,5,7,8
now I know; now I have made you know…, I.IX
son promised to, II.XXVI,5
spoken to by the Lord, II.XXVI,7
tomb, I.III
abundance, II.XIV,7
Adam:
first; second, II.XX,3
helper was made for, II.XXVI,2
unbegotten, I.XX
Adoration: praying and, I.IX
age: eternity, II.XIV,6
angel(s):
always see face of God, II.IX,1
ascending to, descending from, heaven, II.IX,1
greater than Son (in form of servant), II.XXV
ministry of, II.XXVI,8
Moses’ bush in flames, II.XXVI,11
prefiguring Jesus, II.XXVI,8
seeing archangels, II.XI
Sodom, II.XXVI,6,7
testimony on the return of Christ, II.XVI,1
visibility, I.III
animals:
generation, II.VI
offspring of, I.VI; XVIII
antichrist, II.XXVI,13
Apollo and Paul: unity, II.XXII,1,2
apostles:
saw the Lord in this world, not as he is, II.XXVI,10
unity with Father and Son, I.XII; II.XXII,2
archangels: angels cannot see, II.XI
belief:
confession made with the lips, I.I
pray for understanding, II.X,2
bibel:
rule on interpreting passages where Son is “less,” II.XIV,8
blood:
sign of the Son, II.XXXII,3
change:
divine persons made manifest, II.XXVI,10
church:
body of Christ, II.XVIII,5; XXII,3
command: power and, II.XIV,9
Constantius, Emperor, II.XIV,3
contact (contamination), I.II; II.V
Council of Ariminum, II.XIV,3
Council of Nicaea, II.XIV,3; XV,2; XVIII,1
creation:
all made through the Son, II.XVII,1,3
debate over Person creating, II.XXVI,2
in the beginning God…, II.XXVI,2
let us make man …, II.XXVI,2,3
creator:
begotten by the Father, II.XII,3
flesh of, II.XVII,2
crucifixion: curse, I.II
devil:
angels who sinned, II.XII,2
disciples:
wipe that Maximinus put on Christ, II.XXXVI,14
dove, I.XIX
eternal life:
happiness, II.XXIII,5
knowing the true God, II.XV,4
Son of God, II.XXIV
eternity: no age, II.XIV,6
faith: incorrect; ashamed to correct, I.I
father (God), See God; Trinity relations with… See Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Son of God.
fear of God: proper, II.I
fire: Holy Spirit, I.XIX
flesh:
given for life of the world, II.XVII,2
generation: 
animal and human, II.VI
animal species, I.VI
flesh is born of flesh, II.XIV,3
same substance in the one born, II.VII
giving: 
more blessed than receiving, II.XIV,7
glory: 
given to God through Jesus Christ, II.XIII,2
God: 
adore and serve the Lord alone (Dt 6:4), I.I; II.X,1; XXIII,1,3
begetting what he is, II.VII
beginning, II.XVII,4
Christ anointed by Father and by Spirit, II.XVI,3
composed of parts (denied), II.X,3
Father and Son as the one God, II.XXIII,1
Father as unbegotten, I.XVIII
Father seen by the Son, I.III
fear of, See Fear of God.
he who clings is one spirit, II.XX,1
hear: the Lord is one, II.XV,1
human contacts, I.II; II.V
I am who am; unchanged, I.XIX; II.XXVI,10
immense, II.XXVI,13
immortality (each person), I.IV; II.XIV,5
immutable good, II.XXIII,5,7
immutable, hence immortal, II.XII,2
incomprehensibility, II.XXVI,13
ineffable union of three persons, I.X
invisibility, I.III; II.XIX,1
made a man know; “Now I know,” II.XIX
manifestations; rather signified than shown, II.XXVI,10
mutual love: Father and Son, II.XXIV
nature in the unborn Father, II.XV,2
person as “part” of God, II.X,2
prefigured by angel (Abraham’s), II.XXVI,8
qualities of, II.XXIII,7
same nature (substance) in three persons, II.XV,3
seen by no human being, II.XIX,1
seen in Old Testament, II.XXVI,1
seen through creature subject to him, II.XXVI,10,12
simple power of, II.X,3
Son saw the “incomprehensible,” II.X,2
three men appeared to Abraham, II.XXVI,5,7
true Son of the Father, II.VII
unity of, I.I
unmade, I.XVII
wisdom of, I.XVI; II.XIII,1
goodness: 
divinity and, II.XXIII,5,6
Father the source of, II.XXIII,7
life that gives life, II.XXIII,7
Son as less good than Father, II.XXIII,7
happiness: eternal life, II.XXIII,5
heavenly powers: invisible, II.XI
Holy Spirit: 
adoration of, II.III; XXVI,6
adoration of the Father, I.X
annunciation to Mary, II.XVII,2
appeared visibly, I.X
changed, on being seen visable, II.XXVI,10
coeternal nature from God, II.XIV,2
Creator, II.XVII,1,3
Creator of flesh of the Son, II.XVII,2
creatures not taken into unity of his person, I.XIX
divinity of, II.XXI,1

Volume I/18
equal to the Son, II.XVII,2
equality with the Father, I.XIX
form of dove or fire, I.XIX
greater than Christ the man,
II.XVI,3
groaning, pleading, without
ceasing, I.X; II.XIX
human body, his temple, I.XI;
II.III; II.XXI,1
king, II.XXI,3
knows the things of God…,
II.XV,4
Lord of this temple, II.XXI,2
members of Christ as his temple,
II.XXIII,1
oil of gladness, II.XVI,3
powers of the heavens made firm
by, II.XVII,2
praise of, I.XI
procession of, II.V; XIV,1; XV,1
saints made holy by, II.XXI,3
seated with the Father, II.XXI,3
send forth your Spirit, II.XVII,2
served when we serve God the
Father, II.XXVI,14
two holy spirits, II.XIV,1
unless I (Christ) go, the
Paraclete…, II.XXVI,14
whole world filled by, II.XXI,2
will be with you forever,
II.XXVI,14
witness, II.XXI,3
homoousios, II.XIV,3; XVIII,1
human beings:
begetting child of same substance,
II.XV,5
creation; image and likeness of
God, II.XXVI,2
creatures; form of servant,
II.XXV
not good that man be alone,
II.XXI,3
one by nature, II.XXI,1
one with God, II.XXI,2
human body:
temple of God, II.XXI,1; XXIII,1
temple of the Holy Spirit, I.XI;
II.III
human condition: growing up, I.VI
human nature:
image of God, II.XXV
precedence over other creatures,
II.XXV
humbly: truth and, II.XVI,1
immortality:
Father and Son, I.V
immutable God, II.XII,2
soul and other spiritual creatures,
I.V
Incarnation:
come to do Father’s will, II.XX,3
form of a servant, I.V; II.X,2
points of no disagreement, II.VIII
Son showed that Father is God,
I.VII
Jacob: wrestled with angel,
II.XXVI,9
Jesus Christ:
See also Incarnation; Son of Man;
Son of God; Word of God
advanced in age and wisdom,
II.XXIII,7
anointed with the Holy Spirit,
II.XVI,3
appearance in substance of his
divinity, II.XXVI,2
ascension to “my Father and
yours,” II.XVI,1
contamination by contacts, I.II;
I.V
did not think it robbery to be
equal to God, I.V
died to sin once, I.II
exaltation by the Father, II.II
Father, I want that where I am…,
II.XX,4
filled with the Holy Spirit,
II.XXI,2
from the womb I begot you,
II.XVIII,1,2,3
glory given to God through,
II.XIII,2
God who alone is wise through,
II.XIII,2
head and body, II.XVIII,5
human love, II.XX,2
invisible in substance of divinity,
I.XV
less than the Father, II.XIV,9

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

little less than the angels, II.XXV  
make me clean…, II.XX,4  
marvelous growth (into form of  
God), II.IX,2  
my soul is sad…, II.XX,2  
name: every knee might bend,  
II.II  
obedient unto death on a cross,  
I.V; II.II; II.XIV,7; XV,1  
one person; twofold substance,  
II.X,2  
passion:  
foretold, II.XVI,3; XXVI,8  
I am not alone; the Father…,  
II.XVIII,6  
made a little less than the  
angels, II.XVIII,6  
points of no disagreement,  
II.VIII  
power to die and to rise, II.XIV,9  
prayer for unity of his followers,  
II.XXII,1  
prefigured by Jacob wrestling  
with angel, II.XXVI,9  
sacrifice for sin, I.II  
seated at right hand of the Father,  
II.IV  
selvesame; unchanged, II.XXVI,14  
served when we serve God the  
Father, II.XXVI,14  
subject to the Father, II.XVI,1;  
XVIII,5  
subjection to his parents, I.VIII;  
II.XVIII,4  
through whom all things are (1  
Cor 8:6), II.XXIII,3,4  
two gods (by calling him “also”  
God), II.X,1  
Wisdom of God, I.XVI  
worshipped as God, I.I  
Jews, II.XVI,1  
joy: Father and Son, II.XVI,3  
judgment (last day):  
Christ in human form, II.XVIII,6  
Father judges no one, II.XVIII,6  
kings, II.I; II.XV,1  
life: God, source of life, II.XII,2;  
XXIII,7  
life: Son gives, to those he wants,  
II.XX,4  
light: in your light we shall see…,  
II.XXIII,7  
Lot (at Sodom), II.XXVI,6-7  
love:  
Father and Son: mutual love,  
I.XIV; II.XXIV  
one by love, II.XXII,1  
Mary, Blessed Virgin:  
Holy Spirit will overshadow,  
II.XVII,2  
Maximinus (Arian bishop):  
Augustine’s response  
to, I.I-XX  
Moses:  
bush in flames; angel, II.XXVI,11  
claim re seeing Son of God,  
II.XXVI,1  
declared that God be revealed to  
him, II.XXVI,10,12  
finger of God, II.XXI,2  
god for Pharaoh, II.XV,3  
show me yourself…, I.XV  
omnipotence: persons of the Trin-  
ity, II.XII,1  
parent and child:  
obedience, II.XVIII,3  
same substance, II.XIV,6  
patriarchs:  
God seen by, II.XXVI,1,12  
welcoming angels without  
knowing it, II.XXVI,6  
Paul, Saint:  
one with Apollo, II.XXII,1,2  
perfection:  
Father and Son, II.XV,5  
one in Father and Son, II.XXII,1  
therefore by perfect as your  
Father…, I.XII  
Peter, Saint, II.XVII,1; XXI,1  
Pontius Pilate, II.XII,2  
power: command and, II.XIV,9  
prophecy: foretold as if already  
happened, II.XVI,3

Volume I/18
purity: blessed are the clean of heart, II.XII,2

rule of faith, II.XIV,8

Sabellians, I.XIII;
saints:
  made holy by Holy Spirit, II.XXI,3
  prayers ever poured out, I.IX
sin:
  gift of being incapable of, II.XII,2
  sacrifices for, I.II
Sodom, II.XXVI,5,6,7
Solomon, King, II.III; II.XXI,1
Son of God:
  See also Jesus Christ; Son of Man; Word of God
  Adam: I heard your voice…, II.XXVI,4
  all judgment given to, II.XVIII,6
  all which the Father has are mine, II.XIV,7; XX,3
  appeared on earth and lived among human beings, II.XXVI,13
  begetting the Creator, II.XII,3
  in the beginning, II.XVII,4
  begotten, I.XVIII
  begotten as perfect, II.XV,5
  begotten; substance of the Father, II.XIV,2,4
  born from God the Father, II.XIV,1,9
  changed, on being seen visible, II.XXVI,10
  clings to the Father; one God, II.XX,1
  commands received from Father, II.XIV,9; XXIV
  creator of visible and invisible things, I.XV; II.XI
  denying that he is true God, II.XV,4
  emptied himself…, I.V; II.XV,1,5
  equal, not inferior, II.XIV,6; XX,3
  equal of unbegotten Father, I.XX
  equal to the Father, II.VII; XV,1,5; XXIII,7; XXIV
  equality; measure, II.XXIII,7
  equality with God by nature, I.V
  eternal life, II.XXIV
  Father as God for, II.XVI,1
  Father as his author, II.XIV,6
  Father bears witness to, I.XIII; II.XXVI,4
  Father does the will of the Son, II.XX,4
  Father greater than the Son, I.XIII; XIX; II.XXV
  Father is God for, I.VII; II.XVIII,3
  Father unable/unwilling to give equal, II.XXXV
  form of God, I.V
  greatness of, I.VII
  immortal God, I.V
  inferior nature, II.XVII
  invisible according to his divinity, I.XII; II.XI; XXVI,1
  less because he carried out orders, II.XXVI,2
  less than the Father; form of a servant, II.XIV,8
  love of Father and Son, I.XIV
  made, form of a servant, I.XVII; XIX; II.XV,1
  man in time, I.V
  obedience; nature of God, II.XVIII,3
  one in harmony (not number) with Father, II.XXII,2
  one substance with the Father, II.XIV,8; XV,2
  power given to, in begetting, II.XII,1
  prefigured in Jacob, II.XXVI,9
  same nature as the Father, I.VI
  seen by Abraham, II.XXVI,8
  son by nature, not by grace, II.XXIII,7
  subjection; form of a servant, I.VIII; IX; II.X,2; XXIII,2
  substance of God, II.XVIII,1
  visible form of man, I.XIX
  whatever the Father does…, II.XIV,8; XX,4
  will subject to the Father, II.XX,2
  wise through substance of the Father, II.XIII,2
Son of Man:

Arianism And Other Heresies
angels greater than (human form), II.XXV
form of God not lost by, II.XV,5
from the womb of my mother…, IVII
handed over by the Father, II.XX,4
nature of, II.XXIII,7
subject to the Father, II.XXIII,2
soul:
generation of offspring, II.XIV,4
immortal, II.XII,2
incorruptibly begetting offspring, II.XIV,4
Spirit:
Holy, See Holy Spirit.
human and divine; different
natures, II.XV,6
sign of the Father, II.XXII,3
Stephen, Martyr, II.XXI,1
temple, See Holy Spirit; human
body.
Trinity:
all things are from- through- and
in him, II.XXIII,4
blessed and alone powerful; one
God, II.XII,2
command to baptize in name of,
II.XVI,2; XXII,3
divine authority for unity of
persons, I.XII
each person, true God, II.XV,4
equality of persons, II.XXIII,4
Father and Son, one substance,
II.XVIII,3; XX,1
Father different from Son, I.XIII
Father is greater, Son is lesser,
II.XXIII,1
God alone is invisible, II.IX,1
God from substance of God,
II.XIV,2
God's generation as defective,
II.XVIII,1
I am the Lord; no other,
II.XXIII,2, 3
I am who I am…, I.XIX
I do not change …, II.XXVI,10
incomprehensibility of persons,
II.IX,2
invisibility, I.XV
Lord your God is one (Dt 6:4),
II.XXVI,14
no one is good save the one God,
II.XXIII,5,6
no one knows the things of God
except…, II.XXIII,5
omnipotence, II.XII,1
one and only God, II.XV,4
one and same nature, II.XXII,3
one beginning, II.XVII,4
one God, one Creator, II.V
one in nature, II.XXIII,1
one is God the Father (1 Cor 8:6),
II.XXIII,3,4
one substance, II.X,2; XIV,1-2;
XX,1; XXII,1
one substance; three persons,
II.Preface
persons: being born; proceeding,
II.XIV,1
power of, II.XII,1
prefigured in three men coming to
Abraham, II.XXVI,6
spirit, water, and blood (signs),
II.XII,3
Spirit begot a Spirit, II.XV,3
spiritual greatness of persons,
II.X,2
there is no God save the one,
II.XXIII,2
three persons, one God, I.X;
II.X,1
three persons appeared to
Abraham, II.XXVI,5
three persons as witnesses,
II.X,2
three who appeared to Abraham,
II.XXVI,7
two (Father and Son) have one
substance, II.XII,2
undivided godhead, II.X,3
wisdom by nature, not grace,
I.XVI
wise, II.XIII,2
truth: humility and, II.XVI,1
unity:
Father and I are one
(“homoousios”), II.XIV,3

Volume I/18
human spirit clinging to Spirit of the Lord, I.X
one soul and one heart, II.XX,1
prayer of Jesus for, II.XXII,1
that they may be one..., I.XII

water: sign of the Holy Spirit,
II.XXII,3
will of god: justice, II.XX,3
wisdom: 
built a home for itself, II.XVII,2
depths of the riches of God,
II.XXIII,4
God alone is wise, I.XVI;
II.XIII,1
Jesus in form of man, II.XXIII,7
soul generating offspring,
II.XIV,4

witnesses: 
spirit, water, and blood (signs),
II.XXII,3
word of God: 
all God's commands contained in,
II.XIV,9
eternal birth, II.XVIII,2
in the beginning..., I.XIX:
II.XVII,4; XVIII,2; XXIII,7
sadness, II.XX,2
teaching of the Father, II.XX,3
world: filled by Holy Spirit,
II.XXI,2
worship: 
admire and serve the Lord alone
(Dt 6), I.1; II.X,1; XXVI,14
two gods, I.1
Index from

Debate with Maximinus, an Arian Bishop

(Conlatio cum Maximino Arianorum episcopo)

Included in book:

Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Volume I/18

## Index of Scripture

Prepared by Michael Dolan

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Debate with Maximinus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>21:23</th>
<th>15,5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-27</td>
<td>15,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>15,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>15,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10-11</td>
<td>15,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:28</td>
<td>15,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:11</td>
<td>15,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>15,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20</td>
<td>15,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deuteronomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>15,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>11; 12; 15,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Job**       | 1:1.3 | 15,13 |

| **Psalms**    |       |      |
| 4:3           | 15,26 |      |
| 8:6           | 14    |      |
| 15:9-10       | 15,14 |      |
| 21:11         | 14    |      |
| 23:7-8        | 15,12 |      |
| 26:1          | 5     |      |
| 44:8          | 15,16; 15,16 |      |
| 68:8          | 15,9  |      |
| 82:2          | 15,13 |      |
| 103:24        | 15,13 |      |
| 109:1         | 15,4  |      |
| 109:3         | 15,18 |      |
| 142:10        | 15,23 |      |

### Arianism And Other Heresies
## Volume I/18

**Proverbs**
- 8:30-31 15,16
- 9:1 15,8

**Isaiah**
- 7:9 15,26
- 7:13 15,9
- 40:5 11
- 53:8 15,14

**Malachi**
- 3:6 15,26

**New Testament**

**Matthew**
- 5:8 14
- 5:18 15,16
- 6:10 15,20
- 10:28 4, 15,14
- 10:29 15,14
- 10:32-33 4
- 11:27 15,13
- 15:9 1
- 17:5 13
- 18:16 15,15
- 24:35 15,16
- 25:34 15,18
- 26:63-64 15,4
- 28:18-20 15,16

**Mark**
- 14:36 15,20
- 14:61-62 15,4

**Luke**
- 1:35 15,21
- 4:18 11
- 6:45 15,23
- 12:4 14
- 12:20 15,9
- 15:4.7 15,9
- 16:10 15,19
- 24:49 15,10

**John**
- 1:1 14
- 1:3 10; 15,21
- 1:14 11; 14; 15,8; 15,26
- 1:18 13; 15,9
- 1:29 15,5
- 4:24 15,15
- 5:22-23 15,18
- 5:23 15,8; 15,21
- 5:26 13; 14; 15,14
- 5:31-37 13
- 6:38 15,20
- 6:46 15,9
- 7:16 5
- 8:29 10; 15,14; 15,22
- 8:38 5; 13
- 8:51 15,14
- 8:56 15,26
- 9:2-4 15,14
- 10:11 15,23
- 10:18 15,14
- 10:27-30 6
- 10:30 12; 14; 15,22; 15,24
- 11:41-42 15,14
- 14:9 15,13; 15,24
- 14:15-17 12
- 14:21.23 15,22
- 14:28 13
- 14:31 15,24
- 16:12-14 5
- 16:14 10
- 16:15.14 11
- 17:3 15,15
- 17:11 14
- 17:21-23 15,22
- 18:37 13
- 20:17 13; 14; 15,16

**Acts of the Apostles**
- 2:32-33 7
- 4:32 12
- 9:4 15,9
- 13:2 15,9
- 13:47 5

**Romans**
- 1:7 15,23
- 1:20 14; 15,7
- 3:20 11
- 8:15 13; 15,21

### Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

Volume I/18
Arianism And Other Heresies
goodness:
   received by each creature, from Christ, 15,23

Heraclius (priest), 1
Hippo Regius, 1

Holy Spirit:
   Abba, Father, 15,21
   adoration of, 15,3
   adoration of the Father, 14
   angels and, 12
   body as temple of, 15,21
   cries out in praise of wisdom, 15,13
   crying out; making us cry out, 13
   enlightenment from, 5-11
   equal to the Father, 13; 14
   equal to the Son, 15,17
   everything done by, is obtained from God, 9
   form of a dove, 15,26
   pleads with groans on our behalf, 12; 13; 15,19
   power of, 15,21
   procession of, 13
   same substance as the Father, 15,14
   saying that Jesus is Lord, 15,21
   simple power, 15,10
   souls melted by (one soul, one heart), 12
   subject to the Son, 10-11, 12
   teacher, guide, enlightener, sanctifier, 15,5
   testimonies that he is God, 15,21
   unhappiness, 13; 15,19

human beings:
   made in image and likeness of God, 15,26

human body:
   temple of the Holy Spirit, 15,21

human condition:
   growing up, 14

immortality:
   wisdom of the saints, 15,14

incarnation:
   contact with human flesh, 14
   form of the servant, 11
   he did not think it robbery..., 14

Israel:
   meaning: one who sees God, 15,26

Jacob: wrestling, 15,26

Jesus Christ:
   See also Incarnation; Son of God
   baptized, 15,16
   enlightenment through Holy Spirit, 7-11
   form of a servant, 15,15; 15,16
   goodness from the Father, 15,23
   Holy Spirit and Word made flesh, 11
   humility of the flesh, 15,16
   name: every knee bent, 15,2
   only-begotten Son, 13
   passion: Father, let this cup pass, 15,20
   passion: made possible by his flesh, 14
   power received from the Father, 15,14
   Spirit of the Lord is upon me..., 11
   subject to his parents, 15,18
   teaching, he enlightens us, 5
   visible humanity: invisible divinity, 15,9
   visible in the flesh, 14
   will subject to the Father, 15,20
   Wisdom has built a home for itself, 15,8
   wisdom in all things made, 15,13
   wisdom of God, 14; 14
   worshipped; God of every creature, 15,2

John the Baptist, Saint, 13, 15,5

judgment day:
   Son subject to the Father, 15,18

Knowledge:
   now I know = now that I have made you know, 13

love:
   keep the commandments, 15,22
   Spirit melts many hearts into one heart, 12
   Trinity as one, 15,22

Arianism And Other Heresies
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
  overshadowed by the Spirit, 15,21
Moses:
  divinity manifested to, 14
  no one can see God and live, 15,26
omnipotence, 12
patriarchs:
  divine apparitions through creatures, 14
  divinity showed itself to, 15,26
Paul, Saint, 5
prophets: witness to the Son, 14
rule of faith, 15,16
Saints: immortal wisdom, 15,14
Segisvult, Count, 1
sheep:
  leaving the ninety-nine, seeking the one lost, 15,9
Son of God:
  begotten by the Father, 13
  birth in the beginning, 15,18
  divinity not seen by angels, 15,9
  emptied himself, 14; 15,15
  equal to the Father, 14
  Father and I are one, 15,24
  firstborn of all creation, 15,17
  immortal wisdom, 15,14
  immortality, 15,14
  intercedes for us, even now, 12
  love for the Father, 15,24
  from nothing, 15,13
  only-begotten, 15,15
  perfection, 15,15
  prays to the Father, 12
  same substance as the Father, 15,14
  simple power, 15,10
  subject to the Father, 10
  subjection of, 15,23
  visible; form of a servant, 14
  wisdom of the Father, 15,13
soul:
  angels can penetrate, 15,9
  generation of offspring, 15,14
  immortal, 15,14
  invisible, 15,9

Trinity:
  challenge (Maximinus) on unity of the persons, 15,26
  equality of persons, 14
  Father and Son are one, 15,20
  Father and Son distinct persons, 13
  Father and Son: same nature and substance, 14
  immortality, 15,14
  omnipotence of each person, 12
  one God, 12
  one God worshipped in, 11
  one nature denied, 14
  one undivided nature; three persons, 15,22
  persons same and equal, 11
  statement on faith requested, 2-4
  subjection of persons in, 11
  term “one,” meaning love, not substance, 15,22
  three persons; one God, 15,23
  three persons, one God, denied, 14
  three persons; same substance, 15,14
  understand what you believe, 15,26
  undivided nature; one God, 14
unity:
  Christ, the Father, and the faithful, 15,22
will of God:
  Father and Son are one, 15,20
wisdom:
  applied to Father “alone,” 14
  God alone is wise, 15,13
  human, is not invisible, 15,9
word of God:
  death and, 14
  form of a servant, 14; 15,15
worship:
  creature worship, 14
  Trinity, one God, 11
Index from

On Heresies

(De haeresibus)

Included in book:

Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

Prepared by Michael Dolan

*The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heresies</th>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Genesis 1:31</td>
<td>Matthew 6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exodus 3:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Joshua 5:16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Isaiah 45:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65:17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Heresies

Preface,
Baptism, 3
Celsus, 5
Epiphanius, Bishop of Cyrus:
work on eighty heresies, 6
heresy:
defect, or error, makes one a heretic, 7
Epiphanius (bishop) on eighty heresies, 6
magnitude of task to write about, 1
succinct summary of past/current heresies, 3
task (writing) undertaken, 2
tenets of each to be summarized, 4

The Heresies,
Abelians, LXXXVII
Abeloim, LXXXVII
Abeloites, LXXXVII
Adam, XIX
death natural; not result of Fall, LXXXVIII.7
Adam and Eve, XLVI.14-15
Adamians, XXXI
Aeons, XI, XIII
Aerians, LIII

Aetians, LIV
Africa, XLI, LXIX.1,3,4
agriculture: Manichee, XLVI.12
allegory, LXX.2
Alogi, XXX
angelics, XXXIX
angels, II, III, VI, XXXIX, LI
Antidicomarites, LVI, LXXXIV
Apellites, XXIII
Apollinarists, LV
Apostolics, XL
Apotactites, XL, LIII
Aquarians, LXIV
Arabians, LXXXIII
Archontics, XX
Arians, XLVIII, XLIX, LI, LV
Artemon, XLIV
Artotyrites, XXVIII
Ascitae, LXII
Audians, L

baptism, XLIV
baptism:
children (even though original sin is denied), LXXXVIII.6
Manichee, XLVI.17
outside the church, LXIX.5
rebaptism, XLIX; LXIX.1
Bardesanists, XXXV

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

bare feet, LXVIII
Basilidians, IV
bible: Manichee views, XLVI.15
bishops, LIII
  Africa, LXIX.3
  Manichee, XLVI.16
Borbories, VI

Caecilian, Bishop of Carthage,
  LXIX.1
Caelestians, XLI, LXXXVIII.1
Caelestitus, LXXXVIII.1
Cainites, XVIII
Carpocrates, VI
Carpocratians, VII
Castration, XXXVII

Cataphrygians, XXV, XXVII, X
Cathari, XXXVIII
Catharists, XLVI.10
celibacy, LXXII
Cerdonians, XXI
Cerinthians, VIII
Charity, See Love.
Charity: vow of, LXXXVII

Children:
  denial of original sin, LXXXVIII.6
  denied heaven, XLVII
Chiliasts, VIII
Church:
  made perfect by lives of just persons, LXXXVIII.5
  vanished from face of earth, LXIX.1

Circumcellions, LXIX.4
Colorbasus, XV
Coluthians, LXV
Concupiscence: Manichee, XLVI.19
Council of Nicaea, XLIV
Creation, II, V, XX

Dactylorynchites, LXIII
Darkness: Manichee, XLVI.17
Depth (aeons), XI
device, LXI
diet: Manichee, XLVI.11

Donatians, LXIX.1
Donatists, XLI, LXIX.1
Donatus, LXIX.2
dualism: Manichee, XLVI.19

Easter: date, XXIX
eating, LXXI

Ebionites, X, XXXII
Egypt, L
Elcesaeans, XXXII
Elcesaites, X
Elci (false prophet), XXXII
Elect: Manichee, XLVI.16
elements: darkness and light
  (Manichee), XLVI.7
Encratites, XXV, XL, LIII
Epiphanius, X, XXII, XXVIII, XXXII, XXXVII, XL,
  XLI, LII, LIII, LVII, LXXXI
eucharist, XVII, XXVI
Manichee, XLVI.9
Euchites, LVII
Eunomians, LIV
Euphemites, LVII
Eusebia (Manichaean nun), XLVI.9
Eusebius, X, XXII, LXXXIII

Faith, LXXXVIII.4
Fasting, LIII, LXXXII
Fire, LVII
Flesh: Manichee; evil, XLVI.19
Florinians, LXVI
Free choice, LXXXVIII.2

Generation: Manichee, XLVI.13
Gnostics, VI, XVII, LXX.1
God:
  See also Jesus Christ; Son of God; Trinity
  Body (Tertullian), LXXXVI
  Good and evil; Manichee, XLVI.2-5
  Likeness of corruptible man
    (Arian), L

Volume I/18
Old Testament; Manichee, XLVI.15
purified by Manichaean Elect, XLVI.5
good and evil, XXIII, XLVI.2-5; 15
five evil elements (Manichee), XLVI.7
God and evil, LXV, LXVI
grace:
merit and, LXXXVIII.4
Pelagian view, LXXXVIII.2
Hermians, LIX
Hieracleites, XLII
Hippo, LXXXVII
Holy Spirit, LII
creature, XLIX, LXI
Manicheus as the Paraclete, XLVI.16
Pelagianism, LXXXVIII.2
human body:
flesh created by devil, LXI
image of God, LXXVI
human condition:
Manichee view, XLVI.19
incarnation, XI, XXI
Apollinarist view, LV
flesh without soul (Arian), XLIX
Isaiah: barefoot, LXXVII
Jerusalem, XXVII
Jesus Christ:
See also Son of God
descent into hell, LXXIX
Manichee view, XLVI.15
mere man, XXXIII, XLIV
nativty, XXI
passion:
pain felt by divinity, LXXIII
suffering denied, XIV
Sabellian view, LXXII
Sem, son of Noah, XIX
serpent, XVII
soul; Apollinarist view, LV
Jovinianists, LXXXII
Judas, XVIII
just persons: Church made perfect by, LXXXVIII.5
knowledge:
gift of God (Pelagian), LXXXVIII.3
pride in, LXXXVIII.3
life: Manichee, XLVI.12
light: Manichaean view, XLVI.6-8
liturgy: Church’s prayers as meaningless, LXXXVIII.4
love: pride and, LXXXVIII.3
Luciferians, LXXXI
lust, XLVI.10
Macedonians, LII
Majorinus, Bishop, LXIX.2
Manicheans: Paraclete, XLVI.16
Manichees, XLVI.1-19, LXX.1
Elect: twelve disciples, XLVI.16
Manis, XLVI.1
Marcion, XXII
Mark (heretic), XIV
marriage, XXXI, XXXVIII
Jovinianist view, LXXXII
Manichee, XLVI.13
Priscillianist view, LXX.2
second marriages, XXVI
vow of chastity, LXXXVIII
Martyrians, LVII
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
virginity, LVI, LXXXII, LXXXIV
Massalians, LVII
Maximianus (of Carthage), LXIX.5
Maximilla (prophetess), XXVI, XXVII
meat:
Manichee, XLVI.11, XLVI.12
unclean, LXX.2
Melchizedekians, XXXIV
Melitians, XLVIII
Menandrians, II
Merinthians, VIII

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

merit, LXXXII
grace and, LXXXVIII.4
Metangismonites, LVIII
millennium, VIII
monks: work, LVII
Montanus, XXVI, XXVII
Montenses, LXIX.3
moon, XLVI.18
Moses, XLVI.15, LXVIII

nakedness, XXXI
nature: Manichees and life, XLVI.12
Nazoraens, IX
new heaven, new earth, LXVII
Nicolaïtes, V, VI, XVII
Noetians, XXXVI
Novatians, XXXVIII

old law, IX
Ophites, XVII
Origen, LXXXIII
Origenists, XLII
original sin:
  denial of contracting by little children, LXXXVIII.6

paradise, XXXI
Parmenianists, XLI
Passalorynchites, LXIII
Paternians, LXXXV
Patricians, LXI
Patripassians, XLI
Paulians, XLIV
Pelagians, XLI, LXXXVIII.1-7
Pepuzians, XXVI, XXVIII
Persecution, X, XXXIII, XLVII
Perseverance, LXXXVIII.4
Philaster, Bishop of Brescia,
   XLI, XLV, LIII, LVII,
   LXVII, LXXI, LXXX,
   LXXXI
Photinus, XLIV, XLV
Phrygia, XXVI
plants (botany): Manichee,
   XLVI.12
Praxeans, XLI

prayer:
  excessive, LVII
  pray without ceasing, LVII
priests: bishops and, LIII
Primianus, LXIX.5
Prisca (prophetess), XXVI, XXVII
Priscilla, XXVII
Priscillianists, LXX.1
Proclianites, LX
prostitute, I
Ptolemy, XIII
purification, LVII

Quintilla, XXVII
Quintillians, XXVII

resurrection of Jesus, VIII
resurrection of the body, XI,
   XVIII, XXIV, XLIII,
   XLVII, LIX, LXVII
Rhetorius, LXXII
Rufinus, LXXXIII

Sabellians, XLI, LXX.2
Salvation, XI, XXV
Sampsaeans, X, XXXII
Satanians, LVII
Saturninians, III
schism, XLVII, LXIX.5, LXXXI
Secundians, XII
Seleucians, LIX
Sem (son of Noah), XIX
Seminarians, L, LII
serpent, XVII
Sethians, XIX
Severians, XXIV
sex, VIII
  human seed; Catharists, XLVI.10
silence, LXIII
silence (aeons), XI
Simon Magus, I
Simonians, I
sin:
  equality of all, LXXXII
  Eunomius on, LIV
  origin (Manichee), XLVI.19

Volume I/18
smoke, XLVI.7;14
Son of God:
  born eternally, LXXX
  coeternal with the Father, LXXX
  creature, XLIX
soul(s), VI
  entering flesh; Manichee, XLVI.13
  generated from parents, LXXXI
  good and bad souls, XLVI.3
Manichee: two souls, one good,
  one evil, XLVI.19
return; Manichee, XLVI.12
substance of flesh, LXXXI
Tertullian on, LXXVII
wicked; turn into demons;
  animals, LXXVIII
Spain, LXXI.1
stars, XV
suicide, LXIX.4
sun, XLVI.18
Synerus, XXII

Tatians, XXV
Tertullian, LXXXVI
Tertullianists, LXXXVI
Tessarescedecatites, XXIX
Theodotians, XXXIII
Torah, XLVI.15
Trinity, XXXVI
  Arian heresy, XLIX
  Donatus on, LXIX.2
  Eunomian heresy, LIV
  image of vessel (heresy), LVIII
  tripartite, LXXIV
universe: innumerable worlds,
  LXXXVII
Valentinians, XI, XII
Valentinus, XIV, XXXV
Valesians, XXXVII
Venustians, LXXXV
Viator (Manichee), XLVI.10

virginity, LXXXII
water: coeternal with God, LXXV
wine, XXIV, XLVI.11
wine skins, LXII
women: priesthood, XXVII
word-less (Alogi), XXX
world: elements coeternal with
  God, LIX
zodiac, LXXI.1

Epilogue
Abeloiotes, 2
heresy:
  Augustine states his limitations in
  this work, 1-3
  avoiding, with God's help, 3
Jerome, Saint, 2
Macedonians, 3
Photinians, 3
rule of faith, 3

Appendix
Apollinaris, III
Crysafius, IIIA
Dioscurus, Bishop of Alexandria,
  IIIA
Eutyches, IIIA
Eutychians, III-IIIA
Flavian (confessor), IIIA
Jesus Christ:
  Nestorian view, II
  single nature, I
  two natures, before the
  incarnation, IIIA
Manichaeus, III
Mary, Blessed Virgin: Nestorian
  view, IIA
Nestorians, II-IIA, III
Theodosius, Emperor, IIIA
Timotheans, I
Index from
Memorandum to Augustine
(Memorandum Augustinum)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Leviticus</th>
<th>Leviticus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 28:43</td>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees 7:28</td>
<td>16:34</td>
<td>5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:22, 16:2, 25:4-6</td>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>7,8; 7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 9:5, 9:6, 10:16</td>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom 12:18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach 3:22, 66:24</td>
<td>1:13, 5:26, 8:48, 9:31</td>
<td>8,9, 7,8, 9,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 66:24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 5:17, 13:3, 25:41, 25:46</td>
<td>7,8, 2, 5,5, 6,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans 8:20, 10:4, 12:13, 16:27</td>
<td>3, 7,8, 11,14, 10,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians 15:24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians 11:10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians 1:16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy 1:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus 1:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Arianism And Other Heresies
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Memorandum to Augustine and to Orosius

Memorandum to Augustine on the Error of the Priscillianists and Origenists

Numbers refer to section numbers

angels, 2, 3
Avitus, 3
Basil, Saint, 3
creation, 3
eternity, 3
Eutropius, Bishop, 1
fire, 3
Jesus Christ:
alone, he is Father, Son, Holy
Spirit, 2
passion, 2
Manichees, 2
Origen, 3
Orosius, 1-4
patriarchs, 2
Paul, Bishop, 1
Priscillian, 2, 3
sinner, 4
soul, 2, 3
Trinity, 2
Victorinus, 3
Zodiac, 2

Arianism And Other Heresies
Index from
Against the Priscillians and the Origenists
(Contra Priscillianistas et Origenistas)

Included in book:
Arianism and Other Heresies

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Includes: Heresies, Memorandum to Augustine, To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists, Arian Sermon, Answer to an Arian Sermon, Debate with Maximinus, Answer to Maximinus, Answer to an Enemy of the Law and the Prophets.

Volume I/18
Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-038-4, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1995

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**Volume I/18**

**Index of Scripture**

*Prepared by Michael Dolan*

*(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)*

**Memorandum to Augustine and to Orosius**

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>16:19</th>
<th>5,6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>16:34</td>
<td>5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4-6</td>
<td>9,12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>5,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>3; 5,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>3; 5,5; 5,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>3,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>11,14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:24</td>
<td>6,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>7,8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>5,5; 5,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>6,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Leviticus**

| 1:32-33        | 7,8; 7,8 |
| 1:34           | 5,6     |

**Luke**

| 1:13           | 8,9     |
| 5:26           | 7,8     |
| 8:48           | 9,12    |
| 9:31           | 9,12    |

**John**

| 1:8            | 7,8     |
| 5:26           | 7,8     |

**Romans**

| 8:20           | 3       |
| 10:4           | 7,8     |
| 12:13          | 11,14   |
| 16:27          | 10,13   |

**2 Corinthians**

| 11:10          | 4       |

**Colossians**

| 1:16           | 11,14   |

**2 Timothy**

| 1:9            | 5,6     |

**Titus**

| 1:2            | 5,6     |

**Arianism And Other Heresies**
Volume I/18

Index

Prepared by Joseph Sprug

Each Work in this volume is indexed separately

Arianism And Other Heresies
Arianism And Other Heresies

Memorandum to Augustine and to Orosius

goodness of God, 8,9
made by will of God, 3,3
made of nothing, 2,2; 3,3
matter, 2,2
wisdom of God, 8,9
David, King, 7,8
devil, 5,5; 9,12
eternal fire, 5,5; 5,6; 6,7
eternity, 5,5; 5,6; 6,7
kingdom of Christ, 7,8
faith: measure granted to each, 11,14
fire, 6,7; 8,11
God:
  See also creation
  foreknowledge, 8,9
  justice, 10,13
  goodness: created world, 8,9
gospel: truth in, 9,12
  growth: awareness of, 8,11
  heaven: new heaven, new earth, 8,10
human beings:
  all creation present in each, 8,11
  creation groans and suffers pain
  in, 8,11
  filth; sin, 9,12
human body:
  formed from earth, 8,11
  made of mud, 3,3
Jacob, 7,8
Jesus Christ:
  accused: you have a devil, 9,12
  king of all ages, 7,8
  kingdom handed over to his Father, 7,8
teacher, 11,14
Job: sin; truth, 9,12
justice: highest; wisdom, 10,13
justification, 9,12
kingdom of Christ, 7,8
knowledge:
  how to learn; concern, 11,14
Manichees, 1,1; 4,4
material cause, 3,3
moon, 9,12

To Orosius in Refutation of the Priscillianists and Origenists

Numbers refer to section numbers

age: eternity; Greek terms, 5,5
angels, 8,9; 8,10; 8,11
heavenly array: choirs, 11,14
creation:
  all present generically in each human being, 8,11

Volume I/18
movements, 8,11
new heaven, new earth, 8,10
Origen, 4,4
perfection: equality with angels, 8,10
Peter, Saint, 9,12
Priscillianists, 1-11
purification:
  resurrection of spiritual bodies, 8,10
resurrection of the body:
  all creation will be set free, 8,11
Sabellius, 4,4
senses, 8,11
sinner: justified, 9,12
soul:
  changeable, 1,1
  immortal, 1,1
  made from nothing, 2,2
originally the nature of God, 2,2
particle or emanation from God, 2,2; 4,4
stars, 8,11; 9,12
suffering: groans of creation, 8,11
Trinity: Origen on, 4,4
truth:
  Christ the teacher, 11,14
  Gospel; Job, 9,12
will:
  sufficient, when power is supreme, 3,3
will of God:
  not dust or mud, 3,3
  soul created by, 2,2; 3,3
wisdom:
  God’s creation, 8,9
  highest justice, 10,13
worm, 6,7
Index from
Against Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani
(Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revisions I, 22 (21)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Old Testament</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New Testament</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:22-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:1,3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:1-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128:2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:11-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamentations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Manichean Debate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:29-30</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10-11</td>
<td>15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td>15, 1; 15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12-14</td>
<td>15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16-20</td>
<td>15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24-26</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:22</td>
<td>7, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:41</td>
<td>7, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:3-9</td>
<td>3, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:19</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:29</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:13</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>12, 4; 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-3</td>
<td>16, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15</td>
<td>16, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41-42</td>
<td>17, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:26</td>
<td>12, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:38</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17-18</td>
<td>13, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>13, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:29-30</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>19, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:59-60</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:52</td>
<td>16, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>9, 2; 20, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>13, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:29-30</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:34</td>
<td>14, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:32</td>
<td>13, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10-11</td>
<td>13, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>5, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>9, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>2, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37-38</td>
<td>9, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37a</td>
<td>9, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37b</td>
<td>9, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:38</td>
<td>9, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:46</td>
<td>5, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:38</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>5, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>9, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>9, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:25</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>28, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>7, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>16, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:22-23</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1-23</td>
<td>14, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>14, 1; 15, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>17, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>3, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>3, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19-19</td>
<td>16, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>16, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>15, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19-31</td>
<td>14, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>14, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>14, 1; 14, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7</td>
<td>5, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11-12</td>
<td>3, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-32</td>
<td>17, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:39-50</td>
<td>12, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50</td>
<td>12, 1; 12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:51-52</td>
<td>12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>12, 4; 12, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>7, 4; 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>9, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10-11</td>
<td>16, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>16, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>5, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-19</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>3, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>3, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>3, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33</td>
<td>3, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colossians</th>
<th>1 Timothy</th>
<th>1 Thessalonians</th>
<th>2 Timothy</th>
<th>Hebrews</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>3:8-9</td>
<td>4:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>5:19-20</td>
<td>5:17-19</td>
<td>16, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani

The numbers in the index refer to chapters

Abraham, Revisions I, 22(21):3; 5(1); 7(2); 16(1); 16(3); 28(2)
abstinence: in food and drink, 14(1)
Acts of the Apostles, 17(5)
Adam, 3(1–2); 9(1–2); 21
adultery, 3(2)
Amos, the prophet, 26
angels:
God appearing through, 9(1–2)
seraphim, 28(1)
wicked, 17(4); 27
animals:
animal, body as, 12(4)
clean vs. unclean, 14(2)–15(3)
and eating meat, 14(1)–15(3)
human soul thought to return in, 12(1)
ant, 24
apocryphal scriptures, 17(2); 17(5)
apostles, 17(5)
See also disciples; Paul; individual names
Christ’s directive to, 20(1)
as preachers of the gospel, 20(1)

Babylonian captivity, 7(2)
barrenness:
of the earth, 4
of the fig tree, 4
beatitudes, 27; 28(2)
_beggers, 17(4)
belly, empty, 25
Belshazzar, King, 28(2)
blessings:
promised to Jews, 18(1–2)
spiritual and eternal, 18(1)–20(3)
temporal, 18(1)–20(3)
_blood:
avoiding eating, 14(1)–15(3)
as the soul, 12(1–3)
body, bodies:
as animal, 12(4)
flesh, destruction of, 17(2)
_flesh and blood shall not possess the kingdom of God, 12(1)
killing, 12(1)
resurrection of, 12(4)–12(5)
body of Christ, 12(4)
bread:

for beggars, 17(4)
body of Christ, 12(4)
_breasts, dry, 25

Cain, 4; 9(1)
children
_blessings on, 23
honoring parents, 6–7(1)
punished for sins of parents, 7(1–2)
punishment of, 17(2)
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christians
See also specific topics
_blessings promised to, 18(1–2)
and the Sabbath, 2(2)

Cicero, 11
circumcision, 16(1–3)
clean of heart, 28(2)
Commandments, Ten. Revisions I, 22(21):2
Jesus as praising, 16(1)
the two commandments to love God and neighbor, Revisions I, 22(21):2

1 Corinthians, Book of, 14(3)
creation, 1–5(2)
seventh day of, 2(1)
the Word, as ascribed to, 1
cross, taking up and following the Lord, 21
crucifixion, 21
cruelty: justice vs., 7(1)

Daniel, 28(2)
David, 7(2); 17(6)
days, observances of, 16(3)
death:
Christ as putting death to death, 21
let the dead bury their dead, 6
as punishment, 17(3); 22
demons, 14(3)
and loving one’s enemies, 17(1)

Deuteronomy, Book of, 12(1); 13(1); 14(1); 14(3); 16(1); 18(1); 21
See also specific topics
death, 17(2); 21
handing man over to, 17(2)
dietary beliefs and practices:
clean vs. unclean food, 14(2)–15(3)
eating meat, 14(1)–15(3)
The Manichean Debate

of Manichean Elect and Hearers, 15(2)
overeating, refraining from, 14(1)
disciples
See also apostles; individual names
at Emmaus, 13(3)
divorce, 3(2)
dreams, 28(2)
earth:
barrenness of, 4
as God’s footstool, 10
Easter, 16(3)
Elect, Manichean, 15(2)
Elijah, 17(5); 28(2)
Emmaus, 13(3)
enemies:
God as punishing, 7(1)
God’s promise of poverty to, 19(1)
killing, 17(1–6)
love for, 5(1); 17(1–6)
eternal fire. See hell
eunuchs, 3(4); 23
Eve, 3(1–2); 9(1–2); 21
evil
See also sin
bad tree/bad fruit, Revisions I, 22(21):4
God and, 26
I make peace and I create evils, 27
punishment and, 26
repaying, 8; 17(4–5); 17(5)
Exodus, Book of, 6–7(1); 8; 17(1)
eye for an eye, 8
eyes. See vision
Ezekiel, the prophet, 7(2); 27
family
See also children; parents
leaving, for sake of the kingdom of
heaven, 3(1–3)
Father, God as. See God the Father
father and mother. See parents
feast days, 16(3)
fighting: Old Testament and, 20(3)
fig tree, 4
fire, 13(3); 17(5)
in the bush, Moses as seeing, 28(2)
Every tree that does not bear good fruit
will be cast into the fire, 26
I am a devouring fire, 13(3)
fire, eternal. See hell
flesh
See also body
destruction of, 17(2)
flesh and blood shall not possess the
kingdom of God, 12(1); 12(4)
food. See dietary beliefs and practices
forgiveness of others, 7(1–8)
seventy times seven, 7(1)
fornication, 5(2); 11
free choice. See will
fruit, good and bad, Revisions I, 22(21):4; 26
Galatians, the, 25
Genesis, Book of, 1–5(2)
gluttony, 14(1)
God
See also specific topics
authority of, 17(5)
as creator, 1
goodness of, 7(3); 13(4); 22
humans as in image of, 5(1)
I am a devouring fire, 13(3)
inaccessible light, dwelling in, 10
as invisible, 28(1)
as jealous, 7(1); 7(4); 11; 13(1–4)
as loved for temporal gifts, 20(2)
love for, Revisions I, 22(21):2
mercy of, 11
seeing God, 28(1–2)
as seen by humans, 9(1–2)
severity of, 22
You have never heard his voice, 9(2)
gods, alien
See also idols
worship of, 11
good:
good tree producing good fruit, Revisions I, 22(21):4; 26
goodness of God, 13(4); 22
Old Testament, 7(3)
gospel: apostles as preachers of, 20(1)
grace, Revisions I, 22(21):4
healing on the Sabbath, 22
Hearers, Manichean, 15(2)
heaven, 10
hell, 26; 27
son of hell, Revisions I, 22(21):3
heretics: fire prepared for, 13(3)
Holy Spirit, 1; 17(5); 28(2)
Hosea, 25
humans
See also specific topics
God as seen by, 9(1–2)
in image of God, 5(1)
ids, 11; 13(2)
-idol-worshippers, punishment of, 17(2)
and loving one’s enemies, 17(1)
meat offered to, 14(2–3)
illosion: as punishment, 17(3)
image of God, 5(1)
images, likenesses and, 13(1)
invisible things, 28(1–2)
Isaac, 5(1)
Isaiah, Book of, 3(4)
Isaiah, the prophet, 27–28(1)
The Manichean Debate

vision of, 28(1–2)

Jacob, 9(1)

jealousy:
  God as jealous, 7(1); 7(4); 11; 13(1–4)
  justice and, 11
  in marriage, 11
  Jerusalem, temple in, 10

Jesus Christ, 21
  See also specific topics and events
  genealogy of, 7(2)
  as putting death to death, 21
  resurrection of, Revisions I, 22(21):3
  as Son of God, 1; 9(2)
  as Word of God, 9(2)

Jews
  See also specific topics
  blessings promised to, 18(1–2)
  blood, as forbidden to eat, 12(1)
  “brood of vipers,” as called, 5(1)
  and the Sabbath, 2(2)
  as sons of Abraham, Revisions I, 22(21):3
  You have never heard his voice, 9(2)

John, Gospel of, 13(2)
  John the evangelist, 1; 13(2)

judge, unjust, parable of, 17(4)

justice
  See also punishment
  cruelty vs., 7(1)
  peace and, 20(3)
  and punishment, 7(1)
  language: as unworthy of God, 13(2)
  law. See Commandments, Ten
  Lazarus and the rich man, parable of, 19(1)
  Leviticus, Book of, 20(1)
  light: inaccessible, God as dwelling in, 10
  likenesses and images, 13(1)
  Lord’s Day, 16(3)

love:
  for enemies, 5(1); 17(1–6)
  for God and neighbor, Revisions I, 22(21):2
  punishment, imposing with love, 17(2–5)
  for spouse, 3(1–3)

Mamre, oak of, 28(2)

Man. See humans

Manicheans. See specific topics

marriage, 3(1–3)
  after resurrection, 25
  blessings on, 23
  Christ’s union with church, as illustrating, 3(3)
  divorce, 3(2)
  jealousy in, 11
  leaving, for sake of the kingdom of heaven, 3(1–3)
  love for spouse, 3(1–3)

New Testament
  See also specific topics
  Old Testament, as opposed to (Manichean charge), 7(1); 13(4)
  Old Testament, harmony with, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 19(2); 27

non-believers: marriage to, 3(2)

oak of Mamre, 28(2)

Old Testament
  See also specific Books and topics
  and God’s goodness, 7(3)
  New Testament, as opposed to (Manichean charge), 7(1); 13(4)
  New Testament, harmony with, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 19(2); 27

pagans, 13(2); 14(3)

parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 19(1)
  parable of the unjust judge, 17(4)
  Paraclete, 17(5)
  paralytic, daughter of, 17(5)

parents
  children punished for sins of, 7(1–2)
  honoring, 6–7(1)

passivi, 24

Paul, the apostle, 10; 24
  See also specific topics
  teaching and example of, 20(1)
  peace:
    Blessed are the peacemakers, 27
    God and, 20(3)
    I make peace and I create evils, 27
    and justice, 20(3)

Peter, 15(2); 17(5); 28(2)

Pharisees, 16(1)

poor
  See also beggars
  God promising to enemies, 19(1)

prudence, 24

poor in spirit, blessedness of, 19(1)

possessions (riches), 18(1)–20(3)

Proverbs 3:13-15 woman, 19(2)

prudence, 19(2)

punishment, 7(1–4)
  of children by parents, 17(2)

Your wife is like a flourishing vine, 23

meat, 14(1)–15(3)
  offered to idols, 14(2–3)

meek, the, 19(1)

mercy of God, 11

miracles, 22

money-changers, 10

Moses, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 3(2); 9(1); 21; 25; 28(2)

Nebuchadnezzar, King, 28(2)

neighbor: love for, Revisions I, 22(21):2

New Testament
  See also specific topics
  Old Testament, as opposed to (Manichean charge), 7(1); 13(4)
  Old Testament, harmony with, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 19(2); 27

see: non-believers
The Manichean Debate

children punished for sins of parents, 7(1–2)  
dead as, 17(3); 22  
and evil, 26  
handing man over to Satan, 17(2)  
of idol-worshipers, 17(2)  
posing with love, 17(2–5)  
justice and, 7(1); 26  
weakness, illness, and death as, 17(3)  

repenance, 7(3)  
resurrection of Christ, Revisions I, 22(21):3  
resurrection of the body, 12(4–12(5)  
murder and, 25  
retaliation/revenge, 8; 17(4–5)  
riches, 18(1)–20(3)  
as given to friends of God, 19(1–2)  
placing hope in riches vs. in God, 20(2)  
rich man and Lazarus, parable of, 19(1)  
rock: Christ as, 12(5)  
Romans, Book of, 14(2)  
Sabbath, 2(1)–2(2); 16(1); 16(3)  
Christ healing man’s withered hand on, 22  
working on, 22  
sacrifice, meat as, 14(2–3)  
Sarah, Revisions I, 22(21):2  
Satan, See devil  
scribes and Pharisees, 16(1)  
scriines  
See also New Testament; Old Testament specific Books  

apocryphal, 17(2); 17(5)  
word of God, storing for times of adversity, 24  
seed, lifeless, 25  
saraphim, 28(1)  
Sermon on the Mount, Revisions I, 22(21):2; 8; 27; 28(2)  
serpent, 9(1–2); 21  
seventy times seven, 7(1); 7(5)  
sickness: as punishment, 17(3)  
sight, seeing:  
and invisible things, 28(1–2)  
seeing God, 9(1–2); 28(1–2)  
sin  

See also punishment; repentance  
children punished for sins of parents, 7(1–2)  

I do not want the death of the sinner as much as that he should return and live, 27  
Solomon, 24  
Son, Jesus Christ as. See under Jesus Christ: as Son  
“sons,” the term, Revisions I, 22(21):3  
soul, souls:  

blood as, 12(1–3)  
human, as returning in animals, 12(1)  
and killing of body, 12(1)  
Stephan, 9(1)  
tabernacle, 10  
temple in Jerusalem, 10  
temporal blessings, 18(1)–20(3)  
Ten Commandments. See Commandments, Ten Thomas, 17(2); 17(5)  
Timothy, First Letter to, 20(2)  
tomorrow, concern about, 4; 24  
transfiguration, the, 28(2)  


Cursed is everyone who has been hanged on a tree, 21  
Every tree that does not bear good fruit will be cut down, 26  
fig tree, 4  
good and bad, Revisions I, 22(21):4; 26  

oak of Mamre, 28(2)  
uprooting, 26  
withering of, by Christ’s word, 22  
Trinity, 1  
Tully (Cicero), 11  
unbelievers. See non-believers  
unjust judge, parable of, 17(4)  
vagrants, 24  
vengeance, 8; 17(4–5)  
vipers, 5(1)  
vision, visions, 28(1–2)  
war, 20(3)  
weakness: as punishment, 17(3)  
wealth. See riches  
wedding, man not dressed for, 13(4)  

widows, 24  
wife  
See also marriage  
blessings on, 23  
loving, 3(1–3)  
Your wife is like a flourishing vine, 23  
will, free: changing for the better, Revisions I, 22(21):4  

dine, 14(1)–15(3)  
wisdom, 19(2)  
Word of God, 9(2)  
See also Jesus Christ  
creation ascribed to, 1  

Let there be made, 1  
word of God, storing for times of adversity, 24  

See also scriptures  
words: as unworthy of God, 13(2)  
word:  
end of, 7(2)  
renouncing things of, 18(1–2)  

worry, 4; 24  
writing on the wall, 28(2)  

Volume I/19
Index from
Against Felix, a Manichee
(Contra Felicem Manichaeum)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantum Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19   Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Volume I/19

**Index of Scripture**

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

*Answer to Felix, a Manichean*

Revisions II, 8 (35)

## New Testament

**John**

8:36

## Old Testament

**Genesis**

1:1-2 I, 17

**Exodus**

3:14 II, 18

**Deuteronomy**

21:23 II, 10; II, 11

**Psalms**

34:6 II, 7

116:11 I, 6

## New Testament

**Matthew**

5:8 II, 7

7:17 II, 2

9:13 II, 8

12:33 II, 4

13:27-28 II, 2

25:34 II, 2; II, 8

25:41 II, 8

25:41a II, 2

25:41b II, 2

**Luke**

24:36 I, 3

24:37-49 I, 3

**John**

1:1-2 II, 9

1:5 II, 15

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>1:14</th>
<th>II, 9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>I, 3; I, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:13</td>
<td>I, 2; I, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acts</th>
<th>1:1-26</th>
<th>I, 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:1-11</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Romans</th>
<th>5:20</th>
<th>II, 11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>II, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>II, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
<th>13:8-12</th>
<th>I, 11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>I, 9; I, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
<th>4:4</th>
<th>II, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:7-8</td>
<td>II, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Galatians</th>
<th>3:13</th>
<th>II, 10; II, 11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Timothy</th>
<th>1:17</th>
<th>II, 7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:1-6</td>
<td>I, 7; I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>II, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 John</th>
<th>1:5</th>
<th>II, 15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer to Felix, a Manichean

The first number in the index refers to a book
The number after the colon refers to a section

| Acts of Leutius | II:6 |
| Acts of the Apostles | I:4; II:6 |
| Adam | II:8, 11 |
| angel of Satan | II:2 |
| apocryphal writings | II:6 |
| apostles | I:4 |
| See also Paul; individual names |
| faith of | I:12 |
| Mani and | I:7, 12 |
| Mani’s claim of apostleship | I:1, 8, 12–13, 16 |
| astronomy | I:9–10 |
| beginning, middle, and end | I:6, 9–10, 12 |
| believers. See Christians |
| birth: |
| in the flesh | I:18 |
| what is born comes to an end | I:18 |
| bishops | I:12 |
| bright and blessed land | I:17–19 |
| Catholics: Mani as leading astray | I:8 |
| change: humans’ capacity for | I:19 |
| Christ. See Jesus Christ |
| Christian doctrine |
| See also specific topics |
| Mani and | I:10 |
| Christians | I:12 |
| power of | I:12 |
| conflict. See war |
| crucifixion of Christ; Manichean teaching regarding | II:10, 17 |
| cruelty | II:8 |
| darkness, land of, Manichean concept of | I:19 |
| God and | I:19; II:1 |
| part of God as mingled with | I:2–3, 7; II:11, 15–17, 19, 21 |

| war with | I:19; II:1 |
| day and night | I:9–10 |
| death: |
| Christ as freeing us from | I:19; II:11 |
| what is born comes to an end | I:18 |
| demons: teachings of | I:7–8 |
| devil: |
| angel of Satan | II:2 |
| as seducer of man | II:6 |
| as sinner by will | II:6 |
| dietary beliefs and practices: clean or unclean food | I:7–8, 12 |
| disciples. See apostles; Pentecost; individual names |
| earth | I:17 |
| emperors | I:12 |
| end time | I:6 |
| eternal: God as | I:18 |
| evil |
| See also sin |
| good, mingling with (Manichean concept) | I:6 |
| evil nature vs. good nature (Manichean concept) | II:2 |
| faith: of apostles | I:12 |
| Father, God as. See under God: as Father |
| fear | I:12 |
| Felix, Revisions | II, 8(35) |
| fighting. See war |
| crucifixion of Christ; Manichean teaching regarding | II:10, 17 |
| cruelty | II:8 |
| darkness, land of, Manichean concept of | I:19 |
| God and | I:19; II:1 |
| part of God as mingled with | I:2–3, 7; II:11, 15–17, 19, 21 |
| war with | I:19; II:1 |
| day and night | I:9–10 |
| death: |
| Christ as freeing us from | I:19; II:11 |
| what is born comes to an end | I:18 |
| demons: teachings of | I:7–8 |
| devil: |
| angel of Satan | II:2 |
| as seducer of man | II:6 |
| as sinner by will | II:6 |
| dietary beliefs and practices: clean or unclean food | I:7–8, 12 |
| disciples. See apostles; Pentecost; individual names |
| earth | I:17 |
| emperors | I:12 |
| end time | I:6 |
| eternal: God as | I:18 |
| evil |
| See also sin |
| good, mingling with (Manichean concept) | I:6 |
| evil nature vs. good nature (Manichean concept) | II:2 |
| faith: of apostles | I:12 |
| Father, God as. See under God: as Father |
| fear | I:12 |
| Felix, Revisions | II, 8(35) |
| fighting. See war |
| crucifixion of Christ; Manichean teaching regarding | II:10, 17 |
| cruelty | II:8 |
| darkness, land of, Manichean concept of | I:19 |
| God and | I:19; II:1 |
| part of God as mingled with | I:2–3, 7; II:11, 15–17, 19, 21 |

The Manichean Debate
Genesis, Book of, I:17  
goats, II:2  

God  
See also specific topics  
as dwelling in inaccessible light, II:7  
as eternal, I:18  
as Father, I:18  
as immutable, II:18  
as incorruptible, II:1, 7, 14  
as just, II:4  
Manichean concept of, II:9  
opposition to, I:19  
good:  
all natures as (Augustine), II:3  
evil, mingling with (Manichean concept), I:6  
good nature vs. evil nature (Manichean concept), II:2  
habits, II:8  

Holy Spirit, I:2  
See also Paraclete; specific topics  
fear and, I:12  
Manicheans and, I:5–6  
Paul and, I:7–10, 12  
and truth, I:10, 14  
humans  
See also specific topics  
change, capacity for, I:19  
as creatures God has made, II:16–21  
as not part of God, II:16–21  

incorruptibility of God. See under God: as incorruptible  
intricacy, sexual. See sexual intercourse  

Jesus Christ, II:8  
See also specific topics  
crucifixion of, Manichean teaching regarding, II:10, 17  
as freeing us from death, I:19; II:11  
as freeing us from sin, I:19; II:8, 9, 11  
God sending, reason for, II:9–11  
John, Gospel of, I:2  

Judas, I:4  
justice: God as just, II:4  

knowledge:  
as partial in this life, complete in the next, I:11  
worldly, I:14  

law: Christ as freeing us from, I:10–11  

laws, imperial, I:12  

Leutius, Acts of, II:6  

lies, lying: Every human being is a liar, I:6–7  
light, inaccessible, God as dwelling in, II:7  
light, land of, I:17–19  

Luke, Gospel of, I:3  

Mani  
See also specific topics  
Augustine and Felix anathematizing, II:22  
and Christian doctrine, I:10  
claim of apostleship, I:1, 8, 12–13, 16  

Paraclete, as believed to be, I:9–10, 12  
writings of, I:5–6, 14 (see also specific titles)  
Manicheans  
See also specific topics and teachings, e.g., souls: as parts of God  
error of, truth vs., II:13  

God, concept of, II:9  
two natures, concept of, I:17; II:2  
marriage: Manichean prohibition of, I:7–8, 12  
martyrdom, I:12  
Matthias, I:4  
mercy of God, II:18  
moon, I:9–10, 12  
nations of light and darkness. See darkness, 
land of; light, land of  
natures: all natures as good (Augustine), II:3  
natures, two, II:2  
original sin, II:8, 11  

Paraclete  
See also Holy Spirit  
Mani as believed to be, I:9–10, 12  
Paul, the apostle, I:13  
See also specific topics  
as forseeing Manichean heresy, I:7  
and the Holy Spirit, I:7–10, 12  

Pentecost, I:5–6  
Peter, I:12  
prophecies: We know in part and we prophecy in part, I:11–12  
punishment, II:8  
repentance, II:11  

Satan. See devil  

scriptures  
See also specific topics  
apocryphal writings, II:6  
sexual intercourse, I:7–8, 12  
sin, II:18  
See also punishment; repentance  
Christ as freeing us from, I:19; II:9, 11  
the devil as sinner by will, II:6  
and evil nature (Manichean concept), II:3  
and free choice, II:3–5  
original, II:8, 11  
souls, II:18  
as mutable, II:18  

Volume I/19
as parts of God (Manichean concept), II:16–21
stars, I:14
sun, I:9–10, 12

time:
beginning, middle, and end, I:6, 9–10, 12
end time, I:6
before good and evil were mingled, I:6
Timothy, First Letter to, I:7–8
Treasury, The (Mani), I:14; II:4
trees, two, II:2, 4

Holy Spirit and, I:10, 14
and Paul's promise, I:13
vs. error of Mani, II:13
two natures, Manichean concept of, I:17; II:2
vessel, emptying, I:13
war: with nation of darkness, I:19; II:1
will. See free choice
wisdom of the flesh, II:2
Word of God, II:9
See also Jesus Christ
worldly knowledge, I:14
Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean

A Letter of Secundinus, a Manichean, to Augustine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>10:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47:29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>Ephesians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>6:12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Manichean Debate
# The Manichean Debate

*Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean*

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:2-3</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>149:5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:31</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:27</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts</td>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:3-4</td>
<td>10, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:15:23</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:35</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:51</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>10, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:1-4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>4:3-4</td>
<td>26, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Volume I/19*
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean

The numbers in the indexes refer to sections

A Letter of Secundinus, a Manichean, to Augustine

Academics, the, 3
Aeneid (Virgil), 3
Amorites, 3
Anicii, the, 3
Augustine as former Manichean Hearer, 3; 5
barrenness: of Sarah, 3
Cicero, 3
Dares and Entellus, 3
darkness, land of (evil nature), 6
devil, 4
disciples. See individual names
Elect, Manichean, Revisions II, 10(37)
Entellus, Dares and, 3
eternal fire. See hell
evil, 1
evil nature, Manichean belief in, 6
fire, eternal. See hell
forgiveness of sin, 2
fornication, 3
goats, 2
Hannibal, 3
Hebrews, writings of, 3
Hebrews, writings of, 3
Hearers, Manichean:
Augustine as former, 3; 5
Secundinus as, Revisions II, 10(37)
secundinus as, Revisions II, 10(37)
hell, 1–2

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

Hortensius (Cicero), 3
Incarnation, the, 5
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse

Jacob, 3
Jesus Christ, 4
Judas, 4

lions, 3

Manicheans
See also Elect: Hearers; specific topics
Augustine as former, 3; 5
two natures, belief in, 5–6
Mithridates, 3

natures, two, Manichean belief in, 5–6
Noah, 3

pancarp, 3
Peter, 4
princes and powers, 1
Punic nation, 2

reincarnation, 5
repentance, 2
Roman history, 3

Sarah, 3
Satan, 4
savior, Manichean concept of: as spiritual, vs. someone who suffered in the flesh, 4
Secundinus, Revisions II, 10(37)
sexual intercourse, 3
sin, 2
skeptics, 3
soul, 2
substances. See natures

Thomas, 4
two natures, Manichean belief in, 5–6

vices, 2
Virgil, 3
virgin, foolish, 2
virtues, 2

wedding banquet, man driven from, 2
wickedness. See evil; sin

Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean

Abraham, 23
adultery, 26(1)
angel, angels, 19(2)
Jacob wrestling with, 23
animals, 19(2)
on the ark, 23
clean or unclean, 22–23
apostles. See Paul; individual names
ark, animals on, 23
Augustine: as former Manichean Hearer, 1–2

beauty: temporal, 15
blasphemies of Manicheans, 20(1)
body:
mortality of, 10(2)
soul as higher than, 16
Busirides, 26(1)

Catholic faith, 5
change, 6
children: conception of, 21
Christ. See Jesus Christ
Christians, Christian beliefs. See specific topics, e.g., free choice
conception, 21
consent of soul to evil, 13–19(2)
and persuasion, 17
creation:
as good, 10(1)
as made out of nothing, 8; 10(1)
creator. See under creatures: vs. creator (below); God
creatures:
human beings as, 26(2)
as mutable, 9
soul as mutable creature, 8–9
as tending toward nothing when they sin, 8
vs. creator, 5; 7; 17

Daniel, 20(2)
deceit, deception, 10(1)
devil, 17; 24
dietary beliefs and practices, Manichean, 22

Elect, Manichean, Revisions II, 10(37); 22
evil
See also sin
Christian vs. Manichean concepts, 12
as failure on the part of a substance, 14–15
good nature as becoming evil by sinning, 18
Manicheans as locating good in evil and evil in good, 20(1)
in mutable will vs. immutable nature, 2

Volume I/19
as not an evil nature or the love of an evil nature, 18
as not a substance, 14
of sin, 19
soul as consenting to, 13–19(2)
as substance (Manichean concept), 12
whole of, 19(2)
evil nature or substance, Manichean concept of, 9; 20(1–2)
soul and, 9
failure, 11
evil as failure on the part of a substance, 14–15
and punishment, 15
and sin, 15
voluntary and other, 15
Father, God as
See also God
immutability of, 9
firstborn: Christ called by Secundinus, 5–7
fornication, 21
Foundation, The (Mani), 3; 20(1–2)
free choice:
and consent, 13–19(2)
evil found in mutable will vs. immutable nature, 2
sin and (Christian vs. Manichean concepts), 12
Free Will (Augustine), 11
generosity, 10(1)
glory: glory, honor, and peace be to everyone who does good, 2
God
See also specific topics, e.g., creation as highest good, 19(2)
imitation of, 10(1)
as immutable, 9; 19(2); 26(2)
as incorruptible, 19(2)
Manichean concept of, 20(1)–22
nothing as contrary to, 10(1)
substance of, 19(2); 26(2)
good:
creation as, 10(1)
glory, honor, and peace be to everyone who does good, 2
God as highest, 19(2)
Manicheans as locating good in evil and evil in good, 20(1)
good nature: as becoming evil by sinning, 18
greed, 10(1)
happiness, 19(2)
Hearers, Manichean:
Augustine as former, 1–2
Secundinus as, Revisions II, 10(37)
lowest good, 19(2)
honor: and all who do good, 2
Hosea, 21
human beings
See also specific topics, e.g., body, soul
all creation as found in, 8
as mutable creatures, 26(2)
rational creatures, 19(2)
immortality, 10(2)
immutability of God. See under God: as immutable
incest, 26(1)
incorruptibility of God. See under God: as incorruptible
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse.
Jacob, 23
Jesus Christ
See also specific topics
birth of, 9
divine nature of, 5–6
human nature of, 5–6
Secundinus’ claims regarding, 3–11
“spiritual savior,” Manichean concept of, 25
Jews, 26(1)
light, true, 26(2)
light of minds, 2
lights: Christ as “king of all the lights,” 3–11
light vs. darkness. See two substances, Manichean concept of
love:
for creature over creator, 17
for God, 19(2)
loving a good substance wrongly, 16
man. See human beings
Mani, 25
writings of (see specific works)
Manicheans
See also Elect; Hearers; specific topics, e.g., evil
Augustine as former, 1–2
Augustine’s reason for leaving, 1–2
Paul’s predictions regarding, 2
small number of, 26(1)
marrige, 22
Mary, 9; 22
meat, 22
Medea, 26(1)
mortality, 10(2)
mutability, 19(2)
See also specific topics, e.g., creatures, soul
nature (substance)
See also substance
The Manichean Debate

...
Index from
Against the “Foundation Letter” of Mani
(Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti)

Included in book:
The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael Dolan)
The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Answer to the Letter of Mani known as *The Foundation*

### Old Testament

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>38, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>42, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>37, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:39</td>
<td></td>
<td>10, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td></td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td></td>
<td>10, 11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-8</td>
<td>9, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>9, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>37, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24-25</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Manichean Debate

Volume I/19

General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation

The numbers in the index refer to sections

Acts of the Apostles, 6(5); 10(9)
Manichean rejection of, 11(10)
Adam, 14(12); 45(37)
angels, 34(31)
animals:
memory of, 20(17)
sexual practices of, 35(32)
apostles
See also Paul; individual names
apostleship, 7(6)–9(8)
Mani’s claim of apostleship, 6(5)–9(8)
Pentecost, 10(9)–11(10)
ascension of Jesus, 11(10)

beauty, 39(35)
of temporal order, 47(41)–48(42)
Bema, feast of, 9(8)
bipeds, 31(28); 35(32)
birds, 31(28)
body:
nature of God and, 20(15)–22(21)
sensation, 20(16)
and soul, nature of, 20(16)–22(21)
bright and holy land. See nature of God, Manichean beliefs regarding

Carthage, 20(18)

Catholic Church
See also specific topics, e.g., Holy Spirit anthropomorphism of some believers, 25(23)
authority of, 5(4)–6(5)
Christianity: and Catholicism, 5(4)–6(5)
corruption:
evil as, 39(35)–47(41)
nature and, 39(35)
as not from God, 44(38)–46(40)
purpose of, 43(37)–45(39)

darkness
See also darkness, land of (below)
of “nation of darkness” vs. of earth, 35(32)
as not a nature, 34(31)
as one of five natures (see five natures in land of darkness)
darkness, land of
See also light vs. darkness
as corporeal, 22(20)
five natures in, 19(15); 31(28)–37(34); 40(35)
inhabitants as good and from God
(Augustine), 32(29)–38(34)
sides of in relation to land of light, 22(20)–30(27); 49(43)
death, 47(41)
disciples. See apostles; Pentecost
dreams, 20(17)
elements, five. See five natures in land of darkness
Epicurus, 20(18)

Evie, 14(12)
evil
See also corruption, sin as corruption, 39(35)–47(41)
God and, 41(36)
I make good things and create evil ones,
45(39)
as not a nature/substance, 29(27); 41(36); 49(43)
as opposed to nature, 41(36)
evil land. See darkness, land of
feast days, 9(8)
fire, 33(30)
See also five natures in land of darkness
fish, 31(28)
five natures or elements in land of darkness, 19(15); 31(28)–37(34); 40(35)
fog. See smoke
Foundation, Letter of (Mani). See Letter of the Foundation

goose, 35(32)

God
See also specific topics, e.g., evil, soul as highest good, 42(37)–43(37); 48(42)
nature of, Manichean beliefs regarding, 20(15)–22(21); 25(24)–27(25); 48(42)–49(43)
natures created by, 42(37)–45(39)
providence, divine, 9(8)
good:
created and uncreated, 34(31)
God as highest, 42(37)–43(37); 48(42)
inhabitants of land of darkness as (Augustine), 32(29)–38(34)
lower goods and higher goods, 34(31)
gospel, 6(5)

Hearers, Manichean, 9(8)
The Manichean Debate

heretics, 35(32)
highest good. See under: God as highest
Holy Spirit, 10(9)—11(10)
See also Paraclete
Catholic scripture regarding, 17(14)
Pentecost, 10(9)—11(10)
promise and coming of, 17(14)
horses, 35(32)
humans
See also specific topics, e.g., soul
as bipeds, 35(32)

immaculate conception, 7(6)—9(8)
intelligence, 20(17)
terco, sexual. See sexual intercourse

Jesus Christ
See also specific topics
ascension of, 11(10)
birth of, 8(7)—9(8)
Manichean beliefs regarding, 9(8)
resurrection of, 11(10)
as Son of God, 7(6)
John, Gospel of, 11(10)

knowledge of truth: Manicheans as
promising, 6(5); 12(11); 14(12); 17(13); 18(14)—19(15)

land of light/land of darkness. See darkness,
land of; light, land of; light vs. darkness
Letter of the Foundation (Mani),
11(10)—16(3); 28(25)

light, land of
See also light vs. darkness, below
creation of, 27(25)
dark wedge as penetrating, 27(25)
sides of land of darkness in relation to,
22(20)—30(27); 49(43)
lit, true, 2(2)
light vs. darkness. Manichean beliefs
regarding, 15(12)—19(15); 19(15); 20(18); 26(24)—27(25)
 lion, 38(34)

Mani
birth of, 8(7)—9(8)
claim to be apostle, 6(5)—9(8)
claim to be Paraclete, 6(5)—9(8)
Letter of the Foundation, 11(10)—16(3);
28(25)

Manicheans
See also specific topics
two substances, belief in (see darkness; light)
Mary, 8(7)—9(8)
memory, 20(17)
nations of light/darkness. See darkness, land
of; light, land of
nature of God, Manichean beliefs regarding,
20(15)—22(21); 25(24)—27(25); 48(42)—49(43)
natures:
and corruption, 39(35)
as created by God, 27(25)
temporal, 47(41)
two, Manichean belief in (see light vs.
darkness)
natures in land of darkness, five. See five
natures in land of darkness
New Testament. See gospel; specific topics

original sin, 43(37)

Paraclete
See also Holy Spirit
Mani claimed to be, 6(5)—9(8)
Passion of Christ, 9(8)
Patticus, 14(12)
Paul, the apostle, 6(5)
See also specific topics
calling and apostleship of, 6(5)—7(6)
peace, 15(11)
Pentecost, 10(9)—11(10)
Peter, 5(4)
phantasms, 35(32); 49(43)
“prince of smoke,” 34(31)
provinces, 19(15)
providence, divine, 9(8)
punishment, 43(37); 47(41)
quadrupeds, 31(28)
rational soul. See soul
resurrection of Jesus, 11(10)
senses, 20(16); 49(43)
serpents, 31(28); 35(32)
sexual intercourse, 8(7)—9(8)
of animals, 35(32)
sin, 47(41)
See also evil
original, 43(37)
smoke, 33(30)—34(31)
See also five natures in the land of
darkness
“prince of smoke,” 34(31)
Son of God, 7(6). See Jesus Christ: as Son of
God
soul:
God and, 43(37)
nature of, 20(16)—22(21)
space: nature of God and, 20(15)—22(21); 48(42)—49(43)
sparrw, 35(32)
substances. See natures

Volume I/19
sun: The sun of justice, 2(2)
temporal natures, 47(41)
beauty of, 47(41)–48(42)
touch (sensation), 20(16)
Trinity, 7(6)–8(7); 34(31)
truth
See also knowledge of truth
claims to, renouncing, 4(3)
difficulty seeing, 2(2)
two substances, Manichean belief in. See
darkness; light
ugliness, 39(35)
virgin birth, the, 8(7)–9(8)
waters, 33(30)
See also five natures in land of darkness
weakness, 39(35)
winds, 33(30)
See also five natures in land of darkness
wisdom, 5(4)
wisdom of God, 7(6)
Word of God, 7(6)
Index from

Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichee

(Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum)

Included in book:

The Manichean Debate

Translators, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicæ et de moribus Manichæorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantium Manichæi discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichæi quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichæum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichæum).

Volume I/19

Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.

New City Press of the Focolare
www.newcitypress.com
# Volume I/19

## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>5:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>7:23-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Galatians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>Ephesians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>2:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>Philippians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# The Manichean Debate
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean

The numbers in the index refer to sections

Adam, 22
adoption, 28–29
angels, Revisions I, 16(15):2
wicked, 23
apostles, 22–23
See also Paul
Augustine: as former Manichean Hearer, I; 3; 37
body, bodies:
  flesh, wisdom of, 21–22
  incorruptible and immortal, Revisions I, 16(15):2
  vs. soul, 14; 17
Catholic faith, the, 9
See also specific topics
children of wrath, 17
Christ. See Jesus Christ
clay pot, 26
commandments, two, Revisions I, 16(15):2
covetousness, 21
darkness vs. light, 14
David, 19
death:
  law of sin and death, 22
  souls as cast down to, 3–4; 6–9
  vs. life, 14
  death and resurrection of Christ, 7–8
devil, 23
disciples, 22–23
Elect, Manichean, 3
Ephesians, Letter to, 16–17
evil
  See also sin; two substances, question of
  as foreign to God, 19–20
  God as not suffering, 15–16
  God as preventing, 15–16
  Manichean vs. Catholic beliefs regarding, 19–20
  source of, Revisions I, 16(15):1; 21
evil substance or nature, Manichean belief in, 21
  See also two substances
sin and, 20
faith:
  Catholic, 9
  of Fortunatus, 3
flesh:
The Manichean Debate

Flesh and blood shall not possess the kingdom of God, 19
wisdom of, 21–22
forgiveness of sin, 16–17
Fortunatus, Revisions I, 16(15):1
faith of, 3
free choice, 15; 17; 20–22
sin and, Revisions I, 16(15):2
soul and, 25
vs. nature, 22

God
See also specific topics
all things as existing in, 4–6
as “cruel” in sending the soul, 28; 32
everything existing as result of command by, 13–14
evil, as not suffering, 15–16
evil, as preventing, 15–16
as incorruptible, 6–7; 9; 11–12; 20
love for, Revisions I, 16(15):2
necessity, as not subject to, 26–28
our reconciliation with, 16–17
God, substance of (Manichean belief), 11
other substance besides, question of, 14
good, substance or nature of. See two substances, question of
gospel, 19
grace, 22

Hearers, Manichean: Augustine as former, 1; 3; 37
Holy Spirit (Paraclete), 23

Incarnation, the, 9
incorruptibility of God, 6–7; 9; 11–12; 20
Jesus Christ, 3; 9; 12
See also specific topics
David as ancestor of, 19
death and resurrection of, 7–8
the Incarnation, 9
Manichean beliefs regarding, 20–21
as redeeming us, 16–17
as savior, 3; 12; 18
as servant, 7

Lambs, 22–23
lies: vs. truth, 14
life: vs. death, 14
light vs. darkness, 14
love: for God and neighbor, Revisions I, 16(15):2

Manicheans, 2
See also Elect; Hearers; specific topics
Augustine as former Hearer, 1; 3

nature: will vs., 22
natures, See substances
neighbor: love for, Revisions I, 16(15):2
original sin, 22
Paraclete, 23
Paul, the apostle, 19
See also specific topics
penance, 17
Philippians, Letter to, 7
potter, 26
principalities and powers, 22–23
punishment for sin, Revisions I, 16(15):2; 15; 20
repentance, 20
resurrection of Christ, 7–8
Romans, Letter to, 19
savior, 3; 12; 18
See also Jesus Christ
servanthood of Christ, 7
sin
See also evil; forgiveness; free choice;
penance; punishment; repentance
evil and, 21
and free choice, Revisions I, 16(15):2; 17
God as not making, 15
law of sin and death, 22
original, 22
soul and (Manichean belief), 21
soul, souls:
angels and, Revisions I, 16(15):2
as cast down to death, 3–4; 6–9
as changeable, 11
Christ’s death and resurrection and, 7–8
and free choice, 25
God as “cruel” in sending, 32
God’s reason for sending, 24–36
as made by God, Revisions I, 16(15):2; 11–14
Manichean beliefs regarding, 20
as needing deliverance, 6; 11
as not God, 11–14
question of, 11–14
sin and (Manichean belief), 21
as sinful, 11
vs. body, 14; 17
substance of God, soul as (Manichean belief).
See God, substance of
substances, two, question of, 14; 18
See also evil substance
trees:
evil tree, 21
good and bad, 22
truth: vs. lies, 14

Volume I/19
Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean

two substances (natures), question of, 14; 18
See also evil substance
will, See free choice
wolves, 22–23

Word of God, 3
See also Jesus Christ
wrath, children of, 17

The Manichean Debate
Index from
On the Catholic and the Manichean Ways of Life
(De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum)

Included in book:

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19
Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

### The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life

#### Revisions I, 6 (7)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:5</td>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>Matthew 6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 4:24</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Ephesians 5:25.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 42:22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Text

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td>I, 10, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:5</td>
<td>I, 30, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 19:18</td>
<td>I, 28, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 4:24</td>
<td>I, 30, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, 23, 43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**The Manichean Debate**
# The Manichean Debate

## Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16:32</td>
<td>I, 23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes 1:2-3</td>
<td>I, 21, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-20</td>
<td>I, 17, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3-4</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>I, 16, 28; I, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18-19</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-20</td>
<td>I, 17, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3-4</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>I, 16, 28; I, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18-19</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>I, 23, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:32</td>
<td>I, 28, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>I, 23, 43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>II, 7, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## New Testament

### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>I, 24, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>I, 18, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I, 17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:26</td>
<td>I, 17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:11</td>
<td>I, 33, 71; II, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:19</td>
<td>I, 26, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:38-37</td>
<td>I, 11, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:39</td>
<td>I, 28, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:42</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:13</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38, 41</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:33, 35, 37</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>II, 7, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>I, 17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>I, 17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>I, 30, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13</td>
<td>I, 24, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:36</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I, 16, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>II, 11, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>I, 13, 22; I, 16, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>I, 25, 47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>I, 24, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-4</td>
<td>I, 23, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 13, 23; I, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>I, 13, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>I, 8, 13; I, 13, 22; I, 26, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>I, 9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:38-39</td>
<td>I, 11, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36a</td>
<td>I, 14, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:36b</td>
<td>I, 14, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>I, 21, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>I, 28, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>I, 26, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>I, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1-15:3</td>
<td>II, 14, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:2-4</td>
<td>I, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>I, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:12-14</td>
<td>I, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>I, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:20</td>
<td>I, 14, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>I, 33, 71; II, 14, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>I, 13, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>I, 29, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>I, 34, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 33, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-7:7</td>
<td>I, 34, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>I, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I, 34, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 34, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4-13</td>
<td>II, 14, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>I, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19-25:28-11:1</td>
<td>II, 14, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>I, 17, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>I, 19, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:47-49</td>
<td>I, 19, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54</td>
<td>I, 30, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>I, 30, 64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>I, 19, 36; I, 34, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>I, 20, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Reference</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians 1:10</td>
<td>I, 21, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>I, 24, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>II, 11, 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians 3:14-19</td>
<td>I, 18, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians 2:8a</td>
<td>I, 21, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8b</td>
<td>I, 21, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy 6:10</td>
<td>I, 19, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus 1:15</td>
<td>I, 33, 71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life

The first number in the Index refers to a Book.
The number after the colon refers to a paragraph

aborted fetuses, II:14(9), 18, 61
abstinence, dietary. See dietary beliefs and practices
abstinence, sexual. See continence
Adam, II:72–73
parents of, Manichean concept of, II:73
agriculture, II:62
animals, II:12–18
See also dietary beliefs and practices; specific animals
killing, Manichean beliefs regarding, II:54(17), 59–64
seed of, II:66
souls of, II:50, 53
wild animals, II:11(8)
apostles
See also Paul
abstinence practiced by, II:28
testimony of, I:12
apples, II:57
ashes, II:12
asp, II:17
Athens, wicked woman of, II:12–13
Augustine:
Ecclesiastes, personal observations of, II:68–74(20)
as former Manichean Hearer, I:33(18); II:25(12), 68–74(20)
authority: reason and, I:3, 24(14), 47
bedbugs, II:63–64
bees, II:63–64
beetles, Revisions I, 6(7):8; II:63
beggars, II:36(15), 53, 58
Bible. See scriptures
birds, II:12–18, 50
bishops, I:69(32)
blasphemy of Manicheans, Augustine on, II:20(11), 23, 27(13)
blindness, II:13–16
body, human:
as afflicting soul, I:40(22)
as creature, I:20(12)
highest good of, I:7(5)
human beings as soul and body, I:52(27)
as humans’ greatest chain, I:40(22)
loving, human habit of, I:40(22)
Manichean beliefs regarding, II:43
medicine for, I:52(27)
presence of God in, II:43
“sensible things,” I:37(20)
and soul, I:6(4)–10
substance of good escaping from, over time (Manichean belief), II:43
branches of trees, II:45
bread, II:12
beggars and, II:36(15), 53
bread, seal of, II:65(18)–66
See also seals, three, Manichean doctrine of

The Manichean Debate
The Catholic Way of Life & the Manichean Way of Life

and faith, levels of, I:17
and God, I:64
good lives lived by, II:75
Manichean recruitment of, I:80
Manicheans as attacking, II:75
Manicheans compared to, I:74(34)–75
misconduct in, I:75–77
and Old Testament, I:16(10)
as true faith, I:32–34
as “truest mother of Christians,” I:62(30)–64
Catholic teaching. See specific topics, e.g., authority: reason and
Catiline, II:28
celibacy. See continence; virginity
chastity. See continence; virginity
children:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
procreation of, I:78; II:65(18)
Chosen ( Elect ), Manichean. See Elect
Christ. See Jesus Christ; specific topics
Christian ideals: in Old and New Testaments, I:2
Christians:
Catholic Church called “truest mother” of, I:62(30)–64
Manicheans called non-Christians, I:62(30)
cities: men and women religious in, I:70(33)
color, II:39–53
Commandments, Ten, I:12
See also law
the first commandment, I:18(11)
to love God and neighbor, I:48(26)–52(27), 56–59(29), 62(30)
common life (monasteries), I:67
concupiscence, I:41
and abstinence from food, II:51
continence. Revisions I, 6(7):1; I:2; II:28
life devoted to, I:64–68
in marriage, I:79
of Paul, I:79
conversion of the nations, I:12
coercion; II:7(5)–8(6), 11(8)
covetousness, I:35(19)–36
creator. God as, II:8(6)–10
different natures/substances, II:3, 8(6)
creatures:
body as, I:20(12)
Holy Spirit as not a creature, I:28
soul as, I:20(12)
curiosity:
about this world, I:38(21)
temperance and, I:38(21)
darkness, II:13–17
darkness, kingdom of, II:5(3), 11(8)–18, 24–25(12)
See also evil nature or substance
deacons, I:69(32)
deafness, II:14(9)
death:
evil and, II:14(9)–15
fear of, I:40(22)
good as fleeing from living things after (Manichean belief), II:45
and love for God, I:18(11)
deceit, deception, I:28
demons: sent into herd of pigs, II:54(17)–55
deterrence: fear and, I:56
dietary beliefs and practices:
gluttony, II:28–30
God as present in foods that are a source of strength, II:48
God’s presence evident from color, smell, taste, II:39–53
good as abandoning picked/shredded fruits and vegetables, II:47
grains and fruit, II:36(26)
idols, meat sacrificed to, II:33–34
Manichean, I:67; II:27(13)–53
Manichean Elect, digestive processes and “divine nature,” II:36(15), 50–52, 60
meat as unclean product of sexual intercourse, I:37, 49
Paul on, II:31(14)–35
temperance and, I:72–73
digestive processes, “divine nature” as escaping through, II:36(15)–53
disciples. See aposles
discipline. See punishment
“divine nature”:
as escaping through digestive processes of the Manichean Elect, II:36(15), 50–52, 60
motion as allowing to escape (Manichean belief), II:46
divine providence. See providence, divine
drinking. See dietary beliefs and practices
drunkenness, II:35
dung, II:12, 63
eagles, II:12–13, 17, 50
earth, II:13
East, the, I:65(31)
Egypt, I:65(31)
elderly, the. See old people
Elect, Manichean
See also specific topics
Augustine’s personal observations (as former Hearer) of, II:68–74(20)
“divine nature” as escaping through digestive processes of, II:36(15), 50–52, 60
grains and fruits to be eaten by, II:36(15)
inconsistency of, II:57–63, 68–74(20)
lust of, II:70–73
quarreling among, II:71

Volume I/19
three seals, house for living life of, II:74(20)

virgin made pregnant, incident of, II:72
elements, II:13–17
eternal fire. See hell
evil, II:2(2), 5(3), 7(5)–8(6)

See also sin
corruption, II:7(5)–8(6), 11(8)
death and, II:14(9)–15
and exile, II:14(9)–15
and fecundity, II:14(9)–15
God and, II:3
as privation, not essence, II:6(4)
root of, I:35(19)–36
and slavery, II:14(9)–15
and sterility, II:14(9)–15
suffering and, II:14(9)
as that which does harm, II:5(3)–6(4), 16
and unsuitability, II:16
weakness and, II:14(9)–15
evil nature or substance, Manichean concept of, II:2(2), 11(8)–18
See also darkness, kingdom of excrement, II:12
exile, II:14(9)–15
eyes:
blindness, I:13–16
weakness of, II:17

faith: levels of, I:17
family: and the Catholic Church, I:63
farmers, II:62
fasting
See also dietary beliefs and practices
by men and women religious, I:70(33)–72
monks and, I:67
passions, subduing through: I:67, 70(33)–72

fear:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
of death, I:40(22)
deterrence and, I:56
of labor and pain, I:40(22)
in the Old Testament, I:56
fecundity: II:14(9)–15
refuses, aborted, II:14(9), 18, 61
fig tree, Christ cursing, II:54(17)
fire, II:11(8)–14(9)
eternal (see hell)
God as consuming fire, I:64
fleas, I:63–64
flesh (meat). See dietary beliefs and practices; meat
flowers, II:39–53
food. See dietary beliefs and practices
fortitude, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:25(15), 40(22)–43
See also power
and love for God, I:46(25)
four cardinal virtues. See virtues, cardinal
free choice, II:9(7)
fruit, II:56(15), 39–53

See also power
and love for God, I:46(25)
four cardinal virtues. See virtues, cardinal
free choice, II:9(7)
fruit, II:56(15), 39–53
gluttony, II:28–30
God
See also knowledge of God; Trinity; specific topics
and the Catholic Church, I:64
as consuming fire, I:64
as creator (see creator, God as)
divine providence, I:11–12; II:9(7)–10
and evil, II:3
as God of Old and New Testaments, I:30(17)
as highest good, I:13(8), 18(11), 24(14), 46(25); II:1(1), 8(6), 24
as immutable, I:21, II:5(3)
as incorruptible, I:25(12)–26
as inviolable, I:25(12)–26
as light, I:18(11)
love for (see love for God)
nature of, I:17; II:1(1), 5(3), 20(11)–26
of Old Testament, I:16(10)
as one, I:24(14)
pursuit of, I:10–11, 18(11)
seeing God, I:11
substance of (see under God: nature of, above)
good
See also highest good
Catholic doctrine and, II:6(4)
good nature or substance, Manichean concept of
See also specific topics
in bodies, as escaping over time, II:43
as fleeing from living things after death, II:45
as leaving picked/stored fruits or vegetables, II:47
good will: and love for neighbor, I:51
gospel, I:13(8)
See also New Testament
grains, II:36(15), 39–53, 66
See also dietary beliefs and practices
grapes, II:44
hands, seal of, II:54(17)
See also seals, three, Manichean doctrine of happiness:
and love for God, I:4–5, 18(11)
and pursuit of God, I:18(11)
harm. See evil
hawks, II:12
Hearers, Manichean
See also Elect; specific topics
The Manichean Debate

Augustine as former, II:25(12), 68–74(20)
and seal of the breast, II:65(18)–66

hermits, I:64–67
highest good

See also God
God as, I:13(8), 18(11), 24(14), 46(25);
II:1(1), 8(6), 24
of a human being, I:4–10, 24(10), 46(25)

Holy Spirit
See also Trinity; specific topics
as God, I:23, 28
and love of God, I:23
as not a creature, I:28

humans
See also specific topics
highest good of, I:4–10, 24(10), 46(25)
and living well, I:46(25)
as soul and body, I:6(4)–10, 52(27)
husbands
See also marriage
and the Catholic Church, I:63

idoles: meat sacrificed to, II:33–34
images: avoiding, I:38(21)
immutable, God as. See under God: as

immutable Incarnation of the Son of God, I:12
innocence, I:54
insects, II:66

intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse

Jesus Christ
See also specific topics and events
the Incarnation, I:12
and love of God, I:22(13)
No one comes to the Father except
through me, I:28
as power of God, I:22(13), 27–28
as truth, I:22(13), 28
as wisdom of God, I:22(13), 27–28, 31
Job, I:42(21)
judgment by God, II:9(7)
justice, I:25(15)
God, in relation to, I:44(24)
and love for God, I:46(25)
wisdom and, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:27

killing of animals. See under animals: killing,
Manichean beliefs regarding
kingdom of darkness. See darkness, kingdom of
kingdom of light. See light, kingdom of
knowledge of (knowing) God, I:24(14)
Manichean error regarding, I:47

labor, I:40(22)

land of darkness/land of light. See darkness,
kingship of; light, kingdom of
law, I:12
See also Commandments, Ten
knowledge of, sin and, I:64
legumes, II:66
lice, II:63–64
light, II:13–17
and evil, I:13
God as, I:18(11)
lights, kingdom of, II:5(3), 11(8)–18
lips, seal of, II:20(11)–23, 27(13)
See also seals, three, Manichean doctrine
of
love:

and the Catholic Church, I:63
chaste, I:41
and covetousness, I:41
for earthly things, I:41
the first commandment, I:18(11)
the four cardinal virtues and, I:25(15)
instruction and, I:56
and lust, I:41
for neighbor, I:48(26)–52(27), 56–59(29),
62(30)
in New Testament, I:56
for others, I:48(26)–52(27)
for self, I:48(26)
v. fear, I:56

love for God, Revisions I, 6(7):5–7; I:13(8)
the cardinal virtues and, I:46(25)
commandments to love God and
neighbor, I:56–59(29); 62(30)
death and, I:19
and enduring all things, I:41–43
and eternal life, I:47
fortitude and, I:46(25)
and human happiness, I:4–5
Jesus Christ and, I:22(13)
justice and, I:46(25)
and love for self and neighbor, I:48(26)
Old and New Testament testimonies to,
I:26(16)–30(17)
in the Old Testament, I:16(10), 57–59(29)
prudence and, I:46(25)
as pursuit of God, I:18(11)
and scriptures, understanding, I:31–32
separation from God as impossible, I:19
the soul and, I:20(12)–21, 64
temperance and, I:46(25)
temperate, I:40(22)
and the Trinity, I:24(14)
and virtue, I:25(15)
lust, I:41
and Adam’s fall, II:72–73
of Manichean Elect, II:70–73

Volume I/19
Volume I/19

Maccabees, mother of, I:43
man. See human person
Mani, II:23, 26, 60
See also specific topics
Manicheans
See also Elect; Hearers; specific topics
assemblies of, as illegal, II:69
Augustine as former, I:33(18); II:25(12)
Augustine’s personal observations (as
former Hearer) of, II:68–74(20)
blasphemy of, II:20(11), 23, 27(13)
Catholics, compared to, I:74(34)–75
Catholics, recruitment of, I:80
corruption of lives lived by, II:68–75
dietary beliefs and practices of (see under
dietary beliefs and practices: of
Manicheans)
ergors regarding morality, II:1(1)–18
ergors regarding specific moral precepts,
II:19(10)–67(19)
evil nature, concept of (see evil nature)
New Testament, acceptance of, I:2,
13(8)–16(10)
non-Christians, described as, I:62(30)
the soul, beliefs regarding, II:22–23
three seals, doctrine of, II:19(10)–67(19)
women violated by, II:70–77
Manichean Way of Life, The (Augustine),
Revisions I, 6(7):8
marriage:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
chastity in, I:79
and procreation, I:78
seal of the breast and, II:65(18)–66
martrydom, I:43
mathematics, II:24
matrimony. See marriage
meals. See dietary beliefs and practices
meat
See also dietary beliefs and practices
athletes as eating, II:48
idols, sacrificed to, II:33–34
killing animals, Manichean beliefs
regarding, II:54(17), 59–64
as unclean product of sexual intercourse,
II:37, 49
medicine:
for the body, I:52(27)
for the soul, I:54–56
men:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
in religious life, I:70(33)–72
mercy:
of God, I:54
the merciful, Revisions I, 6(7):6
for others, I:53–55(28)
miraculous events, I:11
monasteries, I:67
monks, I:67
moon: Manichean worship of, I:37(20)
moral life: Catholic teaching on, I:2
motion: as allowing divine nature to escape
(Manichean belief), II:46
mule: “Even a mule is a virgin,” II:28
muteness, II:14(9)
nations:
and the Catholic Church, I:63
conversion of, I:12
nations of darkness/light. See darkness,
kingsdom of: light, kingdom of
nature of God. See under God: nature of
natures or substances
See also evil nature, Manichean concept
of: specific topics, e.g., good
God as creator of, II:3, 8(6)
two, Manichean concept of, II:36(15)
needy, the, Revisions I, 6(7):6
monks’ care for, I:67
neighbor:
love for, I:48(26)–52(27), 56–59(29),
62(30)
sinning against, I:49
New Testament
See also gospel
and Christian ideals, I:2
interpolations, passages thought by
Manicheans to be, I:61
love for God in, testimonies to,
I:26(16)–30(17)
love in, I:56
Manichean acceptance of, I:2,
13(8)–16(10)
Old Testament in harmony with, I:14(9),
34, 39, 42(21)–45, 56, 64
old people: and the Catholic Church, I:63
Old Testament:
Catholic Church and, I:16(10)
and Christian ideals, I:2
fear in, I:56
God of, I:16(10)
in harmony with New Testament, I:14(9),
34, 39, 42(21)–45, 56, 64
love for God and neighbor in, I:57–59(29)
love for God in, testimonies to,
I:26(16)–30(17)
Manichean rejection of, I:1(1)–2,
13(8)–16(10)
Paul and, I:36
order: corruption and. See corruption
Origen, Revisions I, 6(7):8
ownership of property, I:78
pain. See suffering
parents: and the Catholic Church, I:63
passion, sexual

The Manichean Debate
The Catholic Way of Life & the Manichean Way of Life

See also lust and three seals, Manichean doctrine of, II:19(10) passions: fasting, subduing through, I:67, 70(33)–72 patriarchs, I:12 Paul, the apostle, I:13(8) See also New Testament; specific topics, e.g., dietary beliefs and practices celibate life of, I:79 and the Old Testament, I:36 Pelagians, Revisions I, 6(7):7 people. See human persons perfume. See smell perversion. See corruption philosophy, I:38(21) pigs: demons sent into herd of, II:54(17)–55 plants: Elect as refusing to pull up, II:57 God’s presence in (Manichean belief), II:39–53 poison, II:11(8)–13 poor, the, Revisions I, 6(7):6 monks’ care for, I:67 popular acclaim, I:38(21), 41 power See also fortitude wisdom and, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:27 power and wisdom of God, Christ as, I:22(13), 27–28 priests, I:69(32) princes, heavenly, II:60 captured, in kingdom of darkness, II:60–61 princes of darkness: wine as bile of, II:44, 46, 49 procreation, I:78; II:65(18) property, ownership of, I:78 prophets, predictions of, I:12 prostitutes, I:78 providence, divine, I:11–12; II:9(7)–10 prudence, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:25(15), 45 See also wisdom and love for God, I:46(25) and love for neighbor, I:51 Psalms, the, I:43 punishment: Catholic Church and, I:63 purity, sexual. See continence; virginity reason: authority and, I:3, 24(14), 47 and seeing God, I:11 rebirth, Revisions I, 6(7):7 relationships See also specific relationships and the Catholic Church, I:63 religious life, I:64–71 reproduction. See procreation reverence; and the Catholic Church, I:63 rulers: and the Catholic Church, I:63 sacraments: ministers of, I:69(32) scent. See smell scorpion, II:11(8) scriptures See also New Testament; Old Testament understanding, I:31–32 seals, three, Manichean doctrine of, II:19(10)–67(19) house for Elect to live life of, II:74(20) seeds, I:66 seeing God, I:11 self, love for, I:48(26) “sensible things,” I:37(20) serpent, II:17 sexual abstinence. See continence sexual intercourse: meat as unclean product of, Manichean belief, II:37, 49 seal of the breast and, II:65(18)–66 sexual passion See also lust and three seals, Manichean doctrine of, II:19(10) sight See also blindness; eyes seeing God, I:11 sin See also evil; punishment Adam as made holier after (Manichean belief), II:72–73 cleansing from, Revisions I, 6(7):7 and knowledge of the law, I:64 and love for God, I:64 against neighbor, I:49 slavery, II:14(9)–15 and the Catholic Church, I:63 smell; and evidence of God’s presence, II:39–53 smoke, II:14(9)–17 sobriety, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:27 See also temperance solitude; lives of, Christian, I:64–68 Son of God See also Jesus Christ the Incarnation, I:12 souls of animals, I:50, 53 and body, I:6(4)–10 body as afflicting, I:40(22) change, as subject to, I:21 as corrupted, II:22 as creature, I:20(12) desires and, II:51 discipline for, I:54–56 eating habits and, II:51 and highest good of human being, I:6(4)–10 human beings as soul and body, I:52(27) and love for God, I:20(12)–21, 64

Volume I/19
Manichean claims regarding, II:22–23
taste of food, II:39–53
Ten Commandments. See Commandments, Ten

virgin made pregnant, incident of, II:72

virginity, II:28

virginity: made pregnant, II:72

virtue: and healthy life, I:68, 70(33)–71

virtue: the soul and, I:9(6)–10

virtues, cardinal, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:25(15), 35(19)

See also fortitude; justice; prudence; temperance

“visible things,” I:37(20)

waters, II:13–17

weakness: and evil, II:14(9)–15

wind, II:44

See also dietary beliefs and practices

wisdom, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:32

Wisdom, Book of, Revisions I, 6(7):3

wisdom of God, Christ as, I:22(13), 27–28, 31

wives

See also marriage and the Catholic Church, I:63

women:

and the Catholic Church, I:63

in religious life, I:68, 70(33)–71

violated by Manicheans, II:70–77

world: as constructed from two natures (Manichean belief), II:36(15)

worms, II:28

young people: and the Catholic Church, I:63

Manichean beliefs regarding, II:54(17)–56

Manichean worship of, I:37(20); II:13

manichean symbols, I:30(17)

taste of food, II:39–53

temperance, Revisions I, 6(7):3; I:25(15), 35(19)

See also sobriety

curiosity, I:38(21)

dietary practices, I:72–73

and love for God, I:46(25)

Manichean beliefs regarding, II:54(17)–56

Manichean worship of, I:37(20); II:13

Manichean symbols, I:30(17)
Index from

On the Nature of the Good

*(De natura boni)*

Included in book:

The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: *The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).*

Volume I/19 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
The Nature of the Good

Volume I/19

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

The Nature of the Good

Old Testament

Genesis
2:9 35
Exodus
3:14 19
Proverbs
8:15-16 32
Wisdom
7:24-25 29
7:27 24
11:21 21
Hosea
13:11 32
2 Maccabees
7:28 26

Job
1:12 32

Psalms
15:10 20
101:27-28 24
148:5 26
3:5 31
4:17 26
5:8-10 31
11:22 31
11:33 31
11:36 26; 28
13:1 32
16:27 39

1 Corinthians
12:18 30
12:24-25 30
12:26 30

Ephesians
2:2 33
6:12 33

Colossians
3:25 40

1 Timothy
1:17 24
4:4 34
6:16 39

James
1:17 24

2 Peter
2:4 33

The Manichean Debate
General Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The Nature of the Good

The numbers in the index refer to paragraphs

Adam, 34–35; 46
angels; wicked, 32–33
ape, 14–15
apostles. See Paul; individual names
“beardless youths,” 44
beauty, 18
and the “divine substance,” 44
and form, 23
of higher beings, 14–15
of lesser creatures, 8; 14
and privation, 16
of silence and darkness, 16
belching, 45
birth: and death, 8
body, bodies:
as from God, 30
Hyle (the fashioner of bodies, Manichean), 18
Catholic faith and doctrine, 40
Christ. See Jesus Christ
conception, 44–47
concupiscence, 44–47
corruptible natures. See under natures:
corruptible
corruption, 20
evil as, 4–11
and lesser creatures, 14–15
created universe:
lesser creatures and, 8
limit, form, and order of, 8
creatures
See also specific topics
lesser, 8; 14–15
as made from nothing, 1
as mutable, 1
rational spirits, 7

yet they worshiped...a creature rather than the creator, 36
Daniel, 16
darkness, 15–16
See also under good and evil: Manichean doctrine of
darkness, land of (Manichean concept), 42
dead; birth and, 8
decay, 20
demons. the “divine substance,” 44
devil, 32–33
dietary beliefs and practices, Manichean, 45–47
divine substance,” emission of, 44–47
eating and drinking, Manichean beliefs regarding, 45–47
Elect, Manichean, 45–47
eternal fire. See hell
eternity, 39
Eve, 34–35
evil
See also corruption; good and evil; sin
and harm of others, 32
and lesser creatures, 14–15
limit, form, and order, 4; 37
as making bad use of a good thing, 36–37
Manicheans as locating good in, Revisions II, 9(36); 12; 41
Manicheans as locating in good, Revisions II, 9(36); 12; 41
natures and, 17
one who does harm will suffer the harm he has done, 40
source of, Revisions II, 9(36)
what it is, Revisions II, 9(36); 4–11
evil, nature of (Manichean concept), 42
Evodius, 44
The Manichean Debate

Faith (Evodius), 44
Father, God: Son as equal to, 24
fire, eternal. See hell
flesh (bodily things)
See also body
as from God, 30
food and eating, Manichean beliefs regarding, 45–47
forgiveness of sin, 9; 31
form
See also limit, form, and order
beauty and, 23
good and, 18
and matter, 18
Foundation, The (Mani), 42; 46
free choice, 7; 28
God
See also highest good; specific topics,
e.g., natures: as from God
as eternal, 39
as immortal, 39
as immutable, Revisions II, 9(36); 1; 19;
24; 29; 39
as incorruptible, 6–7; 10; 24; 29; 40
as making all things he did not beget,
26–27
the Son as equal to Father, 24
as source of all good, 3; 12–13; 18
good
See also evil; highest good
form and, 18
God as source of all, 3; 12–13; 18
higher and lower goods, 1
limit, form, and order of, 4–5; 23
Manicheans as locating evil in, Revisions
II, 9(36); 12; 41
Manicheans as locating in evil, Revisions
II, 9(36); 12; 41
natures and, 17
natures as good, 1–3; 19
good and evil:
Manichean doctrine of, 41–47
tree of the knowledge of good and evil,
34–38
good and evil, Catholic and Manichean
accounts of:
rational arguments, appeal to, 1–23
scriptures, appeal to, 24–40
happiness, 8
harm
See also evil
one who does harm will suffer the harm
he has done, 40
hell, 32–33; 38–39
highest good:
God as, Revisions II, 9(36); 1
as incorruptible nature, 6–7
hyle vs. Hyle, 18
immutability of God. See under God: as
immutable
incorruptibility of God. See under God: as
incorruptible
Jesus Christ, 31
See also Son of God; Word of God;
specific topics
Job, 32
John, Gospel of, 25–26
Judas, 32
judgment, 9; 33
justice of God, 9; 31
land of darkness (Manichean concept), 42
Latin pronouns, 27
light, 15–16
See also good and evil: Manichean
discipline of
limit, 21–22
God as highest, 22
small things and, 21
limit, form, and order:
of created universe, 8; 13
everything as having, 3–5
evillain, and, 4; 37
good as not present without, 23
of hell, 38
of lesser creatures, 15
nature as not present without, 23
as said to be bad, 23
of thorns and thistles, 36
lust, 44–47
Maccabees, Book of, 26
Mani. See Manicheans; specific topics and
writings
Manicheans
See also specific topics
beliefs of as error, 48
the Elect, 45–47
good and evil, doctrine of, 41–47
matter and form, 18
nation of darkness. See darkness, land of
nation of darkness (Manichean concept), 42
natures:
corruptible, 4–11; 9
and evil, 17
as from God, Revisions II, 9(36); 1–2; 10;
13; 19; 28
as good, 1–3; 17; 19
incorruptible, 6–7; 11
limit, form, and order of, 3–5; 23; 37
Manichean beliefs regarding, 2

Volume I/19
Volume I/19

The Manichean Debate
Index from

On the Two Souls

(De duabus animabus)

Included in book:

The Manichean Debate

Translations, introductions and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor

This volume contains 8 works: The Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way of Life (De moribus ecclesiae Catholicae et de moribus Manichaeorum), The Two Souls (De duabus animabus), A Debate with Fortunatus, a Manichean (Acta contra Fortunatum Manichaeum), Answer to Adimantus, a Disciple of Mani (Contra Adimantium Manichaei discipulum), Answer to the Letter of Mani known as The Foundation (Contra epistulam Manichaei quam vocant fundamenti), Answer to Felix (Contra Felicem Manichaeum), a Manichean, The Nature of the Good (De natura boni), and Answer to Secundinus, a Manichean (Contra Secundinum Manichaeum).

Volume I/19

Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-247-0, 6 x 9 in., 346 pp., 2006

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Volume I/19

## Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Old Testament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>104:26</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:47</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:47.44</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>11:36</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume I/19

General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Two Souls

The numbers in the index refer to paragraphs

angels, 10(8)
wicked, Revisions I, 15(16):7
Augustine: as former Manichean, 1(1)–8(6); 10(8)–14(10) as having enjoyed arguments with Christians, 11(9)

The Manichean Debate
The Manichean Debate

beauty, 3(2)
body, bodies, *Revisions I*, 15(16):7
bodily things, love for, *Revisions I*, 15(16):8, 20(13)
souls, comparison to, 7(6)–8(6)
brightness. See light

Christians: Augustine as having enjoyed arguments with, 11(9)
death: *Let the dead bury their dead*, 2(2)
evil, 9(7)
See also sin
great goods as in the greatest evil, 16(12)
and sin, 17(12)
souls and, *Revisions I*, 15(16):5–6
source of, 10(8)
evil soul, Manichean belief in
See also good soul
evil by nature vs. by will, 17(12)
existence of, 18(12)–21(13)
as not from God, 16(12)
will of, 16(12)–17(12)

flesh. See concupiscence
fly: soul of, 4(4)
forgiveness of sin, 18(12)
free choice. See will
friendship, *Revisions I*, 15(16):8;
23(14)–24(15)

God
See also specific topics
as highest good, 10(8)
knowing God, 10(8)
providence, divine, 17(2)
as source of everything that exists,
9(6)–10(8)
as source of life, 1(1)
God, substance of: Manichean belief regarding, 16(12); 18(12)
good:
great goods as in the greatest evil, 16(12)
highest good, 10(8)
good soul, Manichean belief in,
16(12)–24(15)
See also evil soul
as corruptible, 16(12)
as from God, 16(12)
and highest good, 18(12)
rank of, recognizing, 18(12)
as substance of God, 16(12); 18(12)
grace, *Revisions I*, 15(16):8

highest good: God as, 10(8)
inphants, *Revisions I*, 15(16):2, 6
injustice and intemperance, 5(4)–6(6)
intellect or understanding: senses and,
2(2)–7(6); 12(10)
injustice, 5(4)–6(6)
sin and, *Revisions I*, 15(16):4
and spiritual things, love for, 20(13)

kingdom of darkness. See darkness, nation of

land of darkness. See darkness, nation of
god: God as source, 1(1)
light:
Manichean beliefs regarding, 8(6)
Manichean worship of, 2(2)–6(6)
virtue and, 6(6)

*Literal Meaning of Genesis, The* (Augustine),
*Revisions I*, 15(16):7
lust. See concupiscence

Manicheans
See also souls, two: specific topics
Augustine as former, 1(1)–8(6);
10(8)–14(10)
mind. See soul
moon, 2(2); 6(6); 8(6)
nature of God. See substance of God

original sin, *Revisions I*, 15(16):2–3, 5, 6

passion, *Revisions I*, 15(16):4
Paul, the apostle. See specific topics
providence, divine, 17(2)
repentance, 22(14)–23(14)
senses, sensation
See also body
intellect and, 2(2)–7(6); 12(10)
sin
See also evil; repentance
and bodily things, love for, 20(13)
15(11)
forgiveness of, 18(12)
of good or evil souls, 18(12)

Volume I/19
The Two Souls

justice and, Revisions I, 15(16):4
original, Revisions I, 15(16):2–3, 5, 6
and sinners, 9(7)–10(8)
and souls, condemnation of, 17(12)
and will, Revisions I, 15(16):2–6;
12(9)–15(11); 21(13)
soul, souls:
bodies, comparison to, 7(6)–8(6)
of a fly, 4(4)
God as source of, 1(1)–3(2)
and God’s condemnation, 17(2)
inferior, Revisions I, 15(16):7; 20(13)
intelligence of, 3(3)
movement of (will), 16(12)
unjust and intemperate, 5(4)–6(6)
will and, Revisions I, 15(16):3, 6
souls, two, Revisions I, 15(16):1, 5–6;
16(12)–24(15)
See also evil soul; good soul
spiritual things:
justice and, 20(13)
love for, Revisions I, 15(16):8; 20(13)
stars, 6(6); 8(6)
See also light
substance of God, Manichean belief
regarding, 16(12); 18(12)
sun, 2(2); 6(6); 8(6)
See also light
temperance: intemperance, 5(4)–6(6)
two souls, Manichean belief in. See souls, two
understanding. See intellect
vice, 6(6)
See also sin
virtue, 6(6)
lack of, vs. bodily lack, 7(6)
weakness, Revisions I, 15(16):2
widow: A widow who is living in pleasure is dead, 2(2)
will, free, 19(13)
definition of, Revisions I, 15(16):3;
14(10)
as movement of the soul, Revisions I,
15(16):3, 6; 16(12)
sin and, Revisions I, 15(16):2–6;
12(9)–15(11); 21(13)
two souls and; 16(12)–24(15)
Index from
Answer to Faustus, a Manichee

Contra Faustum Manichaeum
(Against Faustus, a Manichee)

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
Written probably at the very end of the fourth century, the Answer responds to a certain Faustus, a Manichean bishop, who objects to the Old Testament and questions how Christians can claim it for themselves.

Volume I/20 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-264-7, 6 x 9 in., 468 pp., 2007

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture
(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

Revisions II. 7 (34)

New Testament

Romans

7:23

1 Corinthians

12:23

Text

Old Testament

Genesis

1:2 22, 8; 22, 11
1:3 22, 8; 22, 10
1:4 22, 12
1:31 34, 4
2:17 14, 4
2:22 11, 3
2:24 12, 39
3:9 22, 14
49:1 LXX 12, 9
4:9-10 12, 10
4:9-12 12, 11
4:13-14 12, 12
4:15 12, 12; 12, 13
8:18 12, 21
9:26 12, 24
9:27 12, 24
15:3 22, 32
15:4 22, 32
17:10-12 6, 2
22:18 12, 41; 13, 5; 15, 11
26:4 12, 6; 12, 41; 13, 5
27:40 22, 82
28:14 12, 41; 13, 5

Exodus

3:3 17, 4
3:6 12, 41; 22, 60
3:15 25, 1
4:19 17, 4
7:6 17, 4
12:46 12, 30
20:7 15, 7; 19, 18
20:12 15, 7
20:12-17 22, 52
20:13 15, 7; 19, 19; 22, 2
20:13-14 32, 1
20:14 7, 22, 2
20:16 15, 7
20:17 6, 2; 10, 1; 15, 7; 19, 7; 19, 28

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work.

Revisions II. 7 (34)

New Testament

Romans

7:23

1 Corinthians

12:23

Text

Old Testament

Genesis

1:2 22, 8; 22, 11
1:3 22, 8; 22, 10
1:4 22, 12
1:31 34, 4
2:17 14, 4
2:22 11, 3
2:24 12, 39
3:9 22, 14
4:9-10 12, 10
4:9-12 12, 11
4:13-14 12, 12
4:15 12, 12; 12, 13
8:18 12, 21
9:26 12, 24
9:27 12, 24
15:3 22, 32
15:4 22, 32
17:10-12 6, 2
22:18 12, 41; 13, 5; 15, 11
26:4 12, 6; 12, 41; 13, 5
27:40 22, 82
28:14 12, 41; 13, 5

Exodus

3:3 17, 4
3:6 12, 41; 22, 60
3:15 25, 1
4:19 17, 4
7:6 17, 4
12:46 12, 30
20:7 15, 7; 19, 18
20:12 15, 7
20:12-17 22, 52
20:13 15, 7; 19, 19; 22, 2
20:13-14 32, 1
20:14 7, 22, 2
20:16 15, 7
20:17 6, 2; 10, 1; 15, 7; 19, 7; 19, 28

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
## Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leviticus</th>
<th>21:24</th>
<th>19, 19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:20-21</td>
<td>16, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:32</td>
<td>22, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>17, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>22, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>19, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:1</td>
<td>19, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>22, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>22, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>22, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>2:10 22, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>13, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>12, 43; 13, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>22, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>20, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>19, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:8</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:29</td>
<td>22, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:43</td>
<td>22, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:7-19</td>
<td>12, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:28</td>
<td>12, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:1</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:8</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:12-13</td>
<td>12, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:6</td>
<td>33, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:7</td>
<td>21, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:12</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41:5</td>
<td>12, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:11-17</td>
<td>15, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50:23</td>
<td>20, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>57:5</td>
<td>12, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>57:12</td>
<td>12, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:9</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:10</td>
<td>13, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:11</td>
<td>13, 7; 22, 76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:5</td>
<td>15, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:5</td>
<td>21, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>21, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:17</td>
<td>19, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:85</td>
<td>12, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:5,7</td>
<td>13, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:7</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128:9</td>
<td>20, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136:8-9</td>
<td>14, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:12-13</td>
<td>15, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>14, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>22, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:32 LXX</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:20</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:30</td>
<td>12, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>22, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>13, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>22, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>21, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>21, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:20-21</td>
<td>12, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>21, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>19, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>19, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:16-17</td>
<td>19, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:22</td>
<td>19, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>6, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>6, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>22, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>22, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>22, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>21, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:22-12:2</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>22, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>21, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:1-5</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:21</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>13, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>12, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17-20</td>
<td>13, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>12, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>13, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>12, 46; 22, 53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

**New Testament**

| 1:1 | 2, 1; 23, 1 |
| 1:23 | 13; 3, 23, 5 |
| 3:2 | 12, 42 |

| 3:7 | 22, 86 |
| 3:10 | 12, 35 |
| 3:17 | 12, 1, 12, 45; 16, 2; 23, 5 |
| 5:3-10 | 5, 3 |
| 5:4 | 16, 20 |
| 5:8 | 5, 4; 22, 9 |
| 5:14 | 13, 13; 16, 17 |
| 5:17 | 17, 2; 17, 3; 17, 5; 18, 1; 19, 1 |
| 5:17-19 | 17, 5 |
| 5:20 | 17, 5 |
| 5:21 | 19, 3 |
| 5:21-22 | 19, 3 |
| 5:22 | 19, 20 |
| 5:24 | 16, 10 |
| 5:27 | 19, 3 |
| 5:27-28 | 19, 3; 19, 21 |
| 5:31-32 | 19, 3 |
| 5:33 | 19, 3 |
| 5:33-34 | 19, 3 |
| 5:38-39 | 19, 3 |
| 5:39 | 19, 19, 22; 76; 22, 80 |
| 5:43-44 | 19, 3 |
| 5:44 | 19, 24 |
| 5:45 | 19, 24; 19, 28 |
| 6:9 | 3, 3; 16, 13 |
| 6:12 | 20, 17 |
| 6:24 | 15, 2 |
| 6:26-32 | 16, 13 |
| 7:7 | 22, 14 |
| 7:21 | 5, 3 |
| 7:22 | 22, 68 |
| 7:23 | 22, 68 |
| 8:4 | 16, 10 |
| 8:5 | 33, 7 |
| 8:5-6 | 33, 7 |
| 8:9 | 22, 74 |
| 8:10 | 16, 24; 22, 13 |
| 8:11 | 16, 24 |
| 8:11-12 | 33, 2 |
| 8:20 | 22, 48 |
| 9:9 | 17, 1; 17, 4 |
| 9:16 | 8, 1; 8, 2 |
| 10:14-15 | 22, 14 |
| 10:23 | 22, 36 |
| 10:28 | 14, 12 |
| 10:39 | 22, 14 |
| 10:41 | 5, 9 |
| 11:5 | 5, 1 |
| 11:12 | 19, 24 |
| 11:12-13 | 12, 9 |
| 11:18-19 | 16, 31 |
| 11:19 | 17, 4 |
| 11:28-29 | 19, 9 |
| 12:7 | 16, 28; 20, 16; 20, 20 |
| 12:30 | 12, 16 |
| 12:48 | 7, 2 |
| 12:48-49 | 22, 39 |
| 12:50 | 22, 39 |
| 13:29 | 22, 72 |
## Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

Volume I/20

| 13:30 | 13, 16; 22, 72 |
| 13:52 | 4, 2; 15, 2 |
| 13:57 | 16, 18 |
| 15:3 | 16, 24 |
| 15:4-5 | 16, 24 |
| 15:12 | 16, 31 |
| 15:11 | 6, 6; 16, 31; 32, 13 |
| 15:13-14 | 16, 31 |
| 15:15 | 16, 31 |
| 15:16-20 | 16, 31 |
| 16:17 | 5, 3; 5, 4 |
| 16:22 | 16, 17; 26, 8 |
| 16:23 | 16, 17; 22, 73; 26, 8 |
| 18:22 | 3, 4 |
| 19:4-6 | 19, 29 |
| 19:68 | 22, 61 |
| 19:7 | 19, 29 |
| 19:8 | 19, 29 |
| 19:12 | 30, 4 |
| 19:21 | 3, 3 |
| 22:21 | 22, 74 |
| 22:23-24 | 13, 3 |
| 22:31-32 | 16, 24 |
| 23:2-3 | 16, 29 |
| 23:3 | 17, 5; 22, 55; 22, 82 |
| 23:9 | 7, 2; 22, 39 |
| 23:15 | 16, 29 |
| 23:23-24 | 16, 32 |
| 23:34 | 19, 2 |
| 23:35 | 22, 76 |
| 24:15 | 12, 44 |
| 24:23 | 13, 13 |
| 24:24-25 | 13, 5 |
| 24:26 | 13, 13 |
| 25:34 | 5, 3 |
| 25:35 | 5, 3; 5, 9 |
| 25:37 | 5, 10 |
| 25:40 | 5, 10 |
| 26:28 | 12, 42; 19, 15 |
| 26:38 | 12, 43 |
| 26:52 | 22, 70 |
| 28:19-20 | 5, 3 |

### Mark

| 1:1 | 2, 1 |

### Luke

| 1:15 | 16, 15 |
| 3:14 | 22, 74 |
| 5:14 | 23, 2 |
| 5:36 | 6, 5 |
| 8:44 | 8, 1 |
| 8:45 | 22, 14 |
| 8:46 | 33, 8 |
| 9:35 | 12, 1; 16, 2 |
| 9:62 | 22, 41 |
| 11:20 | 12, 30 |
| 12:47 | 22, 14 |
| 12:49 | 22, 93 |
| 13:24-29 | 33, 2 |
| 14:27 | 5, 9 |
| 16:16 | 19, 8 |
| 16:29 | 12, 4; 13, 5 |
| 16:31 | 12, 4; 13, 5 |
| 17:32 | 22, 41 |
| 18:8 | 17, 4 |
| 19:27 | 22, 14 |
| 20:38 | 16, 24 |
| 22:35-36 | 22, 77 |
| 22:38 | 12, 43 |
| 23:21-22 | 26, 8 |
| 24:7 | 11, 7 |
| 24:39 | 4, 2; 12, 3 |
| 24:44 | 22, 86 |

### John

| 1:1 | 2, 6; 13, 8; 22, 58 |
| 1:13 | 7, 3 |
| 1:12 | 3, 3 |
| 1:14 | 13, 8 |
| 1:17 | 19, 8; 19, 18 |
| 1:29 | 12, 30; 16, 15 |
| 1:41 | 12, 44 |
| 1:51 | 12, 26 |
| 2:17 | 22, 14 |
| 2:19 | 16, 10 |
| 3:3 | 24, 1 |
| 3:5 | 21, 4 |
| 3:6 | 21, 4 |
| 3:14 | 12, 30 |
| 3:14-15 | 5, 4 |
| 4:13 | 22, 87 |
| 4:14 | 22, 87 |
| 5:17 | 16, 6 |
| 5:25 | 17, 4 |
| 5:25-27 | 5, 4 |
| 5:39 | 13, 5; 19, 31 |
| 5:46 | 12, 3; 13, 5; 16, 1; 17, 3; |
| 5:47 | 19, 7; 22, 69; 22, 83 |
| 6:53 | 12, 8 |
| 7:39 | 32, 17 |
| 8:13 | 12, 1; 16, 2 |
| 8:14.16.17-18 | 12, 1 |
| 8:17-18 | 16, 2 |
| 8:18 | 13, 5 |
| 8:34 | 12, 9 |
| 8:36 | 12, 9 |
| 9:31 | 21, 2 |
| 9:39 | 12, 44 |
| 10:24 | 12, 13, 5 |
| 10:38 | 22, 83 |
| 11:50 | 22, 83 |
| 11:51 | 22, 83 |
### Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

| 4:15 | 24, 1 |
| 4:16 | 22, 82 |
| 5:17 | 19, 10 |
| 6:4 | 5, 9 |
| 6:7 | 5, 9 |
| 6:19 | 20, 15 |
| 7:3 | 22, 49 |
| 7:4 | 22, 31; 22, 49; 22, 50 |
| 7:5-6 | 5, 9 |
| 7:16 | 32, 17 |
| 8:1 | 15, 8 |
| 9:9 | 6, 9 |
| 9:10 | 6, 9 |
| 10:1-4 | 12, 29 |
| 10:4 | 16, 15 |
| 10:6 | 4, 2; 6, 2; 12, 37; 16, 10; 18, 6; 19, 7; 22, 24 |
| 10:10 | 12, 37 |
| 10:11 | 4, 2; 6, 2; 6, 9; 8, 2; 10, 2; 10, 3; 13, 10; 32, 9 |
| 10:20 | 20, 5; 20, 18; 32, 13 |
| 10:22 | 22, 17 |
| 11:1-13 | 24, 2 |
| 11:19 | 24, 2; 15, 2 |
| 11:29 | 13, 16 |
| 11:31-32 | 22, 14 |
| 12:1-26 | 21, 8 |
| 12:18 | 21, 9; 24, 2 |
| 12:21 | 21, 10 |
| 12:22-25 | 29, 4 |
| 12:24 | 21, 9 |
| 12:26 | 22, 22 |
| 12:28 | 19, 2; 19, 8 |
| 13:3 | 5, 5 |
| 13:9-10 | 15, 6; 32, 17 |
| 13:11 | 11, 1 |
| 13:12 | 15, 6; 32, 18 |
| 15:3-4 | 11, 3 |
| 15:11 | 2, 2 |
| 15:12 | 11, 3 |
| 15:26 | 11, 8 |
| 15:33 | 24, 9 |
| 15:35 | 11, 3 |
| 15:39 | 24, 2 |
| 15:40 | 14, 11 |
| 15:43-44 | 24, 2 |
| 15:44 | 11, 3; 11, 8 |
| 15:44-45 | 24, 2 |
| 15:45 | 11, 3 |
| 15:47 | 5, 4 |
| 15:47-49 | 2, 4 |
| 15:50 | 16, 29 |
| 15:50a | 11, 3 |
| 15:50b | 11, 3 |
| 15:51 | 11, 3 |
| 15:51-53 | 16, 29 |
| 15:52 | 11, 3 |
| 15:53 | 11, 3 |

2 Corinthians

| 1:19-20 | 19, 7 |
| 1:20 | 12, 5 |
| 3:3 | 15, 4; 18, 4 |
| 3:5-6 | 15, 1 |
| 3:6 | 15, 8; 19, 7 |
| 3:15 | 12, 4 |
| 3:16 | 12, 4 |
| 4:4 | 21, 1; 21, 9 |
| 4:6 | 22, 8 |
| 5:13 | 12, 26 |
| 5:14-15 | 12, 26; 14, 12 |
| 5:14-16 | 11, 8 |
| 5:15 | 11, 8; 14, 4 |
| 5:16 | 11, 1 |
| 5:17 | 11, 1 |
| 5:17-18 | 11, 8 |
| 6:11 | 12, 14 |
| 9:7 | 12, 34 |
| 10:21 | 14, 5 |
| 11:2.3 | 15, 3 |
| 11:3 | 15, 9; 21, 9 |
| 13:1 | 22, 20 |
| 13:4 | 12, 11 |

Galatians

| 1:4 | 21, 9 |
| 1:8-9 | 2, 2; 5, 4; 12, 5 |
| 1:9 | 13, 18; 17, 3; 20, 22; 32, 17 |
| 1:15-16 | 24, 1 |
| 2:22 | 22, 89 |
| 2:20 | 16, 17 |
| 3:6 | 12, 47 |
| 3:8 | 16, 24 |
| 3:10 | 12, 11 |
| 3:13 | 14, 1; 14, 4 |
| 3:16 | 12, 6 |
| 3:19 | 15, 8 |
| 3:21-22 | 19, 7 |
| 3:23-25 | 12, 24 |
| 3:27-28 | 24, 1 |
| 3:29 | 22, 89; 32, 9 |
| 4:4-5 | 3, 3; 11, 3; 12, 3; 12, 26 |
| 4:19 | 24, 1 |
| 5:2 | 19, 17 |
| 5:6 | 19, 27 |
| 5:12 | 16, 22 |
| 5:17 | 12, 21 |
| 6:3 | 21, 9 |
| 6:4 | 23, 7 |

Ephesians

| 2:4-5 | 11, 8 |
| 2:6 | 11, 8 |
| 2:7 | 11, 8 |
| 2:12 | 12, 24 |
| 2:14 | 22, 89 |
Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

Roman numerals refer to books;
Arabic numerals refer to sections of books.

Abel, XII:9–13; XXII:17
Abimelech, XXII:33, 38
aborted fetuses, VI:8; XXI:12
Abraham, XXII:82
See also patriarchs
God’s promise to, XII:6; XV:11
and Hagar, XXII:25, 82
and Isaac, XII:38; XXII:73
and Sarah, XXII:5, 30–40
two wives of, XXII:51
In your descendant all the nations of the
earth will be blessed, XII:6, 41
abstinence, dietary. See dietary beliefs and
practices
abstinence, sexual. See continence
Acts of the Apostles, XIX:31; XXXII:15
Adam, XXII:4
birth and death of, XXVI:7; XXVIII:2
commandment given to, XXII:4, 14
and Eve, XII:38
sin of, XXII:78; XXIV:2
Adama, I:2; VI:6; XVI:6, 30–31
Adonai, XV:9
adoption, III:3; XXII:32
children of God, III:3
Joseph, two fathers of, Revisions II, 7
(34); 2; III:3
Animal, I:2; III:8
Adullamites, XXII:85–86
adultery, XV:7; XIX:3, 21, 23; XXII:2
Africans, XII:2
Africans, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2
agapes, XX:20
air, II:3
alien gods, XV:4
See also idolatry; individual names
of Manicheans, XV:6

allegorical interpretation of Old Testament,
XXII:85, 94–96
See also specific people, topics, and
events; symbolism
altars. See sacrifices
Amalek, XXII:92
amni, XV:9
ancestors of Christ. See genealogies of Jesus
Andrew, XII:4; XIV:1; XVII:1; XXX:4
angels, XVI:20
as forbidding own adoration, XX:21
Jacob wrestling, XII:26
and light, XXII:10
as not born, XXIX:1
as seen by humans, XXIX:1
Seraphim, XII:48
stairway from earth to heaven, XII:26
successor of Moses as, XVI:19
anger, XIX:3, 20, 28
and murder, XIX:3
Old Testament God and, XXII:14
animals
See also dietary beliefs and practices;
meat; specific animals
killing, Manichean beliefs regarding, VI:5
in nation of darkness, XXI:10–13
Noah and the ark, XII:14–24
animal sacrifice, VI:1; XVIII:6
to idols, XXXI:2; XXXII:13
anointing with oil, XVI:23
Apocalypse, XX:21
apocryphal books, XI:2; XXII:79
apostles
See also disciples; Paul; individual names
authority of, XXXII:22; XXXIII:6
Mani describing himself as, XIII:4

Volume I/20
martyrdom, XXII:76
truth, as teachers of, XXXII:22
twelve, XXII:63
arguments, XXVIII:2, 5
Aristotle, XXXIII:6
the ark, XII:14–24, 18–39
ark of the covenant, XV:4
ass, XII:42; XV:6
ox and, VI:9
astronomy, II:5
Atlas, XV:6; XX:9, 12; XXXII:19
Augustine:
as former Manichean Hearer, XV:7
other writings of (see specific titles)
authority:
of apostles, XXXII:22; XXXIII:6
of the Catholic Church, XXI:3
of gospel, XXVI:11, 14; XXVII:2;
XXXII:19–22
legitimate, XXII:74–75
of Old Testament, VIII:2 (see also Old
Testament)
of scriptures, XX:3; XII:2, 4–6;
XXXII:19–22; XXXIII:9
Babylon, XII:36; XX:21
baldness, VI:9; XII:35
baptism, XII:19; XXII:63
beatitudes, V:3, 7
beauty, XXI:6
See also Rachel, Sarah
of Manichean gods and goddesses, XV:7;
XX:6
belching, of Manichean Elect, II:5; V:14;
V:10
believers. See Christians
Bema (Manichean feast), XVIII:5
Bible. See scriptures
Bilhah, XXII:54; 82
birds, XV:6; XXII:11
See also animals; specific birds
birth, Manichean beliefs regarding, XXIV:1;
XXX:6
two births, XXIV:1–2
birth of Jesus, XVI:15; XXIII:10; XXVI:1, 7
See also genealogies of Jesus
and divinity, question of, XVIII:1
and magic, XXIX:1–4
Manichean rejection of, II–III; V; VII; XI;
XXX; XXVI–XXIX; XXVIII:2;
XXXII:7, 22
and suffering, XXVII:1–2; XXIX:1–2
births, regulation of (Manichean), XV:7;
XXII:30
See also procreation
bishops: succession of, II:2, 5
black, XXI:11
body, bodies
See also resurrection of the body
all members of, God as making, XXI:8
bodily phantasms, V:11; XXIII:10
death of body vs. soul, XIV:12
harmony of, God as source of, XXI:6
Manichean belief in Hyle as fashioner of
bodies (see Hyle)
senses of the flesh, XXXII:20
and soul or spirit, XXII:27; XXIV:2
bread, XV:7
See also dietary beliefs and practices
consecrated, XX:13
living bread, Christ as, XII:29
unleavened, VI:9; XXXII:11
brightness. See light
brother:
“his brother’s keeper,” XII:10
taking wife of deceased brother,
XXXII:10
Caesar, Julius, XVIII:5
Caiaphas, XVI:23; XXII:83
Cain, XII:9–13
Calvary, XII:9
Canaan (land of), IV:1; X:1; XV:4
Canaan (son of Ham), Revisions II, 7 (34):
3; XII:23–24
canonical scriptures, XIX:31
of Old and New Testaments, XXI:5
truth of, XXI:2, 5–6; XXIII:9
vs. non-canonical writings, XXIII:9
Cataphrygians, XXXII:17
Catholic Church, Catholics, XIII:15, XVIII:7
See also Christianity; Church; specific
topics, e.g., faith, Old Testament
authority of, XXI:3
called “semi-Christians” by Faustus, I:2–3
Mani as leading astray, XV:3–4
and scripture, XXVI:3
Catholic beliefs and teachings
See under specific topics, e.g., dietary
beliefs and practices; Jesus Christ: as
human and divine
celibacy. See continence; virginity
centaur, XV:1, 9
ceremonies, XXI:13, 74; XXXII:7–8
Ceres, XX:13
Chapters (Faustus), XXXII:9
chastity. See continence; virginity
children
See also parents; procreation
of the Catholic Church (the true spouse of
Christ), XV:3
of God by adoption, III:3
procreation of, XXX:6
property and, X:1
choice, free, II:5; XXII:22, 28, 78

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
Chosen (Elect), Manichean. See Elect Christ
See also Jesus Christ; specific topics the title, XII:44; XIII:2, 4
Christianity, Christians
See also Catholices; specific topics converts from Judaism, XIII:1 converts from paganism, XIII:1–17 early, XIX:17 “pseudo-Christs,” I:3 “semi-Christs,” I:2–3 spread of, III:2; XII:15; XIII:3, 7; XVI:21, 27
Church
See Catholic Church; Christianity chastity of, preserving; XV:4 Christ’s love for, XXI:7 good and bad people in, XII:15 tolerating sinners in, XIII:16 as true spouse of Christ, XV:3, 8–11 unity, XV:4 Cicero, XXXIII:6 circumcision, VI:1–3; XVI:29; XVIII:2; XIX:1–2 All things are clean for the clean, XVII:2 Catholics and, XXXII:3 Christians and, XIX:9 Galatians reverting to, VIII:1 of Jesus, Manichean rejection of, XXXII:7 Moses as teaching, XVI:6, 28 as prophecy about Christ, XVI:29 of Timothy, XIX:17 civil law, XXII:1 clean: All things are clean for the clean, VI:6; XVII:2; XXXI:1–4 meaning of, XXXI:4 cleverness, I:1 clothing. See garments commandments See also Decalogue; law; Old Testament antedating Mosaic law, Christ and, XIX:19 goal (end) of, XX:23 against killing, adultery, and false swearing, XIX:3; XXII:2 the law is good, and the commandment holy, XV:8 life, commandments that regulate vs. commandments that symbolize, VI:2; IX:2 love and, V:5 of love for God and neighbor, XV:4–7 new, XXXII:9, 19 of Old Testament, VI:1–2 two stone tablets, XV:4–5, 7–8 commandments of Mani, V:5–7 concupiscence, VI:3; XXII:50 See also lust passions contrary to temperance, XXII:29 pleasures, mortal, XXII:28 Confessions (Augustine), I:1 conflict. See war conscience, XX:23 consecrated bread, XX:13 Constantius, V:5 contemplation, XXII:27, 53–54, 58 continence, XIV:13 See also virginity Corinthians, First Letter to, XXI:8 Corinthians, Second Letter to, XI:1, 4, 7–8 courtesans, XXXII:4 See also prostitutes coveting the property of others, X:1, 3; XV:7 creator, God as: of men, XXIV:1–2 of nature (all natures), XXVI:3; XXXI:4 worshipping creature instead of, XIV:11; XX:19, 22 the cross, XVI:17; XXXIII:2 sign of, XII:30 crows, XXI:11 the crucifixion, XII:43; XX:11; XXXII:7, 19 cruelty, XXI:74 Cupid, XX:9 curses, XXXII:14 on anyone who hangs from a tree, XIV:1–8, 12–13; XVI:5, 22–24 on Canaan (grandson of Noah), XII:23–24 as companion of sin, XIV:5 upon Cain, XII:11 for worshipping sun and moon, XIV:12 cuttlefish, XXII:3

Cyprian, V:8; XIII:4 Daniel, XII:44; XV:6; XXXI:2; XXXI:1 darkness, II:3 See also darkness, kingdom of, below God as first living in (Manichean belief), XXII:4, 8, 11–12 of ignorance, XXII:22 the Manichean God and, XXII:22; XXXIII:4 darkness, kingdom of (Manichean concept), X:3; XXII:6, 18; XIX:24; XX:17 See also evil nature or substance animals in, XXI:10–13 and kingdom of light, IV:2; XIII:18; XXI:14–16 part of God as mingled with, II:6; VI:8 war with, II:3; XXI:15 David, XXII:5 See also genealogies of Jesus as king, XII:33 sins of, XXII:66–67, 87, 97 death See also individual names, e.g., Adam of body vs. soul, XIV:12 for the faith, XXII:76
God as bound in the flesh (Manichean belief in), XXX:6
Manichean beliefs regarding, XXX:6
sin and, XIV:3–4
and the soul, XXX:6
death of Jesus, XIV:4; XXVI:1–8; XXVIII:1–2; XXIX:1–3
See also cross; crucifixion; Passion
Manichean rejection of, XIV:12; XXVI:2, 6; XXVIII:2; XXIX:1–3; XXXII:22
Decalogue, XV:4–5, 7–8
See also commandments
demons
See also Hyle; idolatry
as confessing Christ, XXII:68
feeding the demon of the Jews (Faustus on), XVIII:2
Manicheans as worshipers of, XIV:10–11; XV:5
people paying attention to teaching of, XXX:1–5
sent into pigs, XXII:72
worship, in pagan religions, XX:21
devil, I:2–3
See also serpent
Christ as killing, XXII:90
meat as created by (Manichean belief), XXXI:4
Paul handing man over to, XXII:79
Peter called Satan by Christ, XXVI:8
dietary beliefs and practices
See also drunkenness; fasting; gluttony; meat
All things are clean for the clean, VI:5; XIX:1–4
of Catholics, XX:13; XXX:5; XXXII:13
of Christians, XX:5; Daniel and, XXX:1; XXXI:1
distinction of foods, XVI:6, 28, 30; XIX:10
God as bound up in food (Manichean belief), XX:13
Manichean, VI:5–8; XX:13; XXX:1–2, 5; XXXI:4
Moses and the prophets and, XVI:6; XXX:1; XXXI:1
our first fathers and, VI:7; XVI:30–31; XVIII:6; XIX:10
Timothy I and, XXX:1
digestive processes, “divine nature” as escaping through, II:5; V:10; VI:4; XIII:18; XV:7
disciples of Christ, V:6; VI:6; XI:3; XIV:1; XVI:31; XXII:77
See also apostles; individual names; specific topics and events
all nations as becoming, XVI:21
and marriage, XIV:1
disciples of Mani, I:2
See also Adimantus
discipline. See punishment
disorder, avoiding, VI:9
“divine nature” as escaping through digestive processes of Manichean Elect, II:5; V:10; VI:4; XIII:18; XV:7
divine providence, XXII:78
divorce, XIX:26
dogs, III:6; XXII:79
donkey, VI:9; XII:42; XV:6
dove, XII:20
dress. See garments
drinking. See dietary beliefs and practices; drunkenness; wine
drunkenness, XV:9; XXII:44
of Lot, XXII:44, 60
at martyrs’ memorials, XX:21
of Noah, XII:23
earth
See also world
as alive (Manichean belief), XV:4
as conceiving Jesus (Manichean belief), XIX:11
eating. See dietary beliefs and practices
edifice, spiritual, I:3
Egypt, XII:28
exodus from, XII:29–31
flight into, XXII:36
Egyptians:
God’s command to despoil, XXII:71–72
Moses and, XXII:90–93
Moses killing the Egyptian, XXII:69–70
Elect, Manichean, V:6; VI:4–5; XX:11; XXII:23, 98
See also Manicheans
“divine nature” as escaping through digestive processes of, II:5; V:10; VI:4; XIII:18; XV:7
Hearers, treatment of, V:10–11
elements, five, II:3; XX:9
Elijah, XII:34; XVI:16; XXVI:1–6, 3, 8
Elisha, XII:35
Elizabeth, XXII:85
Emmanuel, XXIII:5
See also Jesus Christ
enemies:
hateful of, XII:24
love for, IX:3, 24
of Manichean God, II:6; VI:8; XXII:22; XXIV:2
victory over, XXII:76
Enoch, XVI:3; XIX:3, 20; XXVI:3
Ephesians, XXIV:1
Epicureans, XX:10
Ere (son of Judah), XXII:84
Esau, XXII:82
eternal fire. See hell
eternal law, XXII:27, 30, 43, 70, 73
eternal life, IV:2; V:3–4; XVI:6; XIX:31
eucharist, XII:28; XIX:14
eunuchs, XXX:4
Eve, XII:38; XV:9
evil
See also good and evil; sin
desire to do harm, XXII:74
Manichean God as unable to defend against, II:6
evil land. See darkness, nation of
evil nature or substance, Manichean concept of, XXX–XXXIII
See also darkness, kingdom of
excrement, II:5
eye for an eye, XIX:25
faith, XX:23
love and, V:5
power of, XXXIII:8
of righteous of old and Christians today, XIX:15
simple faith, need for, XII:46
false testimony, XV:7; XIX:18
See also perjury; swearing
faste
See also dietary beliefs and practices
Daniel and, XXX:2
Lenten, XXX:3
fate, the Fates, II:5; XX:9
Father, God as. See God; Trinity
fathers, fatherhood
See also parents
Do not call anyone on earth father,
XXII:39
Joseph, two fathers of, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2–3; III:3
regarding Jesus, XXII:8
Faustus of Milevis, I:1; Révisions II, 7 (34): 1
basis for believing in Christ, XIII:5
beliefs about the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, XX:2
Chapters, XXXIII:9
Judaism, near-conversion to, XIX:5
fear:
as evil, XXI:15
grace ysl, XV:4
fear of tabernacles, VI:9; XIX:10
fetuses, aborted, VI:8; XXI:12
Fever, XX:9
fighting. See war
fire, II:3
in the bush, XV:6
Christ as casting on earth, XXII:93
eternal (See hell)
the final, II:5
“first man,” II:3–5; XI:3; XX:9, 12
fish, XVI:6, 9; XXII:3
five elements. See elements, five
flesh. See also body; lust
no one ever hates his own flesh, XXI:7
Paul, and knowing Christ according to the flesh, XI:7–8
the term, XI:7
flesh (meat)
See under dietary beliefs and practices; meat
the flood. See Noah
food
See also dietary beliefs and practices
God as bound up in (Manichean belief), XX:13
foreshadowing. See under Old Testament, as foreshadowing what was to come
goodness, XII:25; XIX:25
of others, XIX:25
sacrament of, XII:16
of sin, XX:22
fornication, XII:31; XIX:18
Fortune, XX:9
The Foundation (Mani), XXI:16; XXII:22
freedom, Christian, VIII:2
free will, II:5; XXII:22; 28, 78
fruit, VI:4, 6
See also dietary beliefs and practices
mandrakes, XXII:56
Galatians, VIII:1–2; XII:6
garments, of linen and wool, VI:9
Moses despoiling Egyptians, XXII:91
new patch on old, VIII:1–2; XV:1–2
patching linen with purple, VI:9
gehenna, XIX:20
See also hell
genealogies of Jesus:
both son of God and son of David,
XXIII:1–10
fatherhood, question of, XXIII:1–10;
XXVII:1–2
gospel and, II:1
Manichean rejection of, II–III; V; VII; XI;
XXIII; XXVI–XXIX
Matthew and Luke, consistency of,
III:1–4; XXVIII:3; XXXII:2, 5–8
tribe of Judah, XXII:64, 83–86
gentiles, IX:1–2; XII:23–24, 28; XVI:1;
XIX:17, 19; XXI:8
See also specific topics
as children of Israel, XXII:89
and the Old Testament, XVI:20
glorification, XII:86
gluttony, XVI:30
goats, XXI:13; XXII:86
God
See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g.,
obedience
as creator of men, XXIV:1–2
God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob,
XXV:1–2

Volume I/20
volume I/20

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

- Image of God, XXII:27; XXIV:1–2
- Love for God, XV:4
- As omnipotent, XXVI:5
- Promises of, XII:5; XIX:7–8
- Testing God, XXII:36
- Will of God, V:3; XXII:27
- Worship of God, XXII:9

God, Manichean, XX–XXI, XXIV–XXV

See also specific topics
- As able to be defiled, XX:9; XXXII:19
- As corruptible, XX:9; XXI:14
- Enemies of, II:6; VI:8; XXII:22; XXIV:2
- Evil, as unable to defend against, II:6
- God as enclosed in wombs of all carnal females, III:6; XXIII:10
- Ignorance, as subject to, XXI:15; XXII:4, 22
- Knowledge of God, XXIV:2
- As limited, XXV:1
- As mutable, XX:9; XXVI:6
- Necessity, as subject to, XXI:14
- Substance of, XX:9; XXII:22; XXIV:2
- As violable, XXXII:19

God-man, XIII:8

See also Jesus Christ
god of this world, XXI:1–2, 10
gods, alien, XV:4

See also idolatry; individual names of Manicheans, XV:6

Gold, XIII:9; XXII:9

Gomor, See Hosea
good, XV:6

the highest good, XXI:16

Good and evil, XXXII:19

Manichean concept of, II:3; XXXII:7, 19

Manichean principles of, XXI:4–16

Good news. See gospel
gospel, XVI:11

See also Matthew; Mark; Luke; John;
New Testament; scriptures

Accepting and believing, II:1–6; V:1–11;
XXXII:1

Authority of, XXVI:11, 14; XXVII:2;
XXXII:19–22

Canonical gospels, XXXII:9

Genealogy and, II:1

as “good news,” II:6

Spread of (See under Christianity: spread of)

grace of God, XVI:9; XXII:78

and the law, XV:4, 8; XIX:7–8, 27;

XXII:6

Grains, XX:13, 23

See also dietary beliefs and practices
corn gathered on Sabbath, V:6
day of the harvest, XIII:15

Wheat, XII:28

Grapes, XII:31, 42; XX:13

See also dietary beliefs and practices

Hagar, XXII:25, 82

Hair:

baldness, VI:9; XII:35

unruly, VI:9

Ham (son of Noah), Revisions II, 7 (34): 3;

XII:23–24

See also Noah

Hair, XII:3

Harlots. See prostitutes

Harm

See also evil
desire to do, XXII:74

Harmony, XXI:6

Hatred, XIX:25

See also anger of enemies, XIX:24

Hearers, Manichean, V:6, 10; VI:4–5; XXX:5

Augustine as former, XV:7

Heaven

See also eternal life: kingdom of heaven
“second man” from, XI:3

Heaven, kingdom of. See kingdom of heaven

Heavenly bodies. See moon; stars; sun

Heavenly Jerusalem, XV:11

Hebrew people, XXII:24

See also Jews; Old Testament; specific topics

Law of, XIX:2

Hell, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2; XII:32

hell, XIV:12; XIV:20; XXI:16; XXXIII:3

Heresies, heretics, XII:24; XIII:12; XVI:25

Manicheans as, XVIII:7; XXII:94–95

Schisms, XX:3–4

Hermes, XIII:1, 15, 17

Herod the Elder, XXII:85

Herod the Younger, XXII:85

Highest good, XXI:16

See also God

Hippocrates, XXXIII:6

Hirah, XXII:85

Holliness: sacraments as visible signs of,

XIX:12

Holy of Holies, XIII:15

Holy scriptures. See scriptures

Holy Spirit, XII:15; 30; XV:4; XIX:27, 30;

XXII:17

See also Paraclete; Trinity; specific topics

And gift of love, XIII:15

Pentecost, XXXII:12

Honey, XV:1–2; XXI:13

Hope:

Salvation only in, XI:7–8

Source of, XIII:8

Hosea, XXII:5, 80, 89

Human person

See also man; specific topics

God as creator of, XXIV:1–2

In image of God, XXII:27; XXIV:1–2

Life on earth as temptation, XXII:28
human race, six ages of, XII:8, 18
husbands
See also marriage
love for wives, XX:7
serving two husbands, XV:1
Hyle, XX:14; XXI:1, 4, 9–13, 16
idols, idolatry
See also pagans; specific topics and events
handmade idols, XIII:9
Jews as abandoning, XX:22
of Manicheans, XIV:10–11
Moses and, XXII:79, 91–93
ignorance:
darkness of, XXII:22
evil of, XXI:15
human, XXII:78
Manichean God as subject to, XXI:15; XXII:4, 22
image of God, XXII:27; XXIV:1–2
the incarnation, Revisions II, 7 (34): 1; XXII:64
incest, XXII:3
Judah and, XXII:60–61, 64
Lot and, XXII:5, 41–45
inner man and outer man, XXIV:1–2
intelligence, I:1
intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
interpolations, Manichean accusations of, XXII:15; XXIII:6
Isaac, XII:37, 41; XXII:46, 82
See also patriarchs
Abraham and, XII:38; XXII:73
Isaiah, XII:43; XIII:9; XIV:13
See also specific topics
Ismael, XII:37; XXII:25
Israel
See also specific topics and events
children of, XXII:89
exodus from Egypt, XII:29–31
raising up offspring in, XIV:1
Jacob, XII:41; XV:6; XXII:82
See also patriarchs
angel, wrestling with, XII:26
Joseph and, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2; III:3
and Judah, XII:42
wives of, XX:5, 47–59
James, XVII:1
Jannes, XIII:12
Janus, XVIII:5
Japheth, See Noah
jealousy, XXII:14, 18, 21
Jeremiah, XII:36; XIII:8; XXXII:9
See also specific topics
Jericho, XII:31
Jerusalem, heavenly, XV:11
Jesus Christ, XIII:8
See also Trinity; specific topics, e.g., Church
baptism of, XXIII:5–6
birth of (see birth of Jesus)
crucifixion of, XX:11; XXXII:7, 19
death of (See death of Jesus)
as fulfilling promises of God, XII:5; XIX:7–8
as fulfilling the law, XVIII:4, 7; XIX:7–31
genealogy of (See genealogies of Jesus)
as human and divine, III:6; V:4; VII:2; XXIII:5
the incarnation, XXII:64
life of, as taught by the New Testament, XXII:76
Moses as foretelling, XII: XIII:1–18; XIV; XVI:9, 11–31
Old Testament as foretelling, XII:37–38; XVI:20; XXXII:6, 9
Passion of (See Passion of Christ)
prophets as foretelling, XII:4–6, 23, 30, 45–46; XXXII:4
resurrection of (See resurrection of Jesus)
as servant, III:6
suffering of (See suffering of Jesus)
temptation of, XXXII:7
as truth, V:5; XVI:11
Jesus as Son of God, V:4; VII:2; XXIII:1–10
See also genealogies of Jesus
baptism and, XIX:14; XXIII:5, 7
Jesus Christ, Manichean beliefs regarding, II:2–3; XXXII:22
basis for Faustus’ belief in, XIII:5
as brought forth in all trees and plants, XX:11
earth as conceiving, XX:11
as son of “first man,” II:4
Jesus, Joshua as called. See Joshua
Jewish rites. See rites
Jews, Judaism, IX:2; XXXI:2
See also Old Testament; specific topics, e.g., circumcision
as children of Judah, XXII:89
converts to Christianity from, XIII:1
Faustus’ near-conversion to, XIX:5
God and, XXV:1
as prophetic of Christ and Church, XXII:24
John, Gospel of, II:6; III:1; XVII:1, 3; XIX:8; XXXII:17
See also gospels; specific topics
John the Baptist, V:1; XVI:31; XXII:74, 85
John the evangelist, XII:30; XVI:6; XIX:23; XXX:4
See also John, Gospel of; specific topics
Joseph (husband of Mary), XIII:8
See also genealogies of Jesus
regarding fatherhood of Jesus, XXIII:3
Joseph of Arimathea, XX:11
Joseph (son of Jacob), XII:28

Volume I/20
sold into slavery, XXII:61

two fathers of, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2; III:3

Joshua, XII:31; XVI:19

Judah, XXII:60–64; XXIII:9; XXXII:4

children of, XXII:89

Jacob and, XII:72

Jesus as from tribe of, XXII:64, 83–86

Judas, XIV:8; XXII:14, 63

judges, time of, XII:32

judgments by God, XXII:78

as hidden, XXII:78

Juno, XVIII:5

Jupiter, XX:9

justice

mercy and, XXI:3

and punishment, XXI:2–3, 9

justification, XVI:29; XXII:86

killing

See also murder

of animals, Manichean beliefs regarding, VI:5

commandments against, XIX:3; XXII:3

kingdom of darkness. See darkness, kingdom of

kingdom of heaven, IV:2; V:3; X:1; XXII:76

the expression, XIX:31

making selves eunuchs for sake of, XXX:4

patriarchs in, XXXII:1

prostitutes entering before Pharisees, XXI:30

kingdom of light. See light, kingdom of kings, XIII:2

time of, XII:32–33

knowledge of (knowing) God:

Manichean error regarding, XXIV:2

lamb, VI:7; XII:30; XVI:15; XIX:10;

XXII:12

land of darkness/land of light. See darkness, kingdom of light, kingdom of

latria, XX:21

law

See also commandments

civil, XXII:73

eternal, XXII:73

fulfillment of, XVII:6; XVIII:4; 7;

XIX:7–31

of gentiles, XIX:2

as good, XV:8

grace and, XV:4; 8; XIX:7–8; 27; XXII:6

of Hebrews, XIX:2

the law is good, and the commandment holy, XV:8

love as fulfillment of, XVII:6

Mosaic, XVI:6; XIX:7, 19

of nature, XXI:5

righteousness of law fulfilled in us, XIX:7

sacraments and, XXII:6

three kinds of, XIX:2

of truth, XIX:2

law and the prophets

See also Old Testament: prophets

Christ as fulfilling, XVIII:1–7

Manichean rejection of, XVII–XIX; XXII

Leah, XXII:47–59, 82

Lenten fast, XXX:3

leper, VI:5

Letter of the Foundation (Mani), XXI:16;

XXII:22

Liber, XX:13

lies, lying. See false testimony

life: commandments that regulate vs.

commandments that symbolize, VI:2;

IX:2

light

See also good and evil, Manichean doctrine of

different lights, Manichean failure to distinguish, XX:7; XXII:8

God as, XX:7

made by God on first day, XXII:10–11

by which the mind knows intelligible things: XX:7

light, kingdom of, XIII:6, 18; XXI:14

See also darkness, kingdom of

and kingdom of darkness, II:3; IV:2;

XIII:18; XXI:14–15

linen. See garments

Lord’s Prayer, XIX:25

“lord,” the term, XV:9

Lot, XXII:5, 35, 41–45, 60, 88

love, XX:23

commandments of, XV:4–7

for enemies, XIX:3, 24

faith and, V:5

gift of, XIII:15

for God, XV:4

Holy Spirit and, XIII:15

of husbands for wives, XXI:6

and the law, XVII:6

for neighbor, XV:4, 7; XIX:24

Luke, Gospel of

See also genealogies of Jesus; gospels;

New Testament

and Matthew, III:1–4; XXVIII:3;

XXXIII:2–3, 5–8

Lupercalia, XVIII:5

lust, XV:7

See also concupiscence

as adultery, XIX:21, 23

birth and (Manichean beliefs), XXIV:1

and Manichean gods and goddesses,

XV:7; XX:6

patriarchs and, XXII:25

pleasures, mortal, XXII:28

and purpose of intercourse, XXII:30–31
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

scripture as criticizing, XXII:81
Lycaonia, XX:21
lying. See false testimony
Maccabees, XIX:14
Magi, II:5
magic, XXIX:1–4
Maia, XVIII:5
Mambres, XIII:12
man; men
See also human person; specific topics,
e.g., husbands
“first,” or primal man (see “first man”) inner and outer, XXIV:1–2
two men (Manichean belief in),
XXIV:1–2
woman as helper for, XII:38
mandrakes, XXII:56
Mani, XIII:2, 4
See also specific topics
apostle of Jesus Christ, as calling himself, XIII:4
commandments of, V:5–7
The Foundation, XXII:22
as leading Catholics astray, XV:3–4
the name, XIX:22
Paraclete, as claimed to be, XIII:17 (see also Paraclete)
Treasury, XV:4
vs. authority of scriptures, XXXII:19–22
writings of, XIII:18; XV:4, 6; XXII:22
Manichean God. See God, Manichean
Manicheans, Manicheanism, V:10–11;
XIII:3–4
See also Elect; Hearers; Mani, specific
topics and teachings, e.g., good and evil; Paraclete
Augustine as former Healer, XV:7
beliefs of, XIII:18
the Bema, XVII:5
Catholic objections against,
XXX–XXXIII
dietary beliefs and practices of (see under
dietary beliefs and practices)
evil nature, concept of (see evil nature)
as heretics, XVII:7; XXII:94–95
Jews vs., IX:2
Moses as foreseeing, XIV:6
myth of, II:3–6; XIII:6, 18; XXII:22
and paganism, XVI:10; XX:1–10, 14–23
Paul as foretelling, XV:10; XXX:1
as “pseudo-Christians,” I:2–3
two substances, belief in (see darkness; light)
manna, XII:29
Mark, Gospel of, II:1, 6; III:1
See also gospels; specific topics
marriage
See also under Church: as true spouse of Christ; husbands; procreation;
wives; individual names, e.g., Jacob;
wives of
disciples of Christ and, XIV:1
divorce, XIX:26
as good, XXX:6
Manichean prohibition of, XIX:26;
XXX:1, 6
Paul on, XXX:6
and procreation, XXIX:4
Mars, XVII:5; XX:9
martyrs, XIV:1; XX:21; XXI:28; XXII:76
Catholic reverencing, XX:21
drunkenness at memorials, XX:21
Mary, III:1; XX:11; XXIII:1–4, 8–10;
XXVI:7; XXIX:4
See also birth of Jesus; genealogies of Jesus
genealogy of, XXIII:8–9
matrimony. See marriage
Mattarians, V:5
Matthew, Gospel of, II:1, 6; XVII:1–4;
XXI:64; XXIII:1–10; XXVII:12
See also genealogies of Jesus; gospel;
New Testament
authorship of, XXIII:6
and Luke, III:1–4; XXVIII:3;
XXXII:2–3, 5–8
meals. See dietary beliefs and practices
meat
See also dietary beliefs and practices;
pork
Manichean beliefs regarding, VI:5–8;
XXX:5; XXXI:4
mediator, Jesus as, XIII:8
Melchi, Revisions II, 7 (34): 2
men. See human person; man
Mercury, XVII:5
mercy, XIX:29; XX:20; XXI:2
and justice, XXI:3
Messiah, XII:44
See also Jesus Christ
metaphor, Revisions II, 7 (34): 3
mind
See also soul
knowing intelligible things, XX:7
Minerva, XX:9
ministry of preaching, XXII:10
miracles, XXII:6; XXVI:2; XXIX:2
monarchy (the single principle), XX:19
Montanists, XXII:17
months of the year, XVIII:5
moon, Manichean worship of, XIV:1, 11–12;
XX:2, 8, 11
Moses, XVI:1–33; XXII:5; XXVI:3
See also law, patriarchs; specific topics
and events
curse by, XIV:1–8, 12–13; XVI:5, 22–24
dietary beliefs and practices, XXX:1;
XXXI:1
as foreseeing Manicheans, XIII:6

Volume I/20
as foretelling Christ, XII: XIII:1–18; XIV: XVI:9, 11–31
and idolatry, XXII:79, 91–93
killing the Egyptian, XXII:69–70, 90
raising bronze serpent, XII:30
robbing Egyptians, XII:69, 71–72, 91
staff becoming serpent, XII:28
teaching of, XVI:6
the two stone tablets, XV:3–4, 7–8
mothers, motherhood
See also parents
mother of Jesus, Mary as (see birth of Jesus; genealogies of Jesus; Mary)
mullet, XXII:3
murder, XIX:18, 23
See also killing
anger and, XIX:3, 23
Manicheans and, V:6; XV:7
mustard tree, XII:36
myth: of Manicheanism, II:3–6; XIII:6, 18; XXII:22
See also Manicheans
nakedness, XII:23
Nathaniel, XII:4, 26
nations:
the expectation of the nations, XXII:85
spread of Christianity among (see under Christianity; spread of)
In your descendant all the nations of the earth will be blessed, XII:6, 41
nations of darkness/light. See darkness, kingdom of; light, kingdom of nature, XXVI:3
God as creator of all natures, XXVI:3; XXXI:4
miracles and, XXVI:2
nature, law of, XXI:5
nature of God. See substance of God
natures, two. See two natures
Nazareans, XIX:4, 17
neighbor
See also specific topics, e.g., coveting
love for, XV:4, 7; XIX:24
“new man.” XXIV:1–2
New Testament, XXII:76
See also gospel; Old Testament; scriptures; specific Books and topics
interpolations, passages thought by Manicheans to be, XXII:15; XXXI:6
Manicheans as accepting only parts of, XXXII:1–8, 15–16
Old Testament as in harmony with, XXII:76–77, 79
teachings accepted by Manicheans, XXXII:7, 19
teachings rejected by Manicheans, XXXII:7
Noah, XII:14–24, 38–39
Ham as son of, Revisions II, 7 (34): 3; XII:23–24
as tenth from Adam, XII:14
non-believers. See unbelievers
nuns, XX:21
oaths. See swearing
obedience to God:
vs. one’s own initiative, XXII:73–74
Octavius Augustus, XVIII:5
oil, anointing with, XVI:23
“old man” (as opposed to “new man”), XXIV:1–2
Old Testament, XVIII–XIX
See also commandments; New Testament; patriarchs; prophets; scriptures; specific Books, topics, and people
allegorical interpretation of, XXII:88, 94–96
authority of, VIII:2
Catholic acceptance of, IV:1–2; VI:1–9; XXXII:1–14
Christ’s teaching and, XIX:28
as foreshadowing what was to come, XXXII:14
foretelling Jesus, XII:1–46; XXXII:6
gentiles and, XVI:20
Manichean rejection of, IV: VI; VIII–X; XV
New Testament as in harmony with, XXII:76–77, 79
sacrifices (see under sacrifices: Old Testament)
sin in, XXXII:14
symbolism in (see symbolism; specific people and events)
olive trees, IX:1–2; XII:20; XVI:15; XXI:13; XXVI:3
Onan (son of Judah), XXII:84
order, XXI:6
avoiding disorder, VI:9
civil peace, XXII:75
of nature, XXII:30–31
organization, XXI:6
original sin. See under sin: of Adam
Orpheus, XIII:1–2, 15, 17
outer man, inner man and, XXIV:1–2
ox, VI:9
pagans, paganism, XXXI:2
See also idolatry; specific topics
beliefs of, XX:10
Christians as learning from, XXII:91
converts to Christianity from, XIII:1–17
Manicheanism and, XVI:10; XX:1–10, 14–23
pagan prophets, XXIII:15
worship by, XX:5

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
pain. See suffering
Pallor, XX:9
palm trees, XII:30
palm branches, XV:6
parables, XXXII:7, 19
Paraclete, XV:4
See also Holy Spirit
Man as claimed to be, XIII:17
Manichean beliefs regarding, XXXII:15–18
Manicheans as swearing by, XIX:22
and the New Testament, XXXII:6, 15–16, 18
parents
See also children; genealogies of Jesus
Honor thy father and mother, XV:7; XIX:18
Manicheans and, VI:8; XV:7; XXIV:1
of princes of darkness, trees as, VI:8
parricides, XXII:22
parricides, XIII:12; XV:16; XIX:10; XXXII:3, 11, 12
Passion of Christ, XII:30, 35; XV:4; XIX:10; XXII:17
passions (concupiscence). See concupiscence
patching. See garments
patience, XIII:13; XVI:29
patriarchs, XXII
See also Old Testament; individual names; specific topics
as in kingdom of heaven, XXXIII:1
Manichean beliefs regarding, XXII:98; XXXIII:1–3
the three great, XXII:82 (See also Abraham; Isaac; Jacob)
twelve, XXII:63
Paul, XI:1–8; XV:11, 17
See also New Testament; specific topics and Books
actions of, XXII:36
and Barnabas, XX:21
handing man over to Satan, XXII:79
and knowing Christ according to the flesh, XI:7–8
people wanting to follow Paul instead of Christ, XXXII:10
peace, waging war to preserve, XXII:74–76
Pentecost, XXII:3, 87; XXXII:12
people. See human person; man
perjury, XIX:23
persecution, V:8; XIII:7; XIX:14
Peter, XIV:1; XV:4; XVI:16; XVII:1; XXII:89; XXX:4
See also specific topics
called Satan by Christ, XXVI:8
confessing Christ, XXII:68
denying Christ, XXII:34
drawing sword to defend Jesus, XXII:70, 77

vision of, XII:22; XV:6; XXXI:3
phantasms:
obdily, V:11; XXXIII:10
of thought, XV:6
Pharaoh, XXII:33
Pharisees, XVI:29; XVII:5; XIX:31
prostitutes entering kingdom of heaven before, XXII:80
Philip, XII:4
Philho, XII:39
pigs, III:6; VI:7
See also animals
demons sent into, XXII:72
plants, XII:36
See also trees; vegetables; specific plants
Jesus as brought forth in (Manichean belief), XX:11
Plato, XII:39; XX:9; XXXIII:6
pleasures, mortal, XXII:28
poison, XI:13
pork, VI:1; XVI:6; XVIII:2; XXII:3; XXX:1
See also dietary beliefs and practices; meat
poverty, V:9
power:
of faith, XXXIII:8
of God, XVI:17; XXII:76
human (through free will), XXII:78
lust for domination, XXII:74
Manichean God as lacking, XXII:22
of the prince of darkness, XXI:14
of the Son, Manichean beliefs regarding, XX:8
Powerful Spirit, XX:9, 12
prayer, XX:17; XXX:5
the Lord’s Prayer, XIX:25
preaching, ministry of, XXXII:10
priests, XIII:2, 15; XV:10; XX:22
Jesus as high priest, XII:36
primal man. See “first man”
princes of darkness, VIII:2
first, trees as parents of, VI:8
procreation, XXX:6
See also marriage
and Manichean regulation of births, XV:7; XXII:30
marriage and, XXII:4
sexual organs and, XXXII:4
prodigal son, XV:6
property, V:9; X:1
Moses despoiling Egyptians, XXII:91
of others, coveting, X:1; 3; XV:7
prophecies. See Old Testament; prophets
prophetic books, XXII:94
prophets, XII:1–48; XIX:2; 8; XXII
See also law and the prophets; Old Testament; individual names; specific topics
as foretelling Christ, XII:4–6, 23, 30, 45–46; XIII:1–18; XXXIII:4
“impure.” XXXIII:3–4
Manichean rejection of, XIII–XIV; XVI
pagan prophets, XXII:15
patriarchs and, XXII:76
prostitutes, prostitution:
courtesans, XXXII:4
with demons (Augustine accusing
Manicheans of), XV:5
entering kingdom of heaven before
Pharisees, XXII:80
Hosea marrying (see Hosea)
at Jericho, XII:31
in Manichean marriages, XV:7
Tamar donning garment of (see Tamar)
providence, divine, XXII:78
Psalms, Book of, XII:43; XII:45
punishment:
Christ as taking on our, XIV:4
eternal, XXI:16
justice and, XXI:2–3, 3, 9
just vengeance, XIX:25
sin and, XIV:3–4
purple. See garments
quadrupeds, XVI:6
rabbit, XVI:6; XXII:3
Rachael, XXII:4, 47–59, 82
rational action and rational contemplation, XXII:27
rational soul. See soul
reason, XIII:6; XXI:27; XXVIII:3
Rebecca, XXII:46, 82
repentance, XXII:66–67, 97
reproduction. See procreation
resurrection of Jesus, VI:3; XI:3, 8; XIV:2;
XVI:29; XXIX:2
Manichean beliefs regarding, XXXII:22
resurrection of the body, XIX:29; 
XV:31; XXIV:2
Revelation of John, XV:11
revenge. See vengeance
riches. See property
righteousness, human, XX:23; XXII:78
rites, XIX:17–18
See also animal sacrifices; circumcision;
Old Testament; pork, abstinence from;
Sabbath rest; sacraments
as symbols foretelling what was to come,
VI:2; XIII:15
Romans, Letter to, XI:1; 4; XII:2
Romulus, XVII:1
Ruben, XXII:64
rulers (legitimate authority), XXII:74–75
Sabbath, Sabbath rest:
Catholics and, VI:1, 4; XVIII:2
Christians and, XIX:6, 9
corn gathered on, Christ allowing, V:6
Moses as teaching, XVI:6, 28–29
and pagan god Saturn, XVIII:5
as prophecy about Christ, XVI:29
sacraments, XXIV:1
See also rites; specific sacraments, e.g.,
baptism
of the Church, XIII:15
of old law, cessation of, XIX:13; XXII:6
as visible signs of holiness, XIX:12
sacrifices
See also animal sacrifice
Abraham and Isaac, XII:38; XXII:73,
Jesus as offering, Manichean rejection of, 
XXXII:7
and Manichean God, XX:15–18; XXII:22
Manicheans and, VI:5
Old Testament, VI:5; XX:18–23;
XIX:17, 22
pagan, XX:18–23; XXII:17
Sadducees, XVI:24; XIX:31
saints, Revisions II, 7 (34):3
See also individual names
and sexual organs, XXIX:4
salvation, VII:16; XII:36; XV:2; XIX:17;
XXVI:1
baptism and, XI:7–8
faith and, XII:46
grace and, XII:42
hope and, XI:7–8
Sampson, XII:32
sanctification, XII:15
Sarah, XXII:5, 30–40, 82
Satan. See devil
Saturn, XVIII:2, 5; XX:13
Saul, king, XII:32; XXII:67
Saul (Paul). See Paul, the apostle
savior, XII:36; XIII:8
See also Jesus Christ
schisms, XX:3–4
See also heresies
scribes, XVI:29
scriptures, XIII:18
See also canonical scriptures; gospel; New
Testament; Old Testament; specific
Books and topics
apocryphal books, XI:2; XXII:79
authority of, XX:3; XXI:2, 4–6;
XXXII:19–22; XXXIII:9
Catholic acceptance of, XXII:62
Catholics and, XXVI:3
Catholics as not praising all actions in, 
XXII:62
people and lives in, XXII:96
prophetic books, XXII:94
value and importance of, XIII:18
sects, XX:3
seers, XIII:1
See also prophets
Seneca, XX:9
senses, sensation, XXXII:20
Answer to Faustus, a Manichean

See also

- body
- serpent, I:2–3; XXXI:3
- devil
decieving Eve, XV:9
- Moses raising in desert, XII:30; XV:6
- Moses’ staff becoming, XII:28; XV:6
- servant
See also specific topics and names
- Jesus as, III:6; XIII:8; XXIII:10
- Seth, XIX:3, 20
- sexual abstinence. See continence
- sexual intercourse, XXX:6
- See also lust; procreation
- births, regulation of (Manichean), XV:7; XXXII:30
- meat as unclean product of, Manichean belief, VI:8
- purpose of, XXII:30–31
- sexual organs:
  - and procreation, XXIX:4
  - saints and, Revisions II, 7 (34); 3; XXIX:4
  - sexual passion. See concupiscence; lust
- sheep, XII:43; XXII:85
- Shelah (son of Judah), XXII:84
- Sibyls, XIII:1–2, 15, 17; XXI:23
- silver, XIII:9; XXI:91
- Simon Magus, XIX:12
- sin
See also evil; punishment; repentance:

  - individual topics or names, e.g.,
    - David
    - of Adam, XXII:78; XXIV:2
    - and death, XIV:3–4
    - forgiveness of, XX:22
    - loving the sinner but hating the sin, XIX:24
    - in Old Testament, XXXII:14
    - and punishment, XIV:3–4
    - sinfulness, XXII:78
    - sinners in Church, tolerating, XIII:16
    - what it is, XXI:26–27
    - six ages of the human race, XII:8, 18
    - slavery, Joseph sold into, XXII:61
    - smoke, II:3
    - snakes. See serpents
    - Sodom, XXII:14, 41–45, 60–61
    - Solomon, XXXII:4
    - wives of, XXII:81, 88
    - Song of Songs, XV:6; XXII:38
    - Son of God, V:4; VII:2
    - See also Jesus Christ
    - Son of Man, III:6; V:4; VII:2
See also Jesus Christ

  - soul, souls:
    - body and, XXII:27; XXIV:2
    - at death, XXX:6
    - death of the soul (Augustine on), XIV:12
    - Manichean beliefs regarding, V:10; XX:17; XXII:22; XXV:2

  - of Manichean Hearers thought to return in vegetables, V:10
  - as part of God (Manichean belief), XX:17
  - reason and, XXII:27
  - space: nature of God and, XXV:2
  - sphere of darkness. See darkness, kingdom of spirit
See also soul

  - body and, XXIV:2
  - the Splendid One, XX:12; XXXII:19
  - stairway from earth to heaven, XII:26
  - stars, II:5
  - stealing. See theft
  - stones: as alive (Manichean belief), XV:4
    - stone tablets, the two, XV:3–4, 7–8
    - substance of God, XX:9; XXII:22
    - inner man as part of, XXIII:2
    - substances, two. See two natures
    - suffering of Jesus, XXVI:1–2; XXIX:1–2
    - Manichean rejection of, XX:11–12;
    - XXXII:22
  - sun, Manichean worship of, XIV:1, 11–12;
    - XX:2, 8, 11
  - swans, XXI:11
  - swearing, XXI:3, 22–23; XXII:2
  - perjury, XIX:23
  - symbols and symbolism, Old Testament,
    - IV:2–9; XI:11; XXXII:14; XXXII:9
See also allegory; specific people and events

  - foretelling by means of, XVIII:7
  - Jewish rites as, VI:2–4
  - Symmachians, XIX:4
See also Nazareans

  - tabernacles, feast of, VI:9; XIX:10
  - tablets, the two stone, XV:3–4, 7–8
  - Tamar, XXII:61, 64, 83–86; XXXII:4
  - Teaching Christianity (Augustine), XXII:91
temperance
  - XXII:29, 50
  - temples, XII:36; XX:22
  - Manichean God as dwelling in, XX:15, 18
  - New Testament and, XVI:10
  - restoration of the temple, XII:36
  - temptation, XX:9; XXII:28
  - of Jesus, XXXII:7

Ten Commandments. See commandments;

  - Decalogue
  - Tertullian, XIII:4
testing God, XXII:36
  - Thecla, XXX:4
  - theft, XV:7; XIX:18
  - Thomas, XVI:35; XXII:79; XXIX:2; XXX:4
  - the three times (Manichean belief), XIII:6
  - Timothy, II:2; XIX:17
    - First Letter to, XXX:1–6
  - Tobias, XXII:35
  - Treasury (Mani), XV:4
trees
See also specific trees, e.g., olive trees

  - as alive and having feelings, XV:4

Volume I/20
curse on anyone who hangs on a tree, XIV:1, 2, 6, 12; XVI:5, 24 and grafting, IX:1–2
Jesus as brought forth in (Manichean belief), XX:11
Jesus on, XX:2, 11
mustard tree, XII:36 as parents of first princes of darkness, VI:8
Trinity, XII:19; XV:6; XX:7
See also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ beliefs of Faustus/Manicheans regarding, XX:2, 12
Trismegistos, XIII:17
truth:
apostles as teachers of, XXXII:22
Christ as, V:5; XVI:11
two births (Manichean belief in), XXIV:1–2
two natures (substances), Manichean concept of, XXXII:19–20
See also darkness; evil substance; light
unchasers, XXI:2, 9; XXXI:4
unclean vs. clean. See clean: All things are clean for the clean
unity, XXI:6
Church, XII:20; XV:4
 unleavened bread, VI:9; XXXII:11
Uriah, XXII:87
Varro, XXXIII:6
vegetables, V:6; VI:4, 6
See also dietary beliefs and practices
souls of Manichean Hearers thought to return in, V:10
vengeance:
cruelty in, XXII:74
just, XIX:25
Venus, XX:9
Vestals, XX:21
vast, XV:1–2
vineyards, XII:23; 36; XV:6
violence. See war
vipers, XXXI:3
See also serpents
Virgil, XXII:25
virgin birth, XXXII:10; XXVIII:4; XXIX:1
See also birth of Jesus; Mary
virginy, XIV:13; XX:21
See also continence
Paul as regarding, XXX:4, 6
virgins dedicated to Christ, XXX:4
Vulcan, XX:9
war, XXII:74–78
with kingdom of darkness, II:3; XIX:15
and “turning the other cheek,” XXII:76
what is blameworthy in, XXII:74
water, waters, II:3–4; XXII:85
wealth. See property
wheat, XII:28
See also grain
white, whiteness, XII:42; XXI:11
widow, widows:
Elijah fed by, XII:34
taking wife of deceased brother, XXXII:10
will, free, II:5; XXII:22, 28, 78
will of God, V:3; XXII:27
wind, II:3
wine, XII:42; XX:13; XXII:84
See also dietary beliefs and practices;
drunkenness
wise men, the three, II:5
witess, false. See false testimony; perjury
witness, witnesses:
believing in Christ without, VII:1–2;
XII:1–2, 45
Christians and, VII:2
Jesus bearing witness to himself, XVI:2, 13
wives
See also marriage
of Abraham, XXII:51
having multiple wives, XXI:47
husbands’ love for, XX:7
of Jacob, XXII:47–59
in the Old Testament, 35–59 (see also under individual names/patriarchs)
taking wife of deceased brother, XXXII:10
woman: as helper for man, XII:38
wombs, Manichean God as enclosed in, III:6;
XXIII:10
wool. See garments
Word of God, VII:2
See also Jesus Christ
In the beginning was the Word, II:6
world
See also earth; nations; specific topics, e.g., Christianity: spread of end of (Manichean belief), II:5
god of this world, XXI:1–2, 10
six ages of, XII:8
The world cannot receive him, XXXII:17–18
worms, VI:8; XX:7
worshipping creature instead of creator, XIV:11; XX:19, 22
worship of God, XXXII:9
worship of idols. See idolatry
writings:
of Augustine (see specific titles)
in general, XXXIII:6–7
of Mani, XV:4, 6
Zechariah, XII:36
Zerah, XXII:64
Zilpah, XXII:82

Answer to Faustus, a Manichean
Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23
Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/23

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

Nature and Grace

Old Testament

Genesis
3:5 29,33

Exodus
20:17 62,72

Deuteronomy
30:14 LXX 69,83
30:14 69,83

1 Kings
8:46 7,8

Job
14:4 7,8

Psalms
2:11-13 32,36
2:12 32,36
2:13 32,36
12:2 49,57
14:1.3 7,8
19:5 2,2
23:6 31,35
25:17 66,79
30:7 24,27; 27,31
30:8 24,27
37:5 31,35
37:6 31,35
41:5 19,21; 49,57
59:11 31,35
71:5 23,25
85:8 32,36
86:11 32,36
92:2 31,35
102:5 20,22
119:73 17,19
119:118 62,73
119:133 13,14
139:10 32,36
143:2 60,70

Proverbs
2:20 69,83

Ecclesiastes
7:21 7,8

Wisdom
1:11 15,16
9:15 48,56

Sirach
10:9 49,57
10:15 29,33
10:15.14 29,33
18:30 62,72

New Testament

Matthew
1:21 20,22
5:8 65,78
6:12 35,41; 60,70; 67,80
6:13 53,62; 58,68; 67,80
6:14 35,41
8:22 23,25
9:12-13 19,21; 21,23
10:20 15,16
14:38 58,68
21:9 37,43

Luke
1:3 63,75
9:60 23,25
12:37 32,36

John
1:12 64,77
5:21 7,8
13:34 69,83
14:6 32,36
14:30 24,26
14:31 24,26
15:5 62,73

Romans
1:21 22,24

Answer To The Pelagians I
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Range</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25-26</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-27</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28-31</td>
<td>22,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>4,4, 41,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23-24</td>
<td>1,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>4,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>1,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>17,18; 42,49; 56,67; 64,77; 66,79; 70,84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>8,9; 39,46; 41,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>41,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>38,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>51,59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>50,58; 67,81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
<td>62,72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>53,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>53,62; 54,64; 55,65; 55,66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>53,61; 54,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>44,51; 53,62; 54,64; 55,65; 58,68; 59,69; 62,72; 63,74; 64,77; 68,82; 70,84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7-8</td>
<td>17,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>52,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>48,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2-3</td>
<td>1,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2-4</td>
<td>32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>1,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>69,83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17-18</td>
<td>2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>69,83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>69,83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>40,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>44,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>44,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>27,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>63,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>1,1; 2,2; 9,10; 40,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>53,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>53,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>40,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>50,58; 53,61; 56; 57,67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>57,67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>67,81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3-5</td>
<td>3,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>66,79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>23,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>27,31; 32,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>39,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>70,84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>21,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>49,57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>17,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5-6</td>
<td>16,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>57,67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>16,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>15,16; 16,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>16,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-17</td>
<td>16,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>6,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>58,68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>14,15; 34,38; 36,42; 62,73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>14,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>69,83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answer To The Pelagians I**
Answer To The Pelagians I

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Nature and Grace
Abel, 9,10; 37,44; 38,45
ability: power of choice, or nature, 45,53
Abraham, 32,36
abstaining from food, 20,22
Adam and Eve, 3,3; 37,44; 38,45
all have sinned in, 4,4; 9,10
created spotless, 63,75
Adam’s sin, See original sin.
adultery, 38,45
afflictions, 23,25
Ambrose of Milan, Saint, 63,74
angel, 33,37
anger: children of, 3,3; 63,75; 67,81
animals: taming, 15,16
apostates, 62,73
assent, 61,71
Augustine, Saint:
— Pelagius’ use of his Free Choice, 67,80
baptism, 55,65
attaining righteousness without, 7,7
bath of regeneration, 4,4; 8,9
effects, 41,48
flesh and baptized persons, 52,60; 54,64
bible: let us believe what we read . . ., 39,46
blindness, 47,55; 51,59
boast, 27,30
body and soul:
See also human nature; soul
corrupted body weighs down soul, 48,56
Cain, 37,44; 38,45
children of God, 64,77
choice, See free choice.
Christian life:
— darkness re. how to live, 40,47
exhortations to arouse, 68,82
Christians, 1,1; 55,65; 60,70
Church, 21,23
spotless, 63,75
commandment(s):
— ask for what you cannot do, 43,50
— good, 69,83
— impossible, 43,50; 69,83
— infants incapable of obeying, 21,23
— new, love one another, 69,83
— not burdensome, 69,83
— not heavy for one wholly turned to the
  Lord, 69,83
— righteousness, 16,17
— you shall not desire, 62,72
— concupiscence, 61,71
— interior evil, 62,72
— opposition to doing good acts, 56
— condemnation, 4,4; 8,9; 67,81
— condition (possibility), 10,11
— confession, 31,35
— conscience: good, 70,84

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

contempt, 67,81
conversion: whole heart and whole soul, 69,83
creation:
  flesh and spirit (both good), 54,63
  human being, 3,3
  praise the creator, 34,39
creature:
  acknowledge the creator, 42,49
  equal with creator, 33,37
cross, 6,6; 7,7; 9,10; 40,47
  wisdom and, 19,21
damnation, 5,5; 35,40; 35,41
darkness, 23,25; 40,47; 67,81
death:
  faith tested by, 23,25
  grace: free from body of death, 54,64; 55,65
  origin, 8,9; 39,46; 41,48
  punishment, 67,81
delight, 55,65; 57,67
desire, 22,24; 35,40; 57,67; 67,81
daily and constant battle with, 38,45
  fleshly, 61,71
  sin reigning in the body, 56
  sinful, 62,72
  you shall not go after . . ., 62,72
despair, 35,40
devil, 58,68
  prince of this world, and Christ, 24,26
  sin originated, 29,33
difficulty, 68,82; 69,83
punishment for sin, 67,81
disobedience, 20,22
divinization, 33,37
ears: hearing, 47,55
Elizabeth, 63,74
eternal life, 2,2; 7,7
evangelization: to ends of the earth, 2,2
eye, 26,29
faith, 12,13; 20,22
  commandment(s) drives us to, 16,17
  crowd following the Lord’s donkey
    (Hosanna . . .), 37,43
  death as test of, 23,25
  exhortations, 68,82
  healing, 44,51
  hearing, 2,2
  sincere, 70,84
falsity, 34,38; 36,42
fear, 1,1
  law and, 57,67
  pain, 57,67
fire, 28,32
flesh, 67,81
  baptized persons and, 52,60; 54,64
created by God, 54,64
defects of, 53,62
  good actions by the baptized, 56
  lusts against (opposes) spirit, 53,61; 54,63; 55,65; 56; 57,67
original sin and, 67,81
overcoming desires of, 61,71
sinful, 14,15
usage: works of the flesh, 54,63
  wisdom of the, 17,18
fools, 22,24
forgiveness of sin, 55,65
Lord’s Prayer, 35,41
free choice, 9,10; 23,25; 24,26; 55,65; 55,66; 64,76
becoming godlike (Xystus), 64,77
  how to live, 40,47
human nature as created, 43,50
original sin, 3,3
salvation and, 39,46
sin and, 61,71
  virtue or vice, 65,78
freedom:
  law of, 57,67
  who will set me free? 55,65
Gentiles, 63,75
glory, 22,24; 23,25
God:
  anger, 2,2
  author of nature, 45,53
  highest substance, 20,22
  natural perception of maker, 2,2
  omnipotence, 49,57
righteousness, 1,1; 46,54
  seen by a pure heart, 65,78
good and evil:
  causality, 24,27
  living in the flesh, 17,18
  not doing the good I want, but . . ., 50,58; 57,67; 67,81
good life: necessities for, 23,25
good works:
  opposition from concupiscence, 56
  pride overtaking, 29,33; 31,35
goodness:
  actions as ours alone, 27,31
  human will and, 63,75
  power to will the good; doing the good, 50,58
  walk the paths of: righteousness, 69,83
grace, 1,1; 15,16; 23,25; 32,36; 38,45; 58,68
  Augustine’s basic teaching, 3,3
  clean heart, 62,72
  existing without, 45,53
  found in Jesus Christ, 67,81
  free from body of death, 54,64
  freed from damnation, 5,5

Answer To The Pelagians I
freedom, 66,79
healing, 67,81
human nature restored by, 53,62
imploiring for, 22,24
justification and, 11,12; 62,73
living by the Spirit, 17,18
love, 70,84
nature given by the creator (Pelagius), 51,59
necessity, 53,61
Pelagius on sinlessness, 12,13; 53,61
perfection, 68,82
righteousness, 10,11; 50,58
salvation; free gift, 4,4
sinlessness and, 59,69; 60,70
unbaptized should seek help of, 55,66
guilt, 9,10; 23,25; 30,34
happiness: willing; unhappiness, 46,54; 49,57
healing, 11,12; 26,29; 27,31; 34,39; 38,68;
67,80
faith, 44,51
grace, 67,81
pray for, 30,34; 31,35
health, 26,29; 54,63
hurt by not eating, 20,22
heart:
adultery, 38,45
beaten and dried out (Ps 101), 20,22
clean, 62,72
darkening of, 22,24
disposition re. commandment(s), 69,83
love poured out in our hearts, 17,18;
42,49; 57,67; 63,74; 64,77; 66,79;
68,82
pure, 70,84
sinless = best altar for God, 64,77
Hilary of Poitiers, Saint, 62,72; 62,73
Holy Spirit, 60,70
led by, 57,67
living according to, 17,18
love and, 64,77
love poured out in our hearts, 17,18;
42,49; 57,67; 63,74; 64,77; 66,79;
68,82
homosexuality, 22,24
hope, 48,56; 60,70
human being:
Adam’s descendants not affected by his
sin, 21,23
created as able to be without sin, 43,50;
51,59; 59,69
created with free will, 67,81
equal with God, 33,37
pride; withdrawing from God, 29,33
righteousness attained by self alone, 2,2;
23,25
righteousness; sin, 23,25
salvation; free choice, 39,46
senses: power and necessity, 47,55
See sinlessness
taming their tongues, 15,16
human nature:
See also sinlessness; will
Augustine’s basic teaching, 3,3
Church as spotless, 63,75
corrupt; Christ the savior, 40,47
created blameless, 67,81
created with free choice, 65,78
false defense of, 55,66
goods received from creator, 3,3
harmed by sin, 20,22
inseparable ability not to sin, 50,58; 51,59
natural perception of maker, 2,2
natural spiritual life, 17,18
original state, 3,3
Pelagius:
basic teaching, 1,1
no weakening or injury from Adam’s sin,
19,21; 48,56
praise of, 34,39
righteousness through, 2,2
salvation with no need of redemption,
24,26
sin due to defects of, 1,1; 66,79
will’s disobedience affecting, 53,62
woundedness (Pelagius), 24,27; 26,29
human will, See will.
humility, 23,25; 24,27; 32,36; 34,38; 36,42
ignorance, 29,33; 67,81
punishment for sin, 67,81
sins of, 17,19
immorality, 62,72
impossibility; commandment(s) and, 43,50
impurity, 22,24
infants:
commandment(s) and, 21,23
dying without baptism, 8,9
need for salvation, 6,6
Isaac, 32,36
Israel, 69,83
Jacob, 32,36
James [addressee], 1,1
Jerome, Saint, 65,78
Jesus Christ:
born in likeness of sinful flesh, 61,71
crowd: Hosanna, Son of David . . . , 37,43
death and resurrection, 2,2
desires of the flesh, 61,71
devil will find nothing in him, 24,26
divinity and humanity in flesh, 2,2
dying in vain, 1,1; 9,10
end of the law, 40,47
flesh like sinful flesh, 14,15
grace through, See grace

Volume I/23
I am the way... 32, 36
mediator, 26, 29; 44, 51; 64, 77; 67, 80
name: he will save us from our sins, 20, 22; 21, 23
name needed (Pelagius), 40, 47
name: salvation, 39, 46
needed, as physician, 54, 64
passion and death: dying by reason of will to obey, 24, 26
present everywhere, 67, 81
righteousness does not sanctify all, 41, 48
sinlessness, 14, 15; 24, 26; 61, 71; 64, 77
teacher, 61, 71
without me you can do nothing, 62, 73
Jews, 2, 2; 41, 48
Job, 62, 72; 62, 73
John, Bishop of Constantinople, 64, 76
Judas, 8, 8
justification, 40, 47
grace and, 9, 10; 11, 12; 62, 73
gratuitous, 1, 1; 4, 4
righteousness and, 41, 48
knowledge:
neglecting to seek, 67, 81
right and wrong acts, 67, 81
Lactantius, 61, 71
law (Mosaic), 57, 67
commandment(s), 16, 17
end of, 1, 1
fulfillment, 17, 18
love is fulfillment of, 69, 83
purpose (N.T.), 12, 13
sin: members and law of the mind, 25, 28;
57, 67
understanding, 17, 19
law of nature, 2, 2
Lazarus, 8, 8
life, 8, 8; 23, 25
light, 22, 24; 26, 29
limping, 26, 29
literature: teacher of, 41, 48
Lord’s Prayer:
bring us not into temptation, 53, 62; 58, 68;
67, 80
deliver us from evil, 53, 62; 66, 79
forgive us our debts, 35, 41; 60, 70; 67, 80
forgiveness; temptation, 18, 20
love:
beginning; righteousness, 70, 84
Christ’s burden is light, 69, 83
commandment(s): not heavy, 69, 83
freedom of, 65, 78
fulfillment of the law, 17, 18; 69, 83
law of fear and, 57, 67
poured out in our hearts, 17, 18; 42, 49;
57, 67; 63, 74; 64, 77; 66, 79; 68, 82
pure, good, sincere, 70, 84
sinful, 38, 45
love for God:
lacking: righteousness, 38, 45
perfect, 42, 49
lust, 35, 40
lying: kills the soul, 15, 16
Marcellinus, 14, 15; 23, 25
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
sinlessness, 36, 42
mercy, 3, 3; 5, 5; 15, 16; 19, 21; 21, 23; 31, 35;
34, 39; 55, 65
sin as necessary for, 25, 28; 26, 29
merit, 5, 5
mind:
body presses down, 48, 56
members resisting law of, 55, 65; 57, 67;
63, 75
pure, 64, 77
natural goods, 3, 3
natural law, 9, 10; 40, 47
nature:
See also human nature
activities; members, 11, 12
God, author of, 45, 53
necessity, 65, 78
natural, 46, 54
senses and sensation, 47, 55
negligence, 13, 14; 15, 16; 17, 19
neighbor: command to love, 69, 83
obedience:
contempt for, 25, 28
Jesus, obedient unto death, 24, 26
odors, 47, 55
Old Testament:
righteous persons [list] not sinless, 36, 42
original sin:
consequences, 23, 25
effects: ignorant; subject to the flesh,
67, 81
entered the world through one man, 8, 9;
39, 46; 41, 48
free choice, 3, 3
human nature not injured by (Pelagius),
19, 21
imitation of Adam’s sin, 9, 10
infants dying without baptism, 8, 9
pain, 27, 30; 57, 67; 67, 81
paradox, 28, 32
pardon:
See also forgiveness of sin
praying for, 18, 20
passions, 67, 81
slave of, 35, 40
patience, 23, 25
peace, 62, 72
Pelagius [passim: the entire work]:
appeal to scripture, 14, 15
Answer To The Pelagians I

on human nature, 1,1
on original sin, 8,9
on sinlessness, 12,13ff
perfection, 62,72; 63,75
complete, 60,70
daily renewal, 64,77
grace, 68,82
highest, 12,13
righteousness, 13,14
physician, 1,1; 19,21; 21,23; 23,25; 26,29; 55,65
piety, 31,35; 58,68
poison, 28,32
possibility, 10,11
praise, 34,38; 68,82
preaching:
  faith comes from hearing, 2,2
  salvation to believers, 40,47
pride, 16,17; 23,25; 24,27; 25,28; 27,31; 28,32; 31,35
beginning of all sin, 29,33
distinguished in the law, 29,33
good actions, 32,36
not every sin is of pride, 29,33
occasion of, 27,30
progress, 12,13; 33,37; 58,68; 60,70; 68,82; 70,84
punishment, 34,39; 55,65
anger of God, 2,2
death of the body, 23,25
debt of all humanity, 5,5
fear of, 57,67; 68,82
sin results: filled with every wickedness, 22,24
pure of heart: beatitude, 65,78
purity: temple for God (Xystus), 64,77
reading: hold on to what is good . . ., 39,46
redemption, 24,26
  Christ dying in vain, 40,47
  savior as unnecessary, 34,39
repentance, 35,40
right and wrong:
  knowingly not doing the right thing, 67,81
  righteousness, 13,14; 19,21; 26,29; 40,47; 43,50; 67,80
attaining by nature and free choice, 9,10
beginning of love, 70,84
commandment(s), 16,17
darkness, 23,25
grace and, 10,11
human nature sufficient for, 50,58
interior battle with concupiscence, 62,72
justification and, 41,48
love of, 57,67
love of God, 38,45
making ourselves rightous, 31,35
necessity (for God), 46,54
no living person, 42,49; 60,70
paths of goodness, 69,83
perfect, 2,2; 21,23; 42,49; 60,70; 62,72; 68,82
self-sufficiency, 6,6; 7,7; 23,25; 32,36
way, 32,36
will and, 43,50
worship and, 62,72
sacrifice: old law, 17,19
saints:
  grace, 63,75
  spotless purity, 63,75
salvation:
  fear and trembling, 27,31; 32,36
  free choice (alone), 39,46
  grace of Christ, 4,4
  hope of, 35,40
  people who have never heard of Christ, 9,10
self-sufficiency for, 24,26
Satan, 28,32
schoolmaster, 1,1; 12,13
self-sufficiency, 32,36; 55,66
sensation: natural necessity, 47,55
sex: unnatural intercourse, 22,24
shame, 67,81
silence, 45,53
sin:
  See also original sin
  avoidable, 67,80
  avoiding future sins, 34,39
  pray for help, 18,20
  provision of means for, 26,29
  being proud, 29,33
  captive to law of, 55,65
  necessary; reason for God’s mercy, 25,28; 26,29
  must be wiped away by God, 18,20
  contempt for God, 29,33
  defects of nature, 66,79
  despair of avoiding, 35,40
  differences in, 12,13
  enabled to die without; Lord’s Prayer, 35,41
  excuse: human weakness, 7,7
  free choice: sin or not sin, 49,57
  healed by sins, 28,32
  if we say we have no sin . . ., 14,15; 34,38; 36,42
  ignorance and difficulty as punishment for, 67,81
  it is no longer I who do it . . ., 62,72
  law: resisting law of the mind, 25,28; 53,62
  must be wiped away by God, 18,20
  necessary; reason for God’s mercy, 25,28; 26,29
  necessity, 28,32; 61,71

Volume I/23
negligence, 13,14
obeying its desires, 62,72
origin, 29,33
past; future, 18,20
Pelagius on punishment of, 21,23
punishment as source of more sin, 22,24
recompense for, 25,28
reigning; obey its desires, 56
Satan and, 28,32
soul in need of healing, 61,71
what is it: substance, act, or . . ., 19,21
will and, 1,1
sinlessness:
ability from nature, not choice, 45,53
Ambrose of Milan on, 63,74
bible does not mention sins of all, 37,44; 38,45
God’s help necessary for, 10,11
godlike (Xystus), 64,77
grace and, 51,59; 53,61
holy persons departed from this life, 35,41
Jesus, the only possible one, 64,77
Lactantius on, 61,71
possibility:
attributed to God alone, 44,52
with grace, 59,69; 60,70
without grace of God, 44,52; 51,59; 53,61
in this life, 8,8
natural possibility (Pelagius), 33,37; 48,56; 49,57; 51,59; 53,61
pride, 34,38
question of possibility, 44,51
righteous persons (Old Testament), 36,42
scripture texts, 8,8; 14,15; 53,61
will as self-sufficient, 64,76
sinner(s):
bible testifies that all are sinners, 42,49
Christ came to save, 5,5; 19,21; 21,23
cries: heal my soul (Ps 40), 49,57
Jesus (name) as savior, 20,22
justification, 1,1; 26,29
rejection by God, 62,73
soul:
healing; because of sin, 19,21
mouth that lies, kills, 15,16
speaking: example of choice/nature, 45,53
spirit:
creation, 52,60; 54,64
flesh lusts (opposes) against, 53,61; 54,63-64; 56; 57,67
spiritual life: natural will and, 17,18
temple of God: pure heart, 65,78
temptation, 18,20
watch and pray, 34,39; 58,68
Timasius, 1,1
tongue:
  James on, 16,17
  taming, 15,16
trust, 32,36
truth, 16,17; 22,24; 23,25; 28,32; 34,38; 36,42; 68,82
understanding: prayer for, 17,19
venial sins, 12,13
vice, 27,31
free choice, 65,78
virtue: free choice, 65,78
voice, 45,53
way, 32,36
weakness, 7,7; 20,22; 22,24; 25,28; 30,34; 38,45; 51,59; 67,81; 70,84
virtue made perfect in, 27,31
wickedness, 22,24
will, 32,36; 34,39
ability implanted in nature, 43,50; 50,58; 51,59; 53,61
action follows, 51,59
cannot undo what has been done, 18,20
God’s help needed by, 63,74
healed and helped by God, 42,49
I can will the good, but cannot do it, 51,59
natural necessity, 46,54; 58,68
prepared by God, 63,75
refusing to do the right thing, 67,81
resisting; yielding, 67,80
self-sufficient, 64,76
sin and, 1,1; 23,25; 61,71
wisdom:
comes down from above, 17,18
cross and, 19,21
darkening of the heart, 22,24
tames the tongue, 16,17
warned to ask for, 17,19
women: righteous persons (Old Testament), 36,42
Word of God: enfleshed, dwells among us, 52,60
works, 23,25; 56
works of mercy, 68,82
worship, 62,72
Xystus (bishop and martyr), 64,77
zeal, 1,1; 7,7
Zechariah, 63,74
Index from

On the Deeds of Pelagius

(De gestis Pelagii)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture References

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>21:10</td>
<td>5,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>25:7</td>
<td>18,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:9</td>
<td>3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>3,5; 3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59:12</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100:9</td>
<td>14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>107:20</td>
<td>24,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>109:17</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:133</td>
<td>14,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>14,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>140:9</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>3,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
<td>4:8 LXX 14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
<td>7:1 3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7:6-7 3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>15:16-17</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>8:20 LXX 1;2; 35,62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
<td>31:31-32 5,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
<td>7:18 5,13; 5,14; 35,62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>11,26; 12,27; 12,28; 30,55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:19-20</td>
<td>14,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:10-11</td>
<td>13,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:14</td>
<td>3,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>3,9; 35,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>3,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:32</td>
<td>14,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>14,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7-8</td>
<td>6,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:12-13</td>
<td>6,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:14-16</td>
<td>6,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:15:18</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td>7:18 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>30,55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>6,20; 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>8,21; 35,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>9; 35,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:28-29</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:8</td>
<td>5,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>14,35; 14,37; 15,38; 16,39; 26,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:22-23</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>14,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:16 3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>3,9; 35,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>14,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>13,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>13,29; 35,63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>35,61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Answer To The Pelagians I

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>14,32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>4,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18</td>
<td>14,32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>14,36; 35,64</td>
<td>17,40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>14,36; 14,36; 14,37; 30,54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21</td>
<td>35,61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>30,55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:57</td>
<td>14,35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>5,14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>14,36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>6,20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:21-22.24-26</td>
<td>5,14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>18,42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Timothy
|        |        |        |        |        |
| 2:4    | 24,48  |        |        |        |
| 2:7    | 14,32  |        |        |        |
| 6:1    | 14,32  |        |        |        |

2 Timothy
|        |        |        |        |        |
| 1:12   | 14,35  |        |        |        |
| 4:7    | 14,35  |        |        |        |
| 4:7-8  | 14,35  |        |        |        |

James
|        |        |        |        |
| 2:13   | 3,10   |        |        |

2 Peter
|        |        |        |        |
| 1:4    | 18,42; 35,65 |        |        |

1 John
|        |        |        |        |
| 1:8    | 11,26; 12,27 |        |        |
| 3:2    | 30,55   |        |        |
Subject Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprung)
(the numbers refer to the particular book and its section)

Abel, 10,22
Abraham: two sons (allegory), 5,14
actions: helps, 1,3
Adam: created mortal, 11,23; 11,24; 33
  35,65
adoption: new creation, 10,22
ambiguity, 10,22
angel, 6,18
  judgment day, 3,11
anger, 3,7; 25,50; 26,51
animals: irrational, 6,18
apostles, 5,14
apostleship: gifts embraced in, 14,36
atrocities:
  Pelagius’s followers at Jerome’s monastery, 35,66
Augustine, Saint:
  books under his name, arrived in Spain, 6,19
  friendship with Pelagius, 23,47
  letter from Timasius and James, 24,48
    25,49
  letter to Pelagius, 26,51-29,53
Aurelius, 1,1
baptism:
  Church cleansed from every spot and wrinkle, 12,28; 35,63; 35,64
  instruction of the newly baptized, 2,4
bishops, 25,50; 35,66
Province of Palestine, 1
blessing, 3,7
boast, 3,11; 14,36
Caelestius:
  claim that we do more than commanded, 13,29; 35,63
  condemned at Carthage, 11,23; 11,26
    22,46; 35,62
  defense of, 33
  errors on grace and human will, 14,30
  everyone can have all the graces,
    14,32 35,63
  grace related to merit, 17,40; 35,65
  misrepresentations after his trial, 33,58
  propositions objected to, 35,63; 35,64
    35,65
Carthage, 22,46; 35,62
  statements condemned at, 11,23
Catholic Church, 5,15; 10,22; 19,43;
  20,44 33,58; 35,60
Charus (of Hippo), 32,57
chastity:
  marital; commanded, 13,29; 35,64
  children of God:
    driven by the Spirit, 3,5-3,6; 3,8
    only those completely without sin,
      18,42 35,65
Christians, 26,51
Church, 11,25; 14,36
  baptismal bath; all sins are forgiven,
    12,28
  body of Christ; each member has its own gifts, 14,32
  future; remaining without stain, 12,28
  good people only, as members, 12,27
  members without stain or wrinkle,
    35,63 35,64
  present time: prayer for pardon, 12,28
commandment(s):
  Caelestius’ claim, 13,29; 35,63
  easily kept (with labor and struggle!), 30,55
  free from body of this death, 9
  humans can keep, if they want, 6,16;
    7,20 35,61
  keeping: not to sin is sufficient, 13,29
consent, 4,12
conversion:
  free from sin by their own effort,
    10,22
Creed:
  instruction of those to be baptized, 2,4
curse, 3,7

Answer To The Pelagians I
Cyprian, Saint, 11,25

Daniel (prophet), 5,14
darkness, 3,11
death:
  came through one man (Adam), 35,61
  produced by the law, 7,20
  set free from body of, 7,20; 8,21; 9;
  where is your sting..., 30,55
debt: grace and, 14,33
desire, 3,6; 3,7; 3,8; 7,20; 8,21
  earthly things, 5,14
devil: eternal punishment, 3,10
Diospolis, Synod of, 1; 20,44
dogma, 6,16; 6,18
Donatists, 12,27; 22,46
eaglets, 6,18
Eastern churches, 11,25
election of grace, 17,41
eternal life:
  non-baptized infants, 11,23; 11,24; 33
  35,65
  eternal punishment, 3,9; 3,11; 35,62
Eulogius, Bishop, 3,9
experience:
  learning: not able to govern self, 3,7
  eye, 3,7
faith, 6,18
  good works and, 14,34
  Peter, 14,35
five wise virgins, 3,11
flesh: children of the, 5,14
fodishness, 6,18
forgetfulness, 18,42; 35,65
forgiveness of sin, 23,47; 35,61
baptismal bath, 12,28
knowledge needed by believers, 2,4
free choice, 3,8; 14,31; 26,51; 29,53;
  35,61 35,62
  ability not to sin, 10,22; 13,29
  Caelestius’ errors on, 14,30
  choosing good, 3,5; 35,62
  help of God, 35,65
  negated by need for God’s help, 18,42
victory and, 18,42; 35,65
gifts from God, 13,29
  apostleship, 14,36
See also grace
  Caelestius: everyone can have all
  graces, 14,32
  proper to individual members, 14,32
  worthiness for, 14,35
God:
  subject to sin (syllogism), 18,42
good and evil:
  choosing, 3,7
  evil is not even to be thought, 4,12
good works:
  faith and love, 14,34
  judgment day, 3,11
goodness:
  God assists in choosing, 3,5; 3,7; 3,8
  35,62
grace, 3,7; 17,40; 22,46; 25,50; 26,51;
  29,53 30,55; 34,59; 35,61; 35,62
  See also gifts; sinlessness
  Caelestius’ errors on, 14,30
  Caelestius: everyone can have all
  graces, 14,32; 14,33; 35,63
diversity of graces, 14,32; 35,63
given for each human action, 14,31
  31,56; 35,65
governed by their own will, 3,5
  gratuitous giving, 14,33
help to weakened nature, 7,20
human nature created with free choice,
  17,41
letter of Timasius and James, 24,48;
  25,49
located in the will, 35,65
merit and (Caelestius), 17,40-41
merit: faith or good works, 14,34
nature created from free choice, 23,47
no living rightly without, 1,3
old / new testaments, 5,14
Paul’s “I have labored more…”, 14,37
  30,54
Pelagius on, 10,22
  results (Paul), 14,36
sinlessness and, 6,16; 14,31
unworthy recipient, 14,35
works not the basis of, 14,33
worthy for (Caelestius), 17,40

Volume I/23
Hagar, 5,14; 5,15
healing: Paul, 14,32
health, 26,51
heart: desires of, 3,7
heaven:
  new Jerusalem, 5,14
  promised in Old Testament, 5,13-5,15
  wealthy persons, 11,23; 11,24; 33; 35,65
help: two kinds of helps, 1,3
heresy, 21,45; 32,57; 33,58; 34,59; 35,62
  necessity of (Paul), 35,61
heretic(s), 30,55
  definition, 6,18
  fool, 6,18; 35,65
  heaven in Old Testament, 5,13
Heros, Bishop, 1,2; 16,39; 35,62
Hilary of Syracuse, 11,23; 30,54
Hippo, 22,46; 32,57
Holy Spirit, 5,14
  driven by the Spirit, 3,5-3,6; 3,8
gives life, 9
  help for each human act, 14,31
  it is not you who speak…, 14,31
  wisdom, 3,6
human acts:
driven or governed, 3,5-3,6
grace given for each act, 14,31; 31,56
human nature:
  created with ability not to sin, 10,22
  created with free choice (= grace), 17,41 35,61
  health free from defect, 9
  sold and wounded, 8,21
  willing to labor results in ability not to sin, 30,54; 30,55
human race:
  all do not die through Adam’s sin, 11,23 11,24; 33; 35,65
  all do not rise through Christ’s resurrection, 11,23; 11,24; 33; 35,65
humility:
  if we say we have no sin…, 12,27
ignorance:
  sacrifices offered for, 18,42
sinfulness, 18,42; 35,65
incarnation, 11,25
infant(-s):
  knowledge and salvation, 2,4
  newborns are in original justice, 11,23 11,24; 33; 35,65
infant baptism:
  preaching; Basilica of the Ancients, 11,25
intelligence, 3,6
James [former disciple of Pelagius], 23,47
  letter to Augustine, 24,48; 25,49
Jerome, Saint:
  violence committed against his monastery, 35,66
Jerusalem: earthly; heavenly, 5,14
Jesus Christ, 7,20; 8,21
  cleansed from sins through, 1,3
  foretold by prophets, 5,14
John (bishop of Jerusalem), 14,37; 16,39; 17,40 30,54; 30,55
judgment:
  mercy and, 3,10
judgment day:
  I do not know you…, 3,11
  rewards and punishments, 3,11
  sinners will not be spared, 3,9-3,11; 35,62
kingdom of God, 5,15
  Church in eternity, 12,28
kingdom of heaven, See heaven
knowledge:
  sinlessness and knowledge of the law, 1,2-2,4
Latin language, 16,39
law (Mosaic):
  complex, 1,3
  holy, 7,20
  infants; knowledge of the law, 2,4
  knowledge of, and avoiding sin, 1,2-2,4 8,21; 9; 14,31; 35,62
  law in members resists law of the mind, 7,20
  leads to the kingdom, 11,23; 11,24; 33 35,65

Answer To The Pelagians I
The Deeds of Pelagius

The Deeds of Pelagius

legal experts, 2,4 training in, 1,3
you shall not desire, 7,20
Lazarus, Bishop, 1,2; 16,39; 35,62
letter-writing, 26,51
light, 3,7
Lord’s Prayer:
  forgive us our debts, 11,26; 12,27;
  12,28 30,55
love, 26,51
  good works and, 14,34
  goodness and life, 3,7
  thinks no evil, 4,12
lust, 3,7; 30,55

Mani, 5,15
Marcellinus, 11,25
Marcion, 5,15
marriage: virginity and, 13,29; 35,64
mercy, 3,5; 3,7; 12,28; 14,35; 26,51; 35,66
  judgment and, 3,10
  worthy of, 18,42
merit, 14,30; 17,40; 35,65
  grace and (Caelestius), 17,40-41;
  35,65
  recompense; God’s gifts, 14,35
wealthy persons, 11,23; 11,24; 33;
  35,65
miracles: Paul, 14,32
Mount Sinai, 5,14; 5,15; 35,62

New Testament:
  children of the promise, 5,14
  freedom, 5,14
  making equal to Old = injury, 5,15
  ratified by Christ’s blood, 5,14

Old Testament:
  canonical authority, 5,14; 5,15; 35,62
  heirs: earthly goods, 5,14
  kingdom of heaven promised in, 5,13-
   5,15; 35,62
  promise of temporal felicity, 5,14
  servitude, 5,14
  usage of the term, 5,14
opinion, 6,18
Origen, 3,10
original sin:
  harmed Adam alone, not the human
  race, 11,23; 11,24; 33; 35,65
Orosius (priest), 16,39

Palestine: Province of, 1; 35,62
pardon: related to merit and labor, 18,42
35,65
Paul, Saint:
  apostleship, 14,36
  by the grace of God I am..., 14,36
  crown of righteousness, 14,35
  faith: works through love, 14,34
  having all virtues and graces, 14,32
  14,33; 35,63; 35,64
  I am not fit (worthy)..., 14,36; 17,40
  35,64
  I have labored more..., 14,37; 30,54
  labors and grace, 14,36
  preacher; persecutor, 14,36
Pelagius, 1-66 (passim)
See also Caelestius
Book of Chapters, 30,54; 30,55
accepts judgment of the Church, 19,43
acquitted conditionally, 11,25; 21,45
34,59; 35,65
all are governed by their own will,
3,5-3,11
Augustine’s gradual awareness of,
22,46
Augustine’s letter to, 26,51-29,53
boast: friendship with holy persons,
29,53
books written for unnamed widow,
6,19
Church on earth is spotless, 12,27
commentary on Romans 9:16, 16,39
condemns errors he once held, 23,47
25,49
condemns views contrary to Church’s
  teaching, 35,60
contentions condemned by
  ecclesiastical court, 33,58
 correspondence with Augustine, 21,45
defense of condemned propositions,
21,45; 25,50
denials, at his trial, 33; 33,58
erroneous report of his trial, 32,57
ever does not enter one’s thoughts,
4,12
exhortations toward moral goodness,
25,50

Volume I/23
followers at Jerome’s monastery, 35,66
humans can be sinless if they want, 6,16-7,20
inquest finds him innocent, 10,22
judgments of the Church, 33,58
kingdom of heaven promised in O.T., 5,13-5,15; 35,62
knowledge of the law; sinlessness, 1,2-2,4
lie in episcopal court, 6,19
must confess and publicly argue against errors, 29,53
propositions condemned by the Synod, 35,65
propositions he refused to condemn, 11,26
reaction to judgment of Synod, 30,54
sinner will not be spared, 3,9-3,11
Synod’s judgment of his orthodoxy, 20,44
trial: boasting as if victorious, 30,54; 30,55
truthfulness questioned, 31,56
penance, 18,42; 35,65
perfection, 35,62
Church in eternity, 12,28
Peter, Saint:
prayed, that your faith fail not…., 14,35
possessions:
renouncing, by wealthy persons, 11,23; 11,24; 35,65
prayer, 6,16; 27-28,52; 29,53
predestination, 3,7; 17,41; 35,64
pride, 3,7; 14,36; 30,55
promised land, 5,14
prophecy: gift of, 14,32
providence: each human act governed by God, 14,31
punishment, 22,46
bishops and, 35,66
rash judgments, 6,18
redemption: Christ died in vain, 7,20
reincarnation, 6,18
remission of sin, See forgiveness of sin reproach, 6,18
resurrection of the body, 35,61
righteousness, 6,16; 26,51
attaining; free choice, 35,61
faith as basis of, 14,34
law and, 7,20; 35,61
people living before Christ, 11,26; 35,63
Romans, Letter to: commentaries, 16,39
Rome, 22,46
saints, 5,15
prayer, 6,16
salvation, 26,51; 30,55
Sarah, 5,15
self-governing, 3,5-3,7
servant (investing master’s money), 3,11
sexual desire, See lust
Sicily, 11,23
sin:
easiness of avoiding, 31,56
everything that does not come from faith, 14,34
helping one not to sin, 1,3
knowledge of the law and, 9; 14,31
law of, 7,20
overcome by (Caelestius), 14,30
turn from by our own effort, 10,22
sinfulness, 14,31
cleansed through Jesus, 1,3
sinlessness:
attainable without grace of God, 14,37
16,39
Caelestius on, 13,29
children of God, 18,42; 35,65
created by God, with free choice, 10,22
free choice, 35,61
God’s help and grace, 35,62
human beings, sinless, before Christ, 11,23; 11,24; 11,26; 35,63
humans can be, if they want, 6,16-6,19
7,20; 11,23; 11,24; 11,26; 35,62
knowledge of the law, 1,2-2,4
if we say we have no sin…., 11,26
no sinless person exists, 6,16
one’s not sinning depends on God, not self, 15,38
Pelagius on, 14,31
boasting after his trial, 30,54; 30,55
without the grace of God, 30,54; 35,61
possible with help of grace, 30,55
soul can be as sinless as God, 35,65

sinner:
free choice, 3,5; 3,8
will not be spared, 3,9-3,11; 35,62
soul: sharer in divine nature, 35,65
Spain, 6,19

temporal goods:
promise of the O.T., 5,14
temptation, 14,31; 14,35
pray that we not enter, 7,20
threshing floor, 12,27
Timasius, 23,47
letter to Augustine, 24,48; 25,49
tongue, 6,18
Trinity, 19,43
truth, 2,4; 6,16; 6,18; 12,27; 34,59

vessels of anger/mercy, 3,7
victory: free choice (not God’s help), 18,42 35,65
virginity:
more than is commanded, 35,63; 35,64
permanent, 13,29
superior to marital chastity, 13,29
virtue:
Caelestius on, 14,32; 35,63
developing in all, without grace, 14,37

weakness, 7,20; 14,36
wealthy persons:
renouncing their possessions, 11,23
11,24; 35,65
wedding garment (parable), 3,11
will, 35,61
all are governed by, 3,5-3,11; 35,62
arming ourselves with, 18,42
Caelestius’ errors on, 14,30
good, but evil action prevails, 7,20
grace located in, 35,65
I do not do what I want…, 7,20; 9
proud confidence in, 3,7
withdrawn from God, 3,7

wisdom: Spirit of, 3,6

Word of God: body of Christ and, 14,32
words: offensive, 6,18
work: grace and Paul’s labor, 14,36
works: graces given and, 14,33
Index from
On the Grace of Christ and Original Sin
(De gratia Christi et de peccato originali)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor
This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**Index of Scripture**

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td><strong>Matthew</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>II,35,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:17</td>
<td>II,30,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td>11:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>I,8,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:19</td>
<td>I,46,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Esther</strong></td>
<td>22:61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9-10</td>
<td>I,24,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job</strong></td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4 LXX</td>
<td>II,32,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td>5:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>I,31,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6-7</td>
<td>II,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:7-8</td>
<td>I,45,50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:4</td>
<td>II,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7-8</td>
<td>II,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>II,25; II,41,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:4</td>
<td>II,28,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115-16:10</td>
<td>II,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117:11</td>
<td>II,41,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:37</td>
<td>I,15,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:68</td>
<td>I,13,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Isaiah</strong></td>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>II,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:13</td>
<td>I,13,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Maccabees</strong></td>
<td>3:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:69</td>
<td>II,30,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New Testament</strong></td>
<td>4:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Matthew</strong></td>
<td>5:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>II,41,47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I,38,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I,8,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>I,39,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>I,39,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>II,41,47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians I
# Volume I/23

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9:16</th>
<th>I,46,51</th>
<th>2:12</th>
<th>I,5,6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>I,42,46</td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>I,5,6; I,10,11; I,25,26; I,45,49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>I,23</td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>I,48,53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>I,31,34</td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>I,13,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>I,9,10</td>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>I,49,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>I,26,27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

| 1:31 | I,8,9 |
| 2:14 | I,12,13 |
| 7:4  | II,34,39 |
| 7:5.6 | II,38,43 |
| 8:1  | I,26,27 |
| 10:4 | II,31,36 |
| 10:31 | I,44,48 |
| 11:1 | II,26,31 |
| 11:19 | II,22,25 |
| 13:4 | I,11,12 |
| 13:4.5 | I,21,22 |
| 13:12 | I,49,54 |
| 15:21-22 | II,26,31 |

2 Corinthians

| 3:5  | I,25,26 |
| 3:6  | I,8,9  |
| 4:13 | II,25  |
| 5:20-21 | II,32,37 |
| 12:7-9 | I,11,12 |
| 12:9  | I,12,13 |
| 13:7  | I,25,26 |

Galatians

| 2:20 | I,23 |
| 3:21 | I,8,9 |
| 3:22-24 | I,8,9 |
| 5:6  | I,26,27 |

Ephesians

| 2:3  | I,50,55 |
| 2:8  | I,31,34 |
| 2:8-9 | I,23 |

Philippians

| 1:29 | I,31,34 |

Colossians

| 1:13 | II,40,45 |
| 2:11 | II,32,37 |
| 2:13 | II,32,37 |

1 Thessalonians

| 4:9.10 | I,13,14 |

2 Thessalonians

| 3:2  | I,10,11 |

1 Timothy

| 1:15 | I,2,2 |
| 2:5  | II,24,28; II,26,31; II,28,33 |
| 4:14 | II,34,39 |

2 Timothy

| 1:7  | I,33,36 |

Hebrews

| 13:3 | II,34,39 |

James

| 4:7  | I,22,23 |

1 Peter

| 3:11 | I,3,3 |

1 John

| 2:16 | I,20,21 |
| 3:1  | I,21,22 |
| 3:9  | I,21,22 |
| 4:7  | I,21,22 |
| 4:7-8 | I,21,22 |
| 4:8  | I,21,22 |
| 4:10 | I,26,27 |
| 4:19 | I,26,27 |
| 5:20 | II,27,32 |

# Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

The Grace of Christ and Original Sin

ability (Pelagian idea):
  - aided by God’s help, I,41,45
  - capable of good or evil, I,5,6; 25,26
  - corrupted by sin, I,50,55
  - do, say, or think anything good, I,16,17
  - everyone who has listened . . ., I,14,15
  - fulfilling God’s commandments, I,3,4-6,7
  - given and helped by God, I,25,26
  - God blamed for our evil deeds, I,17,18
  - God’s help restricted to, I,6,7
  - grace located in nature, I,35,38
  - helped (grace) by law and teaching, I,6,8-7
  - law and teaching of Christ, I,33,36
  - nature found in law and teaching, I,41,45
  - properly due to God, I,4,5
  - root of actions, good and bad, I,20,21

Abraham:
  - blessed by Melchizedek, II,28,33
  - faith in Christ’s incarnation, II,27,32
  - righteousness of faith, II,30,35

action:
  - See also human acts

fulfilling God’s commandments, I,3,4-6,7

Adam and Eve, II,31,36; 32,27
  - See also original sin

Christian faith rests on, II,24,28

Eve and Mary contrasted, II,40,45
  - our sin = imitation of first sinner, II,15,16; 16,17

state before/after his transgression, II,4; 13,14

adultery, II,33,38; 34,39

Africa: council at Carthage, II,7,8; 12,13; 21,24

Albina, I,1,1

Ambrose, Saint, I,42,46-47,52
  - on original sin, redemption, sinless Christ, II,41,47

Peter’s tears, I,45,49
  - praised by Pelagius, I,43,47; II,41,47; 41,48

righteousness of Zechariah and Elizabeth, I,48,53

angel(s), II,40,45; 40,46

anger:
Answer To The Pelagians I

Christians, I,10,11; 31,33; 37,41; II,23,27; 29,34
circumcision:
eighth day, II,31,36
knife used in, II,31,36
not made by the hand, II,32,27
original sin and, II,30,35
coming to Christ, I,14,15
commandment(s):
circumcision, II,30,35
fulfilling: ability, will, action, I,3,4-6,7
grace and free choice, I,7
grace: fulfill commands more easily,
I,26,27-29,30
infants not capable of receiving, II,15,16
law as, I,13,14
love or fear, I,26,27
transgression, I,8,9
concupiscence, I,20,21
forgiveness of sin; II,38,43
marriage and, II,33,38
not harmful to those born again, II,38,43
condemnation, II,16,17; 31,36
See also damnation
animals, II,40,46
blessing of nature not removed by,
II,40,46
consent, II,40
Constantius, Bishop, I,34,37; 36,39
conversion:
everyone who has listened to the
Father …, I,14,15
covetousness:
source of evil, I,18,19; 20,21
creation:
praise for created nature, I,6,7
curse, I,13,14
damnation, II,29,34
death:
Adam, II,28,33
certain, II,20,22
gathered to one’s ancestors, II,30,35
passed on by original sin, I,50,55; 29,34
reigned from Adam until Moses, II,24,29
debt, I,23
delight, I,13,14
Demetrias (virgin): letter to, I,37,40
desire, I,30,32; 46,51; II,40
desire for God, I,10,11
you shall not desire, I,8,9
devil, II,37,42; 40,45; 40,46
resisting, I,22,23
devout person (Ambrose on God’s call),
I,46,51
disease, I,8,9
disobedience, II,33,38; 36,41
Elijah, II,23,27

Volume I/23
Elizabeth: righteousness, I,48,53
Emmanuel, II,25
enlightenment, I,7
Esther: king of Assyria and, I,24,25
everlasting day, II,27,32
eterlity: everlasting day, II,18
evil: See good and evil.
example, I,10,11
Christ helps us not to sin, I,2,2
first sin and, II,15,16
eye:
eyes/seeing, I,4,5
mind or flesh, I,15,16
faith:
faith: everything not coming from, is sin, I,26,27
gift of God, I,31,34
heaven, I,10,11
measure given to each one, I,31,34
Old Testament people saved by grace of Christ, II,25
patriarchs (old covenant), II,28,33
Pelagius' profession of, I,32,35-33,36
people living in time of the law, II,25
repayment for merit, I,31,34
righteous live from, I,48,53
seal of righteousness, II,30,35
we believe, therefore we speak out, II,25
fear: commandments, I,26,27
fidelity in marriage, II,34,39
fig leaves, II,34,39
fleece, II,25
flesh, II,32,27; 38,43
flood (biblical), II,29,34
forgiveness of sin: See also infant baptism
baptism, I,39,43
grace, I,2,2: 35,38
help of grace located in, I,38,42
lust and marriage, II,38,43
restoration of nature to a better state, I,37,41
fornication, II,38,43
free choice, I,3,5; 8,9; 9,10; 47,52; II,30,35; 31,36
ability in all people, I,31,33
ability, willing, being, I,5,6
clinging to God, I,22,24
coming, or not coming, to Christ, I,14,15
defense of, I,28,29; 39,43; 41,45
fulfilling God's commandment(s), I,7
God's grace joined to, I,36,39
God's help always needed, I,33,36
goods achieved by, I,23
it is no longer I who live . . . , I,23
non-Christians, I,31,34
one spirit with the Lord, I,23
power to avoid sin, I,28,29
sinning or not sinning, I,31,33
sufficient to ourselves, I,41,45
fruit: tree (good or bad), I,18,19; 19,20
gentleness, I,24,25
gifts: love and knowledge, I,26,27
glory, I,12,13
promised reward, I,10,11
God:
cause of human ability, I,4,5
clinging to, by free choice, I,22,24; 23
God is love, I,21,22
injustice (transmission of Adam's sin), II,6,6
internal, hidden power, I,24,25
See also sin
ability to choose, I,5,6; 17,18; 25,26
choice of (unaided) human being, I,4,5
good desire, evil acts, I,39,43
grace helps turning from evil, I,41,45
infants at birth, II,13,14
love and covetousness as sources, I,18,19
nature and nature's defect, II,33,38
praise or blame, II,13,14
unclean spirit, II,40,46
good works, I,31,33
meriting grace, I,22,23
goodness:
ability from God; doing, from us, I,25,26
ability to do, say, or think, I,16,17
good tree: grace of God, I,19,20
human beings praised for, I,4,5; 6,7;
16,17
virgin's witness: nature and grace, I,38,42
grace, I,6,7
See also ability
can do nothing without God, I,35,38
commandment(s):
can be fulfilled without, I,26,27
fulfilled more easily with, I,26,27-29,30
consists in law and teaching, I,7
efficacy: know, do, believe, love, I,12,13
example for our imitation, I,39,43
forgiveness of sin, I,2,2
freedom from, I,5,5
God directing our hearts, I,23
gratious, I,23; 31,34; II,24,28
helping natural ability I,3,4; I,25,26
Holy Spirit, I,5,6
infants freed from devil by, II,40,45
law and teaching of Christ, I,31,33
Volume I/23
Elizabeth: righteousness, I,48,53
Emmanuel, II,25
enlightenment, I,7
Esther: king of Assyria and, I,24,25
everylasting day, II,27,32
eternity: everlasting day, II,18
evil: See good and evil.
example, I,10,11
Christ helps us not to sin, I,2,2
first sin and, II,15,16
eye:
eyes/seeing, I,4,5
mind or flesh, I,15,16
faith:
faith: everything not coming from, is sin, I,26,27
gift of God, I,31,34
heaven, I,10,11
measure given to each one, I,31,34
Old Testament people saved by grace of Christ, II,25
patriarchs (old covenant), II,28,33
Pelagius' profession of, I,32,35-33,36
people living in time of the law, II,25
repayment for merit, I,31,34
righteous live from, I,48,53
seal of righteousness, II,30,35
we believe, therefore we speak out, II,25
fear: commandments, I,26,27
fidelity in marriage, II,34,39
fig leaves, II,34,39
fleece, II,25
flesh, II,32,27; 38,43
flood (biblical), II,29,34
forgiveness of sin: See also infant baptism
baptism, I,39,43
grace, I,2,2: 35,38
help of grace located in, I,38,42
lust and marriage, II,38,43
restoration of nature to a better state, I,37,41
fornication, II,38,43
free choice, I,3,5; 8,9; 9,10; 47,52; II,30,35; 31,36
ability in all people, I,31,33
ability, willing, being, I,5,6
clinging to God, I,22,24
coming, or not coming, to Christ, I,14,15
defense of, I,28,29; 39,43; 41,45
fulfilling God's commandment(s), I,7
God's grace joined to, I,36,39
God's help always needed, I,33,36
goods achieved by, I,23
it is no longer I who live . . . , I,23
non-Christians, I,31,34
one spirit with the Lord, I,23
power to avoid sin, I,28,29
sinning or not sinning, I,31,33
sufficient to ourselves, I,41,45
fruit: tree (good or bad), I,18,19; 19,20
gentleness, I,24,25
gifts: love and knowledge, I,26,27
glory, I,12,13
promised reward, I,10,11
God:
cause of human ability, I,4,5
clinging to, by free choice, I,22,24; 23
God is love, I,21,22
injustice (transmission of Adam's sin), II,6,6
internal, hidden power, I,24,25
See also sin
ability to choose, I,5,6; 17,18; 25,26
choice of (unaided) human being, I,4,5
good desire, evil acts, I,39,43
grace helps turning from evil, I,41,45
infants at birth, II,13,14
love and covetousness as sources, I,18,19
nature and nature's defect, II,33,38
praise or blame, II,13,14
unclean spirit, II,40,46
good works, I,31,33
meriting grace, I,22,23
goodness:
ability from God; doing, from us, I,25,26
ability to do, say, or think, I,16,17
good tree: grace of God, I,19,20
human beings praised for, I,4,5; 6,7;
16,17
virgin's witness: nature and grace, I,38,42
grace, I,6,7
See also ability
can do nothing without God, I,35,38
commandment(s):
can be fulfilled without, I,26,27
fulfilled more easily with, I,26,27-29,30
consists in law and teaching, I,7
efficacy: know, do, believe, love, I,12,13
example for our imitation, I,39,43
forgiveness of sin, I,2,2
freedom from, I,5,5
God directing our hearts, I,23
gratious, I,23; 31,34; II,24,28
helping natural ability I,3,4; I,25,26
Holy Spirit, I,5,6
infants freed from devil by, II,40,45
law and teaching of Christ, I,31,33
Answer To The Pelagians I

law: great difference, I,13,14
letter to Pope Innocent, I,30,32-33,36
located in law and teaching, I,7; 30,32
merit, See merit
my grace is sufficient . . . I,12,13
necessary for every moment, every act, I,2,2; 3,3
no ability, willing or action without God’s help, I,47,52
no one set free except by, II,29,34
old covenant; belief in resurrection, II,26,31
Pelagius:
letter to Demetrias, I,37,40
profession of faith, I,32,35-33,36
repayment for faith, I,31,34
restoration to life through, II,24,29
revelation of doctrine, I,37,40
set free from sin by, I,39,43; II,31,36
teaching, I,13,14; I,14,15
unhappy man that I am . . . , I,39,43
See will
guilt, II,38,43
tears, I,45,49
healing, I,8,9
heart:
anger and gentleness, I,24,25
eyes of the, I,7
love poured out in our hearts, I,9,10;
II,26,27; II,24,28
Peter’s tears, I,45,49
placed under God’s direction, I,23
heaven:
See also eternal life; salvation
baptism required for, II,5,5
faith in, I,10,11
Henoch, II,23,27
heresy, II,21,23; 22,25; 23,26
lack of knowledge and, II,23,27
holiness: will and, I,7
Holy Spirit, I,12,13; 34,37; 41,45
baptismal rebirth, II,38,43
God teaches by grace of, I,14,15
grace and, I,5,6
help of, I,22,23
infusion of love of Christ, I,39,43
love poured out in our hearts, I,9,10;
II,26,27; II,24,28
Mary’s virginity and, II,41,47
resist evil spirit with help of, II,27,28;
I,40,44
hope, I,11,12; II,38,43
glory to come, I,10,11
human acts:
ability due to God, I,4,5
beginning without God’s help, I,44,48
grace necessary for each act, I,2,2; 3,3;
II,9,10
need of God’s help, I,3,4; 5,6; 41,45
power, willing, being, I,47,52
teach and exhort, I,10,11
human being(s):
before act of our own will, II,13,14
born subject to sin, II,41,47
good will; bad will, I,18,19
praise of nature, before the law, II,29,34
reborn into a better nature, I,38,42
subject to unclean spirits, II,40,46
will and action attributed to, I,4,5
human body: praise, II,36,41
human nature:
animal nature and, II,40,46
defect of nature created good, I,19,20
deserves praise, II,40,46
evil is not something we are born with,
II,13,14
grace located in, I,3,3
infants not damaged by their origin,
II,21,24
need of the second Adam, II,29,34
not spotless from the beginning, I,50,55
original purity, II,35,40
restoration to a better state; penance,
I,37,41
husband and wife, II,34,39
ignorance, II,6,7
incarnation:
generation from thigh of Abraham,
II,27,32
old covenant faith in, II,26,31; 32,27
infant(s):
circumcision neglected, II,30,35
born only with what God created; no sin,
II,15,16
freed from devil by grace of Christ,
II,40,45
original sin, II,1,1; 2,2; 4; 13,14
state of Adam before his transgression,
II,13,14; 14,15; 15,16; II,16,17
subject to condemnation, I,18; 21,23
unbaptized; heaven, II,18,20; 20,22
infant baptism:
Caelestius on, I,30,32; 32,35; II,23,26
forgiveness of sin, I,32,35; II,1,1; 5,5; 6,6;
II,16,17; 21,24; 40,45
necessary (Caelestius), II,4
Pelagius:
deceived the judges, II,10,11
tried to deceive the pope, II,17,19
practice as proof of original sin, II,40,45
spiritually circumcised, II,32,27
Innocent, Pope, II,7,8; 8,9; 9,10; 17,19; 21,24
Pelagius’ letter to, I,30,32-33,36; 34,37

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

intercourse, See sex

Jesus Christ:
believe in him; suffer for him, I,31,34
Christian faith rests on, II,24,28
cooperates with human will, I,44,48
created human nature; healed its defect, II,33,38
divinity and humanity, II,27,32
everyone who has listened to the Father . . ., I,14,15
example and teaching, I,35,38;42; 41,45
faith in the whole Christ, II,24,28
form of the servant, II,28,33
grace through, I,47,52
helps us not to sin, by example, I,2,2
inferior to the Father, II,28,33
mediator, I,50,55; II,24,28; 25; 28,33; 40,46
mediator for both Testaments, II,26,31
Old Testament faith in, II,25
sinless, II,28,33; 32,27; 41,47
tempted, II,41,47
those he looked upon shed tears, I,45,49
without me you can do nothing, I,29,30
Job, II,24,28
justification, I,8,9; 30,31; 50,55
no righteousness without faith in Christ, II,24,28
sinners under the law, I,39,43
knowledge:
knowing what one should do, I,33,36
lack of, and Christian faith, II,23,27
love not distinguished by Pelagius, II,26,27
revelation; nature, I,40,44
law:
commands, rather than helps, I,8,9
fulfilled by grace, I,9,10
gift or commandment(s): I,13,14
grace:
  God's help, I,7
great difference, I,13,14
helping/natural ability, I,6,8
help existed in time of prophets, I,41,45
I see another law . . . (Paul), I,39,43
justification and righteousness, II,24,28
knowledge of sin through, I,8,9; II,25
no one is found exempt from sin, II,41,47
not doing what one ought to do, I,13,14
people who lived before, I,38,42
purpose: to show need of grace, II,24,29
righteousness and, I,9,10; 48,53
terrifies, convicts, punishes, II,25
usefulness, I,8,9
willing what is good, I,10,11
learning:
everyone who has listened to the Father . . ., I,14,15
life, I,8,9
temporal = uncertain, II,20,22
Lord’s Day, II,31,36
love, I,3,3; 30,32; 35,38; 41,45
does / thinks no evil, I,21,22
doing what one knows one should, I,33,36
failing to do good, I,26,27
faith-filled, II,25
fulfillment of the law, I,9,10
gift of grace, I,44,48
God has first loved us, I,26,27
highest degree of (Paul), I,11,12; 12,13
knowledge not distinguished by Pelagius, I,26,27
learned from God, I,13,14
merit and grace, I,26,27
not puffed up, I,11,12
poured out in our hearts, I,9,10; II,26,27
source of good, I,18,19; 20,21
virtue; comes from God, I,21,22
lust, I,15,16; II,34,39; 37,42; 38,43; 40,45
marital chastity, II,33,38
marriage and, II,38,43
no intercourse without, II,36,41
marriage:
  avoiding fornication, II,38,43
  conjugal relations, II,34,39
  fertility, II,35,40
  goodness not destroyed, II,37,42
  increase and multiply . . ., II,35,40
  lust and, II,38,43
original state (before the Fall), II,35,40
practice licit intercourse; conceal the shameful, II,37,42
procreation of children, II,33,38; 34,39
purpose of intercourse, II,38,43
sacred character of, II,34,39
satisfaction of sexual pleasure, II,38,43
See also sex

Mary, Blessed Virgin:
contrasted with Eve, II,40,45
Melania, I,1,1
Melchizedek, II,28,33
mercy, I,44,48; II,17,18
merit, II,24,28
doing God’s will, I,22,24
gift of faith, I,31,34
grace and, I,3,3; 31,34
love and grace, I,26,27
meriting grace, by good works, I,22,23
Methuselah, II,23,27

Answer To The Pelagians I
modesty, II,36,41
Moses: law given through, II,24,29
Mystical Body: old covenant, II,26,31
nakedness, II,34,39
natural ability. See ability
nature, See human nature
Noah, II,29,34
non-believers, II,40,45
gift of faith, I,10,11
non-christians, I,31,34
Novatians, II,41,47
old covenant:
faith in the incarnation, II,32,27
people saved by faith; grace of Christ, II,25
olive trees, II,40,45
original justice:
purity, II,35,40
sex in, II,36,41
original sin:
Adam alone was harmed by, II,2,2; 3,3;
4,4; 10,11; 13,14; 15,16; II,16,17
birth in the flesh, II,38,43
Caelestius on, II,2,2; 3,3;
circumcision and, II,30,35
denial is heresy, II,23,26
God’s justice; unbaptized infants, II,20,22
goodness of marriage and, II,33,38
harming those who do not sin, II,21,24
human race harmed by example, not
propagation, II,15,16; 16,17
humans born with defect of, II,40,46
infant baptism, I,33,36
infants, II,1,1; 2,2; 4,4; 5,5; 10,11; 13,14;
14,15
infants condemned for, II,31,36
nature and nature’s defect, II,33,38
nature corrupted and condemned, I,50,55
pain of childbirth and, II,36,41
passed on as a result of being born,
II,40,45
practice of infant baptism as proof of,
II,40,45
salvation of infants, II,19,21
synod of Palestine; charges summarized,
II,14,12-12,13
transmission of, II,4,4; 6,6; 10,11;
13,14; 14,15; 23,26
Palestine, bishops of, II,8,9
Pammachius, I,3,3
paradise, II,23,27
parents, II,38,43
Paul, Saint:
revelations, I,11,12
on sinfulness, II,31,36
taken up to third heaven, II,23,27
who will set me free . . ., II,41,47
Paulinus (deacon), I,3,3; 4,7,8
Paulinus, Bishop, I,35,38
Pelagius, I,1,1-50,55
power
ability, will, action, I,3,4-6,7; 21,22;
25,26; 47,52
accused of denying grace, I,41,45
acquittal, I,31,34; II,6,5; 9,10; 14,15;
16,17
appeal to authority of Ambrose,
I,42,46-47,52
arguments against grace, I,25,26
Caelestius compared with, II,12,13-14,
14 charge of deceiving the bishops, II,15,16;
16,17
deceived bishops of Palestine, II,8,9;
10,11
defense of free choice, I,5,6
denies original sin, II,41,48
equivocation, I,1,1
example: speaking, I,16,17; 25,26
equivalent: the eye, I,15,16
on infant baptism, II,5,5; 6,6; 16,17
knowledge and love not distinguished by,
I,26,27
letter to Demetrias, I,37,40
mercy of Christ, I,45,49
mercy of God, II,30,35
people of God, II,30,35
perfection, I,11,12; 13,14
Peter, Saint:
denial; tears after Jesus looked upon him,
I,45,49
I will not be scandalized . . ., I,45,50
salvation of the fathers (O.T.), II,25
saved by the Rock, I,45,50
physician, II,26,30
Pinianus, I,1,1
Platonists, I,31,36
praise, II,13,14
Ambrose, I,43,47
good will and good acts, I,4,5; 6,7; 16,17;
17,18
righteousness, I,26,27
prayer, I,41,45
Pelagius on, I,30,32

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

that you do nothing evil, I,25,26
predestination, I,12,13
pride, I,8,9; II,11,12; II,12,13; I,23; II,40,46
procreation of children, II,34,39
promise, I,8,9; 10,11; 30,31
prophets: law and teaching, I,41,45
punishment:
  fear of, I,13,14
  reign of death, II,24,29
reason, II,26,30
  lust and, II,34,39; 38,43
redemption, I,30,32; II,19,21; 41,47
renewal: interior life, I,11,12
reproach, I,48,53
resurrection of the body:
  Ambrose on, II,41,47
revelation: grace, I,7
righteousness, II,32,27
  ability, will, action, I,3,4
  canonical scriptures, I,42,46
  Christ’s example, I,2,2; 38,42
  commandment(s): known and feared, I,8,9
holy lives before the law; before Christ, I,38,42
law and teaching as helping grace, I,9,10
law as source = not from God, I,13,14
law ineffective; Christ came as physician, II,26,30
love and embrace, I,8,9
love of, I,13,14
nature corrupted; law was added; II,26,30
nature: creator known by reason, II,26,30
nonbelievers benefitted by God’s r.
II,21,24
none, without Christian faith, II,24,28
old covenant; salvation, II,26,31
perfection (law), I,48,53
praise the one who makes us righteous, I,26,27
sweetness, I,13,14
true, I,47,52
Zechariah and Elizabeth (Ambrose on), I,48,53
Roman empire, II,17,18
Rome, I,12,2; 3,3; 22,23; 30,32; 41,45; II,1,1;
  2,2; 3,3; II,5,5; 8,9; 12,13; 21,23; 21,24;
  23,26
root: good and evil (analogy), I,18,19; 20; 21
Rufinus (priest), I,3,3
rule of faith, II,29,34
sacraments:
  Pelagians dare not reject, I,40,45
sacrifice(s):
  animal defects, II,32,27
  called sin, II,32,27
salvation:
  apart from Christ’s redemption, I,30,32
  righteous people of old covenant, II,26,31
  unbaptized infants, II,18,20; 20,22; 21,23
  salvation history:
    three ages (Pelagius), II,26,30
  Samaria, I,46,51
  Satan (thorn in Paul’s flesh), I,11,12; 12,13
  schoolmaster, I,8,9
  self-sufficiency, I,5,6; 25,26; 41,45
sex:
  disobedience of members (organs), II,34,39
  mutual consent, II,38,43
  privacy in intercourse, II,37,42
sin:
  See also forgiveness of sin abounding, II,24,29
  attributed to God, I,25,26
  corrupted: a nature that was created good, I,19,20
  covetousness: not born of God, I,21,22
desire and consent, II,40
everything that comes not from faith, I,26,27
  free choice, I,28,29
  human beings not born with, II,6,6
  imitation of the first sinner, I,15,16;
  16,17
  law and knowledge of, I,8,9
  law: knowledge of sin, II,25
  old law; Christ’s teaching, I,39,43
  sacrifices for, are called sins, II,32,27
sinfulness:
  humans do not cease to be human, II,40,46
sinlessness:
  ability for, due to God, I,4,5
  Ambrose as witness, I,43,47
  free choice; reject help of grace, I,30,32
  law and teaching, I,3,3
  nature and free choice, I,3,3
  resurrection of the body, II,38,43
  spotless in this world, I,49,54
  synod of Palestine: charges summarized,
  II,11,12-12,13
  Zechariah and Elizabeth, I,48,53
sinner: habit of sin, I,39,43
Sodom, II,29,34
Son of God: way, truth, life, II,27,32
  soul:
    sweetness in, I,13,14
    weak, I,12,13
  speaking, I,4,5
  example used by Pelagius, I,16,17; 25,26
  spirit(s): unclean, II,40,46
spiritual life:
  Jesus looked upon Peter (interiorly), I,45,49

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

- seeing, desiring, doing, I,14,15
- sweetness, I,13,14

- teaching:
  - exhortation; example, I,10,11
  - God affects willing and acting, I,14,15
  - grace helping natural ability, I,6,8; 7
  - righteousness and, I,9,10
  - times of the prophets, I,41,45
  - willing that is good, I,10,11
- tears: wash away guilt, I,45,49
- temptation: resisting the tempter, I,40,44

- thinking:
  - ability from God; doing, from ourselves, I,25,26
  - threshing floor, II,25
  - time: grace necessary, I,2,2
    - good and evil (analogy), I,18,19; 19,20
    - Trinity, II,23,26
    - truth, I,2,2; 30,31; II,22,25; 35,40

- understanding, II,40,46
- unity:
  - clinging, become one with him, I,46,51
  - one spirit with the Lord, I,23

- veil of the temple, II,25
- vice, I,20,21; 39,43; II,13,14
- virgin:
  - conceiving a child, II,35,40
  - intercourse: pain and blood, II,35,40
  - virgin birth, II,41,47
- virtue, I,20,21; 39,43; II,13,14
  - made perfect in weakness, I,12,13

- vocation:
  - God calls those whom he chooses (Ambrose), I,46,51

- found more easily if grace helps, I,41,45
- weakness, I,11,12; 12,13; II,40,46
- wickedness:
  - human beings become bad trees, I,19,20
  - wife and husband, II,34,39
- will:
  - ability due to God, I,4,5
  - Christ cooperates with (Ambrose), I,44,48
  - dependent on God’s will, I,23; 46,51
  - fulfilling God’s commandments, I,3,4-6,7
  - God helps, I,15,16; 45,49
  - God produces the willing in one . . ., I,10,11
  - God’s help not needed, I,3,4; 5,6; 41,45; 47,52

- good will:
  - comes from God, I,21,22
  - God’s work, I,24,25
  - self-produced, I,10,11
  - holiness and, I,7
  - infants and, II,15,16
  - making human will dependent on God’s will, I,22,24; 46,51
  - not helped by any additional power, I,2,2
  - original defilement, II,40,46
  - sin and, II,6,6

- wisdom:
  - desire for God, I,10,11
  - God and marriage, II,35,40
  - revelation of, I,11,12
  - works, I,23; 31,34
  - world: term for “living in the world”, I,20,21
  - wrongdoing, I,48,53; II,13,14

- Zechariah: righteousness, I,48,53
- Zosimus, Pope, II,2,2; 6,7; 7,8; 8,9; 9,10; 17,19; 21,24
Index from
On the Perfection of Human Righteousness
(De perfectione justitiae hominis)

Included in book:

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Perfection of Human Righteousness

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>2,4; 5,11; 11,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>24:3</td>
<td>12,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:15</td>
<td>12,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>5,11; 8,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:17</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:9-14</td>
<td>10,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:15</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:15-19</td>
<td>19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td>4:21</td>
<td>13,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>16,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>12,29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:17</td>
<td>11,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4 LXX</td>
<td>11,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:16-17</td>
<td>11,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:17</td>
<td>11,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:8</td>
<td>12,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:11-12</td>
<td>11,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>11,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29:14</td>
<td>11,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>14:1,3</td>
<td>13,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:2</td>
<td>13,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:1-2</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>19,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:24</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:13</td>
<td>15,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:3-4</td>
<td>15,34; 15,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:17</td>
<td>2,2; 4,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>20,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:6</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31:8</td>
<td>4,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:2</td>
<td>6,15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:17</td>
<td>11,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8</td>
<td>15,33; 15,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9</td>
<td>15,33; 15,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>15,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:11</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Song of Songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:5 LXX</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>5,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>6,14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>16,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>16,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24</td>
<td>15,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:30</td>
<td>15,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>12,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14-17</td>
<td>19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:10</td>
<td>15,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:25</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:19-20</td>
<td>19,40; 19,42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>8,18; 11,28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# New Testament

## Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>8,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>15,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14-15</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>8,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>10,21; 19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>6,15; 7,16; 8,18; 8,19; 9,20; 11,24; 15,34; 15,36; 21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>6,14; 10,21; 13,31; 15,34; 20,43; 21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>6,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>3,5; 4,9; 10,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12-13</td>
<td>21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-30</td>
<td>10,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>14,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:43</td>
<td>15,34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>5,11; 8,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:39-40</td>
<td>5,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>11,24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mark

10:18  14,32

Luke

1:6     17,38
11:41   11,24
13:32   15,35
18:19   14,32

John

1:8     14,32
1:9     14,32
6:44    19,41
6:63-65 | 19,41 |
7:39    | 15,35 |
8:36    | 4,9   |
12:4    | 11,23 |
13:18   | 11,24 |
14:4    | 11,23 |

Romans

5:5     5,11; 10,21; 10,22; 20,43
5:12    18,39; 21,44
5:20    19,42
6:12    6,12; 21,44
7:7     2,4
7:15    11,28
7:24    7,16; 8,17
7:25    2,1; 2,3; 2,4; 3,6; 4,10; 7,16; 8,17; 10,21; 20,43
8:24-25 | 3,8 |
8:26    20,43
8:29-30 | 20,43 |
8:30    | 15,35 |
9:16    | 19,40 |
9:28    | 5,11 |
10:3    | 10,22 |
10:10   | 10,22; 11,28 |
12:2    | 5,11 |
12:3    | 19,41 |
13:9    | 2,4 |
13:10   | 3,8; 10,21 |

1 Corinthians

1:31    | 12,30 |
7:36    | 19,40; 19,41 |
13:10   | 8,19 |
13:12   | 6,14 |
15:34   | 9,20 |
15:55-56 | 6,14 |

2 Corinthians

4:16    | 2,4; 3,7; 4,10; 18,39 |
9:7     | 10,21 |
13:11   | 9,20 |

Galatians

2:21    | 7,16 |
3:19    | 19,42 |
5:17    | 2,1; 6,12; 8,17 |

Ephesians

1:3-4   | 9,20 |
1:4     | 17,38 |
2:3     | 2,3 |
5:8     | 12,30 |
5:26    | 15,35 |
5:27    | 9,20; 15,35 |

Philippians

2:13    | 19,41 |
2:14-15 | 9,20 |

Answer To The Pelagians I
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:12-13-15</td>
<td>8,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>15,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-22</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>15,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>10,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>19,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>17,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philemon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>19,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>19,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>15,34; 17,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-16</td>
<td>9,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>4,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>18,39; 21,44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>3,8; 18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2-3</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-6</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21-22</td>
<td>15,34; 15,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>10,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>10,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>18,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>12,30; 12,30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/23**
Answer To The Pelagians I

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The Perfection of Human Righteousness

Abraham, 19,42
Adam and Eve:
sin entered the world through, 18,39;
anger, 19,41
children of, 2,3
apostates, 11,27; 18,39
baptism: forgiveness of sin, 7,16
belief: Christ's foreknowledge re believers,
19,41
bible: texts re command to be without sin,
8,17ff
boast, 12,30; 15,33; 15,34
Caelestius, 1,0; 8,17; 9,20; 10,22; 11,28;
14,32; 15,33; 16,37; 17,38; 18,39;
19,40; 19,41; 19,42
cheerfulness, 8,18, 10,21
children of God, 9,20; 13,31; 14,32; 18,39
church:
body of Christ, 15,35
Christ united himself with, 15,35
glorious, 15,35
holy and spotless, 9,20
perfect, 15,35
commandment(s):
doing the impossible, 3,6
goal = love, 10,21
keeping = love for God, 10,22; 19,41
light and sweet, 10,21
many, in scripture, 5,41
not burdensome, 10,21ff
scripture proofs: be without sin, 8,17ff
two: love God; love neighbor, 5,11
wash away sins, 17,38
concupiscence, 6,12; 8,18; 8,19; 11,27; 11,28;
13,31; 21,44
condemnation, 9,20; 19,42
consent, 11,28; 12,29; 21,44
continence, 8,19
cooperation: receiving God's help, 20,43
creation: God made all things good, 14,32
darkness, 12,30
David, King, 19,42
death, 7,16; 11,27
origin: first sin, 18,39; 21,44
set free from body of, 8,17
sin as sting of, 6,14
Definitions Attributed to Caelestius, 1,0ff
desire, 6,14; 21,44
carnal, 8,19
for I do not the good that I want . . ., 11,28
ignorance, 9,20
righteous prayer, 8,18
world and, 5,11
you shall not desire, 5,11; 11,28
despair, 10,21
Elizabeth, 17,38
end of the world, 11,24
enemies: love of, 8,18
Eutropius, Bishop, 1,0
faith, 7,16; 8,18; 8,19; 11,23; 11,27; 11,28;
15,36; 18,39
belief in the heart, 11,28
drawn by the Father, 19,41
God imparts measure of, 19,41
grace and, 6,14
no man can come to me unless . . ., 19,41
prayer and, 19,40
righteous live from, 8,19
sanctification, 18,39
vision and, 3,8
fasting: chastisement of the body, 8,18
fear, commandments and, 10,21
flesh: sin dwells in the, 11,28
foot: limping, 2,4
forgiveness of sin, 8,18; 11,24; 11,28
baptism and, 7,16
universal need of, 21,44
free choice: sinfulness and, 4,9
freedom: unable to do what we know, 4,9
gift: Father in heaven gives good things,
14,32
glory, 8,18
godlessness, 3,8
god:
foreknowledge, 13,31
I am who am, 14,32
immutable good, 14,32
restoration of human goodness, 4,10
righteous, 6,15; 10,22
good and evil:
choice, 19,40
free choice, 4,9
human nature, 6,14
power to do good, 11,28
two commands, 5,11
will the good; do evil, 11,28
good works: almsgiving, 8,18
goodness:
every person chooses, 19,41
flesh and, 11,28
God alone is good, 14,32
not a single person does good, 13,31
restoration of, 4,10
grace, 8,17; 14,32
abundant, 19,42
cooperation needed, to be helped, 20,43
faith and, 6,14

Volume I/23
freed from condemnation, 19,42
healing the will, 6,12
help in avoiding sin, 2,1; 2,4; 3,5; 3,6; 4,10; 6,12; 7,16
poured into our hearts, by the Spirit, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
greed, 2,4
hands: innocent, 15,36
healing, 20,43
heart:
  blessed are the pure, 15,34; 15,36
  chaste, 15,33
  correction; faith, 19,41
difference: pure / upright, 15,36
good things from the treasure of, 14,32
  love poured into our hearts, by the Spirit, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
  self-reproach, 11,28; 15,36
  upright, 15,34; 15,36
heaven:
  no sin; no infirmity, 18,39
  running toward perfecting place, 8,19
Hebrews, Letter to the, 17,38
holiness, 9,20; 18,39; 21,44
Holy Spirit:
  given, after the ascension, 15,35
  love poured out in our hearts, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
hope, 3,8; 7,16; 8,19
human beings:
  commanded to do good, 4,10
daily interior renewal, 18,39
  God alone is good, 14,32
good, as created, 4,10
liars, 12,30
restoration of goodness, 4,10
human nature:
  goodness questioned, 6,14
  humility, 6,15; 10,22
  ignorance, 9,20
  infidelity, 11,28
Jesus Christ, 2,1
  advance knowledge of the righteous of old, 19,42
  came to take sins away, 18,39
  failings: Christ’s healing, 19,42
  foreknowledge re. believers, 19,41
  form of a servant, 15,35
  mediator, 19,42
  resurrection, 15,35
  sinfulness, 11,24; 12,29
Job, 19,42
  pure prayer, 11,25
  sufferings, 11,26
  without reproach, 16,37
John the Baptist: light, 14,32
Joshua, 19,42
judgment:
  mercy triumphs over, 17,38
  judgment day, 4,10; 11,24
  judgment without mercy, 15,34
  righteous king shall sit upon his throne, 15,33
law, 21,44
  desire to sin, 6,14
  entered so sin might abound, 19,42
  you shall not desire, 11,28
liar:
  every human being, 12,29
  if we say we have no sin . . ., 18,39; 21,44
life, 19,41
light, 14,32
limping, 2,4; 3,5
Lord’s Prayer:
  bring us not into temptation, 21,44
  deliver us from evil, 6,14; 13,31; 15,34; 19,40
  forgive us our sins, 6,15; 7,16; 8,18;
  11,24; 15,36; 21,44
love, 8,19
  fulfillment of the law, 3,8
  goal of God’s commandments, 10,21
  imperfect, and sin, 6,15
  perfect, 7,16; 8,18
  poured out in our hearts, by the Spirit, 5,11; 10,21; 20,43
love for God:
  command: whole heart, mind, soul, 5,11; 8,19
  keep his commandments, 10,22
  lust, 6,12
Mani, 6,14
Marcion, 6,14
marriage, 19,41
mercy, 15,33; 19,40; 19,41
See also judgment day
  judgment and, 17,38
mind, 2,4
  newness of, 5,11
Moses, 19,42
nature, 2,3; 6,12
necessity, 4,9
neighbor: command to love, 5,11
Noah, 19,42
Old Testament:
  faith of the righteous, 19,42
Onesimus, 19,40
original sin:
  born of God, 18,39
  contracted from man in whom all sinned, 19,42; 21,44
pardon, 15,36
Answer To The Pelagians I

patience: tested (Job), 11,26
Paul, Bishop, 1,0
Paul, Saint, 5,11
Pelagians, 11,23
perfection, 8,17; 8,18; 8,19; 13,31; 15,35
because your Father is . . ., 9,20
eternal, 14,32
progress in, 7,16
running toward, 9,20
scripture texts enjoining, 9,20
those close to, are called perfect, 11,23
perseverance, 11,27
Philemon, 19,40
physician, 3,5; 4,9; 10,22; 21,44
pleasure, 21,44
possibility / impossibility, 3,6; 3,7
poverty, 15,36
prayer, 8,18
faith leads to, 19,40
pure, 9,20
pure (Job), 11,25
predestination, 15,35; 20,43
pride, 5,11
progress, 7,16; 8,18; 15,34; 15,36; 18,39; 20,43
lessening one’s sins, 11,27; 13,31
providence, 19,41
punishment: fear of, 10,22
race: running, 8,19
redemption:
Christ dying in vain, 7,16
mission of Son of God, 3,7
riches: no sin on conscience, 15,36
righteousness, 5,11; 11,24; 15,33; 21,44
asking God’s help, 20,43
belief in the heart, 11,28
complete, 3,8
elements: fasting, almsgiving, prayer, 8,18
hunger and thirst for, 8,17
no living person found . . ., 17,38
Old Testament; advance knowledge of Christ, 19,42
people drawing close to perfection, 11,23
perfect, 3,7; 13,31; 17,38
self-accusation, 11,27
running, 9,20; 11,27
saints, 18,39
salvation, 10,22
Samuel, 19,42
schoolmaster, 5,11; 19,42
scripture, See bible
seeking God, 13,31; 14,32
self-control, 5,11
self-reproach, 11,28; 15,36
Sicily, 1,0
sin, 15,33
See also concupiscence; consent; grace;
temptation
arising from necessity or from will, 2,2
avoiding, with help of grace, 2,1
commandment to be without, 3,6; 5,11
See consent
desire increased by the law, 6,14
desire to, 11,28
duty to be without, 3,5
fault that one cannot be without sin, 6,13
forms of, 5,11
God imputes to human beings, 6,15; 21,44
God wills that one be without, 3,7; 3,8
grace needed to avoid, 21,44
love deficiency, 6,15
members; reigning, 11,28
natural, or addition to nature, 2,3
possibility of avoiding, 2,1; 5,11; 6,15
See redemption
self-accusation, 11,27
sting of death, 6,14
suffering for (Job), 11,26
ing action, 2,4; 12,29
venial, 9,20
why a human can’t be without, 6,12
sinfulness, 8,19
defective human condition, 4,9
fault that will alone cannot overcome, 6,13
sinlessness:
claim that some human has, 21,44
doing good not the same as, 13,31
God’s command; proofs from scripture, 8,17ff
if we say we have no sin . . ., 18,39; 21,44
Jesus alone is sinless, 12,29
not even an infant is free, 11,28
only said of the Only-Begotten, 11,24
perfection of righteousness, 8,18
persons by their own resources, 7,16
possibility of, 4,9; 11,23; 20,43
questions on human condition, 7,16
spotless, 17,38
when and through whom, 7,16
words; thoughts, 20,43
sinner: healing, 4,9; 19,42
slave, 4,9
Son of God: sinless, 3,7
suffering: God’s reasons for (Job), 11,26
temptation, 15,35; 21,44
truth, 12,30; 20,43
vice, 4,9
vision, 3,8; 7,16; 8,18; 18,39
weakness, 8,18

Volume I/23
wickedness, 11.28; 19.42
will, 2.1; 2.2; 3.5; 6.12; 10.21; 10.22
See also consent
  error: be truthful without God’s help, 12.30
fault that will alone cannot overcome, 6.13
God’s help is needed, 19.40
good actions done by, 15.34
healed only by grace of God, 6.12
sin of the first human, 21.44
sufficient to avoid sin, 21.44
unable to follow, 4.9; 6.12
wisdom, 12.30
works of mercy, 15.36
world: conformed to, 5.11
wound, 20.43
wrestler, 12.29
yoke, 10.22
Zechariah, 17.38
Included in book:

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23  Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins
and the Baptism of Little Ones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31 II,21,35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9 III,11,20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17 I,16,21</td>
<td>II,2,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19 I,36,67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23 I,36,67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24 I,31,60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16 II,33,53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19 I,2,2; I,4,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19:18 II,33,53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3 I,10,11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:19 II,22,36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18 I,10,11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8 II,12,17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2-3 II,10,14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:28-31 II,10,14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4-5 III,7,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:5-6 II,11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6 II,7,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:3 I,22,54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4 I,22,54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume I/23

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Proverbs
3:12 II,16,25
3:18 II,21,35
4:27 II,35,57
8:35 II,18,30
20:9 III,7,13

Wisdom
2:24 I,9,9
2:25 I,9,9
4:11 I,21,30
8:19-20 I,25,38
9:15 II,10,12

Sirach
18:30 II,5,5
25:24 I,16,21

Isaiah
53:3-12 I,22,54
53:6 I,22,54
56:1 II,5,5
61:1 I,22,54

Jeremiah
2:29 II,10,14
10:23 II,6,7
10:23-24 II,17,26

Ezekiel
28:3 II,10,13

Daniel
9:5,11,15 II,10,13
9:20 II,10,13
9:24 I,14

Zechariah
1:3 II,5,5

New Testament
Matthew
1:21 II,29,48; III,4,8
5:6 II,5,5
5:48 II,15,22

6:12 II,4,4; II,10,13; II,16,25; III,13,23
6:12-13 II,4,4
6:13 II,2,2; II,4,4
8:22 I,2,2
9:12 I,18,23; III,4,8
12:30 I,28,55
19:5-6 I,16,21
19:6 I,31,60
19:14 I,19,24
19:28 II,7,9
25:34 III,3,6
25:46 III,3,6
26:28 I,24,34; II,30,49

Mark
10:8 I,31,60
16:15-16 I,27,40
16:16 III,2,3; III,3,6

Luke
1:6 II,13,20
2:11 I,23; II,29,48
4:18-19 I,22,54
5:32 I,18,23; I,19,24; I,27,40
6:37-38 II,3,3
9:56 III,5,10
9:60 I,2,2
19:9-10 I,27,40
20:34 I,20,27; II,9,11
23:43 I,22,31
24:46-47 I,27,40
24:46-47 I,22,53

John
1:1 I,31,60
1:5 I,25,37
1:9 I,25,36; I,25,37; I,25,38
1:12-13 II,23,37
1:14 I,31,60; II,18,31; II,24,38
1:29 I,23; I,27,40
3:1-21 I,30,59
3:3 I,20,26; I,30,58; II,27,43
3:5 I,20,26; I,20,27; I,30,58; III,3,6;
III,4,8
3:8 I,22,32
3:13 I,31,60
3:14-15 I,32,61

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

3:15  I,32,61
3:16  I,33,62
3:18  I,33,62; III,2,3
3:19  I,33,62
3:35-36 I,20,28
3:36  III,2,3
6:51-52.54 I,24,34
6:52  I,20,27
6:54  I,20,26; II,20,27
8:36  II,6,7
9:19  II,10,14
9:19-20 II,10,14
9:23  II,10,14
10:27-28 I,27,40
12:46  I,24,35; I,25,38
13:26-14:5 II,10,14
14:1  I,14
14:1-2  II,10,15
145LXX I,24,34
14:6  I,27,40
14:16-17 II,10,14; II,10,15
14:17  II,10,15
14:30  I,39,70
14:30-31 II,29,48; II,31,50
15:13  II,34,54
16:7  II,32,52
16:8-10 II,32,52
39:33 III,10,16

Acts of the Apostles
3:14-15 I,22,52
4:11-12 I,22,52
5:30-31 I,22,52
10:43 I,22,52
13:38-39 I,22,52

Romans
2:12  I,10,12
3:22-26 I,27,43
4:4-8  I,27,43
4:5  I,14; I,19,25
4:23-25 I,27,43
5:5  II,17,27
5:6  I,18,23; I,27,43
5:12  I,8,8; I,9,9; I,9,10; I,10,1; I,10,11; I,10,12; I,28,55; II,29,47; III,4,8; III,7,14; III,11,19
5:12-13 I,10,12

1 Corinthians
1:13  II,18,31
1:31  I,22,32
2:6  II,15,22
3:2  II,15,22
3:7  I,9,10; I,25,37
4:7  II,18,28; II,18,30
6:15 III,9,17
7:14 II,25,41; II,26; III,12,21
11:1  I,9,10; I,14
12:12 I,31,60
14:20 I,25,36

Answer To The Pelagians I
15:3 1,27,44
15:21 1,8,8
15:21-22 1,8,8; II,30,49; III,11,19
15:53-56 III,11,20
15:54-56 III,11,20
15:57 III,11,20

2 Corinthians
4:6 II,13,20
4:16 II,7,9
5:2-4 I,2,2
5:14-6:2 I,27,44
10:17 I,22,32; II,18,31
12:9 II,16,24

Galatians
1:3-4 I,27,45
3:8 I,10,11
3:19-22 I,27,45
3:21-22 I,10,12
3:22 III,11,20

Ephesians
2:1-5 I,27,46
2:3 I,21,29; II,10,15
2:8-10 I,27,46
2:12-18 I,22,46
4:21-24 I,22,46
4:22-24 II,7,9

Philippians
2:8 II,29,48; II,31,51
2:13 I,33,62; II,18,30
3:6 II,13,20
3:7-11 II,13,20
3:12-14 II,13,20
3:15 II,15,22
3:15-16 II,13,20

Colossians
1:12-14 I,22,47
2:10-15 I,22,47
3:5 I,6,6

2 Thessalonians
3:2 I,28,55

1 Timothy
1:15-16 I,22,48
2:5-6 I,22,48
2:6 II,1,1

2 Timothy
1:8-10 I,22,48
4:7-8 II,16,24

Titus
2:13-14 I,22,49
3:4-7 I,22,49
3:5 I,18,23; I,24,34; II,7,9

Hebrews
1:1-3 I,22,50
2:2-3 I,22,50
2:14-15 I,22,50; II,31,50
2:17 I,22,50
4:14-15 I,22,50
7:24-27 I,22,50
7:26 II,13,19
9:24-28 I,22,50
11:1 II,31,50
11:13 II,31,50
11:39 II,31,50
12:6 II,16,25

James
1:13 II,4,4
2:10 II,3,3
2:12-13 II,3,3
3:2 III,7,13

1 Peter
1:3-5 I,27,41
1:5 I,28,55
1:7-9 I,27,41
2:9 I,27,41
2:22-23 III,7,13
2:22-24-25 I,22,54
3:18 I,27,41
3:21 I,24,34; I,27,41

1 John
1:7 I,27,42

Volume I/23
Punishment and the Forgiveness of Sins

Aaron, II,13,19; 16,25
Abel, I,15,19
Abraham, I,10,11; II,25,39; II,25,40
Adam and Eve:
   all share in sin of, I,9,9
   before/after their disobedience, II,22,36
   birth in, as sinners, III,2,2
   body, after his sin, I,16,21
   condemnation established for his lineage, I,11,13
   created fully grown, I,37,68
   death came through a man, I,8,8
   disobedience; results, II,21,35
   Eve: rib of Adam, I,37,68
   first man, I,9,10
   forbidden fruit, II,21,35
   imitation; persuasion, I,13,17
   mortal body, I,3,3
   naming his wife, I,36,67
   one flesh, I,16,21
   one in whom all have sinned, I,15,19; 28,55
   origin of those born with sin, I,9,10
   original state, I,37,68
Pelagius on, III,4,9
propagation of sin, I,13,18; III,1,1
salvation of, II,34,55
sin and death, III,11,19
sin entered by one man . . ., I,9,10
sinless: death and, I,2,2; 3,3
willful sin, I,9,10
woman who believed the serpent, I,28,56
you are earth . . ., I,2,2; 4,4
doption, I,27,41
awaiting, II,7,9
children of God, II,7,9
complete, II,8,10
adultery, I,29,57
affection, I,35,66
aging, I,16,21
angel(s), I,25,37; 27,50; II,29,48
anger, I,23; II,16,25; 19,33
   children of, I,27,54; II,10,15; III,2,2
animals, I,24,35; 37,68; 38,69
apostles:
   accept Christ’s teaching, I,27,41
   Lord’s Prayer, II,10,13
Ark: Church, II,10,12
assent, III,2,3
atonement, I,27,43; II,20,34
baptism:
   See also infant baptism
called “salvation”, I,24,34
   coheirs with Christ, I,25,36
   concupiscence remains, II,28,45
   forgiveness of sin, I,17,22; 28,55;
   II,27,44; III,3,6
   form indicates sins forgiven, I,34,63
   institution of, I,18,23
   kingdom of God, I,24,34
   likeness of Christ’s death, I,32,61
   necessity, I,26,39; 30,58
   non-baptized are not with Christ, I,28,55
   old weakness remains, II,7,9
   providence and, I,21,30
   rebirth (sacrament or “bath” of), I,16,21;
   22,31; II,7,9; 27,43; 27,44; 28,45
   sacrament given once, II,25,40
   sacrament of salvation, I,18,23
   serious transgressors, III,5,10
   spiritual procreation, I,18,23
   baptized infants, See infant baptism.
   belief: infants; will and, I,22,31
   bible:
      preeminent books, II,35,57
      read; hear; embrace, II,36,58
      unerrancy, I,22,33
   birth, See also childbirth.
   spiritual, through Christ, I,15,19
Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Adam’s sin as cause, I,4,4; 8,8; 9,9; II,30,49; III,7,14; 11,19; 11,20 believe, only to remove pain of death, II,31,50 body of; punishment for sin, I,6,6; 7,7 body’s return to earth, I,2,2 challenge, II,34,54 children of anger, II,10,15 Christ chose to die, II,31,51 earned by the human race, I,4,4 fear of, I,27,50; II,31,51; III,11,23 freed by grace from, I,27,43 God need not have inflicted, on people, II,31,50 grace; free from second death, I,22,32 humiliation; test, II,34,56 kingdom of, I,13,17 law of, I,16,21 living according to life, I,7,7 make good use of, II,28,45 movement towards, I,16,21 necessity of, I,6,6 origin, II,29,47; III,12,21 original sin, II,21,35; 24,38; III,4,8 pain, II,34,54 power stripped from, I,27,48 punishment for sin, III,11,20 reign of, I,11,13; 13,17 righteous conquering fear of, II,34,54 righteousness of obedience, II,31,51 seed of, in the flesh, III,9,17 set free from, by the resurrection, I,32,61 snake as source, I,32,61 soul or body, III,11,20 swallowed up in victory, II,4,4; III,11,20 those taken from life, without dying, I,3,3 transformed into life, I,7,7 delight, I,35,66; II,17,26; 17,27; 34,55 victorious; certain knowledge withheld, II,19 demons, III,10,18 desire, I,1,1; II,5,5; 13,20; III,12,21 devil, I,26,39; 27,42; 28,55; 34,63; 39,70 children of, I,27,54 debtors to, II,30,49 first parents, II,21,35 originator of sin and death, I,9,9; 13,17; II,31,51 power over death, I,27,50; II,31,51 sins; imitation, I,10,11; 13,18 disbelief: children of, I,27,46 disobedience, I,15,19 Adam imitated by, I,9,10 children of, II,29,48 pride, II,19,33 drunkenness, II,10,12 earth: death and the human body, I,2,2 eastern churches, I,27,50 Elijah, I,3,3 Elizabeth, I,13,19; 13,20 emotions, II,29,48 enemies: loving, II,15,22 enlightenment, I,25,36; 37,38; 26,39 eternal life, I,11,13; 12,15; 13,17; 25,20; 23; 26,39; 27,40; 27,49; 32,61; II,1,1; 24,38; 27,43; 29,47; 34,56 apart from community with Christ, III,11,19 belief in the Son of God, I,20,28 hope for, I,24,34 kingdom of God, I,20,26 outside kingdom of God, III,3,6; 4,7 partakers of Christ’s body, III,4,8 rising to, II,30,49 sacraments, I,24,34 eternal punishment, I,11,13; 13,17 second death, I,28,55 eucharist: baptized persons, I,20,26 bread which I shall give . . ., I,24,34 called “life”, I,24,34 entrusted before Christ shed his blood, I,24,34 flesh for life of the world, I,20,27 kingdom of God, I,24,34 unless you eat my flesh . . ., I,20,26; 20,27; 24,34; III,4,8 Eye, See Adam and Eve evil, See good and evil exorcism, I,34,63 eye, II,5,5 Ezekiel, II,10,12; III,12,21 faith, I,16,24; III,2,2; 11,20; 13,23 baptism and, I,32,61 believe what you do not see, II,32,52 contest of, II,33,53 death and, II,31,50 fear of death, II,31,51 harsh combat for believers, II,33,53 miracles of Christ and, II,32,52 not remaining in darkness, I,24,35 Old Testament events, II,29,47 one who believes is not judged, I,33,62 promises, II,31,50 read; hear; embrace, II,36,58 righteous live from faith, II,32,52 stronger when not looking for miracles, II,32,52 visible rewards, III,31,50 weak and feeble, II,31,50 works through love, II,34,54 faithful: baptized infants, I,20,28

Volume I/23
fasting: as punishment, III,6,12
father and son, I,35,66
fear, II,29,48
fear of God, I,1,1
first man, See Adam.
flesh, I,3,3; 5,5; 15,19; 16,21; 22,31; 23; 27,46; 28,55; II,8,10; 28,45; III,9,17; 10,18; 12,21
See also concupiscence
before/after the fall of man, II,22,36
children of the, I,27,54; III,2,2
eucharist, I,20,27
living according to the, I,7,7
original sin, II,23,37
original state, II,34,55
punishment: transmission of sin, III,3,5
sinful, II,36,58
those in, cannot please God, II,28,45
turning from God, II,5,5
food:
paradise, I,3,3
sanctification, II,26
foolishness, I,35,66
forgiveness of sin, I,27,52-53; II,28,46; 35,57
See also infant baptism
baptism: full and complete, II,7,9; 28,45; 28,46
baptism needed for, III,3,6
catechumens, II,26
Christ the source, I,13,16
Christ’s sacrifice, I,27,50
death and, II,33,53
forgive, as we want to be forgiven, II,16,23
grace abounding, I,15,20
grace; righteousness, I,13,17
infants forgiven for sins of others, III,5,10; 5,11
Lord’s Prayer, III,13,23
meriting not to suffer death, II,34,55
needed by infants, II,36,58
no other way to Christ, I,33,62
punishments and, II,34,54
reconciliation by mediator, Christ, I,28,56; II,29,47
redemption and, I,27,47
renewal, II,9,11
serious transgressors not held from baptism, III,5,10
soul’s need of, II,36,59
spiritual rebirth, III,8,15
winning God’s forgiveness, I,27,50
free choice:
God’s help needed, II,5,6
good or bad, II,18,30
insufficient against temptation, II,3,3
reliance on self, II,2,2
striving for sinlessness, II,6,7
turning from God, II,18,31
freedom, II,6,7
generation:
all share in Adam’s sin, I,9,9
transmission of sin by, III,2,2
God:
anger of, I,20,28; 21,29; II,10,12; III,2,3
authority of the words of, II,36,59
commandments held in contempt, II,16,23
foreknowledge, II,29,47; 36,59
injustice in, I,21,29; 30
judgment and mercy, II,7,8
light of the interior human being, II,5,5
mercy and truth, I,21,29; II,18,31
not affected by disobedience, II,22,36
power and mercy, II,6,7
reconciliation with, through Christ, I,28,56
riches of wisdom and knowledge, I,21,29
righteous judgments, I,21,29
righteousness, II,16,23
See also righteousness.
truth, II,10,14
turn toward me . . ., II,5,5
godlessness, I,26,39
good and evil:
evil remains in our flesh, II,4,4
I do not do the good . . ., I,12,17
law of God vs law of body members, I,27,43
providence and death of infants, I,21,30
tree of knowledge, II,21,35
use related to, I,29,57
good news, I,27,46-54
good will:
God the author of, I,18,29
loving righteousness, II,18,30
good works:
asking God for help in doing right, II,19,33
certain knowledge of, sometimes not granted, I,19
delight related to love for God, II,17,27
knowledge for, II,17,27
use of corruptible flesh, II,28,45
goodness:
attractive, II,19,33
Job, II,12,17
righteousness of God, II,5,5
strength of will for good life, II,5,6;
II,17,26
gospel(s), II,13,20; 35,57
grace, I,6,6; 9,10; 26,32; 39,47; 27,49;
27,54; 39,70; II,9,11; 12,17; 19,33;
III,5,10; 10,18; 13,22
abundance, I,11,14; 13,17; III,11,20
benefit from, I,7,7; 26,39
destruction of the second death, I,22,31

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

human condition:
See also original sin
born flesh from flesh, II,24,38
born in sinful flesh, I,37,68
if first parents had not sinned, I,37,68
human nature, I,36,67
human race: beginning of, II,20,34
humiliation, II,34,56
humility, I,19,24; 27,54; 29,57; II,19,33;
III,13,23
husband:
non-christian, with christian wife, II,26
hypostatic union, I,31,60
ignorance, I,10,12; 35,66; 39,70; II,2,2;
17,26; 29,48
illness, I,5,5
image of God, II,7,9
sinless infants, I,30,58
impossible:
many righteous models, I,14
produces sinners through Adam, I,15,19
sins; the devil, I,10,11; 13,18
immutability, II,2,2; 3,3; II,7,9; III,9,17; 11,20
faith and, II,31,50; 31,51
impossible:
God does not command, II,3,3; 6,7; 15,22
incarnation, I,11,13
born from God’s will, II,24,38
divine/human substance, I,31,60
immortality, I,2,2; 3,3; II,7,9; III,9,17; 11,20
faith and, II,31,50; 31,51
impossible:
that the world might be saved, I,33,62
sin and death, I,32,61
testimonies, I,26,39
that we might become children of God,
II,24,38
incorruptibility, I,2,2; 5,5; II,7,9; 27,44;
III,11,20
independence: desire for, II,19,33
infant(-s):
all sinned in Adam, III,7,14
baptized; included in ‘the faithful,’
I,20,28
belief in the Son of God, I,20,28
believers, I,19,25; 25,38; III,2,3
benefit from Christ’s righteousness,
III,2,3
born as non-believers, III,9,17
born with mind close to animal, I,22,32
Christ as physician, savior, redeemer, I,23
concupiscence, II,4,4
crying; reasoning, I,35,66
defense, I,17,22
diverse merits, I,22,31
dying without baptism; salvation, I,28,55
enlightenment at birth, I,25,36

Volume I/23
forgiveness of sins, I,33,62
harm from sin of Adam, III,2,2
helplessness of the newborn, I,38,69
See also infant baptism
innocence; sin, I,17,22; 35,66
innocents, I,35,65
life; kingdom of heaven, I,27,42
merit, I,36,59
minds enlightened, I,25,38
no sin in newborns, I,9,9
nursing at the breast, I,38,69
one taken; another lives on to be evil, I,21,30
original sin, I,23; III,1,1
See also infant baptism; original sin
Cyprian on, III,5,10
baptism and, I,9,9
personal sin, I,20,28; 23; 26,39; III,4,7
rational soul, I,25,38
reason, I,35,65
sinless in personal lives, I,35,65; II,20,34
weakness of mind and body, I,35,65
infant baptism, I,27,50
before eighth day, III,5,11
believing means to be baptized, I,27,40
belonging to Christ’s sheep, I,27,40
brought into Christ’s body, I,9,10
children dying without baptism, I,16,21
children of baptized parents, II,25,39;
II,27,43; 28,45; III,9,17
Church as loving mother, I,25,38; III,1,1
conformed to death of Christ, I,32,61;
II,27,43
controversy re personal sin, I,34,64
entering number of believers, I,25
false form of, I,34,63
forgiveness of personal sins, I,17,22;
34,63; II,27,43
incorporation into the Church, III,4,7
located among the believers, I,33,62
necessity, I,26,39; 33,62; 35,66; III,13,22
newborn suited for (Cyprian), III,5,10
original sin and, I,34,64; III,4,7; 12,21
See also original sin
purpose of, I,18,23; II,1,1
rebirth necessary, II,27,43
reborn for immortality, II,28,45
reconciliation and salvation, I,27,44
redemption needed, II,36,58
responses, I,34,63
sanctification in Christ, III,6,12
sin in infants, II,20,34
sinful flesh loses its power, I,39,70
infant salvation:
biblical promise, I,23
sacraments, I,24,34
tradition of the Church, III,4,9
the unbaptized, I,20,26; 21,30; 30,58;
33,62; III,4,8
innocence, I,17,22; 20,26; II,35,57
instinct, I,36,69
intercession, II,4,4
Israel: redeemed, II,35,57
Israelites, See Jews.
Jeremiah, I,21,30
Jerome, Saint:
Jovinian’s writings, III,7,13
on original sin, III,6,12
Jesus Christ, I,10,11; II,14,17,27
See also incarnation; Son of God; Word
of God
ascension, I,31,60; II,32,52
baptism; sinless flesh, II,24,38
believe in me . . ., I,14
call on his name, III,4,8
See church.
death chosen/accepted by, II,29,48; 31,51
divinity, I,31,60
faced death, although sinless, II,24,38
forgiveness of sins, I,13,16
forming in himself a new human being,
I,27,46
frees us from death, II,23,37
God and man, I,31,60
See grace.
growth; changes, II,29,48
high priest, II,13,19
I am the living bread . . ., I,24,34
imitation of, I,9,10
infancy:
ignorance, II,29,48
weakness, I,37,68
judge of the living and the dead, II,29,47
light, I,24,35; 30,59; 33,62
likeness of sinful flesh, I,28,55; 32,61
mediator between God and humans,
I,26,39; 27,48; 28,56
miracles, II,32,52
name: he will save . . ., II,29,48
obedient in suffering (Job), II,11
one savior for infants and adults, II,29,48
only way to come to God, I,33,62
passion:
bringing us to God, I,27,41
Christ died for sinners, I,27,43
figure: Moses raising the bronze
snake, I,32,61
mystical body, I,26,39
obedient unto death, II,29,48
scourged, II,16,25
this is my blood . . ., II,30,49
physician, savior, redeemer (for infants),
I,23

Answer To The Pelagians I
post-resurrection appearances, and faith,
II,32,52
present in humans, I,7,7
priesthood unsurpassable, I,27,50
prophecies about him, to be fulfilled,
I,27,53
rebuke, II,11
See redemption. resurrection, I,32,61
righteous; justifies others, I,14
righteousness of, II,11; III,2,2; 2,3
sinless, I,27,54; II,1,1; 20,34; 35,57;
III,7,13
soul handed over to death, I,27,54
sufferings, I,27,54
way, truth, life, I,27,40
Jews: clothes wearing out, I,3,3
Job:

did not sin with his lips, II,10,16
praised by God, II,12,17
sinlessness, II,10,12; 10,14
suffering with equanimity, II,11
trials and afflictions, II,12,17
ture worshipper, II,12,17
John: 1st Letter of, I,27,42
John the Baptist, I,27,40
Jovinian, III,7,13
Judas, I,15,19
judgment, II,14,21; 17,26; 10,16
condemnation, II,10,14
leads to condemnation, I,12,15; 16,21
life however brief, not clean, II,10,15
mercy and, II,3,3; 7,8
judgment day, II,29,47
justice:
sufferings of innocent souls, III,10,18
justification, I,14; 27,43; 28,55; II,20,34
birth in the Spirit, II,27,43
conquering sin, III,11,20
grace leads to, I,12,15; 13,16
leads to righteousness, I,15,19
many through one (Christ), III,4,9
merits and, I,33,62
set free from sin by, I,32,61
kingdom of God, I,12,15
attaining, I,30,58; II,1,1
come; blessed ones, III,3,6
eternal life, I,20,26
rebirth, III,4,8
salvation apart from, I,28,55
sinless image of God, III,3,6
kingdom of heaven, See heaven.
knowledge:
certainty in good deeds sometimes
withheld, II,19
perfect in teaching of, II,15,22
sin; degree, I,36,67
tree of, III,11,20
last judgment, See judgment day.
laughther, I,35,66
law (of Moses), I,27,50; 27,52; II,13,20
entered so sin might abound, III,11,20
observing the whole law, II,3,3
pleasure in, II,12,17
power of sin, III,11,20
righteousness and, I,27,45
sin existed before, I,10,12
Levites: tithes, II,25,39; 25,40
liberation, I,26,39
life:
burden; sinlessness, II,16,24
merit in a previous life, I,22,32
temporal; ends in death, II,30,49
life of the Spirit, II,28,45
light, II,5,5
truth and, I,25,37
literature, I,28,55
long life, I,27,54
Lord’s Prayer:
bring us not into temptation, II,2,2; 4,4
forgive us our debts, II,4,4; 10,13;
III,13,23
forgiveness of sin, II,13,18
human life free from sin, II,2,2
necessary, II,14,21
one body; some still have sins, II,10,13
love:
carnal, for children, I,35,66
poured out in our hearts, II,17,27
union with God, I,1,1
love for God: relative delight in good works,
II,17,27
lust, I,29,57; II,28,45
lying, II,16,25
Marcellinus, I,1,1; II,1,1; III,1
marriage:
concupiscence and, I,29,57
goodness of, I,29,57
Job as symbol, II,10,12
martyrs: glory; fear of death, II,34,54
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
child born without sin, I,29,57
faith, II,24,38
Son conceived in obedience, I,29,57
virgin mother, II,24,38
mediator:
See also under Jesus Christ
law vs God’s promise, I,27,45
Melchizedek, II,25,39
mercy, II,18,31; 30,32; 30,33; III,5,10; 13,23
bath of rebirth, I,18,23
children of, I,22,32; II,17,26; III,2,2
forgiveness of sin, II,16,23
grace, II,18,31
judgment and, II,3,3; 7,8
merit, I,21,29; II,18,31
diverse; infants, I,22,31

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

justification and, I,33,62
previous life, I,22,32
midwife, I,28,55
mind:
  arousal of the flesh and, II,22,36
  baptism and, II,7,9
  darkness (infants, I,36,67
  ignorant and weak, at birth, I,37,68
resisting the law of, II,29,48
modesty, II,22,36
morons (term), I,22,32; 35,66
mortality, I,5,5
Moses, II,13,20; 16,25; 27,43
serpent raised up by, I,30,59; 32,61
written law, I,10,12
mystical body, I,27,54
life from the cross, I,26,39
nakedness, II,22,36
Adam, I,16,21
natural law, I,10,12
new covenant:
  new creation, in Christ, I,27,44
New Testament, I,11,13
  things hidden in O.T. revealed, I,27,53
newborns, See infants.
Nicodemus, I,30,59;
night, I,24,35
Noah, II,10,12
Noah’s ark, I,27,41
non-believers:
  See also unbelief
  non-baptized ranked among, I,33,62
  one spouse righteous, III,12,21
non-Christians:
  born of Christians, III,9,17
nuns: persuaded to marry, III,7,13
obedience, I,5,5; II,10,14
  benefit to one who serves, II,21,35
death and, II,31,51
  good, II,21,35
  piety of, II,21,35
  sinful flesh, II,34,55
obviousness (in discussions), I,35,65
old age, I,3,3; 16,21
Old Testament, I,11,13
  hidden things revealed in N.T., I,27,53
salvation: faith, II,29,47
original justice, II,22,36
if first parents had not sinned, I,37,68
mortality: righteousness, I,5,5
original sin, I,18,23
See also Adam: baptism; infant baptism
baptism and, II,9,11; III,10,18
born for condemnation, I,28,55
child born of two baptized parents, III,3,5;
  8,16
children, II,10,15; III,2,2
contraction from Adam, I,11,13; 13,16;
III,5,10
death’s origin, II,30,49; 31,51
disobedience of the flesh, I,16,21
entered world through one man, II,29,47
equal guilt, I,21,30
forgiven in baptism, I,9,9; 17,22; II,26
harm from sin of Adam, II,2,2; 3,5
infants subject to, I,20,28; III,1,1; 5,11
Jerome on, III,6,12; 7,13
justice, III,10,18
likeness of Adam’s transgression, I,11,13
many have died, for sin of one man,
I,12,15
passed on to all human beings, I,22,33
Pelagius on, III,2,4; 10,18
personal sins added to, I,10,11; 10,12;
12,15; 15,20
punishments for, II,23,37
results, II,21,35
sinful flesh, II,34,55
snake and, I,32,61
sold to power of sin, I,23
stability of life lost, I,16,21
subject to sin and death, I,16,21
tradition, III,7,14
transmission: imitation, I,9,9
violation of obedience, II,21,35
woman: beginning of sin, I,16,21
orphans, III,13,22
pain, II,10,15; 29,48
paradise, I,3,3; II,34,55
bodily: spiritual, II,21,35
parents, III,9,17
  passing on holiness to children, II,25,41
  personal sins; harm to the child, II,27,44
reborn; beget children in the flesh,
II,28,45
righteous, II,9,11
past: forgetting, II,13,20
patience, II,7,9; 28,45; 32,52
hope and, I,18,23
Paul, Saint, I,10,11
  angel of Satan, II,16,24
  be imitators of me . . ., I,14
  crown of righteousness, II,16,24
  forgiving his debtors, II,16,24
  greatness, II,13,20
  I have fought the good fight, II,16,24
Pelagius’ writings on, III,1,1
perfection, II,15,22
righteousness, II,11
testimonies, I,27,43
peace, I,27,46; II,19,33
Pelagians:
  refutation of individual arguments,
III,8,15

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Pelagius, III,1.1; 2.4; 3.5; 3.6
question of the soul, III,10,18
Pentateuch, II,35,57
perfection, II,8,10; 13,20; 16,24;25; 31,50; III,13,23
biblical usage, II,15,22
commanded to be, II,15,22
will and God’s grace, II,20,34
worthy of being called perfect, II,15,22
question of the soul, III,10,18
Pentateuch, II,35,57
perfection, II,8,10; 13,20; 16,24;25; 31,50; III,13,23
biblical usage, II,15,22
commanded to be, II,15,22
will and God’s grace, II,20,34
worthy of being called perfect, II,15,22
Persuasion: sin and the devil, I,13,17
Peter, Saint, I,10,11
Pharisee:

thankful for not being like other men,
II,5,6
Philip (apostle), I,27,54
Phinehas, II,13,19
piety, II,2,2; 19;33; 21,35
tried and tested, II,34,56
pillar of cloud, II,16,25
pleasure, I,35,66; II,10,15
praise: offered to Christ (Rv 5:9), I,27,51
prayer, II,26; 5,6; 7,8
gift, II,19,33
predestination, I,17,26; 29,47
predestination; II,16,23
priesthood, II,13,19
promised land, II,35,57
propagation:
transmission of sin and death, I,9,9; 9,10
prophets: witness; forgiveness of sin,
I,27,52-53
providence, I,22,31
baptism offered to one, not to another,
I,21,30
God’s help varies, II,5,6
Punic Christians, I,24,34
punishment, II,18,32; 35,57; III,3,5; 10,18
challenges for the righteous, II,34,54
purification:
those making progress re commandments,
II,16,23
race (Paul), II,16,24
reason, I,25,38; 37,68; II,5,6
infants, I,35,65
rebirth (by the Spirit), I,28,55; 29,57; 30,59;
II,2,2; 9,11; 23,37; 27,43; 28,45; III,4,8; 9,17
See also baptism
carnal; spiritual, I,31,60
eternal salvation and, I,18,23
grace of God, II,28,45
kingdom of God, I,20,26
produces Christians, III,9,17
spiritual, I,16,21; 33,62; II,10,12
unless you eat my flesh . . ., I,20,27
rebuke, II,10,16; 11; 17,26
reconciliation: message: ministry, I,27,44
redemption, I,26,39; 27,48; 34,63; II,1,1;
30,49; 35,57
See also forgiveness of sin
blood shed also for infants, I,24,34
body awaiting, II,7,9
Christ died for sinners, I,18,23; 27,44;
27,50
effects on sin, I,23
Jesus came to save sinners, I,27,48
renewal, II,13,20; 27,44
baptism; effect, II,7,9; 27,44
children of God, II,8,10
put off the old . . ., II,7,9
repentance, I,19,24; 19,25
reproach: Job, II,12,17
resurrection (of Christ):
spiritually circumcised in, III,5,11
resurrection of the body, I,3,3; 4,4; 8,8;
18,23; 28,55; II,13,20; III,2,2; 11,20
came through a man, III,1,19
Christ’s post-resurrection time; faith,
II,32,52
every one’s body, through Christ, II,30,49
hope, I,6,6
rebirth: body and spirit, II,7,9
righteousness, I,7,7
transformation; mortality, I,5,5
Revelation, Book of, I,7,8
rich young man:
Jesus’ advice re. attaining eternal life,
II,16,25
righteousness (including: of God), I,4,4;
10,12; 13,17,18; 16,21; 22,31; 25,38;
27,43;44;46; 27,49; 39,70; II,5,6; 9,11;
11; 10,14; 14,21; 16,25; 20,34; 35,37;
III,2,2; 11,19
bodily death, I,6,6
brought to all by Christ, II,25,42
Christ as example of, I,9,10
Christ suffered for the unrighteous,
I,27,41
death; obedience, II,31,51
faith and, I,6,6; 7,7; 14; II,13,20
forgiveness, I,13,17
giving birth to righteous children, II,9,11
God’s knowledge of each human being,
II,16,23
good will; love, I,18,30
grace and, I,15,20
hunger and thirst for, I,5,5
justification leads to, I,15,19
kingdom of God, III,3,6
law and, I,27,45
love and delight in, II,10,15
need for God’s help, I,5,5
no living person . . ., II,7,8; 12,17; 13,18;
I,4,21
obedience to, I,19,33
original justice, I,22,36
Volume I/23
Volume I/23

Paul’s testimonies, I,27,43
perfect knowledge of, II,15,22
perfect possessors of, II,13,20
plan of, II,18,32
presence of the Creator, I,19,25
reward, II,32,52
spiritual birth, I,15,19
test of, II,34,56
testimony in scripture, II,10,12
Zechariah, II,13,19
Rome, III,7,15
rule of Christian faith, II,27,43; 35,57

sacraments, I,24,34; 36,67; II,26; III,4,8; 12,21
one faith, II,29,47
sacrifice:
bleeding, I,27,54
high priests (O.T.), II,13,19
saints, I,27,47; 27,54
imitation of Christ, I,9,10; 10,11
resurrection, I,5,5
salvation, I,12,15; 26,39; 27,50; II,1,1; 36,59; III,4,7
apart from community with Christ, III,11,19
hope for, I,24,34
one faith that saves (O.T. and N.T.), II,29,47
our effort is needed, II,5,6
sacraments, I,24,34
saved by grace through faith, I,27,46
today you will be with me . . ., I,22,31
unbaptized infants, I,18,23; 20,26; III,4,8
unbaptized souls, III,5,11
unless one has been reborn . . ., I,30,58
Samuel, II,16,25
sanctification, II,26; III,12,21
non-believing spouses, II,26
scripture, See Bible.
second coming, I,27,50
self-image, II,11
senses, II,21,35
sex:
restraining from intercourse, III,12,21
sex organs: before/after the fall of man, II,22,36
shame, II,22,36
sheep: lost, sought, found, I,27,40
sick, I,23; III,4,8; 12,21; 13,23
silence, I,35,65
silliness, I,35,66
simplemindedness, I,22,32
simplicity, I,22,32
sin, II,10,13; 29,48
See also concupiscence; justification; original sin
abounding, I,15,20
accountability, II,10,15
against Christ, I,28,55
before the law . . ., I,10,12
born in body of death, I,29,57; II,23,37
committed out of some necessity, II,10,15
confession, II,10,14
consent, I,13,17
death by sins, I,27,46
death of the soul, I,2,2; 9,9
dead; righteousness, I,6,6; 7,7
turned the world through one man,
I,9,9; 10,11; 13,17,18; 22,33;
III,1,1; 4,8; 7,14; 11,19
eternal life and, I,24,34
giving in; relativity, I,39,70
God as cause, II,17,27
God forgives, while knowing people will sin, II,16,23
God’s anger, III,2,3
guilt lords it over humans, I,11,13
healed from plague of, III,4,8
if we say we have no sin . . ., II,7,8; 8,10;
10,12; 13,18
illicit desires, I,19,25
imitation of the one sin, I,12,15
imputed; law, I,10,12
knowledge related to seriousness, I,36,67
law of, I,16,21
love of, I,35,57
newborn infants, I,35,66
no one is free of (James), III,7,13
origin, II,25,41; III,11,20; 12,21
originator, the devil, I,9,9; 13,17
Pelagius on transmission of, III,3,5; 3.6
personal sins, I,10,11,12; 12,15
personal will, I,1,13
perversity, II,35,57
prevents attaining grace, III,5,10
punishment of God, II,16,25
purification, I,27,50
remaining in darkness, I,24,35
remedies: works of mercy, II,3,3
responsibility for sins of others, III,3,5; 8,15
separation from God, I,19,25; 28,56
slavery; set free, I,24,34; 26,39
sting of death, III,11,20
those born of God . . ., II,8,10; 10,12
transmission of, III,7,14
will and, I,35,65; II,3,3
will not fully exerted, I,39,70
sinfulness, II,4,4
sinlessness, II,16,24
absolute, II,16,23
actual existence of such a one, II,7,8
a human ever be completely sinless, II,20,34
command to be perfect, I,15,22
Jerome on, III,6,12

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Answer To The Pelagians I

Volume I/23
Answer To The Pelagians I
Index from

On the Soul and Its Origin

(De anima et eius origine)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/23

Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Nature and Origin of the Soul

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Sirach</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20 IV,23,37</td>
<td>3:22 IV,4,5; IV,5,6; IV,6,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24 IV,23,37</td>
<td>40:5 LXXI,18,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7 I,14,19; I,17,28; II,2,2</td>
<td>42:5 I,14,17; I,14,18; I,14,19; I,14,20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23 I,18,29; I,18,30; I,18,31; II,14,20</td>
<td>57:16 I,14,21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24 II,14,20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21-22 IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15 LXX IV,22,36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:7-8 LXX I,14,19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:8 LXX I,14,19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2-3 LXX I,14,19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4 I,14,18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8 I,14,18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4 II,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:9 IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:4 IV,16,23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:13 I,15,25; IV,2,2; IV,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:15 IV,11,15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:3 I,17,28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:29 IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:25 IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:6 LXX IV,8,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:4 IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149:8 IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151:6 I,14,19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:21 IV,16,23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21 IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5 III,2,2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11 I,12,15; III,15,22; IV,24,38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11.14 II,9,13; III,10,14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13 II,9,13; III,10,14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9 IV,5,6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11 LXXI,18,31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:5 I,14,17; I,14,18; I,14,19; I,14,20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16 I,14,21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1 I,14,22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22 I,15,25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23 I,14,23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10 III,11,17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30 I,16,26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:39 I,9,10; II,12,17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16 II,12,17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18 II,17,23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6 I,18,31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24 IV,15,22; IV,16,23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14 I,18,31; II,14,20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3 III,11,17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4 III,11,17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15 LXX II,2,2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10 III,9,12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:2 II,10,14; III,11,15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26 I,14,21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30 II,2,2; IV,23,37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22 I,14,18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians I
Volume I/23

Acts of the Apostles
2:2-4 I,14,18
17:25 I,16,26
17:25-26 I,17,28
17:26 I,17,28; II,14,20
17:28 I,17,27

Romans
5:12 I,17,28; II,14,20
5:18 II,12,17
7:25 IV,22,36
8:15 IV,9,13
8:26 IV,9,13
8:26-27 IV,9,13
11:6 I,8,9

1 Corinthians
11:12 I,17,27
14:14 IV,22,36
15:38 I,14,17
15:40 IV,12,17
15:46 I,14,20

2 Corinthians
11:14 III,2,2

Galatians
4:6 IV,9,13
5:17 IV,22,36
5:22-23 IV,15,22

Ephesians
1:18 II,2,3
4:23 IV,22,36

Philippians
3:13-14 IV,8,12

Colossians
2:11 IV,22,36

1 Thessalonians
5:23 IV,13,19; IV,22,36

1 Timothy
1:7 I,16,26
2:9-10 I,18,29

2 Timothy
2:20-21 I,20,35
3:7 III,6,8

Answer To The Pelagians I
Answer To The Pelagians I

Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

The Nature and Origin of the Soul

Abraham:
- bodily soul of, IV,15,22
- faith of, IV,16,24
- incorporeal likeness of his body, IV,19,30
- Lazarus and the bosom of, IV,15,21; 16,24
- Adam and Eve, II,13,18; IV,11,16
  See also original sin
- cast out of paradise, I,12,15
- in whom all have sinned, I,17,28
- parts taken were ensoled, not dead, I,18,29
- whole woman, with soul and spirit, I,18,29-30
- woman, bone of my bone . . ., I,18,29; II,14,20
- air, IV,3,4; 12,18; 23,37

- nourishment, III,4,4-4,6
- always (the word), III,6,8
- amputation: dreams, IV,18,27; 18,28
- anatomists, IV,2,3
- anatomy, IV,6,7
- angels, IV,16,24
- appearing in bodily form, IV,21,35
- animals, IV,8,12; 9,13; 10,14; 11,15
- humans become like, IV
- humans compared to, IV,2,2-2,3; 6,8; 7,11
- soul; no spirit, IV,23,37

Apollinarists, I,18,31

apostacy: God’s foreknowledge, I,12,15

apostles: baptisms not recorded, III,9,12

Augustine, Saint:
defends his own lack of knowledge, IV,4,5
hesitation re. soul’s origin, II,13,18
insulted by Victor, IV,8,12
rebuked by Victor, IV,1,1; 2,2; 2,3; 12,17; 24,38

bag filled with air, III,4,4-4,6; IV,3,4; 9,13; 12,18

baptism: See also original sin; Pelagians;
unbaptized infants
anyone who has not been reborn . . . , III,13,19
bath of rebirth, II,7,11
becoming a member of Christ, I,9,10
boy (Dinocrates) dies at age seven, I,10,12
evil and falsehood in, III,10,14
good merit recovered through, III,7,10
necessity of, I,9,11
original sin, II,12,17
prefigured by circumcision, II,11,15
pristine state recovered; body washed, II,7,11
required for entry into heaven, III,11,16
unbaptized infants promised heaven (Victor), I,9,10

bible: language usage, IV,22,36
usage re. “whole” and “part”, II,14,20
blasphemy, II,3,6
blood: term for the whole human being, I,17,28
body (-ies): definition, IV,12,17
form and, IV,15,22
likeness of (dreams; visions), IV,17,25; 18,28; 21,34
likeness; perception of real bodies, IV,20,31
St Perpetua wrestling in man’s body, IV,18,26

body and soul: bodily nourishment, II,4,8
bone from my bones . . . , I,18,31
breathing air, IV,3,4
male and female members, IV,20,32-33
merit and, II,8,12
movement of members, III,4,4
brain: ruling the body, IV,5,6
breath (breathing), IV,12,18
belongs to nature of soul, or body, or air, IV,3,4
Elisha raising the dead boy, III,5,7
experiment, III,4,5
God creates (not from nothing), II,5,9
God; breath of life, I,4,4

interpreted as soul (Is 42:5), I,14,20
made from surrounding air, III,4,6
spirit and breath (same idea), I,14,18; 14,19
brotherly love, I,20,35
castration, IV,20,33
Catholic Church, I,20,35; II,3,5; 3,6; III,2,2; 7,9; 14,20; 15,23
children and parents, II,6,10
Cicero, IV,7,9
circumcision, I,11,13; III,12,18
baptism prefigured by, II,11,15
clothing, II,4,8; IV,19,29
condemnation:
soul defiled by the flesh, I,6,6
unbaptized infants; denied by Victor, II,12,17
contempt, I,14,20; III,1,1
creation, II,17,23; IV,1,1; 2,2; 24,39
all things are from God, I,17,27
from nothing; or from some existing nature, II,3,5
God gives without ceasing, I,16,26
God so clothes the grass . . . , I,16,26
God’s foreknowledge of evil souls, I,12,15
not from nothing (Victor), II,5,9
something changeable made from God’s own nature, III,4,6
soul, I,4,4
whole human race “from one blood”, II,14,20

creature: created nature, II,3,5
Cyprian, Saint: good thief as martyr, I,9,11
damnation, I,9,11; 11,14; IV,11,16
See also eternal punishment; hell
Donatists, I,10,12
unbaptized infants, I,9,10; II,13,18
death: interior senses, IV,19,30
power of thought after death, IV,19,30
recognize in likenesses of their bodies, IV,19,30
sleep and, IV,18,28
death:
effect of original sin, II,14,20
Dinocrates (brother of St Perpetua), I,10,12;
II,10,14; 12,16; III,9,12; 13,19
dream: amputation of body members, IV,18,27
discipline: form of, IV,15,21
Donatists, II,10,14; III,2,2
dreams, IV,20,32
being with bodily member lacking, IV,19,29
feeling in experiences, IV,18,27

---

**Volume I/23**

**Answer To The Pelagians I**
images as real bodies, IV,17,25
likenesses of bodies in, IV,18,27; 18,28; 19,20; 21,34-34
visions of dreamers, IV,18,28
dwellings, II,4,8
many, in my Father’s house . . ., III,11,15
ecstasy, IV,17,25; 21,35
Elisha: raising the dead boy; analogy, III,5,7
elocution:
danger in, I,3,3; II,1,1
eternal damnation, See damnation.
eternal life:
learning about the soul, IV,10,14
eternal punishment, II,15,21; III,11,17
eucharist: offered for unbaptized persons, I,11,13; II,11,15; 15,21; IV,24,38
eunuchs, IV,20,33
Eve, See Adam and Eve
eyes, I,14,22; II,2,3; IV,5,6
whole head understood by, IV,16,23
face:
know, recall, think about, IV,19,30
self-knowledge, IV,15,21
faith, I,3,3
good thief, I,9,11
learning what mind cannot reach, IV,10,14
fate, II,9,13
figure of speech, IV,16,23
part / whole, I,17,28; 18,30
flattery, II,17,23
flesh:
See also human body
body of the flesh, IV,22,36
living like animals, IV,11,15
propagation, I,17,28
signifies whole human being, I,17,28; 18,31
soul associated with, II,13,18
defiled through, I,6,6; 7,7; 19,33; II,7,11
desires food for, II,4,8
lost merit through, III,7,9
wise in terms of, IV,14,20
flood (Genesis), IV,23,37
foreknowledge, See under God
forgiveness of sin:
See also baptism; infants; original sin.
good thief, III,9,12
original and personal sins; baptism, I,13,16
form:
body and soul, IV,18,28
found only in bodily things, IV,15,21-22
free choice, I,12,15; IV,7,11
infants not capable of, I,13,16
friend, I,20,35
love for, I,20,35

Genesis, Book of, I,18,29
God:
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity
bodily members, IV,16,23
breath, I,4,4
breath of life; Elisha and, III,5,7
See also soul (origin of)
called “God of Abraham,” etc., IV,16,24
corporeal (Tertullian), II,5,9
fallibility, III,10,13
foreknowledge of, I,7,7; 8,9; 11,13;
II,12,16; 13,18
destroyed if foreknown doesn’t happen, I,12,15
of infants’ future sins, I,12,15
redemption of unbaptized infants, II,9,13
incomprehensible knowledge of; IV,8,12
justice questioned, II,13,18
knowledge of his works; of himself, IV,5,6
nature, III,3,3
not a body, IV,12,15; I,9,11
omnipotent and immutable, IV,12,18
See predestination
soul made from nature of (error), I,4,4
spirit, IV,23,37
unchangeable nature of, I,4,4
good thief:
baptism of blood, I,9,11
baptism: water from Christ’s side, III,9,12
paradise, III,13,19
sought life in the dying Christ, I,9,11
unbaptized, in paradise, II,10,14; 12,16
grace, IV,11,16
set free from sin by, I,8,8
unbaptized infants, I,11,14
grain, I,14,17
happiness, II,10,14; 12,17; III,11,16
heart:
loving God with whole heart, IV,6,7
pulse never stops, IV,6,7
ruling the body, IV,5,6
thinking with, IV,6,7
heaven:
See also eternal life; paradise; salvation
bath of rebirth required, III,11,16
conditions for entering, II,10,14; 12,16
kingdom of God and, III,11,16
many dwellings in Father’s house, III,11,15-11,17
paradise distinct from, II,10,14
unchristianized infants, I,9,10; II,12,16;17;
III,13,19; IV,11,16
unless one has been reborn . . ., II,12,17
hell, IV,20,33
poor man carried to bosom of Abraham, II,4,8

Volume I/23
recognition of one another, IV,18,27
rich man’s desire for drop of water,
IV,19,29
heresy, I,19,34; III,14,20
Holy Spirit, III,2,2
baptism of four / five thousand, I,14,18
breath and spirit given to people, I,14,18;
14,20
fruits (realities) of, IV,15,22
human nature and, I,14,20
makes intercession with groans, IV,9,13
Pentecost, I,14,18
rebirth through, II,10,14
for the spirit will go forth . . ., I,14,21
hope:
good thief, I,9,11; II,10,14
we cry out, Abba, Father, IV,9,13
honor, III,1,1; IV,2,3
human beings:
animals and, IV,2,2; 2,3
body and soul, II,14,20
breath and spirit given by God, I,14,17;
14,18; 14,23
created to be unlike animals, IV,10,14
designated by term, “blood”, I,17,28
exterior, interior, and innermost, IV,14,20
exterior shape, IV,14,20
God gives to all life and spirit, I,16,26
governing non-rational beings, IV,2,2
interior: soul or spirit, IV,14,20
knowledge of how we receive our souls,
IV,4,5
knowledge of one’s own soul, IV,2,3
known only in bodily form, IV,15,21
made “from one blood”, I,17,28
man / woman: all from God, I,17,27
propagation of the body, II,14,20
spirit, soul, and body, IV,2,3
superior to animals, IV,23,37
three bodies: spirit, soul, body, I,5,5
whole being propagated, I,17,28
human body:
generation, I,17,28
God is not the source of, I,17,27
God’s gifts: senses and members, I,14,23
parents as origin of flesh, I,14,17
part which rules the rest: heart or brain,
IV,5,6
propagation as source, I,14,21; 17,27
soul investigating inner living parts,
IV,5,6
human nature:
Adam and Eve, I,17,27
breath and spirit, I,14,20
extent of knowledge about, IV,2,3; 8,12
soul and spirit
distinct, II,2,2
are from God, I,17,27
as life source, I,14,19
spirit as part of, I,14,18
human race:
made “from one blood”, I,17,28
humility, II,1,1; 3,7; III,2,2; 15,23; IV,1,1;
11,15
ignorance, III,15,23; IV,1,1; 2,3
admission of, I,16,26
re. origin of the soul, I,13,16
image of God:
renewal of soul / spirit, IV,14,20
infant(s) (dying in infancy; unbaptized):
contracted only original sin, I,12,15
forgiveness of sin needed, I,12,15
free choice, I,13,16
free of all sin, IV,11,16
meriting to be sinful, I,8,8
original sin (Pelagius), I,19,34
infant baptism:
See also original sin, Pelagians
God corrects the harm he caused them,
I,7,7
original sin and, I,8,9
rebirth into sinful flesh, IV,11,16
inspiration (breath or spirit), I,14,19
intelligence, IV,11,15; 22,36; 23,37
powers not known to me, IV,7,10; 7,11
Israel: family of Jacob, IV,22,36
Judah (tribe), IV,22,36
Jews: circumcision, III,12,18
joy, IV,19,29
Kingdom of God:
See also heaven
judgment:
soul judged when it leaves body, II,4,8
bound by the laws of, III,11,17
everything belongs to, III,11,16
heaven and, III,11,16
many dwellings in Father’s house,
III,11,15-11,17
may your kingdom come . . ., III,11,17
unless one has been reborn . . ., III,11,17;
13,19
wrongly separated from, III,11,16
Answer To The Pelagians I
nature and origin of the human soul

knowledge:
  better and truer, of a person, IV, 19, 30
  body higher than the soul? IV, 5, 6
  certainty, IV, 20, 31
  few people know how we do things,
  IV, 6, 7
  humility in, IV, 24, 38
  investigating matters higher than you,
  IV, 6, 8
  limited to bodily forms, IV, 15, 21
  much not known about our nature,
  IV, 8, 12
  person’s soul and will, IV, 19, 30
  relative ignorance, IV, 2, 3
  soul’s three levels of, IV, 20, 31
  things neither bodies nor likenesses of
  bodies, IV, 20, 31
language usage:
  whole for part; part for whole, II, 14, 20
Lazarus:
  bosom of Abraham, IV, 15, 21; 23; 24;
  19, 29
learning: faith and, IV, 10, 14
life: food, drink, and air, III, 4, 4
Limbo-like place, I, 9, 11 [note 20]; II, 12, 16
little ones, See infants
Lord’s Prayer:
  may your kingdom come . . ., III, 11, 17
  love, III, 13, 19
  correcting errors and, II, 17, 23
  form, IV, 15, 22
Maccabees:
  Book of, I, 11, 13; III, 12, 18
  example of, II, 11, 15
  mother of, I, 14, 23
martyr(-dom):
  becoming a member of Christ, I, 9, 10
  good thief, I, 9, 11; III, 9, 12
  Maccabees, I, 14, 23
  unbaptized people, II, 12, 17
  visions of, IV, 18, 26
  visions of souls at, IV, 21, 34
  medicine, IV, 6, 7
memory:
  coming / not coming / to mind, IV, 7, 10
  reciting backwards, IV, 7, 9
  mercy, I, 11, 13; II, 12, 16; 12, 17; 17, 23;
  III, 13, 19
  merit, IV, 24, 38
  good; bad, II, 7, 11
  many dwellings . . ., II, 10, 14
  none, before soul’s union with body,
  II, 8, 12
  sin and infants, I, 8, 8
  sin from the flesh, I, 6, 6
  soul lost, through the flesh, III, 7, 9
  source, I, 6, 6
  mind, IV, 22, 36
powers remain unknown to us,
  IV, 7, 9-9, 13
  monster, IV, 20, 32
mother:
  knowledge; mother of the Maccabees,
  I, 15, 25
  mules, IV, 20, 33
  mystical body (body of Christ):
    unbaptized infants, II, 15, 21
names: form and, IV, 15, 22
nature:
  either is God, or is from God, II, 3, 5
  origin and kind, I, 19, 32
  Nicodemus, III, 11, 17
  Noah’s ark, IV, 5, 6
  nourishment, IV, 19, 29
original sin:
  See also infant baptism; Pelagians
  body and soul, I, 6, 6
  condemned: union with sinful flesh,
  I, 11, 13
  damnation deserved, I, 11, 13
  damnation faced by all, IV, 11, 16
  entered world through one man, II, 14, 20
  God heals wound he inflicted on us, I, 7, 7
  merit: four condemned theories, I, 13, 16
  pardon: unbaptized infants, II, 10, 14
  Pelagian heresy, III, 13, 19
  Pelagian view on infant baptism, II, 12, 17;
  15, 21
  punishment for, IV, 11, 16
  removed from infants, II, 11, 15
  removed without baptism, IV, 11, 16
  soul condemned to be subject of, I, 13, 16
  soulbondage, II, 9, 13; 13, 18
  soul of those who had no sin, I, 7, 7
  souls merited to be condemned, I, 11, 14
  souls of infants and, I, 19, 34
  transmission of, I, 8, 8; II, 14, 20
  unbaptized infants, I, 9, 10; III, 9, 12
  unjust punishment (Victor), II, 13, 18
paradise, I, 9, 10
  distinct from kingdom of heaven, II, 10, 14
  separate from kingdom of God, III, 13, 19
  unbaptized infants, II, 10, 14
  unbaptized people, III, 13, 19
parents and children, II, 6, 10
  origin of the soul, I, 14, 23
  transmission of original sin, I, 8, 8
Paul, Saint:
  baptized, III, 9, 12
  ignorance of himself, IV, 8, 12
  taken up to third heaven, IV, 8, 12
  thorn in his flesh, IV, 9, 13
  Pelagian heresy, I, 9, 11; 13, 16; 19, 34;
  II, 12, 17; 15, 21

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

Pelagius: original sin, III,13,19
Pentecost: filled with the Holy Spirit, I,14,18
perfection, III,10,14
Perpetua, Saint, I,10,12; II,10,14; III,9,12
tension: wrestling in man’s body, IV,18,26; 18,27
persecution:
baptism of blood, I,9,11
Dinocrates, I,10,12
Peter (addressee; fellow priest), II,1,1; III,3,3
Peter, Saint:
knowledge of power of his will, IV,7,11
philosophers, IV,2,3; 6,7
learning, IV,10,14
piety, I,11,13; IV,11,15
praise (Greek word), I,14,19
prayer, I,9,10
Perpetua, for Dinocrates, IV,18,27
we do not know what . . ., IV,8,12; 9,13
predestination, I,8,9
eternal life, IV,11,16
fallibility of (Victor), III,10,13
God acting contrary to, III,10,14
unbaptized infants, II,9,13
pride, I,9,11; III,12,18; IV,9,13
Priscillianists, III,7,9
propagation, See soul (origin of)
prophets: visions, IV,21,34
providence:
governing non-rational beings, IV,23,37
what we say is in his hands, IV,1,1
punishment:
predestined to eternal death, IV,11,16
reason, III,14,20; IV,22,36; 23,37
redemption:
unbaptized people, I,11,13; II,9,13
Renatus, II,1,1; 10,14; III,3,3; IV,11,15
renewal: soul or spirit, IV,14,20
resurrection of the dead:
learning by faith, IV,10,14
reward for the unbaptized people, II,12,16
souls will be judged, I,16,26
unbaptized infants, II,12,17; III,15,22
Revelation, Book of, IV,21,34
rich man:
in hell; asks for drop of water . . ., II,4,8
Rogatists, II,10,14; III,2,2
Rogatus: heretic, III,2,2
rule of faith, I,11,13; 11,15; 17,23
sacrifice(s): offering of, II,11,15
saints:
dying at an early age, II,9,13
intercession, IV,9,13
salvation, IV,2,3
Samaria, IV,22,36
Samuel: clothed, after death, IV,19,29
sanctification, II,7,11
Saul, King, II,12,17
scripture, See bible; words of God
seed, I,14,17; II,14,19
self-knowledge, IV,2,2-2,3
beginning of life in the womb, IV,4,5
bodily form, IV,15,21
unable to comprehend ourselves, IV,6,8
sensation, IV,5,6
senses:
body; soul, II,2,3
interior; the dead, IV,19,30
perception through, IV,20,31
soul and, IV,6,7
sentiment, IV,23,37
sex:
knowledge of, IV,20,31
male and female; organs and members, IV,20,32-33
Simplicius (could recite from memory, backwards), IV,7,9
sin:
See also original sin
creature, or body, IV,16,23
punishment of sins not yet committed,
I,12,15
soul defiled through the flesh, I,6,6
souls prior to being in the flesh, I,12,15
sinner:
God’s foreknowledge of, I,7,7
sleep:
brother of death, IV,18,28
Son of God:
equal to the Father, II,5,9
soul:
See also baptism; infant baptism; merit;
original sin; spirit
also called spirit, IV,12,17
amputation of body members and,
IV,18,27
body: not a spirit, II
breadth of God’s nature, III,3
character of, II,6,10
incorporeal; spread through all its members,
IV,20,33

corporeal, II,6,10; III,4,4
death person; experiences, IV,17,25
defiled through the flesh, I,6,6; 7,7; 19,33
dimensions, spaces, parts, IV,21,35
empty, without a body, IV,12,18
enses; gives life, IV,23,37
eternal life, IV,10,14
form from the body, IV,15,21; 18,28
gives organs life more easily than it
knows them, IV,5,6
God’s kindred, by gift, I,19,32; II,3,5
good or bad merit prior to being in flesh,
III,7,10
incorporeality, IV,12,17; 15,21; 21,35;
23,37

Answer To The Pelagians I
interior human being, IV, 14, 20
knowledge about a person, IV, 19, 30
likeness of a body, IV, 17, 25; 18, 26; 19, 29
merit lost through the flesh, III, 7, 9
more internal than the body, IV, 5, 6
nature of God and, III, 3, 3; 4, 4
merited to be sinful, I, 8, 9; 11, 13; II, 7, 11; 8, 12; 11, 14; 19, 33; III, 8, 11; IV, 11, 16
nature of (Victor), II, 2, 4; 5, 9
not a spirit, but a body (Victor), I, 5, 5
nourishment for the body sought by, II, 4, 8
original sin, II, 9, 13
preexistence of, II, 7, 11
prefigured in Christ, I, 8, 8; III, 8, 11
punished by association with body of sin, I, 7, 7
recovery of its pristine state, I, 6, 6; III, 7, 10
renewal; image of God, IV, 14, 20
senses, II, 2, 3; 6, 10
separated from spirit, IV, 22, 36
sexless, IV, 20, 33
sinful by association with flesh, II, 13, 18
spirit and, IV, 14, 20
state prior to being in the flesh, III, 7, 9; 8, 11
three levels of knowledge, IV, 20, 31
Victor’s errors on, II, 5, 9-12, 17
soul (origin of):
Adam, II, 13, 18
analogy of breathing, III, 4, 4-4, 6
Augustine defends his lack of knowledge, IV, 4, 5
authority of words of God, I, 19, 34
breath of God, IV, 14, 20
breathed in as new; derived from parents, II, 6, 10
clearer proofs needed, I, 18, 30
come from God’s breath; not from nothing, I, 9, 32
core of the dispute, II, 13, 18
created by God; not part of God’s nature, I, 4, 4
created free of sin (Victor), II, 15, 21
created out of nothing, I, 4, 4; 14, 23
definite opinion on, IV, 10, 14
definition (Victor), IV, 23, 37
definition (Victor), IV, 23, 37
definition of nature, I, 14, 18
first man: God breathed into the face of . . ., IV, 2, 3
first woman, I, 17, 27
given by God; not of same nature as God, IV, 2, 3
God breathes forth a corporeal soul, III, 4, 4
God breathes new souls, I, 18, 31
God breathes, without propagation, I, 19, 33
God created, from himself (Victor), II, 3, 5; 3, 6
God gives, creates, forms, IV, 11, 15
God gives soul and spirit to humans, I, 14, 23
God gives, through endless time (Victor), III, 6, 8
God made soul out of Himself, III, 3, 3
God’s breath (Victor), I, 15, 24
he who forms the human spirit . . ., I, 14, 22
higher questions, forbidden to search out? IV, 4, 5
human reason; divine authority, I, 13, 16
I have made every breath . . ., I, 14, 21
ignorance of, IV, 8, 12
individual souls breathed in, II, 14, 19
investigating; knowledge, IV, 11, 16
made by God, not from him, III, 3, 3
mother of the Maccabees, I, 15, 25
new souls breathed in as children are born, I, 19, 34
newly breathed by God; or derived from parents, IV, 5, 6
no personal knowledge of, IV, 6, 8
not from nothing (Victor), II, 3, 5
nothing (Victor), I, 15, 24
parents, I, 14, 23
propagation of, I, 6, 10; 7, 11
propagation, or breath of God, I, 14, 17; 14, 19; 14, 20; 14, 21; 15, 25; 16, 26; 17, 27; 18, 29; 18, 30; 19, 33; II, 14, 19; 14, 20; 15, 21
propagation, or breath of God, I, 14, 17; 14, 19; 14, 20; 14, 21; 15, 25; 16, 26; 17, 27; 18, 29; 18, 30; 19, 33; II, 14, 19; 14, 20; 15, 21
scripture proofs inadequate, I, 14, 17
scripture texts, IV, 10, 14
self investigating what it does not know, IV, 5, 6
solemn of victory, II, 3, 6
substance of God, by nature, I, 19, 32
summary of Victor’s views, IV, 24, 38
Victor rebukes Augustine for indecision, IV, 2, 2
spirit:
definition (Victor), IV, 23, 37
definition of nature, I, 14, 18
define and intellect, IV, 14, 20
define of the soul, IV, 22, 36
define reason and understanding, IV, 22, 36
define renewal; image of God, IV, 14, 20
self as, IV, 12, 17; 13, 19
soul is distinct from, II, 2, 2
spiritual life:
making us cry out . . ., IV, 9, 13
pour gifts into your spirit, III, 15, 23

Volume I/23
Volume I/23

sponsors, II,12,17
storm, IV,23,37
substance:
  body, soul, and spirit, IV,13,19
  empty, without a body, IV,12,18
  soul and spirit: one substance, II,2,2
teaching: caution re what is not known, I,6,26
temptation: will and, IV,7,11
Tertullian, II,5,9
thought:
  dwelling without ceasing, IV,6,7
  power of, after death, IV,19,30
Tobit, II,2,3
tongue, IV,16,23
Trinity, IV,5,6
  one God, II,3,5
  three persons; one nature, II,3,5
truth, I,19,34; II,1,1; III,2,2; 4,5; 11,17; 14,20; IV,1,1; 2,2; 3,4; 7,11
  correcting errors, II,17,23
unbaptized infants:
  admission to paradise (Victor), II,10,14
  born of non-believing parents, I,11,13
  born / die among unbelievers, II,15,21
  condemnation; original sin, I,11,14; 19,33
  merit being placed in sinful flesh, II,15,21
  merit; original sin; damnation, I,13,16
  pardon for original sin, after death, III,9,12
  Pelagian view, II,12,17; 15,21
  predestination (Victor), II,9,13
  redemption; God’s foreknowledge, II,9,13
  taken away so that evil . . ., III,15,22
  text (Wis 4) misapplied, III,10,14
unbaptized people:
  damned even though sinless, I,11,14
  entrance into heaven; II,12,16
  eucharist may be offered for, I,11,15
  forgiveness of sins, II,11,15
  fallibility of God’s predestination, III,10,13
  good thief, in paradise, II,10,14
  heaven promised to, III,13,19
  kingdom of heaven, I,19,33
  meritance of paradise, II,12,16
  only the reborn have God as Father, II,10,14
  part of the kingdom of God, III,11,17
  place of lesser happiness, outside heaven, II,12,16
  sacrifice offered for (error), III,12,18
  understanding, IV,11,15; 22,36
values: earthly/heavenly things, I,14,20
Vergil, IV,7,9
Victor, Vincent:
  ability for argumentation, III,14,21
  Augustine rebuked by, IV,1,1-2,3; 12,17; 24,38
  Augustine’s love for, III,1,1
  books dictated by Rogatus, III,2,2
  books received from Renatus, I,1,1; II,1,1
  choice of the name, Vincent, III,2,2
  conversation with, III,14,21
  convert, III,2,2
  correction needed, III,1,1; 5,7; 15,23; IV,24,39
  eloquence, I,3,3; II,2,2; 3,7; 17,23
  errors (eleven) to be corrected, III,3,3
  the faith, I,4,4-8,9
  heavenly gifts of wisdom, III,1,1
  God gives souls through endless time, III,6,8
  heaven promised to the unbaptized people, after resurrection, III,13,19
  human being made up of three bodies, I,5,5
  I decree . . ., II,11,15; 12,16; III,12,18
  love for, I,20,35
  love for Rogatus, III,2,2
  no merit before union with body, II,8,12
  on origin of souls, See soul
  on preexistence of souls, II,7,11
  ready to accept correction, II,16,22; 17,23; III,14,20; 15,23
  sacrifice offered for the unbaptized, II,11,15; III,12,18
  scriptural proofs inadequate, I,14,19
  sincerity or pretense (as Catholic), III,2,2
  soul lost merit through the flesh, III,7,9
  soul merited to be sinful before all sin, III,8,11
  soul recovers its pristine state, III,7,10; IV,24,38
  summary of errors of, I,19,32-20,35
  summary of his views, IV,24,38
  talents and eloquence, III,14,21; IV,24,39
  talkativeness, I,3,3
  text (Wis 4) misapplied, III,10,14
unbaptized infants: admission to paradise, II,10,14; 12,17
unbaptized people: entrance into heaven, II,12,16

Answer To The Pelagians I
urged to be a true Catholic, III,1,1-2,2

views differ with Augustine, I,2,2

vision of Rogatus, III,2,2

Vincent (the name), IV,24,38

virtue, IV,7,11

visions: likeness of bodies, IV,21,34

weakness, IV,7,11; 11,15

will, I,12,15

knowledge about a person, IV,19,30

knowledge of power of, IV,7,11

wings, IV,16,23

wisdom, IV,22,36; 23,37

asking for, III,1,1

grace; perfection, III,10,14

inspiration of the Almighty, I,14,19

source, I,14,19

wise in the flesh, IV,14,20

Wisdom, Book of, III,15,22

text (Wis 4) misapplied, III,10,14

woman:
came from body of man, I,17,27

she will be called . . ., II,14,20

Word of God:

made flesh, II,5,9

words of God (scriptures):

See also bible

authority of, I,19,34

faith in, IV,10,14

figure of speech: part / whole, I,17,28

knowledge and, IV,15,21

wound:
dream: likeness of bodies, IV,18,27

wrestling:

vision of St Perpetua, IV,18,26

Volume I/23
Index from
On the Spirit and the Letter
(De spiritu et littera)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians I

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume includes the following works: The Punishment and Forgiveness of Sins and the Baptism of Little Ones (De peccatorum meritis et remissione et de baptismo parvulorum), The Spirit and the Letter (De spiritu et littera), Nature and Grace (De natura et gratia), The Perfection of Human Righteousness (De perfectione justitiae hominis), The Deeds of Pelagius (De gestis Pelagii), The Grace of Christ and Original Sin (De gratia Christi et peccato originali), and The Nature and Origin of the Human Soul (De anima et ejus origine).

Volume I/23 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-092-6, 6 x 9 in., 605 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The Spirit and the Letter

Old Testament

Genesis

15:6 26,46; 31,54
17:5 24,40
18:14 24,40
22:18 26,46
25:23 24,40

Exodus

20:17 4,6; 8,14; 13,21; 13,22; 14,23; 14,24; 14,25; 20,35; 25,42; 29,50; 30,52; 36,65

Deuteronomy

30:12-14 29,51

1 Kings

8:46 36,65

Job

28:28 11,18; 12,19

Psalms

3:9 11,18
4:7 28
12:7 10,17
22:24-25 24,40
22:26 8,13
30:3 30,52
31:20 29,51
32:2 18,31
34:3 8,13
36:10 12,19; 36,65
36:11-13 7,11
41:5 27,47; 30,52
54:8 30,52
62:12-13 33,58
68:31 10,17
73:28 22,37
103:2-5 33,59
103:5 32,56
119:85 30,52
143:2 2,3; 36,65
148:20 8,13

Ecclesiastes

1:18 14,26
7:21 36,65

Wisdom

8:21 13,22

Sirach

18:30 36,65

Isaiah

26:10 22,37
53:7 16,28

Jeremiah

31:31-32 19,34
31:31-34 19,33
31:32 19,34; 20,35
31:33 20,35; 21,36; 22,37
31:33-34 24,39
31:34 24,39; 24,40; 24,41; 25,42; 28,49

Joel

2:32 29,51

Habakkuk

2:4 11,18; 26,44

Answer To The Pelagians I
## Answer To The Pelagians I

### New Testament

#### Matthew
- 5:6 32,56
- 5:7 33,59
- 5:17 10,16
- 6:12 36,65
- 6:9 26,45
- 7:7 32,56
- 7:9 29,50
- 7:11 32,56
- 17:19 35,63
- 22:37 36,65
- 22:37.39 36,64
- 25:35 33,59

#### Mark
- 11:23 35,63

#### Luke
- 10:29 26,45
- 11:9 32,56

#### John
- Jn 1:9 7,11
- Jn 1:12 32,56
- Jn 1:14 10,16
- Jn 1:16 7,11
- Jn 1:47 26,46
- Jn 5:14 30,52
- Jn 5:35 7,11
- Jn 6:51 36,65
- Jn 8:36 30,52
- Jn 14:8 33,59
- Jn 14:9 33,59
- Jn 14:21 22,37
- Jn 15:5 25,42; 29,50; 30,52
- Jn 17:3 22,37; 33,59
- Jn 19:11 31,54

#### Romans
- 1:7 7,12
- 1:16 26,44
- 1:16-17 11,18; 26,44
- 1:18-23 12,19
- 1:21 12,19; 26,44
- 1:21.22 12,20
- 1:22 12,19
- 1:24.28 31,54
- 2:8-10 26,44
- 2:8-14 26,44
- 2:9 32,56
- 2:11 28,49
- 2:13 26,45; 28,49
- 2:14 26,44
- 2:14-15 26,43
- 2:16 28
- 2:17 8,13
- 2:17-29 8,13
- 2:26 26,46
- 3:8 13,21
- 3:20 8,14; 9,15; 14,24; 30,52
- 3:20-27 13,21
- 3:21 9,15
- 3:22 9,15
- 3:22-23 9,15
- 3:22-24 26,44
- 3:23-24 10,16
- 3:24 9,15; 26,45
- 3:24-28 26,45
- 3:27 10,17
- 3:30 29,50; 32,56
- 4:3 31,54
- 4:5 26,45; 31,54
- 4:15 14,24
- 4:16-17 24,40
- 5:5 3,5; 17,19; 25,42
- 5:12 27,47
- 5:13 14,24
- 5:20 6,9; 14,24
- 5:20-21 6,9
- 6:1-2 6,9
- 6:2 6,9
- 6:3-11 6,10
- 6:4 29,51
- 6:12 36,65
- 7:7 4,6; 8,14; 13,21; 14,24
- 7:7-8 13,21
- 7:7-25 14,25
- 7:11 4,6; 14,23
- 7:12-13 13,21
- 7:24 14,26
- 8:3-4 19,34
- 8:6 4,6; 14,24
- 8:7 17,29
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>References</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>32,56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td>24,40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>24,40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14</td>
<td>34,60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30-32</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:31</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:32</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7-13</td>
<td>24,40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>12:20; 13,22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3-4</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6-9</td>
<td>29,51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>29,51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>24,39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>10:16; 26,45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>34,60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>36,66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>35,61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>31,54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>21,36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9-10</td>
<td>17,29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>13,22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>31,54; 33,57; 34,60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>31,54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>32,55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>24,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>24,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:11-12</td>
<td>23,38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>36,64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>17,30; 20,35; 25,42; 26,46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-9</td>
<td>14,24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-6</td>
<td>17,30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>4,6; 5,7; 5,8; 14,23; 14,24; 20,35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>15,27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>16,28; 18,31; 30,52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-2</td>
<td>18,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>18,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>18,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>18,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>18,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>35,63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>36,66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>18,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21-22</td>
<td>19,34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>19,34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>19,34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>32,56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>14,26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>32,56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>29,50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>2,2; 25,42; 29,50; 33,57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>22,37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>28,49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>10,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-8</td>
<td>10,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>27,47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>29,51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5-6</td>
<td>32,56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>13,22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>33,59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>36,66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>30,52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>36,65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>22,37; 24,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>32,55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians I
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

The Spirit and the Letter

able (being able), 31,53
Abraham, 24,40; 26,46
faith of, 24,40; 31,54
Adam, 6,9
adoption, 32,56
Amorites, 25,42
angel, 1,1; 35,62
anger: produced by the law, 14,24
artisans, 10,17
assent, 31,54; 34,60
atonement, 13,21

baptism: death of Christ, 6,10
beauty, 24,41
belief:
See also faith
free choice, 34,60
God and the will to believe, 34,60
question: one is convinced; another not, 34,60
bible:
difference between O.T. and N.T., 24,41; 26,43
figurative expression in, 4,6
See also New Testament: Old Testament
boast, 8,13; 9,15; 10,17; 13,21; 18,31; 28,49; 29,50; 30,52; 32,56; 33,57; 33,59; 35,63
camel, 1,1; 5,7; 35,62
childhood: when I was a child . . ., 23,38
children of God, 7,12; 22,37; 32,56
christian life:
crucified with Christ, 6,10
dead to sin; living for God, 6,10
know the Lord, 24,41; 28,49
symbol: Christ’s death and resurrection, 6,10
Christianity: law of faith, 13,21
Christians: letter from Christ, 17,30
circumcision, 8,13; 8,14; 13,21; 14,23; 1425; 21,36; 26,46; 32,56
faith and, 29,50
commandment(s), 2,4; 12,20; 13,21; 13,22; 19,32; 34,60; 35,62
failure, 17,30
holy and righteous, 14,25
keeping, for love of God, 22,37
love God; love neighbor, 17,29; 21,36; 36,64
love: what we ought to ask for in faith, 36,64
motive for observance, 14,26
Old Testament, 21,36
you shall not desire . . ., 4,6; 13,21; 14,24; 20,35; 29,50
concupiscence, 10,16; 19,34
condemnation, 14,24; 18,31; 28,31,54; 33,58
fear of, 32,56
confession, 36,65
consent: forbidden pleasure, 36,65
contemplation, 24,41; 33,59
beauty of, 24,41
eternal reward, 24,39
contempt, 33,58
continence, 4,6; 13,22; 32,56
covenant, 19,34
creation:
invisible reality of God in, 12,19
power of God seen in, 12,19
ready to serve God, 35,62
creature, 5,7
creator known through, 12,20
cunningness, 18,31
darkness, 36,65
David, King, 31,54
death:
law, 18,31
origin, 6,9
passed on to all human beings, 27,47
reign of sin and, 6,9
sin seen as sin, 13,21
wise according to the flesh, 14,24
decit, 18,31
delight, 3,5; 14,26; 25,42; 29,51; 35,63
desire, 3,5; 4,6; 8,14; 13,21; 14,25; 20,35; 29,50; 29,51; 32,56; 33,59; 36,65
forbidden object, 4,6

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
good and evil, 4, 6
sin, 4, 6
transgression added to, 5, 8
diseases, 6, 9

Egypt, 24, 41
eternal life, 2, 4; 6, 9; 22, 37; 24, 39; 24, 41;
28, 49; 32, 56; 33, 59
eye, 36, 65
faith, 3, 5; 10, 16; 16, 28; 19, 34
belief in Christ, 9, 15; 29, 50
benefits from, 6, 10
by which we believe in God, 31, 54; 32, 55
Christ makes us believers, 32, 56
Christian, 19, 32
circumcision and, 29, 50
commandment to love God/neighbor,
36, 64
doing what one promises, 31, 54
free choice, 33, 58
God’s gift, 31, 54
hope in God, 29, 51
in our power, 32, 55
justification by, 26, 45; 29, 51
law of, 10, 17; 25, 42
law of works, 13, 21-22; 24, 41
law remains, 30, 52
lies in our power, 31, 53; 31, 54
love poured out in our hearts, 17, 29;
29, 51; 33, 57; 33, 59
measure of, given to each one, 35, 61
move mountain into the sea, 35, 62; 35, 63
performs good works through love, 33, 57;
33, 59
piety of, 12, 19
praise (Paul), 32, 55
righteous live from, 11, 18; 26, 44; 28, 49;
32, 56; 36, 65
righteousness, 18, 31; 29, 50
salvation, 29, 51
saved by grace, 32, 56
soul lives from, 33, 59
will to believe is God’s gift, 33, 57
works through love, 14, 26; 26, 46; 32, 56;
33, 59
faithful:
distinguished from Gentiles, 26, 43
fear, 19, 34
forced to do what is permitted, 32, 56
law and, 17, 29
love and, 18, 31
Old Testament, 25, 42
punishment, 36, 65
flesh, 26, 46
love and, 17, 29
tablet of, 17, 30
wisdom, 4, 6; 19, 34

wise according to, is death, 14, 24
forgiveness of sin: baptism, 33, 59
free choice, 3, 5; 5, 7; 9, 15; 33, 57; 33, 59;
34, 60
God’s help, 2, 4
grace strengthens, 30, 52
neutral power, 33, 58
sinfulness and, 2, 3; 35, 62
freedom, 18, 31; 26, 45; 30, 52
future, 24, 41
Gentiles, 26, 43; 26, 46; 28, 49
law written in their hearts, 28
uncircumcised, 29, 50
gift, 35, 63
whatever one has is from Christ, 29, 50
glorification, 5, 7
glory, 9, 15; 10, 16; 13, 21; 18, 31; 22, 37;
24, 41; 27, 47
face of Moses, 14, 24
god:
all things are possible for, 5, 7
anger, 8, 13; 12, 19
cling to, 22, 37
faithful, 31, 54
goodness; love, 25, 42
highest good, 3, 5
inscrutable; unsearchable, 36, 66
judgment: no injustice, 31, 54; 36, 66
law = fear; faith = hope, 29, 51
See mercy
no partiality, 28, 49
omnipresence, 36, 66
one who has seen me . . ., 33, 59
power and wisdom, 5, 7
promises, 24, 40
recompenses, 33, 59
righteousness of, 9, 15; 26, 44
godlessness, 7, 11; 12, 19; 12, 20; 28; 36, 66
good and evil:
good coming out of evil, 13, 21
I do not do the good . . ., 14, 25
will and avoiding evil, 31, 53
good life, 7, 11
gift of God, 5, 7; 10, 17
good will, 29, 50; 31, 54; 33, 57
good works, 16, 28; 25, 42; 28; 32, 56; 33, 58
grace and, 10, 16
healed soul, 29, 51
sign of grace, 33, 57
goodness, 11, 18
will the good, but can’t carry out, 33, 59
goods: body and soul, 11, 18
gospel, 11, 18; 15, 27; 24, 39; 34, 60
power of God for salvation, 26, 44
grace, 6, 9; 7, 12; 8, 13; 9, 15; 13, 22; 14, 25;
15, 27; 17, 30; 24, 40; 28; 33, 59; 36, 66
description, 28, 49
dying to sin, 6, 9
free choice and, 30, 52

Volume I/23
justification by, 9, 15; 13, 21; 19, 34; 26, 45; 27, 48; 34, 60
law and, 10, 16
measure of faith given to each one, 35, 61
nature repaired by, 27, 47
one person believes; another does not, 34, 60
promised in the N.T., 28, 49
righteousness, 19, 32
saved by faith, 32, 56
seeking, 19, 34
sinfulness, 35, 62
Greeks, 26, 44
guilt, 14, 26
happiness:
living for God, 22, 37
Paul on, 24, 39
healing, 30, 52
heart, 7, 11; 12, 19
circumcision of, 8, 13
darkened, 12, 19
Gentiles: law written in, 26, 43; 26, 46
God sees, 8, 14
grace: laws of God in human hearts, 28, 49
I will put my laws in . . ., 19, 33; 20, 35; 21, 36
laws in; presence of the Spirit, 21, 36
laws written in (N.T.), 25, 42
tables of flesh, 14, 24; 17, 29; 17, 30; 20, 35; 25, 42
word of faith in, 29, 51
Hittites, 25, 42
Holy Spirit, 3, 5; 10, 16; 13, 22; 14, 24; 14, 25; 15, 27; 17, 29; 18, 31; 20, 35; 29, 51; 33, 59; 36, 66
finger of God, 16, 28; 17, 29; 21, 36; 26, 46
freedom, 18, 31
gift: delight in the Law, 14, 26
grace given by, 12, 20
justification, 9, 15
laws of God; presence in the heart, 21, 36
letter that kills, 4, 6
life-giving, 4, 6; 17, 30; 19, 34
love effected by, 19, 32
lover of the Spirit, 25, 42
pours out love in our hearts, 3, 5; 4, 6; 5, 7; 25, 42; 26, 46; 28, 49; 33, 57; 33, 59
presence, 5, 8
honor, 26, 45
hope, 7, 11; 13, 22; 29, 51; 32, 56; 36, 64
human being:
finest work of, 2, 2
God as teacher and helper, 6, 9
human condition, 1, 1
humility, 18, 31
hypocrisy, 18, 31
idolatry, 11, 18; 14, 23
ignorance, 2, 4
image of God, 28, 49
interior renewal, 22, 37; 27, 47
stain of earthly loves, 28
immortality, 29, 51
incorruptibility, 36, 66
infant baptism, 1, 1
ingratitude, 12, 19
Isaac, 24, 40
Israel:
See also Jews
house of, 24, 40
law of righteousness, 29, 50
jealousy, 2, 3
Jeremiah, 19, 33
Jesus Christ, 6, 9
ascended: gifts to human beings, 29, 50
come to fulfill the law, 10, 16
death has no dominion over, 6, 10
equal to the Father, 22, 37
eternal life, 22, 37
faith bestowed by, 11, 18
faith in, See faith
eknowing; eternal life, 33, 59
mediator, 27, 47; 28
medicine: death and resurrection, 6, 10
passion:
Passover lamb, 16, 28
temple veil, 15, 27
See redemption
Jews, 1, 1; 6, 9; 8, 13; 17, 30; 26, 44
hearers of the law, 26, 45; 28, 49
law given to, 26, 46
Sabbath, 15, 27
Judah:
house of, 24, 40
Judaism:
See also law
law of works, 13, 21
judgment day, 22, 37; 28, 33, 59
justification, 5, 7; 9, 15; 13, 21; 14, 24; 25, 42; 28; 29, 51
faith and, 12, 19; 14, 24; 29, 50; 29, 51
gift of God, 9, 15
law; grace, 10, 16; 19, 34
observers of the law, 26, 44; 26, 45; 28, 49
saints, 36, 65
source, 8, 14; 17, 30
knowledge:
live in proportion to greatness of, 36, 64
pain, 14, 26
partial; dim, 24, 41
power; delight, 35, 63
lamb: Passover, 16, 28
law, 6, 9; 8, 13; 8, 14
delight in, 14, 26

Answer To The Pelagians I
entered so that sin might abound, 6,9; 13,21; 14,24
faith and, 30,52
fear; love, 8,13; 29,51
foreshadowings in, 14,23
fulfilled, 19,34
good if used correctly, 10,16
guard with love, 26,46
hearsers; observers, 26,44; 26,45; 28,49
I do not do what I want . . ., 14,25
justification, 9,15; 13,21
knowledge of sin through, 14,24
knowledge of sin through, 14,24
letter of, 4,6; 6,10
ministry of death, 18,31
 naturally observing, 27,47; 27,48; 28; 28,49
ministry of the Spirit, 18,31
natural observing, 27,47; 27,48; 28; 28,49
nature, 26,43; 27,47
New Testament, 24,39
distinctiveness, 26,43; 26,46; 28
foretold by Jeremiah, 19,33; 25,42
ministry of the Spirit, 18,31
promises (O.T.), 33,59
promises (O.T.), 33,59
Prophecy: necessary, 24,41
prophecies, 9,15
prophecy: necessary, 24,41
promise: children of the, 24,40
promised land, 24,41
prophecy: necessary, 24,41
prophets, 9,15

Marcellinus, 1,1
meaning: multiplicity of, 24,41
mercy, 6,9; 7,12; 9,15; 18,31; 27,47; 29,51;
33,58; 33,59; 34,60; 36,65
merit, 6,9; 8,13; 18,31
mind, 24,41
mortality, 33,59
Moses, 14,23; 14,24; 16,28
naturality of death, 18,31
face of, 17,30
Mount Sinai, 15,27

nature, 26,43; 27,47
New Testament, 24,39
distinctiveness, 26,43; 26,46; 28
foretold by Jeremiah, 19,33; 25,42
ministry of the Spirit, 18,31
promises (O.T.), 33,59
Spirit, 14,24
term, 20,35

obedience: give what you [God] command, 13,22
Old Testament, 15,27
earthly promises, 21,36
righteousness, 11,18
term, 20,35
veil drawn over reading of, 17,30
olive tree, 26,46

Passover, 16,28
pardon, 13,21; 36,64
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
beginning of each of his letters, 7,12
choice of his name, 7,12
grace, 35,61
least of the apostles, 24,40
letter kills . . ., 5,7; 5,8
Pelagians: circumventing scriptures, 8,14
perfection, 1,1; 5,7; 23,38; 24,41; 29,51;
36,64
seek; hope, 36,65
Pharisee: sin of, 13,22
piety, 11,18; 13,22; 28
Pilate, 31,54
pleasure: consent, 36,65
possibility, 1,1; 5,7
power: willing and being able, 31,53
praise, 8,13; 13,22; 27,48
preaching, 24,39
predestination, 5,7
presumption, 34,60
pride, 7,11; 9,15; 10,17; 12,19; 12,20; 13,22;
18,31; 26,44; 32,56; 36,66
punishment, 12,19
promise:
children of the, 24,40
keeping faith, 31,54
promised land, 24,41
prophecy: necessary, 24,41
prophets, 9,15

Volume I/23
providence, 15,27
punishment, 7,12
contempt for God’s gifts, 33,58
fear of, 14,26; 19,34; 29,51
God punishes in a hidden way, 31,54
the law and fear of, 8,13
righteousness and fear of, 32,56
purity, 2,3
redemption, 13,21; 28
resurrection of the body, 29,51; 33,59
likeness of Christ, 6,10
righteousness, 1,1; 2,2; 5,7; 6,9; 7,11; 8,13; 11,18; 12,20; 13,21; 13,22; 14,24; 19,34; 21,36; 26,46; 27,48; 29,50; 33,59
cloak; faith, 18,31
fear of punishment, 32,56
God’s action, 5,7
hope of, 32,56
hunger for, 32,56; 36,65
knowledge of, 36,64
lesser, 36,65
live from faith, 36,65
love of, 8,13; 14,26; 21,36; 30,52
made righteous, 26,45
no living person has, 2,3
perfect, 35,62; 35,63; 36,64
presumption, 9,15
proportionate to lack of love, 36,64
renewal of, 6,10
self without God’s help, 19,32
source, 29,50; 36,65
use of the law, 10,16
works of, 18,31; 25,42
Romans, Letter to the, 7,12
Rome, 11,18
Sabbath, 14,23; 14,24; 14,25; 15,27; 21,36
sacrifices, 29,50
Old Testament, 13,21; 14,23
sacrifice:
animal victims, 14,23
Old Testament, 21,36; 25,42
saints, 28; 36,66
great love, 36,64
justification, 36,65
salvation, 4,6; 12,20; 14,24; 26,44; 28
faith and, 29,51; 31,53
God’s will for all, 33,58
gospel and, 11,18
grace through faith, 32,56
sanctification, 15,27; 26,45
Saul, King, 31,54
Saul (later Paul):
persecuting the Church, 7,12
schoolmaster, 10,16; 18,31
senses, 36,65
servants, 32,56
servile work, 15,27
silver, 10,17
sin:
abounding, 14,24
all things enclosed under, 19,34
censure, 6,9
darkness, 7,11
deceived by, 4,6
desire, 4,6
died to, 6,9
enslaved to, 6,10
entered human race through one man, 6,9; 27,47
free choice, 3,5
guilt, and knowledge of, 14,26
knowledge of, through the law, 8,14
law and, 13,21; 14,24
law obeyed out of fear, 8,13
law of, in my members, 14,25
letter forbidding, 14,25
obeying its desires, 36,65
responsibility for, 34,60
seen as death, 13,21
separates God and human beings, 25,42
servile work, 15,27
sinfulness increased; law, 6,9
soul wounded by, 30,52
transgression added to desire, 5,8
venial sins, 28
sinfulness, 1,1
abolition of, 6,10
sinlessness:
grace and free choice, 35,62
no human being in this life, 36,65
possible, with God’s help, 2,2
sinfulness: possibility of, 35,62
sinner, 7,11; 9,15; 30,52
excuse not to believe, 33,57
justification, 32,56; 33,59
made righteous, 26,45
obvious punishment, 31,54
slave, 30,52
smiths, 10,17
Sodom, 28
son of god:
likeness of sinful flesh, 19,34
Song of Songs, 4,6
soul:
good health, 35,63
healed by love of righteousness, 29,51
healed from wound of sin, 30,52
image of God, 28
lives from faith, 33,59
rational, 28
ungrateful, 11,18
spirit:
test whether it is from God, 32,55
wisdom, 4,6
spiritual goods: O.T. and N.T., 21,36

Answer To The Pelagians I
stream, 4,6

temporal goods, 21,36
temptation, 36,65
  beyond one’s ability, 31,54
Ten Commandments, 14,23; 14,24; 15,27
thanksgiving, 11,18; 13,22
treasure: vessels of clay, 18,31
truth, 3,5; 10,16; 12,19; 24,41; 27,48
unbelievers, 27,48; 28; 33,57; 33,58
  act against will of God, 33,58
vanity, 12,19
vineyard: parable of wages, 24,41; 33,58
virtue, 36,66
vision, 3,5; 36,64; 36,65
vocation: predestined, called . . ., 5,7
wages: gospel parable, 24,41
weakness, 9,15; 10,16; 29,51; 34,60; 36,66
wickedness, 19,33
will, 1,1; 9,15; 33,59
  See also free choice
  ability to carry out, 31,53
believe with, 33,57
compulsion, 31,53
cooperation of the creature, 5,7
doing what is permitted, 32,56
force or persuasion, 31,53
gift of God, 34,60
God’s gift: will to believe, 33,57
goodness and, 12,20
inner act, 8,14
nature as source, 33,57
no will except from God, 31,54
perfection and, 35,63
power = ability to act, 31,53
righteousness, 2,4; 3,5; 5,7; 30,52
will of God: unbelievers, 33,58
wisdom, 5,7; 9,15; 11,18; 12,19; 13,22;
  19,34; 32,56
  Book of, 35,62
  flesh vs spirit, 4,6
  wise in moderation, 35,61
Word of God, 24,41
work: servile, 15,27
works, 13,21; 24,40; 29,50; 33,59; 35,63
  See also good works
  justification by, 26,45
law of, 14,24; 25,42
law of faith, 13,21-22
without me you can do nothing, 29,50
worship, 13,22
wounds, 6,9; 27,47

Volume I/23
Index from
Against Julian
(Contra Julianum)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians II

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume contains three works of Saint Augustine of Hippo: Marriage and Desire (De nuptiis et concupiscencia); Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians (Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum); and Answer to Julian (Contra Julianum).

Volume I/24
Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-107-7, 6 x 9 in., 596 pp., 1998

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume I/24
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Answer to Julian

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon and Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:27–28</td>
<td>IV, 14, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>III, 26, 60; IV, 9, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:29–30</td>
<td>IV, 14, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>VI, 7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>I, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>IV, 9, 53; IV, 16, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>IV, 3, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>V, 4, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>V, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>IV, 16, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>IV, 16, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>III, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:1</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>VI, 24, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:14,12</td>
<td>VI, 7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:6</td>
<td>III, 19, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:18</td>
<td>III, 19, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>VI, 24, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:19–22</td>
<td>V, 3, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
<td>25:20</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>II, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11–12</td>
<td>V, 13, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:5 LXX</td>
<td>V, 13, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>II, 8, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians II
**Psalms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>II, 8, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:13</td>
<td>VI, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:2</td>
<td>II, 8, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:4</td>
<td>III, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7</td>
<td>V, 3, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:8</td>
<td>IV, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>VI, 12, 39; VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:17</td>
<td>I, 7, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
<td>II, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>I, 3, 9; I, 7, 32; II, 2, 4; II, 3, 5; II, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:5</td>
<td>II, 8, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>IV, 8, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63:4</td>
<td>II, 8, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>IV, 3, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:49</td>
<td>V, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:8</td>
<td>IV, 3, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:6</td>
<td>II, 8, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:59</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:11</td>
<td>VI, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:12</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:3</td>
<td>VI, 18, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:8</td>
<td>III, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114:3</td>
<td>I, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>I, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:9</td>
<td>VI, 24, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:36</td>
<td>II, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:175</td>
<td>I, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:9</td>
<td>V, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>VI, 12, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:8</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sirach**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>VI, 13, 40; VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>V, 9, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:30</td>
<td>V, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:30</td>
<td>V, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>IV, 14, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>III, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:33</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:21</td>
<td>VI, 14, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>II, 1, 3; III, 3, 9; III, 6, 13; III, 18, 35; IV, 9, 60; VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Isaiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:9 LXX</td>
<td>II, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:14</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9</td>
<td>IV, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63:17</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:56</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jeremiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>V, 6, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:29–30</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31–32</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:18</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ezekiel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>V, 3, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hosea**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:11</td>
<td>V, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14 LXX</td>
<td>VI, 20, 65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Maccabees**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>V, 15, 53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Testament**

**Matthew**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>V, 12, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>III, 19, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11–12</td>
<td>I, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>IV, 14, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>V, 13, 49; V, 15, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 8, 23; II, 10, 33; III, 1, 2; III, 14, 28; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 28; IV, 3, 29; V, 9, 40; VI, 14, 44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ecclesiastes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>VI, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wisdom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>V, 9, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>V, 9, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>IV, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28</td>
<td>VI, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8 LXX</td>
<td>I, 9, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
<td>IV, 3, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4 LXX</td>
<td>V, 16, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>II, 8, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:24</td>
<td>IV, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:19</td>
<td>III, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Answer To The Pelagians II**
# Answer To The Pelagians II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>I, 8, 38; III, 13, 27; IV, 2, 6; V, 4, 15</th>
<th>15:5</th>
<th>V, 16, 66</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>IV, 3, 33</td>
<td>15:1719</td>
<td>VI, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>VI, 19, 58</td>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td>7:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:78</td>
<td>IV, 8, 41</td>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>III, 24, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>I, 8, 38</td>
<td>17:31</td>
<td>IV, 3, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>II, 8, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>IV, 3, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>I, 8, 40; I, 9, 44; IV, 3, 30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>I, 5, 18</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 3, 17; IV, 3, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>IV, 3, 20</td>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>V, 4, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td>VI, 15, 45</td>
<td>1:21–22</td>
<td>IV, 3, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>I, 8, 40</td>
<td>1:23–24</td>
<td>V, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>V, 9, 39; V, 16, 66</td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>V, 3, 10; V, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>V, 9, 39</td>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>V, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>II, 8, 22</td>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>V, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:14</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
<td>1:26–27</td>
<td>V, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:9</td>
<td>VI, 25, 82</td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>IV, 8, 42</td>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>IV, 3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:24</td>
<td>V, 11, 44</td>
<td>2:14–15</td>
<td>IV, 3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:28</td>
<td>III, 3, 9</td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>IV, 3, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mark**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>VI, 3, 6; VI, 10, 29</th>
<th>3:67</th>
<th>III, 18, 35</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>IV, 8, 49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Luke**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>V, 12, 47</th>
<th>5:89</th>
<th>VI, 4, 8; VI, 24, 77</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>VI, 19, 60</td>
<td>5:8–10</td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>IV, 3, 28</td>
<td>5:8–12</td>
<td>VI, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>IV, 7, 39</td>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>VI, 13, 40</td>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 3, 8; I, 3, 10; I, 5, 20; I, 6, 27; I, 6, 28; I, 7, 32; I, 7, 33; III, 22, 51; III, 24, 56; IV, 15, 77; V, 7, 27; V, 14, 51; VI, 4, 9; VI, 7, 21; VI, 10, 28; VI, 12, 39; VI, 20, 63; VI, 24, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:34</td>
<td>VI, 15, 45</td>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>VI, 24, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>VI, 2, 3</th>
<th>5:14</th>
<th>VI, 4, 9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>III, 3, 8;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>VI, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>VI, 18, 56</td>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 6, 22; I, 6, 27; VI, 4, 9; VI, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:39</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>IV, 8, 44; V, 4, 14</td>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>IV, 8, 42; IV, 8, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54</td>
<td>III, 1, 4</td>
<td>5:1921</td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:66</td>
<td>IV, 8, 44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>VI, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>VI, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>VI, 12, 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>VI, 12, 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:3</td>
<td>III, 6, 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>VI, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>VI, 12, 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:27</td>
<td>II, 8, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>VI, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>VI, 4, 8; VI, 24, 77</th>
<th>5:12.18.19</th>
<th>VI, 24, 80</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 6, 27; VI, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>I, 6, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>I, 7, 33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 6, 22; I, 6, 27; VI, 4, 9; VI, 24, 79</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>IV, 8, 42; IV, 8, 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1921</td>
<td>VI, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>VI, 24, 76</th>
<th>7:29</th>
<th>VI, 24, 76</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>III, 24, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22–23</td>
<td></td>
<td>17:31</td>
<td>IV, 3, 25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/24**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>VI, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>VI, 4, 10; VI, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>VI, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>I, 6, 28; I, 7, 33; VI, 3, 7; VI, 5, 13; VI, 5, 14; VI, 26, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:24</td>
<td>II, 3, 5; II, 4, 8; II, 5, 11; VI, 7, 28; VI, 23, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>II, 3, 5; II, 3, 6; VI, 18, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:27</td>
<td>III, 26, 62; V, 7, 28; VI, 23, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28</td>
<td>VI, 23, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:29</td>
<td>V, 9, 35; VI, 14, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>VI, 24, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:31</td>
<td>VI, 13, 40; VI, 15, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:32</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:33</td>
<td>V, 4, 14, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:34</td>
<td>V, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:35</td>
<td>III, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:36</td>
<td>IV, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37</td>
<td>V, 9, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>II, 3, 24; IV, 3, 27; IV, 3, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>II, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>VI, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>VI, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>V, 4, 14, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>V, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:10</td>
<td>III, 4, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>IV, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>IV, 7, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>IV, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>IV, 7, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>III, 26, 62; II, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>III, 26, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>VI, 23, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>II, 9, 32; III, 13, 27; III, 26, 62; VI, 7, 30; VI, 15, 58; VI, 16, 61; VI, 15, 46; VI, 18, 54; VI, 23, 70; VI, 23, 71; VI, 23, 72; VI, 23, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>II, 5, 14; III, 26, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
<td>II, 5, 13; II, 8, 30; VI, 23, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>II, 8, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>VI, 23, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>IV, 2, 11; VI, 23, 72; VI, 23, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>II, 5, 13; II, 5, 14; II, 9, 32; III, 26, 61; V, 6, 24; V, 7, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>III, 26, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>VI, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28</td>
<td>VI, 23, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>VI, 16, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:30</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:31</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:32</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:33</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:34</td>
<td>V, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:35</td>
<td>III, 15, 29; III, 16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:36</td>
<td>V, 16, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37</td>
<td>IV, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:38</td>
<td>IV, 3, 27; IV, 3, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>VI, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>VI, 23, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>VI, 16, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>V, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>III, 15, 29; III, 16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>V, 16, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>IV, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>IV, 3, 27; IV, 3, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>VI, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>VI, 23, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>VI, 16, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>V, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>III, 15, 29; III, 16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>V, 16, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>IV, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>IV, 3, 27; IV, 3, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>VI, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>VI, 23, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>VI, 16, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>VI, 16, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>V, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>III, 15, 29; III, 16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34</td>
<td>V, 16, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>IV, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:36</td>
<td>IV, 3, 27; IV, 3, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians II
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference</th>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:25</td>
<td>IV, 3, 18</td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>IV, 3, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>II, 8, 24</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>VI, 8, 32; VI, 10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>IV, 16, 79</td>
<td>2:10–13</td>
<td>VI, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>IV, 16, 79</td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>VI, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22–25</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>VI, 14, 41; VI, 18, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>I, 6, 22</td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>VI, 18, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21–22</td>
<td>VI, 24, 80; VI, 24, 81</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>VI, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22.49</td>
<td>VI, 6, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:36</td>
<td>VI, 23, 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>I, 5, 16; II, 3, 6; II, 4, 8; VI, 20, 65</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15–16</td>
<td>III, 23, 53</td>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>V, 9, 35; V, 9, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>VI, 14, 41</td>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16a</td>
<td>VI, 13, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td>VI, 24, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16b</td>
<td>VI, 13, 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>VI, 13, 40</td>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>IV, 8, 42; IV, 8, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>VI, 10, 29</td>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>VI, 5, 14; VI, 9, 24; VI, 9, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 8, 43; V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14–15</td>
<td>VI, 4, 8; VI, 15, 48</td>
<td></td>
<td>V, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>VI, 2, 5; VI, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>VI, 14, 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>VI, 22, 68</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>I, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>II, 5, 13</td>
<td>James</td>
<td>III, 21, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>II, 4, 8; IV, 2, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td>IV, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:14–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VI, 15, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>V, 7, 27</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>II, 2, 4; V, 15, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>VI, 23, 71</td>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>II, 2, 4; V, 15, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>IV, 3, 17</td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>V, 9, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:26</td>
<td>VI, 24, 81</td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>VI, 11, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>VI, 9, 27</td>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>V, 4, 18</td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>V, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>III, 26, 62</td>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>II, 8, 25; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 29; V, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>I, 5, 17; II, 3, 6; II, 21, 50; III, 26, 62; III, 26, 66; IV, 1, 2; IV, 7, 27; V, 7, 28; VI, 13, 40; VI, 14, 41; VI, 16, 50</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>II, 8, 25; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 29; V, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>III, 26, 62</td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>V, 16, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19–20</td>
<td>III, 26, 62</td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>III, 21, 45; IV, 2, 6; IV, 13, 64; VI, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:36</td>
<td>VI, 24, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>VI, 9, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>VI, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>II, 8, 28; VI, 10, 33; VI, 24, 78</td>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>II, 8, 25; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 29; V, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>III, 12, 25</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>II, 8, 25; III, 21, 48; IV, 3, 29; V, 7, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/24**
Volume I/24

SUBJECT INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Answer to Julian

abandonment:
  God's patience, V,13
  handed over to shameful passions, V,10

Abimelech, III,19,36; 37

Abraham, VI,18
  fertility, God's gift, III,11,2123; 32; 18,34
  promises to, VI,80

actions:
  ends and, IV,21; 22; 25
  good and evil, VI,19,58

Adam and Eve:
  See also original justice; original sin; paradise; serpent
  ashamed after first sin, IV,54
  carnal concupiscence, IV,49
  created without concupiscence, V,55
  damaged because of sin, III,58
  death and, VI,9
  descendants, V,15,52
  embarrassed, covered their sexual organs, V,6; 7; VI,2268
  Eve believed the serpent, I,10; 32; II,37; VI,2268
  Eve and childbirth, II,6,15
  excuses for sinning, VI,24,75
  fig leaves, II,16; 17
  first Adam; second Adam, VI,77
  forbidden fruit, IV,82
  hiding from God, IV,82
  increase and multiply..., IV,69
  lineage affected by, V,54
  marriage of, V,48
  Mary and Eve, virgins, I,3,5
  naked, I,10; II,17; IV,81; 82; V,6; 7

  fear, IV,82
  shame, V,7,25; 33
  not naked, not ashamed, IV,9,53
  perished; all perished in Adam, I,32
  sexual arousal, V,7,25
  sinned by free choice, VI,10,28
  sorrow, I,24
  in whom all have sinned..., VI,24,75
  will; Manicheism, I,16
  wounded by the serpent, I,10
  yoke upon children of, VI,5,11; 10,28; 31; 43

adoption, I,6,21; VI,13,40; 43; 47

adultery, I,39; III,16; 14,28; 19,36; 37; 46; 47; 49; IV,48; 10,56; V,8,31; 12,46; 60; 62; VI,61
  child as good result of, III,9,18; 22,51
  child born from, III,53
  having children as object of, IV,39
  intemperance within marriage, II,20
  intention of begetting children, V,10,41
  looking at a woman with desire, IV,14,65

Aeneas, IV,67

Africa, III,4; 5; 17,31; VI,21

Ahab, King, V,13; 4,14; 15; VI,25,82

air: breathing, IV,68

Albinus, VI,16

all (biblical usage):
  "many" and, VI,80

Amasiah, King, V,12

ambition, II,25

Ambrose, Saint, I,10; 22; 34; 35; II,2,4; 4,8; 9; 5,10; 11; 12; 23; 24; II,30; 32; 10,33; 34; 35; 37; III,2; 14,28; 32; 48; VI,23,70
  five arguments of Pelagians, II,7,19
  Julian attacks, I,4,11
  on law of sin, II,6,15
  on marriage, II,20
  on original sin and children, I,32
  on progress in virtue, II,22
  praised by Pelagius, I,30; 44; II,11; 6,15; 21; 32
  testimony against Manichees, I,44; 45

Answer To The Pelagians II
Ammonianus, Bishop, I,19; 32
Anaxagoras, IV,15,75
Anaximander, IV,15,75
Anaximenes, IV,15,75
angel(s), I,37; VI,13,40
created free of sin, V,16,59
good nature of, I,40
good trees, IV,30
greater than human, VI,64
guilt written in minds of, VI,62
Joseph, do not be afraid…, V,47
nature of, as work of God, I,41; 43
praise of bad angels, V,3,8
sin of, V,64
virtues, IV,21
works of God, V,64
anger, II,12; 25; V,13; VI,23; 31; 33
eleven O.T. texts, VI,78
Romans (5:812), VI,79
saved from; redemption, VI,9
vessels of, V,4,14; VI,32
animals, IV,5,35; V,18
creation; sacrifice, III,19
desires, III,49
desires in paradise, IV,82
evil not present in, IV,74
fear of, before/after original sin, I,25; 33
food; sustenance, IV,69
killing humans (after original sin), I,25
physiology, IV,12,58
sexual desire praised, IV,59
sexual organs, IV,12,58
sin by imitation of, IV,74
Apollinaris, V,55
apostles, II,26; 30; 32; III,64; IV,9; VI,21
good odor of Christ, III,53
martyrdom, I,13
aprons, V,7
Aristotle, I,12; II,34; 37; III,2,7; IV,78; V,14,51; VI,56; 64
arrogance, II,30; 36; IV,28
asking, seeking, knocking, IV,41; 42
attainment, I,6; II,9; 7,19; 22; 24; 9,31; V,18; 34; VI,11
attitude, V,6,24
Augustine, Saint:
baptized by Ambrose, I,10
contradiction charged to, V,5,1923
conversion, VI,39
devil worship (charge), III,18,34
on Julian’s four volumes, I,2
Manichee (accusation), I,19
Punic debater, III,32
structure of his book described, I,3
supported by many teachers, I,30
avarice, See greed.
babies, See children.
Balbus, IV,12,58; 72; 76; V,33
baptism:
baptized into death of Christ, I,5,15; 33; VI,3,6; 7; 10; 13; 21; 33; 48
blessings (Chrysostom), I,6,21
born for God, VI,4
Christ dies for each person in, VI,48
circumcision a sign of, II,18; V,45; VI,18
cupcupiscence set free of guilt by,
V,17,51
cross and tomb as baptism, I,27
crucified and buried with Christ, I,5,15; VI,13
effective grace, VI,44
effects: sanctification of the body, I,17; VI,13,40
eternal life, II,22
evils remaining after, VI,52
See forgiveness of sin.
free from chains, VI,16,49
fread from power of darkness, III,2,7
frees us from sin, not from evil,
V,16,49
grace, VI,5; 43
Gregory Nazianzen on, I,5,15
guilt removed by, II,5,10; VI,3,6; 52
Julian on, VI,67
See original sin.
passing into body of Christ, VI,5
perfect renewal, complete healing,
VI,55

Volume I/24
perfection (beginning), VI,15,45
prepare children for rebirth, IV,3
purpose of second birth, VI,59
putting on Christ, VI,27
rebirth, VI,42
reborn of water and the Spirit, II,18
redeemed from power of the devil, VI,8,22
Reticius on, I,7
reverence for rebirth, I,32
sacrament of rebirth, VI,26
spiritual, VI,26
unwilling persons, IV,45
unwilling; refusing, IV,42
water consecrated, VI,62
barbarian invasion, IV,19
Basil, Saint, I,16; 22; 30; 32; 10,33; 37; III,32; VI,69
beatitude, II,29; VI,60; 65
beauty, V,14,51
visible; audible, IV,73
bedbug, IV,55
blind(ness), II,34; VI,16; 69
as punishment, V,3,8; 9; 12
understanding, V,37
boasting, II,29; IV,30; 77; VI,9; 54; 23,70
bodies:
See also human body
not the work of evil creator, III,8,17
union of, as evil, III,15
body and soul:
See also flesh; human body; mind; spirit
carnal desires of the soul, V,28;
VI,14,41
corruptible body weighs down soul,
I,17; VI,13,40; 16,49; 23,70
daily renewal of the soul, VI,14,41
disagreement of flesh and spirit, II,11
earth and heaven, II,3,6
gifts of God, IV,7
God the creator of, II,2,4; 7,19;
III,6,13
governance entrusted to soul, III,10
hidden facts re the soul, V,17
joined (Cicero), IV,78; 83
nobility of soul, II,7
origin of soul, V,53
paradise, II,5,10; 11
Plato on the soul, II,7,19
purity of soul, V,26
rule by the soul, II,24; IV,5,35
senses and immortality, II,5,10
servitude of the body, II,24
soul as substance, VI,18,53
soul dwelling in stomach, V,26
souls after death (pagan view), IV,83
work of God, II,21
bread, III,41
breathing, IV,68
Caecilian, I,7
Caelestins, II,34; III,2
Caelestius, I,20; II,34; 36; III,9; V,6,24;
VI,14
Calligonus, VI,14,41
Camilli, IV,26

Answer To The Pelagians II
carnal desire, See desire; sexual desire. carnality, See flesh.

Carthage, III, 4; 9; VI, 16 catechumens, III, 62; VI, 16, 49 Catholic Church, I, 9; 22; 23; 30; III, 5; 17, 31; VI, 67; 69 paradise as symbol of, V, 6, 24 Catholic faith, I, 2, 4; 3, 5; 8; 12; 5, 15; 16; 19; 20; 26; 27; 8, 36; 9, 42; II, 1, 1; 3; 6, 15; 7, 19; 9, 31; 32; 34; 36; 37; III, 1, 1; 3; 12, 24; 32; 48; IV, 51; V, 1, 1; 17; 26; 64; VI, 5, 11; 8, 22; 23; 33; VI, 11, 34; 35; 26, 83

Catiline, IV, 19; 25

Cato, V, 38; 12, 46

causality: natural causes, IV, 15, 75
censure, V, 8, 31

change, I, 37; VI, 16, 49

chastity, II, 16; 30; 32; III, 15, 29; 50; 64; V, 6, 24; 29; VI, 61; VI, 22, 68 Basil on, I, 17

begetting children, III, 41

conquering evil, V, 30

continence and, IV, 64; V, 7, 25
desire for, VI, 56

desire for intercourse and, III, 43

excess of concupiscence and, V, 48

fight against evil instincts, V, 66

habits and fight for, VI, 55

mind of those without faith, IV, 3, 14

mind that commits fornication, IV, 27

pleasure of intercourse, IV, 49

procreation and, V, 37

sexual desire reined in, III, 14, 28

sight of sexual organs, IV, 59

suppressing evils, VI, 46

temple of God, VI, 13, 40

true, IV, 48; V, 34

unbelievers, IV, 27; 58

unbelievers living chaste lives, IV, 3, 14

unchasteness, IV, 3, 14

undefeated, VI, 57

virginity, IV, 48; 49; 50

virtue, IV, 3, 14

childbearing:

right to, in Roman Law, III, 22

total years of spouses, III, 22

childbirth:

more God’s action, than parents, V, 11, 44

pains of, III, 60

power of the devil, III, 22, 51

children:

See also infant baptism; pregnancy; procreation

adopted by grace, VI, 26, 83

appearing before Christ’s judgment seat, VI, 29

awareness of sin, II, 4, 8

babies incapable of sin, VI, 9, 24

baptized into Christ’s death, VI, 10; 33

begetting, II, 20

being washed and being born as equal, VI, 27

born with bodily defects, V, 53

claimed by devil, VI, 31

confess through lips of others, VI, 79

dead in sin (unbaptized), VI, 14

development: infancy to wisdom, V, 18; VI, 1, 1

evil; sufferings, III, 9; 10

foetus formed in temple of God, VI, 43

God, creator of innocent little ones, VI, 30

God’s creative action, IV, 38

God’s creatures, III, 10, 20

good born from evil desires, VI, 42

goods of marriage, V, 12, 46

ignorance, III, 19, 36

illegitimate, III, 40

imitation of Christ, VI, 79

increase and multiply…, III, 60; IV, 69

infants have body of sin, VI, 13

justice; subject to condemnation, III, 25

merit in infants, IV, 8, 40

newborns:

as God’s works, III, 56

both innocent and guilty, III, 23, 52

Pelagian view, II, 2

predestination, VI, 59

punished for sins of parents, VI, 25, 82

reason asleep in, II, 4, 8

sacrifices for sin, VI, 26, 83

sinful offspring; happiness, IV, 50

suffering as proof of original sin, II, 6, 13

Volume I/24
Volume I/24

tormented by unclean spirits, VI,31
wisdom lacking in infants, V,18
work of the devil, III,58
of world; of devil; of God, VI,13,40
children of God, I,2,4; IV,8,40
children of the world, VI,13,40
daily renewal, VI,13,40
driven by the Spirit, V,9,35; VI,14,41
marriage and, VI,13,40
choice [free choice], I,13; 9,42; II,23;
III,2; IV,8,40; V,26; 9,35; 36; 39; 64;
VI,9,24; 38; 20,63
See also original sin; sin; will
grace and, IV,47
infants and rebirth, IV,44
moderation, III,27
resisting God’s will, IV,42
sin and, VI,10,28

Christian faith, I,14; 17; 22; 23; IV,78;
V,2; VI,10; 8,22; 10,28
Christian life:
See also baptism; worldliness
changed for the better, VI,16,49
fight evil dwelling in the flesh, VI,71
imitating Christ, V,57
it is not I who live, . . . , VI,71
living for God in Christ, VI,7
living with Christ, VI,13
progress, after baptism, VI,60
trust grace, not human strength, II,3,6
trust in Christ, VI,23,70
united to likeness of his death, VI,7
will of God that all be Christians,
IV,43
Chromatius, Bishop, I,19; 32
Church:
See also Catholic Church
attacking the mother, VI,7,17
chaste mother, III,32
East and West, I,13; 14
growth of, II,37
prays for her enemies, IV,15
psalm of dedication of a house, VI,42
virgin, V,6,24
Cicero, IV,12,58; 72; 76; 78; V,23; 42;
VI,11,34; 67
circumcision:
  baptism and, V,45
domesticated olive tree, VI,21
eighth day, VI,18; 20; 21
foreskin, VI,19; 20
law, IV,25
rebirth signified, VI,18
sign of baptism, II,18; III,18,34; VI,18
soul lost if not circumcised, V,45
Clematius, Bishop, I,19; 32
clothing and dress, IV,80
clothing the naked, IV,30
cold, V,28
color (quality), V,14,51
commandment(s):
  child’s awareness of, II,4,8
delight opposed to, II,13
given in paradise, III,35
impossible commands, III,35
original justice, II,5,10
Tully on, IV,61
common people, VI,11,34
compassion: natural, IV,31
competition: corruptible crown, IV,18
concupiscence (of the flesh), II,3,5; 7; 9;
30; III,49; VI,26,83
See also continence; desire; flesh;
impurity; lust; sexual desire
Adam and Eve, V,8,31; 54
adultery, VI,61
all are tempted, pulled, enticed, VI,47
awareness of, VI,12
born and die subject to, VI,44
children born for the world, VI,2,3
children born through, IV,4,34; VI,5
conceived in pleasure of, II,6,15; 32
conception and, II,20; 32
conquered by grace, V,32
conquest of, V,27; VI,72
consent to, III,14,28; V,26; VI,16,49;
73
control of, IV,13; 52
defeating, III,44
desires opposed to the spirit, III,50;
62; 66; IV,2; 4,34; 37; V,55
diminished but not destroyed,
VI,16,49
diminished; fervent love, VI,50

Answer To The Pelagians II
disease, III, 15, 29; 21, 42; 58; IV, 2, 6; 10, 56
disobedience to rule of the mind, V, 3, 8
enemy of virtues, IV, 14, 65
evil, III, 41; IV, 1, 9; VI, 12; 17, 51; 69
excess; fornication, III, 13, 26; 27; 20, 38; IV, 64; 73; V, 48
fighting against, III, 65; 66; IV, 70; 73; V, VI, 6, 24; 61; VI, 47; 50
flesh, eyes, and pride of life, IV, 64; VI, 23
forgiveness of sins and, VI, 44
freedom from, V, 6, 24
genital heat, IV, 8
glorious battles against, V, 6, 24
good and evil, III, 45; IV, 9
good use:
  law of sin, V, 16, 59
  in marriage, III, 50; 53; 24, 54; IV, 2, 6; 9; 12
  propagating children, IV, 49
good will and, IV, 13
guilt ceases to exist, VI, 60
happiness in heaven, VI, 46
impulses restrained, IV, 2, 6
indecent behavior, IV, 73
innocence of child born from, V, 48
licit union to have children, IV, 49
living lives of continence, IV, 11
marital chastity, IV, 2; 9; 5, 35
marriage and, III, 25, 57; IV, 8; VI, 13, 40
moderation, III, 21, 42; 45; IV, 9; 12
music and, V, 23
natural; carnal, IV, 52
naturally good, V, 29
never ceases, III, 16, 30
no use better than good use, IV, 39
not absolved and made holy, VI, 17, 51
not counted as sin (baptism), VI, 17, 51
origin of, III, 27; IV, 13
original sin contracted from, III, 24, 54
paradise, V, 42
parent whose child is sin, VI, 47
parents and children, V, 14, 51
praise of, III, 44; 45; 49; 50; 64; 65; IV, 64; V, 3, 8; 9; 29; VI, 16, 49; 17, 51
procreation and, IV, 38
pursuit of pleasure, VI, 50
quality, not a substance, VI, 18, 53
rebellion against the mind, VI, 30
reining in, V, 40; VI, 14, 41; 61
  by grace, IV, 7
  by mind, III, 39; 41; 49; V, 6, 24
remains to be fought against, VI, 52; 60
remedy for, III, 15, 29
removed by rebirth, VI, 3, 6
righteousness and, IV, 6, 36
senses and, IV, 14, 65
sexual arousal and, IV, 13, 62; 69
sexual organs, IV, 81
sin that dwells in me . . . , VI, 73
use as servant, VI, 60
used only for begetting children, IV, 2
virility, V, 58
worse than ignorance (as to sin), VI, 50
condemnation, V, 4, 14; 34; VI, 77; 79
children born under, V, 43
exempt from, V, 11, 44
God’s justice, III, 3, 5
guilt, V, 10
justice, III, 25
one who does not believe, VI, 3, 6
original sin and, VI, 59
set free by act of mercy, VI, 59
subject to, VI, 62
unbelievers, VI, 29
conscience, I, 1, 1; II, 13; 22; III, 49; IV, 82; V, 3, 9
  guilt and, VI, 62
consent, II, 25; 32; 10, 33; III, 14, 28; 62; IV, 7; 10; 12; 14, 65; V, 11; 12; 22; 23; 29; VI, 16, 49; 60; 61; 71
  bad desires, VI, 74
carnal desire, VI, 15, 45
excess, IV, 64
good health, VI, 57
growth in holiness, VI, 14, 41
constancy, IV, 20
Constantinople, III, 4
contempt, I, 1, 1
domination, II, 14; 20; III, 22; 27; 45; 49;
  50; III, 66; IV, 1, 7; 8; 9; 10; 11, 12; 64;
  14, 65; V, 9; 22; 6, 24; 7, 25; 61; VI, 11, 34;
  47; 50; 56
  chastity of unbelievers, IV, 17
God must grant, IV, 18
good persons living in, III, 14, 28
marriage and, V, 39

Volume I/24
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Volume I/24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old age</td>
<td>V,12,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise of</td>
<td>V,65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reining in concupiscence</td>
<td>IV,39; VI,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saints enduring</td>
<td>VI,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shameful persons practicing</td>
<td>IV,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contradiction:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge of</td>
<td>IV,6,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contraries:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reciprocity of</td>
<td>VI,60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conversion:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of life</td>
<td>VI,76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of morals</td>
<td>II,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past evil actions and</td>
<td>VI,56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from sin</td>
<td>I,5,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>converts</td>
<td>VI,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corruption: exterior self</td>
<td>VI,13,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courage</td>
<td>IV,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enduring evils</td>
<td>VI,46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all things in heaven and on earth</td>
<td>V,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>babies born deformed, sick, ugly</td>
<td>VI,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flesh comes from God</td>
<td>II,4,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God as author of physical bodies</td>
<td>III,8,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God's foreknowledge and, V,43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodness of God</td>
<td>III,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pagan philosophers and, IV,77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise for all in heaven and on earth</td>
<td>IV,66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>predestination</td>
<td>V,4,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seeds</td>
<td>VI,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creatures:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>human and angelic</td>
<td>VI,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love of</td>
<td>IV,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise: subject to the devil</td>
<td>VI,64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crime:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abetting</td>
<td>V,4,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audacity</td>
<td>IV,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crocodile</td>
<td>VI,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross</td>
<td>I,5,15; 27; 32; II,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emptied of meaning</td>
<td>VI,36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cures</td>
<td>VI,60; 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curiosity</td>
<td>VI,7,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curses</td>
<td>III,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cynic (canine name)</td>
<td>IV,15,75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprian, Saint</td>
<td>I,6; 22; 32; II,3,6; 4,8; 9; 18; II,30; 10,33; 37; III,17,31; 32 on perfection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damasus</td>
<td>VI,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>damnation:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also condemnation; eternal punishment earned by all human beings, VI,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodness/injustice of God</td>
<td>IV,45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>righteousness and</td>
<td>IV,26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darkness:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power of</td>
<td>III,2,7; VI,2,3; 7,17; 8,22; 31; 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David, King</td>
<td>II,6,15; III,4; V,23; VI,10,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>death</td>
<td>II,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam’s sin as cause of</td>
<td>I,27; VI,9; 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all die in Adam</td>
<td>I,10; 32; VI,80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chain linked to first Adam</td>
<td>VI,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chastised in body of</td>
<td>V,6,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ died for all</td>
<td>VI,4,8; 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ’s death and devil’s power over</td>
<td>VI,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ’s death signified by our sin</td>
<td>VI,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprian on</td>
<td>II,3,6; 4,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominion over Christ</td>
<td>VI,10; 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final summation</td>
<td>VI,26,83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>human condition</td>
<td>III,63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infants without sin</td>
<td>I,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life and</td>
<td>I,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mortality</td>
<td>V,54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mystical; burial</td>
<td>II,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one died for all</td>
<td>VI,14; 48; 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origin</td>
<td>III,26; 22,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rescue from kingdom</td>
<td>I,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rescues us from sin</td>
<td>II,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separation of soul from body</td>
<td>VI,48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexual desire and</td>
<td>III,14,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinner’s; martyr’s</td>
<td>VI,55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sting of</td>
<td>I,16; II,3,6; 4,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where is victory</td>
<td>VI,65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who will free from body of...</td>
<td>II,3,6; 4,8; 11; 13; V,28; VI,54; 23,70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debate</td>
<td>I,12; II,34; III,5; 21,42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
deceit, II,29; V,4,14; 16
decency, IV,12,58; 16,79; 80; 81; V,6,24
dedication of a house, VI,42
delight, II,13; IV,66; 67; V,29; 33
See also pleasure
animals and humans, IV,74
carnal, IV,71; V,63
mind, IV,71
mind pleased with itself, IV,28
shameful recollections, IV,70
spiritual, IV,11
Democritus, IV,15,75
demons, VI,67
See also devil
children and, VI,31
expulsion, VI,60
pigs and legion of demons, IV,38
sacrifice to, VI,61
desire(s), II,20; 24; V,9; VI,61; 73
See also consent; flesh; sexual desire; spirit
animals in paradise, IV,82
boundless, IV,70
bringing good to completion, III,62
commands, IV,61
disciplining, IV,66
distracted and ensnared by, V,15
do not go after..., V,11
do whatever good desire wants, V,29
earthly; allurement, II,23
evil, IV,7; 5,35; 18; 28; 14,41; 52
evil movement, VI,60
evil things, good things, V,28
evil to desire evil, VI,50
flesh, III,62
flesh and the soul, VI,14,41
flesh vs. spirit, II,12; 6,15
follow nature, V,29
free from, V,30
glorious battles against, VI,15,45
good and bad, IV,12; VI,56
growth in holiness, VI,14,41
habits and the will, VI,55
handed over to, V,12; 13
handing one over to sinner, V,15
holding in check, II,5,10; 6,15; III,49
life, the greatest desire, II,25
mind resisting bad desires, VI,60
pigpen of desires, II,5,10; 11
reason’s control over, IV,5,35
senses related to, V,23
sensory awareness, VI,56
sinful, II,3,5; 14
battle with, VI,56
burning with, V,11
reign of, VI,42
soul has carnal desires, V,28
spirit resisting flesh, IV,69
struggle against bad desires, VI,74
virtues holding in check, III,49
war against evil/flesh, II,32; VI,42
yearning for sensations, IV,66
despair, II,30
devil, II,25; IV,3; V,3; 11; 28
adultery and, III,9,18
angel who once was good, III,63
arouses the evils within us, II,27
Augustine charged with worship of, III,18,34
author of human nature, II,28
author of newborn babies, II,2
children of the, VI,13,40
claiming children as his own, VI,31
claims all who are born for himself, VI,26
compact with God, VI,26
concupiscence and, III,26,59
conqueror, V,27
corrupter of our substance, VI,59
creator of human beings, II,2,4; 3,5
death and, I,33; V,36
dominion over human beings, III,2,7; 55
equality with God, I,27
existence and goodness of God, III,19
good to be subject to, VI,65
human beings rescued from power of, VI,65
human body made by, V,26
human sexual organs, IV,83
intercourse with Eve, VI,2268
loan shark of sin, I,10
marriage and, III,12; IV,38; VI,23
murderer from the beginning, VI,20,63
origin of sin, III,55
original sin and, III,46; VI,19,58
patrimony of, VI,23
persecutions and, IV,38
power of God over, III,2,7; VI,26; 59
power over those born, III,22,51

Volume I/24
power over unbaptized infants, VI,27
praise of (Julian), V,16
prince of heaven and earth, VI,2,3
redeemed from power of, VI,8,22
rescued from power of, VI,25
senses and, IV,14,65
serpent as wise, II,13
sex; flesh vs. spirit, V,36
sinner, V,3,8
spirit by nature, unclean by defect, VI,20,63
surprise that a creature is subject to, VI,64
unclean spirits torment infants, VI,31
works of:
  passing through work of God, III,56; VI,21,66
  work of God and, I,41; 44
  made holy, VI,52
world under power of, VI,2,3
wound from, II,10,33
wrong to rebel against, VI,65
dialectics, III,16; V,14,51; VI,11,34; 36; 55; 60; 64
dignity, I,25; IV,55
  in marriage, II,20
Dinomachus, IV,76; VI,50
Diogenes, IV,15,75
Diogenes the Cynic, IV,15,75
Dionysius (the tyrant), V,14,51
Diospolis, Council of, I,19
discernment of spirits, VI,16,49
disciples, VI,35; VI,4; 47
disease, V,28; VI,18,53
disobedience: original sin, I,27
disposition (a quality), VI,54
  virtue and the will, IV,19
dissoluteness, III,14,28
divorce, III,16,30; V,12,46
dog: vomit, VI,20
Donatists, III,5; 17,31
Donatus, I,7
dove, I,3,5
dreams, III,20,38; IV,10; V,42
drunkenness, II,28; IV,73; VI,54; 55; 56
eating:
  See also foods; hunger; taste
  banquets, IV,71
  sufficient for removing hunger, IV,70; 71
education, V,4
Eleutherius, Bishop, I,19; 32
elegance: empty, V,43
embarrassment, V,20
emotions, IV,61
Empedocles, IV,15,75
emperor, III,3
ends:
  actions and, IV,21; 25
  morality of means, V,10,41
enemies:
  better not to have, than to defeat, VI,65
  command to pray for, IV,41
  love of, V,57
Epicurus, III,48; IV,21; 76; V,29; VI,44
error, VI,1,1
eternal life, IV,33
  See also heaven; infant baptism
  images of God deprived of, VI,10
  rebirth and, II,22; IV,39
  reward, IV,23
  righteousness, VI,9
  unbaptized infants, I,19; III,4; 25
eternal punishment, VI,50
  providence and foreknowledge, VI,25
  rescue from, VI,31
  suffering justly, V,11,44
  unbaptized infants, III,4
ethics: moral philosophers, IV,76
Ethiopians, V,14,51
Etruscan pirates, IV,78; 83
Eucharist: salvation and, I,13; III,4; 25
Eulogius, Bishop, I,19; 32

Answer To The Pelagians II
eunuchs, VI,14,41
Eutonius, Bishop, I,32
Evander, IV,67
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
Evil, See good and evil.
excess: victory of concupiscence, IV,64; 73
existence:
  God’s goodness, III,19
  a subject must exist in something, V,14,51
exsufflation, I,19; III,8; 9; 5; VI,5,11
eye: bad; simple, IV,33
Ezekiel: testimony of, VI,25,82
Fabius, IV,17; 26
Fabricius, IV,17; 25; 25
faith, V,4; VI,14; 81
  abandoned; God’s foreknowledge, V,43
  attaining wisdom and, V,18
  attempts to destroy, I,22
  Christian mysteries, VI,8,22
  good acts done by unbeliever, IV,30
  good will without, IV,30
  living from, V,9
  mystery of original sin, VI,5,11
pleasing God impossible without,
  IV,24; 25; 26; 30; 32; V,34
protection of, V,58
removal of original sin, VI,12
resurrection and, IV,25
righteous living and, IV,3,14
rising with Christ, VI,18
sin and, II,28
sin is all that does not come from,
  IV,24; 27; 32
suffering as hindrance to, III,10
true virtue of chastity and, IV,50
truly righteous live from, IV,17; 19; 23
understanding depends on belief, II,3
using good of marriage, IV,6,36
working through love, IV,31; 33;
  IV,51; V,18
wrong action done out of, IV,51
fall of man, See original sin.
false accusations, VI,35
farmers, VI,65
fasting, IV,71
  Basil on, I,18; 32
  Eve and the forbidden tree, I,32
  penance and, I,18
fate, VI,3,6; 43
merit and, IV,46
will of God and, IV,46
fathers of the Church, I,31; II,1,1; VI,69
  See also bishops
fear, IV,51; V,39; VI,60
  assent and, II,34
  disposition of the soul, VI,54
  nakedness of Adam, IV,82
  serpents, before original sin, I,25
feeblemindedness, III,10
fertility, III,60; IV,1,1
  Abraham and Sarah, III,11,2123
  gift of God, III,23
fidelity, II,20; III,16,30; IV,3,14; V,12,46
Fidus, Bishop, I,19; 32
fig leaves, II,16; 17; IV,12,58; 59; V,2,5;
  7,25
first couple, See Adam and Eve.
first sin, See original sin.
flavor, IV,66
flesh:
  See also body and soul; desire; spirit
  arrogance of, II,5,10; 11
  body of death, II,3,5; 4,8; V,28
  carnal persons, VI,16,49
  Christ’s flesh, V,15,52
  compulsion toward evil, III,64
  desire(s), III,62; VI,71
  in animals and in humans, IV,74
  conquered by spirit, IV,73
  daily diminished, VI,56
  opposed to the spirit, II,12; 6,15;
    10,33; III,23; 13,26; 50; 62; 66;
    IV,2; 13,62; 69; 72; 74; V,27; 28;
    V,36; 55; VI,13,40; VI,14,41; 15,45;
    47; 50; 55; 57; 23,70; 72; 73
  pleasure and, II,6,15

Volume I/24
discord with spirit, IV,38
enticement, III,62
evil desires, III,62
good does not dwell in, V,58; 61;
VI,46; 23,70; 71; 72
invincible pleasure, V,32
law of vs. law of the mind, II,13;
10,33; V,7,25
likeness of sinful flesh, I,9; VI,13
living in accord with, VI,14,41
marriage and concupiscence, III,14,28
nature and concupiscence of,
III,13,26; 27
nature; bad desires, VI,74
necessary evil in, VI,6,24
put works of, to death, VI,56
rigor of discipline, VI,47
serving law of sin, VI,73
soul and carnal desires, VI,14,41
soul as master of, II,24
spirit versus, I,17; II,11; III,23
struggle against, II,32
ture life of, III,13,26
trust in quiet of, II,14
war with the spirit, II,3,6; 7; 11
wisdom of, II,13
works of, III,62
foods, IV,24; 67
See also eating
overeating, IV,73
pleasure in eating, IV,68
sustenance needed for animal body,
IV,69
foolishness:
cause of evils, V,18
childish, VI,1,1
discernment, VI,16,49
infants, V,18
Julian, V,13,49
things of the Spirit, VI,52
fools:
mentally defective from birth, VI,1,1;
2
foreskin:
sign of sin, VI,20; 21
symbol of evil, VI,20
forgiveness of sin, II,12; VI,7; 60
See also baptism; redemption
all sins forgiven in baptism, II,21;
VI,47; 48; 50
baptism (Pelagian), II,2; 4; 3,5; 7; 14
baptism, at any age, I,31
blood of Christ shed for, III,9
children (who have no sin), VI,15,45
completed in baptism, VI,56
evil desires remain, VI,12; 42
concupiscence and, VI,44
daily need, IV,28
desires of the flesh, VI,72
every sin washed away by, VI,29
expulsion of demons, VI,60
grace and, VI,72
justified from sin by baptism, II,14
many transgressions, I,22; 27; II,3,5;
7; 14
personal sins of adults forgiven
(baptism), I,22
redemption of children, III,58
forms:
senses; body to spirit, V,14,51
fornication, II,20; V,40; VI,14,41;
VI,16,49; 56
excess of concupiscence, III,13,26; 27
heart, IV,48
human beings born of, III,23,52
natural good from, III,46
true chastity and, IV,50
turning from God, IV,3,14
foxes, VI,20
freedom, III,2
friendship, III,66
Fundanius, VI,16
generation:
work of the devil, IV,38
Genesis, Book of, IV,9,53
genitals, See sex.
Gentiles, II,20; IV,23; 25; 10,56; 12,58
glory: motive for acting, IV,22
gluttony, IV,67; 73
goat, IV,59
God:
anger of, VI,77
author of all good things, I,37; 45
cannot be author of something evil, III,8,17
compact with devil, VI,26
See creation.
See devil.
See faith.
foreknowledge, V,11,44
giving honor to, V,2
goodness, VI,26; 59
human suffering and, III,10
justice and, III,35; V,43
mercy and, V,15
of things belonging to God, VI,65
hears (angry); spares (merciful), V,15
hidden judgment of, VI,38
hidden laws; guilt, VI,62
highest good, I,9,42; 45; IV,28
impossible commands, III,35
injustice, IV,45
judge of the world, III,35
judgment, V,4,14
just judgment, V,4,14
justice, VI,2; 28; 31
knowing him, V,38
light, V,3,8
merciful goodness, V,4,14
See mercy.
mysterious works of, VI,7,17
no evil, no weakness in, IV,28
power, III,18,34
presence in his temple (the body), VI,46
unjust punishment, V,3,8
wisdom and knowledge of, III,37
works for benefit of his enemy, VI,25
gods, IV,5,35
bodies of, VI,44
gold, IV,66
Goliath, III,4
good and evil:
See also flesh; goodness; guilt;
Manichees; sin; world
all natures created good, I,8,36
Augustine vs. Julian, III,49
bad use of good things, III,16; IV,6,36
baptism removes every sin, not every evil, VI,16,49
become evil by falling away from good, V,64
concupiscence; Augustine vs. Julian, IV,2,6
conquer evil by means of the good, V,30
contraries, VI,64
creation of bodies, III,8,17
desire for evil, IV,7
doing evil for good end, V,10,41
enduring evils, V,22
eternal evil can produce evils, I,39
evil as:
coeternal with God, I,9,42; V,6,24
coming only from evil, VI,21,66
defect of a substance, II,9
derived from the good, I,43
dispositional quality, VI,54
effect of original sin, II,5,10
God’s work, V,8,31
natural instinct, V,66
privation of good, I,37; 9,42; 45
substantial, I,16; 43
willing from good natures, I,38
fear of defeat, III,44
fighting against, II,9; V,28
foolishness as cause of evils, V,18
good that I will…, II,3,5; 13; 14;
III,62
good tree, bad fruit, I,38; 40; 44; 45;
IV,22
good use, III,21,42
human generation, VI,42
less/more evil, IV,22
make good use of evils, V,37
making a new evil, IV,39
nature as God’s work, III,56
nature capable of either, I,37
necessity of fighting evil, II,9
no evil without some good, III,53
opposing good, become evil, V,29
opposition between, II,32; V,32
persons enduring themselves, V,36
sexual desire, III,15
sharing praise, V,8,31
sheep and wolves, VI,20
sinful desires, VI,42
source of evil, I,37; 40; 41; 43; 44
struggle of the baptized, II,3,5; 7
substances, VI,19,58
two evils: one we have, one we commit, IV,73
two natures (Manichee), I,8,36; 38;
VI,21,66; 67
union of bodies as evil, III,15
will; Manicheeism, I,16
wound from the devil, II,10,33
good taste, IV,12,58
good thief:
remember me when…, VI,15,45
good works:
icorrect end, IV,21; 22
kingdom of God, IV,33
motivation, IV,22; 33
trutrue virtues, IV,33
unbelievers doing, IV,30
goodness:
acts without faith are not truly good,
IV,51
attaining kingdom of God, VI,1,1
barren tree, IV,22; 33
bodily pleasure as human good, IV,76
desiring, with carnal concupiscence,
VI,50
evil as fallen from, I,37
human generation, VI,42
natural, VI,17,51
naturally attractive, V,29
virtue, III,48
virtues and the mind, IV,19
willing, but not doing, II,14
gospel: defense of, II,37
grace, I,16; 22; 27; 28; 32; II,3; 4,8; 23;
24; 29; 34; III,1,1; 2; 32; 33; 46; 49; 53;
61; IV,7; 45; 78; V,3,8; V,11; 4,14; 18;
28; 40; 58; VI,1,7,17; 17,51; 26,83; 54;
59; 73; 79; 25,82
abundance of, I,27
arguments from/against God, VI,5,11
concupiscence conquered by, V,32
enemies of, IV,15; 16; 22; VI,6,24; 39;
VI,44
fight against effects of sin, II,32
forgiveness of sins, VI,12; 72
free choice and, IV,47; VI,5
good works, IV,33
gratuitous, IV,15
guilt for sin and, VI,44
healing, II,9
help for the will, V,65
human nature, image of God, merits,
IV,15
immortality and, VI,13,40
judgment, VI,3,6
justification and, I,33
merit and, III,48; IV,8,40; 41
nature corrected by, IV,25
need of, V,9,35
paradise, IV,82
Paul’s letter to the Romans, VI,4,8
perfection and, IV,15
praise of, IV,48
put deeds of flesh to death, VI,14,41
rebirth and, VI,43; 44
righteousness, II,3,5; 4,8; 9; 22; IV,42;
VI,9
sacraments, II,6,15
set free from body of death by, II,13;
V,28
set free from every evil, VI,60
set free from the world, VI,4
sin destroyed by, I,33; VI,9
sin prevents attainment of, I,6
temptation and, VI,44
ten blessings of baptism, I,6,21
true virtue bestowed by, IV,48
truth sets free from vanity, VI,39
washing sin away, II,6,15
wretched man that I am…, II,3,5; 6
Grace against Pelagius, IV,47
grain, IV,27
grape vine, VI,7,17
greed, I,9,42; II,23; 25; 28; IV,19; 21;
VI,14,41
Greek language, V,7
Gregory Nazianzen, Saint, I,5,15; 16;
22; 32; II,7; 4,8; 9; 30; 10,33; 34; 37;
II,32; VI,23,70
guilt, II,10,33; III,46; IV,21; 51; V,4,14;
28; 14,51; 60; VI,17,51; 61; 21,66;
baptism and forgiveness, II,9; 5,10;
VI,50; 52; 62
born of fornication; born of marriage,
III,23,52
children, II,4,8
concupiscence, VI,60
condemnation, V,10
conscience, VI,62
dead sin still fights back, II,32
evils remain, VI,16,49
grace setting free, VI,44
nature and bad acts, III,6,13
pardon, VI,47
person born according to the flesh, VI,52
pulled to evil actions by, II,12
punishment and, III,24,54
subject or substance, VI,62

habit, II,25
force of, VI,73
selfcontrol, VI,55
struggle against, II,3,5; 5,10; 14
virtue, IV,19

Hagar, III,22

happiness, II,14; IV,33; 41; 50; 69; 83; V,29
heaven, VI,32
natural instinct, IV,19
harmony, V,28

hate, VI,1,1
both sin and penalty for sin, VI,2
world hates Christ, VI,4

healing, II,4; 8; 9; 10,33; III,6,13; IV,11; V,17; 26; 28; VI,55; 62; 74

health, IV,66; 67; 70; 72; V,28; VI,55; 60
moderation in eating, IV,71

heart, II,25; III,50
blindness, III,25; V,12
confused by thoughts, II,23
darkness, V,18
evil desires of, V,11
generous, IV,15
God sees interior of, IV,82
rise upward, II,24
virtues and, V,10
works of the law written in, IV,23; 25

heat, V,28

heaven:
entering: good recompense, VI,29
fate, IV,46
happiness described, VI,46
rebirth for entering, II,18

Heraclitus, IV,15,75

heredity:
defects transmitted by parents, VI,7,17

heresy, II,36; VI,23,70
heretics, I,30; III,5; 48; IV,27; V,1,1; 6,24; 26; 66; VI,8,22
Hilary, Saint, Bishop of Gaul, I,9; 22; 32; II,4,8; 26; 28; 29; 30; 35; 37;
III,32; VI,23,70
holiness, I,6,21; III,26,59; 64; IV,61; V,6,24; V,16,49
baptism and, VI,13,40
body and baptism, VI,44
growth: not consenting to carnal
desires, VI,14,41
pursuit of, IV,28; 29
Holy Spirit, I,12; II,3; 24; IV,16; 33; V,32; 9,35; VI,2,3; 5; 47; 16,49; 71; 72
See also temple of God
belongings as foolishness, VI,52
knowledge of what God has given us,
VI,50
led by, III,62
reborn through, IV,4,34

homosexuality, III,40

honor, IV,68

hope, I,16; II,29; 32
good thief, VI,15,45
salvation, VI,15,45
temple of God, VI,13,40

Horace, IV,19; V,6

horses:
virtues and vices (metaphor), II,12;
III,14,28

Hortensius, IV,78

house:
psalm of dedication, VI,42
three divided against two..., II,5,10

human beings:
animals and, See animals. ????
born in (or out) marriage, V,62
Cicero on origin of, IV,78
created free of sin, V,16,59
created from seed, IV,12
devil as owner of, III,2,7; 19; 18,34;
VI,26
devil is hostile to, V,36
devil's dominion over, III,55
evil nature (Manichee), V,16,59; 64; 65
flesh from, II,4,8
God and devil dividing, VI,26; 27
God the creator of, II,3; 7,19; 9,31;
   III,12,24; 46; IV,1,1; V,13,49;
   VI,2,3
God’s gifts to, VI,26
good, although born with an evil,
   III,9,18
good, in a barren way, IV,22
good, though born with sin, IV,7,37
good nature; evil defect, III,47; 23,52
goodness of, III,22,51
individual gifts of God to, IV,16
made from human seed, III,22,51
mental denseness; animals, V,18
natural abilities, VI,2
natural goodness, IV,3,14
natural instinct to govern themselves,
   V,66
nature as stepmother (Tully), IV,60
not good for man to be alone, II,20
pagan philosophers and creation of,
   IV,77
punishment: subject to the enemy,
   VI,65
rebirth needed, II,10,33
receiving gifts of God, IV,3,14
regard nothing human as foreign to,
   IV,83
renewal; grace, VI,13,40
righteousness, IV,42; VI,9
the sexual act; goodness, IV,38
trees as metaphor for, VI,19,58
unclean; in devil’s power, VI,20,63
work of God, II,7,19; 21; III,18,34;
   IV,12; V,64
world (the word) as, VI,4
human body:
defecation process, IV,12,58
developer of, V,26
digestion, V,33; VI,52
divine indwelling, I,17
gifts of God, IV,16; 27
God, the fashioner of all bodies, V,53
hunger, thirst, digestion, V,20; 22;
   VI,52
immortality; happiness, VI,13,40
obedience of members, to will, V,5,19;
   21
Plato on, II,7,19
redemption; adoption, VI,13,40;
   15,45; 47
sanctified; virtuous, I,17
stomach, lungs, nerves, etc., IV,12,58
human condition:
   body of this death, III,63; VI,23,70
Cicero on, IV,78
evils suffered, IV,83
gifts; evils, IV,16
grace; mortality, VI,13,40
human nature:
   changeable, III,55
Christ’s revelation, V,55
condemned, VI,20,63
corrupted by devil, V,26
creation; defects, III,6,13
defense and praise of, V,18
devil as author of, VI,19,58
evil (Manichee), III,12,24; V,65; 66;
   VI,57
foreign evil mixed in, VI,2
God produces good from, V,4,14
goodness of, I,40; III,12,24; 23,52; 53
illness of, VI,62
merits grace, IV,15
more perfect, II,26
praiseworthy, III,7,14
stepmother, VI,67
work of God, II,28
human race:
   condemned with full justice, VI,52
humility, II,29; IV,17
hunger, IV,67; V,22
   moderation in eating, IV,70; 71
prodigal son, IV,28
hypocrisy, II,29
idolatry, VI,16,49; 60
   lasting defect, VI,61
ignorance, VI,16,49
diminished, VI,50
gravity of sin and, VI,50
righteousness, III,19,36
image(s) of God, V,4; 11,44
deprived of eternal life, VI,10
evil without guilt (Julian), VI,67
exiled from kingdom of God, III,9
grace and, IV,15
kingdom of God, V,56
separation from kingdom, VI,32; 81
washed; claimed by God, VI,26

imitation:
correcting way of life, VI,76

immortality, VI,14; 50; 60
ablaze in desire for, II,27
body; full happiness, VI,13,40
created mortal, IV,7,37
development and mortality, I,33
Lazarus, I,24
natural instinct, IV,19
perfection, II,22
Plato on, II,7,19
senses and, II,5,10

impiety, VI,61
impudence, VI,11,34

impurity, III,44; IV,48; V,37; 63
assaults on the spirit, II,13
desires of the heart, V,10

incarnation, VI,77
Hilary on flesh and sin, I,9
likeness of sinful flesh, V,15,52; 55; VI,13

incense, IV,66

incorruptibility, VI,13,40

infant baptism, I,10; III,17,31
adultery; intention, V,10,41
blessings from, I,6,21
children believe through those present at, VI,3,6
chosen from the world, VI,5
exorcism and exsufflation, I,19; III,8; 9; 5,11; VI,5,11
fate and, IV,46
forgiveness of another’s sin, I,6
imminent danger of pregnant mother’s death, VI,43
necessity, III,18,34
Pelagian understanding of, III,8; 5,11
punishment: dying without baptism, V,11,44
reason for, II,4,8
reborn for sake of next world, V,10,41
reborn from water and the Spirit, VI,2,3

salvation, I,14; 22; III,4; 25; V,18; VI,69
adopt all who are going to die, IV,45
believing through another, VI,29
Julian’s views, IV,43; V,2
udden death; unbaptized child, VI,43
superfluous or necessary, VI,3,6
unbaptized infants; salvation, IV,26; 42; 43

infants, See children.
injustice, IV,39; VI,62

innocence, IV,12; 18; V,2,5; 6
deserving to come from God’s hands,
VI,30
gift at start of life, III,10
infancy, III,19,36

Innocent, Pope, I,13; 22,32; II,10,33; 36; III,32; VI,12,37
intention: actions and, IV,33; V,10,41; 16,59

Irenaeus, Saint, I,3,5; 32; II,37; III,32
Isaac, III,22; 23; 18,34
circumcision, III,18,34; 35

Ishmael, III,22

Israel, V,3,8; 12; 4,14

Italy, VI,21

Jacob, V,14,51
Jeremiah, V,6,24
Jeroboam, King, V,12; 15

Jerome, Saint, III,32
qualifications, I,34; II,10,33; 36; 37

Jesus Christ, II,32
See also incarnation; redemption;
resurrection; Son of God; Word of God
Adam as symbol of, I,27
all brought to life in Christ, VI,80
born of the Holy Spirit, VI,62
circumcision, VI,18; 20
concupiscence, V,58
cross and tomb: our baptism, I,27
death’s dominion over, VI,10; 13
died also for children, III,58
full of grace, V,58
ghost (Manichee teaching), I,2,4
gifts of Christ rejected, VI,72
good acts to rescue us from present evil, VI,44
greater than Plato, I,12
heresy of Apollinaris, V,55
human nature, V,55; 57
I am the truth..., VI,39
imitation of, by children, VI,79
likness of sinful flesh, V,55; VI,7; 13; 62
mortality; flesh, V,54; 55
not needed for salvation (Julian), VI,81
passion and death:
baptized into, See baptism.
Christ died for all, VI,4,8; 52
devil and power of death and, VI,27
his death a true death, I,27
only for sinners, VI,18
true death, true flesh, V,7
unbelief as cause of, V,3,8
united to likeness of, I,27; VI,13
when we were still sinners..., VI,9
peace, II,5,10; 14
reconciling the world to himself, VI,5; 9
See resurrection.
righteousness and, I,33
gained without Christ, IV,17
through obedience of, VI,9
sinless, II,2,4; 4,8; 11
savior, I,31; II,28; III,17,31
second Adam, VI,77
sinless, I,4,11; 32; II,2,4; 32; V,57;
VI,48; 52; 62
takes away the sins of the world, VI,43
tempted, endured, as human being, I,4,11
thought to be the son of Joseph, V,47
without me you can do nothing, V,66
Jews, II,7; 13; III,62; VI,72
blindness of, V,3,8
you are of this world..., VI,4
Joash, King, V,12
Job: testimony of, V,13,49
John Chrysostom, Saint, I,19; 6,21; 23;
24; 26; 28; 7,29; 30; 32; 33; 34; 35;
II,17; 10,33; 37; III,32; VI,69
Jordan River, I,10
Joseph, Saint:
genealogies end with, V,47
married to Mary, V,12,46
thought to be father of Jesus, V,47
Joseph of Egypt, V,23
Joshua, son of Nun, V,12
Jovinian, I,2,4
Jovinus, Bishop, I,19; 32
joy, I,1.1; VI,60
judges, II,34; 35; 36; III,21,42; VI,36;
64
reason, learning, freedom, II,37
judgment, V,36
all born subject to list of charges,
VI,62
children appearing before Christ,
VI,29
God’s hidden judgment, VI,38
left by justice; taken by grace, VI,3,6
recompense for actions, VI,29
scorned, VI,36
subject to vanity, VI,39
judgment day, V,4,14
hidden thoughts, IV,23; 25
justice and mercy, IV,46
punishment of sinners, V,11,44
Julian, I,4,11; 26; 35; II,1,1; 7; 14; 35;
III,9; 32; VI,8,22
on Abraham and Sarah, III,17,31
appeal to philosophers, IV,15,75
Augustine insulted by, I,1.1
failures in logic, IV,10,56
his fourvolume argument as inadequate, I,2
interpretation of Paul, IV,16,79
logic of syllogisms, III,7,14; 16
parading his learning, IV,15,75; VI,44
refutation of his:
1st book, III,1,1
2nd book, IV,1,1
3rd book, V,1,1
Answer To The Pelagians II

4th book, VI,1,1ff
refutation summary, VI,26,83
response to first argument, III,2,7
Zosimus and, VI,12,37
just and unjust, I,43; 44
justice, IV,19;21; V,3; 17
arguments from/against God, VI,5,11
creator, IV,78
human race condemned, VI,52
judgment, VI,3,6
justification, VI,79
death and, II,14
grace and, I,33
many transgressions, I,22; 27
perfection; immortality, II,22
resurrection of Christ, VI,18
righteousness, IV,42

Keturah, III,22
kingdom of God:
devil and those not admitted into,
VI,27
eternal salvation, IV,42
images of God separated from, III,9;
26; V,56; VI,32; 81
inheriting, VI,16,49
life of God in, III,25
love of, V,4
newborns in, VI,27
rebirth needed for entering, III,8
repayment to little ones, VI,15,45
righteousness, IV,17
separation from, VI,55
unbaptized infants are excluded, III,25
wisdom and, VI,1,1

kingdom of heaven, See heaven.
knocking, asking, seeking, IV,41; 42
knowledge, V,9
concupiscence, VI,61
pride of, VI,44

Latin language, II,36; IV,8; V,7
laughter, IV,27
law (Old Testament; Torah):
holy, VI,73
members vs. mind, VI,72
pardon for sins (Jews), VI,72
removal of sin and, VI,9
righteousness, IV,22; VI,80
sacrifices, V,45
sin abounding, VI,9
spiritual (Paul), VI,73
works of, done by nature, IV,23
written in hearts, IV,23; 25

law of God, III,3; 62
delight in, IV,67

law of nature:
pleasing God without faith, IV,23

Lazarus:
Christ wept over death of, I,33
raising of, I,24

laziness, III,64
learned men, II,34; 36; 37
learning, V,9
Leucippus, IV,15,75

lies:
believing, as sinful, V,12; 4,14
speaking evil against someone, I,1.1

life:
death and, I,27
gift of God, IV,5
God’s creating work, III,46
greatest desire, II,25
providence of God, VI,59
in whom we live, move, and…, III,56
limbo, IV,26
limping, I,10; III,11,21; 63; IV,83; V,34
logic:
Julian; syllogisms, III,7,14; 16
loincloths, II,16; IV,82
loins, II,17

Lord’s Prayer:
bring us not into temptation, V,15
Cyprian on, II,3,6
Deliver us from evil, III,27; 28; IV,2,6
forgive us our debts, II,23; 10,33;
III,2; 48; IV,28; 29; V,40; VI,44
God’s will be done, II,3,6
lead us not into temptation, IV,2,6
prayer of the baptized, II,3,6

Volume I/24
love, I,35; V,29; VI,1,1; 72
command, VI,4
concupiscence diminished by, VI,50
creatures, without the creator, IV,33
disordered, IV,18
faith working through, IV,31; 33; 51;
V,18
higher good, IV,28
of neighbor, IV,51
love for God:
    creator and creatures, IV,33
    gratuitous, V,9
    supreme good, IV,28
lungs, IV,68
lust, II,3,5; 20; 25; IV,69; VI,50
luxury, IV,19

Maccabees: mother of the, V,53
Mani, I,17; III,17,31
Manichees, I,3,5; 12; 5,15; 16; 19; 20;
23; 7,29; 34; 38; 39; 40; 43; II,1,1; 3,6;
7; 12; 28; III,3; 12,24; 17,31; 32; 63;
IV,1,1; IV,51; V,6,24; 26; 16,59; 64; 66;
VI,2; 57; 69; 74; 26,83
    Ambrose on, I,44; 45
    Catholics as (accusation), I,3; VI,67
evil doctrine, I,2,4
evil nature coeternal with God, I,17;
38; 9,42; V,6,24
    human nature as evil, I,17; 38;
III,12,24; V,65; 66
    Pelagian support for, I,3; 8,36; 9,42;
    VI,21,66; 59
many (biblical usage): “all” and, VI,80
Marcellinus, V,54; VI,18; 2268
marriage:
    Ambrose on, II,20
carnal pleasure as motive, V,9,35
chaste, I,17; II,6,15; 32
chastity in, III,14,28; 15,29; 21,42;
43; 49; 22,51; IV,1,1; 2,6; 7; 10; 13;
33; 48
children of the world from, VI,13,40
Christian: goal, V,34
    concupiscence and, III,14,28; 53;
    25,57; VI,13,40
    condemn the good of, V,65
condemned (Pelagian), II,2; 4; 3,5;
III,2,7
    continence and, V,39
definition, V,62
desire for, as evil, IV,10
devil and, IV,38; VI,23
dignity of, II,20
divorce, when intercourse stops,
V,12,46
ethereal, IV,54
goal of its will, V,34
good of children from evil of sexual
desire, IV,39
good tree, I,39; 44
good use of concupiscence, III,50; 53;
    24,54; IV,9; 49
goodness of, II,3; 8; 20; 21; 32;
    III,22,51; IV,1,1; 10,56
goods which make it good, III,16,30;
53
having children as God planned, III,53
husbands must honor wives, V,40
    intent: prepare children for rebirth,
IV,3
    issue between Augustine and Julian,
I,2,4
    no evil belongs to, IV,49
    not begetting children of God,
V,13,40
original sin and goods of, III,25,57
    possess your vessel…. V,40
    power of the devil in, III,12
    prayer for selfcontrol, V,40
    prior to fall of man, III,25,57
    remedy, III,21,42
    sacrament, V,12,46
    selfcontrol and, V,66
sex:
    desire in, IV,10,56; V,8,31
    necessary in, IV,4
    for pleasure, II,10,33; III,16,30
    for sake of having children, IV,38
    temperance in, II,20
    three goods of, V,12,46
    union of bodies, V,62
    using good of, without faith, IV,6,36
    virginity of unbelievers and, IV,50
    wife as vessel, V,40

Marriage and Desire, I,2,4
martyrs, VI,26,83
death as source of merit, VI,55
devil and, IV,38
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
  Christ born of, VI,62
  conceived without sexual desire, VI,2268
  Eve and, I,3,5
  flesh of the virgin, V,15,52
  married to Joseph, V,12,46
  original sin and, V,54
  title of wife, V,48
  virginity denied by Jovinian, I,2,4
masters and slaves, IV,61; VI,64
Maximianists, III,5
meditation, II,7
  words of God, VI,76
Melissus, IV,15,75
Memorius, I,12
memory, V,14,51
  guilt, VI,62
menstruation, III,22; 43
mercy (of God), I,14; II,11; 23; 25; 27; 29; 36; 37; III,10; 12,24; 25; 33; 35; IV,39; 41; V,13,49; VI,43; 46; 57; 59
  children of, VI,31
  grace and, VI,39
  judgment day, IV,46
  trust in, III,48
  vessels of, VI,32
  with/without faith, IV,31
merit, III,35; 19,36; IV,19; 29; 46; V,13
  asking, seeking, knocking, IV,41
  eternal life, VI,32
  fate and, IV,46
  God’s gifts, VI,39
  good and bad, IV,46
  grace and, III,48; IV,8,40; VI,5; 39
  infants, IV,8,40
  Julian on, VI,15,45
  martyr’s death, VI,55
  works of righteousness, II,29
  yoke of the children of God, VI,43
Messiah:
  faith [O.T.] in mediator to come, V,45
mind, V,6
  bodily pleasures and, IV,72; 76
  carnal delight and, V,42
concupiscence and, III,39; 41; 49; 61; V,60; VI,6; 24; 30
corrupible body weighs down, III,41
delights, IV,71
evils of, VI,52
gifts, IV,27
involuntary bodily functions and, V,20
law in members resisting law of mind, VI,72
learning and, V,9
most excellent thing in creation, IV,28
power over sexual desire, V,61
power over the body, V,29
resisting the law of, IV,72; V,7; 3,8; 6,24; 7,25; V,30; 36; 56; VI,44; 60; 20,63
senses in paradise, IV,69
serve law of God with, VI,73
temptations held in check by, II,27
Tully on, IV,60
  virtue, IV,19
  virtues reside in, IV,3,14
moderation, III,27; 21,42; 43; 45; IV,9; 12
eating and drinking, IV,68
modesty, I,35; II,17; 30; III,33; IV,27; 81; V,4; 2,5; 9; 20; VI,6,24; 30; VI,11,34
money: desire for, V,60
moneylovers, IV,18
morality:
  destruction of morals, V,6,24
  ethical philosophers, IV,76
morons, III,10
mortality:
  groaning in ourselves, VI,13,40
  law of sin, II,6,15
Moses, VI,76; VI,81
mother: temple of God, VI,43
motivation: glory: human or divine, IV,22
murder, IV,51; V,60; VI,17,51; VI,24,75
music: effect on emotions, V,23
nakedness, IV,59; V,7; 7,25
natural law:
  righteousness, IV,25

Volume I/24
nature(s):
  See also human nature
  accidents changing, VI,16
  changed by original sin, III,26,59
  evils in human lives, IV,60
  fighting against, II,2,4
  goodness of, IV,28; 30
  laws; defects, V,14,51
  limits and rules, VI,18
  one alone is without beginning, I,8,36
  philosophers appealed to, IV,15,75
  praising for, II,30; III,9
  proving transmission, parent to child, VI,20
  sexual organs called, VI,20

necessities:
  desires unbounded, IV,70
  sensual pleasures and, IV,70

New Testament:
  announced by Jeremiah, VI,25,82
  promise (Ezekiel), VI,25,82
  nobility, III,64; IV,17
  nothing, I,37
  nourishment, IV,68; 69; 71
  Nymphidius, Bishop, I,19; 32

odor, IV,66

old age:
  sex in, V,12,46
  sex; producing children, III,22
  shame re intercourse, V,62

Old Testament:
  children born for servitude, VI,25,82
  sacrifices for sins, V,45
  olive tree:
  wild and domesticated, VI,15; 7,17; 20; 21
  Olympia, I,24
  Olympius, Bishop, I,8; 32; II,10,33; 37; III,32
  order: established by God, VI,65
  original sin, II,9,31; 32; V,3; VI,26,83; 69
  Adam's nakedness, IV,81
  Adam's sin harmed him alone, I,19

all human beings are subject to,
  II,10,33
  Ambrose on, II,11
  Basil on, I,16; 18; 32
  birth as cause of, IV,4,34
  bishops defend Catholic view, I,32
  born from law of sin, II,9; 11
  born of sinful origin (Hilary), I,9
  conceived in iniquity, I,10
  contracted in first birth, I,14
  contracting, II,4; 8; 6,15; 20; III,35; 46; 47; 53
  decency of sexual organs, IV,16,79; 81
  defect inflicted by the devil, VI,19,58
  denial of, V,64; VI,63; 20,67
  devil's rights (Julian), VI,19,58
  discord between flesh and spirit, IV,38
  disobedience, V,7
  of Adam, I,27
  balanced by obedience, I,3,5
  of body as punishment, V,5,19
  of the flesh as punishment, V,3,8
  dying without baptism; suffering justly, V,11,44
  effects, III,12; VI,2
  effects: miseries, VI,39
  entered through one man…, I,8; 10; 16; 20; 22; 27; 28; 32; 33; III,22,51; 56; IV,77; V,26; 14,51; VI,9; 21; 10,28; 39; 43; 20,63; 24,75
  evil effects of, III,9,18
  evil will of first humans, IV,54
  excuses for personal sins, VI,24,75
  existing without a substance, V,36
  faith and reason in mystery of, VI,5,11
  foolishness or pride as cause, V,18
  foreskin as sign of, VI,20
  forgiven in baptism, I,14; II,10; 33
  forgiveness; rebirth, I,2,4
  free choice, IV,83
  freed by rebirth, III,66
  fruit of a good marriage, I,39
  fruit of the tree; sexual desire, IV,63
  garments donned after the sin, V,2,57
  healing:
    by gift from God, IV,5
    Irenaeus on, I,3,5
    needed, III,9,18
    of the uncreated evil, IV,7,37
  human beings as good, IV,7,37
  humans born with this evil, III,9,18
  imitation, not propagation, I,19; 33
Answer To The Pelagians II

inheritance, I,26
John Chrysostom on, I,6,21; 23; 24;
   26; 28; II,16
law of sin and, II,5,10
Manicheeism, I,16
marriage and, IV,49
marriage prior to Adam’s sin, III,25,57
natural defect in human nature, IV,54
nature coming from God, III,56
nature damaged by, II,28; III,55; 26,59
no infancy is free of, V,57
Olympius on, I,8
paternal debt handed on by Adam, I,26
personal sins and, VI,76
position of honor lost, I,25
producing a voluntary good from,
   IV,39
punished, unless reborn, V,17
punishments deserved, III,10; VI,1,1
removed by rebirth (baptism), II,3
root in a gift from God, I,9,42
saved from, V,16,59
sense of shame, IV,9,53
statements of Catholic teachers on,
   I,7,29
subject to, from first birth, II,1,1
voluntarity and, VI,9,24
weakness remains, after rebirth, II,3
world condemned for disobedience,
   I,33
world guilty because of Adam, VI,5
worthy of condemnation, VI,59
yoke on children of Adam, IV,60; 78;
   83; VI,5,11; 10,28; 31; 43
you will be like gods, V,17

original sin and children, I,12; 13; 19; 23;
   25; 7,29; 33; II,2; 4; 4,8; 18; 9,31; III,2;
   8; 10; 5,11; 17,31; 19,36; 22,51; 23,52;
   63; IV,3; 50; 83; V,4; 30; 48; 50; 53; 63;
   VI,3,6; 20; 36; 48; 55; 57; 79; 26,83
See also infant baptism
born dead, VI,14
children born from adultery, I,39;
   III,22,51
children of the world, VI,13,40
contracted from marriage, III,24,54
contracted from the (forgiven) parent,
   VI,5,11
death of infants and, I,24
exclusion from baptism, I,6
god’s justice and, VI,2
guilt contracted before birth, II,6,15
harm done by denying, III,12,24
marriage condemned as evil, I,2,4
no personal sins, VI,19
not cleansed by rebirth (Julian), VI,7
original sin contracted, VI,4,8
parents, I,10; III,19,36; V,43
parents compared to murderers, V,43
reason for baptism, VI,14; 42
rebirth for eternal life, IV,39; V,16,59
suffering as proof of, III,6,13
transmission of, V,28; 54; VI,77
passed from parents to children, III,12;
   V,50; 14,51; VI,14; 16
passed on by Adam’s disobedience,
   IV,1,1
original justice, I,19
See also paradise
animals subject to humans, I,25
innocence and shamelessness, V,2,5; 6
intercourse in paradise, IV,11,57
no fear of serpents, I,25
producing children, III,11,21
senses of the soul, II,5,10
sexual arousal, IV,5,35; 69
shame and, IV,13,62
overindulgence:
   food; repentance, IV,70
pagans, IV,27
   good acts, bad manner, IV,30
painters, V,6
Palestine, II,36; III,4; IV,8,40
paradise, I,17; 32; III,22; 35; 63; IV,10,56;
   72; V,28
See also original justice
Adam hides from God, IV,82
concupiscence in, III,27; 25,57;
   IV,14,65; 69; V,42
dwelling place of the soul, II,5,10; 11
eating in, IV,68; 69
fasting and, I,18
grace in, IV,82
no sorrow, shame or any evil in, V,22
sex before the fall, IV,5,35; 11,57; 69;
   71
sexual desire, IV,5,46; 69; V,22; 48;
   62
sexual organs obedient in, V,29
symbol of the Church, V,6,24

Volume I/24
paradox, IV,6,36
pardon, VI,47
parents:

   See also children; original sin and
   children; procreation
   attribute all sins of, to children,
   III,23,52
   baptized, III,66
   begetting children, III,55
   children punished for sins of, VI,25,82
   defects transmitted by, VI,7,17
   desire to have children, V,43
   guilt of newborn children, V,16,59
   procreation; God’s role, III,18,34
   sins “of others” and our sins, VI,10,28
Parmenides, IV,15,75
passion(s), II,7; 27; III,15,29
arousal, V,23
   God handed them over…, V,10
   law of flesh, II,13
Paternians, V,26
patience, V,9; 13; 4,14; 22; VI,46
patriarchs:
   wives; procreation, V,45
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
   on death of Christ, VI,9,24
   good that I will I do not…, II,3,5; 13;
   14; 30; 32; III,62
   Julian’s interpretation of, IV,16,79
   letter to the Romans, VI,4,8
   pride; angel of Satan, IV,28
   Romans 5:12 (Julian on), VI,24,75
   Romans 7, VI,23,70
   words not permitted to be spoken,
   II,13
peace, II,5,10; 14; 24; 26; 32;
   original justice, III,23
Pelagians, I,12; 13; 33; 35; II,7; 34; 35;
   III,2; 4; 32; IV,9; 17; 29; 5,35; V,6,24;
   16,59; VI,18; 8,22; VI,35; 36; 38; 57; 77
   five chief arguments against, II,2; 4;
   7,19
   perfection demanded by, II,23
   refutation from the Fathers, II,1,1
   support for Manichees, I,3; 8,36; 9,42;
   VI,21,66; 69
Pelagius, I,19; 20; 23; 32; II,14; 34; 35;
   36; III,4; 9; 25; 48; IV,8,40; V,6,24;
   VI,18
   Ambrose praised by, I,30; 44; II,11;
   6,15; 21; 32
   bishops duped by, I,19
penance:
   fasting and, I,18
   pleasure and, IV,71
perfection, IV,11
   capable of attaining, II,7,19; 22
   Cyprian on, II,25
   grace: help in attaining, II,3; IV,15
   Hilary on struggle for, II,26
   hope for, VI,13,40
   justification; immortality, II,22
   Pelagian demand for, II,23
   present life, II,28
   pursuit of, II,30
   salvation, VI,15,45
Peripatetics, II,37; VI,64
perizomata, V,7
persecutions:
   devil and, IV,38
persons:
   enduring themselves; good and bad, 
   V,36
perversity, V,10
Peter, Saint, V,57
philosophers, V,33; VI,44; 50; 18,53
   ethical, IV,76
   Julian’s appeal to, IV,15,75
philosophy, IV,17
   bodily excitement inimical to, IV,72
   love of wisdom, IV,72
   natural causes, IV,15,75
   nature of reality, IV,15,75
   pagan philosophers and human
   creation, IV,77; 83
   pagan vs. Christian, IV,72
physician:
   not needed by the healthy, I,18
physiology: vital organs, IV,59
piety, II,20; III,48; IV,17; VI,72; VI,61
pigs, VI,20

Answer To The Pelagians II
Answer To The Pelagians II

legion of demons, IV,38
Piniarius, IV,47
Plato, I,12; II,34; IV,17; 72; 15,75; 76
on the soul, II,7,19; 32
pleasure, II,23; 10,33; IV,7; 18; V,27;
VI,61; VI,71
bodily, III,48
carnal senses in paradise, IV,69
concupiscence, II,6,15; III,16,30
eating; overindulgence, IV,70
Epicurus on virtues, IV,21
excessiveness, III,14,28
flesh vs. spirit, II,13
food or drink, IV,68
genital organs, IV,14,65
human good (bodily), IV,76
invincible; flesh, V,32
licit and illicit, VI,50
moderate; excess, V,61
natural, IV,38
necessities and, IV,70
pardonable use of sex, V,12,46; 63
penance and, IV,71
philosophers and, V,33
sensations, IV,66
sensual desire, IV,14,65
sex in marriage, V,40; 16,59
sexual, V,63
snares and food of the evil (Plato),
IV,72; 76; V,33
Stoics, IV,59
struggle against the flesh, II,14; 6,15
thought and, V,42
will confused with, V,37
poets, V,6
Polemo, I,12; 35
poor:
using unjust riches for the needy,
IV,39
Porphyry, Bishop, I,19; 32
potter, IV,46
poverty, IV,19
praise, V,56
See also under subject praised, e.g.
Ambrose, Saint; desire; etc.
al of creation, IV,66
sharing, V,8,31
prayer:
ask and you will receive…, IV,41
during sexual intercourse, II,20
married couples, III,43
predestination:
God’s goodness, V,43
gratuitous election, VI,59
many are called…, V,4,14
mystery of, V,4,14
pregnancy:
child without faith in a believing
woman, VI,43
God’s work, VI,26
human destined to be devil’s subject,
VI,43
imminent danger of mother’s death,
VI,43
pride, I,16; 35; II,23; 9,31; III,6,13; IV,11;
17; 29; 83; V,1,1; 9; 17
mind, IV,28
original sin, V,18
Paul; angel of Satan, IV,28
procreation (propagation of children),
III,16,30; 53
concupiscence and, IV,49
desire for carnal delight, V,63
good act, V,60
good of marriage, V,8,31
good use of concupiscence, IV,14,65
honor for sexual desire, V,60
marriage and, V,62
paradise, IV,69
patriarchs (O.T.), V,45
purpose of taking a wife, V,12,46; 62
sex without pleasure preferred, IV,71
sexual delight, IV,71
sexual desire, V,9,35; 37
sexual pleasure, IV,33
sexual union, III,16; 9,18
Prodigal Son, IV,28
progress, III,49
promiscuity, III,16
prophet: false, V,13
prostitute, VI,14,41
desire to be chaste, VI,55
human child in womb of, VI,43
providence, II,37

Volume I/24
Volume I/24

effects of original sin and, I,25
God’s hidden activity, VI,59
procreation and, III,18,34; 41
reduced to nothing without, VI,59
prudence, II,12; IV,19; 20
Publius Africanus, IV,59
Punic debater, III,32
punishment, IV,15; 45; 46; 81; 82; V,4
Aristotle on, IV,78
bad angels as means of, V,3,8
children and sins of parents, VI,25,82
disobedience of the flesh as, V,3,8
God’s judgment, III,37
handed over to heart’s desire, V,10
justice and injustice, V,36
lightest for unbaptized children, V,11,44
sin as punishment for sin, V,12; 15
purification, II,27
purity, III,19,36; V,26
Pythagoras, IV,17; V,23
Pythagoreans, IV,15,75
quality(ies), VI,54
exist in a subject, V,14,51
good and bad, VI,56
moving from substance to substance, VI,55
presence, VI,60
quantity and, VI,64
substance and, VI,36
quantity: contraries, VI,64
rape, III,40
rashness, IV,20
reality: right order of, I,44
reason, IV,12,58; V,42; VI,7,17
Ambrose on, II,5,10
children and, II,4,8
control over desires and members, IV,5,35
desire and, IV,73
fight against weakness, II,4,8
honoring, II,36
quality of judges, II,37
rebirth, See baptism.
reborn, See baptism; infant baptism; rebirth
reconciliation:
Christ and the world, VI,5; 9
God’s anger, VI,79
repentance, V,4,14
through one man, Christ, VI,77
world to Christ, VI,10
redemption, VI,1,1
adoption of the body, VI,13,40; 47
blood of Christ, VI,2,3
final summation, VI,26,83
forgiveness of sin, V,12,3
mercy of God, III,25
price: blood of Christ, III,9
Regulus, IV,17; 25
religious mind, V,42
repentance, II,14; V,4,14
God’s patience, V,4,14
goodness of God, V,4,14
sensual pleasures, IV,70
resurrection (of Christ):
eighth day, VI,18
forgiveness (Julian), VI,15,45
united to likeness of, VI,10; 13
resurrection of the body, I,22; II,26; 32;
IV,72; V,6,24; VI,23,70
concupiscence in, VI,50
passions absent, II,7
supreme happiness, VI,46
Reticius of Autun, I,7; 32; II,10,33; 37;
III,32
reward, IV,19
rhetoric, VI,11,34
riches:
make for yourselves friends…., IV,39
unjust, used for the needy, IV,39
righteousness, I,6,21; 27; 33; V,13,49;
VI,9; 79
all human beings, VI,80
bestowed in three ways, II,23
called by God, V,4,14

Answer To The Pelagians II
capable of attaining, II,22; 24
coming through created means, IV,17
concupiscence and, IV,6,36
damnation, IV,26
good “horses,” II,12
grace, II,3,5; 4,8; 9; 22
ignorance, III,19,36
Jesus alone is sinless, II,2,4
kingdom of God, IV,17
merit of works of, II,29
natural law, IV,25
perfection of, II,2,4; 23; 9,31; 32;
III,62
pleasure of the flesh and, III,48
progress towards, II,4,8
shameless, V,2,5
sins of the righteous, II,29
through Christ, IV,42; 43
ture virtue in the truly righteous,
IV,17; 19; 23
virtue, III,19,36
warfare against our own desires,
II,9,32
Roman Law:
right to bear children, III,22
Rome, IV,17
rule of faith, I,17; 22; II,5,10
sacraments, I,14; II,6,15
sacrifice:
prefiguring Christ’s sacrifice, V,45
sacred, VI,61
saints, I,7,29; II,1,1; 29; 30; 37; IV,9; 11;
5,35; 6,36
battle for chastity, V,7,25
enduring; continence, VI,46
fight against concupiscence, VI,47
glorious battles against sexual desire,
VI,23,70
merits, III,48
war with evil, VI,57
salamander, VI,16
Sallust, III,2
salvation, I,30; II,3,6; V,17; 13,49
See also infant baptism
Christ, the one mediator, VI,81
Eucharist and, I,13
evil persons, IV,43
God helps one but not another, IV,45
God wills that all be saved, IV,42; 43;
44
harmony of flesh and spirit, II,3,6
Irenaeus on, I,3,5
knocking on God’s door, IV,42
none can come to me unless…., IV,44;
V,4,14
perfection, VI,15,45
power of Christ alone, I,27
Samaritan, I,32
sanctification, VI,17,51
Sarah, III,17,31; 32; 18,34; 19,36; 37
chastity, III,32
fertility, God’s gift, III,11,2123; 32;
18,34
Satan, V,3,8; VI,52
Saul, King, IV,31; V,3,8; 23
Scipio, IV,17; 18; 26
Scylla, VI,50
seed, III,22,51; IV,12; 69; V,34; 53;
VI,7,17; 19; 9,24; 26; 59 spiritual;
carnal, VI,43
seeking, asking, knocking, IV,41; 42
self:
exterior and interior, VI,13,40
selfcontrol, III,25,57; 62; IV,2,6; 8
concupiscence and, III,44; 45; 50
good of marriage and, V,66
habits, VI,55
love of eating, IV,67
married couples, III,14,28; 15,29;
21,42
prayer; married couples, V,40
senses (sensation):
arousal of passion and, V,23
concupiscence and, IV,14,65
desire, VI,56
discernment of, IV,66
forms and, V,14,51
human beings, V,55
liveliness of, IV,14,65
love of eating, IV,67
necessity of, IV,14,65
stimulation of, vs. thought, IV,72
usefulness of, IV,14,65
will and, IV,69

Volume I/24
sensuality, II,24

serpent, I,3,5; II,37
original justice; no fear of, I,25

servant: foolish, V,60

sex [includes “marital intercourse”]:
See also continence; concupiscence;
marrige; procreation
blameworthy pleasure, V,63
children born by union of bodies,
IV,4,34
desire to have children, V,63
devil as inventor of, IV,4; V,36
embarrassment, IV,12,58; 13,62
excessiveness, III,14,28
good will; bodily pleasure, V,16,59
how to possess one’s own vessel,
V,9,35; 38; 40
increase and multiply…, IV,69
intention of having children, V,16,59
legitimate union of bodies, IV,38
marriage of Joseph and Mary, V,12,46
members as good, IV,5,35
morally good use in marriage,
III,14,28
original sin; disobedience of the flesh,
V,3,8
permissible limit of concupiscence,
IV,7
pleasure of intercourse, IV,49
praise for all intercourse, III,40
prayer during intercourse, II,20
producing children in old age, III,22
shame in talking about, IV,55
two in one flesh, III,10,20
union as evil act, IV,49
unlimited intercourse, IV,2,6; V,10
whenever moved by desire, III,14,28
whole mind/body given to, IV,71

sex differences:
body organs, V,5,19
reason for, III,16; 9,18

sexual arousal, IV,82; VI,23,70
Adam and Eve, V,7,25
before original sin, IV,13,62; 69
frequent satisfaction desired, V,40
indecent because of disobedience,
V,7,25
obedience to the will, V,5,1920
reined in by reason, IV,73

shame, IV,82
sexual desire, II,6; 15; 25; IV,10; V,29
See also concupiscence
Abimelech, III,37
Abraham and Sarah, III,22; 23
arousal of genital organs, IV,5,35; 73;
V,5,19; 20
bad use, good use, III,41
bearer of happiness, a child, IV,50
bodily injury and consent, V,22
conquering, V,28
continence vs. concupiscence, IV,64
default and, III,14,28
deficit of the soul, VI,18,53
defense of, IV,60
diminished daily, VI,14,41
Diogenes the Cynic, IV,15,77
disease, III,21,42; 60; V,38
disobedience as evil, IV,63
eunuchs; fuel lacking, VI,14,41
Eve and the serpent, VI,2268
excesses, IV,12; V,39
fighting against, III,44; 50; 51; IV,9;
V,62; 63
genital heat, IV,8
good in married couples, IV,9; 10,56;
V,12,46; VI,69
good result: children, IV,39
good use of evil, III,15; IV,49; 50
governing, III,65; 66
guilt, V,60
he who looks at a woman…, IV,14,65
human beings born from, VI,55
independent power, V,26
issue: good or evil, V,27
lesser goods, IV,61
limping, V,34
longings of carnal desire, VI,14,41
marriage; condemnation, IV,10,56;
V,8,31
married couples, IV,71
movement; consent, III,62
natural, V,27
old age, V,12,46
opposition to the spirit, in paradise,
V,48
paradise before the sin, IV,54; 69
pleasure, IV,33
power of mind over, V,61
praise for, III,66; VI,16; 20; 6,24;
11,34; 35; 46

Answer To The Pelagians II
procreation; honor, V,60
punishment of sin, V,9
reining in, VI,35; 14,41; 61
risen bodies, IV,54
servitude, IV,69
shame of first human beings, IV,54
spouses put evil to good use, VI,42; 55; 60; 69
state of original justice, IV,11,57
struggle against, VI,23,70
ugliness of, V,37
unconquerable, V,27
use of the evil in marriage, V,10,41
use only for having children, V,63
vicious part of mind, V,33
wallowing in, within marriage, III,14,28
will and, III,25,57; V,21; 22
wound in our nature, III,26,59
yielding to, V,12,46
sexual organs:
Adam’s nakedness, V,33
chastity and, IV,59
condemnation of arousal, IV,13,62
covered out of modesty, IV,16,79
devil and, IV,83
diabolical, IV,81
dishonorable, V,37
disobedience of, V,3,8
law in members resisting law of mind, VI,72
less respectable members (Paul), IV,80
man and wife, V,40
members called “nature,” VI,20
obedient in paradise, V,29
Paul’s use of term “body,” V,5,19
pleasure, IV,14,65
put earthly members to death, VI,14,41
reproductive organs, VI,55
resisting law of the mind, VI,44; 60; 20,63
shame; covered, IV,12,58; V,2,5
shame (Paul), IV,16,79
sleep and the will, V,42
soul in control of, V,6,24
shame, II,6; 5,10; 11; 14; 15; 16; 17; 25; III,10,20; 20,38; 53; 65; IV,55; 82; V,2,5; 6; 20; 27; 29; 8,31; 33; 39; VI,35
See also Adam and Eve
first sin and sense of, IV,9,53; 13,62
Authors:

genitals covered, IV,12,58
old age, V,62
sexual organs; animals, IV,12,58
sheep: goodness of, VI,20
shrewdness, IV,20
sick: baptized, VI,52
silence, IV,42
sin, V,3
See also concupiscence; consent;
original sin; will
adults; guilt, III,6,13
all that does not come from faith, IV,24; 27; 32
Ambrose on, II,3,5
avenging the injustice of, V,16
avenging the sins of parents, VI,25,82
blackness of, IV,33
both sin and punishment for sin in
will, VI,38
bruising the temple of God, VI,46
captivating in law of, II,13; 14; VI,23,70
children infected by parents’ sins, VI,10,28
Christ died for those dead in, VI,4,8
concupiscence the parent of, VI,47
continuing to live in, VI,10; 13
created beings and guilt, II,2; 4; III,46
crucified when Christ died, II,3,5; 4,8; 22
dead; burial, II,32
death of/to, I,27; 33; VI,33
death produced for (Paul), VI,73
death rescues us from law of, II,14
denial that desire for is evil, VI,48
desire for, IV,10
destroyed by grace, I,33
destroyed by the cross, II,18
died to; living for God, VI,42
driven toward, II,28
dying to:
baptism, VI,7
reborn for God, VI,14
error of a blind heart, V,3,8
faith versus, II,28
fig leaves; symbol, II,17
foreskin as sign of, V,20; 21
forgiven in world to come, VI,15,45
forgiveness, See forgiveness of sin.

Volume I/24
forgiven; remains in mortal flesh, II,3,5
free choice needed for, VI,10,28
God as cause of, III,55
God does not dwell in body subject to, VI,43
good acts done in a bad manner, IV,32
good use of something evil, V,60
grace and, VI,9
guilt based on end, not action, IV,21
guilt for sins remembered, VI,62
hate as both sin and penalty for sin, VI,2
hatefulness of, II,13
holding us until the last death, VI,48
human beings can avoid all, V,27; 29
if we say we have no sin..., II,25; IV,29; V,27
imitating animals, IV,74
imitation of the first man, VI,24,75; 77
impure thoughts, II,10,33
infants and body of, VI,13
it is not I who do that..., VI,73
known through the law (Paul), VI,73
law and, VI,9
law could not remove, VI,9
law of, II,5,10; 12; 13; III,62; V,7;
30; 36
Ambrose on, II,6,15
in bodily members, II,10,33;
III,11,21; 61; 3,5; 7; 4,8; 9; 11; 13;
14; 30; 32; V,3,8; 6,24; 7,25
struggle against, II,10,33
motion of the male body, II,5,10
nature free of all defect, V,16,59
newborns innocent of personal sin, III,23,52
no one is clean from filth (Job), V,13,49
origin: God or devil, III,55
parents' sins and our sins, VI,10,28;
25,82
personal sins, VI,24; 75; 76
possibility of being without, IV,29
prevailing over other sins, IV,28
punishment of, III,18,34; V,3,8; 9,35
fitting, II,3
sins as punishment for sin, V,10; 36
subsequent sin, V,12; 15
reborn made subject to, V,56
resisting desire for, VI,73
rising from something free of sin, V,16,59
sacrifices for, VI,26,83
sacrifices [O.T.] for, V,45
serving no longer, VI,10; 13
set free from; grace, VI,13,40
signified by death of Christ, VI,7
something both sin and punishment for sin, V,36
struggle to avoid, VI,72
virtues overcome, IV,28
will or nature, III,4
wrong action done in faith, IV,51

sinners, II,28; III,19,36; 64; V,11,44
Christ died only for, VI,4,8
death as punishment, VI,55
disobedience of one man, VI,9
gifts of God to, IV,27
God works for benefit of, VI,25
punished through bad angels, V,3,8
punished through the devil, V,3,8
punishment for themselves, V,36
punishment: God and devil, V,36
thorns as punishment for, VI,65

slander, I,12; II,28; III,19,18,34; 47;
23,52; IV,3,14; 47; 49; 51; V,1,26;
48; VI,5,23; VI,39; 13,40

slaves, IV,61; V,12; VI,64
sleep, V,21; 42
sleep: paradise, V,42
Sodom, V,11,44
Sodomites, III,39
Solomon, King, VI,25,82
Son of God: See also incarnation; Jesus Christ not of the world, VI,4
song, IV,66
Soranus, V,14,51
speech: tongue in check, I,20

spirit:
desire of flesh conquered by, IV,73
desires in opposition to flesh, I,17;
II,11; 10,33; III,13,26; 50; 62; 66;
IV,2; 4,34; 13,62; 66; 67; 69; 72;
V,27; 28; 36; 55; 56; 58; VI,13,40;
14,41; 15,45; 46; 47; 48; 50; 57; 71
discord with flesh, IV,38
free rein given to assaults on, II,13
live: put works of flesh to death, VI,56
soul attacked by flesh, II,7
war with the flesh, II,3,6; 7; 11

spiritual combat:
  conflict within us, II,27; 32
  dead sin comes back to life, II,32
  flesh vs. spirit, II,7; 4,8; 32

spiritual life:
  See also grace
  higher parts subservient to lower,
  VI,62
  internal enemy, VI,46
  law of flesh vs. law of mind, II,13;
  10,33; III,61
  progress; battle with evil desires,
  VI,56
  progress; diminishing of ignorance,
  VI,16,49

Stephen, Saint, VI,76
sterility, III,22
Stoics, III,8; IV,12,58; 59; 72; 76; VI,64
stubbornness, II,14; 30; III,32; IV,20;
  V,12; 13; VI,4,8; 26,83
stupidity, VI,1,1; 64
subject: contraries, VI,64

substance:
  See also quality
  comparing, VI,19,58
  evil as, I,16; II,9
  existing without, VI,36
  guilt as, VI,62
  qualities and, VI,36

suffering:
  Adam’s will as origin of, III,5,11
  endured by Christ, V,55
  goodness of God and, III,10
  innocent children, III,9; 10; 6,13
sun:
  rises on the good and the bad, V,13,49;
  57
syllogisms: Julian; logic, III,7,14

taste: moderation in eating, IV,68
temperance, IV,19
sex in marriage, II,20
sexual excess, V,39
temple of God (human body), I,17
  body; Holy Spirit, VI,42
  building the, VI,14,41
  chastity, VI,13,40
  constructed after captivity, VI,42
  daring to bruise, VI,46
  evils in, displeasing God, VI,46
  hope, VI,13,40
  pigpen of desires and, II,5,10; 11
  sexual desire diminishing, VI,14,41
  Spirit of God dwells in, VI,16,49
  women; womb, VI,43
temporal goods, IV,19
temptation, II,7; IV,59; VI,60
  body tempted, soul suffers, II,5,10
  checked by strength of mind, II,27
  grace not to enter, VI,44
Thales of Miletus, IV,15,75
theft, IV,39
thirst, IV,67
thorns, VI,65

thought:
  confusion of mind and heart, II,23
  sensual pleasures and, IV,70; IV,72;
  V,42
timidity, VI,54; 60
touching, IV,66; 70
tree:
  barren, IV,22; 32; 33
  disobedience of sexual desire, IV,63
  fruit: good and bad, VI,19,58
  good tree, bad fruit, I,38; 39; 40;
  III,55; IV,22; 30; 32
  metaphor for human beings, VI,19,58

tree of life, IV,69

Trinity, I,8,36; V,4
  begotten Son is coeternal, II,4,8
  body as temple of God, I,17
trust:
  mercy of God, III,48
truth, I,1,1; 3; 16; 7,29; 34; II,14; 25; 29;
  9,31; III,1,1; 2,7; 35; 21,42; IV,2,6;

Volume I/24
ugliness, V,14,51
unbelief, II,28; V,15,52
cause of killing of Christ, V,3,8
passed on by believing parents, VI,43
pleasing God, IV,23
unbelievers, III,55
chastity, IV,3,14; 17; 27
condemnation, VI,29
exalted by chastity, IV,50
gifts of God to, IV,27
good actions by, IV,32
good tree, IV,30
praise of, IV,16
serious sins of, V,10
ture arguments of, IV,72
virtue and, IV,3,14; 16; 25; 27
understanding, III,1,1
union of bodies, See sex.
universe: evil in, V,8,31
Ursicinus, VI,38

Valentinian, VI,14,41
values, IV,19
vanities, II,23; VI,39
Venustians, V,26
vice(s), II,2; 4; 7; 5,10; 11; 20; III,65; V,7,25; VI,1,1
bad “horses,” II,12; III,14,28
dead; burial, II,32
death of, II,14
inclinations toward, II,28
law of mind vs. law of sin, II,12
soul filled with, IV,61

struggle with, II,24
truth found in, IV,20
victory over, II,27
will and, V,27

virgin birth, I,2,4; 10; II,2,4; 4,8
virginity, I,17; III,21,42
chastity and; the body, IV,48
holy, IV,9
love of, V,65
unbelievers; goodness, IV,50
virgins, III,43; IV,9; 10; 48; 50; V,6,24; 61
virility, V,58

virtue(s), III,65; V,56
attaining, II,9; 7,19; 9,31
body shares in, I,17
capability of, III,19,36
cardinal = good “horses,” II,12
Cato on, V,38
concupiscence as enemy of, IV,14,65
defined, IV,19; 22
desire for, II,5,10
dispositions and, IV,22
distinguished by their ends, IV,21
fight against concupiscence, V,28
form of immutable substance (God), IV,17
gifts abounding in unbelievers, IV,16; 27
good works, IV,33
grace bestows, IV,48
heart the abode of, V,10
human goodness, III,48
incapability of human nature for, II,2,4
joy, III,10
made perfect in weakness, IV,11
people without faith, IV,3,14; 16; 24
perfection; grace, II,3; 4; 25; 32
progress in (Ambrose), II,22
pursuit of, III,64
reside in the mind, IV,3,14
servants of pleasure (Epicurus), IV,21
set afire for, II,30
tested, VI,67
true and false, IV,21
truly righteous people, IV,17; 19
trust in oneself, II,29
vices opposed to each, IV,20
weakening; battle, VI,56
will and, VI,73

Answer To The Pelagians II
voluntariness, VI,9,24

voluntas, V,37

voluptas, V,37

way of life: correcting, VI,76

weakness, II,3; 4; 8; 9; 12; 23; 24; 27; 32; III,14,28; IV,11; 28; 4; 34; 61; 67; V,12,46; VI,13,40; 46

God chose the weak things…., VI,23

wealth, IV,18

wheat, grain of, VI,15

wickedness:

handed over to desires of the heart, V,10; 11

saints wage war with, VI,57

widow, IV,48

wife:

subject to husband, VI,64; 65

will, VI,50

actions as fruit of, I,38

acts produced by God, IV,15; 16

assaults on resolve of, II,6,15

bodily impediments, V,21

both sin and punishment for sin in, VI,38

carnal senses subject to, IV,69

chastity and a dissolute will, IV,48

disciplining sensations, IV,66

dispositions and virtue, IV,19

doing the evil I do not will, II,14; 30; VI,73

doing the evil that is hated, II,3,5; 13; 32

evil, I,37

excess; defect, III,27

foolish and harmful, IV,32

good end for having children, V,10,41

good will, good tree, I,45

goodness: a will without faith, IV,30

habits and, VI,55

hearts of evil persons run wild, VI,73

helped by grace, V,65

idolatry, VI,61

Manicheeism, I,16

merciful, IV,31

moderation of arousal, III,27; IV,69

natural evils, IV,16

obedience of bodily members, V,19

paradise, V,29

pleasure confused with, V,37

prepared by the Lord, I,45; IV,44

salvific, IV,8,40

sexual arousal and, V,5,1920; 22

sexual desire and, III,26,59

sexual organs in sleep, V,42

sexual sins, V,63

sin and, III,4

sinfulness; condemnation, VI,20,63

soul with evil disposition, VI,54

vice and, V,27

virtue and, VI,73

will of God:

fate and, IV,46

flesh vs. spirit, II,3,6

free choice to resist, IV,42

injustice and, V,15

wine, III,41; IV,73

wisdom, II,7; 36; 37; III,1,1; IV,61; V,13; 36; VI,1,1; 64

animals and desire for, IV,74

coming to, from infancy, V,18

desire for, IV,17; 18

God loves one abiding in, VI,1,1

house built by, II,6,15

infants lacking, V,18

love of, IV,14,65

piety, III,48

sensual pleasures and, IV,71

serpent; flesh, II,13

wolves, VI,20

women:

cause of sin for man, II,20

chaste, V,23

dowries, V,7

humans formed in womb, VI,43

married, V,6,24

passion, V,23

sexual arousal, IV,13,62

wonder, VI,7,17

Word of God:

creation through, II,4,8

made flesh, VI,77

words of God (scripture):

meditating; living, VI,76

worldliness), II,23; 25
children of the, VI,13,40
chosen from, VI,4
created by Father through Son, IV,64
devil and child of concupiscence,
   VI,2,3
devil’s power over, VI,2,3
fleeing from, II,32
flesh, eyes, and pride of life, VI,2,3
hatred for Christ, VI,4
heavenly things vs., II,3,6
judgment of the, VI,4
love of, IV,33; V,60
reconciled to Christ, VI,5; 9; 10
rescue from present evil, VI,44
term for human beings, VI,4
use like those who do not use, V,60

wound: as substance, VI,19,58

Xenocrates, I,12; 35
Xenophanes, IV,15,75

Zeno, II,34
Zoboennus, Bishop, I,19; 32
Zoninus, Bishop, I,19; 32
Zosimus, Pope: Julian’s accusations
   against, VI,12,37
Index from

Against Two Letters of the Pelagians

(Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians II

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume contains three works of Saint Augustine of Hippo: Marriage and Desire (De nuptiis et concupiscentia); Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians (Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum); and Answer to Julian (Contra Julianum).

Volume I/24

Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-107-7, 6 x 9 in., 596 pp., 1998
Volume I/24
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17–19</td>
<td>IV, 8, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27–28</td>
<td>IV, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20</td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5</td>
<td>IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:2</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:12</td>
<td>I, 20, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13</td>
<td>I, 20, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4 LXX</td>
<td>IV, 4, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5 LXX</td>
<td>IV, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
<td>III, 3, 5; III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:4</td>
<td>II, 9, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>II, 9, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:15</td>
<td>III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:10</td>
<td>III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1</td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
<td>III, 8, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:34</td>
<td>III, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
<td>I, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17–19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2223 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:22–27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:22.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:26–27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:32–38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:37–38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians II
Answer To The Pelagians II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume I/24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36:38</td>
<td>IV, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk 2:4</td>
<td>III, 3, 5; III, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi 1:23</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 5:6</td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25; IV, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25; IV, 9, 26; IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10.12</td>
<td>III, 7, 17; III, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 13, 27; I, 14, 38; III, 3, 5; III, 5, 14; III, 5, 15; III, 6, 16; IV, 7, 17; IV, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>I, 13, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>II, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>I, 22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2; IV, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>I, 5, 9; IV, 2, 2; IV, 5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>III, 3, 5; IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13–15</td>
<td>II, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15</td>
<td>II, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark 9:49</td>
<td>IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:56</td>
<td>IV, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41–42</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:34</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John 1:12</td>
<td>I, 2, 5; I, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>III, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>I, 3, 6; I, 19, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54</td>
<td>I, 22, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:63–64</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:64–65</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:65</td>
<td>I, 19, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:66</td>
<td>IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>I, 2, 5; II, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>III, 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans 1:17</td>
<td>I, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1920</td>
<td>IV, 11, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>I, 8, 13; I, 9, 16; I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20–21</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20–24</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27–28</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1315</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>III, 4, 7; III, 7, 22; IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14–15</td>
<td>III, 4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>III, 2, 3; III, 4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8–11</td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>IV, 4, 7; IV, 4, 8; IV, 8, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20–22</td>
<td>I, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>I, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:46</td>
<td>I, 8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>I, 8, 13; I, 9, 16; I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7b–13</td>
<td>I, 8, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td>I, 9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9a</td>
<td>I, 9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9b</td>
<td>I, 9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12–13</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>I, 9, 16; I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>I, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14b</td>
<td>I, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14c</td>
<td>I, 10, 17; I, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>I, 10, 18; I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>I, 10, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>I, 10, 18; I, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>I, 8, 13; I, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18a</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verse</td>
<td>reference(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18b</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19–20</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>I, 10, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>I, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22–23</td>
<td>I, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>I, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>I, 11, 23; IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24–25a</td>
<td>I, 10, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25b</td>
<td>I, 10, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>I, 10, 21; I, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>I, 10, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>II, 2, 3; III, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>III, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10–11</td>
<td>I, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>III, 2, 2; IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>I, 10, 17; I, 11, 23; III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24–25</td>
<td>III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28–29</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11–13</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14–16</td>
<td>IV, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>II, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>II, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>II, 7, 13; II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:19</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>IV, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20–21</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22–23</td>
<td>II, 7, 15; IV, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:34</td>
<td>I, 20, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:56</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33–36</td>
<td>IV, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>IV, 5, 10; IV, 6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>III, 7, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17</td>
<td>IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>I, 3, 7; III, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td>I, 10, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>III, 2, 2; IV, 4, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 8, 18; II, 9, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>III, 2, 2; III, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6b</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15.14</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>I, 21, 39; III, 4, 11; IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:67</td>
<td>III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20–21</td>
<td>III, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>I, 11, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>III, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16</td>
<td>III, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9a</td>
<td>III, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9b</td>
<td>III, 7, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>III, 7, 22; IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:26</td>
<td>III, 7, 22; IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>I, 8, 14; III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15–18</td>
<td>III, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>III, 4, 7; IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>III, 2, 3; III, 4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21b–22</td>
<td>III, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21–26</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>III, 4, 6; III, 4, 7; III, 4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>III, 4, 9; III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>III, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:28</td>
<td>III, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:31</td>
<td>III, 2, 3; III, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>III, 3, 5; III, 4, 11; III, 5, 14; IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>IV, 9, 25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:30–31</td>
<td>III, 4, 13; III, 7, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>III, 8, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 7, 15; IV, 6, 14; IV, 9, 25; IV, 9, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>IV, 4, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>IV, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>III, 7, 17; III, 7, 21; IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12c</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>III, 8, 24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>III, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:89</td>
<td>III, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>II, 8, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>IV, 10, 27; IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28–29</td>
<td>I, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer To The Pelagians II
## Answer To The Pelagians II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>I, 18, 36; I, 20, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>III, 7, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6b</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:69</td>
<td>III, 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>III, 7, 20; III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9–10</td>
<td>III, 7, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11–12</td>
<td>III, 7, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12–13</td>
<td>III, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12b</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13–14</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 3, 5; III, 5, 15; IV, 11, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15a</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15b</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17–19a</td>
<td>III, 7, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>IV, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>IV, 10, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>I, 6, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>III, 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:25</td>
<td>IV, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>I, 7, 12; I, 21, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>I, 14, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>IV, 8, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>IV, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8–10</td>
<td>II, 10, 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Titus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>I, 14, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:47</td>
<td>I, 9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>I, 19, 37; III, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>I, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:14–15</td>
<td>I, 13, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>II, 2, 2; III, 8, 24; IV, 3, 3; IV, 7, 18; IV, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:89</td>
<td>IV, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/24**
SUBJECT INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Answer to the Two Letters of the
Pelagians

ability: comes from God, II,18
Abraham:
    promises; inheritance, I,8,13; III,4,6; 7; 11; 13
two sons (two testaments), III,12
Adam and Eve:
    See also original sin
    Adam, in whom all have sinned…, IV,7
    conscience, I,16
curse from their sin, IV,22
death as punishment, IV,6; 24
death deserved, IV,6
eyes were opened, I,16,32
adoption:
    redemption of the body, I,10,17; 11,23; III,5
adultery, I,30; IV,24; 26
Africa, II,3,5; 4,6
almsgiving, III,5,14; IV,18
    forgiveness of sins, I,14,28
Alypius, Bishop, I,1,1
Ambrose, Saint, IV,34
    on grace, IV,30
    on original sin, IV,11,29
    on righteousness of saints, IV,31
angels, II,12; III,18; 22; 23
anger, I,20,38; III,7; IV,10,27
    law and, I,8,13
    revenge, III,5,14
    vessels of, II,15; IV,16
Apostasy, II,3,5; IV,2,2; 18; 28
baptism:
    See also infant baptism; original sin
    children of God, II,6,11
    complete renewal of human beings, IV,2,2; 7,17
effects: complete purification, I,23,41
    forgiveness of sin (Pelagian), IV,5; 23
    guilt of, forgiven by, I,14,28
    necessary for all ages, II,10; 6,11;
    IV,1,1; 2,2; 5
    no one is excluded from, IV,23
    Pelagian slander: no full forgiveness, I,12,26
    Pelagian teaching, I,22,40; III,3,4; 8,24
    reconciliation with God, IV,8
    salvation realized in, III,5
    washes away all sins, II,4,6; III,5; 6,16; IV,28
belch, IV,7,17
bible:
    Catholic faith transmitted through, IV,12,32
two testaments, III,4,6
bishops:
    Africa, II,3,5
    pastoral lookout, I,2
    Pelagian, II,10
    signatures obtained by force, IV,34
blasphemy, IV,4,4
boasting, II,15; III,22; IV,9,25; 26; 28
body and soul:
    See also human body
carnal spirit; spiritual body, I,10,17
corruptible body weighs down the
    soul, I,10,17; 24
Manichean/Pelagian idea of soul, II,2
origin of souls, III,10,26
soul as particle of God, II,2
souls equal to soul of Christ (Pelagianism), IV,2
struggle between flesh and spirit, IV,9,25
Boniface, Pope, I,1,1

Caelestius, I,5,9; II,3,5; 4,6; 8; 10
calling:
choice and grace, II,10,22
God’s choice, II,7,13
many are called, few are chosen, II,10,22
resisting God’s call, IV,13
Catholic Church, III,10,26; IV,23
defense against Manichees, II,2
defense against Pelagians, II,2
love and hate, II,4
Catholic faith, IV,1,1; 4,4; 8; 8,20; 11,29; 12,32; 33
Catholics, II,1,1; IV,6,12; 13; 24; 10,27; 33
chance, II,7,14
change: grace and the good, II,23
children [infants; newborn]:
all are born subject to sin, IV,11,29
birth: glory given to the creator, IV,3,3
born free from all fault, IV,5,9
conceived in evil, IV,4,4
death unjust (Pelagian view), IV,6
dying without baptism, II,7,14
God, creator of the newborn, IV,2,2; 4,4; 24
good by reason of creation, IV,4,4
good result of marriage, I,33
infant purity like that of Christ, IV,5
newborn; kiss work of God’s hands, IV,24
newborn; Pelagian claims, I,6,11
See salvation.
setting the soul free, IV,4,4
of the world; of the devil, III,3,4
children of God, I,5; III,2,2; 3,4; III,19
baptism and, II,6,11

becoming: gift of God, I,3,6
Christ the means to, IV,6
confessing sins, III,3,4
one twin unbaptized, II,16
children of the promise, III,8; 12
choice (free choice), III,2,2; IV,26; 30; 33; 34
beginning of evil, II,2
calling and grace, II,10,22
captive, III,8,24
desire for virtue, II,10,22
faith; gift of God, I,3,6
free by grace of God, III,9,25
good actions, II,8,17
Holy Spirit and, I,20,38
humans become evil by, IV,6
merit obtaining mercy, II,10,22
original sin and, I,2,4; 5; II,4,6
Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; IV,1,1; 2,2; 6,12
Pelagian slander, I,2,4
Pelagian understanding of, I,15,29; 24,42
source of evil, IV,3,3
test of, II,23
virtue and, III,13

Christian life:
if Christ is in you…, I,24
regarding all things as loss…, III,19

church:
holy and spotless (baptism), IV,7,17; 28
human sheep as members, IV,15
without stain or wrinkle, IV,7,17
circumcision, III,10; 22
baptism and (Fidus), IV,23
cities: deserted, IV,15

commandment(s):
carrying out, III,7,17
contempt for, IV,28
faith working through love, III,9
free choice in keeping, II,2
holy, righteous and good, I,14; III,2,2
motive for observing, III,11
observing in the heart, III,9
perpetual life, IV,10
reward for observing, III,7,17; 23
righteous keeping of, III,5,14

Answer To The Pelagians II
signs, III,10

ten commandments, III,10

conception:
no one is free from sin, IV,11,29
sexual intercourse necessary for, I,10

concupiscence, III,8,24; 9,25
See also flesh; purity; sex
actions from impulse of, I,18
all are tempted by, I,27
arousal, in paradise, I,35
consent to sin, I,18; 19
disease, I,11,23
disordered, I,17,34
freed from, I,24
good is incomplete with, I,19
law of sin, I,21
Manichean view of, II,2,2
marriage and, IV,3,3
Pelagian view of, I,27; II,2,2
selfcontrol, I,24; 35
sin and, I,27
sins washed away by daily prayer, I,14,28

condemnation, II,12

conscience, II,1,1; IV,10,27
first human beings, I,16

consent, I,20; 21; 24; 27; 15,29; 11,23
carnal inclinations, I,10,17
disordered concupiscence, I,17,34
sex in paradise, I,35

correction:
none can come to me unless..., I,19,37
secret and sudden (grace), I,19,37

Council of Carthage, II,4,6; 7

creation:
ashamed of works of creator, I,33

creature(s):
goodness of each, II,1,1
Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; 9,25;
IV,1,1; 2,2; 4,4; 33

cross: enemies of, III,22

curse, IV,10,27

Cyprian, Saint, IV,12,32; 34
on grace, IV,9,25
on original sin, IV,8,2124
on progress in holiness, IV,10,27
damnation, II,16; III,5,14
darkness, IV,31
set apart, II,15

David, King, IV,11,29
dearth:
in Adam all die, IV,8
Ambrose on, IV,31
delivered from law of, I,8,13
freed from body of, I,21; 11,23
longing for Christ, IV,10,27
passed on to human race by Adam, IV,6; 7; 24
produced by sin, I,14
righteousness and, IV,28
sin came first; death followed, IV,7
delight, I,3,6; 7; 16; 20; 22; II,21; IV,11;
10,27
desire:
carnal, III,11
evil; consent, I,24
for God, IV,31
God cooperates with, IV,30
for good, even if imperfect, II,18
grace: desire to keep the commandments, III,7,17
helped by grace, II,10,22
interior transgression of the law, I,9,15
sinful, in heaven, III,7,17
thinking is less than, II,18
you shall not desire..., I,7,12; 14; 16
devil, III,8,24; IV,21; 24; 9,25; 10,27
children of (Pelagianism), III,3,4
creation of human beings, I,6,11
evil actions and, I,18,36; 19,37
marriage and, IV,5,9
original sin and power of, I,35
originator of all sin, III,3,4
power over infants, I,6,11
sexual passion and, I,10
subjection to, II,5,9
dignity: flesh of Christ as source, II,3
dogs, III,22
drunkenness, IV,10,27

Eastern churches, IV,21

Volume I/24
Elisha: symbol of Christ, IV,11
enemies: love of, IV,9,25
envy, IV,10,27
eternal life, I,21,39; IV,22
See also heaven; salvation
hope of, I,9,15
law; faith in Christ, IV,10
total rebirth, IV,31
Eucharist:
eternal life (Pope Innocent), II,7
food of salvation, IV,9,25
unless you eat my flesh…, I,22,40
Evil, See good and evil.
failure, III,5,14
faith, II,8
apostles lived by, III,15
beginning of; grace, II,23
belief given by the Father, I,19,37
come to me = believe in me, I,3,6
everything that does not come from, is
sin, III,5,14
free choice (Pelagian), I,3,6
fruits of, III,5,14
gift of God, I,3,6
given gratuitously, IV,10
help of grace, IV,10
I believed; therefore I have spoken,
I,21,39; III,11
keeping the commandments, III,9
measure of, given to each, IV,14
none can come to me…, I,3,6; 19,37
old and New Testaments: one faith,
III,11
progress in path of, III,22
promise made to Abraham, III,7
righteous live by, I,7; 7,12; III,5; 13;
14; 19; 23
salvation and grace, II,12
seeing what we now believe, III,19
seeking grace, I,14
spirit of, IV,10
those not yet Christians in name, III,11
upholds the law, IV,11
we walk by faith, not vision, III,7,17
willingness to believe, I,19,37
works through love, III,11; 21; IV,10
falsehood, II,16
fate, II,5,9; 6,11; 16; 8,17; IV,26
astrology, II,12; 14
fear, IV,10; 11
carnal, III,9
Fidus, Bishop, IV,23
fig leaves, I,31
flesh, III,22; IV,4,4
See also body and soul; human body
desires of, I,9,15
desires opposed to spirit, IV,9,25
ever body created by evil spirit, IV,6
good does not dwell in, I,19
held captive by, I,20
resisting law of the mind, IV,31
serve law of sin with, I,21
sins of, I,7; IV,10,27
subject to corruption, I,20
trusting in, III,2,2
vices of, IV,28
forgiveness of sin:
almsgiving, I,14,28
baptism and, IV,23
Christ, the sinless one, IV,4,4
daily prayer for, IV,33; 34
faith and, III,5,14
Pelagian view, I,12,26; III,8,24
redemption, III,6,16
sinners without faith, III,3,4
fornication, I,30
free choice, See choice; will.
friendship: faithful only in Christ, I,1,1
future:
new heaven, new earth, IV,31
no sin in heaven, III,5

garment (the word), I,16,32
gifts (of God), II,7,13; 21
Father in heaven giving, III,3,4; 5
given to those who are evil, IV,15
given without merit, II,7,13
one receives, one does not receive, 
IV,16

glory, III,5,14
human body, I,11,23
revealed, III,7,17
God:
anger, II,15
becoming united with, IV,31
completion of our good works, II,18; 23
foreknowledge of evil, II,16
holy name, IV,14
impartiality, II,7,13
injustice not found in, IV,16
love from, II,21
no iniquity in, I,20,38
not made, II,1,1
who can see his face and live? IV,31
good and evil:
See also sin
choice as beginning of evil, II,2,2
choosing evil out of ignorance, I,27
ever nature coeternal with God, III,9,25
fate, II,12
fear of punishment, II,21
flesh as evil, IV,6
forced to do evil, I,18,36
free choice, I,3,6; II,8,17
God gives good in exchange for evil, IV,14
God's foreknowledge, II,16
good does not dwell in me…, I,8,13; 19
humans become evil by choice, IV,6
reward, in afterlife, IV,2,2; 18
sweetness of the good, II,21
wanting to do good, evil is at hand, I,19
good works:
begun and completed by God, II,18; 23
grace as payment for, II,15
Jacob loved for, II,15
preparing the heart for, II,9,19; 20
work through love, III,5,14
goodness:
consenting to and willing, II,8,17
delight in, I,22
desire for; from God, II,21
grate and change, II,23
grace necessary for, I,7; IV,26
Holy Spirit necessary for, IV,28
imperfect good desired, II,18
making themselves good, IV,13

desire to keep the commandments, III,7,17
enemies of, III,12; 21; IV,11
evil and, I,7
faith and, IV,10
fate and, II,10; 6,11
food at the proper time…, IV,31
freed from body of this death, I,21
freedom of will and, IV,3,3
goodness and change, II,23; IV,26
gratuitous, not owed, II,15
gratuitously given, I,7; II,6,11; 7,13; 10,22; IV,15
help for good actions, I,18,36; 19,37
help for good intention, II,10; 6,11; 8,17; 22; IV,2,2; 13
help in our weakness, III,22; 9,25
heretical enemies of, I,2; 7,12
keeping the commandments and, III,10
law as, IV,11
love and, I,8,13
makes us good, IV,15
Manichees = enemies of, II,1,1
merit and, I,3,6; 4,8; 19,37; 24,42; II,5,9; 10; 8,17; 10,22; III,8,24; IV,2,2; 15; 16; 19; 30; 33
necessity: Ambrose on, IV,30
obedience to the law and, III,2,2
Paul defending, I,8,13
Pelagian enemies of, I,24,42
Pelagian objections replied to, I,5,9; 8,17
Pelagian slander, I,2,4

gospel: spread of, III,9
grace, I,5; 18; 24; 15,29; 20,38; 21,39; II,3; 4,6; 15; III,2,2; 11; 18; IV,21
being owed, or freely given, I,19,37
calling and choice, II,10,22
children of God; sin, III,3,4
conversion of enemies of Christ, I,19,37
Cyprian on, IV,9,25
delight in the good, I,22
desire for good and, II,18
desire helped by, II,10,22
desire to keep the commandments, III,7,17
enemies of, III,12; 21; IV,11
evil and, I,7
faith and, IV,10
fate and, II,10; 6,11
food at the proper time…, IV,31
freed from body of this death, I,21
freedom of will and, IV,3,3
goodness and change, II,23; IV,26
gratuitous, not owed, II,15
gratuitously given, I,7; II,6,11; 7,13; 10,22; IV,15
help for good actions, I,18,36; 19,37
help for good intention, II,10; 6,11; 8,17; 22; IV,2,2; 13
help in our weakness, III,22; 9,25
heretical enemies of, I,2; 7,12
keeping the commandments and, III,10
law as, IV,11
love and, I,8,13
makes us good, IV,15
Manichees = enemies of, II,1,1
merit and, I,3,6; 4,8; 19,37; 24,42; II,5,9; 10; 8,17; 10,22; III,8,24; IV,2,2; 15; 16; 19; 30; 33
necessity: Ambrose on, IV,30
obedience to the law and, III,2,2
Paul defending, I,8,13
Pelagian enemies of, I,24,42
Pelagian objections replied to, I,5,9; 8,17
Pelagian slander, I,2,4

Volume I/24
Pelagian teaching, I,18,36
Pelagianism; five praises, IV,1,1; 10; 19
praise of the law against, IV,10
prayer and, II,23
redemption, I,8,13
salvation by, I,9,15
saved by faith, II,12
scripture on power of, I,20,38
seeking, through faith, I,14
sin abounding, III,7
something owed, II,3
Spirit of, III,13
sufficient, III,18
will for good actions, I,19,37
will merits, IV,6,12

heretics, III,9,25
enemies of grace of God, I,2

Hilary, Saint, IV,7
holiness:
constantly being made holy, IV,10,27
Lord’s Prayer, IV,9,25
progress in (Cyprian), IV,10,27

Holy Spirit, I,9,15; 21; 14,28; III,13
body as temple of, IV,4,4
driven by, I,27; III,2,2; IV,14
first fruits, I,10,17
free choice and, I,20,38
gives life, III,11
grace through, III,11
help for good souls (O.T.), IV,2,2; 18; 28
help in our weakness, III,22
indwelling, I,24
letter of the law and, III,23
lifegiving, III,12; IV,11
Old Testament and virtue, III,4,6
renew the face of the earth, IV,31
righteousness of the law, III,20
virtue and, III,13; IV,26
will accuse the world of sin, III,3,4

hope, I,7,12
commandment, IV,18
hope that is seen, III,5

human acts:
without me you can do nothing, II,18; 9,19

human body:
See also body and soul
awaiting redemption of, I,10,17; 11,23
glory, I,11,23
life given to, I,24
temple of the Holy Spirit, IV,4,4

human condition:
weakness; struggle against sin, III,5; IV,22

human nature:
Catholic concern for, II,2,2
evil nature as cause of sin, IV,5

humility, I,2,4; III,19

human beings:
answering back to God, II,15; IV,16
body (earth), soul (heaven), IV,9,25
born as sinful flesh, II,3
die in sin, IV,7
God does many things in, II,21
good as human beings, III,9,25
human sheep, IV,14; 15
implanted desire for good, II,8,17
nature as evil, II,3,5
state of Adam before his sin, II,4,6
work of God, I,18,36

Jesus Christ:
born in likeness of living flesh, II,3
descendant of Abraham, III,4,6
Elisha a symbol of, IV,11
faith in, See faith.
forth of, as pretense, IV,5
friendship, I,1,1
hunger and thirst for, III,7,17
See incarnation.
knowledge of: faith and vision, III,19
longed for, in the Old Testament, III,11
mediator, I,7,12
not bound by law of sinful birth, IV,11,29
our advocate before the Father, III,15
passion: love as motive, IV,6
passion: Pelagian view, IV,6
physician, IV,19
prophets on his coming, III,13
revealed in the flesh, III,13
sacrifice for our sins, III,6,16
saved by grace of, I,9,15
sinlessness, I,18,36; IV,2,2; 4,4
sins (Pelagian slander), I,12,25
soul of, IV,5
wisdom of God, IV,11

Jews, III,22
scattered everywhere, III,9

John the Baptist, III,11
Jovinian, I,2,4
joy:
commandment: rejoice in God…, III,7,17
kingdom of God, IV,28
judge, II,7,13
judgment day:
Cyprian on Christ as judge, IV,21
reward or punishment, IV,2,2; 18; 28
Julian, I,3; 2,4; 6,11; II,1,1
justice, II,7,13
justification, II,6,11; III,2,2; 13; IV,26
works of the law, I,8,13; 14

kingdom of God, IV,22; IV,28

kissing:
kiss of peace; work of God’s hands, IV,24
newborn infants, IV,24
rite of infant baptism, IV,23

knowledge:
perfect, III,7,17
puffs up, IV,11

law (of Moses; the Torah):
Ambrose on, IV,30
cause of serious sin, III,3
children of the free woman, III,3
commands the letter, without the
Spirit, III,23
consent, that it is good, I,18
efficacy, I,7,12
established to convict the proud,
III,9,25
given for sake of transgression, III,7
grace, IV,11
holy, I,14; III,2,2
holy, righteous and good, III,9; IV,3,3;
10
inheritance from, III,7; IV,10
justification, I,8,13; 14; III,13; IV,26
knowledge of, puffs up, IV,11
necessary, III,10
Paul lives without reproach, III,23
Pelagian accusations, III,2,2
Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; 9,25;
IV,1,1; 2,2; 10; 11; 44
righteousness and, I,8,13; 9,15; III,19;
20
sin and righteousness, I,8,13; IV,3,3;
30
spiritual, III,10
stone tablets, III,10
works based on fear, IV,10

law of God:
interior self; delight, I,20; 22
serving with the mind, I,21

learning: desire for, III,13

letter kills, III,2,2; 12; 20; 22; 9,25; IV,11
lips, II,20
loincloths, I,16,32

Lord’s Prayer:
Cyprian on, IV,9,25

forgive us our debts…, III,6,16; 7,17;
IV,7,17; 10,27
forgiveness of our sins, I,14,28
give us today…, IV,26
may your kingdom come, IV,28
may your name be holy, IV,9,25; 10,27
your will be done, IV,9,25

lost objects, III,10

love, IV,30
dead Christ and, IV,6
desire for the good, II,21
faith works through, III,11
friendship, I,1,1
fulfillment of the law, III,21
grace helps in bestowing, I,8,13
keeping the commandments, III,9
knowledge of the law and, IV,11
perfect (when faith becomes vision),
III,21
spiritual, III,20
struggle against carnality, I,10,17
lust, I,18

malice, II,16; IV,30
Mani, III,20; 9,25; IV,3,3
Manichees, I,2,4; 10; 6,11; 24,42; IV,4,4;
6; 5,9; 10; 6,12; 7,17; 18; 19; 21; 24;
10,27; 28; 11,29; 12,32
answer to charge of, II,1,1
detested by other heretics, II,1,1
Pelagians compared with, II,2,24
Pelagians’ five praises and, III,9,25;
IV,3,3; 19
Marcion (heretic), III,20

marriage:
carnal debt, III,5,14
carnal pleasure permitted in, I,33
concupiscence and, IV,3,3
condemned (accusation), I,2,4
Cyprian on, IV,24
defense of, I,5,9
devil as source (Manichee), IV,5,9
incontinence; intercourse, III,5,14
instituted by God, II,5,9
leave father and mother…, I,5,9
modesty in, I,33
Pelagian claims, I,6,11
Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; 9,25

Volume I/24

Answer To The Pelagians II
Pelagianism, I,30
praise of, IV,1,1; 2,2; 5,9; 33
present state, I,5,9
purpose, I,10
virginity and, I,2,4; III,5,14
what God has joined…, I,5,9

Mars, Field of, I,16,32
Martha, III,22
martyrs: death not an evil for, IV,2,2
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
virginity, I,2,4
mercy, I,6,11; 9,15; 14,28; 19,37; 20,38;
24,42; II,15; 21; III,5; 7; 9; 10; 13;
IV,4,4; 6; 11; 12; 15; 16; 21; 23; 9,25;
10,27; 12,32; 33; 34
merit:
abandonment, ruin, destruction, IV,15
asking God’s help, IV,30
enemies of Christ, IV,26
grace and, I,3,6; 4,8; 19,37; 24,42;
II,5,9; 10; 8,17; 10,22; III,8,24;
IV,2,2; 15; 16; 19; 30; 33
infant baptism and parents, II,6,11
nature and will, II,3
recompense, IV,13
Saul converted to Paul, I,19,37

Messiah: Lamb of God, III,11
Mileve, II,7
mind, IV,10,27; 31
  diseases in, II,1,1
  serve law of God with, I,21
  struggle against concupiscence, I,27
modesty, I,35
  chaste marriages, I,33
Moses, II,20; III,8; 11; III,12; 13
  law and, IV,3,3; 33
mouth, II,20
murder, IV,26

nakedness:
  shame, I,16,32
nature:
  merits of a good nature, II,3
New Testament:
  children of the promise, III,11; 12
  heirs of the New Testament, III,4,6
  hidden in veils of prophecy, III,7; 10
  passing from the old condition, III,13
  revealed and ratified, III,9
  suitable ministers of, III,12
Noah, III,8
nonchristians: faith, III,11
Novatians, IV,11,29
Numidia, II,7

Old Testament:
  See also law; patriarchs; prophets
called “old” because revealed earlier, III,13
Holy Spirit and virtue, III,4,6
old books (better term), III,12
one faith (New Testament), III,11
prefigured the new, III,4,6
revealed through Moses, III,13
sinfulness of holy people, I,7,12
veil remains, III,12

olive tree:
  wild/domesticated, I,6,11
original sin, III,8,24
Ambrose on, IV,11,29
came to life in paradise, I,16
concupiscence as punishment, I,35
contracted from concupiscence, I,35
Cyprian on, IV,8,2124
damned on account of one sinner,
II,15
death inherited from Adam, not sin,
IV,1,1; 2,2; 6; 8
denial of, IV,4,4; 5; 19
disobedience of sex organs, I,31
evil derives from first human being,
II,8
evils deriving from, III,9,25
existence of, IV,10,27
forgiven in baptism, III,10,26
free choice and, I,2,4; 5; 15,29
heresy: not passed on to human race,
IV,6; 7
human beings born without defect of,
II,3,5
humans subject to the devil, II,5,9
origin of, III,10,26; IV,6

Volume I/24
power of the devil, I,35
reconciliation, IV,8
second death for the unbaptized, I,22,40
sin harmed Adam only, II,4,6
through one man sin entered…, IV,8
transmission of, III,10,26
trying to prove there is none, IV,2,2
original sin and children, II,4,6; 7,14; 11,29; IV,3,3; 8; 5,9; 23; 24
believers as parents, I,6,11; IV,24
guilt forgiven by rebirth, I,27
made by the devil, I,6,11
Pelagianism, I,30

Palestine, I,4,8
parable:
labors in vineyard, II,7,13
paradise, IV,21; 22; 24
freedom in, I,5
sex as it would have been, I,17,34; 35
parents, II,6,11; 14; IV,24
partiality, II,7,13; 14; 16; IV,2,2; 16
passion, I,24
carnal pleasure, I,33
original justice, I,10
sexual, IV,10,27
will, in paradise, I,17,34; 35
patience:
origin and greatness of, IV,9,25; 26
struggle and battle, IV,22
patriarchs, III,9,25; 33; IV,10
children of, III,3,4
righteousness, I,21,39
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
boasting in terms of flesh, III,22
conversion of, I,19,37
describes himself as carnal, I,10,17
imperfection admitted, III,15
on love of husband and wife, I,5,9
Pelagian slander, I,8,13; 14
perfection and imperfection in, III,19; 23
pressing on, III,22
pride in his revelations, III,18
righteousness, III,20
share in suffering of Christ, III,21
term “the Apostle” means Paul, III,3,4
weakness of, III,18
without reproach re the law, III,23
Paulinus (deacon), II,4,6
peace, I,24; 17,34; IV,28
Pelagians, I,14; 15,29; II,1,1; III,4,6; 5,14; 15; 10,26; IV,6,12
on baptism, I,22,40
baptism of children, III,3,4
clergy of Rome accused by, II,3,5; 8
errors in the five praises, IV,3,3; 19
five praises of, III,8,24; 25; IV,1,1; 19
free choice and, I,5
on grace, II,5,9
Manichees compared with, II,2,24;
IV,3,3
refuted by Ambrose, IV,11,29; 12,32
repentance needed by, I,24,42
selfcorrection, II,4
tradition refutes three errors of,
IV,8,20ff
Pelagius, I,3; 4,8; 19,37; 22,40; II,3,5; 8; 10; 8,17; 18; III,9,25; IV,3,3; 15; 21; 9,25
condemnation, I,5,9
praise of Ambrose, IV,11,29
perfection, IV,28
confession of imperfections, III,19
Paul on, III,15
progress toward goal of, III,19
rebirth in eternal life, IV,31
true security, III,7,17
persecution:
pray for persecutors, I,19,37
Peter: washing of feet, IV,11,29
Pharisee, IV,7,17
piety, III,15; IV,30
pity, II,10; 15; 16
pleasure, IV,30
carnal, I,33
power:
people trusting in their own, I,7,12
prayer, IV,31; 33
See also Lord’s Prayer
help of grace, II,23
of petition, III,5
spiritual grace, IV,30
predestination:
  image of God, II,10,22
presumption, I,14,28
pride, II,12; III,7; 8,24; 13; 18; 22; IV,14; 15; 9,25; 10,27; 34
  knowledge of the law, IV,11
  medicine against, III,18
  righteousness and, III,20
prophecy:
  New Testament hidden in, III,7
prophets, III,8; 9,25; IV,2,2; 10; 18; 28; 33
  coming of Christ and, III,13
providence, IV,34
punishment, II,7,13; 15
  doing good out of fear of, II,21
  fear of, I,9,15; 22
purification, IV,31
purity, IV,5
  perfection of, IV,31
questioning, III,13
Quirinus, IV,21; 9,25; 10,27
rebirth, I,27; III,5; IV,31
  See also baptism
redemption:
  Christ dying in vain, III,22; IV,10
  final resurrection, III,5
  grace, I,8,13
  set free by, I,7,12
  Son of Man came not to destroy…, IV,23
  when we were still sinners, Christ died…., IV,8
repentance:
  Pelagians, I,24,42
Resurrection:
  Paul’s knowledge of power of, III,21
resurrection of the dead:
  rebirth, III,5
revenge, III,5,14
reward, III,7,17; 23; IV,2,2; 18; 28; 31; 33
righteousness, I,5; 19,37; III,5; 7; 9; 13; IV,8
  body of this death, III,23
  children of slave girl (O.T.), III,12
  command; practice, IV,28
  death and, IV,28
  delight in, I,9,15; 22
  distinguished by law of faith, III,5,14
  earth and heaven, III,7,17
  equal to angels of God, III,18
  faith of Jesus Christ, I,8,13
  hearers and doers, III,2,2
  hope: commandment, IV,18
  hunger and thirst for, III,7,17; IV,7,17; 18
  law and, IV,3,3; 30
  love of, and doing good, II,21
  people (O.T.) saved by faith in Christ, I,7,12
  perfection of, III,18; 22; IV,28
  received from God, III,13; 22
  relevant to love of God, III,21
  reward; perfect, IV,33
  saints (Ambrose on), IV,31
  Saul (Paul), I,9,15
  saved by faith in mediator, I,21,39
  sin and, I,27
  sinlessness (Pelagian), IV,10,27
  source: God or humans, III,2,2
  source: law or faith, III,19; 20
  spirit is life, I,24
Romans (ch.7), I,8,13
Romanus, IV,21
Rome:
  clergy accused by Pelagians, II,3,5; 8
  rule of faith, IV,3,3
Sabbath:
  carnal observance, III,10
  rest from work, III,10
sacraments: Old Testament, III,10
sacrifice, III,6,16
  animal victims, III,10
  saints, IV,2,2; I,3,3; 10; 18; 28
  Pelagian praise of, III,8,24; IV,1,1; 2,2; 7,17; 28
  Pelagians’ love of, III,15
  righteousness (Ambrose), IV,31

Volume I/24
sinless in this life (Pelagian view), IV,19
virtue, III,5,14

salvation:
  baptism; absolutely saved, III,5
  baptism of infants, I,22,40
  gratuity of, II,10,22
  of infants, IV,4,4
  unbaptized infants, II,7
  will of God, IV,9,25

sanctification: Sabbath, III,10
Sarah: symbol, III,8
Satan: first sin of pride, III,18
Saul (later Paul):
  righteousness, I,9,15; 19,37
selfcontrol, I,24; IV,10
concupiscence, I,35

sex:
  disobedience of organs; original sin, I,31; 16,32
  invention of the devil, I,10
  law in members resists law of mind, I,20
paradise:
  frequency, I,17,34
  original justice, I,6,11
  as sex would have been, I,17,34; 35
Pelagianism, I,31
private place sought, I,33
shame, I,31; 35
soul bound to chain of flesh, IV,6

shame, IV,3,3
  all are born with, I,33
  sin and, I,16,32

signs, III,10
Sinai, Mount, III,3; 4,6; 7; 8; 9; 12

sin:
  action, word, or thought, I,27
  attractiveness, I,27
  baptism washes away all sins, III,5
  captive under law of, I,20
  carnal desire, III,11
  children of God, III,3,4
  children of the world, III,3,4
  Christ in likeness of sinful flesh, III,6,16
daily sins, daily forgiven, I,14,28;
  IV,10,27
  defect in nature, II,2,2
desire, consent, act, I,18
desire to sin, III,7,17
devil as author of, I,6,11
enemies of God, IV,8
everything that does not come from
  faith, III,5,14
evil result of, I,33
flesh serving the law of, I,21
See also forgiveness of sin
free choice, I,5
  free choice; subject to devil, II,5,9
  free will, I,7
  grace more abundant…, I,8,13; III,7
  grace of the savior and, I,5
  held from, by fear, I,9,15
  holy people in Old Testament, I,7,12
  if we say we have no sin…, IV,3,3;
  7,17; 18; 10,27; 31
  ignorance, I,16; 27
  it is not I who do this…, I,18; 19; 22
  knowledge of, through the law, I,8,13;
  16; 11,23; III,13
  law and, I,8,13; III,3; IV,3,3
  nature proves guilt of, III,13
  no one is without sin, I,14,28;
  IV,10,27; 28; 31
  not consenting to, I,24
  not known, seen as sin, I,11,23
  one who has been born of God…,
  IV,31
  Pelagianism and the soul, II,2,2
  pious faith wipes away, III,15
  preventing persons from attaining
  grace, IV,23
  punished, as if it were committed,
  II,16
punishment, IV,6
  purification, IV,10,27
  reward of being unable to, III,7,17
  separation from body of Christ,
  IV,9,25
  sold under the power of, I,10,17
  sting of death, III,2,2; IV,7
  struggle against; weakness, III,5;
  IV,22
  whatever does not come from faith, I,7
  will, not nature, as source, IV,2,2; 5

sinners:
prayer over our sins, IV,10,27
under devil’s power, I,18,36
slander, I,3; 5,9; 15,29; III,1,1; 5,14; 6,16
slavery: carnal fear, III,11
snakes: poison, III,18
Sodom, III,5,14
soul, See body and soul.
spirituality:
body as well as soul, I,10,17
stars, II,12; 14
sterility, III,13
suffering:
share in Christ’s suffering, III,21
sun: gazing on, IV,31
swearing, IV,10,27
sweetness, II,21
temporal goods:
earthly blessings (o.t.), III,9
hope for, III,11
worldly desires, IV,30
temporal life, IV,10
temptation, IV,9,25
deliver us from evil, I,27
thanksgiving, III,5
Thessalonica, I,3; II,1,1
thinking:
desire is greater than, II,18
tradition:
faith handed down by, IV,12,32
travelers: perfect, III,19
tree: fruit: good or bad, II,2,2
Trinity, III,18
trust, III,2,2
truth, I,7; 5,9; 15,29; II,3,5; III,3,4; 19; 9,25; IV,5,9; 26
twins, II,15; 16
Jacob and Esau, II,16
unbelief, III,15; 8,24
children of the devil, III,3,4
Spirit will accuse the world of sin, III,3,4
vanities, IV,30
vessels:
made for dishonest purpose, II,7,14
vice, IV,10,27
virgin birth:
Manichees and, II,3
virginity:
mariage and, I,2,4; III,5,14
virtue:
desire for, II,10,22; IV,2,2; 13
Holy Spirit and, III,13; IV,26
Holy Spirit in the Old Testament, III,4,6
made perfect in weakness, III,18
perfection of, III,19
wages: parable, II,7,13
weakness, IV,10; 22; 9,25; 31; 34
will:
believer: good will, I,7
disobedience of sex organs, I,16,32
free for evil acts, I,7
free to obey with piety, IV,15
grace and freedom of, IV,3,3
human heart and, I,20,38
I do not do what I want…, I,18; 19
inclined to evil, I,9,15
merits grace, IV,6,12
merits of a good will, II,3
prepared by the Lord, II,20; IV,6,12; 26
preparing heart; opening mouth, II,20
will of God: Lord’s Prayer, IV,9,25; 26
wisdom, IV,31
complete, III,7,17
perfect, III,7,17
words, II,5,9
work:
parable; wages, II,7,13
Sabbath rest, III,10

Volume I/24
worldliness, IV,10,27; 28; 30
worship:
   commanded to serve one God, III,10
   servile; free, III,13
writing: hand, I,27

zeal, II,10,22; IV,31
Zosimus, Pope, II,3,5; 8

Answer To The Pelagians II
Index from

On Marriage and Concupiscence

*(De nuptiis et concupiscentia)*

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians II

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ, John E. Rotelle OSA, editor

This volume contains three works of Saint Augustine of Hippo: *Marriage and Desire (De nuptiis et concupiscentia)*; Answer to the Two Letters of the Pelagians (*Contra duas epistulas Pelagianorum*); and Answer to Julian (*Contra Julianum*).

Volume I/24 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-107-7, 6 x 9 in., 596 pp., 1998

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marriage and Desire</th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Old Testament</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>II, 31, 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>I, 5, 6; I, 21, 23; II, 4, 12; II, 4, 13; II, 11, 24; II, 26, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>I, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I, 21, 23; II, 4, 12; II, 4, 13; II, 9, 22; II, 31, 53; II, 32, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>I, 5, 6; II, 14, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>I, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:67</td>
<td>I, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>I, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>II, 7, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1a</td>
<td>II, 7, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>II, 8, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>II, 9, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:14</td>
<td>II, 11, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:45</td>
<td>II, 13, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:18</td>
<td>II, 13, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td>I, 30, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>I, 23, 25; I, 27, 30; I, 28, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15 LXX</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:2</td>
<td>I, 10, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>I, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:3a</td>
<td>I, 25, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:34</td>
<td>I, 25, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>I, 35, 40; II, 5, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ecclesiastes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>I, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sirach</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:30</td>
<td>I, 23, 25; I, 28, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:1</td>
<td>I, 26, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>I, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ezekiel</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:49</td>
<td>II, 19, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zechariah</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Matthew</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>II, 35, 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>II, 9, 21; II, 17, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 33, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>II, 3, 9; II, 33, 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:33</td>
<td>II, 26, 41; II, 26, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:46</td>
<td>II, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>I, 16, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>I, 16, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:28</td>
<td>II, 33, 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Luke</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:33</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:41</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:48</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:49</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:50–51</td>
<td>I, 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>II, 26, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>John</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>II, 3, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>II, 5, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:2</td>
<td>I, 30, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Romans</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>I, 32, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>II, 20, 35</td>
<td>7:29–32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>II, 19, 34; II, 20, 35</td>
<td>7:32–33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>II, 27, 46</td>
<td>11:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>II, 11, 24; II, 33, 56</td>
<td>15:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>I, 1; I, 2, 3; II, 3, 8; II, 5, 15; II, 11, 24; II, 20; II, 26, 42; II, 27, 45; II, 28, 48; II, 29, 50</td>
<td>15:36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12.15–19</td>
<td>II, 27, 47</td>
<td>15:36.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>II, 27, 46</td>
<td>15:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>II, 27, 46</td>
<td>15:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14.13</td>
<td>II, 27, 46</td>
<td>5:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>II, 27, 46</td>
<td>5:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>II, 27, 46</td>
<td>5:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17–18</td>
<td>II, 27, 46</td>
<td>5:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>II, 27, 46; II, 28</td>
<td>5:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 27, 30</td>
<td>5:25–27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12–13</td>
<td>I, 23, 25</td>
<td>5:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>I, 28, 31</td>
<td>5:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>I, 27, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>I, 28, 32; I, 31, 35; II, 21, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>I, 27, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19–21</td>
<td>I, 30, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:20</td>
<td>I, 27, 30; I, 28, 29; I, 28, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22–23</td>
<td>I, 30, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>I, 31, 35; II, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23b</td>
<td>I, 30, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>II, 11, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24–25</td>
<td>I, 31, 35; II, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>I, 31, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>I, 31, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>I, 31, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>II, 29, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>I, 18, 20; I, 31, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24–25</td>
<td>I, 18, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>II, 33, 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20–21</td>
<td>II, 16, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>II, 16, 31; II, 17, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>I, 3, 4; I, 4, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19–20</td>
<td>I, 18, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>I, 16, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2</td>
<td>I, 16, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:36</td>
<td>I, 14, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:37</td>
<td>I, 3, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>I, 13, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBJECT INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Marriage and Desire

Abimelech, King, II,27; 15,30
abortion, I,15,17
Abraham [and Sarah], I,8,9; 9,10
birth of Isaac, II,13,26
concupiscence and generation in,
    II,10,23
faith of, II,11,24
prayer to regain power of sex, II,27
Sarah called “sister,” II,27
sexual vigor restored, II,19,34
abstinence, I,3,3; 16,18
    mutual consent, in marriage, I,11,12
Pelagian vow, II,60
Adam and Eve:
    bone from my bones…, I,5,6
    concupiscence, marriage, and sin,
        II,4,10
    covered sex organs, II,5,14; 22
    Eve called “life,” II,4,12
    example of sin, II,45
    eyes of both were opened, I,5,6
    increase and multiply, II,4,12; 13; 9,21
    manchild: Cain, II,7,17; 18
    naked, I,5,6; 6,7
    naming creatures, I,5,6
    sexual union: Seth, II,19
    shame, I,5,6
    wild olive tree, I,32,37
adultery, I,1,1; 10,11; 13; 14,16; 15,17;
    17,19; 24,27; 26,29; II,4; 19,34; 21,36;
    24,39; 43
    children born from, II,20,35; 21,36
    fidelity and, II,32,54
    good that is born from sin, II,42
almsgiving, I,33,38
Alypius, Bishop, II,1,1
Ambrose, Saint, I,35,40; II,15; 51
angel: good work of God, II,48
anger, II,16,31; 20; 17,32; 18,33
animals: mating, I,4,5
apostate, I,10,11
Arians, II,23,38
artists, II,22
athletics: loincloths, II,30,52
Augustine, Saint:
    forced reading of his works, I,2,2
    Julian controversy, II,2,2
    readers of his book, II,4,10
babies, See children.
baptism:
    apostates and, I,10,11
    concupiscence and, I,25,28
    forgiveness of all sins, I,26,29; 33,38
    power to renew human beings,
        II,11,24
    rebirth, I,33,38
    rescued from power of the devil,
        I,20,22
battle, I,31,35
begetting children, See procreation.
Bible:
    Catholic commentators on, II,51
    Pelagian use of, II,14,28
birds: mating, I,4,5
body and soul:
    corrupted body weighs down soul,
        I,31,35
    flesh becomes spiritual, I,33,38
    gifts of God, I,4
Caelestians, II,7; 8; 13; 15
Caelestius, II,29,49
Cain, II,7,17
carnal desire, See desire.

Catholic Church, II,51
concern for our salvation, II,9

Catholic faith:
all hearts drawn to, II,4

Catholics:
Manichees and Pelagians compared with, II,9

celibacy: Paul on, I,15

chastity (marital), I,2,2; 27,30; II,42
gift of God, I,3,3
unbelievers and, I,4
virtue, I,4,5

children:
born for punishment; reborn for life, I,17,19
born from evil of concupiscence, I,24,27; II,58
created by God, II,6,16; 8
eternal punishment, I,32,37
good of marriage, to be loved, I,17,19
guilt, I,32,37
personal sin not committed by, I,20,22

See procreation.
rebirth needed by, I,19,21
redemption, II,8
salvation by Christ, II,60
salvation of infants, II,50
sin and the will, II,27,44; 45
sinners by birth, not by act, I,19,21
sins of parents and, II,50
unwanted, I,15,17

children of God, I,4,5
not produced by good parents, I,18,20
power to become, I,20,22

choice: free, II,8

Christ (the word), I,32,37

Church:
Christ’s love for, I,10,11
Pelagian attack on, II,18,33
rebels resolved on ruin of, II,7
truth; heresy, I,20,22
without spot or wrinkle, I,33,3834,39

circumcision:
God’s command, II,11,24
sign of righteousness, II,11,24

concupiscence:
See also desire; sex
body of this death, I,16,18
children born from evil of, I,24,27
decreased by continence and old age, I,25,28
devil and sex arousal, II,34,57
devout, I,17,19
goodness of marriage and, I,7,8; 35,40; II,19,34
Julian omits reference to, II,5,14
law of sin in the flesh, I,34
marriage without, II,42; 31,53
natural desire and, II,7,17
natural moderation, II,19,34
not a good to be loved, I,18,20
not being subject to, I,15
original sin and, I,32,37
paradise, I,16,18; 22,37
Paul’s teaching on, I,27,30
polyandry, I,9,10
proper use of, I,8,9
remains in the baptized, I,25,28
righteousness, I,23,25
sacrament of rebirth, I,23,25
shame, II,24,24; II,5,14; 10,23; 35,59
subservience to, I,14,16
worldliness, I,18,20

conscience, II,35,59
sin: heart and body, I,28,31

consent, I,23,25; 24,27; 28,31; II,6; 58
serving the law of sin, I,36
sin; desire, I,29
taken captive by sin, I,34; 31,35

continence, I,25,28; II,18

conversion:
previous sins require forgiveness, I,26,29

creation:
everything made through Christ, II,60
God made all things good, II,4,12
goodness from the supreme good, II,16,31

creatures:
devil’s power over, II,15
evil (Manichee), II,19,34

Cynics, I,22,24

Cyprian, Saint, II,51

Volume I/24
Volume I/24

d darkness: prince of, I,20,22
David, King, I,11,12
death:
   Adam and Christ, II,46
   reigns through sin, II,46; 47
deception, II,29
delight, I,30,33
demons: serving, I,4
desire (carnal; sexual):
   See also concupiscence
   condemnation of marriage and, I,5,6; 7,8; II,34,57
   do not go after…, I,23,25; 32
   flesh in opposition to spirit, I,31,35
   four facets of, I,12
   greater in some, less in others, I,27,30
   let sin not reign…, I,27,30
   natural, vs. concupiscence, II,7,17
   Paul on disease of, I,8,9
   pleasure, I,14,16
   praise for, I,7,8
   sexual pleasure, I,4,5
   sin; consent, I,29; 32
   wicked; free will, II,27
   women and intercourse, II,15,30
   you shall not desire…, I,23,25; 27,30
devil:
   all are subject to power of, II,29,49
   angel who became devil, II,48
   corruption of human nature, II,9,21
   dominion in marriage, II,26,41
   dominion over human beings, II,27,44
   gifts of God and, II,10,23
   God makes vessels for, II,16,31; 17,32
   human nature: God as maker of, I,26; II,16,31; 43
   imitation of, II,45
   malice, II,16,31
   marriage and, II,32,54
   power of darkness, I,20,22
   power over the unbaptized, I,20,22
   prince of this world, II,5,14
   role in sin, II,34,57
   sex differences and, II,13; 5,14
   slaves of, II,16,31
   Son of God came to destroy, II,56
   unclean spirit, I,26
dignity, I,9,10
disobedience, See original sin; sex organs.
divorce, I,10,11; 13
dogs, I,5,6
dreams, II,42
Emmaus, I,5,6
eternal life:
   more abundant life, through Christ, II,46
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
exsufflation, II,18,33; 50; 51
faith:
   baptism as sacrament of, I,10,11
   necessary, to please God, I,4,5
   ready to give account of, I,2,2
   righteousness (Old Testament), II,11,24
family, I,16,18
farmers, II,29
fear, I,30,33; II,7; 9
fertility, II,42
   attributed to God, II,4,12; 5,14
   God as source of, II,10,23
   original justice, II,29; 25,40
fidelity, II,32,54
   good of marriage, to be loved, I,17,19
   motive, I,4
first human couple, See Adam and Eve.
flesh:
   See also sex
   held captive by, I,34; 31,35
   serving the law of sin, I,36
forgiveness of sin:
   blessedness, I,33,38
   circumcision as sign of, II,11,24
   guilt in the reborn, I,23,25
   guilt removed, I,36
   sins previous to conversion, I,26,29
   this is my blood…, II,56
fornication, I,1,1; 4,5; 10,11; 14,16; 24,27; II,4; II,43

Answer To The Pelagians II
Marriage and Desire

remedy for, I,16,18

freedom:
false; slavery, II,8
set free by the Son, II,8
willingly taking delight, I,30,33

gift of God:
asking for, I,3,3
sinfulness, I,4

gluttony, II,21,36

God:
allpowerful goodness, II,48
creator of all good things, II,4,12
foreknowledge re evil humans,
II,16,31
immutable good, II,50
made nothing evil, II,6,16
mercy and justice, II,8

gold, II,21,36

good and evil:
causality (evil), II,26,41
change from evil with God’s help,
II,20
completion of evil desires, I,32
evil acts from evil will, II,48
evil arises from good, II,48
evil passing through a work of God,
II,48
God and the devil, II,17,32
I do not the good…. I,30,33
marriage as cause of evil, II,42

good works:
good will, II,43
help of God and, II,8

goodness:
God as source of, II,9,21
grace, I,32; 30,33; 31,35; 32,37; II,5; 6;
16,31; 20; 42; 45
grain, II,29
greed, II,21,36
guilt, I,23,25; 26,29; 32,37

Hagar, I,5,6

happiness, I,8,9

health: heredity, II,34,57

heaven, I,33,38

holiness:
Christian bath, I,34,39
original sin and children, II,58

Holy Family:
faithful marriage, I,11,12
three goals of marriage, I,13

Holy Spirit: rebirth, I,8,9

hope, I,15; 31,35
hope that is seen…., I,18,20

human beings:
answering back to God, II,16,31
Christ as tempted and enduring,
I,35,40
Christ the physician, II,9
created by the good God, II,29,49;
33,55
creation: God or the devil, II,27
evil because of original sin, II,24,39
evil nature mixed in (Manichee), II,9
free choice in, II,8
fruits of marriage, II,4,11
God produces, from human seed,
II,14,28
God’s foreknowledge of evil, II,16,31
good because of God, II,24,39
good nature of, II,17,32
good result of marriage, II,19,34
malice, II,20
power of sin and, II,16,31
praise for, II,42
work of God, I,1,1; II,4; 7,17; 13,26;
14,28; 27,44; 48; 50

human body:
evil source, II,6,16
redemption of, I,31,35
temple of God, I,18,20; 31,35

human nature:
corruption of, II,9,21
deep and corruption of, II,34,57
deep or God as maker of, I,26;
II,16,31; 43
God as source; no original evil,
II,29,49; 50
goodness as created, II,9; 21,36
sin; nature as evil, II,48

husband and wife:
Christ’s love for the Church, I,10,11
natural order: man as ruler, I, 9, 10
sexual rights, I, 14, 16

image of God:
  devil as creator of human beings, II, 27; 16, 31
immortality, I, 31, 35; 33, 38
impudence, II, 21, 36
incarnation, I, 24, 27
concupiscence, I, 12
sinless birth, II, 15
incorruptibility, I, 25, 28; 31, 35
  hope for, I, 18, 20
infant baptism:
  Cyprian on, II, 51
  exorcism and exsufflation, II, 18, 33;
    50; 51

infants:
  See also children
  need for healing, I, 1, 1; II, 9; 15; 23, 38;
    42; 47; 56
intention: evil and, II, 29, 49
intercourse, See sex.
Isaac, II, 10, 23; 11, 24
  God, not sexual union, as source,
    II, 13, 26

Jesus Christ:
  ancestors; generations, I, 11, 12
  born without sin, I, 24, 27
  grace even more abundant through,
    II, 46
  healing medicine, I, 1, 1
  his flesh not found in the tomb, I, 34
  Joseph as father of, I, 11, 12
  See Messiah.
  name, Christ, from chrism (oil),
    I, 32, 37
  name: savior, II, 60
  not born from sexual union, I, 1, 1
  passion: original sin and children,
    II, 56
  physician, II, 51
  See redemption.
  second Adam, II, 20, 35

sinless, II, 5, 14
subject to his parents, I, 11, 12
tempted, endured, like human beings,
  I, 35, 40; II, 15
Joseph, Saint, I, 11, 12
Joseph and Mary, See Holy Family.
Jovinian (heretic), II, 15; 23, 38
judgment day:
  belief in, II, 11, 24
  punishment relevant to uncleanness,
    I, 26
Julian of Eclanum (heretic), II, 20, 35
  ashamed to refer to sex, II, 7, 17; 18
  on concupiscence, II, 5, 14
  misquoting by, II, 6
  Pelagian document, II, 2, 2
justification, II, 29, 49
  Christ and, II, 46
  grace, after many transgressions, II, 46
language:
  called “tongue,” I, 23, 25
  teacher of, II, 46
last judgment, See judgment day.
law:
  could not remove sin, II, 46
law of God:
  delight in, I, 30, 33
life: Adam called his wife “life,” II, 4, 12
limping, I, 7, 8
little ones, See children.
loincloths, II, 30, 52
Lord’s Prayer: forgive us our debts,
  I, 33, 38
love: fear and, I, 30, 33
lust, II, 5, 14; 15; 13, 26; 29; 21, 36
Manichees, II, 7; 15; 19, 34; 23, 38; 29, 49;
  50; 51
  Catholics and Pelagians compared
    with, II, 9
marriage:
believing spouses; sacrament, I,10,11
bond, I,10,11
Christ and the Church, I,21,23
conception a good result of, II,22,37
See concupiscence.
condemned (accusation), I,1,1; 5,6;
II,3; 4; 4,11; 26,41; 42
destructive actions in, I,15,17
devil and fruit of, II,26,41
devil as inventor of, II,32,54
evil (heresy), II,31,53
fruits of, II,4,11; 18
God instituted from the beginning,
II,32,54
good and evil (Mani), II,23,38
good fruit from good tree, II,43
goodness of, I,1,1; II,19,34
healing, II,21,36
honorable; goods, I,24,27
increase, I,21,23; II,42
institution of; II,13
Julian vs. Augustine, II,2,2
man will cling to his wife, I,21,23;
II,4,12; 22; 31,53; 32,54
natural good of, I,4,5
original justice, II,30,52
original sin and, II,25,40; 26,41
paradise, II,22,37
patriarchs as model, I,16,18
Paul on, I,15; II,45
power over body of spouse, I,14,16
purpose: procreation, II,42; 32,54
sex and happiness, I,8,9
society for begetting children, I,4,5
three goals; the Holy Family, I,13
three goods of, I,17,19; 21,23
true marriage without sex, I,11,12
two in one flesh, II,4,12; 13
virginity (consecrated) and, I,4,5;
II,15; 23,38
what is permitted in, I,14,16
without sexual union, II,19,34; 22,37
with/without shameful passion,
II,32,54
Mars, II,30,52
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Son conceived without concupiscence,
I,24,27
virginity, II,15
wife as title of, I,11,12
mercy, II,16,31; 17,32
Messiah:
belief in the Christ to come, II,11,24
mind: virtues reside in, I,4,5
modesty, I,22,24; II,22
Moses, I,10,11; II,46
nakedness, II,32,54
nature:
See also human nature
God as author of, II,27
goodness of, II,17,32
newborn, See children; infants
Noah, II,9,21
old age, I,25,28
olive oil, I,32,37
olive tree:
wild; domesticated, I,19,21; 32,37;
II,58
original justice:
See also Paradise
body of this death, II,6
conceiving without lust, II,29
desire not found in, II,11,24
marriage in, II,30,52
marriage of first couple, I,5,6
naked and not ashamed, II,14,28
peaceful obedience of sex organs,
II,22,37
sex and the will, II,18
sex without shame, II,13,26
sowing human seed, II,29
original sin:
Adam’s voluntary sin as cause, II,43
all are born under power of, II,11,24
concupiscence and disobedience,
I,32,37; II,35,59
condemnation comes to all through,
II,46
contracted in marriage, I,1,1; II,4; 5;
24,39
contracting (Julian), II,27,44
denial (heresy), II,12,25
disobedience of sex organs, II,31,53

Volume I/24
entered world through one man, II,3; 8; 15; 20; II,24; 22,37; 42; 45; 46; 47
every human being born with, II,50
forgiven only by rebirth, I,19,21
goodness of marriage and, II,32,54
humans destined to perish, II,17,32
Isaac, II,11,24
Manichee as defender of, II,50
marriage and, I,1,1; II,3; 6; 20; 25,40; 26,41
nature changed for the worse, II,34,57; 58
origin, II,28
passed on through a work of God, II,48
passion a result of, II,21,36
Paul on, II,45
power of the devil, II,4,11
scriptural objections to, II,27
sin of disobedience, II,30,52
tradition, II,51
transmission of, II,23,38
will of the first man, II,48
original sin and children, II,8; 28; 20,35; 46; 50; 33,55; 56; 58
bath of rebirth, II,4
child conceived by concupiscence, I,24,27
conception (if there were no sin), I,1,1
law of sin present in, I,32,37
no need for Christ to save, II,9
power of the devil, I,1,1; 20,22; 26; II,3; 5; 13; 15; 18,33; 29,49
propagation, I,21,23
rebirth needed, I,19,21
reborn parents, II,58
rescued from power of the devil, I,20,22
paradise, I,16,18; II,6; 13,26; 29; 15,30; 35,59
shame in, II,30,52
parents, I,32,37; II,5
both pious and impious have children, II,27
children and sins of, II,50
procreation of children, II,45
passion, I,12; II,32,54
obedience of sex organs, II,13,26
usage of the word, II,33,55
will and arousal of, II,35,59
without marriage, II,42
patriarchs, I,8,9
marriage (model), I,16,18
polygamy, I,9,10
propagation a duty of, I,13,14
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
on carnal desire, I,8,9
on concupiscence of the flesh, I,27,30
on marriage and celibacy, I,15
on original sin, II,45
peace, II,35,59
Pelagians, II,7; 8; 13; 15; 18,33; 51; 31,53
first human beings, II,4,10
Manichees and Catholics compared with, II,9
use of Scripture, II,14,28
vow of abstinence, II,60
Pelagius, II,29,49
praises Ambrose, I,35,40; II,15; 51
people of God:
spiritual rebirth, I,15
piety:
parenthood and, II,27
reward of, II,12,25
pleasure, I,14,16: 17
morally good, II,22
sex and the will, II,31,53
polygamy, I,8,9; 9,10
possessions, I,15
potter, II,16,31
praise: for human nature, sex, etc., II,42
prayer, I,14,16
procreation:
fecundity of the seed, II,25,40
good of marriage, I,7,8
necessity of sexual desire, I,8,9
passion (lust) necessary for, I,24,27; II,13,26
purpose, I,4,5
reward of pleasure of sex, II,12,25
unholy begetters, II,27
wombs in the house of Abimelech, II,27; 15,30

propagation:
children of the flesh/world, I,18,20
concupiscence and, I,16,18

duty of the patriarchs, I,13,14
family obligations, I,16,18
people of God, I,15

prophecy:
God speaks through human being, II,4,12

prostitute, I,9,10; 15,17

purification: circumcision, II,11,24

Ravenna, II,1,1

rebirth, See baptism.

redemption:

handed over for our sins, II,56

hope of, I,31,35

need for a redeemer, I,19,21

this is my blood…, II,56

renewal: interior self, I,30,33

reproduction: sexual arousal and, I,6,7

resurrection of the dead:

original sin and, II,27

righteousness, I,4,5; 19,21; 27,30; II,46

concupiscence, I,23,25

faith in the Christ to come, II,11,24

Romans, II,30,52

Rome, II,1,1; 2,2

rule of faith, II,4

ruler, I,9,10

Sabellians, II,23,38

sacrament:

good of marriage, to be loved, I,17,19

salvation:

God the Father has rescued us…, II,5

infants, II,15

selfcontrol, I,16,18

Seth, II,19

sex:

abstinence and true marriage, I,11,12

arousal related to will, I,24,27; II,18

bad use of, I,4,5

believers and carnal desire, I,4,5

child as reward of, II,12,25

conjugal rights, I,14,16

devil and concupiscence, II,34,57

disease of desire, II,19

disordered disobedience, II,35,59

God as creator of, II,6,16; 12,25

good and evil, II,21,36

happiness, II,35,59

happiness in marriage, I,8,9

Holy Family, I,12

human seed; dying, II,14,28

law in my members / resists law in

mind…, I,30,33; 34; II,6; 22; II,58

in marriage for pleasure, I,24,27

moderation praised, II,19,34

natural relations, II,20,35

obedience of members, before the fall,
II,29

passion; reward, II,12,25

passion subject to will, II,33,55

permissible intercourse, I,8,9

pleasure, II,13,26

pleasure as motive for, I,4,5

pleasure without conception, II,19

preserving the species, I,4,5

privacy sought for, I,7,8; 22,24;

II,33,55

propagation of children, I,8,9; 14,16

purpose of marital intercourse, I,12

seeking pleasure, I,15,17

shame See shame.

shameful desire, II,14,28

shameless excess, II,19,34

union without shame, II,22,37

sex differences, II,5,14

God made male and female, II,31,53

sex organs:

ashamed in paradise, II,30,52

created for good activity, I,21,23

disobedience of members, II,5,14;

6,16; 7,17; 13,26; 18,20

punishment for sin, I,6,7

shame, I,6,7; II,13,26

obedience to will, II,31,53; 35,59

sexual desire, II,7,17

shameful arousal of, II,31,53; 35,59
Marriage and Desire

sex perversion:
  men, II,19,34; 20,35
  unnatural intercourse, II,35,59
  woman’s body, II,20,35

sexual desire, See desire.

sexual ethics:
  pardonable sins, I,24,27

shame, I,6,7; 12
  concupiscence, II,35,59
  hiding, II,5,14; 22; 21,36
  human works, II,22
  marital sex, I,7,8
  in old age, I,25,28
  original justice, II,29
  source of, II,7,17; 21,36

sin:
  children and sins of parents, II,50
  completion: obeying one’s evil desire, I,32
  concupiscence in the baptized, I,25,28
  desire; consent, I,29; 36
  devil’s power, II,15
  evil source, II,6,16
  filthy clothes (figure) removed, II,50
  flesh; serving the law of sin, I,36
  freeing from law of, II,12,25
  it is no longer I who do it…, I,29
  knowledge of, through the law, II,46
  nature as evil, II,48
  no one is free from, II,15
  produces sin, I,23,25
  sole cause of final condemnation, I,26
  whatever comes not from faith, I,4;
    I,4,5
  whole, composite person in, I,28,31
  will and, II,15; 48
  without sin means being not guilty, I,26,29
  work of the devil, I,1,1; II,4
  wound, II,34,57

Sodomites, II,19,34

Son of God:
  emptied himself…, I,11,12
  soul, See body and soul.

spirit:
  flesh opposed to, I,31,35
  free from law of sin and death, I,36
  sponsors (at baptism), I,20,22

sterility, I,15,17; 17,19

temperance, II,18

temple of God:
  body as, I,18,20; 31,35

temporal goods:
  this world is passing away, I,15
  thief: planting stolen wheat, II,42

time:
  for embracing…, I,13,14
  this world is passing away, I,15

tree: from its fruits…, II,43

Trinity: one and the same nature, II,23,38

truth, II,1,1; 18,33

unbelievers, I,4

unchasteness, I,4,5

Valerius, Count, I,1,1; 2,2; II,1,1

vanity of vanities, II,50

Vestal Virgins, I,4,5

virginity:
  consecrated, I,4,5
  marriage and, II,15; 23,38

virtue(s): reside in the mind, I,4,5

wickedness, II,27

wife:
  desiring wives of others, I,8,9
  polyandry, I,9,10
  reasons for loving husband, I,15

will:
  arousal of passion and, II,35,59
  good and bad wills, II,43
  I can will the good…, I,32
  I do not the good that I will…, I,30,33
  infants and sin, II,27,44
  natural desire, II,7,17
  sexual passion and, I,6,7; II,33,55
  sin and, II,15; 48

wisdom:

Answer To The Pelagians II
Answer To The Pelagians II

concupiscence of, II,10,23
spiritual desire for, II,30,52

women:
   intercourse without sexual desire, II,15,30
   pleasure in womb of, II,13,26
   sex relations against nature, II,20,35

worldliness: love of, I,18,20
writing: called “hand,” I,23,25

Volume I/24
Index from

Answer to the Pelagians III

Introduction, translation and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ

This volume includes the work: *Unfinished Work in Answer to Julian.*

**Includes:**

**Against Julian, an Unfinished Work**

*(Contra Julianum opus imperfectum)*

Volume I/25 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-129-9, 6 x 9 in., 774 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Answer To The Pelagians III

Volume I/25
### Ezekiel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16:3</td>
<td>IV, 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:45</td>
<td>IV, 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1-4</td>
<td>III, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1-30</td>
<td>III, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2</td>
<td>III, 84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>III, 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:4</td>
<td>III, 38; III, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:19-20</td>
<td>III, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:20,4,30</td>
<td>III, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:20</td>
<td>III, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:21</td>
<td>III, 52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:21-22</td>
<td>III, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:29-30</td>
<td>III, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>III, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:22</td>
<td>I, 133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:27</td>
<td>I, 133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:17-18</td>
<td>V, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:56</td>
<td>III, 11; IV, 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hosea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I, 141</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14 LXX</td>
<td>VI, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>II, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>III, 88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>III, 88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>II, 84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>I, 56; I, 63; II, 108; II, 170; II, 222; IV, 13; V, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>IV, 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>IV, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>V, 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48</td>
<td>II, 52; VI, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>II, 52; VI, 6; VI, 10; VI, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>I, 67; I, 98; I, 101; I, 105; II, 71; II, 212; III, 116; IV, 89; VI, 15; VI, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-13</td>
<td>I, 104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>I, 67; I, 90; I, 93; I, 105; I, 106; I, 108; II, 227; IV, 82; IV, 89; VI, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>IV, 134</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>V, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:42</td>
<td>IV, 124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>VI, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>IV, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>I, 48; III, 138; VI, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:35-36</td>
<td>VI, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:32</td>
<td>II, 227</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21</td>
<td>II, 175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I, 138</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>IV, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>IV, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>IV, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>IV, 18; IV, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>I, 94; III, 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>III, 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>I, 138; II, 61; IV, 21; IV, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>II, 71; II, 84; II, 198; II, 199; IV, 133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 113; II, 161; VI, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>III, 172; III, 173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume I/25

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>IV, 85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter 2:19</td>
<td>I, 74; I, 107; I, 112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 2:2</td>
<td>IV, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>III, 170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>IV, 20</td>
<td>IV, 18; IV, 20; IV, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>IV, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>IV, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>III, 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>V, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>II, 216; IV, 135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>I, 95; III, 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>I, 131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>IV, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Answer To The Pelagians III**
Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Citations are to book [Roman number] and chapter.

Abel, II,54,62; III,85; VI,11,22,23,27,30
righteousness of, II,180-184
Abimelech, V,16
Abraham, I,48,50,131,141; II,59, 
145,160,179; III,38,43,52,85,88; 
IV,1,76,104; V,10,12,16,64; VI, 
17,30
children of, II,157,158
Christ’s flesh from loins of, VI,22
descendants of, I,87,89,90
great number of offspring, 
III,85,88
loins of, VI,22
promise to, II,153-158,168
righteousness, II,162
tithe, VI,22
abstinence, IV,56
abuse, I,73,119
Academic skeptics, IV,116; VI,26
Acatius, III,162
Achan, III,12,30
actions:
natures and, VI,9
unable to change, VI,19
Adam, I,40,47,48,52,53,56,60,96,106, 
115,124,130,136; II,7,13,35,49, 
50,53,56,58,62,63,66,98,99,101, 
109,112,144,163,174,176,179,193, 
209,216; III,11,57,186; IV,4, 
65,71,74,75,79,97,135; V,25
See also original sin; paradise
all are children of, V,60
all exist/perish in him, II,36,178
all sin in Adam, I,5,68,112; 
II,36,85,98,134,135,164,173, 
197,209,214-215,217; III,49; 
IV,104; VI,31,36,40
broke commandment on how to live, 
II,77
Christ and, 
II,54,69,136-141,146,188-194,1 
96,203,218; III,107
Christ’s descending to underworld, 
VI,12,22,30
comfort of death’s coming, VI,27
concupiscence before his sin, IV,26; 
VI,16,22
condition of death, VI,36
created:
-animal body (as created), VI,12
-bad nature, VI,12
-blind, VI,14
-free choice, VI,12
-as good, III,144,152,186; VI,16
-innocent, VI,19
-mortal, I,67,68; III,57,75
-upright, III,110
cursed, VI,25
death, II,93
death due to merit of sin, VI,25
death’s reign, Adam to Moses, 
II,185-187,202
destined to fall, VI,10
devil, VI,12
dilemma: good or evil, VI,13
fear of death, VI,27
first father of Christ (humanity), 
VI,12
first man, earthly, VI,40
forbidden fruit, II,187; VI,20,30,41
free choice, III,110; V,40,54; VI,18

Volume I/25
generation began with, II,199
ignorance about, VI,27
immortality, VI,30
law, VI,41
law of obedience, VI,15
likeness of God, V,11
living as Enoch, VI,39
living, mortal soul, VI,39
mortality, IV,43,79;
VI,14,16,23,25,27,39,41
name means “man”, VI,31
natural innocence, VI,18
naturally evil (Mani), VI,8
necessity of sinning, VI,10,14
origin of evil will in, V,38
original sin imputed to, VI,22
original sin not in, IV,85
pattern of sin, II,189-194,214; VI,23
penance; long suffering, VI,30
punishment merited, VI,23
repentance, VI,30
righteousness, II,44; VI,27
set free from underworld, VI,12,22,30
sin admitted by Julian, IV,98
sin; male more worthy of imitation, II,190
sinning by imitation, III,85
subject to necessity toward the good, VI,12
teacher of sin, II,173
vacillation, VI,12
we all existed in, II,36,178; III,4,25;
IV,76,90,104
will; sin, V,61; VI,22
wretchedness, VI,27
you will return to earth, VI,23,27
Adimantus, I,25,59
adoption (children of God), I,53,111
healing (baptism) needed for, III,149,150
adultery, I,22,40,65; II,42; III,144,209;
IV,29,113,118; V,17,18,20,21,23,24
Africa, III,35
agriculture, V,24
Ahab, King, III,57; IV,34,35
all (the word): “many” and, II,135,145,
147,148,149,175-177,215
Alypius, I,7,17,42,52,85; III,35
Amaziah, King, III,30,33
ambition, IV,22
Ambrose, Saint, I,2,6,9,48,52,59,66,
67,70,71,72,93,99,109,115,117,126,
135,138; II,1,2,8,9,14,15,21,31,33,
36,37,73,164,208; III,56,178,
181,187,205,213; IV,10,23,28,42,
50,55,64,67,70,72,73,75,88,94,97,1
04,106,108,109,110,112,115,117,
118,120,122,128; V,5,20,25,30,
41,43,60; VI,6,8,12,14,26,37
charged with careless writing,
IV,113,119,121
Jovinian’s attack on, IV,121
would now defend Julian, IV,114
Amsanctus, I,48
Anaxagoras, IV,103
angel(-s), I,66,102; II,52,53; III,210;
IV,63,116,123; V,26,32,38,40,42,
53,58,60,62,63,64; VI,10
fallen, VI,22
imitation of, VI,34
immortality, VI,30
anger, I,135; IV,119
children of, II,228-231; III,79;
IV,123,124,128,129,131,134
reconciliation, II,172
vessels of, I,127,134,141; II,142,158;
III,97,142; V,64
animals, I,94; III,109,124,147,186,191;
V,8
born with defects, IV,75
concupiscence in, IV,38
death, VI,31
earthly man, VI,40
first mating, V,11
freedom in intercourse, IV,43
human affinity with, IV,39,125
humans and, re sex, II,122
image of God on par with, VI,26
imitating, II,52
irresistible instincts, IV,41
morality lessons from, IV,43
nature; genus, V,24
pain/pleasure in giving birth,
VI,26,29
propagation; concupiscence, IV,56
sexual desire in, IV,58, V,20
anti-Christ, I,132; III,44
Apollinarist heresy, IV,47-50,53,58
apostasy, V,64
apostles, I,50,77,89,106; II,52,175; III,72;
VI,35
Apulia, VI,18
Areopagus, V,64
argumentation, III,142; IV,116,118; V,24
impossibility in, III, 188
prepositions, IV, 97
Arians, I, 75, 76; IV, 7; V, 25, 30, 44
Aristotle, II, 51; III, 199; V, 23
artists, IV, 31
things done contrary to (as sins), VI, 9
ashamed, See shame.
Athanasius, I, 75
Athens, IV, 43
athletes, IV, 44
Atticus, IV, 88
Augustine, I, 1, 2
accused of blasphemy, I, 49-51
inconsistency charged against, II, 37-41
Jovinian compared with, IV, 122
love of learning, IV, 75
talent recognized by Julian, III, 188
authority, II, 16
Avernus, I, 48
Baal, I, 141
Babylon, I, 75, 139; V, 4
Bacchus, IV, 104
baptism:
See also infant salvation
ability to sin, I, 98
adults with single sins, II, 128
all sins forgiven by, II, 212
blood of Christ as price of, V, 9
Christ’s law, I, 161
circumcision as foreshadowing, I, 50
comparison of opposites, II, 217
death of Christ, II, 135, 172, 222, 223, 225; V, 9
devil cast out by, IV, 77
diseases (evils) remain, II, 106
doing evil before (Julian), I, 105
dying to sin, II, 172, 173, 222-225
effects (various), II, 116-120
eternal benefits, III, 52
evils from original sin, VI, 26
forgiveness of sins in, II, 97, 98, 225; VI, 8
-sins become many by use, II, 105
-various sins, different baptisms, II, 108
gifts from, I, 53
good and evil; before/after, I, 105
grace from, I, 95-98
grace rich in spiritual gifts, I, 53
guilt removed by, VI, 26
healing and restoration,
II, 94, 97, 121, 122; III, 151
heirs, II, 159
justifies after many sins, II, 164
law, I, 67
medicine of Christ, III, 147
members of the dead, VI, 38
necessary for all ages, II, 113; III, 149; V, 9
one form; different ages made holy, III, 59
power of its gifts, I, 53
providence, VI, 12
rebirth, II, 135, 192; III, 38; V, 64
removes guilt of sin, II, 71, 98
renouncing the world, II, 223; III, 42
salvation, III, 44, 188
savior necessary for all ages, V, 25
seed of rebirth, IV, 135
set free from first birth by, I, 70
sin and the will, I, 98, 106
sinlessness, II, 173
See sponsors.
temporal effects of original sin,
II, 97, 98
temporal penalties; eternal benefits,
II, 95
will set free by, I, 101
baptism of infants, I, 55, 56; II, 114, 205;
III, 51, 187; IV, 77, 121; VI, 23, 36
children dying without baptism,
I, 22, 35, 38, 39, 48, 53; II, 117, 151;
III, 9, 49; V, 13, 64; VI, 12, 20, 27
death to sin, II, 222, 223
effects of, V, 9
God’s justice, I, 38
Jesus as healer, I, 22
necessity of, I, 53; III, 152
no sin to be washed away, I, 22
presented to the Church, III, 52
refusing older children (too few sins),
II, 126
renunciation via sponsors, II, 224
rescued from power of darkness,
I, 50, 52, 60, 63, 64; II, 181; III, 124-
127, 137, 199
restoration to original state, I, 123
righteousness, I, 57
saving remedies of Christ, II, 221
Basil, Saint, I, 52, 59; II, 37; III, 111;
IV, 72, 73

Volume I/25
beatitude:
  desire for, IV,67
  everlasting freedom, VI,11
  sin as impossible, V,58
Beelzebub, V,21
behavior: decorum, IV,67
being:
  multiples, VI,26
  necessary and possible, V,45
believing. See faith.
Benjamin, tribe of, I,141
bible:
  authority of, I,3
  birth in o.t./rebirth in n.t., III,84
  heresies, I,25
  incautious use of words in (Julian), IV,113
  injustice of the divinity in, II,21
  interpretation; missing words, II,158
  Manicheans find falsity in, VI,16
  sources of errors, I,26
birth:
  conception necessary for, IV,91
  guilt in, I,70
bishops, I,59
bitterness, III,177
blessedness: resurrection, VI,36
blessing: law, II,160
blind [-ness], VI,17,20
  definition, III,119
  of heart, I,47
  willingly blinding oneself, VI,18
boasting, II,166; VI,18
bodies: grow by addition, V,47
body and soul:
  See also death; flesh; image of God; Manicheism
  all souls belong to God, III,43,44,54
  bodies, in paradise, I,116
  body is dead on account of sin, IV,136; VI,7,13,23,24,27,40
  body weighs down the soul, III,65; IV,43,56,67,75,128; V,1,11,16;
  VI,7,13,14,17,20,27,29,30
  creator’s dominion, III,46
  defects in the body, III,95,104
  discord: flesh and spirit, I,71
  divine commandments, I,71
  generation, IV,5
  God the creator of both, III,174
  good nature; evil present, III,155
  governing the flesh, I,71
mud; nobility, I,69
power to destroy both, VI,31
reproduction is of flesh (body), II,61
soul:
  -corrupted (Manicheism), V,25
  -created, VI,20
  -flesh (Mani), III,172
  -fruit of the spirit, III,177
  -good and evil in, III,155
  -happy or unhappy, VI,30
  -individually created, II,25,28
  -interior defects weigh down, I,69
  -not from God (Mani), VI,14
  -origin of, IV,104
  -part of God (Mani), III,186
  -rational soul is a nature, V,40
  -resists separation, II,186
  -set free by grace, VI,13
  temptation; sin, I,71
  transmission of souls, II,178; III,173,174; IV,104
body, human:
  See also human beings
dead on account of sin, V,10,21,25
deformed; monstrous, VI,19
denial of original sin, V,8,22
devil as author of, IV,72,120
God the source of, IV,118
God’s creation, IV,43
incorruptible, IV,127
members amputated, VI,19
praise of formation of, IV,70
Boniface, I,8; II,178; III,102
bribery, III,35
Caelestians, III,101,119,138; IV,5,109,114
Caelestius, I,67,73,75; VI,25
Caiaphas, VI,21
Cain, VI,7,23,27
  fear of death, VI,23,27
  sin of, II,180-184
Calliphon, I,64
camel, V,61
Canaanites, IV,128
cursed seed, IV,132
Ham imitated by, IV,129
origin, IV,129
capital punishment:
  children and parents, III,13
captivity, III,120
carefulness, V,47
Carthage, V,26; VI,25

Catholic Church, I,9,23,50,53,75,106; II,25,27,87,104,150,164; III,7,10,18,29,45,61,67,185,199; IV,43,72,88,97,112,120; V,9,25,44,64; VI,21,23,35

Catholic faith (-truth; etc.) I,2,10,22,33,52,59,73,75,85,86,96,115; II,6,63,66,97,105,117,129,153,163,166,187,214,236; III,18,35,61,95,101,102,103,109,154,170,175,186,187,205,216; IV,1,11,30,45,49,50,75,109,110,112,114,128,136; V,1,4,9,47,56,64; VI,6,7,8,9,11,17,22,25,27,41

Chaldeans, I,82

chance: God's power, III,109
change: mutability of all creation, V,60
charcoal, IV,91
charity, I,86
chastity, I,48; II,42,43; III,56,170,178,183; IV,57,122; VI,14
Christ's humanity, IV,49,52,53,57
lost virginity, VI,19
marital, I,62,68,70; II,31,122,218; III,23,25
relative perfection in, IV,52,53
sex not condemned by Christ's choice, IV,58

chickens (laying eggs), VI,26
child-bearing, II,8; IV,117
childbirth:
Julian mocks Augustine, V,15
natural moderateness, V,46; VI,26
pain:
-natural, not penal, in, VI,26,29
-in paradise, V,14,15
-as punishment, II,91; VI,21,25,26,29
-sinfulness related to, VI,21
-varies with mothers, VI,29
-women in, V,15
childlessness, II,42
children (infants; little ones; newborn):
-See also baptism of infants; generation; parents; procreation
avoiding sins of parents, VI,27
bear witness to Christ, savior, II,28
belief through others, I,55
belong to parents, II,40
born under power of devil, I,22,25,62,64,66,86,112,113; II,24,39,40; III,101,142,146,182,199; IV,68,95,103-108,115,125; V,7,25,64; VI,20,21,23
causality, IV,100
choosing good and evil, I,48
Christ came to save all, III,141
Christ is Jesus (savior) for, I,53; IV,13; VI,20
Christ the physician denied to, III,145-152
evils and defects in the newborn, VI,9
excluded from benefit of Christ's death, V,9
excluding Jesus savior from, II,170
existing/remaining without the sexes, IV,96,100
few, or no, sins, II,133
free, or not free, from all sin, I,32,47,52,53,56,96; II,18,114,115,129,135,138,151,161,162,167,213,174,190,196,197,214,216,224,225,235; III,7,12,48,57,138,144,148-151,153,154,161,162,167,64,187,197,198,204; IV,8,72,90,98,103,104,105,109,113,115,116,121,125,129,136; V,7,9,13,24,26,59,64; VI,7,17,20,22,23,26
fruit of good (bad) tree, V,21,23
God the creator of, I,141;
III,101,103,124; IV,118
grace; imitation of first human, II,148
guilt, II,144
identity of the father, V,23
inheriting parents' talents, VI,9
Jesus as savior of, I,53
Jesus died for, II,135,138,175
killing, I,4
labors of little ones, VI,29
lying, IV,121
malice of, as necessary, V,63
miseries:
-attributed to God, VI,24
-mercy, I,39
-not merited by sin, I,22
-of the newborn, VI,27
nature and sin, V,26
nature owes love to, VI,22
no will; no sin, II,24
origin: sexual act in marriage, II,24
original sin contracted at first birth, I,50,54,55,57,106,117; II,8,13,57,77,87,103,113,116,141,169,
Volume I/25

218; III,29,51,68,95,98,129-136, 198; IV,116,120; V,7,12,23,29, 31; VI,20,21,22,23,27
reason and will in infancy, I,48,113;  IV,90,103,116
righteousness given to, II,101
sacrificed to demons, VI,23
savior not needed by, VI,20
share nature of parents, II,42
sin See sin: parent/child relations
Sodom, VI,23
some adopted into kingdom of God,  I,136
subject to punishment, I,57
sufferings resulting from original sin, IV,114
vessels of honor, III,2
weighed down by sin of another, I,48
work of God, V,7
works of the devil, VI,21
yoke of original sin as unjust,  I,27,29,31,39,48,49,57,92,116,1 20,122,136; II,16,21,22,66,67, 74,95,110,117,119,124,139,141, 144; III,5,6,7,8,12,42,48,61,83, 126,134,202,210; IV,2,74,75;  V,2,4,64; VI,3,7,14,17,20,23,24
children of God, II,7; IV,132; V,2
driven by Spirit of God, III,106
power to become, III,106
reborn as, III,51
Christ (the name), VI,31
Christian faith, III,52,106
Christian life:
be holy because I am holy, VI,34
our body of sin nailed to his cross,  II,223
pagans and, I,83
sinful flesh, VI,34
Chrysippus, V,23
Church, I,67,73,82,86
accusation against, I,57
building itself up with love, III,114
mercy and judgment, I,130
union of Christ with, II,59
war on, III,144
Cicero, I,22; II,4; IV,43; VI,17; VI,22,26
circumcision:
commandment, II,77,157; III,17
eighth day, I,4,50;  II,75,119,125,151,161,201,219
faith, II,159,160
sin revealed in the law, II,74
symbol of resurrection, IV,134
symbol of sin’s removal, II,221
takes away original sin, II,73
clothing: care; modesty, IV,44,65
commandments, I,79; IV,122; V,61
See also law
Deuteronomy, III,12
excessiveness, VI,15
forgiveness of sins, III,48
friend of the creator, VI,20
God doing opposite of, III,21,23,26
holy, just, and good, II,220
impossible to observe, III,4,116
justice, III,34
keeping/obedience
-correcting way of life, II,174,222
-grace of God, III,106
-with love, III,114
-merit, I,134
-teaching injustice, III,27
original state, VI,14
Paul’s humanity, II,232-235
remain in effect, III,17-19
respect for, III,16
righteousness, I,107
transgression, II,185,187
tyrannical, III,75
unjust, III,73
virtues, II,233
common folk, I,2,3,14,36
conception: possible; not necessary, V,55
concupiscence [sexual desire], I,67, 68,70,71,86,101,106,108; II,5,6,8, 10,31,34,218; III,56,72,74,85,167;  IV,5,23,120; VI,6,37
Adam in paradise, IV,26
all born from Adam through, I,48
animal nature of, IV,38,56
bad things in the world, IV,18
battle against, II,217,218,228,233;  VI,8,14
bitterness, III,177
blame and praise for, IV,17
Christ, IV,87
continence, IV,52
creation by God, IV,23
damaged humans born through,  IV,95
debate on, IV,6
defect, IV,29

Answer To The Pelagians III
devil, II,32,88; III,100,177,142,180,205; IV,23,107,113; V,13
devil as origin of (Mani), V,7,30
devil does not find c. in Christ, IV,14,18,79
disparagement of nature, III,178
effect of original sin, III,177
enticed by, IV,89
evil, even without consent, IV,29,61; V,50
evil; source, IV,25
evil substance (Mani), III,176,186
excess, IV,24,25,41,53
excess only is blameworthy, V,19
eyes; things seen, IV,22,24,25
fight against, I,70; III,167,178,187; V,8
flesh; evil, III,170
flesh vs. spirit, III,72,178; IV,77;
VI,3,23,24,28
forbidden desires: strive not to have at all, IV,57
for forbidden fruit, I,71
genus and species, IV,25
God the Father as source of, IV,21,67,69,72,77,89
good of marriage, III,187; V,23,24
good use of, I,65,70; III,187,209;
IV,107; V,10
having sex for sex itself, V,13
human beings born through, II,226
human conduct, IV,22
human nature ruined by, III,186
immoderate/moderate, IV,21,24
impelling toward the illicit, V,19
inborn, II,235
incarnation, IV,48
innocent longing, I,71
Isaac’s birth, V,10
law of sin, I,72; III,179
limit set for human beings, IV,41
marriage, I,11; II,45
- chastity, II,31,218
-intercourse as good, V,18
- John on, IV,19,29
modesty resists, IV,37
natural evil, III,187,209; IV,53,67;
V,17
necessary for sexual union, V,5
not a sin (Julian), III,210
occasion of sin, I,71
opposition to spirit, IV,33
original sin, I,72; III,56; IV,128;
V,16,17
original state, VI,16
paradise, I,67; II,122,218;
III,167,177,186,187; IV,38,39;
V,20; VI,8,14,23
passion in intercourse, IV,27
pleasure, II,39
powerful force, V,17
praise; shame, II,42; III,177
presence in Christ, IV,45,53,54,58,77
procreation, III,212; V,13,16
propagation; male role, III,167
punishment, IV,34,38,56
relation to sex organs, IV,28
resisting, III,109; IV,25,69,77,114
resurrection of the body, V,13
risen body will not have, V,13
root of all evils, III,175
saints; consent, V,59
senses of mind and flesh, IV,69
sexual misconduct, IV,22,69,77
shame; III,184; IV,37,38,67,83;
V,14,59
sinner attracted by, II,221
slaves of, V,8
souls subject to, III,187
union of spouses, III,142
unworthiness of, IV,38
usage (1 Jn 2:2), IV,20
vice, I,64; IV,24
will, III,109,183,187; IV,38,39,43;
VI,22
word not used in a good sense,
IV,18,20
world as source, III,185,205,209;
IV,5,14,18
youth, II,235
condemnation, I,136; II,113,115,117,142,189; V,61,64; VI,9
Adam, II,135,136,144
all descendants of Adam,
I,124,125,127,128
circumcision; eighth day,
II,119,125,151,161,201,219
judgment leading to, II,105,210,211
last judgment, II,212
nonbelievers, III,199
one sin suffices for, II,103,105
penalty for sin, V,26
unbaptized as subject to, I,115
worthy of, I,130
Confessions, I,25,68

Volume I/25
conscience, I,13,48,68,84,87; II,11,117, 171; III,114
consent, I,68,71,72,101,106,108; II,71, 226; III,178,183; IV,22,25,69,89; V,50,59; VI,20,41
imitation of Christ, IV,48
consolation, IV,109
Constantinople, III,166
contempt, I,41
contentiousness, V,2
continence, II,42; IV,37,52
contraries (logic), III,31,146; IV,91; V,23,47,59,62
conversion, II,6,227; III,1
change for the better, II,231
lawgiver’s intention, II,220
moral, V,64
patience of God, I,67
Cornelius Nepos, IV,43
Cornelius (Acts), I,98
corruption, III,35; VI,40
courage, I,83; II,223; V,1
cow, V,15,39
cowardice, V,1
Crates (Theban), IV,43
creation, I,53; IV,1,2
all things made out of nothing, V,31,42,44,60
authority of the creator, V,62
dominion of the devil, V,9
eternity, V,31
free beings, V,62
God the author of, V,59
God’s foreknowledge, II,87
goodness of natures, II,235; III,142; IV,115
humans made out of nothing, I,94
made by God, not out of God, V,38,42
nature of God as source, V,31
nature of maker: -of things made, V,44
none formed for dishonorable purpose, I,129
not equal to its maker, VI,5
possible/necessary, V,45
praiseworthy, II,235; III,196
suffering (before original sin), VI,25
things could have been made otherwise, V,15
two natures (Mani), V,30
creatures:
created good; good creator, III,159;
V,26; VI,14,16
lineage traced back to nothingness, V,38
natural/necessary, V,46
praise of, IV,121
Creed, I,49; IV,7
crime: God permits, III,24
criminals, VI,23
Critobolus, IV,88
curse:
guilt, VI,27
Noah’s cursing Canaan, IV,128
custom: acting contrary to, IV,37
Cynics, IV,43,44
Cyprian, Saint, I,6,7,9,52,53,59,67,69, 70,117; II,2,14,33,37,73,164; IV,72,109,112,113; VI,6,10,14,18, 21,23
Cyrus, King, I,140
damnation, III,183; V,58
circumcision, II,219
god the maker of evil humans,
I,114,130
second death: depart from me ... , VI,31
Daniel (prophet), IV,129
darkness (Manichean), V,5,7
eternal, V,37
as nothing, V,44
rescued from power of, VI,15,20
source of evil/sin, V,49,54
substance, V,54
David, King, I,70; II,84; III,33,52; IV,49,79; VI,40
penance; pardon, VI,30
dead: baptism, VI,38
defeat, IV,123; V,22
death, VI,12,14
See also immortality; mortality; resurrection; tree of life
able not to die, VI,30
Adam (as created), II,236
ambiguity over meaning of, I,68
ascribed to nature, not original sin, VI,37
before the fall, I,68
body dead on account of sin, II,76;
IV,36
Cain’s fear of, VI,23
cause of, I,25,126; II,103,236; III,94; V,43; VI,7,8,12,31
ceases after resurrection of the body, II,78
children of Adam, VI,22
Christ shows equality by his dying, VI,34
Christ’s our death to sin, II,225-227
Christ’s power over, VI,36
death and mortality, V,63; VI,7
earthly man, VI,40
eternal death destroyed by Christ, II,99,100
evil, V,26
fear of, II,186
- everlasting death, VI,40
- natural fear of, VI,27
- in paradise, VI,14,16,27
first/second Adam, VI,31
forgiveness of sins, VI,26
God’s foreknowledge of evil persons, I,119,130
goodness of, VI,27
harm only temporal, II,204
imitating Adam, VI,31
judgment day, VI,31
known to sinner as benefit, VI,27
last enemy to be destroyed, VI,37
losses and greed, VI,30
medicine, V,47
natural, not penal, VI,36
natural mortality, VI,30
nature, VI,41
necessity common to all, VI,30
necessity; possibility, V,47
not an evil, VI,27
one died for all; so all have died, II,175
origin, IV,32,34
original sin, I,96; III,154,161; VI,31
paradise, III,147,154,161
passed on to all, II,24,63-68,184,216
prophets, II,171
as punishment, VI,30,36
- of the devil, VI,31
- merits of sin, II,186; VI,37
- for original sin, III,154,161
reign from Adam to Moses, II,185-187,202
reigns through Adam’s sin, II,069,191,192,203,204,214-215
renunciation, II,224
resurrection as opposite of, VI,36
resurrection takes away, II,98
righteousness, VI,27,37
seeds come to life after, V,14
serpent as sign, I,140
set free through Christ, I,110; II,69,85,139
sin as cause of, VI,25,27
sin as sting of, VI,40
sinner’s end, I,94
soul released from body, VI,36,37
temporal punishment for sin, VI,30
tunics, IV,37
wages of sin, VI,25
will to die, IV,103
wise according to the flesh, VI,40
work of the devil, V,43
wound, V,47
you are earth . . . , I,68
decency, IV,41
decorum, IV,67
defects:
- human beings; creation, V,11
- natures and substances (Manicheism), VI,16
definition, III,119
elements of, I,34,77
delight, II,11
in evil, I,94
demons: sacrifice of children to, IV,128
desire (-s): I,9,22,24,67,72,80,87,93; IV,21,22; VI,29
See also concupiscence; sexual desire
chastity, IV,52
evil, VI,17
flesh acts through, V,59
flesh vs. spirit, I,69,70,72,101,106;
II,15,17,97,180; III,167,170,173,
175,176,178,179,185,186,187,21
2,213; IV,1,9,10,19,26,27,28,33,
37,38,41,43,44,49,57,58,61,63,6
7,114,120; V,5,7,8,16,19,20,22,
24,30; VI,3,5,6,8,9,11,14,15,
22,24,36,37,41
force of sexual pleasure, V,11
free choice, IV,122
increased by prohibition, VI,41
increased by sin, VI,41
Julian attacks Book Two, II,22
law: you shall not desire, IV,57,58
modesty, IV,37
more fierce, more pure, IV,49
natural, V,1

Volume I/25
Volume I/25

original sin, VI,14
produced by sin, VI,14
sin, I,47
will, I,71
despair, I,110
devel, I,59,102; II,34,101; III,122; IV,1,5,43; VI,40
See also exorcism and exsufflation, rite of
Adam and, VI,12
bodies of human beings, IV,38
bodily defects, IV,123
called father, I,90
children born under power of,
I,22,52,64,66,112,113; II,24,39,40; III,101,142,146,182,199; IV,68,95,105-108,115,125; V,7,25,64; VI,20,21,23
Christ’s blood shed through, V,10
concupiscence, II,32; III,185,186; IV,23; V,8
-as creator, IV,83; V,6
-human beings, II,32; III,67,96,124,138,141,154; VI,14
-world, IV,25
creator has power over, III,46
curse upon the serpent, VI,28
death as work of, V,43; VI,7
delights only in evil, V,47
desires produced by, III,177
dominion over human images of God, II,24; IV,56,69,80
evil and the senses, IV,118
evil poured into human beings by, III,154
evil produced through senses, IV,118
fell by his own will, VI,10
finds no sin in Christ, IV,78,79,80,82,84
generating sinners, II,53
good will lost irreparably, VI,18
guilt, II,190
human beings as made for, V,64
human beings owned by, I,87
human body, IV,120
human race (Mani), III,160
image of God, I,63; II,27
imitating, II,35,47-50,52,55,63,199
kingdom of the, I,123
kingdom produced by natural sin, II,208
malice as possible, V,63
Manichee ideas on, IV,107
marital chastity, I,62
marriage, V,21,24
original sin, VI,20
plucks humans like fruit, I,109
power over God’s creatures, IV,7,51; V,6; VI,20
prince of the world, II,31; IV,18,45,77,82
procreation, II,44,45
punishment of, IV,9; V,47; VI,31
seducer of unhappy will, I,90
sex (sexual), II,60; V,6
-desire, II,88; III,142; V,13
-organs, IV,59
-pleasure, V,5
-union, IV,6
sexes and, IV,9
sin as work of, I,22; II,23,24,27,71; V,26
sins from the beginning, V,47
source of evil will, V,31
source of natures, IV,77
subject to, I,112; IV,113
substance as work of, III,126
tempting Christ, IV,82,83
trapping bodies and souls,
III,174,175,180
unbaptized as subject to, I,115
work of, passed through God’s work
V,63,64
devotion, I,49; III,1; VI,12
demanded, II,222,226
dignity, I,89,133; II,130; III,34,124,207; IV,113; V,23
diligence, VI,36
disease, II,177,236
disgust, IV,37
disobedience, See obedience; original sin.
divine justice, See justice
Donatists, I,10,75
Donatus, I,55
drinking, II,12
eyear Church, I,50
earth:
-barrenness as punishment, VI,27
cursed, VI,27
flesh, V,60
earthly man, VI,39,40
eating:
possible, not necessary, V,46,49
education:
tool and pain, VI,20
Egypt, VI,22
elements (world), V,39
Elijah, I,141; VI,30,39
Elizabeth, IV,134
emotions, I,105
Enoch, VI,22,30,39
Ephesus, VI,38
Epicurus, II,4; V,26
Epiphanius, IV,47
Esau: rejection of, I,131-132,141
Esther, III,163
eternal life, II,106,215; III,52,167; VI,36
Christ, II,69,204
future blessedness, II,167
grace, II,97,98
present world and world to come, II,140
righteousness, II,215
eternal punishment, I,130; II,24,99; III,199; V,47,64; VI,6,10,22,30,36,37
children and sins of parents, III,5
everlasting death, VI,40
evill, IV,118
second death, VI,31
unbelief, VI,30
eternity, V,31
eucharist, III,162
food/drink belong to the reborn, III,38,44
Eunomians, IV,7
eunuch, V,11
Christ as, IV,52
exorcism (bodily function), IV,37
Eve, II,58,56,173,179,190; III,187; VI,12,20,26
death through original sin, VI,27
living as Enoch, VI,39
nakedness, IV,65
name given to, IV,4
pain of childbirth from, V,15; VI,29
punished (Gn 3), VI,25,26
seduced, VI,27
sin prior to Adam, VI,23
evill, See good and evil.
example, II,47,56
excommunication, I,48
exorcism and exsufflation, rites of, I,50,55,57,60,117; II,120,181; III,82,142,144,146,164,182,199,208; IV,7,77,108,120; V,9,64; VI,23
experience, VI,14
eye: wickedness, IV,28
Ezekiel, I,33,134; III,38; VI,15
Jeremiah used to interpret, III,84
faith, I,53; II,12,98,140; III,61,106,121; V,4,22; VI,8
Abraham and Sarah, III,85
Abraham as witness to, II,155
antiquity, I,59
children of the promise, VI,41
circumcision, II,159,160
God gives the increase, II,157
God produces willing in us, II,158
heavenly man, VI,40
hope relevant to, VI,26
love of sin, VI,38
mercy and believing, VI,10
power to become children of God, I,94
praiseworthy examples of, III,85
promise and, II,199,220
promise to Abraham, II,153,154,158
punishment: not to believe, VI,10
resurrection of the body, II,99; VI,34
righteousness, II,158,222
reward of, in next life, II,94,95
salvation, I,141
source, I,124
testing, VI,29
virtues, II,188
visible reward, VI,29
false accusation, III,18,35
falsity, III,85,121; IV,106; V,33
farming, I,139; VI,27
fasting, I,52
fates, I,82
fathers:
certain relationship with children, VI,30
identity known, V,23
Fathers of the Church, IV,72,112
Faustus, I,25,59,69; II,147,226
fear, I,58,73; IV,5,11; VI,14,16
bitter servitude of, III,112
empty, III,124
everlasting death, VI,40
justice, VI,17

Volume I/25
Answer To The Pelagians III

Volume I/25

...torment, VI,17
fecundity, V,11,15; VI,25,30,31
God’s work, IV,5,6,7,8,9,10,29,68
feeble-mindedness, III,155,160,161,191;
IV,74,75,114,115,123,125,134;
V,22; VI,9,16,27
fertility, I,123; II,56
fidelity, I,65
figure of speech:
proper sense, III,90-93
singular used instead of plural, III,88
first human beings, See Adam; creation;
Eve; original sin; original state; paradise
flattery, IV,49,112; VI,10
flesh, II,6,15,32,97; IV,27
See also body and soul; concupiscence; desire; incarnation;
senses
battle against, VI,14
body and soul belong to God, III,44
body of sin, II,223
child of concupiscence, III,175,176
corruption, VI,40
death vs. resurrection, VI,40
defects; no evil spirit, I,69; VI,14
desire, V,59
earth, V,60
evil in first human beings, VI,14
exterior human being, II,61
generation of, II,61
good does not dwell in . . ., V,59
harmony with spirit, VI,6,14
human unity with animals, IV,39
incarnation, I,141
John’s usage, IV,19
law of sin, I,72
likeness of sinful flesh, IV,81
Manicheism, III,94; VI,6
nature and senses, IV,69
sinful, and likeness to sinful, II,218;
VI,33,34,35
spirit vs. flesh, See under desire.
weakness; test, II,137, 233
what is born of the flesh . . ., III,172,173
wise according to (=death), VI,40
work of, put to death, VI,15
work of the devil, III,126
works of, III,177
flood (biblical), II,186
Florus, I,2,12; II,166,187; IV,5
food, III,1,57
fool, III,9
force, V,11,32,45
free will, I,101
foreskin, II,73,156
forgiveness:
losing evils, VI,19
removal of guilt, VI,19
forgiveness of sins, I,57,84; IV,101; VI,8
See also justification; righteousness
baptism, See under baptism.
blood of the Lamb as price of, V,9
children and adults, II,132
daily pardon, I,71
death as punishment, VI,26
denied to little ones, II,120
deriving penalties of this life, III,154
grace and pardon,
II,107,115,120,121,222,227
grace related to number of sins, II,131
guilt and penance, VI,19
Jesus forgave serious sins, II,152
Jews and Gentiles, II,151
justification through, II,165
keeping the commandments, III,48
Lamb of God, I,141
Lord’s Prayer, VI,15
many sins required for (not just one),
II,115,118
pardon for personal sins, III,48
pardon given at baptism, I,95,106
prayer, penance, and almsgiving,
II,97,212; III,51
reason for Christ shedding his blood,
II,172
seventy times seven times, II,212
sin remaining with sinner, IV,96
single sins of older children, II,126
sins contracted by act of will, II,131
souls with one sin only, II,118
unbaptized persons, I,57
voluntary sins, II,108
form:
creatures could have been made
better, V,15
fornication, I,22,68; III,187,209; V,17,18,
20,23
as bad tree, V,21
evil fruit from, V,21
fortitude, I,36
free choice, I,47,73,75,76,77,82,84,85,
87,88,91,92,95,96,103,106,108,109;
Answer To The Pelagians III

See also good and evil; will action and, VI,19
Adam created with, VI,12,18 before/after baptism, I,102 cannot be lost, VI,19 concupiscence, III,187 definition, I,77; III,103,105; VI,10 denial of, III,109-111,214 evil will, V,56 examples, III,110 first human beings, VI,11 first law, given in paradise, VI,15 freedom damaged by bad use of, VI,13 good work of God, V,56 goodness, V,57 help of God’s grace, I,94; III,107,108 innocence a greater good than, VI,19 loss of strength, VI,12 lost when it began to be used, VI,8 natural limitations, III,109 natural sin, II,19 necessary, V,47,56,58 not present in God, I,102 original sin, II,105 options: good or evil, III,115,117-119 paradise before the fall, VI,8 possibility of sinning, V,47 power to lead a good life, I,94 righteousness and the law, VI,18 set free by grace of God, I,79 sin and the will, I,98 sinners, I,94,96,97 will or nature as cause, V,56 will to be happy, VI,26 worshiping God properly, III,106-108 freedom, I,74,82; III,117 of choice, See free choice definitions of “free” and “not free,” III,120-122 doing evil as evidence of, I,81 essence of, III,119 if the Son sets you free, I,94 Jesus on power of, I,93-94 loss of, on side of evil, VI,19 original state, I,47 perishes through sin, I,94 possibility of sinning, VI,11 promised by Jesus, I,87-88 slavery, I,107 word used in many senses, I,87 fruit: good/bad tree known by, V,21,23 future life: See also heaven capable of good alone, V,58 future state: unable to sin, V,56 reward: no battle with concupiscence, VI,8 spiritual body, VI,12 generation:
  begins with a man, II,83,187
  all things come from God, III,94
  bodies (Mani), III,174,176
  body and soul, IV,5
  father and mother, III,88
  flesh, II,61
  four persons concerned in, II,29
  good produced out of evil, III,181,183
  meanings, II,53
  natural laws of propagation, VI,22
  opposed to imitation, II,52-55 See also original sin: passed on by . . . requires two persons, II,56
  seed and conception, III,85,88
  sexual pleasure, II,33
  genital organs, See sexual organs.
  Gentiles, I,131,132,134,141; II,151,155,158,159,173
  genus and species, V,24
  giants [Zeus], IV,122
  gifts, I,53
  glory, I,73,134,135,141; II,171,172; VI,36,39,40
  goats on the left, V,64
  God, II,13
  See also image of God, I,37
  accusations against, I,53,57; V,2,6; VI,6,18,22,24
  anger of, I,127,134; IV,128; V,16; VI,26
  arguing against, I,138
  attributes, I,50; III,83
  Augustine accused of blasphemy, I,49-51
  author of all good natures, III,159
  author of nature in each individual, III,154,181

Volume I/25
Answer To The Pelagians III

author of necessary things, V,63
brings good out of evil, V,11,12
cannot be God, and unjust, I,28,57,81,100
cannot have a bad will, III,120
cannot will what is evil, I,97,101,103
charges of injustice, IV,76
commandments and judgments, III,36
commits no crimes, III,135,136
corrupted by nature of evil (Mani), V,54
corruptible, III,186; IV,31
creator, I,73,109,113,114,115,119
-body and sex, IV,9
-creates and raises up, VI,31
-of evil, III,136,155,161
divine nature not made from nothing, V,38
emancipation from, I,78
existence of, V,30
faith in powers of, II,155
favoritism, IV,125,128
fidelity, V,64
forced to will the good, I,101
foreknowledge, I,93,119,130; II,87,142,156,220; III,98; IV,131
-death of infants, I,48
-evil persons, V,64
-number of saints, VI,37
-those he knows will be condemned, V,13
free choice, VI,10
goodness of, III,103,106; V,13,64
guilt of, I,72
guilty of sin, V,63
hidden judgment, I,135
idolatry, II,151
imitating, II,52
immutable, V,15
inherited sin attacks, VI,24
injustice, I,5,141; II,16,21,236; III,2,5,24,34,77
judges through prophets, III,12
judgment and mercy, I,25,27,141; IV,122,128
just judge, III,6,10,26,33,38,107,109; IV,2,31,32,33,34,44,122,129,132
,136; V,2,4,6,64; VI,17,23
justice of, I,59,134,122,140;
II,22,104,124,139,144,200;
III,2,7,12,26,27,37,43,57,92,154;
210; IV,114,130; V,60,61;
VI,12,15,22,27
-crimes against, III,126-136
-fool and denial of, III,9-11
-punishment of infants, III,136
-known by his virtues, II,16
-known by reason, II,151
-likeness of, I,63
-loss of justice or omnipotence, I,49
-love for the human race, II,167
-love from, I,122; III,106
-loves all that exists, IV,124
-maker of the newborn, I,141
-malice, V,64
See Manicheism
Manichean idea of, I,120
-miseries attributed to, VI,26
-most loving creator, I,122
-omnipotence, I,93,122; III,126;
V,15,60
-our virtue, I,86
-overcoming nothingness, V,54
-patience, IV,131; V,64
-persecutor of the newborn, I,48
-pity, I,141
-praise for works of, IV,10
-praising himself, III,21
-prince of darkness (Mani), I,49
-promises, I,141
-sacraments, commandments, judgments, IV,122
-sin not possible by, V,31,38,54,60
-sins ascribed to, V,49,52,64
-traducianists, VI,4
-trustworthy, just, and holy, II,167; V,2
-unable to sin, I,103; VI,19
-unchangeable; immutable,
V,42,44,54,60,63
-undeserved punishments by,
III,49,136
-vengeance, IV,34,35
-will of, See will of God
-works of, V,60
-good or evil, IV,2,5,59; VI,14
-writings prejudicial to works of,
IV,110-111
godhead: Christ imitable by us, IV,87
Goliath, III,32
good and evil:
See also free choice; Manicheism;
sin; will
-all creation is good, I,122
-before/after baptism, I,98,102
capability for, I,81
choice. See free choice.
concupiscence, IV,69
conduct, I,89; VI,40
correlative terms, III,145
defects are only in a good, II,88
development as creator of goods, V,6
development recognizes his own, IV,9,10
discernment (paradise), VI,30
dominion of the will, VI,19
effects of grace and original sin compared, II,149
free from one, reject the other, I,107
free to do good, with God’s help,
III,105,108,109,110
freedom as possibility of, I,82; VI,11
glad when evilly spoken of, IV,122
God produces good from evil, IV,2
God’s desire for human conversion,
V,64
God’s will, I,97
good alone in future life, V,58
good can come through evil, V,10,63
good nature of body and soul, III,155
goodness independent of God, V,57
goods of the mind, VI,18,19
grace and fighting against vices,
II,106
help in willing the good, I,94
humans created free to choose good,
II,7
humans make themselves either, V,57
logic: both at the same time, III,32
love bestowed by the Spirit, II,165
Manicheism, I,115; III,23,37
merit, if no original sin, I,39
minds trained to separate, III,187
moderate/immoderate concupiscence,
IV,21,24
natural defects, V,22
necessary; possible, V,54,59,60
necessity of the good, V,61,62
original sin and choosing, II,216
predetermination, V,57
recognized by will alone, I,80
recompense for, VI,31
seek the good; avoid the evil, I,105
shame; flesh, III,143
suffering, V,22
tree of knowledge of, VI,30
two natures/substances (Mani),
III,175,206
voluntary, V,58
weakness for doing good, III,110
good and evil: evil
act as something possible, V,50
Adam as cause of, VI,13
alien nature of, IV,109; V,4,5,25,30;
VI,14
arising from a good, V,26,38,60
children lacking free will, VI,5
coeternal with God, V,5,17,25,30,41;
VI,36,41
coeternal with good, III,94,178,186;
IV,2,23,42,109
created subject to necessity of, VI,12
creation of evil, III,128,136
defects as evil, IV,115
distinct substance, IV,121,123
doubt about existence of evil, V,27
emptiness able to receive evil, V,59
exists only in a good, I,114
flesh in first human beings, VI,14
forced to do evil, II,6
forgiveness, VI,19
free for evil, III,120
free will as source, VI,5,9
God as creator or source, I,120;
IV,118; V,54,63; VI,5
grace and evil human beings, III,188
healing needed, III,37
lack of a good, V,44
made out of nothing, V,31,39
maker of evil humans, I,114
moves one toward evil, V,19
natural evil as non-existent, I,123;
III,159-160
naturally present, III,190
nature and an evil will, V,53,60
nature and substance, VI,5
nature of evil as immutable, I,97
necessity, V,61
no evil apart from evil will, V,22
original sin as cause of evils, II,104
person is still a good nature, V,60
persons created by God, V,64
possession of evil, V,38,39,51,61,62
privation of good, IV,109; V,60
rescue from evils of this life, II,94
set free from evil, I,107,111
sin and punishment, V,26
substance (Manicheism), I,69,85;
III,37,170
will and natural evil, I,24
work of God sinning, V,63
good works, I,131,132,133,141; III,2

Volume I/25
free to do, III,108
good "tree", V.21
good will and God’s grace, III,120
proceed from good thought, III,120
Without me you can do nothing . . . , 
III,118,119,120
goodness, I,54,67; III,73,113
holiness, I,98
justice, III,124-127
moral, II,151
nature of, to be mutable, I,97
necessity (creation), VI,20
owed to God, V,48
possibility for, V,57
treasures of the heart, V,21
virtue and pleasure, I,64
willing the right things, V,61
goods:
mutable, VI,5
natura
-can be lost, VI,19
- God’s work, VI,15
-will and the loss of, VI,19
voluntary; loss, VI,19
gospel, II,19; VI,15
grace, I,39,40,52,53,57,67,72,74,82,
86,88,89,94,98,99,105,106,108,127,
128,131,136,139,140,141; II,7,10,
35,69,72,90,106,116,117,126,151,1
53,157,165,166,186,193,205,209,22
0,226,227,231; III,33,51,56,69,
70,72,73,106,110,112,117,122,142,
150,152,172,188,195,196,208,214;
IV,48,84,95,114,124,125,129,132,1
34; V,4,9,61,62,64; VI,10,12,13,14,
15,19,22,26,30,39
See also baptism
abounded more than sin, 
II,85,98,142,147,148,204,209,21
7,221,222
abundant for more/many, II,96
anger of God, II,160
baptism’s effects, I,95-98
benefits for humans, I,94
chosen by, I,133
dead, I,69
denial of, or praise of, III,189
effects;
-same at all ages, II,127
-various, II,120
example or gift, II,146
favoritism, I,131
fighters in war against evil, II,106
forgiveness and conversion, II,227
free choice, I,94; IV,122
gifts of, I,53
God’s justice, III,2
good will, III,120,122
imitation of virtue, II,214
individual differences, II,119
innocents made more perfect by, 
II,147
justification,
II,103,105,108,109,112,113,114,
115,119,121,126,130,131,133
law, IV,114
many sins removed by, I,173
medicine of Christ, III,149,150
merits, I,133,141
munificence, at different ages, 
II,121-127
need for, because of sin, I,94
old testament sacraments, I,124
original sin, I,129,140
pardon for sin, II,107,222
Paul on, I,128-134
power of God, I,133
power of; power of sin, I,97-103
praised over sin (Paul), II,132
remedy, I,90-96
righteousness, I,140
sanctification, I, I, II,117
set free from many sins by, II,212;
IV,122
superiority over sin, II,206-209
various helps, III,114-119
will, I,95; III,115
without me you can do nothing, I,98
working in adults; in children, II,120
works, I,98,133
Greek language, IV,66
Gregory, I,6,9,52,53,59,67,69,70,117;
II,33,37; IV,72,73; VI,14
guilt, I,48,50,63,67,72,87,102,106,115;
II,1,28,31,33,42,44,98,116,119,227;
III,3,20,32,56,79,82,124,154,159,20
9; V,11,60; VI,26,35,41
See also original sin
curse, VI,27
eternal sin, VI,19
forgiveness, VI,19
grace, I,99
human origins in, II,202
merits punishment, IV,33

Answer To The Pelagians III
necessity of, V,51
penance and pardon, VI,19
removal; the will, VI,19
sin: parent and child, VI,27
unwilling, IV,103
will, IV,94
wretchedness, VI,27

habit, II,10,15; III,167,178
bad, affecting human nature, VI,12,13
fruit of the will, IV,103
necessity; second nature, IV,103
weighed down by bad h., IV,87; V,59
Ham: Canaanites, IV,129
happiness, I,69,70,103; II,89; III,161,162; IV,19,23,33,38,92; V,4; VI,11,14
See also original state; paradise complete, V,61
natural desire for, VI,26
nature flees from unhappiness, VI,26
necessary that we will h., V,53,55; VI,12,26,30
resurrection, VI,36
righteousness, VI,12
sin vs. enjoying, V,60
two eternal states of, II,113
hate, II,11; III,13
parents, brothers, sisters, IV,23
soul cannot hate itself, IV,23
healing, V,16,19,30; VI,6,8
health, III,145, III,195
hearing, VI,23
heart, III,60,114,117,147,167
blind and deaf, V,22; VI,10,17
God and acts of willing, V,4
good persons, V,21
humble, V,47
knowing God in, VI,23
obedience from, II,230
stony, VI,15
task of faith in, VI,29
heaven, I,53,56,57,63; VI,37
desire for sins in, VI,37
eternal state(s) of happiness, II,113
heavenly man, VI,39,40
incorruptible bodies in, VI,30
merits of infants, I,33
providence and the saved, VI,12
sinlessness in, II,216
Hebrew language, IV,66
Hebrews, Letter to the, VI,22
hell, IV,118; VI,22,30,31,36,40
heresy (-etics), I,9,22,25,54,68,73,75, 83,130; II,4,7,33,103,146,166; III,18,31,51,59,94,95,101,105,124,1
51,182; IV,5,7,9,14,43,53,75, 84,89,112,113,122,134,136; V,9, 17,30,48,54,64; VI,1,4,5,8,22,35
Hilary, Saint, I,9,52,59,70,117; II,33, 37,164; IV,72,73,95,109; VI,33
Hippocrene, III,117
holiness, I,87,133; VI,7
attaining goodness, I,98
inborn, IV,134
manifesting Christ’s resurrection,
II,223
parents and children, III,51
pursuit of, IV,20
Holy of holies, IV,89
Holy Spirit, I,50,70,72,83,86,94,98,107,
124,138,140; II,42,56,72,85,93,119,
137,140; 146,157,165,166,167,
169,214,217,220,228; III,38,106;
IV,7,58,84,86; 87,89,95,120,121,
134,136; V,48; VI,7,8,13,15,22,
27,34,35
children of God, III,120
driven by, II,233
gifts of the, II,167
resurrection of the body, I,96
homonyms, II,51
homousians, I,75,76
homosexuality, V,17
honor: vessels of, III,2
Honoratus, V,26
hope, II,1,118,153,165,166,167; VI,41
faith relevant to, VI,26
heavenly man, VI,40
horse: form, V,15
human being(-s), I,22; III,94; V,1,4
See also Adam; body and soul; hu-
man nature; image of God; mind; will
alone: not good for man, IV,4
answering back to God, I,141
become better by sinning, V,16
better form (creation), V,15,16
born and reborn, III,51
born with defects of body and mind,
I,70,85; II,123; III,104,160,162;
IV,75; IV,123,8; VI,5,9,14
called “world,” IV,77
changed from evil to good, I,138

Volume I/25
conceived by sexual pleasure, III,183
corruption, IV,4
congenital characteristics, IV,127
creation: -body and soul, VI,20
by God’s goodness, IV,83,115
-then the devil, See devil (below)
capable of good and evil, V,58
-from darkness; from nothing, V,42
-God the creator, I,114,130; II,41;
III,104,124,138; IV,76; V,64;
VI,14
-image and likeness of God, VI,26,35
-natural evil denied in, IV,89
-upright, VI,8
-with tenderness, VI,20
defective, even in paradise, VI,16
devil: -author (creator) of bodies of,
III,67,96,138,153,154; IV,38
-fruit of diabolical concupiscence,
III,181
-fruit tree of the devil, IV,32
-made for the devil, V,64
-power over substance of, IV,51
-prince of this world, IV,77
-work of the devil, III,154
drawn to baptism, I,101
evil:
-by condition of birth, I,116
-God the creator, III,124; VI,14
-natural evil denied in, III,154; IV,89
-nature of, VI,20,25
-persons created by God, V,64
-fear of death, VI,16
-flesh and blood, VI,40
-forced to exist, V,42
-free choice, V,47,57
-gifts and wounds as equal, II,95
gifts, commandments, conversations,
VI,20
God loves/hates, IV,124
God (perfection) is cause of defects,
V,11
God produces, from seeds, V,14
God sins when person sins, V,63
-good and bad in each, V,13
good, as creatures, III,159
good fruit from good tree, V,23
good of nature in, III,142
goods of life bestowed on, V,64
grace sets free, IV,122
grace: three benefits, I,94
happiness, V,60
human beings make selves what they are, V,57
human person is a nature, I,96
image of God, I,63; V,38
likeness of God, III,110
mind and body, V,60
miseries of, I,72
natural goodness, III,82; V,59
nature, See human nature.
necessary to be part of a nature, V,49
not naturally evil, VI,14
produced from seeds, V,11
punishment; image of God, VI,36
seeds sown in woman’s womb, V,14
sin imputed to, V,53
state of being lost, I,48
substance of, I,66
suffering, III,187
term refers to mind and body, II,61
vanity, I,36,63; II,178
wisdom, IV,123
work of God, I,64; II,23,24; III,160;
V,43
worldly conduct, IV,22
human nature:
See also human beings
animal sexuality, IV,43
bad habits, VI,12,13
capable of good and evil, V,58
Christ and value of, V,23
condemnation at its origin,
I,96,113,119
created as good, I,101;
III,144,145,186,187
-by its own will, V,62
damaged by original sin, I,105;
II,177,202,215;
III,66,95,154,158,173,186,198,2
60; IV,1,8,17,40,41,43,59,74,
75,95,104,109,114,123,128,130,
134; V,2,3,5,8,11,14,15,20,21,
25,29,30,40,56,64; VI,3,7,8,9,
12,13,14,16,20,21,27,41
-damaged, needs Christ’s healing,
III,181
-defect (original sin) in,
III,67,95,109,159,160
-evil if damaged, III,193
-multiple defects, VI,5
-original sin, III,66,95

Answer To The Pelagians III
Answer To The Pelagians III

-saved when defect is removed, III,195
-suffering as punishment, VI,25,26
-turns toward evil, II,6
damaged by the individual, III,208
devil, IV,5
devil as creator of, III,154
disparagement of, III,189
dominion of the devil, IV,80
evil, I,98
-always desired by, I,97
-capable of sinning, V,60
-coeternal with God, III,155,170,173;
VI,5,17,41
-having, or being, an evil,
III,188,190,195,215
-natural evil in, III,154
-present in human beings, III,195
-sin is natural, III,160
genus (logic), V,24,40
good work of God, V,56
God makes, in each individual,
III,154
God the author of, IV,134
good or evil,
III,144,150,159,192-194,196,20
6
good, prior to original sin, V,43
goodness of, I,115
healed by Christ, II,41,215
healing needed, I,24; II,8; IV,114
human beings born from, V,21
injuries from original sin, I,97;
II,87,163
innocent before use of will, II,20
made with good will, V,38
Manichaeans on, III,37,138,173
mind and flesh, V,59
sin and the will, I,72; V,26
sinful; blame and praise, V,63
slowness of, II,13
transmission of original sin, II,145
will, V,53
work of God, III,144
human race:
See also human beings
Adam and Christ as the whole, II,163
great evils of mind and body, III,161
increase and multiply, VI,26
original sin and condemnation of,
III,56
proof of God’s love for, II,167
subject to original sin, III,158
suffering, as created, VI,25
wretched because of original sin,
VI,27
humility, III,116
mysteries revealed to little ones,
VI,12
husband: rule over wife, VI,26
Hyparctis, IV,43
hypocrisy, IV,121
idolatry, I,57; II,151; III,33,49,106;
IV,31,128; V,4
ignorance, I,47,93,105,106; V,1,24;
VI,14,41
sin and the law, II,151,221
image of God, I,37,39,40,53,130,136;
VI,22
animals on par with, VI,26
born with mental deformity, III,161
corruptible body, III,44,45
death and, I,5
defects in
devil (dominion; kingdom), I,63;
 IV,5,69; V,1,5,20
free choice, III,45,109; V,38
human bodies, IV,40
innate evil (original sin), VI,35
kingdom of God, II,30,113; III,97
mind, IV,39,75
original sin, IV,75
potter of clay vessels, I,133
punishment unjustly imposed, VI,36
tree of life, VI,39
imitation:
Adam and Christ, II,190
of Christ, See Christian life.
evil-doers, II,48-50
law and, IV,129
See original sin: passed on by . .
sins of, II,48,49,149,186; VI,31
use of reason, II,147
will, VI,34
Immaculate Conception, I,66
immortality, I,67,71; IV,135; V,8,13;
VI,25,30,37,39,40
changing actions, VI,19
children of Enoch, VI,30
not to be able to die, VI,30
paradise, VI,30
tree of life, VI,30
impossibility: in argumentation, III,188
impudence, III,143; V,5

Volume I/25
impurity, I,109
Incarnation, I,61,140; II,42,146,148,188
Ambrose vs. Mani on, IV,109
Apollinarist heresy, IV,47-50
concupiscence, IV,5,14,48,79,84,104
flesh from loins of Abraham, VI,22
free from sexual union, IV,88,106
God and man in one person, IV,84
likeness of sinful flesh, III,51,87;
IV,48,60,63,79,80,83,122;
VI,22,33,34,35
participation in our nature, VI,33
Word was made flesh, IV,21,47,84
incest, III,187
incorruptibility, IV,38,39;
VI,13,30,37,40
infant salvation, I,30,32,33,111,118; II,1,
101,116,128,222,236; III,37,
83,138,144,146,149,214; V,15,25,
41; VI,21,22,41
See also baptism of infants
forgiveness of sin, II,30,108
kingdom of God, III,107,124
little ones with no sin, II,118,119
works and good will, III,2
infanticide, IV,128
inherited sin, See original sin.
injustice, I,4,55
innocence, I,54,123,130; V,59
greater good than free choice, VI,19
loss and restoration, VI,19
lost; righteousness, VI,19,20
nakedness, V,5
original sin attacks, VI,24
punishment of, VI,27
Innocent, Pope, VI,11
instinct, IV,41
insults, I,58
intelligence, relative, V,1
intercourse, See sex.
intermediate state, III,31
Irenaeus, IV,72,73
Isaac, I,141; II,153,158,160; III,88; IV,59;
V,10; VI,30
Isaiah, III,99; IV,135
Israel, I,141; II,12; VI,22
ture Israelites, III,41,42
Israelites:
adopted by grace, IV,132
all in loins of Abraham, V,12
children of God, IV,132
land of the promise, IV,128
spiritual, IV,135
Italy, I,59; III,35
Jacob, I,141; II,160; III,88; IV,59; VI,30
choice of; merits, I,131-133
Jeremiah, IV,134
translation of Ezekiel, III,84
Jerome, Saint, IV,121
blasphemies praised by Augustine,
IV,89
challenge to praise for, IV,88
Jerusalem, I,33,93
Jesus Christ, I,76,84,94,131,140; III,6
Abel and, II,180,182
Adam and,
II,54,69,136-141,146,188-194,1
96,203,218; III,107
baptized, IV,63
brought to life in Christ, II,197,209;
VI,36
came to seek and save what was lost,
III,141
chastity, IV,49,52,53,57,58
Church, See Church.
clothing, IV,63,65
coming in humility; in glory, I,124
concupiscence in,
IV,18,45,53,58,77,79,87
death:
-accepted, II,99
-body only was buried, II,178
-Christ died for all, II,30,133,239;
III,37; V,9; VI,21
-dying in vain, III,38
-example, VI,34
-Father, if it is possible . . . , VI,36
-foreshadowed in sacrifices, III,16
-forgiveness of sins, III,31
-handed over for our sins, II,163
-healing human nature, II,215
-imitating the power of, II,223
-little ones he also died for, I,64
-obedient unto death, VI,36
-original sin and, II,163
-righteousness through, II,170
-in vain, II,188
deceit was not on his lips, IV,87
deriverer, I,110,111,112,118
descent to underworld: Adam re-
leased, VI,12,22,30

Answer To The Pelagians III
desired only what was permissible, IV,58

divinity: power of his own will, IV,84
eternal life through, II,85
example of perfection, IV,57
father of the world to come, II,188
first fruits of the resurrection, VI,36
forgiveness of sins, I,84
freedom promised by, I,87
fulfills law against desire, IV,58
God and man, VI,22
grace, I,140
healing spiritual seed, II,216
heavenly man, VI,40
holiness, IV,54,134
human nature, V,23
humanity, I,138
-Adam as first father of, VI,12
-Appolinarian heresy, IV,47-50,53
-body lacked nothing natural, IV,59
-bold language re flesh of Christ, IV,64
-Christ’s equality with us, VI,34
-concupiscence, IV,54,82
-deity as soul of, IV,47
-dreams, IV,58
-eunuch, IV,52
-flesh and spirit in accord, IV,57
-full masculinity, IV,53
-heresies, IV,81
-his flesh not separate from ours, VI,33
-merited becoming Word of God, IV,84
-modesty, IV,63,64
-real body, IV,54
-senses and suffering, IV,46-50,57
-sexual organs, IV,54,59
if Christ is in you . . . , I,96
 imitation of, IV,87,89
See also incarnation.
lamb of God, II,198,199; IV,133
life-giving spirit, VI,39
likeness of sinful flesh, II,218,225
Lord’s Day (eighth day), II,73,151
lying charged against, IV,121
meaning of his word, I,89
mediator, II,172; VI,7
new Adam, IV,104
obedience, II,144,146,147,148,149
original sin in, IV,51,60,86,87,104; VI,35
passion:

-Appolinarian heresy, IV,50
-devil and, V,10
-punishment without sin, VI,36
perfection of virtue in, IV,48,50,53
physician needed by little ones, III,145-152,153
priesthood prefigured, VI,22
proposed the Father for imitation, IV,87
rebirth through, II,109
See also baptism
regeneration through, II,187
reign in life through, II,103
resurrection:
-deny of, VI,34
-if the dead do not rise . . . , VI,34
-eighth day, IV,134
-sharing in, II,223
righteousness, II,140,144,170; IV,87;
VI,7,23,27,40
salvation before Christ, I,115
saves people from their sins, III,150;
V,29
savior (his name), I,111;
II,108,128,131,170,222;
IV,13,84; VI,18,20
savior of infants, I,32,111,118; II,115
second Adam, VI,22,31
sin:
-desire for sin, IV,48,53,89
-devil finds none in Christ,
IV,78,79,80,84
-sinlessness, I,59,62;
IV,82,85,87,88,89,106,120,134
Son of God, I,138,140; IV,84
suffering (real), IV,47
temptation, IV,79,83
virgin birth chosen by God,
I,52,64,66
virtues surpassed all others, II,171;
IV,87
washes sins away, I,70
Wisdom of God, IV,135
world did not know him, IV,18
Jews, I,72,131,132,133,140;
II,149,151; V,21
See also Israelites; law
captivity, I,138,139
children of Abraham, II,158
descended from Abraham, IV,1
heirs of the promise, II,158
praise of, IV,134
pride, II,173
Answer To The Pelagians III

remnant, I,141
serious sins, III,39
Job, IV,129
John, Apostle, III,209; VI,21
Gospel (prologue), IV,21
letter of, IV,19,20,45,69
John the Baptist, Saint, IV,134
baptism by, IV,63,88
John Chrysostom, Saint, I,52,59,96; II,37; III,111; IV,72,73; VI,7,26
Jordan river, IV,121
Joshua, III,12,30
Jovinian, I,96,98,101; III,144
attack on Ambrose, IV,121
Augustine as worse than, IV,122
Julian compared with, IV,122
judges, I,10,48; II,1,2,33,37; III,24; V,28; VI,21,27
human and divine, III,34,35,37
judging:
God’s just judgment, II,87,89
norm for, III,13
volitional or seminal cause, III,13
judgment day, I,96; II,212; III,107
Julian:
Jovinian compared with, IV,122
occasion of his book, I,1
parents of, I,68
justice (divine justice), I,3,4,27,28,39,45,49,50,53,64,72,78,105,113,119,133,138,139; II,13,16,39,84,105,117,151,161,171,196,216,236; III,1-8,13,17,23,24,27,32,46,53,56,57,67,99,130,151,157,164; IV,1,136; V,1,28,64; VI,17,24,27,30,41
characteristics, III,2
contradictory propositions, III,32-34
day’s wage for work in vineyard, I,38
definition of, I,35,44; II,17
divine, See also God: justice.
evil will, V,22
God as genus of, I,37
God’s greatest attribute, IV,130
goodness, III,124-127
imputes only freely committed sins, V,29
just persons (Ezekiel), III,38
logic, IV,116
new heaven and new earth, V,62
old and new testaments, I,38
origin, I,37
punishment, V,26
sins: parents and children, III,33,34
unity of virtues, I,36
unmerited gifts, I,38
will united to, I,133
justification, I,59; II,97
baptism, after many sins, II,164
Christ: nature; law, II,198,199
grace,
II,103,105,108,109,112,113,114,115,119,121,126,130,131,133
Paul on, II,128-134
rebirth, after many sins, II,108
set free from many sins (by baptism), II,212
kingdom of God [or —heaven], See heaven.
kinship, III,13
knowledge:
gift of God needed, I,95
labor in attaining, V,3
pursuit of, V,1
labor, See work.
language teacher, II,144,209
languages: natural, IV,66
last judgment, See judgment day.
Latin language, IV,66
law(s), I,3,4,5,37,72,133,137; II,12,13,15; V,48
authority of, III,20,177,185
anger, II,153,158,160,161
baptism, I,67
commanding what is impossible, III,82,116
commandments, II,152,158
defect; power of sin, II,220
denied; corrected, III,16
freedom to observe, VI,15
God’s plan in giving, II,220-221
grace, IV,114
guilt for one offence, II,107,119
heirs of the promise, II,157,158,159-162
holiness claimed, II,173
holy, III,186
ignorance of, II,151,221
Jews alone were subject to, II,209
justice, III,34
justification, II,151
knowledge of sin, II,69,72; III,210
law of members resists law of mind, I,67,69,71; III,112; IV,31,35,44,56; V,59; VI,5,13,14
multiplicity of, VI,20
natural sin, II,70
origin of sin, VI,41
original sin challenged, II,73,77
perversity, II,21
power of sin, VI,41
promise to Abraham, II,156,158
reign of sin, II,198,199,217
righteousness, II,70,158; VI,41
sin:
-abounding, II,70,217,218,220-221
-Adam to Moses, II,185,199
-existed up to the,
-II,69-78,84,199,218,220
-free will; before/after law, II,201
-parents and children, III,30,33,61
-passions, I,69
-sins increased by, VI,15
transgression of,
-II,146,149,160,185,186,191,201,
205,209,214,217,218,221; VI,41
two sacred witnesses, III,31
Lazarus, VI,7
learning, II,13
Levi (son of Israel), I,48; II,179; III,38,43;
IV,76,104; V,64; VI,22
liberal arts, II,1
lice, V,15
life, VI,12
brought to life in Christ, II,197,209
diligence, VI,36
name given to Eve, IV,4
reverence for human birth, I,70
seeds sown in the earth, V,14
light: hated by those who do evil, III,187
likeness of God, See image of God
literature teacher, II,209
little ones; See children
logic, I,57; II,36,37,99; V,34
contradictory propositions, III,31-34
contrary propositions, IV,91
correlative terms: good; healthy, III,145
demands of, IV,115
genus and species in, V,24
propositions and conclusions, IV,116
loincloths, IV,37
loins, I,48
Lord’s Prayer:
Bring us not into temptation, I,106,108; II,227; IV,82,89
Forgive us our debts,
I,67,98,101,104,105; II,71,212;
III,116; IV,89; VI,15,30
Your will be done, VI,6,10,34
Lot, III,52
love, I,84,94,131; II,11,165,233
children of God, III,106
command to love persecutors, IV,87
effect of God’s love, I,133
gift of God, III,106
for God, I,83
God the source of, III,114,122
God’s love of Jacob, I,132,133,141
greatest: to die for one’s friend, VI,27
Holy Spirit, I,107
keeping the commandments, III,114
righteousness, II,142
sexual desire, III,85
unites members of Christ, VI,14
will, I,95; III,12
love of the world, IV,22
lupine, grove of, III,81
lust, III,142; IV,5,53; V,15,25
Lyciaonia, V,64
lying, I,67; IV,104,122
Macarians, I,75
majority opinion, II,3
malice, IV,123,126,127,128,129,131,134;
V,63,64
man (Hebrew word = Adam), VI,31
Mani, I,24,32,49,52,59,66,96,97;
98,101,115,116-120; II,102,148,
178; III,18,23,37,53,79,83,94,109,
144,159,160,161,167,170,180,183,1
84,185,187,195-197,199,201,212,21
3,216; IV,5,17,18,19,23,24,28,29,
38,47,50,55,56,58,64,67,70,71,72,7
5,81,88,99,104,109,114,120,121,122,
128,130,134; V,1,4,8,9,19,20,25,26,
30,36,37,38,40,42,43,44,49,54,56,6
3,64; VI,5,6,8,9,13,14,15,16,17,
20,21,23,28,31
Augustine compared with,
III,153-158,162
Julian assumes Mani’s views, VI,14
letter: discovery; quotations,
III,166-176

Volume I/25
manias, III,152
Manichee (-s; -ism; -ist), I,1,2,9,19,23,24, 25,27,32,43,44,52,55,64,66,69,73,7 5,8,2,8,5,9,4,101,106,109,120,123,12 5,135,141; II,2,3,9,21,27,28,31,33, 37,43,97,104,105,107,110,113,126, 129,142,150,164,202,207,208,214,2 8,236; III,10,21,29,35,36,37,42,46, 53,57,61,79,94,95,102,104,109,1 23,124,127,136,138,144,154,155,16 5,167,170,176,177,178,181,183, 186,187,188,189,200,201,205-207,2 12-213,216; IV,1,2,1,25,27,35,42, 43,50,53,55,58,64,72,75,76,81,88,8 9,90,94,106,107,109,113,114,118,1 20,1,2,123,124, V,2,4,15,17,2 0,23,24,25,44,54,60,63,64; VI,2,5,6,8,9,11,14,15,16,17,20,22,2 6,27,31,33,36,37,41
alien evil nature in human beings, VI,6,14
false statements in bible, VI,16
good soul = particle of God, VI,6
two souls: one good, one evil, VI,6,9
Mantua, V,11
many (the word): all, II,135,145,147, 148,149,175-177,205,206,208,215
Marcellinus, I,68; II,178; III,177; IV,104; VI,25
Marcion, I,59; III,53; V,26
marital act, See marriage; sex,
marrige, I,9,22
See also concupiscence; sex
accusations against Augustine, V,23
barren, V,21
births making up for deaths, VI,30
carnal pleasure in, I,68
concupiscence, I,11; II,45; III,209
condemnation, I,2,21,26,66,66;
II,24,31; IV,58,114,121; V,24
creation of, I,70
defect in, II,122
death and, IV,68
evils to be healed in, III,144
fecundity as reason for, IV,5,10,19,29
fidelity, VI,22
God as source of, IV,117
God unites the spouses, III,138
good and evil, V,25
good tree, V,21 as . . .
goodness of, V,23
husband clings to wife, II,57
immoral intercourse in, II,40
institution, I,17; IV,118,121; VI,30
Julian attacks Book Two, II,22
make good use of sexual desire,
V,18,24
morality of, V,23
nature is distinct from, V,24
not a genus, V,24
original sin contracted from, I,22,64;
II,27,35,39,42; III,57,65; IV,56;
V,21,23,41; VI,14
paradise, I,62; II,93
praise of, V,24
praised by Ambrose, IV,113
praiseworthy, II,45
purposes; order, V,23
sex in, II,24,32,39
-disease, I,68
-as essence of, I,65
sexual desire, II,88; III,170
shame and pleasure in, II,105; IV,5
species of nature, V,46
two in one flesh, II,59,61
virginity and, IV,122
work of the devil, I,62,64; II,28,88;
IV,72,105,107,113
works of human beings, V,24
martyrs, I,50; VI,27; VI,36
Mary, Blessed Virgin, I,66;
IV,58,79,84,86,87,104,121,122,134;
VI,34,35
meaning: word of God, I,89
medicine: possibility of death and, V,47
Melchiades, Bishop, I,55
Melchizedek, II,179; III,38; IV,76,104;
VI,17,22
Meltides, V,25
memory, VI,13
Menoch (letter of Mani to), III,172,187;
IV,109
mercy, I,38,39,48,55,67,70,113,127,
132,133,134,141; II,8,106,117,168,
170,222; IV,124,129; V,47,61,64;
VI,6,14
believing by free will, VI,10
children of, IV,129,131
judgment, VI,12
rejected by sinner, I,130
vessels of, I,141; II,142; III,142
merit, I,122,126,141; II,101,117,146,166,
170; V,6,56,62; VI,9,30,40

Answer To The Pelagians III
divine justice, I,38
evil merit, V,63
justice in ascribing, IV,76
keeping the commandments, I,134
quality affected by sin, I,96
reward, VI,5
will as cause of, I,134; II,101
metaphor, III,87-88; IV,66
mind, II,52,60,233; VI,14
See also will
act of a nature, V,40
age and use of reason, I,47
causality, V,60
concupiscence, III,177
dull or sharp; defects, V,11
human beings born with defects of,
VII,14,16
image of God, IV,39,75
keen for understanding, IV,75
loss of innocence, VI,19,20
natural things, V,63
sin as free act of, V,42
will and, V,40,41,42,60
miracle: man born blind, III,162
misery, I,29,39,50,121; II,89,104,116,
119,163,214,236; III,57,65,89,
109,161,198,215; IV,38; VI,3,7,9,
14,16,21,24,30
modesty, II,60; V,15,16,23
actions not done in public, IV,37
Christ, IV,63
covering whatever is good, IV,42
customs vary, IV,44
intercourse, IV,31
natural acts, IV,37,43
private genital parts, IV,44,55,65
sexual behavior, IV,31
Monica, Saint, I,68
moral conditions, V,1
more (the word), II,205,206,208,209
mortality, I,67,71; II,76;
VII,12,25,30,31,39
body of this death . . . , I,67,69,71
Moses, I,141; II,69,217,221; III,18,34;
VI,14,15,41
deadth’s reign, Adam to Moses,
II,185-187,202
multiply (word usage), VI,26
mutilation, VI,18
Myrmidons, V,15
mysteries, III,106
nabu, IV,104
nakedness, IV,37,41
Adam and Eve, IV,65,79
Christ and shame, IV,63
offensive, IV,63
original sin, V,16
original state, IV,44,62
shame, IV,36,41,62; V,5; VI,26
various reasons for, IV,44
naming: sign of wisdom, V,1
natural relations (the term), V,20
natural sin, See original sin
nature (-s): V,40
See also human nature
actions and, VI,9
created subject to necessity of evil,
VI,12
creation as good, VI,5
creator, V,56
defects in, I,63,66; VI,16
diabolical, I,63
essential for a nature, V,53
evil:
-existing in a nature, I,114
-God cannot create, III,136
-as substance, I,69,85
-will attributed to, V,53,60
good, but with defects, V,64
good, with presence of evil, III,206
goodness, as a nature, VI,36
laws of, VI,30
meaning of, I,90
mutability of good and evil, I,97
not a genus, V,24
praises the creator, II,235
sin, V,53
substance (Manicheism), V,25
supreme goodness of creator of,
VI,16
will, V,56
work of God, V,63
necessary (-ity), I,72,82,84,103,106,134
conception, V,55
darkness; sin, V,54
definition, V,45
doing evil out of, V,50
emptiness or fullness, V,59
evil, V,61
free choice (not its use), V,58
having things as possible, V,47
natural part of creatures, V,46
natural things, V,63

Volume I/25
nature and free choice, V,56
neither virtue nor vice, V,62
part of a nature as, V,49
possible and, V,45-47,51,53,59-64
sin attributed to God, V,52
sinning, VI,3
voluntary acts, V,55
whatever is natural, V,46
will and, IV,93,103; V,53,57
willing happiness, V,53
whatever is natural, V,46
willingness, V,53

original sin, I,3,6,22,24,29,30,43,48,52,
92,98,136; III,2,44,77; IV,55,113,
119,120

See also Adam; devil; guilt; misery;
original state; paradise

abounding after the law,
II,217,218,220

in Adam all sin, I,25,74,109,113,125;
II,20,22,26,33,35,36,37,38,41,44,
47,49,50-57,59,61,63,64,66,82,
83,89,101,103,135,144,145,161,
163,172,173,174,177,183,185,18
7,194,199,202,212,213,215,217,
221,223,236; III,11,29,57,58,65,
85,87,88,91,92,154,177,186,187,
213; IV,1,23,42,64,67,79,90,94,
95,96,97,98,103,104,112,115,11
8,120,128,133,136; V,7,20,21,
30,31,40,41,64; VI,5,6,7,8,14,
16,21,22,27,29,31,33,36,37,41

Adam as image of God, II,30
Adam was destined to fall, VI,10
Adam's good nature vs. his will,
VI,13
all are born with, II,163; IV,70,83
all born of marriage, I,64
all made sinners by, II,149
all sinned in Adam, II,207
all were that one Adam, II,179
all who are born of sexual union,
IV,79

Ambrose on, I,48; II,21
baptism and healing effects of,
II,94,97
baptism and the end of death, II,93
beauty tempted the eye, I,71
blame for, II,64,101,107
blame nature, not imitation, III,11
born evil, III,155
Catholic faith, IV,136
cause of, V,20,21,24
children: imitation of first human,
II,148
choice good and evil, II,216
Christ died for all sinners,
II,163,169,170
Christ is either guilty or not human,
IV,80
Christ is free from, IV,82
circumcision takes away, II,73
commandment to be reborn, II,235
concupiscence, III,56; IV,68; V,13
concupiscence before the fall, VI,14

Answer To The Pelagians III
condemnation, See condemnation.
contracted:
  - by being born, IV, 78
  - by birth, removed by rebirth, II, 76
  - from our origin, I, 57, 63
  - removed, II, 218
questioned, II, 27
curse upon the serpent, VI, 28
death, See death.
defect by God’s judgment, V, 64
defect in human nature, II, 220;
  III, 67, 95, 96, 104, 109, 160, 161
defense or deception, IV, 113
denial of universality (Julian), II, 176;
  III, 53, 66, 162, 210;
  IV, 67, 84, 123, 129, 133;
  V, 22, 30, 55, 64;
  VI, 9, 12, 14, 16, 18, 22, 41
devil as author of, IV, 120
devil used the serpent, VI, 28
devil’s dominion over bodies, II, 27, 28 [bal]
dominion of the devil, II, 30, 147, 205;
  III, 46, 132; V, 40; VI, 20
effects, I, 54, 55; III, 71, 73, 102, 161
enormity of harm, VI, 23
evil:
  - evils increased, not begun by, VI, 26, 28
  - God accused of creating evil, VI, 6, 10
  - merit, I, 39
  - origin of, II, 17; III, 207; VI, 17
  - by will, not necessity, V, 50, 62
  - will; act of the mind, V, 60
  example(-s) of sin (from Adam),
  II, 62, 103, 107, 184, 185, 187
  existed before the law, II, 217
  existence after Christ questioned,
  - II, 71
existence of natural sin, II, 148
existing and remaining, IV, 96, 103
first evil will, then evil desire, I, 71
  flesh and spirit in discord, III, 178
  forbidden fruit, VI, 23
  free choice, I, 94; III, 102
  free will, IV, 90, 91; V, 35; VI, 7
  freedom of choice destroyed by, II, 88
generation and regeneration, III, 85
  God and inherited sin, V, 54
  grace, II, 113, 140, 142
  grace as more powerful than, II, 99
  grace removes guilt, II, 97, 98
great evils, II, 106
  greatness of the sin, VI, 13, 21, 27
  guilt, IV, 84, 90
  - before use of reason, III, 96
  - from our origin, II, 119
  - removed by rebirth, I, 70
  - unequaled by any sin, VI, 23
  - from will, not nature, II, 165
  harming Adam alone, II, 107
  healing, II, 130
  human miseries from, I, 85
  human nature, II, 114, 163
  human race subject to, III, 158
  image of God, VI, 35
imitation or generation as cause,
  II, 35, 47-50, 52-55, 56, 70, 75, 81,
  83, 105, 135, 137, 145, 146, 149,
  173, 177, 181, 187, 199, 205, 214, 21
  5, 216, 226; III, 19, 58, 86, 91;
  IV, 129; V, 62; VI, 27
immortality, VI, 7
imputed under the law, II, 73, 84
inborn evil, V, 43
inclination toward sinning, V, 48
increasing after the law, II, 218, 219
incredibly great sin of, VI, 7
infant salvation, II, 2
information, not punishment (Gn 3:19), VI, 27
inherited sin, III, 216
injuries inflicted by Adam’s sin,
  II, 87-89
injury, I, 96
injury to human nature denied, I, 97
  injustice of, II, 20
innate, III, 89, 90
innocence attacked by, VI, 24
kingdom of the devil, II, 208
knowledge of good and evil, VI, 12
Mani and Julian on, III, 175; VI, 8
Manicheans on, III, 37
many died because of the one, II, 134
many made sinners by,
  II, 144, 146, 147, 149, 215
many, not all, II, 215
many sins after the one sin,
  II, 111-115
  minimizing Adam’s sin, VI, 23, 27
miseries; evils, II, 104, 116
natural evil, IV, 71, 128; V, 3, 31, 55
natural sin, II, 16, 113, 201; III, 31;
  VI, 13, 21
nature corrupted by, I,72
necessity of doing evil, VI,20
necessity/possibility,
V,38,54,55,60,63; VI,10
no one is born free from, II,20
no sin by any involved in generation,
II,24,28
not all polluted by, II,202
nothing new resulting from, VI,27
origin of, I,44; II,214; V,55,60
other grave sins compared with,
VI,21
pain of childbirth, VI,25,26
paradise, VI,36
parents’ sins, VI,21
passed to all human beings, V,63
pattern of sin (Julian), II,109
Paul on, II,104,148,202
Pelagian argument, II,27
power of grace, II,129
procreation, III,64-65
propagation of, IV,121
punished with justice, II,74
punishment:
-all are born with, II,189
-immensity, VI,11,27
-for our origin, III,37
-passed on, I,105; II,63
reason and piety oppose natural sin,
I,31
reason for term “original”, V,9
rebirth compared with, I,105
redemption, IV,84
reign of death, II,185,191,192
reigning after Christ, II,84
reigning without the will, IV,96
remedy (rebirth), II,97
removed by rebirth, VI,22,22,22,36
restoration to original state, II,90
sacred/gros/hunger for forbidden
fruit, I,71
seen as children grow, I,47
sex seen as blameworthy, V,5
sexual desire, V,16
sexual organs not changed by, V,8
shame re genitals, IV,44
sin/death passed on to all,
II,195-199,216
sin mingled with the seeds, VI,21,25
sin: serious or slight, II,211
sin which is also punishment for sin,
I,44,47,104; III,33;
V,28,38,47,51,59; VI,17
sinful inclinations, II,107,142
sinfulness as natural, II,100
sins committed without knowledge
of, II,107
sins of others as our sins, I,57; III,25
slaves to, I,88
sources (four possible), II,29-34
suffering of fear and pain, VI,17
sufferings of the newborn, VI,27,35
temporal and eternal deaths, II,100
thorns and thistles, VI,27,28
transmission by Adam denied, II,99
transmission by condition of human
nature, II,145
undermines example of Christ, IV,87
universality of, IV,121
unjust, IV,76
virtue, III,70
will, I,47; II,217
-as cause of, IV,95,116
-and contraction of, II,112
-first human being, II,236
-not seed, VI,35
-the sinner, Adam, I,47
Wisdom, Book of, IV,124
woman (Eve) as cause of, VI,25
wretched human race, VI,27
original state (before Adam’s fall), V,1,5,16
See also baptism of infants
children in paradise, III,198
concupiscence in, II,45,91; VI,16,22
death, II,138
different start; different end, IV,39
freedom restored, VI,11
if no one had sinned, VI,17
incorruptibility, IV,39
keeping commandments in, VI,14
lives, if no one had sinned, IV,123
Mani deceived, VI,14
miseries as part of, III,147
nakedness, IV,44,62
no vanity in, II,178
passing into spiritual body, VI,39
suffering, even without original sin,
VI,26
pagans, I,83
pain:
-justice, VI,17
-sensing, IV,69
Palestine, I,133; II,66
-Pelagius in court, VI,25

See also baptism of infants

Children in paradise, III,198
Concupiscence in, II,45,91; VI,16,22
Death, II,138
Different start; different end, IV,39
Freedom restored, VI,11
If no one had sinned, VI,17
Incorruptibility, IV,39
Keeping commandments in, VI,14
Lives, if no one had sinned, IV,123
Mani deceived, VI,14
Miseries as part of, III,147
Nakedness, IV,44,62
No vanity in, II,178
Passing into spiritual body, VI,39
Suffering, even without original sin, VI,26
Pagans, I,83
Pain:
Justice, VI,17
Sensing, IV,69
Palestine, I,133; II,66
Pelagius in court, VI,25

See also baptism of infants

Children in paradise, III,198
Concupiscence in, II,45,91; VI,16,22
Death, II,138
Different start; different end, IV,39
Freedom restored, VI,11
If no one had sinned, VI,17
Incorruptibility, IV,39
Keeping commandments in, VI,14
Lives, if no one had sinned, IV,123
Mani deceived, VI,14
Miseries as part of, III,147
Nakedness, IV,44,62
No vanity in, II,178
Passing into spiritual body, VI,39
Suffering, even without original sin, VI,26
Pagans, I,83
Pain:
Justice, VI,17
Sensing, IV,69
Palestine, I,133; II,66
Pelagius in court, VI,25

See also baptism of infants

Children in paradise, III,198
Concupiscence in, II,45,91; VI,16,22
Death, II,138
Different start; different end, IV,39
Freedom restored, VI,11
If no one had sinned, VI,17
Incorruptibility, IV,39
Keeping commandments in, VI,14
Lives, if no one had sinned, IV,123
Mani deceived, VI,14
Miseries as part of, III,147
Nakedness, IV,44,62
No vanity in, II,178
Passing into spiritual body, VI,39
Suffering, even without original sin, VI,26
Pagans, I,83
Pain:
Justice, VI,17
Sensing, IV,69
Palestine, I,133; II,66
Pelagius in court, VI,25

See also baptism of infants

Children in paradise, III,198
Concupiscence in, II,45,91; VI,16,22
Death, II,138
Different start; different end, IV,39
Freedom restored, VI,11
If no one had sinned, VI,17
Incorruptibility, IV,39
Keeping commandments in, VI,14
Lives, if no one had sinned, IV,123
Mani deceived, VI,14
Miseries as part of, III,147
Nakedness, IV,44,62
No vanity in, II,178
Passing into spiritual body, VI,39
Suffering, even without original sin, VI,26
Pagans, I,83
Pain:
Justice, VI,17
Sensing, IV,69
Palestine, I,133; II,66
Pelagius in court, VI,25

See also baptism of infants

Children in paradise, I,398
Concupiscence in, II,45,91; VI,16,22
Death, I,45
Different start; different end, IV,39
Freedom restored, VI,11
If no one had sinned, VI,17
Incorruptibility, IV,39
Keeping commandments in, VI,14
Lives, if no one had sinned, IV,123
Mani deceived, VI,14
Miseries as part of, III,147
Nakedness, IV,44,62
No vanity in, II,178
Passing into spiritual body, VI,39
Suffering, even without original sin, VI,26
Pagans, I,83
Pain:
Justice, VI,17
Sensing, IV,69
Palestine, I,133; II,66
Pelagius in court, VI,25
Answer To The Pelagians III

paradise, I,52,54,69,71,72,90,94; II,22,39,42,59,91,92,93,119,122,21,8,236; II,45,48,56,162,210,211 See also Adam; original sin; original state bereavements in, III,154 best of all places, VI,16 bodies in, if no sin, I,116 children (if no original sin), III,198 concupiscence in, III,167,186,187; IV,19; V,10,20; VI,8 deaths and punishments in, I,68; III,161; VI,22,27,39 defects of human beings in, V,22, VI,16 evils, before the fall, III,187 fear of death in, VI,14 feeblemindedness in, III,161 flesh and spirit in, IV,37,38,114 forbidden fruit, I,71; V,16; VI,30,41 guilt; compelled to leave, VI,30 human miseries, without original sin, III,147,154,198 humans enriched by, VI,20 if no one had sinned . . . , I,70,116; III,198; V,1,3,64; VI,3,5,7,9,13,14,16,21,23,25,27 immortality in, VI,30 intercourse in, I,70 law as evidence of free choice, VI,15 naked and not ashamed, III,74; IV,10,36,37,62,63,66 original state, I,67,71; III,65,95,110,154 outcasts, VI,21 pain and grief in, VI,27,36 pain of childbirth in, V,14,15,17 place of happiness, VI,9,13,14 pleasure, VI,23 punishments in, III,197; VI,36 sex in, III,177 -intercourse, I,70 -mockery, V,15 -organs obey will, V,15,16,20 -sexual desire, I,67 -sowing seed (man and farmer), V,15 spiritual, VI,39 sufferings (before original sin), IV,114; VI,25,26,27,30 thorns in, VI,28 pardon, See forgiveness of sin parents, I,52,57; II,24,35,40; IV,6; V,7,23 fathers and children, VI,30 guilt of their children, II,42,45 sins affecting children, VI,21 sour grapes, VI,21 parricide, I,57 passion(-s), I,105; III,169,170; IV,33,108; VI,14 patience, I,67; II,94,166; III,113,154 patriarchs, I,50 Patricius (letter of Mani), III,186; IV,109 Paul, Saint, Apostle, I,131,133,141; II,19,38,54,63,84,95,102,104,142,1 47,150,158,184,220,222,226,23 6; III,12,91,94,99; IV,1,36,44, 50,55,103,116,123; V,14,25,43,59,61,63; VI,10,16,31,36 changed by grace of God, III,11 on justification, II,128-134 natural goodness of intercourse, V,17,20 still Saul, I,93,133 peace, I,72; II,106; VI,27 flesh and spirit, I,72 paradise, I,71 Pelagius (-ians), I,2,14,33,35,48,56,59,67, 70,73,75,94,96,115,129,133; II,22,41,51,66,3,97,103,204,107,11 2,142,150,153,166,188,192,198,214, 215,232; III,6,28,37,53,56,57,101,105,136,138,154,156,177,178,1 87,199,207; IV,2,5,10,27,43,44, 50,67,73,81,88,89,106,109,112,114, 118,122,123,136; V,9,23,25,30,64; VI,3,7,16,21,25 penance, III,1,48; V,47 guilt and pardon, VI,19 sins healed by, III,51 penitents, VI,30 perfection, V,61 persecution, III,35; V,4; VI,2 Peter, Saint, Apostle, IV,44,87,123,126; VI,34,36 another will bind you . . . , II,186 Pharaoh, I,141 Pharisees, I,75 Philo, IV,123 philosophy: Christian, IV,22 Phoenician (term of insult), VI,18 Phoenicians, III,199 physician, V,47; VI,20 piety, I,86; II,13; III,122

Volume I/25
Plato, I,116; VI,22
pleasure, I,64; IV,22,23,25; VI,3,5,23
force of, V,11
married couples and sexual desire,
V,13
senses, I,71
sexual, IV,28,39,42,43
Pontius Pilate, II,178
possible/possibility:
condition of having things as, V,47
definition, V,45,61
evil act as, V,50
freedom, V,57
good or evil, V,57
good will, V,57
the necessary,
V,45-47,51,53,54,59-64
proof of a free being, V,51
sin; saints in heaven, V,58
sinning, V,58; VI,11
virtue and sinning, V,61
voluntary things, V,63
potter, I,113,126,128,129,130,133,135,
138,139,140,141; II,19,22
praise, IV,5,10,11,12,134
false, III,85,93
prayer:
intercessory, III,166
predestination: will, V,60
predetermination: good and evil, V,57
pregnancy: God’s power, I,141
pregnant women (in paradise), III,187;
IV,114
prepositions, IV,97
pride, I,80,132,134; III,113,115,122,183;
IV,18,22,97,129,134; V,62
priesthood: Levitical, VI,22
procreation, II,55,40; V,7,20; VI,14
concupiscence, III,212
devil’s dominion, II,45
good of marriage, IV,115,117
goodness of union effecting, III,142
licit sexual union, II,44; III,177
original sin, III,64-65
sexual desire, I,68,70; V,13,16
promiscuity, V,23; VI,30
promise:
Abraham, III,85
children of the, II,153,158
faith or circumcision, II,160,220
God’s oath, III,40,46,78
heirs of, and the law, II,159-162
propagation:
See also generation
concupiscence, III,167
loins of Abraham, VI,22
natural law of, VI,22
prophets, III,72
death and, II,171
false, IV,34,35
God judges through, III,12
virtues, II,188
prosperity, V,4
prostitute, V,17,18
providence, III,109; IV,128,131; V,64
baptized people, VI,12
God’s care for evil persons, V,64
prudence, I,36; III,61
puberty, V,11
pudenda, IV,37,44,62
punishment, I,67,72,121,133; III,113
deserved, VI,36
earth’s barrenness, VI,27
See also eternal punishment.
evil merit; sin, II,105; III,204;
IV,2,31,33,34,56; V,26
gift of nature, VI,27
good for the one who imposes it,
V,26
incentive to sin, IV,35
infants; God’s justice, III,136
justice of God, II,138; III,154
justly imposed, V,64; VI,36
law, II,161
pain of childbirth, VI,21,25,26
relative to evil done, IV,122
reward opposed to, VI,10,36
school children, VI,9
shame, IV,33
sins committed by free will, III,3
temporal; for sin, VI,36
purity, I,54
Pythagoras, V,1
raising, See resurrection
reason, I,69,73,94,137; II,2,11,13,14,16,
31,42,55,84,104,110,117,145,161,1
85,186,236; III,6,31,61; IV,59,75,
116,118,129,136; V,2,15,23,24;
VI,41
age for use of, I,47,48
biblical interpretation, II,22

Volume I/25

Answer To The Pelagians III
children and sin, I,113
evil quality; mutability, VI,19
imitation and use of, II,147
sin and the will, VI,19
sin and use of, V,29
Rebecca, I,141; III,88
rebirth, See baptism
reconciliation: state of enmity with God, II,172
redemption, II,30; VI,11
See also salvation
body and soul, I,101
children need Christ the savior, V,25
taking away our sins, II,225
religion, I,24
repentance, IV,13,63,126,129,131; V,64;
VI,17,19
repetition = boredom, II,44; III,140,144
resurrection, I,87
term: future blessedness, VI,40
the word, VI,36
resurrection of the body, I,96; II,98;
III,37,94; IV,38,116
all brought to life in Christ, VI,31,36
belief in, II,33
concupiscence will not be there, V,13
equality with Christ, VI,34
faith, VI,34
faith in combat, II,99
good or bitter, VI,36
heavenly man, VI,40
Manicheism, VI,36
Paul on (1 Cor 15:12-24), VI,32-36
reality of, VI,36
righteousness, III,148; VI,36
seeds come to life . . . , V,14
woman married seven times, VI,30
Reticius, Bishop, I,55
reverence, II,16; III,124
reward:
avoiding sin, II,166
greater good merited by lesser good, V,58
inability to sin as, V,56; VI,5,12
punishment opposed to, VI,10,36
rich: labor, VI,29
righteousness, I,57,67,69,76,79,82,
94,96,99,106,131,133,138,139,140;
II,54,101; III,172; V,47; VI,18,22,
30,37
abounded more than sin, II,208
acts of (Ezekiel 18), III,38
battle against concupiscence, VI,8
Christ, II,154; VI,23,27
Christ dying in vain, II,170,198,199
comes upon all human beings, II,103
death of Abel, VI,27
delight in, II,217,226
eternal life, II,215
faith or works, I,141
forgiveness of many sins, II,114
free in regard to, I,107
Gentiles and, II,158
grace, II,105,106,126
happiness, VI,12
imitating obedience of Christ, II,215
imitation of righteous persons, II,146
imposed by Christ, IV,87
innocence lost, VI,19
justification, II,135
law, II,220; VI,15,18,41
life through Christ, II,144,215
love, II,142
nature and the law, II,188
necessity of, III,122
obedience of Christ,
II,144,146,147,148,149
old testament persons, II,146
pattern of, II,188
Paul’s exhortation to, I,109
preservation, II,222
pursuit of, II,233
reborn in Christ, I,140; II,190
resurrection of spiritual body, VI,40
resurrection of the body, III,148
sacraments, II,224
sanctification, II,232
second life of the body, VI,7
self-will, II,158
sin, VI,11
slaves of, I,107,108
spirit is life, IV,136
Spirit of righteousness, III,51
voluntary action, IV,84
Rimini, Synod of, I,75
road safety, VI,1
Romans, Letter to, II,20; II,150-153; III,85
Rome, I,17,18,94; III,35,118
Romulus, I,22
roots, IV,97,99
Sabbath, II,73,151; IV,134
Sabellians, V,25

Volume I/25
sacrament(-s), I,9,53,54; II,92,116,129; III,124,150; IV,122
criminals receiving, I,57
human beings improved by, V,9
old testament; grace, I,124
righteousness conferred through, II,224
tree of life as, VI,30

sacrifice:
animal victims, I,38
Canaanites killing their children, IV,128
temporariness of, III,16
sacrilege: shame for God’s creation, IV,63
Saints, I,103,108; II,13,39,66,188,215; III,116,154; IV,58; VI,30,39,40
concupiscence, V,59
death as precious, VI,31,40
free choice, VI,10
God’s foreknowledge of number of, III,198
number complete, VI,30,37
possibility of sinning (in heaven), V,58
punishments of, VI,36
resurrection of, VI,40
reward of, V,61; VI,12

salvation, IV,57,114; VI,11,18,21
baptism, III,188
before Christ, I,115-116
conditions for, III,44
death immediately after baptism, II,215
death to sin, II,225
enduring penalties of this life, III,154
evil removed from human nature,
III,195
faith, I,141
God’s foreknowledge of evil, III,98
good God, and defects in, V,11
human beings produced from, V,11,14,21
immortal, IV,135
mixing choice with, VI,9,21
paradise, V,15
spiritually understood, III,84; IV,135
two kinds: birth; rebirth, IV,135
will, VI,17,22
works of God, V,11,12,24

self-control, I,70
senses, III,109,142,167; IV,5,23,76,118; VI,5,14
awakened (by soul), VI,20
devil and, IV,118
humans surpass other living things, I,94
pleasure, I,71
power of sensation, IV,29
report to spirit, IV,27,28
unclean spirit, V,6
virtue and ardent desire, IV,49

serpent:
curse upon, VI,25,28

sign; death, I,140
sex [general; in marriage], I,65,66; IV,4,5,10,115
See also modesty; shame before/after paradise, V,17
cause of original sin, V,20
Christ’s choice of chastity, IV,58

concupiscence when mind is unwilling, III,187
condemnation, in marriage, II,32
desire for sexual sins, IV,22,53
desire necessary for, V,5,17
devil recognizes his own, IV,10,14

Answer To The Pelagians III
diabolical, IV,107; V,16,19,20,24,25,30
differences of the sexes, V,17
evil habit, I,69
fecundity, IV,6,9,29
force of pleasure and desire, V,11
generation, II,56
God’s blessing on, IV,7
God’s creation, IV,40,117
good produced out of evil, III,181,184
good use of an evil, III,185; IV,117
instituted by God, V,17
intercourse and creation, IV,118
law of members; second nature, I,69
licit/illicit intercourse, III,170,185
marital act:
  - chastity, V,17
  - disease, I,68
-intercourse as good/licit, V,18,24
-sign of universality, IV,121
members resist counsel, I,69
natural pleasure, IV,38
natural relations, in marriage, V,17
openly speaking about, IV,43
paradise:
  - marriage, I,70
  - mockery, V,15
pleasure, I,68; II,59,105; VI,5,23
possibility of moral goodness, V,20
possible, not necessary, V,46,49
praiseworthy, V,6
privacy, III,177; IV,44
relations against nature, V,17
relations with woman as natural, V,46
serious sins arising from, V,21
shame in intercourse, II,92;
  III,142,177,187
sin, IV,43
sinful only in excess, V,16
terms, “marital” or “natural” relations, V,18
sexual desire, See concupiscence
sexual organs, I,68,106
See also shame
sexual union, See sex
obedience of, II,42,45; III,187
original sin does not change, V,8
original state, IV,5,41
paradise (arousal), V,16
plain language for, IV,66-67
suited for generation, IV,5,10
will, in paradise, IV,39,43; V,15
sexual union. See sex.
shame, I,12,16,91; II,2,9,11,60,92,105;
  III,46,143,154,167,177,184;
  IV,5,10,26,30,43,54; V,6,13,19;
  VI,16,30,39
causes of, IV,62
concupiscence, IV,38,67; V,16,59
human body, IV,63
nakedness, III,74; V,5; VI,26
sex in marriage, III,170,177,184
sexual arousal, IV,62
sexual organs, IV,26,31,43,44,63
sexual union, III,142,177,187
sin, V,30
works of God and humans, IV,31,36,37,63
sight, III,119; IV,29,37
silence: promoting error by, IV,15,17
Simon Magus, I,98
simple-mindedness, IV,8
simplicity, I,54,108; III,106
sin, III,1
See also condemnation; good and evil; justification; law; Manicheism; original sin; punishment; temptation
able not to sin, V,58
abounding; the law, II,70,217,220,221
Adam and possibility of sinning, VI,12
all die in Adam, VI,36
angel or human (natures), V,63
ascribed to God, V,49
attributing to the innocent, I,57
avoiding commission of, II,72,
  III,111; IV,122
baptism and dying to sin, II,172,173; V,9
baptism and the will, I,98,106
believers should stop, II,224
birth and rebirth, III,50
bitterness as effect of, I,47
blameworthy action, II,221
blaming birth for, I,70

Volume I/25
blaming necessities of nature for, II,7
body is dead on account of, II,76;
III,65,75,94
body of, nailed to Christ’s cross, I,67;
II,223
born under power of, I,2,109,115;
II,1,208,228; III,37,127,200;
IV,90,97,108; V,25; VI,14
Canaanites imitating Ham, IV,129
capability: things made of nothing,
V,39
causes, II,105
Christ’s death to, and ours, II,225-227
circumcision as symbol of removal,
II,221
committing, refraining from, I,78
concupiscence as path to, I,71
condition for existing, IV,103
consent, II,226; IV,48,53
daily asking for pardon, II,216
death as merit of, VI,37
death as temporal punishment for,
VI,30
death reigns through, II,69,191,192
death to, through baptism, II,222-224
defective freedom, I,98
definition(-s),
I,41,44-47,104,105,116;
II,17,80,81; III,157; IV,118;
V,26,28,29,30,43,47,51;
VI,17,21
delight in, II,217,220
desire for, I,71;
II,71,105,161,220,226
development as father of, I,90
domination in this world, II,173
doubt about existence of evil, V,27
essence of, I,79
eternal nature of darkness (Mani),
V,30,31,49
eternal punishment, VI,36
evil merit, III,204
evil will, I,24; II,8,220; V,21,26
Eve; beginning, III,85
exists in a nature, IV,116
Ezekiel (18:1-30), III,38,39,47-52
free choice loses strength by, VI,8
forced into, I,94
four persons involved in generation, II,29
free act of the mind, V,42,56
free will, I,44,97; II,39,68,201,214,
221; IV,101; V,28,38; VI,10
freedom:
-perishes through sin, I,94
-possibility of, I,108; VI,11
genus and species, I,47
God alone can judge, III,33
God as creator of, III,141
God as guilty of, V,63
God’s incapability to sin, V,32; VI,5
grace abounded more than, II,85,98,
142,147,148,204,209,221
grace, after many sins, II,103,222
grace and avoiding, IV,122
grace superior to, II,206-209
greater good = not to be able to,
V,56,58
human beings become better by, V,16
human beings created without necessity to, V,56
habit of, I,16,67,96,105; IV,91,103;
VI,14,41
happiness and, V,60
harder to commit than to avoid, III,111
hereditary, III,87
ignorance of, before the law,
II,72,221
imitation, not generation,
II,52,135,149,186,194,199; VI,31
immersion, I,47
implied toward, I,83
imputed to a human being, V,53
imputing, when law does not exist,
II,200 &
inability to, as reward, V,58; VI,10,12
inheritance of, I,1,13,20,91;
III,15,20,29,31,34,47-49; VI,31
innocence of the newborn, II,31
innocent before use of will, II,21
Jesus saves people from their sins, II,2
Jews, after receiving the law, II,209
justice of God, II,80-84
justly imputing; pardon, I,67,105,106
law and knowledge of, II,72,221;
III,210; VI,41
law of members; law of mind, I,71;
II,189,233
lawful condemnation, I,48
love for, I,16,94
natural (Mani), III,67-82,160-161;
IV,92-93; V,25,40,63; VI,5,17
nature and the will, I,72
necessity of, I,99,105,106;
IV,35,87,122; V,31,62;
VI,3,6,7,15

Answer To The Pelagians III
Answer To The Pelagians III

- attributed to God, V,52
- darkness, V,54
- will, V,38,47,52
newborn infant; sacrifice for sin, II,119,201,219
no faith in the future, VI,38
no other evil, III,203
old self nailed to cross with Christ, I,67; II,223
origin; the will, II,21,56
original sin plus many sins, II,111-115
our many sins vs. Adam’s one sin, II,163
pardon; mercy of God, I,57
pardon of past sins = freedom from, I,108
parent/child relations, III,5,10,12,13,14,15-22,27,28,30,31-36,37,42,46,47,49,52,54,55,57,61-65,66,78,83,84; VI,17,21,23,27
parents have eaten sour grapes . . . , III,39,42,84
passed on by generation, III,19,28
pattern of (Adam), II,188
penalty for sins after original sin, VI,21
pleasure of, V,2
possibility; necessity, V,51,58,59,60; VI,5,9
power of; power of grace, II,8,97-103
preceding penalties, VI,27
punishment, I,47; IV,35,100; V,26; VI,9
-children punished for sins of parents, I,57
-as evil, III,203
-relative to seriousness of, II,105
purification, III,187
rational beings alone are able to, V,39
redemption: Jesus the savior, IV,13
reigning, II,99,198,199,226; IV,96
remains until forgiven, IV,96,100,116
renouncing, II,223
resisting evil, I,71
resurrection of Christ, II,223
reward in avoiding, II,166
sacrifice offered for, I,4
shame, IV,31; V,30
sin and free will; before/after law, II,201,221
sinful flesh, VI,33
sins greater than Adam’s sin, VI,22
sins punished by sins, IV,31,34,35
slaves of, I,82,87,88,94,99,107,109; II,8,223,228,229,230; VI,19
source of, I,71; V,28
spiritual, V,40
state of nature, I,96
sting of death, II,71; VI,40
temporal punishment due to, VI,36
unwilling, III,122
use of reason, V,29
vessels of dishonor, I,135
virtue and possibility of sin, V,61
voluntary, V,43,59
warning against imitation, VI,27
will, I,47,60;
II,28,105,111,116,220,226;
III,157,160,163,210; IV,76,90,91,95-100,116,121,129; V,64
-Adam’s sin, VI,22
-existing without will, IV,96,97,100,102,103,116,136
-in, and not in, the will, IV,91
-reason, VI,19
-willing to be able to, V,31
woman (Eve) as origin, II,56
work of the devil, V,63
sinner(-s)
Christ died for all, II,169,170
conversion of, I,54; V,64
death as a benefit, VI,27
devil, not Adam, was first, II,47
free choice, I,91,96
God as potter, III,101
God does not withhold goods from, V,64
guilt, I,106
malice, IV,127
many, because of disobedience of one, II,148,149
natural sin as pattern for, II,105
rejecting God’s mercy, I,130
sin as punishment of, IV,34,35
temporal punishment, VI,21
Sirach, IV,123
slander, I,98; II,58,104,117; III,35,54,169;
IV,72,73,88,104,106,109,121
slavery, I,87
freedom and, I,107
slave to one’s conqueror, I,112,113
snake (lance), IV,38

Volume I/25
Sodomites, I,118; II,186; III,12; IV,128; VI,23
Solomon, III,52
sorrows, IV,90
species, V,24,46
spirit:
  concupiscence opposed to, IV,33
  flesh vs. spirit, See under desire.
  harmony with flesh, VI,6,14
  sinning, I,101
  spiritual beings: natural, V,40
  spiritual life: tree of life; paradise, VI,39
  sponsors, II,224; III,199
  springtime, IV,38
  stars: multiplied, VI,26
  Stoics, I,35; IV,43
  students, VI,9
  stupidity, I,12
  substance:
    defects, I,66
    natural characteristics, VI,19
    work of the devil, III,126
  suffering, II,166,223; V,1
    alien nature in human beings, VI,25
    common lot, III,187
    as an evil, V,22
    nature’s plan, VI,26
    as punishment, I,57
    source of, VI,16
    test, VI,17
  Susanna, IV,37
  sweat, VI,27,29
  swine, IV,75
  Symplegades, IV,13
  teachers, VI,9
  temperance, I,36
  temptation, I,72,130; II,7,167; IV,82,122;
    VI,14,41
  Lord’s Prayer, I,67,90,93
  prayer, III,107,109
  resisting, I,45
  Tertullian, II,178
  Theodore of Mopsuetia, III,111
  thorns, VI,27,28,29
  Thyatira, I,89
  tithe, IV,104; VI,17,22
  traducianists, I,6,25,27,75; II,14,27,
    28,62,102,142,236; III,7,10,20,
    35,41,85,91,123,152,165; IV,44,90,
    118,130; V,2,6,30,54,63; VI,3-5,8,
    11,15,31
  tree:
    known by its fruits, V,21,23,24
  tree of life:
    animals protected by, VI,39
    bodily; spiritual, VI,39
    not necessary to die, VI,30
    separation from as beginning of
    death, VI,30,31
  trials, II,37; III,14
  Trinity, I,29,30,75; II,16; III,106;
    V,25,30,31,63; VI,22
  truth, I,2,3,4,5,15,17,18,19,23,87,90,
    117,135; II,1,4,11,13,19,20,24,26,
    42,62,79,100,102,112,113,117,127,
    150,163,215,216; III,20,31,34,
    36,46,52,53,66,67,85,88,91,100,
    138,188,199,216; IV,8,12,19,31,
    33,47,56,89,91,103,104,113,
    121,128; V,1,4,6,13,20,26,44,
    55,59,61; VI,1,2,6,20,25,30,36,41
  Tully, See Cicero.
  tunics, IV,37
  Turibius, Bishop, I,1; II,11; IV,30; V,4
  twins, VI,22
  Two souls, or Against the two souls, I,44
  ugliness, I,116
  unbelief: eternal punishment, VI,30
  unbelievers, VI,41
  unhappiness, I,90
  Valerius, Count, I,7,16,109; III,96,177
  vanity, I,36,63; III,100; V,1; VI,7,20,27
  vengeance, III,26; IV,34
  verb: usage of past tense, VI,30
  vessels:
    dishonorable (=sin), I,135,141
    purpose of making, I,126,134
    vice, II,106,223,236; III,1,32,71,106,
      112,114,122; IV,24; VI,3,7,8,14,15,
      23,29
    earthly man, VI,40
    God’s gifts and, III,163-165
    necessity, V,62
    victory, II,12
    vipers, malice of, IV,129
    virgin birth, I,141
    virginity, IV,121,122
lost; return to chastity, VI,19
virgins, V,17
virility, V,11
virtue(-s), I,64,71,81,86,87,91,132; II,3,6,7,8,9,2,132,153,161,188,214,223; IV,20,87; V,1; VI,7,12,30,41
attaining beauty of, VI,7
blessed fullness (heaven), V,62
commandments, II,233
c Condition: no evil will, V,61
desires of present life, IV,22
eagerness for, II,233
free choice, III,122
free from [rejecting], I,107
God’s gifts, III,163-165
heavenly man, VI,40
merit, II,146
necessity of the good, V,61,62
obedience as chief virtue, VI,15
original sin and capability for, III,70
parents and children, III,52
possibility of sin, V,61
pursuit of, I,67
reverence for, III,1
senses and ardent desire, IV,49
testing, III,49
trust in one’s own,
II,167,220,229,233;
III,73,76,107,109,113; V,62,64;
VI,12,18
unity of virtues, I,36
voluntary, V,61
vocation, I,93,135
war, I,4,49
wealth, IV,22,23; VI,29
widows, V,17
wife: subject to husband, VI,26
will (free will), I,39,45,79,80,126,133,141; II,6,8,10,11,15,20,38,45,65,83,101,103,107,108,131,196,216,232;
III,2,3,32,56,82,98,102,110,111,114,117,181,191; IV,23,37
See also free choice; sin
act of a nature, V,40
act of the mind, nothing forcing it,
V,60
acts of choice mixed with the seeds,
VI,9,21
admonished, I,93
baptism and sin, I,98,106
becoming Word of God by, IV,84
capacity of will to exist, V,38
captive, III,112
change, II,231; V,42
characteristics (Julian), II,138
children and sin, I,113
children without use of reason, I,48
concupiscence obedient to, I,71;
IV,38,43; VI,22
correction of, II,234
creatures not capable of evil, V,39
definition, I,46-47; V,41,42; VI,11
denial that God produces, IV,8
duties from free will, I,35
evil:
-Adam as source of, V,41
-attributed to necessity, V,62
-cause of evil works, V,21,22,60
-children lacking use of will, VI,5
-derived from bad will, III,154
-human nature, V,53,61
-merits of evil wills, VI,9
-a nature, V,60,61
-nothing as cause of, V,31
-pardon granted to evil will, I,111
-personal responsibility, V,42,43
-possible or necessary, V,62
-recipient of evil will, V,56
-source of evil, VI,9
freedom:
-of acting well, VI,15,19
-re evil acts, I,97,99,100,105
-force and, I,101
-to resist devil, I,90
-source of sin, V,28
-unchangeable, VI,12
of God, III,106
-action on human wills, III,166
-acting on hearts, V,4
-bodies made from seeds by, V,14
-cannot be bad, III,120
-human restoration, after original sin,
VI,20
-identity with God, V,42
-not able to sin, VI,5
-perfect love of, VI,37
-producing acts of will, III,166; V,57
-producing interior acts, II,157,158
-world made by, V,45
God’s intention blocked by, I,93
good will; bad will, I,97; V,57
good will is work of God, V,61
grace, I,94,95; III,115

Volume I/25
Volume I/25

guilt, IV, 84, 94
habit of sin, IV, 103; VI, 14
See happiness.
help in resisting evil, I, 71
I do not the will that . . . , I, 67, 91, 96, 99, 105; II, 15, 38; III, 73, 110, 112, 177, 178, 180, 185; IV, 87, 91, 103; V, 22, 28, 40, 50, 51, 52, 59, 60, 62, 64; VI, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, 19, 21
imitating Christ, IV, IV, 86
innocence lost by defect of, VI, 19
justice, I, 37
loss of evils introduced by, VI, 19
loss of natural goods, VI, 19
love needed for good will, III, 122
meaning of, I, 90
merit, I, 134
nature:
-causes, V, 56
-essential, V, 53
-good or evil will, V, 62
-sinning, without will, I, 72
-vitiating, I, 85
necessity, IV, 93, 103; V, 52, 57, 61
need to be set free, VI, 15
newborn children, II, 18
not free if nature is captive, IV, 80
origin, V, 41, 56
original sin, V, 35
originally created as good, V, 61
owned by devil, V, 6
possible, V, 47, 57, 61
preceding cause, V, 41
prepared by the Lord, I, 134; II, 6; III, 1, 107, 114, 163; IV, 126; V, 57; VI, 9, 10, 11, 34
removal of guilt, VI, 19
reward or punishment, V, 62
set free by baptism, I, 101
sexual arousal/desire, I, 70; III, 187
sexual organs in paradise, V, 15, 16
sexual organs obeying, I, 68
sin and, see under sin
slaves to vices, II, 236
source: the human person, V, 42
struggle, I, 83
temptation, III, 109
two wills: one good, one bad, V, 21
uncoerced act of the mind, V, 40, 41, 42
unhappiness, I, 90
wisdom, I, 69
beneficial knowledge, V, 3
earthly; unspiritual, V, 57
giving names as sign of, V, 1
God the giver of, IV, 125
human beings, IV, 123
spiritual tree of life, VI, 39
Wisdom, Book of, IV, 123-125, 128, 129, 130; V, 2
witness bearing, I, 83
women: Plato, VI, 22
Word of God: incarnation, IV, 84
words:
decorum, IV, 67
metaphorical use, III, 87-88, 92
reality, II, 36
work(-s), I, 141
find rest for your souls . . . , VI, 29
human condition, V, 1, 3
lesser punishment than death, VI, 27
of mercy, III, 48
pleasure of the mind, VI, 27
punishments turned into benefits, VI, 29
rich and poor: all labor, VI, 29
world, II, 31; V, 4
all present goods and pleasures, IV, 20, 23
concupiscence, III, 185, 205, 209; IV, 5, 18
creation from nothing, IV, 21, 23; V, 56
loving the, III, 170; IV, 22
necessary that it come to be, V, 45, 51
passing away, II, 215
the word:
-conduct of human beings, IV, 22
-good sense; bad sense (usage), IV, 18
-1 John refers to human beings, IV, 20
-used for human beings, IV, 77
-vices of wills, IV, 23
two coeternal natures in, III, 186
world did not know him, IV, 18
worldliness, I, 83
worship, I, 70
free choice, III, 105-108
multiple meanings, III, 106
wound, V, 39, 47
youth, II, 235
zeal, I, 141; IV, 119
Zeno, I, 36
Zosimus, I, 18
Index from

On Admonition and Grace

(De correptione et gratia)

Included in book:

Answer to the Pelagians IV

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor

This volume includes four works: Grace and Free Choice (De gratia et libero arbitrio), Rebuke and Grace (De correptione et gratia), The Predestination of the Saints (De praedestinatione sanctorum), and The Gift of Perseverance (De dono perseverantiae).

Volume I/26  Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Rebuke and Grace

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>New Testament</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>Matthew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:2</td>
<td>3:8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td>6:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25-27</td>
<td>6:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Chronicles</td>
<td>6:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>10:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18</td>
<td>18:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:38</td>
<td>18:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>20:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>7:13; 7:14; 7:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>20:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77:11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>Luke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
<td>1:35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9 LXX</td>
<td>10:5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>11:42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>22:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>22:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>22:61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:11 LXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Maccabees</td>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>13:48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer to the Pelagians IV
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>10.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>12.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:20-21</td>
<td>12.35; 12.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>11.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>15.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>7.13; 9.23; 9.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:28-30</td>
<td>7.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>15.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:29-30</td>
<td>9.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>11.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:31-34</td>
<td>7.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:35-39</td>
<td>7.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:11-13</td>
<td>7.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>8.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>7.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>12.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>8.17; 8.18; 8.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>9.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>12.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>12.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>12.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>10.28; 12.37; 12.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>6.9; 6.10; 7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:7-9</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>15.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>14.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:33</td>
<td>15.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>15.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>10.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>12.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>2.3; 6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:11-12</td>
<td>5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>15.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>7.13; 7.16; 9.21; 12.35; 13.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>11.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>1:3-6</td>
<td>6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>9.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>9.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>9.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:14-15</td>
<td>15.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>14.44; 15.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>15.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>7.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>7.16; 15.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:25-26</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>13.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>15.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>9.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>12.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jude</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>13.39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answer to the Pelagians IV**
Rebuke and Grace

Abraham, 36, (13,39)
Adam:
  able not to sin, (12,33) , 34
  condemnation, (7,11)
  defects begin with his fall, (10,26)
  failure to persevere, 38
  free choice, 37
  free will, 35
  good will, 32
  grace of, (10,26)
    comparison with saints, (11,29)
    first Adam; second Adam, 31
    mass of perdition and, 12
    original state: suffered no evil, (11,29)
    perseverance, 32, 34
    providence and the fall of, 28
    sinned by not persevering, (10,26)
Amasai, 45

angels, 32, 40
equality with, 27
fallen; free choice, 32
providence and the fall of, 27
anger: vessel of, 25
Annunciation, 30
apostles, (3,5)
authority, (1,1)
baptism:
  made holy in, 10
  necessity of, 19
boasting, 24, 37, 38, 41
  of being Catholic, (8,17)
  re things received . . ., (6,9)
charity: rebuke of a sinner, 25
children of God:

Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Answer to the Pelagians IV
destined for eternal life, 21
grace, (9,20)
image of God's Son, (9,20)
perseverance, (9,20), 22
scattered, (9,20)
chosen,
see also predestination
all things work for good of, 23, 24
called according to God's plan, 14, (13,39)
certainty of salvation, 13
grace of perseverance, 35
many are called . . . 13, 14, 16
reigning with Christ, 14
you have not chosen me . . ., 34
Church, 44
commands:
faith-filled love, (4,6)
grace and, (3,5)
compunction, (6,9)
concupiscence, 37
condemnation, (7,11), 12, (15,46)
conversations, 48
conversion: bad people who are rebuked, (5,7)
crown, (13,39), 41
Cyprian, Saint, 10, 12
darkness, 41
David, King, 45
death:
just man dying prematurely, 19
sin leading to, 35
sudden, 13
devil, (1,1), 10, 27, 35
disciples: true d. of Christ, 22
election: grace, 13
eternal life:
grace, 41
perseverance and, 10
predestination, 21
eternal punishment:
fallen angels, 27
faith, 2, 10
destroyed, 48
hard sayings: my flesh to be eaten . . ., 22
hearing and, (7,11)
love of God and neighbor, (4,6)
peace with God, (15,46)
sin of abandoning, 35
working through love, 10, 13, 16, 21, 40
falsehood, 19
fear:
salutary, 40
serve the Lord in, 24
flesh:
conquered by will/spirit, 31
desires opposed to spirit, (11,29)
life-giving spirit and, 22
Florus, (1,1), 2
food, 34
free choice, (8,17), 27, 30, 34, 42
Adam, 32
good and evil, 2, 31
man created with, 28
freedom: grace to fight against desire to
sin, 35
perseverance as strengthening, 35
Gentiles 10
gift (-s; gifts of God), (6,9), 34
temporal; personal, 19
what do we have that we did not receive,
10, 12
glory, 23, 25, 35, 36
God:
able to do what he promised, 36
defeated by sin, 14
foreknowledge:
Adam's fall, 28, 37
children of God, (9,20)
glory, 24
injustice, (6,9)
inscrutable judgments, 18, 19
judgments concealed, (8,17)
judgments neither blamed nor fathomed,
18
see mercy.
mystery of his choice and judgment, (8,17)
name of, made holy in us, 10
omnipotent, 45
rejoice before, with trembling, 24
good and evil:
evil: free choice; grace lost, (6,9)
free choice, 2, 31
good use of evil (Judas), 14
law and grace, 2
not persevering in good, 10
remaining in the good, (9,20)
willing and action, 4
good works:
following the Incarnation, 30
made good in order to produce, 36
Son of God, 30
goodness:
Adam blamed for not remaining in, (10,26)
perseverance in, (8,17), 19, 32, 36
rebuke for not persevering in, (7,11)
gospel:
hearing related to salvation, (7,11)
preaching, (5,7)
grace, 25, 27, 38, 41
act of willing and, 32
Adam and Christ, (10,26)
children of God, (9,20)
eternal life, 41
first Adam; second Adam, 31
freedom of the will, (8,17)
Answer to the Pelagians IV

gratuitous, 28
gratuity of deliverance by, 12
lost by free choice of evil, (6,9)
power: Adam and the saints compared, (11,29)
role of, 2
room for commands and rebukes, (3,5)
room for prayer, (2,3)
salvation and, 13
taking refuge in, 2
two kinds of help given by, 34
guilt, 2, (15,46)
Hadrumentum, (1,1)
happiness, 27, 28, 32, 34
healing, (14,43)
heart: touched, 45
heaven: baptism necessary to enter, 19
holiness: name of God made holy in us, 10
Holy Spirit, 30, 47
love for God and, 27
will and, 38
human beings:
made upright from the beginning, (6,9)
Hymenacus, 16
immortality, (12,33)
Incarnation, 30
infant baptism, 19
dying unbaptized, 12, 18
infant salvation:
dying but not baptized, 12
infants:
merit and, 18
Israel, 45
Jesus Christ, 32, 40
boasting in the Lord, 37
flesh to be eaten; blood to be drunk, 22
grace of, (10,26)
first Adam; second Adam, 31
of redemption, 30
mediator, 30
Son of God, 30
who will separate us from love of, 15
John, Saint, Apostle:
preeminence of, (9,20)
John the Baptist:
number of the elect, (13,39)
joy, 10, 30
Judas, 14, 22
judgment day, 27
justice, 27
kingdom of God, see heaven
kings, 45

law:
resistance: law of mind vs. law of

members, (11,29)
role of, 2
life: longevity as temptation, 19
Lord’s Prayer:
Forgive us our debts, 35
May your name be made holy, 10
love, (1,1), (2,3), 4
faith working through, 13, 16, 21, 40
gift, (8,17)
rebuke and, (6,9), (15,46)
rebuke for a sinner, 25
love for God:
all things work for the good . . ., 24
Holy Spirit and, 27
perseverance in, 23
who will separate us from . . ., 15
martyrdom, 35
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 30
mercy, 25, 35, 41
perseverance and, 10
vessels of, 13
merit, 12, 32
boasting, 37
chosen through election, 13
gifts and, 19
grace, 41
infants and, 18
murmuring, 19
obedience, (1,1)
original sin:
Adam’s free choice, 28
damaged origin of human race, (10,26)
fallen by evil will, (6,9)
other sins added to, 42
rebuked in individuals, (6,9)
pain, (5,7)
paradise, 28
Paul: commands/rebukes re love, (3,5)
peace, (1,1)
reconciliation, (15,46)
perdition, (9,20), 40
child of, (16)
perish, 14, 48
perseverance:
ability and will to, 38
Adam’s fall/failure, (10,26), 34, 38
chosen brought to happy life, 16
chosen people, 35
faith that works through love, 13
final blessedness, (12,33)
gift not received, 42
gift of God, 10, (8,17)
gift, to the end, 15, 16, 19, 23, (10,26)
holding on to the good, 32
in goodness, 36

Volume I/26
mercy of God, 10
not given to all God’s children, 18
predestination and, 10
predestined children, 21
standing with, 36
true children of God, (9,20)
true disciples of Christ, 22
will and, (8,17)
Peter, Apostle, Saint:
denial of Jesus, 24
prayer that his faith fail not, (8,17), 38
repentance, (5,7), 8
Philetus, 16
piety, 40
praise, (5,7)
prayer, (3,5)
grace and room for, (2,3)
preaching, (15,46)
predestination:
called according to God’s plan, 21, 23
chosen are unknown to us, 40
distinguished by the predestined, 49
God’s foreknowledge, 16
image of Son of God, 49
number of the predestined, (13,39)
perserverance and, 10
saints, 40
salvation, 44
presumption, 37
temptations and, 40
pride, 24, 28, 40
need to completely destroy, 37
promise:
child of, (9,20)
future promise already brought about, 35
providence:
fall of Adam, 28
fall of the angels, 27
punishment, 42
just rebuke, (14,43)
Quirinus, 12
rebuke:
duty to give and accept, (14,43)
charity, for a sinner, 25
effective for salvation, 45
grace and room for, (3,5)
grace and, (14,43)
greater or lesser, (5,7)
just rebuke, 49
made beneficial to the one rebuked, (6,9)
negligence or laziness, 48
non-baptized persons and, (6,9)
not persevering in good life, (7,11)
options: not wanting to be rebuked, (4,6), (5,7)
prayer for those rebuked, 49
privately, 49
sinners, (15,46), 49
usefulness of, 10
reconciliation, (15,46)
redemption:
earthly grace: Christ as source and model, 30
repentance, (5,7), 8, 10, (15,46)
rereading, (1,1)
righteousness, 34, (14,43), 49
boasting, 37
called and glorified, 14
delight in, 4
faith and, (15,46)
free; enslaved to sin, 2
grace and, 12
predestined children, 23
pretense of, (9,20)
servants of, 35
will of Adam, 31
saints:
enslaved to sin; set free by Christ, 35
grace, (11,29)
salvation, (8,17)
certainty by those chosen, 13
eternal life, 10
fear and trembling, 24
God’s will that all be saved, 44
rebuke effective for, 45
those who have not heard the gospel,
(7,11)
Saul, King, 45
self-knowledge, (5,7)
sheep:
sick separated from healthy, (15,46)
sin:
able not to sin; not to be able to sin,
(12,33)
death as result of, (12,33)
enslaved to, 2
faith abandoned to death, 35
fight against desire, 35
God defeated by, 14
greater or lesser rebuke for, (5,7)
punishment of, 32
slave to, 32
sinners:
boasting, 37
rebuking, (15,46), 49
rebuking, as charity, 25
Son of God:
conformed to image of, 14
spirit:
courage, love, and self-control, 35
desires opposed to flesh, (11,29)
life-giving, 22
will: conquering the flesh, 31
standing, 10, 35, 36
temptation:
  longevity, 19
  presumption, 40
  will and, 38
  tithe, 44
  truth, (1,1), 27
Valentine, (1,1)
virtue:
  claiming: from self, 24
  made perfect, 37, 38
wealth, 19
will:
fallen away from a good life, 10
free, (14,43)
free = ability not to sin, (12,33)
freedom and grace, (8,17)
God as producer of: 38
God wills, makes us will, 47
grace and acts of, 32
perseverance and, (8,17)
prepared by the Lord, (4,6)
set afire by the Holy Spirit, 38
spirit conquering the flesh, 31
temptations and, 38
will of God:
  resisting, 45
  salvation for all human beings, 44
  works, 14
  works of mercy, 41
Index from
On Grace and Free Will
(De gratia et libero arbitrio)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians IV

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor
This volume includes four works: Grace and Free Choice (De gratia et libero arbitrio), Rebuke and Grace (De correptione et gratia), The Predestination of the Saints (De praedestinatione sanctorum), and The Gift of Perseverance (De dono perseverantiae).

Volume I/26 Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>4:21</td>
<td>23,45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>23,45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>23,45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>23,45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:20.27</td>
<td>23,45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>16,32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:27</td>
<td>16,32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>17,36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:18 LXX</td>
<td>17,35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>6:4-5</td>
<td>17,36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:17-18</td>
<td>7,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua</td>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>20,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>20,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>20,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:11-12</td>
<td>20,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>20,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:14</td>
<td>20,41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings</td>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>21,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Chronicles</td>
<td>28:9</td>
<td>5,11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
<td>12:1-17</td>
<td>21,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>5,11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25-7-8</td>
<td>21,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
<td>15:7-8</td>
<td>21,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:6</td>
<td>4,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>6,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:7</td>
<td>6,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:8</td>
<td>6,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31:9</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:9</td>
<td>3,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:14</td>
<td>16,32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:4</td>
<td>2,4; 3,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37:23</td>
<td>16,32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39:2</td>
<td>16,32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>44:22</td>
<td>7,16; 17,34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51:12</td>
<td>8,20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>62:13</td>
<td>8,20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66:19</td>
<td>6,15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:4</td>
<td>15,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:8</td>
<td>5,10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>84:4</td>
<td>15,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>84:8</td>
<td>18,37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85:7</td>
<td>5,10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>95:8</td>
<td>14,29; 15,31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>22,44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>103:4</td>
<td>9,21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>105:25</td>
<td>21,42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>141:3</td>
<td>16,32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>19,40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Answer to the Pelagians IV
Grace and Free Choice

3:11 2,4; 4,9
3:16 LXX 18,37
3:27 2,4
3:29 2,4
4:2 2,4
5:3 2,4
8:35 LXX 16,32
10:12 17,35
19:3 2,3; 21,43
19:14 LXX 4,8
21:1 21,42
29:19 3,5
Song of Songs
8:5 6,13
Wisdom
4:11 23,45
8:21 4,8
Sirach
15:11-18 2,3
15:16 16,32
15:16 LXX 15,31
22:33 16,32
23:4 16,32
23:5 16,32
23:6 16,32
Isaiah
1:18 6,13
11:2 19,40
11:2-3 18,39
Jeremiah
17:5 4,6
Ezekiel
11:19 14,29
11:19-20 14,29
14:9 21,42; 23,45
18:31-32 15,31
32:26 16,32
36:22-27 14,30
36:26 15,31
Habakkuk
2:4 7,17
Zechariah
1:3 5,10

New Testament
Matthew
5:17 13,25
6:9 14,30
6:12-13 13,26
6:19 2,4
10:23 23,45
10:28 2,4; 18,39
16:24 2,4
16:27 2,4; 8,20; 23,45
18:11 13,25
19:10-11 4,7
26:41 4,9
Mark
12:28-31 17,36
Luke
2:14 2,4
9:23 2,4
12:4 18,39
12:5 18,39
12:48-47 3,5
19:10 13,25
22:32 4,9
John
1:16 9,21
3:17 22,44
3:27 6,15
6:66 3,10
9:30 22,44
13:34-35 17,36
13:37 17,33
15:5 6,13; 8,20
15:13 17,33
15:16 18,38
15:22 2,2
Romans
1:17 7,17
1:18-20 2,2
1:24 21,42
1:26 21,42
1:28 21,42
2:6 2,4; 8,19; 8,20
2:12 3,5
3:8 22,44
3:20 10,22
3:28 7,18
4:4 5,11; 8,19
4:5 15,31
4:15 10,22
5:3-5 18,39
5:20 22,44
6:14 12,24
6:23 8,19-9,21
7:6 10,22
7:7,13 10,22
8:12-13 11,23
8:14 11,23
8:28 17,33
8:35-29 17,34
8:36-37 7,16

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Volume I/26
**Answer to the Pelagians IV**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:2-3, 3.5, 3.6, 4.13, 5.17-18, 6.1, 8.11, 25.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>2:16, 2.21, 4.6, 5.4, 5.13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>2:8, 2.8-9, 2.9, 2.10, 3.19, 4.8, 6.6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>1:6, 1:28-29, 2:12, 2:13, 3:8-9, 3:15-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>3:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>3:12, 5:14-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>1:3, 1:8, 2:10-11, 3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:5, 4.14, 5.11, 5.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>1:7, 1:8-9, 3:12, 4:6-7, 4:7, 4:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>2:12-13, 3:3, 3:4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philemon</td>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>10:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:5, 1:13-15, 1:14, 1:17, 2:1, 2:8, 2:19, 3:14-17, 4:11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grace and Free Choice
Answer to the Pelagians IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bible Reference</th>
<th>Volume Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter 4:8</td>
<td>17.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 2:10</td>
<td>17.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 2:15</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 3:1</td>
<td>19.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 3:10-11</td>
<td>17.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 3:23</td>
<td>17.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 4:7</td>
<td>18.37; 19.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 4:18</td>
<td>17.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 4:19</td>
<td>18.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 4:21</td>
<td>17.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John 5:23</td>
<td>17.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 John 5</td>
<td>17.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation 22:12</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Grace And Free Choice

Abishai, (20,41)
Absalom, (20,41)
Adam, (13,25), 43
adultery, 8
Ahaseurus, King, (21,42)
Ahithophel, (20,41)
Ai (city), (20,41)
Amaziah, King, (21,42)
angels, 43
anger:
    law as producing, (10,22)
    vessels of, (20,41)
animals, (13,25)
Arabs, (21,42)
arm: word usage, (4,6)
blessing: loving one another, 38
chastity:
    gift of God: keeping the commandment, 8
    marital, 8
children of God:
    driven by the Spirit, (11,23), (12,24)
    love of, 35
Christian life: see also good works
Church: dressed in white, (6,13)
circumcision, 18
commandments, 2,2
    free choice, 4, (18,37)
    keeping made easy by love, (17,33)
    love and the burden of, 35
    observing, with God’s help, 26, 28
    observing; the will, 8, (15,31)
    prayer needed for keeping, (16,32)
will to observe, (16,32)
concupiscence, 3,8
continence, 7,8
conversion:
    good works after, (6,13)
    gratuity of grace, 29
    turning to Christ by believing, (5,10)
creature, (20,41)
Cyprian, Saint, 26
darkness, (19,40)
David, King, (20,41)
death:
    law and, (11,23)
    wages of sin, (9,21)
demons: believe and tremble, 18
desire: law and, (10,22), (16,32)
    devil, (9,21), (20,41)
Egyptians, (21,42), (23,45)
endurance: grace, 28
eternal life:
    both merited and God’s gift, 15
    good works, 8,19
    grace and works, 18, 19, 20
    merit, (1,1)
Pelagians on merit, 15
    reward for good life, 20
    righteousness and, (9,21)
eternal punishment: fire, (3,5)
faith:
    free choice, 29
    freedom: faith in Christ, (3,5)
Answer to the Pelagians IV

gift of God, 17
gift, and gratuity of grace, 28
growing, 38
justification by, (6,13)
mercy of God, 17
Peter, 9
prayer and, (16,32)
righteousness and, 17
Spirit of, 28
will of the believer, 28
works through love, 18
fear, (20,41), (21,42)
love and, (17,33)
power to kill the body, 39
fear of God, 39
fight: I have fought . . ., (7,16)
flesh, (11,23)
heart; feeling, 29-30
word usage, (4,6)
fornication, 8
free choice, 11
commandment to love and, (18,37)
commandments, (18,37)
doing good or evil, (10,22), (11,23)
faith and, 29
grace and good use of, 7
harden not your hearts, (15,31)
New Testament texts, 4
obeying God’s commands, 8
proofs from Scripture, 2,2-3
proofs of, 4
taken away, (9,21)
free will, See free choice; will
Gentiles, (3,5), (22,44)
gifts [of god]
great goods from God, 39
human merit, 15
merits, 20
God:
goodness and justice, (23,45)
his name profaned, 30
holiness, 30
mercy and justice, (23,45)
no injustice in, 43
Pelagian, (19,40)
wisdom, (23,45)
goal and evil:
conquer evil by good, (3,5,8)
ever desire; good will, 9
ever merits, 12, (23,45)
free choice, (10,22), (11,23)
good returned for evil, 14
merits, 15
nothing good done by self alone, (6,13)
repaying evil for evil, 34
this world and world to come, (22,44)
wills, (20,41)
good works:
after conversion, (6,13)
crown as reward of, (9,21)
faith as source, 17
formed and created for, 20
good thoughts preceding, (7,16)
human spirit or Spirit of God, (11,23)
merit of a good will, (14,27)
pride over, (9,21)
without me you can do nothing, 20
grace, (20,41)
abandonment, (6,13)
condition of the Spirit, (10,22)
conversion and, (5,10), 29
defending free choice, (4,6)
eternal life, 20
frees from dominion of sin, (12,24)
good use of free choice, 7
good will; keeping the commandments,
(15,31)
gratuitous, 14, (8,19), 28
help in keeping commandments, 9
law and, (10,22), (11,23), (12,24), (13,25),
(14,27)
letter of the law and, (18,37)
lovers of the law, 38
merit and, 11, 12, 13, 14, (5,10), 43,
(22,44)
merits of a good will, 30
nature and, (13,25)
returning evil for evil, (23,45)
sin and the law, (22,44)
heart, (4,6), (20,41)
clean; new creation, 20
hardening; free choice, (15,31)
hardness of, 29, 30
new heart, new spirit, (15,31)
of stone; of flesh, 29-30, (16,32)
Pharaoh, (23,45)
wills and, (21,42)
heaven: merit and gift, (8,19)
holiness:
God is made holy in us, 30
Pelagian idea, (19,40)
Holy Spirit, 15, 39
children of God driven by, (11,23), (12,24)
faith and, 28
gives life, (12,24)
grace and, (10,22)
letter of law kills, (11,23)
hope, 39
placing, in human beings, (4,6)
human beings:
we are his work . . ., 20
human condition: fragility, (4,6)
humility, (20,41)
idolatry, (21,42)
Volume I/26
Volume I/26

Answer to the Pelagians IV
(16,32) temptation and, 9
pride, (2,2), 20, (9,21), (11,23), (16,32), (18,37), 38
providence: children of non-believers, (22,44)
punishment, (3,5), (21,42), 43, (23,45)

race, (7,16)
Rehoboam, (21,42)
righteousness, (12,24)
goodness of will and, (15,31)

grace; eternal life, 20, (9,21)
works of the law, (10,22), (12,24), (13,25)
works of, 17

salvation: Son of Man’s coming, (22,44)

sexual sins, (16,32)
sin:
conquering; gift of God, 8
death as wages of, (9,21)
dominion of, (12,24)
enslaved to, (15,31)

Jews and death of Christ, 22
knowledge of, and the law, (10,22)

law and, (22,44)

law as power of, 8

power over human beings, (11,23)

Son of Man:
came so world might be saved, (22,44)
suffering: grace of endurance, 28

temptation, 3

watch and pray, 9
testing, (20,41)

thanks to God, 38

thought: sufficiency from God, (7,16)

Timothy: free choice, 7

tribulation, 39

understanding, (1,1), (19,40)

praying for, (24,46)

Valentine (brother), (1,1)
avanity, 38

victory, (7,16)

virtue: trusting in one’s own, (12,24)

war, (21,42)

will:

aflame with love, 34

commandments and, 4
efficacious strength, (16,32)
evil; sinfulness, (20,41)

see also free choice

God as cause of good, (16,32)

God working with, (17,33)

God’s counsel; and acts of, 4

God’s dominion over, (20,41)
good and evil, (20,41)
goodness; (15,31)

heart and, (21,42)

heart of stone, 29-30

infants, (22,44)

keeping the commandments, (16,32)

merits and grace, 30

perfecting of, (17,33)

turning to God, (5,10)

will of God:
acceptance; free choice, 7

wisdom: praying for, (24,46)

works: repayment for, 20

**Volume I/26**
Index from
On the Gift of Perseverance
(De dono perseverantiae)

Included in book:
Answer to the Pelagians IV

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor
This volume includes four works: Grace and Free Choice (De gratia et libero arbitrio), Rebuks and Grace (De correptione et gratia), The Predestination of the Saints (De praedestinatione sanctorum), and The Gift of Perseverance (De dono perseverantiae).

Volume I/26  Books/Polemical

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

The Gift of Perseverance

Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Leviticus</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:2</td>
<td>2,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:10</td>
<td>11,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:2</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66:9</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:18-19</td>
<td>7,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>84:6</td>
<td>13,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85:7</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>14,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>118:8</td>
<td>22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:36</td>
<td>8,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>140:9</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>17,43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Wisdom</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>10,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>17,43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sirach</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>12,30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Isaiah</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>57:16</td>
<td>9,21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Jeremiah</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>17,46; 22,62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:40</td>
<td>2,2; 7,14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Baruch</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>14,37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>20,51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Matthew</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>2,4; 21,55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>2,5; 3,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>4,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>5,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>5,9; 6,11; 6,12; 17,46; 22,62;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23,63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>2,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>9,23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:22</td>
<td>9,23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:11</td>
<td>14,35; 14,37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>14,37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:11</td>
<td>14,37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14-15</td>
<td>8,17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>6,12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Luke</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>19,49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>14,37; 20,51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Answer to the Pelagians IV

### Romans
- 5:12: 12,30
- 8:15: 23,64
- 8:26-27: 23,64
- 8:28: 9,21
- 9:20: 8,17; 12,30; 14,37
- 9:23: 12,28
- 10:14: 14,36
- 10:21: 18,47
- 11:1: 18,47
- 11:2: 18,47
- 11:4: 18,47
- 11:5-6: 18,47
- 11:7: 18,47
- 11:29: 13,33; 14,36; 17,41
- 11:33: 11,25; 12,30
- 11:34: 11,27; 14,37
- 14:4: 8,19

### 1 Corinthians
- 1:31: 11,25; 12,28; 14,36; 24,66
- 3:1-2: 16,40
- 3:5-7: 14,37
- 3:10: 14,37
- 4:7: 17,43
- 7:7: 14,37
- 9:24: 22,57
- 10:12: 8,06; 11,25; 13,33
- 12:6: 23,64

### 2 Corinthians
- 3:5: 8,19; 8,20; 13,33

### Galatians
- 4:6: 23,64
- 6:7: 2,3

### Ephesians
- 1:4: 9,21
- 1:4-5: 18,47
- 1:4-11: 7,15
- 1:11: 7,14; 9,21
- 6:23: 17,44

### Philippians
- 1:6: 14,34
- 1:29: 2,2
- 2:12-13: 13,33
- 2:13: 14,34; 22,59

### Colossians
- 3:2-1: 13,33

### 1 Thessalonians
- 3:5: 6,12

### 2 Timothy
- 1:8-10: 23,65

### James
- 1:5: 17,43
- 1:5-6: 17,44
- 1:14-13: 6,12
- 1:17: 17,44; 22,62
- 3:14-16: 17,44
- 3:17: 17,44

### 1 Peter
- 3:17: 2,2

### 1 John
- 1:8: 5,8
- 2:19: 8,19; 9,21

---

**Volume I/26**
Gift of Perseverance

abandonment: by God, 12
Adam, (9,21), 27
free choice, (7,13)
adoption, (18), 64
Ambrose, Saint, (19,48), 49, 64
on self-sufficiency, 19-20
angels, (3,6), (7,13), (19,48)
equality of humans with, (3,6)
anger, 18
Apollinarists, 67
apostles, 27, (20,51)
assent: hearing with the heart, 37
Augustine, Saint:
Confessions, 53
conversion, 53
Rebuke and Grace, 55
Revisions, 27
Baal, (18)
baptism, 4, 23
mystery of God's grace, (13,32)
boasting, (11,25), 36, 43, (19,48), 49, 50, (20,51), (24,66)
body: Pelagian idea of, 4
bread: daily, (4,7)
calling, 33, (17)
God's inscrutable judgments, (9,21)
irrevocable, 36
the elect, (19,48)
Catholic Church, 4, 27, 31
Catholic faith, 56
defense of, 52
celibacy, 37
chastity, (1,1), 42, (20,51)
God's foreknowledge, (17)
marital, 37
children of God: power to become, 20
chosen, (15,38), 60
before creation of the world, 35
called according to plan, (9,21)
gifts of God, 47
infants before the creation, (11,25)
Church, 14, (19,48), 49, 58, 60, 68
born, grew, and increased, (23,63)
gifts and, 65
prayers of, as guide, (23,63)
spouse of Christ, (5,8)
commandments, (19,48), 49
commands, (14,34)
concupiscence, 12
condemnation, (8,16), 23, 26, 27, 30
conscience, (5,8)
continence: gift, 43
conversion, 49, 50
wills opposed to God, 22
crying out, 64
Cyprian, Saint, 4, (4,7), (5,8), 12, 43, (19,48), 49, 55
perseverance taught by, 36
death, (1,1)
debt: remitting, (8,16)
desire: earthly, 20
despair, 46, 62
devil, (7,13)
devotion, 50
discipline, 59
doubt, 30
election of grace, (18)
Elijah, (18)
enemies:
Lord's Prayer, 49
praying for, 60, (23,63)
error, 40, 55
eternal life, 11, 62
eucharist:
abstain from, for serious sin, (4,7)
daily receiving, (4,7)
exhortations, 42
faith, (1,1), 23, 36, 42, (23,63)
abandoned (Tyre and Sidon), (10,24)
beginning = gift from God, (3,6), (16,39),
43, 49, 52, (21,54), 55, (24,66)
comes not from ourselves, (21,54)
confession of belief, 49
exhortations to, 45
give what you command . . ., 53
grace and, 41
heresy, 43
increase of, (2,2), 44
intelligence and, 35
perseverance in, 43
received even without asking, 44
temptation to abandon, 46
will and, 41
wisdom and, 44
working through love, 20
faithful: heavenly man, (3,6)
Volume I/26

fate, 29, 31
fear of God, 14
flesh: harmony with spirit, (3,6)
foreknowledge: predestination, (18)
forgiveness of sin, 67
free choice, (7,13)
gift (-s; of God), 33, (21,54), 65, (24,66)
chosen people, 47
exhortations, 42, 45, 46
from God, not from ourselves, 50
God’s foreknowledge, 53
Gregory of Nazianzen on, 49
keeping or losing, 11
marital chastity, 37
obedience, 37
perseverance to the end, (17)
virtues, 4, 42
wisdom and continence, 43, 44
glory, (2,2), (8,16), (12,28)
God:
abandoned by, 12
anger and mercy, 18
foreknowledge, (17), 50, (22,57), 61, 65, (24,66), 67
actions one would have done, 31
fallings one would have done, 22
future gifts, 42
gifts of God, 47, 56
good and evil, (15,38)
predestination and, 35
gives the increase . . ., 37
goodness, (17)
 holy person gives honor to, 49
injustice, (11,25), 23
inscrutable judgments, 18, (9,21)
judgment: mercy and truth, (11,25)
judgments: inscrutable, 35
just judgment, (8,16)
knowledge and understanding from, 68
knowledge of needs before being asked, (16,39)
no favoritism in, 31
no injustice in, (8,16)
work of hand, of, 14
good and evil, 44
actions if one had lived, 31
evil merits, (11,25)
God’s foreknowledge of, (15,38)
jealousy and quarrels, 44
nature(s) in human beings, 30
origins of evil, 27
suffering and, (2,2)
goodness:
 failure to make progress in, (15,38)
remitting a debt, (8,16)
gospel, 22, 23
grace, 4, (7,13), 14, 15, 27, (15,38), 45, 60
election of, (18)
faith and, 41
given with mercy and justice, (12,28)
God’s justice in giving; 17
gratuitous, (12,28), 29, 41, (19,48)
merit and, 4, (8,16), (11,25), (12,28), 30,
31, (13,32), 33, 36, 40, 42, 49,
(20,51), 53, (21,54), 55, 56, 64,
(24,66)
not to commit sin, (10,24)
obedience and, 41
predestination of, (19,48)
sets us free, 52
will and, 41
Gregory of Nazianzen, Saint, 49
 guilt: judgment; 17
 punished, or set free, (11,25)
hand of God, 14
hearing: obedience, 37, (19,48)
 preaching, (20,51)
heart, 19, 22, 33
hardening, (11,25), 35
 hearing: assent; 37
lift up our hearts, 33
not in our own power, 20, (19,48), 49
heaven: merits, 29
heaven and earth (term), (3,6)
nexus, 43, 53
Hilary, (1,1)
holiness:
honor to God, 49
name of God made holy in us, 4
perseverance in, 4, (9, 11)
Holy Spirit, 49, 64
hope, 46, 62
human beings:
actions/words; heart/thought, 49
equality with angels, (3,6)
nature(s):
good and evil, 19, 30
of man as created, 29
human condition:
original sin; punishment, 29
humility, 12, 23
ignorance, 27, 29, 43
infant(-s; little ones):
 chosen before creation, (11,25)
dying unbaptized, 23, 31
God’s foreknowledge of acts if they had
lived, 31
 grace given gratuitously, (11,25)
grace: gift of obedience, (17)
infant baptism, 27, 29
merit, 29
original sin, (9,21)
perseverance; 17

Answer to the Pelagians IV
rational souls, 31
salvation: uncertainty, 30
unbaptized; condemnation, 30
intelligence: divine gift, 35
Israel: promises made to, (18)
Jerusalem, 49
Jesus Christ:
foreknowledge, 23
model of our predestination, 67
refusal to believe in, 23
suffering for, (2,2)
time of his coming, 23
true humanity and divinity, 67
Jews:
disbelief in Christ, 23
eyes blinded; hearts hardened, 35
not able to believe, 35
judgment (-day), 23, 35
actions if one had lived, 23
evil which God knows a person would
have done, (10,24), 31
God’s foreknowledge of what would have
been, (13,32)
sins which one would have committed,
(10,24)
justice, (12,28)
God’s just judgments; 17
knowledge: from face of God, 68
learning: capability for, 40
Lord’s Prayer:
1st petition, 4, 55
2nd petition, 5
3rd petition, (3,6)
4th petition, (4,7)
5th petition, (5,8)
6th petition, 9
Bring us not into temptation, (9, 11, 12, 46, 62, (23,63)
enemies, 49
Forgive us our debts . . ., (5,8)
May your kingdom come, 5, (3,6)
May your name be made holy, 4, 55
petitions are for perseverance, 3
proof re gift of perseverance, (7,13)
love, 18, (17), 42, (20,51), 56
faith working through, 20
grace to obey God with delight, 41
Manichees, 26, 27, 29, 67
books written against, 30
mercy, (10,24), 35, 49, 52, 55
faith and, 56
God’s judgment, (11,25)
merit and, (11,25)
vessels of, 18, (12,28)
merit, 67
merit: grace and, 4, (8,16), (11,25), (12,28), 30, 31, (13,32), 33, 36, 40, 42, 49, (20,51), 53, (21,54), 55, 56, 64, (24,66)
infant salvation, 29
mercy and, (11,25)
mind, 20
miracles: gospel, 23
mercy: Christ in Tyre and Sidon, (10,24)
signs for non-believers, 22, 23
Monica, Saint, 53
non-believers, 15, (9,21), (10,24), 31, 44, 45, 60, (23,63), 65
miracles and, 22, 23
praying for, (3,6)
obedience, 22, 42, 58, 61
exhortation; gift, 37
grace and, 41, 50
hearing, 37, (19,48), 49
infants, (17)
power to obey withdrawn, (15,38), 61
preaching and, (24,66)
predestination, 36
original sin, (7,13)
entered through one man: Adam, 30
guilt contracted by birth, 23, 27
infants, (9,21)
Pelagianism, 4, 26-27, 29
original state, 27
pagans, 23
Paulinus, Saint, 55
Pelagian(-ism), 4, (5,8), 26-27, 29, 31, (13,32), 43, 41, 45, 52, 53, 55, (24,66)
Pelagius, (13,32), 41, (21,54), 56
penance, 23
perdition, (8,16), 31, 35
perfection, 55
perseverance, 42, 53, 58, 61
comes not from ourselves, (21,54)
Cyprian’s teaching on, 36
gratuity: adults, 19
holy persons pray for, (3,6)
love, (18, 19, 20)
holiness, 4
infants; gratuity, 17
holy persons pray for, (3,6)
holiness, 4
infant; gratuity, 17
mercy of God’s gift, (13,32)
necessary to pray always, 35
need to speak truth about, 40
objections from brothers in Provence,
(6,10)
suffering even death for, (2,2)
to the end; gratuitous gift from God, (1,1), (2,2), (3,6), (6,10), (8,16), 15, 19,
(9,21), (13,32), (14,34), (17), (16,39), 43, 45, 47, 49, (21,54), 55, 56,
(23,63), (24,66)
Photinians, 67

Volume I/26
piety, 33, 42, (20,51)
pleasure, 20
praise, (11,25)
prayer(s), 62
Church’s prayers as guide, (23,63)
ask, seek, knock, 64
continuous petition, 4
daily, 15
for one’s sins, (5,8)
for perseverance, 35
formalities, (23,63)
God’s gift, 64
people who don’t pray, (16,39)
saints, 3
preaching, 23, 45, (19,48)
heard with obedience, (24,66)
hearing, 37
predestination and, (14,34), 42
predestination, 14, (9,21), 23, 55, 56, 59, 65
adoption through Christ, 15
Augustine’s early teaching on, 52
can and ought to be taught, (14,34)
Christ as model, 67
Church’s teaching, (19,48)
Cyprian and Ambrose on, 49
defense; heresies, 50
foreknowledge, (18)
God’s foreknowledge and, 35
God’s inscrutable judgments, (11,25)
mystery, 22
obedience, 36, 42
preaching, 45, 46, (20,51), (21,54), 62, (24,66)
saints: definition, 35
Scripture, 47
silence about, 41
teaching, (22,57)
will of God and, (15,38), 58
pride, 3, (5,8), 12, 19, (16,39), (17) 59, 62
Prosper, (1,1)
providence, 31
nothing happens without God, 12
punishment, (12,28)
God’s justice, 17
God’s mercy and truth, (11,25)
judgment day, 23
Tyre and Sidon, 23
rebuke, (19,48), 43, 44
redemption: original and personal sins, 30
reward: workers in vineyard (parable) ; 17
righteousness, 45
God makes persons righteous, 67
Pelagian idea of, 4, (5,8)
Rome, 53
running, (22,57)
saints, 19, 22
definition of predestination, 35
May your kingdom come, 5
merits of, 4
prayers of, 3
predestination of, 15
predestination, 53
salvation, 19, 23, 33, 46, (19,48)
Samaritans, 49
self-sufficiency, 19-20
sex organs, (20,51)
Sidon, 22, 23, (10,24), 35
silence, (15,38), 40
Simplician (bishop of Milan), 52, 55
sin, 58, 59
if we say we have no sin . . ., (5,8)
sin: infant baptism and, 29
sin: pray daily because of, (5,8)
sinners, (5,8), 27
Sixtus (priest), 55
sparrow, 31
spirit, 20
harmony with flesh, (3,6)
standing, 19
suffering: for doing good, (2,2)
sufficiency, 19, 20, 33
talent, 43
teaching: capability for, 40
temptation, (7,13), 15, 19, 22, 62, (23,63)
abandon the faith, 46
Lord’s Prayer, 9, 11, 12
thanksgiving: mockery, 3
thoughts: not in our own power, 20, 33,
(19,48), 49
Trinity, 50, 67
truth, 64
dilemma: stating truth when hearer cannot
grasp it, 40
God’s judgment, (11,25)
silence about, 40
twins; 17, (11,25)
Tyre, 22, 23, (10,24), 35
unbelief, 58
understanding: from face of God, 68
vanities, 20
vineyard: workers in (parable) 17
virtue, 56
gifts; exhortation, 45
God’s gifts, 42
Pelagian idea of, 4
will:
Augustine’s books on free will, 26, 27
conversion and grace, 53
faith and, 41
God produces the willing in us, 33,
(14,34), 42
grace and, 41

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Answer to the Pelagians IV

prepared by God, 49
providence and, 12
will of God:
see also predestination
calling; making holy, 49
giving of grace and, (12,28)
imitate heaven, (3,6)
predestination and, (15,38)

wisdom:
earthly; diabolical, 44
faith and, 44
gift; exhortation, 43, 44
Word of God, 67
in the beginning . . ., 40
world: flight from, 20
worship, 33, (24,66)

Volume I/26
Index from

On the Predestination of the Saints

*(De praedestinatione sanctorum)*

Included in book:

**Answer to the Pelagians IV**

Translation, introduction and notes by Roland J. Teske, SJ; John E. Rotelle, editor

This volume includes four works: *Grace and Free Choice* (*De gratia et libero arbitrio*), *Rebuke and Grace* (*De correptione et gratia*), *The Predestination of the Saints* (*De praedestinatione sanctorum*), and *The Gift of Perseverance* (*De dono perseverantiae*).

Volume I/26  Books/Polemical

**Hardcover: 978-1-56548-136-7, 6 x 9 in., 264 pp., 1999**
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
<th>Proverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:25</td>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4-5</td>
<td>25:10</td>
<td>6:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings 8:57-58</td>
<td>37:23</td>
<td>20:42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 7:1 LXX</td>
<td>85:7</td>
<td>2,4; 8,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:36</td>
<td>20,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>7,12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Answer to the Pelagians IV

## New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>Verses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>8,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:11</td>
<td>20,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>16,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>6:28-29</td>
<td>7,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:29</td>
<td>8,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:36-37</td>
<td>8,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:43-46</td>
<td>8,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:44</td>
<td>8,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:45</td>
<td>8,14; 16,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:60-61</td>
<td>8,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:64-65</td>
<td>8,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:65-66</td>
<td>8,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:66</td>
<td>20,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:16</td>
<td>17,34; 19,38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts of the Apostles</td>
<td>4:24-28</td>
<td>16,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:48</td>
<td>20,42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>20,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:1-4</td>
<td>15,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>10,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>10,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>10,19; 11,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:20-21</td>
<td>2,6; 10,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7-25</td>
<td>4,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>8,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>16,32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:27-29</td>
<td>5,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>5,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>5,9; 8,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>18,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>5,9; 18,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2-7</td>
<td>5,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>5,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>3,7; 4,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>11,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>11,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:8-9</td>
<td>20,40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>20,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:14-16</td>
<td>20,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>20,41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>2,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>8,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>12,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>16,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>19,39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>1,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume I/26**
### Volume I/26

#### Ephesians
- 1:3-4: 18,36
- 1:3-5: 18,36
- 1:3-12: 18,36
- 1:4: 17,34
- 1:5-6: 18,36
- 1:7-9: 18,36
- 1:9-12: 18,36
- 1:13-16: 19,39
- 2:8-9: 7,12
- 2:9-10: 10,19
- 6:23: 2,6; 3,7

#### Philippians
- 1:29: 2,4
- 3:1: 1,1
- 3:15: 1,2
- 3:15-16: 1,2

#### Colossians
- 4:2-4: 20,40
- 4:3: 20,41

#### 1 Thessalonians
- 2:13: 19,39

#### 2 Thessalonians
- 3:2: 5,10

#### 1 Timothy
- 2:4: 8,14

#### Titus
- 2:12: 3,7

#### Hebrews
- 11:6: 10,20
- 12:2: 15,31

#### James
- 2:5: 17,34

#### 1 John
- 2:19: 16,33

### The Gift of Perseverance

#### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>19:2</td>
<td>2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:10</td>
<td>11,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:2</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66:9</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80:18-19</td>
<td>7,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>84:6</td>
<td>13,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85:7</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>14,35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>118:8</td>
<td>22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>119:36</td>
<td>8,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>140:9</td>
<td>6,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>17,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>10,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>17,43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>12,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>57:16</td>
<td>9,21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>17,46; 22,62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32:40</td>
<td>2,2; 7,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>14,37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>20,51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Matthew
- 6:9: 2,4; 21,55
- 6:10: 2,5; 3,6
- 6:11: 4,7
- 6:12: 5,8
- 6:13: 5,9; 6,11; 6,12; 17,46; 22,62; 23,63
- 10:22: 2,2
- 11:21: 9,23
- 11:22: 9,23
- 13:11: 14,35; 14,37
- 13:13: 14,37
- 19:11: 14,37
- 20:14-15: 8,17
- 26:41: 6,12

#### Luke
- 1:3: 19,49
- 8:8: 14,37; 20,51

### Answer to the Pelagians IV
Predestination of Saints

Abraham, 6, (9,17), 20
children promised to, 20
faith, not works, promised to, 20
father of many nations, (10,19)
promises made to, 33
Adam, (9,17)
adoption, (18,35), 36
alms: Cornelius, (7,12)
Ambrose, (4,8)
angels, (9,17)
anger: vessels of, 14, 33
animals, 10
Apollos watered . . ., (5,9)
apostles, 28, 41
chosen before creation of the world, (17,34)
assent: act of believing, 5
Augustine:
Commentary on some statements in the letter to the Romans, (3,7)
Time of the Christian Religion, (9,17)
Trinity, The, (8,13)
baptism: bath of rebirth, 31
baptism:
for forgiveness of sins, (13,25)
same grace as incarnation, 31
belief: thought and will, 5
believer, see faith
boasting, (3,7), (4,8), 16, 37
body: in the body = time when we live in the body, 24
building, (7,12)
calling:
apostles as chosen, (17,34)
chosen, 37
irrevocable, 33, 37, (19,38)
members of God’s predestined Son, (16,32)
plan of God, 37, 39
running, (3,7)
that we might believe, (19,38)
Catholic faith, 24, 28
children of God, 20, 22
chosen, 10, (6,11)
believers, (17,34)
Christ’s members; before creation of the world, (18,35), 36, 37, (19,38)
grace, not merit, (6,11)
holiness and spotlessness, 36, (19,38)
made rich in faith by, (17,34)
predestination, (18,35)
why Christ came when he did, 18
you have not chosen me . . ., (17,34), (19,38)
Church, 27
prays for persecutors, 15
predestined to be members of, 31
commands:
ask that God give what he commands, 22, 27
demands are in power of a human being, 22
God and carrying out, (10,19)
God’s promise, 20, 22
good works, 20, 22
power of the human to carry out, 20
what is demanded; what is offered, 20
condemnation, 16
conversion:

Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)
Each work in this volume is indexed separately.

Answer to the Pelagians IV
drawn to Christ by the Father, 15
everyone who has heard my Father . . ,
(8,13), 14, 33
Father’s teaching, and coming to Christ, 14
Cornelius: alms and prayers, (7,12)
cross; folly, 14
Cyprian, Saint (3,7)
Lord’s Prayer, 15
testimony on death, (14,26), 28
David, King, 42
death, 41
beneficial, (14,26), 28
Book of Wisdom, (14,26)
Cyprian on, (14,26)
righteous person, (14,26)
devil, 28
election of grace, (3,7), (6,11) , 33
beloved on account of their fathers, 33
Ephesians, Letter to the,(18,35)-36
eternal life, (13,25), 42
eucharist: future merits for receiving, (13,25)
faith, 18
see also non-believers
ability to have; human nature, 10
Augustine’s earlier errors, (3,7)
beginning of:
  gift of God, (2,3), (4,8), 31, (19,38),
  (20,40), 41, (21,43)
  increments, 22
scriptural texts, 39
Scripture testimony, 4
believers ask for increase of, 20
building by preaching, (7,12)
chosen in order that they might believe,
(17,34)
demand and gift, 20
foreknowledge of God, (3,7)
gift in its beginning and completion, 16, 20
gift of believing in Christ, 15
gift of God, (3,7)
given to some, not to others, 16
God’s foreknowledge, 20
God’s work, (7,12)
good works and, 20
human being’s part in, 20
increase is from God, (2,3), 5, 22, (21,43)
mercy and belief, (3,7)
merited by mercy of God, (3,7)
no one comes to me unless . . . , 15, (20,40)
praying for anticipates grace, 15
preceded by grace of God, (3,7)
promise to Abraham, 20
rich in faith by being chosen, (17,34)
salvation, a gift, (7,12)
salvation as reward for, 22
sets believer apart, 10
standing firm in, (11,21)
twofold call to, (16,32)
voluntary, (6,11)
will and, 10
work of God, 6
works and, (7,12)
flesh, (8,13)
conflict with spirit, (4,8)
death to deeds of, 22
put to death by spirit, 20
foreknowledge:
predestination and, (10,19)
forgiveness of sins:
Christ the man, 31
future sins, 24
penance, (13,25)
free choice, (4,8), (5,9), 10, (12,23)
holiness, 36
future life: reward or punishment, 24
gifts, (3,7), (21,43)
irrevocable, 37, (19,38)
natural, 10
God:
foreknowledge, (10,19), (17,34), 36
Christ the man, 31
his own future actions, (17,34)
believers and non-believers, (9,17)
early death, (14,26)
faith and works of individuals, (3,7)
faith; believers, 20
forgiveness of sins, 24, (13,25)
penances performed, (13,25)
predestination and, (19,38)
judgment and mercy, (6,11)
mercy, see mercy
no injustice in, 27
promises, 6, (10,19)
keeping his commands, 22
power of human being, 20
trust in, (11,21)
unsearchable ways, (6,11) , 16
wisdom and knowledge of, (9,17)
good and evil:
grace sets good apart, 10
merit, 24
good life, the, 10
good works, 2, 5
commandments, 20, 22
faith and, 20
faith promised to Abraham, 20
Holy Spirit, (3,7)
gospel:
believing in, 15
enemies for your sake, 33
preached, (3,7), 39, (20,40)
preaching; belief in, (9,17)
grace, (4,8), 10, 37, 41

Answer to the Pelagians IV
Christ as fountain of, 31
faith and, (3,7)
gratuitous, 6, (6,11), (21,43)
hardness of heart and, (8,13)
human nature and, (5,9)
mercy, (17,54)
merit and, (1,1), (2,3), 4, 5, (3,7), 10, (12,23), (12,25), 27, 29, 37
power of, seen in prayers, 27
prayer and, 15
predestination as preparation for, (10,19)
predestining by, 36
result of predestination, (10,19)
unchangeable truth of, (17,34)
works and, (7,12)
Greeks, (16,32)
heart(-s), (8,13)
door opened, 41
God working in, 39
grace and hardness of, (8,13)
hardened, (3,7)
inclined to will of God, 42
open to hear God’s word, (20,40)
heaven: chosen wills inclined to, 42
geresy, 27
Hilary, (1,1)
Holy Spirit, (8,13), (15,30), 31, 39
doing good and, (3,7)
works, 20, 22
hope, 2
human beings:
distinguishing gifts, 10
power re God’s promises, 20
human nature: grace and, (5,9)
humility, (5,9)

infant baptism, 24
infant salvation, 24
infants:
dying: mercy and judgment, 29
predestination of, 24
Israel, 33
Judaism and, (7,12)
nation of prophets, (9,17)

Jesus Christ, (5,9)
scandal: folly, (16,32)
foreknowledge, 18
fountain of grace, 31
free will, (15,30)
gifts of, (15,30)
God’s foreknowledge of Christ the man, 31
humanity and divinity, 31
mediator, (12,23)
merit: Son of God, (15,30)
miracles and belief in, (9,17)

no one can come to me unless... (8,13)
perfecter of faith, 31
predestination as man, (15,30)
predestined to be Son of God, 31
refusal to believe in, (9,17)
sinlessness, 31
Son of Man and Son of God, 31
this is a hard saying... 15
why Christ came when he did, (9,17), 18
Jews:
called, (16,32)
predestination, 33
Judah: Israel and, (7,12)
judgment, 14, 24, 41
acts if one had lived longer, 29
mercy and, (6,11)
merits earned if one had lived, 24
merits of a life one did not have, 29
justice, 36

law, (4,8)
limping, 33
literature, 14
little ones, see children; infants
Lord’s Prayer:
May your will also be done... 15
love, (1,1) , 2, 36
faith and, (3,7)
nature of human beings, 10

Mary, Blessed Virgin, (15,30), 31
mercy, 4, (3,7), 33
belief and, (3,7)
dying in infancy, 29
faith and, (7,12)
Father’s teaching, and coming to Christ, 14
forgiveness of sins, 24
grace and, 27, (17,34)
judgment and, (6,11)
vessels of, (8,13), 14, 33

merit:
chosen people, (6,11)
Christ as Son of God, (15,30)
evil merits, 20, 22
future merits foreseen, 24
inches in one would have lived, (13,25)
good and evil, 24
grace and, (1,1), (2,3), 4, 5, (3,7), 10, (12,23), (12,25), 27, 29, 37
mockery, 39
Moses, (9,17)

non-believers:
ask that faith be given to, 20, 22
Christ’s foreknowledge of... (9,17)

olive tree, 33
original sin, 2, 16, 24

Volume I/26
doing away with, (13,25)

pagans, 18
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
  beginnings of his faith, 4
  conversion, 4
Pelagians, 2, 18, 20, 22, 24, (13,25), 27, 29, 36, (19,38)
Pelagius, (2,3), 4
penance: forgiveness of sins, (13,25)
perish, 33
persecution: conversion of Paul, 4
persecutors: praying for, 15
Peter, Saint, Apostle, (7,12)
philosophers, (9,17)
pity, 6, (12,23)
Porphyry, (9,17)
potter, 14
praise, 37
prayer:
  anticipates the grace of God, 15
  for those unwilling to believe, 15
  power of grace and, 27
preaching: belief in the gospel, (9,17)
predetermination:
  chosen by, (18,35)
  Christ the man, (15,30)
  foreknowledge and, (10,19)
  God's foreknowledge and, (19,38)
  free will, 24
Pelagian view condemned, 36
plan of God, 37
predestined he also called, (17,34)
preservation for grace, (10,19)
saints, 31
unchangeable truth of, (17,34)
promise:
  children of the, (8,13)
  God is able to keep, (10,19)
prophesies, (5,9), 10, (7,12)
Prosper, (1,1)
punishment, 14, 24, (14,26)
piety and unbelief, (3,7)
sin, (10,19)
redemption, (12,23), (18,35), 36
repentance, (19,38)
resurrection of the body, 24
reward, 24
  for putting deeds of flesh to death, 22
righteousness, (6,11), 42
  early death of a righteous man, (14,26)
  judgment and, (14,26)
  works of, (7,12), 20
running, (3,7)
saints: predestination, 31
salvation, 28, 39
  God's plan of, 33
  God's will for all, 14
  only one way to, 15
  preached since beginning of human race, (9,17)
  reward for faith, 20, 22
  true religion, (9,17)
  worthiness for, (10,19)
Saul, King, 42
scandal, (16,32)
Simplician, (4,8)
sin:
  danger of, gone after this life, (14,26)
  dangers and temptations, 28, 29
  God's foreknowledge of, (10,19)
  power of the evil one, 33
  punishment for sins, (10,19)
Son of God:
  conformed to image of, (16,32)
predetermination of Christ, (15,30)
spirit: death to deeds of the flesh, 20, 22
sufficiency comes from God, 5
teacher of literature, 14
temptation: human life as, (14,26)
thanksgiving, 39
Thessalonians, 39
Trinity: inseparable works, (8,13)
truth, (3,7), (8,13), (9,17)
  revelation of, (4,8)
unborn children, (3,7)
virtues, 27
will:
  belief and, 5
  earthly kingdoms and, 42
  faith and, (3,7), 10
  good will, 36
  mercy and judgment, (6,11)
  prepared by God, (3,7), 10, (6,11), 42
  worthiness for salvation, (10,19)
will of God:
  accomplished, 33
  cannot will what is unjust, 16
  God hardens whom he wills, 14
  hearts of human beings, 41
  made us graced, 36
  mystery, 36
  salvation of all, 14
  uncertainty, for myself, (11,21)
  willing human beings and, 42
Wisdom, Book of:
  authority, 27-29
  on death, (14,26)
Answer to the Pelagians IV

word of God, 39
work of God, that you believe . . ., (7,12),
(8,13)
works, (16,32)

faith and, (7,12)
worship: God’s commands, (10,19)
Zion, 33

Volume I/26
Index from

Letters 1-99

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/1  Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-163-3, 6 x 9 in., 440 pp., 2001
Includes:

Responses to Januarius
(Ad inquisitiones Januarii)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/1 Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>55, 7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18 20:12 21:25</td>
<td>37, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>55, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>36, 3, 5; 55, 10, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>55, 10, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3 22:18</td>
<td>53, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:10</td>
<td>78, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>93, 9, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>93, 5, 19; 93, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:53</td>
<td>46, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>55, 16, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:20</td>
<td>55, 16, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:7</td>
<td>55, 11, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:25</td>
<td>75, 4, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:15</td>
<td>55, 3, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>36, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:28</td>
<td>36, 7, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>55, 11, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>82, 2, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25-26</td>
<td>47, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>46, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11</td>
<td>48, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:7</td>
<td>32, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:29</td>
<td>78, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:7</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel</td>
<td>22:1</td>
<td>55, 17, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Nehemiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/1 Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:26</td>
<td>87, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tobit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/1 Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>36, 8, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/1 Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>73, 3, 8; 95, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/1 Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4-2</td>
<td>93, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>43, 9, 25; 49, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10-11</td>
<td>93, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>75, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>82, 2, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>25, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10</td>
<td>22, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3, LXX</td>
<td>55, 6, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>93, 9, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>93, 9, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>93, 9, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>55, 17, 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>93, 6, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17-19</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:28</td>
<td>51, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:28-29</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:4</td>
<td>38, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:1</td>
<td>47, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:15</td>
<td>36, 9, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:14</td>
<td>64, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:6</td>
<td>92, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12</td>
<td>88, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:13</td>
<td>36, 13, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:4</td>
<td>55, 10, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:11</td>
<td>94, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:37</td>
<td>94, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:12</td>
<td>93, 9, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:14</td>
<td>36, 11, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:14-15</td>
<td>36, 9, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:17</td>
<td>93, 9, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:11</td>
<td>55, 12, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:3</td>
<td>93, 8, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:21</td>
<td>23, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:1</td>
<td>36, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:1-2</td>
<td>76, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:14</td>
<td>36, 8, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:6</td>
<td>22, 2, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:6-8</td>
<td>95, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:7</td>
<td>95, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:9</td>
<td>95, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:14-16</td>
<td>93, 9, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:19</td>
<td>93, 11, 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:2</td>
<td>48, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:8-9</td>
<td>75, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:3</td>
<td>93, 9, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:14</td>
<td>94, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67:2-3</td>
<td>93, 10, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:7</td>
<td>32, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:12</td>
<td>75, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:13</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:27</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:7</td>
<td>55, 6, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>66, 1; 93, 5, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:11</td>
<td>87, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:17-19</td>
<td>93, 6, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:18</td>
<td>32, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81:11</td>
<td>75, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:5</td>
<td>55, 15, 28; 94, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:31-34</td>
<td>29, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:38</td>
<td>55, 6, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:12</td>
<td>93, 9, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:9</td>
<td>55, 14, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:15</td>
<td>48, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:19</td>
<td>41, 2; 95, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100:3</td>
<td>24, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100:5</td>
<td>93, 2, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:10</td>
<td>95, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:4</td>
<td>95, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:59</td>
<td>55, 14, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108:6</td>
<td>93, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:2-3</td>
<td>94, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:53</td>
<td>93, 9, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:120</td>
<td>36, 5, 9; 36, 5, 11; 36, 5, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:1</td>
<td>25, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:7</td>
<td>88, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122:1</td>
<td>41, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125:2</td>
<td>41, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:8</td>
<td>55, 16, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:5</td>
<td>32, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Proverbs

| 4:9 | 32, 4 |
| 4:27 | 48, 2 |

| 9:9 | 93, 5, 17 |
| 13:22 | 93, 12, 50 |
| 19:12 | 88, 5 |
| 27:6 | 82, 4, 31; 93, 2, 4 |
| 29:19 | 93, 5, 17 |

Ecclesiastes

| 11:2 | 55, 13, 23 |

Song of Songs

| 1:6 | 93, 8, 24; 93, 8, 25 |
| 1:7 | 93, 9, 29 |
| 2:2 | 93, 9, 28 |

Wisdom

| 5:3-4 | 55, 5, 9 |
| 5:6 | 55, 5, 8 |
| 13:9 | 55, 4, 7 |

Sirach

| 3:1 | 36, 11, 26 |
| 4:25 | 93, 13, 51 |
| 11:7 | 43, 3, 11 |
| 22:5 | 78, 1 |

Isaiah

| 2:2 | 93, 9, 29 |
| 3:12 | 33, 3 |
| 5:20 | 36, 8, 20 |
| 6:2-3 | 94, 6 |
| 6:3 | 55, 16, 29 |
| 26:20 | 36, 13, 31 |
| 41:7-8 | 78, 5 |
| 45:11, LXX | 24, 1 |
| 54:1 | 93, 8, 26 |
| 54:2-5 | 93, 9, 29 |
| 66:5 | 88, 9 |

Jeremiah

| 2:30 | 93, 1, 3 |
| 9:24 | 55, 4, 6 |
| 17:5 | 89, 5 |
| 31:31-32 | 75, 4, 14 |

Ezekiel

| 18:4 | 98, 1; 98, 3 |
| 18:4.20 | 44, 5, 12 |
| 33:9 | 29, 8 |
Volume II/1

Letters 1-99

Daniel
3:36 93, 9, 30

Habakkuk
2:4 55, 2, 3; 55, 14, 25

Malachi
1:2 78, 8
1:11 93, 6, 20
4:2 55, 5, 8

New Testament
Matthew
5:8 92, 4
5:9 43, 1, 2
5:10 44, 2, 4; 87, 7; 93, 2, 8
5:14 93, 9, 29
5:16 41, 1
5:21 36, 4, 8
5:37 23, 1; 82, 2, 21
5:39 46, 12; 47, 5
5:40 93, 3, 11
5:45 93, 2, 4
6:6 38, 2
6:24 36, 10, 23
7:1 95, 3
7:2 77, 2
7:6 29, 2
7:14 93, 9, 30
7:15,16 44, 2, 4
7:16 29, 6
8:8 54, 3, 4
8:11 93, 9, 30
9:15 36, 3, 5
10:16 55, 7, 12
11:13 75, 4, 14
11:18-19 36, 11, 26
11:19 36, 11, 26
11:28-29 55, 12, 22
11:28-30 26, 5
11:29 94, 3
12:8 36, 3, 5
12:28 55, 16, 29
13:24-3 43, 8, 21
13:30 76, 2
13:43 78, 1
16:18 53, 1, 2
16:24 55, 14, 24
17:26 83, 5
18:7 73, 3, 6; 78, 1
18:15 95, 3
19:26 32, 2
21:25 93, 11, 47

Mark
1:44 82, 2, 18
10:27 32, 2
16:2 36, 12, 28

Luke
6:5 36, 10, 23
7:33-35 36, 11, 26
8:27 32, 2
10:37 98, 6
11:20 55, 16, 29
14:23 93, 2, 5
16:16 75, 4, 14; 82, 2, 18
18:8 93, 9, 33; 93, 11, 49
18:9-10 93, 11, 49
20:4 93, 11, 47
20:36 55, 14, 26
22:20 54, 5, 6; 54, 5, 7
24:1 36, 12, 28
24:44-47 76, 1
24:44-47 93, 6, 21
24:46 93, 7, 23
24:47 93, 7, 23

John
1:16 82, 2, 18
1:16-17 75, 4, 14
1:17 82, 2, 18
1:33 51, 5, 89, 5
2:4 55, 9, 16
3:5 98, 2
4:22 23, 4
4:24 92, 5
5:18 75, 4, 14; 82, 2, 18
5:19 93, 9, 32
5:24 55, 1, 2
5:46 82, 2, 8
6:44 93, 2, 5
7:39 55, 16, 30
8:44 92, 4
10:16 93, 5, 19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volume II/1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Corinthians**

| 2:7 | 83, 1; 95, 3 |
| 2:11 | 83, 1; 95, 3 |
| 3:3 | 29, 4 |
| 4:16 | 92, 3 |
| 5:6 | 55, 14, 26 |
| 5:17 | 36, 10, 23 |
| 6:14 | 78, 5 |
| 7:5 | 78, 8 |
| 9:15 | 58, 2 |
| 11:29 | 40, 4, 6; 78, 6 |

**Galatians**

| 1:8 | 53, 1, 1 |
| 1:9 | 93, 7, 23 |
| 1:10 | 22, 2, 7 |
| 1:18 | 75, 3, 8 |
| 1:20 | 40, 3, 3; 82, 2, 7; 82, 2, 24 |
| 2:1-2 | 75, 3, 8 |
| 2:2 | 75, 3, 8 |
| 2:3-5 | 82, 2, 12 |
| 2:11-14 | 75, 3, 8 |
| 2:12 | 40, 4, 5; 75, 3, 8 |
| 2:14 | 28, 3, 4; 40, 3, 3; 82, 2, 4; 93, 9, 31 |
| 2:18 | 93, 13, 52 |
| 2:20 | 93, 2, 7 |
| 2:21 | 82, 2, 19 |
| 3:1-3 | 93, 9, 31 |
| 3:16 | 76, 1 |
| 3:17-18 | 55, 14, 25 |
| 3:18-19 | 44, 5, 11 |
| 3:20 | 40, 1, 1; 43, 8, 23; 61, 2 |
| 3:21 | 48, 3 |
| 3:22 | 36, 7, 15 |
| 3:23 | 48, 3 |
| 3:24 | 93, 9, 34 |
| 6:13 | 75, 1, 2 |
| 6:14-17 | 75, 1, 2 |

**Philippians**

| 1:23-24 | 55, 14, 25 |
| 2:7 | 33, 5 |
| 2:13 | 55, 10, 19 |
| 2:20-21 | 78, 8 |
| 2:21 | 43, 8, 23; 87, 2 |
| 3:2 | 79 |
| 3:8 | 40, 4, 6 |
| 3:12-13 | 55, 14, 26 |
| 3:15-16 | 93, 10, 35 |
| 3:19 | 20, 11; 55, 5, 9 |

**Colossians**

| 2:16 | 36, 8, 20 |
| 3:2 | 55, 2, 3 |
| 3:3-4 | 55, 2, 3 |
| 3:4 | 55, 6, 10 |
| 3:10 | 92, 3 |
| 3:13 | 48, 3 |

**1 Thessalonians**

| 3:12 | 43, 1, 1 |
| 5:19 | 98, 3 |

**1 Timothy**

| 1:5 | 55, 21, 38 |
| 1:20 | 93, 2, 7 |
| 4:1-5 | 55, 20, 36 |
| 4:3 | 75, 4, 15 |
| 4:4 | 47, 4, 82, 3, 27 |
| 4:12 | 22, 2, 7 |
| 5:20 | 95, 3 |
| 6:16 | 92, 3 |
| 2:17 | 55, 3, 4 |
| 2:24 | 49, 1 |
| 2:26 | 43, 1, 1 |
| 3:8-9 | 55, 16, 29 |
| 4:3 | 35, 3 |

**Titus**

| 1:11 | 34, 4; 35, 3 |
| 1:15 | 55, 20, 36 |
Letters 1-99

2:14 93, 9, 30
3:10 43, 1, 1

Hebrews
6:20 40, 4, 6; 75, 4, 15

James
3:2 73, 3, 9
4:6 55, 10, 18; 93, 11, 49
5:12 23, 1

1 Peter
4:1-3 29, 10
4:8 88, 9; 93, 10, 40
5:5 55, 10, 18
5:8 78, 5

1 John
1:5 92, 2
2:2 93, 9, 32
2:19 93, 9, 29
3:2 64, 1; 92, 3
4:16 73, 3, 10

Revelation
2:1-3 43, 8, 22
2:7 43, 8, 22
4:5 43, 8, 22
4:8 94, 6
7:9 93, 9, 30
22:11 78, 9

Volume II/1
Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number. The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Aaron: idol worship, as tolerating, 43:23
Abaddires, 17:2
abandoned woman, the, 93:26, 30
Abednego (Shadrach, Meshach, and), 36:16; 93:9(3)
Abimilech, 46:18; 47:3
Abram, 87:4; 93:28(9), 52
Abraham:
the bosom of Abraham, 78:6
Cast out the handmaid and her son, 78:8
Christians as offspring of, 88:11
Esau as nephew of, 36:12
The God of Abraham and the God of Nachor, 46:18
God’s promises to, 53:1(1); 76:1; 89:4
Jesus Christ as descendant of, 76:1
offspring of, 93:15, 19, 51(13)
Absalom, 78:8
Abundantius, 65:1–2
Academics, the, 1:1–3
actions:
neutral, 75:4, 16; 82:13–14
actors, 91:4–5
Acts of the Apostles:
Holy Spirit filling one hundred and twenty, 93:21
Priscillianists and, regarding fasting, 36:28
voice speaking to Peter, 75:7
Adam:
“because of food Adam lost paradise,” 36:11–12
original sin, 98:1, 6
Adriatic, the: misrouted letter to Jerome, 40:1(1)–9(6)
adultery, 78:6
adulterers, rules regarding, 93:41–42
of David, 82:5
of Jupiter, 91:4–5
Paul on, 29:5
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
Aegean, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Aeneas, 7:4
Aeneid, the, 7:4; 14:1; 15:2; 17:2, 3; 91:2
Africa
See also Hippo; Thagaste; specific names, locations, and topics
Catholicism in, 49:2–3
Donatists as only in, 49:3; 52:2; 76:2; 87:1; 93:24(8)–25
feasting and drunkenness in cemeteries, 22:2–6
martyrs in, 78:3
Megalius as primate of, 38:2
Punic language in, 17:2
schisms in, 93:24(8)–25 See also schisms
Against the Pagans, book by Paulinus, 45:2
age: greater understanding as accompanying, 4,1–2
Agilus (son of Paulinus and Therasia), 30:3; 31:2–3; 42; 45:1
“airy or ethereal spirits,” 9:3
Alaric, 99:1
Albina, 46
Alexander (bishop, in succession of bishops), 53:2
Alexander (of Jerusalem), 75:4(3); 82:23(3)
Alexandria: Athanasius as Catholic bishop, 44:6
allegories:
interpretation of, 93:24(8)
usefulness of, 55:21
Alleluia, the cry of praise, 36:18(8); 55:28; 32, 34
alosia, 36:9(5), 11, 19
Alps, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
altar(s)
See also sacrifice
“Urbicus;” treatise of, 36:24
Alypius, 2:1; 22:1
Augustine presents to Paulinus, 27:5
as bishop of Thagaste, 28:1(1); 32:1
Jerome, as link to, 28:1(1); 39:2(2)
Thagaste, as bishop of, 28:1(1); 32:1
Ambrose, bishop of Milan, 24:4; 75:20(6)

Letters 1-99
Letters 1-99

asking Fortunius about, 44:7(4)
books of, 31:8
on church customs, 54:3
Duties as by, 82:21
on fasting, 36:32(14)
on lying, 82:24
Amnon, 78:8
Anacletus, 53:2
Anastasius, 53:2
anathema, 53:1(1); 93:23
angel(s):
bodies (forms) of, 95:7, 8
and circumcision of Moses, 23:4
“devil and his angels,” 43:22
devil as previously, 73:7
“even an angel from heaven . . . should be
anathema,” 93:23
false, 53:6(3)
food and drink, as given, 95:8
Generous, “inspiring” Donatist letter to,
53:1(1)–7
as guests, 95:8
Jerusalem whose citizens are the holy
angels, 55:10(6)
and Moses, circumcision of, 23:4
praising God in heaven, 94:6
on prayer with fasting, 36:18(8)
in Revelation, Book of, 43:22–23
Satan transforming self to, 53:7
Seraphim, the two, 55:29(16)
as spirits, 95:8
sacred, 95:8
struck by, 95:2
thousands of angels for eternity, 95:8
plural, 94:7
anger, 9:3–4; 93:48
of God, 91:6
turning to hatred, warning against, 38:2
Anicetus, 53:2
animal(s)
See also specific animals
Christ, as symbolizing, 55:11
the four, 94:6
sold as temple sacrifices, 29:3
wild, 93:11
Answer to the Pagans (by Paulinus), 31:8
Answer to the Skeptics, 1:3
Antioch:
Paul and Barnabas in, 75:7
quarrel between Paul and Peter, 28:3(3)–5
See also under Paul; Peter
Antoninus, letter from Augustine to:
on being mistaken about a person, 20:1–3
Anulinus (proconsul of Africa), 88:1; 89:3;
93:13
Apocalypse, the, 78:9
angel, sacred, 95:8
many thousands seen in, 93:30
seven churches, 55:10(6)
Apollinaris of Laodicea, 75:4(3), 20(6)
Apollo:
in poem of Licentius, 26:6
apostasy, 78:8
See also Manicheans
apostle(s)
See also individual names
the Church in time of, 93:9(3)
true and false, 43:22–23
Aptungi; Felix of, See Felix of Aptungi.
Aquila and Priscilla, 75:9
Aquilea: Rufus of, 68:3
Arabs, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Argentius, 29:12
Arians, 44:6; 93:31
Aries, 55:14(8)
Arimphaeans, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
ark of Noah, 78:8
ark of the covenant:
carried around . . . the seventh time,
55:10(6)
law of signifying sanctification, 55:30
Arles: Caecilian, acquittal of, 76:2; 88:3;
89:3 See also Caecilian
armor of God, 75:2
arts, liberal: salvation as not from, 87:1
Arzuges, the, 46:1–5; 93:24(8)
Ascension, the:
celebrated, 54:1(1)
fifty days after Easter, 55:29(16)–31(17)
asceticism:
of Paulinus, 25:4
Asia:
Hilary of Poitiers on, 93:31–32
in poem of Licentius, 26:6
Asiarcha, 29:12
Asinus Pollio, 75:22(7)
“assumption of the man,” the, 11:2–4
Assur, Praetextatus of, See Praetextatus of
Assur.
Asterius of Scythopolis, 75:20(6)
Asterius (subdeacon), 39:1(1)
atmosphere: 39:1(1)
astrology, 55:12(7)–13, 13, 14(8)
astronomy; astronomers, 55:6(4)
Athenian:
Athenian, Catholic bishop of Alexandria,
44:6
Athenians, 47:4
atomism: of Epicurus, rejecting, 3:2
Augustine
See also specific topics
as bishop, 32:1–2
friendships of, See individual names.
mother of, See Monica.
ordinance as priest in Hippo, 21:1–6
Aurelius, bishop of Carthage; prince of
Africa, 32:1
Quintian (priest), problems with, 64:1–3
Aurora, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
authority:
resisting, 87:7

Volume II/1
secular, See secular power.

Azov (sea), 26:6 (poem of Licentius)

Bacchus (Liber), 17:5

Badesil, church of, 64:2

Bagai:
- council of, 88:11
- Maximian as bishop, 69:1–2

banquets
- See also drink; eating; feasts; food in church, complaints regarding, 29:1–11

baptism, 89:5
- See also John the Baptist of Christ, 89:5
- Christ, as belonging to, 51:5
- of Christ vs. John, 93:47
- by disciples, 44:10(5)
- Donatists accepting Maximianist, not Catholic, 51:4–5

bile: anger produced by and producing, 9:3–4

bishop(s)
- See also individual names
- Augustine as, 31:4; 32:1–2
- deportment and reputation of, 83:2; 91:7
- Donatist, council in Carthage, 93:43
- Paulinus and Therasia’s letters from five, 32:1
- Roman, succession of, 53:2
- rules among (letter from Cyprian regarding), 93:41
- Valerius (of Hippo), 21:1–6

black: white as more pleasing, 29:11

blasphemy:
- Manichean priest accused of, 79

blood of Christ, 98:9
- See also eucharist

boasting, 48:2; 55:6(4); 82:2
- admonishment of, 78:8

body (-ies), 13:3
- as sacrament, 54:1(1) See also sacraments
- schismatics, of former, 93:46(11)
- Second Coming as eliminating need for, 23:4
- sins of other and, 98:2
- true, 89:5
- validity of, 89:5
- barbarians, 46:1–5
- See also pagans
- Barcaean, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
- Barcelona, 24:4
- Barnabas, 40:3(3)
- See also under Galatians (Paul, rebuke of Peter by)
- Paul and, in Antioch, 75:7
- Barzillai the Gileadite, 72:3(2)
- bathing:
  - after Lent, 54:9(7)–10
  - ethics of, 46:15; 47:3
- battle, 99:2

beauty:
- of body, 64:1
- of body and soul, 3:4
- “he who is ineffably beautiful,” 64:1
- of Helen of the Greeks (Troy), 40:7

being, the hierarchy of, 18:2

blessed, blessing:
- alogia, 36:19

blindness, 7:6(3)

blinding, as persecution, 88:8

Didymus of Alexandria, See Didymus.
- spiritual, 93:1(1)
- of Stesichorus, 82:33 See also Stesichorus
- “those that strike even blind eyes,” 51:5

blood of Christ, 98:9
- See also eucharist

boasting, 48:2; 55:6(4); 82:2
- admonishment of, 78:8

body (-ies), 13:3
- of angels, discussion regarding, 95:8
- beauty of, 3:4; 64:1
- dead on account of sin, 55:3(2)
- dissolution of, 95:2
- effect of mind on, 9:2–5
- and mind, debate with Manichean priest regarding, 79
- natural and spiritual, 95:7–8
- “quasi-body” as soul’s vehicle, 13:2–4
- redemption of, 55:3(2)
- resurrection, 55:23(13); 95:7–8 See also resurrection

senses as deceptive, 7:2, 3

sensual pleasures of, See sensual pleasures.
- sin, as dead on account of, 55:26
- natures of, 95:2
- as soul (common philosophical position), 1:1
- soul making use of senses, 7:2, 3–7
- soul vs., 3:4; 55:18(10)
- as soul’s vehicle, 13:2–4
- spirit vs., 55:3(2), 9
- spiritual (after resurrection), 94:6; 95:7–8
- truth, as like, 13:3

body of Christ, 98:9
- See also eucharist
Letters 1-99

Boniface, bishop of Cataqua, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
ecclesiastical property problems, 96:2–3; 97:3

Boniface, letters from Augustine to:
on infant baptism, 98:1–10
Book of Wisdom, 54
books
See also individual titles
reading, recognizing in ourselves truth found in, 19:1
books, sacred, 53:4(2)
burning of, 51:1, 2
surrendered in time of persecution, 35:4; 42:14; 43:1–4; 49:4
Bordeaux: Delphius as bishop of, 24:4
Boreas, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)

bosom of Abraham, 78:6
See also eternal life; heaven
boxing, 68:2; 73:1(1)
boyhood: manhood and, 4:1–2
branches, 82:27
broken, reattachment of, 87:9
v vine and, 52:2
bread:
Alypius, as gift to, 24:5
the eucharist, See eucharist.
bronzes: in Jericho, 46:18

Bucolica, 16:3; 17:3
bull(s), 47:5
burial, 82:15
Byzacena, 46:1
Sufe massacre in, 50
Byzacium: Maximianist schism, 93:24(8)

Caecilian (bishop of Carthage), 76:2
case of (Donatist condemnation of),
43:1–20, 25(9)–26; 93:13–16(5)
Daniel and lion’s den, comparison, 85:5
Donatist reaction to verdict, 89:3
false charges against, 93:39
innocence of, 53:5
judgment regarding, validity of, 93:14
Majorinus as Donatist counterpart, See
Majorinus;
two acquittals of, 88:3

Caecilian (governor of Africa), letters from Augustine to:
on anti-Donatist edict, 86
caelicolae, 44:13(6)

Caesarea:
bodyguards for Paul travelling to, 75:10
Emerinus as Donatist bishop, 87:1–10
Eusebius of, 24:3
Peter in (God shows no partiality), 75:7
Caiphas, 36:30(13)

Calama (Numidia):
Crispinus as Donatist bishop, See Crispinus.
Megalius as bishop of, 38:2
Nectarius, 38:3

pagan feasts in, 90; 91:3–10
calf; calves, 55:11
Gideon sacrificing, 46:18
Calixtus, 53:2
Calliope, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Callipides, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Calphurnius Lanarius, 68:3
Campania (Campagnia):
Nola as in, See Nola.
cancer, 79
canonical books (scriptures), 82:24
See also scripture:
authority of, 93:35(10)
complete obedience owed only to, 82:24
inerrancy of, 82:2–3
on reprimands, benefit of, 93:32
translations and preservation of, 93:38
capi, 3:5
Capitoline Hill, 91:4–5
Capraria, 48:4
Eudoxius as abbot, See Eudoxias.
Carcedonius: regarding Timothy, cleric,
62:1; 63:2–3
carnal, 93:32
See also flesh; sensual pleasures
carnal persons, Ishmael as symbolizing,
93:6
spiritual vs., 95:6
Carneades (renowned skeptic), 1:2
carpousing, 93:48

Cassia, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Cassiciacum, 1:1–3
Cassus, Mount, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Castorius, letter from Alypius and Augustine
to:
on Maximian, abdication of, 69:1–2

Vol. II/1
Letters 1-99

Casulanus (Catholic priest), letters from Augustine to:
on fasting, 36:1–32
Cataqua, Numidia: Paul as bishop, 85:1–2
Catholic Church, Catholics, 93:23
See also Church, the; individual names;
specific topics
Circumcellions as persecuting, See Circumcellions.
Donatist converts to (rejoining), 61:1–2;
89:7; 93:16(5)–17 See also under Donatists
and Donatist schism, See Donatists.
false, 93:17
fish, bad among the good (as like),
93:33–34, 50(12)
gentleness of, 88:6
Macarian, Donatists calling, 49:3
Manichees as enemy of, 25:2
as one true faith, 20:3
persecution of, 93:6
religious practices of, 17:5
spread of, 49:2–3; 52:1; 87:1
the Trinity according to, 11:2–4
as true Church, 93:51(13)
unity of, See Christian unity.
Catholic Way of Life and the Manichean Way
of Life, The, 24:2
Cato, 91:4
cattle:
shepherds and, 93:5
theft of, 93:5
wandering, 93:5
Celer, letters from Augustine to:
on Donatist departure from Catholic Church, 57:1–2
on pursuing a good Christian life, 56:1–2
Celestine (possibly deacon and pope), letters
from Augustine to:
on the hierarchy of being, 18:1–2
cemeteries: feasting and drunkenness in
African, 22:2–6
Cenchreae, 75:9
Paul, vow of at, 82:8
cenobium, the, 54:4(3)
Cerinthus, 75:13
chaff, See also harvest; weeds; wheat.
removal at last winnowing, 93:33, 42,
50(12)
wheat, amid, 93:33–34
wheat purified through ministry of, 98:5
change: for the better, 55:11
charity, 48:3
cherubim, 94:6
See also angels
child (-ren):
of abandoned woman, 93:26, 30
bad, 89:2
and God, belief in, 98:7
nature of, 98:7
“where even the children praise the Lord,” 93:50(12)
Chremes, 7:4
Christ
See Jesus Christ; specific topics and events
Christian grace, See grace.
Christian love
See also love
fasting, in relation to, 36:16–26
Christian martyrs
See also individual names
Punic names of, 16:2; 17:2
Christian unity, 36:22; 44:13(6)
See also Church, the
bringing about, ways discussed, 93:17
communion among churches, 49:2
Donatists exhorted to return to, 76:1–4;
87:9
Donatists (former) as desiring, 93:16(5)
force used to bring about, 93:16(5)–18
See also under fear; force; secular power
importance of, 93:28(9)
love, bearing with one another in, 48:3
scattered members gathered together, 93:31
tolerance and, 44:11
Christianity
See also Catholic Church; Church; faith
converting “these who hate you,” 88:9
events celebrated in, 54:3(1)
fruit, as recognized by, 29:6
hierarchy of being, task in relation to, 18:2
Jerusalem, as beginning in, 93:21, 23
Jews, contrasted to, 29:4; 36:23(10)
martyrs, accused of worshiping, 16:2–3
pagan habits brought to by former pagans, 29:9
the Sabbath, regarding, 36:5(3)
sacraments of, See under sacraments.
spread of, 93:22(7)
tolerance within, 54:3–5(4)
as the true philosophy, 2:1
Christians:
false brethren, 87:2–3
good and bad, 53:6(3)
as having died along with Christ, 55:3(2)–4(3)
law, to abandon, 82:20
numerical superiority over Jews, 93:26
Christmas, 55:2
Chronicles, Book of, 75:2
Chrysippus of Soli, 16:3
Chrysostom, John, 75:6
Church, the, 55:3(2); 93:30–31
See also Catholic Church; Christian unity; individual topics
Christ as king, 89:4
Letters 1-99

as Christ’s body, 55:3(2), 31(7)
customs Augustine would like abolished,
55:35(19)
customs in, 54:6(5)
Donatist claim to be, 93:24(8)
moon, designated by term, 55:10(6)
as mother, 48:2; 89:6; 98:3
Mount Sion as symbolizing, 55:11
“no one wipes out from the earth the
Church of God,” 43:27
respecting customs of other churches,
36:32(14)
Rogatist claim to be, 93:23–26
serving, steering middle path while, 48:2–3
seven churches, John writing to, 49:2
sin of some as not destroying, 93:30–34
spread of, 53:6(3); 93:21, 26–30 See also
Catholicism
true, 44:3(2); 93:11
unity in, See Christian unity.
universal, 55:3(2)
Church of Christ, 87:9, See Church, the.
Church of God: not offending, 36:21(9)
Cicero, 17:3
on cities, flourishing, 91:3
On the Orator, 15:1
Cimmerian, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Circumcellions, 23:6–7; 35:2; 76:2; 93:2
Donatists as tolerating, 43:24
Hasa, invading basilica at, 29:12
persecution of Catholics by, 88:1, 6–8, 10,
12
Restitutus (Catholic priest), murder of, 88:6
savagery of, 93:11
circumcision, circumcised, 23:4; 82:15
commanded for sake of what it signified,
82:20
of Jesus, 82:18
Jew(s), as, 75:7
Paul on, 82:19
of Timothy, See under Timothy
Cirta, Numidia:
Fortunius, meeting with, 44:1(1)
Profuturus as bishop of, See Profuturus.
Sylvanus as bishop of, 45:17(6)
city (-ies)
See also specific names
flourishing, 91:3
City of God, 91:3
Clement, 53:2
cherub(s), 83:4
Aurelius allowing to preach, 41:1–2
monks and, 60:1–2
reputation of, 78:6
rules regarding, 63:2; 64:3
Timothy, 62:1–2; 63:1–4
clothes, See garments.
colors: white more pleasing than black, 29:11
Colossians, 49:2
Comes (holy man), 24:3
Commandments, Ten, See Ten
Commandments.
comunion, See eucharist; sacraments.
compassion, 40:4(4), 6; 75:12(4), 17;
82:26–29
conscience, 55:38
Constantina, 34:5; 38:3
bishops in, order of, 53:4(2)
Constantine, the emperor, 43:4
Caecilian, case of, 76:2; 89:3;
93:13–16(5) See also Caecilian
Donatists evoking authority of, 53:5;
88:1–7
Constantinople:
Eusebius as bishop of, 24:3
John Chrysostom as bishop of, 75:6;
82:23(3)
continence:
fruits of the Spirit, 29:6
profession of, as gift of God, 61:2
conversations
See also words
bad, 93:32
Corinthians, 43:25(9); 49:2
baptism of, 93:47
Corinthians, Letter(s) to:
on resurrection, beliefs regarding, 93:32
Cornelius, 53:2; 75:22(7); 82:11
Peter in house of, 75:7
correction (being corrected), 93:1(1)
See also punishment
shame regarding, 93:52
courage:
false suspicions as threat to, 78:6
“that you might not lose courage because
of the tongues of detractors,” 78:5
covention, ark of, carried around . . . the seventh time,
55:10(6)
law of signifying sanctification, 55:30
coveting neighbor’s wife and property
See also desire
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
crazy person:
“Someone who ties down a crazy
person,” 93:4(2)
creature:
seven symbolizing, 55:28
creatures: vanity, as subject to, 55:20(11)
crime: guilt vs. innocence, 93:15
Crispinus, Donatist bishop of Calama:
as heretic, 88:7
Crispinus, letters from Augustine to:
reprimanding for rebaptism, 66:1–2
on the schism, 51:1–5
criticism, constructive, 28:6(4)
among friends, 82:31–32
cross:
four directions of, 55:25
meaning of, 55:24(14)
symbolism of, 55:25
crosses, the three, 93:7
crown: after battle, 99:2
crucifixion:
of Christ, 36:30(13)
of flesh, 55:24(14)
cruelty:
comparative, 93:7
in persecution, 97:4
cupi, 3:5
cupiri, 3:5
customs, 54:6(5)
Cutzupits, 53:2
Cyprian, 93:36
Christian unity, regarding, 93:36–42, 45
colleagues, greed of, 93:15
Donatists, as seeming to favor, 93:37–42
infant spitting out eucharist, 98:3–4
lying, regarding, 82:24
as martyr, 93:36
Paul and Peter, regarding, 93:31
as Saint, 93:36
Cyprian, letters from Augustine to:
on letter to Italica, 92A
Damascus, 53:2
Daniel, 93:19
fasting, regarding, 36:16
the lion’s den, 88:5
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, 36:16;
93:9(3)
Dares, 68:2; 73:1(1), 4
darkness:
Dathan, 87:4; 93:28(9), 52
Daucus (father of identical twins), 14:2
daughter(s):
as thorns, 93:28(9)
David, King:
Abel’s rebellion of, 78:8
adultery of, 82:5
the armor of God, 75:2
and Barzillai the Gileadite, 72:3(2)
Christ, as symbolizing, 55:31(7)
house of, 32:2
incest in house of, 78:8
Jerome comparing self to, 75:2
Saul, as tolerating, 43:23
Saul’s anointing, respect for, 87:9
day: beauty in comparison to night, 29:11
deacons, See individual names.
death
See also killing
burial, 82:15
contemplation of, need for, 10:1–3
“death of the gospel,” 95:2
enemy, as last, 55:26
and eternal life, 92:1–2 See also eternal life; heaven
hope, as source of, 36:31
as last enemy, 55:10(6), 31(7)
to life, passing from, 55:3(2)
Manichean priest, debate with re., 79
rest in, 36:31
resurrection of the soul (as impossible), 3:4
deceit, See lies, lying.
Delphinus (bishop of Bordeaux), 24:4
demon(s), 46:3
doctrines of demons, 55:36(20)
finger of God, cast out by, 55:29(16)
idol-worship as serving, 32:5
sacrifices to (re. infant baptism), 98:1–4
Spirit of God, cast out by, 55:29(16)
swearing by (pagan), 46:1–5; 47:2
unclean spirit, 82:17
desire:
for passing things, controlling, 2:1
“desired,” Latin conjugations, 3:5
desires
See also under flesh
Deuterius (bishop of Maecina), 93:43
Deuteronomy, 46:18; 47:3
devil, See Satan,
Didymus (the blind) of Alexandria, 75:4(3),
20(6)
Jerome as finding fault with, 82:23
difficulties, See sorrow; suffering.
Diocletian, 53:4(2)
persecution of, 43:3(2)
Dionysius, 53:2
discernment: gift of, 78:3
discipline, See correction; punishment.
dishonor: vessels made for, 93:50(12)
divine mysteries, 55:29(16)
docile, See meekness.
docto: “of the heart,” 95:6
Dodona, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
dog(s), 47:5
Domino, 24:3, 5
Donatist leaders, Augustine’s letters to
See also under Donatists; individual names
on Caecilian and peacemaking, 43:1–27
on Fortunius, meeting with, and the true Church, 44:1–14
Donatist(s)
See also individual names; specific topics
Africa, as only in, 49:3; 52:2; 76:2; 87:1; 93:24–25, 27
“angel-inspired” letter to Generosus,
53:1(1)–7
beginnings of, 88:1
beliefs of (Christ’s glory), 93:1(1)
bishops, council in Carthage, 93:43
Caecilian, case against, See Caecilian.
Catholic Church, as exhorted to return to,
Catholic Church, rejoining, 61:1–2; 69:1–2
Christian guilt, beliefs regarding, 89:4
Circumcellions, Augustine’s correspondence with, See Crispinus, Circumcellions controlling, 93:1(1)
Crispinus, Augustine’s correspondence with, See Crispinus, Cutzupits, 53:2
doctrine as false, 89:1
Emeritus, Augustine’s correspondence with, See Emeritus.
escaping clutches of (Celer), 56:2
Eusebius, Augustine’s correspondence with regarding, 34:2–6
as false, 89:1
Fortunius, Augustine meeting with, 44:1–14
Generosus, “angel-inspired” letter to convert, 53:1(1)–7
Hippo, around, 89:8
Holy Spirit, as lacking, 93:46(11)
Honoratus, Augustine’s correspondence with, See Honoratus.
laws, imperial, complaints regarding, 89:3
laws issued against, 93:16(5)–17
love shown to, 89:6
Macarius, the time of, 23:6; 29:1; 44:4–5(3)
Majorinus as first bishop in, See Majorinus.
martyrdom, as claiming, 89:2
mass conversion (to Catholicism), 93:16(5)–17
matricidal young man, rebaptism of, 34:2–6
Maximian, abdication of, 69:1–2
Maximianist split from, See Maximianists.
Maximianists, accepting back, 51:2, 4–5; 76:3
Maximianists, persecution of, 51:3, 5
Maximinus, See Maximinus.
Montenses, 53:2
Optatus, as not expelling, 87:4–5 See also Optatus
persecution of, 44:4, 7(4)–8, 11; 87:8; 89:2
Proculeian as bishop, See Proculeian.
reason for, primary, 87:6, 10
rebaptizing, practice of, 23:1–8; 34:2–6; 43:21(8); 44:7(4)–8, 12
Rogatus, the Rogatist split from, 87:10 See also Rogatists
Roman authorities appealed to regarding, 87:8
in Rome (“the hill people”), 53:2
sacraments of, 87:9
schism with Catholic Church, 33:1–6; 43:1–27; 49:1–13; 57:1
secular power to control, 93:1(1) See also secular power
Severinus, letters from Augustine to re: schism, 52:1–4
as sinners, 32:2
suppressing, Paul’s words to justify, 87:7
Tychonius, 41:2
unity with, appealing for, 43:1–27 See also Christian unity
wickedness of, 93:10
Donatists, letter from Augustine to (no salutation): exhorting to return to Catholic Church, 76:1–4
Donatus (bishop of Casae Nigrae), 43:4, 15, 26; 44:6
See also Donatists
Donatus (former monk), 60:1–2
donkeys, 98:4
dove(s):
Holy Spirit as, 89:5
sheathed in silver, 98:5
dracmas: the two, 83:5
dreams: source of, 8:1; 9:2–5
drink, drunkenness
See also eating; food
in cemeteries, to “honor” martyrs, 22:2–6
Exodus, crime of emphasized in, 29:5
feast days of saints, 29:1–11
idol, to celebrate fashioning, 29:4
not fasting as compared to, 36:3(2)
pagans bringing to Christianity, 29:9
Paul on, 29:5
Duties (Ambrose as author), 82:21
Earth
See also world
glory of Christ over, 93:1(1)
kingship of Christ, 93:19
east, 93:30
Easter, 55:2
Alleluia, the, See Alleluia.
baptism at, 51:4
Easter triduum, significance of, 55:24(14)
fifty days after (up to Pentecost), 36:18(8); 55:29(16)–31(17)
“the Lord has risen today,” 98:9
vigil, 34:2; 82:14
eating
See also drinking; feasts; food
on Lord’s Day, as rejoicing, 36:19
resurrection, Christ after, 95:7
Ebbon, 75:13, 16
Ebonism: as heresy, 82:16
Ebonites, 82:15–16
eclipses, 55:7
Effeminate, the: Paul on, 29:4
Egypt, 75:14
“souls” going with Jacob to, 97:8
“Egyptian monsters,” 16:2
eight, 55:28
eighth day, the, 55:17, 23(13), See Lord’s day.

Volume II/1
infants circumcised on, 55:23(13)
as Lord’s Day, 55:23(13)
Eleusius, 93:31
Eli: Samuel tolerating wicked sons, 43:23
false prophets, killing, 44:9; 93:6
fasting, as regarding, 36:2, 16
forty-day fast, 36:16, 27(12); 55:28
Elisha, 32:4
Emeritus (Donatist bishop of Caesarea), letter from Augustine to:
on sin, Optatus, schism, 87:1–10
Emesa, Eusebius of, 75:4(3); 82:23
nenmy, 93:48
empathy, 75:12(4)
nature of, 40:4(4), 6
emperor(s)
See also individual names
Constantine, See Constantine.
letters from two to Probian, 88:4
petitioning, 93:13
end of the world
See also Apocalypse; harvest
God’s elect at, 93:33
seashore as, 93:34
enemy (-ies), 73:10
of all good persons, 48:2
of Catholic faith, Manichees as, 25:2
of the Church, 55:31(7)
death as last, 55:10(6), 26, 31(7)
death as, 78:5
Donatists as, 93:2 See also Donatists
friends turned to, 73:10
“Not everyone who scourges is an enemy,” 93:4(2)
praying for, 78:6
Entellus, 68:2; 73:1(1), 4, 9
Ephesians, Letter to, 49:2; 75:2
Ephesus, 49:2
John as teaching in, 36:21(9)
Epicureans, sect of, 88:10
Epicurus: rejecting atomism of, 3:2
Epidaphos, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Ephelippos, 40:2(2), 9(6); 75:2
Eridanus, 26:6; 6 (poem of Licentius)
Essa:
“because of food Essa lost his birthright,” 36:11–12
eternal life, 92:1–2
attaining, 94:6
eternal rest, See eternal rest (below).
hope of, 92:1
joied ones, reuniting with, 92:1–2
preparation for, 91:3
of saints, 95:2
eternal rest, 55:17
as aim of all our actions, 55:20(11)
attaining, 36:25(11)
Sabbath symbolizing, 55:17–19
eternity: permanence of, 7:2
Eucaddires, 17:2
eucharist, 98:9
See also sacrament(s)
church customs regarding, 54:6(5)–9(7)
different church customs regarding, 54:3–4(3)
in infant spitting out, 98:3–4
receiving worthily, 54:4
Eudoxius (abbot on Capraria), letters from Augustine to:
on steering a middle path, 48:1–4
eulogia, 36:19
Eunuch, The, 91:4
Europe, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Eusebius (Catholic, Roman official), letters from Augustine to:
on Donatist rebaptism, 34:1–6
messages for Proculeian, 35:1–5
Eusebius (in succession of Roman bishops), 53:2
Eusebius of Caesarea, 24:3; 75:20(6)
Eusebius of Emesa, 75:4(3); 82:23
Eusebius of Vercelli, 75:20(6)
Eustatius (monk), 48:4
Eutychian, 53:2
Evander, 17:2
Evaristus, 53:2
evil
See also Satan; sin
avoiding appearance of, 83:5 See also scandal
Church treatment of, 93:6
correction of, 93:7
good vs., 93:6
hidden, 93:10
motives as showing, 93:6
persecution of, 93:8
punishment for, 91:6
repaying, 93:14
tolerated, for good, 93:15
Evodius, 24:3; 80:1
apology to Proculeian for language of, 33:2–3
Exampaean lake, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
examples, bad, 78:5
Exodus:
crime of drunkenness emphasized in, 29:5
the Pasch, 55:30
Expositions of the Psalms, 75:20(6)
exsufflation, 34:3; 43:21(8), 25(9), 51:5;
52:2–3
sacraments subjected to, 43:25(9)
external things: as present to us as we are to ourselves, 4:2
eyes, 82:33
blindness, See blindness.
of body and mind, 4:2; 92:3–6; 92A
God to be seen with (school of thought), 92:3–6; 92A
Raise up the eyes of your heart, 76:1
removing the straw from your eye . . . while leaving the beam in my own, 85:2
Ezekiel, the prophet, 87:2
on the sins of children and parents, 44:12

Fabian, 53:2
Fabius: defeating Hannibal, 72:3(2)
fainthearted, See weak.
faith, 55:26; 82:22; 98:9
See also Christianity
baptism as sacrament of, 98:9–10
Catholicism as one true, 20:3
differing between spouses, 23:4
external rest, as obtaining, 36:25(11)
sacraments and, 98:9–10
as shield, 48:3; 75:2
strong, 97:4
unfeigned, 55:38
weak, 97:4
See also under weak
false prophets:
Elijah killing, 44:9
false witness: in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
Family (ies): religious differences in, 33:5
Famous Men, book by Jerome, 40:2(2), 9(6)
“fantasies,” 7:1, 4
farm animals, 55:11
farmer(s), 55:15
God the Father as, 52:2
tenant, in Mappala, rebaptism of, 66:1
fasting, 36:2–32; 48:3
alopía, 36:9(5), 11–12
Ambrose on, 36:32(14)
avoiding, from Easter to Pentecost, 36:18(8)
commands in Bible regarding, 36:25(11)
diverse customs regarding, 82:14
of Elijah, forty days, 36:27(12)
Eucharistic, 54:6(5)–9(7)
feast days, as not practiced on, 36:18(8)
forty days, 36:2; 16; 55:28; see also Jesus;
Moses (under fasting, below)
guidelines for, 36:25(11); 27(12)
humility, as signifying, 36:30(13)
Jesus, Forty day fast of, 36:13(6)
Lent, 54:5(4), 6(5)
Lord’s Day compared to Sabbath regarding,
36:8–13(6)
Manichees, errors in regard to, 36:27(12), 29
of Moses, forty days, 36:13(6), 16, 27(12)
prayer with, angel referring to, 36:18(8)
Priscillianists, errors in regard to, 36:28
and the Sabbath, 36:2–13(6)
as sacrifice, 36:18(8)
“Urbicus” (“the city fellow”), Augustine
refuting treatise, 36:2–32
week, days of, 36:30(13)–31
father
See also parents
Lord as, 98:3
fatherland:
heaven as, 92:4
love for, 90; 91:1–2
Faustus the Manichee, 82:17
fear:
freedom from (foretastes of), 10:2–3
of government, 93:20(6)
of punishment, 95:3
salvation, as catalyst for, 93:3, 16(5)–18
See also force: punishment; secular power
of secular authority, 93:20(6)
Fear (the god), 17:2
feasts, feast days:
See also food
alopía, 36:19
in cemeteries, to “honor” martyrs, 22:2–6
drunken banquets in churches, 29:1–11
failing not practiced on, 36:18(8)
Jesus in Jerusalem for, 82:18
pagan, 90
feet:
sayings regarding, 17:2
“the Lord rescues his feet from the snare,” 48:3
washing of, 55:32, 33
Felix of Musti, 51:2, 4–5; 53:6(3); 70:1–2; 76:1
Felix and Hilarinus, letter from Augustine to:
on the scandal of Boniface and Spes,
77:1–2
Felix of Aptungi, 43:3(2)–4, 12–13(4); 53:2;
88:3–5
Felix of Musti, 88:11
Felix of Nola: Boniface and Spes sent to burial place of, 78:1
Felix the Manichee, 79
fervent in spirit, 48:3
Festus, letters from Augustine to:
on dealing with Donatists, 89:1–8
Fever (the god), 17:2
fidelity, marital, 91:3
fiery furnace, the, 36:16; 93:9(3)
fifty:
fifty days, 55:28–31(7)
symbolism of number, 55:29(16)–31(17)
fighting, 68:2; 73:1(1); 99:2
fine arts: lack of interest in, 1:2
fire, 48:2
Dathan and Abiram consumed, 87:4
of love, 98:5
refinement by, 55:31(7)
scism, punishment for, 51:1
Firmus, 87:10
first day, the, 55:17
fish: bad among the good, 93:33–34, 50(12)
five caves of the nation of darkness, 7:4
flattery, 28:6(4); 82:31
Volume II/1

Flavian (vicar for Africa), 87:8
flesh, the
See also body; sensual pleasures
Ishmael as symbolizing, 93:6
spirit vs., 93:31
Flora (pagan goddess), 90; 91:5
Florentius, 97:3
flute:
“a bad flute player makes a good singer,”
60:1–2
food:
banquets in church, complaints regarding,
29:1–11
“because of food Adam lost paradise,”
36:11–12
“because of food Esau lost his birthright,”
36:11–12
fasting, See fasting.
Jews, some food condemned by, 82:26
on Lord’s Day, eating as rejoicing, 36:19
offering to idols, eating, 46:3, 8, 10, 11, 17,
18; 47:3
purity, Jewish beliefs regarding, 36:17
sweet foods, 93:28(9)
fool(s), folly:
happiness and, 3:1
foot, See feet.
force:
use of, 93:1(1)–7, 16(5)–18, 26
forgiveness:
of injuries, 48:3
of sins, in Christ’s name, 93:21, 23
fornication, 55:24(14); 93:48
fornicators, rules regarding, 93:41–42
Gentiles to abstain from sacrifice involving,
82:9
Paul on, 29:5
Fortunatus, 80:1
Fortunatus (et al.), letter to Generosus from:
on “angel-inspired” letter, 53:1(1)–7
fortune:
nor desiring, 3:5
fortelettering, 55:37
Fortunatus (Donatist bishop of Thaive):
Augustine meeting with, 44:1–14
forty: symbolization of number, 55:28
forty days:
Christ on earth after resurrection, 55:28
Elijah fasting for, 36:16, 27(12)
fasting, 36:13(6); 55:26, 28
Moses fasting for, 36:13(6), 16, 27(12)
four, 55:28
four winds, the, 93:33
fraud: property acquired through, 96:2
Free Will, 31:7
freedom:
free choice, 31:7
we have been called into freedom,
55:36(20)
friends, friendships, 82:1

of Augustine, See individual names.
Augustine’s love for, 73:10
basis of, 82:31
constructive criticism among, 82:31–32
enmities arising between, 95:4
as good fortune, 3:4
losing, 73:10
Moses as friend of God, 36:13(6)
“Not everyone who is merciful is a
friend,” 93:4(2)
truth as owed in, 82:31
frugality, 91:3
fruit, 47:4
See also food
fruit, fruits (spiritual):
of the Spirit, 29:6
furnace, the fiery, 36:16; 93:9(3)
Gaius, Catholic layman, 53:2
Gaius, letters from Augustine to:
on searching for the truth, 19:1
Galatians, 49:2; 82:2–3
Galatians, Letter to, 82:30(4)
Paul, rebuke of Peter by, 28:3(3)–5;
40:3(3)–6; 75:2–17; 82:2–29
Garamantian, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Gaul, 53:5
Arles, See Arles,
Gelizzi, Church of, 43:5
Generosus, letter from Augustine, Alypius,
and Fortunatus to:
on “angel-inspired” letter, 53:1(1)–7
Genesis in Answer to the Manichees, 24:2
Genethlius (bishop of Carthage before
Aurelius), 44:12
Gentiles:
food laws, as not having, See law,
Mosaic.
Holy Spirit descending on, 75:7
Jews, as forced to live like, 75:8; 82:10,
22
Jews who live among, 75:10
and Mosaic law, 82:10
Paul correcting Peter regarding, 40:5 See
also under Paul; Peter
rites of, 82:20, 28
Timothy’s father as, 75:9
gentle yoke and light burden, 54:1(1)
gentleness:
obeying God with, 48:2
geometry: angles and quadrangles, 14:4
Gideon, 46:18
Gildo, Count, 87:5
See also Optatus
Gildonian, Optatus the, See Optatus the
Gildonian.
“Gildonius,” See Optatus.
glory:
of Christ, 93:1(1)
future, 55:3(2), 10(6)
of humans, as empty, 93:15
gluttony
See also drink; eating; food

goats:
  sheep, separating from, 93:49–50(12)

God
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity;
  specific topics
  becoming like, 92:3
  characteristics of, 92:2–3
  consulting (to reach understanding), 13:4
  as creator, 14:4
  fear and love of, 22:7(2)
  gifts of, 61:2
  glorifying, See under glory.
  kingdom of, See kingdom of God.
  likeness of, 92:3
  love for, 55:20(11)
  love of us, 55:19, 20(11)
  as one, 36:23(10)
  one true (as opposed to pagan gods), 17:5
  praising, See praise.
  as severe and gentle, 93:4(2)
  as spirit, 92:5
  the Trinity, 11:2–4
  truth in teaching about, as crucial,
    28:3(3)–5
  union with, 10:2–3
  will of, knowing, 80:2–3
  worship of, See worship.
  wrath of, 93:5

God of Abraham and the God of Nachor, The,
46:18

Gods, false, 91:4
See also idols, idolatry

goods and goddesses, pagan, 17:2
See also individual names
  considered members of one great God, 17:1
  as humorous, 17:2
Maximus of Madaura on, 16:1–4
Roman, 16:2

gold:
  in Jericho, 46:18
  ten-pound fine, 88:7
Gomorrah, Sodom and, 36:9(5)
good, goodness:
  doing, civil authorities and, 93:20(6)
  evil tolerated for, 93:15
  evil vs., 93:6
  fear and, 93:20(6)
Mosaic law as, 82:20
  motives as showing, 93:6
  rest as reward for, 55:25
  good works, 55:19, 25
  gospel:
    Mosaic law and, 82:20
    spread of, 93:21–23
  gossip, 73:10
Goths, 99:1

gourd plant, 75:22(7); 82:35
government
See also secular power
  doing good and, 93:20(6)
  fear of, 93:20(6)
  as God’s servant, 87:7
  resisting authority of, 87:7
  grace, 55:3(2); 82:14, 18, 20; 93:32
  baptism into, 98:2
Gentiles, as given to, 75:7
  Holy Spirit, as through, 98:2
  sacrament of, 75:15
  sin and, 82:20

grain:
  weeds, separating from, 76:1–2
  wheat, amid, 93:33–34
  at winnowing, the last, 93:50(12)
greed, 55:24(14)
  avoiding, 83:2–4
Paul on, 29:5

Greek (language): scripture translations,
  71:3(2)–6(4); 75:20(6)–21; 82:34(3)
Greek mythology:
  Medea, 7:4

Greeks:
  not offending, 36:21(9)
  Paul and, 93:7
  growth, spiritual: Paulinus desiring guidance
    in, 25:1–5
  guests; unknown, policy regarding, 38:2
  guilt:
    comparative (pagan feast in Calama), 9:9
    innocence vs., 93:15
  habits, bad, 89:6, 7
  fear as breaking, 93:3
  subduing, 48:3

Hagar:
  Sarah and, 93:6

hailstorm: in return for pagan
  church-stoning, 9:8

Hannibal:
  Fabius defeating, 72:3(2)
  poem of Licentius, 26:6

happiness, 3:1–5; 55:26
  as not from sensual pleasure, 3:4
  perfect, 36:31
  wisdom and, 3:1, 5

harmony, 93:28(9)
harp:
  and lyre, 75:2
  in the psalms, 55:12(7)

harvest, 93:15
  end-time, 87:8; 93:31, 33
  separating grain from weeds, 76:1–2

Hasna, 29:12

hatred:
  anger turning to, warning against, 38:2
  and persecution, 97:4
Letters 1-99

preaching from, 93:15  
healing: gift of, 78:3  
heart:  
  a clever heart, 85:2  
doctor of, 95:6  
hardness of, 88:9  
  Raise up the eyes of your heart, 76:1  
aslow heart, 85:2  
heaven:  
  55:17–19  
See also eternal life; eternal rest  
the bosom of Abraham, 78:6  
glory of Christ over, 93:1(1)  
heavenly bodies: differences among, 14:3  
heavenly trumpet, 1:2  
Hebrew (language)  
  See also languages  
  scripture translations from, 28:2(2); 71:3(2)–6(4); 75:20(6)–21; 82:34–35  
heirarchy of being, 18:2  
Helen of Troy, 40:7; 68:1  
Hellespont touche, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)  
heraclea: Theodore of, 75:4(3); 82:23  
Hercules, 17:2; 50  
hersonies, heretics  
  See also individual groups and names  
bishops sent to emperor regarding, 97:3  
caelicolae, 44:13(6)  
Cerinthus and Ebiion, 75:13  
conversion of, forcible, 93:17 See also under fear, force  
correction of, 89:1; 97:2–3; 98:5  
deceitful spirits,” paying attention to, 55:36(20)  
Donatists called, See Donatists.  
Ebonism, 82:16  
fake Catholics, 93:17  
laws concerning, 97:2  
Mani, 75:14  
Manichæae as, 36:29 See also Manichæae  
Marcion, 75:14  
Minæi, 75:13  
Nazaræans, 75:13  
punishment for, 88:7  
as quarrellsome, 55:29(16)  
shame as, 87:4; 89:7  
secular authority against, 93:12  
“who wanted to be both Jews and Christians,” 82:15  
Hermogenian, Augustine’s letters to:  
on the Academics, 1:1–3  
Hilarinus, Felix and, letter from Augustine to:  
on the scandal of Boniface and Spes, 77:1–2  
Hilary of Poitiers, 75:20(6); 93:31–32  
on Asia, 93:31–32  
Synods as by, 93:21  
Hippo  
  See also specific topics  
  people’s dependence on Augustine, 22:9  
Proculeian as Donatist bishop, See Proculeian.  
Profuturus as priest of, See Profuturus.  
Valerius as bishop of, 21:1–6  
holiness:  
  “All we want is holiness,” 93:14, 43  
of scriptures, 28:3(3)–5  
holocausts, 47:3  
Holy, holy, holy, 94:6  
Holy Spirit, the:  
in baptism, 98:2, 5  
coming of, celebrated, 54:1(1)  
Donatists as lacking, 93:46(11)  
as dove, 89:5  
filling one hundred and twenty, 93:21  
finger of God signifying, 55:29(16)  
Gentiles, descending on, 75:7  
glorification of Jesus, coming after, 55:30  
grace through, 98:2  
Mosaic law and, 82:19  
sevenfold gift of, 24:4; 55:10(6)  
in the Trinity, 11:2–4  
Holy Week: criminal suits ceased during, 34:2  
honey: sword coated with, 82:2  
honor, 32:5  
 honorable: use of word, 23:1  
Honoratus (Donatist bishop), letters from Augustine to:  
  discussing schism, 49:1–3  
Honoratus of Thaive, 83:1–6  
Honorius, the emperor, 97:2  
hope:  
  death as source of, 36:31  
of eternal life, 92:1  
pagans as without, 92:1  
  placing, in humans vs. Christ, 89:5  
scandal, despite, 78:1  
in sorrow, 55:26  
of this world and the world to come, 55:10(6)  
horse(s), 47:5  
hospitality:  
  patience with, 73:10  
human being(s)  
  See also people; persons  
  being mistaken about someone, 20:2  
creation of, 14:4  
humility, 22:7(2)  
fasting as signifying, 36:30(13)  
of Paulinus, 31:6  
humor, 95:2  
Maximus accused of joking, 17:1–2  
Hyginus, 53:2  
Hymenæus, 55:4(3)  
Hypanis, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)  
hypocrisy, 22:7(2)  
Hycrania, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)  
idleness, See laziness.
idol(s), idolatry, 55:20(11); 87:2
in Calama, 91:6
Christians as despising, 82:12
and Cyprian’s colleagues, greed of, 93:15
demons, as serving, 32:5
drunkenness to celebrate fashioning an idol, 29:4
eating food offered to, 46:3, 8, 10, 11, 17, 18; 47:3–4, 6
Gentiles to abstain from, 82:9
infants, regarding, 98:3
Julian (emperor) and, 93:12(4)
laws concerning, 93:26; 97:2
Nebuchadnezzar forcing worship, 93:9(3)
Paul on, 29:5
Satan, as from, 82:12
schism punished more severely than, 51:1
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
torn down, 91:3
wickedness of, surpassing, 93:10
Igentius, 88:4
ignorance:
in present life, 95:5
sins of, 47:4
illness: hemorrhoids, 38:1
Illyricum: Paul, ministry in, 49:2
images, three kinds:
arrived at by reason, 7:4–7
ones we make up, 7:4–7
from previous sensations, 7:1, 4–7
imagination:
memory and, 7:1–7
memory impossible without, 6:1
sensation vs., 6:1–2
the soul and, 7:1–7
impurity, 55:24(14); 93:48
See also purity
“incarnation of the Word,” the, 11:2–4; 12:1
incense, 87:2
incest, 78:8
indolence, See laziness
infants, baptism of, 98:1–10
injustice, See justice
innocence: guilt vs., 93:15
insanity: advantage of, 7:2, 3
insults: bearing, 88:9
intellect, intelligence
See also mind; soul
maturity and, 4:2
as seat of truth, 3:4
truth, as able to recognize, 93:20(6)
intelligible nature:
sensible nature compared to, 4:1–2; 3:2–3
irrationality (alogia), 36:9(5), 11–12
Isaa, 46:18; 47:3
Ishmael and, 93:6
Isaiah, 43:23
Isaurian, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Ishmael:
Cast out the handmaid and her son, 78:8
and Isaac, 93:6
Israel, 75:14
Italica, letter from Augustine to:
Cyprian to deliver, 92A
don death and eternal life, 92:1–6
Italica, letters from Augustine to:
on turmoil around Rome, 99:1–3
ivy, 75:22(7); 82:35
jac, 3:5
Jacob, 46:18; 47:3
incest in house of, 78:8
“souls” going to Egypt with, 95:8
Jambres, 55:29(16)
James (apostle, leader of Jerusalem Christian community), 75:10
Jerusalem, as teaching in, 36:22
Paul, as admonishing, 82:8–10
Jannes, 55:29(16)
Januarius:
Two Books of Answers to the Questions of Januarius, 54–55
Januarius, letter from Catholic clerics of Hippo to:
on Circumcellion violence, 88:1–12
Januarius, letters from Augustine to:
answering questions about religious practices, 54:1(1)–10
Jeremiah, 43:23
New Testament promised through, 75:14;
82:18
Jeremiah, books of:
burning, 76:4
Jericho, 46:18
moon, as meaning, 55:10(6)
Jerome:
book Famous Men, on ecclesiastical writers and their works, 40:2(2)
book written against, misunderstanding regarding, 82:33
misrouted letters from Augustine to,
40:1(1)–9(6); 72:1(1), 5(3); 75:18;
82:32
Rufinus, rift with, See Rufinus.
Jerome, letters from Augustine to:
on Jerome’s scripture translations,
71:1(1)–6(4)
the letter delivered after nine years,
28:1(1)–6(4)
as misrouted, See under Jerome, above.
on Peter and Paul’s dispute, 40:1(1)–9(6)
on resolving misunderstanding,
73:1(1)–10
on wishing for communication, 67:1–3
Jerome, letters to Augustine from:
on the deacon, Praesidius, and greeting Alypius, 39:1(1)–2(2)
on Galatians, disagreement over, 68:1–3
on making peace, 81
on their disagreement regarding Paul and Peter, 82:1(1)–36
on their disagreements, 72:1(1)–5(3)
Jerusalem:
James as teaching in, 36:22 See also James
Jesus in, 82:18
Paul, ministry in, 49:2
Jesus Christ
See also specific topics
Abraham as ancestor of, 76:1
called Apollo, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
called “son of thundering Jove,” 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
the Church as body of, 55:3(2), 31(7)
as circumcised, 23:4
crucifixion of, 36:30(13)
David symbolizing, 55:31(7)
fourty-day fast of, 36:13(6)
glory of, 93:1(1)
killing, reasons for, 82:18
kingdom of, 93:19
as Lord of the Sabbath, 36:5(3)
mistreatment of, 29:7
Mosaic law, as transforming, 82:18
passion and resurrection celebrated, 54:1(1); 55:2
prophecy, as fulfillment of, 76:1; 82:15;
88:11; 93:21
sacraments, as replacing, 40:4(4)
salvation as from, 40:4(4)
as servant, 33:5
sins, as propitiation for, 93:32
sins forgiven in name of, 93:21, 23
the son, role in Trinity, 11:2–4
suffering as necessary, 93:21, 23
symbols for, 55:11
as the truth, 14:4; 26:6
truth in teaching about, as crucial, 28:3(3)–5
the way of, 93:35(10)
world, as redeeming, 76:1
jewels, 78:9
Jew(s)
See also Law, the, individual names and specific topics
Christian converts, 82:17
Christians, contrasted to, 36:23(10)
the circumcised, 75:7 See also circumcision
“flogged Christ, and Christ flogged the Jews,” 93:8
hard-heartedness of, 29:4
not offending, 36:21(9)
numerical superiority of Christians, 93:26
the Passover, celebration of, 55:15
Paul rebuking Peter for living like
Gentile, 28:4
the Sabbath, regarding, 36:5(3)
sacraments and observances of, 40:4(4)–6 See also sacraments
sobriety of, 29:4
unity, regarding, 93:26
Jezebel, 93:6
Job, Book of: Jerome, translation by, 28:2(2); 71:3
John (apostle):
Ephesus, as teaching in, 36:22
seven churches, writing to, 49:2;
55:10(6)
John the Baptist:
baptism of, 44:10(5)
Christ, baptism of, 89:5
law and the prophets, as end to, 75:14;
82:18
Paul as rebaptising people from, 93:48
John (Chrysostom), bishop of Constantinople, 82:23
joking: Maximus accused of, 17:1–2
Jonah, Book of:
Jerome, translation by, 71:5(3); 75:21,
22(7)
translations of (ivy/gourd plant), 82:35
Jordan River, 55:14(8); 93:26
and circumcision of Moses, 23:4
Joshua, son of Nun, 46:18
Jove:
“thundering Jove”; “son of thundering Jove,” 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
joy, 10:2
effects of (Nebridius), 3:1–5
Jubaianus, letter from Cyprian to, 93:36
Judah, house of, 75:14; 82:18
Judah, lion of, 55:11
Judas, 78:8
Christ in regard to, 43:23; 44:10(5); 93:15
Last Supper, as sharing, 93:15
Satan as entering, 93:7
Judea, 93:21
Judges, Book of, 46:18
judges, human, 89:4
judgment:
Church, within, 95:4
judges, human, 89:4
judging others, 95:3
of other church customs, 54:3
judgment, the last, 23:3
harvest, as, See harvest, heavenly trumpet, 1:2
Julian the Apostate (emperor), 91:8; 93:12(4)
Donatists appealing to, 93:12(4)
Julius (bishop of Roman church), 44:6; 53:2
Juno, 16:2
Jupiter, 16:2; 17:1, 3; 91:4–5
justice:
of God, 95:6
ministers of, Satan’s messengers as, 53:7
Letters 1-99

persecution on account of, 87:7; 93:7
justification, 55:2
killing:
- ethics of, 46:12–13; 47:5
- in name of Christianity, wrongness of, 44:8–9
- in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
kingdom of God:
- Galatians, warning in (the works of the flesh), 29:6
- Paul’s warnings regarding exclusion from, 29:5
- scribes and Pharisees not righteous enough for, 36:8
king(s)
See also individual names
- Christ as, 89:4
- lion, compared to, 88:5
to serve Christ, 93:19
Kings, Book of, 55:31(7); 82:5
know yourself, 93:29
knowledge:
- without love, 55:39
Corah, 93:32
Laban, 46:18; 47:3
lamb, 55:11
- Jews killing, at Pasch, 55:23(13), 29(6)
sacrifice of, 75:15
lamp:
- Augustine called by Paulinus, 25:1
- shining “with sevenfold brightness,” 24:5
Lampius, 24:4
Lanarius, Calphurnius, 68:3
languages:
- scripture translations, 71:3(2)–6(4); 75:20(6)–21
- translators, 82:34(3)
Laodicea:
- seven churches, as one of, 49:2
- Apollinaris of, 75:4(3)
- unnamed, 82:33
- Last Supper, the, 54:7–8(6); 55:2
- Judas as sharing, 93:15
Latin:
- Jerome urged to translate scriptures from Greek, 28:2(2)
scriptures translated to, 82:6
Latin grammar:
- desired (cupi or cupiri), 3:5
- points of, 3:29(6)
- laughter, 95:2
law, secular, See secular power.
Law, the, 36:13(6); 75:5
See also Moses
- Christ and first Christians as observing, 82:18–19
- Christ as respecting, 82:9, 18
- Christ as transforming, 82:18, 19
- Christ conferring with devil regarding, 88:10
Christian study of, 82:16
- Christians ceasing to observe, 82:17
Gentiles and, 82:10
- as holy, 82:20
- Holy Spirit and, 82:19
- Jew(s) and, 75:5–17
- John the Baptist as end to, 82:18
love as fulfillment, 82:20
Paul as respecting, 82:7–12
- Peter and Paul as both observing, 75:11
rites of, 82:13–15
law and the prophets, 82:27
- Christ as fulfillment of prophecy, 76:1:
  - 82:15; 88:11; 93:21
- John the Baptist as end to, 75:14, 82:18
- and psalms, 93:21
laziness, 89:6
- Augustine claiming fault of, 10:2
- avoiding, 48:2
- eternal rest as not, 55:17
- mental, 1:2
- “Someone who . . . rouses a lazy person,” 93:4(2)
lector(s): rules regarding, 63:2; 64:3
leisure:
- Augustine’s longing for, 13:1
- putting Church before, 48:2
- value of, 10:1–3
Lent:
- baptism after, 54:10
- bathing after, 54:9(7)–10
- observances of, varying, 54:5(4)
sermon against drunken banquets, 29:3–11
Lenten fast, 54:6(5)
Leontius, 29
leper: healing of, 82:18
lithargic, See lazy.
letters, Augustine’s
See also under individual correspondents
- characteristics of (described by Nebridius), 6:1
- Leuci/Lecuia, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Liber (Bacchus), 17:4
liberal arts: salvation as not from, 87:1
Liberius, 53:2
Libya: Tipoli in, See Oea.
llicitiousness, 93:48
Licentius (son of Romanian):
- Augustine describes to Paulinus, 27:5
- Paulinus concerned for, 32:3–5
- poem by Paulinus for, 32:5
- poem for Augustine (his teacher) by, 26; 26:6 (following)
Licentius (son of Romanian), Augustine’s letter to:
- with concern for soul of Licentius, 26:1–6
lies, lying, 73:10

Volume II/1
Volume II/1

“the episcopacy is not the art of living a life of deception,” 85:2
Jerome as not teacher of, 75:18
Paul’s rebuke of Peter, 28:3(3)–4; 40:3(3)–6; 75:2–17; 82:2–29
slander, 73:10
in Ten Commandments, 55:22(12)
as undermining authority of scriptures, 28:3(3)–5; 40:3(3)
useful (lies of expediency), 82:21–22
life:
eternal. See eternal life; heaven.
mortal and immortal, 55:2–3(2); 95:2
present, 95:2, 5–6 See also specific topics
light:
of Christ, 93:5
lily: in the midst of thorns, 93:28(9)
Linus, 53:2
lion of Judah, 55:11
lion(s), 93:19
Daniel and, 88:5
devil as like, 76:5
king(s), compared to, 88:5
Lord, 93:29
as father, 98:3
“lord”, as salutation, 23:1
Lord of the Sabbath: the Son of Man as,
Lord’s Day, the, 36:8–13; 55:17, 22(12), 23(13)
eighth day as, 55:23(13)
fasting scandalous on, 36:10
preferred to Sabbath, 36:12
“Urbicus,” Augustine refuting treatise of,
as when Jesus rose from the dead, 36:12
Lord’s supper, the, 54:7–10
drunkenness in the Church, complaints regarding, 29:3
Lot, 93:27
love, 43:1; 83:3
See also compassion of Augustine for friends, 73:10
Christian unity, 48:3
fire of, 96:5
fruit of, 52:2
as fullness of the law, 55:38
gifts of God and, 61:2
for God, 55:20(11)
for God and neighbor, 55:38(21)
of God for us, 55:19, 20(11); 82:20
as healer, 89:6
Holy Spirit to arouse, 55:29(16)
if he handed over his body to be burned, but
did not have love, 39:40
jealous, as not, 55:39
knowledge without, 55:39
law, as fulfillment of, 82:20
maternal, 89:6
with severity, 93:4(2)

Lucilla, 43:17(6), 25(9)–26
Lucillius, 84:1–2
Lucinian, 5:1
Lucitas, 16:2
Lucius, 53:2
Luke, 75:10
lyre: harp and, 75:2

Macarian: Donatists calling Catholic Church,
49:3
Macarius, 23:6; 44:4–5(3); 87:10; 93:43
Maccabees, 40:6
Macedonia: Emesa, 75:4(3)
Macrina: Deuterius as bishop, 93:43
Madura, Maximus of, 16:1–4
Majoran, 43:4
Majorinus, 15:1; 43:26; 44:8; 76:2
Donatist schism, as first bishop in, 88:1
See also Donatist schism
sect of, 93:13
man
See also human beings; people; persons
Jesus (the son) as, 11:2–4; 12:1
manhood: boyhood and, 41:1–2
Mani, 75:14
manic: wild raging, 89:6
Manichean priest (unidentified), letters from Augustine to:
on debate questions, 79
Manichees, Manicheans
See also specific topics
fasting, errors in regard to, 36:27(12), 49
Faustus, 82:17
five caves of the nation of darkness, 7:4
as heretics, 36:29
moon, beliefs about, 55:6(4)
“Pentateuch against the Manichees,”
24:2; 25:2
Priscillianists, as similar to, 36:28
Romanian and book, True Religion, 27:4
See also Romanian
scripture, as rejecting many parts of, 82:6
as sinners, 32:2
mankind
See also human beings; people; persons
creation of, 14:4
manna, 54; 54:4(3)
Mantua, 16:3
manuring: pagan god of, 17:2
Mappala: rebaptism of tenant farmers, 66:1
Marcellus, 53:2
Marcion, 75:14
Marcus, 53:2
Marius Victorinus, 37
Maro, 17:3
marriage:
“doctrines of demons” forbidding,
55:36(20)
fidelity in, 91:3
religious differences in, 33:5
Mars, 17:1

Letters 1-99
Letters 1-99

Marsi, the, 55:12(7)
martyrs, martyrdom
See also individual names
in Africa, 78:3
the Church in time of, 93:9(3)
Circumcellions demanding honor of, 88:9
Donatist(s) claiming, 89:2
“honoring” by feasting and drunkenness in
cemeteries, 22:2–6
the Maccabees, 40:6
suffering alone as not making, 89:2
maturity: of mind and intellect, 4:2
Mauretania, 59:1
Mauretania Caesariensis, 87:1
Mauretania Sitifensis:
Sitifis, Novatus as bishop of, 84:1–2
Mauritania Caesariensis, 87:10; 93:24(8)
Cartenna as in, See Cartenna,
Maximin (Donatist bishop of Bagai), 53:4(2);
70:2
abdication of, 69:1–2
Maximianists, 51:3; 87:6; 93:24(8)
Donatist persecution of, 51:3, 5; 76:4
Donatists, breaking away from, 43:26
Donatists, split from, 43:26; 87:6
Donatists accepting back, 51:2; 76:3
Donatists accepting baptism of, 51:4–5
Donatists appealing against, 93:12(4)
Maximínus (Donatist bishop on Siniti in
Numidia), letters from Augustine to:
on rebaptism, 23:1–8
Maximus (of Madaura), 16:1–4
Maximus, letters from Augustine to:
defending Christianity, 17:1–5
Maximus, letters to Augustine from:
defending paganism, 16:1–4
meat
See also food
abstinence from eating, 55:36
offered to idols, eating, 46:8
Media, 7:4
meekness:
obeying God with, 48:2
Megalus, bishop of Calama, 38:2
Melania the Elder, 94:2–3
Melania the Younger, 46
Melchiades, the Pope, 43:16
Melchinie, 40:6; 73:15
memories: different kinds of, 7:4–7
memory:
imagination and, 7:1–7
impossible without imagination, 6:1
men:
Christ compared to other, 14:3–4
illustrious, 82:2
mercy:
in criticism, 28:6(4)
of the Good Samaritan, 98:6
“Not everyone who is merciful is a friend,”
93:4(2)
of Paulinus, 31:5
Meshach (Shadrach, and Abednego), 36:16;
93:9(3)
middle path: steering, serving the Church,
48:2–3
Milan
See also specific topics, people, and
events
Ambrose as bishop of, 24:4, See
Ambrose,
Hermogenian (Augustine’s letters to),
1:1–3
Simplician as bishop of (succeeding
Ambrose), See Simplician,
at the tomb of the saints, 78:3
Zenobius (Augustine’s letters to), 2:1
miles, going the extra, 48:1
Milevis, 34:5
region of, 97:3
Severus as bishop of, 31:9; 38:3
military service, 32:5
Miltiades, 53:2
Minaei, 75:13
mind
See also intelligence; intelligible nature;
soul
and body, debate with Manichean priest
regarding, 79
effect on body, 9:2–5
mental laziness, 1:2
misuse of (Licentius), 26:6
sensual pleasures vs., 3:4; 4:1–2
truth, as seat of, 3:4
understanding, two ways of reaching,
13:4
Minerva, 16:2; 47:4
ministers: faith required of, 82:22
mirror(s), 3:3
Miscellany (by Origen), 75:6
Miscellany of Questions in Response to
Simplician, A, 37:1–3
misery
See also sorrow; suffering
end to, 36:31
mockery, mocking, 55:9; 82:3
Molopes, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
monad, the, 3:2
monasteries:
clerics, rules regarding, 64:3
entering, 83:3
Honoratus from Thaive, 83:1–6
money, 93:5
denarius, 55:31(7)
silver, 96:2
money changers, temple, 29:3
Monica, mother of Augustine:
advice for regarding church customs,
54:3
fasting, concerns about, 36:32(14)
monks:
Letters 1-99

Donatus and his brother, 60:1–2
reputation of, 78:6, 9
Spes, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
Montenses, 53:2
moon:
Church designated by term, 55:10(6)
eclipses, 55:7
Jericho as meaning, 55:10(6)
Manichean beliefs about, 55:6(4)
phases of, 55:6(4)–9
as symbol, 55:10(6), 11
morals:
bad conversations as ruining, 93:32
“corrupt times and relaxed morals,” 29:5
Moses:
forty-day fast, 36:2, 13(6), 16, 27(12);
55:28
as friend of God, 36:13(6)
law, as giving, 36:13(6)
law given to, 55:29(16)
on Mount Sinai, 55:30
murmuring against God, tolerating, 43:23
punishing sinful actions, 93:6
smashing stone tablets, 29:4
mother:
the Church as, 48:2; 89:6; 93:6; 98:3, 5
still needing . . . the milk of his mother, 93:21
Mount Cassus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Mount Olympus, 16:1; 17:1
Mount Sinai, 55:29(16), 30
Mount Zion, 93:25
mountain(s)
See also individual names
Munatius Felix, 53:4(2)
murder
See also killing
matricidal young man, 34:2–6
of Restitutus (Catholic priest), 88:6
of Uriah, 82:5
Musti: Felician as Donatist bishop of, See Felician.
Musti, Felix of, See Felix of Musti.
Mutugenna, 23:2
Mygdo, 16:2
mysteries, divine, 55:29(16)
myths, 7:4
Nachor:
The God of Abraham and the God of Nachor, 46:18
Naevius (legendary tall man, at six feet), 14:3
Nampthamo, 16:2, 17:1–2
nature: as mutable (hierarchy of being), 18:2
nature (substance):
three elements in every, 11:3–4
Naucelio, letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
on Felician (Donatist bishop), 70:1–2
Nazareans/Nazaraeans, 75:13; 82:15–16
Nazirites, 75:9
Nebridius, 98:8
characteristics of, 98:8
correspondence with, 3–14
Nebridius, letters from Augustine to:
on the body as soul’s vehicle, 13:2–4
on contemplating death, 10:1–3
on differences (among people; among heavenly bodies), 14:1–4
on happiness, 3:1–5
on memory and imagination (images), 7:1–7
on sensible vs. intelligible natures, 4:1–2
on the Trinity (“the assumption of the man”), 11:2–4
Nebridius, letters to Augustine from demands of Thagaste citizens on Augustine, 5:1
on imagination, 6:1–2
on sleep and dreams, 8:1
Nebuchadnezzar, king, 93:9(3)
Nectarius, 38:3
Nectarius (pagan official), letters from Augustine to:
on pagan feasts in Calama, 91:1–10
Nectarius (pagan official), letters to Augustine from:
on pagan feasts in Calama, 90
neighbor(s):
concern for, 95:6
he who prepares a pit for his neighbor, 93:19
loving, See under love.
Neoplatonists:
Ambrose as, See Ambrose.
Porphyry, 82:22
Nero, 75:10
New Academy: Carneades, 1:2
night: beauty of the day in comparison, 29:11
Nile, the, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Noah, ark of, 78:8
Nola, Paulinus as bishop of, See Paulinus.
North Pole, 7:4
Novatus (Catholic bishop of Sitifis), letters from Augustine to:
on Lucillus, 84:1–2
numbers, 3:2
and images arrived at by reason, 7:4
the monad, 3:2
pebbles used as means of calculation, 7:4
power of soul illustrated by, 7(3), 6
raven set, 7(3), 6
symbolism of, 55; 55:28 See also specific numbers
triangular, 153 as, 55:31(17)
Numidia:
Bagai, council of, 88:11
Caecilian as legate for, See Caecilian.
Calama, See Calama.
Letters 1-99

Calama, Crispinus as Donatist bishop, See Crispinus.
Casae Nigrae, Donatus as bishop in, 43:4
Cataqua, See Cataqua.
Cirta, Profuturus as bishop in, See Profuturus.
Maximinus as Donatist bishop (on Siniti), See Maximinus.
Maximus of Madaura, 16:1–4
Milevus, Severus as bishop of, See Severus.
Mutugenna, 23:2
Pammachius spreading Catholicism in, 58:1–3
primacy in (Victorinus claiming), 59:1–2
Thaive, letter to Donatist leaders in, 43
Turris, Samsucius as bishop of, See Samsucius.
Xantippus as primate, See Xantippus.
Nundinarius, 43:17(6); 53:4(2)
praetorian: farmer’s daughter as, 35:4
Primus’ improper conduct with, 35:2

Oaths, pagan, 46:1–5; 2; 47:2
Oea, 71:5(3); 75:21
Olive:
from olive press, 78:9
in sacrament(s), 55:13
weight of, 55:18(10)
Old Testament, See Law; law and the prophets; scriptures,
prophecy, Christ as fulfillment of, 76:1; 82:15; 88:11; 89:4
olive press, 78:9
olive tree, 82:27
Olympius, letters from Augustine to:
on church and property matters, 96:1–3
on laws regarding idolatry and heretics, 97:1–4
Olympus, Mount, 17:3
On the Orator, 15:1
On the Past, the: memories, 7:1–7
Patience, 22:7(2)
Paul, apostle, Saint, 36:28

Passion of the Lord, 55:2
celebrated, 54:1(1)
commemoration of, 98:9
day of, 36:30(13)
Passover, the, 55:15
before the crucifixion, 36:30(13)
past, the: memories, 7:1–7
Patience, 22:7(2)
Paul, apostle, Saint, 36:28

pagan(s)

See also Maximus of Madaura;
individual names
Against the Pagans, book by Paulinus, 31:8, 45:2
bishops sent to emperor regarding, 97:3
Calama, pagan feasts in, 90:91:1–10
Christians, relationship with, 93:26
ethics regarding, 46:15–16
feasting and drinking, bringing to Christianity, 29:9
hope, as without, 92:1
laws passed against, 93:10
Nectarius, 38:3
Sufes, the, 50
pagan gods
See also individual names
considered members of one great God, 17:1
Maximus defending, 16:1–4
Pallinurus, 15:2
Pallor (the god), 17:2
Pammachius (Roman senator), letters from Augustine to:
on Catholic unity, 58:1–3
parable(s):
bad fish in with good, 93:33–34
chaff amid the wheat, 93:33–34
of Pharisee and publican, 93:49
weeds amid the grain, 93:33–34
parents:
of bad children, 89:2
infant baptism, regarding, 98:1–10
love for, 90
sin of, and infant baptism, 98:1–10
Parmenian (Donatist bishop of Carthage), 93:43–44
Parmenon, 7:4
Parthenius, 22:9
Pasch, the, 55:2, 9, 24(14), 26, 30
celebration of, 55:5–9
dinner, Paschal, 36:30(13)–31
drunkenness during, 55:35(19)
in Exodus, 55:30
the month of new harvest, 55:5
Sabbath, as including, 55:15–16(9), 16(9)
as sacrament, 55:2
sacrament, Paschal, 55:27(15)
Passion of the Lord, 55:2
celebrated, 54:1(1)
commemoration of, 98:9
day of, 36:30(13)
Passover, the, 55:15
before the crucifixion, 36:30(13)
past, the: memories, 7:1–7
patience, 22:7(2)
Paul, apostle, Saint, 36:28

Volume II/1
armed escort for, 47:5; 87:8
baptizing after John, 93:17–48
and Barnabas, in Antioch, 75:7
bodyguards for, 75:10
compassion of, See compassion.
on destruction of flesh to save spirit, 93:7
Donatist schism, words used to justify, 87:7
on fear of government, 93:20(6)
Galatians, Letters to, See Galatians.
gentlemen conferring with, 88:10
on government, fear of, 93:20(6)
Greeks defending, 93:7
imprisonment of, 93:7
on Ishmael and Isaac, 93:6
Jewish sacraments and observances, view of, 40:4(4), 6
letters of, 49:2, See individual names; specific letters.
lying, regarding, 82:24–25
as minister of the truth, 82:22
ministry of, 49:2
Mosaic law, as respecting, 82:7–12
persecution of, 93:7
and Peter, 28:3(3)–5; 40:3(3)–6, 5; 75:2–17; 82:2–29; 93:31
righteous freedom of, 82:22
on Satan as angel, 53:7
and Timothy, 75:9, 13, See Timothy.
tolerance, as living life of, 43:23
in Troas, 36:28
truth, as minister of, 82:22
violence of Christ used, 93:5
weak, as sparing, 83:5
Paul (bishop in Constantina), 53:4(2)
Paul (bishop of Cataqua): property acquired by, 96:2
Paul (bishop of Cataqua), letters from Augustine to:
reprimanding Paul's manner of living, 85:1–2
Paula, 68:1
Paulinian, 68:3
Paulinus, bishop of Nola:
Licentius referred to, 26:5
Against the Pagans as by, 31:8, 45:2
poem for Licentius, 32:5
poverty and humility of, 31:6
Paulinus (and Therasia), Augustine's correspondence with, 24–27; 30–32, 42
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters from Alypius to:
requesting Against the Pagans, 45:1–2
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters from Augustine to, 45:1
on eternal life and present life, 95:1–9
on knowing the will of God, 80:1–3
on lapse in correspondence, 42
requesting Against the Pagans, 45:1–2
on Romanian, Alypius, and Licentius, 27:1–6
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters to Alypius from:
on writings of Augustine and Eusebius, 24:1–6
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters to Augustine from:
on Melania and Publicola, etc., 94:1–8
on "Pentateuch against the Manichees," 25:1–5
wishing for reply, 30:1–3
Paulinus (and Therasia), letters to Romanian from:
on Augustine as bishop, and Licentius, 32:1–5
peace:
"Do all this, and the God of peace will be with you," 48:3
"Peace be with you," 53:3
"Pentateuch against the Manichees," 24:2–25
Pentecost, 55:32
fifty days after Easter, 36:18(8)
people:
differences among, 14:2–4
differences between Jesus and other people, 14:2–4
Pergamum, 49:2
perjury, 47:2
persecution, 93:8
of Catholic Church, 93:6
of Catholics by Circumcellions, See Circumcellions.
Catholics called persecutors, 35:4
of Christian preachers, 40:6; 75:15
cruelty in, 97:4
of Diocletian, 43:3(2)
of Donatists, 44:4, 7(4)–8, 11
Donatist(s) claiming, 89:2
hatred in, 97:4
just, 93:8
justice, on account of, 44:4; 87:7; 93:7
of Maximinianists by Donatists, 51:3, 3, 5
motives for, bad and good, 93:50(12)
nonresistance to, 93:11
"once peace was established after the persecutions," 29:9
praiseworthiness of, factors in, 93:7
resisting, 93:11
Persia: Manichaeism as from, See Manichees.
Persius, 68:2
person(s) See also man
being mistaken about someone, 20:2
spiritual and carnal, 93:6
Peter, apostle, Saint, 53:2
baptism by, 93:47
correction of failure, 93:38
denying Christ, 82:4(2), 5
Letters 1-99

drachmas, the two, 83:5
fasting, regarding, 36:21(9)
forcing Gentiles to live like Jews, 82:22
humility of, 82:22
merits of, 93:38
Paul and, 28:3(3)–5; 40:3(3)–6; 75:2–17;
82:2–29; 93:31
and Simon Magus, 36:21(9)
word of, Christ stopping, 93:7
Peter, basilica of: drunkenness in, 29:10
Pharaoh, the, 93:6
Pharisee(s):
fasting, regarding, 36:7(4)–9
and publican, parable of, 93:49
Zechariah tolerating, 43:23
Philadelphia, 49:2
Philetus, 55:4(3)
philosophy:
Christianity as the true, 2:1
philosophers, 1:1–3 See also individual
names and groups
Phlegethon, 7:4
Phrygians, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Plato, Platonic doctrine:
the Academics’ belief in, 1:1
in Augustine’s letters to Nebridius, 6:1
intellectual learning and memory, 7:2
sensible world as mere copy/image of
Ideas, 3:1
“playfully exercise on the field of the
scriptures,” 81, 82:2–3
plays, theatre, 91:4–5
Plotinus, Platonian thought:
in Augustine’s letters to Nebridius, 6:1
the monad, 3:2
poetry:
for Augustine (his teacher) by Licentius,
26:4, 6 (following)
by Paulinus for Licentius, 32:5
Stesichorus (poet), 68:1 See also
Stesichorus
Poitiers: Hilary of, See Hilary of Poitiers.
Pontian, 53:2
Pope Melchiades, 43:16
Porphyry, 75:6, 12(4), 16; 82:22
possessions, 31:5–6; 93:5
See also wealth
love of, 93:15
Possidius, 95:1
poverty, of Paulinus, 31:6
power:
of Christ, 95:7
secular, See secular power.
Præsidius (deacon), 39:1(1)
Præsidius (bishop of Numidia), letters from
Augustine to:
on letters to Jerome, 74:1
Praetextatus of Assuri, 51:2, 4–5; 53:6(3);
88:11
praise:
for doing good, 93:20(6)
each one will have praise from God, 78:5
eagerness for, 22:7(2)–8
false praise as criminal, 28:3(3)–5
praising God:
“be fervent in spirit, that your soul may
receive praise in the Lord,” 48:3
harmony in, 95:8
the two Seraphim, 55:29(16)
prayer, 48:3
for enemies, 78:6
with fasting, angel referring to, 36:18(8)
pretense, See lies, lying.
pride, 93:20(6)
avoiding, 48:2
of carnal persons, 93:6
as mother of strife and jealousy, 22:7(2)
prist(s), See clerics.
primates, See individual names.
Primian, 43:26; 53:6(3)
Primus: rebaptism of, 35:2
“principal Lord, the,” 36:18(8)
Priscilla and Aquila, 75:9
Priscillianists, 56:28
prisoners: the groaning of prisoners, 48:1
problems, 55:26
See also sorrow; suffering; tribulation
Proculeian, Donatist bishop of Hippo, 78:8
and Circumcellion crimes, 88:6
discussed with Eusebius (re: matricidal
young man), 34:4–6
as heretic, 88:7
Proculeian, letters from Augustine to:
hoping to mend their differences, 33: 1–6
Profuturus, bishop of Cirta, 28:1(1), 6(4),
6(4); 32:1
and correspondence between Augustine
and Jerome, 40:8(5); 71:2; 72:1(1)
Profuturus, letters from Augustine to:
against turning anger to hatred, 38:1–3
promise(s): of God, 43:25(9)
property
See also possessions; wealth
defending, 93:11
prophecy: Christ as fulfillment of Old
Testament, 76:1; 82:15; 88:11; 89:4
prophecy(s)
See also individual names
Jezebel killing, 93:6
and persecution, 93:8
testimony of the law and the prophets,
55:28
tolerance by, 93:15
prophets, false:
Elijah killing, 44:9; 93:6
prophets, law and, See law and the prophets.
Proteus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Letters 1-99

proverbs:
sword coated with honey, 72:2
“The tired ox puts down his foot with more force,” 68:2

Psalms, 75:20(6)
Expositions of the Psalms, 75:20(6)
harp in, 55:12(7)
and the prophets and, 93:21
singing, 55:34

publican(s):

fasting, regarding, 36:7(4)
and pharisee, parable of, 93:49

Punic language, 17:2
Lucillus’ knowledge of, 84:2

punishment:
as correction, 93:8 See also correction
fear, use of, 93:3
just, 9:9; 91:6
problems and benefits of, 95:3

punishment:
as correction, 93:8 See also correction
fear, use of, 93:3
just, 9:9; 91:6
problems and benefits of, 95:3

Punptius (bishop of Limate), 43:6(3)

Quintian, letters from Augustine to:
on Aurelius, urging reconciliation with, 64:1–4
puffed up, 95:4
Punic language, 17:2
Lucillus’ knowledge of, 84:2

Quintus, 94:1, 8
Quintus, letters to Augustine from:
on various questions for Augustine, 46:1–18

rain: on the just and unjust, 55:8(5); 93:4(2)
ram (Aries), 55:14(8)
raven set, 7:6(3)

reason: images resulting from, 7:4–7
restitution, 3:1–8; 34:2–6; 43:21(8); 44:7(4)–8; 89:4
Christian standards regarding, 93:46(11)–48

Crispinus reprimanded for, 66:1
Cyprian regarding, 93:36
Donatist practice of, 23:1–8; 34:2–6; 43:21(8); 44:7(4)–8; 12
Jubalaius, letter from Cyprian to, 93:36
of matricidal young man, 34:2–6
Maximianistas (returning) exempt from, 88:11
Paul baptizing after John, 93:47–48
of Primas, 35:2
rebirth:
baptism (infant) and, 98:1–10
religion
See also Catholicism; Christianity; faith differences of, in same family, 33:5
renewal, 92:3
repentence, 93:52
reproaches, See correction.

Republic, The, 91:3

reputation:
of bishops, 83:2
Boniface and Spes, 78:5
of cleric(s), 78:6
of monks, 78:6, 9
rest:
complete, 48:2
in death, 36:31
eternal, See eternal rest.
good works, as reward for, 55:25
souls as loving, 55:18(10)
spiritual, 22(12); 55:22

Restitution, 97:3
murder of, 88:7
resurrection of Christ, 36:31; 55:2; 94:5–6
appearance to disciples after, 95:7
celebrated, 54:1(1)
the Lord’s Day, 55:23(13)
Lord’s Day as preferred to Sabbath, 36:12
the power to lay down his life and to take it up again, 55:16(9)
the third day, 93:21, 23
resurrection of the body, 55:3(2)–4(3); 94:6; 95:7–8
life after, 55:31(7)
Revelation, Book of, 43:22
See also Apocalypse
riches, See possessions; wealth.
righteousness:
baptism and, 93:10
establishing, 93:10
eternal rest, as obtaining, 36:25(11)
of God, 93:10
grace, as only by, 82:14
law, as coming through, 82:19
parable regarding pride over, 93:49
persecution not proof of, 44:7(4)
Rogatists as far from, 93:27
scribes and Pharisees lacking, 36:8
Ripheans, the, 26(6) (poem of Lucentius)
rites
See also under Law; sacraments of Gentiles, 82:20
old sacraments, 82:15
River Jordan, 55:14(8)
and circumcision of Moses, 23:4

robbers:
Circumcellions contrasted to, 88:8–9
man wounded by (Good Samaritan), 98:6
Paul on, 29:5
rock: Christ as, 55:11
Rogatistes, 87:10; 93:11, 23, 26, 49
in Cartenna, 93:21–22(7)
Catholicism, claim of, 93:23
Donatists, compared to, 93:11
Rogatus as founder, 93:11
Vincent (Rogatist bishop of Cartenna), letter from Augustine to, 93:1(1)–53

Letters 1-99
Rogatus, 87:10; 93:1(1), 11
See also Rogatists
Roman gods, 16:2
See also individual names
Romanian, 5:1
described, 27:4
prosperity of, 15:2
Romanian, letters from Augustine to:
on book True Religion and prosperity, 15:1–2
Romanian, letters from Paulinus to:
on Augustine as bishop, and Licentius, 32:1–5
Romanus (son of Paulinus and Therasia), 30:3; 31:2–3; 45:1
Rome
See also specific topics, people, and events
gods of, 16:2
turmoil around (events leading to sack of), 99:1–2
Romulus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
root: life from, 87:9
rope(s), 47:5
Stretch out further your ropes, 93:29
Rufinus, 73:6(3)–8; 81; 82:1(1)
Rufus of Aquilea, 68:3
rumors: caution against believing, 78:5
Rusicca, 87:10
Sabbath, the, 55:18(10)
Christians vs. Jews regarding, 36:5(3)
eternal rest, symbolizing, 55:17–19
fasting customs, 36:2–32; 82:14
God made holy, 55:18(10)
Jacob, 36:15(7)
Lord’s Day, compared to (regarding fasting practices), 36:8–13(6)
Lord’s Day preferred to, 36:12
rest on, figurative interpretation, 55:22
spiritual rest, as signifying, 55:22(12) as when Jesus rested in the tomb, 36:12
sacrifice(s): 55:13
See also specific sacraments
baptism, 23:4 See also baptism
Christians, 54:1(1); 90:9–10
Christmas as not, 55:2
circumcision, 23:4
distinguished from other observances, 54:1(1)–2(2)
of Donatists, 87:9
of Donatists vs. Christians, 89:7
of faith (Christian), 98:9–10
of grace, 75:15
Jewish, 54:1(1); 82:8, 15, 26–27
Paschal, 55:2, 26, 27(15)
receiving worthily, 54:4(3)
sin of others sharing, 93:37
traditional (not from scripture), 54:2(2)
of universal Church, 54:1(1)
sacred books, 53:4(2)
burning of, 51:1, 2
surrendered in time of persecution, 35:4; 43:10; 44:4; 53:4(2); 76:3–4; 89:4
sacrifice(s):
to false gods, 91:5
fasting as, 36:18(8)
Gentiles to abstain from certain, 82:9
incense of Sabbath replacing animal sacrifice, 36:19
on the Lord’s Day, 36:18(8)
pagan, Christian ethics regarding, 46:3, 5, 8, 10, 11, 14, 17, 18, 47:3–4
sacrificial table (altar):
“Urbicus,” treatise of, 36:24
sailors, 55:15
saint(s):
city of, 95:8
eternal life of, 95:2
feast days of, drunken, 29:1–11
gifts of, varying, 78:3
Milan, at the tomb of, 78:3
souls of, 55:23(13)
salvation:
eternal, 95:6
fear as catalyst for, 93:2–3, 16(5)–18
force used to bring about, 93:1(1)–7, 16(5)–18, 26
Jesus Christ, as from, 40:4(4)
and Mosaic law, 82:11
old sacrament rites and, 40:4(4); 82:15
of self and others, 21:4
Samaria, 93:21
Samaritan, Good, 98:6
Samsucius:
Turris, as bishop of, 34:6
Samsucius (bishop of Turris), 34:6; 62:1–2; 83:4
Samsucius (with Augustine and Alypius), letter to Severus from, 62:1–2
Samuel, 43:23
Samuel, Second Book, 55:31(7)
Sanaes, 16:2
sanctification, 89:5
commemorated on the seventh day, 55:19
law in the ark signifying, 55:30
sand, 93:30
Sarah: and Hagar, 93:6
Sardica: Donatist appeal to Council of, 44:6
Sardis, 49:2
Satan, 36:21(9)
angel, as previously, 73:7
apostles handing men over to, 93:7–8
“blown out” through exsufflation, See exsufflation.
Christ conferring with, 88:10
cleverness of, 48:3
conquering, 36:21(9)
“devil and his angels,” 43:22
Judas, as entering, 93:7
Manicheaism blaming for one’s evil deeds, See Manichees.
as tempter, 48:3
victory over, 39:2(2)
“Whoever observes them . . . has plunged into the pit of the devil,” 82:18
Saturn, 17:3
Saturninus, 22:9
Saul, King, 87:9
David rescued from hand of, 55:31(7)
David tolerating, 43:23
Saul (later Paul), 93:5
saved, See salvation.
scandal(s):
abundance of, 93:33
avoiding, 36:32(14); 54:3; 83:2, 5
Boniface and Spes, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
Church clouded over by, 93:30
scars: of Christ after resurrection, 95:7
schism, schismatics, 51:1–5; 93:25
See also heretics; names of individual groups
as crime, 76:1–4; 87:4
Donatist, 76:1–4, See Donatists.
force, use against, 93:1(1)–7
as heresy, 87:4; 89:7
punished in scripture, 51:1
secular authority against, 93:12
as sin, 87:4
as wicked sacrifice, 76:1–4
schoolmaster, 75:14
scourge
See also punishment
“Not everyone who scourges is an enemy,” 93:4(2)
scribes:
Zechariah tolerating, 43:23
scripture
See also canonical books
holy and true, 28:3(3)–5
promiser(s) in, 43:23(9)
translations of, 82:34(5)–35
truth of, 82:5
"useful lies" as undermining authority of, 28:3(3)–5
Scythian wave, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Scythopolis:
Asterius of, 75:20(6)
sea:
sand in, 93:30
from sea to sea, 93:19
the tranquil, 15:2
seashore: as end of the world, 93:34
seasons, the, 55:13
four, 55:28
Second Coming: baptism, as eliminating need for, 23:4
secular power:
Church, on behalf of, 93:1(1)–20, 50
fear of, 93:20(6)
Secundus of Tigisi, 43:5–12, 14(5), 17(6), 26; 88:3
Carthage, council held at, 76:2
Sylvanus ordained by, 53:4(2)
seed: good, Church found in, 93:31–32
self: interior and exterior, 55:8(5)
self-control, 91:3
sensation: imagination vs., 6:1–2
senses, the:
deceptiveness of, 7:2, 3
and perceiving God, 92:5
sharper in “airy or ethereal spirits,” 9:3
sight, 7:6(3)
taste, 7:6(3)
truth of, 7:5
sensible nature and world:
as image of intelligible one, 3:3
intelligible nature compared to, 3:2–3; 4:1–2
sensual pleasures, 95:6
See also individual topics
dangers of, 2:1
doing without, 3:4
drunkenness, See drunkenness.
Galatians, the works of the flesh, 29:6
love of, 2:1
mind and intelligence vs., 3:4
as transitory, 2:1
Septuagint, the, 75:19(5)–20(6)
translations of, 28:2(2); 71:4, 6(4); 82:34(5)–35
seraphim, 55:29(16); 94:6
See also angels
serpents:
Marsi, the, 55:12(7)
servant(s):
Jesus Christ as, 33:5
seven:
ark of covenant carried around . . . the seventh time, 55:10(6)
the creature, symbolizing, 55:28
purified sevenfold, 55:31(7)
seven days; the seventh day, 55:17–19
sevenfold gift of the Holy Spirit, 55:10(6)
symbolism of, 55:5
seven churches:
John (the apostle) writing to, 55:10(6)
seven days, the, 55:17–18(10)
Severinus (Donatist relative), letters from Augustine to:
on Donatist schism, 52:1–4
Severus:
as bishop, 32:1
friendship with Augustine, 84:2
greetings sent through Profuturus to, 38:3
Milevis, as bishop of, 38:3
Letters 1-99

Paulinus, sending greetings to, 31:9
Severus, letter from Alypius, Augustine, and Samuscius to, 62:1–2
Severus, letters from Augustine to:
on Timothy (cleric), 63:1–4
shadow of death:
*we fear no evil,* 38:1
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, 36:16; 93:9(3)
shame:
human sense of, 91:5
sheep, 76:4
goats, separating from, 93:49–50(12)
rebaptizers as like wolves preying on, 35:4
shepherd(s), 76:4
the good shepherd, 93:49
“If you are good shepherds, be silent,” 35:4
sickness, See illness.
Sidonians, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
sight
*See also under eyes*
sense of, 7:(3), 6
silence, 95:2
silver, 83:4; 96:2
box and lamp, Donatists handing over, 53:4(2)
dove sheathed in, 98:5
in Jericho, 46:18
like silver from the earth, 55:3(7)
Simon Magus, 36:21(9)
Simplician:
*A Miscellany of Questions in Response to Simplician,* 37:1–3
Simplician, letters from Augustine to:
of appreciation, promising to answer questions, 37:1–3
sin, sexual
*See also* adultery; fornication
Boniface and Spes, 77:1–2; 78:1–9
sin, sinners, 87:3
baptism removing, 36:9(5)
of children and parents, 44:12
Christ, as forgiven in name of, 93:21, 23
Christ dying for our, 55:2
compassion for others’, 82:29 *See also* compassion
Donatists and Manichees as, 32:2
early church as tolerating, 43:22–23
as enemy within, 73:10
grace and, 82:20
Holy Spirit removing bond of (baptism), 98:2
Mosaic law and, 82:20
neutral actions vs., 75:4, 16; 82:13
of one as not defiling others, 93:15, 33–34, 37, 42, 45, 49; 98:2
original, 98:1. 6
of others and sacraments, sharing, 93:37
of parents, 98:1–10
repentance of, 93:52
sinful person, what constitutes, 87:3
sinners, known, effect of, 87:2
sinners, unknown, the presence of, 87:1
unknown, guilt regarding, 89:4
when the sinner is praised, 55:9
wicked, destruction of, 87:2
Sinai, Mount, 55:29(16)
sincerity
*See also truth*
of Paulinus, 31:5
singing, 55:32, 34
*See also* Alleluia
“a bad flute player makes a good singer;” 60:1–2
Donatist finding fault with Catholic, 55:34
Siniti (in Numidia): Maximinus as Donatist bishop, *See Maximinus.
Sion, Mount, 55:11
Siricius, 53:2
Sittifis: Novatus as bishop of, 84:1–2
Sixtus (two), 53:2
skepticism: as hiding Academics’ true convictions, 1:1
skeptics: Carneades, 1:2
sky: differences among heavenly bodies, 14:3
slander, 73:10
Paul on, 29:5
sleep:
advantage over waking, 7:2, 3
dreams, source of, 8:1
smoke, 48:2
Smyrna, 49:2
snakes, *See serpents.*
sober, sobriety:
of Jews, 29:4
Socrates: about learning and memory, 7:2
Sodom, 40:7
and Gomorrah, 36:9(5)
sodomites: Paul on, 29:5
Soliloquies, the, 3:1, 4
Augustine as author of books, 72:5(3)
Son of Man, the
*See also* Jesus Christ
as Lord of the Sabbath, 36:5(3)
sorrow, 93:48
sorrow
*See also* suffering; tribulation
everensive, 95:3
hope in, 55:26
those who rejoice in our, 78:6
Sosthenes, 93:7
Soter, 53:2
soul
*See also* intelligence; mind
activities of, many, 7:7
beauty, as lacking, 64:1
body as vehicle for, 13:2–4

Volume II/1
as body (common philosophical position), 1:1
body vs., 3:4; 55:18(10)
dead or (as impossible), 3:4
decreasing or increasing, power of, 7:6(3)
imagination and, 7:1–7
making use of body’s senses, 7:2, 3–7
“quasi-body” as vehicle for, 13:2–4
rest for, 55:22(12)
as seat of truth, 3:4
truth as food of, 1:3
souls: human beings as called, 95:8
south:
sower: Christ as, 93:15, 31
Spain: Barcelona, 24:4
Spanianum, 35:2, 4
Spes, 77:1–2
spirit:
body vs., 55:3(2), 9
flesh vs., 93:31
Spirit of God, 92:3
spirits: “airy or ethereal,” 9:3
Spirits, fruits of, 29:6
Spiritual bodies, 95:7–8
Spiritual growth: Paulinus desiring guidance in, 25:1–5
spiritual persons: Isaac as symbolizing, 93:10
Spring: pagan feasts celebrating, 90; 91
stars:
believers as, 93:15
differences among heavenly bodies, 14:3
Stephan, 53:2
Stesichorus (poet), 68:1; 75:18; 82:33
Stilicho, 97:2–3
Stoics, sect of, 88:10
Chrysippus, 16:3
stone:
Christ as, 55:11
stones: five smooth stones, 75:2
stoning: of church by pagans, 9:8
Strabonia: Abundantius as priest, 65:1–2
straw: wheat, separated from, 87:8
strike, 93:32, 48
vice of, 22:7(2)
stenches, 93:20(6)
Subhania: Timothy, the cleric, 62:1–2; 63:1–4
Sufet, letters from Augustine to:
on pagan massacre of Christians, 50
suffering:
See also sorrow of Jesus Christ, 93:21, 23
sharing, 99:2
Sun:
differences among heavenly bodies, 14:3
eclipses, 55:7
as symbol, 55:11
Superstitions, 7:4
surgeon, 93:8
suspicions, false, 78:6
swearing, See oaths.
sweet foods, 93:28(9)
sword:
honey, coated with, 72:2; 82:2
of Peter, 93:7
Sylvanus (bishop of Cirta), 43:17(6)
Sylvanus (subdeacon in Constantina), 53:4(2)
Sylvester, 53:2
symbols, symbolism
See also specific items, numbers, and topics
creatures as, 55:11, 14(8)–15
of divine realities, 55:11, 14(8)–15
rites, Old-Testament, 82:15
Synods, 93:21, 31
Tagisi, Secundus of:
Sylvanus ordained by, 53:4(2)
Talarus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius) talk
See also words
inopportune, 68:1
Tamar, 78:8
taste, sense of, 78:3
Taurus, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
tax evasion: property acquired through, 96:2
taxes, 96:2
Teaching Christianity, 41:2
tears:
See also words
with my tears,” 29:7
Telesphorus, 53:2
temptation:
guarding against, 48:3
present life as filled with, 95:2
ten, 55:28
Ten Commandments, the, 55:20(11)–22(12)
as holy, 82:20
the most important, 55:38
Terence, 26:3
comedy of, 7:4
The Eunuch, 91:4
Thagaste:
Alypius as bishop of, See Alypius
demands of citizens on Augustine, 5:1
Donatists, mass conversion of, 93:17
gifts of spiritual church, 29:12
Thagata: Xantippus as bishop of, See
Xantippus.
Thaive:
Honoratus of, 83:1–6
letter to Donatist leaders in, 43
Thamugadi: Optatus as Donatist bishop of,
43:25(9); 51:3
Theasius, 80:1
theatre, 91:4–5
Theodore of Heraclea, 75:4(3), 20(6); 82:23
Theodore (of Hippo) letters from Augustine to:
on reception of Donatists into church,
61:1–2
Theodosius, the emperor, 97:3
Theodotian, 75:19(5)
Letters 1-99

Therasia (wife of Paulinus), 24, 25
See also Paulinus
Thessalonians, Letter(s) to, 49:2
thief, thieves:
crucified with Christ, 93:7
forced to confess, 78:3
Paul on, 29:5
temple as “den of thieves,” 29:3
third day: Christ rising on, 93:21, 23
thorns: lily in the midst of, 93:28(9)
Those Who Have Fallen Away (Cyprian), 98:3
thief, thieves:
crucified with Christ, 93:7
forced to confess, 78:3
Paul on, 29:5
temple as “den of thieves,” 29:3
third day: Christ rising on, 93:21, 23
thorns: lily in the midst of, 93:28(9)
Those Who Have Fallen Away (Cyprian), 98:3
THYATIRA, 49:2
Thyestian feasts, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
Tigisi, Secundus of, See Secundus of Tigisi.
timid, See weak.
Timothy:
circumcision of, 75:9; 82:8, 10, 12, 19
father as Gentile, 75:9
holiness and faith of, 78:8
Timothy (cleric), 62:1–2; 63:1–4
Titus, 82:12
toilet: pagan god of, 17:2
tolerance:
and Christian unity, 44:11
of evil on account of good, 93:15
of other church customs, 54:3
unity, for the sake of, 43:22–23
tongues: speaking in, 94:7
tools, metal, 47:5
torture, 9:9; 88:4
the torturer, 93:8
traditor(s), 35:4; 44:10(5)
See also sacred books
in Africa, 89:4
Transfiguration, the, 55:28
treasure, Sin.
tree(s), 47:5
trial: of Caecilian (bishop of Carthage), 43:1–20
trials (troubles). See sorrow; suffering.
tribulation, See sorrow; suffering.
Trinity, the, 11:2–4
baptism made sacred by, 54:1(1)
faith in, as gift of God, 61:2
fullness of, 55:28
solidity of, in loaf of bread, 24:5
“the assumption of the man,” 11:2–4; 12:1
Tripoli: Maximinianist schism, 93:24(8)
Troas: Paul in, 36:28
Trojan War, the, 40:7
True Religion, 15:1; 24:2; 27:4
trumpet, heavenly, 1:2
trust: the Lord exhorting us to, 29:8
truth
See also lies, lying
Academics as concealing, 1:1–3
adored by his true adorers in spirit and in
truth, 78:3
body as like, 13:3
“but truth gives birth to hatred,” 82:31
Christ as, 26:6
Christian, beauty of, 40:7
criticism, constructive, See criticism.
as food of the soul, 1:3
imagination and, 7:4
knowing, yet fighting against, 93:10
“only the truth speaks the truth,” 26:6
Paul’s concern for teaching, 28:4
progression toward (with age), 4:1
reading, recognizing in ourselves truth
found in, 19:1
of scripture, 28:3(3)–5; 82:5 See also
under lies, lying (Paul rebuking
Peter)
search for, 19:1
of senses (as greater than that of
thoughts), 7:5
Son of God as highest form of, 14:4
soul as seat of, 3:4
through Jesus Christ, 82:18
vs. flattery, 33:3
truth, search for, 19:1
the Academics’ obstacles regarding, 1:1–3
Tubersicum: Fortunius as Donatist bishop, See Fortunius.
Tully, 17:3
Turril:
Samsucius as bishop of, See Samsucius.
twenty-three thousand (there fell on one
day), 36:15(7)
twins: differences between, 14:2
Two Books of Answers to the Questions of
Januarius, 54–55
Tychonius, 41:2; 93:14, 43–44, 43–45
unclean spirit, 82:17
understanding: two ways of reaching, 13:4
underworld, 7:4
unhappiness: and happiness, discussion of,
5:1
unity, Christian, See Christian unity.
universe: God as creator, 14:4
Urbanus, 53:2
“Urubicus” (“the city fellow”):
fasting treatise, Augustine refuting,
36:2–32
Uriah, 82:5
Uzziah, 75:2
Valentine (Catholic bishop), 88:10
Valerius (bishop of Hippo):
Augustine as coadjuter to, 31:4
Augustine on, 29:7
at Lenten sermon, 29:11
Paulinus, sending greetings to, 31:9
Paulinus describing, 32:2

Volume II/1
personal qualities of, 22:4
Valerius (bishop of Hippo), letters from Augustine to:
on priesthood, qualms regarding, 21:1–6
vanity (-ies), 55:20(11)
deceptive, 92:3
Varro, 26:6 (poem of Licentius)
vegetables, 47:4
See also food
veiled woman, 93:28(9)
vengeance, 47:5
Venus, 16:2; 17:2
Vesta, 16:2
Vetustusinus, 31:7
Victor (in Roman succession of bishops), 53:2
Victor (priest of Proculeian), 34:5; 35:1
Vitorinus, letters from Augustine to:
on primacy in Numidia, 59:1–2
Vigesilit: deposed African bishop, refusing, 64:4
Vincent, Rogatist bishop of Cartenna
(successor of Rogatus), 93:1(1)–53, 21
See also Rogatists
vine: Jesus as, 52:2
vines, 61:2
violence:
of Christ, 93:5
of Circumcellions, 88:1, 6–8, 10, 12
value of, 89:7 See also under force
Virgil, 17:3
the Aeneid, 7:4; 14:1; 15:2; 17:2, 3; 91:2
the Bucolics, 16:3; 17:3
virginity, vow of: as gift of God, 61:2
virgins, consecrated, 98:6
virtues, theological, See faith; hope; love.
wantonness, 55:24(14)
water, 48:2
in baptism, 98:2
in sacrament(s), 55:13
weight of, 55:18(10)
weak (-ness):
punishment and, 95:3
salvation of, 93:31
setting example for, 73:8
support of the, 93:3
wealth, 31:5–6
See also possessions
earthly vs. eternal, 15:2–3
(of Romanian), 15:2
Wednesday, 36:30(13)
weeds, 93:15
seed among, 93:31–32
separating grain from, 76:1–2
wheat, as not choking, 93:33
week, days of: fasting, discussion of, 36:30(13)–31
weeping:
“I did not evoke their tears with my tears,” 29:7
well(s): drinking from, ethics of, 46:14; 47:3
west, 93:30
wheat:
carried in order to be purified, 98:5
chaff amid, 93:33–34
chaff (weeds) as not choking, 93:33
grain, amid, 93:33–34
not uprooting weeds for fear that they might . . . uproot the wheat, 43:21(8)
in sacrament(s), 55:13
straw, separated from, 87:8
white:
clothes at Easter Vigil, 34:2–3
more pleasing than black, 29:11
White Sunday, 34:3
wicked (-ness), 93:10
See also evil; sin
of carnal persons, 93:6
destruction of, 87:2
of Donatists, 93:10
widow (-hood), 93:29
the matricidal young man, 34:2–6
wild animal(s), 55:11; 93:11
wild raging, 89:6
will: of God, knowing, 80:2–3
window(s), 47:5
wind(s): the four, 55:28
wine:
in sacrament(s), 55:13
winnowing
See also harvest
the last, 93:33, 42, 50(12)
wisdom:
and happiness, 3:1, 5
Licentius accused of fearing, 26:2
Son of God as highest form of, 14:4
Wisdom, Book of, 54
wolf, wolves, 76:4
rebaptizers as like, 35:4
woman, women:
“roving bands of women who have shamelessly refused to have husbands,” 35:2
woman, abandoned, 93:26, 30
woman, veiled, 93:28(9)
woman of ill repute, 65:1–2
wood: sacred grove, taken from, 46:7; 47:3
words:
evil conversations, 78:5
works
See also good works
“fruits” as (From their fruits you will know them), 29:6
world, the
See also earth
Christ as propitiation for sins of whole, 93:32
Christ as redeeming, 76:1
dying to the, 94:4–5
end of, See Apocalypse; end of the world; harvest.
spread of Christianity, 93:22(7)
“the chains of this world,” 26:2
wheat spread throughout, 93:32
world(s): “three worlds,” 7:4
worship of pagan gods, 17:3-4
wounds:
of Christ after resurrection, 95:7
wrath of God: salvation, as bringing about, 93:5
wrongdoing: avoiding appearance of, 83:5 See also scandal
Xantippus (of Thagura) primate of Numidia, 59:1-2
Xantippus (primate of Numidia), letters from Augustine to:
on Abundantius (priest), 65:1-2
Zaccheus, 54:4(3)
Zechariah, 43:23
Zenobius (brother of Dioscorus)
Augustine’s letters to, 2:1
Zenophilus, 43:17(6); 53:4(2)
Zephrinus, 53:2
Zephyrs, 26:4, 6 (poem of Licentius)
Zion, Mount, 93:25

Volume II/1
Index from

Letters 100-155

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/2

Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-186-2, 6 x 9 in., 438 pp., 2002

Includes the following works:

On Seeing God
(De videndo Dei)

Six Questions Against Pagans
(Quaestiones expositae contra paganos numero sex)

On the Grace of the New Testament
(De gratia Testamenti Novi)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**Volume II/2**

**Index of Scripture**

*(prepared by Michael Dolan)*

*(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Psalms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>147, 21, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>148, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>147, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10</td>
<td>140, 19, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:12</td>
<td>140, 19, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>105, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>144, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:30</td>
<td>147, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:11</td>
<td>147, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13 LXX</td>
<td>147, 8, 20; 147, 11, 26; 147, 13, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20</td>
<td>147, 8, 20; 147, 13, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:23</td>
<td>147, 11, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:23 LXX</td>
<td>147, 13, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:4.6</td>
<td>108, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>147, 13, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>140, 18, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>130, 14, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>140, 29, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12 LXX</td>
<td>130, 9, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>140, 13, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>140, 16, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>140, 18, 45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Letters 100-155**
Letters 100-155

Volume II/2
### Volume II/2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proverbs</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>140, 34, 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>140, 31, 74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>111, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18 LXX</td>
<td>108, 1, 1; 108, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>105, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6 LXX</td>
<td>153, 5, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>140, 16, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>104, 3, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9 LXX</td>
<td>140, 34, 79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:31-32 LXX</td>
<td>130, 6, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:3-4 LXX</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:8</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:8-9</td>
<td>130, 6, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:12 LXX</td>
<td>108, 3, 12; 108, 7, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ecclesiastes</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>143, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Song of Songs</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>149, 1, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>140, 22, 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wisdom</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:20,18,21</td>
<td>140, 7, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>119, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>144, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sirach</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>140, 22, 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>127, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>140, 24, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>140, 28, 68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>140, 24, 61; 140, 28, 68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6</td>
<td>137, 1, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>140, 15, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:30</td>
<td>108, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:4</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:18</td>
<td>130, 12, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isaiah</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>121, 1, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>147, 5, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9 LXX</td>
<td>120, 1, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10 LXX</td>
<td>147, 11, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5 LXX</td>
<td>140, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:12</td>
<td>120, 3, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7</td>
<td>102, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7-8</td>
<td>102, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:11</td>
<td>108, 3, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:4</td>
<td>140, 6, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>105, 4, 15; 140, 15, 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Testament</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18-20</td>
<td>153, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>121, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>149, 2, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>140, 27, 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>149, 1, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5:4-45 153, 2, 4
5:8 119, 1, 5; 130, 2, 5; 147, 1, 3;
    147, 5, 12; 147, 5, 15;
    147, 6, 18; 147, 11, 24;
    147, 11, 27; 147, 11, 28;
    147, 15, 37; 147, 16, 39;
    147, 23, 52; 147, 23, 53;
    148, 2, 9; 148, 3, 11;
    148, 3, 12
5:9 105, 1, 1
5:10 108, 5, 14
5:14-16 140, 3, 7
5:16 133, 2; 140, 31, 74
5:39 138, 2, 12
5:45 153, 2, 4
5:8 140, 29, 69
5:9 130, 11, 21;
    153, 5, 13
6:10 130, 11, 21
6:11 130, 11, 21
6:12 130, 11, 21; 153, 5, 13
6:13 130, 11, 21; 130, 14, 29;
    145, 8
6:14 153, 5, 13
7:1-2 102, 25
7:2 102, 22; 102, 23; 102, 25;
    102, 38
7:7-8 153, 5, 14
7:11 153, 5, 14
7:16 149, 1, 4
7:24-27 127, 7
8:8 140, 20, 50
8:10-12 140, 20, 50
8:12 140, 22, 54; 140, 23, 58
8:22 120, 4, 18
9:12 149, 1, 7
9:12-13 140, 30, 72; 145, 8
9:13 121, 1, 2
10:28 140, 16, 41
10:34 128, 3, 18
11:1 140, 3, 7
11:23 140, 24, 60
11:28-30 127, 5
12:24 124, 1, 4
12:39-40 102, 34
13:37-38 140, 28, 68
16:16 147, 12, 30
16:17 147, 12, 30
18:10 147, 5, 13; 147, 9, 22
19:6 140, 6, 18
19:24 130, 1, 2
22:21 127, 6
22:30 148, 2, 7
22:37 140, 18, 45
22:37-39 137, 5, 17
23:3 105, 5, 16
23:35 140, 10, 27
24:12 140, 22, 55
24:13 140, 32, 76
24:14 140, 17, 43
25:1 140, 32, 76
25:3-4 140, 33, 77
25:5 140, 32, 76; 140, 34, 78
25:6 140, 34, 78
25:9 140, 31, 74; 140, 34, 80
25:10 140, 34, 80
25:11 140, 35, 81
25:12 140, 35, 81; 140, 37, 83
25:13 140, 34, 80
25:23 140, 23, 57
25:34 147, 11, 27
25:40 140, 11, 28
25:41 140, 23, 57; 147, 11, 27
25:42 147, 11, 28
25:46 147, 11, 27
26:39 130, 14, 26; 140, 10, 27
26:41 145, 8
26:75 140, 14, 36
27:25 149, 1, 5
27:46 140, 1, 2
Mark
10:18 153, 5, 12
10:25 130, 1, 2
12:35 148, 2, 7
14:36 140, 10, 27
15:34 140, 1, 2
16:12 149, 3, 31
Luke
2:14 127, 5
2:29-30 140, 18, 46
2:34-35 121, 3, 17
2:35 121, 3, 18; 149, 3, 33
2:37 130, 14, 29
3:6 140, 4, 12
3:14 138, 2, 15
6:37-38 153, 5, 15
6:45 153, 5, 12
7:6-7 140, 20, 50
10:16 140, 11, 28
10:27 140, 18, 45
11:9-13 130, 8, 16
11:51 140, 10, 27
12:48.47 111, 2
12:49 121, 3, 18
18:1 130, 8, 15
18:25 130, 1, 2
19:8 153, 5, 24
20:36 148, 2, 7
22:62 140, 14, 36
23:21 140, 14, 36
23:34 121, 1, 7; 138, 2, 13
24:5 121, 3, 16
24:16 149, 3, 31
## Volume II/2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>129, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>105, 1, 2; 129, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>137, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-5</td>
<td>140, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>140, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6-8</td>
<td>140, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>140, 3, 8; 140, 4, 10; 140, 28, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28-68</td>
<td>140, 3, 8; 140, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>140, 3, 7; 140, 3, 8; 140, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11-13</td>
<td>140, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>140, 4, 11; 147, 10, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>140, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>140, 1, 2; 140, 4, 11; 140, 36, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>140, 18, 45; 147, 5, 13; 147, 5, 16; 147, 6, 17; 147, 6, 18; 147, 11, 28; 147, 15, 37; 147, 16, 39; 147, 19, 46; 148, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>108, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>147, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>147, 17, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>140, 15, 38; 147, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35</td>
<td>140, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:50</td>
<td>140, 15, 38; 147, 11, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:54</td>
<td>140, 24, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>153, 4, 9; 153, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:17</td>
<td>153, 4, 9; 153, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>140, 2, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>101, 2; 149, 2, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:38</td>
<td>145, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>121, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>108, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>140, 14, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>147, 15, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>108, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:30</td>
<td>108, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:36</td>
<td>108, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>104, 4, 13; 104, 4, 16; 121, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>147, 11, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>147, 5, 13; 147, 5, 16; 147, 6, 18; 147, 12, 29; 147, 14, 33; 147, 23, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16-17</td>
<td>148, 6, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>147, 11, 27; 147, 20, 48; 148, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:23</td>
<td>147, 11, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:27</td>
<td>108, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>147, 11, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:23</td>
<td>138, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:26-27</td>
<td>121, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>119, 3; 120, 3, 15; 121, 3, 16; 140, 17, 43; 149, 3, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:29</td>
<td>147, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21:17</td>
<td>108, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18-19</td>
<td>140, 10, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:6</td>
<td>140, 8, 21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>102, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:27-31</td>
<td>140, 15, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>140, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>140, 12, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3-5</td>
<td>138, 2, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>102, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>143, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3-6</td>
<td>153, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>153, 2, 5; 153, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>140, 20; 50; 140, 30; 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>140, 4; 11; 140, 7; 19; 140, 18; 45; 140, 22; 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>149, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>149, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>140, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>140, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>140, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>145, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>140, 20; 49; 140, 21; 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:18</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>130, 4; 9; 130, 14; 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>130, 14, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td>131; 130, 4; 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26-27</td>
<td>131; 149, 2, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td>149, 2, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29-30</td>
<td>149, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35-39</td>
<td>140, 19, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>149, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8-10</td>
<td>121, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>140, 20; 50; 140, 22; 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>140, 30; 71; 140, 30; 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>140, 27; 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>140, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19-20</td>
<td>140, 20, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>140, 24, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>149, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26-27</td>
<td>149, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>121, 2; 11; 149, 2, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:32</td>
<td>149, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>140, 26; 63; 149, 1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-34</td>
<td>140, 25, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>155, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Letters 100-155**
### Letters 100-155

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>130, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>140, 21, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>100, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-8</td>
<td>153, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>110, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>130, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>140, 29, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-9</td>
<td>149, 2, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>105, 3, 11; 108, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>140, 2, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>140, 27, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30-31</td>
<td>120, 4, 19; 145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>140, 7, 19; 140, 20, 50; 140, 31, 75; 140, 34, 79; 140, 37, 85; 145, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>130, 8, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>147, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>147, 17, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>120, 3, 14; 144, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>140, 26, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>121, 3, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>108, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>147, 15, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>127, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>140, 37, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>140, 37, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>119, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>121, 2, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>140, 26, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>140, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19-20</td>
<td>102, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>141, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>142, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>111, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>140, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>121, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>140, 22, 54; 140, 24, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>120, 1, 4; 140, 25, 62; 147, 22, 51; 148, 1, 1; 148, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>130, 8, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>140, 32, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>140, 9, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>148, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>102, 5; 140, 34, 78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>140, 31, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>140, 10, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>147, 22, 51; 148, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>147, 22, 51; 148, 2, 7; 148, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>140, 11, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>140, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7</td>
<td>140, 9, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>127, 1; 140, 28, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>140, 30, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>140, 30, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>130, 8, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>155, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>124, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>130, 14, 25; 140, 6, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>140, 17, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>140, 22, 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>105, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>140, 19, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>140, 3, 6; 140, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>140, 35, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>140, 21, 52; 140, 26, 63; 147, 4, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3-4</td>
<td>140, 34, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>140, 34, 79; 141, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>149, 2, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>149, 2, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>147, 15, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>140, 20, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>140, 30, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>140, 30, 71; 140, 30, 73; 140, 35, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>140, 26, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-19</td>
<td>140, 25, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>140, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>147, 6, 18; 147, 14, 33; 147, 23, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>140, 26, 63; 147, 15, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>120, 2, 12; 140, 17, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>149, 2, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22</td>
<td>142, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>148, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>140, 3, 6; 140, 23, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>140, 17, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25-26</td>
<td>108, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>130, 3, 7; 140, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>140, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>140, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>140, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>140, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>140, 4, 12; 140, 24, 59; 140, 27, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>140, 27, 66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume II/2

2:12-13 140, 21, 53
2:21 140, 24, 61
3:15-16 108, 3, 9; 120, 1, 4
4:5 133, 2
4:6 122, 2; 130, 9, 18

Colossians
2:4 149, 2, 24
2:5 140, 2, 25
2:6 140, 2, 25
2:8-9 140, 2, 25
2:10 140, 2, 25
2:12 149, 2, 26
2:14 140, 2, 26
2:15 149, 2, 26
2:16 149, 2, 27
2:16-17 140, 2, 27
2:17 102, 35
2:17-18 149, 2, 27
2:18 121, 2, 12; 149, 2, 23
2:19-20 149, 2, 28
2:21 149, 2, 23; 149, 2, 29
2:21-23 121, 2, 13
2:22 140, 2, 29
2:23 149, 2, 29
3:1 140, 36, 82
3:1-2 140, 27, 67
3:3 102, 29
3:3-4 130, 2, 5
3:13 108, 5, 15; 148, 1, 5
3:21 121, 2, 13

1 Thessalonians
2:5 126, 10
4:12 140, 32, 76
5:17 130, 9, 18

1 Timothy
1:5 130, 13, 24; 140, 24, 61; 147, 14, 55
1:17 147, 15, 37; 148, 3, 11
2:1 121, 2, 10; 140, 2, 12;
140, 2, 17
2:3-4 149, 2, 17
2:4 121, 2, 11
2:5 140, 8, 21; 149, 2, 17
5:5 130, 1, 1; 130, 3, 7;
130, 14, 29
5:6 130, 3, 7
5:22 108, 3, 7
6:6-10 130, 6, 12
6:16 147, 5, 14; 147, 6, 17;
147, 15, 37; 147, 16, 39;
147, 17, 44; 147, 19, 46;
148, 2, 10
6:17-19 130, 1, 2; 140, 10, 27

2 Timothy
2:20 108, 3, 11
3:5 121, 2, 13

Titus
1:13 130, 5, 10
3:2 133, 2
3:5 140, 30, 72
3:55 140, 25, 62

Hebrews
2:6 140, 13, 35
4:12 121, 2, 18
7:25 149, 2, 14
12:6 111, 5
12:14 147, 5, 15

James
1:15 149, 1, 4
1:17 140, 37, 85; 147, 19, 46
1:18 140, 25, 62; 149, 1, 6
2:13 140, 31, 74; 140, 34, 79
5:11 140, 10, 26
5:16 153, 4, 10

1 Peter
1:8 147, 3, 8
2:21 140, 27, 66
3:3-4 147, 22, 51
4:8 108, 2, 5

1 John
1:5 140, 22, 54; 147, 19, 46
1:8 153, 3, 8
2:1-2 149, 2, 14
2:11 140, 22, 54
3:2 130, 2, 5; 147, 5, 12;
147, 8, 20; 147, 10, 23;
147, 15, 37; 147, 19, 46;
148, 3, 11; 148, 5, 17
4:8 140, 22, 54; 148, 5, 18
4:12 148, 2, 6; 148, 2, 10
4:16 147, 19, 46
4:18 140, 18, 45; 140, 20, 49;
140, 20, 51; 140, 21, 53
5:21 102, 19

Revelation
14:4 121, 1, 7
Letters 100-155

Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number.
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

abandonment, 140:14–19(7), 27–28, 33, 43(17), 59(24), 82(36)
Abel, 102:17; 140:27
Abraham, 147:14, 18, 26
offspring of, 121:2; 140:46–50
Academics, the, 118:16; 144:2
Adam, 140:21(8)–22; 143:6
adoption, 140:9–11; 153:13
adultery, 140:53; 153:9(4), 12(5), 15
Aelian, 129:4; 141:10–11
Aeneid, the, 140:76(32); 151:1
Africa
See also Hippo; specific names and topics
Catholics in, 105:2
Donatists in, 100; 105:2; 129:6
afterlife, See eternal life; heaven; hell
Agabus, 149:11(2)
Against the Christians, book, 102:8
Alba, town of, 102:8
Albina, 125:2
Albina, letter from Augustine to:
on Pinian’s oath, 126:1–16
Albina, Melania, and Pinian, letter from
Augustine to:
on why a visit hadn’t been possible, 124:1–2
almsgiving, 130:24
Albyius, 117; 119:1; 126:1–3, 9
Albyius, letter from Augustine to:
on Pinian in Hippo, 125:1–5
Ambrose: Commentary on the Gospel of Luke,
147:17–39, 52(23)–54; 148:6(2)–7, 10
Anastasius (African monk), letter from
Augustine to:
on worldly enticements and grace, 145:1–8
Anaxagoras, 118:12, 23(4)–27
Anaximenes, 118:12, 23(4)
angels, 102:20; 147:14, 25, 40; 148:7
cult of the angels, 149:27–28
and prayer, 130:18(9); 140:69(29)
as rational creatures, 140:56(23)
at resurrection, 140:78
and temple sacrifices, 102:20;
147:17(6)–18
wicked, See demons; devil
animal sacrifice, See under sacrifices
animals: salvation of, 140:71(30)
Anna, 130:29
anthropomorphites, 148:14
Antiochus, king, 111:5
Apolinarius, 140:12
Appolinarists, 140:12
Appolonius, 136:1; 138:18
Apringius (proconsul), 139:2; 151:1–14
Apringius, letter from Augustine to:
on capital punishment, 134:1–4
Apuleius, 136:1; 137:13(4); 138:18(4)–19
Arcesilas of Pitane, 118:16
Arians, the, 119:1; 147:19(7); 148:10
ark of Noah, See Noah
Arles, Council of, 105:8
Armentarius and Paulina, letter from
Augustine to:
on their life of continence, 127:1–9
Ascension, the, 137:13
Athanasius (bishop of Alexandria), 148:10
atomism, physical (Democritus), 118:12,
27–28, 30–31
Audians, 148:14
Augustine: writings, 139:3; 143:3
See also specific titles
Aurelius (bishop of Carthage), 128:4; 151:3
Aurelius, Sylvanus, and bishops to
Marcellinus from:
on the Conference of Carthage,
128:1–4; 129:1–7

Volume II/2
Volume II/2

authorities, state, See government
Azariah, 111:3, 8
Bagai, Council of, 108:1(1), 5–6, 13(4–15)
baptism, 108:3; 130:16; 139:3; 149:26; 153:15
infant, 143:6; 149:22
John the Baptist, 140:7–8
rebaptism, Donatist practice of, See rebaptism
barbarians: attacks by, 111:1–9
beauty, 120:20; 138:5; 140:63(26)
inner, 147:51(22)
belief, See faith
"belly," 149:3–4
Bible, See scriptures
birth, spiritual, See rebirth by grace
birth of Christ, See virgin birth
bishops, See individual names
bishops, Catholic: role of, 152:1–3; 153:1(1)–26
bishops, Catholic and Donatist: at Conference of Carthage, See Conference of Carthage
blindness:
   bodily, 155:3
   of Jews, 149:18–20
blood of Christ, sacrament, 140:60–62(25); 141:5
   See also sacraments
boasting, See pride
body:
carnal nature, 140:56(23); 144:2
   and good, supreme, 118:13–16
   health of, 130:7–8, 13
   pleasures of, See flesh: pleasures of senses, See senses
   and soul, 120:18(4); 131; 137:11–12; 142:5–11
   body, spiritual, 148:16–18
   at resurrection, 120:17; 147:49(21)–51(22)
   Seeing God, 147:1(1)–54
body of Christ, Church as, 140:15(6)–18
   suffering of Christ and body, 140:36(14)–42
   body of Christ, sacrament of, 140:60–62(25); 141:5
   See also sacraments
Boniface, 139:2; 152:1
books, See specific titles
books, sacred: surrendered in time of persecution, 105:2
born again, See rebirth by grace
bread:
daily bread, 130:21(11)
   love, as symbolizing, 130:16
sacrament of, See body of Christ
We...are one bread, one body, 140:63(26)
breasts: My hope from the breasts of my mother, 140:30(12)–31
bribery, 141:1, 12; 153:23
bride, bridegroom:
   Christ and the Church, 140:18
   wise and foolish virgins, parable, 140:74(31)–81(35)
bull of Phalaris, 155:2
Caecilian (bishop of Carthage), 105:2, 6, 8; 108:2, 13(4); 128:2; 129:4
case of, 141:7–10
Caecilian (new imperial commissioner), letter from Augustine to:
   on execution of Marcellinus, 151:1–14
Caesarians, 145:8
Caesars, the, 102:8; 104:16; 138:9
Cain, 102:17; 140:27; 147:26, 37; 149:9
Calama, Numidia: crimes against Christians in, 103:1–4
canonical scriptures, 147:4–5; 148:15
capital punishment, 100:1–2; 133:1–3; 134:1–4; 139:2
carnal nature, 140:3(2)
   See also flesh: desires of words of my sins, 140:17
Carthage:
   Conference of, See Conference of Carthage
schism at, 105:8
catechumen: Caecilian as, 151:14
Catholic Church, Catholics
   See also Church
   Donatists, meeting with, See Conference of Carthage
   spread throughout world, 140:43(17), 60; 141:4
   as true Church, 118:32(5); 140:43(17); 141:5
Catholic, war with, 138:16(3)
Celer, 139:2
celibacy, See chastity
centurion, Gentile, 140:50, 54(22)
chaff, wheat and, 108:12; 142:3
change, 138:2–8; 140:12
character, 145:7
charity, 139:3; 140:62(25), 77, See also love
chastity, 137:12; 147:43
of the elect, 121:7
fear and, 140:53
   in marriage, 151:8–9
   rapo, 111:9
   of soul, 144:2
   virgins, parable of, 140:77(33)
   vows of, 127:1–9
cheek: turn the other cheek, 138:12–13
children:
   my seed will serve him, 140:68(28)
procreation of, 130:29
sated with their children, 149:4–5
training, 104:7; 138:14
children of God, 140:8–10(4)
children of the promise, 140:46–48, 50
choice (free will), 140:3(2)–4
chosen, the, 149:19–22
Christian (Catholic) unity, 141:5
Donatists exhorted to return to,
105:1(1)–17; 108:17–20
Donatists’ return to, 142:1–4; 144:1–3
parables supporting, 108:10–12
state, as foundation, 138:10
Christianity
See also Catholic Church; Church, the;
specific topics
growth of, 137:16
humility in, 118:22–23(4)
and salvation, 102:8–15
spread of, 140:65–67; 142:2
and the state, 136:2–3; 137:20; 138:9–16
as truth, 102:15; 104:12; 137:16
Christians, 102:21; 140:8–9, 47(19), 48, 68(28)
See also specific topics
Against the Christians, 102:8
Donatist crimes against, 100; 133:1
early, 118:33
non-Catholic, 118:32(5)
persecution of, See persecution
rich, 140:66(27)–67
weak, help for, 118:32(5)
church: I shall sing of you in the midst of the
curch, 140:43(17)–45(18)
Church, the
See also Catholic Church; Christianity
asylum in, 113
as body of Christ, See body of Christ
growth of, 129:3
house of God, 141:1–2
Mary as symbolizing, 120:15
the poor in, 140:60–61
in scriptures, 105:14–15, 17
sinners in, 129:5
strength of, 140:36(14)–37(15)
unity in, See Christian unity
Cicero (Tully), 103:1, 2; 104:3, 7, 15–16;
138:9; 143:3; 155:3–4
Dioscorus, questions of, 117; 118:1(1)–34
“Don’t give a boy a sword.” 104:7
soul as immortal, 104:3
Circumcellions, 105:3(2), 6; 108:19
in Hippo, 111:1
in savagery of, 108:13(4); 133:1
circumcision, 121:3; 149:20, 26
Cirta, citizens of, letter from Augustine to:
on return to unity, 144:1–3
Cirta, Council of, 141:1–13
cities, 138:10; 155:9(4)
City of God, The, 136:3; 154:2; 155:2
clean of heart, 148:9, 11
See also seeing God
cold, of outermost darkness, 140:55
cold weather, 124:1
commendations of Christ, 137:17;
155:14–15
Commentary on the Gospel of Luke,
147:17–39, 52(23)
compassion, for others, 130:3–4
concupiscence, See lust
Conference of Carthage, 128:1–4; 129:1–7;
139:1
proceedings of, 141:1–13
confession, 140:60
conscience, 130:24(4); 140:74(31)–75, 79;
151:10
Consentius (Catholic layman), letter from
Augustine to:
answering theological questions,
120:1–20
Consentius (Catholic layman), letter to
Augustine from:
on theological questions, 119:1–6
Constantine, the emperor, 105:8–10; 129:4;
141:8–11
continence, See chastity
conversion, to Christianity, 140:65–67
Donatists’ return to unity, 142:1–4;
144:1–3
Council of Arles, 105:8
Council of Bagai, 108:1(1), 5–6, 13(4)–15
Council of Cirta, 141:1–13
courage, 155:12–13(4), 16
creation, order of, 140:3(2)–4
creator, God as, 140:81(35); 147:47, 50
creature; creator vs., 101:2; 102:20;
140:3(2)–4
Cresconius, 114; 115
Cresconius, letter from Augustine to:
on behalf of Faventius, 113
Crisminus (Donatist bishop of Calama),
105:4
cross, the
See also crucifixion of Jesus, below
dimensions of, 140:64
mystery of, 147:34
incarnation, 140:39(16)
“God...why have you abandoned me?”,
140:14–18, 27
Old Testament foretelling, 102:37;
140:24
suffering, See suffering of Christ
Cyprian (bishop of Carthage): as martyr, 108:9–12; 151:6

damnation, See hell
Daniel, 111:3–5; 140:28
See also fiery furnace
darkness, 140:6(3), 54(22)–58, 61, 69(28), 82(36)
David, King, 138:19
as psalmist (See Psalms)
defeasance, 155:3
death, 140:16; 143:8

the dust of death, 140:38
“end of evils,” 103:3; 104:3
and eternal life, See eternal life
fear of, 127:2; 140:16, 22
martyrdom, See martyrdom
poverty and, 103:3; 104:2–4
and resurrection, See resurrection
sleep, compared to, 140:76(32)
death penalty, See capital punishment
debts, debtors, 110:4–6; 130:21(11)
Delphinus, 139:4
dem SCREEN: See also Proba
Democritus, 118:12, 27–30
demons:
false gods as, 102:18–20
and miracles, 102:32
Deogratias, letter from Augustine to:
Six Questions in Answer to the Pagans,
102
desires, fleshly, See carnal nature; flesh, desires of
devil, the, 105:13; 140:42; 147:15–16
at last judgment, 140:57–58
in outermost darkness, 140:54(22)–55, 61
Dioscorus, letter from Augustine to:
on Cicero, 118:1(1)–34
Dioscorus, letter to Augustine from:
on Cicero, 117:
disciples, See apostles; individual names
doctors:
It is not the healthy...but the ill, 140:72;
145:8; 149:7
Vindician, 138:3
dogs, 140:39(16), 42, 60; 149:10
Donatists, 118:12
Catholics, meeting with, See Conference
of Carthage
Christian emperors and, 105:6–11(3)
Circumcellions as, See Circumcellions
in Hippo, 111:1
lies, as based on, 105:6
Maximianists, conduct with, 129:5, See also Maximianists
in Numidia, 129:6
persecution of, 108:14
punishment for, suggested, 100;
133:1–3; 134:1–4
re Baptism, practice of, See rebaptism
schism with Catholic Church, 105:8, 17
violence of, 105:4–5; 111:1
Donatists, former, letters from Augustine to:
on their return to unity, 142:1–4;
144:1–3
Donatists, letters from Augustine to:
on the Conference of Carthage,
141:1–13
exhorting to return to Catholic unity,
105
Donatus (bishop of Casae Nigrae, Numidia), 105:8
Donatus (formerly proconsul of Africa),
letter from Augustine to:
urging to follow Christ, 112:1–3
Donatus (proconsul of Africa), letter from
Augustine to:
on punishment for Donatists, 100
drunkenness, 144:2
dualism, See Manichees
dust, 140:38
eating, See food
egg, 130:16
Egypt:
monks, barbarians attacking, 111:1
water turned to blood, 143:1
Elijah, 137:13(4); 140:39(16)
Elisha, 137:13(4)
emperors, Christian:
See also individual names
Donatists and, 105:6–11(3)
and Roman state, 136:2–3; 138:16(3)
end of the world, 122:2
final judgment, See judgment, by God;
resurrection, final
enemies:
Christians and Donatists, 105:17
Christ’s teaching regarding, 138:9–15
God...will crush the heads of his
enemies, 149:10
loving, 100:1–2; 140:63(26); 153:4(2)–5
praying for, 130:23
In terms of the gospel they are enemies
on your account, 149:18–20
enemies of grace, 140:83(37)–84; 145:8
envy, 140:54(22), 61
Epicureans, 118:12, 14, 20–21, 26; 155:2–3
body as highest good, 118:16–19, 19
on mind, 118:29

Letters 100-155
Letters 100-155

on nature, 118:28
soul as mortal, 104:3
Epicurus, 155:2
Eridanus, 118:6
eternal fire, See hell
eternal life, 147:27
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
eternal punishment, See hell
eternal life, 147:27
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also heaven
attaining, 104:3, 12(4)–13; 130:14; 138:17; 140:24(9), 63(26); 155:16–17
desire for, 130:18; 140:22
earthly life and, 127:2–4; 130:2–6
and happiness, temporal, See happiness
praying for, 130:30
See also righteousness
the common good, 140:67, 70
creation as, 140:4
evil, returning for, 100:1–2; 138:11–15;
153:4(2)–5, See also enemies
the highest, 118:13–16; 140:56(23)
immutable, 140:80–82(36)
joy in, 140:80
good works, 140:62(25)–63(26), 71(30)–72,
74–81; 147:34
See also wealth
gospel, spread of, 266:43(16)
See also Catholic Church; Christianity
Gospels: Paulinus of Nola, questions
regarding, 121:14–18
gourd plant, See Jonah
government, 138:10
Christianity and, 136:2–3; 137:20;
138:9–16; 153:16–19
officials of, 153:8, 19, 23–25, See also
specific titles
grace, 101:2; 140:1–85
because of grace...not because of works,
140:71(30)–72
desires, overcoming through, 137:12
"enemies" of, See "enemies of grace"
fear of God preserving, See fear of God
and the law, 145:3
sinner and, 149:7–8
whole intention of, 140:85
and worldly pleasures, 145:2
Grace of the New Testament, the, 140:1–85
"grafting" of Gentiles, 140:49(20)–51
grain:
weeds, separating from, 108:11–12
wheat and chaff, 108:12; 142:3
gratitude, 140:84
greed, 104:4
See also wealth
Pinian, in case of, 125:1–5; 126:7–10
Greek language, 149:12–16
Greek philosophers, 118:23
See also philosophers; individual names
Gregory (Pheobatus of Agen), 148:10
Hannibal, 138:16(3)

See also honest

Heart, 130:17
Blessed are the clean of heart, 148:9,
11–12. See also seeing God
disposition of, 138:13–14
life of, 140:61–63(26)
heaven, 102:15, 19; 103:2
See also eternal life
all religions seeking, 104:12(4)
Christ as way to, 104:13; 138:17
Christ in, 120:15
and earthly suffering, 111:2
God in, 120:14
the rich entering, 130:2
hell, 102:22–23, 27; 104:3; 140:54(22)–58
impiety leading to, 102:19
heretics, heresies, 118:12; 120:13(3);
137:16
See also Donatists; Manichees;
Pelagians; individual groups and
names
Hippo, 124:2
dependence on Augustine in, 124:2
Pinian wanted as priest, 125:1–5; 126:1–14
violence in, 111:1
Hippo, letter from Augustine to clergy and
people:
apologizing for absence, 122:1–2
holiness, 148:18
holy ones who are in his land, 121:2
Holy Spirit, 130:28; 137:16; 140:11, 13(5);
145:3, 7
See also Trinity
Honoratus (catechumen in Carthage), 139:3
Honoratus, letter from Augustine to:
The Grace of the New Testament,
140:1–85
hope, 145:7; 147:34
"a good conscience," 130:24(4)
account of, giving, 120:4
egg symbolizing, 130:16
faith and, 120:8
we have been saved in hope, 140:17,
71(30)
Horace, 143:4
human beings:
as body and soul, 137:11–12, See also
body; soul
carnal nature of, 140:3(2), See carnal
nature
intellect of, 102:14; 104:11; 147:45(18)
humility, 127:5
of centurion, Gentile, 140:50, 54(22)
of Christ, 118:17, 22–23(4)
feigned, 149:23, 27–29
Pharisee and publican, parable, 121:3
the poor as humble, 140:60–61, 63(26),
65–67
Letters 100-155

and salvation, 140:53

idols, idolatry, 102:18–20; 104:5; 105:7

immortality:
of Christ, 120:9; 140:30(12)–31
of God, 143:7

of soul, See under soul

immutability of God, 148:11

See also seeing God

Ingentius, 141:10–11

Innocence (priest), 133:1

Innocent (pope), 151:2

integrity: in poverty and wealth, 138:16(3)–17

intellect, human, 102:14; 104:11; 147:45(18)

invisible realities, 120:9

irony, 149:23

Isaac, 140:28, 47(19)–48; 147:14

Isaiah, 147:14, 18

 Ishmael, 140:47(19)

Israel, 140:47(19), 49(20); 149:19

See also Jews

Ninevah as prefiguring, 102:37

offspring of, 140:46–50

people as prophetic, 102:15

Italy, 111:1

Jacob (Israel), 147:14, 26

offspring of, 140:46–50

two names of, 140:49(20)

jealousy, 140:53–54; 148:6(2)–9, 13(4)–14

Jerome, letter to Augustine from:
on heretics, 123

Jerusalem, 141:4; 149:3

Jesus Christ, 102:21; 137:15; 140:10(4)–11, 68(28)

See also Son of God; Trinity; Word of God; specific topics

birth of, 102:3; See also virgin birth

death of, 102:3; 120:9; 140:13(5), 38; See also crucifixion of Jesus

as God and man, 137:11–12, 20; 138:20; 140:12, 43(17); 147:16

in heaven, 120:15

as human, 119:2–4; 137:9(3)–12

immortality of, 120:9; 140:30(12)–31

as mediator, 140:43(17); 147:51(22);

149:17, 26

resurrection of, See resurrection of Christ

as salvation, 102:11–15; 140:46

in scripture, See scriptures

as Son of Man, 140:21(8)–23

as Truth, 155:14

as wisdom of God, 102:29; 120:19

Jews, 121:2; 137:15; 149:24, 26–27

as non-believers, 121:7; 137:16; 140:9, 20, 50; 147:51(22); 149:18–20

scattering of, 137:16; 149:3, 9

Job, 111:4; 140:26(10), 34, 45(18); 147:14

John the Baptist, 140:7–8

Jonah, 102:30–37

Joseph, husband of Mary, 153:9(4)

Joseph, son of Jacob, 140:28; 149:33

joy, 140:80; 147:43

Judaisms, 149:24, 26–27

Judas Iscariot, 108:7(3), 8

judge (state official), 153:8, 16, 19–20, 23

unjust, parable of, 130:15

judgment:

ability to judge, 147:44

With the judgment you pronounce....

102:25–26

judgment, by God, 104:9; 111:3–4; 140:57, 82(36); 147:34; 149:22; 153:4(2)

See also resurrection, final

wise and foolish virgins parable,

140:74–81

Julian (emperor), 105:9–11

Julian (future bishop of Eclanum), 101:4

Juliana, daughter of Proba, See Proba

Jupiter, 138:18(4)

justice, 140:66(27); 153:26; 155:12–13(4), 16

Juvenal, 138:16(3)

kindness, 147:43

kings, See individual names

knowledge, 147:3(8), 35–36

of God, 140:81(35)

lamps, 140:74–75, 77, 79–80

land ownership, 149:3

Latin language, 149:12–13

Latinum, kingdom of, 102:8; 138:16(3)

law, 121:4; 153:16

Do not kill them lest they forget your law,

149:9

faith vs., 121:3

fulfilling, 145:7

grace and, 145:3; 5; 149:26

Jesus as born under, 140:11

law and the prophets, 155:14–15

Christ as end of, 121:7

lawyers, 153:8, 25

Lazarus: resurrection of, 102:2–7, 31

letters:
of Augustine, See specific senders or recipients

length of, 137:19

liberal arts, 101:2

liberty, 101:2

lies, lying:
perjury, See perjury

life, temporal:
  attempts to prolong, 127:2; 140:16–17, 22
  and eternal life, 127:3–4; 130:2–6 (See also eternal life)
  nature of, 120:18(4)
light, 140:6(3)–10(4), 69(28), 82(36); 147:42–46(19)
lions, 140:42

Literal Meaning of Genesis, The, 143:4

“little ones,” 140:60

love, 127:5; 140:61–62(25); 145:3, 7; 147:43–44; 148:6(2); 155:13(4)–15
  bread as symbolizing, 130:16
  for Christ, 145:6
  of Christ, four dimensions of, 140:62(25)–64; 147:33(14)–35
  commandments to, 140:61; 153:15
  debt imposed by, 110:5
  fear and, See fear of God
  for God, 130:14(7); 137:17;
    140:45(18)–47(19); 155:13(4)–15
  God as, 140:54(22); 148:18
  in marriage, 140:53
  for others, 130:13–14(7); 137:17; 153:14
  for ourselves, 130:14(7)
  praying for, 145:7
  pure heart, from, 130:24(4)
  as warmth and light, 140:55

Luke, 149:11(2)

lust, See flesh: desires of

materialism, See Democritus

Maximian (Donatist bishop of Bagai), 106:1; 108:5, 13(4)
Maximinists, 108:1(1); 118:12; 129:5; 141:6
Donatists accepting baptism of, 106:1; 108:5–6; 128:4; 129:5
persecution of, 108:14

Maximum (Donatist bishop of Siniti, Numidia), 105:4; 142:3

Maximus and Theodore, letter to Augustine from:
  on visit to Macrobius, Donatist bishop, 107:1
  measure (with the measure you measure...): pagans, answer to, 102:22–27
  meek, the, 147:43; 149:3
  Christian meekness, 138:9–15
  Melanias, 124:1–2; 126:4–5
  See also Albina; Pinian
  Melchiades, the pope, 105:8

Memoria (bishop in Apulia), letter from Augustine to:
  on Music; “liberal disciplines,” 101:1–4
  men: human beings, See human beings
  men and sons of men, 140:21(8)–23
  mercy, 142:4
  Christian, 104:6, 8, 15–17; 122:2; 138:9–15; 153:3–19
Letters 100-155

mercy of God, 140:62(25), 71(30)–72, 82(36); 149:7; 153:26
wise and foolish virgins parable, 140:74–81
Micaiah, 147:14
midnight visitor, parable of, 130:15
Mincius, 118:6
mind, human, 118:24–27, 29, 32
intellect, 102:14; 104:11; 147:45(18)
miracles:
birth of Christ, 137:2, 7
of Christ, 136:1; 137:13(4)–14
early Christian, 118:20
by God, 111:5
non-believers doubting, 102:14; 120:5; 121:4
pagan, 138:18(4)–20, See also magicians
possibility of various, 102:30–37
money, 153:26
See also wealth
love of, See greed
monks, Egyptian: barbarian attacks on, 111:1
morality, 118:17
Moses, 137:13(4); 140:28; 147:14, 20(8); 31(13)–32
mother:
of Jesus, See Mary, mother of Jesus
From the womb of my mother you are my God, 140:30(12)–32
music, 140:44–45(18)
Music, six books by Augustine, 101:1–4
mysteries, divine, 120:5
mystery of grace, 140:36(14), 63(26)–64
mystery of the cross, 147:34
nature, 118:17–18, 28
Nebuchadnezzar, king, 102:32; 105:7
Nectarius, letter from Augustine to:
on punishing pagan crimes, 104
Nectarius, letter to Augustine from:
on punishing pagan crimes, 103
neediness, See poverty
neighbor, love of, 137:17; 153:14
Neoplatonists, See Platonists; Plotinus
See also specific topics
grace of, See grace
niece of Severus, 111:8
Nineveh, See Jonah
Noah, 108:20(7); 111:4; 140:28
non-believers, 102:14; 140:8–9, 57–58
See also pagans
Jews as, See Jews
the light shine in the darkness, and the darkness did not grasp it, 140:6(3)
punishment for, 140:57–58
wicked people, 147:15–16, 25
Numidia, 139:4
See also Calama; Thagaste
offspring of Abraham, 121:2; 140:46–50
offspring of Jacob/Israel, 140:46–50
oil: in wise and foolish virgins parable, 140:74(31)–81(35), 84
Old Testament, 140:5–6(3), 15(6)–17, 20
See also specific topics
grace hidden in, 140:6(3), 26(10)
prophecies, See prophecies
olive tree, 140:49(20)–51
Optatus (of Milevis), 141:9
Optatus (the Gildonian), Donatist bishop of Thamugadi, 108:5
order, in creation, 140:32(2)–4
original sin, 143:6
pagans, 149:25
See also non-believers; specific topics
rites and salvation, 102:9
Pagans, Six Questions in Answer to, 102
parables, 108:11–12
chaff amid the wheat, 108:12; 142:3
midnight visitor, 130:15
Pharisee and publican, 121:3
weeds amid the grain, 198:10–12
widow and unjust judge, 130:15
wise and foolish virgins, 140:74(31)–81(35), 84
pardon, See forgiveness
Passion of the Lord, 140:33(13), 82(36); 149:33; 155:4
patience, 140:63(26); 145:7; 147:43
Christian, 138:9–15
in suffering, 140:33(13), 35
Paul, apostle, Saint, 108:8; 118:20; 147:31(13)–32
See also specific topics
Paulina, Armentarius and, See Armentarius
and Paulina, letters from Augustine to Paulina, letter from Augustine to:
Seeing God, 147:1(1)–54
Paulinus of Nola, letter from Augustine to:
response to biblical questions, 149:1(1)–33
Paulinus of Nola, letter to Augustine from:
posing biblical questions, 121:1(1)–18
peace, 127:5; 147:43, 45(18); 148:18
Pelagians, See enemies of grace
Pelagius, letter from Augustine to:
brief, of greeting, 146
penance, See punishment
people, See human beings

Volume II/2
Peregrinus, 139:2, 4; 149:34
perjury, 125:3–4; 126:11–12
persecution, 108:14(5)
of Christians, 103; 137:16
prayer for those who persecute you, 153:4(2)–5
perseverance, persistence, 147:34
Persius, 118:3
persons, human, See human beings
Peter, apostle, Saint, 140:36(14); 147:30
See also specific topics
Phalaris, bull of, 155:2
phantasms, 147:42
Pharaoh’s magicians, 143:1
philosophy, philosophers, 102:32; 149:24–25, 30; 155:2, 4–6, 9(3)
See also individual names and groups
Phoebatius of Agen, 148:10
Photinus, 120:15; 147:19(7)
physicians, See doctors
poet, 140:45(18); 155:2, 4–5(2), 17
Poinian, 124:1–2; 125:1–5
oath of, 126:1–14
Plato, See Platonists, below
Platonists, 118:16, 20
and Christians, early, 118:33
as concealing views, 118:20–21, 33
highest good as divine, 118:16, 20
on logic, 118:19
on morality, 118:17
on nature, 118:18
truth and error of, 118:16–19
pleasures, bodily, See flesh
Plotinus, 118:33
See also Platonists
Po, 118:6
Polemon of Athens, 118:16; 144:2–3
poor, the
See also poverty
generosity to, 122:2
he chose the lowly...to confound the mighty, 140:67
as humble, 140:60, 61, 63(26), 65–67
as “little ones,” 140:60
The poor will eat and be satisfied, 140:66(27)
regarding self as, value of, 130:30
poor man, prayer of, 140:59(24)
Pope Innocent, 151:2
poor, 149:4
Porphyry
See also Platonists
Against the Christians, book, 102:8
and Six Questions in Answer to the Pagans, 102
possessions, See wealth
lack of, See poverty
Possidius (bishop of Calama), 101:1; 104:1(1); 105:4
poverty, 103:3; 104:2–6
See also poor, the
of Christ, 140:59(24), 66(27)
Roman, integrity in, 138:16(3)
voluntary, 138:17; 140:61, 63(26), 65–67
power of God, 137:8, 14
Praetextatus of Assuri, 108:5–6, 13(4)–15
praise, of God, 140:44–47(19), 49(20), 60, 63(26), 65
prayer, 145:3, 7
angels and, 130:18(9); 140:69(29)
answered, 130:26
different sorts of, 149:13–17
disposition during, 130:24
Do not depart from me because trouble is very close, 140:33, 43(17)
for eternal life, 130:30
for happy life, 130:9(4)–11, 27–28
length of, 130:19–20
the Lord’s Prayer, 130:21–25(14); 153:13–14
for others, 111:6–9; 130:23
Paul on, 130:9, 25(14)
persistence in, 130:15
of poor man, 140:59(24)–64
purpose of, 130:16–17
requests, recommended, 130:23
unanswered, 130:26; 140:19(7)
we do not know what we should pray for as we ought, 130:9, 25
without ceasing, 130:18
predestined, the, 149:19–22
pride, 121:2; 140:42, 50–52(21), 54(22), 61, 67–68(28)
good works and, 140:71(30)–72, 74–81
vanity, 155:4, 6–9(3)
priests
See also individual names
forcible ordination, practice, 126:2–3
Primian (Donatist bishop of Carthage), 106:1; 107:1; 108:1(1)–5, 13(4)–14(5); 141:6
and Maximianist schism, 129:5
Proba (Roman widow), letters from Augustine to:
on body and soul, 131
on consecration of Demetrias (letter including Juliana), 150
on widowhood and prayer, 130:1(1)–31
Letters 100-155

Proculeian (Donatist bishop of Hippo), 105:3(2)
promise, children of, 140:46–48, 50
promises
See also vows
breaking, See perjury
propagation of souls, 143:8
prophecies, Old Testament,
140:69(29)–71(30)
Christ as fulfillment, 102:32; 137:13(4),
15–16; 140:21(8)
God speaking in, 102:15
prophets, 149:11(2)
See also individual names
Israel as prophetic people, 102:15
prosperity, See wealth
prudence, 155:12–13(4), 16
Psalm 22, 140:1–85
as foretelling future, 140:69(29)–72
Psalms:
  meter in, 101:4
Paulinus of Nola, questions of, 121:2–8;
  149:3–10
spread of church, foretelling, 142:2
Publicola, Valerius: Albina as widow, See Albina
punishment:
  bishops interceding, 152:2; 153:1(1)–26
  capital, See capital punishment
Christian mercy in, See mercy: Christian for crimes against Christians, 103; 104
of Donatist heretics, 100
everlasting, See hell
  fear of, 145:4–6; 153:16–19
  God, 111:3–5, See also judgment, by God
  With the measure you use, it will be measured out to you, 102:22–27
of pagans in Calama; 103
penance, for sin or crime, 152:2;
  153:6(3)–7
pure of heart, See seeing God
Pythagoras, 102:13–14; 118:23(4); 137:12
Rahab, 140:28
rape, 111:9
rational creatures, 140:56(23), 69(29)–70
reason: faith and, 120:2–3, 5–6, 8
rebaptism, 105:7, 12; 106:1; 108:1(1)–20
forcible, 111:1
Maximianists exempt from, 106:1; 107:1;
  128:4; 141:6
rebirth by grace, 140:9–11, 72
religions:
  Christianity only true, 102:15;
  104:12(4)–13
  heaven, all seeking, 104:12(4)
remnant, the, 149:3
repentance, 103:3; 104:9; 105:2; 153:5–7
See also sin
restitution for sins, 153:20–22
reputation, 151:10
Restitutus, 108:13(4)–14(5); 133:1
resurrection, the final, 102:2–7;
  140:25–26(10)
See also eternal life
angel’s trumpet at, 140:78
belief in, 120:9
seeing God at, 147:1(1)–54
spiritual body at, 120:17;
  147:49(21)–51(22)
wise and foolish virgins parable,
  140:74(31)–81(35)
resurrection of Christ, 102:2–7, 31; 120:9;
  137:13(4)–16; 140:40; 149:31(3)
resurrection of Lazarus, 102:2–3, 31
Revisions, letters called books in:
The Advantage of Believing, 140
The Grace of the New Testament, 140
memorandum, 148
Seeing God, 147
Six Questions in Answer to the Pagans, 102
riches, See wealth
righteousness, 120:18(4)–20; 130:3–4;
  145:4–6; 149:21; 153:12(5)
absence of, 140:54(22)–55
attributed to self vs. grace, 140:74–85
God, as from, 140:62(25), 71(30)–73
grace, as from, 140:71(30)–72, 74–85
life of, 127:5
love of, 140:52(21)
pride and, 140:50
rites of worship, 102:10, 12
See also sacraments; sacrifices, temple
Roman gods, 102:13
Rome:
  Christian emperors, 138:16(3)
  Christianity and, 136:2–3; 137:20;
  138:9–16(3)
decline and fall of, 138:16(3); 154:2
decline and fall of, 154:2
Latium, kingdom of, 102:8; 138:16(3)
Romulus, 138:10
Rufinus, 139:4
Rustician, 108:19
sacraments, 149:16
See also specific sacraments
body and blood of Christ, 140:60–61,
  66(27); 141:5; 147:8
Christ, as foretelling, 138:7–8
old and new, 138:2–8
sacrifices and, 102:21, See also sacrifices

Volume II/2
sinners, partaking with, 141:5
of worship, 102:12
sacred books: surrendered in time of
persecution, 105:2, 6; 141:7
sacrifices:
 angels and, 102:20; 147:17(6)–18
Christ as, 140:73
Christians and, 102:16–21; 136:2
Old and New Testament, 138:2–8; 140:46
of praise, by Abraham’s offspring,
140:46–48
for sins, 140:73
salvation, 118:32; 140:22, 46, 71(30)–72;
149:17
everlasting, See eternal life; heaven
by grace through faith (See grace)
history of, 102:8–15
in hope, 140:17, 71(30)
of humans and animals, 140:71(30)
satan, See devil
Saturninus (letter from Augustine to former
Donatists), 142:1–4
schism, schismatics:
 Donatists, See Donatists
 Maximianists, See Maximianists
 as unjustifiable, 108:11–12
schoolmaster: law as, 145:3
scorpion, 130:16
scriptures, 137:18
 Christ and Church in, 105:14–15, 17
 reading, value of, 132; 137:18
 secret depths of, 137:18
 understanding, 120:13(3)
 scriptures, canonical, 147:4–5; 148:15
 secrets, 149:3–4
seed: my seed will serve him, 140:68(28)
seeing: and believing, 147:3–11
seeing Christ: after resurrection, 149:31(3)
seeing God, 147:1(1)–54; 148:1(1)–18
Seneca, 153:14
senses, the five, 137:5–6
continence of, 140:77
seeing God, 147:1(1)–54; 148:1(1)–18
serpent: 130:16
servanthood: of Christ, 140:14–15(6), 68(28)
 Severus (bishop of Milev, Numidia):
niece taken captive, 111:7
 Severus, letter to Augustine from:
on Augustinie’s goodness, 109:1–3
 Severus, letter from Augustine to:
on praise and debts, 110:1–6
 sex, See flesh: desires of; pleasures of
abstinence from, See chastity
shadows, 149:24–27
sheep: goats, separating from, 108:12
shepherds, 149:11(2)
sight, 137:5–6
 See also senses, the five
 blindness, See blindness
 seeing God, 147:1(1)–54; 148:1(1)–18
 three kinds of things we see, 120:11
visible events and realities, 120:8–11
signs
 See also symbols
 An evil...generation asks for a sign,
102:34
Simeon, 140:46; 149:33
sin, 149:3–4; 153:11
 See also evil; forgiveness; punishment;
repentance
accountability for, 105:16(5)
as all equal, 103:3; 104:8(3), 13–17
beginning of all, 140:61, 68(28)
in the Church, 129:5
correction of, 108:20(7)
and darkness, 140:58
and fear of punishment, 145:4–5
God as punishing, 113:3–5
of good vs. evil people, 153:14
grace and, 149:7–8
 With the measure you use, it will be
measured out to you, 102:22–27
mercy and, 104:15–16, See also mercy:
 Christian
original sin, 143:6
of others, 141:5; 142:3; 151:7, 11–12;
153:2, 14, 21
participation in, 100:1–2; 108:7(3)–8,
16(6)–17
resituation for, See repentance
words of my sins, 140:17
singing, 140:44–45(18)
 I shall sing of you in the midst of the
church, 140:43(17)–45(18)
six Questions in Answer to the Pagans:
on Christian religion, time of, 102:8–15
on Jonah, 102:30–37
on resurrection, final, 102:2–7
on sacrifices, temple, 102:16–21
on scripture (With the measure....),
102:22–27
on Son of God, existence of, 102:28–29
slave, Christ as, See servanthood
sleep, 140:76(32)
snake (serpent), 130:16
Solomon, 102:28–29
Son of God, 140:10(4)–12
 See also Jesus Christ
existence of, 102:28–29
Son of Man, 140:10(4)–12, 21(8)–23
 See also Jesus Christ
sorrow, 140:36(14)
soul, 120:18(4); 140:7
Letters 100-155

after death, 143:8–9
beauty of, 120:20
body and, 131; 137:11–12; 140:3(2); 143:6, 8–10
creator as above, 140:3(2)
God as healing, 147:44
highest good as in, 118:13–16, See also
Stoics
image of God, 120:20
immortality of, 104:3; 137:12; 143:7
mutability of, 140:74(31)
origin of, 140:32; 143:5–11
propagation of, theory, 143:8–9
as rational, 140:3(2)–4), 56(23)
righteousness as from, 120:20
spirit, 143:8–10
traducianism, 143:10
transmigration of, theory, 102:13–14

Spain, 111:1
speech: human and divine, 102:33
spirit:
God as, 143:42; 147:46(19)
soul and, 143:8–10
Spirit, the, See Holy Spirit
spiritual body, See body, spiritual
Spondeus, 139:2
state, See government
Stephen, 147:18
Stoics, 118:12, 15, 19–21, 26
all sins as equal, 103:3; 104:14–17
soul as highest good, 118:16
stone: symbolism of, 130:16
suffering, 145:7
blaming God, 111:6
Do not depart from me because trouble is very close, 140:33–35
earthly, 111:2
happiness in, 155:2–4
of Job, See Job
sins, as for, 111:4
sorrow, 140:36(14)
unanswered prayer during, 130:26
suffering of Christ, 140:24(9)
and Church, 140:36(14)–42
grace disclosed through, 140:36(14)
suicide, 153:17; 155:2–3
superstition, 149:24–25, 27
Susanna, 140:28
sword, 140:41; 149:33
Sylvanus (primate of Numidia), 128:4
Sylvanus, Aurelius, and bishops, letter to
Marcellinus from:
on the Conference of Carthage, 128:1–4; 129:1–7
symbols:
as divine speech, 102:33–34
of faith, hope, love, 130:16
grace of New Testament,
foreshadowing, 140:9
tax collectors, 140:67
teachers, 149:11(2)
temperance, 155:12–13(4), 16
temple sacrifices, See sacrifices
temptation, 130:21(11)
Terence, 155:14
Tertullian, 147:49(21)
Thagaste, 126:7
The Lord’s Prayer, 153:13–14
theft, 153:20–26
Themistocles, 118:13
tomb of Jesus, 149:32
torture, 153:20; 155:2–3
traitors, 105:2, 8, 16; 108:2
See also sacred books
traducianism, 143:10
Transfiguration, the, 149:31(3)
transmigration of souls, 102:13–14
trials and tribulations, See suffering
Trinity, the, 120:6–7(3), 12–13(3), 16–17; 147:19(7)
Trinity, The (book by Augustine), 143:4
trouble
See also suffering
Do not depart from me because trouble is very close, 140:33–35
trompet, 78(33)
truth:
beauty of, 140:63(26)
Christ as teaching, 137:12
Christ as Truth made man, 118:32; 155:14
Christianity as, 137:16
divine, 102:14
mind thought to be, 118:24–27
worship and, 102:10
Tully (Cicero), See Cicero
Tusculan Disputations (Cicero), 155:3–4
unbelievers, See non-believers
understanding, See reason
unity, Christian, See Christian unity
Vandals, 111:1
vanity, See pride
vengeance, 138:9–10, 12
Victorian, letter from Augustine to:
on barbarian attacks, 111:1–9
Vindician, 138:3
violence: and Christ’s teaching, 138:14–15
Virgil, 104:11; 140:76(32); 151:1
virgin birth, the, 102:36; 135:2; 137:2; 4(2), 8–9(3), 13; 143:12

Volume II/2
Volume II/2

You took me out of the womb, 140:31
virgins, consecrated, 150
virgins, wise and foolish, parable,
140:74(31)–81(35), 84
virtue, 155:6, 8–10, 12–13(4), 16
in poverty and wealth, 138:16(3)–17
visible events and realities, 120:8–11
Visigoths, 111:1
vision, 147:47–48(20)

See also senses, the five; sight
Volusian (pagan intellectual), 136:1–3;
138:1(1)–20; 139:3
See also Albina
Volusian, letter to Augustine from:
on scriptures, questions regarding,
135:1
Volusian, letters from Augustine to:
scriptural questions, replying to,
137:1(1)–20
on scriptures, reading, 132
vows:
breaking, 127:9
to God, 127:1, 6, 8–9; 149:16
I shall pay my vows before those who fear
him, 140:60–61
to people, See perjury

war: and Christ’s teaching, 138:14–15
weak, weakness, 120:6; 139:3; 140:15(6)
Christians, help for, 118:32(2)
law as showing, 145:3
wealth:
and happiness, 140:67; 155:7–10. See also
happiness
and heaven, entering, 130:1(1)
pitfalls of, 104:3–4
rich people, 140:66(27)–67
Roman, 138:16(3)
seeking, reasons for, 130:7–8, 11–12, 14
temporal and eternal, 140:26(10)–27,
29–30(12)
wrongful possession of, 153:24–26
weeds: separating grain from, 108:10–12
whale, See Jonah
wheat and chaff, 108:12; 142:3
wickedness, See evil; sin
widow and unjust judge, parable, 130:15
widows, widowhood:
Proba, See Proba
prayer pertaining to, 130:1(1), 29
will: free will, 140:3(2)–4
will, human, 102:26–27; 140:69(28)
will of God, 140:62(25)–63(26), 68(28)
winter, 124:1
wisdom, 149:30; 155:5(2), 12
incorporeal, 118:18; 120:11
mind thought to be, 118:24–27
the supreme, 140:45(18)
true and false, 120:6
wisdom of God: Christ as, 102:29; 120:19
wise and foolish virgins, parable,
140:74(31)–81(35), 84
womb:
I was cast upon you from the womb,
140:32
From the womb of my mother you are
my God, 140:30(12)–31
women: Christian, taken captive, 111:3, 5
word:
spoken, 137:7
words of my sins, 140:17
Word of God, 140:6(3)
Christ as, 102:11; 157:15; 140:6(3),
11–12, 16
grace revealed in, 140:6(3)
nature of, 137:7–12
works, good, See good works
world: end of, 122:2
worldly pleasures, See flesh: pleasures of
worm: I am a worm and no man,
140:21(8)–24(9)
Jonah and, 102:35–37
worship, 155:5(2), 17
See also praise
rites of, 102:10
and sacrifices, temple, 102:16–21 (See
also under sacrifices)
writing, of Augustine, See Augustine

Xenocrates, 118:16; 144:2

Letters 100-155
Index from
Letters 156-210

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/3
Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-200-5, 6 x 9 in., 424 pp., 2004

Includes the following works:
On the Presence of God
(De praesentia Dei)

On the Origin of the Soul and On a Verse in James
(De origine animae et de sententia Jacobi)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>184A, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>205, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>166, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>205, 2, 9; 205, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>190, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>196, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>165, 2, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>196, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:12</td>
<td>196, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>185, 1, 5; 196, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>194, 8, 35; 194, 8, 38; 196, 3, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>185, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:26 LXX</td>
<td>190, 5, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>157, 4, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>186, 6, 17; 194, 8, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14, 13-17</td>
<td>196, 4, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>157, 2, 6; 157, 2, 9; 177, 10; 194, 6, 28; 196, 1, 3; 196, 1, 4; 196, 2, 6; 196, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:7</td>
<td>204, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:3</td>
<td>157, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:19</td>
<td>186, 6, 16; 186, 9, 33; 194, 8, 35; 194, 8, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:4</td>
<td>173, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>177, 10; 189, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:12</td>
<td>187, 12, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>157, 2, 6; 194, 6, 28; 196, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>185, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>187, 8, 28; 189, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1 LXX</td>
<td>190, 3, 10; 193, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4-5 LXX</td>
<td>166, 3, 6; 202A, 8, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5 LXX</td>
<td>193, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:28 LXX</td>
<td>167, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>185, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>185, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>185, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10-11</td>
<td>185, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>177, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>188, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>186, 10, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>186, 10, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>186, 10, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>184A, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>164, 2, 3; 164, 3, 8; 187, 2, 5; 205, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:37</td>
<td>185, 2, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>198, 6; 199, 12, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:7</td>
<td>161, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17</td>
<td>199, 12, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:17-19</td>
<td>185, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:28-29</td>
<td>158, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:5</td>
<td>194, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:6</td>
<td>186, 4, 12; 194, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:10</td>
<td>157, 2, 10; 180, 6, 182, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>187, 13, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:10</td>
<td>188, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:8</td>
<td>177, 5; 185, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Letters 156-210

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33:15</td>
<td>166, 8, 26; 190, 4, 15; 190, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:16</td>
<td>157, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
<td>188, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:3</td>
<td>177, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:12</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:23</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:27</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:5</td>
<td>202A, 7, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:5</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:3</td>
<td>185, 6, 21; 199, 1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:1</td>
<td>185, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:7</td>
<td>157, 4, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:3</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:12</td>
<td>166, 8, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:9</td>
<td>182, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:12</td>
<td>188, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:10</td>
<td>186, 2, 5; 186, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:11</td>
<td>186, 3, 10; 194, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:4</td>
<td>157, 4, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:30</td>
<td>186, 12, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>185, 1, 5; 199, 12, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:11</td>
<td>173, 10; 185, 5, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:3</td>
<td>158, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:11</td>
<td>194, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86:9</td>
<td>199, 12, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88:6</td>
<td>164, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:4</td>
<td>199, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93:7</td>
<td>184A, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:8</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>167, 6, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:4</td>
<td>194, 5, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:5</td>
<td>188, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:8</td>
<td>188, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:20</td>
<td>168, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:3</td>
<td>169, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:10</td>
<td>171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:7</td>
<td>205, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:1</td>
<td>166, 8, 23; 190, 2, 6; 116:10, 157, 3, 14; 187, 11, 34; 194, 3, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:8</td>
<td>185, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:29</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:40</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:86</td>
<td>185, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:119</td>
<td>157, 3, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:125</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:133</td>
<td>157, 2, 8; 157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:4</td>
<td>186, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122:6-7</td>
<td>185, 10, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124:8</td>
<td>182, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>186, 2, 5; 186, 10, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133:1</td>
<td>185, 9, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7-8</td>
<td>187, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142:8</td>
<td>164, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143:2</td>
<td>167, 3, 13; 167, 4, 15; 167, 6, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145:13</td>
<td>190, 6, 23; 194, 10, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>167, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35 LXX</td>
<td>194, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:8 LXX</td>
<td>210, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:22 LXX</td>
<td>185, 9, 37; 185, 9, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24</td>
<td>185, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6 LXX</td>
<td>157, 4, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:22</td>
<td>194, 6, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9 LXX</td>
<td>167, 6, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:14</td>
<td>185, 6, 21; 194, 6, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:19 LXX</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>167, 4, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>166, 8, 26; 190, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8 LXX</td>
<td>194, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>186, 11, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>167, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>185, 11, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>187, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>157, 3, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>194, 9, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>185, 9, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:26</td>
<td>193, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>169, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>187, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>170, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>187, 3, 7; 187, 4, 14; 205, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>157, 2, 9; 177, 5; 188, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21-22</td>
<td>188, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>185, 9, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1-2</td>
<td>164, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:19</td>
<td>185, 9, 37; 185, 9, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>204, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:30</td>
<td>173, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>199, 9, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9 LXX</td>
<td>184A, 2, 4; 194, 5, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>186, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>164, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>186, 8, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>194, 3, 15; 194, 4, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume II/3
Volume II/3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:16</td>
<td>186, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:16</td>
<td>186, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6-8</td>
<td>205, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:26 LXX</td>
<td>166, 5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:31</td>
<td>198, 4; 199, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:9</td>
<td>186, 6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:8</td>
<td>186, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:13</td>
<td>193, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16 LXX</td>
<td>190, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16-17 LXX</td>
<td>205, 4, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:2</td>
<td>198, 4; 199, 5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:24</td>
<td>205, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>187, 10, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>205, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>187, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lamentations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:25</td>
<td>210, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Baruch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:38</td>
<td>164, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:95</td>
<td>173, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11-13</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24, 26</td>
<td>199, 7, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hosea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>186, 8, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Joel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>157, 2, 7; 157, 3, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>199, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>187, 11, 34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Habakkuk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>167, 3, 13; 186, 2, 6; 190, 2, 6; 194, 5, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Zephaniah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>187, 12, 37; 199, 12, 47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Haggai

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>202A, 7, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Zechariah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>162, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>166, 8, 26; 190, 4, 15; 190, 5, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Malachi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>194, 8, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>186, 5, 14; 194, 8, 34; 194, 8, 39; 196, 3, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>185, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Maccabees

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:42</td>
<td>204, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament

Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>199, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>199, 10, 35; 199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:36</td>
<td>197, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>167, 6, 19; 171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>169, 1, 3; 171A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>189, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>185, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>157, 4, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:37</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>210, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>187, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>157, 1, 2; 167, 4, 15; 167, 6, 20; 176, 2; 177, 16; 177, 4; 177, 18; 178, 3; 185, 5, 39; 186, 9, 33; 187, 8, 28; 189, 8; 196, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>157, 2, 5; 176, 2; 177, 4; 178, 3; 179, 3; 186, 12, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>189, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>205, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>187, 12, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>169, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8-10</td>
<td>189, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>162, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22</td>
<td>164, 7, 21; 166, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>157, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>157, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>184A, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>167, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>169, 2, 5; 169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30-31</td>
<td>189, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>199, 10, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>199, 12, 48; 208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14-17</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15-16</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17-20</td>
<td>199, 9, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:19</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:20</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24-25</td>
<td>199, 11, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25-26</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>199, 11, 41; 199, 11, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27-29</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29</td>
<td>199, 11, 44; 199, 12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>197, 2; 198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:35-37</td>
<td>199, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:62</td>
<td>199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>184A, 1, 2; 193, 2, 4; 194, 10, 46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luke</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>177, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>187, 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:41</td>
<td>187, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:41-44</td>
<td>187, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>169, 2, 5; 169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:41</td>
<td>194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37-38</td>
<td>167, 6, 19; 171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-9</td>
<td>189, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>162, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:47</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>189, 2; 196, 4, 16; 204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>167, 6, 20; 186, 9, 33; 186, 12, 41; 189, 8; 196, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>189, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:36</td>
<td>199, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>199, 1, 1; 199, 13, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45-46</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:56</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25-27</td>
<td>169, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luke</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>169, 2, 5; 169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30-31</td>
<td>189, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>199, 10, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>199, 12, 48; 208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14-17</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15-16</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17-20</td>
<td>199, 9, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:19</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:20</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24-25</td>
<td>199, 11, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25-26</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>199, 11, 41; 199, 11, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27-29</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29</td>
<td>199, 11, 44; 199, 12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>197, 2; 198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:35-37</td>
<td>199, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:62</td>
<td>199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>184A, 1, 2; 193, 2, 4; 194, 10, 46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mark</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>169, 2, 5; 169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30-31</td>
<td>189, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>199, 10, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>199, 12, 48; 208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14-17</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15-16</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17-20</td>
<td>199, 9, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:19</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:20</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:24-25</td>
<td>199, 11, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25-26</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>199, 11, 41; 199, 11, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27-29</td>
<td>199, 11, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29</td>
<td>199, 11, 44; 199, 12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>197, 2; 198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:35-37</td>
<td>199, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:62</td>
<td>199, 11, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>184A, 1, 2; 193, 2, 4; 194, 10, 46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luke</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>177, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>187, 9, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:41</td>
<td>187, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:41-44</td>
<td>187, 7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>169, 2, 5; 169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:41</td>
<td>194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37-38</td>
<td>167, 6, 19; 171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-9</td>
<td>189, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>162, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:47</td>
<td>157, 3, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>189, 2; 196, 4, 16; 204, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>167, 6, 20; 186, 9, 33; 186, 12, 41; 189, 8; 196, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>171A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>189, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:36</td>
<td>199, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45</td>
<td>199, 1, 1; 199, 13, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:45-46</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:56</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:25-27</td>
<td>169, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>194, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16.21.23</td>
<td>185, 6, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21-23</td>
<td>208, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td>194, 10, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>157, 4, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>157, 4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>187, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>187, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>164, 3, 7; 187, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:1</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:31</td>
<td>199, 9, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13-14</td>
<td>194, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>175; 186, 2, 4; 186, 2, 6; 186, 8, 27; 186, 12, 41; 188, 2, 7; 190, 4, 13; 194, 7, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:20</td>
<td>190, 9, 27; 199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:23-22</td>
<td>199, 9, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23-24</td>
<td>199, 9, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:24</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:25</td>
<td>198, 5; 199, 11, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:25-26</td>
<td>199, 11, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:26</td>
<td>198, 5; 199, 11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:26-27</td>
<td>199, 11, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:27</td>
<td>199, 11, 41; 199, 11, 42; 199, 11, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28-31</td>
<td>199, 11, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:31</td>
<td>199, 9, 27; 199, 11, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:30</td>
<td>157, 4, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:32</td>
<td>175, 4; 176, 2; 179, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>187, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>205, 2, 2; 205, 2, 13; 205, 2, 5; 205, 2, 10; 205, 2, 14; 205, 2, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>185, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>185, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27</td>
<td>164, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>157, 3, 14; 170, 4; 185, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>187, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>185, 1, 3; 186, 8, 31; 187, 3, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>194, 5, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19.21</td>
<td>187, 13, 39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>197, 1; 197, 2; 197, 4; 198, 2; 199, 1, 1; 199, 3, 7; 199, 3, 9; 199, 3, 10; 199, 4, 13; 199, 5, 18; 199, 8, 22; 199, 9, 24; 199, 10, 33; 202, 7, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7-8</td>
<td>199, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>185, 1, 5; 198, 2; 198, 6; 199, 12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>199, 11, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>205, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2-3</td>
<td>169, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>199, 8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>187, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>164, 2, 3; 164, 2, 5; 187, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:27</td>
<td>164, 3, 8; 187, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Letters 156-210

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>166, 7, 21; 166, 8, 23; 186, 9, 33; 187, 9, 30; 190, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:35-38</td>
<td>205, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:36</td>
<td>193, 4, 10; 193, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:37-38</td>
<td>205, 3, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:39-41</td>
<td>205, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:41</td>
<td>205, 2, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44-45</td>
<td>205, 2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:45</td>
<td>205, 2, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:46-49</td>
<td>187, 9, 30; 205, 2, 12; 177, 14; 205, 2, 5; 205, 2, 13; 205, 2, 14; 205, 2, 15; 205, 2, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:50-51</td>
<td>205, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:51</td>
<td>193, 4, 10; 193, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:52</td>
<td>205, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:52-53</td>
<td>205, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-54</td>
<td>187, 8, 27; 196, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-56</td>
<td>177, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55-56</td>
<td>185, 9, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>175, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>175, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>175, 3; 188, 2, 5; 188, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>157, 3, 14; 177, 12; 187, 11, 34; 190, 2, 6; 194, 3, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>158, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>193, 4, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>186, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>186, 3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>157, 4, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>187, 12, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>157, 4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>167, 6, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6</td>
<td>185, 6, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>202A, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>157, 2, 10; 186, 2, 4; 186, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>188, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>208, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2-3</td>
<td>202A, 7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>177, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>185, 9, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>205, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>177, 4; 177, 5; 179, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>180, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>180, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-16</td>
<td>196, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>196, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>177, 2; 177, 8; 177, 9; 186, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>177, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>186, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6-9</td>
<td>196, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>196, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>190, 2, 6; 194, 5, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15-16</td>
<td>196, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-22</td>
<td>196, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>157, 3, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21-22</td>
<td>196, 3, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28-29</td>
<td>196, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>196, 4, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>194, 4, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21-5:1</td>
<td>196, 3, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>179, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>186, 2, 4; 188, 3, 13; 189, 2, 194, 3, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>177, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>196, 4, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>186, 12, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>188, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>185, 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>208, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>208, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>188, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>186, 2, 4; 186, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6-7</td>
<td>186, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-16</td>
<td>175, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>179, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>210, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>185, 5, 24; 185, 10, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>164, 7, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td>185, 9, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27-28</td>
<td>187, 8, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>185, 9, 38; 185, 9, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>194, 3, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>158, 2; 185, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>157, 4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>170, 9; 187, 3, 8; 205, 2, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>164, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>157, 4, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>186, 1, 3; 186, 3, 7; 188, 2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>210, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume II/3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Pages</th>
<th>Volume II/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5-6</td>
<td>198, 6; 199, 12, 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>185, 1, 5; 208, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>177, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>187, 12, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>164, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>185, 9, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>187, 13, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-17</td>
<td>196, 2, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>188, 1, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>205, 2, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>179, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14-16</td>
<td>193, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>193, 4, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1-3</td>
<td>199, 3, 199, 3, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>199, 3, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>199, 11, 36; 199, 11, 37; 199, 11, 39; 199, 11, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-5</td>
<td>199, 1, 2; 199, 11, 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17-18</td>
<td>188, 2, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>199, 1, 2; 199, 5, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-8</td>
<td>198, 3; 199, 3, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>199, 3, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>194, 2, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>199, 12, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>167, 3, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>166, 2, 5; 187, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>173, 2; 199, 8, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15-16</td>
<td>199, 12, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>187, 4, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>199, 8, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>186, 8, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>166, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>157, 4, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>157, 4, 26; 157, 4, 30; 186, 9, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>157, 4, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>193, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>187, 12, 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-19</td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18-20</td>
<td>164, 6, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>164, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>164, 1, 2; 164, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>164, 1, 2; 164, 5, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21-42</td>
<td>164, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-5</td>
<td>164, 4, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>164, 7, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>164, 4, 10; 164, 7, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>185, 10, 43; 185, 10, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>164, 7, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>208, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>186, 5, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>199, 6, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Letters 156-210

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>167, 3, 10; 167, 4, 15; 185, 9, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>185, 9, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>157, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>199, 1, 1; 199, 3, 7; 199, 6, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>189, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>177, 17; 185, 9, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>187, 13, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>185, 6, 21; 185, 6, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jude</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>185, 11, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>164, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:7</td>
<td>187, 11, 34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume II/3

General Index
(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number. The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Abel, 164:6(3); 179:8–9
abomination of desolation, 199:28–29
Abraham, 158:6; 162:5; 164:6(3)–7; 186:19
offspring of, 196:10–11; 14(4)–15; 40; 47
Abraham, bosom of, See bosom of Abraham
Abraham, Peter and (monks), See Peter and Abraham
Absalom, 185:32(8); 204:2
Achilles, 166:3(2)
Adam, 164:6(3); 179:8; 205:19
See also original sin; specific topics
Christ as second, 157:14;
187:30(9)–34(11); 205:11–12
adultery: children of, 166:15
adversity, See suffering
Africa, 177:2; 185:29; 186:2; 199:46(12)
Ahab, King, 185:41
Albina, 202:2
Albinus, 191:1; 192:1(1)
Alypius, 176:1–5; 177:1–19; 191:1
Alypius, Aurelius and, letter from Pope
Innocent to:
brief of greeting, 184
Alypius and Augustine:
letter from Jerome to
on Caelianist, 202:1–2
letter to Juliania from
on Demetrias, consecrated virgin,
188:1(1)–14
letter to Maximinus from
on Arianism, 170:1–10
letter to Paulinus from
on Pelagian heresy, 186:1(1)–41
letter to Peregrinus from
on Maximus, 171
Ananias (in Acts), 185:22
Anapsychia, See Marcellinus
Anastasius, 165:1(1)
angels, 169:11; 187:36; 189:6
See also specific topics and events
appearances of, 158:9; 162:5
bodies of, 158:6
wicked, 189:5; 194:20
anger, 193:3(2); 210:2
of God, 186:24–25; 190:10–11; 194:5, 30
animals, 166:16(6)
animal sacrifice, 177:16; 196:3
Annanius (a Pelagian), 202:2
Antichrist, 199:10–11, 11
Antionius, bishop of Fussala, 209:1–10
Apocalypse, 187:38(13)
See also end of the world
apocryphal books, 158:6
Apollinarists, 165:1(1); 187:4
apostles, 185:22
See also individual names
Apostolic See
See also individual popes
Pelagians, as concerning (See under
Innocent, the Pope: correspondence re. Pelagians)
Appius, 172:1
Aptus, 196:16
Arianism, 170:1–2, 8; 185:1(1), 47–48(9);
187:4
ark of Noah, See Noah’s ark
Aselicus, letter from Augustine to:
on Aptus, teaching of, 196:1(1)–16
astronomy, 199:34(10), 39
Augustine
doctrine of, 194:1(1)–47
writings of, mentioned, 162:2 (See also
specific titles)
Augustine and Alypius, joint letters, See
Alypius and Augustine
Aurelius, 175:1–5; 176:1–5; 177:1–19;
191:1; 194:1(1)
Letter from Augustine to
on The Trinity, 174
letter from Honorius and Theodosius to
on sanctions against the Pelagians,
201:1–2
Aurelius and Alypius, letter from Pope
Innocent to:
brief, of greeting, 184
Aurelius and other bishops:
letters on Pelagian heresy
from Pope Innocent, 183:1–5
to Pope Innocent, 177:1–19
babies, See infants
Bagai:
Catholic bishop of, 185:26–27
Council of, 173:8
banquet, parable of, 185:24
baptism, 177:16–17; 182:5; 184A:2;
194:45–46
bad behavior after, 194:42
of Christ, 169:7–10(3); 185:30(9)
exsufflation (See exsufflation)
of infants (See infant baptism)
re baptism (See rebaptism)
and salvation, 205:18(4)
Baptism of Infants, The, 187:22(7)
barbarians, 165:2(2); 166:2; 189:5; 199:35
beast: in prophecy of Daniel, 198:3; 199:13
beatitudes, 171A:2
believers, See Christians
Benjamin, 196:15
Bazahel, 158:12
birth, spiritual, See rebirth
birth of Christ, See virgin birth
bishops, five:
letters on Pelagian heresy
from Pope Innocent, 183:1–5
to Pope Innocent, 177:1–19
blood, See flesh and blood
blood of Christ, 179:6; 182:5; 186:28
body, 187:11(4)–13
bodily nature (See concupiscence)
eyes (See eyes)
incorruptible, 205:2–16
redemption of, 186:40
soul and (See soul)
body of Christ, 185:50; 187:33
Boniface, the pope, 209:6, 9
Boniface (tribune of Africa):
letters from Augustine to
Correction of the Donatists, 185:1(1)–51
fragment of letter, 185A
on soldiers and Christian holiness,
189:1–8
books: theft of, 174
born again, See rebirth
bosom of Abraham, 158:5; 164:7–8; 187:6
See also eternal life; heaven
bread, 185:50; 186:28
Caecilian (bishop of Carthage), 173:7–9;
185:4–7, 10, 16, 47
Caelestius, Caelestian heresy, 157:22;
175:1; 202:1–2
See also Pelagians
Caesar, Emperor, 185:28
Caesarea, 209:8
Cain, 179:8
Canaan, 185:41
Carthage:
Conference of (See Conference of
Carthage)
Council of (See Council of Carthage)
Carthage, clerics at, letter from Augustine
to:
on the Holy Spirit, 173A
Catholic Church
See also Church: specific topics, names,
and events
Apostolic See (See individual Popes)
as body of Christ, 185:50
growth of, 208:6
Catholic, 167:7
Celer, 209:5
Celestine, the pope, letters from Augustine to:
on Antonius of Fussala, 209:1–10
brief, of greeting, 192:1–2
celibacy, 157:39
See also virginity
centurion (Cornelius), 187:36; 189:4
chastity, 157:39; 188:6, 8
See also virginity
marital (See marriage, chastity in)
children: See infants
choice, free, See free choice
Christ, See Jesus Christ
Christianity
See also faith, grace; love, specific
topics
essence of, 189:2–3
Christians, 194:23
See also specific topics
God’s foreknowledge of, 194:12
growth, 171A:1–2
living for Christ, 157:31–36
living like Jews, 196:1(1)–16
and self-righteousness, 157:37–39
suffering and eternal life, 203
temples of God, 187:19–21
virtues despite sin, 167:11
wealthy, 157:23(4)–38

Volume II/3
Church
See also Catholic Church; Christianity; specific topics
correction, use of, 173:2–3; 185:21(6)–25(7)
disturbances in, 169:2
favoritism in ecclesiastical honors, 167:18
scandals in, 208:1–7
and the Second Coming, 199:26
spread to all nations, 199:46(12)–48
unity in, 173:5–6; 185:42–44
without spot or wrinkle, 156; 185:38–40; 187:28
Cicero, 165:2(2)
Circumcellions, 185:25(7), 41
circumcision, 194:11; 196:2, 9(3), 16
City of God, The, 169:1(1); 184A:5(3)
Claudius, letter from Augustine to:
Answer to Julian, 207
Claudianus Claudius Postumus
coercion, use of, 185:1(1)–51
Commandments, 177:10
See also law
love, 189:2–3
concupiscence, 171A:1; 177:17; 184A:3; 187:31; 194:44; 196:5(2)–6
temptation and, 177:4
Conference of Carthage, 173:7; 185:6(2), 30
See also Donatists
consecrated virgins, See virgins, consecrated
Consentius, letter from Augustine to:
on the risen Christ, 205:1(1)–19
constancy, 167:6
Constantine, Emperor, 185:6(2)
Constantius, 182:7
continence, See chastity
Corinth, 169:2
Corinthians, First Letter to, 205:6–17(3)
Cornelius, the centurion, 187:36; 189:4
correction, See punishment; rebuke
Correction of the Donatists, The, 185:1(1)–51
Council of Bagai, 173:8
Council of Carthage:
letter from Pope Innocent to, 181:1–9
letter to Pope Innocent from, 175:1–5
Council of Diospolis, 179:7; 183:3; 186:2,
32(9)–33; 194:7
Council of Jerusalem, 175:1; 179:7
Council of Milevis:
letter from Pope Innocent to, 182:1–7
letter to Pope Innocent from, 176:1–5
courage, 167:5–8
cowardice, 167:6
creationism, 165:1(1); 180:2; 190:13(4)–24;
202A:9
and original sin, 166:10–11
creature vs. creator, 184A:5(3)
crimes, punishment for, See under punishment
Crisostomus, 180:5
crucifixion: good thief at, See good thief, the
cunning, 167:6
Cyprian, 166:23–24; 180:5
damnation, See hell
Daniel, 157:2; 185:7, 19(5); 197:1, 5;
198:3, 7
weeks of, 197:5; 198:7; 199:19(7)–21,
31–33
Dardanus, Claudius Postumus
letter from Augustine to:
The Presence of God, 187:1(1)–41
David, King, 164:9; 182:3; 185:9, 32(8);
204:2, 5
death
See also martyrdom, suicide
escaping (Enoch and Elijah), 193:5, 7–8
and eternal life, 193:6
firstborn from the dead, 164:9
of infants (See under infant baptism)
killing a human being, 204:5
and resurrection (See resurrection of the dead)
sin and (See under sin: and death)
soul after, 159:1–5; 162:1–9
debt, 191:2
Demetrias: as consecrated virgin,
188:1(1)–14
demons, 169:1(1); 184A:5(3); 194:11
desires, fleshly, See concupiscence;
mariage, chastity in
devil, the, 185:47; 205:16
driving out, 194:46
fighting against, 189:5
Diospolis, Council of, See Council of Diospolis
disagreements, 210:2
disciples, See individual names
doctors:
Gennadius, and life after death, 159:3–4
Maximus (See Maximus)
dog: eloquence of, 172:1; 202A:2
Donatian (primate of Byzacena), 196:1(1)
Donatists, 208:3
The Correction of the Donatists,
185:1(1)–51
dealing with, 204:1–9
Maximianist separation from (See Maximianists)
Donatus (a Donatist priest), letter from Augustine to:
against suicide, 173:1–10
Letters 156-210

do: Holy Spirit as, 169:5(2), 7, 9, 10(3)–11

dreams. See visions
dualism (Manichees), 165:1(1)

Dulcitius, letter from Augustine to:
on dealing with Donatists, 204:1–9

earth, end of, See end of the world
eclipses, 199:34(10)

Egypt, 165:2(2)

Elijah, 187:17; 193:5, 7–8

Elisha, 187:17

Elizabeth, 177:16; 187:22(7)–23

emperors, 185:6(2), 19(5)–20, 27–29

See also individual names

Honorsius and Theodosius, 201:1–2

end of the world, 197:1–5; 198:1–7

See also resurrection of the dead; Second Coming of Christ

The End of the World, 199:1(1)–54

enemies of grace, See Pelagians

Enoch, 193:5, 8

Epicureans, 167:4(2)

Esau, 196:13

See also under Jacob: and Esau

eternal life:

attaining, 167:2–21

bodily death and, 193:6

Christians and, 203

grace and, 194:20–21

Eunomians, 185:48(9)

Eusebius, 202:2

Eustochium, 172:2; 202:2

Eve, 179:8; 190:18

evil, See sin

Evodius, 177:1–19

letters from Augustine to

on Christ preaching in the underworld,

164:1(1)–22

on the soul after death, 159:1–5; 162:1–9

on the Trinity, 169:1(1)–13

letters to Augustine from

on the Father and Son, 160:1–4

on the soul, visions, 158:1–12

on the soul of Christ, 163

on the virgin birth, 161:1–3

exorcism, 194:43(10), 46

exsufflation, rite of, 173:8; 185:8, 47;

194:43(10), 46

eyes: bodily and non-bodily, 159:3–5; 161:3;

162:4–5, 8–9; 205:1(1)

Ezekiel, 165:2(2); 185:31

faith, 171A:2; 177:11; 186:7(3)–10

as gift, 194:10–11, 15

grace and, 187:32; 194:15

of patriarchs (See under Old Testament: patriarchs, faith of)

Faith and Works, 205:18(4)

family:

abandoning, 157:32

relations, 170:6

favoritism, 194:3(2)–5, 31(7)–32

in ecclesiastical honors, 167:18

Jacob and Esau (See under Jacob: and Esau)

Felicia, letter from Augustine to:
on scandals in the church, 208:1–7

Felicity and Rusticus, letter from Augustine to:
on tribulations and giving rebukes, 210:1–2

Felix, North African bishop, 206

fidelity, See marriage, chastity in

fiery furnace, the, 123:5; 185:8; 205:4

fig tree, parable of, 199:42–44

figurative language, 180:3–4

Firmus, 172:2; 184A:7; 200:1

firstborn from the dead, 164:9

flesh, concupiscense of, See concupiscense

flesh and blood, 205:2–16

forgiveness, 167:20; 171A:1; 185:38–39;

186:16(6)

fortitude, 171A:2

free choice, 157:5

See also grace vs. free choice

sin and, 157:2–4(2) (See also original sin)

Free Will, 162:2; 166:7

freedom: love and, 167:19(6)

frugality, 187:6; 189:7

furnace, fiery, See fiery furnace

Fussala, 209:1–10

Galatians, Letter to, 180:4; 196:2–16

Gaudentius, 204:1–9

Gaul, 157:41; 175:1; 179:7

Genesis, Book of

See also Literal Meaning of Genesis, The

creationist theory (See creationism)

Gennadius, 159:3–4

Jews, living like (See Galatians, Letter to)

as non-believers, 184A:5(3)

Germanus, 184

gifts of God, 157:29; 158:12; 186:10;

190:10; 194:10–11, 14–16(4)

virtues as (See virtues)

God, 160:1–4; 166:16(6)

See also Trinity

Volume II/3
as Father, 160:1–4
as love, 186:7(3)
ominipresence of, 187:7(3)–21, 35(12), 41
temples of (See temples of God)
gods, false, See idolatry
Gog and Magog, 165:2(2)
good
See also righteousness
being forced to do good, 173:2–10
good thief, the, 164:8; 187:1(1)–4
good works, See works, good
gospel: spread of, 199:46(12)–49
Goths, 185:1(1)
grace, 186:3–6, 31; 190:3; 194:1(1)–41
and the law (See under law: grace and)
rebirth by (See rebirth)
grace vs. free choice, 157:5–8, 10, 16–18;
179:1–10; 186:1(1)–41; 188:1(1)–14;
194:1(1)–47
See also under Innocent, the Pope: letters
re. Pelagians
Nature and Grace, 168 (See Nature and
Grace)
greed: and wealth, See wealth
Greeks, 196:15
Hagar, 185:9, 11; 196:12–13
harm, 210:2
health, 187:12–13
heart:
hardened, 194:14
“Hold in check your wicked and wild
heart,” 175:10
purification of, 171A:1–2
heaven
See also eternal life
Christ as in, 187:3(2); 8–10, 41; 199:41; 205:2
paradise and, 184A:2; 187:3(2); 5–7(3)
heavens (astronomy), 199:34(10), 39
hell, 205:15
Adam, patriarchs, and prophets released
from, 164:6(3)
Christ preaching in, 163; 164:1(1)–22
heretics, heresies, 185:2, 47; 194:47;
199:22(8)
See also Donatists; Pelagians; individual
groups and names
Herod, 166:16(6), 18(7)
Hesychius:
letters on the end of the world
from Augustine, 197:1–5; 199:1(1)–54
to Augustine, 198:1–7
Hesekiah, 185:19(5)
Hilary (bishop of Narbonne), letter from
Augustine to:
on Pelagian heresy, 178:1–3
Hilary (Catholic layman):
letter from Augustine to
on Pelagian teaching in Sicily,
157:1(1)–41
letter to Augustine from
on Pelagian questions, 156
Hippo, 209:1–10
Holy of Holies, 199:33
Holy Spirit, 173A
See also Trinity
as dove, 169:7, 9, 11
Pentecost, 199:23
sin against, 185:48(9)–50
Honorius, Emperor, 182:7
Honorius and Theodosius, letter to Aurelius
from:
on sanctions against the Pelagians,
201:1–2
hope, 171A:2
human nature, See free choice
idolatry, 173:5; 185:8, 12(3)
creature vs. creator, worshiping,
184A:5(3)
immortality, 187:11(4)–12
time and, 166:14
infant baptism, 202A:17(8)
See also original sin
Catholic view, 166:6(3), 28; 184A:2;
186:11(4); 194:44–46
infant death and, 194:31(7)–32
Pelagian view, 157:11(3); 184A:2;
186:12, 30; 193:3(2)–4;
194:42–43(10)
temples of God, infants as, 187:21,
26(8)–27, 29
infants, 187:22(7)–25
baptism of (See infant baptism, above)
souls of (See under soul: origin of)
and suffering, 166:16(6)
Innocent, the pope: letters regarding
Pelagians, 186:2; 190:22
from the Council of Carthage, 175:1–5
to the Council of Carthage, 181:1–9
from the Council of Milevis, 176:1–5
to the Council of Milevis, 182:1–7
from five bishops, 177:1–19
to five bishops, 183:1–5
intelelg, human, 158:11; 169:4
intercourse, sexual, 184A:3; 187:31
See also concupisence; marriage, chastity in
Isaac, 164:6(3); 196:12–13, 14(4)
twin sons of (See under Jacob: and
Esau)
Ishmael, 165:2(2); 196:12–13
Letters 156-210

Israel, 185:41; 196:11–16

Jacob, 164:6(3); 199:39
and Esau, 186:13(5)–21; 187:24;
194:34(8)–39; 196:13; 202A:8(4)
those who came from his loins, 190:18–19
James, apostle: The Opinion of James,
167:1(1)–21
James, Timasius and, See Timasius and James
Januarius, 186:1(1)
Jeremiah, 187:32(10), 37
Jerome, 180:1–5; 197:1, 5;
198:7; 202A:1(1)–6
letter to Alypius and Augustine from
on Caelestians, victory over, 202:1–2
letter to Marcellinus and Anapsychia from
on origin of the soul, 165:1(1)–3(3)
letters from Augustine to
The Opinion of James, 167:1(1)–21
The Origin of the Soul, 166:1(1)–28
letters to Augustine from
on heretics, Augustine conquering, 195
on the Pelagians, 172:1–2
Jerusalem, 196:12
Council of, 175:1; 179:7
destruction of, 198:3; 199:25(9)–31
John as bishop (See John, bishop of
Jerusalem)
Jesus Christ, 164:19(7)–20; 187:4, 34
See also God; Trinity; specific topics and
events
Adam, as second (See under Adam: Christ
as second)
birth of (See virgin birth)
as God and man, 187:8–10, 39–40
as mediator, 166:3; 187:34(11); 190:5(2)
present in spirit before coming in the flesh,
164:17(6)–18
as servant, 170:9
as Son of God, 160:1–4 (See also Trinity)
soul of, 163; 164:19(7)–20
as Word of God (See Word of God)
Jews: Christians living like, 196:1(1)–16
See also Galatians, Letter to
Job, 164:2; 166:16(6)
John, bishop of Jerusalem, 186:36
letter from Augustine to
on Pelagianism, 179:1–10
John the Baptist, 187:22(7)–23, 32(10)
Jonah, 166:21
Joseph (husband of Mary), 158:9; 187:33
Joseph (son of Jacob), 199:39
Josephus, 199:30
Joshua, 199:30
Josiah, 185:19(5)
Jovinian, 166:6(3), 21; 167:4(2), 10(3)
judgment:
of God, inscrutable, 167:20; 186:12, 20;
194:6(3), 33
judging others, 157:37–39;
167:19(6)–20
the last, 199:45
Julian of Eclanum, 206
Answer to Julian, 207
Juliana, letter from Alypius and Augustine
to:
on Demetrias as consecrated virgin,
188:1(1)–14
justice, 167:5, 6; 171A:1, 2; 194:4–5
justification, 177:9, 11; 186:10; 194(3)–8;
196:6
killing a human being, 204:5
kindness, 171A:1
kings, 173:10; 185:19(5)–20
See also specific names
language:
figurative, 180:3–4
speaking in tongues, 199:23
Largus, letter from Augustine to:
on suffering and the world to come, 203
law
See also Commandments
peace and, 157:6, 9; 177:2–14; 190:7;
194:28; 196:3–6
The Opinion of the Apostle James,
167:1(1)–21
sin and (See under sin: the law and)
Whoever observes the whole law, but
offends on one point, 167:1(2)–21
Lawrence of Caesarea, 209:8
laws against the Donatists, See Correction
of the Donatists, The
Lazarus, 164:7
Lazarus (bishop). Hero and, See Hero and
Lazarus
lies, lying, 157:40; 180:3
Literal Meaning of Genesis, The, 159:2;
162:2
love, 167:14(5)–17; 171A:2; 177:10;
186:7(3); 189:2–3; 192:1–2; 194:11
disagreements and, 210:2
faith and, 186:7(3); 194:11
freedom and, 167:19(6)
if...do not have love, it profits me
nothing, 173:5–6
Lucifer, bishop of Cagliari, Sardinia,
185:47
Lucifer (devil), See devil
Luke, Gospel of, 199:25(9), 27–31, 40,
43–44

Volume II/3
lust, See concupiscence

Maccabees, Books of, 204:6–8
Macedonians, 185:48(9)
Magnitude of the Soul, 162:2
Manichees, 165:1(1), 166:7
Marcellinus, 166:7; 169:13; 190:20(6)
Marcellinus and Anapsychia, letter from Jerome to:
on origin of the soul, 165:1(1)–3(3); 166:8(4)
Marius Mercator, See Mercator, Marius
Mark, Gospel of, 199:25(9), 27–30, 32, 39, 43–44
marriage, chastity in, 157:39; 167:10(3); 184A:3; 189:7; 200:1–3
Marriage and Desire, 200:1–3; 206; 207
martyrs, martyrdom, 166:18(7); 185:8–9, 20; 204:4
See also individual names
Mary, See virgin birth
Matthew, Gospel of, 199:25(9), 27–30, 32, 39, 44–45
Mauritania Sitifensis, 185:6(2)
Maximian, Catholic bishop of Bagai, 185:26–28
Maximianists, 173:8, 185:17, 47
Maximus (physician), 171
letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
on Arianism, 170:1–10
letter from Augustine to:
on purity of heart, 171A:1–2
Melania, 202:2
Melchizedek, 177:12
Mercator, Marius, letter to Augustine from:
perorians and second coming, 193:1(1)–3
mercy, 194:14
and favoritism (See favoritism) of God, 167:20; 190:9(3)–12; 194:4, 6(3), 14
for others, 167:19(6)–20; 171A:1–2
Milevis, Numidia, bishop of (See Optatus) Council of (See Council of Milevis) military, See soldiers; war miracles, 162:6–7; 185:24; 187:23–24, 36 money, See wealth moon, 199:34(10), 39 mirons, 166:17 Moses, 158:6; 196:16 Mount Sinai, 196:9, 12

Naboth, 185:41
nature, human, See free choice Nature and Grace (book by Augustine), 168; 179:2

Nature (book by Pelagius), 179:2–10; 183:5; 186:1(1)
Nebuchadnezzar, King, 185:8, 19(5)
needy, helping, 171A:1 Neoplatonists, 165:1(1)
newborns, See infants Ninevah, 164:2, 185:19(5)
Noah: non-believers in time of, 164:1(1)–22
Noah’s ark, 187:38(13)
non-believers:
as already judged, 205:14
discussing religion with, 184A:6
God’s foreknowledge of, 186:26;
190:9(3)–12; 194:12
infants as, 193:3(2)–6
Noah, at time of, 164:1(1)–22, 15
praying for, 184A:4(2); 186:38
preaching to, 169:3
two kinds of, 184A:3(3)–6
Numidia: Milevis, See Council of Milevis
oaths (swearing), 157:40
Ocean, 199:47
Oceanus, 165:2(2)–3(3)
letter from Augustine to:
on creationism and Paul’s rebuke to Peter, 180:1–5
Old Testament:
Christ as mediator, 187:34
patriarchs, faith of, 157:14; 177:12;
190:6, 8
olive trees, 184A:3; 194:44
Opinion of the Apostle James, The, 167:1(1)–21, 1(2)–21; 202A:3
Optatus (bishop of Milevis), 185:6(2)
letters from Augustine to:
on the origin of the soul, 202A:1(1)–20
on the soul and original sin, 190:1(1)–26
Origen, 165:1(1); 169:13; 202A:8(4)
Origin of the Soul, The, 166:1(1)–28;
169:13; 202A:1(1), 3
See also under soul: origin of original sin, 157:12–13, 19–21; 186:33;
187:31; 190:3 creationist theory and, 166:10–11 grace and (See grace) and infant baptism (See infant baptism) lust and (See concupiscence)
Orosius, 166:2; 169:13; 172:1; 175:1; 180:5
pagans, 184A:5(3)
poets and philosophers, 164:4
Palestine, 165:2(2); 177:2; 186:2, 27(8)
See also Council of Diospolis

Letters 156-210
Letters 156-210

parables:
banquet, 185:24
fig tree, 199:42–44
three good servants, 199:52(13)–54
virgins, 199:45
paradise, 184:2; 187:3(2), 5–7
See also heaven

partiality, See favoritism

patriarchs, Old Testament, See under Old Testament: patriarchs

Paul, apostle, Saint, 185:22–24, 22–28
rebuking Peter (Christians living like Jews), 180:4; 196:1(1)–16
Paula, 172:2
See also Eustochium

Paulinus, letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
on Pelagianism as heresy, 186:1(1)–41

peace: war and, 189:6
peace and security, 199:37

Pelagians, 156; 178:1; 190:22; 196:7
See also free choice; grace; infant baptism
dealing with, 178:2–3; 191:1–2 (See also under Innocent, the pope:
correspondence re. Pelagians)
sanctions against, 201:1–2
in Sicily, 156; 157:1(1)–41
Pelagius, 175:1; 186:1(1), 27(8)
See also Pelagians, above
Nature, book by (See Nature)
Pentecost, 199:23

Peregrinus, letter from Alypius and Augustine to:
on Maximus, 171
perjury, 157:40
persecution, 185:9–11
Peter, apostle, Saint, 185:22, 46
First Letter of, 164:1(1)–22
Paul’s rebuke of (See under Paul: rebuking Peter)
Peter and Abraham (monks), letter from Augustine to:
on Christian doctrines, 184A:1(1)–7
philosophers, 164:3(2)
See also specific names and topics
Phoenix, 165:2(2)
Photinius, 185:48(9)
physicians, See doctors
piety, 167:11; 171A:1
Prinian, 202:2
Platonists, 165:1(1)
pleasures, bodily, See under concupiscence
poets, 164:4
poor: helping, 171A:1
pope, See Boniface; Celestine; Innocent; Zosimus

possessions, See wealth
Possidius, 177:1–19
poverty:
helping the needy, 171A:1
virtue and, 157:157:23(4)–38

prayer:
daily, for forgiveness, 185:38
as gift, 194:15
Holy Spirit and, 194:16(4)–18
as sacrifice, 177:16
against temptation, 177:4, 16; 186:41

preaching:
“foolishness” of, 160:3
to whole world, 199:46(12)–49
predestination, 186:25; 187:37; 190:9
Presence of God, The, 187:1(1)–41
pride, 165:1(1), 194:21
Primian, 173:8; 185:17
Priscillianists, 165:1(1); 166:7; 169:13;
202A:8(4)
Priscus of Caesarea, 209:8
prison, spirits held in. See under hell: Christ
preaching in
Privatus, 158:9
Profuturus, 158:9
propagation of souls, 190:2, 13(4)–19,
23–25; 202A:8(4), 10–14
prudence, 167:5; 171A:2
punishment, 186:12, 16(6)
correction, use by Church, 173:2–3;
185:21(6)–25(7)
eternal (See hell)
rebukes, giving, 210:2
purity of heart, 171A:1–2
Pythagoras, 165:1(1)

rabbis, teacher, 166:9
Razis, 204:6–8
reason, 160:1–3; 161:1
rebaptism, 185:22, 43(10); 204:4
Rebekah/Rebecca, 187:24; 194:37
See also under Jacob: and Esau
rebirth, 166:5; 187:30(9)–34(11)
infants and (See infant baptism)
rebukes, giving, 210:2
relatives, See family
resurrection of Christ, 164:14(5); 205:5–6,
8–11
firstborn from the dead, 164:9
resurrection of the dead, 164:9; 180:4;
205:6–16
See also end of the world; Second Coming of Christ
revenge, 167:6
riches, See wealth

Volume II/3
righteousness, 177:11; 185:37–38, 41
source of, 157:5, 13–14; 177:13–14;
185:42; 186:8–10; 190:8
Rome, 165:2(2); 177:2; 185:28; 199:35,
46(12)–47
Rufinus, 165:1(1)
Rusticus, Felicity and, letter from Augustine to:
on tribulations and giving rebukes,
210:1–2
Sabbath, 196:3, 8
sacraments, 182:5; 186:28
See also baptism; specific sacraments
old, 196:3
sacrifice:
animal, 177:16; 196:3
prayer as, 177:16
saints, 186:25
Sallust, 166:14; 167:6; 172:1; 202A:3
salvation, 173:10; 186:31; 190:6
everlasting (See eternal life)
by grace through faith (See faith; grace)
prefacing and, 169:3
Samuel, 158:6
sanctification, 187:32
Sarah, 185:9, 11; 194:37; 196:12–13
Satan, See devil
Saul, King, 158:6; 185:9; 204:5
Saul (Paul), See Paul
scandals in the Church, 208:1–7
schism, schismatics, 185:2, 44–45, 47; 204:2;
208:3
See also Donatists; heretics; individual
groups and names
Second Coming of Christ
See also end of the world; resurrection of
the dead
the living at time of, 193:9(4)–13
self-righteousness, 187:37–39
Septuagint, 172:2
servant: Christ as, 170:9; 205:12
servants, parable of three good,
199.5(2)3–54
Servilius, 158:9, 11
Seth, 164:6(3)
sex:
abstaining from (See chastity; virginity)
desire (See concupiscence)
intercourse, 184A:3; 187:31
in marriage (See marriage, chastity in)
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, See fiery
furnace
shame, 186:40
Sicily, 156: 157:1(1)–41
sight
See also eyes; visions
seeing God, 169:3
signs, 169:7; 185:24; 196:15; 198:5
of end times, 199:17, 22(8)–23, 34(10),
39, 45
sin, 194:27
baptism and (See baptism)
Christ as without, 164:19(7)–20; 190:25
and death, 164:21; 193:6–7, 12
degrees of, 167:17
excuses for, 194:22(6)–29
forgiveness of (See forgiveness)
free choice and (See free choice)
grace and, 194:29–30
against the Holy Spirit, 185:48(9)–50
the law and, 157:9, 15; 167:10(3)–20;
194:25
living without, people described as,
157:2, 4
love and, 167:14(5)–17
original (See original sin)
personal, 194:27
vices, 167:6–9
Sinai, Mount, 196:9, 12
Sitifis, 185:6(2)
Sixtus, letters from Augustine to:
on grace, baptism, and God’s judgment,
194:1(1)–47
on Pelagianism, 191:1–2
Sobriety, 189:7
soldiers, 189:1–6
Solomon, King, 158:12; 187:35(12); 199:47
Son of God: Christ as, See Jesus Christ;
Trinity
soul:
after death, 158:4–8, 11; 159:1–5;
162:1–9
of Christ, 163; 164:19(7)–20
creationist view, 165:1(1) (See also
creationism)
origin of, 166:1(1)–28; 180:2;
190:1(1)–2, 4–5(2);
202A:17(8)–20; 205:19
The Origin of the Soul, 166:1(1)–28
propagation of, theory (See propagation
of souls)
Spain, 166:2
Spirit, See Holy Spirit
stars, See astronomy
stinginess, 167:6
Stoics, 165:1(1); 167:12–13
stubbornness, 167:6
suffering, 203; 210:1
of infants, 166:16(6)
suicide, 173:1–10, 4–6; 185:12(3), 14,
32(8)–34(10); 204:1–8
sun, 199:34(10), 39
swearing, 157:40
symbols, See signs

Letters 156-210
Letters 156-210

Syracuse in Sicily, 156; 157:1(1)–41
Syria, 165:2(2)
teacher, 166:9–10
temperance, 171A:2
temple in Jerusalem, 198:3; 199:33
temples of God, 170:2; 187:19–21, 26(8)–27, 29, 35(12)–39
becoming, 187:32
temptation, 162:7; 177:4; 178:3; 205:16
prayer regarding, 186:41
struggles with, 186:33
Ten Commandments
See also law
love, 189:2–3
Terence, 185:21(6)
Tertullian, 165:1(1); 190:14
Thamugadi, 204:6–8
Theodosius, 185:25(7)
Honarius and (See Honorius and Theodosius)
thief, the good, See good thief, the three good servants, parable of, 199:52(13)–54
Timasius and James, 177:6; 179:2; 186:2
letter to Augustine from on grace, 168
time: immortality and, 166:14
To Turbantius, 207
Tobit, 158:6
tongues, speaking in, 199:23
torture, See punishment
trials and tribulations, See suffering
Trinity, the, 164:17(6); 169:5(2)–11; 170:2–9; 171A:1; 187:15–16(5)
See also God
Trinity, The (book by Augustine), 162:2; 169:1(1); 174
troubles, See suffering
True Religion, 162:2
Tully (Cicero), 165:2(2)
twins, See Jacob and Esau
unbelievers, See non-believers
underworld, 187:5–6
See also hell
Christ preaching in, 164:1(1)–22
Valerius, 207
letters from Augustine to commending Felix, 206
on Marriage and Desire, 200:1–3
Vandals, 166:2
vices, 167:6–9
Victor of Caesarea, 209:8
violence: of Donatists, See Donatists
Virgil, 165:2(2); 190:10
virgin birth, the, 161:1–3; 162:6–7; 164:19(7); 187:31, 33
virginal conception found in nature, 161:1–3
virginity, 188:6
See also chastity
virgins, consecrated:
Demetrias as, 188:1(1)–14
Eustochastic, 172:2; 202:2
Felicia, 208:1–7
virgins, parable of, 199:45
virtues, 167:4(2)–18; 189:7
See also specific virtues
cardinal and theological, 171A:2
and self-righteousness, 157:38
vision (sight)
See also eyes
seeing God, 169:3
visions, 158:3, 9–10; 159:2–5; 162:3–9
Gennadius and (life after death), 158:3–4
Volusian, 161:1; 162:6
war, 199:35
and peace, 189:6
wealth:
Christians and, 157:23(4)–38; 186:33
of the wicked, 185:35(9)–37, 40–42
weeks of Daniel, See under Daniel: weeks of wickedness, See sin
will, free, See free choice
wisdom, 158:12; 167:11–13; 171A:1
wisdom of God, Christ as, 170:4
women: silence in church, 169:2
Word of God, 160:4; 169:7–8; 187:40
See also Jesus Christ
works, good
See also grace vs. free choice
free choice and, 157:5
world, end of, See end of the world
worm:
I am a worm and no man, 161:1
their worm will not die, 205:14
Zechariah, 177:16
Zosimus, the pope, 190:22–23; 191:2; 194:1(1)
Index from

Letters 211-270

Translation, notes and introduction by Roland J. Teske, SJ, Boniface Ramsey, editor
Each letter is preceded by its own introduction in which the translator offers valuable information about the persons, content, and background pertinent to the letter.

Volume II/4 Letters

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-209-8, 6 x 9 in., 352 pp., 2005
Includes:

Letters 1*–29* (Divjak)
(Epistulae 1*–29*)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work

Old Testament

Genesis
1:28 6*, 3
6:3 5*, 3

Leviticus
19:18 233

Deuteronomy
6:4 238, 3, 18
6:5 233, 258, 4
32:39 219, 2

2 Samuel
21:17 228, 10

Tobit
12:7 237, 4; 257, 8

Judith
16:15 227

Job
7:1 217, 4, 14

Psalms
4:3 3*, 1
6:2 216, 4
7:8, 3 250, 3
11:6 258, 3
18:2 218, 2
19:10 266, 1
22:21 243, 4
24:7 237, 8
25:17 220, 10
36:10 237, 8
37:5-6 218, 2
37:23 217, 1, 3; 217, 2, 5; 218, 3
41:5 216, 5
41:9 263, 4
42:5 270
49:7 218, 2
51:10 266, 2; 266, 3
59:11 214, 4
68:10 217, 4, 12
78:39 238, 2, 15
86:11 217, 4, 15
94:8 214, 7
94:17 216, 5; 248, 2
96:1 237, 8
98:1 237, 8
100:3 231, 6
101:1 2*, 10
104:4 238, 2, 15
112:7 270
116:16 237, 5
118:19 237, 8
119:4 215, 5
119:125 214, 7
119:158 248, 1
127:1 216, 5
143:2 216, 4
146:7 237, 5
149:1 237, 8

Proverbs
4:26 215, 7
4:26-27 215, 5
4:27 215, 7; 218, 2
8:35 LXX 217, 2, 5; 217, 6, 23;
8:35 218, 3
9:8 LXX 220, 12
9:12 LXX 264, 2
18:18 228, 12
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume II/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27:20 LXX</td>
<td>211, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>238, 2, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>3*, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>217, 4, 15; 217, 6, 21; 217, 6, 22; 226, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>3*, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25.27</td>
<td>238, 4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>238, 4, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>248, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>2*, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>2*, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>220, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>221, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:24</td>
<td>247, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:16</td>
<td>263, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:17.19</td>
<td>263, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>2*, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:10</td>
<td>216, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:10</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>238, 4, 24; 242, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>218, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:34</td>
<td>266, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>217, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:4</td>
<td>250, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Testament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>242, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>229, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>2*, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>264, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>4*, 4; 265, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>217, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>243, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:36</td>
<td>220, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>263, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30-31</td>
<td>258, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>248, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:38</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:28</td>
<td>217, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:32</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>217, 7, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:25</td>
<td>220, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:27</td>
<td>258, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:4</td>
<td>265, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>238, 4, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26-32</td>
<td>243, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>243, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:33</td>
<td>243, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:33</td>
<td>243, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>258, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>263, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:46</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:62</td>
<td>265, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Books</td>
<td>Verses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>2:5-6, 26:7, 4:32, 5:34, 3:4, 3:6, 3:8, 5:5, 5:12, 6:1, 6:2, 6:19, 7:7, 7:18, 7:19, 7:20, 8:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:23, 1:23-24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Letters 211-270
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Numbers</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>211, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>216, 4; 217, 5, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>245, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>237, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>217, 4, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>262, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>264, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>214, 3, 2; 217, 3, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>228, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>266, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:21</td>
<td>265, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7</td>
<td>217, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Galatians**

| 1:10         | 231, 4     |
| 1:22-24      | 217, 6, 24 |
| 3:21         | 217, 3, 11 |
| 4:4          | 219, 1; 238, 2, 10 |
| 4:19         | 237, 8     |
| 5:1          | 237, 5     |
| 5:6          | 2*, 6      |
| 5:7-9        | 211, 3     |
| 5:24         | 243, 11    |
| 6:1          | 219, 1     |
| 6:2-3        | 219, 1     |
| 6:9-10       | 268, 2     |

**Ephesians**

| 1:5-4        | 217, 7, 27 |
| 1:15-16      | 217, 7, 28 |
| 2:4          | 215, 8     |
| 2:10         | 215, 6     |
| 3:17         | 237, 8     |
| 3:20         | 238, 2, 15 |
| 4:5-6        | 238, 3, 20 |
| 5:6          | 217, 4, 14 |
| 6:12         | 220, 12    |

**Philippians**

| 1:23-24      | 228, 9     |
| 2:6          | 242, 4     |
| 2:6-7        | 219, 3     |
| 2:8          | 243, 8     |
| 2:12         | 217, 4, 14 |
| 2:12-13      | 218, 3     |
| 2:13         | 217, 1; 217, 2, 5 |
| 2:21        | 20*, 32; 228, 9 |
| 2:27         | 211, 2     |
| 3:13         | 238, 2, 16 |
| 4:7          | 235, 2, 16 |
| 4:8-9        | 231, 4     |
| 4:17         | 268, 3     |

**Colossians**

| 1:12-13      | 217, 3, 8 |
| 1:24         | 265, 4     |
| 3:1          | 20*, 28; 263, 2 |
| 3:1-2        | 2*, 1      |
| 3:3          | 263, 2     |

**1 Thessalonians**

| 4:13         | 263, 3     |
| 5:19         | 237, 7     |
| 5:23         | 238, 2, 15 |

**2 Thessalonians**

| 3:1-2        | 217, 7, 27 |

**1 Timothy**

| 1:17         | 238, 2, 11; 238, 4, 23 |
| 2:2          | 220, 3; 231, 6 |
| 2:4          | 217, 6; 19; 225, 4; 225, 5 |
| 4:15         | 243, 23    |
| 5:8          | 243, 32; 262, 8 |
| 5:12         | 2*, 3      |
| 5:14         | 2*, 2      |
| 6:16         | 238, 2, 11 |

**2 Timothy**

| 2:19         | 18*, 3     |
| 2:25-26      | 262, 11    |
| 3:12         | 248, 1     |

**Titus**

| 2:3          | 211, 12    |
| 3:5          | 237, 7     |

**Hebrews**

| 11:6         | 217, 3, 10 |

**James**

| 1:5          | 214, 7     |
| 1:17         | 214, 4     |
| 1:19         | 266, 2     |
| 1:20         | 260, 2     |
| 2:17         | 2*, 6      |
| 2:19         | 2*, 6      |

**1 Peter**

| 2:22         | 215, 6     |
| 3:5-6        | 262, 7     |

**2 Peter**

| 2:20         | 237, 5     |
| 3:14-16      | 214, 6     |
### Volume II/4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 John</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>220, 6; 220, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>211, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>211, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>228, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8-16</td>
<td>219, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 4:18            | 218, 2 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revelation</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>247, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13</td>
<td>217, 6, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Letters 211-270
General Index

(prepared by Kathleen Strattan)

The first number in the Index is the Letter number. The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Abgar, king of Edessa, 230:5
Abraham, 265:4
Adam, 217-9, 11; 226:5–6
See also original sin
Christ as second Adam, 217:11
adultery, 259:1; 262:1, 5; 6*:7
adversity, 244:1–2
Aeneid, 230:1; 2*:3; 12*:15
Africa, 11*:26
See also specific names, topics, events, and locations
Aurelius as primate (See Aurelius, bishop of Carthage)
scriptural commentary in, 27*:2
slave trade in, 10*:2–8
African bishops:
letter to Gallic bishops from on Leporius, 219
African Council, 215:2
Agapius (bishop), 11*:2–21
aging process, the, 213:1
Alexandria, 228:6; 4*
almsgiving, See charity
Alpyius, 220:3; 224:2; 238:4; 248:2; 16*:1–2; 20*:12, 15; 23A*:1; 28*:4
letters from Augustine to on books of Julian and Caelestius, 10*
on converts to Christianity, 227
on rape of nun, 9*
memorandum to Thagaste clerics, 15*:1–2
Alpyius and Peregrinus:
letter from Augustine to on church problems, 22*
Ambrose, bishop of Milan, 222:2; 29*:2
amulets, 245:2
anathematization: of Classicianus, 250–250A
angels, 234:2
bad, 217:9–10; 2*:9–10
anger, 211:14
Anna, 262:9
Answer to Julian, 225:3
Answer to the Skeptics, 212A; 1A*:3
Antoninus of Fussala, 20*:1–33
apocryphal books, 237:2–4
apostles: baptism of, 265:1–8
Apostolic See, See individual popes;
specific topics and events
Arianism, 228:10; 238–242; 23A*:3
Homoian, 220:2
Asterius, Count, 11*:4–20
astrology, 246:1–3
Athanasius, bishop of Alexandria, 228:6, 10
Atticus, letter from Augustine to:
on correcting Pelagian errors, 6*
attire, See clothing
Audax:
letter from Augustine to rejecting flattery of, 261
letter to Augustine from on wisdom, 260
Augustine
See also African bishops
congregation of, his letter to on help repaying a debt, 268
writings of, mentioned, 224:2 (See also specific titles)
Aurelius, bishop of Carthage, 219; 231:7;
4*:2; 23A*:3
See also African bishops
letter from Augustine to on Alypius and Pelagians, 16*
letter from Jerome to, 27*:1–3
Aurelius of Macomades, 20*:9, 12
authority: abuse of, 247:1–4
Austenius, 238:4
Auxilius, 250A
letter from Augustine to
  on Classicianus, anathematization of, 250
baptism, 227; 265:1–8; 2*:3–11
grace and, 217:16(5)
infant (See infant baptism)
  the Lord's Prayer at, 5*:2
  martyrdom counted as, 265:4
  and penance, 265:2, 6–8
barbarians, 10*:2–5; 11*:2, 20
  See also pagans
attacks, dealing with, 220:3, 7; 228
Bassus, 7*:1–2
bathing, 211:13
beating: as punishment, 8*:2; 20*:5
Belial, 245:2
believers, See Christians
Benenatus of Simithus, letters from
  Augustine to:
    on orphaned girl, 253–254
Béziers, council at, 11*:23–24
bishops, 11*:20
  See also clergy; individual names
African, letter to Gallic, 219
  as human beings, 250:3
  letters on Pelagian heresy, 215:2
  removal of abusive, 20*:1–33
blasphemies, See heresies
body:
  lusts of (See concupiscence)
  and soul, 238:12
Boniface, Count, 7*:1
  as general, 229
  letters from Augustine to
dissolute life, reprimanding, 220
  on shipwreck, 17*
Boniface, the pope, 16*:3; 20*:11–12; 22*:7;
  23A*:5
books, 211:13
  See also specific titles
  by Augustine, 224:2
Caelestius, 10*:1; 12*:16
Canarra, 22*:5–11; 23*:1–2
Calama: Possidius as bishop, See Possidius
canonical books (scriptures): Priscillianists
  and, 237:2–8
Cartenna: Honorius as bishop, See Honorius
Carthage, 15*:2; 16*:2; 27*:1–3
  See also specific topics and events
Aurelius as bishop (See Aurelius, bishop of Carthage)
clerics, letter from Augustine to
  on his safe return to Hippo, 25*
  Council of (See Council of Carthage)
Cataphrygians, 237:2
Catiline, 259:2
Cato, 2*:12
Celestine, the pope, 9*:1, 4; 10*:1
celibacy, See chastity; continence
Ceretius, letter from Augustine to:
  on Priscillianist teaching, 237
charity, 243:12; 262:4–9; 265:8; 268:2
chastity, 259:1–5; 6*:5
  See also continence
  nuns and, 211:10–11
  virginity, consecrated (See consecrated virgins)
childbirth, 6*:7
choice, free, See free choice
Chrisimus, letter from Augustine to:
  on discouragement, persevering through, 244
Christ, See Jesus Christ
Christian faith
  See also specific topics
  enemies of (See under enemies: of Christian faith)
  spread, scripture foretelling, 232:3–4
Christians:
  bad, 249
  prayer for, 217:14, 28
Christinus, letter from Augustine to:
  on love and letters, 256
  sending love and encouragement, 256
Church
  See also specific topics
  “defenders of,” 20*:6
  scandals in, 249
church:
  dedication of new, 269
  as sanctuary, 250:1–2; 250A; 1*:3, 5
Cicero, 231:3; 242:5; 258:1, 4; 259:2;
  2*:12; 12*:1
Cillenius, Gallic bishop, 219
Circumcellions, 28*:7
circumcision, 265:4; 6*:7
City of God, The, 212A; 1A*:1–3; 2*:2–3;
  23A*:3
Classicianus, 250–250A
  letters from Augustine to
  on anathematization, 250A; 1*
cleanliness: of clothing, 211:10
clergy:
  during barbarian invasion, 228
demands on, 22*:1
difficulty finding, 22*:1
  and impurity, 18*:1–3
  and sexual temptation, 13*:1–3
clerics, See clergy
clothing:
  appropriate, for women, 262:9–10
Letters 211-270

Care and custody of, 211:12-13
Cleanliness of, 211:10
Commandments, Ten, See Ten Commandments
Communication, 267
Communion: withholding, 15*:3; 20*:7, 11; 23A*:6
Community living, 211:5-6
Concubines, See prostitution
Concupiscence, 259:3
Fighting against, 220:6, 9-11
and God’s will, 2*:8-10
In marriage, 6*:3-8
Nuns and, 211:10-11
and original sin, 2*:10
Confessions, The, 231; 12*:1, 4
Consecrated virgins, 212; 263
And chastity, 6*:5
And consecrated widowhood, 3*:1-4
Consentius, letters to Augustine from:
on leisure vs. learning, 12*
on the Priscillianists, 11*
Constantinople, 6*
Constantius, the emperor, 228:6
Continence, 220:12
See also chastity; virginity
In marriage, 262:1-11
Conversion of non-believers:
Prayer for (See under non-believers: prayer for)
Copyists, 27*:3
Cornelius the centurion, 265:3
Cornelius (widower), letter from Augustine to:
on eulogy request, 259
Cosmetics, use of, 245:1
Council of Africa (African Council), 215:2
council at Béziers, 11*:23-24
Council of Carthage, 218:5, 215:2; 10*:1; 26*:1; 28*:2
Council of Diospolis, 217:18(6); 4*:2; 19*:2-4
Council of Nicaea, 213:4; 238:4; 22*:5
Council of Numidia, 213:5; 215:2
Council of Sardica, 26*:1
Count Boniface, 7*:1
Count Sebastian, 7*:1-2
Cresconius (estate supervisor), 14*:2; 15*:3-4
Cresconius (monk), 214:1; 215:1
Crimes
See also specific topics and events
Punishment for (See punishment)
Cyprian, 212A; 215:3; 1A*; 25*: 27*:3; 29*:2
On The Lord’s Prayer, 217:2-3, 6
Mortality, 217:22
Cypriana, 259:1-5
Cyril, letter from Augustine to:On The Deeds of Pelagius, 4*
Cyrus, bishop of Carthage, 27*:1
Damasus, the pope, 27*:1-2
Darius, Count, 231:7
Letters from Augustine to:
on negotiating peace, 229; 231
Letters to Augustine from:
on negotiating peace, 230
David, King, 228:10
Deacon
See also clergy; individual names
Office of, 26*:1-2
death:
Eternal, 217:19
Grace and, 217:22
In the Lord, 217:16(5), 22
Mourning, 263:1-4
Of a spouse, 259:1-5
Debate: with Pascentius, 238:1-9
debt: of Fascius, 208:1-3
deeds (good works), See good works
Deeds of Pelagius, The, 4*:1-5
“defenders of the church,” 20*:6
demons:
demons also believe and tremble, 2*:6
Jewelry linked to, 245:2
Deogratias, 249; 25*
Desires, worldly, See concupiscence
Deuterius, 22*:5; 23A*:4
Letter from Augustine to:
on Manicheanism, 236
Devil: as power of darkness, 217:8(3)-11
Dioscorus, 227
Diospolis, Council of, See Council of Diospolis
discipline, See punishment
discouragement: persevering through, 244:1-2
Donatius of Suppa, 21*:26
Donatian (primate), 23A*:4
Donatists, 245:2; 249; 11*:25-26; 23A*:3; 28*:1-7
Dorotheus, 15*:3-4
Letter from Augustine to:
on employee accused of crime, 14*
dress, See clothing
earrings, 245:2
Ecclesia, letter from Augustine to:
on her marriage, 262
Eclanum, Julian of, 10*
elegance: oratory, art of, 2*:12-13
Elpidius, letter from Augustine to:
on the Trinity, 242
Enemies:
of Christian faith, 217:6, 10
Loving, 220:8
Praying for, 215:3

Volume II/4
Ennius, 231:3
enslavement, See slavery
Epiphanius of Salamis, 222:2; 223:2
Esther, Queen, 262:10
eternal fire, 4*:3
See also hell
eternal life, 217:19; 263:2–4
Eucharist, 216:2
Eulogius of Caesarea, 19*:4
eulogy: request by Cornelius for, 259
Eunomius, 238:4
eunuchs, 3*:3
Eusebius of Caesarea, 230:5
Eustochius, letter from Augustine to:
on enslavement, cases of, 24*
evil
See also sin
free choice and, 217:8(3)–10 (See also free choice)
God as permitting, 2*:8–10
good and, 215:4–8
good use made of, 215:8; 264:1–2; 2*:8
repaying good for, 220:8
excommunication, See anathematization
exhortation, 226:5
Fabiola, letters from Augustine to:
on Antoninus of Fussala, 20*
on heaven vs. earth, 267
faith, 217:10
grace and, 214:4; 217:24–30 (See also grace)
without works, 2*:6
family:
charity beginning with, 243:12; 262:7–9
renouncing for Christ, 243:2–10
of sinner, punishing, 1*:1–2, 5
Fascius, 268:1–3
fasting, 211:8; 265:8
fate: and astrology, 246:1–3
Father, God as, See Trinity
Faustinus, letter from Augustine to:
on settling financial issue, 7*
Felician, 7*:1–2
Felix (deacon):
letter from Augustine to
on virginity and consecrated widowhood, 3*
Felix (layman), 254
letter from Augustine to
on orphaned girl, 253
Felix (monk), 214:1; 215:1
fire, eternal, 4*:3
See also hell
Firmus, 248:2
letters from Augustine to
on baptism, 2*
on The City of God, 1A*; 212A
flattery, 260; 261:2
See also praise
flesh, desires of, See concupiscence
flirtation, 211:10–11
Florentina, letter from Augustine to:
on teaching, 266
Florentinus (domesticus), 7*:1
Florentinus (pagan), 232:7
Florentius (bishop of Hippo Diarrytus), 219
Florus (monk), 214:6; 215A; 215:3, 8; 216:2–4, 6
foreknowledge, divine, See predestination
forgiveness, 211:14
formication, 259:1; 262:2; 6*:7
See also concupiscence
Fortunatus of Aquilea, 27*:2
time: and astrology, 246:1–3
France, See Gaul
free choice
faith and, 217:23
God as causing, 217:1
grace and, 214:1–3, 6–7; 215:4–8;
217:4–24
original sin and, 217:12(4)
Free Will, 226:8
friendship, 258:1–4
Fronto, 11*:1–23
Fussala, bishop of, 20*:1–33
Gabinian, 227
Galatians (slave merchants), 10*:7–8
Galla, the widow, 212
Gallic bishops:
letter from African bishops to, 219
garb, garments, See clothing
Gaudentius, 23A*:3
Gaul
See also specific topics and events
bishops in, letter from African bishops to
on Leporius, 219
grace, controversy on, 225–226
generosity, 268:2
See also charity
Genesis 6:3, 5*:3
Germanicia (place), 251
Giddada: slave trade, 10*:6
Gift of Perseverance, The, See Prosper of Aquitaine
gifts, material: nuns and, 211:12
gifts (talents): right use of, 2*:12–13
Gitta: rejected as priest, 18*:1–2

Letters 211-270
Letters 211-270

God
See also specific topics
as just, 217:20
three persons of (See Trinity)
will of (See will of God)
the Word (See Word)

good:
and evil (See evil: good and)
repaying evil with, 220:8
seeking common, 211:12
good will; grace and, 215:1, 4–8; 217:5, 16(5)–17
good works, 217:10
among non-believers, 217:10
faith without, 2*:6
gospels: spread of, 226:3
grace, 214–217; 225–226
controversy among monks, 214–216;
225–226
and faith (See under faith: grace and)
and free choice (See Free choice)
and good will (See under good will: grace
and)
as gratuitous, 217:19–21
infants and (See infants baptism)
and law, 217:11–12(4), 23
and righteousness, lack of, 2*:6
teaching and, 217:12(4)
the Twelve Propositions, 217:16(5)–18(6), 25–26(7)

Grace and Free Choice, 215:1, 2; 216:1,
226:10
See also Hadrumetum, monks of
grandchildren, desire for, 3*:1–4
Greek language, 238:4; 261:5; 5*:3
Greeks, 4*:5
grey hair, 218:1
grief, 263:3

Hadia, 10*:3
Hadrumentum, monks of, 214–215; 225:2
hair: women covering, 245:1
happiness:
false, 2*:10
the happy life, 233
hatred: anger and, 211:14
heaven, See eternal life
hell, 4*:3
rich man in, 259:5
Heraclius, 213:1–7; 7*:1
heresies
See also Donatists; Pelagians; individual
groups and names
history of, 221–224
It is necessary that there be heresies, 264:1

Heresies, book by Augustine, See
Quodvultdeus

Hero and Lazarus, bishops, 19*:2
Hilary, bishop of Arles, 225:9
Hilary, layman from Gaul:
letter to Augustine from
on grace controversy, 226
Hippo, 22*:4
See also specific topics and events
nuns in, letter from Augustine to
books written for, 211
slave trade in, 10*:7–8
Holy Spirit, 238:21(4)
See also spirit; Trinity; specific topics
and baptism, 265:3–4
"homilies," 224:2
Homoian Arianism, See under Arianism:
Homoian
Honoratus, bishop of Thiave, 21*
letters from Augustine to
on barbarian attacks, dealing with,
228
on Donantius; 26*
Honorius, bishop of Cartenna, 22*:5–11;
23*:2; 23A*:3
Honorius, the emperor, 10*:3
hope: pagans as lacking, 263:3–4
Horace, 230:3; 231:3; 270; 12*:1, 14
human nature, See original sin
humility:
leadership and, 211:14
preserving, in teaching, 266:2–4
hymns:
and prayer, 211:7
Priscillianists and, 237:2, 4–9
idleness: love of, 12*

idol worship, 212:2–3; 232:1–3, 7
ill, the, See sick
impurity, sexual, 18*:1–2
See also concupiscence
infant baptism, 215:1; 217:19
and, 217:16(5)–19, 22; 225:5;
226:8
the Lord’s Prayer at, 5*:2
original sin and (See original sin)
inform, the, See sick
Innocent, the pope, 215:2
Innocent (priest), 6*:1; 19*:1
Innocentia, 3*:5
intercourse, sexual, See sex
invasion, by barbarians, See barbarians

James, Timasius and, 19*:3
Jerome of Bethlehem:
letter from Augustine to
on Pelagians, 19*
letter to Aurelius of Carthage from, 27*:1–3

Volume II/4
Volume II/4

Letters 211-270

Jesus Christ  
See also Trinity: specific topics
   inviting name of, 232:4
   as lesser God (See under Arianism: Homoian)
   scripture as foretelling, 232:3–4
   as second Adam, 217:11
   Son of God (See Trinity)
   Word made flesh (See Word of God)
   jewelry, 245:1–2

Jews:
   Christian conflicts with, 12*:13, 15
   Licentius (See Licentius)
   scripture foretelling history, 232:3–4

John, Gospel of:
   Homilies on the Gospel of John, 23A*:3
   John of Jerusalem, 19*:4
   judgment: by God, 217:22; 232:3
   Julian of Eclanum, 224:2; 10*:1
   justification, 214:4
   Justus, 4*:1–5

king, secret of, 237:4, 6–9

Lactantius, 12*:2; 7; 27*:3
Laetus, letter from Augustine to:
   on relationship with mother, 243
Lampadius, letter from Augustine to:
   on fate and fortune, 246
languages
   See also specific languages
   translation of written works, 261:5;
   27*:2–3
   translation problems, 5*:3
   Largus, 16*:2
   Latin language, 261:5; 5*:3; 27*:3
   Latins, 4*:5
law:
   grace and, 217:11–12(4), 23
   sin and, 246:2.
   Lazarus, Hero and, bishops, 19*:2
   Lazarus (Gallic bishop), 19*:1
   Lazarus (Mary and Martha’s brother), 263:3
   Lazarus (priest), 230:1; 2*:1
laziness, 12*
leadership:
   and humility, 211:14
   respect for, 211:15
learning: aversion to, 12*
lector, office of, 26*:2; 28*:3
Leges (city), 270
leisure: love of, 12*
Leontius, 12*:3
Leporius, 219
lethargy, 12*
letters: and love, 256
Licinius, 8*:1–2
life, eternal, See eternal life
light: the splendor of eternal light, 238:24
Longinianus:
   letter to Augustine from
   on worshipping God, 234
   letters from Augustine to
   on converting from paganism, 235
   on worshipping God, 233
Lord, God as, 238:18(3)–20, 22–23
Lord’s Prayer, the, 5*:2
   Lord’s Prayer, The (Cyprian), 215:1;
   217:2–3, 6
love, 1*:5; 250A
   after bodily death, 263:2
   for family, 243:2–10
   for God, 233
   Luke (courier), 19*:3
lust, See concupiscence
Macedonius, 268:1–3
Madaura, pagan leaders, letter from
   Augustine to:
   on Christian faith, 232
makeup, 245:1
Manichees, 222:3; 236:1–3; 237:2; 259:3
Marcionites, 237:2
marriage, 259:1–5
   contraception in, 6*:3–8
   consecrated virginity vs., 3*:1–4
   for orphaned girl, 252–255
   sex, abstinence from, 6*:7
   wives, subjection of, 262:1–11
Marseilles, monks in, 226
Martha and Mary, 263:3
Martianus, letter from Augustine to:
   on baptism, 258
   martyrdom, 29*:2–3
   counted as baptism, 265:4
   Mary and Martha, 263:3
   Maurentius (bishop), 23A*:4
   Mauretania Sitifensis, 7*:1–2
Maxima, letter from Augustine to:
   on errors in her province, 264
   menstrual blood, 262:10
   mercy:
   of God, 2*:8
   for others, 268:2
   ministers, See clergy
   miracles, 227
   modesty, 211:14
   of nuns, 211:10
   monasteries
   See also specific topics and events
   and grace controversy, 214–216; 225–226
Letters 211-270

Rules for Nuns, 211:5–16
money, See wealth
monks, See monasteries; specific names, topics, and events
Mortality (Cyprian), 217:22
mother
See also family
renouncing for Christ, 243:2–10
mourning the deceased, 263:1–4

Nature and Grace, 19*:3
Nature and Origin of the Soul, The, 23*:1
Nature (Pelagius), 19*:3
Neptune, 245:2
Nestorians, 219
Nicaea, Council of, See Council of Nicaea
Nobilius, letter from Augustine to:
on dedication of new church, 269
non-believers:
enemies of Christianity, 217:6
prayer for, 215:3; 217:1(1)–30; 264:2
Novatianists, 265:1, 6
Novatus, bishop of Sitifis, 7*:1–2
letter from Augustine to:
on Donatist remnants, 28*
Numidia, Hippo
See also specific topics and events
Council of (See Council of Numidia)
slave trade, 10*:7
nuns:
in Hippo, quarreling, 211
rape of, 9*:1–4; 14*:2; 15*:3–4
and sexual temptation, 13*:1–3
nursing the sick, 211:9
obedience, 214:7
Odes (Horace), 230:8
offending others: refraining from, 8*:1–2
old age, 213:1; 218:1
Olympius, 28*:7
Optatus, 23*:1; 23A*:3
oratory, art of, 2*:12–13
Origen, 12*:11–12; 27*:2
original sin, 215:1; 217:9, 11–12(4); 225:3
the baptized and, 2*:10
and infant baptism (See infant baptism)
Orontius (layman), letter from Augustine to:
announcing arrival, 257
Ortius (Spanish priest), 19*:1; 237:1
orphaned girl, 252–255
Orpheus, 234:1
Ovid, 12*:7, 16
pagans
See also non-believers; individual names
barbarians (See barbarians)
hope, as lacking, 263:3–4
leaders of Madaura, letter from Augustine to:
on Christian faith, 232
Palatinus (deacon), 19*:1, 3
Palatinus (layman), letter from Augustine to:
on pursuing Christian wisdom, 218
Palestine, See Council of Diospolis
Pancarius, letter from Augustine to:
on Secundinus, complaints about, 251
parables, 243:2
parents, See family
Pascentius:
letters from Augustine to
on the Trinity, 238–239; 241
letters to Augustine from
on the Trinity, 240
Passerian, 19*:4
pastors, See clergy
Patroclus, bishop of Arles, 11*:1, 23–24,
26; 12*:15
Paul, 265:4
Paulinus, secretary to Ambrose
letter from Augustine to
on martyrs, difficulty writing about, 29*
peace:
of God, 238:16
obtaining peacefully, 229:2
Pelagians, 214:3–5; 215:1–2; 216:5;
217:4(2), 18(6); 4*:1–5; 19*:2–4
See also Caelestius
actions taken against, 12*:16; 16*:3
and grace controversy, 225:2
and marital concupiscence, 6*:2–8
Twelve Propositions against,
217:16(5)–18(6), 25–26(7)
penalty, See punishment
penance:
baptism and, 265:2, 6–8
and virtue, 211:4
Peregrinus (count), 227
Peregrinus (bishop), Alypius and:
letter from Augustine to
on church problems, 22*
Peregrinus (tribune), 28*:5–6
persecution:
clergy during times of, 228
of good people, 248:1–2
perseverance, 226:5–6; 248:2
Peter, 265:1–8
Philaster of Brescia, 222:2; 223:2
Pлотинус, 6*:1
poem: of Audax, 260; 261:4
poor:
helping (See charity)
wrongful treatment of, 247:1–4

Volume II/4
Volume II/4

Popes, See Boniface; Celestine; Damasus; Innocent; Zosimus
Porphyry, 226:3
possessions, See wealth
Possidius, letter from Augustine to:
on Alypius, Josias, Church discipline, 33A*
on jewelry, 245
power: abuse of, 20*:4
praise
See also flattery
on seeking human, 231:2–6
prayer, 211:7
for believers, 217:14, 28
the Lord’s Prayer, 217:6; 5*:2
for non-believers, 216:6; 217:1(1)–30; 264:2
and penance, 265:8
and temptation, 218:3
predestination, 217:13; 225:3, 5–6, 8; 226:3–7
The Predestination of Saints, See Prosper of Aquitaine
pride:
danger for teachers, 266:2–4
warning against, 211:6
priests
See also clergy
reasons for rejecting, 18*:1–2
and sexual temptation, 13*:1–3; 18*:1–3
principle (Trinity doctrine), 232:5
Priscillianists, 237:1–9; 264:1–3; 11*:1–27
Priscus, 16*:3; 23A*:6
Proculus, bishop of Marseilles, 219
property
See also wealth
disputes, 8*:1–2
Prosper of Aquitaine:
letter to Augustine from
on grace controversy, 225
prosperity, See wealth
prostitution, 259:3
A man who clings to a prostitute, 238:11;
241:2
Provence, Gaul: the grace controversy, 225–226
Proverbs, Book of, 215:4–8
psalms: prayer and, 211:7
Punic language, 20*:3
punishment, 250A
anathematization, 250–250A
appropriate, 14*:2
beating as, 8*:2; 20*:5
everlasting (See hell)
for rape, 9*:1–4; 14*:2; 15*:3–4
of sinner’s family, 1*:1–2, 5
for slave merchants, 10*:3–4
stoning as, 11*:13, 16
quarreling nuns, 211:1–16
Quintilian (African bishop), letter from Augustine to:
on widow and daughter, 212
Quintilian (rhetorician), 2*:12
Quodvultdeus, 25*
letters from Augustine to
on heresies, 222; 224
letters to Augustine from
on heresies, 221; 223
rape:
chastity and, 7
of nuns, 9*:1–4; 14*:2; 15*:3–4
Ravenna, 10*:1
reading: distaste for, 12*
rebirth, bath of, See baptism
Rebuke and Grace, 225:2; 226:7
See also Hadrumetum, monks of relies, 212
Renatus, 16:2*; 23A*:3
letter from Augustine to
on church problems, 23*
Reprimand for Quarreling Nuns, The, 211:4
reputation, 231:4
Restitutus, 18*:3
letters from Augustine to
on Church scandals and bad Christians, 249
on a misbehaving priest, 13*
Revisions, 224:2; 226:10
rich man in hell, 259:5
riches, See wealth
touching: grace and, 2*:6
rites, sacred, 235:2
Rogatists, See Renatus
Rogatus, 28*:7
Rome, See specific topics and events
Romulus (Christian convert), letter from Augustine to:
on wrongful tax collection, 247
Rules for Nuns, 211:5–16
Rusticus (bishop), 22*:8
Rusticus (pagan African), 252
letter from Augustine to
on orphaned girl, 255
Rusticus (priest), 211:4
sadness, 244:1–4; 263:3
Sagittius, 11*:2–20
salvation:
for all, 217:19; 225:4
baptism and, 2*:6
dispensers of, 261:2
with fear and trembling work out your salvation, 217:14–15, 21:22; 218:3
free choice and, 217:8(3)
if having fled...defilements of the world...they are again caught and defeated, 237:5
Stand firm...and do not again be bound by...slavery, 237:5
sanctifier (Trinity doctrine), 232:5
Sapida, letter from Augustine to: on death of her brother, 263
Sardica, Council of, 26*:1
Satan, See devil
scandals, 249; 18*:3
scripture:
canonical books, 237:3–8
as foretelling events, 232:3–4
Sebastian (count), 7*:1–2
Sebastian (monastery superior), letter from Augustine to: on sorrow over sinners, 248
secret of the king, 237:4, 6–9
Secundinus (Numidian priest): complaints about, 251
Secundus (Numidian bishop), 219
Seleuciana, letter from Augustine to: on baptism of apostles, 265
self-knowledge, 267
selfishness/selflessness, 211:12
sermons: “homilies,” 224:2
servant, Christ as, 238:17
servants:
punishing, 8*:2
slaves (See slavery)
Severa (heretic), 11*:2–20
Severian, 15*:2
Severus (bishop of Milevis), 213:1; 270
Severus (bishop of Minucia), 12*:13
Severus (heretic), 11*:2–6, 11–19
sex
See also adultery; chastity; concupiscence; fornication
flirtation, 211:10–11
impurity, 18*:3–3
in marriage, 6*:3–8; 262:1–11
temptation (See under temptation: sexual)
shipwreck, 265:8; 17*
sick, the: care of, 211:9
siege, by barbarians, See barbarians
Simpliciola, 212
sin:
Christ as without, 264:3
differing beliefs regarding, 4*:4
evil (See evil)
and God’s will, 2*:8–10
grace and, 215:8
and human nature, 2*:10
original (See original sin)
of others, 248:1–2
penance for (See penance)
sinners, 248–249
small sins, 265:8
singing: and prayer, 211:7
Stifis, 7*:1–2
Sextus, 214:3
Skeptics, Answer to, See Answer to the Skeptics
slavery, 10*:2–8; 24*:1–2
social classes, 22*:2
Son, the
See also Jesus Christ; Trinity as lesser God (See under Arianism: Homoian)
Son of Man, 238:17
See also Jesus Christ
sorrow, 244:1–4; 263:3
soul:
and body, 238:12
hating one’s own, 258:3
The Nature and Origin of the Soul, 23*:1, 3
Spain, 264:1–3; 11*:26–27
speaking (oratory), art of, 2*:12–13
spirit, 238:11; 241:2
meanings of word, 238:15; 5*:3
Spirit, Holy, See Holy Spirit
Stephen, Saint, 212
steward, position of, 24*:2
suffering:
adversity, 244:1–2
bodily, 228:7
suicide, 244:1–2
Summary of the Conference with the Donatists, 28*:2
Suppa, 26*
people of, letter from Augustine to on Donatius, 21*
Susanna, 262:9
Syagrius, bishop of Huesca, 11*:3–20
Tagetes, 234:1
Tarragona, 11*:2–20
taxation, 22*:2
wrongful, 247:1–4
teaching, 266:1–4
and grace, 217:12(4)
Tegulata, See Antoninus of Fussala
temptation, 243:1
prayer and, 218:3
and salvation, warnings regarding, 237:5
sexual, 6*:7; 13*:1–3 (See also concupiscence)
worldly allurements, 220:1–12; 231:6

Volume II/4
Ten Commandments: obeying, 2*:8  
Upon these two commandments the whole law and the prophets depend, 233

tenant farmers:  
bishop abusing (See Antoninus of Fussala) wrongful tax collection, 247:1–4
Terence, 220:9; 258:5; 12*:7, 14
Tertullian, 27*:3
Thaenae: Peregrinus as bishop, See Peregrinus
Thagaste:  
Alpyius as bishop (See Alpyius) clerics, letter from Augustine to memorandum from Alpyius, 15*
Thaive, Honoratus as bishop, See Honoratus
Themistocles, 231:3
Theodosius, 222:3
Thogonoetus, See Antoninus of Fussala
Timasius and James, 19*:3
Titi, bishop of Tarragona, 11*:2–20
Tobit, Book of, 237:8
Tractoria (Pope Zosimus), 12*:16
translation of written works, 261:5; 27*:2–3
Trinity, 238:11–25, 28; 239:3; 241:1–2; 242:2–3
doctrine of, 232:5
Son as lesser (See under Arianism: Homoian)

Trismegistus, Hermes, 234:1
Trusting God, 218:2
Truth, 238:23, 29
Tully, See Cicero
Tunic, 263:1
Turbanios, 10*:1
Twelve Propositions against the Pelagians, 217:16(5)–18(6), 25–26(7)
Tyconius, 249

unbelievers, See non-believers
understanding: and wisdom, 214:7
Urbanus, 20*:2
Ursitio, 11*:14–15
Urza, 216:2

Valentine, abbot of Hadrumetum: letter to Augustine from on grace controversy, 216
letters from Augustine to on grace controversy, 214–215A
Valentinian (bishop of Baiana, Numidia), letter from Augustine to: reply to questions, 5*

Valerius, 213:4
Vandals, 228
See also barbarians
vanity, 211:6, 10; 245:1–2
Victor, an African bishop: letter from Augustine to on a financial dispute, 8*
Victor, Vincent, 23A*:3
Victorinus (citizen of Hippo), 28*:5–7
Victorinus (subdeacon), 236:1–3
Virgil, ; 230:1; 258:5; 2*:3; 12*:15
virgins, consecrated, See consecrated virgins
virtue, 231:4
Vitalis, letter from Augustine to on Pelagian heresy, 217
wealth, 218:2; 220:7, 11; 244:1–2
almsgiving, 262:4–9
wickedness, See evil; sin
widower, Cornelius as, 259:1–5
widows:
atire of, 262:9–10
consecrated widowhood, 3*:1–4
mistreatment of, 20*:6
will, free, See free choice
will of God, 2*:7–10
wisdom, 214:7; 218:1–3; 238:23
wives, subjection of, 262:1–11
women:
clothing, appropriate, 262:9–10
and modesty, 211:14
ornaments worn by, 245:1
as weaker sex, 2*:4
wives, subjection of, 262:1–11
Word of God, 219:3; 232:5–6; 238:23
works, good, See good works
worldly cravings, See temptation
worshiping God, 233; 234:1
writing: instead of reading, 12*:5–6
writing (books) by Augustine, 224:2
See also specific titles

Xanthippus of Thagura, 26*:1
Xenophon, 234:1

yeast, 211:3
Zabi, 28*:1
Zosimus, the pope, 215:2; 12*:16
Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, introduction by Cardinal Michele Pellegrino, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Sermons 1-19 are on the Old Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.))

Volume III/1 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-0-911782-75-2, 6 x 9 in., 399 pp., 1990

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE
(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:5 4, 8
1:26-27 1, 5
2:2-3 9, 6
3:4 15/A, 7
3: 14 13, 1
3:18 7, 2
3:19 16/A, 5
15:6 14, 4
18:2 7, 6
21:12 2, 1
22:1 2, 2
22:12 2, 5
22:15 16/A, 12
22: 17-18 2, 8
22:18 2, 1; 4, 16; 8, 18
25:23 4, 17
25:27 4, 15
25:31 4, 12
27:4 4, 24
27:6-10 4, 13
27:24 4, 23
27:24-26 4, 24
27:27 4, 24. 26
27:27-29 4, 26
27:28 4, 8
27:30-33 5, 4
27:32-33 4, 21
27:33-36 4, 27-28
27:35 4, 15; 4, 22
27:37-38 4, 23. 29
27:38 5, 4
27:39 4, 35
27:40 4, 30. 33; 5, 4-5
32:28 5, 6
32:29 5, 6
3:4 6, 2
3:14 6, 2. 4; 7. I. 5. 7

Exodus

3:15 6, 5; 7. I. 7
4:1-9 6, 6
8:19 8, 18
20:3 8, 4. 18
20:7 8, 5. 18; 9, 3
20:8 8, 6. 17
20:12 8, 7; 9, 3-4. 7. 13
20:12-17 9, 7
20:13 8, 9; 9. 3. 13
20:14 8, 8; 9. 3. 13
20:15 8, 10; 9, 13
20:16 8, 11; 9, 13
20:17 8, 12-13; 9, 7. 13
32:32 10, 8
33:18 7, 7

Numbers

21:8-9 6, 7

Deuteronomy

6:4 9, 3

1 Kings

3:16-27 10, 1
17:9 11, 2
17:13 11, 2

Tobit

4:15 9, 14. 15. 16

Job

1:6 12, 1. 6
1:21 14, 6; 15/A, 6
2:9 15/A, 7
2:10 15/A, 7

Psalms

2:8 8, 18
2:10 13, 1
2:11 13, 2
2:12 13, 2
4:4 19, 2
6:5 16/A, 13
10:4 15/A, 4
10:14 14, 1. 6. 10

Volume III/1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Proverbs 1-19</th>
<th>Chapters 1-19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>12, 3</td>
<td>75:6-7</td>
<td>16/B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>8, 5</td>
<td>79: 12</td>
<td>14, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:3</td>
<td>16/A, 4</td>
<td>85:8</td>
<td>7, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>15, 8</td>
<td>86:15</td>
<td>9, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>13, 1</td>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>17, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:3</td>
<td>8, 16</td>
<td>101:2</td>
<td>16/A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:3-4</td>
<td>8, 5</td>
<td>102:27</td>
<td>7, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:12</td>
<td>2, 3</td>
<td>102:26-27</td>
<td>12, J O, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16</td>
<td>2, 8</td>
<td>104:24</td>
<td>16/A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:27</td>
<td>8, 18</td>
<td>104:27</td>
<td>2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:27-28</td>
<td>2, 8</td>
<td>106:1</td>
<td>16/A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:2</td>
<td>15, 4, 7</td>
<td>111:10</td>
<td>8, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:3</td>
<td>15, 4, 7.8</td>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>7, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>13, 3, 19, 1</td>
<td>118:22</td>
<td>4, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:10</td>
<td>14, 10</td>
<td>120:1</td>
<td>16/A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:9</td>
<td>8, 8</td>
<td>121:8</td>
<td>15, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:1</td>
<td>15/A, 1.3</td>
<td>126:6</td>
<td>11, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:6</td>
<td>4, 6</td>
<td>140:5</td>
<td>16/A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1</td>
<td>15/A, 3</td>
<td>142:5</td>
<td>4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:8</td>
<td>4, 10</td>
<td>144:1</td>
<td>9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12</td>
<td>16, 1, 2.3</td>
<td>144:9</td>
<td>9, 6, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34: 13-14</td>
<td>16, 1</td>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>2, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:1</td>
<td>16/A, 1.5, 6, 7</td>
<td>148:7-8-8</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:2</td>
<td>16/A, 8</td>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:3</td>
<td>16/A, 8</td>
<td>18:21</td>
<td>16/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:4</td>
<td>16/A, 9, 11, 12</td>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6-7</td>
<td>15/A, 5</td>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>16/A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:12</td>
<td>16/A, 1.4</td>
<td>7:30</td>
<td>19, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5</td>
<td>15, 2</td>
<td>Song Of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>16/B, 1.2</td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>19, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:1</td>
<td>5, 3, 6, 8</td>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:10</td>
<td>8, 6</td>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>12, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:3</td>
<td>17, 1, 3, 18, 1, 5</td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>15, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:16</td>
<td>15/A, 1</td>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>13, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:21</td>
<td>17, 3, 4, 5</td>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>18, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:1</td>
<td>20, 2</td>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>12, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:3</td>
<td>19, 1</td>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>8, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:10</td>
<td>19, 3</td>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>8, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:16</td>
<td>19, 3</td>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:17</td>
<td>19, 3</td>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>8, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:20</td>
<td>19, 4</td>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>15/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>8, 18</td>
<td>28:18</td>
<td>16/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1</td>
<td>15/A, 6; 19, 4</td>
<td>29:12</td>
<td>14, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1-3</td>
<td>15/A, 2</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:2</td>
<td>19, 4</td>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>7, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:3</td>
<td>19, 4</td>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>17, 1; 18, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:11</td>
<td>19, 4</td>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>11, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:12-14</td>
<td>19, 4</td>
<td>66:2</td>
<td>8, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:16-17</td>
<td>15/A, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:25</td>
<td>19, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75:5</td>
<td>16/B, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume III/1

| Jeremiah | 9:5 | 16/A, 2 | 25:44 | 18, 4 |
| 17:5 | 13, 2 | 25:45 | 9, 20; 18, 4 |
| 26:52 | 4, 34 |
| Ezekiel | 3:5-7 | 17, 2 | 2:5 | 16/A, 4 |
| 3:18-19 | 17, 2 | 2:17 | 4, 19 |
| 3:20 | | 2:19 | 16/A, 8 |
| 7:5 | 13, 2 | 10:18 | 15, 5 |
| 3:34-35 | 15, 8 | 13:32 | 16/A, 11 |
| New Testament | | | | |
| Matthew | 5:3 | 14, 1, 10 | 2:14 | 18, 5 |
| 5:8 | 4, 4, 6; 6, 1; 12, 1 | 6:45 | 15, 5 |
| 10 | | 7:47 | 10, 8 |
| 5:14 | 4, 6 | 11:20 | 8, 18 |
| 5:20 | 9, 19 | 11:41 | 16/A, 12 |
| 5:25 | 9, 16 | 16:9 | 14, 8 |
| 5:34-35 | 1, 5 | 16:13 | 16/B, 1 |
| 5:40 | 16, 2 | 16:19 | 15/A, 8 |
| 5:44 | 15, 8 | 16:22 | 14, 4 |
| 5:44-45 | 15, 8 | 16:25 | 15/A, 2 |
| 5:45 | 5, 2 | 18:9-10 | 16/B, 4 |
| 5:48 | 5, 2 | 18:11 | 16/B, 4 |
| 6:12 | 9, 21; 16/A, 8; 17, 5 | 18:12 | 9, 19; 16/B, 4 |
| 6:20 | 9, 20 | 18:13 | 16/B, 4 |
| 7:2 | 16/A, 4 | 18:14 | 16/B, 4 |
| 7:7 | 16/A, 1 | 19:2-8 | 14, 2 |
| 9:13 | 16/A, 12 | 20:21-25 | 13, 4 |
| 10:20 | 2, 5 | 23:34 | 5, 3 |
| 10:36 | 15, 6 | | |
| 11:12 | 5, 6 | | |
| 12:28 | 8, 18 | | |
| 12:50 | 10, 2 | | |
| 13:9 | 17, 1 | | |
| 13:30 | 5, 3 | | |
| 18:8 | 5, 8 | | |
| 18:15-17 | 17, 6 | | |
| 19:17 | 16, 3 | | |
| 21:43 | 5, 4 | | |
| 22:37 | 9, 7; 16/A, 5 | | |
| 22:37-40 | 8, 18 | 3:14-15 | 6, 7 |
| 22:39 | 9, 7; 16/A, 5 | 4:14 | 6, 8 |
| 22:40 | 16/A, 5 | 4:24 | 16/A, 9 |
| 23:2 | 10, 8 | 5:46 | 1, 2 |
| 23:9 | 14, 10 | 6:5-6 | 2, 2 |
| 25:12 | 19, 6 | 6:38 | 7, 3 |
| 25:31-34 | 5, 8 | 8:4-5 | 16/A, 1 |
| 25:34 | 18, 4 | 8:6 | 13, 5 |
| 25:35-36 | 18, 4 | 8:7 | 13, 4; 16/A, 4 |
| 25:37-39 | 18, 4 | 8:10-11 | 13, 5 |
| 25:40 | 9, 20 | 8:10 | 16/A, 5 |
| 25:41-42 | 18, 4 | 8:11 | 16/A, 5 |
| 25:42 | 9, 21 | 8:25 | 1, 2 |
| | | 8:44 | 8, 5 |

**Sermons 1-19**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Acts Of The Apostles</th>
<th>Romans</th>
<th>Galatians</th>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
<th>2 Corinthians</th>
<th>Ephesians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:56</td>
<td>16/A, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>4, 1; 19, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>7, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>16/A, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:7</td>
<td>12, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>3:6-7</td>
<td>4, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>4, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>4, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>5, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>9, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:48</td>
<td>10, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>9, 15; 15, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>12, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>13, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>8, 5; 12, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>4, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>8, 4, 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>4, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td>9:22</td>
<td>16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15</td>
<td>16/A, II</td>
<td></td>
<td>9:26-27</td>
<td>13, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30</td>
<td>5, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:1-3</td>
<td>4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>5, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:3-6</td>
<td>4, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>5, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>4, 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts Of The Apostles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37-38</td>
<td>16/A, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:51</td>
<td>7, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>4, 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27-28</td>
<td>7, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23</td>
<td>8, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>18, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28</td>
<td>2, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>14, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>10, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>2, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>16/A, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>19, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>4, 1; 12, 10, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>9, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>8, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>2, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5-6</td>
<td>10, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>1, 5; 15, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>10, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11-12</td>
<td>16/A, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>13, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23</td>
<td>8, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>18, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28</td>
<td>2, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>14, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>10, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>2, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>16/A, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>19, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>4, 1; 12, 10, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>10, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>9, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>8, 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>16/A, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>2, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5-6</td>
<td>10, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>1, 5; 15, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>10, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11-12</td>
<td>16/A, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-3</td>
<td>13, 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>1, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>References</td>
<td>Sermon Numbers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>1:18, 3:20, 12:12-13</td>
<td>10, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>10, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>2:5, 6:7-10, 6:16, 14, 4, 5; 7, 6, 6:17, 14, 2, 6</td>
<td>19, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>2:19, 2:20</td>
<td>15, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>12, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>2:2, 12:6</td>
<td>7, 6, 15/A, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:2, 2:19, 2:23, 3:6, 3:8-9, 3:8, 16/A, 15, 4, 16/A, 9, 3</td>
<td>15/A, 2, 16/A, 16/A, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:5, 3:4</td>
<td>15, 8, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>2:6, 4:3-4</td>
<td>16/A, 15, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sermons 1-19
INDEX

A
abandonment, to God, 14:1, 2
abortion, 10:5
Abraham, 2:1-9; 4:11, 16; 6:5; 7:4, 6;
8:14; 14:4, 5; 15A:5; 16A:12, 13;
19:3
actors, 9:21
Adam, 5:3, 7; 6:8; 7:4; 9:2; 15A:7
Adimantus, 12:2
adultery, 8:8, 12; 9:3, 4, 7, 11-15, 18;
13:4, 6; 15:3; 16A:4-6; 17:4
adversary, 9:3, 8, 12, 21
almsgiving, 9:17-21; 11:1; 16A:12
angel(s), 4:3; 5:1-8; 6:2; 7:2-6; 8:15;
12:1-12; 19:5, 6
anger, 8:9; 17:6
animals, 8:8; 9:17
apostles, 4:6
Arians, 5:3
astrology, -436; 9:3, 17, 18; 15A:4
authority, 13:6, 7; 15A:6
avarice, 9:20; 14:7
boils, 8:9
burning bush, 6:1-8; 7:1-7
C
Caesar, 13:4
catechumens, 19:6
charity, 1:1; 4:20, 33; 10:8; see also
love
chastisement, see punishment
chastity, 9:3, 8, 11, 12
children, 4A; 9:20, 21; 13:9; 15A:3
Christ
born of Mary, 12:12
coming of, 17:1
dexample of, 5:3; 14:9; 16A:9-10
figures of, 4:22
foreshadowed, 4:16
as God, 5:7
and God’s angel, 7:5
as Truth, 8:5
Church, 4:11-13, 32-35; 5:3, 4, 7, 8; 8:16,
18; 9:3; 10:2, 7; 15:1
circumcision, 4:8, 18; 10:2
clergy, 17:2
commendments, 8:1-18; 9:1-21; 18:1
confession, see pardon
conscience, 12:4, 6; 13:7; 16A:7, 8
corruption, 18:5; 19:6
courage, 4:2
covetousness, 8:13; 9:7, 12, 15
creation, 8:17
cruelty, 9:13
Cyprian, St., 8:16
D

Volume III/1
darkness, 8:12
death, 6:7; 8:13, 15; 9:2; 13:8; 15A:7, 16A:11; 17:7
debt, 1:1
deceit, 16:4
desert, 4:9
devil, 2:3; 4:9, 36; 9:3, 21; 12:1-12; 15A:6, 7; 16B:1
disciples, 10:6
discipline, 13:9; 15A:3-4; see also punishment
doctor, 2:3; 4:2; 9:10; 15A:8, 9; 16B:1
dog-fly, 8:7
dogs, 8:7; 9:21
donatus, 4:33; 5:3
drunkenness, 17:3

earth, 13:4
earthquakes, 19:6
Egyptians, 8:16
Elijah, 11:1-3
enemy, 15:7-9
entertainment, popular, 9:5, 6
envy, 4:28
equality, of women and men, 9:12
Esau, 4:1-37; 5:4, 5
eternal life, 4:8; 16:3
eternity, 7:7; 16A:1
eucharist, 5:7; 9:14; 17:5
Eve, 5:3; 8:15; 15A:7
excommunication, 17:3
Exodus, 8:14

F
false witness, 8:11; 9:7, 12, 13
falsehood, 8:5; 9:13
family, 9:20
farmers, 13:4
fasting, 9:17, 21
fear, 13:2, 4, 9; 17:3
fever, 9:10; 19:6
fidelity, 9:4
figures, 4:9-12, 20-26; 6:3, 6, 8; 8:3, 4; 10:1; 15:4
fire, 15:4, 7
firstborn, 4:23; 8:13
flies, 8:18
forgiveness, see pardon
fornication, 9:3, 11, 14, 15, 18; 15:3
frogs, 8:5, 17, 18
furnace, 15:4, 5

G
Gentiles, 4:18; 10:2
gnats, 8:6, 17
goats, 4:19
God, 4:5
abandonment to, 14:1, 2
and Christ, 5:7
as Father, 14:10
finger of, 8:18
grace of, 16B:1
harm to, 9:15
help from, 16A:1
house of, 15:1-3, 9
and light, 4:5-6
love of, 2:4; 5:2; 9:9
manifest, 6:1; 11:2
as merciful and just, 9:1
nature of, 7:7
patience of, 9:2; 18:2
praise of, 15A:4, 6, 7
as recompense, 11:3
reveals his name, 6:4
second name of, 6:5
service of, 9:16
sight of, 12:6
and signs, 6:6-8
silence of, 17:4
submission to, 15A:8
temple of, 9:15
testing of, 2:2, 3
vision of, 4:4
voice of, 12:2, 4, 5, 7
word of, 4:31; 5:1; 6:2; 9:3
works in us, 13:3
gold, 4:5; 8:16; 15:4, 5, 7; 9:16; 19:5
good, 15:5
good days, 16:1, 4, 5
good life, 16:2
good people, 15:1-9; 18:1-3; 19:4

Volume III/1

Sermons 1-19
Sermons 1-19

good works, 9:14, 21; 11:1; 15A:5; 18:4
goodness, 16A:6
greed, 9:13; 14:7, 8
Greeks, 10:2
guile, 4:15, 22, 23, 27
guitarist, 9:13

H
habit, 16A:2, 3; 17:3
Hagar, 10:2
hail, 8:10
hand, 6:8
happiness, 19:4
hatred, 5:2; 9:9; 19:6
health, 15A:7
heathen, 17:6
heaven, 19:5
heresy, 4:33; 5:1, 3; 7:4; 9:13; 15:6
Holy Spirit, 4:1, 18; 7:2, 6; 8:6, 17, 18; 9:6; 16:1
hope, 4:9; 13:2; 14:1
humility, 4A; 15A:5; 16B:2-4
hunter, 9:13, 21

I
idols, 4:12
image, 9:9; 13:3, 4
iniquity, 9:13
inheritance, 8:13; 15A:3, 4
insincerity, 10:5-8
intention, 5:2
intercourse, 9:18
Isaac, 2:1, 8; 4:11, 13, 21-30, 35; 6:5; 19:3
Isaiah, 6:2
Israel, 4:15

J
Jacob, 4:1-37; 5:1-8; 6:5
Jerusalem, 4:8; 10:2; 16A:9
Jews, 4:12, 13, 18, 21; 5:3, 4, 5; 6:3; 9:3, 6; 10:2, 3; 15:6; 16A:4; 18:4; 19:6
Job, 12:1-12; 15A:6, 7
John, 1:3, 5
John the Baptist, 4:6
joy, 4:4; 13:2
Judas, 8:15; 10:5, 6; 12:4
judgment, 9:2; 13:1-9; 17:5,7; 18:2, 4
justice, 4:7; 9:8; 13:2; 16B:3
justification, 2:9

K
kids, 4:19, 20
kings, 13:4

L
Laban the Syrian, 12:4
language, 8:16
law, 2:2, 9; 6:3; 8:18; 9:7; 10:3; 13:4; 18:1
Lazarus, 14:3-5; 15A:2, 5
lechery, 9:14
leniency, 13:9
lentils, 4:12
lies, 16A:2
life, 9:8; 16:4-5; 17:7
light, 4:5-7
lion, 4:22, 23
locusts, 8:11
Lot, 7:6
love, 2:4; 4:20; 5:6; 9:7, 9, 13; 10:5, 6; 13:8; 17:2; see also charity
lust, 9:13, 15

M
Manichees, 1:1-5; 2:2; 5:3; 12:1-12
marriage, 9:3, 4, 11, 12, 15, 18
martyrs, 4:2, 37
materialist understanding, 4:1, 3, 12, 33
Matthias, 12:4
money, 9:21; 13:7; 14:2; 15A:5, 9
Moses, 1:2, 5; 6:1-8; 7:1-7; 8:3, 17, 18; 9:7
motherhood, 4A; 10:4, 7, 8
murder, 8:9, 15; 9:3, 4, 7, 12, 15, 18
mystery, 2:2, 6

N
New Testament, 1:1, 2; see also Scripture
number, 8:17, 18; 9:7
nurse, 4A

Volume III/1
Volume III/1

O

obedience, 2:5
oil, 15:9; 19:6
Old Testament, 1:1; 4:9, 10, 11; 12:1; see also Scripture
orphan, 14:1, 10

P

pagans, 5:8; 15:3, 6; 19:6
pardon, 5:2, 3; 9:21; 10:6; 16A:5, 6; 17:5, 6; 19:2; see also repentance
parents, 8:7; 9:3, 4, 7, 13, 15
Paul, 1:3, 5; 4:6, 26; 8:15; 15:3, 5; 16A:10, 11
people, 4:11, 17, 18; 9:16
persecution, 4:36
Peter, 4:2, 6; 8:15; 12:4
Pharao, 12:4; see also plagues
Pharisees, 9:19; 13:5; 16B:4
Philip, 2:2
piety, 8:14; 9:20; 15A:5
plagues, 8:1-18
poor, 4A; 9:19-20; 14:1-10; 15A:2; 18:4
poverty, 18:1
prayer, 9:17, 21; 15:7-8; 15A:9; 19:2
preaching, 5:1
pride, 14:2, 4
prison, 8:15
progress, 16A:1, 13
promised land, 4:13
prostitute, 9:14, 15
punishment, 13:9; 19:2; see also discipline

R

ram, 19:3
rapacity, 9:13
Rebecca, 4:11, 14, 31
repentance, 18:2, 5; 19:2, 3; see also pardon
rich, 8:10; 9:20-21; 14:2-9; 15A:2, 5, 6; 18:1, 3; 19:5
rock, 4:22, 23
rod, 8:3, 17

S

sabbath, 4:8; 8:6, 17, 18; 9:3, 6, 21
sacraments, 4:31, 35
sacrifice, 2:8, 9; 4:8; 16A:12; 19:3
Sarah, 2:7
schism, 5:1; 10:8
Scripture, 1:5; 2:2, 5-7; 4:8, 10, 13, 18; 5:4; 6:1, 2, 8, 7:3; 8:2, 5, 17; 12:2, 3, 8; 17:1, 3; see also figures
serpent, 6:7; 8:3, 17
servant, 8:10, 9:16
seven, 8:17
sexuality, 8:8
shame, 13:9
shows, 9:17, 21
sickness, 9:10; 15A:7
signs, see figures
silence, 16A:8; 17:4; 18:1, 5
sin, 4:20; 9:21; 10:5; 13:8; 15A:2; 16B:1-3; 17:3; 19:2, 4, 17
Sitifis, 19:6
smell, 4:28
Solomon, 10:1-8
song, 9:5, 8, 16
soothsayers, 4:36
stars, 1:4; 16B:2
stealing, see theft
straw, 15:4, 5, 7
sun, 4:5, 6; 12:11, 12
superstition, 9:13
sword, 4:33
symbols, see figures
Synagogue, 10:2

T

tax, 13:4; 16B:4
temple, 6:2; 9:15
temptation, 2:2, 3; 4:9, 34, 36; 15:4; 16A:12
testing, see temptation
theft, 8:10, 13, 14, 16; 9:7, 12, 13, 15; 17:4
thorns, 6:3; 7:2
time, 1:5; 9:2; 11:1; 16:1, 2; 16A:1; 17:7
tithes, 9:19

Sermons 1-19
tongue, 16:4; 16A:2-9
trials, see temptation
Trinity, 1:5; 7:4, 6; 8:17; 9:4, 6, 7
trust, 2:1-9; 9:16
trust, 8:5; 9:1; 12:4

U
unity, 4:30; 7:4; 8:17, 18; 10:4, 8
upright people, see good people

V
vacation, 8:17
vessels, 15:2, 3, 5, 7, 9

W
Vincent, 4:36
violence, 8:13
water, 6:8; 8:4, 17
wine, 15A:5
wisdom, 6:8; 8:17; 12:2
women, 9:12; 12:12
work, 8:17; see also sabbath
works, 2:9; 8:13, 17; 11:1, 3; 16:5;
16A:11; 16B:2

Z
Zacchaeus, 9:19; 14:2
Index from
Sermons 20-50

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 20-50 are on the Old Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/2 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-0-911782-78-3, 6 x 9 in., 400 pp., 1991

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:26 43, 3
1:31 29, 1
2:21 49/A, 1
3:1 46, 28
3:19 45, 4
22:18 22, 4; 46, 33; 47, 22
49:9 37, 2

Exodus
20:12 45, 2
20:17 26, 9
33:11 23, 14
33:13 23, 14
33:19 27, 3

Deuteronomy
5:8 33, 3
5:11 33, 3
5:17-21 33, 4
6:4 33, 3
32:39 24, 7

Joshua
15:8 46, 40

2 Chronicles
6:18 23, 7

Job
1:9 22/A, 2

1:21 21, 9; 22/A, 2; 25/A, 3; 45, 2
2:10 22/A, 3

Psalms
2:8 46, 11, 33, 35; 47, 30
2:11-12 30, 10
3:9 23, 10
8:4 24, 5
11:1 47, 27
11:5 34, 8; 35, 2
11:6 47, 7
12:6 50, 11
14:4 46, 23
15:5 38, 8
16:5 47, 30
18:28 37, 10
19:4 46, 24
19:4,6 32, 23; 46, 34
19:5 44, 6
19:6 22, 3, 7; 46, 34
19:22 22, 1
20:6 45, 7
21:11 44, 7
22:16-17 27, 5
22:16-18 22, 1
22:27 46, 35; 47, 28
22:27-28 46, 33
24:1 39, 2
27:4 37, 30
27:9 20, 2
27:14 40, 1
30:10 49/A, 1
32:5 29/A, 4
32:8 24, 4
32:9 43, 3
34:5 25, 1; 28/A, 1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sermons 20-50</th>
<th>Volume III/2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34:12-13</td>
<td>25, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:18</td>
<td>21, 2; 41, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:14</td>
<td>41, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:6-7</td>
<td>23, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:7</td>
<td>23, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:8</td>
<td>23, 12; 32, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>23, 10; 28, 2; 28/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:1</td>
<td>25/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:2</td>
<td>25/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:4</td>
<td>21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:9</td>
<td>25, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>38, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:11</td>
<td>29/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:2-3</td>
<td>33, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:4</td>
<td>47, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>20, 1, 2, 3; 29, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:3</td>
<td>31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:6</td>
<td>47, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>27, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:4</td>
<td>32, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:2</td>
<td>20/A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:11</td>
<td>37, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:21</td>
<td>47, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:1</td>
<td>20, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:3</td>
<td>20, 2; 29/A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:8</td>
<td>23, 1; 28, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:9-10</td>
<td>29/A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:9-10</td>
<td>20, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:2</td>
<td>32, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:8</td>
<td>25/A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:12-13</td>
<td>46, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:7</td>
<td>26, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:8</td>
<td>31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:10</td>
<td>48, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:10-11</td>
<td>47, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:1</td>
<td>20/A, 1, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:2</td>
<td>47, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:8</td>
<td>29, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:10</td>
<td>25/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:10</td>
<td>21, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:2</td>
<td>22, 1, 2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:9</td>
<td>23, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:30</td>
<td>47, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:35</td>
<td>43, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:28</td>
<td>33/A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71:4</td>
<td>22/A, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>37, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:11</td>
<td>45, 6; 46, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1</td>
<td>29/A, 2; 47, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1-3</td>
<td>48, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:11</td>
<td>48, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:12</td>
<td>48, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:13</td>
<td>48, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:14</td>
<td>48, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:15</td>
<td>48, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:22</td>
<td>23, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:23</td>
<td>32, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>23/A, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:5</td>
<td>39, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:47</td>
<td>43, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:1</td>
<td>46, 23, 47, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:2</td>
<td>46, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:5</td>
<td>46, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:1</td>
<td>24, 1, 4, 7; 46, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:4</td>
<td>33/A, 1; 37, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:12</td>
<td>26, 15, 30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88:5</td>
<td>26, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:1</td>
<td>49/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:12</td>
<td>46, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:12</td>
<td>25, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:12-13</td>
<td>25/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:13</td>
<td>25, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:13-14</td>
<td>25, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:2</td>
<td>47, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:4</td>
<td>47, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:6</td>
<td>26, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:6-7</td>
<td>47, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:7</td>
<td>47, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1</td>
<td>27, 1; 33, 5; 46, 33, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1-3</td>
<td>27, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:2</td>
<td>27, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97:11</td>
<td>21, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98:3</td>
<td>46, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100:3</td>
<td>26, 1, 2, 4, 5, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:9</td>
<td>29/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:14</td>
<td>24, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:24</td>
<td>29/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105:3</td>
<td>28, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108:5</td>
<td>47, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:3</td>
<td>44, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:10</td>
<td>37, 3, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113:3</td>
<td>37, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:8</td>
<td>24, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>28/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>28/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>28/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:16</td>
<td>37, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:1</td>
<td>29, 1, 5; 29/A, 1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:62</td>
<td>37, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:67</td>
<td>29/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:71</td>
<td>25, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:133</td>
<td>30, 1, 6, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:134</td>
<td>30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:162</td>
<td>37, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:1-2</td>
<td>46, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scripture</td>
<td>Pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:4</td>
<td>47, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126:5-6</td>
<td>31, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126:6</td>
<td>31, 1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>21, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7-8</td>
<td>23, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:1</td>
<td>42, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:3-4</td>
<td>20, 2; 29, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142:5</td>
<td>25, 1; 45, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:3-4</td>
<td>32, 9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:4</td>
<td>32, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:8</td>
<td>32, 24, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:9</td>
<td>32, 5, 8; 32, 9; 33, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:11</td>
<td>32, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:12</td>
<td>32, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:12-15</td>
<td>32, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:13</td>
<td>32, 25, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:13.14</td>
<td>32, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:15</td>
<td>32, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:2</td>
<td>33/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:3</td>
<td>33/A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:4</td>
<td>33/A, 3; 47, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:5</td>
<td>33/A, 4; 47, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>23, 15; 24, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149:1</td>
<td>34, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149:2</td>
<td>34, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:26</td>
<td>37, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:27</td>
<td>37, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:28</td>
<td>37, 25, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:29</td>
<td>37, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:30</td>
<td>37, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31</td>
<td>37, 29, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>46, 35, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>46, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>37, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>21, 3; 37, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>36, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3.8-9</td>
<td>22, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>48, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>20, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>46, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>38, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-5</td>
<td>38, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>20, 2; 47, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>20, 3; 4; 39, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>40, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23</td>
<td>41, 1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:9</td>
<td>23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:12</td>
<td>31, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11-12</td>
<td>42, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>37, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>47, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>46, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>43, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:9</td>
<td>37, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6-7</td>
<td>25, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6.8</td>
<td>20/A, 9; 25/A, 1; 33/A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:14</td>
<td>47, 5, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>44, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2-3</td>
<td>27, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:3</td>
<td>44, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7-8</td>
<td>44, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>44, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:9</td>
<td>44, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:46</td>
<td>44, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:3</td>
<td>37, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:1</td>
<td>37, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:13</td>
<td>45, 1, 2, 3, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Volume III/2

---

Sermons 20-50
## Sermons 20-50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jeremiah</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>26, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>22, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td></td>
<td>25, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ezekiel</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td></td>
<td>50, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>35, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>20, 3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:2-6</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:7-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>40, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:4-10</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 17</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 21</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 24</td>
<td>47, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 24</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 25</td>
<td>26, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 26</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 3</td>
<td>6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:18-19</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 16</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:22</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 20</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:23-24</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 21</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 22</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 25</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:29</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:30-31</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:31</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Daniel</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:34</td>
<td></td>
<td>45, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Micah</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:6-8</td>
<td></td>
<td>48, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Habakkuk</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>49, 2</td>
<td>4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 20</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Haggai</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>50, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>50, 1</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

#### Matthew

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>24, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>36, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>28, 2</td>
<td>37, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>22/A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>23, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>37, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>33, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>40, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td></td>
<td>45, 8</td>
<td>46, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>32, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>25/A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 7</td>
<td>50, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 7</td>
<td>23, 49, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19-20</td>
<td></td>
<td>36, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>37, 9</td>
<td>38, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3-4</td>
<td></td>
<td>49, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td></td>
<td>37, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td>46, 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41-42</td>
<td></td>
<td>41, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:42</td>
<td></td>
<td>39, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>37, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>29, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>24, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>30, 8</td>
<td>41, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-29</td>
<td></td>
<td>30, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td></td>
<td>24, 4</td>
<td>30, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>47, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume III/2**
Volume III/2

13:28  10:35  47, 6  46, 4
13:28-29  12:16-20  47, 6  32, 27
13:30  12:17  47, 6  36, 9
13:37-39  12:20  47, 6  36, 9
13:39  12:35  47, 6  46, 5
15:14  12:43  47, 6  37, 15
15:19  12:46  47, 6  37, 15
15:28  14:11  37, 21  23/A, 4
16:26  16:9  36, 9  41, 6; 50, 1, 6, 8
17:5  16:11-12  43, 5  50, 8
19:6  16:19  45, 5  33/A, 4
19:16-17  16:19-20  38, 7  41, 4
19:18-21  16:20  38, 7  33/A, 4
19:28  16:20-21  37, 19  33/A, 4
20:22  16:21-22  20/A, 6  41, 4
20:22-23  16:22-23  20/A, 8  41, 4
22:13  16:25  31, 6  41, 5
22:37  16:25-26  34, 7  41, 4
22:39  16:27-28  34, 8  41, 4
23:3  16:29  46, 9, 21, 22  41, 4
23:10  16:31  23, 1  41, 4
23:26  18:10  45, 9  36, 11
24:24-25  18:11-12  37, 27  36, 11
25:31  18:13  37, 19  36, 11
25:31-32  18:14  47, 6  36, 11
25:31-33  19:5  25/A, 1  25, 8
25:34  19:10  25/A, 1  20, 1
25:34-35  23:21  37, 29  44, 6
25:35-40  23:26  47, 4  44, 4; 49, 9, 11
25:40  23:33  42, 2  23:46
25:41  23:46  25, 8; 38, 8  25, 7
25:42  24:20  22, 3; 23/A, 1; 25/A, 1  37, 2
26:38  24:25  31, 3  47, 10
26:39  24:44, 46, 47  31, 3  44, 6
27:57-66  24:46  44, 7  46, 40
28:5  24:47  44, 7  46, 32; 47, 26
28:13  24/27  44, 7  47, 26

Mark
6:3  3:1  44, 3  23, 15; 26, 7; 27, 6, 16, 34, 2; 44, 3
6:37-38  4:1  42, 1  26, 6; 37, 18
9:23  6:1-3  42, 3  20/A, 8; 23/A, 3; 36, 3; 45, 5
9:24  1:3  43, 8, 9  44, 6
10:21  1:14  43, 9  22, 10; 23/A, 3; 36, 3; 37, 18; 47, 21

Luke
1:42  1:29  49/A, 1  26, 15
6:37-38  2:19  42, 1  37, 2
8:15  3:14-15  47, 17  37, 2
10:20  3:29  33/A, 4  23, 1

Sermons 20-50
### Sermons 20-50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Acts</th>
<th>Romans</th>
<th>1 Corinthians</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:51 28, 2; 45, 4</td>
<td>7:15 30, 3</td>
<td>1:10 46, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:34 33, 3</td>
<td>7:25 26, 5; 26, 12</td>
<td>1:11-13 46, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:44 28/A, 1</td>
<td>8:15 33, 1</td>
<td>1:13 46, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:46 26, 10</td>
<td>8:20 33, 3</td>
<td>1:20 46, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:48 44, 3</td>
<td>8:24 23, 12; 27, 5</td>
<td>1:26-28 43, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:58 22, 1</td>
<td>8:24-25 27, 5</td>
<td>1:29 47, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:16 46, 30</td>
<td>8:25 37, 8</td>
<td>1:31 47, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:18 31, 3</td>
<td>8:31 37, 15</td>
<td>2:3 23, 2, 3; 37, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:27 46, 23, 29, 30, 32</td>
<td>9:15 27, 3</td>
<td>2:6 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:30 47, 20</td>
<td>9:18-20 27, 3</td>
<td>2:11 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:34 33, 2</td>
<td>9:20 26, 13, 15</td>
<td>2:14-15 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:9-10 47, 20</td>
<td>10:27 26, 13</td>
<td>3:1-2 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:21 27, 6</td>
<td>15:5 27, 5</td>
<td>3:4 27, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:23 23, 6</td>
<td>15:15 27, 5, 45, 10</td>
<td>3:6-7 43, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:27 24, 4; 47, 22</td>
<td>16:12 27, 5</td>
<td>3:12 50, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:28 47, 20</td>
<td>17:24 41, 7</td>
<td>3:17 23, 7; 24, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:30 26, 10; 29, 2</td>
<td>19:30 37, 2</td>
<td>4:3 49, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:31 26, 10</td>
<td>21:15-17 46, 23, 30</td>
<td>4:5 47, 23; 49, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:5 30, 8</td>
<td>21:17 46, 30</td>
<td>4:6 23, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:15 27, 5, 45, 10</td>
<td>Acts</td>
<td>4:7 30, 10; 35, 3; 43, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:12 27, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>9:7 46, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:24 41, 7</td>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>9:11 37, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:30 37, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:4 46, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:10-13 22, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:13 46, 12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:14 22, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>10:24 32, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:32 47, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:33 47, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:10 46, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:11-13 46, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:13 46, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:20 46, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:26-28 43, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:29 47, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:31 47, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:3 23, 2, 3; 37, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:6 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:11 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:14-15 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:1-2 23, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:4 27, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:6-7 43, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:12 50, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:17 23, 7; 24, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:3 49, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:5 47, 23; 49, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:6 23, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:7 30, 10; 35, 3; 43, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9:7 46, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9:11 37, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:4 46, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:13 46, 12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:24 32, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:32 47, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10:33 47, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/2

12:16 35, 1
12:26 46, 7
13:1 37, 3
13:1-3 37, 28
13:13 41, 3
14:1 41, 3
15:22 23, 11
15:33 35, 1
15:53 50, 12

2 Corinthians
1:12 47, 12
2:15 28, 2; 31, 2
3:11 50, 11
4:17-18 37, 8
5:6 31, 5; 38, 3
5:6-7 27, 6; 33/A, 1
5:7-6 21, 1
5:10 46, 14
5:15 37, 5
5:17 26, 12
6:10 37, 14
6:11 37, 23
6:16 23, 7
7:1 45, 1; 2, 6; 8, 9
8:9 36, 3; 5
8:13 25/A, 4; 42, 2
8:21 47, 12
9:6 31, 2
9:7 31, 5
10:17 46; 30; 50, 11
12:8-9 47, 17
12:14 37, 20
13:3 46, 12

Galatians
1:10 47, 12
2:21 26, 9
3:19 26, 9
3:21 26, 11
3:22 26, 9
3:27 37, 16
4:4 49/A, 1
4:14 37, 19
4:14-15 46, 7
4:16 46, 7
4:22-23 33, 1
5:17 25, 4; 30, 4; 50, 12
5:19-22 37, 28
6:4 35, 2
6:5 35, 2
6:9 31, 2
6:10 31, 2
6:14 27, 6

Ephesians
1:4 26, 4
2:3 26, 15
2:8 26, 14
2:8-9 23/A, 1
2:13 37, 21
2:14 25, 7; 47, 22
4:7 32, 11
4:26 49, 7
5:8 28/A, 1; 49, 3
5:31-32 45, 5
6:2 33, 4
6:12 22/A, 5

Philippians
2:6 44, 3; 46, 11
2:6-7 47, 20
2:6-8 41, 1
2:7-8 30, 9
2:7-11 47, 20
2:9 37, 2
2:21 37, 5; 46, 2
4:5-6 21, 2
4:11 46, 4
4:14 46, 4
4:15 37, 20
4:17 37, 14; 46, 4; 47, 25

Colossians
3:3 25/A, 1; 41, 5
3:3-4 25/A, 1
3:4 36, 4
3:9 32, 4

1 Thessalonians
2:7 23, 3
5:5 49, 3

1 Timothy
2:5 26, 7; 47, 21
4:4 21, 3
4:12 46, 9
6:7 39, 2
6:8-10 25/A, 2
6:9 39, 3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>50, 1, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 36, 2, 5, 6; 39, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-18</td>
<td>25/A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 39, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 36, 6; 39, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 39, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>25/A, 4; 36, 6; 39, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>37, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>46, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>23, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>46, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>31, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>46, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>27, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>46, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>23, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td>35, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>23, 15; 26, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>41, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>23, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>23, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>23/A, 4; 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>33/A, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>24, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>29, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>50, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18-19</td>
<td>43, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>49, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>28/A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>47, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>21, 1; 23, 1, 16; 27, 6; 38, 3; 49, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>22/A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>49, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>31, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8-16</td>
<td>21, 2; 23, 8; 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>34, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>34, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>23, 7; 33, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>30, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>46, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Spruog)

A

Abraham, 20A:9; 22:1, 4; 33:1
Adam, 22:9, 10; 22A:3; 23:11; 26:2, 11, 13; 33A:2; 37:9; 45:4, 5; 46:28
adultery, 30:7; 45:8, 9
adversity, 20:2
advice: be wise for self and neighbor, 35:1
Africa, 46:18, 37, 38
afterlife:
  - good people, bad people, 38:2
  - perfect happiness, 50:12
  - time of sight, 38:3
  - true life, 39:5
  see also eternal life
Agabus (prophet), 22:2
allegory in Scripture, 32:6
Alleluia, 29A:1
almsgiving:
  - sins cleansed by, 42:1
  - test for the rich, 39:6
angel(s), 20A:4, 5; 27:6; 37:19
the annunciation, 50:10
created good, 29:1
fellow servant, 46:17
God’s word, 28:4
harvest time, 47:16, 18
harvesters, 47:6
made from man, 45:10
riches, 37:25
anger: speck becomes beam, 49:7
Annunciation, The, 50:10
arrogance, 30:10
attachment, 38:7; 46:18
avarice, 25A:2; 38:6; 41:3; 50:1, 4, 6, 8, 9, 13
B

badness:
  - bad luck, 32:19
  - desire for bad life, 20:4
  - drain the dregs of, 35:1, 3
  - good fortune of bad people, 48:4
  - life events, bad people, 48:8
  - responsibility, 35:2
  - source of, 29:4; 29A:2
  - willing, 30:3
baleful days, 25:3-4; 25A:3
banquet, 28:2
baptism: clothed: putting on Christ, 37:16
beggar, 32:23
belching, 20A:8
belief/believers:
  - Christ as mediator, 26:7
  - God as cause, 26:5
  - help my unbelief, 43:9
  - human condition without, 26:3
  - seeing into your heart, 49:2
  - serve God with fear, 30:10
  - understanding and, 43:4, 7-8, 9
  - without, every man a liar, 28A:1
benefits: credit God, not self, 26:15
bishops (as shepherds):
  - accountable to God, 46:2
  - bad example, 46:9
Sermons 20-50

bad shepherd: the enfeebled not strengthened, 46:13
bad shepherds: do what they say . . . 46:22
blind leading the blind, 46:21
charge over Christians, 46:2
division and ugliness, 46:37
feed and rest, 46:24
feeding themselves, not the sheep, 46:2, 3, 19
feeding with judgment, 46:27
God: “I myself will be . . .” 46:25, 26
good shepherds, 46:23, 26
grapes from thorns (symbol), 46:22
heretical, 46:21
indifference to heresies, 46:15
lamps enlightening the people, 46:5
listen to Scripture, 46:33
milk from the sheep, 46:5
mountains of Israel, 46:25
my sheep hear my voice, 46:29, 30, 32
pastors are sheep also, 47:2
Paul as example, 46:7
permissiveness, 46:8
sheep that have gone astray, 46:14-17, 21, 23
silence is dangerous, 46:20
souls with inner paralysis, 46:13
strengthening the feeble sheep, 46:10, 12
teachers, 23:1
temporal support (contributions), 46:3
test: voice of Christ, 46:31, 32
unity, 46:30, 37
voice: lamb or partridge, 46:31
wool clothing, 46:6
blessedness, 32:28
blood: money as, 21:7
boasting, 36:11
body: temple, 23:6; 24:1
born again, 32:27
bread:
  living, 45:4, 5
  price of, 37:20
building foundation, 20A:7
business man, 21:4

C
Canaanites, 37:21
captivity: redemption, 27:2-3
carnal people, 23:3, 4
cattle, 23:11
charity:
  acquiring, 34:7
  Christ present in his poor, 38:8;
    42:2
cymbal clashing, 37:3
dearness, 34:7
fervor, 46:38
fruit of the Spirit, 37:28
fullness of the law, 33:2
give yourself, 34:7
God’s promises, 32:14
greater than faith/hope, 41:3
in the heart, 47:23
just man’s reward, 41:6
kindheartedness, 50:7
neighbor in poverty, 41:1
one-piece tunic of Christ, 22:1
opportunities to do good, 50:3
sharing with the poor, 50:2
support of bishops, 46:5
unity, 46:18
see also love
chastity: valiant woman, 37:10
cheating, 38:4
cheerfulness: good works, 31:3, 5
children:
  discipline; love, 21:8
  filial piety, 45:2
  Job’s, 22A:2
  son and father, 45:2
children of God: peacemakers,
  23:16-17
Christ, see Jesus Christ
Christian life:
  chosen by Christ, 43:6
  from fear to love, 32:8
  imitation of Christ suffering, 46:10
  new life, 32:25

Volume III/2
persecution, 46:11
preached everywhere: why so much evil? 31:5
summer/winter, 36:4
take my yoke, 30:9
Christians:
anxious to hear shepherd’s voice, 47:4
bishops and their flocks, 46:2
care for weaker “sheep,” 47:14
divisions among, 47:28
fruit of the trees, 47:25
God’s possession, 47:30
good and just, 47:18
judging between sheep and sheep, 47:6, 7, 9, 14, 19
justification, 26:9
listen, while there is still time, 47:5
peace with one another, 24:4
pleasing others, 47:12
reason for being, 47:18
as sheep, 47:1-30
strong; characteristics, 47:16
temporal life not so good, 33A:3
vineyard: house of Israel, 47:29
waiting for judgment, 47:3
your kingdom come, 47:7
Church:
body of Christ, 45:5
bridegroom in heaven, 47:19
bridegroom: Songs of Songs, 46:35-36
clothes for husband (Christ), 37:17
distaff and spindle, 37:13-14
glory, 50:10
goats and sheep, 46:37
God’s praise found in, 34:6
growth, 44:2
husband’s confidence in, 37:4
mother, 22:9, 10
mother of martyrs, 37:1
mountain, 45:6, 7
precious stones in, 37:3
proof: mouth of God, 47:19
prophesied, 22:4; 50:9
redeemed by Christ, 37:2
root and tree, 44:2
shepherd and flock, 46:34
sinners in, 47:18
spread throughout the world, 47:17
valiant woman (Proverbs) a figure of, 37:1-30
vine and twigs (symbols), 46:18
works for husband’s good, 37:5
zealous maidservant of the Lord, 37:7

see also bishops; heresy

circumcellions, 47:17
city set on a hill, 37:2
clothing: honor, 46:6
comfort, 20A:8
commandments:
attaining eternal life, 38:7
love of God, 27:6
response to, 32:23
shepherd’s voice, 47:4
teaching, 47:9

see also ten commandments
companions (the word), 46:36
conduct:
direct my steps, 30:1-2
open to others, 47:11

see also conversion
confess (confessing to God):
blaming the devil, 20:2
calling God’s name, 23A:4
God already knows your sin, 29A:4
God is good, 29:1
goodness of God, 29A:2
humble before God, 23A:1
man punishes; God frees, 29A:3
pour out your hearts, 29:6
practice encouraged, 22:8
praising or repenting, 29:2, 4;
29A:1
set free by God, 29A:3
sins, not excuses, 29:3
today, before judgment day, 47:8
in the Trinity, 29:2
unwillingness, 29A:3

conscience:
cleansing, 47:7, 8
courage, 37:13

Sermons 20-50
good, 25A:3
known to others, 47:23
open to God, 47:11
rich in, 36:4
sweet taste, 37:10
testimonial of, 47:12-13
consolation: bishops’ role, 46:12, 13, 40
constancy, 41:1-2
contributions (support), 46:4
conversion (moral):
  almsgiving and prayer, 39:6
  change for the better, 39:6
  forgiveness on day of, 39:1
  postponing day of, 40:3-5
  procrastination, 20:4; 40:5
corruption, 21:8
courage: suffering, 46:10
covenant: old and new, 25:1, 2
covetousness, 26:9
creation:
  a Creator necessary, 43:1
  first humans, 26:1-5
  God, who is like you? 24:1
  goodness of, 21:3; 29:1
grace, 26:12
  man’s role in, 43:3
  mystery, 23:15
  seventh day, 33:3
  sheep made for Creator to feed, 47:1
  see also mankind; temporal
  criminals, 20:2
cross:
  peace, 25:7
  prophecy, 37:2
  crucifixion, see Christ
crying:
  good deeds, 31:6
  just men, 31:4
  people of God, 47:17
  sowing in tears, 31:1-6
  weep before the Creator, 47:1
  see also tears
Cyprian, Saint, 37:3
Cyrenaean, 46:41

D
darkness: afterlife, 31:6
daughters: term for “heresies,” 37:27
David and Goliath, 32:2-4, 9, 12, 18, 25-26
David, King: prefigure of Christ, 47:20, 21
dead:
  raised up, 26:11
  who ever came back? 41:4
dearness, 34:7
death:
  choosing to die, 40:6
  distress, 38:6
  fear of, 38:7
  incarnation and, 23A:3
  merry-making at the end, 31:4
  riches lost, 39:5
  sin and, 26:10
  threats, 36:10
  troubled by, 31:3
  uncertain day of, 39:1
  see also afterlife; judgment day
decalogue, see ten commandments
deceit, 23:5
deformity, 27:6
delight, 21:1, 3, 9, 10
  spiritual, 23:12
demons:
  Christ and, 44:3
  worship, 24:6
desert: solitude, 47:23
desires:
  harmful, 25A:2
  lofty, 20A:5, 6
  see also greed; lust
despair, 20:1, 2; 40:2, 3
desperation, 20:3
despising, 20A:3
devil:
  dead stones (people), 24:2
  deliverance from, 22A:4-5
  enemy, 22A:5
  excuse for sin, 20:2; 29:3
  fool at his end, 46:28
  glee over being blamed, 20:2

Volume III/2
Goliath as symbol of, 32:7
  greed and fear used by, 32:11, 13
  Job and, 22A:1-3; 25A:3
  letter “d” in, 32:6
  martyrs overcome, 32:26
  original sin and, 27:2
  partridge as symbol of, 46:28
  discipline, 21:8
  distaff, 37:13-14
  dogs, 50:10
  Donatus/Donatists, 33:5; 37:3; 45:7;
  46:14, 17, 18, 33, 37, 39, 41; 47:17, 28
  dreading, by masters, 23:2
  drink: fountain of life, 23:12
  drunkenness (enjoyment of good things),
  23:12

  

E

ear: food: sound, 28:4
  earnest, and pledge, 23:8-9
  earthly goods, see temporal goods
  Egypt, 46:37, 38
  Elijah, 39:6
  Elisha, 26:11
  emptiness: spiritual, 36:11
  end of the world, 38:11; 46:2; 47:18
  endurance, 20:2, 8; 38:1, 5, 11
  Christian strength, 46:13
  enemy:
    delivery from, 22A:1, 5
    flesh vs spirit, 30:4
    friend’s enemy, 49:6
    praying for, 49:11
  enjoyment: provision for, 36:6
  eternal fire, 22:3; 23:18; 23A:1; 25A:1;
  47:4
  eternal goods:
    divine distribution, 50:3
    investment in, 38:8
    love for, 45:3
    see also temporal goods
  eternal life:
    Christians in this life, 33A:3
    eternal rest, 33:3; 33A:3, 4
    haven of our labors, 37:30
  keep the commandments, 38:7
  praise in, 33A:1
  promise of, 22:10
  threat to, 32:16
  time lovers and, 38:2
  see also afterlife
  Eunomians, 46:18
  evangel (the word), 45:5
  Eve, 22:9, 10; 22A:3; 45:5; 46:28
  evil:
    baleful days, 25:3-5
    body members as weapons of, 30:6
    Christ preached everywhere, 31:5
    examples of wrongdoing, 40:4
    fear of, 32:15
    God will condemn evil deeds, 23A:1
    human creation, 23A:1
    iniquity as master/mistress, 30:1, 8
    love of iniquity, 35:2
    people prospering, 25A:1
    suffering evil, being evil, 48:8
    surplus wealth, 32:20
    see also badness; sin
    example:
      bishops leading bad lives, 46:9
      care for weaker brethren, 47:14
      excuses, 29:3
      exile: tears, 31:5
      eye: light as food of, 28:3
      eyes of the mind, 21:7

  

F

faith:
  believe while you don’t see, 38:3
  Canaanite woman, 37:21
  claim no credit for self, 26:15
  clinging to God, 22A:4
  David vs Goliath, 32:3
  delight in the Lord, 21:1
  grace, 32:9
  hearts firmly fixed in, 38:5
  just person lives by, 49:2
  justice of God, 27:6
  justified through, 26:9
  last things, 48:7
  needs tending, 43:8

Sermons 20-50
Sermons 20-50

paid/kept as same time, 36:8
poor man, rich in faith, 41:2
received; value, 43:2
reward, 33A:1
riches, 25A:3
seeing, 21:5, 7
start of a good life, 43:1
temporal values and, 47:30
tolsome time, 38:4
faithfulness: in slaves, 21:6; 36:8
falsehood, 32:10
famine, 47:28
fate, 20:2
faults: God angry/gentle with, 24:7
fear:
   devil and, 32:11, 13
   love and, 24:1
   old/new covenants, 33:1
   restraint on sinning, 45:8
   serving the Lord with, 30:10
   temptation, 32:15
   ten commandments, 32:8
fear of God:
   sanctification, 45:9
   wisdom, 37:29
field (valiant woman), 37:8-9
first man, see Adam
fisherman, 43:6
flatterers, 41:5
flesh:
   grass, 25:6; 33A:3; 45:10
   sinful, 27:2
   spirit and, 30:4; 45:8, 9
food: light for the eye, 28:3
forgiveness of sin:
   all sin forgiven, 23A:2
   by Christ, 32:12
day of conversion, 20:4
He delivers you from yourself, 42:3
prayer, 22:6; 47:7
prophecy, 44:6
see also repentance
forgiving:
   enemies, 49:8-9
   forgive and you will be forgiven, 42:2
   a form of kindness, 42:1
fortune: good/bad, 20A:1
foundation, building, 20A:7
fountain of life, 23:10, 12
free choice/will, 23A:1
   Pelagian error, 26:2, 8
   without God, a bad thing, 26:3
freedom, 33:1
friend: stand by, even in poverty, 41:1-3
fruit trees, see trees
future events, 22:1, 2
future life, see afterlife; eternal life

G
gentleness, 24:4
Gethsemane, 31:3
gift of God, 32:23
girdles, 37:21
giving:
   a form of kindness, 42:1
give and you will be given, 42:2
gladness, 31:3
glory:
   of God's house, 50:11
   in the Lord, 47:13
gnashing of teeth, 31:6
goats, see sheep
God:
   anger, 24:7
   approving, 48:2
   cheating, 38:4
   chief shepherd, 46:18
   conditions for seeing, 23:18
   contact with (humble prayer), 45:7
dearness, 21:4
do not keep quiet or grow gentle, 24:4, 7
face to face with (Moses), 23:14
fairness and justice, 27:7
faithful and trustworthy, 38:10
Father, and the Church, 22:9, 10
Father as shepherd, 47:21
Father’s testament of peace, 47:22
first faith, then sight, 22A:4
foreknowledge, 26:4
God will come from the Afric,
   46:38-40

Volume III/2
goodness of, 29:1; 29A:2
gratitude to, 24:1
hearing Word of, 28:4
his children will see him as he is,
23:16
image of, see image of God
inscrutable/unsearchable ways,
26:13-15; 27:7
judge, 47:7
just in what He allows, 48:7
keeping himself for those who love him, 22A:4
keeping quiet (as judge), 47:5, 8
learning from, 30:9
letter “d” in, 32:6
light, no darkness, 28A:1
love—
commandments, 27:6
freely, 22A:1
God is love, 21:2; 23:8-9, 13; 34:3
in hope, 21:1; 32:16
love beyond words, 21:2
loving/having, 34:5
profit from our love, 34:8
merciful and just, 22:5
mystery, 23:15
not grasped by thought, 21:2
oath: I live, 46:19
our whole/true good, 22A:2
patience, 47:5
possessed equally by all, 47:30
possession of, 32:28
praise the word of, 47:27
reaching him, 47:30
realize his justice, 48:6
refusing his gift, 32:23
repenting (change of sentence), 22:6
revealed and concealed, 23:14
riches of wisdom and knowledge, 27:7
seeing face to face, 38:3
shepherd, 47:3, 20
sing his praises, 34:6
spirit, 21:2
unchanging, 23:15
united to; sin, 29:6
visiting the temple (human body), 23:6
wait patiently, 40:1
walking about in us, 23:8-9
who is like you? 24:3
see also Jesus Christ; faith; Holy Spirit; sin; Trinity; trust; worship
godless: Lazarus and the rich man, 33A:4
gods, 24:2, 3, 6
gold, 21:3, 4, 5, 7, 10; 23:9; 32:21; 34:5;
36:3, 8; 38:6; 50:1-13
Goliath, 32:2-4, 7, 9, 12, 18, 25-26
good days, 25:5-6, 7
good deeds, see good works
good people:
life events and, 48:8
rich, 36:4
upright of heart praised, 21:1-10
good things:
al received from God, 26:14, 15
desire for, 29:5
enjoyment beyond telling, 23:12
everything created by God, 21:3
life, valued the highest, 20:4
restraint, 38:1, 5
this life, 41:5
good works:
cheerfulness, 31:3, 5
crying, 31:6
distaff and spindle, 37:13-14
harvest, 25:8
hearing and acting, 23A:1
let works shine before men, 47:13
redemption and, 23A:2
rich in, 36:6; 39:4
sabbath, 33:3
seeking praise for, 47:13
sharing riches, 25A:4
sowing in tears, 31:2
but unwilling to suffer, 46:13
see also charity
goodness:
judgment day, 47:6
man’s original state, 26:3
neighbor’s, 35:2
power, 29:1
responsibility, 35:2
source, 29A:2
start: right faith, 43:1
Sermons 20-50

willing, 30:3
gospel, 25:1
grace:
  belief and, 32:12
  creation; justification, 26:12
  helps fulfill the law, 32:8
  justification, 26:9
  merit and, 26:14
  nature and, 26:4, 5
  Pelagian error, 26:8
  prefigured: milk and honey, 25:1
  punishment and, 23A:2
  reliance on, 32:9
  riches of God, 27:6
  saved by, 23A:1
  source, 26:10
  symbolism, 32:7
  unsearchable ways of God, 26:13, 15
grass, 25:6; 25A:1; 45:10
greed, 32:11, 13, 14, 19, 22; 38:6; 45:2; 46:13; 50:6
  possessions, 50:3
  soul’s riches, 36:9
  temptation, 32:14
  wish to be rich, 39:3
  see also avarice
guilt, 30:3

H

Haggai, 50:1
hand: left/right, 32:22
happiness:
  celestial/terrestrial, 32:22, 27
  heaven, 45:10
  poverty and, 50:5
  right hand, left hand, 32:22
  temporal/worldly things, 21:8; 32:18, 24
harlot, 37:20
harvest time, 47:6
hate, 24:3; 49:5-6
  desire for revenge, 49:9
  hate is a murderer, 49:7
  speck of anger, 49:7
  healing, 20:1; 30:5
health:
  good people, bad people, 38:2
  Job, 22A:3
  hearing the word, 23:1; 23A:1
heart:
  anguish, 47:17
  belief, 49:2
  charity in, 47:23
  clean, 20:1, 2; 23:18
  cleaned by confessing, 23A:4
  give to God, 34:7
  gold vs faith, 21:7
  impossible to read, 49:4
  invest in, 36:8
  lifting up to God, 25:2
  lowliness of, 45:7
  peace, 25:7
  purified, seeing God, 22A:4
  rejoice, 28:1
  revealing thoughts of, 49:4
  rich persons investing in, 36:11
  sin, 45:9
  sound and meaning, 28:4
  treasure, 37:9
  uprightness praised, 21:1-10
  word of God in, 32:13
heavenly:
  glory, 45:10
  home, 38:11
  see also kingdom of heaven
hell, 28:4; 32:13; 41:5
Helper (Lazarus), 33A:4
Hercules, 24:3, 6, 7
heresy and heretics:
  all agree against unity, 47:27
  astuteness of heretics, 46:29
  bad “daughters,” 37:27
  companions of Christ, 46:36
  devil and, 46:28
  divisions among Christians, 47:28
  excuse: following our bishops, 46:21
  indifference to, 46:15
  motive for separation, 47:18
  pride, 46:18
  prong of their yoke, 47:26
  rebaptizers in Africa, 46:37
testament, 47:22
hill: symbol of Christ, 47:24

Volume III/2
Holy Spirit, 22:7; 23:8-9; 29A:1; 32:6; 33:3
love God with God, 34:3
honor:
clothing, 46:6
seeking, 39:2
hope, 20A:1; 21:1; 22A:4; 23:12; 24:5; 27:5; 32:16; 45:10; 47:1, 23, 25
Christ, head of the Church, 45:5
giving up, 20:3
perishing from, 20:3; 40:3
perversion, 20:4
uncertainty of riches, 36:5
house of God, 27:1
human affairs: God seen as uninterested in, 48:4-5
human beings, see mankind
human condition, 24:5
humility:
Christ's example, 23A:3, 4; 41:7; 50:11
contact with God, 45:7
endurance, 20A:8
foundation, 20A:7
God draws near to the humble, 21:2
grace to the humble, 30:7
Incarnation as model, 30:9
learning justification, 25:5
rich people, 36:1-2, 5
sons of Zebedee, 20A:6
trust and, 20A:2
see also pride
hunger, 36:9; 37:7
husband and wife, 45:5
hymn: praise God, 33:5
hypocrits, 37:15A0

I
idols, 22:4; 47:11
image of God: nothing dearer to God, 20A:2
immortality, 20A:5, 7; 49:3; 50:13
true riches, 36:3
incarnation:
born of a virgin, 49A:1
Christ proceeded without receding, 28:5
clothes of a slave, 20A:3
learning humility from, 30:9
our death and, 23A:3
passion and, 22:1
poverty, 36:3
purpose, 26:7
unchanged as creator, 47:20
infant: crying/laughing, 31:4
iniquity, see evil
insensitivity, 47:10
investment: temporal or eternal, 42:2

J
James, son of Zebedee, 20A:6
jealousy: evil-doers, 25A:1
Jerusalem: God's house, 50:11
Jesus Christ:
ascended into heaven, 46:40
awaken faith in, 38:10
body (the Church), 45:5
brethren, 36:5
burial, 44:7
crucified, 37:2; 44:4, 6
crucifixion: forgiveness, 49:9
crucifixion: the tunic, 22:1
crucifixion: thief hanging with Christ, 22:3
defiled (Isaiah), 27:6; 44:4
despised, 20A:3
destitute for sake of mankind, 39:6
equality with the Father, 30:9
eternal life promised by, 22:10
find/attend him in the poor, 25:8
flesh of, 27:2
food nourishing without perishing, 28:2
gentle and humble of heart, 24:4
God and man, 37:17
grace through, 26:12
guards at his tomb, 44:7
head of the Church, 45:5
hidden as God, 20A:3
hill (symbol), 47:24
hold fast, in his poverty, 41:7

Sermons 20-50
human and divine, 44:6
humbled: death on the cross, 41:7
humility, 23A:3, 4; 32:13; 50:11
interior beauty, 44:3
Jewish blindness re, 44:5-6
judge, 25A:1
justice and wisdom, 28:2
justifies the unjust, 23A:2
king, 45:6
learn from me, 24:4
martyrs confessing, 31:2
mediator, 26:7; 47:21
mercy, 32:12
mountain of God, 45:5, 7
name of, 47:20
our peace, 25:7; 47:22
persecuted, 44:2
poverty, 36:3
power over death, 31:3
prefigured by David, 32:5; 47:20, 21
prophecies concerning, 38:10; 44:1;
redeeming the captives, 27:2
resurrection foretold by, 44:6
rich, became poor, 41:7
role as God-man, 20A:4
second commandment, 33:3
see the Father in, 47:20
son of man, 23:11
sorrowful unto death, 31:3
suffering, 22:1; 46:10, 11
transfiguration, 43:5
virgin birth, 44:6; 45:6; 49A:1
wizard or magician, 43:5
Word incarnate, 26:7
Word of God, 23A:3
Word: unchanging God, 23:15
Jews:
blinding about Christ, 44:5-6
disbelief in resurrection, 41:4
praying for, 49:11
scattered over the earth, 45:7
Job:
delight in the Lord, 21:9
judgment:
bishops/God feeds with, 46:27
fruit trees, 25A:1
God finds you, 48:2
love the person, hate the vice, 49:5-6
of others, 49:4
perversion, 48:2
self, 49:5
judgment day:
bishops and, 46:2
conspicuous in the gates, 37:19
final judgment, 47:4
foretold, 22:4
harvest time, 47:6, 16
sheep and goats, 47:17
Son of Man will come in glory, 37:19
sorting time, 48:7
strong and feeble sheep, 47:15
just person/people:
crying, 31:4
evil days, 25:4, 5
hard life, 32:19
victorious, 32:26
justice:
arrogance, 30:10
desire for, 32:21
free choice, 26:2
God and sinners, 22:5, 6
God: no unfairness, 27:3, 4, 6
hatred of vice, 49:7
light of, 50:8
living by, 49:2
rich people, 25A:2
right judgment, 48:2
motivation, 45:2
testing, 22A:1-3; 25A:3
John, Apostle: love(-d), 20A:8; 34:2
John, son of Zebedee, 20A:6
Joseph in Egypt, 37:20; 46:23
Joseph of Arimathea, 44:7; 46:41
joy:
everlasting; heaven, 45:5, 10
rejoice, 28:1
sowing in tears, 31:1-6
Judas, 22:1, 5; 46:23
Jews:
blindness about Christ, 44:5-6
disbelief in resurrection, 41:4
praying for, 49:11
scattered over the earth, 45:7
motivation, 45:2
testing, 22A:1-3; 25A:3
John, Apostle: love(-d), 20A:8; 34:2
John, son of Zebedee, 20A:6
Joseph in Egypt, 37:20; 46:23
Joseph of Arimathea, 44:7; 46:41
joy:
everlasting; heaven, 45:5, 10
rejoice, 28:1
sowing in tears, 31:1-6
Judas, 22:1, 5; 46:23
just person/people:
crying, 31:4
evil days, 25:4, 5
hard life, 32:19
victorious, 32:26
justice:
arrogance, 30:10
desire for, 32:21
free choice, 26:2
God and sinners, 22:5, 6
God: no unfairness, 27:3, 4, 6
hatred of vice, 49:7
light of, 50:8
living by, 49:2
rich people, 25A:2
right judgment, 48:2

Volume III/2
sacrifice and, 49:1
wages: age when hired, 49:2
work of God, 49:2
justification:
confessing, 23A:4
grace; the Law, 26:9, 12

K
kindness:
rewarded, 20A:9
sins cleansed by, 42:1
kingdom of heaven, 23A:1; 32:14
sale price: rich and poor, 39:6
kneeling, 49:11

L
laboring: come to me, 30:8
lamps: bishops as, 46:5
land:
flowing with milk and honey, 25:1
of the living, 45:4
last day of life, 22:8
last things, 48:7
laughing, 31:4
law (O.T.):
David’s five pebbles, 32:5
instructed by the Lord, 25A:1
number symbolism, 32:5, 7
spiritual/carnal, 30:1, 3
see also Torah
Lazarus (beggar), 20A:9; 33A:4
meaning: “Helped,” 33A:4
poor man, rich man (Luke 16), 41:4-5
laziness, 38:6
lie: everyman, 28A:1
Libya, 46:41
lie; deceit, 23:5
life:
desire for, 25:6
ending with merry-making, 31:4
events: do judgment, do justice, 48:8
falsity of, 36:6
God seen as unconcerned, 48:4-5
highest value, 20:4
last day, 22:8
long, 33A:2
long/bad life desired, 20:4; 40:5
a mist, 24:5
span shrinks with aging, 38:5
ture life in afterlife, 39:5
vines, 43:3
see also afterlife; conduct
light: food for the eye, 28:3
linen, 37:6, 18
listener, perfect, 23:4
listening, 28:4; 47:5
living stones, 24:2
loftiness, 20A:7
love:
because we are loved, 34:2
burden made light by, 30:10
charity sings the new song, 33:1
clean heart, 23:18
drinking, 23:13
earthly, 34:4
exchanging, 35:2
fear and, 24:1
of God, see God: love
loved but not seen, 34:4
lover profits by, 34:8
loving kindness, 20A:9
loving/having, 34:5
means having plenty of room, 23:7
nearness of God, 21:2
of neighbor: ten commandments, 33:4,
5
new commandment, 33:2
old/new covenants, 33:1
promises: God or world, 32:14
rightly, 23:13
seeing God, 22A:4
self and neighbor (command), 34:8
sinful, 21:3
sing the new song, 34:1, 6
Stephen (martyr) as example, 49:10
unity, 32:5
vices of friends, 49:6
whole heart, mind, strength, 34:7
see also charity
lower things, 21:3
lust:
  bad pastors, 46:9
  consent withheld, 30:7
  defilement of the flesh, 45:8
  flesh vs spirit, 25:4; 30:4, 6
  holding on to, 30:4
  refraining from, 20:3; 34:5
  thoughts and wishes, 45:9

M

Maccabees, 32:15
maidservants, 37:7, 10
Mambre, 23:16
mammon of iniquity, 41:6; 50:6, 8
Manichees, 37:17; 50:7, 9, 13
mankind (human beings):
  creation of, 22:7; 26:1-5
  all creation subject to, 20A:3
  endowed (created) with free will, 26:8
  flesh and spirit (created), 30:4
  hierarchy in creation, 43:3
  humans made into angels, 45:10
  image of the creator (mind, reason, judgment), 24:3; 26:4; 43:3
  nothing if God is unknown, 32:9, 12
  original condition of, 26:1
  people: living/dead stones, 24:2
  praise-making creature, 29:1
  sheep of God’s pasture, 26:5
  trusting in, 32:9
  see also original sin
manna, 45:1
manumission of slaves, 21:6, 7
marriage, 21:1
martyrs:
  Church as mother of, 37:1
  confessing Christ, 31:2
  false gods, 24:6
  God’s non-intervention, 32:15
  seed of their blood, 22:4
  sowing in tears, 31:1, 3
master (teacher):
  dangerous office, 23:1
  fellow pupil, 23:2
material benefits, 37:20
materialistic people, 23:4, 5
meaning, 28:4-5
mediator: Christ as, 26:7
mercy:
  confessing one’s sins, 29:3
  divine, 23:11; 27:1-7
  God and sinners, 22:5
  great sinner, 20:2
  poor man, rich man (Luke 16), 41:4-5
  praise of, 29A:1, 2
  psalm 57, 20A:1-9
mercy: grace and, 26:14
merry-making (Ps 126:5-6), 31:4, 5, 6
mind:
  sanctification of, 45:9
  sound and meaning, 28:4
mirror, 49:5
misery: poverty and, 50:5
mistress: sin as, 30:1
money, 21:7; 41:1
monomachy, 32:3
mortality, 22:9; 23A:3; 49:3
Moses, 23:14, 16; 41:4
  books of, see Torah
  mother-love, 23:3
Mount of Olives, 46:40
mountain(s):
  authors of the Scriptures, 46:24
  Christ: mountain of God, 45:5, 6, 7
  stone becomes, 45:6
  symbol for pride, 46:17
  Synagogue and Church, 45:6
murder: hatred as, 49:7
muslins, 37:20
mystical body of Christ:
  each member a part in, 24:5
  inheritance from Christ, 22:10

N

name: written in heaven, 33A:4
nature:
  grace and, 26:4, 5
  healing, 30:5
  necessities, 37:30; 39:6
neighbor:
  advice: be wise for, 35:1

Volume III/2
commanded to love, 33:4, 5
concerned interest, 35:3
meaning: Christ, 41:7
poverty; charity, 41:1, 5
ture love of, 35:2
netherworld: Lazarus (beggar) in, 41:4
new covenant:
Donatists and, 33:5
song: love, 34:1
New Testament:
law (gospel), 25:1
source, 26:10
night, 37:7
noonday, 46:38
Numidia, 46:39

O
obedience, 35:3
old age, 33A:2
Old Testament: source, 26:10
olive tree, 25A:4
original sin, 26:3; 27:2; 30:2

P
pagans, 24:6; 26:4, 6, 7
paradise, 25:3
paralytic soul, 46:13
pardon, 20:2; 22:6
parents and children:
goodness/badness, 35:2
poor and rich, 45:2
Parmenian, 46:17
partridge:
devil symbol, 46:28
quarreling, 46:29
pastoral work, see bishops
patience, 40:1; 47:6, 17
Paul, Saint:
imprisoned, 46:4
new covenant, 25:2
suffering foretold by prophet, 22:2
teacher, 23:2
peace:
Christ is, 25:7
cross and, 25:7
heavenly, 50:12

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P

P
Sermons 20-50

rich tested by, 39:6
in spirit (blessed), 36:7
spiritually poor, 36:10
supply their lack, diminish your load,
25A:4
threats, 36:10
trust in God, 20A:9
valiant woman, 37:14
possessions:
	fear of losses, 50:3
greed, 50:3
loving/having, 34:5
potter, 26:13
poverty:
	Christ, 36:3
	hold fast with neighbor in, 41:7
	misery and, 50:5
	the valiant woman, 37:25
praise:
	be what you sing, 34:6
	confessing to God, 29:4; 29A:1
eternal life, 37:30
heaven, 45:10
praise God, 33:5; 33A1:1
seeking, for good works, 47:13
valiant woman, 37:23, 26
what the Lord gives, 48:1
prayer:
	commending, in tears, 31:5
	contact with God, 45:7
	intention, 40:7
	unheard, 21:8
	weapon against the devil, 22A:5
preaching: saying His thing, 46:1
precious stones, 37:3
pride (the proud):
	David and Goliath, 32:12, 26
division; heresies, 46:18
God withstanding, 30:7
good and bad “mountains,” 46:17
humbled, 36:11
redemption and, 30:2
riches and, 36:2, 5, 7; 39:4
rising against God, 25;2
smoke, 22:8
struggle with, 33A:2
transgressors, 26:9
see also humility
profit, 22A:2
promise(s):
	guarantees, 40:7
	mountain, 45:3, 5
	reward for self-cleansing, 45:1-2
	promised land, 25:1; 45:4
prophecy:
	Church in, 22:4
crucifixion of Christ, 22:1
judgment day, 22:4
told as happening in the past, 22:1, 2
warnings, 22:3
prophets: poor man, rich man (Luke 16), 41:4
prosperity, 20:2; 32:22, 27; 38:1
enjoying friend’s p., 41:2-3
evil people, 25A:1
proud, see pride
providence: God’s way, 22:2; 26:15
publican, 36:11
punishment:
	grace and, 23A:2
	use of possessions, 32:27
purification:
	cleanse self of every defilement, 45:1, 3, 6, 8

cleanse the inside, 45:9
by endurance and restraint, 38:1

Q
quarreling, 23:17; 46:29

R
rain showers, 47:24
razor, 32:17
reason: image of God, 43:3
rebaptizers in Africa, 46:37, 38
redemption:
	Christ’s mortal flesh, 27:2
grace, 23A:2
human malice, 30:5

Volume III/2
Volume III/2

mercy unlimited, 22:9
pride and, 30:2
slaves, 21:6, 7
soul; riches, 36:7, 9
restraint, 36:2, 5, 7; 39:4
repentance:
dangers to guard against, 20:3
drawn to by God’s patience, 40:2
foretold, 44:6
fruitful sorrow, 22:3, 6
God healing/forgiving, 20:3
God is leading to, 47:5
Psalm 51, 20:1
responsibility: for good and evil, 35:2
restraint, 38:1, 5, 11
resurrection of the body, 23A:3; 31:6; 37:25-26; 50:12
reward:
cleansing self of defilements, 45:1
good people, bad people, 38:2
rich (riches; rich people):
al good people are rich, 36:4
bones of, 33A:3
buried treasures, 38:8
children and parents, 45:2
clinging to treasures, 38:7
fear of death, 38:7
good people, bad people, 38:2
good things: this life, 41:5
good works, 25A:4; 36:6
hell: too late for just desires, 41:5
humbled, 36:1, 5
immortality, 36:3
inner wealth (virtues), 25A:3; 36:7
investment in hearts, 36:11
justice, 25A:2; 32:27
Lazarus and, 33A:4
mammon of iniquity, 50:6
money as temptation, 39:3
motive for worship, 22A:2-3
poor man’s brother, 36:5
pride, 36:2, 5, 7; 39:4
redemption of the soul, 36:7, 9
Scripture and, 36:1
sharing good times, 41:3
test: help the poor, 39:6
transfer assets to heaven, 38:9
treasure in heaven, 36:5
trust in God, 20A:9
uncertainty, 36:5
use of created things, 21:10
see also charity; poor; sharing;
treasure; wealth
room (love), 23:7
root: prophecy re Christ, 44:1
S
sabbath: third commandment, 33:3
sacrifice:
appeasing God, 49:1
offer yourself, 48:2
reward for, 20A:2
sadness, 31:3; 35:3
saints:
eternal joy, 31:6
hold fast to God and Church, 22:9
tears, 31:6
testimony of, 48:4, 5
sales, 37:20
salvation:
grace, 23A:1
hope, 27:5
sanctification:
body and spirit, 45:9
fear of God, 45:9
perfected, 45:8, 9
pursuit of, 23:18; 45:1
Saul (later Paul), 24:7
Saul, King, 32:3
savior, 43:1
scripture(s):
allegory in, 32:6
attentive to readings, 32:2
authors as “mountains,” 46:24
Christ and the Church, 46:33
feed in good health, 46:24
heretics disagree on, 47:27
medicine, 32:1
no grounds for blaming, 23:3
past tense, future meaning, 27:5
spiritual, 23:3
treat as face of God, 22:7
value of riches in, 36:1
second coming, 50:10
Sermons 20-50

self:
   deliver you from your (bad) self, 42:3
   praise God for your good points, 48:2
self-accusation, 20:2, 4
self-indulgence, 21:3
senses:
   human/animal life, 43:3
   pleasure, 28:2
sermon: composed of letters and syllables, 47:30
serpent: sin, 20:2
servant, 32:23
servile works, 33:3
servitude: earthly goods, 25:2
sharing, 20A:8; 25A:4; 36:6; 39:5
shaving, 32:17
sheep:
   Christians as, 47:1-30
   goats and, 25A:1
   God’s disposition, 26:15
shepherds: bishops as, 46:1-41
shouting, 24:5
sickness, 49:6
sign of the cross, 32:13
silence: bishops as shepherds, 46:20
silver, 21:4, 5, see also gold
Simon of Cyrene, 46:41
sin(s):
   always before me, 29A:4
   bad use of things, 21:3
   cleansed by alms/kindness, 42:1
   conversion delayed, 20:4
   defilements of the spirit/the flesh, 45:8
   disordered usage, 21:3
   effort against, 22:9
   enemy of God, 47:7
   God is carrying our sins, 47:5
   God turns his face away, 20:2
   healing hurt caused by, 20:1
   heavy-laden, come to Christ, 30:9
   inner enemies, 42:3
   justifying, 22:8
   loving badly, 21:3
   mistress, 30:1
   Pauline teaching, 26:10
   preference for earthly things, 32:14
proper to man, 32:10
punishment, 20:2; 29:6
refrain from bad will, deeds, thoughts, 45:8
reigning in the body, 30:6
remedy for guilt, 47:7, 8
repent and confess, 29:6
self-accusation, 20:2, 4
serpent, 20:2
slave of sin, 47:26
will and decision, 20:1
works of the flesh, 37:28
see also confess, forgiveness; repentance
singing: new man, 22A:1
sins:
   good fortune, 32:19
   man’s creation, 22:7
   perish, from face of God, 22:1
slave(-s; -ery):
   bad slave, 37:15
   divine master, 37:20
   entrusting goods to, 39:6
   faithful, 21:6-7; 36:8; 38:8
   fear, 33:1
   sleeping: temporal life as, 39:5
   sluggishness, 30:6
   smoke, vanishing, 22:8
   solitude, 47:23
   Solomon’s temple, 23:7
   song: cheer; love, 34:1
   sons of men, 23:11
soul:
   body weighs down, 30:4
   fool, taken away this night, 32:27
   gain whole world; lose soul, 36:9
   loving/hating, 29:5
   redemption; riches, 36:7, 9
   rest in God, 33:3
sound, 28:4-5
speech: slipping up, 23:2
spindle, 37:13-14
spirit:
   and flesh, 30:4; 45:8, 9
   lust (war), 25:4
   spiritual goods, 37:20
   spirituality, 23:4

Volume III/2
Stephen, Saint, 42:3; 49:10-11
stone(s):
  became a great mountain, 45:6
people: living and dead, 24:2
stream (the word), 32:6-7
strength:
  characteristics, 47:16, 17
Hercules, 24:6
stupidity, 47:10
success: worldly, 25A:2
suffering:
  Christian life, 46:10
  endurance, 20A:8
  God’s will be done, 22:2
  good people, bad people, 38:2
  unwilling or unable to endure, 46:13
  warning by God, 22:3
summer, 25A:1; 36:4; 38:6
sunlight, 50:7
superfluities, 32:17, 19
superstition, 24:6

T

tax collector, 36:11
teacher:
  attitudes, 47:10
  master, a dangerous office, 23:1
tears:
  become my bread day and night, 31:5
  everlasting, 31:6
  saints, 31:6
  sowing, reap joy, 31:1-6
temple:
  human body, 23:6; 24:1
  of Solomon, 23:7
temporal goods:
  attachment to, 38:7; 46:18
  disdaining, 45:3
diversity of fortunes, 47:30
eternal life and, 38:2
  God as distributor, 50:3
  good use of created things, 21:10; 50:4
temporal life:
  happiness, 32:18, 22, 27

lot of Christians in, 33A:3
threats; evils, 32:16
temptation:
  beyond what is bearable, 46:12
  good/bad things in life, 20A:1
  greed, 32:14
storm: faith is sleeping, 38:10
ten commandments:
  cheerful fulfillment, 32:8
  fear, 32:8
  first three, 33:3
  harp strings, 33:1, 2
  number symbolism, 32:5, 7
  seventh-tenth, 33:4
  two tables, 33:2
testament: old and new, 25:1, 2
thorns: heresies, 37:27
threats, 32:15, 16; 36:10
Tigisi, 46:39
time:
  conversion “tomorrow,” 20:4
  uncertainty of tomorrow, 40:5
tolerance, 47:17
tongue:
  refrain from evil, 25:6, 7
  valiant woman, 37:23
Torah:
  justification; grace, 26:9
  number five (symbolism), 32:7
  source, 26:10
  transgressors, 26:9
treasure:
  banking in heaven, 38:9
eternal/temporal goods, 38:8
tree:
  judgment: fruit trees, 25A:1
  roots, 20A:7
  withered, 36:4
Trinity:
  confessing in, 29:2
  feeding Christ’s flock, 47:20
  unity of the godhead, 33:3; 47:21
troubles:
  beyond what is bearable, 46:12
  psalm 126, 31:4
trust:
  excessive, 20:3
Sermons 20-50

first commandment, 38:5
mercy of God, 20A:1-9
poor/rich trust in God, 20A:9, 10
in princes, 33A:3
self not to put trust in, 20A:2

truth:
error and, 46:41
God as, 28:5; 32:10
masters, 23:2
understanding, 23:5

U

ugliness, 49:5
unbelief:
in Christ, 43:9
darkness, 49:3
understanding:
belief and, 43:4, 7-8, 9
carelessness in, 47:10
image of God, 43:3
of truth, 23:5
ungodly, the, 40:2
unity:
in the creation, 24:3
forced, 46:41
good shepherds, 46:30, 37
heretics all agree against, 47:27
love, 32:5
upright of heart, 29A:2; 48:3
see also good (-ness)
usury, 38:8, 42:2

V

valiant woman (Proverbs):
figure of the Church, 37:1-30
vice:
hating, 49:5-7
inner struggles, 40:7
speck or beam in eye, 49:7
virgin birth, 44:6; 49A:1
“without hands,” 45:6
virtues:
holding in; holding out, 20:2
inner wealth, 25A:3; 36:7
treasure, 21:8
voice:
sound, 28:5
witnessing with, 24:5

W

waiting, 40:1
war:
David and Goliath, 32:3
lust, 25:4
warnings, 22:3
wax, 22:1-10
wealth:
danger: evils, 32:20
indifference to, 50:3
Job and the devil, 22A:3
one’s surplus, another’s necessities, 39:6
transfer, 36:5
see also rich
weeds, 47:6, 18
weeping, see crying; tears
well-being, 33A:3
wickedness, see evil
widow’s two farthings, 39:6
wife: spiritual and fleshy works, 37:6
will of God, 32:18; 45:3
wine, 21:3
wineskins, 36:2
winter, 36:4
wisdom:
be wise for self and neighbor, 35:1
cunning, 46:28
divine, 27:7
fear of the Lord, 37:29
greed and, 38:6
love of, 38:6
as noonday, 46:38
woman:
announcements (bible), 45:5
charm deceitful, beauty vain, 37:29
distaff and spindle, 37:13-14
double cloaks for husband, 37:17
earthly love, 34:4
farsighted in faith and hope, 37:8

Volume III/2
Hebrew usage of the word, 49A:1
her children enriched, 37:25-26
husband not anxious re home, 37:15-16
light of hope, 37:11
opened her mouth with care, 37:23
superlative way: charity, 37:28
useful work, 37:12
valiant woman (Proverbs), 37:1-30
valor and elegance, 37:22
wool, 37:6; 46:6
word of God:
    foothold in the heart, 32:13
    rain showers (image), 47:24
Word, The, see Jesus Christ
words: letters in, 32:6
work:
    valiant woman, 37:10
    works of mercy, 50:4
world:
    pilgrim exiles in, 38:11
    promises of, 32:14
worldliness: earth and its fullness, 39:2
worldly:
    goods, 32:24
    success, 25A:2
    well-being, 38:1
see also temporal . . .
worship:
    gods as senseless objects, 24:3
    good times and bad, 32:28
    Job vs the devil, 22A:1-3
    motive, 22A:3
    old/new covenants, 25:2
    riches as motive, 22A:2
    wrestling, 22A:5
    wrongdoer, 22A:1, 4

Y
yoke, 30:9-10

Z
Zacchaeus, 25:8; 39:6; 47:30
Zebedee, sons of, 20A:6, 8
Index from

Sermons 51-94

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 51-94 are on the Old Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelfferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/3 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-0-911782-85-1, 6 x 9 in., 520 pp., 1991

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:1 68, 2
1:26 52, 18
1:27 53A, 4; 91, 7
2:7 57, 13
2:19 60, 5
2:22 51, 18; 52, 10
2:24 65A, 7
3:19 58, 4; 78, 5; 88, 22
5:5 88, 22
22:17 88, 22
22:18 51, 4; 63B, 2; 88, 10, 21; 91, 1
43:16 58, 5
48:5-6 51, 27
Exodus
3:14 72, 3
20:12 65A, 7; 72A, 4; 74, 3
20:13-16 74, 3
20:16 75, 5
26:34 60, 6
32:10 88, 24
32:32 88, 24
Leviticus
19:18 74, 3
Deuteronomy
5:16 65A, 7
5:20 75, 5; 81, 5
7:1, 5 62, 17
10:34 60, 6
13:3 57, 9; 71, 15
29:29 61A, 5
32:39 77, 3
Joshua
5:2, 3 71, 26
1 Kings
6:16 60, 6
8:27 60, 6
Tobit
2:14 88, 15
4:10 88, 16
8:9 60, 6
Job
1:21 91, 4
2:7-10 81, 2
7:1 57, 9
Psalms
2:7 86, 10
4:2-3 72, 6
4:4 58, 8
5:6 81, 5
6:7 58, 8; 82, 2
4:8 81, 1
11:5 90, 6
14:1-23 65A, 7; 67, 2; 69, 3; 70, 8
17:4 70, 3
17:8 58, 7
18:3 67, 6
18:28 67, 8
18:43 77, 5, 8
18:43-44 62, 4; 63B, 2
18:44 77, 5
19:1 53, 14; 60, 6
19:1-3 78, 1
19:4 59, 1
19:6 87, 9
22:16, 17 51, 2
22:17 51, 2
23:6 86, 10
27:4 65A, 3
27:8 53, 7
27:9 52, 4
29:1 58, 6; 77A, 1
31:22 52, 16
34:12 58, 11; 84, 1
34:13-14 58, 11
### Sermons 51-94

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Commentary Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34:18</td>
<td>70A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:6</td>
<td>53, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>53, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:11</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:9</td>
<td>64, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:5-7</td>
<td>77B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6</td>
<td>53A, 4; 60, 2; 90, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:12</td>
<td>77B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:8</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:10</td>
<td>52, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:4</td>
<td>52, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:1</td>
<td>64, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:23</td>
<td>81, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:10-11</td>
<td>62, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:12</td>
<td>75, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:21</td>
<td>65A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:23</td>
<td>67, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:1</td>
<td>85, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:8</td>
<td>52, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:2</td>
<td>62, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>67, 2, 69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:6</td>
<td>65A, 1; 68, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:1</td>
<td>77A, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:11</td>
<td>61A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:10</td>
<td>60, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:4</td>
<td>53, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:9</td>
<td>76, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:2</td>
<td>75, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1</td>
<td>65A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:7</td>
<td>71, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6</td>
<td>81, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6-7</td>
<td>76, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:4</td>
<td>59, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:11</td>
<td>52, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:11</td>
<td>65A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86:4</td>
<td>52, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:1</td>
<td>55, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:11-12</td>
<td>81, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:5</td>
<td>63, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:8</td>
<td>69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:9</td>
<td>69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:12-13</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:18</td>
<td>76, 8, 80, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:5</td>
<td>63, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:5</td>
<td>81, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106:47</td>
<td>77, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108:12</td>
<td>61A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109:7</td>
<td>56, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:1</td>
<td>51, 20; 91, 2; 92, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:9</td>
<td>61, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113:5-6</td>
<td>70A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>81, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>65A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:22</td>
<td>60A, 2; 88, 10; 89, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:155</td>
<td>70A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:165</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:22</td>
<td>88, 10; 89, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:2</td>
<td>68, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Commentary Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>93, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28</td>
<td>87, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>82, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>65A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:2</td>
<td>53A, 6, 85, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>60, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ecclesiastes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Commentary Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>61, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>61, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Song of Songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Commentary Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>65A, 8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>62A, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Commentary Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>53, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>65, 6, 81, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>62, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-9</td>
<td>58, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>52, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>52, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>63, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>68, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Commentary Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>76, 8, 77A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>73, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>87, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
<td>67, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>65, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:12</td>
<td>56, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:23</td>
<td>65A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:15-16</td>
<td>68, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Commentary Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>78, 2, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>62A, 3, 89, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>75, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>89, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9(LXX)</td>
<td>89, 4; 91, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>52, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14-15</td>
<td>92, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>72A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10</td>
<td>65, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:12</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6</td>
<td>65A, 13, 82, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/3

40:12  53, 13
49:6   89, 2
52:11  88, 23, 25
58:7   56, 11; 58, 10; 62, 18
59:2   71, 19
61:10  91, 8
62:1   53, 13
66:2   68, 7; 8; 72A, 2
Jeremiah
17:14  61, 2
23:24  69, 4
29:7   51, 14
Ezekiel
3:16, 19  88, 23
18:21-22  82, 14; 87, 10, 11
Joel
2:32   56, 1; 57, 1; 76, 8
Amos
1:3, 6, 9, 11, 13  51, 34
2:1, 4, 6  51, 34
Malachi
3:1   66, 3
New Testament
Matthew
1:1    51, 7
1:2-16  51, 7
1:16   51, 29
1:17   51, 8
1:18   51, 8
1:18-19  51, 9
1:19   51, 30
1:19-20  82, 10
1:20-21  51, 10, 16
1:25   51, 30
3:1-2   71, 19
3:2    71, 20
3:10   72, 3
3:11   71, 19
3:14-15  52, 1
3:16-17  52, 1
3:17   71, 27
3:28   71, 24
3:28-29  71, 22
4:6    81, 4
4:17   71, 19, 20
5:23   53A, 1
5:3    53, 1
5:4    53, 2, 3; 53A, 6, 8
5:5    53, 2; 53A, 7
5:6    53, 4; 53A, 9; 57, 13, 16, 27; 77, 14
5:7    53, 5; 53A, 10
5:8    53, 6, 16; 53A, 11; 88, 4
5:9    53A, 12
5:10   53A, 13
5:16   93, 3, 14
5:20   85, 5
5:22   55, 1
5:22-24  82, 5
6:1    54, 3
6:1-5   93, 14
6:7-8   56, 4
6:9    56, 5, 6; 57, 2, 4; 58, 2; 59, 3
6:9, 12  71, 25
6:9-10  77B, 6
6:10   53A, 9; 56, 7; 57, 5, 6; 58, 3, 4; 59, 4, 5; 77B, 6
6:11   56, 9; 57, 7, 58; 59, 6
6:12   56, 11; 57, 8, 58, 6, 7; 59, 7, 71, 28; 77A, 1; 83, 4; 93, 13
6:12-13 77A, 3
6:13   56, 18; 57, 9, 10; 58, 9, 58, 11; 59, 8
6:14   71, 25
6:19-21 60, 5
6:33   58, 5
6, 33, 32  57, 13
6:78   80, 2
7:1    61A, 5
7:3    58, 8
7:6    77, 9
7:7    60A, 1; 61, 4; 77, 9; 77B, 1; 80, 2; 96, 16
7:8    61A, 7
7:7-8   61A, 2; 77B, 2
7:7-11  61, 1
7:11   61A, 2, 7; 90, 2
7:13   64, 4, 6
7:21   75, 9
8:1-10  77, 12
8:8    62, 1
8:9    62, 4
8:8-9   62A, 1
8:8, 10  77, 15
8:10   62A, 3, 62A, 2; 77, 12
8:10, 8  88, 10
8:11   62A, 3; 77, 13; 88, 22; 90, 4
8:11-12 62, 6
8:12   77, 15; 77A, 4
8:13   62A, 4
8:19-20 62, 2
8:21-22 62, 2
8:22   88, 3
8:25   81, 8
8:27   63, 3
8:29   90, 8
9:6    71, 25
9:11-13 80, 4
9:12   88, 7
9:13   71, 11
9:21   63B, 1
10:16  64, 2; 64A, 1, 2; 73, 2
10:17  64, 1

Sermons 51-94
Sermons 51-94

1:47-51 89, 5
1:48 69, 4
2:19 52, 13; 62A, 3; 67, 2
2:24 53, 7
3:5 71, 12; 19, 23
3:8 71, 26
3:13 91, 7
4:7 62A, 4
4:13 53, 4
5:17, 19 71, 25
5:28-29 93, 9
5:33, 35 67, 9
6:6 71, 15
6:14 53, 4
6:41 53A, 11
6:51 83, 2; 85, 4
6:57 71, 17
10:16 60A, 2; 77, 8; 88, 10
10:18 52, 13
10:30 91, 3
11:43 67, 2
11:44 67, 3
13:2 67, 4
13:10 90, 2
14:6 64, 6
14:8 68, 9
14:8-10 88, 4
14:10 52, 14; 71, 25, 26
14:21 78, 5
14:26 71, 33
14:28 91, 3
14:31 86, 1
15:5 89, 2
15:11 87, 2
15:22 71, 11, 24
15:24 71, 25, 26
15:26 60A, 2; 71, 29
16:8-9 71, 24
16:15 76, 3
16:33 54, 2
17:24 65A, 1
20:22-23 71, 19, 23
20:24-29 88, 2
Acts
1:5 71, 19
1:7 93, 8
2:3 71, 19
2:21 76, 8
2:37, 38 71, 33
2:38 77, 4
4:32 77, 4
7:51-52 90, 9
7:55-60 90, 9
7:60 56, 16
8:20 77A, 4
9:4 64A, 2; 87, 15; 89, 5
9:14 61A, 6
13:46 51, 14; 89, 2
15:9 53, 10
17:28 68, 6
Romans
1:3 51, 20; 52, 11
1:18-20 68, 5
1:20 52, 15
1:20-21 68, 6
1:20-22 68, 7
1:22-23 53, 7
1:21 67, 8
1:22 67, 8
1:24 57, 10
2:14 51, 28
2:21-24 74, 2
3:20-21 78, 2
3:21 79A, 3
3:23 80, 4
4:25 51, 32
5:5 21, 18
5:20 71, 11
6:9 88, 1, 9
7:14-16 77A, 2
7:16, 17 77A, 2
7:22 57, 6; 58, 4
7:22-23 53A, 12
7:25 56, 8
8:2 71, 29
8:14 53A, 12
8:15 71, 28
8:16 71, 28
8:18 70, 3
8:23 51, 28
8:32 52, 12
8:34 75, 3
9:3-5 51, 28
9:5 51, 20; 62, 9
10:3 54, 4
10:13 56, 1; 57, 1; 76, 8
10:13-15 57, 1
10:14 58, 1; 59, 1
10:14-15 56, 1
11:1 51, 14
11:14 53, 15
12:11 71, 19
12:20 60, 6
13:1-2 62, 13
15:1 76, 4
15:8-9 63B, 2
1 Corinthians
1:12-13 76, 2
1:13 76, 5
1:20 68, 3
1:23-24 60, 5
1:24 53, 7; 53A, 13
1:27-28 51, 4; 87, 12
1:28 71, 2
2:8 91, 1
2:9 77A, 2
2:14 71, 30

Volume III/3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>71, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17</td>
<td>82, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>53, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>73, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>71, 21; 73A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>65A, 12; 71, 3; 93, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>62, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>62, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4</td>
<td>51, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>51, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6</td>
<td>51, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:6-7</td>
<td>51, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>51, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:35</td>
<td>86, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td>62, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>62, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>62, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>62, 7; 9; 82, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>73, 4; 88, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>70, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>62, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:24</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>54, 2; 4; 78, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>64, 6; 64A, 2; 89, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>51, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26</td>
<td>51, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9-11</td>
<td>71, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>71, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>62, 5; 65A, 7; 91, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29-30</td>
<td>90, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31-13:1</td>
<td>93, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-2</td>
<td>90, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>93, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>53, 6; 16; 78, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15</td>
<td>71, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>77, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>63A, 3; 63B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>62, 7; 63A, 3; 63B, 3; 77, 3; 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9-8</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>76, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>88, 7; 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>61A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>78, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:33</td>
<td>62, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:35</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-54</td>
<td>53A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-55</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>53A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>54, 2; 91, 4; 93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>75, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>71, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>51, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>52, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>58, 13; 90, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>64, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7</td>
<td>53, 6; 88, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>88, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>74, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>54, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>70, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>85, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>64A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>72A, 8; 93, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-9</td>
<td>77B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>61A, 4; 5; 76, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>90, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>82, 8; 92, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>88, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-23</td>
<td>88, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>56, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>52, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22-24</td>
<td>89, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>88, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>81, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>52, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>51, 28; 52, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>71, 28; 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>53, 11; 71, 16; 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>53A, 12; 56, 8; 58, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>89, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1-2</td>
<td>88, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>91, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>67, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>54, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>53A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>88, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:24-25</td>
<td>70, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>53, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>71, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>89, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20-14</td>
<td>88, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-17-19</td>
<td>72, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>63, 1; 64A, 2; 81, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-19</td>
<td>53, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>53, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passage</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>71, 28; 88, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>64A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>64, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>58, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26-27</td>
<td>75, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>67, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>67, 5; 76, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>88, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>58, 11; 84, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>51, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>65A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>67, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>71, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>51, 20; 52, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>68, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-9</td>
<td>92, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>91, 7; 92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>75, 7; 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>52, 13; 67, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>54, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:26-27</td>
<td>61A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8-9</td>
<td>54, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12-14</td>
<td>91, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>51, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>79A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>62, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>77A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>62, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>68, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>51, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>51, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>53, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>64, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>83, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>51, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>93, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>93, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>77C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14-15</td>
<td>77C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15-17</td>
<td>77B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>56, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>51, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>65, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>71, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>82, 8; 83, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>61A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-10</td>
<td>85, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-10</td>
<td>53A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>53A, 6; 58, 5; 61, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-10</td>
<td>85, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>61, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8-10</td>
<td>61, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>77B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>77A, 4; 85, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>65, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>61, 11; 85, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>53A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>85, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18-19</td>
<td>61, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18-19</td>
<td>85, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>56, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>57, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>58, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>55, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8</td>
<td>55, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>55, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>53, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>82, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td>82, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>57, 9; 71, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-15</td>
<td>58, 9; 77A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14-15</td>
<td>57, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>71, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>53, 10; 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>55, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>81, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>73, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>56, 11; 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>90, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>82, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>57, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>58, 8; 82, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>71, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>71, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>73, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>73, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Abel, 72:3; 87:5, 7
Abraham, 71:32; 72:3; 87:5, 7
genealogy of Christ, 51:7, 31
promise re his seed, 51:4; 81:8; 88:10, 21
two sons; symbolism, 89:6
Adam:
begot sin and death, 90:7
generation of Christ, 51:31
man, and nothing else, 81:6
punishment: mortality, 51:25
sin begotten by, 83:5
admiration:
flatterers selling, 93:12
motive for good works, 93:10
performing to be seen by men, 93:14
adoption:
chaste parentage, 51:26
children born from husbands’ seeds
(O.T.), 51:28
Old Testament, 51:28
wives of childless kinsmen, 51:29
adultery:
dead soul, 65:6
God will be the judge, 82:11
marital problems, 51:22
Aeneas, 81:9
Africa, 88:21
afterlife:
direct vision of Word of God, 59:6
God as our inheritance, 55:4-5
almsgiving, 61:1-13
see also charity
darkness dispelled by, 88:16
doing good with justice, 61:3
give surplus to the destitute, 91:9
pleas of the poor, 61:13
and prayer, clean our sins, 56:12
treat our souls well, 86:17
amendment, see conversion.
angels:
appearing as men, 72A:4
doing God’s will, in heaven, 58:4; 59:5
prayer to be equal to, 77B:6
reapers, 73:4
see Truth itself, 57:7
sin: fell by disobedience, 73A:3
sort out the weeds (parable), 73A:1
anger:
hated and, 82:1
lust for revenge, 58:8
plead for help against, 57:13
sun going down on, 58:7; 75:5
vengeance, a fearful temptation, 57:11
animals:
negotiates to each other, 90:7
taming, 55:3, 4
Apollo, 71:30
apostles:
Christ’s “tunic,” 62:7; 77:8
one bad among the twelve, 90:2
Paul the hem (of his tunic), 63A:3;
63B:1-3
see also Paul, Peter, etc.
simple fishermen chosen, 87:12
unbelievers, 80:1
weak chosen to confound the strong,
87:12
applause, for Augustine’s sermon, 61:13
Arians, 71:5
Arius, 73A:2
ask/seek/knock:
ask and you shall receive, 61A:1-7; 80:2
Sermons 51-94

asking in faith, 61A:5
see Canaanite woman, 77A:1
cure asked for, 61A:5
eternal goods; God listens, 61A:4
God is our Father, 61:1
it all amounts to “ask,” 61A:2
judging God, 61A:5
notice those who ask us for things, 61:8
Paul asked for relief, 61A:3
some ask, and don’t receive, 61A:5, 6
temporal longings; trust God, 61A:4
that God may make us good, 61A:7
throwing pearls before pigs, 60A:1
voices and good works, 77B:7
we beg from God, 61:7
widow’s importunity, 61:5-6

Augustine, Saint:
large crowd, feeble voice, 68:1
speaking at Lord’s command, 82:15
authority:
centurian: image of the pagans, 62:4
good man, a trainer; bad man, a tester, 62:12
preference for the higher over the lower, 62:13
respect or contempt for, 62:13

avarice:
advice: take thought for the future, 86:9
despise, 59:8
devil’s kingdom, 71:4
disease, 61:3
see also greed
judgment day, 77A:4
leading to temptation, 57:9, 11
love and, 78:6
mistriss says “save up for yourself,” 86:6-8
parents and children: 90:10
root of all evils, 53A:3; 61:10; 85:6
slavery to, 53A:2

B

baby, newborn:
led by mother, 71:19
rich and poor as equal, 61:9
Babylonia, Jewish migration to, 51:14
badness, see good and evil; wickedness banquet:
both good and bad people come, 90:1
eating/drinking unworthily, 90:1
baptism:
born as members of Christ, 72A:8
gift of the Holy Spirit (Peter), 71:33
John the Baptist, 71:19
sins forgiven in, 56:13; 58:6

bastards:
separating ourselves from chastisement, 55:5

beatific vision:
what should be prayed for, 77B:5

beating:
servant; world, 72:7

beatitudes, 53:1-16; 53A:1-14
hunger and thirst for justice, 53:4, 8; 53A:9
meek, 53:2, 8; 53A:7
merciful, 53:5; 53A:10
mourners, 53:3, 8; 53A:8
parts of a spiritual body, 53:9
peacemakers, 53A:12
persecution for justice’ sake, 53A:13
poor in spirit, 53:1, 8; 53A:1-6
pure of heart, 53:6-7
putting God’s word into practice, 53A:1
reward matches the work, 53:8
same people in all eight, 53:9

beauty:
God desires you in your ugliness, 62:8
Beelzebub, 71:35; 88:7

beggar:
blessed are the merciful, 53A:10
praying: all are beggars, 83:2
standing at rich man’s door, 56:9
we beg from God; beggars ask of us, 61:8

behavior: bad behavior, can’t hide from
God, 69:3

belief/believers:
see also faith
first benefit: forgiveness of sins, 71:19
not even if someone returns from the
dead, 86:16
once spiritually blind, deaf, dead, 88:3
walk by faith, not by sight, 88:4
birth: death from disease of being born, 77:14
bishops, job of bishoping, 94
blasphemy:
against the Son of Man, 71:23-24
impenitence as, 71:20-21
sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:6, 9-18, 20, 34-37
blessedness, see Beatitudes.
blind:
  Tobit’s advice to his son, 88:16
blind men (healed by Christ):
  cried out, in thick of the crowd, 88:17
  crowd would stop their crying out, 88:9
  crying out, Lord have mercy, 88:1ff
  eyesight restored, for their faith, 88:9
  healed by Christ, 88:8
  symbols of Jews and Gentiles, 88:10
boasting:
  only in the Lord, 75:10
  the poor and their poverty, 85:2
boat:
  Jesus calms storm-tossed boat, 63:1-3; 75:1-10
body (human):
  dead souls, 88:3
  dead without soul, 65:7
  flesh as grass, 82:13
  four elements, 51:34
  temple of the Holy Spirit, 82:13
born again: little ones in Christ, 71:31
bread, daily:
  see also Lord’s Prayer
temporal necessities, 56:10; 57:7; 58:5
breast-beating, 67:1
brotherhood of man:
  Adam and Eve, first parents, 56:14
  one Father for all, 58:2; 59:2
  only Son, innumerable siblings, 57:2
brothers:
  binding your brother justly, 82:7
  sin against; reconciliation, 82:5
building (analogy):
  existing without an agent, 68:4
  foundation of skyscraper, 69:2
burdens:
  bearing one another’s, 91:9
  Christ’s yoke is light, 68:12; 70:1, 3; 70A:1

C
Caesar, image on coin, 90:10
camel passing through eye of needle, 85:2
Canaanite woman:
  ask, seek, knock, 77A:1
  crying out, 88:10
faith, 77:11
from dog to human being, 77:10; 77B:1
  humility, 77:1, 11
  not a dog: she asked, sought, knocked,
    60A:3, 4
  perfection, 77B:1
  persevering voice of, 77:9
  representing Church and Gentiles, 60A:2
  tested by Christ, 60A:2
  triumph of, 60A:4
carnality:
  see also flesh
temporal concerns, 71:30
catechumens:
  Lord’s Prayer; those seeking baptism,
causation (analogy):
  building existing without an agent, 68:4
centurian:
  asks that his servant be healed, 62:1ff;
    62A:1-4
  Christ entered his heart, 62A:1
  faith of, 88:10
  humility, 77:12
change:
  for better or worse, 51:1
  persons change, not words, 86:7
character: be gold, 62:12
charity:
  almsdeeds pray for us to the Lord, 56:11
  see also almsgiving
  Christ’s yoke is light, 68:13
  counsel: sell all, give to the poor,
    86:1-17
  does not seek its own, 51:34
  fruit of the Spirit, 89:1
  giving to members of Christ, 53A:6
  God returns greater gifts, 86:5
  let love be born in you, 90:6
  see also love
  more excellent way, 93:5
  nothing without charity, 88:21
  oil in lamps, 93:5
  one with plenty helps one in need,
    85:7
  poured through the Holy Spirit, 71:18
  seeks not its own advantage, 78:6
  violating, 88:21
  what is done for the least, is done to
    Christ, 86:3-5
  chastisement, separating ourselves from,
    55:5
sermons 51-94
Sermons 51-94

chastity:
  - leading to temptation, 57:9
  - love wife chastely, 51:25

cheating:
  - let no one seek his own, 78:6

children:
  - born in/out of wedlock, 51:26
  - discipline, 82:2
  - lifespan diminishing as they grow, 84:2
  - squandering inheritance, 60:3

Christians:
  - leading bad lives, 73:3
  - leading good lives, 73:4
  - summoned from east and west, 62:6
  - wheat and chaff, 63A:1

Christian unity:
  - opposed by the impenitent, 71:36

Christians:
  - leading bad lives, 73:3
  - leading good lives, 73:4
  - summoned from east and west, 62:6
  - wheat and chaff, 63A:1

chronology:
  - generations from Abraham to Christ, 51:8, 11, 12

Church:
  - both good and bad people in, 88:19
  - bride at the wedding feast, 90:6
  - built on Christ, 76:2

Christ: "who touched me?" 63B:3
Christ the bridegroom, 91:7
Christ’s “I confess . . .”, 67:1-9 passim
Church loosing/unbinding, 67:3

Circumcellions, 62:17

commandments:
  - keep, if you wish eternal life, 84:1-2; 85:1-7
  - keeping is easier than counsel of perfection, 85:1
  - whole range of, related to love, 68:13

confession:
  - accusing self is praising God, 67:2, 4
  - Christ’s “I confess . . .”, 67:1-9 passim
  - come back to life, 67:2
  - darkness confessing to be darkness, 67:9
  - not limited to sins, 68:2
  - praise as, 68:2

congregations:
  - leaders seated on higher level, 91:5

gentile members, 63A:2; 63B:2

glorified in this world, 75:10

hated for His name’s sake, 64:3

see also kingdom of God

loosing/unbinding in confession, 67:3

members are sons/daughters of God, 90:6

as mother, 57:2

mother Church; like Mary, 72A:8

mother of Christ, 65A:7

multitudes flowing into, 63A:1

see also Mystical Body

Peter as representative of, 76:1

prefigured: Old Testament populations, 51:26

sin of being estranged from, 71:28

something better than Mary, 72A:7

spiritual/worldly people in, 56:8

spread throughout the world, 51:4

strong/weak members in, 76:4

ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:2

those separated from, do not have the Spirit, 71:30

thy will be done, as in heaven, 57:6; 58:4

unity opposed by impenitent heart, 71:36

unity; speaking in tongues, 87:9

vessel tossed about by storm, 75:4

virgin, 72A:8; 93:4

white garments (the transfiguration), 78:2

woman suffering from issue of blood, 77:8

worldwide, 62:4

Circumcellions, 62:17

confession:
  - accusing self is praising God, 67:2, 4
  - Christ’s “I confess . . .”, 67:1-9 passim

Church loosing/unbinding, 67:3

come back to life, 67:2

darkness confessing to be darkness, 67:9

not limited to sins, 68:2

praise as, 68:2

congregations:
  - leaders seated on higher level, 91:5

Volume III/3
conscience:
  correcting, 82:14
  wedding garment, 90:6
  wounding the weak persons, 62:9, 10
consent:
  battle with coveting flesh, 77A:2
  coveting, 58:9
  scandal as temptation, 81:4
  withholding, 88:25
  withholding, from works of darkness, 88:19
consolation, of mourners, 53:3
conversion:
  changing from bad to good, 61:2
  conscience-stricken Jews, 89:1
  correcting yourself, 82:14
  delaying, 87:11
  disciples (Jews) at Pentecost, 80:5
  Jewish converts, 77:4
  let voices be heard in deeds, 88:12
  once spiritually blind, deaf, dead, 88:3
  past sins forgiven, 87:10
  postponing, 73A:2
  wolves become sheep, 64:2
  wrongheaded hope, 87:10
cornerstone, 51:15; 88:10; 89:4
correction, see rebuking others
counsel, gift of, 91:9
courage:
  fear of the Lord, 65:1
  threats of wicked men, 62:12
covenant:
  symbolism of Abraham’s two sons, 89:6
covetousness:
  brings forth sin; sin begets death, 58:9
  conquered, means peace, 77A:2
  see also consent; desire
cowardice, and fear, 65:1
creation:
  find three somethings; analogy of the
    Trinity, 52:17
  finding some likeness of the godhead, 52:15
  God desires his own, 62:8
  heaven and earth as the whole of, 68:2
  invisible things clearly perceived from, 68:5
  knowledge of the responsible agent, 68:4
  love the creator, 68:5
  made through the Son, 52:5
  creator:
    beauty of, 65A:4
    far above us; incomprehensible, 52:16
    God our Father, 57:2
    meekness: closeness to the creator, 53:2
    sees us, hears us, 69:3
  creed:
    Lord’s Prayer; those seeking baptism, 56:1; 58:1; 59:1
    reciting by heart, 58:1, 13
cross:
  beating the world by, 51:2
  boat for crossing stormy sea, 75:2
  breadth, length, height, depth, 53:16
  four dimensions of, 53:16
  honor to the, 88:8
crow wings, 68:13
  crucifixion:
    of criminals, forbidden, 88:8
    see also Good Thief
    see also Jesus Christ: crucifixion
    most shameful death, 88:7
    cruelty: hatred, 82:2
    cupidity, see avarice; greed.
cure,
  asking for, 61A:6
  see also healing
hem of Christ’s garment, 63A:3
curses:
  prophetic utterances in the psalms, 56:3
D
darkness (mental or spiritual evil):
  devil and unbelievers in the world, 67:5
  dispelled by almsgiving, 88:16
  hate as, 82:3
  humility: confessing to be darkness, 67:9
  mental; foolish persons, 67:8
  taking no part in works of, 88:19
David, King:
  genealogy of Christ, 51:7
  Jesus as Son of, 51:7, 8, 20; 91:1, 2; 92:1, 2, 3
dead:
  let his property come to him (good
    works), 86:11
  person sent on ahead, not lost, 86:11
  rich man wants to warn his brothers,
  86:16
Sermons 51-94

sinners; Lazarus, 67:2
spiritually dead, 88:3
dehth:
  advice to fool against extravagance, 86:15
see also afterlife
bitter; Christ’s passion, 88:7
concern over ending of this life, 84:1
delayed, not eliminated, 77A:4
dying for temporal possessions; 64A:2
dying with/without anxiety, 64:4
fear of, 65:2
fear only everlasting death, 77A:4
longed for, in evil days, 84:1
prayer for eternal life, 57:3
prepare for last day; 64A:1
slain by Christ’s death, 80:5
soul leaves body, 65:5-6
swallowed up in victory, 53A:12
ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:6
demoniac: blind/dumb person cured by
Christ, 71:1
demons:
  asking in prayer, 56:2
cast out by Jesus, 71:2, 27
cast out by prayer and fasting, 80:3
cast out by simple holiness, 71:3
confessed Jesus as Son of God, 90:8
see also devil
faith of, 53:11
genius loci, 62:10
prayer heard (allowed to go into pigs), 61A:3; 77B:4
unclean spirits, seeing God, 53:10
departing from the unclean, 88:23-25
dependence, on admiration, 93:10
desire(s):
  consenting to bad desire, 77A:3
covetous, 57:9
craving for riches, 68:11
dwelling always in house of the Lord, 65A:3
earthly; deface image of God, 90:10
evil; don’t consent, 53A:11
finding the Lord to be absent, 75:5
framework in the Lord’s Prayer, 56:4
labor for thing(s) craved, 68:10
mortification: crying out to Christ, 88:17
praying always, 80:7
stormy sea, 76:9
value lost if quickly granted, 61:6
despair:
  impenitence, 71:21
  soul killed by, 87:10
  turning back from God, 75:6
devil:
  called lion, 73:2
cast out by the Holy Spirit, 71:19
cunning at making things up, 91:4
see also demons
dreadful hunter, 51:2
invisible enemy, 67:5
rich and proud, 53A:4
Satan divided against himself, 71:33, 35, 36
self-accusation leaves no room for d., 67:4
disciples:
  casting out demons, 71:2
  John’s disciples become Christ’s, 66:4
  nothing without the Lord, 89:2
  rebuked for unbelief, 80:1
  sent by Jesus to the nations, 77:5
  speaking in tongues, 89:1
disease: woman with issue of blood, 63A:2
disobedience:
  obeying the devil, 90:9
  sin of paradise; sin of angels, 73A:3
dogs:
  Canaanite woman as, 60A:3, 4; 77:10; 77B:1
giving what is holy to, 77:9
  Donatists, 88:25
  Donatus, 73A:2; 88:21
doubt:
  Jesus calms storm-tossed boat, 75:1
  Peter walking on the water, 76:8
doves:
  simplicity of, 64A:2
  wings, 68:13
  E

earth:
  delight in, 91:3
earthly people; unbelievers, 57:6; 58:4
  flesh, 56:8
  possessed by, 53:2
  thy will be done, 59:5
  understood to mean whatever is on earth, 68:2
  earthly things, see temporal goods

Volume III/3
eating: sustaining the human, 51:23, 24
eccstasy: snatched from bodily consciousness, 52:16
Elijah: mount of the transfiguration, 78:2-5; 79;
79A:1 nourishment for forty days, 51:24
emotions: run on affection, feelings, love, 91:7
end of the world: date unknown; 64A:1
eventual collapse, 81:9
fourth watch of the night, 75:7
enemy(-ies): approaching the Lord’s table, 90:9
badness by disobedience, 90:9
belief vs the (invisible) devil, 67:5
grab him for God, 90:10
love of, 56:14, 15, 16
make good is killing enemy, making friend, 90:9
pardon, 59:7
praying for death of, 90:9
praying for harm to befall, 56:2
prosecuting, 90:9
saved from, by praising God, 67:6
stand firm in the Lord, 62:12
Stephen’s last prayer, 90:9
equality: rich and poor, at birth, 61:8, 9
error: Peter blamed for “human” ideas, 76:3
word against the Holy Spirit, 71:7
eschaton: end of the world, 75:7
eternal goods: temporal goods and, 61:11
eternal law: time of Job, 81:2
eternal life: ask: to dwell always in the house of the Lord, 65A:13
life: cherishing, 62:16
everlasting joy, 75:10
forgiveness of sins, 71:19
see also heaven
heavenly home, 86:1
keep commandments, if you wish to come to, 84:1-2; 85:1-7
petitions; Lord’s Prayer, 57:6; 58:12
pray for everlasting benefits, 80:7
pray for, until the end, 77B:1
promise, 61A:5
temporal price for, 70:2
treasure in heaven, 86:10
wages for life’s work, 56:10
work for the reward: keep commandments, 84:2
eternal punishment: enduring, to avoid, 70:3
eternity, dying for, 77A:4
eucharist: abiding in Christ, 71:17
daily bread, 57:7; 58:5
whoever eats my flesh . . . , 71:17
Eunomians, 71:5
Eunomius, 73A:2
evil people, see good and evil; wickedness
expectations: attending Augustine’s sermon, 51:1
extravagance: Christ’s advice: treat your souls well, 86:17
devil’s kingdom, 71:4
mistress says “spend, treat yourself well,” 86:6-7, 15
eyes: seeing God, 53:6
seeing temporal light, 88:5

F

faint-hearted:
couragement, 77C
faith:
acquiring: stretch out heart, not hand, 88:2
arrive at vision of God, 88:4
believing without seeing preferred, 88:2
building, in things that were not seen, 88:1
built up by Christ’s transitory works, 88:11
calling upon God’s name, 57:1
can do “in the Lord,” but not in the apostles, 76:5
Canaanite woman, 77:11; 77B:1
centurion and his servant, 62A:1-4
Christ dwelling in the heart; 64A:2
Christ resides in inner person through, 53:15
Christ’s acts in time, 88:14
comfort now, joy later, 88:4
discerned in humility: Zacchaeus, 62:3
dress: tunic and shirt of mail, 58:13
eye healed: understand Christ’s divinity, 88:14
eyes enlightened by, 53:6
first believe; heal “eye,” 88:4
greatest from the smallest, 77:12
heart as boat, Christ asleep, 81:8
heart purified by, 53:10
humbly ask, seek, knock, 60A:4
Jesus walking on the waters, 80:6
light: love, believe, cry out, 88:15
love together with, 90:8
perceive Christ passing by, 88:14
Peter walking on the water, 76:6
prayer for, 80:1
resist the devil; watch, 91:4
sleeping, 63:1
touching the hem of his garment, 62:5
unfeigned: wedding garment, 90:6
vision of God, the reward of, 58:13
walking by; doing good works, 91:9
wherewithal to see divine light, 88:6
will Son of man find faith on earth? 88:22
woman touching hem of Christ’s garment; 63B:2
working through love, 53:11
faithfulness:
  virgins, 93:4
  family affection, 72A:3, 4
fathers:
  Father of rebirth before natural father, 72A:6
father and son:
  guides: on earth, in heaven, 88:16
fear:
  death of soul, not body, 65:7-8
  inner flight, 77C
  proper time for, 55:1
  those who kill the body, 65:1-8
  field: parable of the sower, 88:21-22
  fig tree: Nathaniel; Adam, 69:4
  figs from thistles, 74:4
  fire; baptism, 71:19
  fishermen, chosen to be apostles, 87:12
  flatterers, selling admiration, 93:12
flesh:
  battle with spirit, 53A:12
  earth: (Lord’s Prayer), 56:8
  grass, it dies, 82:13
  spirit and, 57:6; 58:4
weaknesses, 53A:12
food: poor man, rich man, 61:12
fool: calling one’s brother “fool,” 54:1ff
foolish:
  things revealed to, 67:8
  virgins, see virgins
forgiveness:
  as we forgive others, 59:7
  Christ awake in your heart, 63:2
  done with the heart, 58:10
  forgive and be forgiven, 83:2, 4
  forgive, that you may be forgiven, 56:16
  grudge nursed in heart, 58:7
  loose on earth, loosed in heaven, 82:7
  mouth and heart, 83:7
  seventy-seven times, 83:1-8
forgiveness of sin:
  baptism, 56:13
  daily prayer, 77A:1
  eternal life, 71:19
  forfeiting by taking vengeance, 57:11
  given only in Church with the Holy Spirit, 71:33
  heart hardened by impenitence, 71:35
  Holy Spirit occupies, after forgiveness, 72A:2
  not forgiven apart from the Church, 71:28
  sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:6, 9-18, 20
  stressed in Lord’s Prayer, 57:12
  tree and its fruit, 72:2
  what debts? 57:12
  word against the Son of Man, 71:23-24
  work of the Trinity, 71:25
fornication:
  God will judge, 82:11, 13
fortune:
  wrestling with good fortune, 76:9
forty (the number):
  generations of Christ, 51:32
foundation:
  greatness and humility, 69:2
fruit:
  Jesus caused tree to wither, 89:1-4
  tree known by, 72:1
  tree outside its season, 77:7
  words and no deeds, 89:1
future:
  avarice says: take thought for, 86:9
  eternal, 86:10
future life:
see also afterlife
everything to be related to, 57:13
G
games:
concern for those attending, 51:1
stadium rather than church, 51:2
vain rejoicing, 51:2
genealogy:
man before the woman, 51:30
generosity:
fill empty person from your fullness, 53:5
genius loci, 62:10
Gentiles:
apostles sent to, 88:10
belief foretold, 60A:2
brotherhood, 57:2
calling upon the name of the Lord, 56:1
Christ’s bodily absence, powerful presence, 62:5
Christ’s sheepfold, 77:2
gospel preached to, by Paul, 60A:2
healed by Paul’s preaching, 78:2
Paul’s mission to, 77:5
seeking salvation for the, 82:7
Tyre and Sidon, 77:1
wild olive grafted to olive, 77:12
gifts/giving:
give God back yourself, 65A:12
God is our good Father, 61:1
good gifts don’t make us good, 61A:7
to just/unjust persons, 60:6
reconciliation with brother first, 82:6
“Go out from there” (meaning), 88:23-25
goals:
hardships endured, 70:2
God:
almighty Father, thy will be done, 56:7; 57:6
anger, Moses’ maternal instincts, 88:24
comprehended = something other than God, 52:16
see also Creator
cultivates (improves) his creatures, 87:1
extend yourselves toward; grab others, 90:10
false idea: I sin, he doesn’t care, 75:6
Father as farm worker, 87:2
fatherhood; begets Son, 68:9
finding: book of created nature, 68:6
glorifying means giving thanks, 68:6, 7
He is the good that makes good, 61:3
heaven in palm of His hand, 53:13-14
himself, as riches, 53A:4
idea of; spiritual not bodily, 53:7
life of the soul, 62:2
longing to see, 68:9
loved freely, and for nothing, 91:3, 9
metaphors: face, hands, feet, 53:7
name hallowed, 56:5
omnipresence: can’t hide from his eyes, 69:3, 4
only the Father knows the Son, 68:9
our Father in heaven, 65A:6
praising, see Praise
property of the Father, 71:18
refuge, 55:2, 6
run away from/to him, 69:4
see him by leading good life, 69:4
seeing; the pure of heart, 53:6-7
sight of, promised, 69:3
strikes; heals, 77:3
supremely good: the Father, 61A:7
thinking of, as body, bulk, or mass, 53:12, 14
training, to receive the inheritance, 55:5
treating his name with disdain, 56:5
see also Trinity
turn to, with your requests, 75:4
will is done in if not by us, 56:7
godhead:
communion; gift of the Holy Spirit, 71:18
Jesus’ descent to the shades, 53A:13
material localization, 52:15
understanding, from the creation, 52:15
gods:
Roman and Trojan, 81:9
stars and planets as, 68:4
gold:
creature says “love me,” 65A:4
doing good with, 61:3
good and evil:
bad lives, 82:14
bad person cannot make a good one, 61:2
based on viewpoint, all are bad, 90:2
compared with the bad, the good are few, 90:4
evils abound because of wicked people, 80:8
God makes people good, 61:2
good/bad things happen to all alike, 64:1
keep yourself from every kind of evil, 77A:4
let the bad imitate the good, 73:4
not wanting to be good, 85:1
redeeming the time, 58:11
relativity, 72:4
resisting evil; 64A:2
same people: good and bad, 90:3
see also scandal; sin
the times (ourselves) as evil, 80:8
unity of God’s people, 88:19
wheat and chaff, 88:19
see also wickedness
Good Thief:
salvation, 67:7
good works:
admiration as motive, 93:10
see also almsgiving
ask, seek, knock — with voices and
morals, 77B:7
breadth, length, height, depth, 53:15
command to the rich, 53A:4, 5; 85:4
crying out to God, 88:12, 16, 17
done by bad people, 72:1
faith without charity, nothing is done,
53:11
forgive; give: twin acts of kindness,
58:10
lamps burning, 93:3, 4
let your light shine before men, 54:1-4;
93:14
mothers obstructing sons, 72A:3
persevere in, 88:18
pleasure only in God, 81:3
purpose: to become well known, 54:3
seeking recognition for, 54:3
take care not to do justice before men,
54:1-4
ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:3
walking by faith, 91:9
words and deeds, 77:7
goodness:
can’t lose against your will, 72:6
good gifts don’t make us good, 61A:7
see also meekness
no one is good but the one God, 90:2
progress; the human condition, 61A:7
see God by leading good life, 69:4
sinners confessing, 90:3
temporal/eternal goods, 61:11
wanting good things; not wanting to be
good, 72:5
goods:
temporal and eternal, 80:7
gospel(-s):
authority of, 72A:6
backing up with the law and the prophets,
79A:3
mouth of Christ, still speaking, 85:1
unity with law and prophets, 79
grace:
burdens eased by, 70:3
frees us from demons, 71:3
hidden secrecy of God’s will, 53:15
matching, with good works, 88:12
needed by Christ (as man), 67:7
sufficient, 61A:4
things handed over by the Father, 68:8
voluntary rain, 76:6
grapes from thorns, 74:4
great men:
offending “Mr. Big,” 62:8
greatness:
humility as foundation, 69:2
greed:
see also avarice
cannot be totally extinguished, 90:6
craving for possessions, 68:10
evil spirit, 72A:2
first to get, then to increase, 68:10
plain for all to see, 60:5
possess the earth, 53:2
prayer to become rich, 77B:2
rebuked, 61:10
root of all evil, 72:4
grief:
consolation, reward for mourners, 53:3
gnudge, be reconciled, 82:5
grumbling, about present evils, 60:1
H

Volume III/3
hatred:
anger and, 82:1
anger grown old, 58:8
brooding, in the heart, 58:8
cruel acts, 82:2
damage to your own spirit, 82:3
murderer, 82:3
ridding from your heart, 56:17
shun: toss beam out of the eye, 82:2
healing:
cry out for, 88:13
God strikes/heals, 77:3
health of the spirit, 88:3
healing:
asking for, 61A:5
goodness, 72:4
spiritual healing, 88:3
temporal vs eternal, 80:3
true health is immortality, 77:13-14
heart:
asks, seeks, knocks, 91:3
boasting of chaste heart, 93:14
Christ dwelling in; sleep, 63:1
clean up; remove avarice, 85:6
cultivation by God, 87:1
dullness of, 72:6
dullness of, 72:6
earthly treasure, 60:5
evils inflaming eye of, 88:6
faith of the centurion, 62A:1
forgiveness from, 83:8
God is sole judge of, 91:5
good/bad treasury, 74:3
heart-pure, see Pure of heart.
healing the “eyes” of, 88:5
love: pure heart is wedding garment, 90:6
mental turmoil; Jesus calms storm-tossed boat, 75:1
mystery of the godhead, 52:15
oil in flasks; ten virgins, 93:9
see also pure of heart
purified by behavior, 91:5
purified by faith in God, 53:10
rich with God, 62:12
roots in, 91:5
seeking God, 53:7
simplicity: asking only one thing from the Lord, 65A:3
veil placed over, 74:5
virginity of, 93:4
wedding garment lacking, 90:4
withdrawing from evil, 88:25

heaven(-s):
declare the glory of God, 53:14
desired for sake of earthly well-being, 77:13
gift, promise, 78:5
see also kingdom of heaven
measured in palm of His hand, 53:13-14
mind, 56:8
spiritual people in, 57:6
standing for all saints, 53:14
thy will be done, 59:5
understood to mean all in the heavens, 68:2
heirs, desiring other’s death, 86:12
herald, as spokesman, 74:3
heresy, necessity of, 51:11
heretics:
dangers from, 75:8
good results drawn from, 51:11
legal penalties, 62:18
parable of the weeds, 73A:2
sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:5
holiness:
begging favor for ourselves, 57:4
demons cast out by, 71:3
Holy Spirit:
activities done with Father and Son, 71:26
baptism; forgiveness of sins, 71:33
baptism of Christ; form of a dove, 52:1
blasphemed; gravest sin, 71:6, 9-18, 20, 36
body as temple of, 82:13
born/fed by, 71:19
forgiveness of sins in, 71:19, 23
fruits of; charity, 89:1
heretical groups, 71:5
impertinent is blasphemy against, 71:20, 23, 34
little ones in Christ, 71:31
lives in the humble of heart, 72A:2
parentage of Christ, 51:30
pretenders and, 71:32
property of, 71:18
repentance for sin against, 71:7, 34, 37
sevenfold activity, 72A:2
sin against; most difficult problem in Scripture, 71:8
sin against; pagans, Jews, heretics, 71:5
speaking in languages of all nations, 71:28
Spirit of Father and Son, 71:29

Sermons 51-94
Sufferings of St Paul, 70:2
those separated from the Church, 71:30
hope:
companion of faith, 53:11
wrongheaded, 87:10-11
human beings, see mankind.

human condition:
cure: acknowledge the doctor, 87:14
heritage of Adam; Christ, 90:7
life from Christ’s divinity, 80:5
progress in goodness, 61A:7
refusal to admit problems, 77:11
seasickness, 75:2
sick with sin, 87:13
time on earth as foreign travel, 75:2
wearisome life, 60:2

humankind:
Christ the head of; 64A:2
creature: the number seven, 51:34
earth did not produce human species, 90:7
greatness: image of God, 60:2
see also image of God
likeness of the Trinity in, 52:19-23
made in image of God, 52:18
one source; all neighbors, 90:7
perpetuation of, 51:23, 24
sexes, and the Incarnation, 51:3
human race/species, see humankind.

humility:
analogy: foundation of skyscraper, 69:2
asking pardon for offenses, 82:6
becoming humble: learn from Christ, 68:11; 70A:1
belief in the scriptures, 51:6
Canaanite woman, 77:1
centurian: I am not worthy . . ., 62:1ff; 62A:2
Christ enters centurian’s heart, not house, 62:1
Christ’s example, 51:4
core of day of judgment, 93:13
darkness confessing to be darkness, 67:9
death on a cross, 68:11
deserving to see God face to face, 68:7
digging round the tree, 72:3
faith discerned in humility: Zacchaeus, 62:3
God is close to crushed hearts, 70A:2
grafting in the wild olive, 77:15
hills and valleys, 77:12
the humbled exalted, 60A:4

John, baptism of Christ, 52:1
laying down the head, 62:2
paradox: the Canaanite woman, 60A:3
poor in spirit, 53:1, 8
poverty; the Beatitudes, 53A:2
things hidden from the wise, revealed to
the lowly, 67:8
things revealed to little ones, 68:3, 7, 8
unworthy to enter under my roof, 62A:2

hunger:
food, temporary relief, 53:4
hungry for justice, 61:7

hunters, enduring hardships, 70:2

hypocrisy:
bodies in church, hearts outside, 62:17
performing to be seen by men, 93:14
pretense: exterior form, 71:32
seven more wicked spirits, 72A:2

idolry, 62:7, 9, 13
idols:
asking in prayer, 56:2
breaking, in their hearts, 62:17
lounging with false gods, 62:9
smashing, 62:18
worship of, 62:10; 68:4; 71:4

image:
removed when person is present, 74:5

image of God:
God tames; is refuge, 55:3
human beings are Christ’s currency, 90:10
mind, 53A:12
one soul as, 52:18
rubbed off by earthly desires, 90:10
rubbed off by sin, 60:2
sculpted anew, 90:10
seeing its maker, 88:6

immortal life, see eternal life; immortality

immortality:
death swallowed up in victory, 53A:12
real health, 77:13
soul can be immortal; can die, 65:4

impenitence:
against the Spirit, 71:34-36
blasphemy against the Holy Spirit, 71:20, 23, 25
Church unity opposed by, 71:36
despair, 71:21

Volume III/3
impiety:
  death of the soul, 65:5
importunity:
  widow’s importunity, 61:5-6
impure heart, see pure of heart.
Incarnation:
  bodily womb, 51:3
  born of a woman; belief, 51:4
  emptied himself, taking form of slave, 52:11; 88:4, 11; 92:2
  God the Father and, 52:6, 7, 11
  likeness of the flesh of sin, 69:4
  Paul: work of the Father, 52:9
  Word made flesh, 51:32
  work of both Father and Son, 52:8, 11
inheritance:
  amassed by avarice, squandered by children, 60:3
  avarice and, 86:11, 12
injury:
  asking pardon for offenses, 82:6
  reproving others for, 82:7
insult:
  revenge/forgive, 63:2
intelligence:
  food for belly of innerself, 77:14
investments:
  interest from leading good lives, 94
  transfer to place of true life, 61:11
irreligion:
  few totally irreligious, 69:3
  Isaac, 71:32
  Ishmael, 71:32
Israelites, see Jews.

J
Jacob, 72:3
Jacob:
  adoption of sons of Joseph, 51:28
  dream: stairs from earth to heaven, 89:5
  Jeconiah, 51:13, 15
Jeremiah:
  on the Babylonian migration, 51:14
  stayed with sinners he inveighed against, 88:24
Jesus Christ:
  absence of means serious trouble, 75:5
  accused of having a demon, 71:35
  Adam and, 90:7
  advice from, 60:1
  ascension; hold on as he ascends, 91:7
  asks “how long, dull of heart?” 72:6
  asks: who touched (hem of his garment); 63B:1-3
  baptism; the Trinity, 51:33; 52:1
  beget by the Father; begets Son, 68:9
  believing in, but not loving, 90:8
  boat in storm, 63:1-3
  body jostled by many; touched for well-being by few, 77:6
  born of woman, 72A:4
  bread for the hungry, 53:4
  bride and bridegroom; flesh of Christ, 91:8
  bridegroom at the wedding feast, 90:6
  called lamb, lion, 73:2
  came, in person, only for the Jews, 63A:2
  Canaanite woman, 77:1
  champion who beat the world, 51:2
  charity to members of Christ, 53A:6
  childhood; found (as 12-year-old) in temple, 51:17
  childhood: subject to his parents, 51:19
  see also Church
  Church as man and woman; 64A:3
  conceived by faith, not lust, 69:4
  confessing to the Father, 68:3; 69:1
  cornerstone: Jews and Gentiles, 88:10
  cornerstone symbolized by Jeconiah, 51:15
  see also Cross
  crucifixion:
    despised when he hung on the cross, 87:9
    Father, forgive them . . ., 80:5; 90:9
    hid his grandeur, exposed his weakness, 87:9
    mocked, 88:8
    refusal to come down from the cross, 87:9
    spectacle to be stared at, 51:2
    David’s Lord, and son of David, 51:20; 91:2, 3
    death from sharing our humanity, 80:5
    death, slays death, 80:5
    death: Word cannot die; became human, 80:5
    demons cast out by his own power, 71:2, 27
    descended from Adam, Noah, Abraham, 51:31

Sermons 51-94
descent to the shades; not leaving Paradise, 53A:13
died for wicked men, 72:2
divinity, 91:8
divinity abides, 88:9
divinity is still, humanity passes by, 88:14
dwelling through faith in our hearts, 81:8
Emmaus: pretending to go farther, 89:4, 7
Father is greater; one with the Father, 91:2, 3
fear not: it’s really me, 75:9
fountain of life, 53:4
genealogy (Matthew and Luke), 51:1-35
genealogy: ancestry through Joseph, 51:16, 30
genealogy, in Matthew, 51:7, 12
generations (77), 51:31-35; 83:5
grace needed by, 67:7
hangs from a cross, rules the world, 70A:2
healing the human sickness, 87:13
hem of his garment, 62:5, 7
how to be brother, sister, mother to, 65A:7
humanity, 92:3
humanity and divinity, 80:5
humility, 68:11; 70A:1
 juggled, 68:11
“I confess . . .”, 67:1-9 passim
incarnation, see Incarnation,
intercedes, after the ascension, 75:3
Jeconiah in genealogy of, 51:13
see also Jews
John the Baptist; disciples, 66:1-5
Jonah and, 72A:1
Joseph as father of, 51:17, 19, 21, 26, 30
judgment; threatened punishments, 75:9
last words: Father, forgive them, 56:3
left Father, left mother (the Synagogue), 91:7
love carries soul to Christ, 65A:1
make place for Christ among your children, 86:13-14
mediator: man and God, 81:6
see also Messiah
miracle: raising daughter of synagogue official to life, 77:6
miracles admonish us to believe, 88:8
miracles of healing, 88:1
miracles past and gone, 88:9
mother; authority of the gospels, 72A:6
mother; conceive him in your heart, 65A:7
mother; the Manichees, 72A:5
mountain of refuge, 62A:3
mountain thrown into the sea, 89:2
must be “about his Father’s business,” 51:17-20
see also Mystical Body
name (anointing), 89:5
name means “Savior,” 51:10
nativity: born of a woman-virgin, 52:10
no fruit without Christ, 89:1
no one to be loved more than Christ, 65A:11
no sin “if I had not come . . .”, 71:11
not seen and believed in; seen and slain, 62:4
obedient unto death, 75:7
see also parables
parentage: in time and in eternity, 51:20
parentage: son of man, 51:17
passing by (meaning: transitory deeds), 88:9, 11
passion: waves rose mightily, 75:7
Peter and demons confess: Son of God, 90:8
Peter’s fear of Christ dying, 76:3
power and wisdom of God, 53:7
power not used, crucified, 75:7
praying alone, 75:3
pretending (?), 75:3
preaching to find fruit out of season, 89:4
property of the Son, 71:18
prophecy: served by those he did not know, 62:4
reality of, 75:8
resides in inner person through faith, 53:15
recognition of Christ’s love, 53:16
sent to lost sheep of Israel, 77:4, 8, 9

Volume III/3
simultaneously in heaven and on earth, 67:7
snubs his mother, 72A:3
son of Abraham, 91:1
son of David; son of Abraham, 51:7, 8
son of David; Son of God, 91:1, 2; 92:1, 2, 3
Son of man, anointed at the head, 89:5
sower of the good seed, 73A:1
stone, 91:1, 92:2
stopping, standing still, 88:14, 16
storm at sea calmed, 75:1-10
suffering: work of both Father and Son, 52:8, 12
sufferings admonish us to believe, 88:8
symbolic language: Who touched me?, 77:7
took on mortal body so he could slay death, 88:1
touching hem of his garment, 63A:1-3; 63B:1-3
treasures of wisdom and knowledge, 51:5
true light, 67:9
true light: justice and wisdom, 75:5
unavenged, 58:8
walking on the sea: “It’s really me,” 75:8
walking on the waters, 80:6
walking on water, calms the waves, 75:1, 7
what is done for the least, is done to Christ, 86:3-5
who is my mother? 72A:6
who sees me, sees the Father, 88:4
woman touched hem of his garment, 77:6, 8
Word of God is never silent, 51:17
Word of God, Word made flesh, 88:14
Word was with God; David’s Lord, 91:2
Jews:
Babylonian migration, 51:14, 15
believers, at end of the world; 63B:2
Christ and, 77:2
Christ, the morning worm, 62A:4
excluded from gospel by pride, 77:11
faith and the Roman centurion, 62A:2
faithful to Christ, 89:1
grafting in the wild olive, 77:15
hoping for coming of Messiah, 91:1; 92:1, 2
lost sheep of house of Israel, 77:2, 4, 8, 9; 60A:2
opinion on Christ as son, 92:1
parable of the vineyard, 87:3
Pentecost; conversion, 87:14
Peter’s preaching to, 77:4
pride renders unfruitful, 77:12
rejection of Christ as “Babylonian migration,” 51:14
sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:5, 11
stumbled over Christ (stone), 92:3
tree withered by Christ, 89:2
Job:
devil allowed to test, 77B:4; 91:4
压ured, on the dunghill, 81:2
worships God for nothing, 91:3, 4
John the Baptist, Saint:
angels greater than, 66:2
in chains, sends disciples to Christ, 66:1-5
doubts about Christ, 66:3
greater than a prophet, 66:1
preaching repentance, 71:19
what Christ said about John, 66:2
witness to the true light, 67:9
Jonah, representing Christ, 72A:1
Joseph, Saint:
angel’s appearance in dream, 51:10
chaste father, 51:26
Christ’s ancestry through, 51:16, 30
father of, 51:27
father of Christ, 51:17, 19, 21, 26, 30
finding Mary to be with child, 51:9
genealogy: Matthew vs Luke, 51:27, 29
Mary’s husband, 51:16
naming Jesus, 51:16
son of Eli, 51:29
unwilling to disgrace Mary publicly, 82:9
joy:
Canaanite woman, 77B:1
everlasting: Truth, Word, Wisdom (Christ), 75:10
over progress of workers, 82:15
Judas:
good drawn from the betrayal, 51:11
Sermons 51-94

judge:
  widow’s importunity, 61:5-6
judgment day:
  avarice, 77A:4
  divine mercy and, 72:2
  humble concern, 93:13
  knock now, not at time for judgment, 93:16
  life is short, 82:12
  receive the kingdom, for charity to the poor, 86:4
  threatened punishments; last judgment, 75:9
justice:
  become the slave of, 86:7
  credit just acts to faith in Christ, 54:4
  disburse money, to get justice, 61:4
  gold: the good you are good with, 61:3
  hunger and thirst for justice, 53:4; 53A:9; 61:7
  increasing, by almsgiving, 61:3
  Joseph’s genuine sense of, 51:9
  light of; Tobit, 88:15
  performing to be seen by men, 93:14
  reproving others, 82:7
  turning away from light of, 88:5
  widow’s importunity, 61:5-6
justification:
  Pharisee and the tax collector, 60A:4

K

kindness:
  good done because of weariness, 61:5
  putting another person off, 87:11
kingdom of God:
  Church, 78:4
  heresies and schisms, 71:4
  possessed equally by all, 88:18
  scribes not instructed in, 74:2
  things made new in, 74:5
  thy kingdom come, 56:6; 57:5
  vs kingdom of the devil, 71:2
kingdom of heaven:
  banquet, 90:4
  see also heaven
parable of wicked servant, 83:1
  poor in spirit, 53:1, 8
  rest in, 77:13
  temporary vs eternal health, 80:3
  ten virgins, 93:1ff

L

labor, see Work.
lamb: Jesus called lamb, 73:2
lamps: ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:3, 4
languages:
  binding role, 71:28
  see also Pentecost
  speaking in tongues of all nations, 71:28
last judgment, see judgment day.
last things: wake, sleep, rise, reign, 57:5
law:
  overstepping is sin, 83:7
  peace, no scandal, for those loving the law, 81:1
  unity with prophets and gospel, 79
  voluntary rain, 76:6
Lazarus:
  sinners buried like L., 67:2, 3
  leaders, obedience to, 82:15
  lethargics, 87:15
lie:
  every man a liar, 81:5, 6
  resisting scandal, 81:5
life:
  blessed only if eternal, 84:2
  fear of its ending, 84:1
  see also human condition
  scandal: lovers of the world, 81:7
  a sickness, 80:2
  uncertainty of, 82:14
life events:
  straw is burned; gold is refined, 62:12
light:
  Christ, the light; John the Baptist, the lamp, 67:9
  eye of body; eye of heart, 88:5
  love, believe, cry out, 88:15
lion:
  devil called, 73:2
  Jesus called lion, 73:2
longevity:
  a long life can be a torment, 84:2
Lord, The, see Jesus Christ.
Lord’s Prayer:
  asking for something good for ourselves, 56:5
  daily cleansing of our sins, 59:7
  daily purification of, 56:12
  deliver us from evil, 57:10; 58:11; 59:8
  deliver us from temptation, 56:18; 57:9; 58:9; 59:8

Volume III/3
Sermons 51-94

forgive us our debts, 56:11, 13-14, 17; 57:8-12; 58:6; 59:7
framework of true desires, 56:4
hallowed be thy name, 56:5, 9, 19; 57:3; 58:3; 59:3
in heaven and on earth, 56:8; 57:6; 58:4; 59:5
our daily bread, 56:9, 10, 19; 57:6; 58:5; 59:6
Our Father, who art in heaven, 56:5; 57:2; 58:2; 59:2
petitions: 4 for daily life; 3 for eternal life; 58:1; 59:8; 77B:6
thy kingdom come, 56:6, 9, 19; 57:4; 58:3; 59:4 thy will be done, 56:7, 14, 19; 57:6; 58:4; 59:5
Lord’s table: banquet of holy scriptures, 90:9
love: all devoted to arriving at object loved, 65A:2 avarice and, 78:6
see also charity in Christ, not instead of Christ, 65A:5
commands (two wings), 68:13
creation with, 77C
creator for His creation, 68:5
enticing beauty of the world, 65A:2
extend, beyond your family, 90:10
faith together with, 90:8
faith working through, 53:11
give God back yourself, 65A:12
God and neighbor, 90:6
God or the world; stormy sea, 76:9
God’s test; to know if we love him, 57:9
heart, lifted up, will haul up flesh, 68:13
loving father/mother more than Christ, 65A:1-13
many loves overcome by one love, 65A:2
no one more than Christ, 65A:11
only creature says “love me,” 65A:4
perfect gift of the Holy Spirit, 71:19
pure heart is wedding garment, 90:6
reproving others, 82:4
right order, 65A:8
root of all good, 72:4
spiritual loving, 65A:11
suffering, 65A:9
unlawful; pollution of the soul, 65A:1
without charity, nothing is done, 53:11
without love, I am nothing, 90:6
worldy things loved wrongly, 65A:1
lover: enduring hardships easy for, 68:12, 70:2
inconveniences easy for, 70:3
lust: fighting against, 57:9, 11
sex in marriage, 51:22, 24
spirit’s war with flesh, 56:8

M

Macedonians, 71:5
Manes, 73A:2
Manichees, 73A:2; 92:3
mother of Christ, 72A:5
marriage: Christ and the Church, 51:21
husband/wife joined by God, 65A:10
matrimonial contract, 51:22
mutual love, and the sex act, 51:21, 24
not right that it be broken, 91:7
procreation of children, 51:22, 23, 24
martyr(s):
cause, 53A:13
celebrate festival of, 64:8; 64A:1; 65:8
Christ’s yoke is light, 68:13
cunning of the snake; 64A:3
fear for soul, not flesh, 65:7, 8
fearing, were not afraid, 65:1
imitation of; 64A:1
love means suffering, 65A:9
merits; deeds, 64:1
persecution for justice’ sake, 53A:13
professing faith, 51:8
spectacles, 51:2
testimony, 65:3
this life as superfluous, 62:14
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
blessed womb of, 72A:7
Church something better than, 72A:7
discipleship greater than motherhood, 72A:7
fertility brought; virginity not taken away, 69:4
figure of the Church, 72A:8
mind greater than womb, 72A:7
modesty, 51:18
snubbed by Jesus, 65A:6; 72A:3

Mary, Virgin, 58:11
Mary and her son, 72A:5
Mary's and Joseph's house, 72A:5
Mary's heart, 57:9
Mary's heart of flesh, 57:9
Mary's heart was lifted up, 68:13
Mary's life, 51:21, 24
Mary's suffering, 65A:9
Mary's widowhood, 75:12
Mary's yoke, 68:13
Martha, 90:2
mark of the beast, 64A:3
mark of the cross, 64A:3
marriage:
Christ and the Church, 51:21
husband/wife joined by God, 65A:10
matrimonial contract, 51:22
mutual love, and the sex act, 51:21, 24
not right that it be broken, 91:7
procreation of children, 51:22, 23, 24
Martyr(s):
cause, 53A:13
celebrate festival of, 64:8; 64A:1; 65:8
Christ’s yoke is light, 68:13
cunning of the snake; 64A:3
fear for soul, not flesh, 65:7, 8
fearing, were not afraid, 65:1
imitation of; 64A:1
love means suffering, 65A:9
merits; deeds, 64:1
persecution for justice’ sake, 53A:13
professing faith, 51:8
spectacles, 51:2
testimony, 65:3
this life as superfluous, 62:14
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
blessed womb of, 72A:7
Church something better than, 72A:7
discipleship greater than motherhood, 72A:7
fertility brought; virginity not taken away, 69:4
figure of the Church, 72A:8
mind greater than womb, 72A:7
modesty, 51:18
snubbed by Jesus, 65A:6; 72A:3

Sermons 51-94
Sermons 51-94

virginity, 51:18; 72A:8
with child; Joseph’s sense of justice, 51:9
maternal affection, 72A:3, 4
Matthew, Saint:
faith in the evangelist, 51:6
Maximianists, 88:25
meek(ness):
closeness to creator of heaven and earth, 53:2
how to be meek, 81:2
instructing in spirit of, 88:20
Job as example of, 81:2
land of the living, 53A:7
peace to those who love your law, 81:1
pleasure only in God, 81:3, 5
possession of/possessed by earth, 53:2
memory:
analogy: God the Father, 52:23
trinity in man, 52:19-23
mercy:
beatitude, 53:5
beggar standing at your door, 53A:10
divine judgment and, 72:2
divine; not my capacity, 76:8
have mercy, because of my trust, 77A:1
knock now, not at time for judgment, 93:16
voluntary rain, 76:6
Messiah:
promise to Abraham, 51:4
promised to come in world’s old age, 81:8
prophecy: unjustly judged; will come to judge justly, 92:1
revealed to Peter by the Father, 76:3
seeking/saving what had been lost, 89:1
metaphors: lion; lamb, 73:2
mind:
—as heaven, 57:6
heaven (Lord’s Prayer), 56:8
image of God in, 53A:12
reasoning power, 55:3
virginity of, 72A:8
ministry, of rebuking, 82:15
miracle(s):
building up faith in things not seen, 88:1
centurion’s servant: 62A:1-4
disciples perform, through the Lord, 89:2
indicating a future reality, 89:3
Jesus healing diseases of the spirit, 63A:2
mountain thrown into the sea, 89:2
performed by good/bad people, 90:5
miser:
let no one seek his own, 78:6
self-indulgent, 63A:2
mistresses: avarice and extravagance, 86:6
mortification: crying out to Christ, 88:17
Moses, 87:5, 7
adopted by Pharaoh’s daughter, 51:28
idol worshippers, 88:24
maternal instincts, 88:24
miracles, 90:5
mount of the transfiguration, 78:2-5; 79:79A:1
offered another people, by God, 88:24
scribes sitting in chair of, 74:3
shining face, 74:5
mothers:
become mothers of Christ, 72A:8
obstructing sons’ good works, 72A:3
mourning:
consolation, the reward, 53:3
dead souls, 65:7
repentance, 53A:8
murder: hate, 82:3
mystery:
divine mysteries, 60A:1
God’s “ignorance” a guarantee of; 63B:2
localization of the godhead, 52:15
mystical body:
be the body of Christ, 62:7
crushed by flesh; touched by faith, 62:5, 7
head (Jesus) ascends, body (members) follow, 91:7
jostled, not touched (by pagans), 62:11
sinning against our brothers, 82A:4, 5

N

Nathanael:
no guile in, 89:5
under the fig tree, 69:4
nature:
finding God in book of created n., 68:6
necessities:
superfluities of the rich, 61:12
neighbor: everyone as, 90:7
Nineveh: Jonah, 72A:1
Noah: generation of Christ, 51:31
number(s):
4th watch of the night, 75:7

Volume III/3
obedience, to leaders, 82:15
offenses, asking pardon for, 82:6
oil:
  excels by coming to the top, 93:5
  gift of God, 93:9
old age:
  complaints in, 81:8
dying for temporal advantage, 64:6
olive tree:
  grafting in the wild olive, 77:15
original sin: woman’s role in, 51:3
Our Father, see Lord’s Prayer.

pagans:
  breaking the idols, 62:17
called dogs, 77:10
centurian: image of the pagans, 62:4
  humility, 77:12
jostling the body of Christ, 62:11
laws against, 62:18
sin against the Holy Spirit, 71:5
pain:
  bitter; Christ’s passion, 88:7
parable(s):
  debtor owing ten millions, 83:6
  figurative meaning, 89:6
  one thing called by many names, 73:2
  rich young man, 85:1-2
sower, 73:1; 73A:1
  path, thorns, good soil, 89:6
  weeds, 88:21-22
  wicked servant, 83:1
workers in vineyard; wages, 87:1-8
paradise:
  the flesh before sin, 53A:12
  promise to the good thief, 53A:13
pardon:
  asking, for offenses, 82:6
  see also forgiveness
  need of, 77A:1
parents:
  God taught us to love, 65A:7
  honor your father and mother, 65A:7
  Jesus teaches us to love, 72A:4
  love; Christ’s teaching, 65A:6
  love; not put ahead of God, 72A:4
  loving father/mother more than Christ, 65A:1-13
  loving, in Christ, 65A:5
  only God put before parents, 65A:7
  sparrows’ natural goodness, 90:10
  passions: tranquility in yourself, 76:9
  patience: enduring patiently, 63A:1
  patriarchs: procreation of children, 51:23
Patripassians, 52:6; 71:5
Paul, Saint:
  apostolate to the gentiles, 63A:3
  asked for Satan to depart, 61A:3
  before men: let light shine; take care not
to do justice, 54:2
censuring sinners, 82:8
Christ laid Saul low, 77:3
Church’s prayer for/against “Saul,” 56:3, 14
division; followers of Peter/Paul, 76:2
freed from demon, 71:3
hem of Christ’s garment, 77:8
humility, 77:3
last/least of the apostles, 63A:3; 63B:3;
78:2-5
little in himself, great in the Lord, 76:7
mission, 77:5
name (Tiny, or Little), 77:3
prayer to have Satan removed, 77B:3, 4
request: remove sting in the flesh, 76:7
stuck down; healed, 87:15
sufferings, 70:1, 2
peace:
  covetousness conquered, 77A:2
  loving the law, 81:1
  order: God controls mind; mind controls
  flesh, 53A:12
  pacify yourself inside, 53A:12
  persecution of Christians stopped, 51:14
  promoting, 53A:12
  tranquility of the times; in yourself,
  76:9
pearls:
  do not throw, before pigs, 60A:1-4; 77:9
Pentecost:
  conversion of Jews, 87:14
disciples speaking in tongues, 80:5; 87:9
Sermons 51-94

four thousand Jewish converts, 89:1
Peter speaking in languages of all nations, 71:33
promise of the Holy Spirit, 60A:2
perfection:
Canaanite woman, 77B:1
demanding, in (Lord’s Prayer), 56:8
sell all, give to the poor, 85:1-2
persecution:
persevere in crying out, 88:13
prayer for persecutors, 64A:3
suffering in Christian life, 70:1
perseverance:
good works, 88:18
salvation, 51:1
unto the end; salvation, 73A:2
widow’s importunity, 61:5-6
Peter, Saint:
advice on being saved, 77:4
called “Satan” by Christ, 76:3
denying Christ before men, 71:34
first called blessed, then called “Satan,” 76:3
Jesus called “the Christ,” 76:1
mission, 78:6
Pentecost; speaking in tongues, 80:5
Plato and, 68:7
represents the weak and the strong, 76:4
strength in the Lord, 76:8
surnamed “Rocky,” 76:3
walking on the water, 75:10; 76:1-9
you are the Christ, 90:8
Pharisees:
development, 71:1
heart of, 74:4
rebuked, 74:2
tax collector justified, 60A:4
tithes, 85:5
vs Sadducees, 71:5
Philip (apostle):
show us the Father, 88:4
philosophers:
ignorant of things handed over by the Father, 68:8
Photinians, 71:5; 92:3
Photinus, 73A:2
piety:
loving God freely, 91:3, 9
with sufficiency, 85:6
pigs:
do not throw pearls before, 60A:1-4
Plato, and Peter, 68:7
pleasing everyone, 54:2, 4
pleasure:
adultery and, 65:6
sinful, 56:12
polygamy: Old Testament, 51:25
poor:
assistance for each other, 91:9
Augustine begs offerings for, 66:5
boasting about poverty, 85:2
counsel: sell all, give to the poor, 86:1-17
equal to the rich, at birth, 61:9
fear of poverty, 53A:2
labors in work, 70A:1
look for sufficiency, not riches, 85:6
parable of the rich young man, 85:1-2
porters for the rich, 53A:6
prayer to become rich, 77B:3
rich and poor have met each other, 53A:6
superfluities provide poor with necessities, 61:12
walking together with the rich, 85:7
wishing to become rich, 53A:3
poor in spirit:
kingdom of heaven, 53:1, 8
in wishes, 53A:2
possessions:
first greed, then fear, 68:10
gaining: loss of possession of self, 53A:4
good things vs being good, 72:5
power, legitimating, 65:2
practicing, and scribes’ preaching, 74:2, 3
praise:
accusing self in confession, 67:2, 4
confession of, 68:2
human error sometimes in, 73A:3
revelations to the humble, 67:8
saved from enemy by praising God, 67:6
thrown off balance by, 75:10
prayer(s), 80:1-8
all are beggars, 83:2
almsgiving and prayer clean our sins, 56:12
see also ask, seek, knock
believing, you will receive, 89:2
clean out your inner room, 53A:11
desire is praying always, 80:7
devotedness, not wordiness, 56:4
differences in prayers, 77B:2
Father knows, before you ask, 80:2

Volume III/3
forgiveness of daily sins, 58:8
garrulous, 80:2
God’s favor, not answered, 77B:4
Jesus alone on the mountain, 75:3
not getting what is asked for, 77B:4
present needs, 59:6
tears reach the Lord, 77B:6
text (a prayer), 67:10
that you may love enemies, 56:15
two wings: forgiving and giving, 58:10
urgent, when all human efforts have failed, 75:4
what should be asked for, 77B:5
what we should ask for, 57:3
what we should avoid in asking, 56:2
without ceasing, 77B:1
preaching: scribes, 74:2, 3
pressure:
scandal and, 81:2, 4, 5
training exercises, 81:7
world as boat, Christ asleep, 81:8
pretense:
physical presence with Christ’s sheep, 71:32
pride:
belief in the scriptures, 51:6
calling selves wise, they became foolish, 67:8
Canaanite woman: faith, 77:11
Christ’s example of humility, 68:11; 70A:2
God hides himself from the proud, 68:7
grafting in the wild olive, 77:15
heart; judgment, 91:5
hills and valleys, 77:12
imagine: escape the eyes of God, 70A:2
light exposed to wind of, 67:9
living a good life, 72A:2
recognizing, but not glorifying, God, 68:7
riches and, 53A:4
Saul (king) and Saul (later Paul), 77:3
soul’s greatest ill, 51:4
swelling/shriving, 70A:2
swollen heads of congregation leaders, 91:5
swollen-headed, 87:12
weighed down by sins, 70A:1
the wise and the prudent, 67:8
worm in riches, 61:10
Priscillian, 73A:2
procreation of children, 51:22, 23, 24
profit: good use of, 61:11
promise:
Christ, cross, Spirit, Church, 77A:2
promotion: means of doing good, 72:4
property:
transferring wealth to heaven, 53A:6
prophecy:
Messiah served by people he never knew, 77:5
transfiguration, 78:1
prophets:
deeds explain words, 88:25
John the Baptist greater than, 66:2
stay with their people, good or bad, 88:24
unity with law and gospel, 79
providence: God protects, 62:15
psalms: prophetic utterances, 56:3
public rebuke, see rebuking others.
punishment:
fear by evil people, 90:2
robbers crucified with Jesus, 53A:13
pure of heart:
beatitude: shall see God, 53:6-7, 16; 53A:11; 88:4
purified by each beatitude, 53A:11
special way of seeing God, 53:9
unclean spirits, seeing God, 53:10

Q
quarrel: simplicity of doves, 64:7

R
rain, voluntary, 76:6
razor, superfluities, 62:14, 15
rebuking others:
correcting, with gentleness, 88:20
correction, with love, 77C
public or private, 82:4-12, 15; 83:1, 8
reconciliation:
gift of self to God, 82:5
redemption:
death of the flesh, 76:9
for this “bit of dust,” 57:13
religion:
few deeply religious, few totally unreligious, 69:3
three ages: before/under the law; age of grace, 72:3
Sermons 51-94

religious condition: exterior form only, 71:32 good tree, bearing fruit, 72:3-4 mere men, carnal and sensual, 71:30 repentance: change your ways while you can, 73:3 dirt of, 72:3 holding on to the Church, 71:37 see also impenitence mourning; beatitude, 53A:8 preached by John the Baptist, 71:19 reproving others, see rebuking others. rest: Christ's yoke is light, 68:13; 70:1 resurrection (of the human body): flesh will rise by soul's merits, 65:3 gift, promise, 78:5 God as our inheritance, 55:4 iniquity and infirmity eliminated, 77A:2 parable of vineyard workers' wages, 87:5 revenge: Christ asleep in your heart, 63:2 reward: working together, 82:15 rich: all are beggars of God, 56:9 command: be rich in good works, 53A:4, 5; 85:4 command not to have proud thoughts, 85:3 counsel: sell all, give to the poor, 86:1-17 duties of, 61:11 equal to the poor, at birth, 61:9 fear increases as riches increase, 53A:2 greater needs of the, 77:13 labors in thought, 70A:1 no needs means truly rich, 77:13 parable of the rich young man, 85:1-2 parable: taken to Abraham's bosom, 86:16 poor as porters lifting property to heaven, 53A:6 poor in spirit, 53A:6 prayer to become, 77B:2 proud of delicacy, 61:12 rich and poor have met each other, 53A:6 walking together with the poor, 85:7 riches: breeding pride, 61:10 craving for, 68:11 make entering heaven difficult, 85:2 possessed by good and bad alike, 61:2 superfluities provide poor with necessities, 61:12 uncertainty of, 61:11; 85:3 see also wealth wish to become rich, 61:10; 85:6 Rome: fall of, in Christian times, 81:9 rulers: Cross of Christ in crown of, 51:2

S


scandal: cut it off, throw it away, 81:4 examples, 81:2 Job's wife, 81:2 lie by Mr. Big, 81:5 peace for those loving the law, 81:1 pressure, 81:2, 4, 5 temptation; don't consent, 81:4 threat of, 81:1 troubles as training exercises, 81:7 world both good and bad, 81:3

ccribes:
knowledge of the law, 74:1 preaching but not practicing, 74:2, 3 pride, 91:5 sitting in chair of Moses, 74:3 tithes, 85:5

scripture(s):
belief: pride vs humility, 51:6 clear passages; obscure passages, 71:11 merge into one truth, 81:1 reading, 51:35 sense: proper or symbolic, 89:4, 5, 6 understanding, 51:35 secrets, value of, 51:5

Volume III/3
sects: divisions calling themselves churches of Christ, 71:37
security:
proper time for, 55:1
rich and poor, 53A:2
segregations (term), 71:32
self:
    analogy of the Trinity found in, 52:17
    glorification, 54:3
    hate as damage to, 82:3
    must be stern judges of, 63A:1
self-accusation: confession is praising god, 67:2, 4
self-deceit: thinking one is something, 67:6
self-indulgence: examples, 63A:2; 63B:3
self-interest, 54:3
self-love:
    reproving others, 82:4
    whoever loves iniquity hates his own soul, 90:6
senses: five; the ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:2
sensuality:
    people not having the Spirit, 71:30
    sustaining human pleasure, 51:23
servant:
    beating, 72:7
    investing talent received, 94
    parable of wicked servant, 83:1
    squandering capital, 94
    seventy-seven (times to forgive), 83:1-8
sex:
    love wife chastely, 51:25
    married love, and the sex act, 51:21, 24
sexes:
    Christ, born of a woman, 51:3
    neither male nor female, in faith, 72A:4
    proper honor of each sex, 51:3
sharing:
    easy givers: the rich, 61:11
    giving readily, 85:4, 5
    make place for Christ among your children, 86:13-14
    parable of the sower, 53A:5
    rich and poor, on the same road, 61:12
    tithes, 85:5
sheep among wolves, 64:1-8; 64A:1-3
sickness:
    attitudes of the sick, 80:4
    Christ as doctor for the spiritually sick, 88:7
    God the Father as doctor, 80:2
Sidon: gentile city, 77:1
silence:
    reproving others, 82:7
    withdrawal from the din, 52:22
simplicity:
    asking only one thing from the Lord, 65A:3
    seeking God, in the heart, 53:7
sin:
    against the weak is sin against Christ, 82:4
    almsgiving and prayer clean our sins, 56:12
    battle: coveting vs consent, 77A:2
    see also Confession
covetousness of the flesh, 77A:2
daily prayer for forgiveness, 58:8
elevenfold, 83:7
enemy of your soul, 77A:4
expecting to go unpunished, 77A:2
false idea: I sin, God doesn’t care, 75:6
forgive us our debts, 56:11; 77A:3
forgive, as we forgive, 57:8; 58:6
    see also forgiveness of sin; good and evil
ignoring or slighting minor sins, 58:10
Incarnation: likeness of the flesh of sin, 69:4
justification, 77A:4
large or small, sink ships, 77B:7
makes gap between us and God, 68:10
number 77 symbolizes all sins, 83:7
object left here; sin carried on, 58:9
original, see original sin.
rebuke in private, 83:8
    see also scandal
small sins not to be shrugged off, 77B:7
spirit; body, 51:34
sweetness; death, 77A:3
tree not bearing fruit not in season, 89:3
trivial, 82:5
we are God’s debtors, 83:2
weaknesses of the flesh, 53A:12
sinner(s):
    censuring, in front of all, 82:8
    Christ as doctor for the sick, 80:4
    correcting, with gentleness, 88:20
    correction with love, 77C
    dead, like Lazarus, 67:2
    justified by calling himself `sinner,’ 60A:4
    oil of (flattery), 93:12
Sermons 51-94

private reprove, 82:11
prophets not keeping quiet, 88:25
see also wickedness
sleep:
Jesus: boat in storm, 63:1-3
ten wise/foolish virgins, 93:6, 7
snake, cunning of, 64:5-8; 64A:2-3
Solomon: on censuring others, 82:8
sons: good works; mother relations, 72A:3
sons of God: grace: power to become, 81:6
soul:
can be killed, 65:5
death without God, 65:7, 8
even “dead,” makes flesh live, 65:6
give alms to your soul too, 87:11
image of God, 52:18
image of the Trinity, 51:34
immortal after its own fashion, 65:4
killed by despair or by wrongheaded hope, 87:10
life of the body, 62:2
memory, understanding, will, 52:19-23
one who loves/does not love his own, 90:6
polluted by unlawful love, 65A:1
sower:
enemy has sown weeds everywhere, 73A:3
parable explained, 73:1; 73A:1
parable of the good seed, 73:1; 73A:1;
88:21-22
parable of the weeds, 79A:1
space: localization of the godhead, 52:15
sparrows, as parents, 90:10
spectacles: two kinds of people at, 51:2
speech: bridling, 55:1
spirit:
battle with flesh, 53A:12
capacity to be enlarged, 91:6
discourses; healing by Jesus, 63A:2
flesh and, 57:6; 58:4
hate as damage to, 82:3
spirits: seven wicked and seven more wicked, 72A:2
spiritual life:
breadth, length, height, depth, 53:15
Christ as doctor for the sick, 88:7
Christ awake in your heart, 63:1-3
daily nourishment, 57:7
enemy (devil) is invisible, 67:4-5
God tames his own image, 55:3
see also heart
pleasing God, 65A:13
stairs: Jacob’s dream, 89:5
stars: measuring creation, 68:4
stealing: plundering, 85:1
Stephen, Saint:
forgives his enemies, 56:16
last prayer: for his enemies, 90:9
rebukes the Jews, 90:9
stone: builders reject, becomes cornerstone, 89:4
storm:
boat tossed about by waves, 75:1-10
Jesus: boat in storm, 63:1-3
perish without the boat (Church), 75:4
temptations and trials, 75:4
strength:
God grants to those aware of weakness, 76:6
strong/weak members in the Church, 76:4, 6
stronger means less needy, 77:13
suffering:
bitter medicine, 88:7
entering the kingdom of heaven, 80:3
love, 65A:9
temporal; glory to come, 70:3
sufficiency, content with, 85:6
sun:
rises on the good and the wicked, 58:7
true light: justice and wisdom, 75:5
superfluities:
provide poor with necessities, 61:12
razor: lower authorities, 62:14, 15
symbolism: sense of scripture, 89:4, 5
synagogue:
mother of Christ, 91:7
tree deservedly shiveled up, 89:1

T

tabernacle: orders for construction of, 83:7
talent: servant investing, 94
taming: flee to God for refuge, 55:2-3
tax collector: justified, 60A:4
teaching: ability to, 91:9
tears: blood of the heart, 77B:6
temple of God:
sins of the flesh, 82:13
souls of the just, 53:7
temple of Jerusalem: body of Christ, 62A:3
temporal goods:
ask/seek/knock, 61A:4

Volume III/3
Volume III/3

asking, in moderation, 80:7
beneficial/harmful, 80:7
creature says “love me,” 65A:4
dying for; 64A:2
eternal goods and, 61:11
temptation:
daily combat, 77A:3
deliver us from evil, 56:18; 57:9, 10
different ways, 59:8
erenting, 77A:3
God does forsake some, 57:9
God tempts no one, 71:15
God walking on the waters, 75:7
Job: fire finds gold, not straw, 91:4
storm-tossed; absence of Christ, 75:5
tested by, 57:9, 59:8
testing faith, 71:15
a wind, a wave, 63:3
wishing to become rich, 77B:3
ten commandments:
symbolism (of ten), 83:6
the number ten, 51:34
thanksgiving: glorifying God, 68:6, 7
thief: Tobit’s wife, 88:15
Thomas, Saint: doubt, 88:2
thought: evil, 77A:3
time:
all things pass; the Lord remains, 65A:13
redeeming the time, 84:2
tithes: scribes and Pharisees, 85:5
tongue: taming, 55:1, 2
touch: unclean things, 88:23-25
trading: Christ’s divinity, our humanity, 80:5
transfiguration:
allegorical meaning of, 78:2
Jesus was the agent in, 79A:1
Peter’s desire: build three tabernacles, 78:3; 79, 79A:1
prophecy, 78:1; 79A:1
significance (after the vision), 78:5
symbolism of mystery of, 79A:3
vision on the mountain, 78:1; 79: 79A:1
voice from a cloud, 78:4; 79
transgression: the number eleven, 51:34
treasure:
chasing after vanities, 60:2
eternal life, 86:10
heavenly investing, 86:1
laying up, on earth, 60:1-6
put by earth in earth, 60:5
storing up for whom? 60:3
where your heart is, 60:5
tree:
Jesus caused tree to wither, 89:1-4
known by its fruit, 72:1
leaves: analogy: perpetuation of the
human race, 51:23
trials: troubles test like fire, 81:7
Trinity:
activities of divine-three are inseparable, 71:26
apparently separated: place, function, 52:2
baptism of Christ, 51:33; 52:1
distinct properties and subsistence of
each person, 71:18
Father does nothing without the Son, 52:5, 7, 14
Father reveals the Son; Son reveals the
Father; 68:9
image found in image of God (man), 52:17
inseparable works: Father and Son, 52:2,
3, 4, 14
man as image of, 52:19-23
pardon of sins as work of, 71:25
performs works of each of the persons, 71:27
three persons acting/being in common, 71:33
was Father born? did Father suffer?, 52:6, 7
trouble(s):
anxiety over temporal, 60:1
training exercises, 81:7
Troy: burned; gods, 81:9
truth: holding down, in iniquity, 68:5, 6
Tyre: Gentile city, 77:1

ugliness: made beautiful by God’s desire, 62:8
unbelief:
death of the soul, 65:5
purge thing that prevents seeing God, 88:5
unbelievers:
darkness in the world, 67:5
dead burying their dead, 62:2
thy will be done, 59:5
unclean: depart from, spiritually, 88:23-25

Sermons 51-94
Sermons 51-94

understanding:

- analogy: God the Son, 52:23
- creator is far above us, 52:16
- first believe, 89:4
- gentle in hearing the word, 52:22
- trinity in man, 52:19-23

unity:

- Eucharist: be what we receive, 57:7
- law, prophets, gospel, 79, 79A:3
- usury: guard against, 77A:4

values:

- eternal life
- faith working through love, 90:8
- good things vs being good, 72:5
- vanity: temporal goods, 61:11

vengeance:

- divine, 59:7
- fearful temptation, 57:11

virtue:

- arming against scandals to come, 81:1
- progress in, 88:18

weakness:

- encourage the faint-hearted, 77C
- intimidation, 65:2
- sinning against the weak person, 62:9, 10
- strength made perfect in, 61A:4, 5
- strong brothers' care for, 62:7
- strong/weak members in the Church, 76:4, 6

wealth:

- accumulating for one's children, 60:3
- arguments in justification of, 60:5
- effects; setting heart on riches, 60:3
- relatively good/bad, 72:4
- see also riches
- storing; danger of theft, 60:4
- uncertainty of riches, 53A:4
- use for good purposes, 91:9
- vainly storing up, 60:4

wedding feast:

- bad people excluded, 90:3
- Christ the bridegroom, 90:6
- Church the bride, 90:6
- good and bad guests, 90:2
- householder finds one lacking wedding garment, 90:4

Volume III/3
Index from
Sermons 94A-147A

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 94A-147A are on the New Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/4 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-000-1, 6 x 9 in., 480 pp., 1992

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
## INDEX OF SCRIPTURE REFERENCES

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

### Old Testament

**Genesis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>118, 1; 119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3, 31</td>
<td>96, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>125, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26–27</td>
<td>126, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>97, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>129, 4; 147A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>110, 1; 122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>113A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>122, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>98, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1/18</td>
<td>129, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>105, 9; 113A, 10; 129, 9; 130, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exodus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13–17</td>
<td>109, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>145, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Leviticus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19:18</td>
<td>106, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Deuteronomy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:31</td>
<td>147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>106, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Judges**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:36–40</td>
<td>131, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Kings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17:9</td>
<td>136B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12</td>
<td>136B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:12:14</td>
<td>136B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10–14</td>
<td>100, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tobit**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:7, 10</td>
<td>125A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:89</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2 Maccabees**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Psalms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Sermons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>105, 8; 107, 10;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>125, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>114A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>110, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:19</td>
<td>110, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>113A, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:5</td>
<td>125, 8; 128, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>133, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:5</td>
<td>113, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:11</td>
<td>104, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>96, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:7</td>
<td>126, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>105A, 2; 122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:45</td>
<td>147A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:36</td>
<td>132A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:44</td>
<td>110, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:445</td>
<td>122, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:34</td>
<td>113A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>126, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5.4</td>
<td>129, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16–18</td>
<td>129, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>99, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4</td>
<td>104, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>136A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:10</td>
<td>136A, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:6</td>
<td>131, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:7</td>
<td>131, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:19</td>
<td>145, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:5</td>
<td>112A, 5; 136B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:9</td>
<td>126, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:9</td>
<td>125, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:1</td>
<td>95, 2, 105, 8, 13; 114, 1, 114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:3</td>
<td>103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:5</td>
<td>143, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:8</td>
<td>130, 3; 142, 9; 145, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:11</td>
<td>108, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:12</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:13</td>
<td>108, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:14</td>
<td>108, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:18</td>
<td>112A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:89</td>
<td>142, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>113, 6; 125A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:7</td>
<td>145, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:12</td>
<td>112A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:1</td>
<td>113B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4</td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:9</td>
<td>147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>138, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:10</td>
<td>110, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:13</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46:10</td>
<td>103, 3; 104, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:8</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:9</td>
<td>136A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:9.3</td>
<td>113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:17</td>
<td>112A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:1214</td>
<td>138, 7; 147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:1</td>
<td>97, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:11</td>
<td>97, 4; 108, 5; 146, 2; 147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:5.11</td>
<td>129, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:7</td>
<td>101, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59:9</td>
<td>131, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:11</td>
<td>124, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:9</td>
<td>104, 5; 145, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:11</td>
<td>113A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:18</td>
<td>136B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>104, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:17</td>
<td>135, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:24–25</td>
<td>130, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:25</td>
<td>132A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:39</td>
<td>142, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80:7</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:3</td>
<td>136C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6</td>
<td>107, 3; 125, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:67</td>
<td>97, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:17</td>
<td>142, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:18</td>
<td>129, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86:11</td>
<td>104, 5; 114A, 1, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:12</td>
<td>138, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:1</td>
<td>136A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:1</td>
<td>116, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:1</td>
<td>131, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:24</td>
<td>131, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:4</td>
<td>131, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:5</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:14</td>
<td>130, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:24</td>
<td>117, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106:1:1</td>
<td>136A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:3</td>
<td>135, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:4</td>
<td>105, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:5</td>
<td>105, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>126, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:11</td>
<td>110, 2; 131, 4, 8; 132A, 2; 147, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:34</td>
<td>112A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:5</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:15</td>
<td>133A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:1</td>
<td>136A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:24</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:49</td>
<td>105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:133</td>
<td>112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:164</td>
<td>95, 2; 114, 1; 114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:3</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:4</td>
<td>105, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126:6</td>
<td>102, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>105, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:9</td>
<td>107, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:17–18</td>
<td>128, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:18</td>
<td>135:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:4</td>
<td>112A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:16</td>
<td>135, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:5</td>
<td>142, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143:6</td>
<td>131, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:9</td>
<td>125, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:11–14</td>
<td>113, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:15</td>
<td>113, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:2</td>
<td>105, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:12–14</td>
<td>130, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:8</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:11–12</td>
<td>113A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>131, 3; 144, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35, LXX</td>
<td>136B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>114A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:2</td>
<td>107A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:16</td>
<td>114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:21</td>
<td>113A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>7:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>1:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td>2:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:10, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>52:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>3:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>9:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:79</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament

<p>| Matthew | 3:2 | 109, 1 |
| | 3:2 | 110, 1 |
| | 4:34 | 123, 2 |
| | 4:11 | 123, 2 |
| | 4:17 | 109, 1; 110, 1 |
| | 5:15–16 | 108, 1 |
| | 5:17 | 125, 10 |
| | 5:25 | 109, 2 |
| | 5:25–26 | 125, 8 |
| | 5:28 | 98, 5; 139A, 2 |
| | 5:45 | 142, 8 |
| | 5:6 | 105A, 2 |
| | 5:8 | 117, 15; 126, 13; 127, 10; 136C, 1 |
| | 5:11 | 137, 11; 138, 1 |
| | 6:2 | 112A, 4 |
| | 6:8 | 107A, 5 |
| | 6:9 | 136C, 4; 139, 1 |
| | 6:9.12 | 114, 5 |
| | 6:11 | 137, 9 |
| | 6:12 | 123, 5 |
| | 6:19.21 | 114A, 5; 115, 3; 131, 7 |
| | 6:20 | 107A, 6 |
| | 6:33 | 113, 5 |
| | 7:3 | 107A, 5 |
| | 7:9–11 | 114A, 6; 142, 3 |
| | 7:13 | 105, 6 |
| | 7:14 | 142, 5 |
| | 7:16 | 111, 3 |
| | 7:18, 17 | 107A, 1 |
| | 7:21 | 100, 1 |
| | 7:21–23 | 137, 8, 9 |
| | 7:22–23 | 138, 3; 142, 11; 145, 6 |
| | 8:11 | 103, 6; 104, 6; 111, 3 |
| | 8:22 | 134, 3 |
| | 9:9 | 105A, 1 |
| | 9:12 | 112, 8 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Mark</th>
<th>Luke</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>1:17; 147, 3</td>
<td>1:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:42</td>
<td>2:17; 112, 8</td>
<td>2:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28–29</td>
<td>5:35–39; 98, 4</td>
<td>3:78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>5:41</td>
<td>3:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>3:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>5:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>5:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>10:37–38; 96, 3</td>
<td>5:31–32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>6:20–21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>12:15–17</td>
<td>6:46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18</td>
<td>12:30–31</td>
<td>7:12–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:35</td>
<td>13:32</td>
<td>7:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>142, 13, 14</td>
<td>7:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:27</td>
<td>142, 13</td>
<td>7:39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
<td>7:41–47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9</td>
<td>95, 3</td>
<td>7:48–49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:14</td>
<td>95, 5</td>
<td>7:50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
<td>8:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:29</td>
<td>125A, 13</td>
<td>9:57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:37</td>
<td>125, 10</td>
<td>9:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:38</td>
<td>137, 6</td>
<td>9:59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2</td>
<td>99, 13; 101, 10, 11; 129, 8</td>
<td>9:60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>137, 7</td>
<td>9:61–62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>125A, 4</td>
<td>10:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21.23</td>
<td>135A, 8</td>
<td>10:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:24–27</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
<td>10:46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26–27</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
<td>10:56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:31</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
<td>10:56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:3341</td>
<td>137, 2</td>
<td>10:57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:3446</td>
<td>113A, 4</td>
<td>10:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>113, 1</td>
<td>10:59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:3540</td>
<td>113B, 4</td>
<td>10:60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:3542.46</td>
<td>137, 2</td>
<td>10:61–62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>103, 2; 107A, 2; 113, 1; 114A, 4; 133, 8</td>
<td>10:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:28</td>
<td>134, 5</td>
<td>10:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:41</td>
<td>99, 4</td>
<td>10:46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:34</td>
<td>130, 2</td>
<td>10:56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40</td>
<td>110, 3; 122, 2</td>
<td>10:57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>108, 1; 129, 2; 142, 14</td>
<td>10:58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mark

Luke

Volume III/4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Volume III/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41</td>
<td>103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:41–42</td>
<td>103, 3; 104, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:10</td>
<td>105A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:8</td>
<td>105A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>132, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9–10</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1–13</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:39</td>
<td>106, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>106, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:42</td>
<td>106, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>94A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13</td>
<td>107, 2; 107A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>107, 3; 107A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>105A, 1; 107, 1, 4; 107A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16–20</td>
<td>107A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:18–19</td>
<td>107, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20–21</td>
<td>107A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>107, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35–36</td>
<td>105, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:36</td>
<td>108, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>103, 6; 104, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:58</td>
<td>109, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:89</td>
<td>110, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>110, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:23–24</td>
<td>111, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:34</td>
<td>105, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:16</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18–20</td>
<td>112, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:22–23</td>
<td>112, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>112A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14–15</td>
<td>112A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17</td>
<td>112A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17–18</td>
<td>96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18–19</td>
<td>112A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18–20</td>
<td>112A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>112A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:25</td>
<td>112A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:27</td>
<td>112A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>112A, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:29</td>
<td>112A, 11, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:29–30</td>
<td>112A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:31</td>
<td>112A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:32</td>
<td>112A, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19–21</td>
<td>113A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:20</td>
<td>113B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22–24</td>
<td>102, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24</td>
<td>113B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>102, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29–30</td>
<td>113A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29–31</td>
<td>129, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:31</td>
<td>113A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:34</td>
<td>114, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>114A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20–21</td>
<td>109, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:32</td>
<td>96, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:1</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:9–14</td>
<td>137, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:9.13</td>
<td>115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td>136A, 2; 136B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13–14</td>
<td>135, 6; 136A, 2; 136C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13.14115, 2</td>
<td>136A, 3; 136B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>115, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:16</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:29</td>
<td>107A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>113, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td>105A, 1; 113, 3; 107A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>113, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:33</td>
<td>125, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:40</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>128, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:3</td>
<td>107A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:33</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:31–32</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>137, 3; 147, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:46</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:46</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>138, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:42</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13–21</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:36</td>
<td>116, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38</td>
<td>116, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38–39</td>
<td>112, 7; 116, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38–40</td>
<td>116, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:41</td>
<td>116, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:44–45</td>
<td>116, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:45–47</td>
<td>129, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>116, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46–47</td>
<td>129, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>116, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:51</td>
<td>128, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>104, 7; 117, 3; 117, 5; 118, 1; 124, 3; 125, 3; 126, 5, 6; 13; 135, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1, 14</td>
<td>104, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>Reference 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12.14</td>
<td>136C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>97, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>133, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1.14</td>
<td>145A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>117, 1; 118, 1; 120, 2; 125, 3; 126, 9; 127, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>141, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9.14</td>
<td>133, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>96, 5; 108, 1; 121, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>121, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11–12</td>
<td>103, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11–13</td>
<td>119, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>97A, 4; 121, 3; 143, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>121, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>97, 4; 113B, 2; 119, 4; 121, 5; 124, 2; 134, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>96, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23–25</td>
<td>120, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29; 3:29</td>
<td>136C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>129, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:47</td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:48</td>
<td>122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:49</td>
<td>122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:50–51</td>
<td>122, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:50–51</td>
<td>123, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>100, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>136B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>128, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2526</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>136, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>125, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>125A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13; 6:44</td>
<td>136C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>125, 6; 125A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>125, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>126, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 15; 135, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>98, 1; 135, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24–26</td>
<td>127, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>127, 7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25–27</td>
<td>127, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:81</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Sermons Volume 4, 94A-147A

### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>103, 4; 112A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10–13</td>
<td>107, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>138, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>127, 1, 3, 5, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>101, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>104, 4; 145, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>116, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>99, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>137, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>145, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>99, 13; 129, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>137, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>99, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>121, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29–32</td>
<td>125, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>139, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>132A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>138, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>136, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15.14</td>
<td>125A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16.15</td>
<td>137, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>125A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>128, 4; 136A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>105, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:67</td>
<td>127, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>143, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>96, 8; 121, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>134, 5; 144, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>107A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>107A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>105, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>128, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>129, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>105A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>131, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>143, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>105, 9; 129, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16.29</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2122</td>
<td>125, 2; 136, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>136, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>105, 9; 130, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>111, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>125, 10; 128, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15–17</td>
<td>128, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>128, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>116, 7; 125, 9; 131, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>112A, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>105, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>128, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32–5:1114, 3</td>
<td>98, 2; 127, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Volume III/4**
<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:31–32</td>
<td>129, 3</td>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>101, 6; 114, 3; 147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Philippians</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>114A, 1</td>
<td>3:20.21</td>
<td>106, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>137, 9</td>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>110, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>112A, 4; 137, 11</td>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>144, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18.19</td>
<td>101, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>103, 4</td>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>126, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3–11</td>
<td>143, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>107A, 1</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>136C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>117, 13; 125, 3; 126, 13; 136, 6</td>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>135, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>142, 6; 144, 5</td>
<td>1:89</td>
<td>114, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:78</td>
<td>95, 4</td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>136A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12–13</td>
<td>131, 3, 5</td>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>112, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>101, 9</td>
<td>2:15–16</td>
<td>112, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>125, 1</td>
<td>2:15–17</td>
<td>96, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13–14</td>
<td>105, 7</td>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>97A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13.12</td>
<td>142, 14</td>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>129, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>138, 7; 147A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>117, 15; 127, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>94A, 6</td>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>143, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>94A, 6</td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>114A, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>140, 3, 6</td>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>111, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>109, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16–17</td>
<td>125A, 2; 136, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>116, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>99, 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>104, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td>127, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td>137, 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>96, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>94A, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>126, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>113A, 4; 114A, 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>1:10.11</td>
<td>124, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>95, 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>144, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>124, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>1:24–25</td>
<td>113B, 1; 124, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sermons 94A-147A**
SUBJECT INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A

Abraham:
  bosom (privacy), 113B:3
delivery from death; outer darkness, 125A:4
give alms, all things are pure, 106:24
give temporal, receive eternal, 114A:3
giving as mercy, 106:4
giving of Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:2, 6; 113B:3
give temporal, receive eternal, 114A:3
promises refer to Christ and Church, 129:5
promise re his seed, 130:3
kingdom of heaven bought by, 125A:5
kingdom of heaven up for sale, 105A:1
money made from usury, 113:2
rich, but not proud, 113A:6
sacrifice of his son: faith, 113A:6
seed of Christ; mystical body, 144:5
sower; Christ the harvester, 101:2
delivery from death; outer darkness, 125A:4
give alms, all things are pure, 106:24
give temporal, receive eternal, 114A:3
giving as mercy, 106:4
giving of Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:2, 6; 113B:3
promises refer to Christ and Church, 129:5
promise re his seed, 130:3
kingdom of heaven bought by, 125A:5
kingdom of heaven up for sale, 105A:1
money made from usury, 113:2
rich, but not proud, 113A:6
sacrifice of his son: faith, 113A:6
seed of Christ; mystical body, 144:5
sower; Christ the harvester, 101:2

Adoption:
  called to sonship by God, 139:1
  Christ’s joint heirs, 143:2
  sons of God, 126:9

Adultery:
  flesh lusts against the spirit, 128:8, 13
  intended, already guilty, 139A:2
  Jesus at Pharasee’s table; woman with bad reputation, 99:6
  law kept out of fear, not love, 145:3
  looking back, by a married person, 96:10

Amendement, see conversion

Anger:
  be angry and do not sin, 113:2
  clinging to, 114A:3
  discipline and, 114A:5, 6
  hatred and, 114A:6
  repentance, 112A:5

Anna (widow), 96:10

Antichrist, 129:7

Apocalypse: authorship, 95:2

Apostles:
  doubt re the resurrection, 116:2
  faith: request for increase, 114A:1
  qualities as preachers of the gospel, 101:11
  reapers to the Jews, 101:1, 2
  sins of, 135:7, 8

Apostolate:
  see also evangelizers
  reapers and sowers, 101:1

Africa:
  Church at “noon day,” 138:910; 147A:3

Afterlife, see eternal life

Alexandria: gods, 105:12

Alms:
  Christ in the needy person, 113B:4
  giving as mercy, 106:4
  giving of Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:2, 6; 113B:3
  name (Abram) changed, 122:4
  promises refer to Christ and Church, 129:5
  kingdom of heaven bought by, 125A:5
  kingdom of heaven up for sale, 105A:1
  money made from usury, 113:2
  rich, but not proud, 113A:6
  sacrifice of his son: faith, 113A:6
  seed of Christ; mystical body, 144:5
  sower; Christ the harvester, 101:2

Adoption:
  called to sonship by God, 139:1
  Christ’s joint heirs, 143:2
  sons of God, 126:9

Adultery:
  flesh lusts against the spirit, 128:8, 13
  intended, already guilty, 139A:2
  Jesus at Pharasee’s table; woman with bad reputation, 99:6
  law kept out of fear, not love, 145:3
  looking back, by a married person, 96:10

Amendement, see conversion

Angel(s):
  equality with, 112A:13
  imitation of life of, 97A:1
  Jacob wrestling with, 122:3
  Jacob’s ladder, 122:2, 6
  messenger, 125:3
  Word of God, bread of angels, 126:6

Anger:
  be angry and do not sin, 113:2
  clinging to, 114A:3
  discipline and, 114A:5, 6
  hatred and, 114A:6
  repentance, 112A:5

Anna (widow), 96:10

Antichrist, 129:7

Apocalypse: authorship, 95:2

Apostles:
  doubt re the resurrection, 116:2
  faith: request for increase, 114A:1
  qualities as preachers of the gospel, 101:11
  reapers to the Jews, 101:1, 2
  sins of, 135:7, 8

Apostolate:
  see also evangelizers
  reapers and sowers, 101:1

Volume III/4
stewards share what they receive, 101:4

Arcades: where the sick used to lie (John 5), 125:1ff

Arians, 117:1, 6, 8, 11; 135:2
  Son cannot do anything of himself…, 126:8
  Son of God as inferior, 139:35

Ask/seek/knock, 145:1
  coming to friend in middle of night, 105:113; 105A:12
  God puts off giving answer, 105:3
  knock by praying, 105:3
  seek in the Lord’s book (Bible), 105:3

Augustine, Saint:
  sermon owed as “debt,” 112A:1
  as shepherd, 137:14

Avarice:
  abundant crops, build new storerooms, 107:5; 107A:2
  beware, even in your own possessions, 107:9; 107A:2
  beware of all avarice, 107:4, 8; 107A:5
  eternal wisdom related to, 107:10
  excuse for, 114A:45
  fool, today your soul will be required of you, 107:6; 107A:2
  see also greed
  greedily looks after self, 107:4
  idolatry, 107:8
  immoderately fond of possessions, 107A:7
  refrain from, 107:110

B

Baal, 100:3

bad example, see good example; wrongdoing

bait, 134:6

baptism:
  see also catechumens
  Christ as principal agent, 129:7
  see also John the Baptist, Saint
  newly enlightened ones, 120:3
  recently baptized, the, 146:2
  remission of all sins, 131:6

uncircumcised people, 99:12

beings:
  less in parts than in totality, 117:4

belching, 112:7

belief and doubt:
  Ariens and the weaker brethren, 117:7
  Christ/Church, fulfillment of things foretold, 113A:5; 9
  see also faith
  healing: find the place of the wound (Thomas), 112:5

birds: wings; carrying a load, 112A:6

birth:
  Christ’s compared with ordinary human birth, 121:5

bishops:
  Christ, the one teacher of, 134:1
  do not place your trust in bishops, 129:8
  fear at hearing: feed my sheep, 146:1

black (color), 125:5

blasphemy:
  Ariens on the Son of God, 139:45

blind:
  Christ came to give light, 135:1
  punishment for turning from God, 117:5
  sight given to man born blind (Jn 9), 136:16; 136A:14; 136B:1; 136C:1
  Tobit: blind of eye; light of heart, 125A:5

body and soul:
  flesh lusts against spirit, 128:79

bread:
  meaning of the three loaves (Luke 11), 105:3
  stone contrasted with; love, 105:6

burglar, 125:5

C

Caesarea, 105:12

Caesar: pay back to Caesar…, 113A:8

Capernaum, 101:8

Carthage, 94A:6; 105:12
catechumens, 136B:1  
(on the) eucharist, 132:1, 2  
forgiveness of sins, 97A:3  
Catholic Church, 146:2  
celibacy:  
looking back, by one committed, 96:10  
chaff, 111:3  
character:  
must love good traits in order to have them, 114A:3  
charity:  
[not] achieved from yourself, 145:4  
see also alms  
alms given to the soul, 106:4  
bigheartedness, 105A:1  
building your church, 107A:9  
compared with other goods, 145:4  
cup of cold water; reward, 107A:8  
engrafting, by being gentle and humble of heart, 142:12  
fullness of the law, 125:10  
give earthly things, get repaid with heavenly things, 123:5  
give to God, 107A:7  
God the source, 145:4  
hardness of Christian life made easy by, 96:1  
hold resources, to provide for the needy, 107A:7  
jealousy and, 142:12  
see also love  
parable of the wedding garment, 95:7  
Paul on (1 Cor 13), 142:13  
putting abundance in storerooms, 107A:2  
regret for money given to the poor, 107A:6  
tithing and, 106:3  
widow and her two farthings, 105A:1; 107A:7  
willingness’ role in, 107A:7, 8  
chastity:  
conversion of the unchaste, 132:2  
husband and wife, 132:2  
law kept out of fear, not love, 145:3  
soul wedded to God, 137:9  
children of God:  
believers in Christ, 143:2  
the Father as inheritance, 146:1  
influenced by the Holy Spirit, 128:9  
mother’s womb: waters of baptism, 119:4  
power to become, 119:45; 121:34  
promise: to see God as he is, 117:15  
saints, by grace; Jesus, by nature, 139:1  
second birth, from the Church, 121:45  
sons and daughters by grace, 140:3  
choir: concord of voices, 112A:9  
chrism: Jacob’s ladder, 122:9  
Christ, see Jesus Christ  
Christian life:  
built on the rock, 134:2  
constancy; reward, 134:1  
see also cross; disciples  
discovery of our emptiness, 105:2  
favors lavished on human beings, 130:4  
fear Christ above, recognize him below, 123:4  
follow Christ ascended to heaven, 96:3  
foreign visitors in this world, 111:4  
hold him in whom you can possess everything, 142:6  
live in accord with your inheritance, 146:2  
live like exotic strangers, 124:4  
man offered, was rejected, in following Christ, 100:1  
nothing hard or harsh in things commanded, 96:1  
reluctant man called by Christ, 100:2  
seed of Abraham, 130:3  
walk on behavior, not feet, 141:4  
where you believe, there you will come, 131:2  
Christian unity:  
multitude with one soul and one heart, 103:4  
other sheep, not of this fold, 138:5  
see also unity  
Christianity:  
lands white for the harvest, 101:2
Moses and the prophets as its sowers, 101:2

Christians:
understand what you are, 137:4

Church:
Africa, the “noon day,” 138:910; 147A:3
bad people in, 137:9
be yourselves the house of God, 107A:9
Christ’s intent: to teach the whole Church, 137:6
Christ’s mission: to establish, 137:6
disciples could not see (the body), 116:6
examine the scriptures [Jews and Donatists], 129:6, 9
following Christ, duty of all members, 96:9
growth (years near the resurrection), 111:2
head in heaven, body on earth, 129:4
inn to which Samaritan took beaten man, 131:6
love of, 138:10
making one flock out of two, 137:6
Moses’ words refer to, 129:9
see also mystical body over the whole earth your glory, 147A:4
prodigal son (parable), 112A:8
shepherd enters by the gate (sheepfold), 137:4
signified by the number seven, 95:2
“sing to the Lord a new song,” 116:7
speaking with one voice, 129:4
spiritual marriage (Song of Songs), 138:9, 10; 146:2; 147A:2
spread throughout the world; Jewish unbelief, 113A:1
unity; the Donatists, 138:9
world reconciled to God, 96:8
circumcision:
Cornelius (uncircumcised Gentile) and the Holy Spirit, 99:12
cleansing:
faith is inside, not outside, 106:1
clergy:
Augustine as shepherd, 137:14
Paul on good/bad qualities, 137:11
shepherd, hired hand, thief, 137:5
some seek their own convenience, in the Church, 137:8
ture shepherds, 137:10
unprofitable servants, 137:15
watchman, 137:15
clergy (as hired hands):
not rebuking those in error, 137:12
run away when wolf comes, 137:12
ulterior motives, 137:11
unworthy, 137:10
codex (beauty; reading), 98:3
coeval creatures, 117:1014
commandments:
holiness of, 145:3
honor your father and mother, 100:2
whoever keeps, “remains in me,” 132A:2
“whoever loves me keeps…,” 126:14, 15
compassion:
Christ remaining in us, 134:1
crown of mercy, 131:8
father running to meet prodigal son, 112A:6
conduct of life:
end of the world: God’s mercy, 113A:12
virtues in Martha’s role, 104:7
confession:
humility, 113B:3
sinners: confess to the Lord, 136A:3
conscience:
adversary to sin: will and word of God, 109:3, 4
Christ silently teaching from within, 102:2
critically and humbled heart, 112A:5
constancy:
remaining in God’s word, 134:1
Constantinople: gods, 105:12
contemplation:
be still and see, 104:7
continence: loins girt, 108:2
conversion:
fear: role in amendment of life, 113B:3 not moved, not likely to be changed, 145:1 reform while there is yet time, 113B:4 Cornelius, the uncircumcised Gentile, 99:12 coveting: birdlime for spiritual wings, 112:6 lust of flesh, eyes, ambition, 112:6 sin through the commandment, 145:3, 5 creation: coeternal or coeval, 117:10 created things, love of, 137:10 creation: all things made through Word of God, 120:2; 126:9 creatures generate equals in substance, not time, 117:14 fallen, restored by Christ, 117:1 God governs creation, doesn’t stop working, 125:4 God’s daily miracle grown cheap, 126:4 likeness of creator in, 117:9 nothing eternal among creatures, 117:10 nothing more added to, 125:4 question created things: answer “God made us,” 141:2 six days; rest on sabbath, 125A:1 so wonderful, what must the Creator be? 120:3 world of beauty and good, 96:4, 5 cross: faith borne up by, 131:2 renunciation, meaning of taking up, 96:4 road exceedingly rough, 96:3 taking up; selfdenial, 96:2, 3 universal Church, following Christ, 96:9 crown: expression: by your crown, 94A:6 crucifixion, see Jesus Christ: crucifixion D

Daniel:

stone hewn from mountain without hands, 147A:4 darkness: alms; delivery from outer darkness, 125A:4 day of judgment, see judgment day dead: “awake, you that sleep…,” 98:2 disbelief even if someone rises from the dead, 129:9 “let the dead bury their dead,” 100:2; 127:7 shall hear the voice… 127:7 three persons raised by the Lord, 98:17 three persons: three sorts of sinners, 98:5 unbelievers come alive in faith, 100:2; 127:7 dead works: take off your shoes (meaning), 101:7 death: alms; delivery from outer darkness, 125A:4 certainty of, 97:3 delivery from, by grace of God, 125:2 end of road of life, 109:4 fear; eternal life, 127:2 Jesus rising again removes fear of, 147:3 Lazarus in heaven; rich man in hell, 102:3 live a good life; avoid a bad death, 102:12 our punishment, 97:2 sin conquered by Christ, 128:10 taking captivity captive, 128:4 time after death tells if a death was bad, 102:4 two kinds: body and mind, 98:2 uncertain hour, 97:2 uncertainty of life, 97:3 unfortunate fear of, 101:3 watch lest we be unprepared, 97:1 where is your sting? [sin], 131:7 debtors (parable): forgiving the two debtors, 99:35 servant whose debt was cancelled, 114A:2

Volume III/4
deceit: double heart, 133:4
decisionmaking:
powers lost by sinning, 131:6
demons:
power to drive out, 142:11
subject to us, in Jesus’ name, 145:1, 6
desire:
enlarging the soul with, 142:8
only its creator can satisfy the soul, 125:11
despair, 142:1
devil:
defeated with help of belief in Christ, 143:4
finds no sin in Christ, 134:6
greed and fear used by, 94A:5
nothing of himself found in Christ, 134:4
prince of this world; the ungodly, 144:6
prodigal son parable, 112A:3
quit of him, 109:2
reach agreement with adversary, 109:2, 3
redeemer conquered the deceiver, 130:2
shame in presence of, 97:2
temptation to deny Christ, 94A:2
 tempter and persecutor, 94A:5
 tempter overcome by being snubbed, 123:2
 wolf in the sheepfold, 137:12
wordlings’ complaining about, 143:4
dinner:
invitation to (parable), 112:1ff
those who did/did not come, 112:8
disciples:
called: follow me, 147:3
chosen by the Lord, 100:3
harvest ready and waiting, 101:1
miracles performed by, 136B:3
seeking high rank in Christ’s kingdom, 142:10
true; “if you remain in my word,” 134:1, 2
discipline, and anger, 114A:5.6
dissipation: the prodigal son, 96:2
divinity:
except Christ, no one claims to be one with the Father, 140:4
Docetists, 116:1
Donatists, 99:8; 129:19; 138:1, 9, 18; 146:2; 147A:2, 4
doubt, see belief and doubt; faith
duty:
services for the poor; for the saints, 103:5
dying, see death

Easter: Lenten fast, 125:9
easy life, not the way to eternal rest, 113A:14
Elijah:
fast, for forty days, 125:9
sent to widow woman, 136B:4
Elisha: staff, 136:6
Emmaus: questioned on the road, 111:2
end of the world:
dead will come from the tombs, 127:14
God’s patience, 113A:12
last day known only by the Father, 97:1
our works as aid or torment, 97:1
stones will attach to foundation, 116:7
uncertain date, 109:1
enemy:
making a friend of, 105A:2
praying for death of, 105A:2
Ephesians, 129:7
epithalamium, 147A:2
equality: generation among creatures, 117:14
Esau and Jacob, 122:3
eschatology:
faith of Christians, 113A:1
eternal life (rest; eternity):
believe in, without seeing, 127:3
bought by Zacchaeus, 107A:3
cheaply valued, 107A:2
children of God: what we shall be, 127:5
Christian hope, 108:1
examine the scriptures, 129:1
“eye has not seen...,” 127:1, 3, 5
Father’s commandment, 140:6
fear of death, 127:2
forgiveness of sins, 114:2, 5
God’s promise, 127:1
heart set on easy time on earth, 113A:14
high value of, 105A:2
hope, 108:2
“hour is coming...,” 127:115
immobility of eternity, 117:10
light for eyes of the mind, 127:6
nothing compares with, 127:13
pass over to Christ, 125A:3
predestined to, 111:4
promised to those who eat His flesh, 132:1
rest in Abraham’s bosom, 113B:3
“times” not in eternity, 139:3
use temporal goods for eternal gain, 114A:34
value (cost) is exactly what you are, 127:3
wages for a good life, 108:6
we shall see God, 127:11
what is to be found there, 127:3
“whoever believes in me...,” 127:4
eucharist:
Christ sacrificed; come to the dinner (parable), 112:1
eaten in portions, remains whole and entire, 132A:1
eating and drinking to condemnation, 132:2
eternal life promised, 132:1
how Christ is to be eaten, 132A:2
meaning: to eat Christ, 132A:1
real presence, 131:1
remaining in me, 132A:2
return of the prodigal son, 112A:7
unworthy reception, 132A:1
evangelize(ers; ing):
apostles have the peace they preach, 101:11
disciples sent out by Christ, 101:5
meaning of not “carrying a purse,” 101:6
take off your shoes (meaning), 101:7
told to greet no one on the road, 101:89
evil, see good and evil
excuses:
three who were invited to a dinner (parable), 112:2
eyes:
first rank, of the five senses, 112:7
light for eyes of the mind, 127:6
faith:
analogy of tree: rooted in love, 117:17
belief in a spiritual way; justification, 143:4
belief in Christ is belief in one who sent him, 140:1
believe and understand, 118:2
believe before promises paid, 113A:10
believe before you see; rewarded, 142:8
believe in order to pray, 115:1
believe what we do not yet see, 127:1
believers’ hearts rising up on high, 116:2
believing unto justice with the heart, 143:4
believing/seeing, 97A:2
borne up by the cross, 131:2
dead (unbelievers) come alive in faith, 127:7
defined (Hebrews 11), 126:3
disciples see the head; we see the body (Church), 116:6
discovery of our emptiness, 105:2
first believe, then understand, 126:1, 2
fish as symbol of, 105:7
fulfillment: the whole Christ (head and members), 116:6
gift; not from one’s own strength, 131:3
gift, not merited, 131:2
gift of God (St Paul), 105:5
God prepares will for faith, 136B:4
Holy Spirit challenge re belief in Christ, 143:2
hope and charity must join belief in Christ, 144:2
hour is coming; the dead shall hear…, 127:7
human race itself born blind, 136A:4
I believe, help my unbelief, 115:1
light in the scriptures, 126:1
miracles of Christ and, 126:4, 5
observe what you see, believe what you do not see, 126:5
outer senseknowledge of, 112:7
perfect, hard to find on earth, 115:1
prayer perishes when faith falters, 115:1
promise of love through, 136:5
purified minds’ attention to form of God, 143:3
purifying hearts by, 106:1
reason in the heart, 126:3
resurrection of body and soul, 127:8
resurrection: through bodily senses to the heart, 116:3, 4
risen Christ not available to human eyes, 143:3
seeing Christ with eyes of the heart, 136B:1
seeing rather than believing, 113A:4
seeing with eyes, but not with heart, 135:6
seeking the inner sense of, 112:7
senseknowledge of Christ and, 112:4
sight as reward of, 97A:2
terror if eye for the future is lost, 113A:4
Thomas’ recognition of divinity of Christ, 145A
understanding and, 139:1; 140:6
use eyes to see; the creation, 126:3, 4
what is believed feeds us, 112:5
faithful, the:
  forgiveness of sins, through the Holy Spirit, 99:9
false, see lie
fare well:
  greeting, 116:1
  proclaiming, 101:910
fasting:
  forty days (Jesus, Moses, Elijah), 125:9
  love of the world, 125:7
fear:
  abandoning the way, 142:1
  comes with law, hope, and grace, 145:3
  forgiveness and, 114A:2
  hope in God and, 145:23, 5
  hope placed in this world, 94A:5
  in life’s threats, cling to God, 97:4
  leap for joy, with trembling, 131:5
  role in amendment of life, 113B:3
  salutary parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:1
torturer of the soul, 124:2
work out your salvation, 131:4
feminism:
  miracle of the seven loaves, 95:3
festival day (booths):
  eight days (sabbath to sabbath), 133:7
  Jesus lying (?) about going, 133:18
fig tree:
  miracle: fruit out of season, 98:3
  Nathaniel under, 122:1
  no fruit for three years, 110:15
filial piety:
  reluctant man called by Christ, 100:2
fire:
  brightness, 117:11, 12
  brilliance as coeval with it, 118:2
straw and gold (the just and the wicked), 113A:11
flesh:
  grass that withers, 119:3; 124:1
  see also lust
  sin condemned in, 134:4
  Son of God, 124:3
following Christ, see Christian life
fool:
  hearing God’s word, but not doing, 107:6
  today your soul will be required of you, 107:6; 107A:2
forehead of the inner self, 107:7
forgiveness of sin(s):
  Behold, the lamb of God, 136C:2
  believers in Christ, 143:2
catechumens, 97A:3
Sermons Volume 4, 94A-147A

Christ as man, and as God, 99:7
Donatist heresy, 99:8
eternal life as reward, 114:2, 5
forgive, and be forgiven, 114:3
grudges, 114:4
Holy Spirit, through the holy faithful, 99:9
hope in the future, 97A:4
“if your brother…,” 114:15; 114A:13
imitating Christ, 114:3
Lord’s Prayer, 114:5; 114A:5
one forgiven little, only loves a little, 99:56
parable of the two debtors, 99:3, 4
raising of Lazarus as figure of, 98:6
see also redemption
“seven times a day,” 114:1; 114A:1, 5
through, or apart from, human agency, 99:10
woman with bad reputation, 99:113
forty:
represents fulfillment of justice, 125:7, 9
fountain of life, 142:9
friend:
coming to, in middle of night, 105:113; 105A:12
fruit:
no fruit (figtree) for three years, 110:15
G

Gehazi, 136:6
generation:
divine and human persons, 139:2, 3
equality of nature, 139:3
equals in substance, not in time, 117:14
Gentiles:
not yet in the one fold, 138:5
prodigal son (parable), 112A:8, 13
Gideon, 131:9
giving, see alms; charity
glory:
seeking glory from each other; not seeking glory from God, 129:2

God:
clean of heart can see God, 117:15
compassion, 130:3
end of the world: God’s patience, 113A:12
god: Father is God from no one; Son is God from God, 140:2
finding happiness in, 113:6
grasping God with mind’s eye, 117:5
see also Holy Spirit
“I will show myself to him…,” 127:12
incomparable, 117:9
ineffableness, 117:8
see also Jesus Christ
love, to the point of forgetting self, 142:3
lovers of the world; despisers of God, 96:5
manifold sweetness, 145:2, 3, 5
outer darkness, 125A:4
philosophers know but do not honor God, 141:14
poor man is rich, with God, 105A:2
put Himself in debt by making promise, 113A:5
rests and acts simultaneously, 125A:1
security in our protector, 130:5
Son “cannot do anything of Himself…,” 126:115
see also Son of God
thanks to those who know him, 117:5
see also Trinity
unchanging, as he rebukes sinner, 142:4
unutterable, 117:7
see also Word of God
godhead:
one and same substance, 139:2
procession of persons, 140:5
splendor of, 126:7
see also Trinity
unity and pluralism, 126:11
godlessness:
Christ died for the godless, 112A:10
conversion from, 97A:1
gods:
avarice not a quality of, 107:3
golden and wooden, 105:1213
pagan, 141:3

Volume III/4
gold and straw (the just and the wicked), 113A:11
proclaiming, not in a genuine way, 137:9
Goths, 105:13
gold: seeking, 108:5
grace:
chosen by, 100:3, 4
Christians pit selves against, 131:9
delivery from sin, only by grace of
God, 125:2
fear, law, and hope, 145:3
gift of God, 144:1
given gratis, 100:4
hidden in Old Testament, 131:9
holiness from God’s indulgence, 100:4
[as] rain, 131:4
reliance on, 100:3
your merits are his gifts, 131:8

good and evil:
God is the doctor, 113A:14
see also sin; troubles; wickedness
world (evil) and creator (good), 96:5
good days, longing to see, 108:4, 5, 6
good fortune:
afflictions mixed in with, 105:8
Good Shepherd, 138:110
qualities of, 138:1, 4
spiritual marriage, 138:8
unity as lesson of, 138:5
Good Thief:
proud to share Christ’s crucifixion, 111:2
good will:
Holy Spirit and eternal life, 105A:2
good works:
attend to the poor, 102:5; 103:5
do good with what was badly gotten
(money), 113:3
do what is in your power, 125A:3
keep lamps burning, 108:1
live a good life; avoid a bad death, 102:12
moving on, to eternal life, 111:4
parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:2
praise God without ceasing, 114A:1
turn from evil and do good, 108:7
see also works of mercy
goodness:
giving self over to faith and promise
of eternal life, 127:3
God’s help needed to lead good lives, 132A:2
good things from treasure of the heart, 138:4
good will makes one good, 105A:2
good will:
Holy Spirit and eternal life, 105A:2
gracious, 137:9
Goths, 105:13

grace:
chosen by, 100:3, 4
Christians pit selves against, 131:9
delivery from sin, only by grace of
God, 125:2
fear, law, and hope, 145:3
gift of God, 144:1
given gratis, 100:4
hidden in Old Testament, 131:9
holiness from God’s indulgence, 100:4
[as] rain, 131:4
reliance on, 100:3
your merits are his gifts, 131:8

good fortune:
afflictions mixed in with, 105:8
Good Shepherd, 138:110
qualities of, 138:1, 4
spiritual marriage, 138:8
unity as lesson of, 138:5
Good Thief:
proud to share Christ’s crucifixion, 111:2
good will:
Holy Spirit and eternal life, 105A:2
good works:
attend to the poor, 102:5; 103:5
do good with what was badly gotten
(money), 113:3
do what is in your power, 125A:3
keep lamps burning, 108:1
live a good life; avoid a bad death, 102:12
moving on, to eternal life, 111:4
parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:2
praise God without ceasing, 114A:1
turn from evil and do good, 108:7
see also works of mercy
goodness:
giving self over to faith and promise
of eternal life, 127:3
God’s help needed to lead good lives, 132A:2
good things from treasure of the heart, 138:4
good will makes one good, 105A:2
good will:
Holy Spirit and eternal life, 105A:2

H

habit:
four stages of sin, 98:6
sinful; Lazarus, come outside, 139A:2
symbol: stone against Lazarus’ tomb, 98:5, 7
happiness:
earthly possessions, 113:6
finding, in God, 113:6
found in the one; lost in dissolution, 96:6
harlots, 112A:2
harvest:
plentiful; laborers are few, 101:12
hate:
nursing, in one’s heart, 114A:6
health: gift of God, 127:3

heart:
believing unto justice, 143:34
contrite; God is close, 112A:5
cured, to see the light which is God, 136C:1
deceit "in heart and heart," 133:4
faith: Christ washing the "face" of the heart, 135:6; 136A:4; 136C:5
find Christ, silently teaching, 102:2
fox holes and bird nests in, 100:1, 2
good obedience: resurrection of heart, 127:11
good things from treasure of, 138:4
have law in, 125A:3
love of the world: letting go, 125:11
reason in, 126:3
related to giving, 105A:1
return (prodigal son), 112A:4, 5
treasure where heart is, 107A:6; 114A:3

heaven:
Capernaum “exalted right up to,” 101:8
follow Christ ascended to heaven, 96:3
Martha and Mary in the hereafter, 103:6
united (mystical body) with the one who came down, 144:5

heavenly kingdom:
the Lord guards the city, 105:9

hell:
parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113A:3

heretics:
as martyrs, 138:2
plundering properties, 146:2

high priests:
sacrifices for their own sins, 135:7

hoarding, 107A:7

holiness:
God’s grace, not one’s own merit, 100:4

Holy Spirit:
challenge world re sin, justice, judgment, 143:15; 144:16

children of God influenced by, 128:9
Cornelius, the uncircumcised Gentile, 99:12
deeds of the flesh; living by the Spirit, 128:9
deposit against future reward, 142:9
forgiveness of sins, through the holy faithful, 99:9
gift of the, 143:3, 5
gifts bestowed on us, 128:4
given without human agency, 99:11
reception; speaking with tongues, 99:10

honors:
given to both good/bad people, 105A:2

hope:
earthly goods, 105:13
egg of the “divine hen,” wisdom, 105:11
fear of God and, 145:23, 5
future blessings, 105:11
gift of God (St Paul), 105:5
lift up your hearts, 105:11
looking backward, 105:7
stretch out to what’s ahead, 105:7

hospitality:
duty, 111:4
Martha and Mary (the better part), 104:2

human beings, see mankind

human condition:
born blind (as to faith), 136A:4
gifts of the Son of man, 140A
grass phase; transmutation promised, 113B:2
life as trading: giving and receiving, 130:2
wretched me, a man, 145:5

humanity, see mankind

humility:
Christ’s way/example, 123:1; 142:2, 5
confess your sins to the Lord, 136A:3
countering head swollen by pride, 142:5, 10
gift of faith; work in fear, 131:3
hold what you have received, 131:5
“I said in my abundance…,” 131:5
leap for joy, with trembling, 131:5
learn by laying hold of little things, 117:17
learn from Jesus, not power, but to be humble, 142:11, 12
least ones of Christ; judgment day, 113:1
Pharisee and the taxcollector, 137:4
prayer: Pharisee and publican, 115:23
repentance, 110:1
signified by lying down, 113B:3
step down (pool, Jn 5) to be healed, 125:6
step to the heights, 96:3
way to eternal life, 123:3
husband and wife: chastity, 132:2

I

idols / idolatry:
avarice, 107:8
dogs, 121:3
folly: creating idols for themselves, 141:3
Goths and, 105:13
promise of overturning, 113A:7, 9
with brain and heart, the smith would be their god, 141:3
worship of, as lunacy, 113A:7

image:
likeness to the original, 117:13
of something born over water, 117:12

image of God:
character: pay tribute to God, 113A:8
idolatry, 113A:7
made through the Word, 117:2
rational mind as, 145:2
refashioning ourselves, 125:4
impurity, see adultery; chastity; purity

incarnation:
analogy of human word, 119:7
heresies, 117:6
Holy Spirit and the virgin Mary, 121:5
omnipotence of Word of God, 119:6
purpose of, 119:1
sun as analogy of, 120:2
Word became flesh, 119:4
Word created his own mother, 119:6
Word retained relationship to Father, 117:16

infants:
infant baptism: “let the children come…,” 115:4
no evil, except that of their origin, 115:4

inheritance:
judgment giving possession of, 107A:1
stolen by brother, 107:23; 107A:1

Isaac:
Jewish nation sprung from, 113A:6

J

Jacob:
blessed; remained lame, 122:3
Israel; two names, 122:3, 5
Jacob’s ladder, 122:2, 6
wrestling with angel, 122:3
jealousy: charity and, 142:12

Jesus Christ:
see also Son of God; Son of Man;
Word of God
alms given to the poor, 114A:4
angel of great counsel, 125:3
ascension: “will come as you see him…,” 127:10
authority, 128:2
“before Abraham was, I am,” 121:2
belief in, by those who did/did not see him, 112:7
belief; not by physical contact, but in a spiritual way, 143:4
both rich and poor, 123:4
bridegroom “comely of figure…,” 138:6
brother’s request on dividing inheritance, 107:3; 107A:1
calls for faith in himself; refers honor to the Father, 140:1
came that those who cannot see may see, 136:4
Christ the anointed one, 122:2
Christ the rock, 129:8
see also Christian life
come to fulfill the law, 125:10
“come to know that the Lord is great,” 111:2, 3
coming; has come, 108:1
complete in all of us: mystical body, 116:6
conqueror of the world, and death, 97:4
contrasts in life events of, 110:3
crucifixion:
deformity of the crucified, 95:4
Good Thief proud to share in, 111:2
Jews crucified Christ, 136:4
man as “prevailing,” 110:3
necessity; fulfillment of
prophecies, 116:5, 6
no comeliness or dignity, 138:6
veil rent, 125A:3
veil of temple torn, 137:6
“cup which I am going to drink;” 142:6
cures now are worked on hearts,
136C:1
death [see under passion and death
below]
disbelief in a crucified “God,” 124:3
divinity concealed by, 133:7
divinity; refusal of Jews to believe,
113A:1
divinity; Thomas touching the body of
Christ, 145A
elder son in prodigal son (parable),
112A:14
emptied himself, taking form of
servant, 142:6; 144:5, 6
eternal life; Father’s commandment,
140:6
see also eucharist
everything has been handed over to
me…., 142:6
fast, for forty days, 125:9
forgiveness of sins, 99:7; 114:3
form of a servant; man and God,
126:13, 14
form of God; form of man (prophets),
95:4
giving and receiving, 130:2
good shepherd, 138:110
handsome of figure, or no comeliness
(prophets), 95:4
head of body (the Church), 137:1, 2
healing on the sabbath, 136:3
his own people did not know him,
121:2
human life of Son of God, 124:3
humility, in all circumstances, 123:1
“I and the Father are one,” 139:15;
140:4
invitation to the dinner (parable),
112:1ff
Jewish unbelief in, 129:3
Jews crucified Christ, 147A:4
Jews wanted to kill him, 125:3
John the Baptist’s testimony, 128:2, 3
judge in form of servant, 127:10
justice, that he goes to the Father,
144:34
“learn from me…,” 142:11, 12
light, 125A:2
[his] load lifts; does not weigh down,
112A:6
love of sinners, 97A:1
lying (?) re going to festival, 133:18
making himself equal to God, 125:3, 6
Martha and Mary (the better part),
103:16; 104:17
Martha and Mary: Word of God; Word
made flesh, 104:3
martyrs as witnesses to, 128:3
mercy and justice, 144:34
miracles, see miracles
miraculous birth, 126:5, 6
mission: to establish the Church, 137:6
mortality, 116:5
see also mystical body
neither did his brothers believe in him,
133:1
“nowhere to lay his head,” 100:1
one Christ is man and God, 130:3
one with the Father, 144:5
our welfare/salvation, 116:1
see also parables
passion and death
death allowed to be inflicted on
him, 113A:1
death: Son of man, Son of God,
127:9
death; human flesh, 136:6
necessary; bridegroom, 116:6
pool (Jn 5): where the sick used to
lie, 125:3
postresurrection appearances, 111:2
asks for something to eat, 116:3
feel with your hands, 116:4

Volume III/4
he opened their minds, 116:5
“peace be with you,” 116:17
showed himself to his disciples,
116:5
power to forgive sins, 99:7
presenting himself to be fed (Martha
and Mary), 103:2
promise: seed of Abraham, 113A:10
prophecy(ies)
foretold by the prophets, 113A:12, 5, 9
prophecies (all) fulfilled in,
136C:3
rejected by the Jews, 113A:7
prophecy, promise, performance,
110:4
prophets on physical appearance,
95:4
purpose of the incarnation, 119:1
real existence as man, 113A:5
real presence in ourselves, 131:1
received as a guest, 103:2
redeemer conquered the deceiver,
130:2
represented: Jacob wrestling with
angel, 122:3
restorer of fallen creation, 117:1
resurrection:
disciples acknowledge reality of,
116:3
disciples’ doubt, 116:2
Easter celebrated for fifty days,
125:9
glory of the resurrection, 116:2
references in the Psalms, 129:5
sight not available to human eyes,
143:3
rising again removes fear of death,
147:3
sacrifice for sin, 134:5
[the] same one: man and God, 123:3
scars of his passion preserved, 116:1
secretly going to the festival, 133:1, 7
silent teacher in heart of one with
faith, 102:2
sinless, 143:1
Son of God by nature, 140:3
Son of God emptied self to become
man, 95:4
spiritual love (Song of Songs), 138:6
“stones will cry out…,” 121:3
temptation: turn stones into bread,
123:2
treatment given to Son of God,
113A:14
true God, eternal life (1 Jn 5), 140:3
truth (exalted) and life (God), 142:2
truth: “if I bear witness to myself…,”
128:1
two births: first without a mother;
second without a father, 140:2
two substances, one person, 130:3
unbelief as blindness, 136:4
unchangeable, as the Word, 124:3
“unless you eat my flesh…,” 131:1
way to eternal life, 123:3
way, truth, and life, 94A:2; 141:14;
142:114
what the Jews could see; what unable
to see, 125:3
“who loves me… will be loved by my
Father,” 126:14
“whoever eats me lives…,” 132A:1
“whoever sees me also sees the
Father,” 126:14
see also Word of God
words to disciples, said also to us,
129:2
world reconciled to himself, 121:1
world (vitiated by sin) remade by
Christ, 96:6
wounds of unbelief, 116:1
Jewish observances, 125A:2
see also law, Jewish

Jews:
blindness, re Christ, 136:2, 4, 6
called brood of vipers, 121:3
Donatists and, 129:9
other sheep, not of this fold, 138:5
pool (Jn 5): where the sick used to lie,
125:3
prodigal son (parable), 112A:8, 1013
refusal to believe in Christ, 113A:1, 7
represented by the 5, 000 loaves,
130:15
those keeping the commandments,
112A:13
trip over stone (Christ), 147A:4
unbelief in Jesus, 129:3; 143:2
what the Jews could see; what unable
to see (in Jesus), 125:3
Job: true riches, 113:4
John, Saint, Apostle:
greatness of, 117:1
reclining on the Lord’s breast, 119:1; 120:1; 133:6

John the Baptist, Saint:
baptism of repentance, 121:3
himself not the light, 133:6
martyrdom, 94A:16
preaching repentance, 109:1
witness to the truth, 128:2, 3

joy:
leap for joy, with trembling, 131:5
petition: pray, that your joy may be full, 145:6

Judas:
divine providence, 125:5
thief, 101:6

judgment day:
authority of Son of man, 127:10, 14
bad people in the Church, 137:9
see also end of the world
evil persons will also see God, 127:12
foretold, it will be fulfilled, 110:4
God’s patience, 113A:12
God’s warning (“Watch out”) ignored, 113A:4
helping the least ones of Christ, 113:1
just and wicked interrogated by the Lord, 125:8
reach agreement with adversary: word of God, 109:4
temporarily spared, 110:1
threshingfloor: wheat and chaff, 111:3
without charity, “I do not know you,” 138:3

Jupiter, 105:10

justice:
belief in the spiritual (not physical)
Christ, 143:4
challenge by Holy Spirit; because Christ is going to the Father, 144:34
Christ died for nothing (if justice is through nature), 131:9
cleansing the body, 106:1
fulfillment represented by number forty, 125:7, 9
greatness of the law, 136:5
greatness of the just man, 110:2
judgment for plunder from a helpless man, 113:2
just man lives by faith, 143:4; 144:2
just men tried in goldsmith’s furnace, 113A:11
man is just by grace of God, 100:4
must love it, to have it, 114A:3
Pharisee boasting about his “eyesight,” 136B:2
zeal for God, not according to knowledge, 129:2; 131:10

justification:
hope fulfilled in Christ, 144:6

K

kingdom of God:
eating bread in, 112:5

kingdom of heaven:
almis and the buying of, 125A:5
Christ’s mission, 137:6
good will as price of buying, 105A:1
nearnness of, 109:1
we belong to Christ, 130:4
worth as much as each person has, 105A:1, 2

knowledge:
comprehension of a body with the eyes, 117:5

lamp:
let your light shine, 108:12, 7
lightening; fire, 117:11

last day, see end of the world

last things, see eternal life

law, civil:
punishment of criminal, 125:5

law, Jewish:
Christ not come to repeal, but to fulfill, 125:10
delivery from sin, only by grace of God, 125:2
holiness of, 145:3
justice and grace, 136:5
letter kills, 136:5
shows our diseased condition, 125:2
there to terrify the presumptuous, 145:3, 5
Torah: five books, five arcates (Jn 5), 125:2
transgression added to sin, 125:2
your members fighting with your mind, 145:3, 5, 6

Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:114; 113B:14
  poor man in heaven; rich man in hell, 102:3

Lazarus (brother of Martha & Mary):
  life restored, 98:4, 5, 7
  raised from the dead, 139A:12

Lent: fast of forty days, 125:9

Liberty: being delivered, 134:2

lie:
  difference: being mistaken, and lying, 134:4
  every man a liar (i.e. empty), 133:6
  false evidence, 94A:2, 3
  falsehood prevailing, before the flood, 110:3
  kills the soul, 107:10
  persecution; denying the truth, 94A:2
  [in] prayers, 114:5

Life:
  see also conduct of life
  constantly be on the watch (for death), 97:3
  see also death
  gift of God, 127:3
  great effort spent to live a little longer, 127:2
  greediness for living, 107:10
  living according to merely human standards, 97:2
  longing to see good days, 108:4, 5, 6
  meaning of long life, 108:3
  person’s life not to be measured by possessions, 107:4
  temporal and eternal: Martha and Mary, 104:4
  tribulations (fear and grief), 124:2
  vaporous, 124:1
  wealth and, 105A:1

Light:
  eyes of the mind, 127:6
  radiance is coeternal with its begetter, 118:2

load: Christ’s load lifts; does not weigh down, 112A:6

loaves and fishes (miracle; Jn 6), 95:13; 130:15

loins girt, 108:12, 7

Lord’s Prayer:
  forgiveness of sins, 114:5; 114A:5; 135:8

Lord’s Supper:
  faith of those present, 112:4
  love not the world, nor worldly things, 112:6

Lot’s wife, 96:10

Love:
  bread as, 105:6
  see also charity
  created riches, 137:10
  defect: soul loving something less than its maker, 142:3
  discipline and, 114A:5
  dissipation, the prodigal son, 96:2
  [to love the] eternal, give up the temporal, 125:7
  forgiveness, woman with bad reputation, 99:35
  gift of God (St Paul), 105:5
  God above everything else, 136B:3
  [to love] God, let God dwell in you, 128:4
  good shepherd gives life for sheep, 138:1
  letting go (love of the world), 125:11
  loss of self for loving things outside self, 96:2
  lovers of the world; despisers of God, 96:5
  loving spouse for something other than self, 137:9
  many different sorts of, 96:1
  martyrdom and, 138:2
  neighbor as self, 128:5
  new commandment (Jn 13), 126:15
  nobody comes unless the Father drags him, 131:2
  only its creator can satisfy the soul, 125:11
  reward: “I will show myself to him,” 142:78
  “set love in order toward me,” 100:2
  shown by keeping the commandments, 142:7
treat all except Christ as worthless, 142:6
two commandments fulfill the law, 125:10
you don’t love yourself if you love iniquity, 128:5
lust:
absent in paradise, 128:8
avaricious in, 107:8
see also coveting
do not go through with lusts of the flesh, 128:6
flesh against spirit; spirit against flesh, 128:7
peace wanted by the chaste man, 128:10
reigning in your mortal body, 128:12
sin inside the heart, 98:5
warfare, especially for young people, 128:11
world, flesh, ambition, 96:7

M

Maccabees, mother of the, 100:2
mammon of iniquity:
make friends with, 113:16
mammon (Hebrew word), 113:2
worldly wealth (all), 113:4
Manichees: deny the resurrection, 116:4
mankind:
angels to be judged by, 112A:13
do not let man prevail, 110:2, 3
see also image of God
lavish gifts of the creator, 130:4
what is man? 110:2
marriage:
chastity of husband and wife, 132:2
excuse of one invited to a dinner (parable), 112:6
instituted by the Word, 123:2
ranking of unmarried persons, 96:10
Martha and Mary (the better part), 103:16
both lives are praiseworthy, 104:4
busy about many things; result, 104:6
feeding the Lord; being fed by him, 103:3
life of Mary: stand fast and run, 104:5
Martha, Martha (repeated), 103:3
Martha’s complaint, 104:1
Mary’s choice in the hereafter, 103:6
one has precedence over many, 104:3
one thing necessary, 103:4
present/future life represented, 104:4
reclining at table, 104:6
reprimand (?) for Martha, 104:2
rest will come, through toil, 104:7
two kinds of life, 104:17
virtues in Martha’s role, 104:7
why Mary’s choice is better, 103:5
Word of God; Word made flesh, 104:3
martyrs:
buying the kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
eye of faith for the future, 113A:4
John the Baptist, 94A:16
meaningless, without charity, 138:2
witnesses to Christ, 128:3
Mary and Martha, see Martha and Mary
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
seed of Abraham, 130:3
see also virgin birth
mask (persona): Virgil’s Jupiter, 105:10
materialism:
believe only in things sensed, 112:3
Matthew, Saint (the publican), 105A:1
Maximin, Bishop, 140:1
mercy:
alsmgiving, 106:4
crown of, 131:8
Son of God becoming man, 144:34
wasting Christ the savior, 109:1
Messiah:
Jesus and the Samaritan woman, 101:2
milk: mothers make, 117:16
mind: image of God, 145:2
miracle(s)(of Christ):
actions like words of sacraments, 136A:1
Christ raised three from the dead, 139A:12
dead (three) raised by the Lord, 98:17
faith, 126:4, 5
fig tree (fruit out of season), 98:3
Lazarus’ life restored, 98:4, 5, 7

Volume III/4
learn from Jesus, not power, but to be humble, 142:11
life restored, daughter of ruler of synagogue, 98:4
loaves and fishes (Jn 6), 130:15
performed alone, 136B:3
reason for Christ’s actions, 98:3
seven loaves feed 4,000 people, 95:3
sight given to man born blind (Jn 9), 136:16; 136A:14; 136B:1; 136C:1
souls of men, 98:1
spiritual understanding of, 98:3
water into wine (Cana), 123:2
yourself as amazing miracle, 126:4
mirror image, 117:12
money, love of, 107A:4
mortality:
death, our punishment, 97:2
glass vessel, 109:1
Moses:
Christ’s coming foretold by, 113A:2
fast, for forty days, 125:9
five books; five arcades (John 5), 125:2
“If you believed Moses…”, 129:9
part of Jesus played by, 137:6
veil placed over their hearts (2 Cor), 125A:3
mountain:
stone hewn from, without hands, 147A:4
mud (humanity):
Christ’s spittle (healing man born blind), 136A:1
mystical body:
Christ suffers when body suffers, 137:2
Christ, the gate; the shepherd, 137:3
Christ the head; Church the body, 129:4; 133:8
see also Church
“For I was hungry…”, 137:2
head and body: references in the Psalms, 129:5
head speaks for the body, 129:6
many parts form one body, 138:5
New Testament testimony, 129:6, 9
Old Testament testimony, 129:5
seed of Abraham; one Christ, 144:5
sick members in, 137:1
spiritual faith, 143:4
unity of its members, 137:1
we too are him, 133:8
[the] whole Christ (head and members), 116:6
N
Nathanael:
“in whom there is no guile,” 122:5
under the figtree, 122:16
“you will see angels of God….” 123:34
needs:
human services: Mary and Martha, 104:3
number, see forty; seven
Numidia, 94A:6
O
obedience:
commandment kept out of fear, not love, 145:3
willingly done; tasting sweetness, 145:3
oil press, 113A:11
old age:
eventuality of, 109:1
wish for a long life, 108:3
original sin:
blind in the heart, 136:1
ensured that all are born blind, 135:1
figtree (Luke 13) as symbol of, 110:1
“let the children come….”, 115:4
selflove, man’s first ruin, 96:2
sight given to man born blind (Jn 9), 136:1
world made bad by first sin; remade by Christ, 96:6
outer darkness, 125A:4
oxen:
bought five yokes: excuse of one invited to a dinner (parable), 112:3, 5

P
parables:
- forgiving the two debtors, 99:35
- invited to the dinner, 112:1ff
- Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:114; 113B:14
- prodigal son, 112A:214
- servant entrusted with master’s money, 125:8
- servant whose debt was cancelled, 114A:2
- sower went out to sow, 101:3
- wedding garment, 95:47

Passover:
- Jesus passed along, in order to provide food, 103:6

pastoral work:
- seeking from God something besides God, 137:9
- shepherd, hired hand, thief, 137:515

patience:
- example of Christ, 113A:14

patriarchs:
- buying the kingdom of heaven, 105A:1

Paul, Saint, Apostle:
- first Jacob, later Israel, 122:6
- knew flesh of Christ according to the spirit, 143:3
- [on] martyrdom and charity, 138:2
- name: from Saul to Paul, 101:1
- Old Covenant and new Church, 112A:8
- persecutor (Saul) rises up as preacher (Paul), 116:7
- Saul, the persecutor, struck down, 105A:2
- “Saul, why are you persecuting me?” 122:6; 123:4
- sower of words, 101:1

peace:
- “peace be to this house” (evangelizers), 101:5, 11
- seek/pursue peace, 108:7
- wanted by the chaste man, 128:10

Pelagians, 131:9, 10
Pelagius, 115:3

people of God:
- both Jacob (this world) and Israel (hope), 122:4

perfection:
- no one dare be proud of having attained it, 142:14
- sell all; follow Christ, gentle and humble of heart, 142:14
- sell what you have; give to the poor, 142:1314
- signified by the number seven, 95:2

persecution:
- early Church at Jerusalem, 116:6
- martyrdom for truth, 94A:2
- temptation to deny Christ, 94A:2
- two worlds: one persecuted, one persecuting, 96:68
- worldly gain, 94A:4

Peter, Saint, Apostle:
- confessor of love (after the denial), 111:2
- denial of Christ, 111:2; 137:3; 142:13; 147:1; 147A:1
- feed my sheep, 146:2; 147A:1, 2
- good shepherd, 138:4
- himself going to be crucified, 147:3
- kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
- “Peter, do you love me?” 137:3, 4; 137:10; 138:4; 146:1; 147:2; 147A:1, 2
- rock, 147:3
- sinner, 135:8

petition:
- God is more eager to give, than we to receive, 105:1
- pray, that your joy may be full, 145:6
- until now, nothing asked in my name, 145:1, 6

Pharisee(s):
- beware the teaching of, 129:2
- Jesus at table; woman with bad reputation, 99:18
- occupy chair of Moses, 137:6
- prayer: Pharisee and publican, 115:23
- pride, 136A:2, 3
- thornbush, 137:13
- washing the outside; faith is inside, 106:1

Philip, Saint, Apostle:
- eunuch baptized by, 99:11

Volume III/4
“Lord, show us the Father,” 125:3; 145:6
“who sees me, sees the Father,” 142:6
philosophers: know, but do not honor God, 141:14
pool (Jn 5):
  only one person cured, 125:3
  stepping down into, 125:6
  unity: only one person cured, 125:6
  water’s disturbance, passion of Christ, 125:3
  where the sick used to lie, 125:1ff
pool of Siloam, 135:1; 136A:1
poor:
  Christ in the needy person, 113B:4
  harvest (reward) for attention to, 102:5
  porters of temporal goods used for eternal gain, 114A:4
  relief from one’s abundance, 107A:2
  rich man a beggar, without God, 105A:2
possessions:
  happiness, 113:6
  having nothing, and possessing all things, 107A:1
  person’s life not to be measured by, 107:4
poverty, see poor
power:
  learn from Jesus, not power, but to be humble, 142:11
praise:
  seven times a day, 95:2
  silence and, 114A:1
prayer:
  see also ask/seek/knock
  do what we say, e.g. forgive, 114:5
  faith not to falter, 115:1
  imperfection, 135:6
  knowing what to pray for, 105A:1, 2
  see also petition
  Pharisee and tax collector (publican), 115:23; 135:6;
  136:2; 136A:2, 3; 136B:2
  prayer perishes when faith falters, 115:1
  troubled times; God is present, 112A:5
  you are God’s beggar, 123:5
preach(ers; ing):
  Christ’s instructions to evangelizers, 101:5
  see also evangelize
  preaching God for God’s sake, 137:10
predestination:
  [to] eternal life, 111:1, 4
  Gentiles in the one fold, 138:5
presumption:
  law there to terrify the presumptuous, 145:3, 5
price:
  of kingdom of heaven, 105A:1
  of Word of God, 117:1
pride:
  beginning of all sin, 123:1
  cure: humility of Jesus, 123:1
  grow proud, lose what you have received, 131:5
  head swollen by, 142:5
  heart exalted against God, 142:2
  humanity’s false innocence, 125:2
  humility of Christ seen unworthy by the proud, 124:3
  manor bought: excuse of one invited to a dinner (parable), 112:2
  mortality and, 97:2
  parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113A:6
  philosophers attribute God’s gift to themselves, 141:2
  prayer: Pharisee and publican, 115:23
  salutary fear: parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:1
  swollen head is heavy load, 142:10
proclaiming: “fare well,” 101:9
prodigal son (parable), 112A:214
all that is mine is yours, 112A:1314
  Christ as the older son, 112A:14
  come in and join the feast, 112A:11
  denying (not relying on) himself, 96:2
  dissipation, 96:2
  father running to meet him, 112A:6
  Gentiles as younger son, 112A:2
  gone away from himself; returns to himself, 96:2
  Jews and Gentiles, 112A:8, 1013
Jews as elder son, 112A:2  
let Christ be proclaimed, 112A:4  
meaning of the return, 112A:4  
presents on his return, 112A:7  
prince of demons, 112A:3  
property squandered, 112A:2  
return to heart in anger, 112A:5  
son, you are with me always, 112A:13

promise:  
God put Himself in debt by making promise, 113A:5,7,9  
God’s word to the Jewish nation, 113A:6  
lie (?) when unable to carry out, 133:2

see also prophecy(ies)

property:  
avarice and, 107:8  
being possessed by one’s own, 107A:4  
innocent possession of, 125:8  
possess, but don’t be possessed by it, 125:7

prophecy(ies):  
all fulfilled in Christ, 136C:3  
[re] Christ and the Church, 113A:12,5,9  
Christ’s spittle (healing man born blind), 136A:1  
 promises; fulfillment, 110:4

prophets:  
 buying the kingdom of heaven, 105A:1  
edearth represents (healing man born blind), 136C:2  
on physical appearance of Christ, 95:4

protector, our God, 130:5

providence, divine:  
no apparent control over things, 125:5

publicans:  
kingdom of heaven, 105A:1

punishment:  
chasiment by the Father, 113A:4,14  
 how God punishes sin, 117:5  
 law kept out of fear of, 145:3

pure of heart:  
blessed, see God, 136C:1

purity:  
 see also chastity; lust

cleansing hearts by faith, 106:1  
 Jesus at Pharasee’s table; woman with bad reputation, 99:2,13

purse:  
meaning of, 101:6  
not to be carried by evangelizers, 101:5

R

reapers and sowers, 101:1ff  
reclining at table, 104:67

redemption:  
Adam and Eve; Christ and Mary, 123:2  
Christ, bread from heaven, 130:2  
crucifixion necessary for, 122:4  
debts forgiven daily, 134:6  
deliverer from slavery of sin and death, 134:4  
Samaritan (figure); beaten man still being cured today, 131:6

reform, see conversion

religious conditions:  
veil placed over hearts, 137:6

renunciation:  
taking up one’s cross, 96:4

repentance:  
anger with self, 112A:5  
bear fruit worthy of, 110:5  
dead come back to life, 98:6,7  
digging trench around figtree, 110:1  
have God as Father by turning back, 142:4  
hope for the sinner, 136A:2  
John the Baptist, 109:1; 121:3  
parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113A:3  
scripture readings, 125:1

rest:  
 see also eternal rest  
sabbath: our rest in God’s rest, 125:4

resurrection (of the dead; of the body):  
 Christ as guarantee of, 97:4  
 God created persons; He can repair them, 127:14,15

Volume III/4
good people, to life; bad, to judgment, 127:15
hope fulfilled, 144:6
judgment day, 127:14
[of] mind, inner self, soul, 127:7
obedience of heart, 127:11
soul (for weal), body (for woe), 127:8
unbelievable (except for who’s doing it), 127:15
revenge:
intent on getting one’s own back, 123:1
Rhadagaisus, 105:13
rich and poor:
meeting on the road of life, 107A:5
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 113A:114; 113B:14
see also wealth
Rome:
ruin of, attributed to Christians, 105:12, 13

S
sabbath:
ban on work taken literally by Jews, 125A:1
Jesus healing on, 136:3
“My Father works….” 125A:14
our rest in God’s rest, 125:4
sacramental baptism, see baptism
sacrifice:
sacrifices for sins, called sins, 134:5
saints:
each a temple of God; all together, one
temple, 136B:3
offices duly performed for, 103:5
salvation:
few are saved, 111:3
gift of God, 131:5
keeping eight (but not two love) commandments: worthless, 125:10
narrow gate, 111:3
proclaiming the gospel, 101:9, 10
united (mystical body) with the one who came down, 144:5
work in fear and trembling, 131:3, 5
salvation history:
“come to know that the Lord is great,” 111:2, 3
Samaritan (takes beaten man to inn), 131:6
schismatics, 146:2; 147A:1, 4
scorpion: hope and, 105:7, 8
scripture:
expounding, as breaking bread, 95:1
repeated readings [aloud], 125:1
some clergy explain wrongly, 137:7
security:
God our protector, 130:5
only its creator can satisfy the soul, 125:11
seed:
sower went out to sow, 101:3
worrying about life and death, 101:3
self:
forehead of the inner self, 107:7
selfdenial:
followers of Christ, 96:1
prodigal son, 96:2, 3
taking up one’s cross, 96:2
universal Church, following Christ, 96:9
selfimportance (puffed up), 142:12
selflove:
getting lost through, 96:1
man’s first ruin (original sin), 96:2
selfreliance:
lie (without God), 110:2
selfworth:
loved by Christ; become worth loving, 142:5
senses:
allegorical interpretation: five yokes of oxen, 112:3
eyes (sight) have first place, 112:7
servant (parable):
entrusted with master’s money, 125:8
seven (number):
Church signified by the number, 95:2
signifies totality, 114A:1
sexual ethics:
universal following of Christ, 96:9

sexual organs:
Adam and Eve: covered in shame
(after sinning), 110:1
first man covered with fig leaves,
122:1

shame:
Adam and Eve (after sinning), 110:1

sheepfold (i.e. Church), 137:4ff

shoes:
evangelizers: “take off your shoes”
(meaning), 101:7

sick:
arcades, where the sick used to lie (Jn
5), 125:1ff

silence: praise goes on in, 114A:1

Siloam:
Christ’s healing man born blind,
136A:1
man had not yet washed the face of his
heart in; 136:2
the word, “One Sent,” 135:1; 136A:1;
136B:1; 136C:3

sin:
adversary is God’s word, 109:3
angry God will not search out,
113A:14
be angry and do not sin, 113:2
catechumens’ fear of future sins,
97A:3, 4
committed; “young man, get up,”
128:14
committing sin makes one slave of sin,
134:3
confessing, without shame, 113B:3
cure, belief in Christ, 143:1
“death, where is your sting?” 131:7
effects; failing to reprove, 114A:5
fallacy: sin greatly so as to be forgiven
more, 99:4, 5
fig tree (John 1) stands for, 122:1
see also forgiveness of sins
forgive us our debts, 135:7
four stages; habit, 98:6
God both hates and loves the sinner,
142:4

God does/does not listen to sinners,
135:68; 136:2; 136A:1; 2; 136B:2;
136C:4
habitual, 98:5; 139A:2
(in) heart, but not in deed, 98:5
Holy Spirit: challenge world re sin,
justice, judgment, 143:15; 144:16
“if we say we have no sin…,” 135:8
intended, but not actually done,
128:14
intent plus the deed, 139A:2
intent still secret in the heart, 139A:2
“Lazarus, come out,” 128:14
living conforming self to the dead,
136:6
see also pride
punish yourself, 136A:3
rebuking sinners, 142:3
redemption from slavery of, 134:4
reigning in your mortal body, 128:12
see also repentance
saying “we have no sin,” 114:4
scripture has shut everything up under
sin, 136:5
shouts of censure for bad habits, 98:6
sinners loved, so that they may repent,
97A:1
sinners: meaning of three dead persons
restored to life, 98:5
sinners: orphans, the humble, the poor,
136C:4
this life is not without sin, 135:7
three kinds of death (three raised from
the dead), 139A:12
three types of sinners, 128:14
transgression of law added to sin,
125:2
“turn your face away…,” 136A:2
unbelief in Christ; challenge by Holy
Spirit, 144:1
weight of habit; person stinking,
128:14
who sinned: man born blind or his
parents? 136:1
see also wickedness
worry re past sins, 97A:2
see also wrongdoing
your faces will not be put to shame,
143:2

sincerity:
apostles have the peace they preach, 101:11
foxes have holes (in the heart), 100:1

sing:
new song (Church) to the Lord, 116:7
skenopegia (festival of booths), 133:18

slavery of sin, 134:3
snares, 142:1
Sodom, 98:5
Son of God:
Arian heresy, 117:6
became man, while remaining God, 127:9
begotten always, 127:4, 5
begotten, not made, 118:1
blasphemy: the Son is another substance, 139:4
cannot do anything of Himself…, 126:115
coeternal with the Father, 117:14; 118:2
emptied himself…, 136:6
equality to God as robbery, 117:13
equality: will of power, power of will, 135:5
equality with the Father, 126:12; 140:2, 5
Father begot what he himself is, 135:4
from the womb… (Ps 110), 135:4
image of the Father, 117:12
see also Jesus Christ
no first or afterward re the Father, 117:12
not learn my greatness, but my humility, 117:17
Son of man and, 127:9
Wisdom of the Father, 118:2
see also Word of God
world did not know him, 121:1
Son of man:
[is] above in person, below in his people, 123:4
Arian position: doing works he was sent to do, 135:2
authority to do judgment, 127:9, 10, 14
equality with the Father, 127:9; 135:23
Jacob’s ladder, 122:6
likeness of flesh of sin, 134:4, 5
made into sin for us, 134:5
marvelous exchange: He became man, 121:5
mediator in the middle, 121:5
Son of God and, 127:9
whatever the Father does (Son likewise), 135:3

Song of Songs:
bride of Christ, 138:6
bridegroom and bride (Church), 146:2; 147A:2
sacred bridal chamber, 138:7

soul:
do not forget all his recompenses, 131:7
lie kills the soul, 107:10
miracles performed on, 98:1
resurrection of body and soul, 127:8
self forgotten, by loving the world, 142:3
soul serves God; flesh serves the soul, 128:5
wealth of the soul: full of God, 107A:3
sowers and reapers, 101:1ff
speaking with tongues:
after receiving the Holy Spirit, 99:10
speck in brother’s eye, 114A:6
spirit: word used in many ways, 128:9
spiritual goods:
God’s treasure chests, 113A:11
true wealth cannot be lost, 113:5
spiritual life:
charity is alms for your soul, 106:4
Martha and Mary: stand fast and run, 104:5
much material wealth, still God’s beggar, 123:5
see also soul
spiritual marriage:
“tell me where you graze your flock,” 138:6, 910; 147A:3
“unless you know yourself,” 138:8; 147A:4
spiritual realities, materialistic terms, 117:4, 7
steadfastness, in prosperity or adversity, 94A:6
stewards:
share what they receive, 101:4
stone(s):
as children to Abraham, 121:3
Jacob anointed the stone, 122:2
storerooms:
storing one’s abundance; avarice, 107A:2
strangers:
Christians in this world, 111:4
straw and gold (the just and the wicked), 113A:11
substance: divine persons, 139:2
sun:
analogy of Incarnation, 120:2
worry re rising/setting, 100:3
symphony: concord of voices, 112A:9

take up one’s cross, see cross
talents:
gifts of God also received by bad people, 138:3
taxcollector:
justified, rather than the Pharisee; 136B:2
prayer of Pharisee and, 115:23;
136A:2, 3; 136B:2
“standing a long way off,” 136A:2
teaching:
learn/live and feed others, 105:3
temple of God:
the Holy Spirit in the holy faithful, 99:9
temporal goods:
asking for, in name of Christ, 145:6
bless the Lord at all times, 105:8
end of earthly kingdoms, 105:10
give alms, or lose hereafter, 114A:4
give up love of, to love the eternal, 125:7
good things of earthly life, 127:1

hope in earthly things, 105:13
loving, to one’s ruin, 125:9
loving/coveting worldly goods, 112:6
persecution for worldly gain, 94A:6
riches held in common by all, 142:8
seek life, seek good days, 108:5
stand fast, in prosperity or adversity, 94A:6
striving hard for this life, 127:2
use for eternal gain, 114A:34
vain delights of mortals, 142:7
temptation:
remaining in God’s word, 134:2
succeeds as faith fails, 115:1
ten commandments:
lute of ten strings, 125:9
teaching:
proud in saying grace, 115:3
theology:
Martha and Mary (the better part), 104:2
thirst:
“I am thirsty,” means “I desire your faith,” 99:3
Thomas, Saint, Apostle:
(dis)belief in the risen Christ, 112:4, 5; 145A
threshingfloor, 111:3
time:
change, 117:10
coeeternal/coeval creatures, 117:1012
scorpion, 105:7
yesterday, tomorrow, long life, 124:4
tithing:
Jewish practice, 106:3
judgment and charity in, 106:3
Tobit:
advice on almsgiving, 125A:4
blind of eye; light of heart, 125A:5
tongue: curbing from evil, 108:7
Torah: five books; five arcades (John 5), 125:2
treasure: where the heart is, 107A:6;
114A:3
tree:
Volume III/4

fixes roots, to grow upward, 117:17
good/bad fruit from, 107A:1

tribulation, see troubles

Trinity:
see also godhead
meaning of the three loaves (Luke 11), 105:3
one activity, one eternity, etc., 126:10
one God in three persons, 103:4
Son “cannot do anything of Himself…,” 126:115

troubles:
bless the Lord at all times, 105:8
pray: God is present, 112A:5
tribulations of this world, 113A:11

truth:
analogy of feeding/reclining at table, 104:67
deliverer, 134:2
dying for, 94A:2
fight to the death for, 94A:5
“If I bear witness to myself…,” 128:1
John the Baptist, martyr for, 94A:1, 3
loyal Christian living, 94A:2
philosophers “hold truth down in iniquity,” 141:13

unbelievers:
dead come alive in faith, 127:7
[as] dead people, 100:2
deliberate choice, 140:6
Holy Spirit challenges world for, 144:1
lovers of the world, 144:2
parable of Lazarus (beggar) and the rich man, 113A:3
wounds of unbelief (Christ), 116:1
understanding:
and faith, 139:1; 140:6
first believe, then understand, 126:1, 2
ungodliness:
Christ died for the ungodly, 142:5
philosophers “hold truth down in iniquity,” 141:13
ungodly: devil’s body, 144:6

unity:
see also Christian unity
go out, if you do not know yourself, 138:8; 147A:4
one flock, one shepherd, 137:6
one whole people, end of this age, 122:5
only one person healed (pool, Jn 5);
Church signified, 125:6
[a] people or a mob, 103:4
Peter represents unity of all shepherds, 147:2

usury: alms from, 113:2

V

t.values:
God in one’s spirit vs gold in one’s pocket, 107A:7
poor in material things, rich spiritually, 123:5
temporal/eternal goods, 145:6
veil placed over hearts, 137:6
Virgil: earthly kingdoms, 105:10

virgin birth:
divine power of Son of God, 126:5, 6
faith of the virgin, 121:5
stone hewn from mountain without hands, 147A:4

virtue: God’s indulgence (grace), 100:4

vocation:
 disciples chosen by the Lord, 100:3

providence: the craftsman knows where to put you, 125:5

W

way, truth, and life, 141:14; 142:114

wealth:
bodily, is superfluous, 107A:3
[on] earth, they are not riches, 113:5
fine clothes: parable of Lazarus and the rich man, 113B:2
lose it, in order not to be lost, 113:4
mammon of iniquity, 113:26
see also poor
praying for riches, 105A:1, 2
 riches of the flesh (material things), 107A:2

Sermons 94A-147A
spirit of Abraham, 113A:6
treasures of the wicked, 114A:3
wrongfully acquired, 113:3
wedding, at Cana, 123:1
wedding garment (parable of man invited), 95:47
charity meant by the garment, 95:7
dreadful punishment, 95:5
many signified in the one man thrown out, 95:6
whore, 142:2
wickedness:
   fight not to do the things you would, 128:10, 13
   lover of iniquity hates his own soul, 125:8
   slaves together, under iniquity, 134:3
   tried in goldsmith’s furnace, 113A:11
   you don’t love yourself if you love iniquity, 128:5
widow: Elijah sent to, for her good, 136B:4
wife: chastity demanded of, 132:2
will:
   conscience: adversary to sin, 109:3
   God prepares will for faith, 136B:4
wisdom:
   avarice and eternal wisdom, 107:10
   [as] “divine hen,” 105:11
   keeping to self (in a purse), 101:6
   leaven hid in the flour, 111:2
   radiance of eternal life, 117:11
woman:
   ill for eighteen years, 110:2
   Jesus at Pharasee’s table; woman with bad reputation, 99:113
womb: Son begotten from Father’s own substance, 135:4
Word of God:
   abiding what he was, assuming what he was not, 124:2
   all made through him; himself not made, 125:3
   almighty, 119:6
   analogy of flowers and grass, 113B:2
   became flesh, 134:6
devout confession of ignorance regarding, 117:5
everywhere whole and entire, 120:2
flesh of Christ as his clothing, 119:7
form of all things, 117:3
give yourself, if you want to buy, 117:2
hunger to grasp the unchangeable Word, 117:3
in the beginning…, 117:3; 118:1, 2; 119:2; 120:1; 124:3; 126:13; 135:4; 136C:1; 145A
listen to the Word as flesh, 117:16
nothing hidden from, 120:2
price for buying the Word, 117:1
reason for becoming flesh, 119:5
seeing the Word’s own act of seeing, 126:15
see also Son of God
Word that abides, 119:3
word(s) about the Word, 120:3
work:
   God governs creation, doesn’t stop working, 125:4
   God serves us, 125A:5
   Martha and Mary (the better part), 104:3
   “my Father is working…,” 125:4, 6
   vine and branches: the Father is the landworker, 125A:5
   virtues in Martha’s role, 104:7
works of mercy:
   Martha and Mary (the better part), 104:2, 3
world:
   awhoring away from the Lord, 142:2
   beauty/goodness of created things, 96:4
   believes only what it can see, 143:4
   called from love of the temporal, 108:1
   complaining about the devil, 143:4
   created things and eyes of faith, 126:3
   fasting from love of, 125:7
   letting go (love in the heart), 125:11
   looking for good days in, 108:5, 6
   love of, makes adulterer of the soul, 142:3
   lovers of the world; despisers of God, 96:5
made bad by the first sin, 96:6  
possessions not to be loved, 125:7  
reconciled to God, 96:8  
rejoice: Christ has conquered, 97:4  
six ages have passed, 125:4  
two worlds: one persecuted, one  
persecuting, 96:68  
unbelievers, bad people called  
“world,” 121:1  
worldly gain/goods, see temporal goods  
worship of idols, see idols  
wrongdoing:  
bad example of clergy as excuse for,  
137:7  
saying but not doing (bad example),  
137:6  
transgressions of the law, 125:2  
unfaithful (bad) lay people, 137:7  
what they (clergy) say, do; what they  
do, don’t follow, 137:7, 8, 13  

Z  

Zacchaeus, 105A:1; 113:3  
zeal for God:  
not according to knowledge, 129:2;  
131:10
Index from
Sermons 148-183

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 148-183 are on the New Testament.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/5 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-007-0, 6 x 9 in., 374 pp., 1992

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

### Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td>183, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 2:2</td>
<td>179A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 2:17</td>
<td>152, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:4-5</td>
<td>153, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:5</td>
<td>163, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:6</td>
<td>151, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:7</td>
<td>151, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 17:12</td>
<td>169, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 22:16</td>
<td>180, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 22:18</td>
<td>168, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 2:11</td>
<td>160, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:14</td>
<td>156, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 8:19</td>
<td>155, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:4</td>
<td>179A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:7</td>
<td>179A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:12-17</td>
<td>179, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:16</td>
<td>170, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:17</td>
<td>152, 5; 169, 8; 170, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 20:19</td>
<td>155, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 31:18</td>
<td>155, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 33:20</td>
<td>170, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 12:3</td>
<td>169, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 5:12</td>
<td>179A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 6:4</td>
<td>179A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 31:6-8</td>
<td>177, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 32:39</td>
<td>169, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua 1:5</td>
<td>177, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua 5:2</td>
<td>169, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel 17:45</td>
<td>153, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:2</td>
<td>149, 4; 153, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 3:3</td>
<td>158, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 5:3</td>
<td>169, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 6:2-3</td>
<td>163, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 8:5; 144:3</td>
<td>163, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 10:3</td>
<td>153, 6; 163B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 13:3</td>
<td>159, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 14:1</td>
<td>162, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 16:5</td>
<td>156, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 17:15</td>
<td>158, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 18:1</td>
<td>150, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 18:36</td>
<td>169, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 18:43-44</td>
<td>158, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:1-3-4</td>
<td>163, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:3-4</td>
<td>171, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:4-3</td>
<td>162A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:9</td>
<td>161, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 23:3</td>
<td>177, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 24:1</td>
<td>149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 24:10</td>
<td>160, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 25:9</td>
<td>157, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 26:2</td>
<td>159, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:1</td>
<td>182, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:4</td>
<td>169, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:9</td>
<td>156, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:14</td>
<td>157, 1; 170, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 30:11-12</td>
<td>163, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 32:4</td>
<td>175, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:2</td>
<td>155, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:5</td>
<td>176, 5; 182, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:8</td>
<td>159, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:15-16</td>
<td>161, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:21</td>
<td>173, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 36:3</td>
<td>156, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 36:6</td>
<td>155, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 36:9</td>
<td>150, 9; 158, 7; 159, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 37:4</td>
<td>159, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:21</td>
<td>177, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 7:1</td>
<td>163B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 14:4 LXX</td>
<td>181, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:2</td>
<td>149, 4; 153, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 3:3</td>
<td>158, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 5:3</td>
<td>169, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 6:2-3</td>
<td>163, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 8:5; 144:3</td>
<td>163, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 10:3</td>
<td>153, 6; 163B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 13:3</td>
<td>159, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 14:1</td>
<td>162, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 16:5</td>
<td>156, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 17:15</td>
<td>158, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 18:1</td>
<td>150, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 18:36</td>
<td>169, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 18:43-44</td>
<td>158, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:1-3-4</td>
<td>163, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:3-4</td>
<td>171, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:4-3</td>
<td>162A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 19:9</td>
<td>161, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 23:3</td>
<td>177, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 24:1</td>
<td>149, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 24:10</td>
<td>160, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 25:9</td>
<td>157, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 26:2</td>
<td>159, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:1</td>
<td>182, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:4</td>
<td>169, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:9</td>
<td>156, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 27:14</td>
<td>157, 1; 170, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 30:11-12</td>
<td>163, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 32:4</td>
<td>175, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:2</td>
<td>155, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:5</td>
<td>176, 5; 182, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:8</td>
<td>159, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:15-16</td>
<td>161, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 34:21</td>
<td>173, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 36:3</td>
<td>156, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 36:6</td>
<td>155, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 36:9</td>
<td>150, 9; 158, 7; 159, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 37:4</td>
<td>159, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Habakkuk
2:4 158, 4

New Testament
Matthew
1:21 174, 8
5:6 179, 5
5:7 179A, 1
5:11-12 163B, 6
5:16 149, 11, 12, 14
5:17 155, 8
5:28 179, 7
5:33-37 180, 1
5:40 167, 4
5:43 149, 16
5:45 156, 2; 164A, 3, 4
6:1 149, 14
6:1.4 149, 11
6:1.4 149, 15
6:4 149, 12
6:9 156, 15; 170, 6; 177, 2
6:9-14 181, 6
6:12 155, 9; 163, 9; 163B, 3; 179A, 6
6:13 152, 2; 182, 4
6:21 177, 5
6:24 162, 3; 171, 1
7:7 159, 9; 163B, 2
7:11 159, 9
7:16 179, 10
7:23 154, 11
7:24-27 179, 8
8:10-11 179, 6
8:29 162A, 4
9:12 174, 8
10:16 175, 8
10:22 164, 8
10:27 159, 8
10:28 156, 8; 161, 5, 8
10:39 159, 8
11:9 154A, 5; 163B, 2
11:28 164, 4, 6
11:29 164, 6, 7
11:30 157, 2; 164, 7
12:28 155, 3
13:11-12 165, 4
15:23-24 154A, 5
15:26-28 154A, 5
16:13-16 183, 4
16:14-16 183, 3
16:15-17 168, 2
16:18 183, 13
16:16-17 158, 6; 162A, 4; 183, 14
16:17 158, 6
16:19 149, 7
16:21-23 183, 14
17:24-27 155, 7
19:16-17 150, 10
20:15 168, 4
20:22 160, 5
22:34 173, 1
22:37-40 149, 18
22:41 173, 1
23:3 179, 10
24:12 165, 4
24:13 165, 4
25:1-8 163B, 6
25:26-27 179, 7
25:31-46 178, 4
25:35-45 162A, 5
25:40 179, 3
26:39 160, 5

Mark
1:24 168, 2
1:25 158, 6
1:24-25 183, 13
2:11 155, 12
2:16 175, 3
2:17 156, 2; 169, 11; 176, 2
3:11 168, 2
10:14 174, 9
11:9 154A, 5

Luke
1:8 169, 6
1:35 153, 14
2:29-30 163, 4
3:6 153, 8
6:21 175, 2
6:27 164A, 2, 4
6:38.37 179A, 1, 6
8:4 159, 4
10:24 163, 4
10:27-29 171, 2
10:35 179A, 7
10:38-42 169, 17
10:41-42 179, 3
10:42 179, 4, 6
11:9 163B, 2
11:20 155, 3
11:26 155, 13
12:4-5 161, 8
12:16-19 178, 2
12:20 178, 2
12:37 179, 6
13:16 162B, 1
14:11 179, 3
15:2 175, 3
15:12 174, 2
15:17-18 179A, 4
16:19 178, 3
16:21 178, 3
17:32 169, 18
18:1 163, 12
18:13 169, 9
18:14 175, 9
19:5 174, 5
19:8 174, 5
19:9 174, 6
19:10 174, 2, 6; 175, 1
20:35-36 154, 3
21:18 155, 15
22:33 183, 13
23:24 174, 3, 6
23:34 149, 16, 167A, 2; 175, 3
24:38 160, 3
24:44-46 183, 11
24:44-47 162A, 10
24:46-47 183, 11
24:47 162A, 11
24:49 175, 3

John
1:1-2 183, 4
1:1-3 164, 7
1:3 182, 3, 183, 4
1:8 158, 4
1:9 182, 5
1:10 174, 1
1:12 166, 4
1:14 153, 8; 174, 2
1:29 152, 9
1:46-48 174, 4
1:47 154A, 5
2:15 162, 3
3:6 174, 9
3:29 179, 2; 183, 10
4:14 170, 9
5:28-29 154, 16
5:35 185, 5
6:39 170, 10
6:40 170, 11
6:41 158, 7; 179, 5
7:24 178, 1, 3
7:37-38 160, 2
8:34 161, 9; 179A, 3
8:34-36 156, 12
8:37 173, 2
8:44 179, 3
8:48 171, 2
8:49 171, 2
10:17-18 152, 9
10:18 183, 14
11:25-26 173, 1
11:50-51 162A, 3
13:1 155, 5; 179, 6
14:6 150, 10; 157, 2; 179, 5
14:8-9 177, 9
14:30 155, 7; 170, 4
14:30-31 152, 9, 170, 4
15:12 162A, 7
15:15 156, 13; 163B, 6
15:13 183, 14
16:12 179, 5
20:27-29 158, 5
20:29 158, 8
21:18 173, 2

Acts of the Apostles
2:1-4 155, 6
2:37 175, 4
2:38 175, 4
7:59 149, 16; 168, 6
9:1-4 168, 4
9:4 169, 9; 170, 9; 175, 8
9:11-12 175, 8
9:13 175, 8
10:11-13 149, 1
10:28 149, 8
11:9 149, 8
17:18 150, 1; 156, 7
17:28 171, 1
17:32 150, 2
26:14 158, 1; 169, 9

Romans
1:17 158, 4
1:21-24 150, 9
1:25 162, 3
4:5 169, 9, 10
4:5-2 160, 7
4:15 153:13; 154, 1; 170, 2
4:17 158, 1
4:25 157, 26; 169, 3, 12
5:5 156, 5; 161, 6; 163, 1;
169, 10, 15
5:12 152, 5; 153, 14; 165, 7, 9
5:20 151, 7, 8; 153, 14; 156, 4;
163, 10, 11; 170, 2
6:4 169, 16
6:6 153, 7
6:9 169, 12; 171, 2
6:12-13 155, 2; 163A, 2
6:19 159, 6
7:5 153, 2, 8
7:6 155, 3
7:7 151, 3; 153, 4, 5, 6, 12, 13;
154, 3; 169, 8; 170, 2, 5
163, 10
7:7-8 153, 9
7:7-9 152, 5
7:7-11 154, 1
7:7-13 153, 7, 13
7:10 153, 10
7:10-21 154, 13
7:11 153, 11
7:12 152, 11; 153, 12; 169, 6, 7;
170, 2
7:12-13 153, 2, 6; 155, 4; 163, 10
7:13 152, 6; 153, 13
7:14 154, 6, 11; 155, 7; 163, 3
7:14-15 154, 2
7:15 151, 1, 6; 152, 1; 154, 8, 13; 156, 1
7:15-14 154, 8
7:15-16, 18-23 151, 2
7:15-18 154, 11
7:16 154, 10; 154A, 1
7:17 154, 11; 155, 2
7:17-18 154, 11
7:18 152, 2; 154, 12; 163, 11
7:20 155, 1
7:20-21 154, 13
7:22 152, 5; 155, 3; 163, 12
7:22-23 151, 5; 154, 14; 163A, 3; 170, 5

Volume III/5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Sections</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td>154, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>154, 12, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-55</td>
<td>151, 2, 154, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-56</td>
<td>182, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54</td>
<td>155, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-55</td>
<td>151, 8, 163, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-56</td>
<td>151, 7, 155, 2, 179A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55</td>
<td>151, 3, 154, 17, 155, 1, 169, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55-56</td>
<td>163, 9, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56</td>
<td>163, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:56-57</td>
<td>163, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22:5</td>
<td>170, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>180, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>159, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>155, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>152, 7, 163, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>157, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15-16</td>
<td>160, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>160, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>154, 5, 169, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>174, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>157, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7</td>
<td>158, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>162, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17-18</td>
<td>156, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>162B, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20-21</td>
<td>152, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>154, 11, 155, 8, 169, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>163B, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11</td>
<td>165, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>163, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13-14</td>
<td>165, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>163, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>169, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>177, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>165, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26</td>
<td>167, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>154, 5, 163, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7-9</td>
<td>154, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-9</td>
<td>163, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>152, 10, 153, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>149, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>180, 5, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>149, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>156, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>156, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19-20</td>
<td>156, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21-22</td>
<td>156, 2, 163, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>163, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22, 24</td>
<td>156, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>162A, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21-24</td>
<td>152, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:28</td>
<td>168, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>158, 6, 168, 2, 172, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>151, 3, 4, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16-17</td>
<td>163, 2, 6, 163A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16-18</td>
<td>151, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16-18-21</td>
<td>163A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>170, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>169, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-22</td>
<td>156, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>165, 3, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-16</td>
<td>165, 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-18</td>
<td>165, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>158, 8, 162A, 7, 174, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>166, 1, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>152, 11, 157, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>155, 11, 182, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>175, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15-16</td>
<td>167, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>167, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:23</td>
<td>161, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25-27</td>
<td>181, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>167A, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>168, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>169, 2, 183, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>176, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>169, 1, 3, 4, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>169, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>169, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-6</td>
<td>169, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>169, 6, 170, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6-9</td>
<td>170, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7-8</td>
<td>169, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8-9</td>
<td>169, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>169, 10, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>169, 12, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-11</td>
<td>170, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10-11</td>
<td>169, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11-12</td>
<td>169, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>170, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12-13</td>
<td>170, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>169, 16, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>154, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>169, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-15</td>
<td>170, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15-16</td>
<td>169, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>170, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>171, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>171, 1, 3, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>163A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:11</td>
<td>177, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III/5
Sermons 148-183

INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Abba, Father, 156:15, 16
Abraham:
children of the faith of, 168:1, 3
two sons (two covenants), 152:7
Adam and Eve:
avarice, 177:9
fig leaves, 174:4
naming birds and beasts, 151:5
pride, 174:2
putting aside lying, 166:2-4
recognizing in newborn babies, 174:9
sin against Christ, 170:3
adoption:
children of God, 166:4
sonship by, 156:15
adultery, 161:1, 8, 12
lust in heart, 179:7
Africa, 162A:10
alms:
five foolish virgins, 149:12
given to everyone, 164A:2
given to whom?, 164A:1
secret giving, 149:12-13
tomorrow we die, 150:7
universality of almsgiving, 164A:1-4
wishing to give, with stolen property, 178:4
Ananias (means sheep), 175:8
angels:
hospitality; entertained unawares, 179:3
justice and perfection of, 154:3, 4
anger:
anticipate divine anger, 176:5
be angry and sin not, 179A:7
animals:
Peter’s vision (Acts 10), 149:6
sacrificial flesh, 149:3, 4
anxiety: walk securely in Christ, 170:11
apostles:
human imperfections, 154:6
number twelve, 149:10
Areopagos, 150:2
arguing with those who contradict, 178:2
Arian question, 183:3, 4, 5
Arles, 162A:8
Athens, 150:1-2; 156:7
Augustine, Saint:
habit of swearing, 180:10
avarice:
see also greed
be avaricious in love of God, 177:9
burden, 164:5
enslaved by cupidity, 177:3
heart affected by, 177:1
horrible to say “Our Father,” 177:2
insatiable, 177:6
prodigal son, 177:9
root of all evil, 177:1, 2
slave of, 177:2
we brought nothing into this world, 177:1-11
weighed down by, 177:3

B
babies, see infants
baptism of infants, 165:7; 176:2
baptism:
all sin forgiven; infirmity remains,
179A:6; 181:3
buried with Christ, into death, 169:16
debts canceled by, 155:9
guilt canceled by, 151:5; 152:3
passing from second man to first man, 174:9
beatific vision:
faith, hope, love in, 158:9
faith, in order to arrive, 159:1
God will be all in all, 158:9

beauty:
elegance of the heart, 161:12
faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5

belief and doubt:
see also faith
scoffers, believers, doubters, 150:2

Bible:
see also word of God
Spirit of God assists in understanding, 152:1

birds: feathers, 164:7

bishop(s):
must be strong in sound doctrine, 178:1-11
orphans’ guardians, 176:2

boasting:
all we have, we have received, 160:2
cross of Christ, 165:3
the Lord, 160:1-7

body and soul:
see also human body; soul
Epicurean philosophy, 150:6
happy/blessed life, 150:5

born again, 182:3
boxing match, 154A:3

building: hearing/doing word of God, 179:8

burden(s):
avarice and laziness, 164:5
bear one another’s burdens, 163B:2, 3, 4; 164:1-15
come all who are overburdened, 164:6
distinguishing between, 164:2
each to carry his own, 163B:2, 3; 164:1-15
poverty and riches, 164:9
sins as, 164:4
two kinds, 164:3

C
Caecilian, trial of, 164:12
Caiaphas, 162A:3
calling, 158:1-9
Canaanite woman, 154A:5

Catholic Church:
see also Church
Holy Spirit; speaking in all languages, 162A:11
spread everywhere, 149:6; 162A:12
centurion’s faith, 179:6
character: passing judgment on, 178:1, 3

charity:
see also alms; love
Christ found in the poor, 178:4
debt of, 149:1

chastity: fulfillment of vow, 148:2

children of God:
earning right to, 174:2
godlike by adoption, 166:4
children: Lord’s prayer; forgive our debts, 181:7

Christian life:
confessing in word and deed, 183:13
following; forging ahead, 169:18
persecution, 167:2
struggle against princes and powers, 167A:1
struggle; how long? 163:7
walk securely, without anxiety, 170:11

warfare before triumph, 151:2

Christians:
Jewish observances re meat, 149:5
motivation in becoming Christians, 150:4

church:
see also Catholic Church; Mystical Body
body of Christ, 149:7
bride of Christ, 183:10, 11
called “Catholic,” 162A:10
cleansing, 181:2
cut off from the whole, 162A:10
Donatists, 162A:9
Israel; the Passover, 155:5-6
linen sheet (Peter’s vision), 149:9
members have stains and wrinkles, 181:3
members with lesser/greater gifts, and charity, 162A:6
Peter representing, 149:7
Peter’s vision (Acts 10), 149:6
return, and be grafted in, 162A:12
sort of people not belonging to, 149:4
Sermons 148-183

speaking in all languages, 162A:11; 175:3
spread through all nations, 162A:10
circumcision, 149:7; 156:15; 158:6; 168:2
eighth day, 169:3, 12
hidden, 160:6
knife or stone, Christ, 160:6; 169:3
Old Testament sign, 160:6
serving the Spirit of God, 169:1
stands for justice, 169:2
trust in the flesh, 169:3
cloven hoof, 149:4
commandment(s):
see also law; ten commandments
believe in Christ crucified, 160:3
directed toward life, 153:10
eternal life, 150:10
holy, just and good, 152:7, 11; 153:12; 154:1; 155:4; 163:10; 169:6, 7
offending through, 152:6
sin through, 153:11
compassion: universal, 164A:3
concupiscence, 151:4
condemnation: communicating
unworthily, 164:11
confession:
healing, 181:8
conscience:
glory is God in, 163B:6
hope and a good conscience, 158:6
mind versus flesh, 154A:3
pricked to the heart, 175:4
sacrificial meat, 149:3
secure, 177:4
consent:
bad desires, 151:7, 8
evil desires, 152:2-3, 154A:4; 155:1
lust, 154:12; 158:2, 13
consolation and grief, 172:1, 3
conversion: those who killed Christ,
175:4
Cornelius, 149:8
cornerstone, 156:15
courage: faith, 163A:1
covenant: old and new, 152:7; 155:6
coveting:
see also desire; greed; lust
forbidden, 170:5
law against, 152:5, 6
ridding self of, 151:5
creation:
good, but unequal to the creator, 182:3
made in wonderful ways, 177:9
Crispinus, trial of, 162A:8
cross:
boasting in, 165:3
climb the tree (like Zacchaeus), 174:3
glory in the cross of Christ, 160:4, 5
lift up your hearts, 165:4
width, length, height, depth of,
165:2-5
curing, 160:7
D
dangers, in Christian living, 167:2
darkness, 182:5, 6
David, King, 162A:2
Christ prefigured by, 175:8
David and Goliath, 153:11
death:
asleep (the word), 172:1
helped by works of mercy, 172:1-3
love with spiritual affection, 172:3
prayers for the, 172:2
preceding merits, 172:2
death:
deserts of sin, 155:7
devil as prince of, 152:9
fast, pray; tomorrow we die, 150:7
fear of, soul and body, 161:5
holy ones are precious in God’s sight,
173:1
hope in future life, 157:6
infant children, 165:7, 9
law of sin and, 152:3, 5, 7; 153:3
living according to the flesh, 156:8
love life, if afraid of death, 161:7
natural horror of, 172:1
original sin and, 173:2
personal end of the world, 170:10
preserve life in, 165:9
saddened; heathens, 173:3
sadness and consolation, 173:3
sin as, 153:13
soul deserts the body, 173:2, 3
spirit is alive, 173:1
sting of sin, 163:11
swallowed up in victory, 154:8
temporal, not a severe punishment,
148:1
thinking of the flesh, 156:6
unavoidable, 161:7

Volume III/5
where, death, is your sting? 151:7; 154:8, 12, 17; 155:1, 2; 163:7, 9, 10; 169:13; 179A:5; 182:5
who will deliver from the body... 154:15, 16, 17; 155:15; 163A:3; 179A:7
wise according to the flesh, 155:11
without death, human body is good, 155:15
wretched man that I am... 163:12
deceivers and flatterers, 163B:5
deeds, law of, 152:5
deformity: faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5
delight(s):
flesh and mind, 159:6
good and evil, 169:8
heart, truth, 179:6
in justice, 159:2, 5
in law of God, 179A:7
in the Lord, 153:10
lawful and unlawful, 159:2
love and, 159:3
Spirit of God in you, 155:14
unlawful lust, 155:9
demons:
believe and tremble, 158:6; 162A:4; 183:13
faith of, 168:2
only believe; do not love, 162A:4
depth, 165:5, 9
desire:
consenting to evil desires, 152:2-3; 154A:4
prayer for understanding, 152:1
for riches, 177:6, 7
despair:
justice will be realized, 170:9
Paul’s word to the sick, 176:4
devil:
see also demons
daughter of Canaanite woman, 154A:5
envy, 170:3
hating, 149:18
never ordered to love, 149:16
passing blame to, 165B:5
prince of death, 152:9
prince of this world, 170:4
Samaritan parable, 171:2
struggle against powers, 167A:1
struggle with, 158:4
world in captivity, 163:3

Dionysius the Areopagite, 150:2
discipline, 164:11; 164A:3; 178:5
dishonesty: sale of property, 148:1
doctor, not needed by the healthy, 156:2; 175:5
dog: Jesus and the Canaanite woman, 154A:5
Donatists, 162A:1, 162A:7, 8, 9, 10, 12; 164:1, 10, 13-15; 182:9, 10; 183:11
drunkenness, 151:4
duty: each to carry his own burden, 163B:2
earnest, or pledge, 156:16
eating: Jewish observances re meat, 149:5
Elizabeth, 169:6
end of the world: last day, 170:10
enemy:
goals of fire on his head, 149:19
command to love, 164A:2
hate/love; old/new covenants, 149:15, 16, 18
overcoming, 151:3
praying for, 167A:2
envy, 170:3
overcoming, 151:3
praying for, 167A:2
Epicureans, 150:3, 5, 6, 7-9; 156:7, 10
eternal life:
blessed life, 150:10
calm assurance in praying for, 154A:6
desire directed to nothing else, 170:10
prayer; perseverance, 154A:6
two dwellings: fire and kingdom, 161:4
eternal punishment, 148:2
fear of adulterer, 161:8
eternity: nothing compares with good things of, 173:1
eucharist: eating and drinking unworthily, 164:11
Eunomians, 182:7; 183:6
evangelization, 163:5
evil, see good and evil
eyes: more highly valued than other members, 162A:6
faith:
all good things come from God, 168:3
arriving at the final vision, 159:1

Sermons 148-183
believing without having seen, 158:5, 8
Christ asleep in the boat, 163B:6
courage, 163A:1
demons and saints, 168:2
demons believe, and tremble, 158:6
gift of God, 168:8
gift of God’s mercy, 168:1-8
having, not having charity, 162A:1, 4
hope of eternal salvation, 170:8
invisible things, 159:3
Jesus and the Canaanite woman, 154A:5
justice and, 158:4; 169:9
justice given by God for, 156:4
justice in faith in Christ, 170:7
mercy and faithfulness, 168:3
obtained from God, 169:12
parents and infants, 174:8
peace, charity come only from God, 168:3
pray for those who have not yet come to believe, 168:8
pray in faith, to obtain faith, 168:5
promise to those who believe, 163:11
promiser, and doer, 156:2
tears dried by joy of, 172:3
walking by faith, not sight, 158:8
will prepared receptacle for, 172:2
falsehood, see lie; swearing
fasting, 150:7
Father: Abba, Father, 156:15, 16
fear:
authority to kill both body and soul, 161:8
chaste; slavish, 161:9
looks to punishment, 162A:4
loss of temporal things, 161:7
may lead to love, 161:8
more charity; less fear, 161:8-9
pedagogue of the law, 161:8
slave of charity, 156:14
feathers on birds, 164:7
fidelity, beauty of, 159:7
flatterers, 163B:5
flesh:
see also lust; sin; spirit
condemnation; Christ, 155:2, 3
conscience and the mind, 154A:3
consenting to desires of, 152:2-3
debtors to, 156:1-17
delight/consent in evil, 154:14
delights of, 159:6
fighting against the mind, 154A:2;
154A:4
in God I will hope, 154:12
infirmity, 155:9
law of God weakened through, 155:7
law of, vs law of mind, 163:12
led by lusts of, 151:2
life from the soul, 156:6
lusts against spirit, 155:15; 163A:2
pleasing God not possible in, 155:12
pleasures; blessedness, 156:7
presumptuously relying on, 153:8
prisoner, 154:11
putting one’s trust in, 169:4
restored after resurrection, 169:12
serve God in spirit, 169:1
serving the law of sin, 151:8; 154:9;
155:1, 2
signifies “man,” 153:8
sins, the law working in our members, 153:1; 154:14; 154A:1; 155:3
small good, 156:6
Son of God in likeness of, 152:1-11
soul, the life of the body, 161:6; 18:8
Spirit of God dwelling in you, 155:13
struggle with, 158:4
struggle with spirit, 163:6; 163A:2
thinking as enmity of God, 155:10
thinking of, is death, 156:6
trusting in lust, 155:12
warfare: putting its doings to death, 156:9-10
wise according to, is death, 155:11
works manifest, 162:1
works of, 163:2
foolish man: building on sand, 179:8
foolish virgins: give us some of your oil, 149:12; 163B:6
foolishness: false wisdom, 150:9
foot, thorn in, 162A:5
forgiveness:
pardoning others, 179A:7
forgiveness of sin:
body of Christ, 149:6, 7
Christ’s blood shed for, 152:10
contract with God: as we forgive, 181:8
cross of Christ, 181:7
forgive us our debts, 181:6-8

Volume III/5
Volume III/5

fornication, 161:1
shunned, 162:3
sin against one's own body, 162:1-4
universal and specific, 162:4
whole person absorbed in, 162:2
forswear, 180:1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 8, 10
found things must be returned, 178:7-9
free will:
grace and, 156:13; 165:1-9
help from the Holy Spirit, 156:12
lusts of the flesh, 155:13
not all needed to do God's will, 165:1
future life:
hope for, 157:6
life following death, 150:7

g
Gentiles:
body of Christ, 149:7
grafted; wild olive, 162A:9
Jesus and the Canaanite woman, 154A:5
Peter's vision (Acts 10), 149:6, 8
gifts of the Holy Spirit, 162A:4
glorification, 158:1-9
freedom: promise to faithful slave, 159:5
Glorification, 158:1-9
God:
see also Holy Spirit; Son of God; Trinity
give to God what belongs to God, 168:5
glory, in your conscience, 163B:6
how magnificent are his works, 165:5
life of the soul, 156:6; 161:6; 180:8
life of, 162A:3
makes space for himself in us, 163:1
mercy; chastising the world, 171:5
one spirit; attaching self to God, 179A:4
presiding in judgment, 162A:7
remote by unlikeness, 171:3
seeing the face of, and living, 170:9
serve God in spirit, not in flesh, 169:1
supreme good, 156:6
thirsting for, 158:7
unsearchable ways of, 155:8
goal:
avarice, 177:10
flee from, 177:3

Sermons 148-183
Sermons 148-183

merit, 169:3; 170:5
perfected in weakness, 163:8
power of the Spirit, 165:2
reality of, 156:13
saved through faith, 169:3
where sin abounded, 155:4
grafting the wild olive, 162A:9
gratitude: ungrateful for good deeds, 164:8
greed:
see also avarice
impurity of, 163:2
left hand of the spirit, 149:15
root of all evil, 179A:5
taming, 178:6
grief:
and consolation, 172:1, 3
heart cured by, 173:2
guilt:
canceled by baptism, 152:3
degrees of, 179A:5
guilty tongue from guilty mind, 180:2

H

habit:
opposing bad habits, 151:4
stronger, 180:12
Hagar, 152:7
hands: left knowing what right is doing, 149:15
happiness:
see also delight; joy; pleasure
bodily pleasure, 150:5; 156:7
desires of a happy person, 150:10
Epicureans and Stoics on, 150:5, 8-9; 156:7
good and evil, 150:4
human search for, 150:5
joy and laughter, 150:10
Paul vs the philosophers, 156:7
philosophers and Christians, 150:4; 156:7
virtue; blessed life, 150:9
hardheartedness, 178:3
harlot, 161:1, 2; 162:1, 2
hate: do good to those who hate you, 164A:4
healing: run to Jesus to be healed, 176:5
health:
Donatus, 162A:7
human nature wounding itself, 156:2
members of the body, 162A:6
precious, 162A:6
heart:
delight of, 179:6
evil thoughts in closet of, 177:11
inner beauty, 161:12
lift up your hearts, 169:16; 176:6; 177:8, 9
moor yourself above, 177:8
nothing concealed from God, 179:7
tables of the law, 155:4, 6; 156:14
where your treasure is, 177:5
heaven:
see also Beatific Vision; eternal life
desire nothing else, 170:10
hunger will not be there, 179:6
sinning in, 165:6
height, 165:4
heresy:
all deny Christ’s coming in the flesh, 183:13
denial that Christ came in the flesh, 182:2, 3, 7; 183:1-15
hoarding, 178:2
Holy Spirit:
body, the temple of, 161:2, 6; 162:1
bringing life to mortal bodies, 155:15
charity of God, 156:14
cleansing what he touches, 162A:3
director in doing good things, 156:13
do not believe every spirit, 182:1
dwelling in you, 155:13
finger of God, 155:3, 5; 156:14
fruits of, 163A:4
gift: speaking in all languages, 162A:11
gives life, 152:7
help for those led by, 156:11-12
law of the Spirit and life, 152:5, 7
led by the Spirit, 151:2
lie punished by, 148:1
love of God poured in our hearts, 156:5; 163:1; 169:10, 15
love the fruit of, 163A:4
Mary’s conception, 153:14
Pentecost, 155:6; 156:14
pledge of, 170:10
power of grace, 165:2
receive this rich guest, 169:15
refuge in assistance of, 163:11
sets some hearts prophesying, 162A:3
sons of God are led by, 156:10

Volume III/5
Spirit of God; Spirit of Christ, 155:13
honesty: things found must be returned, 178:7-9
hope: being in the spirit, 153:9
consolation on the journey, 158:8
faith and eternal salvation, 170:8
faith working through love, 158:7
grace, 151:8
head of body of the Church, 157:3
hope that can be seen, 157:1-6; 158:8
joy saved by, 157:4
lift up your hearts; the cross, 165:4
love and a good conscience, 158:6
place in God, not in self, 165:1
hospitality: angels entertained unawares, 179:3
done unto Christ, 179:3
human characteristic, 174:1
Mary and Martha, 179:3
ministering to bodily needs, 179:4
human body: as supreme good, 150:7
body of death, 151:5
death because of sin, 155:14
God's creature, 180:8
members each have proper duty, 162A:5
soul the life of, 180:8
temple of the Holy Spirit, 161:2, 6; 162:1
human condition: carnal and spiritual, 154:7-8
fault; punishment; mortality, 171:3
plight: law of sin in members, 154A:1; 155:3
human life: shortness of, 154:15
human nature: wounding itself, 156:2
humility:
  Christ crucified, 160:3
  Christ's way of the cross, 174:3
do good to the humble, 164A:3
humble sinner better than proud just man, 170:7
learn from Christ, 164:7
lying for sake of, 181:4
pride in cross of Christ, 160:5
Saul turned into Paul, 168:6
Saul/Paul, 169:5
sitting as sign of, 179:3
valleys: apostles after Pentecost, 175:3
hunger: absent in heaven, 179:6
husband and wife: quarreling, 152:4
struggle with good and evil, 154A:4

I
idols, 163:1
imitation of Christ, 167A:2
immortality, 155:15; 169:12; 179:4; 182:5
mankind and angels, 154:4
no lust remaining, 151:8
imperishability, 169:12; 179:4; 182:5
incarnation: flesh assumed on behalf of flesh, 155:7, 8
form of servant added, 183:5
mission to the human race, 174:2
Son of God emptied himself, 183:5
infants: considered as orphans, 174:9
crying by the newborn, 167:1
death; original sin, 165:7, 9
infant baptism: original sin, 165:7; 176:2
Jesus is Christ to the baptized, 174:7
newborn burdened with first man's sin, 174:9
prophecy: life of toil or fear, 167:1
craving the new-born, 167:1
dying; original sin, 165:7; 176:2
Israel: Passover; the Church, 155:5-6

J
Jerusalem, 169:5; 183:14
preaching the gospel began from, 162A:12
Jesus: see also cross; incarnation; mystical body; redemption; resurrection asleep in the boat/heart, 163B:6
bread come down from heaven, 179:5
breaking the hold of sin; Adam, 151:5
bridegroom of the Church, 183:10, 11
burdens: learn from me, 164:7
came to save sinners, 174:1, 6, 8; 175:1-9; 176:1, 2
can you drink the cup. . . . 160:5
Christ for all believing infants, 174:7
confessing that he came in the flesh, 182:3, 6; 183:1-15
Sermons 148-183

cross; forgiveness of sin, 181:7

crucified; a stumbling block, 174:3
daughter of Canaanite woman, 154A:5
demands on his promises, 158:2
denying the Incarnation, 182:2, 7
did not reckon it robbery. . . , 183:5
doctor comes for the sick, 175:5
doctor; passion and death, 175:2-3
Father, forgive them, 175:3, 4
first day: head of the Church, 170:10
forbearance with sinners, 176:4
forgiveness of sins, 149:6
glory begotten from the Father, 174:2
head of the body, 161:1
immovable, yet running, on the cross, 167A:2
knife of circumcision, 160:6
let this cup pass from me. . . , 160:5
likelihood of the flesh of sin, 183:12
love of enemies, 149:16
made "sin" for us, 152:10, 11; 155:8
mediator of God and men, 156:5; 174:2
nature in its purity, 174:2
near to us, 171:2, 5
necessary that he suffer and rise, 183:11
neighbor to us, 171:3
passion and death: his Father’s will, 170:4
patience in his passion and death, 157:3
perfection of the law, 160:7
poor people and, 164A:4
poverty: became poor, 169:2
present everywhere, 171:1, 3
recognizing in those reborn, 174:9
resurrection: hesitation of disciples, 162A:10
sacrifice for sin, 152:11; 155:8
Samaritan: guardian of the weak, 171:2
sees you, wherever you go, 161:2
sin absent in, 170:3
sin condemned by, 152:10
sinless, 152:9
Son of God made sin for us, 152:10
son of man; Son of God, 174:2
sons of Zebedee and, 160:5
speak the truth, put on Christ, 166:2-4
surpassing eminence of, 169:6
tax paid by, 155:7
treasure: knowing Christ crucified, 160:3
trial a matter of patience, not guilt, 170:3
true Passover, 155:5
virtue; delight, 150:9
voluntary death, 152:9
watches men struggling with conscience, 154A:3
way of the cross; humility, 174:3
weeping for Lazarus, 173:2
welcoming him into our hearts, 174:5
witnessing by leading good lives, 183:15
word both human and divine, 174:1

Jews:
boasting about the law, 156:4
broken off from the Church, 162A:9
laws on eating meat, 149:3-5
left on the mountains, 175:1
new covenant rejected by, 160:1
tribes remaining attached to temple, 169:5
zeal, not according to knowledge, 160:2, 7; 169:10

John the Baptist, 182:5; 183:10
joy:
laughter and, 150:10
rejoice in the Lord, 171:1-5
saved by hope, 157:4
world or the Lord, 171:1, 4

Judas, 152:10
judgment:
character of others, 178:1, 3
entering into, with your servant, 170:6
God presiding in, 162A:7
mercy and, 170:6; 179A:1, 6
no one justified in God’s sight, 179A:1
trial of Crispinus, 162A:8
justice:
angelic, 154:4
boasting in divine, 160:1
circumcision stands for, 169:2
conduct self with reproach, 169:6, 7
delight should prevail, 159:5
divine, 155:8
enjoyable sweetness of, 159:7
establishing one’s own, 160:2
faith and, 158:4; 169:9
faith in Christ Jesus, 170:7

Volume III/5
fulfilled through the Spirit, 152:9
given by God, for faith, 156:4
gold and, 159:6
grace and, 169:11
human will and God's justice, 169:13
hungering for, 179:5
ignorant of the justice of God, 160:2, 7
Jesus justifies the ungodly, 160:7
law and, 170:1-11
law of God and, 156:2, 3
love lacking, 169:9
love of, 178:11
love; the interior senses, 159:4
martyrs, perfect lovers of, 159:8
measure ourselves by, 170:7
nations seize hold of, 169:8
performing to be seen by men, 149:14
required to love, 159:2
resurrection of the dead, 170:7
wishing to establish one's own, 169:10, 11
justification, 158:1-9; 159:1-9
meaning of, 158:4
no living person justified in God's sight, 170:8
progress and growth, 158:5
resurrection of Christ and, 169:13
thanks for, 159:9

K

keys: Peter and Paul, 149:7
killing and eating, 149:2, 5
kindness: universal, 164A:3
kingdom of God:
  immoral persons excluded from, 161:3
  kings, 149:17
knock and it will be opened, 163B:2

L

lamb of God, 152:9
laziness, 155:10, 11
lamps: five foolish virgins, 149:12
language: gift; speaking in all languages, 162A:11
laughing and crying, 150:10
law:
  (refers primarily to Old Testament, Mosaic, Jewish law)
  as sin, 153:6

composed by Spirit of God, 155:3
degrees of seriousness, 179A:2
fear, 156:14
flesh vs mind, 163:12
given through Moses, 153:2, 3
goodness of, 170:2
guilty of a point; guilty of all, 179A:1-8
help needed in fulfilling, 156:4
holy, 154:1, 4; 163:10; 169:6, 7
judged by law of liberty, 179A:2
justice and, 170:1-11
justice fulfilled in us, 155:9
laid down for transgression, 156:4
law of mind vs law of sin, 179A:7
law of sin and death, 152:3, 5, 7; 153:12; 154:1; 155:3, 4
lawful use of, 156:3
lawsuit, 167:3, 4
leading to Christ, 156:3, 4
letter and life, 152:7
last in, 153:6
mind struggles for; flesh against, 154A:2
not to cure; to prove sickness, 170:2
old: sacrifices offered for sin, 152:11
part of the promise, 156:2
Paul's coming to Christ, 169:7
pedagogue, 156:3
power of sin is the law, 163:10
reduced to ten commandments, 179A:3
secular; trial of Caecilian, 164:12
so delinquency might abound, 163:10
spiritual, 154:6
symbolic sign of future realities, 149:3
tables of the heart, 155:4, 6; 156:14
weakened through the flesh, 155:7

lie (liar; lying):
see also perjury
confessing sin for sake of humility, 181:4
every man a liar, 166:1-4
fear of lying, 181:4
mouth that kills the soul, 161:5
punished by the Holy Spirit, 148:1
putting aside lying . . . , 166:1
Sermons 148-183

life: blessed and eternal, 150:10
light:
  deliver us from darkness, 182:5
  need of enlightenment, 182:5
linen sheet (Peter’s vision), 149:9-10
listening:
  humility, 179:2
  Mary and Martha, 179:3-6
  preacher listening inwardly, 179:7
reward or punishment, 162A:9
living stones, 156:13
Lord’s Prayer: forgive us our debts, 181:6-8
love:
  being loved, 174:4
  branch bearing fruit, 162A:7
  charity and faith, 168:2-3
  charity: fullness of the law, 179A:3
  charity is free, 156:14
  commandment: love God with whole heart, 149:18
  commandments (the first three), 179A:3-4
  deeds worthless without charity, 169:15
  enemies; the devil, 149:16, 18
  faith, hope, and love, 158:7
  faith or prophecy, without charity, 162A:1, 2, 3, 4
  faith works through, 172:2
  fan the spark of, 178:11
  fear may lead to, 161:8
  fruit of the Spirit, 163A:4
  fullness of the law’s charity, 169:10
  gift of God, 156:5
  giving one’s life for a friend, 183:14
  God as reward of, 158:7
  God loved only by virtue of God’s gift, 169:14
  good works as result of, 156:5
  greatest virtue, 158:9
  health of the members of the body, 162A:6
  hope and a good conscience, 158:6
  imitation of Christ, 167A:2
  justice; invisible beauty, 159:8
  law of charity, law of Christ, 163B:2
  less fear; more charity, 161:8-9
  looks to reward, 162A:4
  love, and do whatever you wish, 163B:3
  love God, and others for his sake, 179A:8
  loving selves badly, 179A:4
  members of the body; analogy, 162A:5
  most important commandments, 171:2
  neighbor, 149:18
  neighbor included in God loved wholly, 179A:3-4
  neighbor (seven commandments), 179A:3-4
  of God: what is a good life, 154A:6
  offending against charity; guilty of everything, 179A:5
  our connection with the head, Christ, 162A:5
  perfect, casts out fear, 161:9
  persons with lesser/greater gifts and, 162A:6
  poured into our hearts by the Spirit, 163:3
  power of dishonest love, 161:10
  right hand of the spirit, 149:15
  root of all good works, 179A:5
  rooted/founded in charity, 162A:7; 165:2
  rule: lone one who is by nature better (God), 179A:4
  sharing in Christ’s suffering, 169:14, 15
  single-minded pursuit of, 158:6
  spiritual affection for the dead, 172:3
  testing our love for God, 178:11
  things one delights in, 159:3
  unwilling to do what is displeasing, 161:9
  who will separate us from Christ, 158:9
  width of charity, 165:4
  wings of charity, 164:7
  without charity I am nothing, 162A:3
lust:
  see also flesh
  adultery in heart, 179:7
  conquered by, 153:9
  consent to, 151:7; 152:3; 155:1
  deny lust its weapons, 163A:2
  do not carry through, 163:1, 6; 163A:1-4
  do not go after lusts, 151:3-4, 6, 8;
  153:5-6, 9, 13; 154:1, 155:9

Volume III/5
doing by desiring, consenting, or accomplishing, 154:10
fight against, 163:12
mosaic law, 153:6
origin, 151:5
pleasure, 153:10
repressed by fear, 169:8
slay lust in yourself, 163A:4
walking according to the flesh, 155:9, 10
willing is not accomplishing, 154:12
you shall not lust, 154:3, 8, 9, 10; 163:10; 169:8
lying, see lie

M
make-up; body ornaments, 161:11
malice: makes days evil, 167:1
man (theology):
created without our knowing it, 169:13
saved human beings, 176:5
Manichees, 151:3; 152:4, 6; 153:1, 2, 5; 155:11; 163A:3; 170:2; 182:1ff; 183:1
mankind:
omoderation prescribed for, 156:2
no boasting in, 160:1
marriage, 161:11
Martha and Mary, see Mary and Martha
martyr(s):
• hope, 158:8
• martyrdom not heroic if death is not bitter, 173:2
• perfect lovers of justice, 159:8
• perfection, 159:1
• pleasing God, 155:12
• praying for, an insult, 159:1
• true martyr: charity, 169:15
Mary and Martha:
• eating the one listened to, 179:5
• listening to word of Christ, 179:3-6
• Mary, enjoying truth, 179:5, 6
• reward for Martha’s part, 179:4
• the better part, 169:17
• what Mary chose was growing, 179:6
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
• Holy Spirit coming to, 153:14
• virginity of, 170:3
• materialistic thoughts, 177:10
• meat: eating; Peter’s vision, 149:2-3
meekness:
• hear and rejoice, 155:4
• hope; patience, 157:2
mercy:
• draw upon the Lord’s mercy, 170:6
• faith as gift of God, 168:1
• grant us your salvation, 163:4
• judgment and, 170:6; 179A:1, 6
• obtained, in order to be faithful, 168:3
merit:
• all owed to Christ, 176:6
• grace, 169:3; 170:5
• winning, for the dead, 172:2
mind:
• beaten by the flesh, 154A:2
• conscience and the flesh, 154A:3
• delights of, 159:6
• law of, vs law of flesh, 163:12
• mastery over the flesh, 155:2
• members fighting against law of, 155:14
• serving the law of God, 151:8; 154:9;
• 155:1, 2; 156:10
misery, 167:1
mistakes: Donatists, 164:14
moderation, 156:2
money:
• lovers of self, 179A:4
• sufficient for present needs, 177:3, 5, 11
• whatever is spent, it’s the Lord’s money, 179A:8
mortality: journey, 177:3
Moses, 155:6
• law of, see law
• seeing the face of God, 170:9
mystical body:
• bodies are members of Christ, 161:1-12
• head is in heaven, 162A:5
• health of members of, 162A:6
• hope in head of the body, 157:3
• sing to the Lord a new song, 163:4

N
Nathanael, 154A:5; 174:4
neighbor:
• command to love, 149:18; 179A:3-4
• Samaritan parable, 171:2
new covenant:
• sing to the Lord a new song, 163:4

Sermons 148-183
Sermons 148-183

O

oath:
see also swearing
by your glory (an oath), 180:5
demanded, or freely offered, 180:10
God swears, 180:2, 3
swearing no oath at all is safe, 180:4
using oaths, 180:6
obedience: fear as motive, 169:8
olive tree, 162A:9
original sin:
conceived in iniquity, 170:4
contracted sin, 170:2
death and, 173:2
death passed into all; infants, 165:9
infants, 181:1
infection from Adam, 176:2
infirm descendants, 156:2
law of, 151:5
newborn burdened with first man’s sin, 174:9
passed through to all men, 153:14
pride; the serpent, 163:8
sin through the commandment, 153:11
their eyes were opened, 151:5
whole race contained in Adam, 175:1
orphans: bishops as guardians of, 176:2

P

pagan: do not rob a pagan, 178:5
pardon:
forbear, and be forgiven, 179A:1
self cheated by not parodium, 179A:7
Passover, 179:6
see also Pentecost
Israel and the Church, 155:5-6
patience:
hope in future life, 157:2
repentance, 149:18
resurrection of Christ, 175:3
tribulation, 159:1
wisdom, 153:1
Paul, Saint:
see also Saul
bodily activity, 162:1
circumcision, 169:5
conversion, 175:8
debate with philosophers, 150:5
first of sinners, 175:5-7; 176:3
flesh and spirit, 154:7
formerly a persecutor, 149:14
goad in flesh of, 163:8
humbled, 154:6
horrified at his own justice, 169:10
infirmity of body, not spirit, 154:5
last of the apostles, 176:3
law a hindrance to, 169:7
least of the apostles, 168:7
name means “small,” 169:5
one thing not yet grasped by, 169:16
praise of divine law, 153:12
preaching in Athens, 150:1-2; 156:7
revelations to, 154:5, 6
sower of words, 150:9
struggle with evil, 151:6
swearing, 180:5
swollen-headed; medical treatment, 163:8
zeal, 169:5
peace:
carry the feathers of, 164:7
faith and, 168:2
goal of all good desires, 168:2-3
Pelagians, 153:1; 154:1; 155:1; 156:13;
158:1; 163A:3; 165:1; 169:1; 174:1;
176:1; 181:1-8; 183:12
Pentecost:
Church speaking in all languages, 175:3
fire and sound, 155:6
perfection:
angelic, 154:4
growing in charity, 179A:5
martyrs, 159:1
not to lust, 154:8
presumptuous, 170:8
progress in justification, 158:5
travelers, 169:18
perjury, 180:2, 3
none unpunished, 180:8
punished by God, 180:13
self-destruction, 180:11
persecution:
loyal Christians, 167:2
praying for persecutors, 149:17
perseverance:
calling on God for, 168:5
Jesus and daughter of Canaanite woman, 154A:5
prayer; eternal life, 154A:6
standing as sign of, 179:3
Peter, Saint:

Volume III/5
blessed for his belief, 158:6
Church represented by, 149:7
faith is the rock, 183:14
sin of, 175:5
vision (Acts 10), 149:1-10
you are the Christ, 183:3, 4, 13, 14
Pharisees, 169:5; 170:10
philosophers: foolish; proud, 160:3
piety: journey, 177:3
pleasing: displeasing God/others, 163B:5
pleasure:
  bodily, 150:5; 156:7
  chasing; lust, 153:6
  delight in the senses, 159:2
  happiness; the philosophers vs Paul, 156:7
  lust, 153:10; 155:1
Temporal, 157:5
pledge, or earnest, 156:16
poor:
  Christ is found in, 178:4
  peers of the rich, 177:7
poverty:
  burden of riches, 164:9
  Jesus emptied himself, becoming man, 169:2
praise:
  flatterers or deceivers, 163B:5
  let every spirit praise the Lord, 182:3
  motive for good deeds, 163B:5
  praise of God, 153:10
prayer:
  Christian prays and is heard, 175:3
  minor sins cleansed by, 179A:6
  pray always, 163:12
  pray to obtain faith, 168:5
  to God the Father, 183:15
  tomorrow we die, 150:7
preaching:
  danger to preacher, 179:1
  do what they say, not what they do, 179:10
  listening inwardly, 179:7
  pride, 179:2
predestination, 158:1-9
presence of God:
  wholly there for all and each, 179A:4
  pride:
    apostatize from God, 162:4
beginning of all sin, 162:4
cross of Christ, 160:5, 7
doings of the flesh and, 156:10
flattering self, 175:9
humble sinner better than proud just man, 170:7
justice from one’s own law, 169:9
original sin, 163:8
Paul the apostle, 154:5, 6
riches and, 177:7
separation from the Church, 162A:9
will taken over by, 174:2
priesthood: oath: eternal priesthood, 180:2
priests: vest selves with justice, 169:11
prodigal son:
  returning to himself, . . ., 179A:4
promise:
  all things locked up under sin, 163:11
  trust in, 158:2
prophecy:
  false prophets, 182:1, 2
  having, not having charity, 162A:1, 2, 3
  touched by the Spirit, 162A:3
prophets:
  Samuel, the most distinguished, 162A:2
punishment:
  death as, 148:1
  fear of, 156:14; 161:8, 9, 10; 169:8; 178:11
  going unpunished as, 171:5
  mortality, 171:3
R
redeeming the time, 167:1, 3-4
redemption:
  Christ came to save sinners, 175:1, 5, 7; 176:1.2
  necessary for God to be human, 174:1
repentance:
  patience, 149:18
  prodigal son; return to beauty, 177:9
  switch from the ninety-nine to the hundred, 175:4
  tears as a requirement, 175:2
resurrection (of Jesus):
Christ gave a sample of, 175:3
eternal day promised by, 169:3
recognize power of Christ’s, 169:12
resurrection of the body, 154:16, 17;
154A:4
resurrection of the dead:
belief in, 173:2
justice; conformed to Christ’s death,
169:16
justice from faith in Christ, 170:7
Paul’s preaching at Athens, 150:2
rich(es); rich people:
being and wanting, 177:5, 6, 7
burden of poverty, 164:9
command: be rich in good works,
164:8
crime: being hardhearted, 178:3
enough, in whatever circumstances,
177:7
placing hopes in uncertainty, 177:8, 9
poor as peers of, 177:7
putting up new, larger barns, 178:2
stinginess, 178:3
storing up treasure, 177:5
ture rich are the rich of God, 177:7
within, 177:4
robbery, see theft

S
sabbath: observance commanded, 179A:3
Sabellians, 183:7
sacrifice: animals; Jewish law, 149:3
saints:
battle; warfare, 151:7
faith of, 168:2
justice of the mountains, 155:8
salvation:
Christ came to save sinners, 174:8
faith and hope, 170:8
for nothing you will save them, 169:3
proclaim day from day, 163:4
proclaim his glory among the nations,
163:5
Samaritan:
Christ, guardian of the weak, 171:2
victim aided by, 179A:7
Samuel, 162A:2
Saul, King, 162A:2; 169:6
persecutor of David, 175:8
Saul (later Paul), 162A:3
cured by Christ, 175:9
kicking against the goad, 158:1
Paul as first sinner, 175:7, 8
persecutor into apostle, 175:9
persecutor obtained mercy, 168:4
persecutor of the Church, 149:17;
169:8, 9
prefigured in King Saul, 175:8
turned into Paul, 168:6
why are you persecuting me? 169:9;
170:9
wolf among sheep, 175:8
savior, not needed by the healthy, 156:2
schisms, 183:10
secret: nothing concealed from God,
179:7
self: invisible riches, 161:11
self-love: find yourself in loving God,
179A:4
senses:
delight in bodily, 159:2
love; the interior senses, 159:4
servile work, 179A:3
severity, or truth, 171:5
shame, 174:3
Adam and Eve, 151:5
sheep:
sheep of the house of Israel, 154A:5
lost, 173:2
midst of wolves, 175:8; 178:10
sight, see Beatific Vision
Simeon, 163:4
sin:
see also conscience; consent;
forbearance of sin; fornication;
guilt; original sin
abounding, 170:2
be angry and sin not, 179A:7
body dead because of, 155:14
Christ is denied by deeds, 183:10
Christ the cleanser of, 174:4
condemned by Jesus, 152:10
defead; hidden, 153:9, 13
defeas as deserts of, 155:7
defeat as sin, 153:13
deceiving ourselves re non-sinfulness,
162:9
delight in, 159:6
doctor needed by the sick, 176:2
don’t break the Lord’s nets, 164:11
drag on the spirit, 152:5

Volume III/5
each accountable for his own sins, 163B:2
forgive us our debts, 181:6-8
grace and, 155:4
if we say we have no sin. . . , 181:1-8
immoderate use of God’s gifts, 149:2
infants and, 165:7
Jesus as sacrifice for, 155:8
Jesus is without sin, 170:3
Jesus, the Lamb of God, 152:9
law of mind vs law of sin, 179A:7
law of sin and death, 152:3, 5, 7; 153:12; 154:1; 155:3, 4
lust; power to reign, 155:1, 2
mind vs flesh, 151:6
minor sins cleansed by prayer, 179A:6
no one can live without, 181:1
not I, but sin living in me, 154:11
not treated according to our sins, 171:5
outside the body, 162:2
pardon(s), 164:4
passions of sins which come through the law, 153:1, 3-4, 8
power of sin is the law, 163:10
prone to, 151:1
sacrifices (old law), 152:11
scripture locked up all things under, 163:11
sickness: cry for the doctor, 170:5
sinning in heaven, 165:6
sins as burdens, 164:4
slave of sin, 156:12; 161:9
sting(s) of death, 151:7; 179A:5; 182:5
thoughts are also deeds, 170:3
transgression, 170:2
sinners:
all offend against charity, 179A:5
almsgiving, 164A:3
considerate treatment of, 164A:4
excluded from kingdom of God, 161:3
frown of the Lord on, 161:2, 3
humble sinner better than proud just man, 170:7
Jesus came to save, 174:1, 6, 8
lying turns you into thing avoided, 181:5
praised in desires of soul, 163B:5
world, 170:4
sitting: humility, 179:3
slave:
“again in fear,” 156:14
faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5
runaway from avarice, 177:3
Sodom, 161:4
Son of God:
see also Jesus Christ; Trinity
confessing his coming in the flesh, 183:4
demons confess, out of fear, 183:13
emptied himself, 169:2
handed over for us all, 157:2
in likeness of flesh, 152:1-11
in the beginning. . . , 183:4
sonship by adoption, 156:15
soul:
see also body and soul; heart; mind
a great good, 156:6
condition: not God, 182:4
death of the body, 173:2, 3; 180:8
death of, to be feared, 161:5
defense one with authority to kill, 161:8
gives life to flesh, 156:6
God as life of, 156:6
God’s life of, 161:6; 180:8
stench of dead soul, 180:8
spirit(s):
and flesh: discord, 152:4
lusts against flesh, 155:15; 163A:2
recognition, as coming from God, 182:2, 3
struggle with flesh, 163:6; 163A:2
spirits: test whether they are from God, 182:1-8
walking according to the Spirit, 155:9
Spirit, Holy, see Holy Spirit
spiritual life:
see also Christian life
acted on, and active, 156:11-12
being led, one must follow, 156:13
give God the credit, 175:9
go before his face in confession, 176:5
only God gives growth, 152:1; 153:1
prayer to God the Father, 183:15
standing: perseverance, 179:3
stealing, see theft
Stephen, Saint, 149:16; 168:4
stinginess, 178:3
Stoics, 150:3, 5, 8-9; 156:7, 10
stumbling, 169:10
suffering: sharing in that of Christ, 169:13, 14
swearing:
see also oath
above all do not swear, 180:1-14
Augustine’s habit, 180:10
binding thing named to God, 180:7
calling God as witness, 180:3
God punishes the deceiver, 180:13
God swears, 180:2, 3
great sin to swear falsely, 180:3
infected with evil, 180:12
meaning of “above all,” 180:9, 12
prune it from your tongue, 180:11
put a stop to, 180:14
truth, a narrow ledge, 180:3
yes, yes; no, no, 180:10
swindler, 167:4
sycamores, 174:3

T

T

talk, evil, 157:1-2
tax, paid by Christ, 155:7
temple:
building, in the baptized, 163:2
living stones, 156:13
tribes (Jews) remaining attached to
temple, 169:5
temporal and eternal:
hope; things not seen, 157:1, 5
temporal goods:
abundance for our enjoyment, 177:8
affection for, 177:2
fear of loss, 161:7
give; receive eternal things, 177:10
loving and lusting, 162:4
woman bent double, 162B
temptation:
deliver us from evil, 152:2
Paul on, 154:7
watching by spiritual people, 163B:4
ten commandments:
one love fulfills all, 179A:3
reduced to two, 179A:3
thanksgiving;
predetermined and justified, 158:3
theft:
grabbing what does not belong to you, 178:6
plunderers, 178:2, 4, 9
self harmed by his action, 179A:7
wishing to give alms with stolen
property, 178:4
thorn in foot, 162A:5
time: price paid for, 167:3

T

T

Timothy (apostle), 177:7
tolerance:
carrying each other’s burdens, 163B:2
discipline and, 164:11
tongue: guilt for a guilty mind, 180:2
torah, see law
treasure: where your heart is, 177:5
trials:
Caecilian, 164:12
Crispinus, the Donatist, 162A:8
Trinity:
see also God; Holy Spirit; Jesus
Christ; Son of God
baptism in name of, 149:10
God alone suffices, 177:9
persons, 156:6
Son alone was judged, 170:3
unchangeable, 182:3
trust: in God, not in one’s own strength,
153:11
trustworthiness, 159:5
truth:
delight in, 153:6
evil preachers of, 179:10
happy life, 150:10
irreligious mind hates truth, 156:1
Mary and Martha; Mary enjoying
truth, 179:5, 6
pride opposed by, 179:2
put on Christ, 166:2-4

U

ugliness: faithful/faithless slave, 159:3, 5
uncleanness: Peter’s vision, 149:8
understanding, 169:3, 8
desire for is itself a prayer, 152:1
irreligious mind and truth, 156:1
unity:
Christ’s love of, 183:10
one king; one kingdom, 179A:8

V

vice:
acquired by habit; born with guilt,
151:5
harmful to one in which it occurs,
155:10
thinking of the flesh, 155:11
virginity: fulfillment of vow, 148:2
virgins, 161:11

Volume III/5
five foolish virgins, 149:12; 163B:6
love of, 161:12
virtue:
abundance is praiseworthy, 177:4
delight in, 150:9
vows: fulfillment, 148:2

W
walk by the Spirit, 163:1-12; 163A:1-4
walking, 169:18
according to the flesh, 155:9, 10; 156:5
water:
rivers of living water, 160:2
whoever drinks will never thirst, 170:9
width, 165:4
wife, see Husband and wife
will:
see also free will
justice of God and, 169:13
prepared receptacle of faith, 173:2
taken over by pride, 174:2
wisdom:
chewing the cud, 149:4
crying and laughing, 175:2
disposes all things sweetly, 174:1
drink me, thirsty still, 170:9
patience, 153:1
treasure in knowledge of Christ
 crucified, 160:3
witnessing:
Christ’s coming in the flesh,
  183:14-15
wolf, among sheep, 175:8; 178:10
woman bent double, 162B
word of God:
bad to hear and not do, 179:9
depths of meaning, 156:1
doers, not hearers only, 179:1-10
earnest hearers of, 179:1
faithful and worthy of total
acceptance, 176
hearing; building upon rock, 179:8
hearing, I rejoice, 179:2
life; no word making a sound, 169:17
quick to hear, slow to speak, 179:1, 2
works of mercy:
dead helped by, 172:1, 2
duty, 179A:2
works of the flesh, 162:1; 163:2; 163A:4
world:
chastised; mercy of God, 171:5
cleaving to, 162:3
 crucified to you, 160:4
enemy of God, 162:3
promises of, 157:1
rejoicing in, 171:1, 4
sinners, 170:4
struggle with, 158:4
temporal and eternal concerns, 157:5
universal lust, 162:4
vice of loving it, 177:3
worship:
creator who can recreate, 176:5
go before his face in confession, 176:5
invitation to, 176:1
wrongdoing:
dealing with one caught in, 163B:1-6

Z
Zacchaeus, 174:2-6
Zachary, 169:6
zeal, 169:5, 10
Index from

Sermons 184-229Z

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

Sermons 184-229Z are on the Liturgical Seasons.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/6 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-050-6, 6 x 9 in., 357 pp., 1993
## Old Testament

### Genesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>214, 2, 5; 223A, 1, 2; 225, 1; 229G, 6; 229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>223A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-5</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-5</td>
<td>223, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>225, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>229S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25-26</td>
<td>229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>229V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>224, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>228B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4-5</td>
<td>224, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>229G, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>224, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>224, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:25-29</td>
<td>229F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:26</td>
<td>229F, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exodus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>223A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>223A, 5; 229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>223E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>210, 8; 229M, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Deuteronomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>215, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Kings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:29</td>
<td>196A, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>223A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>216, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>210, 5; 223E, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>218, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Index of Scripture

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)
Sermons 184-229Z

Proverbs
3:34 LXX 218C, 4
9:1 225, 2
18:12 218C, 4
28:27 198, 3

Song of Songs
1:8 229O, 3
2:6 214, 8

Wisdom
7:27 187, 2; 212, 1
9:14-15 210, 5
9:15 212, 1; 221, 3

Sirach
18:30 210, 11
27:5 223E, 1; 229A, 2
29:12 209, 2

Isaiah
1:3 189, 4; 190, 3; 204, 2
2:2 223H
2:3 218, 6
5:7 205, 3
6:3 211A, 2
7:9 212, 1; 229G, 4
11:2-3 229M, 2
26:10 LXX 214, 9
26:18 210, 7
40:8 187, 3
49:6 199, 1
53:1 212, 1
53:5 229D, 1
53:7 229C, 1; 229N, 1; 229P, 4

Volume III/6
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>53:8</td>
<td>184, 3, 188, 2; 195, 1; 196, 1; 215, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:3-5</td>
<td>205, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:5</td>
<td>206, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>217, 5, 229S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>185, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>203, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:16</td>
<td>229B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31</td>
<td>196A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td>196A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:33</td>
<td>212, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:23</td>
<td>223, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5 LXX</td>
<td>223D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>200, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>223D, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>228B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New Testament</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>225, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>187, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>199, 2; 201, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2.6</td>
<td>204A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>201, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>200, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-4:2</td>
<td>210, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>194, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>214, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>218, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>226, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>229B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>208, 2; 211, 1, 2; 229, 3; 229E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>223E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>211, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>203, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11-12</td>
<td>201, 2; 218, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>198A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5-35</td>
<td>214, 6; 225, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34-38</td>
<td>215, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:36</td>
<td>198A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:49</td>
<td>216, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>195, 3; 193, 1; 194, 2; 199, 1; 203, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>203, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25-30</td>
<td>217, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td>190, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>223, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>229M, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37-38</td>
<td>205, 3; 206, 2; 208, 2; 210, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>206, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>Reference(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2-9</td>
<td>184, 229Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>229Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:43-48</td>
<td>229K, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:45-46</td>
<td>229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:60</td>
<td>223J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:62</td>
<td>216, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>184, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35-36</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29</td>
<td>203, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>218C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24.32</td>
<td>229O, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29</td>
<td>229C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:22</td>
<td>210, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>190, 2; 214, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:37-38</td>
<td>223A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>214, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:31-32</td>
<td>210, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>229O, 1; 229P, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61-62</td>
<td>229O, 1; 229P, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21</td>
<td>229N, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>218, 11; 229E, 1, 2; 229G, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:38</td>
<td>191, 2; 229J, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:40-42</td>
<td>229J, 1, 2, 5; 229K, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:42-45</td>
<td>229J, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:44-46</td>
<td>229J, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:45-46</td>
<td>229J, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46-47</td>
<td>229J, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>229O, 4; 229J, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:49</td>
<td>229J, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>188, 2; 194, 2; 196, 1; 3, 212, 1, 214, 5; 217, 5; 218C, 1; 223A, 1, 2, 225, 1; 226, 229; 1; 229G, 6; 229P, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>229E, 4; 229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>225, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>187, 3; 215, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>187, 1, 2; 190, 2; 196A, 1, 212, 1; 223A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>188, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>216, 4; 229R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>218, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>210, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>185, 2; 186, 1; 188, 2; 194, 2; 195, 3; 213, 3; 218C, 1; 229, 1; 229E, 4; 229G, 6; 229T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14.1</td>
<td>186, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>185, 1; 195, 3; 213, 3; 214, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>229N, 1; 229P, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>214, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18-21</td>
<td>217, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>2200, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>218, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>215, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>185, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:30</td>
<td>194, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22</td>
<td>199, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>215, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>229E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>217, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>214, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>223C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51-53</td>
<td>228B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>223A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td>193, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:57-58</td>
<td>225, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:58</td>
<td>187, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>187, 4; 194, 3; 212, 1; 229G, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>218, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>223E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td>185, 2; 190, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>194, 3; 229G, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>194, 3; 229G, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>194, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>213, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>215, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>214, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:26</td>
<td>16:8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:28</td>
<td>192, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:30</td>
<td>214, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:14</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:20</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>210, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td>217, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:3</td>
<td>217, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>218, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:19</td>
<td>201, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:19.22</td>
<td>218, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:20</td>
<td>218, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:23-24</td>
<td>218, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>218, 12; 223F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:2</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:8-9</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>229L, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>229K, 1, 2; 229L, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:6</td>
<td>229M, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>229M, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15</td>
<td>229O, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:16</td>
<td>229O, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15-17</td>
<td>229N, 1; 229P, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17.15</td>
<td>229O, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>214, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37-38</td>
<td>229E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>Reference 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37.41</td>
<td>229I, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:41</td>
<td>229G, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>218A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:47-48</td>
<td>217, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:56</td>
<td>218, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>229H, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td>229K, 1; 229N, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:31</td>
<td>229I, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>186, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>198A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>197, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>197, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19-20</td>
<td>197, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-22</td>
<td>197, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>197, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>229F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10.9</td>
<td>229F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>229F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1-2</td>
<td>185, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>193, 2; 212, 1; 218, 9; 229M, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6.10</td>
<td>215, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>215, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>218A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>229M, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>210, 3; 228A; 229A, 1; 229E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>217, 6; 220, 1; 223C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9.11</td>
<td>217, 6; 220, 1; 223C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>217, 6; 220, 1; 223C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>216, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>210, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:11.12</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>193, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:18.22-25</td>
<td>193, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>193, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>184, 2; 185, 1; 228B, 2; 229H, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>215, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29-31</td>
<td>215, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>215, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>215, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:3</td>
<td>185, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9-10</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:1</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13-14</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>214, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2-3</td>
<td>229M, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-6</td>
<td>229M, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III/6

Sermons 184-229Z
### Sermons 184-229Z

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>229D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>223, 1; 223D, 2; 223I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>186, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>194, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>221, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>219, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>214, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14-16</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>192, 3; 194, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>188, 4; 191, 3; 195, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>213, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:27</td>
<td>219, 1; 221, 2; 223B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>197, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>197, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>215, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>204, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>194, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>186, 3; 216, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>197, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>216, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>193, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>205, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>218, 9; 222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>205, 1; 215, 5; 218B, 2; 218C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>212, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>212, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>185, 3; 193, 2; 199, 1; 200, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>204, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>199, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16-18</td>
<td>204, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17-14-16.20</td>
<td>202, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19-21</td>
<td>200, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>215, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>216, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>212, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20-21</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:22-25</td>
<td>218A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>212, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>210, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26-27</td>
<td>208, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>204, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>211, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7-8</td>
<td>198, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>195, 3; 216, 4; 219, 1; 222, 1; 223, 1; 225, 4; 226, 229B, 229R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>185, 1; 223J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18-19</td>
<td>225, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>228B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>216, 11; 219, 1; 222, 1; 223E, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>196, 1; 212, 1; 214, 5; 229G, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>186, 3; 187, 4; 196A, 1; 213, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>192, 3; 196, 1; 212, 1; 214, 6; 229G, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>186, 3; 207, 2; 223H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>223F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>215, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>216, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>218B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16-17</td>
<td>212, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>197, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>229D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>229D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>228B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>216, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>211, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>223J</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Thessalonians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>229B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-5</td>
<td>229B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5-8</td>
<td>223K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>229B, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Thessalonians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>229F, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>210, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>204, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>215, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>214, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>204, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>229V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>216, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>215, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11-12</td>
<td>206, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>214, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>216, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:25</td>
<td>229O, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>229U</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Titus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>208, 1; 209, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volume III/6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>213, 9; 229E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>228B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>229G, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>228B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6</td>
<td>215, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>223E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>185, 2; 222, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>218C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>204, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>198A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>223B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>218C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>210, 5; 222, 1; 223F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>210, 6; 223D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>211, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>213, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>213, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>211, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>229O, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>219, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>211, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>194, 3; 210, 7; 216, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>229N, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>217, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>223 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>212, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>229M, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A
abstinence: restraining our lusts, 207:2
Adam and Eve:  
    devil’s seduction, 224:2
    formation of Church and, 218:14
    Incarnation (humility) compared with, 188:3
    Mary; earth, 189:2
    woman who sold us death, 184:2
adultery: devil’s whispers, 224:2
alms:  
    enclose in heart of a poor man, 209:2
    give to the poor, 198:3
    giving and forgiving, 206:2
    good works; forgiveness, 210:12
    increased during Lent, 208:2
    kindly, 207:3
    overcoming temptations, 207:1
    placating God, 210:9
    wing of prayer, 205:3
    word meaning “mercy,” 207:1
    works of necessity, 211A:2
angel(s):  
    ascension of Christ, 214:9
    authority of the scriptures, 229R
    Christ and, 213:1
    Epiphany, 202:2; 203:1
    equality with, 213:10
    eternal day, 187:1
    fallen; humans to replace, 229H:2
    humans; equality, 229G:3
    Jacob wrestling with, 229F:2
    life from Word of God, 196:3
    praise Christ, 194:2
    sleepless, 221:3; 223J
    worship flesh of Christ, 225:2
    see also Annunciation
anger:  
    hatred and, 211:1
    stored in the heart, 208:2
animals: human soul and, 229V
animosities, 209:1; 210:12
Anna (widow; prophetess), 196:2
Annunciation:  
    born of the Holy Spirit; the creed, 215:4
    Holy Spirit named by angel, 225:2
    see also virgin birth
apostles:  
    died in the flesh, not in soul, 229G:6
    disbelief in resurrection, 229F:1
    Epiphany; the heavens, 204A
    head and body of Christ, 229I:2
    head seen but not the Church, 229J:5
    Jews, 229F:2
    mountains of God, 223H
    number believing in miracles of, 229G:5
    shepherds, 229N:3
    speaking in tongues, 229E:2
Arians:  
    converts, 229O:4
    deny Son of God, 229G:2
    see also catechumens
    see also baptism (including the “newly baptized”):  
        analogy: making bread, 227
        born again, 228:1; 228D:1
        buried with Christ, 229A:1
        called “infants,” 229A:1
        darkness to light, 223:1
        dying and buried with Christ, 229A
        Easter distinguished from, 210:2
        eve of John the Baptist’s day, 196:4
        fasting; eve of Easter, 210:2
        first “askers,” now “infants,” 228:1
        forgiveness of all sins, 229E:2
        John’s and Christ’s, 210:3
        put off old man, put on new, 216:2
        rejecting the old life, 215:1
        repetition of the symbol, 213:11
        sacrament of Christ’s resurrection, 210:3
        signed with sign of Christ, 213:9
        sins of past destroyed by, 223E:2
        stay close to good people, 223:1; 228
        warnings against evil, 224:1-3
        see also catechumens
beatific vision: body and soul united, 212:1
Bede, Saint, 197, 229A
belief:  
    Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
    style of life; salvation, 198:2
believers:  
    one soul and one heart (Acts 4:32), 229G:5
    see also faith
Bethlehem, 200:3; 200:2; 201:2; 202:1
bible, see gospel; Old Testament; scripture(s)
bishops: listening to, 196:4

Volume III/6
blessedness: future life, 211A:2
boastfulness: suffering for, 229J:3
body:
  awaiting redemption of, 198A:2
  members of Christ, 217:4
  outer self, 218A:3
  quickened by spirit (soul), 193:1
  spirit inhabits, 223A:4
  temple of the Holy Spirit, 214:10; 217:4
body of Christ:
  Donatist heresy, 218B:2
  God’s temple, 217:4
  love of the head for, 197:5
  one body, 229A:1
  unity, the harmony of charity, 229A:2
  see also Church
bread:
  making, 229:1; 229A:2
  sacraments; the infantes, 227
  sign of unity, 229:2

C
Caesar: taxes for, 229W
Calvary (the word), 218:3
Canaanite woman: Gentile; humility, 203:2
catechumens:
  analogy of threshing-floor, 229:1
  from humiliation to communion, 229:2
  love what you will be, 216:8
  parents; rebirth, 216:8
  people being created; praise God, 216:7
  sermon to the competentes, 216:1-11
  symbol imparted to, 212:2
  Catholic Church: creed, 213:8; 215:9
  Catholics: called orthodox, 229G:4
  celibacy: following Christ, 184:2
  Cena pura, 221:4
centurion: Gentile; unworthy, 203:2
charity:
  Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
  leaven of, 223B:5
  living good lives, 209:1
  people are nothing without love, 229U
  power of godliness, 229U; 229V
  self-restraint from pleasures, 208:2
  see also love
chastity:
  marriage and, 224:3
  married couples, 192:2
  married, widowed, virginal, 196:2
children of God:
  catechumens, 216:8
  made by Son of God, 194:3
  power to be, 192:1
Christian life:
  bad days, the world, 217:6
  be the Lord’s beasts, 204A
  being the Lord’s donkey, 189:4
  Christ and the Church, 228B:4
  Christ growing in your hearts, 196A:2
  Christ must grow; I diminish, 194:1
  Christians anointed (confirmation), 198A:1
  conceiving/giving birth to Christ, 191:4
  day and night, 229B:1
  dead to sin; live in justice, 229A
  enduring the present, 211A:1
  give birth to Christ, in works, 192:2
  growing up with Christ, 196:3
  Lenten fast and, 205:1
  let us bear him in our hearts, 189:3
  lift up the heart, 229:3
  New Year’s Day, 196:4
  newly baptized persons, 215:1
  paradoxes, 204A
  parallels with life of Christ, 229D:1
  people of good will, 193:1
  pursuing a new way home (Magi), 202:4
  reform to God’s pattern, 216:4
  stages; permanent renewal, 216:8
  vineyard workers (parable), 229E:4
  warfare, 216:2
Christianity:
  distinction: belief in future life, 215:6
  fulfilled what old law foretold, 229C:2
  resurrection, the distinctive mark of, 229H:1; 229H:3
Christmas:
  birthday of Christ: rejoice, 184:2
  Christmas Day sermons, 184-196
  day consecrated by eternal Day, 188:2
  day contains mystery of Christ’s light, 190:1
  glory to God ..., 193:1
  shortness of the calendar day, 192:3
  see also Incarnation; Jesus Christ: nativity
Church:
  analogy, the creation, 229V
  belief; the creed, 213:8
  body of Christ, 213:8; 223G:1
  Catholic among heresies, 229O:3
  Christ found a whore, made a virgin, 213:8
  Christ the foundation of, 215:1
  cornerstone, 204:3
  creed, 214:11; 215:9
  disciples saw head, believed about body, 229J:5
  disciples’ belief in, 229I:2
  dry land, 229S
  firmament, meaning authority, 229R
  foretold in the scriptures, 229J:5
  forgiveness of sin, 213:9
  formation; Adam and Eve, 218:14
  Gentiles; celebrating Epiphany, 204:2
  great sacrament: Christ and Church, 228B:4
  head and body; disciples and us, 229I:2
Jesus, the bridegroom, 229J:5
keeping vigil, 223D:2
keys of the kingdom, 229N:2
one body, one shepherd, 229N:3
Peter, do you love me? 229N:2
right side of fishing boat, 229M:1
rock of Peter’s confession of faith, 229P:1
royal priesthood, 198A:1
Saul, why persecute me? 229K:1; 229N:3
spreading through the world, 229I:4
threshing-floor, 223:2
union, 210:8
virgin and mother, 188:4; 191:3; 192:2; 195:2; 213:8
your mother the light, 222
see also body of Christ
circumcision:
Christian symbolism, 229D:2
humility of Jesus, 196A:1
received by Christ, 210:3
spiritual justification, 196A:1
two boats (first catch of fish), 229M:1
commandments: whoever loves me..., 194:4
communion:
blood from pierced side of Christ, 228B:2
bread which hung on the cross, 228B:2
heretics, testimony against themselves, 229:2
invitation to receive, 223F:3
parable of vineyard workers applied, 229E:4
receive worthily, 228B:3-5
receiving unworthily, 227; 228B:4
we are changed into body of Christ, 228B:3
see also eucharist,
crucifixion: animosities, 209:1
concubine, 224:3
crime: God’s dwelling place, 223I
conversion:
empty poisons from the heart, 216:6
humility, hidden sins, 216:10
pursuit by God, 216:11
strip the old self, put on the new, 218A:3
turned into members of Christ, 216:5
creatures: impure, 208:1
cred:
better in Church; forgiveness of sin, 213:8; 214:11; 215:9
believe in Jesus Christ, 213:3; 215:3
believe in Jesus crucified and buried, 214:7
believe in the Holy Spirit, 213:7; 214:10
born of the Holy Spirit, 214:6; 215:3,4
Christ will come to judge, 213:6; 214:9
his crucified, died and was buried, 213:4; 215:5
giving back of the, 215:1-9
God the Father almighty, 213:2; 215:2
he ascended into heaven, 213:5; 214:8; 215:7
repetition by those to be baptised, 213:11
resurrection of the body, 213:10; 214:12
rose again on the third day, 213:5; 214:8; 215:6
symbol not to be written down, 212:2
written on people’s hearts, 212:2
cross:
constant and holy dedication to, 218B:2
glory in, 205:1
lesson for patience, 218C:4
pride in cross of Christ, 218C:2
shame, 215:5
take up, control your mortality, 218:2
Cyprian: orator, 197:2

dead:
Damascus, 202:2
darkness:
creation, 226
devil and, 222
hate, 211:2
left by the newly baptized, 223:1
let there be light, 229T
newly baptized, now light, 225:4
thief in the night, 229B:1
throw away works of, 221:4
David, 207:2
day:
day which the Lord has made, 226
Easter, made by the Lord, 229B:1
reckoning time, 221:4
deacons: seven ordained, 229I:4
death:
resurrection of Christ and, 223I

Volume III/6
eternal life:
attaining: have a good temporal life, 229H:3
good days, one day, 217:6
joy; the Holy Spirit, 210:7
resurrection and, 229H:3
vigil; tirelessly awake, 223B:2
see also heaven
easter vigil:
annual solemnity, 219; 223B:2; 223C:1; 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual celebration, 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual passover, 220
daily celebration of the Pasch, 229D:2
day which the Lord has made, 229B:1-2
days after signify age to come, 211A:1
duty: pay Caesar, pay God, 229W
dry land: soul thirsting for God, 229S; 229U; 229V
eternity: boredom, 229B:2
eternity: incomprehensible, 215:2
seeing, 229H:2
eternity: knowledge of the newly baptized, 228B:1
easter vigil:
annual solemnity, 223C; 223D:1; 223G:1
eternity:
egodless also keep this vigil, 219
light in our hearts, 221:2
mother of all holy vigils, 219
night illuminated by, 221:1
two kinds of sleep, 223K
vigil; tirelessly awake, 223B:2
see also heaven
Epiphany:
Jesus worshiped by the Gentiles, 199:1; 204:2
Jewish shepherds; Gentile Magi, 199:3; 201:1; 203:1; 204:1
king of the Jews, 201:2
manifestation to the Gentiles, 200:1; 201:1,2; 204:1
seven sermons, 199-204A
star in the East, 199:2,3; 200:1
whole world summoned to faith, 203:3
Word spoken from a star, 202:2
Esau, 207:2; 208:1
easter vigil:
annual solemnity, 219; 223B:2; 223C:1; 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual celebration, 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual passover, 220
daily celebration of the Pasch, 229D:2
day which the Lord has made, 229B:1-2
days after signify age to come, 211A:1
duty: pay Caesar, pay God, 229W
dry land: soul thirsting for God, 229S; 229U; 229V
eternity: boredom, 229B:2
godless also keep this vigil, 219
light in our hearts, 221:2
mother of all holy vigils, 219
mustard seed; mountains of God, 223H
night illuminated by, 221:1
passover, 221:1
re-enacting the resurrection, 220
reason for, 221:4
reminder of death and resurrection, 223B:1
renewal of memory, 223F:1
two kinds of sleep, 223K
watch and pray, 219; 223F:3; 223I; 223J
watch while Christ slept in tomb, 223B:2
eating: self-indulgence, 205:2; 209:3; 210:11
Egypt: idols, 197:1
Elijah: fasting, 205:1; 210:9
Elisha: dead child restored to life, 196A:2
Elizabeth:
descendant from Aaron, 198A:1
infant leapt in her womb, 196:2
enemies: praying for, 211:6
Epiphany:
Jesus worshiped by the Gentiles, 199:1; 204:2
Jewish shepherds; Gentile Magi, 199:3; 201:1; 203:1; 204:1
king of the Jews, 201:2
manifestation to the Gentiles, 200:1; 201:1,2; 204:1
seven sermons, 199-204A
star in the East, 199:2,3; 200:1
whole world summoned to faith, 203:3
Word spoken from a star, 202:2
Esau, 207:2; 208:1
easter vigil:
annual solemnity, 219; 223B:2; 223C:1; 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual celebration, 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual passover, 220
daily celebration of the Pasch, 229D:2
day which the Lord has made, 229B:1-2
days after signify age to come, 211A:1
duty: pay Caesar, pay God, 229W
dry land: soul thirsting for God, 229S; 229U; 229V
eternity: boredom, 229B:2
godless also keep this vigil, 219
light in our hearts, 221:2
mother of all holy vigils, 219
mustard seed; mountains of God, 223H
night illuminated by, 221:1
passover, 221:1
re-enacting the resurrection, 220
reason for, 221:4
reminder of death and resurrection, 223B:1
renewal of memory, 223F:1
two kinds of sleep, 223K
watch and pray, 219; 223F:3; 223I; 223J
watch while Christ slept in tomb, 223B:2
eating: self-indulgence, 205:2; 209:3; 210:11
Egypt: idols, 197:1
Elijah: fasting, 205:1; 210:9
Elisha: dead child restored to life, 196A:2
Elizabeth:
descendant from Aaron, 198A:1
infant leapt in her womb, 196:2
enemies: praying for, 211:6
Epiphany:
Jesus worshiped by the Gentiles, 199:1; 204:2
Jewish shepherds; Gentile Magi, 199:3; 201:1; 203:1; 204:1
king of the Jews, 201:2
manifestation to the Gentiles, 200:1; 201:1,2; 204:1
seven sermons, 199-204A
star in the East, 199:2,3; 200:1
whole world summoned to faith, 203:3
Word spoken from a star, 202:2
Esau, 207:2; 208:1
easter vigil:
annual solemnity, 219; 223B:2; 223C:1; 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual celebration, 223D:2; 223E:1; 229D:1
annual passover, 220
daily celebration of the Pasch, 229D:2
day which the Lord has made, 229B:1-2
days after signify age to come, 211A:1
duty: pay Caesar, pay God, 229W
real presence, 227 (and note 9); 229: 1
sacrament because of God’s word, 229: 3
sermon owed to “infants,” 228: 3
this is my body; this is my blood, 228B: 3
unity: one loaf, one body, 229A: 1
you are what you receive, 227
see also communion
Eunomians: converts, 229O: 4
Eve, see Adam and Eve
evil, see good and evil
example: bad and good, 223: 1; 228
exorcism, 218B: 2
eye: beam (speck) in, 211: 1

Faith:
beliefs contained in the creed, 212: 1
believe in order to understand, 212: 1; 214: 10; 229G: 4
blessed, if we believe in Christ, 229F: 3
day and night, 229T
defined for us, 229H: 1, 3
distinguishing, 229J: 4
first believe, then call on name of the Lord, 213: 1
gift from God, 229F: 1
head and body of Christ/Church, 229E: 2
just person lives by, 189: 2
love and, 212: 2
praiseworthy (the empty tomb), 229L: 1
reason and, 190: 2
risen again, by faith, 196A: 2
some believe; not all have faith, 229F: 1
stop touching me; believe at higher level, 229L: 2
touching Christ with the heart, 229L: 2
touching Jesus, 229K: 1, 2
watch and pray, 233E: 1
way to eternal bliss, 204A
what Mary believed came about, 215: 4
see also creed
Fall of man:
darkness; sleep, 223K
devil; incarnation, 229H: 2
weaker used to bring down the stronger, 190: 2
Fasting:
condemning God’s creatures as impure, 208: 1
expensive kinds of food, 208: 1
frugality and, 207: 2
humbling of the soul, 210: 4
Lenten, 205: 1, 3
overcoming temptations, 207: 1
perpetual, 207: 3
placating God, 210: 9
reason for, 210: 5

Ritual impurities, 209: 3
Temptation and, 210: 3
Wing of loving kindness, 206: 2
Wing of prayer, 206: 3
Worthless without kindness/mercy, 207: 1
Festivals: false feast day, 198: 1
Fever, 229E: 3
Fifty (number), 210: 8
Firmament: allegorical meaning of, 229R; 229U; 229V
Fish: symbol; sacraments, 229U
Fishermen:
right side of boat, 229M: 1, 3
two catches (pre/post-resurrection), 229M: 1-3
Flesh:
curbing pleasures of, 205: 1
devil’s whispers, 224: 2
Lusting against the spirit, 193: 2
Flos, 197: 229A
Forgiveness: as almsgiving, 206: 2
Christ crucified, 208: 2
Forgive us our debts, 211: 1, 6
good works; alms, 210: 12
Pact with God (as we forgive), 211: 1-6
readiness to forgive, 211: 5
someone you have not harmed, 211: 5
Wing of prayer, 205: 3
Forgiveness of sin:
baptism, 229E: 2
blood of the new covenant, 228B: 3
Calvary, 218: 3
creed, 213: 9; 214: 11
Grace; faith, 212: 1
Light made, 226
Lord’s Prayer, 229: 3; 229E: 3
Water from the side of Christ, 228B: 2
Fornication:
devil’s whispers, 224: 2
Harlot, 216: 5
Forty (number), 205: 1; 210: 8
Four (number), 203: 3; 210: 8
Future life:
Expectation of resurrection, 223B: 2
Hope; forgiveness of sin, 213: 9

G
Generosity: pleasure in, 209: 3
Genesis, creation in, see Creation
Gentiles:
gathered from among..., 198: 2
grafting the wild olive, 201: 2; 218: 7
Jewish hostility to, 204: 2
Life style, 198: 2-3
Magi representing, 199: 3; 201: 2; 202: 1;
204: 1
Mercy of God towards, 218A: 2

Volume III/6
ungodliness, 197:1
see also Magi
glory: meeting Christ in the clouds, 193:1
God:
above my soul, 223A:4
appearances (Old Testament), 223A:2
Father almighty, 213:2; 214:2,3,4; 215:2
Father is Christ’s God, 229L:2
Father, the fieldworker, 213:10
He who is, 229T
human inadequacy to think about, 229G:2
maker of body and spirit, 223A:4
name: he who is, 223A:5
name: I am who am, 223A:5; 229T
nothing better than, 223A:2
proof of existence of, 197:1 (and note 4)
right hand of the Father, 214:8
shown in his works, 223A:4
unchangeable good, 223A:3
willingly, whatever he is, 214:4
wrath, 197:1
see also creation; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ
godliness: form; power, 229U; 229V
gods, see idols
good and evil:
example, 223:1; 228
God makes good use of the bad, 214:3
husks and grains, 223:2
pride as source of evil, 197:1
unforgiving, 210:12
wakfulness of evil, 223J
works of iniquity, 211A:2
good example:
exhortation to the newly baptized, 228:1,2
good life:
do what you can do, 229H:3
reward for, 229H:3
good luck, 198:2,3
good news: spreading, 202:4
good works:
alms and forgiveness, 210:12
Christ life, 229D:1
do good in a bad place, 217:5
Lenen, 206:1
mercy, light, 229S
works of necessity, 211A:2
see also charity; mercy
goodness: be what others should imitate, 228:2
gospel: lights in the firmament, 229T
grace:
forgiveness of sins, 212:1
Jesus joined to the eternal Word, 185:3
(and note 5)
members of Christ, Son of God, 224:1
thousands believe with one heart, 229G:5
grain: threshing-floor, 223:2
gratitude: thanks: we have our hearts above, 229:3
greed:
food, 208:1
self-indulgence, 210:11
Greek language, 218:6
Greeks: term for nationalities, 229F:2
H
hair: not one will perish, 214:12
hate:
anger growing into, 211:1
darkness, 211:2
heart:
aim in prayer, 207:3
circumcised in, 196A:1
lift up the heart, 227:1; 229:3; 229A:3
pure of heart shall see God, 188:1
sleep of, 223K
spiritual power in prayer, 210:9
symbol (creed) written on, 212:2
heaven:
glorified body in, 213:10
happiness, 229N:3
holy, holy, holy, 211A:2
Jesus ascended to, 229K:2
numbers (Rev. 7:9), 229M:2-3
offered for sale to you, 216:3
peace in, 229M:1
see also eternal life
heavens (stars):
apostles as, 204A
birth and death in, 229H:2
declare glory of God; Magi’s star, 200:1; 202:4
wicked spirits lurking in, 222
Hebrew language, 218:6
heedlessness: animosities, 209:1
heretics:
deny Christ; attack the Church, 218B:2
grafted from wild olive (Donatists), 200:4
lack power of sacraments, 229U
only the Father is true God, 217:3
receiving communion, 229:2
want “sheep” for themselves, 229O:3
Herod:
fearful, 200:2
persecution of infants, 199:2; 202:2
high priest, 198A:2,3; 228B:2
holy of holies, 198A:2
Holy Spirit:
approach and be enlightened, 225:4
both drink and light, 225:4
christrial: anointing, 227
creed, 212:2; 213:7
getting drunk on, 225:4
hope and, 210:7
Incarnation and, 225:2
knows the things that are God’s, 217:2

Sermons 184-229Z
manifestation given to each, 229T
number seven (gifts), 229M:2-3
progression; creed, 214:10; 215:8
promise of, and justice, 192:3
Son of God born of, 214:6; 215:3
Spirit of Father and Son, 212:1
thousands believe (Acts 2:41), 229G:5
true God, 217:2

hope:
Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
joy; eternal happiness, 210:7
life in heaven, 192:1
patience, 215:1
place in truth, not in Paul, 197:4
redemption of our bodies, 198A:2
resurrection of Christ and, 229H:3
resurrection of the body, 212:1
shelter of God’s wings, 213:1
style of life; salvation, 198:2
watch and pray, 223E:1

hospitality: good works, 217:5

human condition:
birth and death, 229H:2
constant danger of sin, 211:1
imitate the good; put up with the bad, 223:2
life of Christ and, 229H:1
trial of life on earth, 210:5
see also body

humility:
Christ conforming himself to the dead, 196A:2
Christ teaches by word and example, 218C:4
Christ’s circumcision, 196A:1
comparison: Adam/Eve and the Incarnation, 188:3
death on a cross, 223H
dogs into human beings, 218A:2
Gentiles: Epiphany, 203:2
life in this world, 206:1
liturgical celebration; Lent, 206:1
pleasure in being generous, 209:3
reward of, 216:10
shown in birth of Son of God, 184:1
watch and pray, 223I

idols:

humans as, 229G:3
images of perishable man, 197:1
pagan gods, 223A:4
pagan temples, 217:4
Samaria; the Magi, 202:2
worship; God’s truth changed to lie, 197:1
worship of elements, 197:6

ignorance: circumcision not made with hands, 229D:2
image: Caesar and God, 229W
imitation:
choose a good life, 228:2
good people of God, 224:1; 228
immortality:
Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, 223A:5
to eternally praising God, 211A:2
Incarnation:
born of the Holy Spirit; the creed, 215:4
born so that weakness might become strong, 190:4
both sexes honored by the Lord, 190:2
divine pity, 229H:1
divine/human natures coupled in womb, 195:3
divinization of humanity, 192:1
flesh assumed; not changed into flesh, 184:1
flesh attached to the Word, 186:1
form of a servant, 184:3; 212:1; 229G:3
form of God remains hidden, 187:4
fruit of spiritual marriage, 184:2
greatness of, 225:2
invisible one made visible, 190:2
made death possible for the Word, 229G:6
made from his mother (whom he made), 186:1
mercy, 207:1
paradoxes, 192:1
rejoice in this grace, 185:3
truth sprung from the earth, 185:1; 189:2
with/without father/mother, 184:3
Word did not cease to be God, 187:3,4
Word of God become man, 186:2
Word of God could die because of, 218C:1
see also Jesus Christ: nativity

individuality: each thing has its own region, 229H:2
infancy: state of growth, 229H:1
intelligence: spoken words (language) and, 187:3
Israel: blessed in few, limping in many, 229F:3

J

Jacob:
blessing Judah, 223C
both blessed and lame, 229F:3
called Israel, 229F:2
Christ’s death and, 218:12
wrestling with angel, 229F:2

Jesus Christ:
ascension:
ascending does not mean withdrawal, 229K:2
creed, 214:8; 215:7
lift up your hearts, 227
seated at God’s right hand, 213:5

Volume III/6
Volume III/6

Sermons 184-229Z

stop touching me..., 229K:1-2
wish: “where I am, my people may be,” 217:5,6
born king of the Jews, 201:1,2
both sheep and goat, 228B:2
bride, the Church, 220J:5
charity; the undivided garment, 218B:2
circumcision; humility, 196A:1; 210:3
commanded to love Christ, 229N:1
cornerstone, 199:1; 200:4; 201:1; 204:2,3
crucified, he conquered the devil, 229N:1
cure of our inner eyes, 195:3
death, see passion and death below
denying, means denying life, 229H:3
divinity announced by shepherds/magi, 185:1
divinity concealed, 184:3
Emmanuel (name), 187:4
eternal Day; temporal day, 185:2
eternal one born in time, 195:3
form of a servant, 186:2
greatness and humility of Christ, 187:1
harmony with the resurrection, 223D:2
human word; divine Word, 187:2
humility of God, 184:1
Jesus Christ, see Jesus
king and priest, 198A:1
king compared with temporal kings, 200:2
king of the ages, 201:1
king of the Jews, 218A:2
king compared with temporal kings, 200:2
law and prophets fulfilled in, 229J:4
Lent, suffering again for us, 206:1
lessons from his lowness/highness, 206:1
life; infancy onward, 229H:1
light of the world, 226
light out of darkness, 223D:2
life; infancy onward, 229H:1
light of the world, 226
light out of darkness, 223D:2
Manichees, 229J:1,2
miracles; star in the East, 199:3
nativity; ashamed of being the Lord’s donkey, 189:4
born eternal, 189:4
born on day which he created, 186:3
born that we might be reborn, 189:3
bridegroom come from chamber, 192:3;
195:3
Christ chose his mother; his birthday, 190:1
Christmas Day sermons, 184-196
creed, 213:3
day from day, 189:1
day of time; eternal day, 190:3
divinity announced by shepherds/magi, 185:1
divinity concealed, 184:3
Emmanuel (name), 187:4
eternal Day; temporal day, 185:2
eternal one born in time, 195:3
form of a servant, 186:2
greatness and humility of Christ, 187:1
harmony with the resurrection, 223D:2
human word; divine Word, 187:2
humility of God, 184:1
Jesus Christ, see Jesus
king and priest, 198A:1
king compared with temporal kings, 200:2
king of the ages, 201:1
king of the Jews, 218A:2
king compared with temporal kings, 200:2
law and prophets fulfilled in, 229J:4
Lent, suffering again for us, 206:1
lessons from his lowness/highness, 206:1
life; infancy onward, 229H:1
light of the world, 226
light out of darkness, 223D:2
life; infancy onward, 229H:1
light of the world, 226
light out of darkness, 223D:2
Manichees, 229J:1,2
miracles; star in the East, 199:3
nativity; ashamed of being the Lord’s donkey, 189:4
born eternal, 189:4
born on day which he created, 186:3
born that we might be reborn, 189:3
bridegroom come from chamber, 192:3;
195:3
Christ chose his mother; his birthday, 190:1
Passover; Christ the lamb, slain, 229C:1
Paul relies on humility of Christ, 218C:2
pierced with lance; cancelled our sins,
228B:2
proclaim Christ crucified, 218C:2
reliving in memory, 218B:1
suffering for sinners, 218C:2
suffering foretold, 229J:4
symbolism of undivided garment, 218B:2
tunic without seam, 218:9
two thieves crucified with Jesus, 218:4,13
vinegar on a sponge, 218:11
see also cross
Philip: show us the Father... 229G:2
praised by angels and humans, 194:2
prays as man, 217:1
prefigured; high priest, 198A:2,3
prefigured in Passover lamb, 229C:1-2
price paid for our redemption, 198:2
privilege: with him in his lifetime, 210:4
prophecies about place of birth, 200:3
resurrection:
anticipation of our own, 223D:2
baptism and newness of life, 229A
belief in; Easter sermon, 229F:1-3
circumcised in the heart by, 196A:1
Christ, from region of death to region of
life, 229E:1
denied by pagan and Jew, 215:6
distinctive mark of Christian faith, 229H:1; 229H:3
fear of death removed by, 229G:1
gospel readings, 229L:1
John entered tomb, and believed, 229L:1
many of his crucifiers came to believe,
229F:1
passion’s fruit lost without, 229J:2
sacrament, model of new life, 229E:3
woman at the empty tomb, 229L:1
joy fifty days after, 210:8
see also Easter; Easter Vigil
resurrection: post-resurrection appearances:
apostles; 229J:4
bodily or spiritual, 229H:1
disciples after the resurrection, 229H:2
Jews as first witnesses, 229F:3
Peter, do you love me? 229N:1-2; 229O:1
spirit only? 229J:2
stop touching me... 229K:1-2
thought to be spirit, not body, 191:2
touch/eating as proofs, 229J:1,3
touch (man, before the ascension), 229L:2
touch not (woman, until ascended), 229L:2
two catches of fish explained, 229M:1-3
why are you troubled? 229J:2
secret places of the heavens, 198A:2
seed of David, 198A:1
Simeon; good news, 217:6
sinless, 229P:4
teachings of his passion/resurrection, 213:5
tempted with bread, 208:1
touched in faith better than in the flesh,
229K:1-2
treasures of wisdom and knowledge, 194:3
true flesh, 229J:1
true God, 217:1
truth and mercy, 218A:2
two births of, 184:3; 189:4; 190:2; 196:1
woman touching hem of his garment,
229L:2
Word, soul and flesh: a single whole, 214:7
works of mercy done for (in his life), 229Z
see also body of Christ; Christian life;
creed; Incarnation; Son of God; Word
of God
Jews:
believing and unbelieving, 229F:2
blindness; compared with the Magi, 200:3
circumcision by Christ, 196A:1
criminal responsibility for the crucifixion,
223C
crucifixion; conversion at Pentecost, 229I:3
descent from Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, 201:2
descent, 229J:1
denied for the crucifixion, by believing,
229E:2
directness of heart, 202:3
humility of Christ and, 196A:2
Jesus, king of the Jews, 218:5-7
kill Christ to remove his memory, 223B:1
losses, since Christ came, 201:2
mental blindness re Messiah, 204:3
Passover; dreaming, 229C:1
pride: not submitting to justice of God,
185:2; 189:2
prophecies not seen in Jesus, 229J:4
prophecies of the passion; unbelief, 218B:1
reaction to the resurrection, 229E:1
reward/punishment by God, 214:3
stubborn; tablets of stone, 229M:2
unbelievers, and the Magi, 199:2; 202:3
John, Saint, Apostle:
entered empty tomb, and believed, 229L:1
Mary entrusted to, 218:10
John the Baptist:
birth; time of year, 194:1
pagan festival on birthday, 196:4
Joseph (the name), 218:15
joy:  
Christian life, 229B:2
Christmas Day, 184:2
fifty days after the resurrection, 210:8
hope of eternal happiness, 210:7
represented by number fifty, 210:8
Judas, 214:3; 229:3
judgment day:
Christ will come to judge..., 213:6; 214:9;
223C

Volume III/6
Volume III/6

joy, 229B:2
threshing-floor, 223:2
unworthy reception of communion, 228B:4
Juno, 197:6
justice:
   conscience, 223I
   looked forth from heaven (the nativity), 185:2; 192:3
   pride of the Jews, 185:2; 189:2
justification:
   faith, 185:3
   spiritual circumcision, 196A:1
keys of the kingdom, 229N:2
kindness:
   fasting and, 207:1
kingdom of God:
   eternal, 229D:2
   see him, love him, praise him, 211A:2
   kingdom of heaven, see heaven
kings:
   filial fear of Christ, 200:2
kiss:
   sign of peace, 227; 229:3
knowledge:
   gift of the Spirit, 229T
   treasure hidden in Christ, 194:3
language:
   intelligence and spoken words, 187:3
   words in the mind, 225:3
Latin language, 218:6
law:
   knowledge of, 197:1
Lent:
   alertness in, 208:1
   alms to be increased during, 208:2
   chastising the body, 208:4
   Christ suffering for us again, 206:1
   eight sermons, 205-211A
   fasting before baptism, 210:2
   fasting wrongly, 210:10
   forty days, 205:1
   humbling of our souls, 210:8
   humbling ourselves, 206:1
   meaning of, 210:1
   occasion for new enjoyments, 207:2
   penances other than fasting, 205:2
   self-indulgence, 210:11
   this life signified in, 205:1
   whole world celebrates, 209:1
   why we fast before Easter, 210:4
life:
   desire for, 229H:2
   stages of life, 216:8
   style; soul’s three sentiments, 198:2
   uncertainty, 229H:3
   years added to, subtracted from, 229H:2
light:
   allegorical meaning of, 229R; 229T; 229U; 229V
   armor of, 190:1
   Christ as, 223D:2
   Church as, 222
   creation; good, 223:1
   newly baptized, 225:4
   sins forgiven, 226
   we who were once in darkness, 195:3
   see also day; darkness
liturgy:
   Christ-events made present by, 220
   Lord’s Prayer:
      communion and, 229:3
      daily baptism, 213:9
      forgive us our debts, 241:2-3
      handing over of, 213:1 (and note 8)
love:
   believe; proclaim, 194:1
   each is questioned: do you love me? 229N:2
   faith and, 212:2
   God’s love of sinners, even to die for them, 215:5
   head for his body, 197:5
   keeping the commandments, 194:4
   loving the sheep means loving the shepherd, 229N:1
   new commandment; life in yourselves, 228B:3
   other gifts worthless without, 209:3
   Pentecost, 227
   Peter, do you love me? 229N:1; 229O:1; 229O:3; 229P:3
   reaching kingdom of heaven, 228:2
   see creation, and love God, 223A:1
   style of life; salvation, 198:2
   unity in body of Christ, 229A:2
   watch and pray, 223E:1
   see also charity
lover:
   weeping, 223A:4
lust:
   flesh against spirit, 193:2; 205:1
Maggi:
   Epiphany, seven sermons, 199-204A
   first Gentiles to know Christ, 203:1
   firstfruits of the Gentiles, 202:1,4; 203:3; 204:2, 204A
   gifts: gold, frankincense, myrrh, 202:2
   going back by a different way, 202:4
   Herod and, 200:2
   Jewish blindness and, 200:3
   Jewish unbelievers and, 199:2
   Pilate and, 201:2
   questioning the Jews, 201:2; 202:3
   worship the light, 223D:2
   see also Epiphany
magicians (Maggi), 200:4
Manichees, 229J:1,2

mankind:
divinization: purpose of the Incarnation, 192:1
image and likeness of God, 229V
microcosm: all God’s works contained in, 229V

marriage:
chastity in, 192:2; 210:9
virginity and, 188:4
married women, 196:2

martyrdom:
grilled fish as symbol, 229J:3

martyrs:
faith in the resurrection, 229H:3
suffered out of charity, 229J:3

Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Church and; the creed, 213:8
earth; Adam, 189:2
entrusted to John, 218:10
Jewess, 229F:2
mother of God, 214:6; 215:3
priestly/royal ancestry, 198A:1
star of the night, 223D:2
virgin mother, and the Church, 192:2
virginal chastity, 225:2
virginity, 188:4; 191:2,4; 195:2; 196:2
with child of the Holy Spirit, 225:2
see also Annunciation; Jesus Christ: nativity; virgin birth

Mary Magdalen:
resurrection; the empty tomb, 229L:1-2
stop touching me..., 229L:2

Mass:
consecration, 229A:1
explanation, preface onward, 229:3
prayer: lift up your hearts, 227
preface; the words explained, 229A:3
master and slave: asking pardon, 211:4
Melchizedek, 228B:1
mercy:
Christ’s mission, 207:1
fasting and, 207:1
good works: light, 229S
prayer for, 223A:6
will and ability to do good, 193:2
Messiah:
holy desire to see, 210:5
Jewish misunderstanding of time of coming, 199:2
prophecies; the Jews and Christ, 202:3
mind:
body inferior to, 223A:2
words/language in, 225:3
miracles:
Magi’s star, 199:3
number believing in apostles, 229G:5
moon: light, 229T

morality: Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
mortality: God: I am who am, 223A:5
mortification: chastising the body, 208:1

Moses:
burning bush, 229T
fasting, 205:1; 210:9
name of God, 223A:5
staff; law, 196A:2
mountains: apostles as, 223H
murder: whoever hates his brother, 211:2
mustard seed: fervor of humility, 223H
mystery: stretching effect, 225:3

N
nations: totality of, 218:6
nativity, see Jesus Christ: nativity
need:
give in order to receive, 206:2
works of necessity, 211A:2
neophytes: thousands converted (Acts 2:37), 229J:3
Neptune, 197:1
new covenant, 196A:2
New Year’s Day:
four sermons, 196A-198A
pagan celebrations, 196:4; 198:1
newly baptized, see baptism
Nicodemus (the name), 218:15
night:
children of light, 223K
spiritual gifts; light, 229T
ungodly living, 229B:1
nonbelievers, see unbelief
numbers:
four and twelve, 203:3
four, ten, forty, fifty, 210:8
kingdom of heaven (153, 17, 10, 7), 229M:2-3

O
Old Testament: desire to see Messiah’s coming, 210:4
original sin:
Ève and the nativity, 184:2
need for rebirth, 189:3

P
pagans:
Gentile practices, 198:2-3
good luck celebrations, 198:2,3
origin of rites, 197:1
see also idols
Parasceve, 221:4
pardon:
asking for, 211:4,6
friendly approach is way of asking, 211:4

Volume III/6
Pasch (the word), 229C:1
Paschal mystery:
  anniversary of Christ’s passion, 210:2
Passover:
  broken legs of thieves on cross, 218:13
  celebrated by Christ, 210:3
  Easter and, 221:1; 229C:1
  prefiguring Easter, 229C:1-2
patience: cross as lesson for, 218C:4
Patripassians, 229G:3
Paul, Saint:
  knows “sheep” belong to Christ, not himself, 229O:3
  refused to be worshipped, 197:3
  Saul, why persecute me? 229K:1; 229N:3
peace:
  fraternal concord, 211:1
  holy kiss, 227; 229:3
  infant Jesus, 199:1
  people of good will, 193:2
  unity as bond of, 228B:5
penance:
  Lenten works, 205:2
  see also Lent
Pentecost:
  charity, 227
  speaking with tongues, 229I:3
  works of Holy Spirit, 229I:3
people:
  imitate good people, 224:1
  make bad use of good nature, 214:3
  men as gods, 229G:3
  see also mankind
perfection: end we have in view, 223G:2
persecution:
  gospel reaching ends of the world, 229I:4
  Jerusalem; Stephen, 229H:4
person: thoughts, where one properly is, 217:2
Peter, Saint:
  baptism of tears, 229O:1; 229P:4
  Church founded on, 229P:1
  Church to be recognized in, 229P:1
  denials; presuming on his own strength, 229P:3
  do you love me? 229N:1-2; 229O:1; 229O:3
  do you love me more than these? 229O:2; 229P:2
  his apostolate has strengthened us, 210:6
  miracle at Pentecost, 229I:3
  passion of Christ and, 223E:1
  repent and be baptized, 229E:2
  three times you will deny me, 229O:1
  threefold denial, threefold confession, 229O:2; 229P:1
  wept bitterly, 229P:3
Philip: show us the Father..., 229G:2
  pity, divine, 229H:1
pleasure:
  curbing the flesh, 205:1
  going after lusts, 210:11
Lent: revising without reducing, 207:2
  preoccupation with, 229V
  self-restraint, 208:2
Pontius Pilate, 201:2; 214:7; 215:5; 218:7
poor: seeing God in the needy, 206:2
praise:
  angels/humans praise Christ, 194:2
  catechumens, a people being created, 216:7
  eternal life, 211A:2
  human words inadequate for, 188:1
prayer:
  as alms, 207:3; 209:2
  fasting as wing of, 206:3
  Lenten practice, 206:1
  lift up the heart, 229A:3
  Lord be with you, 229A:3
  made fitter by almsgiving and fasting, 207:3
  overcoming temptations, 207:1
  persistence, 223F
  placing God, 210:9
  pure heart; spiritual power, 210:9
  reason for, 210:5
  two wings: giving and forgiving, 205:3
preaching: nets of the word, 229M:1
predestination: saints, 229S
preface (of Mass), 229A:3
pride:
  beware; hidden sins, 216:10
  darkened minds, 197:1
  devil, 197:1
  evil deeds stem from, 197:1
  hard ground softened by grace, 229O:1
  Simon Magus, 197:3
  wish to be adored, 197:4
purity: all is pure, to the pure, 208:1
Q
quarrels:
  fasting from, 205:3
  forgiveness, 211:5:6
  heedless; animosities, 209:1
R
Red Sea, 213:9
redemption:
  God died for human beings, 218C:1
  innocent blood blots out sins, 229E:2
religion: bands of faith, 223G:1
repentance:
  gift: hard ground softened, 229O:1
  Peter’s example, 229P:4
reptiles of living souls, 229U
resurrection of the body:
  bodily redemption, 198A:2
creed, 213:10
distinguishes our life of faith, 215:6
hope, 212:1
judging the living and the dead, 223C
model of, 223D:2
risen again, by faith, 196A:2
wages of faith, 229E:4
we shall be God’s possession, 213:10
revenge: being avenged, 211:6
rock: drink from spiritual rock, 229P:1
S
Sabellians, 229G:3-5
sacraments:
  blood from side of Christ, 218:14
  Easter sermon, 227; 228B:1-5; 229:1-3
  four corners of the world, 218:8
  meaning of tunic without seam, 218:9
  power of, is charity, 229U
  received with devotion, 210:3
  sacramental character, 229V
  signs, 229:1
sacrifice: old covenant refers to new covenant, 228B:2
saints:
  Christ speaks in, 197:5
  predestined, 229S
salvation:
  believe and confess; the symbol, 214:1
  calling on name of the Lord, 213:1
  confession unto, 213:2
  consequences: if Christ had not been born, 185:1
  good news; day from day, 190:4
  hope for what we are to receive, 213:1
  joy in cause of, 218B:1
  Simeon; good news, 217:6
Samaria: idolatry, 202:2
scripture(s):
  authority of, 229R
  lights, firmament (allegorical meaning), 229S
  seat (usage of the term), 214:8
  self-control; living souls, 229V
  self-denial
  avarice and, 208:2
  deposit in treasury of heaven, 210:12
  self-indulgence;
  dead souls, 229V
  seeking new forms of, 210:11
  sermons: role of, 216:1
  seven (number): Holy Spirit, 229M:2
  sex:
    Lenten abstinence, marriage rights, 205:2;
    206:3; 207:2; 208:1; 209:3; 210:9
sexes: creation of, 190:2
shame:
  animosities, 209:1
  ashamed of me before men..., 215:5
  forehead as dwelling place for, 218C:4
sheep:
  one flock, one shepherd, 229O:3
  Peter, feed my sheep, 229N:1,3; 229O:3;
  229P:1,4
shepherds: Epiphany, 199:3; 201:1; 203:1,2;
  204:1,2
Shimei, 214:8
shouting, 205:3
Simeon, 190:4; 196A:1; 217:6
Simon Magus, 197:3; 229U; 229V
sin:
  against nature, 214:3
  baptism and forgiveness of, 213:9; 229E:2
  Christ the appeasement for, 213:6
  constant danger of, 211:1
  disease; doctor’s enemy, 229E:3
  friends with sins, 229E:3
  God chose people he wished to make good, 229F:1
  God’s image worn down by, 229W
  put your members to death, 216:5
  punished by God, 214:2
  turning back to, at heart, 223E:2
  see also redemption
sisters (religious): spiritual marriage, 184:2
sleep:
  of body; of heart, 223K
  daily death, 221:3
  necessity, 221:3; 229H:2
Solomon: temple, 217:4
Son of God:
  Arian heresy, 229G:2
  begotten without beginning, 196:1
  births of his divinity, humanity, 214:6
  co-eternal with the Father, 195:1; 229L:2
  creed: I believe in Jesus..., 213:3
  crucified; the creed, 213:4
  day from day, 217:6
  emptied himself, 213:4
  equality with the Father, 212:1; 214:5
  Father is greater than I, 229G:4
  form of a servant, 215:4
  human nature changed for the better, 186:2
  humanity (flesh) added to divinity of, 186:1
  in the beginning, 225:1
  paradoxes, 188:2; 215:3
  praise; equal to the Father, 188:1
  same as God is himself, 217:7
  seed of David, according to the flesh, 186:3
  servant, less than the Father, 229G:4
  Word made flesh, 186:2
  see also Jesus Christ; Word of God
soul:
believing, hoping, loving, 198:2
changeable, 223A:3
finding you yourself, 223A:4
immortal, 212:1
inner self, 218A:3
life of, 212:1
living souls, 229V
perception of, 197:1
sower: parable, 216:3
spirit:
body inhabited by, 223A:4
flesh lusting against, 193:2
known in its work, 223A:4
only spirit knows the person, 217:2
show me your spirit, 223A:4
Spirit of God, see Holy Spirit
spiritual life:
growth in, 216:9
serve creator, not creature, 216:3
spouse: Christ on the cross, 218:11
stars:
fate; Magi’s star, 199:3
light, 229T
Stephen, Saint:
Christ seated at God’s right hand, 213:5; 214:8
first martyr, 204:3
martyrdom, 229I:4
temple, 217:4
suffering: motive; boast or charity, 229J:3
sun:
Christmas: festival day, honoring its Creator, 190:1
light of day, 229T
Psalm applied to birth of Christ, 192:3
Susanna, 196:2
symbol:
rule of faith, 213:2
usage of the word, 214:12
see also creed
T
taxes for Caesar, 229W
Tellus, 197:6
temptation:
ability to endure, 223E:1
beyond our capacity, 223:2
fasting, and struggle against, 210:3
fire of trials, 229A:2
human life on earth, 223E:1
overcoming by alms, fasting, prayer, 207:1
watch and pray, 223B:1:2; 223C; 223E:1; 223G:2
ten (number), 210:8
ten commandments:
number (ten), 229M:2
worldwide, 210:8
thanks, see gratitude
thirst; allegorical meaning, 229S; 229V
threshing-floor:
Church as, 223:2
gain into bread, 229:1
time: year representing the whole of, 198A:2
transubstantiation:
bread and wine, body and blood, 229:1; 229A:1
God’s action, 229:3
Trinity:
creation; in the beginning, 223A:3
equality of persons, 214:10; 215:8
heresies, 217:3; 229G:3
humanity of Christ; still three persons, 186:1
inseparable divinity, 217:1
one God, 212:1; 213:7; 217:4; 229G:5
time persons, 229G:3
threofd unity, 215:8
truth:
changed into lie (idols), 197:1
hold down, in iniquity, 197:1
sprung from earth (the nativity), 185:1; 189:2; 192:1:4; 193:2
will set you free, 193:2
twelve (number), 203:3

U
unbelief/unbelievers:
darkness; night, 190:1; 222
divinity of Christ, 191:2
Gentiles and Christians, 198:3
Jesus: true God, true man, 184:1
sleep of the heart, 223K
understanding:
believe in order to understand, 212:1; 214:10; 229G:4
unity:
analogy; bread and wine made one, 229:2
body of Christ, 210:8; 227
bond of peace, 228B:5
one loaf (eucharist), one body, 227; 229A:1
spiritual love for, 218B:2
universe:
birth and death in, 229H:2
creation of, 223A:1
work of Father and Son, 184:1
usury, 228:1

V
values: not a hair of our heads will perish, 214:12
vices:
fasting from, 207:3
offering incense to demons, 198:3
vigils:
Paul’s urging, 221:2
reason for, 221:3
watch, enjoined by the Savior, 223D:2
see also Easter vigil
vinegar: Christ on the cross, 218:11
vineyard workers (parable), 229E:4
virgin birth: 184:1, 2; 186:1; 188:2,4; 189:2,4; 190:2,3; 191:4; 192:1; 193:1; 194:4; 195:1; 196:1; 201:1; 213:8; 215:3
virginity:
  chosen state, 191:3
  marriage; virgins; Mary, 188:4
virgins:
  chaste, 208:1; 209:3; 210:9
  Christ, husband in your hearts, 191:4
  consecrated; nuns, 191:3,4
  humble, 196:2
  you too are Christ’s mothers, 192:2

W
wakeful watchers, 223G:2
weeping: relief in, 223A:4
whore, 224:3
widows:
  chaste, 208:1; 209:3
  dedicated continence, 192:2
wine: made into unity (eucharist), 229:2; 229A:2
wisdom:
  folly of God is wiser than human, 218B:1
  God created all things in, 223A:1
  gift of the Spirit, 229T
  treasure hidden in Christ, 194:3
  wise in worldly affairs, 184:1
women:
  honored in the Incarnation, 190:2
  looking after Christ, 229Z
  resurrection; the empty tomb, 229L:1
Word of God:
  all things made through, 223A:1
  analogy; spoken (voiced) words, 187:3
  assumed flesh, to be seen, 225:3
  begotten; all things made through, 214:5
  emptied himself, taking form of servant, 186:3; 187:4; 196:1; 196A:1
  enclosed in Mary’s womb, 225:3
Epiphany, 202:2
equality with the Father, 212:1
eternal day, 188:2
first begetting of, 196:1
food and bread of angels, 196:3
God said to the Son..., 223A:3
human birth; our rebirth, 189:3
human body and soul assumed by, 214:6,12
human words cannot explain, 188:1
in the beginning, 188:2; 215:3; 226;
  229E:4; 229G:6
power, seen in the Incarnation, 187:2
remains forever, 187:3, 4
took flesh, but did not leave Father, 223A:2
unchangeable, 212:1
Word was God, 225:1
see also Jesus Christ; Son of God
words:
  go out (spoken), don’t depart, 223A:2; 223A:5
  inadequate for praising God, 188:1
  sounded, do not leave mind, 225:3
works of mercy:
  anger stored in the heart, 208:2
  done for Christ (in the flesh), 229Z
works of necessity, 211A:2
world:
  God can make good use of bad, 214:3
  rejecting the delights of, 216:2
  wise in affairs of, 184:1
worship of elements of, 197:6
wrongdoing: watchfulness, 223G:2

Volume III/6
Index from

Sermons 230-272B

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 230-272B are on the Liturgical Seasons.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.)
& Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/7 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-059-9, 6 x 9 in., 336 pp., 1993

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**INDEX OF SCRIPTURE**

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Kings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1-5</td>
<td>19:10.18 260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>Tobit 1:1-2 272B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-5</td>
<td>Job 1:21 261, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-4</td>
<td>5:19 260C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3, 5</td>
<td>7:1 256, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>14:4 246, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11, 20:24</td>
<td>Psalms 4:2 231, 4; 260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>4:3 231, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>5:6 257, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>6:1 260C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>8:5 265A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>12:1 260C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>12:1-2 260C, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:8</td>
<td>12:7 260C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:1</td>
<td>12:7-8 260C, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:1-17</td>
<td>12:8 260C, 4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>16:5 260C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12-17</td>
<td>16:10 242A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:6</td>
<td>17:15 255, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 23:7</td>
<td>18:43-44 260E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 5:6-12</td>
<td>19:3-4 262, 3; 269, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16-21</td>
<td>19:4 233, 1; 258, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua 5:2</td>
<td>19:5 264, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:9 270, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:10 246, 5; 265F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:17 254, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:1 252A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27:9-10 252A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III/7**

Sermons 230-272B
Sermons 230-272B

27:9 265D, 7
34:5 232, 4
36:6-7 233, 2; 255, 3
36:7-8 255, 5
36:7-9 233, 2
36:8 255A, 2
36:9 231, 2
37:10 256, 2
40:5 248, 3; 250, 3; 251, 2; 252A, 4; 270, 7
41:4 254, 4
42:2 265, 2
45:2 254, 5
45:10 265E, 4
45:11 267, 3
49:12-20 233, 3
50:3 263, 1
57:5.11 262, 4, 5; 265E, 4, 5
60:11 233, 2
68:18 261, 11
72:9 231, 4
73:28 255, 7
82:1 265E, 3
84:4 236, 3; 243, 8; 254, 8
84:6 252A, 6; 260C, 5
88:5 231, 2
90:1 261, 1
91:9 261, 1
94:11 242, 1
96:1 255A, 1
97:9 265E, 2, 4, 5
98:1 255A, 1
101:1 250, 2
101:2 265, 2
105:4 264, 2
105:40 255A, 2
107:2-3 263A, 4
107:3 266, 6
109:7 254, 4
110:24 258, 3
111:10 248, 5; 250, 3; 270, 5
112:6-7 265, 3
112:7-8 262, 4
113:2-3 265, 12
113:3 267, 3
116, 10 231, 3
116:10 260E, 2
116:11 232, 3; 254, 7; 257, 2; 260E, 2; 266, 1
116:12 254, 6
116:13 254, 6; 255A, 2
116:123 258, 1
118:22-23 230; 258, 1; 260D, 1; 265A, 1
118:24 258, 1
118:26 259, 3
119:53 250, 2
119:96 269, 3
121:4 262, 4
121:8 256, 3
134:1 243, 8
141:5 266, 1, 7, 8

Proverbs
3:16, LXX 252A, 6
Ecclesiasticus
7:15 254, 2
Wisdom
1:5 269, 4
8:1 255, 3
9:15 241, 7

Isaiah
7:9 272
11:2 255, 3
11:2-3 248, 5; 252A, 6; 270, 5
26:10 255, 6
40:4 250, 1
53:2 254, 5
53:7 266, 4
53:8 244, 4
57:19 260C, 4

Jeremiah
17:5 265D, 7
Ezekiel
33:11 250, 3
Daniel
9:24 255, 2
Hosea
13:14 265B, 4
Amos
6:1, LXX 260A, 3
Zechariah
12:10 265, 2; 265D, 6

Value III/7
## Volume III/7

### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew 3:12</td>
<td>260D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>252, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>261, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>270, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17-18</td>
<td>251, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>263A, 4; 270, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>251, 4; 270, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>251, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25</td>
<td>251, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:42</td>
<td>239, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>252A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>265, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-14</td>
<td>256, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-15</td>
<td>261, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13-19</td>
<td>232, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25-16</td>
<td>251, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>260D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:13</td>
<td>260C, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>269, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>236A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-30</td>
<td>272B, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>252, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>272B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:47-50</td>
<td>251, 3; 252, 2; 252A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13-14</td>
<td>236A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13-17</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:13-16</td>
<td>265B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15-18</td>
<td>236A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:15-16</td>
<td>270, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>236A, 4; 254, 7; 257, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16-18</td>
<td>244, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17</td>
<td>254, 7; 270, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17-18</td>
<td>270, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>236A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21-22</td>
<td>257, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:21-23</td>
<td>232, 4; 254, 7; 270, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:23</td>
<td>257, 3; 270, 2; 272B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20</td>
<td>246, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td>262, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:1-10</td>
<td>270, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:10</td>
<td>250, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:27-40</td>
<td>248, 4; 261, 8; 265, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>249, 3; 250, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:2-3</td>
<td>251, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>269, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:8</td>
<td>270, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:13</td>
<td>250, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:31-41</td>
<td>251, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>250, 3; 251, 4; 252A, 4; 265, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td>261, 10; 263A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35-38</td>
<td>236, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td>239, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41-34</td>
<td>248, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>265, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:42</td>
<td>261, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>235, 4; 261, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:64</td>
<td>265B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:25</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40</td>
<td>263, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:42</td>
<td>236A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:1</td>
<td>260C, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:9</td>
<td>236A, 2; 243, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:20</td>
<td>239, 7; 261, 11; 263, 3;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>263A, 2, 4; 265A, 7; 265B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>249, 1; 250, 1, 2; 252A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>240, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>267, 2; 272B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>264, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>252, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22-28</td>
<td>245, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>244, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-31</td>
<td>243, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>263A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:38</td>
<td>260C, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:45</td>
<td>265F, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>258, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>261, 7; 265A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>265D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:38</td>
<td>256, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>260C, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>236A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:12</td>
<td>239, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>233, 1, 4, 5; 234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>233, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>252, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1-7</td>
<td>270, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>252, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-5</td>
<td>252A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-7</td>
<td>249, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>248, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7,10</td>
<td>248, 2; 250, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>250, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:37-38</td>
<td>259, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:45-46</td>
<td>244, 3; 245, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 230-272B

John
1:1   232, 5; 245, 4; 261, 2, 8; 264, 4; 264, 5
1:1-2 238, 2
1:1-3 244, 3
1:1-3.14 242A, 1; 253, 5
1:1-3 261, 4; 265E, 2
1:1-3 264, 4
1:3 239, 6
1:4 232, 5
1:1-5 261, 6
1:10-11 252, 10
1:14 232, 5; 237, 1, 4; 242A, 1;
258, 3; 261, 7, 8; 264, 5, 6, 7;
265A, 7; 265D, 7
1:29 272B, 3
1:51 265B, 3
2:19 261, 7
3:8 266, 7
3:13 263A, 1, 2, 3; 265B, 2
3:16 265B, 4
3:27 265D, 6
4:14 239, 1; 260E, 2
4:24 265A, 3
5:19 261, 7
6:51 265B, 4
7:37-39 270, 2; 271
7:39 265, 8; 267, 1
8:3-11 272B, 5
8:31-32 241, 5
8:34 270, 5
8:36 241, 5
24:21 232, 5, 6, 235, 2; 236A, 4
24:26 236, 2
24:29 235, 3
24:32 234, 3
24:36-39 242, 1
24:37 237, 1; 265D, 1
24:37-38 237, 3
24:37-39 238, 2; 244, 2; 246, 4; 245, 2
24:38-39 265D, 2; 268, 4
24:39 237, 3; 242, 6; 261, 7; 264, 6
24:41-43 242, 2
24:44-46 238, 3; 268, 4
24:44-47 242, 12; 265, 12
24:46 265D, 3
24:46-47 268, 4
24:47 238, 3
24:49 265D, 6
24:50-51 242, 6

Volue III/7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>265A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30-31</td>
<td>265D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16</td>
<td>246, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:6</td>
<td>265A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:7</td>
<td>267, 1; 270, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:30</td>
<td>238, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:2</td>
<td>244, 1; 245, 1; 246, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5-9</td>
<td>244, 1; 245, 1; 246, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:15</td>
<td>246, 3; 246, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16</td>
<td>246, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16-17</td>
<td>244, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>243, 1, 2; 244, 3; 245, 1, 2; 246, 3, 5; 265F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:19</td>
<td>247, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:22</td>
<td>265, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:25-29</td>
<td>258, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:27</td>
<td>258, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:28</td>
<td>245, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:29</td>
<td>259, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:6</td>
<td>248, 3; 250, 3; 251, 2; 252, 1, 2; 252A, 3, 4; 270, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:6.8.11</td>
<td>249, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:11</td>
<td>250, 3; 251, 3; 252, 1, 8; 252A, 5; 270, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:15-17</td>
<td>253, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:19</td>
<td>253, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:20-22</td>
<td>253, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:22</td>
<td>253, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>253, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:28</td>
<td>258, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>265, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>265, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7-8</td>
<td>267, 3; 268, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7-9</td>
<td>265E, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>265, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>265, 6, 8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>265, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-11</td>
<td>245, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>265D, 6; 265F, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>252, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2-4</td>
<td>269, 1; 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3-4</td>
<td>266, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>266, 2; 267, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:27</td>
<td>242A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>236A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19-20</td>
<td>260E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td>260D, 1; 272; 272B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34-35</td>
<td>252, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>246, 5; 272B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>260D, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18-21</td>
<td>241, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23</td>
<td>241, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>232, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>270, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>260C, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>231, 2; 236, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>265, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>265, 10; 269, 2, 3; 270, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>255, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>255, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>236, 1; 260A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>260C, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td>256, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>242, 11; 256, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>256, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>256, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>256, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>233, 4; 246, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>269, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>256, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>269, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:17</td>
<td>265F, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>255, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>255, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>265, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>260E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>263A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10-9</td>
<td>269, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25-26</td>
<td>260C, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>260C, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7-8</td>
<td>259, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12-14</td>
<td>260A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13-14</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Corinthians**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verse</th>
<th>reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11-13</td>
<td>268, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>269, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons 230-272B

1:20-24  240, 5
1:26-29  250, 1
1:27  250, 1
2:8  263, 1
2:9  236, 3; 259, 3
2:14  269, 3
3:1  260A, 1
3:4  265, 11
3:7  260B, 1
3:17  252, 12
4:5  243, 5; 252, 7; 259, 2
4:7  265, 10
4:15  255A, 2
8:1  270, 3
9:25  263A, 4
10:1-4  260B, 1
10:4  231, 2; 260
10:5-11  260B, 2
10:13  256, 3
10:17  272
11:7  262, 5; 265E, 5
11:22  232, 8
11:29  266, 7
12:3  269, 4
12:4  272B, 4
12:12  263A, 2
12:27  272
13:4  260C, 1
13:12  255, 6
15:9  260D, 1
15:10  260D, 1; 261, 3
15:20  264, 6
15:26  260C, 5
15:28  255, 7
15:33-34  260C, 7
15:40-42  241, 8
15:44-43,53  242A, 3
15:45  256, 3
15:50  264, 6
15:53  255, 7; 264, 6
15:53-55  233, 5
15:53-56  256, 2
15:54  263A, 4; 265B, 5; 265D, 5
15:59  260C, 5

2 Corinthians
2:2  254, 2
3:3  272B, 5
3:6  249, 3; 250, 3; 251, 6; 270, 3
3:18  260C, 3
7:1  260A, 2
7:10  254, 2, 4
8:9  239, 6
9:7  259, 5
11:2  264, 4
11:2-3  260C, 7
12:2-4  261, 3

Galatians
1:22-24  258, 1
2:21  249, 3
3:16  263A, 2
3:21  249, 3
3:21-22  252A, 6; 270, 3
3:27-28  260A, 1
3:29  263A, 2
4:1  265C, 1
5:6  234, 3; 270, 3
5:17  242, 11

Ephesians
2:14  258, 1
3:10  248, 5
3:20  236, 3
4:1-3  260A, 2
4:2-3  260A, 3; 270, 6
4:3  260A, 4; 269, 2
4:4  268, 2
4:8  261, 11
5:8  258, 2; 260D, 1
5:29  242A, 3
5:31-32  263A, 3

Philippians
2:5-6  264, 3
2:6  244, 4; 265E, 2
2:6-7  264, 7; 265A, 7; 265F, 1
2:6-8  264, 4
2:7  246, 5; 265E, 2; 270, 2
2:7-8  264, 3
2:7-6  244, 3
2:7-11  265E, 2
2:8  265A, 6
3:13-14  255, 6; 260C, 7; 261, 3
4:1  260A, 1
4:3  248, 3
4:9  260

Colossians
2:3  261, 7
2:14  237, 1
2:17  260B, 3
3:1-2  263A, 1; 265C, 1
3:1-3  231, 3
3:1-4  231, 3; 260A, 4

Volue III/7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Sermon Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>231, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>260C, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>255, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>265, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>265, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>260A, 2; 269, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>265D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>269, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>261, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>252, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>252, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>255, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>260C, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>234, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>272B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>260A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>269, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>270, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>263, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>260A, 1; 264, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>253, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>265, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6.16</td>
<td>260C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>270, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>265A, 7; 265B, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>265A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>265, 11; 269, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>265D, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>248, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>263, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1.4</td>
<td>248, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4.1</td>
<td>270, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:6.14</td>
<td>231, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2</td>
<td>252, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Abraham:
seed of: Christ and us, 263A:2
Adam and Eve:
Adam became a living soul, 256:3
Adam was not a son of man, 233:3
Eve’s report on the serpent listened to, 232:2
evill inheritance from, 242A:3
sin entered world by one man, 255:4
adoption:
my Father and your Father, 265F:2
spirit of sonship, 269:2
adultery: Christ and the woman found in, 272B:5
Aeneas (Virgil), 241:5
afflictions: glory in, 265:10
agapes: serving at, 259:5
alleluia (the word):
harmony in singing, 256:1
heaven’s bliss, 256:1
hope, 255:5
new song, 255A:1
praise God, 243:8, 252:9, 254:5, 255:1,5
praise with voice and heart, 257:1
traveler’s song, 255:1
almsgiving: remedy for sin, 261:10
angels:
ascension: Jesus will come again, 265F:3
eating when given hospitality, 242:2
feeding on Word of God, 237:4
joy, 252:12
people of God to be associated with, 264:6
rich men and equality, 255:7
salvation, 233:4
will separate good from bad (last judgment), 251:3
animals: men and beasts you will save, 233:2-3; 255:4
Apollinarianism, 237:4 (and note 11)
apostles:
see also disciples
could only believe about the Church, 238:3
could see Christ present; could not see Church to be, 242:12
laying hands; giving the Holy Spirit, 260:3; 269:2
miracles performed by, 260E:1
Arians, 252:4; 265A:2
ascension:
absence of his flesh; think of his divinity, 264:4
angels say: he will come again, 265F:3
can’t see with our eyes, 263:3
celebrated all over the world, 262:3
Christ exalted above the heavens, 262:4
Christ’s bodily ascension, 263A:3
disciples’ hearts of fleshly yearning, 264:4
Father is greater than I, 264:4
head going first gives hope to members, 265:2
hearts ascend with him, 263A:1
heretics on, 263A:3
invitation to lift up our hearts, 265C:1
Jesus’ last words, 265E:4
mystery of the incarnation completed, 265A:1
now he ascends every day, 246:4
our glorification, 261:1
protection from on high, 263:1
rejoice, I am going to the Father, 264:2; 264:4
where head goes, members will follow, 264:6
whole Christ: Word, soul and body, 242:6
why are you standing here? 265D:6
worldwide celebration, 265F:4
avarice: heart filled with, 261:5

B
Babel, tower of, 271
babies: death; at what age will they rise again? 242:4
bad example, see example
bad life, see sin; wrongdoing
baptism:
baptized, but without faith or love of Christ, 260A:2

Volue III/7
Volume III/7

good results: good lives, 255A:2
octave of Easter rounding off the sacrament, 259:2
receiving the Holy Spirit, 269:2,3
requires living with the risen Christ, 260A:4
sacramental character, 260A:2 (and note 7)
white garments; significance, 260C:7
baptism: *infantes*
  born again; Easter octave, 260C:2
called faithful, live faithfully, 260D:2
clothe yourself with Christ, 260A:1
day which the Lord has made, 258:2, 260D:1
eight saved in the Ark (analogy), 260C:2
Exodus model; for the *infantes*, 260B:1
God for Father, Church for mother, 260C:1
made new in image of our maker, 259:2
urged not to lead bad lives, 260:1
urged to live good lives, 255A:2
warning re vanity, falsehood, chaff, 260C:6,8
white robes not to be laid aside, 260C:7
baptism: *infantes*
  born again; Easter octave, 260C:2
called faithful, live faithfully, 260D:2
clothe yourself with Christ, 260A:1
day which the Lord has made, 258:2, 260D:1
beauty:
  knowledge of God through, 241:2
  resurrection, after ugliness of the cross, 254:5
risen body, 243:7
Beelzebub, 272B:4
behavior: praise God not only with voice, 254:8
believing, *see faith*
Bible:
  obscurity in, 270:1
  prudent understanding of scriptures, 265A:8
big head, proud head, 266:8
birds: rearing chicks, 264:2
bishops: one master, 270:1
blessed: no need of anything in heaven, 255:7
bodies:
  *see also* body and soul; human body; soul
cam: eye of a needle, 247:3
captivity: who took captivity captive? 261:10
Cataphrygians: schism, 252:4
catechumens: knowledge of the eucharist, 232:7
Catholic Church:
  *see also* Church
  four corners of the world, 252:10
  spread through the whole world, 238:3
chaff:
  purging, 271
  threshing floor, 252:5-6; 259:2; 260C:6,8; 260D:2
change: philosophers on body and soul, 241:2
  *see also* love
gift of the Holy Spirit, 265:10
  giving and forgiving, 259:4
  heaven put up for sale, 259:5
humility and friendliness in, 259:5
what you did to the least of ..., 239:7
chastity: exhortation to the newly baptized, 260:1
children of God: living good lives, 231:4
choice: freedom of chaff to become wheat, 252:6
Christian life:
  *see also* baptism: *infantes*; faith
  account for whole life is owed to God, 259:6
adoption: common God in heaven, 265F:2
baptism: putting on Christ, 260A:1
belonging to one big family, 265F:3
beware of fraud, lies, etc., 260:1
calling Jesus “Lord” requires deeds, 269:4
death: change of habits; future, blessed life, 231:5
die in order not to die, 231:3
direct thoughts to eternal happiness, 259:1
directly to strangers, 236:3
infantes urged to live good lives, 255A:2
lead good lives among the bad, 249:2
leading good lives: day which the Lord has made, 230
live by what is his; he died with what is ours, 265D:7
love, a burning torch, 234:3
made co-heirs by the Son, 260D:2
one soul and one heart in God, 272
partners in Christ’s eternity, 260C:6
risen with Christ, 231:3
seek the things that are above, 265C:1
tables of the law enjoined for, 272B:5
Church:
  *see also* mystical body
  Ark of planks that cannot rot, 264:5
  bride and bridegroom, 238:1,3; 268:4
  bride of Christ, 238:3; 265:6; 265E:5
called kingdom of heaven, 251:3
can be overloaded, but not sunk, 252A:2

Sermons 230-272B
Sermons 230-272B

Christ the rock on which it is built, 244:1; 270:2
Christian sinners swamp the boat (Church), 248:2
cutting selves off from, 268:2
day which the Lord has made, 258:1
Donatists lacking in, 260A:3
endowed by Christ with unity, 268:4
fishing: nets hold both good and bad, 270:7
foretold by speaking in all tongues (Pentecost), 264:2
glory of Christ, 262:5; 265E:5
glory over all the earth, 262:5
good and bad members in, 250:2; 264:5; 270:7
Jesus’ last words: you shall be my witnesses, 265E:4
Mary Magdalene representing, 245:4
mercy in, 259:4
net cast into the sea, 251:3
number fifty, 252:11
only good people in it, after our resurrection, 252A:2
peoples from the Jews and the nations, 258:1
promise: it will not be destroyed, 265E:1
rejoice in added members, 260C:1
represented by catch of 153 fish, 252:7; 259:2
represented by the Ark, 260C:2
seeking material advantages in, 252:6
separation from unity of, 268:2; 269:2
two catches of fish signifying, 248:1-2; 251:1
unity, see unity
whoever has the Spirit is a member, 268:2
working in its saints, 267:4
you shall be my witnesses to me, 265:6
circumcision:
evangelization of the Gentiles, 252:3; 266:6,7
flesh and heart, 260:1
sign, 231:2
commandment: end of every consummation is love, 260:3
compassion: weakness of the weak, 264:3
condemnation: hope for eternal salvation, 233:5
confirmation: fire of the Holy Spirit, 272
conscience: good conscience: peace of heart, 270:5
continence: fidelity to vow of, 260:1
Cornelius (centurion), 266:6,7; 269:2
cornerstone:
builders rejected Christ, 258:1
Jesus as, 252A:2
Jews and Gentiles, 252:3
covetness: commandment against, 250:3; 252A:6
creation:
creator’s gift of himself, 259:3
God rested on the seventh day, 270:5; 260C:4
importance of unity in, 268:3
maker of all becomes made among all, 239:6
meaning of eighth day, 259:2
sixth/seventh days, 251:5; 259:2; 270:5
creator:
forsaking the creator, 260C:4
loving, rather than the creator, 261:4
cross:
see also crucifixion
mousetrap for the devil, 263:2; 265D:5
way to heaven, 260C:5
we are put right on his cross, 236:1
wise ones of the world as believers, 272A

D

darkness:
day which the Lord has made, 258:2; 260D:1
evil works in, 261:6
human heart, 258:3
Spirit of God: the newly baptized, 258:2; 260D:1
day: walk honorably, as in the day, 230
deacons: seven added to the apostles, 266:4
death:
cadaver: body without soul, 241:2
God’s power to raise the dead, 240:2
souls’ desire (pagan) to return to bodies, 241:5
souls “shunted back to other bodies,” 240:4; 241:4
death will go on living in the damned, 233:5
deliverance from body of, 256:1-2
everlasting, after death in time, 231:2
flesh, not spirit, 265D:3
hope in the risen Christ, 261:1

Volue III/7
Jesus emptied himself; chose worst kind of death, 264:3
no bad death, if you lead a good life, 249:2
punishment for fault of sin, 231:2
sin, the father of, 231:2
sin the sting of, 256:2
sudden, 232:8
swallowed up in victory, 233:5; 265B:5; 265D:5
we die of necessity; Christ of sheer goodness, 265E:3
who took captivity captive? 261:10
Word of God accepted our death, 232:5
debtor: God’s promises, 254:6
deceit: flatterer, 266:8
delight: content having God alone, 255:7
two kinds of life (Mary and Martha), 255:6
deliverance (prayer), 256:1-2
deluge: eight saved; Easter octave (analogy), 260C:2
forty days, 264:5
demons: belief in Christ as Son of God, 234:3
desire: fleshly addiction; or having God alone, 255:7
devil: called lion, 263:2
cross a mousetrap for, 263:2; 265D:5
death of Adam, and Christ, 263:1
exultant when Christ died, 263:2
possession of human race, 265D:4
disciples: see also apostles; Emmaus
fishermen sent into the world, 272A
fishers of men; fishers of fish, 248:1,2; 249:1; 250:1; 252A:2
human affection for Christ, 270:2
lesson from the Good Thief, 234:2; 236A:3
nonbelief in resurrection, 231:1; 232:2; 246:1,2
not yet believers, before the resurrection, 236A:2
untrained, uneducated, unskilled, 272A
weak chosen to confound the strong, 250:1
ditch: sign of humility, 254:3
Donatists, 249:2; 266:1; 269:2; 271
clothed in baptism, naked in morals, 260A:2
doing business with, 252:5
lacking the Church and all that goes with it, 260A:3
schism, 252:4
drunkenness: temple of God, 252:12
dung: sadness, 254:2,4

E
earth: diversity of weights in elements, 242:8

Easter season, see ascension; Pentecost;
resurrection
eating: why the risen Christ ate, 242:2
Elijah:
forty days fast, 264:5; 270:3
supported by widow woman in Zarephath, 239:3
waited on by birds, 239:3
Emmaus:
disciples’ nonrecognition of Jesus, 232:3,5;
word 235:1-3; 236:2; 236A:2,4; 239:2,7
disciples not walking on His way, 235:2
heart-warming feeling, 234:2,3
recognition in breaking the bread, 232:7;
234:2; 235:3; 236A:2;
recognition restored through hospitality,
235:3; 239:2
their eyes were held ..., 235:2; 236A:2;
239:2
end of the world:
Jesus: it is not for you to know..., 265E:4;
267:3; 268:4
shore, the two catches of fish, 251:3
eternal life; eternity:
see also future life; heaven
born again in baptism, 260:1
difficulties tolerated for sake of, 260C:3
exhortation to the infantes, 260B:1
Jesus is the true God, 265B:4
Jesus makes us heirs to, 265B:5
narrow road to, 260C:7
number eight, 260C:3,4,6
represented by first and eighth day, 260C:5
seek felicity, not equality, 261:2
word of God, 239:1
eucharist:
body and blood of Christ, 272
one bread, one body, 272
recognition of the sacrament, 232:7
sacrament of unity, 272
unworthy if not holding bond of peace, 272
evangelization:
disciples sent to ends of the world, 233:1
Mark and Luke chosen as evangelists, 239:1
no person is “unclean,” 266:6
Philip and the eunuch, 266:4; 269:2
words gone to ends of the world, 269:1
example: choose the one to imitate, 260D:2
infantes, avoid bad example, 260B:3
leading others to their ruin, 260D:3
exodus: desert journey a model for the infantes, 260B:1
experience: factor in virtuous acts, 259:3
eyes:
mind of more value, 265C:2
nothing dearer than, 265C:1,2
Sermons 230-272B

F

faith:
- ability to defend the faith, 240:1
- belief without seeing, 259:1
- believe (here) in Christ incarnate, 264:6
- believing what we cannot see, 231:1
- built up by the Lord’s absence, 235:4
- Christian belief, not demonic, 234:3
- comes from hearing, 260E:1
- depths of the heart, 265C:2
- doubting Thomas; complete fullness of faith, 258:3
- eyes of the heart, 263:3
- flesh and divinity of Christ, 264:5
- God’s promises will come about, 242:12
- I believed, therefore I spoke, 260E:2
- Jesus present with us if we believe, 232:7
- miracle: whole world believing the unbelievable, 272A
- nets cast into the sea, 252:2
- Pentecost: astonishment at speaking in tongues, 266:2
- proclaiming; eloquence not demanded, 260E:2
- progress; measure allotted to each, 232:1
- required for understanding, 272
- salvation offered for, 233:1
- seriousness seeks by believing, 261:2
- touching signifies faith, 243:2; 244:3; 246:4
- false pretenses, 269:4
- falsehood, see lie
- family life: older brothers and sisters, 260C:1
- forty days, 252:10,11
- represents pains of contest, 263A:4
- vanity of present age, 263A:4
- fat head, proud head, 266:8
- fear:
  - afraid of being charged with being afraid, 232:8
  - cast out by perfect love, 270:4
  - chaste and servile, 270:4
  - gift of the Spirit, 250:3
  - of the Lord: beginning of wisdom, 248:5
  - wisdom, gift of the spirit, 270:5
- feasting: promise of age to come, 263A:4
- fidelity: called faithful, live faithfully, 260D:2
- financier: giving less, giving back more, 239:5
- finger of God, 272B:4,5
- fire: radiance co-eval with it, 265A:5
- fish:
  - boat in danger of sinking, 251:1
  - catch of 153 fish, 248:3-5; 250:3; 251:3,5; 252:7-8; 270:7
  - first catch, significance, 248:2; 250:2,3; 251:1; 252A:1,4
  - fishing all night, nothing caught, 252:1
  - nets breaking, 249:1; 250:3; 251:3; 252:1,2; 252A:5; 270:7
  - nets cast, 248:2,3; 249:1-2; 250:2; 251:1; 252:7; 270:7
- nets cast to right-hand side, 248:3; 249:1; 251:2; 252:1; 252:7; 252A:3,4,7; 270:7
- second catch, significance, 248:3; 250:3; 251:2; 252:7
- supernumeraries, 270:7
- two boats stand for Jews and Gentiles, 248:2; 252:2,4
- two catches, 248:1; 249:1-2; 250:2; 251:1-2
- fishermen: chosen as disciples, 250:1
- flattery:
  - beware of one who flatters, 266:8
  - oil of the sinner, 260A:8
- flesh:
  - see also body and soul; human body; resurrection of the body
  - addicted to fleshly desires, 255:7
  - Christ can make heavenly body out of, 264:6
  - delights of, and souls after death, 241:4
  - likeness of the flesh of sin, 246:5
  - make no provision for lusts of, 230
  - mortality of, 260A:4
  - floating, 242:8-9
- flour: Elijah’s miraculous jar, 239:3
- food: represents hope of peace, 263A:4
- fools: what falls from a height (philosophy)
  - sinks all the deeper, 241:3
- forgiveness:
  - mercy, 259:4
  - forgiveness of sin:
    - God’s accord, 251:7
    - grace achieves, 270:3
    - Jesus undid the fault of sin, 240:3
- forty, see number 40
- four, see number 4
- fruit: barren fig tree, 254:3
- future life:
  - see also heaven; resurrection of the body
  - feasting on promise of, 263A:4
  - fifty days after Easter; significance, 243:8
  - having much, requiring nothing (temporal), 255:2
  - hope of blessedness, 233:1
  - philosophers on souls after death, 241:4

G

genealogies: “sacraments” in, 272B:2

Sermons 230-272B
Gentiles:
- cornerstone; joined to the Jews, 252:3
- evangelization of the uncircumcised, 252:3; 266:6,7

giving, see charity

glory:
- Church the glory of Christ, 262:5
- enjoy the glory of God, 255:6

God:
- see also creation; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity
- beautiful and unchangeable, 241:2
- enjoy his glory, 255:6
- faithful, when in temptation, 256:3
- great in power, not in size, 265A:3
- having God alone; miss other things that we enjoy? 255:7
- his presence is never withdrawn, 252:10
- Jesus’ words: my God and your God, 246:5
- knowing him: question the beauty of the earth, 241:2
- makes accord by forgiving sins, 251:7
- praised of, 252:9
- praised by the anxious and the carefree, 256:3
- promises make him our debtor, 254:6
- seeking to know (Paul), 261:3
- godlessness: worshiping the creature, 260C:4
- gods: God as creator of (Plato), 241:8; 242:7
- gold: looking for, 231:5
- good and evil:
- arriving at the right-hand side, 249:3
- cast your nets (to right or left), 248:3; 252A:3
- desire for a long, bad life (among all good things), 232:8
- say not in your heart: I am the only good one, 249:2
- sin as cause of all evils, 240:3
- watch for wheat and chaff, 260D:2

good life:
- Christian, see Christian life
- leading good lives, 230; 231;3-5
- not seeking after lies, 231:4
- given with Christ, 231:3
- savor things that are above, 231:4

Good Thief:
- faith of, 232:5-6; 236A:4
- remember me when ..., 232:6; 236A:4

good works:
- exhortation to, 261:9
- give example through, 269:4
- God’s way of finding doers of good, 239:4
- obtaining God’s mercy, 259:3
- recognition of Jesus in, 239:7

goodness:
- choose good people to imitate, 260D:2
- fear of leading bad lives, 249:2
- perseverance in, 250:2

H

hand, fingers of, 272B:4

happiness:
- all want happy lives, 231:4,5
- bad lives and, 250:2
- complete and perfect, 252:12
- everlasting, 259:1
- not found in this life, 231:5
- pagan philosophy, 241:5-6
- seeking after lies, 231:4

handicaps: endured on earth; rest in heaven, 263A:1

health:
- gift of the true God, 255:3
- immortality as true health, 255:7
- men and animals, 255:4
- never weary of good health, 255:3

heart:
- avarice in, 261:5
- burning, on road to Emmaus, 234:3
- Christ isn’t absent if held in the heart, 263:3
- circumcision of, 260:1
- darkness in, 258:3
- faith in depths of, 265C:2
- inner gazing at Son of God, 264:2
- law on tables of stone, 272B:5
- lifted up to the Lord; not in pride, 261:1
- light of truth in, 230
- made healthy by rebuke, 266:8
- possessions on this earth, 265C:1
- presence of Jesus in, 232:7
- pure of heart will see God, 261:4
- purging of worldly chaff, 271
- rotting in the earth, 265C:1
- seeing into is God’s privilege, 243:5
- storehouse of lies, 254:7
- thoughts of, not hidden after resurrection, 243:5
what does man have better than heart? 

265C:1

heaven: 

see also resurrection of the body 
blessed; no need of anything, 255:7 
called least/great in kingdom of, 251:4 
meditate on, 263A:2 
must accept indignity of the cross, 260C:5 
neither has eye seen, nor ear heard..., 236:3 
net cast into the sea, 251:3; 252:2; 252A:3 
put up for sale: give to the poor, 259:5 
question: earthly body in a new earth, 
242:5,7 
rice man’s difficulty in entering, 247:3 
taken by storm, 232:6 
will of the Father, 269:4 

Hen: enfeebles herself for chicks, 264:2,5 

Heresies: fishing nets broken, 250:2; 251:1; 252A:1 

Holy Spirit: 
see also Pentecost 
capacity for, and fulfilling the law, 270:3 
carnal person does not receive gifts, 267:2 
charity, the gift of, 265:10 
Church and; as soul is to body, 267:4 
effects one soul and one heart in God, 
272B:2 
equality in the Trinity, 264:7 
filmed with; charity, 272B:7 
finger of God, 249:3; 272B:4 
first coming, without laying on of hands, 266:6 
fruits produced by the Spirit, 260A:3 
gift of tongues, 267:2 
gifts: from wisdom to fear, 270:5 
given by the apostles, 266:3 
given sometimes without human minister, 266:4 
given to Christians in grace, 272B:3 
given twice by Christ, 265:8 
help in keeping the commandments, 248:5; 251:6,7; 252A:6 
life and, 251:6; 252A:6 
letter of law brought to life by, 270:3 
life to our mortal bodies, 256:3 
umber seven, 270:5 
Pentecost, 265:8 
power to say “Jesus is Lord,” 269:4 
promised at the ascension, 268:4 
received from earth (brother), from heaven 
(God), 265:9 
received through humility; repelled through 
pride, 270:6 
receiving, at baptism, 269:2 
rivers of living water, 270:2; 271 
sent to remove fleshly yearnings, 264:4 
seven gifts of, 250:3; 252A:6 
sevenfold qualities, 249:3; 251:5,6; 252A:6 
signs of presence of, 269:2 

whoever has the Spirit is in the Church, 
268:2 
why given twice, 265:9 

Hope: 

Christ is alive; how can hope be dead in 
your? 235:2 
Christ’s resurrection, 265:2 
death and the risen Christ, 261:1 
disciples walk to Emmaus; lost hope, 
232:5; 234:2; 235:2-3; 236:2; 236A:4 
Good Thief’s faith, 232:6; 234:2; 236A:4 
joy, 255:5 
placing hopes in man, 265D:7 
resurrection of Jesus, 231:2 
risen with Christ (not yet in fact), 260A:4 
shelter of your wings, 255:5 
hospitality: 

Emmaus disciples recognize Jesus, 235:3; 239:7 

stranger treated as Christ himself, 236:3 

human body: 
see also body and soul; flesh; resurrection 
of the body; soul 
beards and nipples, 243:6 
beauty now; how much more after 
resurrection, 243:7 
constant need of restoration, 243:8 
death because of sin, 256:3 
interconnection and design of parts, 243:4 
Porphyry’s view; to be shunned, 241:7 
some parts for use; others for elegance, 243:6 
hospitality: 

Emmaus disciples recognize Jesus, 235:3; 239:7 

stranger treated as Christ himself, 236:3 

human body: 
see also body and soul; flesh; resurrection 
of the body; soul 
beards and nipples, 243:6 
beauty now; how much more after 
resurrection, 243:7 
constant need of restoration, 243:8 
death because of sin, 256:3 
interconnection and design of parts, 243:4 
Porphyry’s view; to be shunned, 241:7 
some parts for use; others for elegance, 243:6 

spirit quickens all the parts, 268:2 
visible beauty, 243:4 

who created/shaped it all? 242A:2 

human condition: 
anxious and worrying, 256:1 
before Christ came: heavy hearts, 231:4 
born and dying, 233:4 

Christ shared our toil, pain, death, 231:5 

dead, the lot of all, 231:2 
sin the cause of evil straits, 240:5 
time of gladness; time of sadness, 254:1-5 
work now, future payment, 233:1 

human reproduction: a daily miracle, 242A:2 

humane acts, 259:3 

humaneness: uniting effect, 259:5 

humans: 

bad human worth more than any animal, 255:3 
compare a human being buried; and seeded, 242A:2 
distinction: men and sons of men, 255:4 
divided: light (eternity), dark (damnation), 260D:1 
soul and flesh, 265D:3 

Humility: 

dug ditch a sign of, 254:3 

Jesus exalted because of, 265E:2 
necessary in giving, 259:5 

Value III/7
receiving the Holy Spirit, 270:6
way toward Christ’s exaltation, 260C:5

I

idols: philosophers, 241:3
ignorance: pagan souls in heaven, 241:5
immortality:
  imperishability, 256:2; 259:3; 264:6
  mortals must put on, 242A:3
  philosophers on, 240:4
true health, 255:7
Incarnation:
  accepting flesh, divinity unchanged, 264:4
  believe (here) in Christ incarnate, 264:6
  born a mortal for the sake of mortals, 233:4
  faith in, necessary for all, 264:5
  likeness of the flesh of sin, 233:4
  purpose, 262:1
  Son of God came in order to die, 232:5
Word made flesh, 261:7
Word of God; complete human soul, 237:4

infantes, see baptism: infantes
inheritance: brothers dividing, 265:11
interest rates, 239:5
irreligious people: gifts lavished on, 255:3

J

Jerusalem: witnesses in, 265:6
Jesus Christ:
  see also Christian life; Incarnation; Son of God;
  Son of Man; Word of God
ancestry includes both sinners and just men, 272B:2
  appeared openly as man, remained hidden as God, 261:7
  ascending to “my Father and your Father,” 246:5; 265F:2
ascension, see Ascension
Behold the Lamb of God, 272B:3
born of compassion, 265E:3
  both God and man, 253:5; 258:3
  bride and bridegroom, 238:1,3
called lion and lamb, 263:2
came disguised to be judged; will come openly to judge, 263:1
chose to be guest/stranger on this earth, 239:2
Church is the glory of, 265E:5
  contrasts in life of, 239:6
cornerstone rejected by builders, 258:1
  creator of man; created as man, 244:3
  creature too, as man, 246:5
descended without, ascended with, a body, 263A:3
difference from other human beings,
  265E:3
divinity; in Peter’s letters, John’s gospel,
  253:5
divinity took on humanity, 265B:2
  emptied himself; form of a servant, 246:5;
  264:3,7; 265A:7; 265E:2; 265F:1;
  270:2
  equal to the Father, 244:3,4; 264:2,3,7
  exalted above all gods (prophetic psalm), 265E:4
  exalted because he humbled himself,
  265E:2
  far above us in divinity; close in assumed infirmity, 242A:1
  fasted forty days, 263A:4; 270:3
  Father is greater than I, 265A:6,7
  fountain of life, 233:2
  fulfills the prophets, 232:3
  glorified, 270:2
  God above us, man among us, 265A:2
  he was life for us, we were death for him,
  232:5
  how he is God, 261:2
  human affection for, 270:2
  humbled himself, 272A
  hunger and thirst, 255:2
  I and the Father are one, 265A:7; 265D:3
  imitate his compassion, 264:3
  in heaven and also with us, 265F:3
  incarnation, see Incarnation
  judge the living and the dead, 262:4
  judge visible to both just and unjust,
  265F:3
  judgment day, 265:3
  last words: you shall be my witnesses...
  265E:4
  less (as man) than the Father, 264:4
  less than the angels (Ps 8:5), 265A:6
  life events, 262:4
  life-giving spirit; contrast with Adam,
  256:3
  life of the world, 265B:4
  Lord of the prophets, 234:2
  loving Christ fulfills both commandments,
  261:8
  materialistic thought: only a man, 243:2
  mediator between just God and unjust men,
  240:5
  miracles: no rational explanation, 247:2
  mission, passion, death, 231:5
  my God and your God ..., 265F:1,2
  my soul is sorrowful ..., 265D:3
  needy in his members, 239:7
  not robbery to be equal to God, 244:3,4;
  265E:2
  our brother in form of servant, 265F:1
  our brother, our Lord, 265F:2
  penalties for our sins taken on by, 240:3

Sermons 230-272B
Sermons 230-272B

present everywhere in divinity, 264:2
present in heaven and with us, 263A:1
promises to those who love him, 260A:1
punishment (death) for our sin shared by,
231:2
say “he is Lord” in your deeds, 269:4
see him spiritually (not with bodily eyes),
265A:6
seed of Abraham, 263A:2
show us the Father, 264:2
sinlessness, 246:5; 265D:4
skill as teacher, 265:5
someone touched me ..., 244:3; 245:3
Son of God by nature, 265E:3
Son of God poor for our sake, 239:6
Son of God; Son of man, 236A:3; 265B:2
son of man; Adam only a man, 233:3
speaks by sounds and deeds, 252:1
suffers yet when his members suffer,
263A:1
take away true flesh, there is no true
suffering, 238:3
testament for unity of the Church, 265:7
thinking of Christ in a merely human way,
272B:1
thinking of him in a more spiritual way,
264:2
thought of only as a man (Photinus), 246:4
to have been in heaven; to have come down
from heaven, 265B:2
touched by woman with issue of blood,
245:3
touching him means believing in him,
243:2; 244:3; 245:3
touching the man; failing to believe he is
God, 244:3
twice glorified; twice gives the Holy Spirit,
265:8
two natures; communicatio idiomatum,
265B:3
what he says as God, as soul, as flesh,
261:7
whole Christ is man and God, 261:7
woman found in adultery; he wrote on the
ground. 272B:5
Word, human spirit, human flesh, 238:2;
253-5; 265D:3
Word of God, 237:4
Jesus Christ: passion and death
see also crucifixion; resurrection
corruption could not affect him, 265E:3
death without sin, 233:4
disciples think of him only as prophet,
236:2; 236A:2
folly to philosophers, 240:5
he chose of his own authority to die, 232:5
he died in the flesh, not in divinity, 242A:1
his disciples fell away from hope, 236:2;
236A:4
necessary for Christ to suffer, 265D:3
passion read from Matthew’s gospel, 232:1
Peter’s reaction to foretelling, 270:2
reason for dying, 265D:4
salvation accomplished, 265A:1
sign of miseries of this life, 233:1
signifies time we are living now, 254:5
today you shall be with me in paradise,
232:6
will of the Father, 265D:4
Word of God had nothing with which to
die, 265D:7
worst kind of death chosen by Jesus, 264:3
Jews:
apostles as Jewish, 258:1
belief that Christ was crucified, 234:3
believers in Christ shared their goods,
252:3
boats; two casts of nets, 252:3
forty years in the desert, 264:5
Pentecost, 272B:2
John, Saint:
rumor: he is not to die, 244:1; 245:1
joy;
spiritually (not with bodily eyes), 265A:6
justice:
endowment with; doing good works, 251:7
more than that of scribes and Pharisees,
251:4
justification:
Christ died for our sins, 236:1
Pelagian error, 260D:1
judgment day:
see also end of the world; Second Coming
come, blessed of my Father, 252A:4
future judgment to be presence of Christ,
265:3,8
Jesus visible to both just and unjust, 265F:3
live as though he were coming today, 265:4
mercy now, separation later, 250:2
promise will be kept one day, 263E:1
we are not to pass, before final judgment,
243:5
Jupiter, 241:7
just man: correcting out of mercy, 266:8
justice:
endowment with; doing good works, 251:7
more than that of scribes and Pharisees,
251:4
justification:
Christ died for our sins, 236:1
Pelagian error, 260D:1
K
kindness: road to reach God, 259:4
kingdom of God:
flesh and blood shall not gain possession,
264:6
Jesus invites us to live with him, 231:5

Value III/7
L

**Lamb**: Passover, 272B:2

**Law (Mosaic law)**:
- see also ten commandments
- five books, 272B:3
- fulfilled by grace, 270:3
- given on day of Pentecost, 272B:6
- given to Jews in fear, 272B:3
- guilt and grace, 272B:3
- hearts of stone; hearts of flesh, 272B:5
- letter kills; Spirit brings to life, 250:3; 251:6; 270:3
- obeying for fear of punishment, 251:6; 270:4
- plainly shown to philosophers, 241:1
- summary: two commandments to love, 269:3
- transgression, without the Spirit, 250:3
- wisdom dispensed in, 252:10
- word commanding one thing; you doing another, 251:7
- word of the law as opponent, 251:7
- laying on of hands, 266:4,5,6; 269:2
- lead, floating, 242:9
- leisure: good use of, 259:6
- lending: interest rates, 239:5
- Lent:
  - forty day fast, 270:3
  - forty days stand for temporal difficulties, 243:8
  - time of sorrow, 254:5
- Leviticus, Saint, 262:2
- lie:
  - every man a liar, 232:3; 254:7; 257:2-3
  - every man (Adam) a liar, 260E:2
  - falsehood: only thing man truly owns, 254:7
  - man speaks from what is his own, 232:4
- life:
  - desire for a long, bad life, 232:8
  - two kinds: delight and need, 255:6
  - light:
  - day which the Lord has made, 230; 258:2; 260D:1
  - shines in darkness, 261:6
  - truth illustrated from example of, 265A:6
  - loan: extortionate rates of interest, 239:5
  - Lord’s day: sabbath, 260C:5
  - Lord’s prayer: daily purification, 261:10
  - love: see also charity

**M**

**Manichees**:
- risen Christ as spirit, 237:1-4; 238:2; 265D:1-2
- schism, 252:4

**Mankind**:
- see also humans
- creation of humans from one man, 268:3
- Mark, Saint, evangelist, 239:1
- marriage: faithfulness in, 260:1
- Martha and Mary:
  - Martha busy with many things, 255:6
  - Mary chose the better part, 255:5
  - Mary learning and praising, 255:2
  - martyrs: witness-bearing, 260E:2
- Mary, Blessed Virgin:
  - Mary believed and conceived, 233:4
  - virgin represents unity, 268:3
  - virginity preserved, 231:2
- Mary Magdalen:
  - Christ mistaken for gardener, 246:3
  - resurrection; the Church, 245:4
- Mary (sister of Lazarus), see Martha and Mary
- materialistic people, 242:1; 243:2
- mercy:
  - Holy Spirit, 252A:6
  - multiplicity of your mercy, 233:2
  - show mercy, receive mercy, 259:3
  - two sorts: giving and forgiving, 259:4
  - military service, desertion from, 260A:2
- mind:
  - more value than eyes, 265C:2
  - use to believe in Word of God, 265C:2
miracle(s):
  making difficulties with God’s working, 247:3
  materialistic attitude, 242:1
  no rational explanation, 247:2
  whole world believing the unbelievable, 272A
morality, distinguished by, 234:3
Moses:
  fast for forty days, 264:5; 270:3
  interceded with God, 254:3
mysteries: Jesus’ use of symbol, 252:1
mystical body (body of Christ; the Church):
  Christ is our head; we are his body, 263A:2
  Christ the head; Church the body, 258:1
  head and members, 268:4
  many members, 263A:2
  members of body of Christ, 272
  none but Christ descended/ascended, 263A:2
  we see; apostles could only believe, 242:12
nature:
  beauty is confession of God, 241:2
  daily course as miracle, 247:2
need(s):
  bodies after the resurrection, 243:6
  busy with many things, 255:6
  needy, see poor
neighbor: loving, by loving Christ, 261:8
Noah’s Ark:
  clean and unclean animals, 264:5
  Easter octave, 260C:2
  number 3: suggests the creator, 252:10
  number 4: temporal realities, 252:10; 263A:4; 270:3
  number 7: the seventh day of creation, 251:5; 252:10; 270:5,6,7
  weeks after the resurrection, 268:1
number 8:
  eight saved in the Ark, 260C:2
  eternity represented by, 260C:3,4,6
  number 10: fullness of wisdom, 252:10; 264:5
  law signified by, 252A:6; 263A:4; 270:6,7
  number 12, 268:1
number 17: seven added to ten, 249:3; 250:3; 251:5; 252A:6; 270:7
number 40: four times ten, 252:10,11,12; 259:2; 263A:4; 270:3
number 50: meaning of, 252:8,10; 252:11,12; 254:5; 259:2; 260C:6; 270:3
number 120, 267:1; 268:1
number 153: 248:3,5; 249:3; 250:3; 251:3,5,7; 252:7,8,11; 252A:5,6; 259:2; 270:7
O
  obedience: cling to the one who redeemed you, 260B:3
  oil: Elijah’s miraculous flask, 239:3
  oil of the sinner, 266:1,7,8
  original sin: evil inheritance, 242A:3
P
  pagans: belief in Christ crucified, 234:3
  parable: barren fig tree, 254:3
  Paraclete, see Holy Spirit
  pardon: mercy, 259:4
  paschal lamb, 272B:3
  paschal mystery: fifty days, 252:10
  Passover:
    Jews and Christians celebrate, 272B:6
    look for lamb among goats and sheep, 272B:2
    numbers in celebration of, 272B:6
  patriarch: temporal dispensation, 252:10
  Paul, Saint:
    Saul, why are you persecuting me? 239:7; 260D:1; 263A:1
    seeking to know God, 261:3
  peace:
    heart: spiritual vacation, 270:5
    hope of, 263A:4
  penitents’ corner, 232:8
  Pentecost:
    Church speaking in tongues of all nations, 266:2; 267:3; 268:1; 269:1; 270:6; 271
    come only after Christ had gone, 270:2
    disciples as new wineskins, 266:2; 267:1; 272B:1
    feast of weeks, 270:6
    fiftieth day, 270:1,3; 272B:2
    giving of the law and, 272B:3
    Holy Spirit sent after ten days, 270:6
    hundred and twenty persons, 267:1; 268:1
    Jews celebrate, 272B:2
    law/Holy Spirit received on, 272B:4,6
    number 50, 259:2; 260C:6; 270:6
    these men are drunk..., 266:2; 267:2
    vigil of, 266:1-8
  perfection: God’s commandments, 249:3
  perseverance:
    leading good lives, 250:2
    salvation, 250:3
  Peter, Saint:
    asked three times: Do you love me? 253:1
    blessed for truth telling, 254:7
    both truthful and liar, 257:3
    crucified, 253:5
    failure at passion of Jesus, 231:1
Volume III/7

for telling of Christ’s passion, 270:2
future martyrdom indicated, 253:2
get behind me, Satan, 232:4; 270:2; 272B:1
his denial: fear of dying, 253:3
his tears: his rising again, 253:3
human affection for Christ, 270:2
love, 234:3
man who spoke the truth; also a liar, 254:7
not to know time of Christ’s return, 265:4,5
power given only from on high, 265D:6
rock (Rocky), 244:1; 265D:6 (and note 9); 270:2
running to Christ’s tomb, 245:1
sheep and lambs entrusted to, 253:2
vision of dish with unclean animals, 266:6
walking on the sea, 247:2
who do you say that I am? 236A:2,3
You are the Christ ..., 232:3,4; 234:3; 236A:4; 244:1; 265B:3; 270:2
Pharisees: justice of, 251:4
Philip (deacon) and the eunuch, 266:4-5
philosophers:
folly of wisdom of this world, 240:5
fools for calling themselves wise, 241:3
hope of happy life, 241:6
inexcusable not to glorify God, 241:1
on state of souls after death, 240:4
spoken to by God, through works of the world, 241:1
Photinian schism, 252:4
Photinus, 246:4
piety: love of unity, 269:3
pity: show to others and others will show to us, 259:3
Plato, 241:6-8, 242:7
pleasure: souls after death; delights of the flesh, 241:4
poor:
God often makes his servants beggars, 239:4
Son of God poor for our sake, 239:6
using wealth to help, 259:5
Porphyry, 241:6-8
possessions:
greed, 265C:1
held by the heart, 265C:1
power:
boasting about powers, 265D:7
clothed with power from on high, 265D:6
praise:
see also alleluia
praise God with voice and behavior, 254:8
prayer:
deliver us from evil, 256:1-2
every day we are petitioners, 256:1
preaching: witnessing, 260E:2
predestination: light and dark, 260D:1
pride:
almsgiving: welcoming strangers, 239:4
Holy Spirit repelled by, 270:6
no cures in the five arcades, 272B:3
Priscillianists, 238:2 (see note 5)
property:
coveting your neighbor’s, 252A:6
sold; shared; distribution made as needed, 252:3
prophets:
Church not foreseen by, 242A:1
wisdom dispensed in, 252:10
providence: transgressions against the law, 250:3
punishment: fear of, 270:4
purification: struggle for, 261:9
purity: pure of heart will see God, 261:4
Pythagoras, 241:6
R
religious conditions: pray/sing for the Easter octave, 260C:7
repentance:
if truly sorry, don’t go on doing it, 232:8
sadness according to God, 254:2
reprobation: predestination, 260D:1
rest: sabbath, 270:5
resurrection (of Christ):
apostles’ initial disbelief in, 245:1; 246:1
baptism into the risen Christ, 260A:4
belief that body had been stolen, 246:2
believers now are better than disciples then, 236:2; 236A:2
dead of the flesh was real, 265D:3
demonstrates newness of our life, 231:2
disciples believed what Mary told them, no more, 244:1
disciples’ unbelieving in, 231:1; 232:2
example for us, 263:1
faith based on, 233:1
faith distinguished from pagans and Jews, 234:3
female sex first to report, 232:2
good news brought to the disciples, 236A:4
gospel accounts do not contradict, 240:1
grace for us only if we lead good lives, 232:8
his resurrection is our renewal, 231:2
hope in, 261:1
John’s gospel, 246:6
looked for dead, he showed himself alive, 246:3
Manichee teaching, 265D:1-2
miracle, 272A
our justification, 236:1
people unwilling to believe, 264:6
power of God Almighty, 240:2
praise it rather than be astonished, 265:2
Sermons 230-272B
reading from all four gospels, 231:1; 232:1; 234:1; 236A:1; 239:1; 240:1; 246:1; 247:1
report of, regarded as nonsense, 232:2
sign: blessedness of future life, 233:1
sign: circumcision on eighth day, 231:2
two catches of fish, 249:2; 250:2; 252:1,2; 252A:1
undoing the penalty of sin: death, 240:3
variations in evangelists’ accounts, 235:1
wavering apostles as “Manichees,” 237:1-3
what in him rose again, 242A:1
why he wished his own flesh to rise again, 242A:1
women report the empty tomb, 232:2
resurrection (post-resurrection appearances): belief peculiar to Christians, 241:1
body will be without deformities, 240:3
Christ died/rose for our sake, 262:1
Church indicated, after our resurrection, 252A:2
conversation with Mary Magdalen, 246:3
disciples’ weakness as reason for, 264:2
do not touch me ..., 243:1; 244:2-4; 245:2-4; 246:4
doubting Thomas, 258:3
Emmaus, see Emmaus
faith in reality of his body, 242:12
faith, purpose of the forty days, 265:1
feed and see, 237:3
fitting for Christ to show his scars, 259:1
flesh: from embarrassment to embellishment, 240:3,5
forty days with the disciples, 263A:4;
264:5; 268:4; 270:3
Jesus ate to reassure disciples, 242:2
perfections of risen body, 241:7
philosophers on, 241:8
presence in the flesh necessary, 264:5
proof that he was risen with same body, 265B:1
Rabboni: only Christ could say Mary, 246:3
risen Christ thought to be a spirit, 237:1-4; 238:2
room entered through closed doors, 247:1-3
see only the man; don’t see the Word, 245:4
Thomas the unbelieving disciple, 245:2
understand that I am equal to the Father; do not touch, 245:2
why are you troubled/disturbed? 237:3; 238:2; 242:1; 244:2; 246:4; 265D:2; 268:4
why Jesus kept scars of his wounds, 242:3
wish that he remain in the flesh, 264:2
wish to confirm that his body was risen, 243:3
resurrection of the (human) body:
age of infants when they rise again, 242:4
attitudes toward the body, 242A:3
beauty in human body, 243:7
belief: death will die in those saved, 233:5
bodily functions, 243:8
body there, without bodily needs, 242A:3
Christ’s example, 260C:5
Christ’s will that we believe in, 243:3
compassion of Christ; allay doubts of people, 264:4
daily evidences, 242A:2
defects in the human body, 242:3
denied by some, 242A:1
earthly body in heaven, 242:5,7
functions of various parts of risen body, 243:3
holy days of Easter season; significance, 243:8
more perfect recognition of others, 243:5
private parts of body, 243:3
share in Christ’s glory, 263A:2
spirit weighed down with sin, 263A:2
spiritual bodies, 242:11
thoughts will only be good, honorable, true, 243:5
two catches of fish, 248:1
true beauty, 243:7
visibility of thoughts and entrails, 243:5
why Christ wished his own flesh to rise again, 242A:1
rich: angels, equality, and the rich, 255:7
ridicule: fear of, 260E:2
sadness:
forty days of Lent, 254:5
Jesus in the tomb, 231:2
Lord’s day, 260C:5
observer is one who does not sin, 270:5
seventh day, 260C:4
spiritual vacation, 270:5
donatist errors, 269:3
Jesus’ use of, 252:1
one thing seen; another understood, 272
safety:
fourty days of Lent, 254:5
Christ’s mercy does not pass away, 233:2
vain is the safety of men, 233:2
Jesus ate to reassure disciples, 242:2
justification, 242:2
Spirit of God, 242:2
true beauty, 243:7
visibility of thoughts and entrails, 243:5
why Christ wished his own flesh to rise again, 242A:1
rich: angels, equality, and the rich, 255:7
ridicule: fear of, 260E:2
sadness:
forty days of Lent, 254:5
Jesus in the tomb, 231:2
Lord’s day, 260C:5
observer is one who does not sin, 270:5
seventh day, 260C:4
spiritual vacation, 270:5
donatist errors, 269:3
Jesus’ use of, 252:1
one thing seen; another understood, 272
safety:
fourty days of Lent, 254:5
Christ’s mercy does not pass away, 233:2
vain is the safety of men, 233:2
sabbath:
Jesus in the tomb, 231:2
Lord’s day, 260C:5
observer is one who does not sin, 270:5
seventh day, 260C:4
spiritual vacation, 270:5
donatist errors, 269:3
Jesus’ use of, 252:1
one thing seen; another understood, 272
safety:
fourty days of Lent, 254:5
Christ’s mercy does not pass away, 233:2
vain is the safety of men, 233:2
saints:
Church working in, 267:4
number 153, 248:4; 250:3; 251:2
number seven added to ten, 252A:6
splendor and merits of, 259:2
sacraments:
Donatist errors, 269:3
Jesus’ use of, 252:1
one thing seen; another understood, 272
safety:
fourty days of Lent, 254:5
Christ’s mercy does not pass away, 233:2
vain is the safety of men, 233:2
saints:
Church working in, 267:4
number 153, 248:4; 250:3; 251:2
number seven added to ten, 252A:6
splendor and merits of, 259:2
salvation:
Jesus became flesh to save us, 233:4
men and beasts you will save, 233:2-3
repentance leading to, 254:2
whoever believes and is baptized, 233:1-5; 233:5
Samaria, 266:4; 269:2
sanctification: days of creation, 270:5
scandal: Church overwhelmed by, 270:7
schism:
no fear of (no.153), 252A:5
torn fishing nets, 248:2; 249:2; 250:2; 252:4,11; 252A:2; 270:7
scribes: justice of, 251:4
scripture, see Bible
Second Coming:
believers and nonbelievers, 235:4
Christ on his final coming, 265B:3
Christ will come as true man and as God, 265:2
disciples eager to know the time, 265:3,4
sight then, reward of faith now, 235:4
seed(s): marvels of nature, 247:2
seven, see number 7
sheep: Peter, feed my sheep, 253:2
shepherd: divides sheep from goats, 251:2
sick: cravings, 255:7
sight: reserved for end of the world, 260E:1
Simon the magician, 266:3,4
sin/sinners:
see also temptation
all belong to the man (Adam), 255:4
attitude toward minor sins, 261:10
cause of all evils, 240:3; 242A:3
Christ died for our sins, 236:1
daily remedies for, 261:10
deserving of punishment, 259:3
desire for a long, bad life, 232:8
entered this world by one man, 255:4
father of death, 231:2
flattery: oil of the sinner, 266:8
heavy hearts; children of men, 231:4,5,
(note 11)
incarnation: likeness of the flesh of sin, 233:4
Jesus came to bear our sins, 272B:2
leading bad lives; not in fact alive, 231:3
licking dirt of the earth, 231:4
oil of the sinner, 266:1,7-8
servile work on the sabbath, 270:5
sting of death, 256:2
struggle for purification, 261:9
singing:
leading good lives, 230
reasons for, 256:3
solemnity: celebration; name, 267:1
Son of God:
see also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Word of God
begotten without time, 244:4
expounding his begetting, 244:4
sons of men: distinction, 255:4
soul:
changeable, 241:2
immortal, 240:4
Plato on heavenly/earthly bodies, 241:8; 242:7
previous lives (philosophers on), 240:4; 241:4
speed: related to weight, 242:10
spirit: life, 256:3
spiritual life:
see also Christian life; heart
alive with the Holy Spirit, 267:4
Christ enters hearts in his divinity, 264:4
progress in goodness, 256:3
stars: bodies, 241:8
Stephen, Saint: Jews accused of opposing the Spirit, 252:4
stranger: welcome; Christ was a stranger, 239:4
supernumeraries, 252A:4

tears: Peter’s rising again, 253:3
temple of God: ruining, with drunkenness, 252:12
temporal goods: seeking material advantages in the Church, 252:6
temptation:
exhortation to infants, 260C:7,8
God is faithful, helps us not to perish, 256:3
standing up to, 260B:2
watch and pray, 256:1
ten commandments:
see also law; number 10
God helps fulfillment, with his Spirit, 248:5; 249:3; 251:7
number forty, 270:3
seven refer to man, 248:4; 250:3
tables of stone; finger of God, 249:3
three refer to love of God, 248:4; 250:3
tenner (wages), 252:11; 259:2
Theogenes, Bishop, 272B:2
Thomas, Saint, Apostle:
day which the Lord has made, 258:3
touch and see..., 239:7; 245:2
thoughts: heart not hidden after resurrection, 243:5
threshing floor:
chaff, 260C:6.8; 260D:2
grain and chaff, 252:5-6; 259:2
only grain of wheat (not to be thought), 260C:8
time:
ages in fleeting course of, 259:2
future events; rest, 252:12
number 40, 270:3
sevenfold course of, 260C:3
whole of, seen as forty days, 264:5
tongues, speaking in:
  Church prefigured in, 271
  Church unity seen in, 268:1
gift of the Spirit, 267:2,3; 269:1,2
presence of the Spirit, 270:6
speaking in all tongues; Pentecost, 266:2
unity in all languages, 265:12
torch, burning, 234:3 (and note 11)
tower of Babel, 271
tranquillity, see peace
Transfiguration: Christ, Moses, and Elijah, 252:10
transmigration of souls, 240:4
Trinity:
  equality of persons, 264:7
  Father and Son are co-eval, 265A:4
  number three, 259:2
truth:
  light as example of, 265A:5
  made true with divinity; with love, 263A:1
  set free by, 241:5
  U
ugliness:
  let this be a time of fertility, 254:5
  way (dung) to thing of beauty, 254:2
unbelief/unbelievers:
  reaction when Christ comes again, 235:4
  risen Christ’s wounds heal wound of unbelief, 242:3
understanding: faith required for, 272
ungodliness: wrath of God revealed against, 241:3
unity:
  see also tongues, speaking in charity in the church, 265:11
  Christ endowed the Church with, 268:4
  Christ as our head; we his body, 263A:2
  Christ’s gift of, 265:8
  Christ’s last will and testament, 265:7
  Church gathered from all tongues, 270:6
  commenced (fourfold) by Christ, 265:7,12;
  268:4
  false pretenses, 269:4
  fruit of the Spirit, 260A:3,4
sustained by fire of love, 271
one bread, one body, 272
one individual the sign of, 266:2
one soul and heart in the Lord, 260D:1
power of piety, 269:3
seek the coagulant, 265:6
speaking in tongues, 265:12; 268:1; 269:1
Spirit, bond of peace, 260:2
strength of every multitude, 272B:2
value: human race from one individual, 268:3
worldly setting self apart from, 269:4
universe: eternal (Porphyry), 241:7
values:
  bad human worth more than any animal, 255:3
  heart, eyes, 265C:1
  Virgin: the underworld, 241:5
  virgin birth:
    Christ’s coming different from ours, 233:4
    conceived by faith, 246:5
    miracle: no rational explanation, 247:2
wealth:
  trusting in God’s providence, 259:5
  unrest related to, 259:5
  your living a good life makes me rich, 232:8
weights, diversity of elements, 242:8,10
wife: glory of the husband, 265E:5
wineskins, 266:2; 267:1; 272B:1,7
winnowing: threshing floor, 252:6; 259:2
wisdom:
  see also philosophers
dispensed in a temporal manner, 252:10
disposes all things sweetly, 255:3
fear of the Lord, 248:5; 270:5
folly: wisdom of this world, 240:5; 241:3
gift of the Spirit, 250:3
submission of creature to creator, 252:10
totality of (number ten), 264:5
witness-bearing:
  Church to extend to ends of the earth, 265:6
  must proclaim what we have heard, 260E:1-2
  power given from on high, 265D:6
  woman:
    glory of man, 262:5
    disciples react to report of resurrection, 232:2
Word of God:
  see also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Son of God
crucified, 258:3
death not found in, 265D:3
  feeding angels, 237:4
  fishing nets, 248:2; 252:2
  fountain of water; eternal life, 239:1
  had nothing with which to die, 265D:7
  in the beginning ..., 261:2; 264:4
  one with the Father, 237:4

Value III/7
sent to this world; fishing analogy, 252:3
thinking of Jesus as, 264:2
use mind to believe, 265C:2
words cannot express reality, 237:4
words: power to explain, 237:4
works of mercy: Christ seen in strangers, 236:3
world:
  animated entities (Porphyry), 241:7; 242:11
  four-cornered; fourfold, 263A:4; 270:3
  God and the philosophers, 241:1
  Peter’s vision of the dish, 266:6
  possessed by the eyes, 265C:1
worldliness:
  celebrations, 252:12
  Church members, 270:7
  doing business with Donatists, 252:5
  gifts of the Spirit not received, 269:3
  hold selves in check, 263A:4
  sadness, 254:4
  separated from unity; Spirit, 269:4
  ship almost sunk by, 252:4
world-soul: Porphyry on, 241:7
wrongdoing:
  see also sin
  imitating the false faithful, 260:1
  warning not to imitate bad Christians, 251:2

Y
yoke: my yoke is easy, 272B:7
Index from

Sermons 273-305A

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 273-305A are on the Saints.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/8 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-060-5, 6 x 9 in., 368 pp., 1994

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:1 290, 2; 291, 2; 293, 5
2:21-22 291, 4
3:1 284, 5
3:5 284, 3
15:6 305A, 3
22:18 295, 5
49:27 279, 1; 9; 299C, 3

Exodus
3:13-14 293E, 2

Leviticus
19:18 278, 8

Numbers
31:18 291, 4

Deuteronomy
29:29 279, 10

2 Samuel
12:13 291, 5

2 Maccabees
7:27 300, 7

Job
1:21 299E, 5
14:4 293, 11
28:28 299D, 2

Psalms
1:2 303, 2
2:14 280, 2
2:4 295, 6; 299C, 1
2:8 295, 5
3:5 300, 4
3:6 305, 3
3:8 292, 4
4:4 296, 12
8:4 275, 1
10:3-4 298, 12
11:5 299D, 6
17:4 299, 8
17:7 279, 10
18:1 299E, 1
19:1-2 299B, 3
19:3-4 299B, 3
19:4 295, 1; 5; 298, 1; 299, 1, 12; 299C, 2
19:5 291, 6
19:4 299, 2
22:11 299D, 5
22:15 276, 3
27:4 284, 4
29:1 298, 1
30:6-7 284, 6
30:7 284, 6
31:19 284, 4
32:11 301, 8
34:2 284, 3; 283, 1; 274, 1; 275, 1
34:5 284, 1; 306B, 6
34:8 274, 1
34:12 297, 4, 9
34:13-14 297, 4
36:9 275, 2; 284, 1; 299D, 5; 299E, 3
37:35-36 301, 3
37:39 301, 1
42:5,11 305, 4
43:1 285, 7
43:1 274, 1
44:22 299F, 4, 5
45:5 298, 2
48:8 299D, 7
49:6 290, 7
50:1 295, 5
50:3 299, 4
51:8 292, 8
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51:9.3</td>
<td>278, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:2</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:5</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:5-6</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:10-11</td>
<td>277A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:4</td>
<td>279, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:5.11</td>
<td>279, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:11</td>
<td>292, 4; 299F, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:1</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:5</td>
<td>283, 1, 3, 4; 284, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:8</td>
<td>283, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:11</td>
<td>299, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:9</td>
<td>279, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:21</td>
<td>300, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70:3</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71:4-5</td>
<td>277A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71:5</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:8</td>
<td>288, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1</td>
<td>293D, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:1-3</td>
<td>301, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:13</td>
<td>301, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:16-17</td>
<td>301, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:25</td>
<td>301, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:9</td>
<td>293, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:9-10</td>
<td>302, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:1</td>
<td>279, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:11</td>
<td>290, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:13</td>
<td>284, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:19</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103:10-12</td>
<td>302, 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:13</td>
<td>280, 6; 294, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>289, 1; 290, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12-13</td>
<td>299, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:15</td>
<td>276, 4; 286, 3; 275, 3; 298, 3; 299E, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:14</td>
<td>299E, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:4</td>
<td>297, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127:1</td>
<td>297, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:17-18</td>
<td>293, 4; 293D, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>279, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:1</td>
<td>297, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>289, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>295, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5</td>
<td>299F, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:5.9</td>
<td>286, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td>279, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:1-2</td>
<td>304, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29</td>
<td>284, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>273, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>295, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>285, 6; 295, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>285, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>298, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>273, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>298, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>292, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>301A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>294, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>298, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-9</td>
<td>292, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>299E, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>277, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>283, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>277, 4, 6; 284, 4; 299, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>292, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:28</td>
<td>284, 5; 286, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:24</td>
<td>299, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:5</td>
<td>276, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13-14</td>
<td>293E, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:10</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:16</td>
<td>279, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:4</td>
<td>293, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:3</td>
<td>290, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:3-5</td>
<td>293D, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5-8</td>
<td>288, 2; 289, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:8</td>
<td>289, 4; 301, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>299C, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:3</td>
<td>279, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>274, 1; 279, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7-8</td>
<td>299, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:12</td>
<td>285, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:5</td>
<td>293B, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>296, 13; 299D, 7; 305A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2</td>
<td>279, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:7-8</td>
<td>279, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>295, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:13</td>
<td>284, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:37</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17-18</td>
<td>296, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:28</td>
<td>286, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>292, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III/8**
**New Testament**

**Matthew**

1:21  293, 11; 299, 6  
3:11  287, 1  
3:14  292, 4; 293, 12  
3:15  292, 4  
5:8  277, 15, 16; 288, 5  
5:12  302, 1  
5:14  289, 6; 295, 5  
5:14-16  289, 6  
5:17  300, 3  
5:37  292, 6  
6:12  278, 6, 9  
6:12  278, 10  
6:13  302, 16; 304, 2  
6:20  296, 11  
6:21  296, 7  
7:11  286, 5  
7:17  292, 5, 7  
10:19-20  276, 2  
10:20  275, 1; 277A, 2; 299, 3  
10:28  277, 6; 299A, 2  
10:30  273, 1  
10:33  277, 2  
11:11  287, 1; 288, 2; 289, 3; 290, 1; 292, 2; 293, 4; 6; 293A, 3; 293B, 1, 4; 293C, 1, 2; 293D, 1, 2, 3; 293E, 3  
11:28-29  279, 3  
11:29  279, 3, 4, 5  
12:35  292, 7  
13:17  288, 2; 293A, 2  
16:16  294, 9  
16:16-17  296, 2  
16:16-18  295, 1  
16:18  286, 2  
16:19  294, 2; 295, 2  
16:22  296, 2  
16:23  296, 2  
18:15-18  295, 2  
18:21  299E, 5  
19:17  297, 4; 301A, 3  
19:29  303, 2  
21:25-26  293D, 4  
21:27  293D, 4  
21:31  301A, 8  
22:37-40  278, 6  
22:39  278, 8  
22:40  301A, 6  
23:10  301A, 2  
23:26  277, 15  
23:30  305A, 4  
23:37  305A, 6  
23:39-32  305A, 3  
24:5  292, 6, 8  
24:13  302, 9  
24:45  292, 8  
25:21-23  285, 6

**Mark**

1:2  290, 1  
1:3  288, 2  
1:7  287, 3; 288, 2  
2:17  278, 2; 278, 5; 293, 11  
2:18  293, 6; 293D, 2  
2:22  299B, 3  
4:25  283, 2, 3  
8:35  303, 3  
10:17  302, 5  
10:21  301A, 5  
10:28  301A, 4  
10:38  299, 3  
12:31  299D, 3  
13:7-8  296, 10  
14:34  297, 3  
14:67  286, 2

**Luke**

1:13  291, 3  
1:18  290, 4; 291, 5; 293, 1; 293B, 4  
1:20  290, 4; 293, 1; 293B, 4  
1:28  291, 4; 6; 293B, 4  
1:34  290, 4; 291, 5; 293, 1; 293B, 4  
1:34-35  287, 4  
1:35  290, 4; 291, 5; 293, 1  
1:37  289, 1  
1:42  291, 4  
1:43  293D, 5  
1:53  290, 6, 7  
1:66  291, 2; 293B, 4  
2:14  299D, 4  
2:25-28-30  277, 17  
2:29-30  293A, 2  
3:6  277, 16  
3:10-11  302, 15  
3:11  299D, 3  
3:13  302, 15  
3:14  302, 15  
3:16  292, 8  
4:3.6.11  284, 5  
4:13  284, 5  
5:31  279, 11  
6:4-45  302, 10  
7:26  288, 2  
10:27  299D, 3; 301A, 6  
10:27.29  299D, 2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10-36-37</td>
<td>299D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>283, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4-5</td>
<td>299E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>299E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>273, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11-12</td>
<td>299F, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48-47</td>
<td>296, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>289, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28-33</td>
<td>301A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:33</td>
<td>301A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4-7</td>
<td>279, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td>293, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>299E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>299E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:25</td>
<td>299E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:29-31</td>
<td>299E, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10-12</td>
<td>290, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13</td>
<td>290, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td>290, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:22-23</td>
<td>279, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:2</td>
<td>293, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:3-04</td>
<td>293D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:3-08</td>
<td>293, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9-11</td>
<td>296, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:18</td>
<td>273, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:19</td>
<td>303, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>284, 6; 295, 3; 297, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:34</td>
<td>284, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61</td>
<td>284, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:61-62</td>
<td>285, 3; 286, 2; 295, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21</td>
<td>284, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td>278, 1; 279, 3; 284, 6; 302, 3; 305, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:42</td>
<td>285, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:43</td>
<td>285, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:39</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>277, 16; 287, 1; 288, 5; 289, 3; 293, 3, 5; 293A, 3; 293B, 2; 293C, 1; 305A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>288, 4; 293A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>277, 13; 288, 2; 290, 2; 291, 3; 293E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-4</td>
<td>293, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>199B, 1; 279, 7; 288, 1; 293, 5, 7; 293A, 3; 293D, 2; 293E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>299F, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6-7</td>
<td>299B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>289, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>296, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>292, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>290, 5; 291, 2; 292, 4; 293, 5; 293A, 5; 293A, 5; 293B, 2; 293B, 3; 293D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>293D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>289, 5; 292, 8; 293, 6; 293C, 2; 293D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20-23</td>
<td>293, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>289, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23</td>
<td>289, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21.26.15</td>
<td>293D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22-23</td>
<td>288, 2; 293, 2; 293A, 5; 293D, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>292, 4; 292B, 2; 293B, 2; 293C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-26</td>
<td>293A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>290, 1; 293, 6; 293D, 3; 293E, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>288, 1; 293B, 2; 293D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>293B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34</td>
<td>293B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>279, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19.21</td>
<td>305, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>294, 8, 9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>294, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>294, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>294, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>294, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>277, 2, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:26</td>
<td>293, 6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>284, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>288, 8; 293, 6; 293D, 3; 293E, 3; 293D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:30</td>
<td>293A, 6; 293B, 2; 393C, 1, 2; 293D, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:30.29</td>
<td>293C, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:31</td>
<td>292, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:36</td>
<td>294, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>290, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28-29</td>
<td>277, 2, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>294, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:33-35-36</td>
<td>293D, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:35</td>
<td>289, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:46</td>
<td>300, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51</td>
<td>305A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:7</td>
<td>302, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>302, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td>293D, 3; 294, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:56</td>
<td>300, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:58</td>
<td>285, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>293D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17-18</td>
<td>293E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:43</td>
<td>295, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:44</td>
<td>295, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:25</td>
<td>305, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>305, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>275, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:42-43</td>
<td>286, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>301, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:37</td>
<td>285, 3; 295, 3; 296, 1; 297, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:38</td>
<td>286, 2; 295, 3; 299, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td>301A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8-9</td>
<td>288, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td>293E, 1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>284, 3; 295, 8; 299F, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>299, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>4:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>5:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>5:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>5:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>5:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>7:23-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:31-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:35-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>8:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>9:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>9:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>10:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>10:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>10:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>10:10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>10:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>11:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>11:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>11:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>11:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>11:33-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>11:34-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>12:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>12:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>13:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>13:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>13:4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>13:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>14:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>16:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>2:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>4:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>6:9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>6:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>6:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>6:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>6:19-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>7:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>7:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>7:29-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>10:1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>12:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>12:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>12:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>12:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>13:9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:24-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>15:52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53</td>
<td>277, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-54</td>
<td>299, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-55</td>
<td>278, 5; 305A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:53-55</td>
<td>305A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:55-56</td>
<td>299, 9; 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:57</td>
<td>298, 5; 299B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-16</td>
<td>273, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-16</td>
<td>300, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>274, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>296, 7; 297, 11; 299C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>277, 8; 299, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>279, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>293C, 2; 293D, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-03</td>
<td>299, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>301A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:26-29</td>
<td>299C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>292, 6; 305A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>301, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>294, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>289, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>305, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>294, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>302, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>281, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>293B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>299B, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:29</td>
<td>277, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>294, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>299E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21-23</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>298, 3; 305A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24-25</td>
<td>305A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>276, 1; 283, 4; 284, 3; 297, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>293E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>288, 5; 279, 8; 292, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-8</td>
<td>304, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>281, 1; 288, 5; 293E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-9</td>
<td>293E, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>280, 4; 284, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>277, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-15</td>
<td>277, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>304, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>277, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>293A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>290, 2; 293, 5; 293E, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>304, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-4</td>
<td>296, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>293, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>293A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Thessalonians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>305A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>278, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>296, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>296, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>280, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>299, 10; 297, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-16</td>
<td>278, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>277, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>304, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>293, 7; 8; 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>294, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>299, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>292, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-9</td>
<td>299D, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-8</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>299D, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>299D, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>278, 1; 284, 3; 299C, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>299, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>301, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-2</td>
<td>299A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>297, 5; 298, 3; 299, 8; 299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>299, 3; 299B, 5; 299C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>298, 5; 299A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>298, 4; 5; 299, 4; 5; 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4-8</td>
<td>298, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>286, 5; 296, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>296, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-17</td>
<td>284, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>299E, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>289, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>302, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Peter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>299E, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>294, 6; 299B, 1; 304, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse</td>
<td>Pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>297, 10; 304, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>294, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>289, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>275, 1; 284, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 John**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>301, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>284, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>285, 6; 295, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>288, 5; 305A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>304, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jude**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>285, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Revelation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>277, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8.17</td>
<td>299B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>298, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:04</td>
<td>304, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>273, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17</td>
<td>293A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>299, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A

Abraham:
- Jesus, the creator of, 290:2
- people born from, 300:1
- rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-5
- washed feet of angels, 277:9
- we are children of Abraham, 305A:3
- willingness to sacrifice, 299E:5

Abstinence: fasting; fending off death, 305A:8

Accomplishments: boast in the Lord, 277A:2

Actions, as treasures, 292:7

Adam and Eve:
- Adam as robber, 293E:2
- Adam died, 299:12
- bite of the serpent, 294:13
- Christ and Adam, 289:2
- fault, not of nature, 294:14
- Mary and Eve, 289:2

Adultery:
- secret adulterer, 292:7
- woman taken in adultery, 302:14

Aemilius: martyr, 285:1, 4

Africa: Scillitan Martyrs, 299D:1 (and Note 1); 299E:1-5; 299F:1-5

Agnes, Saint, 273:6; 286:2

Ambrose, Saint:
- martyrs Gervase and Protase, 286:4

Ananias:
- baptism of Paul, 292:5; 295:6; 299C:3
- name means sheep, 299C:3
- Saul (Paul) and, 279:2, 4

Ancestry: forfeiting by degenerate behavior, 305A:5

Angel(s):
- See also Annunciation

Birth of John the Baptist, 293B:4
- glory and felicity of, 280:5
- human beings share characteristics of, 299E:2

Human equality in the resurrection, 277:4

John the Evangelist awed-struck by, 273:8

Peace on earth . . ., 299D:4

Spiritual bodies, 277:9

Word of God seen by, 293A:5

Words at the Ascension, 277:17

Anger: be angry and do not sin. . ., 296:12

Animals:
- death and, 297:3
- human senses compared with, 277:5
- human share in life of, 279:8
- human temporal life and, 299F:2

Annunciation:
- angel sent to Mary, 293B:4
- Hail, full of grace, 290:5; 291:4, 6
- How shall this come about. . ., 287:4; 290:4, 5; 291:5
- Mary’s response to angel, 290:4, 5; 291:5; 293:1

Antioch: basilica dedicated to the Maccabees, 300:6

Antiochus, King, 300:6, 7; 301:2, 3, 4

Apocalypse, see Revelation, Book of Apostasy:
- denying Christ; denied by Christ, 277:2; 299D:6

Apostles:
- See also John; Peter, etc.
- asked people to pray for them, 305A:10

Volume III/8
celebration of feasts of, 298:1
chosen, 295:2
great because disciples of Christ, 293:6
lamps, 289:6
make progress by loving them, 295:8
memorials, in Rome, 296:6
merits; sufferings, 299A:2
ordained by Peter, 298:1
preaching, See evangelization
rains of the sheep, 297:3; 298:1
speaking in tongues of all nations, 299B:3
applause, 301A:9
Augustine, Saint:
smallness of his congregation, 298:2
authorities:
bishops intervening with, 302:17
permit what pertains to them, 302:21
authority:
Pelagians, 294:2, 5, 17
Pilate and Jesus, 299E:2
supreme, 299E:2
avarice, see greed
B
babies:
See also baptism of infants
contract contagion of the ancient death (Cyprian), 294:19
contracted some guilt from first parents, 294:12
infants too need liberator, 293:10
Jesus as Savior of, 293:11
none is clean in Christ’s sight, 293:11
baptism:
Christ’s sheep, 295:5
Donatists, 292:2, 5, 6, 8
eternal life and non-baptized persons, 294:3
forgiveness of sin, 278:11
John’s, Christ’s, 293:3; 293B:3
offspring of baptized person is not born baptized, 294:16, 18
salvation, 292:4
source of John’s baptism, 293D:4
spiritual regeneration, 294:16
unless one is born again, . . . 294:8, 9, 16
with Holy Spirit and with fire, 293B:3
baptism of infants:
against the Pelagians, 294:1-20
assisted by another’s faith, 294:12
babies called “the faithful,” 294:14
before the eighth day, 294:19
Christ a benefit to unbaptized babies, 294:17
Cyprian on, 294:19
infants believe with faith of their parents, 294:17
Paul’s teaching, 294:4
perish if not baptized, 294:18
salvation, 294:2, 4-8
share in common life: believe by means of others, 294:12
whoever believes has eternal life, 294:14
Barnabas, Saint, 273:8
beauty:
eternal life, 302:7
made from our ugliness, 285:6
Benjamin:
blessing of, and Paul’s conversion, 279:1
birds: flight compared with human speed, 277:7
birthday: Church celebrates only two, 287:1; 290:2; 292:1
bishops:
congregation needs prayers of, 305A:10
feed Christ’s sheep, 296:13
intervention with authorities, 302:17
blasphemy: denying Christ, 299D:6
body and soul:
See also human body
closest to soul is your own flesh, 299D:5
healthy/perishable body weighs down soul, 277:6
life: soul remains after death, 301A:3
perishing body weighs down the soul, 277:4; 284:4; 299:9
soul can/cannot die, 273:1
soul dies when abandoned by God, 273:1
body of Christ, see Mystical Body
brazen serpent: figure of Christ, 294:13
Bulla Regia, 301A:7
business, honesty in, 302:16
C
Cacus, 273:6
Caesar: honor to, as Caesar, 299E:2

Sermons 273-305A
Sermons 273-305A

capital punishment: executioner, 302:13
Carthage, 301A:7
Castus: martyr, 285:1, 4
catechumens:
  sign of the cross, 301A:8;302:3
Catholic Church:
  beauty of, 285:6
  prayers for, include each member, 273:2
cause: choose a good and just cause, 275:1; 285:7
Cerberus, 273:6
change: anything visible is changeable, 301:8
charity:
  See also love
  help your neighbor reach God, 296:13
  our “food” in heaven, 299D:7
childbirth:
  rich and poor equally naked, 289:6
children:
  See also parent and child
  loved more than riches, 299E:5
  purpose of marriage, 278:9
children of God:
  power to become, 292:7
  what we shall be has not yet appeared, 305A:9
Christ, see Jesus Christ
Christian life:
  being put to death all day long, 299F:4-5
  charity; care for the sheep, 296:14
  example given by Christ, 304:3
  following Christ (other than as martyrs), 304:3
  imitate Christ, 294:15
  live as foreign expatriates, 301:8
  minds corrupted from chastity in Christ, 289:12
  not for the sake of temporal goods, 302:3
  prerogative to suffer temporal evils, 296:10
  providing rations at the right time, 292:8
  rich and poor, come and buy, 299F:3
  risen with Christ, 304:3
  victory through Christ, 297:6; 298:5
  ways of following Christ, 304:2
Christians:
  all are Christ’s disciples, 301A:2
  cross of Christ on forehead, 302:3
  moral social action, 302:19
Church:
  See also Mystical Body
  blood of the martyrs as seed, 286:3
  city set on a hill, 295:5
  divisions in the flock, 285:6
  dove, a name for, 295:2
  grows with persecution, 295:6
  grudging its profits, 296:15
  keys of the kingdom of heaven, 295:2
  mother of the Maccabees and, 301:1
  Peter as representing the whole, 295:2
  Peter: feed my sheep, 295:4-5
  right of sanctuary, 302:22
  seeded with blood of the martyrs, 301:1
  strength and weakness; Peter, 295:3
  treasures: the poor, 302:8
  unless you know yourself, 285:6
  woman who touched Christ’s hem, 299C:5
church and state:
  bishops intervening with authorities, 302:17
  circumcision:
    carnal act, 294:16
    spiritual (Cyprian), 294:19
  clergy: false distinction with laity, 301A:8
  clothing: necessities, 299D:3, 4, 7
  common good:
    city: stinking flames and smoke; 293B:5
  condemnation:
    word used for “judgment,” 294:14
    condemned man: lynching case, 302:13
    confession:
      See also witness-bearing believers ashamed to profess, 279:7
      mark of the just, 301:2
      sin out in the open, 295:2, 3
    congregation: prayers of the bishops needed, 305A:10
  conscience: after death, 301A:10
  consolation: our consolation abounds through Christ, 305A:5
  continence:
    against pleasure, 283:1
    gift of God, 283:2, 3
conversion/converts:
  Donatists; let them be admitted, . . ., 296:15
  forced, 296:15
  Paul’s example, 279:10

Volume III/8
corpse:
- insensible, 299E:2
- miracles of the martyrs, 275:3; 277:1
correction:
- correct the unruly . . ., 296:14
- God loves those he corrects, 296:12
courage:
- love; endurance, 299E:1
- martyrs' source not themselves, 285:1
- praying for, 305A:5
creation:
- all things made through the Word, 293:5; 293A:3; 293E:1; 299B:1
- in the beginning, the Word, 290:2
- rightly ordered by God, 301:4
criminals:
- obduracy of, 274
- right of sanctuary, 302:22
Crispina, 286:2
crooks take refuge from crooks, 302:22
cross:
- catechumens, 302:3
- Christ's lampstand, 289:6
- glory in nothing but the cross (Paul), 289:6
- mark; sacramental character, 302:3
- sign of the, 301A:8
crown of justice, 296:5; 297:5; 298:4, 5; 299:4, 5; 299A:2; 299B:5
crucifixion:
- See also under Jesus Christ
- three crosses, three causes, 285:2
- customs men, 302:15
Cyprian, Saint:
- on original sin, 294:19
- place of martyrdom, 305A:4
- trumpet of martyrs, 305A:2
dead:
- torments of the, 280:5
- worship by pagans, 273:3
dead:
- See also immortality; resurrection of
- Adam as source of, 293:8, 9
- Adam as source of, 293:8, 9
- bad man has to be mourned twice over, 302:18
- being put to death all day long, 299F:4-5
- bitter fear removed by bitter tears, 297:1
- bitterness passes to sweetness, 299E:2
carefree, if we have lived innocent life, 299E:1
- choose not to die forever, 279:9
- commencement of, 305A:8
- doing everything possible to postpone, 280:3
dread of dying, 302:4
- faith enough not to fear, 273:1
- fear not those who kill the body, 299E:2
- fear of dying eternally, 279:9
- hope in the Lord, 305:4
- human will shrinks from, 296:8
- lay down one's life for friend, 299:8
- life of soul and conscience remain, 301A:3
- mother of all necessities, 305A:7
- nature shrinks from, 297:3
- not having anything to live on, 299F:2
- original sin, 299:8
- reassurance of the risen Christ, 297:2
- rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-4
- sin as cause, 299:10
- souls troubled at approach of, 305:4
- swallowed up in victory, 278:5
- temporal and eternal compared, 279:9
- thoughts while waiting to suffer, 298:3
- threat of persecutors, 301A:5
- where death does not die, 301A:3
- where is your victory, 305A:7, 8
- why are you sad, my soul . . ., 305:4
denying Christ, 286:2; 299D:4, 6; 299F:2
- denied by Christ (if you deny Christ), 277:2
desires:
- God regards not what we have, but what we want, 301A:4
detachment:
- give up all possessions, 301A:5
- give up the whole world, 301A:4
whoever does not renounce all...  
301A:2
devil: 
See also serpent  
bad king serpent with 20,000 men,  
301A:2  
creeping as dragon, roaring as lion,  
305A:2  
defeated by the martyr Vincent, 275:1  
estimate, if heart is always in  
Christ’s keeping, 305A:2  
false martyrs and, 275:1  
first sinner, 294:15  
God brings good out of his  
wickedness, 301:4  
man made partner of his pride, 293E:2  
overcome by Agnes, 273:6  
overcome by Perpetua, 281:2  
overcoming machinations of, 274  
serpent (Eve’s) is not dead yet, 299:12  
souls grown cold under, 273:4  
temptation of Christ, 284:5  
temptation of the sick, 286:7  
threat re riches, 299D:4  
tormented by martyrdom of Vincent,  
275:2; 276:3  
trusting in, rather than in God, 278:2  
ultimate punishment due to, 299:12  
disbelief: rich man and Lazarus (parable),  
299E:4  
disciples: whoever does not renounce  
all... 301A:2  
discipline: God loves those he corrects,  
296:12  
doctor:  
needed by the sick, 278:2  
obey prescriptions of, 278:3  
submit to, until cured; 278:4  
Donatists, 283E:6; 292:8  
afraid for one’s property, 296:14  
birth of John the Baptist, 292:1  
case of one seeking admission, driven  
avay, 296:14, 15  
feed my sheep... 295:5  
conceptions about baptism, 292:2,  
5-6, 8  
penance, 296:15  
dove: name for “church”; 295:2  
dragon: trampled by Perpetua, 280:1  

E  

Elizabeth, Saint:  
barren woman conceives the herald,  
289:1, 2  
endurance:  
See also courage; martyrs; patience  
love and courage, 299E:1  
patience in martyr’s suffering, 277A:2  
power of, 305A:5  
Enoch: taken up bodily, 299:10, 11  
error: toleration, 294:20  
eternal life:  
See also heaven; salvation  
advance to love of, 302:2  
baptized babies counted among  
believers, 294:14, 17  
belief in Christ, 294:11  
cherish; change; be instructed, 302:9  
desire for heavenly joys, 304:4  
eye has not seen... 299D:1  
fix gaze on things that are not seen,  
296:7  
God himself, 302:7  
leave house or parents or... 303:2  
little done for the sake of, 302:4  
love it, as temporal life is cherished by  
its lovers, 302:2  
love things that last forever, 299A:2  
make light of temporal necessities,  
299D:6  
no place for the wicked in, 301:6  
no sickness, no death, 305A:8  
no works of necessity there, 305A:7  
one thing I have sought... 284:4  
outside kingdom of heaven, 294:2, 3,  
8  
Pelagian teaching, 294:5-6  
perpetual felicity, 282:1  
promised to be blessed and eternal,  
297:8  
reward; in persecution or in peace,  
303:2  
to live is Christ, to die is gain, 305A:5  
what good must I do, 301A:3  
work to be done for, 297:4, 8  
eternal punishment:  
choosing temporal life as cause, 297:8  
resurrection of judgment, 277:2  
rich man and Lazarus (parable),  
299E:4  
Eulogius (deacon): martyrdom, 273:3, 7  
evangelization:  
preach the word; press on... 299A:1,  
2

Volume III/8
their sound has gone forth. . ., 299:1, 2, 12; 299B:3
trampling on Christ’s feet, 299C:2
words gone to the ends of the earth, 298:1
Eve, see Adam and Eve
evil, see good and evil
executioner: capital punishment, 302:13
eyes:
see through intervals of space and place, 277:14
speed of rays of, 277:10
faith:
Abraham, 299E:5
belief in a man who was killed, 279:8
crown of justice due to those keeping, 299:5
doing battle, 274
fear of death and, 273:1
gift to believe and to suffer, 276:1
given by God, 283:4
grain that dies in the ground, 305:1
guarded and kept by Paul, 297:7
help in keeping, 299C:5
if you believed Moses, . . ., 300:5
Jesus’ dying and rising again, 279:9
kept by God’s mercy, 298:5
necessary for salvation, 294:11, 14
obtained mercy, that I should be faithful, 299B:5
Peter, I have prayed, . . ., 299C:5
ready for martyrdom, 303:2
tests of, other than persecution, 301A:5
tower and resources; planning, 301A:2
we haven’t seen him, yet we believe, 301A:1
whoever loses his life for my sake, . . ., 303:1
fall of man:
See also original sin
Eve and the serpent, 289:2
redemption and, 289:2
falsehood:
defeated, 296:14
truth against, 301A:2
fasting: fending off death, 305A:8
Faustinus: conversion of, 279:11, 12
fear: one with power to cast into gehenna, 299E:2
feet of Christ: evangelizers trample on, 2, 12; 299C:2
Felicity, St:
child born prematurely, 281:3
Christ victorious in, 281:1
martyrdom, 280:1, 4
perpetual felicity, 282:1
wife and mother, 282:2
food:
necessities, 299D:3, 4, 7
power and wisdom; living bread, 305A:7
forgiveness:
forgive our debtors, so God may forgive us, 278:13
quickly forgive those who wrong us, 278:14
forgiveness of sin:
blood of Jesus shed for, 294:11
indulging human body immoderately, 278:10, 14
never despair of pardon, 278:1; 299:6
promise of salvation and, 278:11
twin precepts of charity, 278:6
tree will: falling into sin, 278:2
friend: necessities of life, 299D:1-3, 6
Fructuosus, Bishop: martyrdom, 273:2, 6, 7
fruit of trees, 292:5, 7
future life:
glory compared with present sufferings, 277A:2
ignorance re life after death, 301:3
now, and after the resurrection, 280:5
what will not be there we can say, 305A:9
Gabriel (angel):
announces both John and Jesus, 290:2, 4; 291:1, 3
games: let the Christians not go, 301A:7
Gauls: burning of Rome, 296:9
gentle people: hear and rejoice, 274
Gervase: martyr, 286:1
discovered, 286:4 (note 9)
gifts: Father has good things for those who ask, 286:5
glory:
cross of Christ, 289:6
divine and eternal, 274
heavens proclaim work of his hands, 299B:3
pray in weakness, rejoice in glory, 305A:10
sufferings of the present time and, 296:6; 297:11
temporal sufferings and, 279:4
gluttony, 305A:8
goats, 285:5, 6

God:
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity; Wisdom
blessed are the heart-pure. . ., 277:16
exalted above the heavens, 279:3
fountain of life/light, 284:1
gifts from divine judgment, 285:3
as goldsmith, 301:4, 6
corporeal, 277:13, 18
inscrutable judgments, 294:7
needed to maintain good health, 278:3
not circumscribed by space and place, 277:14
omnipresence, 301A:1
soul dies when abandoned by, 273:1
unchangeable, 301:8
unity and trinity, 293:7
unseen by glorified bodies, 277:13
weakness of God is stronger than men, 305A:6
will, See will of God
wrath to be feared, 302:20
godless(-ness; ungodly):
confounded by Spirit speaking in martyrs, 276:2
envy glory of the saints, 273:5
frequently honored, 302:3
not passed on to eternal values, 301:3
place for, in future life, 301:6
sufferings now and in eternity, 275:2
worldly prosperity of, 301:7, 8
godliness: wisdom, 299D:2

gods:
martyrs not worshipped as, 273:7
ordinary Christians compared with, 273:6
pagan worship of the dead, 273:3
goldsmith, 301:4, 6
good and evil:
attribute evil to ourselves, 293D:5
bad tree, bad fruit, 292:7
Christian social action, 302:19
common to both the godly and ungodly, 302:3
deliver me from the evil man, 297:9, 11
deliver us from evil, 302:16

God makes good use of bad men, 301:4
man as source of evil, 297:9
overcome evil with good, 302:10
place of the wicked in this world, 301:4
raging against bad people, 302:10, 16, 18
treasures of the heart, 292:7
whoever loves iniquity hates his own soul, 299D:6
good fortune:
danger of being corrupted by, 301:8
good news:
strength to those who proclaim, 299:3
Good Samaritan: parable, 285D:2
Good Thief:
purchased paradise, 285:2
remember me. . ., 285:2
good works:
let them be rich in, 299D:4
soldiers, police, etc., 302:15
works of necessity, 305A:7
goodness:
attribute to God, 293D:5
honor: civil rulers, 299E:2

H
hope:
cursed is everyone who hopes in man, 295:5
trust not in your own powers, 283:3
human beings: Christ suffered for all, 304:2
human body:
See also body and soul bodies as prisons, 277:3
caring for, 277:4
eternal life earned for the flesh, 277:3
health; harmony of its elements, 277:4
indulging immoderately, 278:10, 14
mooring rope, 298:3
not submitting to soul’s bidding, 277:6
put on imperishability, 305A:7
sins against temple of God, 278:7
human condition:
Christ took on our weakness, 305:4
God made man upright, 284:4
immoderate self-indulgence, 278:14
more devastation: gospel preached but ignored, 296:11
shown in Christ’s life, 279:8
true/false happiness, 302:2
human life, see death; life
Sermons 273-305A

humility:
  following Christ, 304:3
  God exalts the humble, 279:6
  Jesus baptized by John, 292:3, 4
  John the Baptist, 289:3; 290:3
  lampstand, 289:6
  listening, 292:8
  Pharisee and the tax collector, 290:6, 7
  hungry: filled with good things... 290:6, 7

I

idolatry: extinguished by those willing to die, 296:5
ignorance: admission of, 301:3
immolation: St Paul, 299:3; 299A:2; 299B:5; 299C:4
immortality:
  See also resurrection of the body
  body puts on imperishability, 299:9, 10
  eternal life, 305A:8
  mortal bodies, 277:4
  our "clothes" in heaven, 299D:7
  promised to martyrs, 286:5
  impiety: rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3

Incarnation:
  Christ emptied himself... 281:1
  did not think it robbery... 293E:2
  form of a servant, 279:8; 288:5; 292:3; 293E:3; 304:3
  God willing to be born mortal, 273:9
  hold fast to the Word, 289:3
  Word became flesh,
  Word made flesh, 287:2; 291:2; 293:5; 293B:2; 299F:2
  Word received flesh, something to die from, 299F:2
  worthy one came to the unworthy, 293:5

infants, See babies; baptism of infants
interest: profitable return on master’s money, 279:12

J

Jacob: blessing his sons, 279:1
James (deacon), St: martyrdom, 284:1, 6
Jesus (son of Nun), 293:11
Jesus (the name): in Latin means savior, 299:6

See also Christian life; Church;
  Incarnation; Mystical Body; Son of God; Word of God
  Alpha and Omega, 299B:1
  ashamed of the name of, 279:8
  authority to lay down his life, 305:2-3
  baptism by John; humility, 292:3, 4
  baptism means salvation, 292:4
  “before Abraham I am,” 290:2
  believers ashamed to confess, 279:7
  both Word and voice, 293D:3
  Christ in Paul was enduring sufferings, 299C:4
  conversion of Faustinus, 279:11, 12
  crucifixion:
    Jews dismissed him... 285:2
    Jews given reassurance of pardon, 301A:4
    robber who scoffed, 285:2
    robbers on either side, 285:2
    tearing of the veil, 293:2
    days (growing longer) of his birth, 289:5
    death of John the Baptist and, 293B:3
    denying Christ, 277:2; 286:2; 299D:4, 6; 299F:2
    departed visible, will return visible, 277:17
    did not love his life in this age, 305:2
    died for Peter; Peter later died for him, 286:2
    as doctor, 278:2
    done to death in the flesh... 294:16
    exalted on the cross, 288:5
    example for martyrs, 273:1
    flesh, just like ours, 273:9
    foretold by the prophets, 289:3
    from his fullness we have all received, 289:5
    gentle and humble of heart, 274; 279:3
    glory of martyrs, 305A:2
    good odor of Christ, 273:5
    greater than John, 293E:1
    grew, raised up on the cross, 293A:6; 293C:1
    hand of the Lord, 291:2
    handed over by Judas and by God, 301:5
    heretics cloaked in name of, 292:6
    humanity, 279:8
    humility, 304:3
    “if you are the Christ”... 293:4
    ignorance re woman who touched his hem, 299C:5
imitated by the martyrs, 280:6
John and, see John the Baptist, Saint Jordan river; start of his public work,
288:2
judge on judgment day, 299:4
king of martyrs, 276:1
life through Christ, 293:9
martyrs as witnesses to, 299E:1
mediator, not as God but as man, 293:7
mortality in Christ, 294:13
name: Savior, 293:11
no benefit to unbelievers, 294:17
nobody has gone up to heaven. . ., 294:9, 10
nothing/nobody more necessary than, 299D:6
obedience, even to death on a cross, 304:3
omnipotence; patience, 304:3
our one advocate, 285:5
passion and death:
dying as an act of power, 300:4
everything given to us, 299B:1
“Father, forgive them” . . ., 279:3;
284:6; 302:3
foretold to his disciples, 296:2
given vinegar to drink, 300:4
he gave up his spirit, 300:4
humility most apparent on the cross,
279:3
I myself went to sleep, 305:3
“I thirst,” 300:4
“it is accomplished,” 300:4
“let this cup pass”. . ., 296:8; 299:8, 9
must be lifted up. . ., 294:11, 13
Old Testament prophecy fulfilled,
300:3, 4
Pilate being cured by Christ, 299E:2
profit for those following him, 304:2
Son handed over by the Father, 301:5
soul troubled as death approaches,
305:2, 4
“today you shall be with me” . . .,
285:2
veil of temple torn away, 300:4
without fault, he bore our penalty,
299:8
person of the Word, 288:5
post-resurrection appearances only to
disciples, 284:6
pre-Christian witnesses, 300:1
prince of martyrs, 299E:2
proclaiming the Word is voice of the
Word, 288:4
rations for his beasts, 292:8
resurrection:
authority to take life up again, 305:3
Christ openly proclaimed after rising,
300:5
false witnesses, 299E:4
ignored, 299E:4
reassurance re death, 297:2
salvation in humility of, 285:4
seeing Christ in his humanity, 277:17
seeing him with eyes of the flesh,
301A:1
shed his blood; pledged us to do the
same, 299:3
shepherd, 285:5
silent re his (concealed) divinity,
299:4
simultaneously in heaven and on
earth, 294:9
sinless, 294:11
Son of God on earth; Son of Man in
heaven, 294:9
sufferings/consolations abound in us,
305A:5
teaching during his temptation; his
passion, 299E:2
testimonials given by John the Baptist,
290:1
thinking of him as man, 293E:3
triple temptation, 284:5
ture God, true man, 305:2
true light, enlightening every man. . .,
289:4
unity; one person, 294:9
verbs “was, is and will” and, 293E:2
we must not keep quiet about, 299B:3
“Who touched me?” [we should be the
one. . .], 299C:5
“whoever has seen me has seen the
Father,” 288:5
wholly man and wholly God, 293:7
wished to be baptized by a man, 292:4
witness to himself (re John the
Baptist), 293:4
Word preceded John (the voice), 288:4
Jews:
apostles give reassurance of pardon,
301A:4
confusion over John, 293D:4
forfeited their ancestry (Abraham),
305A:3
many believed in Christ, 289:3
not daring to confess Jesus publicly,
286:1
Sermons 273-305A

rejected Christ, 301A:1
veil placed over their hearts, 300:3
John, Saint, Apostle:
awe-struck by angel, 273:8
friendship of high priest, 299C:1
prepared for martyrdom, 296:5
John the Baptist, Saint:
admirer John; Christ profits, 291:1
angel’s announcement, 291:1
announced by angel, 291:1
as the Christ, 288:2; 289:3, 4; 292:2
baptism: where is it from. . ., 293:4
Behold the lamb of God. . ., 293B:2
birth announced by angel, 293B:4
birth; comparisons with Christ’s birth,
287:3; 4; 293:1; 293A:2; 293C:1
birthday of (feast), 279:13; 287:1-4;
288:1-5; 289:1-6; 290:1-7;
291:1-6; 292:1-8; 293:1;
293A:1-6; 293B:1-5; 293C:1-2;
293D:1-5
born with sin, 293:12
boundary between Old/New Testaments, 293:2
burning and shining lamp, 293D:1
compared with Christ, 289:1
day of birth; daylight diminishing,
288:5; 289:5; 293:1; 293A:6;
293D:5
death; comparison with Christ’s,
293B:3
diminished (beheaded), 293A:6;
293C:1
disciple of Christ, in secret, 293D:3
disciples of, 292:2; 293:6; 293D:2
feast: superstitious midsummer rituals,
293B:5
friend of the bridegroom, 288:2;
292:8; 293A:4; 293B:5; 293D:3
greatness of, 287:1; 288:2; 289:5;
292:2; 293A:4
greeted Christ in the womb, 293:12
he must grow, I must diminish, 288:5;
293A:6; 293B:2; 293C:1; 293D:5
herald already leaping in the womb,
289:5
humility, 289:3; 290:3; 293:3
I am not the Christ, 289:5; 292:2;
293:3; 293D:1
I ought to be baptized by you. . .,
293:12
imitation of, 293D:5
lamp bearing witness to the day,
293:4; 293D:1; 2
lamp, compared with light (Christ),
289:4, 5, 6
measure of a man, 293A:3
miraculous birth, 289:1
more than a prophet, 288:2
named by Zachary, 293B:4
none has arisen greater than, 288:2;
289:3; 290:1; 291:2, 293D:1, 3;
293:4, 6; 293A:3; 293B:1, 4;
293C:1, 2
not one of Christ’s disciples, 292:2;
293D:2
not worthy to undo. . ., 290:1, 3;
293:6; 293A:4; 293D:3; 293E:1,
3
one coming after, greater than me,
293D:3
one who is less, is greater. . ., 293D:1;
3
outsider believed as witness, 293:6
plays role of all voices, 288:5
preaching humility and repentance,
293A:4
prepare the way. . ., 289:3; 293:3
purpose, 293A:3
reason for honoring birthday of, 288:1
sign and sacrament of all voices,
288:4
special role of, 288:1
superior over all other prophets,
293A:2
testimonials given by Christ, 290:1
testimony to the Incarnation, 293:6
unique merit of, 293A:2
voice before the Word, 293A:5
voice in service of Christ the Word,
288:1, 4; 293:3; 293B:2; 293C:1
voice of one crying, 288:2; 289:3;
290:4; 292:4; 293:2; 293A:5;
293B:2; 293C:1; 293D:2
what will this child be. . ., 291:2
who are you. . ., 289:3
witness to Christ, 289:5; 290:3
witness to the light, 289:4; 293B:3
Zachary and Elizabeth, 291:3
Jordan river, 288:2
Judas:
baptisms by, 295:5
betrayed Christ, 299B:3; 301:5
devil and, 284:5
judging others:
leave what you can’t see to God,
296:14
Pharisee and the tax collector, 290:7
Judgment Day:

See also crown of justice; resurrection of the body; Second Coming of justice, 297:5
do we really want Christ to come? 299:4
eternal life; eternal fire, 277:2
God (Jesus) will come openly, 299:4
heaven or hell; no middle place, 294:3
living and dead to be judged, 294:3
resurrection of life; -of judgment, 277:2
whoever does not believe . . ., 294:14
why of suffering, not what, 285:2
Juno, 273:6
Jupiter, 273:3, 8
justice:
form of humility, 292:4
heart believing unto, 299F:2
human attributes, without justice, 290:7
social order, 302:19
victory of martyrs, 275:1
justification:
belief in one who justifies, 292:6
born again, 294:16

K
kindness: Good Samaritan, 299D:2

L
ladder: martyr Perpetua, 280:1
laity:
false distinction with clergy, 301A:8
members of Christ’s body, 301A:8
lampstand: glory in, 289:6
language; word and voice, 288:3
last things:
understanding of the, 301:8
Latin language; Jesus coined salvare and salvator, 299:6
Lawrence, Saint:
birthday of, 302:1-22; 303:1-2;
304:1-4; 305:1-4; 305A:1-10
character of, 305A:1
cooked; turn me over . . ., 303:1
day of triumph, 304:1
devotion to, 305A:1
flames of charity, 304:4
imitation of Christ, 304:1
let us follow in his footsteps, 303:2
office of deacon, 304:1
powerful merits of, 302:1
praised by authorities, 302:12
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-4
short-lived, but sweet, 280:3
temporal; tyrannous power of love, 280:4
time: conception, birth, growth, etc., 277:11
to be loved; to be chosen, 297:4, 8
troubles, evils in, 297:8
ugliness in, 302:2
value of deferment of death, 280:3
whoever loves his life in this age . . ., 305:2
years subtracted from lifespan, 299E:1

light:
eternal, 299D:5
fountain of life, 299E:3
lips: confession made unto salvation, 299F:2
listening: humility, 292:8
Lord’s prayer; sins of exceeding the limits, 278:10
love:
all things work together for good, 299E:5
choose innocent life, 299E:1
courage; endurance, 299E:1
earthly loves, nothing compared to
God’s love, 301A:6
genuine charity, 304:4
God’s gift, 297:1
love that which you reach by loving
(God), 299E:1
love yourself by loving the Lord,
301A:6
make progress by loving martyrs,
295:8
only question: Do you love me? 296:3
Peter: more than these... 299B:1
Peter’s example: right way, wrong
way, 296:1
proof: imitating his example, 304:2
shown by loving God’s profits, 296:13
spirit of God, 283:3
twin precepts for forgiveness of sins,
278:6
two commandments, 299D:2; 301A:6
wound of is health-giving, 298:2
love of neighbor, 299D:2; 301A:6
self-love as obstacle to, 278:8
lovers: chaste and unchaste, 299E:1
lust: triumph over tyrannous power of,
280:4
lynching case, 302:13, 15

M

Maccabees:
basilica in Antioch, 300:6
Christian martyrs, 300:2-5
imitate them in your heart, 300:6
martyrs, 300:1-7; 301:1-9; 301A:1-9
mother of the seven martyrs, 300:6-7
mother’s wonderful example, 301:1
mother’s words to youngest son, 300:6
suffered for the law of Moses, 300:2
theater spectacles and, 301A:7
three boys in furnace (Daniel) and, 
286:6; 301:1
Marianus, Saint: martyrdom, 284:1-2, 6
marriage:
friendship, 299D:1
having children as purpose of, 278:9
immoderate enjoyment in, 278:9, 10
Marseilles, martyrs of, 283:1-4
martyrdom:
bore, not loved, 299:8
crown received for willingness, 296:5
devoting one’s life to God, 305A:2
earned by despising the world, 299B:1
exhortation: renounce everything... 
301A:5
feed my sheep (by not refusing to die), 
296:3-4
gift of God, 286:1
given by God; not to be sought, 286:5
in fact, or in fellow feeling, 296:5
Pain of the sickbed, 286:7
Paul’s sacrifice to God, 299A:2
take away light/life; still have eternal
light/life, 299D:5
martyrs:
See also Maccabees; also names of
particular martyrs
advocates for us, 285:5
attitudes toward compared, 280:2
blood owed to Christ, 299:3
bodies in Rome, 296:6
celebrate; imitate their holiness,
299A:1
Christ the strength of, 299E:1
Church commends itself to their
prayers, 284:5; 297:3
confessing Christ with greatest
constancy, 300:5
constancy and patience come from
God, 277A:2
delight in spectacle of, 280:2
did not despise their bodies, 277:3
distinguished by cause, not
punishment, 275:1
dying for the truth (Peter and Paul), 
295:1
elocution cannot sufficiently praise, 
284:1
endurance by the Lord’s indwelling,
276:1
edure pain and death for sake of
Christ, 280:4
eternal life earned for the flesh, 277:3
faithful, 294:1
false, 275:1
feasts instituted for faith to imitate,
305A:1
feasts of the apostles and, 298:1
follow by imitating, 302:1

Sermons 273-305A
Sermons 273-305A

following Christ’s example, 273:1; 304:2
following them, in affection, 280:6
fruits of dying, 299E:1
gift to endure suffering, 276:1
glory even in this world, 276:4
God’s care for mortal remains of, 275:3; 276:4
good odor of Christ, 273:5
grace not only to believe but to suffer, 283:4; 284:3
Greek word for “witnesses”, 299F:1
hate if they are themselves worshipped, 273:8
honor for, 285:7
huge crops from grain sown by, 305:1
human, just like us, 273:9
imitate Christ in laying down lives, 280:6
imitation, 285:4; 302:9
imitation: choose a just cause, 283:4; 285:7
immortality promised to those imitating, 286:5
Jesus teaches submission, 299E:2
lovers of eternal life, 302:7
made by cause, not by punishment, 285:2
made victorious by justice, 275:1
make progress by loving them, 295:8
Marseilles, 283:1-4
members of body of Christ, 280:6
memorials of, 305A:4
motivation, 275:1; 299D:1
not worshipped as gods, 273:7
overcoming with help of the Lord, 275:1
patience a gift from God, 284:1, 3
patience; obduracy of criminals and, 274
persons of all ages, either sex, 305A:2
persuasion of vanity (judge), 299F:2
praise by civil authorities, 302:12
pray that we imitate their virtues, 299F:4
present life exchanged for life, 280:3
pre-Christian, 300:1
proclaimed Christ more effectively after death, 286:3
Reading the Passions of, 301A:7
rejoicing and glorifying God in, 273:2
reward in heaven, 302:1
some feasts more important than others, 305A:1-10
Spirit of the Father speaks in, 275:1; 276:2
spiritual delights; not feeling bodily pains, 280:4
suffer for Christ’s sake, 284:3
sweetness of this world and, 297:3
temporal benefits through prayers of, 302:1
their blood as seed for the Church, 286:3; 301:1
told: confess Christ and you will be punished, 299F:3
tortured, they still conquer, 299D:5
venerate martyrs; worship their God, 273:9
victory by the grace of God, 305A:2
virtue of patience, 283:1
who shall separate us from charity of Christ? 299D:5
witnesses, even after death, 286:1
witnesses to truth of another life, 299F:1
women as weaker sex, 282:2, 3
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
See also Annunciation
Elizabeth compared with, 289:2
hungry he has filled with good things. . ., 290:6
Jesus as the hidden Word, 289:3
motherhood a matter of grace, 291:6
virgin’s vow accepted, 291:5
Mary (mother of St Marianus), 284:2
Mass: martyrs’ names in, 284:5
mediation:
human race reconciled with God, 293:8
Jesus wholly man, wholly God, 293:7
medicine:
causes pain for a time, 278:5
prescription often painful, 278:4
Mercury, 273:3, 8
mercy:
Jesus looked at Peter, 284:6
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-4
woman taken in adultery, 302:14
merit:
apostles/martyrs, 299A:2
God’s gift, 299B:5; 299C:5
grace and, 293:8
our merits are God’s gifts, 297:6; 298:5
Messiah:
how was he going to come? 293:5
Jews clothed in confusion, 293:4

Volume III/8
Zachary prayed for the Christ, 291:3
Milan: remains of Gervase and Protase discovered, 286:4
miracles:
  God bearing witness to departed saints, 275:3
  martyrs Gervase and Protase, 286:4
  mortal remains of the martyr Vincent, 275:3
mob violence, 302:11
money: what lovers of endure for, 299F:5
Moses:
dying for Moses means dying for Christ, 300:5
  I am who am, 293E:2
  if you believed Moses..., 300:5
  rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:4
  savior, 293:11
  serpent lifted up by, 294:11, 13
mothers:
  Elizabeth and Mary compared, 290:4
  Mary, mother of St Marianus, 284:2
murder: lynching case, 302:13
Mystical Body:
  See also Church
  head preceded; waiting for members to follow, 286:5
  lay members, 301A:8
  members are one with the head, 294:10
  prayers for the whole body, 273:2
  we, like the martyrs, are members, 280:6
  whole Christ: head and members, 299C:2; 305A:6

N
nakedness: we do not wish to be stripped..., 299:9
nature: vitiated by the serpent, 294:14
Nebuchadnezzar, 286:6; 301:2
necessities:
  denying Christ for, 299D:6
  despised by martyrs, 299D:5
  godliness and sufficiency, 299D:3, 7
  temporal life, 305A:7
  well-being and friends, 299D:1-3
  necessity: Paul remaining in this life, 305A:6
needs: treasure of Christians: the poor, 302:8
neighbor(s):
  command to love, 301A:6
  each is neighbor to every other, 299D:2
  Good Samaritan, 299D:2
  Nemesianus, 286:2
  Neptune, 273:3
  Nero; burning of Rome, 296:9
New Testament:
  represented by John the Baptist, 293:2
  unveiling of the Old, 300:3
  Nicodemus, 294:9, 13
  North Wind, 273:4

O
obedience:
  Abraham, 299E:5
  bear with what God wants of us, 296:8
  odor: good odor of Christ, 273:5
Old Testament:
  being made void in Christ, 300:3
  fulfilled in Christ, 300:3
  Maccabees anticipated the name Christian, 300:2
  name of Christ veiled in, 300:5
  veiling of the New, 300:3
original justice:
  human nature made without fault, 299:8
  state of health, 278:3
original sin:
  Adam, in whom all sinned, 294:15
  Adam’s progeny, a matter of nature, 294:14
  cause that we all die, 299:8
  Cyprian on, 294:19
  devil as first sinner, 294:15
  entered the world through Adam, 293:8
  nature vitiated by, 294:14
  origin of all our ills, 278:2
  passed over into all men, 293:12
  Pelagian view, 294:15, 16, 18

P
pagans:
  authority over Christians, 279:12
  Christians as a force among, 302:19
  worship of the dead, 273:3
painter, 301:4
pain:
temporal; eternal fire, 283:1
threat, 283:1
palm: emblem of victory, 275:2
parables: Good Samaritan, 299D:2
pardon, see forgiveness of sin
parent and child, 299D:1
fatherly loving-kindness, 302:1
mother of the Maccabees, 301:1
passing on, 301:8
pastoral work: correct the unruly... 296:14
patience:
against pains, 283:1
enduring bad things bravely, 276:1
gift of God, 283:2, 3, 4
God the source of, 283:1, 3, 4; 284:3
martyrs, 274
martyr’s patience comes from God, 277A:2
obstinate insensitivity and, 283:4
perfect gift. ... 284:1
praise for martyrs, 284:3
preceded by good cause, 283:4
putting up with every evil, 304:4
resources; building a tower, 301A:2
unchangeable fount, 284:1
will of God, 296:8
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
Ananias and, 279:2; 292:5; 295:6; 299C:3
belief out of necessity, 279:10
both sheep and shepherd, 299C:3
brought to Ananias, 279:2, 4
calling of, 279:1-14
Christ did not grow gentle with, 279:4
Christ in Paul was enduring
sufferings, 299C:4
conversion, 279:10
crown of justice, 297:5; 298:4, 5; 299:3, 6; 299A:2; 299C:5
delivered from his evil self, 297:10
foremost sinner, 299:6
granted to believe in and die for Christ, 297:6
groaning under load of perishing body, 299:9
hem of Christ’s garment, 299C:5
horrified at being taken for god, 273:8
I have fought the good fight... 299:5, 5; 299A:2; 299B:5; 299C:4, 5
I obtained mercy... 299:6
I worked harder than all... 299B:5; 299C:4
immolated, 299:3, 8; 299A:2; 299B:5; 299C:4
jealous (of the serpent) of his followers, 299:12
last joins the first (Peter), 299:2;
299C:1
least of the apostles, 299B:5; 299C:5
longing to be with Christ, 298:3
love for eternal things, 299C:3
love; martyrdom, 296:5
martyrdom celebrated with Peter, 299:2
martyrdom on same day (not year) as Peter, 299A:1
name of humility, 279:5
name: Saul for pride; Paul for humility, 299B:4
not worthy to be called apostle, 297:5; 298:4; 299B:5; 299C:4
persecutor of Christ, made into preacher of Christ, 278:1; 295:6; 299C:3
preacher; dividing the food, 299C:3
prophetic blessing of Benjamin, 279:1
ravenous wolf, 299C:3
read him and love him, 298:2
Saul; see also under Saul (later Paul)
sees his death as sacrifice, 299:3
significance of the name, 279:5
Stephen and, see Stephen, Saint
struck blind, 279:1
struck down; converted, 299B:4
sufferings of, 295:7; 299C:3
unnerving to die, 299:9
weary, he remains on our account, 305A:5, 6
what he must suffer... 297:4
willing/unwilling to die, 299:8
word means “little”, 295:7; 299C:4
peace:
angels’ message, 299D:4
eternal, 299D:7
Pelagians:
baptism of infants, 294:1, 2
on cause of death, 299:11-12
kingdom of heaven; eternal life, 294:5-6
on original sin, 294:15, 16, 18
Pentecost:
disciples receive Holy Spirit, 299B:2-3

Volume III/8
Sermons 273-305A

filled with the Holy Spirit, 301A:4
Peter shown to be first of the apostles, 299B:2
people of God:
Christian before Christ, 300:1
tested by Antiochus, 301:4
perfection: God everything in everyone, 293C:2
Perpetua, Saint:
Christ victorious in, 281:1
devil overcome by, 281:2
devil tempts father of, 281:2
dragon trampled on by, 280:1
martyrdom, 280:1, 4
perpetual felicity, 282:1
wife, 282:2
persecution:
Antiochus, 300:6
cannot kill those who remain faithful, 299D:5
Christians renounced their possessions, 301A:4
Church grows with, 295:6
contrasts in, 303:2
do not bring us into temptation, 304:2
good odor of the saints, 273:5
hidden, in any period, 305A:2
lovers of the good, who can hurt you, 304:4
never wanting for Christians, 305A:5
Paul, weary of living, 305A:5
soldering; constancy, 303:2
threats used, 301A:5
perseverance:
cherish eternal life, 302:9
simplicity, 301A:2
Peter, Saint:
before/after Pentecost, 284:6
bishops join in feeding Christ’s sheep, 296:13
boasting: he would lay down his life, 285:3
buried in Rome, 296:12
Christ foretold his denial; his death, 296:3; 299:7
Church represented by, 295:2
denial (threefold) of Christ, 286:2;
296:2
denied Christ when he was feeble, 299:7
do you love me? (three times), 285:3;
295:4; 296:3, 4; 299:7; 299A:1; 299B:1
drank from the rock, Christ, 295:1
fear and love compared, 297:1
feed my sheep, 285:5, 7; 296:1, 3-4,
12; 299:7; 299A:1; 299B:2
First and Last apostles, 299B:1
First joins the Last (Paul), 299:2;
299C:1
get behind me, Satan, . . ., 296:2
hurt when asked if he loved Jesus, 299B:1
I have prayed that your faith fail not, 299C:5
keys of the kingdom of heaven, 295:2
looked at by Jesus, with mercy, 284:6
love confesses, what fear denied, 299B:1
loved Christ when in good health, 299:7
martyr for Christ, 286:2
martyrdom borne, not loved, 299:8
martyrdom celebrated with Paul, 299:2
martyrdom for sheep committed to him, 295:5
martyrdom on same day (not year) as Paul, 299A:1
martyred to preserve his sheep, 296:4
memorial meant to stir us to love, 296:7
merit: he fed the Lord’s sheep, 299A:1
mysteries of grace and judgment, 285:3
only apostle to walk on the sea, 299C:1
Pentecost; first of the apostles, 299B:2
presumptuous self-reliance, 285:3;
286:2; 295:3; 296:2; 299B:1
pre-eminence in the Church, 295:2
promised more than he could fulfill, 296:1
read him and love him, 298:2
rock (“petra”), 295:1
sheep (Church) to be fed, 295:4-5
shepherd, 285:5
strength and weakness; the Church, 295:3
sufferings of, 295:7
taught how to love, 296:3
told that he will be reluctant to die, 297:2
upon this rock, . . ., 295:1
we have left everything, . . ., 301A:4
wept over his presumption, 285:6;
295:3
when you are old another will gird you. . ., 296:8; 297:2, 3; 299:7, 8; 299B:2
willing/unwilling to die, 299:8
witnessing to Christ, 286:2
not worshipped, 273:7
would follow Christ rather than die, 297:3
Peter and Paul, Saints, Feast of,
298:1-5; 299:1-12; 299A:1-2;
299B:1-5; 299C:1-5
Pharisee: prayer; the tax collector, 290:6, 7
Philip, Saint: show us the Father. . .,
288:5
piety:
Abraham, 299E:5
rich man and Lazarus (parable),
299E:3
Pilate: authority to put to death, 299E:2
pity: human unworthiness, 293:5
pleasure:
continence against, 283:1
promise, 283:1
Pluto, 273:3
policemen, 302:15
polytheism: dead worshipped, become
gods, 273:3
poor:
bones of the rich and, 289:6
health and, 277:4
not having anything to live on, 299E:2
treasures of the Church (Lawrence),
302:8; 303:1
possessions:
greed overcome, 301A:2
how to possess your wealth, 299E:5
persecuted Christians; 301A:4
taking to underworld, 301A:3
you haven’t given up all, 301A:5
poverty:
big desires, 301A:4
rich man and Lazarus (parable),
299E:3
praise:
let the gentle hear and rejoice, 274
martyrs and civil authorities, 302:12
prayer(s):
all need each other’s prayers, 305A:10
asking and not receiving, 286:5
memorials of martyrs, 277:1
Pharisee and tax collector, 290:6, 7
poured out for whole body of Christ,
273:2
presumption:
Peter’s self-reliance, 285:3, 4; 286:2;
295:3; 296:2; 299B:1
pride: Pharisee and the tax collector,
290:6, 7
property: Donatists afraid for, 296:14
prophets:
desire to see Christ in the flesh,
293A:2
killing of, 305A:3
many have wished to see . . ., 288:2
woe to scribes and Pharisees, 305A:3
Protase: martyr, 286:1
remains discovered, 286:4 (note 9)
prudence: whoever does not renounce all . . .,
301A:2
Psalm 19: explanation, 299B:3
publicans, 302:15
punishment:
See also eternal punishment
all that is due sinners; instead we have
redemption, 299:6
given death to drink, 299:8
innocent infants, 294:6
rich man and Lazarus (parable),
299E:3
Sodom and Gomorrah, 302:20
rage: against bad people, 302:10, 16, 18
redemption:
Christ came to save sinners, 299:6
Christ has no sin. . ., 294:11
Christ, likeness of the flesh of sin,
294:13
Christ suffered for all, 304:2
fall of man and, 289:2
prophets of Old Covenant, 293A:2
saved from our sins, by grace, 278:1
repentance:
Father rejoices over one person
repenting, 279:11
preached by John the Baptist, 293A:4
severe with self, so that God may be
lenient, 278:12
resurrection of the body:
See also spiritual body
all in tombs come forth, 277:2
conformation to Christ’s glorious
body, 277:12
disbelief by worldly philosophy, 277:3
firm belief in, 277:15

Volume III/8
health and, 277:5
imperishibility, 277:4
Jesus as source of, 293:8, 9
joys of those risen again, 280:5
martyrs in eternal life, 302:7
no doubting our immortality, 277:18
speed; twinkling of an eye, 277:11, 12
victory over death, 299:9

Revelation, Book of:
Enoch and Elijah in, 299:11

rich(-es):
bones of the poor and, 289:6
denying Christ for sake of, 299D:4
health and, 277:4
sent away empty . . ., 290:6, 7
wrongly/eminnently emptiable rich man, 290:7
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-5
right of sanctuary, 302:22
riotous behavior, 302:19

Rome (the city):
odies of martyrs in, 296:6
burning of the city, 296:9
city afflicted in early Christian times, 296:9
feast of St Lawrence, 305A:1
sack of the city, 296:10

sacrifice:
offered only to true God, 273:4
pledged to offer ourselves like Christ, 299:3

saints:
See also martyrs
bodies: memorials; reminders to pray, 277:1
deaths of, precious to the Lord, 275:3;
276:4
deaths precious in sight of God, 286:3;
298:3, 299E:2
glory envied by the ungodly, 273:5
good odor of Christ, 273:5
only John’s birthday celebrated, 292:1
souls of the just are in hand of God, 298:3

salvation:
baptism of infants, 294:2, 4-8
baptism of Jesus, 292:4
can you drink the cup . . ., 299:3
Christ is “salvation of God,” 277:16
confession with the lips, 299F:2

Eve’s fall, restored by Mary, 289:2
faith in Christ necessary for, 294:11, 14
forgiveness of sins, 278:11
God our protector, 301:1
gospel offered to us for, 301A:1
grace, 299:6
how flesh will see the salvation of God, 277:16, 17
humility of Christ, 285:4
sanctification and, 294:18
those offering salvation without Christ, 294:4
three young men in furnace (Daniel), 301:2

what does it profit a man . . ., 302:5
sanctification: by word of God and by prayer, 294:18
sanctuary, right of, 302:22
sandal strap, 290:3; 291:1; 292:8
Saul (later Paul):
appropriate name, 299B:3
breathing slaughter, thirsting for blood, 299B:4, 299C:1
God did not then give him his due, 298:4
ravenous wolf (Benjamin), 279:1
significance of the name, 279:5
Stephen and, see Stephen, Saint
why are you persecuting me, 279:1, 4, 10; 299:6, 299C:1; 295:6
Saul, King:
persecutor of David, 279:5; 299B:4;
299C:4
sin not forgiven, 291:5

savings: accumulating for children, 299E:5

scents: good odor of Christ, 273:5
Scillitan martyrs, 299D:1-7; 299E:1-5
scotching at Jesus, 285:2

Second Coming:
fire will go before him, 299:4
he first came in humility; second in authority, 299:4
Jesus will come as he was seen going, 277:17
one judged will come to judge, 279:7
self-indulgence:
damaging God’s temple in yourself, 278:9
love of neighbor wounded by, 278:8
senses: human/animal compared, 277:5

serpent (devil):
Eve persuaded by, 289:2
Sermons 273-305A

sin from, 294:13
trampled by Perpetua, 280:1
knows the will of God, 296:11
profitable return on master’s money, 279:12
service: voice serving word(s), 288:3, 5
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, 286:6; 296:5; 301:2
shame:
believer not defending Christ, 299D:6
believers ashamed to confess, 279:7
salutary shamelessness, 279:7
sharing: let the one who has two shirts . . ., 302:15
shepherds: laying down one’s life for the sheep, 296:5
sick:
Christ came to heal, 279:11
healing: restoring to life, 278:2
martyrdom of the sickbed, 286:7
tie on the charm (“muti”), 286:7
sight: speed of reaching the object, 277:10
Simeon:
departure from world put off, 288:2
recognition of the Christ, 293A:2
saw the Child in his heart, 277:17
Simittu: exhortation to imitate, 301A:9
simplicity: unshakable in perseverance, 301A:2
sin:
See also forgiveness of sin against God, or against human beings, 278:7
antidote for all, 278:6
be angry and do not sin . . ., 296:12
Christ calls sinners to health, 278:5
Christ’s likeness of the flesh of, 294:13
death caused by, 299:10
devil as author of, 294:15
difference between grave and light sins, 278:12
drawn into by pleasure or pain, 283:1
equally ready to confess, 301:2
evil: sinning against self, 278:8
forgiveness of, by the Lord’s prayer, 278:10
free choice: falling into death, 278:2
if we say we have no sin . . ., 301:2
Jesus saves people from, 293:11
light sins can sink us by their very numbers, 278:12
pernicious sweetness, 278:5
sinner has irritated the Lord, 296:12
sting of death, 299:9, 10
turning God’s gift to your own undoing, 278:9
whose sins you forgive . . ., 295:2
woman taken in adultery, 302:14
sinners:
envious of, 301:7, 8
God’s patience with, 301:4
only punishment is owed to, 299:6
sleep, 305A:8
social action: warn, persuade, teach, correct, 302:21
social order, 302:19
Sodom and Gomorrah, 302:20
soldier: doing good, 302:15
Son of God:
See also Jesus Christ; Word of God coeternal with the eternal, 292:3
did not think it robbery . . ., 288:5; 292:3
equality with the Father, 277:13; 293E:2
Father is greater than I, 293E:1; 293E:3
omnipresence of, 277:13
Son of Man, see Jesus Christ soul, see body and soul
South Wind, 273:4
space: God in, 277:13, 14, 18
speaking in tongues of all nations, 299B:2-3
spectacles: theater, 301A:7
speed:
eye’s rays, 277:10
human body unable to obey will, 277:6, 7
spirit:
changeable, 301:8
let us try to turn bodies into spirit, 277:18
spiritual body:
angels, 277:9
ease and speed of movement, 277:7
human curiosity regarding, 277:13
marvelous agility, 277:12
risen Christ passing through closed doors, 277:8, 12
spiritual life:
See also Christian life; heart; prayer
fix gaze on things that are not seen, 296:7
overwhelmed by weight of tiny sins, 278:12

Volume III/8
progress in true piety; grace grows, 293C:2
savor the things that are above, 296:7
Stephen, Saint:
imitation of, 284:6
name means crown, 299C:1
ordained by Peter, 298:1
Saul (Paul) at stoning of, 278:1;
279:1; 299:6; 299B:4; 299C:1
persecuted by Saul, 298:1
strangers, 299D:1
suffering:
See also death
Christ teaches how by, 284:6
Christ’s example, 284:6
Christ’s sufferings abound in us, 305A:5, 6
compared with future glory, 277A:2
confidence in one’s own powers, 276:1
cup is bitter, but it cures, 299A:2
derector takes the cup of salvation, 299:3
enduring, we are rescued from our enemy, 277A:2
fear of pain, 279:9
future glory and (Paul), 279:4
future glory will be revealed, 296:6;
297:11
gift to believe and to suffer, 276:1
hand of doctor operating, 278:5
reward for, 299C:3
share that of apostles/martyrs, 299A:2
sun:
movement of, 277:9
rises on the good and the wicked, 292:4
superfluities:
despised by martyrs, 299D:4
unwilling to give away, 302:5
temporal goods:
Christian prerogative to suffer evils, 296:10
gifts of God, 286:5
good things don’t make people good, 301A:3
good things given to bad people, 301:7
how to possess your wealth, 299E:5
life in common with beasts, 299E:2
nothing compared to God’s love, 301A:6
pagan attitude toward, 296:10
rich man and Lazarus (parable), 299E:3-4
storing up treasure only on earth, 305A:5, 296:11
superfluous goods, 299D:1, 3
things that can be seen, 299D:4
think lightly of things that pass away, 299A:2
temporal life:
cherished by its lovers, 302:2, 4
folly of loving, 302:6
mist that vanishes, 302:7
ready to beg just to live a little longer, 302:5
things people do out of love for, 302:4
we become Christians not for sake of this life, 302:3
temptations: daily trials, 301A:6
ten commandments:
seven for love of neighbor, 278:6
three for love of God, 278:6
thanksgiving: thanks for little things, 283:3
teach:
Christians at, 301A:8
Maccabees martyrdom compared with, 301A:7
Simittu, 301A:9
Theogenes, Saint, 273:7
three boys in furnace (Daniel), 286:6;
296:5
Maccabees and, 301:2
time:
passing on to eternal life, 301:8
runs out on you, 299E:1
what is long, if it has an end, 301:8
toleration: questions not firmly settled by the Church, 294:20
torture:
lies in order to avoid, 280:4
Vincent’s martyrdom, 277A:1
treasure:
of the heart, 292:7
storing up only on earth, 296:11
where your heart is, 296:7
tree: fruit of, 292:5, 7
Trinity:
firm belief in, 277:15
immortal, invisible, imperishable, 277:15
one God, 293:7
persons true and genuine, 293E:2
trust: all things work together for good, 299E:5

U
ugliness: beauty made from, 285:6
unbelievers:
Christ no benefit to, 294:17
man sanctified by believing wife, 294:18
ungodly, see godless
unity: commended to all (when Christ spoke to Peter alone), 295:4

V
values:
denying Christ for superfluities, 299D:6
eye of the heart, 299D:4
interior riches, 299E:5
lovers of money, 299F:5
passing on to eternal values, 301:3
superfluities and necessities, 299D:1, 3
vanity: martyrdom and, 299F:2
victim: Paul set apart as, 298:3
victory: palm as emblem of, 275:2
Vincent, Saint:
calmness of the one suffering, 275:2
contrasts: our sharing in his victory, 277A:1
corpse invincible, 277:1
Dacian’s rage over martyr’s body, 277:6
endurance only with divine help, 276:2
martyr, 274; 275:1-3
martyrdom, 277:1-18
miracles performed over body of, 275:3
pain in limbs; serenity in words, 275:1
taking care of the body by not sparing it, 277:8
tortures made beautiful by justice, 277A:1
victorious only in Christ, 276:1
worldwide fame, 276:4
worthy to be crowned, 277A:2
violence: taking part in a mob, 302:11
virgin birth:
born by his own authority, 305:3
preceded by John’s marvelous birth, 291:1
womb as bridal chamber, 291:6
virginity, consecrated, 304:2
virtue(s):
good things that make people good, 301A:3
imitate holiness of martyrs, 299A:1; 299F:4
impossible to be defeated, 303:2
unconquerable, with genuine charity, 304:4
vocation: eternal life, not temporal success, 296:9
voice:
diminishes, with progress toward the Word, 288:5
not every voice is a word, 289:3
wisdom and, 288:5
word and, 288:3, 4; 293:3; 293B:2; 293C:1; 293D:3

W
walking, 305A:8
weakness: Peter before Pentecost, 284:6
wealth: possess with faith; don’t be possessed by it, 299E:5
well-being:
See also health
gospel offered to us for, 301A:1
necessities of life, 299D:1-3, 6
neighbors, 299D:3
temporal life, in common with beasts, 299F:2
widows, 304:2
will: judged by God, 301A:4
will of God:
accommodate yourself to, 296:8
city of Rome afflicted, 296:9
hidden, before the gospel was preached, 296:11
his plans kept to himself, 296:7

Volume III/8
known by his servants, 296:11
patience, 296:8
servant becomes friend, 296:7
wind: north/south winds, 273:4
winnowing grain, 305:1
Wisdom:
disposes all things sweetly, 277:13
gift to speak good things wisely, 276:1
godliness, 299D:2, 3
mother, 305A:6
necessities of life, 299D:2
need of voice and, 288:5
source, 299D:3
when you die for my sake. . ., 299F:5
witness bearing:
believe, but ashamed to confess, 279:7
classing him to the death, 286:1
deny Christ is to bear false witness,
299F:2
false witness will not go unpunished,
299F:3
miracles of departed saints, 275:3
ture and false, 286:1
wolf: Saul as, 279:2
woman taken in adultery, 302:14
women:
females called “women” in Hebrew
language, 291:4;
martyrdom (the “weaker sex”), 282:2,
3; 286:2; 299E:1; 305A:2
word(-s):
abiding in the heart, 288:3, 4
every word is a voice, 289:3
service of the voice, 288:3, 5
voice and, 288:3, 4; 293:3; 293B:2;
293C:1; 293D:3
Word of God:
See also creation; Incarnation; Jesus
Christ; Son of God
born in the flesh, 287:2
can be said to grow in us, 288:5
in the beginning. . ., 277:13; 288:4;
291:2; 290:2, 5; 293:3; 293A:5;
293B:2
293E:1; 293:5
John as voice of, 288:2
made flesh, 290:5
voice: John the Baptist, 293:3
voices (prophets, etc.) sent by, 288:4
world:
attack on soldiers of Christ, 276:
blame because gospel is ignored,
296:11
crucify yourselves to, 289:6
indifference to allurements of, 304:3
pleasure, curiosity, pride, 284:5
rather seek the things that are above,
304:3
spirit of this world, 283:3
wounds of love, 298:2
wrath of God, 302:20
Z
Zachary:
angel Gabriel came to him, 291:3;
293B:4
prayer answered, 291:3
punished by dumbness, 290:4; 293:2;
293B:4
reply expressed doubt and lack of
hope, 291:5
response to angel, 290:4, 5; 291:5; 293:1

Sermons 273-305A
Index from

Sermons 306-340A

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 306-340A are on the Saints.

Includes:

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

Volume III/9 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-068-1, 6 x 9 in., 340 pp., 1994

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Matthew Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

| Old Testament | 18:32 317,5 |
|               | 19:9 335G,1 |
|               | 22:26 332,2 |
|               | 25:15 306C,5 |
|               | 27:4 337,3 |
|               | 27:12 335A,1 |
|               | 27:14 339,6 |
|               | 30:1 336,3 |
|               | 30:3 336,3 |
|               | 30:16-12 336,3, 336,5, 337,2 |
| Leviticus      | 32:5 323,4 |
|               | 32:14 335,1 |
|               | 33:20 306A |
|               | 34:1 306C,3 |
|               | 34:2 312,1, 313A,5, 313C,1 |
|               | 34:5 306B,6, 336,2 |
|               | 34:14 339,2 |
|               | 34:20 313C,2 |
|               | 35:1-3 313,3 |
|               | 36:6 335D,3 |
|               | 36:6-7 306D,2 |
|               | 36:7 306D,2, 306D,4, 335D,3 |
|               | 36:7-9 335D,3 |
|               | 36:8 335D,1 |
|               | 36:8-9 306A |
|               | 36:9 306,5, 306,6 |
|               | 37:11 312,1 |
|               | 37:39 335D,3, 335D,4 |
| Deuteronomy    | 39:6-7 335C,7 |
|               | 40:17 306A |
|               | 42:3 337,3 |
|               | 43:1 325,2, 327,1, 327,2, 335,2, 335G,2 |
|               | 44:22 331,2, 331,5, 335C,5 |
| 1 Samuel       | 45:2 306B,5 |
|               | 52:8 313F,E |
|               | 54:4 334,1 |
|               | 57:5 335E,2 |
|               | 57:7 333,1 |

---

Volume III/9

Sermons 306-340A
### Sermons 306-340A

- **58:4** 315,5
- **58:4-5** 316,2
- **60:11** 306A; 306D,2
- **62:5** 333,1; 335E,6
- **62:6** 313,2
- **68:4** 310,2
- **71:5** 335E,6
- **78:30** 306C,7
- **72:11** 313B,3
- **80:7** 313,2
- **84:22** 306C,5; 335B,2
- **87:3** 313B,3
- **91:2-3** 306C,5
- **91:11-12** 313E,4
- **96:1** 311,7; 336,1
- **97:10** 336,2
- **103:10** 333,2
- **103:12** 333,3
- **104:15** 333,1
- **104:28** 306C,8
- **110:3** 308A,3
- **110:4** 307,3
- **112:6-7** 328,5; 335L,1
- **115:1** 335K,6
- **115:2** 326,2
- **116:10** 306D,1
- **116:11** 335E,3; 335M,2; 339,2
- **116:12** 329,2; 335M,4; 340,2
- **116:12-13** 333,4
- **116:15** 326,1
- **116:15.11** 328,2
- **116:16** 335E,3
- **118:22** 337,1
- **119:108** 313,1
- **119:135** 313,2
- **119:164** 306C,3
- **120:6-7** 313E,3
- **121:1-2** 338A,2
- **122:1** 326,1
- **124:1-3** 335F,2
- **124:4-6** 313B,1
- **124:7** 313A,2
- **124:8** 313A,1; 313B,3
- **126:2** 306B,1
- **126:5-6** 313D,3
- **126:6** 335A,3
- **127:1** 333,5
- **132:1-18** 308A,1
- **132:18** 308A,4; 308A,5; 308A,6; 308A,8; 308A,8
- **139:17,18** 316,1
- **140:5** 306,2
- **142:5** 312,1; 313,3; 313,3
- **146:2** 335B,2; 335B,3
- **146:3** 335B,4
- **146:4** 335B,4
- **146:5** 335B,5; 335B,5

### Proverbs
- **8:35.LXX** 333,1
- **16:32** 315,10
- **19:5** 328,2
- **23:1** 332,2
- **23:1-2** 329,1
- **24:15-16** 306C,3
- **24:16** 306C,3
- **31:10** 313G,3
- **32:1.LXX** 340A,5

### Song of Songs
- **1:3** 313G,3
- **1:13** 312,3; 313C,2
- **4:2** 313B,3
- **6:6** 313B,3

### Wisdom
- **1:11** 330,3
- **3:2** 306,1
- **3:2-5** 306,1
- **3:8** 306,7
- **4:7** 335M,1

### Sirach
- **3:9** 323,1
- **5:7** 339,8
- **5:8** 339,7
- **25:24** 318,2; 336,5
- **31:8-10.9** 311,10
- **31:10.8** 311,9

### Isaiah
- **51:7** 340A,8
- **53:7** 315,3; 340A,8
- **53:12** 309,3
- **58:7** 339,6
- **58:9** 306C,7
- **66:24** 335F,2

### Jeremiah
- **1:10** 312,3
- **3:15** 313,2
- **17:5** 335B,5
- **17:13** 313,2
- **31:33** 331,4

### Ezekiel
- **3:17** 313E,7
- **33:2-7** 339,2
- **33:7-9** 339,2
- **33:10** 339,3
- **33:10-11** 339,2
- **33:11** 339,7

### Malachi
- **3:1** 308A,1
- **4:2** 308A,1
### New Testament

| Matthew        | 3:17  | 306A,5 |
|               | 4:6   | 313E,4 |
|               | 4:10.7 | 313E,4 |
|               | 5:3-10 | 306A |
|               | 5:4   | 312,1 |
|               | 5:10  | 325; 335G,2 |
|               | 5:11  | 306C,5 |
|               | 5:11-12 | 340A,8 |
|               | 5:12  | 306C,5 |
|               | 5:14  | 338,2 |
|               | 5:15  | 317,4 |
|               | 5:15-16 | 338,4 |
|               | 5:16  | 317,4; 338,3 |
|               | 5:25  | 339,7 |
|               | 5:33-37 | 307,2 |
|               | 5:37  | 308,3 |
|               | 5:44  | 306,8 |
|               | 5:44-45 | 317,1 |
|               | 6:1   | 338,3 |
|               | 6:9.12 | 315,10 |
|               | 6:10  | 308A,6 |
|               | 6:11  | 335E,6 |
|               | 6:12  | 335M,4 |
|               | 6:19-21 | 311,15 |
|               | 6:34  | 339,7 |
|               | 7:16  | 340A,10 |
|               | 7:22-23 | 308A,6 |
|               | 8:13  | 313E,2 |
|               | 9:29  | 313E,2 |
|               | 10:17 | 335A,3 |
|               | 10:19-20 | 328,3 |
|               | 10:20 | 335E,5 |
|               | 10:27 | 306B,5; 315,3 |
|               | 10:27-28 | 306B,5 |
|               | 10:28 | 313E,7; 335F,2 |
|               | 10:33 | 306B,7 |
|               | 10:34 | 306B,4; 313,4 |
|               | 10:39 | 331,1; 331,2; 335F,2 |
|               | 11:11 | 308A,3 |
|               | 11:12 | 326,1 |
|               | 11:47 | 311,5 |
|               | 11:25 | 312,4 |
|               | 11:30 | 335K,3 |
|               | 12:34 | 340A,10 |
|               | 16:13 | 306D,3 |
|               | 16:15 | 306D,3 |
|               | 16:16 | 306D,3 |
|               | 16:17 | 335E,5 |
|               | 16:21-23 | 335E,5 |
|               | 16:22 | 330,4 |
|               | 16:23 | 330,4 |
|               | 16:24 | 330,1 |
|               | 16:25 | 306C,1 |
|               | 16:26 | 330,3 |
|               | 18:3  | 340A,1 |
|               | 19:17 | 306,6; 306,7 |
|               | 19:29 | 326,2 |
|               | 20:21-22 | 340A,5 |
|               | 20:22 | 329,2 |
|               | 20:23 | 340A,5 |
|               | 22:29-30 | 335L,2 |
|               | 22:37-39-40 | 313B,3 |
|               | 23:3  | 312,6; 340A,9; 340A,11 |
|               | 23:13 | 317,5 |
|               | 25:21 | 319,2 |
|               | 25:31-33 | 335L,3 |
|               | 25:34 | 337,2 |
|               | 25:34-41 | 328,5 |
|               | 26:28 | 306D,5 |
|               | 26:39 | 329,2 |
|               | 26:39 | 340A,5 |
|               | 27:4  | 313E,4 |
|               | 28:20 | 309,2 |
| Mark           | 6:18  | 307,1 |
|               | 8:36  | 311,2 |
|               | 10:17 | 306,6 |
|               | 10:44 | 340A,2 |
|               | 10:44-45 | 340A,3 |
|               | 10:45 | 340A,3 |
|               | 12:23 | 335L,2 |
|               | 12:31 | 319,4 |
|               | 14:12 | 340A,3 |
|               | 14:34 | 313D,3; 335B,3 |
|               | 14:58 | 315,2 |
|               | 15:28 | 309,3 |
|               | 15:29-32 | 340A,5 |
| Luke           | 1:33  | 306,7 |
|               | 2:14  | 306B,5; 306C,6 |
|               | 3:16  | 308A,2 |
|               | 6:44  | 340A,10 |
|               | 7:9   | 313E,2 |
|               | 9:46  | 340A,1 |
|               | 12:4  | 335B,2 |
|               | 12:7  | 334,1 |
|               | 12:13 | 340A,12 |
|               | 12:20 | 306,6 |
|               | 12:33 | 335C,8 |
|               | 13:25-26 | 308A,6 |
|               | 14:12-14 | 339,6 |
|               | 15:17-19 | 330,3 |
|               | 16:9  | 335C,8 |
|               | 19:21-23 | 339,4 |
|               | 20:2  | 308A,7 |
|               | 20:2-4 | 308A,7 |
|               | 20:5-7 | 308A,7 |
|               | 20:8  | 308A,7 |
|               | 20:9-14 | 308A,6 |
|               | 20:24-25 | 308A,7 |
|               | 20:36 | 319,7 |

**Sermons 306-340A**
## Sermons 306-340A

| 21:14-15 | 335E,5 |
| 21:15 | 313,2 |
| 21:16-19 | 335A,3 |
| 21:18 | 333,1 |
| 21:19 | 335E,6 |
| 22:13 | 335E,3 |
| 22:33 | 340A,8 |
| 22:57 | 335E,3 |
| 23:24 | 313E,4 |
| 23:34 | 313B,4; 315,8; 316,3; 317,2; 317,3; 317,5; 317,6; 319,4; 319,5; 327,2; 327,2; 328,1 |
| 23:39-41 | 340A,11 |
| 23:42 | 327,2; 328,1 |
| 23:43 | 327,2 |
| 23:46 | 316,3; 319,5 |
| 24:39-44 | 340A, 11 |
| 24:46 | 340A,11 |
| John | 334,2 |
| 1:1-2 | 335K,4 |
| 1:10 | 313A,2 |
| 1:12 | 306,2 |
| 1:14 | 325,1; 334,2; 335I,1; 335K,4 |
| 1:16 | 308A,2 |
| 1:19-22 | 308A,2 |
| 1:23 | 308A,2 |
| 1:29 | 306D,5 |
| 1:33-34 | 308A,4 |
| 2:19-21 | 315,2 |
| 3:2 | 316,3 |
| 3:27 | 332,3; 333,6 |
| 3:29 | 308A,2 |
| 3:30 | 307,4 |
| 5:14 | 335I,3 |
| 5:19 | 340A,5 |
| 5:28-29 | 306,5; 335K,2 |
| 5:29 | 306,8; 335F,2 |
| 5:38 | 308A,1; 308A,6; 308A,7 |
| 5:39 | 308A,1; 308A,8 |
| 6:4 | 333,1 |
| 6:44 | 333,6 |
| 6:51 | 340A,9 |
| 8:36 | 340A,3 |
| 8:44 | 340A,9 |
| 10:16 | 340A,11 |
| 10:18 | 313E,5 |
| 10:30 | 340A,5 |
| 11:51 | 315,2 |
| 12:24 | 335E,2 |
| 12:24-25 | 329,1 |
| 12:25 | 330,2 |
| 12:26 | 319,3 |

## Acts of the Apostles

| 2:37-38 | 316,3 |
| 4:32 | 308A,7 |
| 4:34-35 | 313B,3 |
| 6:8 | 316,1 |
| 7:1 | 319,1 |
| 7:1 | 315,5 |
| 7:1 | 317,5 |
| 7:1 | 316,2 |
| 7:35 | 314,1; 316,2; 319,2 |
| 7:56 | 315,5 |
| 7:58 | 315,6; 316,3; 319,2; 319,3 |
| 7:58-59 | 315,5 |
| 7:59-60 | 314,2; 317,5 |
| 7:60 | 317,6; 319,5 |
| 9:1-4 | 316,4; 317,6 |
| 9:4 | 316,5 |
| 9:15 | 332,4; 333,3 |
| 10:13 | 313B,3 |

## Romans

| 1:1 | 316,5 |
| 1:17 | 335M,5 |
| 2:4 | 339,7 |
| 2:4-6 | 339,3 |
| 2:5 | 315,7 |
| 3:4 | 333E,4; 339,2 |
| 5:6 | 339,6 |
| 5:6-8 | 335I,3 |
| 5:20 | 333E,1; 333I,4 |
| 6:6 | 336,5 |
| 6:9 | 335H,1 |
| 6:9-11 | 336,5 |

---

**Volume III/9**
## Volume III/9

| 6:13 | 306B,4 |
| 6:19 | 306B,4 |
| 8:3  | 317,3; 336,4 |
| 8:13 | 335J,2; 335J,4 |
| 8:14 | 335J,4 |
| 8:18 | 306,1 |
| 8:24 | 336,2 |
| 8:24-25 | 306B,1; 313F,1; 336,5 |
| 8:25 | 337,3 |
| 8:30 | 306B,3 |
| 8:31 | 334,1; 339,6 |
| 8:31-32 | 334,2 |
| 8:32 | 313E,5; 336,4 |
| 8:35-37 | 335,1 |
| 8:36 | 335,2 |
| 8:37 | 313,2 |
| 9:16 | 333,5 |
| 10:10 | 306D,1 |
| 11:1 | 333,3 |
| 12:12 | 306B,1 |
| 14:9:8 | 335M,3 |
| 15:30 | 340,4 |

### 1 Corinthians

| 1:1  | 316,5 |
| 1:31 | 319A; 335,1; 335E,5 |
| 2:6  | 333,3 |
| 2:9  | 328,6; 331,3; 339,6 |
| 2:12 | 333,6; 335E,6 |
| 3:2  | 333,3 |
| 3:9  | 340,3 |
| 3:10-11 | 337,1 |
| 3:17 | 332,4; 337,2 |
| 4:5  | 306,8 |
| 4:7  | 332,3; 333,1; 333,6; 335E,6 |
| 4:16 | 306B,2 |
| 6:9-11 | 335L,4 |
| 7:4  | 332,4 |
| 9:24 | 326,1 |
| 9:26-27 | 340A,2 |
| 10:4 | 317,5 |
| 10:20 | 335D,3 |
| 11:29 | 308A,6 |
| 13:1 | 306B,7 |
| 13:42 | 337,5 |
| 14:20 | 340A,1 |
| 15:9 | 315,6; 315,7 |
| 15:10 | 306B,2; 315,6; 333,5; 340,2 |
| 15:21-22 | 335B,1 |
| 15:28 | 334,3; 337,2 |
| 15:43-44 | 335L,3 |
| 15:53 | 337,2 |

### 2 Corinthians

| 1:1  | 316,5 |
| 2:15-14 | 313C,2 |
| 2:15-16 | 312,3 |
| 4:5  | 340A,3 |
| 4:13 | 306D,1 |
| 5:1  | 337,5 |
| 5:19 | 325,1 |
| 5:10 | 309,5 |
| 6:1  | 340,3 |
| 6:10 | 326,1; 335C,10 |
| 8:9  | 339,4 |
| 12:7 | 306C,7 |
| 12:8-9 | 306C,7 |
| 12:10 | 335D,5 |

### Galatians

| 2:20 | 313E,5; 330,4 |
| 6:2  | 340,1 |
| 6:3  | 333,6 |
| 6:14 | 317,4; 330,4; 338,2 |

### Ephesians

| 2:2  | 309,5; 335D,4 |
| 2:8-9 | 333,6 |
| 2:14 | 337,1 |
| 5:8  | 312,7; 335E,5; 336,2 |
| 6:12 | 335D,3; 335D,4 |
| 6:14-17 | 313,3 |

### Philippians

| 1:6  | 333,6 |
| 1:22-24 | 335K,2 |
| 1:29 | 333,6 |
| 2:9  | 336,3 |
| 2:12-14 | 337,4 |
| 2:13 | 335L,4 |
| 2:21 | 340A,4 |
| 3:12 | 306B,2 |
| 3:13 | 306B,2 |
| 3:13-14 | 306B,2 |
| 3:15 | 306B,2 |
| 3:21 | 337,2 |
| 4:1  | 319A |

### Colossians

| 2:3  | 335C,12 |
| 3:1-2 | 337,4 |
| 4:3  | 340,4 |

### 1 Timothy

| 1:13 | 333,2; 333,4 |
| 1:17 | 312,6 |
| 2:2  | 306C,8 |
| 3:1  | 340A,6 |
| 3:2  | 340A,7 |
| 3:4-5 | 340A,7 |
| 3:6  | 340A,2 |
| 4:8  | 319A |

### 2 Timothy

<p>| 2:20 | 340A,9 |
| 3:1-2 | 330,3 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Reference 1</th>
<th>Page, Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>315,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>333,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>333,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>312,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>335H,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>335M,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>306B,3; 318,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>333,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>313A,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>337,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>306C,1; 337,1; 337,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>319,4; 325,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>335B,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>332,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>335C,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>335E,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>309,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>313A,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>328,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>313A,2; 335B,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-17</td>
<td>306C,6; 311,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>335C,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>329,1; 332,2; 340A,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>335G,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>313C,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>306.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>314,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>306D,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:5</td>
<td>335E,3; 335E,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>319,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:6</td>
<td>306.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:8-9</td>
<td>319,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III/9
INDEX
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Abraham:
   God’s oath to, 307:3
   Lazarus on bosom of (parable), 339:5
Acts of the Apostles:
   reading starts on Easter Sunday, 315:1
Adam and Eve:
   Adam the deserter: to dust you shall go, 335B:5
   Eve, beginning of sin, 336:5
   human; not sons of men, 306D:3
   serpent took away belief in death, 335B:1.2
   threatened with death, 318:2
adders: brought out by charmer, 316:2
adultery:
   fear of detection, 306B:5
   heart denying the truth, 318:2
   Susanna’s struggle, 318:2
Africa: Christ’s Church in, 340A:11
almsgiving: Cyprian on, 313C:2
ambition: worldly pride, 313A:2,4
Amen: said to pledge every day, 334:2
Ancona: miracles at, 322:2; 323:2
   bishop’s labors, 339:4
   habit of swearing gotten rid of by, 307:5
   lookout (bishop’s role), 339:9
   See also bishop authority: bishops, 340A:3
avarice:
   loving/hoarding money; mean, 335C:3,7
   troubled in vain, 335C:7
Apocalypse: glory of martyrs in, 335E:3
apostasy: fear for the body, not the soul, 335F:2
apostles: prepared to suffer, by belief in Christ, 311:2
ark:
   built of squared planks, 306B:3; 306C:2; 335E:1
armor: weapons used by martyrs, 313:3-5
Ascension: let hope go ahead; lift up your hearts, 330:2
Augustine, Saint:
   anniversary of ordination as bishop, 339:1-9; 340:1-4
   apology for his sermon, 313:1
   apparition; miraculous cures, 322:2; 323:2
   martyrdom and, 306A
   See also catechumens
   bishop’s labors, 339:4
   habit of swearing gotten rid of by, 307:5
   lookout (bishop’s role), 339:9
   See also bishop authority: bishops, 340A:3
   avarice:
      loving/hoarding money; mean, 335C:3,7
   troubled in vain, 335C:7

B
Babylon, 313B:2,3
baptism:
   flock come up from the washing, 313B:3
   See also catechumens
   beasts: salvation of, 306D:2
   beatitudes: martyrdom and, 306A
   beauty: love what is good, 335C:13
Benjamin: a ravenous wolf, 333:3  
birthday: celebration of, 313D:1  
bishop: admonished to be a servant, 340A:2  
bad bishops; if bad, they are not bishops, 340A:6,8  
better to have neither wife nor children, 340A:7  
burden and dangers of office, 339:1  
burden: his subjects, 340:1  
called bishop, but not really one, . . ., 340A:4  
children according to the spirit, 340A:7  
desiring the good work of, 340A:6  
do what they say . . ., 340A:9  
duties; Augustine’s experience, 339:4  
fawning on; vs cursing, 340A:8  
good shepherd, 340:2  
good; bad, 340A:8  
help by prayer and obedience, 340:3  
humble and eager obedience, 340:3  
leaders, 340A:8  
liften my burden: lead good lives, 339:4  
listen to Christ; humility, 340A:4  
ministering Christ, for Christ’s sake, 340A:9  
name of an office undertaken, 340:1  
ordination of, 340A:1-12  
patience, 340A:8  
pray for each other; bishop and the faithful, 340:3  
pride to be avoided, 340A:1  
responsible for self and subjects, 339:1  
seeking the name, or the real thing, 340A:6  
servant of the people, 340A:1,3  
true ministers, 340A:9  
watchman, or lookout; concern for salvation, 339:2  
blessings: choose, cherish, gather, 306C:8  
blood: robes made white in blood of the Lamb, 306D:5  
body and soul:  
God the upholder, 335F:2  
invisible soul; visible flesh, 335K:1  
See also flesh; soul  
branch: belongs to the vine, 340A:10  
bread: eternal in the Father; daily in time, 333:1  
give us this day . . ., 335E:6  
strengthens the heart of man, 333:1  
bride: adorned with virtues, 332:4  
burden: carry one another’s burden, 340:1  

C  
Caecilian, Bishop of Carthage, 340A:12  
Caesar: pay to Caesar . . ., 308A:7  
Caiaphas, 315:2  
Carthage:  
Donatist/Catholic conference (411), 340A:12  
martyrs, 313B:2  
Saint Cyprian, 310:2,3  
catechumens: exhortation to enroll for baptism, 335H:3  
cause:  
Lord, distinguish my cause . . ., 325:2  
martyrdom and, 306A  
martyrs: distinguish my cause, 335:2  
suffering for a just cause, 306:2  
White Mass (martyrs), 306:2  
change: by living good lives you will change the times, 311:8  
chapel: place to honor martyr; worship God, 318:3  
charity:  
cement making house of God, 336:1  
city that came down from heaven, 332:4  
common delight in wisdom, 335C:2  
courage of true charity, 335C:4  
covers multitude of sins (lies), 335E:4  
expands, the greater the number possessing it, 340A:12  
lay down one’s life for one’s friend, 332:3  
love of living rightly, 335C:2  
perfect charity casts out fear, 335G:1  
prefer Christ to the world, 335:2  
restless, not slothful, 313F:1  
who will separate us from charity of Christ, 335:1  
chastity:  
love of, 332:4

Volume III/9
should be found in faith and mind, 318:2
children:
  bishops; compliant; discipline, 340A:7
  respect for parents, 323:1
children of God:
  led by the Spirit of God, 335J:4
  power to become, 306:2
Christ, see Jesus Christ.
Christian combat:
  invisible foe; see with eyes of faith, 335K:3
Christian doctrine:
  entwined itself: good trees, bad thorns, 340A:10
Christian life:
  battle with the flesh, 335J:2
  being put to death all the day long, 335C:5
  care not to be caught unawares, 309:5
  Christ is nowhere an exile, 309:2
Christ’s athlete; both weak and strong, 335D:3
I live now not I. . ., 330:4
imitate endurance of martyrs, 328:8
imitate our fellow servants (apostles, etc.), 325:1
joy in those making progress, 319A
lose temporal life for God’s sake, 313D:2
servants become friends, 316:1
struggle with temporal/eternal goods, 339:9
taking on the whole world, 313A:2
walking (analogy), 306B:1,3
way straight and narrow, 313A:1
without Christ enemy would swallow us alive, 335F:2
See also: martyrs; temple of God;
world
Christianity: God liberating the nations, 315:4
Christians:
  Christian, a name of grace, 340:1
  hated by the world, 313G:2
  we ourselves are house of God, 336:1
Church:
  breaking away from; Judas, 313E:3
  Christ sowing seed; Church springing up, 335E:2
Christ the head; we are his members, 336:5
great hope after seeding by martyrs, 306C:1
living stones, 306C:1
made from pierced side of Christ, 336:5
multitudes spread far and wide, 306C:1
one flock, one shepherd, 340A:11
pride for eminence given in, 340A:2
progress; sword representing eloquence, 335K:5
seed: blood of the martyrs, 335E:2
spread throughout nations, 340A:11
teeth to rival those of the enemy, 313B:3
See also: mystical body
Circumcellions: Cyprian and, 313E:7
claymore (sword), 313:4,5
cliff-jumpers, 313E:5,7
combat: guard against allurements, 335K:6
commandments: attaining eternal life, 306:7,9
conduct of life:
  battle; God’s amphitheater, 335K:3
  deception in, 306:9
See also: Christian life
conscience: battle over ways of loving, 335J:4
consultation: imparting or seeking counsel, 309:6
conversion:
  all evil deeds wiped out, 339:7
  do not be slow to turn. . ., 339:7,8
  of life: denying oneself, 330:3
Paul on, 312:3
corruption: possessed by gold, 311:9
courage: Stephen the martyr, 315:6
creator: salvation of man and beast, 306D:2
creatures:
  cast off your moorings from; to creator, 313A:2
  imitate the creator, 315:8
crime: charges against testimony of martyrs, 335A:1
Crispina, Saint: martyr, 313G:3
cross:
  judgment seat, 335C:12
lampstand, 317:4
Peter’s passion foretold, 340A:3
take up your cross..., 330:2
word as scandal, 330:4
crown: martyrdom; St Stephen, 314:2
cup: can you drink the cup which... , 340A:5
cupidity: dancing in time to, 311:7
curiosity: lust of the eyes, 313A:2,3
curse: mother curses son, 322:2
cypress berry, 313C:2
Cyprian, Saint:
altar of God made out of, 313A:5
birthday of, 312:1-6; 313:1-5;
313A-313F
Church rejoices over this martyr, 309:1
Circumcellions and, 313E:7
conversion, 311:7; 312:2-3
date of birth, 310:1
despite the world, 311:3
eloquence, 312:2,4; 313D:1; 335K:5
exile and return, 309:2
fame for his sufferings and writings, 310:4
final exchange with proconsul, 309:6
God stood by him, 313:5
God’s handiwork, 313:2
good odor of Christ... , 313C:2
greatness of his faith, 313E:2
his martyrdom as just cause, 313D:4
his soul a claymore in hand of God, 313:5
his teaching, living, and dying, 313C:2
imitation of Christ in his passion, 313E:5
immortal life attained by self-denial, 313D:1
ddain of the word, 313:5
judge: take counsel for yourself, 313D:4
last words, 309:6; 313D:4
life before conversion, 312:2
lived as he taught, 313D:1
living as one who knew he would die, 313E:1
many persecutors later came to believe, 313B:4
martyr followed in Christ’s footsteps, 309:3
martyr’s glory spread to whole
Church, 310:3
meaning of the martyr’s “table,” 310:2
meek and mild person, 312:1
merits and glory of, 313A:1
multitudes raging against/praising him, 313B:1
outstanding by his teaching and example, 312:6
praise for, 312:6
preparing to shed his own blood, 309:4
reading of his passion, 313A:3
remembered his pastor/bishop role, 309:4
sent into exile, 313E:6
sermon on birthday of, 309:1-4;
310:1-3; 311:1-15
sermon on eve of birthday, 308A:1-8
fear the second death, 335B:5
temptations overcome by, 313A:4
tempted by the devil, 309:5
tongue insufficient to praise him, 313:1
truly to be praised in the Lord, 313A:4
verdict: “thanks be to God,” 313E:6
vine branch that has been pruned, 313E:6
won God’s favor as bishop; as martyr, 313:1
words and example, 313D:4
works; writings, 313C:2

D
damnation:
evil hearing on judgment day, 335L:3
fear the second death, 335B:5
dancing: rowdiness in holy places, 311:5,6
darkness: now light in the Lord, 336:2
David, King:
armed with grace (milk can), 335K:5
date of birth, 310:1
five smooth stones, 335K:3
rash oath broken, rather than commit murder, 308:2
deacon:
Greek/Latin/English terms, 319:3
Stephen, the first martyr, 315:1
where I am, my deacon shall be, 319:3
dead: anniversaries of just/holy persons celebrated, 335L:1
death:
  attitude to, taught by Christ, 335B:1
  body and soul, 335B:5
  destroyed by the Lamb, Jesus, 311:1
  fear not those who kill the body, 335B:2
  fear of sin, 335B:5
  good for the good; bad for the bad, 335B:3
  individual laying the body aside, 335K:1
  just man will be at rest, 335M:1,2
  living with awareness of, 313E:1
  making light of, 335B:5
  martyrs discover death by speaking, 306D:1
  no fear if you die for God, 313D:3
  our day of is unknown, 306D:4
  Paul's attitude toward, 335K:2
  Peter, when you are old. . ., 335B:3
  power of a human to decide kind of end, 306D:2
  precious is the death of his saints, 306D:1; 313A:5; 318:1; 321:1; 329:1,2; 335E:2; 335I:1,4
  risking for sake of lust, 335B:4
  running/driven to our last day, 306D:4
  separation of invisible soul; visible flesh, 335K:1
  Tabitha restored to life, 313E:8
  transitory; permanent, 335B:5
  unless the grain of wheat falls. . .,
  329:1; 335E:2
  warning to sinners, 339:2
  will to die is abhorrent to nature, 335B:1

See also future life; life; martyrs
deception: no one wants to be deceived, 306D:9
dedication of a church:
cemented by charity, 336:1
  Christ the foundation and cornerstone, 337:1
  faith; beauties of the dwelling, 337:1
  God's Church built and dedicated in us, 336:1

house of our prayers, 336:1
joy after hard labor of construction, 337:2
lampstands, 338:2
Psalm 30: prophecy of Christ's passion, 336:3
three sermons, 336-338
demon(s):
captured by martyrs, 312:5
listened to (went into pigs), 306C:7
mother curses son, 322:2
sacraments of, 335D:3
deny yourself, 313D:2
despair: perishing by/of, 339:3,7
devil:
  benefits (martyrs) bestowed on us by, 315:9
  challenges soul to single combat, 335K:3
  children of unbelief and, 335D:4
  Cyprian and, 313D:4
  escape from, 335A:3
  fear not, but beware of him, 335D:4
  God listened to (re Job), 306C:7
  judgment of the devil, 340A:2
  martyrs conquer, 335D:3
  our adversary never sleeps, 328:8
  prince of the power of this air, 335D:4
  sick man and, 335D:3
  struggle against principalities and powers, 335D:4
  struggle is not against flesh and blood, 335D:3
  suffering, 328:4
  temptation of Christ, 313E:4
  tempter of the martyr Cyprian, 309:5
  unclean spirits try to seduce people, 335D:4
  witnesses of, 335A:1

See also demon; serpent; temptation
disciples:
  asking to sit at Christ's right/left hand, 340A:5
  chosen from the world, 313G:1
  dispute: which is to be the greatest, 340A:1
  Domitian, Saint: sermon on a just man, 335M:1-5
Donatists:
  bishops in Carthage (411), 340A:12
branches that have been cut off, 313E:6
Cyprian and, 313E:2,3,4
tempted by the devil, 313E:5
drunkenness (holy; spiritual):
plenty of God’s house, 335D:1,3

E
eloquence: Church fighting Goliath,
335K:5
end of the world:
humans will be equal to angels,
335L:3
enemy:
commanded to love, 317:1,3
gentleness toward, 315:9
loving one’s enemies, 306:8; 314:2
martyrs’ love of their enemies, 317:2
will not do you any harm, 315:9
eternal life:
as “long” as I live, . . . , 335B:2
eager desire for, 335H:1
feasting as symbol of, 339:5
good works lead to, 337:5
happiness factors, 306:7
holding on to life without end, 331:1
immortal life attained by martyrs,
313D:1
kingdom will have no end, 306:7
love for the kingdom of God, 332:1
martyrs trade temporal life for,
313C:1
obtaining, 306:6
parable: workers starting at different
hours, 335M:5
pray tirelessly; perfect love of charity,
340:3
preparing for, 311:15
reward of life well lived in time,
306:9
rich man’s fear of death, 306:6
seeking; keep the commandments,
306:7
torment; eternal death, 306:5
whoever loses soul for my sake . . .
313C:1; 313D:1
eucharist; whoever eats and drinks
unworthily . . . , 308A:6
Eulalia, Saint: feast of, 313G:1-3

Eve, see Adam and Eve.
Eulogius (bishop), 323:3
example:
follow Christ and St Stephen, 315:8
imitating one leading a bad life,
340A:9
perform good works openly, 338:1
exile: Christ cannot be forced to leave a
place, 309:2

F
faith:
apostles prepared to die for Christ,
311:2
church building is made by believing,
336:1
dedication of a church, 337:1
dying without anxiety, 306:6
freely acknowledging, 306B:7
God dwelling in us, 337:5
greatness of Cyprian’s faith, 313E:2
heaven taken violently by storm,
314:1
imitate faith of martyrs, 306:10
just man lives by faith, 335M:5
make light of things that are seen,
306D:2
martyrs, 311:1
outweighs gaining the whole world,
311:2
precious death of the Lord’s saints,
306:1
prepare a great jar; God will fill it,
339:6
salvation; grace, 333:6
faithfulness: show love for martyrs by,
331:5
faithlessness: net of the persecutors,
313B:2
false witnesses: trial of Jesus, 315:2
fault-finders: objections against God,
311:12
fear:
abiding forever, 335G:1
always being afraid, 306:7
ashamed of Christ before men,
306B:7
chaste, 335G:1
dread of the scoffer, 306B:6
dying without, 313E:1
fear for the soul, not for the body, 335F:2
panic, 335E:3,4
perfect charity casts out fear, 335G:1
running away, in the mind, 306B:7
snare of, 306C:5
temptation; transformation, 313A:2
torment of the heart, 306:7
feasting:
invitation; symbol of eternal life, 339:5
invite the poor, not your friends, 339:6
Fidentius (bishop; one of Twenty Martyrs), 325:1
fighting: advice on how not to do battle, 335K:6
flesh:
beauty of, 335C:4,6
christian battle, 335J:2
evils arising from appetite for pleasure, 313A:2
godless man is only earth, 335D:3
put to death the deeds of, 335J:4
forgiveness:
Lord’s Prayer, 315:10
Stephen the martyr, 314:2
forgiveness of sin:
Christ’s blood shed for, 335I:1
repent, and be baptized. . ., 316:3
this is my blood which will be shed. . ., 306D:5
fountain of life, 306:5,6; 306A; 335D:3
free will:
boasting about good works, 333:6
fear the things you do willingly, 335E:5
friend: love God in your friend, 336:2
future life:
choose now where we are going, 335E:3
eye has not seen . . ., 328:6
glory remains hidden, 306:1
much to be desired, 335H:1
See also heaven

G

gain and loss, 318:2
Gervase, Saint:
remains of martyr come to light, 318:1
gift(s):
you [God] have no need of my goods, 331:2
gift(s) of God:
all things received from God, 335M:4
all we have, we have received, 335E:6
believe: they are lavish and plentiful, 339:6
what eye has not seen . . ., 331:3,4
glory: martyrdom vs glories of this earth, 335C:11
God:
anger/graciousness; listening to prayers, 306C:7
ashamed of being unworthy of God’s love, 336:2
Father: lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,6
fountain of life, 306A
his works speak; God keeps quiet, 313D:2
indifference to human affairs, 311:12
invisibly beautiful, 335C:13
look for nothing else from God, except God, 331:4
loved for his own sake, 336:2
mercy of, extends to saving of beasts, 306D:2
promised by, 307:3
promise: I am present, 306C:7
providence, 311:12; 333:5
reward of the good: himself, 331:4
unlessthelord were among us . . ., 335F:2
godless: pastures of the just, 306C:4
gold:
good in itself; bad if use is bad, 311:9,11,13
suffering by lovers of, 331:5; 335:2
Goliath, killed by David, 335K:5
good and evil:
bad use of gold, 311:9,11,13
cup of salvation; paid back good for evil, 333:4
godless weakened by evil, 306C:3,4
good things common to good/bad people, 311:11-12
judgment day and the life led, 335K:2
love of wickedness; hate your own soul, 336:2
malice (the word), 306:1
objections against God’s providence, 311:12
people are harmed by other people, 311:8
Stephen and those who stoned him, 317:1
sun rises on just and unjust, 317:1,2
use of the tongue (speaking), 311:11
wanting all to be good, except self, 339:4
willing slaves for iniquity, 306B:4
See also world
good example, see example
Good Thief: changed his cause on the cross, 335C:12
faith of, 328:7
greatness of, 328:7
Lord, remember me. . ., 327:2; 328:1
this man is the Holy One. . ., 328:7
good works: desiring to be a bishop, 340A:6
gift of capacity for, 333:6
good use of gold, 311:9,13
hiding, for fear of being mocked, 306B:6
house of faith and hope, 337:5
human praise not to be a consideration, 338:3
lamp as symbol of the person, 338:2,4
let your light shine. . ., 338:3,4
made into dwelling place for God, 337:5
Paul: keeping the faith, 333:5
perform openly; for example, not admiration, 338:1
performing your justice before men. . ., 338:3
priding yourself on your free will, 333:6
seeking praise for self; for God, 338:4
Son of God as reward, 339:6
store up to repay God, 339:3
temporal and earthly means, 337:1
whatever we do comes from God, 335J:4
goodness: all good comes from supreme good, 335E:6
by living good lives you will change the times, 311:8
God is keeping great goods for the good, 339:6
love what is good, 335C:13
who can harm lovers of. . ., 335C:5
grace: blessed is one whose helper is God, 335B:5
gift from heaven, 332:3
good works are God’s gifts, 333:5
law is powerless without, 335K:4
Saint Paul on, 306B:2
saved through faith, 333:6
symbol: five stones in milk can, 335K:5
without me you can do nothing, 333:6
grain: crop harvested from seed sown by Christ, 335E:2
grapes: gather grapes from thorns, 340A:10
gratitude: for gifts of God, 313B:1
greatness: whoever wishes to be greater. . ., 340A:2
greed: dancing in time to cupidity, 311:7
enduring hardships for, 335C:3
living without, 313E:1
love of sinning, 335C:2
making light of death, 335B:4
preacher’s words fall on deaf ears, 335C:10
snare of, 306C:5
temptation; transformation, 313A:2

H

hair: not one hair on your head will perish, 333:1
your hairs are numbered, 334:1
handicapped: invite the poor to the feast, 339:6
happiness: certainly and assuredly eternal life, 306:7
common aim of all people, 306:3
defining the happy or blessed life, 306:4
eternal life, 339:5

Volume III/9
genuine knowledge of another’s heart, 306:9
life (scriptural usage), 306:5, 6
truth added to life, 306:9
harvest: great hope after seeding by Martyrs, 306C:1
hatred: for Christians, 313G:2
healing: healer loves what he wants to make well, 335I:5
health:
diviners and astrologers, 335D:3
martyrs’ making light of, 306D:4
precious for rich and poor, 306:4
precious (in this world), 306A
seeking not to be blamed, 306D:4
heart:
believing unto justice, 306D:1
compunction, 336:5
conspiratorial; enemies of Jesus, 308A:7
happiness: knowledge of another’s heart, 306:9
lift up your heart, 331:3
showing up the thought of, 306:8
simple; crafty, 308A:7
where your treasure is. . ., 311:15
heaven:
making music to God. . ., 335B:3
married will live like angels, 335L:2
martyrs: having nothing, possessing all, 326:1
shut against the human race, 314:1
what we receive from the heavenly city, 332:4
hell: soul snatched from the underworld, 336:3
heretics:
falsely calling themselves Catholic, 313E:4
hate those in the Church, 313G:2
not martyrs, 313E:7
sufferings; not martyrs, 327:1
Herod, King: John the Baptist and, 307:1-5; 308:1-5
holiness:
anniversaries of holy persons celebrated, 335L:1
example of holy persons to be imitated, 335L:1
holy places: abuses in celebrations; dancing, 311:5
Holy Spirit:
attribute good things to God, 335J:4
came down on Jesus in form of dove, 308A:4
given us to know things given by God, 335E:6
speaking in martyrs, 328:3
hope:
crying out to God, 313F:1
curse, to be without hope, 313F:1
cursed be everyone placing hope in man, 335B:5
disappointment with commonplace hope, 313F:2
for what we cannot see, 313F:1
free from snares of the hunters, 306C:5
God; land of the dying, 313F:3
hope which is seen. . ., 306B:1
land of the living, 313F:3
lift up your hearts, 330:2
martyrs, 335D:1
natural stages of human hope, 313F:2
perishing of, 339:7
reality, 313F:1-3
rest not on bishops; not on the rest of men, 340A:9
salvation, 336:2
shelter of God’s wings, 335D:3
under cover of God’s wings, 306D:2,4
wait in patience, 336:5; 337:3
worldly hopes; entertaining never stops, 313F:2
house of God, see temple of God.
human acts: responsibility for, 335J:4
human condition: gifts of God, 331:3
humans: sons of men distinguished from men, 306D:3
humiliation: just man falls seven times, 306C:3
humility:
bishops, listen to Christ, 340A:4
drink the cup of humiliation, 340A:5
Jesus did not come down from the cross, 340A:5
seating prepared for others by the Father, 340A:5

Sermons 306-340A

Volume III/9
Sermons 306-340A

sharing the Lord’s table, 340A:5
teacher by word and example, 340A:5
husband and wife:
authority over wife’s body, 332:4

I
idols: Cyprian on, 313E:7
image of God: vain that he is troubled, . . , 335C:7
imitation:
Cyprian’s teaching and suffering, 313C:2
if anyone wishes to come after me, . . , 330:1
lowly should imitate the sublime, 315:8
martyrs as models, 325:1
immortality: desire for, shared with the godless, 335H:1
incarnation:
all found to be His enemies (sinful), 317:2
necessary in order to shed blood, 335I:1
Word joined man to God, 313E:1
Word made flesh, 334:2
inheritance:
Christ to be our possession, 334:3
unity in the Church, 340A:11,12

J
Jesus Christ:
acknowledge him in the presence of men, 335F:1
Adam compared with (re life and death), 335B:1
ashamed of Christ before men, 306B:7
authority challenged by Jewish enemies, 308A:7
birth of Stephen compared with, 317:3
birthday (feast) of Stephen and, 314:1
born after John the Baptist, 308A:3
bread come down from heaven, 333:1
chose martyrs out of this world, 313G:1
crucifixion:
between two robbers, 327:2; 331:2; 335:2; 335C:12

many Jews later came to believe, 313B:4
See also Good Thief
death, see below: passion and death.
denial of Christ as great sin, 318:2
denying; fear, 335F:2
disciples ask to sit at his right/left hand, 340A:5
door; side pierced by the lance, 311:3
eternal life in following, 313D:1
everything the Father has is mine, 335E:5
even as the Son of man was (the concept of Christ), 335H:12
equality of Christ and Man, 335I:1
good works for the sake of, 338:2
greater witness than John, 308A:8
healing the sick, 335I:5
hidden treasures of wisdom and knowledge, 335C:12
his enemies confused through John the Baptist, 308A:2,7
Holy Spirit bears witness to, 308A:4
hope of eternal salvation, 313E:1
humanity: likeness of the flesh of sin, 336:4
humility commended; acknowledge his divinity, 306D:3
humility; emphasis, 306D:3
I am the living bread, . . , 340A:9
image of God, 308A:7
imitation proposed, 325:1
incarnation, see Incarnation.
Lamb who destroyed death, 311:1
lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,6,8
lesson from his sufferings and resurrection, 335H:1
man (every man a liar?), 335M:3
martyr of martyrs, 334:2; 335G:2
martyrs pressed to deny Christ, 313B:2
miracles, and his Jewish enemies, 308A:7
my soul is sad, . . , 313D:3
my wish: where I am they also shall be, 319:3
never “of this world,” 313G:1
our way to life and truth, 306:10
passion and death:

Volume III/9
blindness (they know not what they do), 317:2
Christ hung between two robbers, 309:3
disciples dismayed, 328:1
enmity of Jews, 308A:7
false testimony; prophesying truth, 315:2
going behind me, Satan, 330:4
heart of Christ pierced, 336:5
learn from his sufferings, 335H:1
let him come down from the cross, 340A:5
like a sheep led to slaughter... , 315:3
love for sinners, 335I:2
many blood sacrifices of old law and, 335I:4
necessary for the Christ to suffer, 340A:11
Peter: far be this from you... , 335E:5
Psalm 30, a prophecy, 336:3
pull down this temple... , 315:2
Stephen’s martyrdom and, 315:2-3
wish that we be delivered from sin, 335I:3
you have torn up my sacking... , 336:4
portion of my inheritance, 334:3
rises, dies no more, 336:5
rock on which man builds, 337:1
saint of saints, 335E:2
saved by knowledge of, 335F:2
sets his table before you, namely himself, 332:2
seven last words:
Father, forgive them, 313E:4; 315:8; 316:3; 317:2,3,5,6; 319:4,5
Father, into your hands... , 316:3
today you shall be with me... , 327:2; 335C:12
sinlessness, 335B:5
sold by Judas, 336:4
Stephen’s vision of, see Stephen, Saint
suffered for us, leaving an example, 325:1
teacher of humility, 340A:5
teaching: separation to be avoided, 313E:3
tempted by the devil, 313E:4,5
trial; he remained silent, 315:3
Trinity revealed at baptism of, 308A:5
who do men say that I am... , 306D:3
willed to die and rise again, 335H:1
you would have no authority over me... , 313D:4
See also Christian life; son of man
Jews:
hated of Christians, 313G:2
liberation of their nation, 315:4
many who killed Christ later came to believe, 313B:4
open enemies of Christ, 308A:6,7
rebuked by Christ, out of love, 317:5
resurrection of Christ; conversions, 336:3
Stephen’s vision; Jews blocked their ears, 316:2
John the Baptist, Saint:
authority for baptizing, 308A:7
beheading of, 307:1-5; 308:1-5
friend of the bridegroom, 308A:2
greatness of, 308A:3
He must grow... , 307:1
held by king to be a holy man, 307:1
lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,8
oath of the king, 307:1-5
one who is less... , 308A:3
strap of whose sandal... , 308A:2,3
thought to be the Christ, 308A:2
voice crying in wilderness, 308A:2
Joseph of Egypt: struggle against sin, 318:2
joy:
meaning of “receive my spirit,” 319:2
travelers, 306B:1
Judas:
hanged himself, 313E:4
Satan entered his heart, 313E:4,5
sold Christ, 336:4
tolerated to the bitter end, 313E:3
judgment day:
cannot avoid by being afraid, 335K:2
Christ, judge of living and dead, 316:1
come, blessed of my Father... , 337:2
fall into judgment with the devil, 340A:2
prepare now for what is to come, 328:5
resurrection of life; -of the judgment, 306:5
sheep and goats, 328:5; 335L:3
souls will burn with body, 335F:2
just man:
anniversaries celebrated, 335L:1
falls seven times, 306C:3,4
held in eternal memory, 335L:3
lives by faith, 335M:5
pastures of the just, 306C:4
justice:
beauty of, 306B:4,5
confronting riches, 335:1
enmity with Christ: leading unjust life, 308A:6
suffering on account of justice, 335G:2
test of values, 335C:13
will of God abides forever, 335C:13
willing slaves of justice, 306B:4

K
kindness: good works, material and spiritual, 338:1
kingdom of God (- of heaven):
no deceit; no disappointment, 306:8
not of this world, 306C:6
see/hear St Cyprian in a greater Church, 310:4
sinners shall not gain possession, 335L:4
unless one becomes as a child. . ., 340A:1
kiss of peace, 313E:3

L
lamb:
Paul and Stephen as, 316:5
robes made white in blood of the Lamb, 306D:5
lamp:
nobody lights a lamp. . ., 317:4
prepared for my Christ (Psalm 132), 308A:1,6,8
put on lampstand, 338:2,4
Lawrence, Saint: miracle at shrine of, 322:2
Lazarus: resting on Abraham’s bosom, 339:5
Lazarus: risen, will die again, 335H:1
lepers: cleansed by Christ, 306A
liar:
every man is a liar, 328:2,3;
335E:3,4,5; 335M:2,3,4; 339:2
lies on account of money, 330:3
panic, 335E:3
life:
Christ the way, 306:10
conversation between persecutor and martyr, 335B:3
deny God; retain temporal life, 313D:2
die eternally for love of staying alive, 335E:3
elements of, 335B:3entrusting one’s life to creator, 306C:1
full of tears, 313D:3
great variety of modes of, 306:3
happiness implied (in scriptural use), 306C:5,6
holding on to, 331:1
however bitter, joy if you could live forever. . ., 311:14
lose life by saving it; find it by losing it, 306C:1
love of temporal; -eternal, 335A:2
natural stages of human hope, 313F:2
passing, 313D:2
proper disregard for, 335H:1
wish to lead long life badly, 339:7
See also death; eternal life; happiness; soul
light: you were once darkness. . ., 336:2
listening: God; demons, 306C:7
long: as long as I live (i.e. forever), 335B:2
Lord’s Prayer:
forgive us our debts. . ., 315:10
our daily bread, 333:1
petition for eternal things, 306C:8
loss and gain, 318:2
love:
cardinal virtue, 332:1
dedication of a church, 337:1
denyng self, 330:2
earthly objec, 311:4
existence wanted for object loved, 335I:3
extent of command to love one another, 332:2
Father is not in one who loves the world, 313A:2
greatest unhappiness: duty to love life of misery, 311:14
ignoring self, 330:3
lay down your life for your friends, loving freely; looking for reward, 340:2
lust for the world, 311:6
martyrs' love of their enemies, 317:2
Peter's confession, 340A:3
praise and, 306C:5
rescue from ruins of our old selves, 336:1
right order of, 335C:13
run toward God by affections, 306B:1
spiritual love in good works, 337:5
two commandments, 313B:3
two kinds: greedy and dear, 335C:2,3
value of object loved, 335A:2
what God has prepared for those who love Him, 331:3,4
when you are evil, you love yourself, 336:2
world; things of the world, 306C:6
love of God:
- making light of death for, 335B:4
- risking death for, requires God's help, 335B:4
lust:
- consent; or fight the desire, 335J:3,4
- flesh, eyes, ambition, 313A:2,3
- in love with uncleanness, 306B:4
- making light of death, 335B:4
- martyrdom of John the Baptist, 307:1
world; the flesh, 306C:6
M
malice (the word), 306:1
mammon of iniquity, 335C:8
man: head of the woman is man, 332:4

martyrdom:
- forbidden to offer one’s self, 313E:5
- sick persons and, 328:8
- way smoothed by many walking on it, 306:10

martyrs:
- assurance given to, 333:1; 335F:1
- assurances that God is for us, 334:2
- battle inside, won outside, 335J:1
- benefiting themselves in dying for Christ, 331:2
- birthday of, 335-335I
- blood is seed of the Church, 335E:2
- body remains come to light, 318:1
- cause, not punishment, makes a martyr, 306:2; 306A; 325:2; 327:1,2; 328:4, 328:7; 335:2; 335C:5; 335G:2
- celebrate feasts by imitating virtues, 311:1
- celebrating festivals of, 311:6
- chain (love of staying alive) burst, 335E:3
- contests; victory, 335:1
- conversation with persecutor, 335B:3
- Cyprian's exhortations, 309:6
- demons conquered by, 312:5
- denying self to attain immortal life, 313D:1
- denying oneself, 330:3
- devil conquered by, 335D:3
- dialog with persecutors, 326:2
- die in order not to sin, 318:2
- difficult to imitate sufferings of, 313A:1
- drunk on plenty of God's house, 335D:1,3
- due for punishment: receive my spirit, 315:6
- dying they discovered life, 335B:1
- earthly feelings removed by God, 313:4
- Eight; Twenty, and companions, 313G:3
- every man a liar, 335E:3,4
- exhortation to imitate, 335H:2
- faith proven, 329:1
- farmers/sowers compared with, 335A:2
feasts celebrated; imitate their example, 325:1
fixed in our memories, 313C:1
follow Christ in his passion, 328:1; 330:1
following footsteps of martyrs, 306:10
friends of Christ, 332:1
glory after the resurrection, 328:6
glory: first rank in the Church, 306B:3
glory ignored by the world, 335C:1
God, distinguish my cause... 335:2
grace to suffer for Christ's sake, 332:3
Greek/Latin/English terms, 319:3
heavenly reward, 315:9
help in the name of the Lord, 313A:1
Holy Spirit speaking truth in, 328:3
honored, not worshipped, 335H:2
hoping for things that last forever, 306A
if God is for us... 334:1
imitate faith in life of, 306:10
improper celebrations at shrines of, 335D:2
improper celebrations at shrines of, 335D:2
in love with life, 335B:2,4
judge me, O God... 327:1
killed after confessing the faith, 306D:2
killers "offering a service to God," 313G:3
lie not in their mouths, 335E:3,4
love for Christ as way and life, 306:10
love of (eternal) life, 335A:2
love of their enemies, 317:2
love the causes of their sufferings, 335:2
love them by imitating endurance, 328:8
many evils endured by, 327:1; 328:4
may their merits never be wanting, 335D:5
meaning of "birthdays" of, 310:1
mission and, 331:5; 335:2
narrow road widened by, 306C:1
no earthly glory compares with, 335C:11
overcame through Christ, 335J:1
paradoxes, 313C:1
perishable body reaps imperishability, 306D:1
patience tested and proved, 335C:1
peace earned by endurance, 326:1
perfect charity casts out fear, 335G:1
praise them; God is praised, 313:2
press to deny Christ, 313B:2
quarry to teeth of the enemy, 313B:1,2,3
relying on self, not at all, 335:1
repaid God; cup of salvation, 329:2
reward loved by: praising God, 335B:2
robes made white in blood of the Lamb, 306D:5
seductions of the world, 335:1
seek the invisible rewards of, 335C:12
share the merits of, 335D:3
show love for, by being faithful, 331:5
slaves twice over (made and bought), 335I:5
sought relief from Christ, 335F:2
sow in tears, reap in joy, 313D:3
spread gospel by shedding blood, 318:1
squared timbers of which ark was made, 335E:1
strong and brave in the faith, 306D:2
suffer persecution for sake of justice, 325:2
taught by Jesus, not to fear death, 335B:2
temporal health made light of by, 306D:4
temporal well-being scorned by, 319A
temptation to retain temporal life, 306D:4
tested, 306C:1
their bodies too changed to ashes, 335F:2
threatened with death, 318:2
torture and killing of, 313G:2
tortures, 334:1
trade temporal life for eternal, 313C:1
true way to celebrate feasts of, 317:1

Volume III/9
truthful; but “every man is a liar,” 328:2,3
upholder of my soul: the Lord, 334:1
will made ready by the Lord, 333:1
with us, they rejoice in heaven, 325:1
witnesses; died for truth, 328:2
worldly delights and terrors, 318:2
See also Stephen 
Massa Candida, See White Mass.
meekness: blessed are the meek. . ., 312:1
Melchizedek: the Lord has sworn. . ., 307:3
mercy:
  guard and increase God’s gifts, 333:7
  not dealt with according to our sins, 333:2
Paul: I obtained mercy, 333:4
merit: God is crowning his own gifts, 333:5
messiah: witness of the Holy Spirit, 308A:4
milk: grace, 335K:4
miracles:
  blindness cured by prayers of Stephen, 320-322
  body trembling cured, 322:2
  cure of Palladia, 323:4
  infant restored to life at Uzalis, 324
  Stephen worked, in name of Christ, 316:1; 319:1
misers:
  exhortation to, 335C:10
  martyrs and, 331:5; 335:2
money:
  deposit with the almighty, 335C:9
  love of, 330:3; 335E:3
  make friends of mammon of iniquity, 335C:8
parable: servant “invested” master’s money, 339:4-5
  test of values, 335C:13
moneymakers, 335E:3
morality:
  struggle with temporal/eternal goods, 339:9
  things, to be good, require good people, 311:11
Moses:
  chair of Moses, 340A:10
Stephen compares M. with Christ, 315:3
mother and son:
  he attacks her; she curses him, 322:2
  mother’s milk, 335K:4
mouth: confession unto salvation, 306D:1,2
music: I will make music to God. . ., 335B:2
mystical body:
  believe in Christ, the head, 308A:8
  chosen from the world, 313G:1
  head and members, 336:5
  living stones, 337:1

N
nakedness: endurance, 335:2
Nicodemus, 316:3

O
oath(s):
  broken by King David, 308:2
  Christ’s teaching on, 307:2,4
  God made witness to, 307:4
  habit, 308:5
  rash, 308:1,5
  swearing falsely, 307:2,4; 308:2,4,5
  swearing when challenged to do so, 308:3
occult temptation, 318:3
Old Law: David’s “five smooth stones,” 335K:3
original sin:
  death caused by, 335B:1
  enormity of the calamity, 318:2
  heaven shut against the human race, 314:1
  pride: you shall be like gods, 340A:1

P
pagans: hatred of christians, 313G:2
pain:
  living in, not to live at all, 306:5,6
  malice (the word), 306:1
Palladia: miraculous cure of, 323:4
panic: I said in my ecstacy, 335E:3,4
Sermons 306-340A

pardon: promised if I change my ways, 339:7
parents: due honor to be paid to, 323:1
pastoral work: planter and waterer, 340:3
patience:
Christ on the cross, 340A:5
gain possession of your souls, 335E:6
hope for what one can’t see, 336:5;
337:3
martyrs tested and proved, 335C:1
martyrs, 333:1
possess your souls in, 335A:3
repentance; God’s prompting, 339:3,7
wait for the Lord, 339:7
waiting for the Lord, 306A
White Mass, 306C:5
Paul, Saint, apostle:
attitude toward death, 335K:2
choice of the name ("little"), 315:7
chosen instrument; he will divide the
food, 333:3
on conversion, 312:3
due for punishment, 315:6
example for Christian life, 306B:2
glory only in the cross, 330:4
goad in the flesh; headaches,
306C:7
good works are God’s gifts, 333:5
I have fought the good fight...,
333:2,5
Jacob’s blessing on Benjamin, 333:3
lamp for the world, 317:4
not listened to, 306C:7
not worthy to be called apostle...,
315:6
paid back good works by grace of
God, 333:4
servant “by the will of God,” 316:5
true witness instead of false one
(Saul), 333:4
worked harder (“grace of God with
me”), 306B:2
See also Saul
peace:
enemy of; not a disciple of Christ,
313E:3
my peace I give you... , 313E:3
praying for, 306C:8
penance: price of pardon, 326:1
Pentecost: Jewish converts, 313B:4
perfection:
Saint Paul on, 306B:2
shedding blood in struggle against sin,
318:2
Perpetua (martyr), 335A
persecution:
ceased; temptations continue,
335D:3,5
quarry to teeth of the enemy,
313B:1,2,3
suffering on account of justice,
335G:2
those who denied Christ were freed,
335F:2
persecution: winnowing at time of,
311:10
Peter, Saint, apostle:
arise, kill, and eat... , 313B:3
before the cock crows...
. . . , 340A:8
blessed are you... , 335E:5
convinced of the truth; ready to die for
it, 311:2
do you love me [asked three times]
... , 340A:3
fault (denials) wiped out by weeping,
330:4
fear of death, 330:4
fear perished; love conquered, 335E:3
feed my sheep, 340:2
feed [i.e. suffer for] my sheep, 340A:3
get behind me, Satan... , 335E:5
I don’t know him... , 335E:3
learned to deny himself, 330:4
when you are old... , 335B:3, 340A:3
widow restored to life by, 313E:8
You are the Christ... , 306D:3, 335E:5
Pharisees: whatever they say... , 340A:9
pleasure:
Christian rejection of, 313A:1,2
love of, 335C:3,4
lust of the flesh, 313A:2
theater, 313A:3
Pontius Pilate, 313D:4
poor:
contribute to “deposit box” for,
339:3
despised by the rich, 311:13
good health as patrimony of, 306:4
if you have God, you have all,
311:15
invite to the feast, 339:6
persecution: time of testing, 311:10

Volume III/9
power: benefit; disadvantage, 306C:6
praise:
always in my mouth, 306C:3
because of love, 306C:5
concern for sort of life of those who
praise, 339:1
Donatist bitterness, 313E:6
God is praised when martyrs are
praised, 313:2
motive for good works, 338:3,4
right order of, 335C:13
prayer:
attain eternal bliss: pray tirelessly,
340:3
gracious God listens; angry God does
not, 306C:7
intercession of Paul and Stephen,
316:5
make requests whose granting you do
not fear, 323:1
struggle with temporal/eternal goods,
339:9
value of saints’ prayers, 313E:8
preacher: words fall on deaf ears (of the
greedy), 335C:10
precious in sight of God is the death of
his saints, 306:1; 313A:5; 318:1;
321; 328:1; 329:1,2; 335E:2;
335I:1,4
presumption: perishing by, 339:3
pride:
Christ came to cure by example,
340A:5
eminence given in the Church, 340A:2
good works and, 335J:4
origin and cause, 340A:1
shame in continuing to be proud,
340A:5
spirit of this world, 333:6
worldly ambition, 313A:2,4
Primus (martyr), 335A
procrastination: slow to turn to the Lord,
339:8
prodigal son:
denying himself, 330:3
returning to himself, . . . , 330:3
prophecy: Christ proclaimed through all
nations, 328:5
Protase, Saint: remains of martyr come to
light, 318:1
providence:
objections against ways of God,
311:12
unless the Lord guards the city. . . ,
333:5
Psalm 30:
Christ the head; we are his members,
336:5
prophecy of Christ’s passion, 336:3
punishment:
existence in, is not life, 306:6
malice (the word), 306:1
martyrdom and, 306A
martyrs deprived of temporal goods,
335C:5
mother’s curse, 322:2
resurrection to the judgment, 335F:2
wrong cause and, 325:2
Q
Quadratus (martyr), 306B:1-7; 306C:1-8;
306D:1-5
significance of the name, “square,”
306C:2
R
real estate: greed, 335C:8
reality:
cause of all realities, 308A:5
hope and, 313F:1-3
redemption:
blood of just one victim, 335I:4
blood shed for His enemies, 317:2
Christ’s “grand exchange” on the
cross, 329:1
gift to sinners: Christ’s death, 339:6
one price was paid to acquire us,
340A:11
passion of Christ and, 313E:5
Son of Man came to serve, 340A:3
what shall I pay back to the Lord. . . ,
335M:4; 340:2
while we were still sinners. . . , 335I:1
relics:
prices of martyrs come to light, 318:1
place indicated by preceding signs,
318:1
repentance:
Judas: repentance without hope,
313E:4
patience of God drawing toward,
339:3,7
responsibility:
for good or evil things we do, 335J:4
servant “investing” master’s money,
339:4-5
resurrection (of Jesus):
disciples thought he was a phantom,
340A:11
lesson for us, 335H:1
resurrection of the body:
case of seven men with same wife,
335L:2
judgment day, 328:5
married will live like angels, 335L:2
to life; to judgment, 335F:2
truth of: Sadducees, 335L:2
rich and poor:
Lazarus resting on Abraham’s bosom,
339:5
rich men:
fear of death, 306:6
good health precious for, 306:4
if you have God not, what have you
got? 311:15
rejoicing in earthly possessions,
306:6
wealth scorned in time of persecution,
311:10
riches, see wealth.
Rome:
showpeople in, 313A:3
tombs, 335C:11
ruler: let him rule himself, 313A:4
sacking: you have torn up my... 336:4
sacrifice:
many blood sacrifices in old law; new
law just one, 335I:4
you will live; said by both pagans and
martyrs, 335D:5
saints:
looking out for people, 335K:4
precious is their death... 306:1; 313A:5; 318:1; 321; 328:1;
329:1,2; 335E:2; 335I:1,4
square (quadrated) construction,
306C:7
value of prayers of, 313E:8
salvation:
common to man and beast, 306D:2
eager to work; fear and trembling,
337:4
eternal, not temporal, 306D:2
hope in protection of God’s wings,
335D:3,4
perishing by despair; by presumption,
339:3
receive the cup of salvation, 329:2
saved through faith, by grace, 333:6
temporal and eternal, 319A
trust not in the sons of men... 335B:4
sacriification:
lamp prepared for my Christ (Psalm
132), 308A:1,8
upon him my s. shall flower,
308A:5,8
willing slaves of justice for, 306B:4
Saul, King: persecutor of David, 315:7
Saul (later Paul):
conversion into Paul, 315:7
cruelst of persecutors, 333:2
deserved to be damned; he obtained
mercy, 333:2
Paul compared with, 333:3,4
prayed for by Stephen, 316:4
ravenous wolf, 333:3
stoning of Stephen, 315:7; 316:3,5
why are you persecuting... 316:4,5;
317:6
See also Paul
scribes: whatever they say... 340A:9
self:
back to yourself, 330:3
ruled with Christ, 336:5
love yourself; deny yourself, 330:2
right and wrong love of, 330:3
self-denial:
denying oneself, 330:3
don’t do your own will, 330:4
self-examination: Paul’s teaching on,
306B:4
self-importance, 313A:4
self-indulgence: spendthrift, 335C:3
self-knowledge: ignorance of self,
340A:8
self-love:
last times; dangerous times, 330:3
leaving God out of our life, 330:3
neglecting God, 330:3
sensuality: lover of, also wishes for wisdom, 335C:4,6
serpent: sin, you will not die the death. . ., 335B:1,2
servant:
    bishop as servant of the people, 340A:3
    parable: one who “invested” master’s money, 339:4-5
    whoever wishes to be greater. . ., 340A:2,3
seven times (just man falls), 306C:3,4
shame:
    ashamed of being ashamed, 306B:6
    unworthy of God’s love, 336:2
shepherd: good only by God’s grace, 340:2
shorn ewes, 313B:3
showpeople: status in pagan Rome, 313A:3
shows and spectacles: lust of the eyes, 313A:3
shrines: improper celebrations at martyrs’ shrines, 335D:2
sick:
    Christ came to make them well, 335I:5
    martyr on his sickbed, 335D:3
    practicing martyrdom, 328:8
    shelter of God’s wings, 335D:3
    temptations, 328:8
    unlawful amulets/charms, 335D:3,5
    silence: ashamed of Christ before men, 306B:7
sin:
    conversion: all evil deeds wiped out, 339:7
    desire: consent, 335J:2,3,4
    evils we do come from ourselves, 335J:4
    fight against, fought by all Christians, 335J:2
    greedy love: love of sinning, 335C:2
    inner self killed by, 335B:5
    let us not look back, 335I:2
    loving badly; living badly, 335J:3
    only thing that is really our own, 306B:2
    persuaded to sin; you won’t die, 335B:2
    self crucified with Christ, 336:5
shading blood in struggle against, 318:2
See also forgiveness of sin; original sin
singing: lovers sing, 336:1
sinners:
    Christ’s enemies, 308A:6
    gift of Christ’s death, 339:6
    God threatens the godless, 339:9
    Jesus died for, 335I:2
    precious for price paid for them, 335I:1
    shall not gain possession of the kingdom, 335I:4
warning: dying you shall die, 339:2
slander: blessed shall you be. . ., 340A:8
slaves: of justice; of iniquity, 306B:4
    martyrs as, 335F:5
Son of Man:
    came not to be served but to serve, 340A:3
    Jesus’ preference, 306D:3
    sons of men: distinction between men and, 306D:3
soul:
    chains (worldly values) binding the soul, 335E:3
    death of: and death of the body, 335B:5
    love it; lose it, 313D:2
    one who finds his soul will lose it, 335F:2
    snatched from the underworld, 336:3
    subject to God, 335E:6
    suffering the loss of, 330:3
    whoever has lost, will find it, 331:2
    whoever loves his soul will lose it. . ., 331C:1; 331D:1; 331I:1; 330:2
    See also body and soul
sowers: martyrs and, 335A:2
spectacles and shows: lust of the eyes, 313A:3
spiritual life:
    God will satisfy all desire, 334:3
    nothing but God is enough for us, 334:3
    seek martyr’s invisible rewards, 335C:12
    See also Christian life; soul square:
        Quadratus, 306B:3
Sermons 306-340A

square block: overthrowing, 306C:2,4
squared timbers, 335E:1
Stephen, Saint:
acts of, in canonical scripture, 315:1
birth compared with that of Jesus, 317:3
birthday compared with 25 December, 314:1
chosen by the apostles, 316:1
conciliatory to his audience, 319:1
discovery of his body (remains), 319:6; 323:2
do not hold this sin against them, 315:5,7; 319:5
fellow servant, 319:7
followed example of Christ, 315:8
good lamb followed the Lamb, 319:4
imitated Christ in suffering, 319:5
joined to Christ by dying, 314:1
kneeling, he prayed for his killers, 316:3; 319:4
lamp for the world, 317:4
legend of stone which struck sailor’s elbow (ankan), 323:2
love him in Christ, 316:1
love of his enemies, 317:6
martyr follows his Master, 317:6
merit of his faith, 317:1
miracle at Uzalis, 324
miracles in name of Christ, 316:1; 319:6,1
miraculous cure of blind man, 320-322
ordained deacon, 315:1
palm of martyrdom from mother Church, 317:6
passion of Christ and, 315:2-3
patience in death, 317:5
place (chapel) to honor Stephen; worship God, 318:3
power of his prayers, 319:6
prayed for those stoning him, 319:4
preceded his ordainers to martyrdom, 316:1
proclaiming from the rooftops, 315:3
rebuke of the Jews, 317:5
receive my spirit. . ., 315:5,6,7; 316:3; 319:2
relics, 317:1; 318:1
Saul at stoning of Stephen, 316:3
sermons on the martyr Stephen, 314-324
sleep of peace (his death), 317:5
spoke at length at his trial, 315:3
suffering:
being put to death all the day long, 335C:5
Christian endurance of, 313A:1,2
cup of salvation, 329:2
devil; boasting, 328:4
just cause, 306:2
keeping to hard ways, 306:10
Paul’s “goad in the flesh,” 306C:7
they will come back with exultation. . ., 335A:3
suicide: mother who cursed her son, 322:2
Susanna: struggle against sin, 318:2
swearing, see oath.
sword: understanding God’s weapons, 313:4

T
Tabitha (widow), 313E:8
table: Cyprian’s place of martyrdom, 310:2
teeth: flock of shorn sheep, 313B:3
temple of God:
bishop as, 340A:8
Christ, our foundation, 337:4
Christians as, 337:2
dwellers in the house of God, 337:3
house not made by hands, 337:5
living stones, 337:4
purity in, 332:4
temporal goods:
bad people; God’s providence, 311:12,13
beg God to grant what is best for us, 306C:8
frequently we sin against God, 334:3
given to bad and good alike, 339:6
loss of all possessions, 318:2

Volume III/9
love of earthly things, 311:4
martyrs deprived of, 335C:5
temptation(s):
  ceaseless, 335D:3,5
  contests with, never lacking, 306C:5
  just man falls/rises seven times, 306C:4
  persuaded to sin; you won’t die, 335B:2
  struggle against sin, 318:2
  when persecution no longer rages, 318:3
testing: persecution as time of, 311:10
thanksgiving:
  for God’s mercy; guarding and increasing his gifts, 333:7
theater: shows and spectacles, 313A:3
thorns: gather grapes from thorns, 340A:10
time:
  asking for more time; piling bad days on bad days, 339:7
  creation: Father, Son and Spirit, 308A:4
  time does not harm people, 311:8
tongue: bad use of (blasphemy), 311:11
torment: eternal death, 306:5
travelers:
  joy, 306B:1
  perfection on the, 306B:3
treasure:
  where no thief can approach: heaven, 335C:8
  where your heart is. . ., 311:15
Trinity:
  from what moment is the Father. . ., 308A:4
  persons; brightness of a fire (analogy), 308A:4
  procession of persons, 308A:4
  revealed at Christ’s baptism, 308A:5
  what Father does, Son does. . ., 340A:5
truth:
  Christ the way to, 306:10
  denial is adultery of the heart, 318:2
  dying for wrong cause, 325:2
  martyrs as witnesses, 328:2
  paid as reward of truthfulness, 306:9
  prophesying without knowing it, 315:2
Tutuslymeni, 308:5
Twenty Martyrs: birthday of, 325-326

U
uncleanness: love of, 306B:5
unity:
  cherished, 313E:3
  Cyprian and, 312:6
  one inheritance, 340A:11,12
Utica: martyrs of, 306:1; 311:10
Uzalis: miracles reported at, 322:2, 324

V
Valeriana, Saint, 325:1
values:
  defeat the delights of the world, 335:1
  God is teaching you to desire better things, 311:13
  lose better things by loving the inferior, 335C:4
  right order of love, 335C:13
  victims; people are harmed by other people, 311:8
Victoria (martyr), 335A
Victoria, Saint, 325:1
vigils: abuses in celebrations; dancing, 311:5
vine and branch, 340A:10
virtue:
  good things only to be found in the good, 311:11
  imitate martyrs, 311:1
vision: Jews envious of Stephen, 316:2
vocation: disciples chosen from the world, 313G:1
vomit, 318:2

W
wages: parable: workers starting at different hours, 335M:5
  wait for the Lord, 339:6,7
walking: analogy; Christian life, 306B:1, 3
wealth:
  because you have asked, you have received. . ., 311:13
  disadvantage to many people, 306C:6

Sermons 306-340A
earthly possessions, 306:6
facing dangers for acquisition, 335:2
good/evil related to usage, 311:13
justice confronting riches, 335:1
rich people despising the poor, 311:13
transfer it where you can’t lose it, 335C:9
weapons:
understanding God’s weapons, 313:4
used by martyrs, 313:3,5
White Mass (martyrs of Utica), 306; 306A; 306C:1; 311:10
wicked:
future life of torment, 306:5
See also sinners
wickedness, see good and evil.
wife: authority over her body, 332:4
will of God:
choose justice; it abides forever, 335C:13
faith in, not questioning, 318:1
Paul as God’s servant, 316:5
wisdom:
angels, 335K:4
beauty of, 306B:4; 335C:4
dear love; common delight in wisdom, 335C:2
heaping up treasure, 335C:7
praise w. by the way you live, 311:4
sensual pleasure and, 335C:4
witness bearing:
keeping quiet out of fear, 313E:7
testimony of martyrs called crime, 335A:1
woman: taken from the side of man, 336:5
Word of God: in the beginning... 334:2; 335K:4
See also Jesus Christ; Son of God
words: rations provided by Augustine the bishop, 339:4
work: reward: crown of justice, 333:2
world:
Christians, despise the world, 311:3
crucified to me and I to the world... 317:4
Father is not in one who loves the world, 313A:2
fear, with view to future life, 335M:1
gaining the whole world... 311:2
hatred of christians, 313G:2
loved in spite of bitterness, 311:14
made by God; it did not know him, 313A:2
martyrs and the seductions of, 335:1
overcome by martyrs, 318:2
passes away... 311:6
rulers; people who love the world, 335D:4
spirit of pride, 333:6
what does it profit a man... 330:3
whoever loves the world... 311:6
worship: God of the martyrs, 335H:2

Sermons 306-340A

Volume III/9
Index from
Sermons 341-400

Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
Sermons 341-400 are on Various Themes.
Volume III/10 Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-028-5, 6 x 9 in., 527 pp., 1995

Includes the following works:

On Christian Discipline  
(De disciplina christiana)

On the Sack of the City of Rome  
(De excidio urbis Romae)

On the Creed to Catechumens  
(De symbolo ad catechumenos)

Miscellaneous Sermons - Sermons to the People  
(Sermones (Caillau, Denis, Etaix, Guelferbytanus, Morin, Wilmart, etc.) & Sermones ad populum (1–396))

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Volume III/10

INDEX OF SCRIPTURE
(prepared by Matthew Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>20:13.15-16 366,3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td>342,3; 379,4; 380,3; 380,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:2 380,4; 384,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:26 398,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:27 384,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:7 370,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:24 341,12; 349,3; 362,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:4 341,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:18.19 366,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:18-19 346C,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:19 359,1; 362,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 15:6</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:32</td>
<td>397,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:8-9</td>
<td>359,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:9</td>
<td>364,3; 375A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-16</td>
<td>341,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:2</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:3</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4.LXX</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6-7</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9.10</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10-12</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:13</td>
<td>363,2; 363,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14-16</td>
<td>363,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17-18</td>
<td>363,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:19</td>
<td>363,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:21</td>
<td>363,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>363,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:14</td>
<td>363,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers 20:12</td>
<td>352,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>32:49-50 352,4; 352,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua 1:5</td>
<td>366,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judges 13:25</td>
<td>364,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:14 364,2; 364,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:18 364,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:19-20 364,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:2-3 364,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:25 364,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:30 364,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel 12:13</td>
<td>366,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobit 4:17</td>
<td>361,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:19 362,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judith 16:3</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:8</td>
<td>398,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:9 385,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:21 343,10; 346A,6; 359A,6; 398,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:9 397,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sermons 341-400
Sermons 341-400

2:9-10 359A,6
2:10 343,10; 397,3; 398,10
7:1 359A,6
7:1-2 351,1
9:24 363,2
14:16-17 397,4
22:29 351,1
31:33 392,3
38:11 359A,6
40:16 365,5

Psalms
1:1 372,3
1:2 371,4
2:7-8 358,1
2:8 359,4
2:9 366,6
2:10-11 347,1
3:5 375B,2; 375B,2
4:4 392,4
6:7 350A,1
7:1 359A,5
8:2 375,1
9:9 351,1
10:3 359,2
11:5 368,2; 368,5
11:5 LXX 387,1; 399,4
11:7 341,9; 394,1
13:3 365,2
16:2 389,6
16:5 359,4
16:7 365,1; 365,2; 365,3; 365,5
17:15 384,1
18:11 371,2
18:28 380,7; 344,7
18:29 361,16
18:43 375C,6
19:1 375,1
19:1-4 373,1
19:1-4 359,1
19:3-4 375A,1
19:4-5 372,2
19:5 361,16; 372,2; 372,3; 377,1
19:6 369,1
19:9 348,4
20:4 394,1
22:6 380,2
22:16 362,25
23:1 366,2
23:2 366,3
23:3 366,4
23:4 366,5; 366,6
23:5 366,6
23:6 346C,2; 366,7; 366,8
24:7-8 377,1
24:8 372,2; 377,1
24:9-10 377,1
25:10 366,4
30:1 380,6
30:10 380,5
31:20 362,2
31:24 351,4
32:4 352,2
32:5 352,2
32:9 348A,4; 383,1
33:6 384,3
34:1 359A,6
34:2 348,2
34:5 379,5
34:8 366,3
34:9 366,2
35:12 383,1
36:10 362,5
37:1-2 350A,3
37:10.35-36 388,1
37:27 389,5
39:6 390,2
41:4 397,5
45:2 351,5; 372,2; 375A,2
45:7 366,6
45:13 365,1
46:10 362,1
49:16-17 359,2; 359,3
50:1 358,3
50:21 351,7
51:3 351,7
51:5 351,2; 391,1
51:9 352,1
51:9.3.16-17 351,12
51:12 384,3
51:13 381,1
51:17 347,2; 351,9
57:5.11 360,1
59:9 365,5
59:10 366,7
60:4 351,8
69:4 361,16

Volume III/10
### Sermons 341-400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72:8-11</td>
<td>358,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:9</td>
<td>358,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>368,5; 385,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28.27</td>
<td>385,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75:7</td>
<td>398,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:5</td>
<td>345,1; 366,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:11</td>
<td>355,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77:2</td>
<td>375C,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:25</td>
<td>400,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81:10</td>
<td>382,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:3</td>
<td>343,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:4</td>
<td>362,31; 366,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:5-6</td>
<td>347,2; 351,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:10</td>
<td>346C,2; 355,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:10.5</td>
<td>351,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:11</td>
<td>366,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85:11</td>
<td>362,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:5-6</td>
<td>359,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:8</td>
<td>348A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:18</td>
<td>343,10; 352,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94:22</td>
<td>380,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96:2</td>
<td>370,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:27</td>
<td>394,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104:20-21</td>
<td>351,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106:20</td>
<td>365,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:43</td>
<td>355,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108:12</td>
<td>365,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:7</td>
<td>372,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111:10</td>
<td>347,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112:10</td>
<td>361,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113:7-8</td>
<td>381,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:3</td>
<td>398,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115:17</td>
<td>365,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:10</td>
<td>362,5; 399,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>398,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12-13</td>
<td>375B,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:15</td>
<td>399,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:16-17</td>
<td>394,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:14</td>
<td>380,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118:24</td>
<td>371,1; 375B,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:19</td>
<td>359A,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:73</td>
<td>348A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:79</td>
<td>358,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:96</td>
<td>358,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:103</td>
<td>366,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:5-7</td>
<td>351,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:7</td>
<td>358,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:1</td>
<td>379,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:2</td>
<td>379,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124:1-2</td>
<td>375B,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126:5</td>
<td>358A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126:6</td>
<td>358A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130:1-4</td>
<td>351,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133:1</td>
<td>355,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138:6</td>
<td>351,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7</td>
<td>351,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7-9</td>
<td>352,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:2</td>
<td>342,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:5</td>
<td>391,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142:5</td>
<td>347,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:11-15</td>
<td>359A,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:15</td>
<td>359A,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145:2</td>
<td>382,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:4</td>
<td>361,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:6</td>
<td>398,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>380,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:6</td>
<td>363,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:8</td>
<td>399,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:9</td>
<td>392,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149:8</td>
<td>392,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154:26</td>
<td>348,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>351,12; 363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9</td>
<td>397,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:2</td>
<td>350B,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>359A,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:6</td>
<td>391,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>347,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4</td>
<td>355,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>344,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>364,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-6-7</td>
<td>391,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>391,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10-12:19-21</td>
<td>391,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>396,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>389,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>391,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:26</td>
<td>369,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>361,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>361,16; 370,3; 377,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16</td>
<td>391,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20-21</td>
<td>365,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>348A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>348,4; 351,3; 363,2; 400,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proverbs

- 2:4 399,11
- 3:12 341A,3
- 4:8-9 392,5
- 9:8 392,5
- 14:26 348,1
- 18:3 351,12; 363,2
- 20:9 397,1
- 22:2 350B,1
- 25:21 359A,11
- 27:6 391,3

### Ecclesiastes

- 1:18 347,3
- 5:4 355,6

### Song of Songs

- 2:4 344,2
- 2:15 364,4

### Wisdom

- 2:1-6-7 391,4
- 2:8 391,6
- 2:10-12:19-21 391,4
- 4:13 396,2
- 4:20 389,5
- 6:12 391,5
- 7:26 369,2
- 7:27 361,16
- 8:1 361,16; 370,3; 377,1
- 8:16 391,5
- 8:20-21 365,3
- 8:21 348A,4
- 9:15 348,4; 351,3; 363,2; 400,2
### Sermons 341-400

| 10:4 | 366,8 |
| 10:21 | 352,9; 369,2 |
| 13:4.3 | 384,1 |
| 66:5 | 357,4 |
| 66:5, LXX | 357,4 |

**Sirach**

| 1:22 | 347,1 |
| 1:26 | 347,1 |
| 2:1-4-5 | 397,3 |
| 2:14 | 357A,2 |
| 3:30 | 389,5 |
| 5:7 | 352,9 |
| 5:11, vul 6 | 380,5 |
| 6:18 | 391,6 |
| 8:2 | 351,12 |
| 10:9 | 351,4 |
| 10:13 | 346B,3 |
| 15:9 | 365,1 |
| 21:1 | 351,12; 389,6 |
| 21:20 | 351,5 |
| 24:21 | 366,3 |
| 25:1 | 359,1; 359,9; 359,9 |
| 28:24 | 399,9 |
| 29:12, vul 6 | 376A,3 |
| 29:12 lat | 389,5 |
| 30:18 | 361,6 |
| 51:28.23 | 399,1 |

**Isaiah**

| 1:3 | 369,1; 375,1 |
| 1:16 | 341,13 |
| 5:2 | 376A,2 |
| 7:14 | 370,3 |
| 8:14 | 352,5 |
| 9:2 | 362,24 |
| 10:23 | 345,7; 399,2 |
| 11:2-3 | 347,2 |
| 16:13, LXX | 363,2 |
| 40:6 | 359,9 |
| 40:6-8 | 341A,1; 391,6 |
| 40:8 | 366,3 |
| 52:7 | 351,4 |
| 53:1 | 363,2 |
| 53:2-3 | 375A,2 |
| 53:3 | 375A,2 |
| 53:4 | 366,2 |
| 53:7-8 | 375A,1 |
| 53:8 | 369,2; 372,1; 375A,2; 398,8 |
| 58:4-5 | 400,7 |
| 61:1 | 384,3 |
| 61:10 | 341,11 |
| 63:1 | 372,2 |

**Jeremiah**

| 17:5 | 344,1; 365,2 |

**Ezekiel**

| 3:18 | 387,1 |
| 28:3 | 397,1; 397,5 |
| 33:11 | 382,5 |

**Daniel**

| 4:27 | 389,3; 389,5 |
| 6:4 | 384,2 |
| 6:13 | 384,2 |
| 9:20 | 397,1 |
| 10:11 | 391,5 |
| 13:7 | 343,1 |
| 13:22 | 343,4 |
| 13:22-23 | 343,1; 359,3 |
| 13:45 | 343,1 |
| 13:49 | 343,1 |
| 13:55 | 343,1 |
| 13:59 | 343,1 |

**Hosea**

| 6:6 | 386,1 |

**Micah**

| 3:1 | 351,8 |
| 4:2 | 366,6 |

**Malachi**

| 1:1 | 371,1 |
| 1:18-20 | 343,3 |
| 1:23 | 369,1; 370,3 |
| 2:2 | 374,2 |
| 2:3-5 | 374,2 |
| 2:5 | 375,1 |
| 2:5-6 | 373,3 |
| 2:9 | 375,1 |
| 3:7-8 | 351,2 |
| 3:11 | 379,3 |
| 4:17 | 351,2 |
| 5:3 | 346A,6; 347,3 |
| 5:4 | 346A,6; 347,3 |

---

**New Testament**

**Matthew**

| 1:1 | 371,1 |
| 1:18-20 | 343,3 |
| 1:23 | 369,1; 370,3 |
| 2:2 | 374,2 |
| 2:3-5 | 374,2 |
| 2:5 | 375,1 |
| 2:5-6 | 373,3 |
| 2:9 | 375,1 |
| 3:7-8 | 351,2 |
| 3:11 | 379,3 |
| 4:17 | 351,2 |
| 5:3 | 346A,6; 347,3 |
| 5:4 | 346A,6; 347,3 |
Volume III/10

5:5 347,3 15:17 389,3
5:6 347,3; 400,1 16:2 352,4
5:7 347,3; 351,12; 359A,11; 389,5 16:16 375C,5
5:8 346,2; 347,3 16:18 346B,3; 358,5; 398,14
5:9 347,3; 358,6 16:19 351,12; 392,3
5:10 347,3 16:26 368,1
5:11-12 356,15; 383,1 16:27 341,4
5:14 379,6; 380,7 18:7 347,3
5:14-15 380,7 18:11 373,3
5:15 379,6 18:18 351,12; 352,8; 392,3; 393,1
5:15-16 380,7 19:5-6 341,12
5:20 359A,16 19:12 354A,1
5:22 347,3 19:16-17 346,1
5:24 400,7 19:21 346A,4
5:25-26 387,1 19:23 346A,4
5:35 341,4; 366,3 19:28 351,8
5:44 354,3; 382,3 22:8 372,2
5:44-45 382,1; 386,1 22:29-30 362,18
5:45 357,4 22:30 384,3
6:2 382,1 22:37 399,5; 399,6
6:9 357,4; 398,16 22:37-40 366,4
6:12 351,6; 352,7; 354A,1; 383,1; 22:37-39-40 350,2; 350A,1; 399,3
386,1; 388,1; 393,1; 398,15 22:39 399,5
6:12-13 348A,1 23:35 379,2
6:13 352,7; 359A,6; 359A,5 24:12-13 351,8
6:13,12 376A,3 25:26-27 376A,3
6:20 345,2; 389,4 25:26-30 351,4
6:21 345,5 25:31-41 354,2
6:23 365,2 25:34 398,12
6:24 398,4 25:34-41 351,8; 389,5
6:34 351,4; 369,1 25:34-35 346,1; 394,1
7:2 367,2 25:34-35-40 389,4
7:3 387,2 25:35-37:40.45 389,6
7:13-14 366,4 25:35-40 345,4
7:21 351,9 25:37-40 390,2
8:8-12 342,4 25:40 352,7; 359A,11
8:11 362,30 25:40.45 399,8
10:16 353,1 25:41 344,4; 349,7; 398,12
10:22 346C,1 25:46 346,1
10:28 348,4 26:38 375B,3; 375B,6; 375B,7
10:37 349,7 26:39 344,3; 375B,2; 375B,3
10:37-38 344,2 28:18-19 384,3; 384,3
10:39 344,6 28:20 366,5; 395,2
10:42 359A,11; 359A,12 11:11 379,1; 379,3; 379,6; 380,7
11:11 379,1 12:7 386,1
11:28-30 343,4 13:17 370,3
13:47-48 362,2 13:44-46 399,2
14:2 351,8 15:1 2:17 351,10
15:1 351,8 2:24-25 384,2
11:17 362,14 11:28-30 343,4
12:7 386,1
13:17 370,3
13:47-48 362,2
13:44-46 399,2
Mark
1:2 351,8
1:17 400,11
1:25 365,1
2:11 362,14
2:17 351,10
3:24-25 384,2

Sermons 341-400
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Luke References</th>
<th>John References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>362,26</td>
<td>15:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:20</td>
<td>362,2</td>
<td>344,6; 360,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:28</td>
<td>375C,6</td>
<td>16:3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:34</td>
<td>375C,6</td>
<td>16:8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18</td>
<td>380,8</td>
<td>16:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td>344,6</td>
<td>359A,11; 359A,12; 359A,13; 359A,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:38</td>
<td>351,8</td>
<td>397; 399,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>362,16</td>
<td>367,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>353,1</td>
<td>367,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>345,6; 389,4</td>
<td>17:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30-31</td>
<td>368,5</td>
<td>17:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>352,7; 385,1; 387,2</td>
<td>18:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26-27</td>
<td>362,18</td>
<td>18:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:36</td>
<td>347,3</td>
<td>346A,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:34</td>
<td>398,10</td>
<td>18:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>340,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>18:39-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>19:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359A,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>19:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>382,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>19:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359A,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20:36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>341,11; 362,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>21:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>21:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>361,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22:31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>351,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>348A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>23:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>375B,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>23:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>382,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>23:34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>382,2; 383,1; 386,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24:13-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>352,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>375C,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>365,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24:38-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>375C,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24:39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>362,14; 375C,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>345,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24:47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24:49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>378,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:24-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>385,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:25-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>383,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>353,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>348,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359,3; 359,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>400,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>341,7; 380,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:13-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>358,1; 359,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>341,3; 371,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>341A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:16-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>341,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>398,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>380,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>359A,14; 390,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>342,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:33-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>390,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-3-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>375A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>341,12; 342,3; 361,16; 373,5; 379,7; 380,6; 397,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:35-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>361,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:47-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>397,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>375,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>379,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>355,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>349,6; 375B,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>351,1; 354,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>342,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>362,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:5-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>379,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>389,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1:6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>342,2; 379,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermon Numbers: 341-400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>379,6; 380,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>379,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>380,7; 381,1; 381,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>342,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>342,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>342,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11-12</td>
<td>342,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>348,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>342,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13-14</td>
<td>342,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>341,3; 341,12; 341A,1; 342,1; 346A,2; 362,13; 369,2; 373,5; 374,3; 375C,5; 375C,5; 380,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>380,2; 380,3; 380,4; 380,5; 380,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>342,2; 379,3; 379,5; 379,7; 380,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>375B,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>375B,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>379,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>379,6; 380,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>375A,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>362,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>375B,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>379,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>380,6; 380,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-27,33</td>
<td>366,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:27</td>
<td>375,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>398,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:29</td>
<td>362,25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>344,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31-35</td>
<td>342,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>379,6; 380,7; 389,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>366,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:34</td>
<td>364,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>352,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:36</td>
<td>352,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:37</td>
<td>359,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:38</td>
<td>366,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:39</td>
<td>369,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:40</td>
<td>346,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:41</td>
<td>352,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:42</td>
<td>352,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:43</td>
<td>366,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:44</td>
<td>366,3; 394,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:45</td>
<td>361,16; 375B,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:46</td>
<td>375B,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:47</td>
<td>341,6; 371,2; 399,15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:48</td>
<td>352,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:49</td>
<td>352,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:50</td>
<td>361,10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:51</td>
<td>368,2; 385,8; 368,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:52</td>
<td>385,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:53</td>
<td>350A,1; 358,4; 400,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:54</td>
<td>350A,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:55</td>
<td>350,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:56</td>
<td>346,1; 346,2; 375C,5; 398,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:57</td>
<td>362,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:58</td>
<td>400,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:59</td>
<td>341,6; 371,2; 384,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:60</td>
<td>361,16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:61</td>
<td>385,8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:62</td>
<td>362,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:63</td>
<td>15:3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:64</td>
<td>398,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:65</td>
<td>362,30; 365,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:66</td>
<td>382,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:67</td>
<td>359,9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:68</td>
<td>364,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:69</td>
<td>375C,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:70</td>
<td>352,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:71</td>
<td>344,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:72</td>
<td>361,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:73</td>
<td>375C,1; 375C,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:74</td>
<td>375C,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:75</td>
<td>375C,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:76</td>
<td>352,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:77</td>
<td>344,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:78</td>
<td>379,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:79</td>
<td>351,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:80</td>
<td>352,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:81</td>
<td>356,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:82</td>
<td>355,2; 398,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:83</td>
<td>398,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:84</td>
<td>386,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:85</td>
<td>382,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:86</td>
<td>361,14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:87</td>
<td>345,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:88</td>
<td>382,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:89</td>
<td>341,12; 354,1; 361,14; 362,18; 395,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:90</td>
<td>364,2; 382,4; 400,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:91</td>
<td>369,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:92</td>
<td>362,7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:93</td>
<td>360,1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:94</td>
<td>382,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:95</td>
<td>383,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:96</td>
<td>361,6; 363,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:97</td>
<td>363,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:98</td>
<td>359,13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:99</td>
<td>352,9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:100</td>
<td>351,9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acts of the Apostles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sermon Numbers: Acts of the Apostles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:31-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:47-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:59-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Romans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sermon Numbers: Romans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Sermons 341-400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>350,1; 361,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>358,4; 378,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>375A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>344,7; 361,8; 362,7; 398,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-10</td>
<td>362,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>353,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:23</td>
<td>346B,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>365,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>351,2; 362,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>361,16; 361,17; 375C,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>341,7; 362,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td>362,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>362,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>359A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>359A,1; 362,4; 395,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>363,2; 375B,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>394,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>347,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>398,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>348,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>384,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>354,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>359A,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2-3</td>
<td>358,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9-10</td>
<td>399,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>350,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12-13</td>
<td>366,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>351,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11-12</td>
<td>364,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>379,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:12-13</td>
<td>358,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>358,5; 379,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>370,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>363,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>363,4; 380,6; 381,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>342,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>362,4; 362,29; 389,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>376A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>362,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17</td>
<td>353,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>363,3; 398,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>351,4; 351,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>380,6; 391,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>356,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>351,11; 355,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>375A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9-10</td>
<td>351,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11-13</td>
<td>351,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-8</td>
<td>351,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-11</td>
<td>351,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>389,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15-16</td>
<td>349,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>375B,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>398,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>371,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3-4</td>
<td>392,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5-6</td>
<td>351,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9</td>
<td>354A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29-31</td>
<td>346A,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:32-33</td>
<td>351,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>354,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>361,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>400,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1-4</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1-4</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:1-6</td>
<td>363,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>352,5; 358,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>346C,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>350A,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>397,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20-21</td>
<td>366,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>364,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>341,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>393,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>351,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:23-25</td>
<td>354,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24</td>
<td>398,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>361,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>341,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>350,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>354,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:6</td>
<td>353,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>350,3; 352,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9</td>
<td>346,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>346,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:12</td>
<td>346,2; 362,29; 362,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>359A,3; 359A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:15</td>
<td>362,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:1</td>
<td>359A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-10</td>
<td>400,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:14-13</td>
<td>361,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:22</td>
<td>400,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume III/10**
Sermons 341-400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8:7</td>
<td>377,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>380,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-6</td>
<td>360,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>400,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>341,13; 362,4; 400,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>400,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>362,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>359,9; 376A,2; 383,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>345,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>362,23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>351,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>341,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>341,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>341,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>362,16; 362,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>362,15; 395,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>362,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>350A,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-4</td>
<td>346,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>350A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>362,23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Thessalonians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>359,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>394,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>350,1; 358,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>360,1; 380,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15-16</td>
<td>381,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>356,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:22</td>
<td>348A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>367,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>391,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>345,1; 350A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18-19</td>
<td>346,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>398,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>362,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>362,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>363,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>387,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Titus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>355,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>341,13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>346A,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>352,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20</td>
<td>351,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:19</td>
<td>366,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:1</td>
<td>359A,2; 359A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>365,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>397,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>397,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>348A,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>359A,11; 389,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>346A,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>385,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>351,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>385,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:11</td>
<td>398,10; 398,10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Peter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:1-3</td>
<td>353,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>352,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>351,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>365,3; 400,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>382,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1-3</td>
<td>353,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>353,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>387,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>351,1; 351,9; 363,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>346B,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>351,6; 388,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>351,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>346,2; 362,31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>351,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>387,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8-16</td>
<td>350,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>348,1; 348,2; 350A,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Revelation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>375A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>397,1; 397,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4</td>
<td>375A,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:16</td>
<td>397,9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A

Abraham, 362:10; 363:2; 367:1; 375C:7; 397:5
asks God to spare the city, 397:2
blessing of, 377:1
faith, 351:12
fatherhood, 352:3
promise to, 346A:2; 359:5
rich man and Lazarus, 367:2; 399:13

Adam and Eve:
all descendents = brothers and sisters, 399:3
all die in Adam, 361:16
Christ was before them, 375C:7
death inherited from, 343:2
earthly, 362:15
Eve’s sin; virgin birth, 369:3
first fashioning of man, 370:1
first man was from earth, . . . 362:17
hiding from face of the Lord, 351:3
Job and his wife, 397:3; 398:10
mortality; skins, 362:11
punished: work and sweat, 346C:1
punishment of death, 400:5
temptation by serpent, 343:10

adultery:
develop not charged with, 354:4
forsake creator for creature, 385:6
husband or wife, 392:3
lawful use of marriage and, 400:6
sick at heart if you fall into, 392:5
advice: giving/receiving, 389:3
affliction, See Suffering.
Agnes, Saint, 354:5
alleluia: eternal life, 362:29
alms:
cheerfulness in giving, 351:4
Christ the receiver of, 359A:11
ensuring that prayers are heard, 357:5
to everyone who asks, 359:3
give to one who wishes you well
(beggar/Christ), 399:7
give what you have, receive what you
don’t have, 350B:1; 350C:1
give without a qualm, 390:2
great profit from, 367:3
lighten your load; give some to the poor, 399:8
poor will transfer gifts to heaven, 389:4
reaching Christ through the poor person, 345:2
resort to fraud, theft, etc., 359A:13
reward for giving, 376A:3; 389:3
selective giving, 359A:11
sin extinguished by, 389:5
sins redeemed by, 350B:1; 350C:1
stop giving if you dare, 389:3
store up treasures in heaven, 390:1-2
warning on reluctance in giving, 367:1
wings to our prayers, 358:6

Amalek, 352:6,7; 353:2; 363:3

amen:
eternal life, 362:29
word of consent, 348A:3

angels, 341:11; 392:1; 398:2; 400:1,2,3
adapting to mortals; eating, 362:11
almsgiving and, 390:2
appearance, as flesh, 362:17
eating; as humans, 362:11
fell because of pride, 354:9
human functions on earth, 362:10
life after the resurrection, 362:19,27,28
messengers, 351:8
true wealth had by, 359A:13
anger:
  - hate and, 387:2
  - parents and children, 387:2
animals:
  - fight for their lives, 368:4
  - friendship in, 385:3
  - humans and pleasures of the flesh, 400:2
humans compared with, 341A:2
  - love in, 385:2
  - love of their offspring, 349:2
  - prone; faces to the ground, 399:5
sleeping and waking, 361:10
Anna (widow), 370:2; 391:6
Antiochus, 343:2
Apollinarists, 375B:7
apostles:
  - Christ chose unlettered fishermen . . ., 381:1
  - fishers of men, 400:11
  - light of the world, 379:6
  - new covenant, 350A:2
 Pentecost, 352:2; 365:4
  - source of learning of, 381:1
  - words extend to ends of world, 359:1; 375A:1
apostolate: hunters of men, 400:11
Arcadius, Emperor, 397:7
Arians, 375B:7
  - Father and Son = two gods, 398:4,5
  - objection answered, 380:4
  - Trinity, 384:1-3
  - understanding Christ in scripture, 341:1-13
  - Word of God not created, 380:3
Aquinas, 364:4; 400:11
ascension:
  - Christ, king of glory, 377:1
  - confess: he is seated at the right hand. . ., 375C:5
  - love, he is still with us, 395:2
  - will fixed in heaven, 395:1
atom (the word), 362:20
Augustine, Saint:
  - affairs of community members, 356:3
  - anniversary as bishop, 383:1-3
  - asks forgiveness from those he offended, 383:3
  - caught, made a priest, 355:2
  - clergy in common life, 356:14
  - clothing, 356:13
  - confession of faith, 362:5
  - debtors pardoned, 383:2
  - dread of episcopate, 355:2
  - monastery in bishop’s [his] house, 355:2
  - nephew of, 356:3
  - preaching as service, 355:7
  - Aurelius of Carthage, Bishop, 355:5
  - Auses (Jesus Nave), 352:4
  - avarice, See Greed.

B
Baalim, 365:2
baptism:
  - See also Catechumens; Infantes; John the Baptist
  - birth into new life, 351:3
  - buried into death: Red Sea, 363:2
  - confessing belief in resurrection, 362:7
  - devil, sins, and the baptized, 363:2
  - God as father; Church as mother, 398:1
  - keep unspoiled to the end, 398:15
  - life lived in hope, 363:3
  - newly born babies, 391:1
  - newness of life, 393:1
  - panic in Constantinople, 397:7
  - passing through the [Red] sea, 352:3,6
  - repentance before, 351:2; 352:2
  - sacrament violated by doing evil, 393:1
  - spiritual birth, 376A:1
  - unveiling of the newly baptized, 376A:1
  - water signed with Christ’s cross, 352:3
Barnabas (priest), 356:15
beasts, See Animals
beatitudes:
  - gifts of the Spirit and, 347:3
  - praise of the commandments, 366:3
beauty:
  - charity, 365:1
  - in God’s eye, 391:6
beggar, 367:1
  - attitude, 389:3
  - bishops and, 355:5
  - Christ in, 389:4
  - Christ knocking on your door, 389:3
  - dreaming of wealth, 345:1
  - God treats us as, 350B:1; 350C:1
  - wishing people well, 399:7
behavior: grave sins, charity, and change, 388:2
Bethlehem, 373:4; 375:1

Volume III/10
Bible:
interpretation; St Paul, 363:1
vast treasure; many commandments in, 399:2
words of scripture depend on love, 350:2
bishops:
beggars and, 355:5
conference with Donatists, 359:5
duty to correct sinners, 387:1
funeral sermon, 396:1-2
help them by prayer and fasting, 358:6
hospitable kindness, 355:2
pastoral responsibility, 383:1
blasphemy:
falls back on blasphemer, 341A:2
say something against God, and die, 397:3,4
blessedness: means to, 399:6
blessings: Pelagian thought, 348A:3
blind: do not see, still avaricious, 399:10
boastfulness, 366:2
boasting: of tamed bodies, 351:4
bodies: heavenly/earthly, 362:21
body and soul:
See also Flesh; Human body; Soul
body as burden for the soul, 400:2
combined, make one human being, 371:3
flesh the servant, soul the superior, 368:1
marriage of flesh and spirit, 400:5
mortality, 375B:7
soul possesses things through body, 362:14
whole person of Christ, 375B:7
Boniface, legacy of, 355:5
books: memories as, 398:1
bread: heavenly bread, 389:1
bride and bridegroom (in Isaiah), 341:11,12
brotherhood: relations with Donatists, 357:4
brothers: concord difficult, 359:1,2
building: foundation, 362:8
burial, 361:5

C

calumny: God’s servants, 356:15
camel: eye of needle, 346A:5
carthage, 359:5
catechumens:
hastening toward baptism, 366:1
imitation of good people, 392:6
sermon on the creed, 398:1-17
sins remain, until baptized, 398:16
Catholic Christians, 346B:2,3
Catholic Church:
baptized into, 366:6
commending, 358:2
creed, 398:14
defense of, 358:1
Donatist convert’s address, 360:1
drawn away from, 346B:2
Eucharistic sacrifice, 366:3
Cecilian, 358:5; 359:5,6
celibacy:
Daniel represents, 397:1
vow of, 343:4; 392:2
Centurion: Lord, I am not worthy, 342:4
chaff, 400:10
change: life after the resurrection, 362:19,21
charity:
See also Alms; Love
beauty, 365:1
boasting re acts of, 389:3
builds up; knowledge not puffed up, 354:6
evil deeds redeemed by, 388:2
fleeting and mortal, 349:7
gifts of God useful without, 349:1
go, sell all that you have. . ., 345:6
greatest, relative to faith and hope, 359A:3
indifference to temporal things, 345:1
manifestations of, 350:3
performing acts of, 389:1-6
praise of, 350:3
salvation for the persevering, 351:8
slaves of, 362:1
victory of truth is charity, 358:1
Charybdis, 365:5
chastisement: just and unjust together, 397:1
chastity:
conjugal or celibate, 392:2
consecrated, 370:2
husband and wife, 392:3,5
Joseph of Egypt, 343:6,8; 359:3
love it in yourself, 343:7
married and virginal compared, 343:4
motivation, 354:3
pride in, 354:8
religious life, 354:3
spiritual beauty, 343:7,9
suffering for sake of, 343:8

Sermons 341-400
Susanna an example of, 343:1
testing, by God, 343:8
virginal integrity, 354:9
chattels (the word), 399:6
cheapness, 348:2
cheerfulness: giving alms, 351:4
virginal integrity, 354:9
chattels (the word), 399:6
cheapness, 348:2
cheerfulness: giving alms, 351:4

children:
disappointment, 346C:2
chattels (the word), 399:6
cheapness, 348:2
cheerfulness: giving alms, 351:4

children of God:
authority to become, 342:4-5
do not sin, 351:6
eternally we shall be... 362:31
choice, freedom of, 348A:3,4

Christian life:
be sober and do not sin, 362:2
becoming Christian, for sake of life to come, 366:8
Christ as man = our way, 375C:5
Christ, rising from the dead, dies no more, 398:10
come, follow me (distress, abuse, etc.), 345:6
conduct worthy of the bridegroom, 341:13
confirmed by good works, 358A:1
constant cry: deliver us from evil, 359A:5
cry out with our behavior, 349:5
discipline, mercy, delight, 366:6
each thinking the other superior, 354:5
fear being without Christ, 349:7
finding life by losing it, 345:2
flesh crucified with its passions, 363:4
heavenly Jerusalem, 346B:2
hidden with Christ, 362:23
home, country, 362:4
idleness on the journey, 346A:1
Jesus in heaven, and in hearts of believers, 362:9
paths of justice, 366:4
pilgrims led by Word of God, 346A:1-8
qualities; good soil, 399:1
rebirth in Christ, 370:4
risen, seek the things that are above, 362:15,16,23
roads instructed to walk on, 366:4
rules for, 351:4
sower and seed, 399:1
sower sows regardless of conditions, 399:14
storm at sea, faith is sleeping, 361:7
travel the right road, 346B:2
truth will set you free, 346:2

Christianity:
resurrection as foundation of, 361:2
whole world flourishing in, 361:8

Christians:
all are brothers and sisters of Christ, 371:4; 399:3
corporate, 359:4,9
discipline; Christ the teacher, 399:1
discipline; Christ the teacher, 399:1
name, 380:8
vessels empty of good works, 353:2

Christmas: second nativity of Christ, 371:1

Church:
analogy: husband and wife, 341:12
apostles raise up seed for deceased brother Christ, 380:8
body of Christ, 364:3
bride without stain or wrinkle, 341:13
built by Christ, 346A:3
built on rock, 358:5
Christ and Church make one Christ, 341:12
Christ and Church make one Christ, 341:12
Christ and; two in one flesh, 362:16
Christ and; two in one flesh, 362:16
Christ cherishes, 400:4
Christ preached by body of Christ, 354:1
Christ the head of, 364:3
Christ the teacher; body is the school, 399:15
concord with brothers, 359:5,9
creed, 398:14
desiring Christ (like husband/wife), 361:19
devil still promising knowledge, 341:5
enemies inside the body, 354:2
forgiveness of sin; keys, 351:9,12
fullness, the whole Christ, 341:1
head and body, 341:11,12
head has gone ahead to heaven, 362:8

Volume III/10
Sermons 341-400

head is savior of the body, 354:1
heavenly; angels as fellow citizens, 341:11
hell shall not defeat it, 398:14
heresies and schisms, 346B:3
house of discipline, 399:1-16
love your mother, but not above the Church, 344:2
members will go where head ascended, 398:17
Noah's ark, 361:21
outside enemies, 354:2
practice of repentance, 351:5
prophecies concerning, 346A:2
rock; not to be overcome, 346B:3
saving ark, 346A:3,4,6
sharing the inheritance, 358:5
shepherd is Christ, 366:3
spiritual presence of Christ, 375C:6
spread throughout the world, 358:3; 359:5
threshing floor, 376A:2
unity is undefeated; 359:6
universality of, 358:2
whatever you loose. . ., 352:8
church buildings, 359:9
clergy:
Augustine's way of life, 356:1-15
commitment to holiness, 355:6
criticisms; Augustine ready to answer, 356:12
imitating morals of bad clergy, 351:11
poverty; common life, 355:6
private property, 358:6
protect way of life and reputation, 356:1
status of those not keeping Augustine's rules, 355:6
way of life, 355:1-7
clothes; Augustine's community, 356:13
cloud: threat to Constantinople, 397:7
everal beings, 398:8
color, 341:7,8
commandment(s):
See also Love
end of, is charity, 350:1; 358:4
keeping = leading a good life, 399:2
keeping, to attain life, 346:1
one: charity is fulfillment of the law, 399:5
pastures (metaphor), 366:3
praise; the beatitudes, 366:3
pray for help in keeping, 348A:1,4
two greatest, 350A:1
whoever loves me. . ., 362:31
common life:
Acts of the Apostles, 355:2; 356:1,2
Augustine's deacons, 356:8
clergy and property, 356:14
clothing, 356:13
donations to common fund, 355:6
gifts to community, not to individuals, 356:13
hypocritical possession of property, 356:14
communion:
See also Eucharist
refraining from; unchastity, 392:5
shun if in state of grave sin, 388:2
community life, See Common life
competentes, 392:1
complaining, 341:3
conceit:
God saving us from, 354:7
swollen emptiness, 354:8
temptation, 354:7
concubinage, 392:1
conduct, See Life
confession:
public, 392:2; 398:15
reluctance, 351:6
tearful; blood of the spirit, 351:7
weeping; vale of tears, 347:2
conscience:
examination of, 348:2
night; fog-bound, 365:5
reputation and, 355:1
consolation: human beings, 396:1
Constantinople: panic over threatened destruction, 397:7
contemplation: bliss of heaven, 362:30,31
continence:
mixed life; religious life, 354:4
religious life, 354:3
vow of, 392:1
contracts, 378:1
conversation, 399:9
conversion:
See also Repentance
change desires if you would change your life, 345:7
correct self before judgment day, 346A:7
converts; Donatist's address, 360:1
correction: duty, 387:1
Sermons 341-400

counsel:
  forgiveness, 347:3
  trials and scandals, 347:3

courage:
  fear of God, 348:1
  hunger and thirst for justice, 347:3

creation:
  all made through the Word, 342:1;
    380:3,6
  he commanded, and they were created,
    380:3
  heaven, earth, and all that is in them,
    398:2
  in the beginning. . ., 380:4
  resurrection in, 361:10

creatures: dread of losing some good, 348:4

creed:
  believe in the Holy Spirit, 398:13
  born of the Holy Spirit, 398:6
  crucified and was buried, 398:7
  forgiveness of sins, 398:15
  God the Father almighty, 398:2
  holy Catholic Church, 398:14
  judge the living and the dead, 398:12
  only Son, our Lord, 398:3
  resurrection of the flesh, 398:17
  seated at the right hand, 398:11
  sermon to catechumens, 398:1-17
  suffered under Pontius Pilate, 398:7
  words gathered from scripture, 398:1

Crispina, 354:5

crops: examples of resurrection in, 361:9

cross:
  evening sacrifice, 342:1
  learning from, 363:4
  Samson, outstretched arms, 364:6
  sign of Christ’s work, 398:9
  stretch self on; remove wrinkles, 341:13
  temptation and, 353:2
  crucifixion. See Jesus: crucifixion
  cruelty, self-indulgence and, 391:4
  cupidity, See greed

D

damnation:
  eternal death, 351:7
  I was hungry and . . ., 389:5,6
  Daniel (prophet):
    humility of, 397:1
    made captive, 397:2

  man of desires, 391:5
  prophetic spirit: Susanna, 343:1
  represents holy celibates, 397:1
  darkness: John the Baptist, 379:5
  David, King, 351:12; 393:1; 394:1
  dead:
    argument that no one has ever returned
      from, 361:6,7,8
    bodies turn to dust, 361:12
    Jewish customs, 361:6
    memory in the tomb, 396:2
    pagan customs, 361:6
    praise not the Lord, 365:1
  death:
    avoiding; delaying, 343:2
    awaiting the human body, 362:11
    Christ slew death by his death, 359:2;
      375B:8
    delaying, 359A:8
    delivered from, by death of Christ, 361:14
    depart to bliss if you have led good life,
      399:13
    dying blind, re possessions, 399:10
    falling asleep in death, 365:2
    fear of, 344:5; 359A:8; 399:12
    inherited from Adam, 343:2
    iniquity is real death, 368:3
    judgment awaits, 367:1
    learning to die a good death, 399:13
    let us eat and drink. . ., 362:2; 391:3
    let us fast and pray. . ., 361:18,21
    love can eliminate pain of, 344:3
    making wills when death approaches,
      361:5
    man clothed in purple and fine linen,
      399:13
    my soul is sorrowful. . ., 375B:3
    necessity: all men must die, 344:3;
      375B:1
    poor man at rich man’s gate, 397:5
    redemption from the second death, 344:4
    resurrection of the body preceded by,
      362:23
    shadow of = road of sin, 366:5
    skins suggesting, 362:11
    sorrow for, but not despair, 396:2
    spiritual, 362:23
    swallowed up by life (heaven), 344:4;
      362:21,22
    sympathy for, 361:5

two sorts: physical; judgment day, 344:4

Volume III/10
unbelief, 344:6
decay: worm of, 362:23
delight: table of, 366:6
deliver us from evil, 359A:5
demons: Magi and, 374:1,3
desire(s):
  contrary: earthly vs heavenly, 344:1
  matter more than living well, 345:7
  wishes of spirit put before flesh, 344:3
despair:
  adding to sins out of, 352:9
  Judas, 352:8
  learn from Paul’s conversion, 381:1
  sorrow for the dead; contradicts faith, 396:2
devil:
  all ages tempted by, 391:1
  attacks on doers of good works, 389:4
  builds nest in empty space, 354:8
  defeated by Peter and Paul, martyrs, 381:1
  defeating stratagems of, 346B:4
  dragging us to the second death, 344:4
  false charges by, 385:5
  fasting and, 400:3
  father of the godless, 352:3
  heresies and, 348A:5
  never charged with sexual sins, 354:4
  overcome by humility, 351:6
  pagans and, 400:10
  paradise of the Church, 341:5
  rebuked, 365:4
  rescued from, by the Lord, 385:9
  serpent lying in wait for you, 366:7
  sin and the soul, 366:4,5
  sins and the baptized, 363:2
  sins fighting for, 363:2
  suggests Son is less than the Father, 341:6
  young people and, 391:3
difficulties: hard times, 346A:7,8
disagreement, 387:1
discipline:
  Church as house of, 399:1,3
  family life, 400:5
  rejection of, 399:1
  rod of, 366:6
  word origin, 399:1
dispositions of souls, 341:8
dissension, 357:3; 358:4
distress, See Suffering
divine things: immaterial and whole everywhere, 341:2
divorce, 392:1
Donatists, 357:4; 358:4
  conference at Carthage, 359:5
  convert’s address, 360:1
  dispute and concord with, 359:1-9
  many win, by acknowledging defeat, 359:7
  personal characteristics, 359:8
  wrangling with, 359:4
Donatus, 358:3; 364:4; 400:11
door: ask, seek, knock, 389:2
doubt: Moses; born at the rock, 352:5
drunkenness, 400:6
dwellings: called seats, 398:11
Early Church: one heart and one soul, 398:4
earnest (the word), 378:1
Earth:
  creation, incarnation, ascension, 395:2
  richness from rotting, 361:11
Easter, 375B:1-8
eating: human necessity, 362:11
education: why people go to school, 399:12
Egypt:
  See also Red Sea
care for the dead, 361:12
  eight martyrs, 356:10
  Eleusinus, 356:15
  Emmanuel, 370:3
end of the world:
  final harvest, 361:10
  resurrection of bodies, 362:25
enemies:
  asking God to punish, 382:5
  duty to do good to, 359A:11
  love of, 357:1; 368:5; 382:1; 383:1
  386:1; 387:3
  pray for, 354:3
  pray: Lord, kill my enemy, 382:5
  win the fight: pray for enemies, 382:5
envy:
  daughter of pride, 354:5,6
  diabolical vice, 399:7
  pride; gives birth to malice, 353:1
  Epicureans, 348:3
  Epiphany:
    Jews point out Christ to Gentiles, 374:2
Sermons 341-400

Magi and the star, 374:1,2
manifestation of the Lord, 373:1-5; 374:1-3; 375:1
error:
defeated by, 358:1
detest for, 359:5
Esau, 361:16
eternal life:
See also Heaven
acquired by faith and loyalty, 344:5
amazement at prospect of, 342:5
baptism and, 393:1
die in hope of, 375B:1
dwell in house of the Lord, 366:8
efforts to attain, 368:3
everlasting wealth vs temporal goods,
350B:1
go, sell all you have, ... 346A:4
hating one’s soul “in this age,” 368:2
hope for; the nativity, 370:1
kingdom prepared for you, ... 346:1
knowing God and Jesus Christ, 365:1
love of, compared with love of this life,
344:5
need of, 359A:6
neglecting its worth, 345:2
only one good (eternal) day, 346C:2
praise God without ceasing, 362:31
prepared for, 362:7
property which cannot be divided, 359:2
real need of life, 346:1
rest; knowing God and Jesus, 362:30
reward of a good life, 399:13
route to, 366:7
same for married and virginal chastity,
343:4
temporary health or well-being, 385:8
whoever hears my word, ... 362:25
wishing to have, without dying, 359A:8
words of those without hope, 391:4
yearning for, 359A:2
excommunication: formal judgment, 351:10
exodus: journey through desert/life, 363:3

F

faith:
believing is touching, 375C:5
certainty of things which cannot be seen, 359A:4
evile persuasion; faith is asleep, 361:7
finding your life/soul in, 344:6
ground of things hoped for, 359A:3
heart purified by, 346:2
hold on to, for sake of eternal life, 344:5
hope supports, 359A:4
life hidden with Christ in God, 346:2
love while we believe what we cannot see, 359A:2
maturity, 370:4
no praise for, if Jesus were visibly present, 359A:3
persons presented for baptism, 351:2
pilgrimage through life, 346:1-2
pray that it not fail; Pelagian heresy,
348A:2
presence of Jesus in all Christians, 361:7
resurrection according to the spirit,
362:25
resurrection of the dead, 361:2
rewarded for belief without sight, 359A:3
rich by believing, 399:10
risen again with Christ, 362:15
see now through a mirror, ... 346:2
sluggishness and, 358A:2
texts on sight and faith, 346:2
unless I touch him, ... 375C:2,4
value; reward for keeping faith, 345:7
waken Christ abiding in you, 361:15
walking by; arriving by sight, 346:2
walking with; not yet by sight, 362:4
way to possession, 359A:3
we have believed so we also speak,
362:5
weak; spurns God’s advice, 389:4
fall of man:
See also original sin
Christ seeking that which was lost,
375B:5
Job on mystery of, 351:3
false witnesses: Susanna; Daniel, 343:2

Volume III/10
Volume III/10

family: discipline in, 400:5
farm at Victoriana, 356:15
fasting:
    almsgiving and, 390:1
delight in higher life, 400:2
devil’s tempting, 400:3
final goal and, 400:7
helping bishops, 358:6
moderation, 400:2
purpose, 400:7
taming the flesh, 400:3
value of, 400:1-13
Faustinus (deacon), 356:4
fear:
    alarm, if one fears nothing, 348:2
Christ’s agony in Gethsemane, 344:3
devil tempts with, 346B:4
dread of losing some creaturely good, 348:4
eternal fire, 362:9
growing less, as we approach heaven, 348:4
old covenant, 350A:2
one with power to kill both body and soul, 348:4
two kinds: cast out by love; or abiding forever, 348:4
fear of God:
    chaste, abiding forever, 348:4
    frequently pressed in scripture, 347:1
gifts of the Spirit, ending in wisdom, 347:2
love and, 348:1-4; 349:7
nothing lacking, 366:2
praying for temporal goods, 354:7
sin and, 352:9
spiritual progress and, 348:1
wisdom as beginning of, 347:1
Felicity, Saint, 394:1
fidelity: Susanna an example of, 343:1
fire:
    brightness; coeval, 398:8
eternal, 362:23
    three things: motion, light, heat, 384:2
flattery: oil of the sinner, 391:3
flesh:
See also Body and soul; Human body
    all flesh is grass, 341A:1; 391:6
    body (the word) and, 362:17
gains possession of the godless, 362:14
iniquity perpetrated through, 399:4
marriage with spirit, 400:5
mortal; decay, 362:17,18
nobody ever hates his own, 400:4
nourished on earthly food, 400:2
nourishing and cherishing, 400:4
servant of the soul, 368:1
spirit and (Manichee), 400:4
stretched over wood to make a drum, 363:4
struggle with, 344:1
floorboards, 365:5
Florence (basilica), 359:9
food:
    earthly; heavenly, 400:1,2
words as, 341:2
forgiveness:
    asking for pardon, 386:1
Augustine asks, of those he offended, 383:3
Augustine pardons his debtors, 383:2
forgive us our debts... 351:6; 352:7; 383:3; 386:1; 388:2
gift of counsel, 347:3
Lord’s Prayer; from the heart, 386:2
lose nothing when you pardon, 352:7
pardon for what is not lawful (marriage), 354A:1
and you will be forgiven, 376A:3; 389:6
forgiveness of sin:
    Church; the loosing of Lazarus, 352:8
creed, 398:15
forgive us our debts, 393:1; 398:15
    keys of the Church, 351:9,12; 392:2
three ways: baptism, prayer, penance, 398:16
what you loose on earth... 392:2
fornication, 349:3; 392:1,3,5
foundation: head of a building, 362:8
foxes, 364:4
freedom:
    of choice: Pelagian thought, 348A:3,4
true life will set you free, 346:2
friendship:
    based on habit or reason, 385:3
gratuitous love, 385:4
wounds from friends, 391:3
fruit of the Spirit: ten fruits, 376A:2
funeral:
    sermon for bishop’s funeral, 396:1-2
    service to charity, 396:2
future life:
See also Heaven; Hell; Resurrection
Amen and Alleluia, 362:29

Sermons 341-400
desire created for, 341:13
happiness, 359A:6
hope of our heart, 395:1

G

generosity: giving alms, 367:3
gifts: common life, 356:13
gifts of the Holy Spirit:
beautitudes and, 347:3
chain; steps in the heart, 347:2
climb from fear of God to wisdom, 347:2
seeking and obtaining, 365:5
giving alms, See Alms
glory:
Christ, king of glory, 377:1
eye has not seen... 384:1
Father and Son glorified, 380:7
sight and faith, 346:2
transformed from glory to glory, 362:31
what have you that you have not received, 380:6
God:
See also Holy Spirit; Jesus; Son of God; Trinity; Word of God
angry; placated, 341A:3
Arian notion of, 341:7; 398:4,5
attributes, 341:8
blasphemies against, 341A:2
can’t flee from him; can flee to him, 351:12
clinging to, is good, 368:5
Father almighty, 398:2,5
Father and Son have one will, 398:3
Father, when he coddles; or corrects, 397:3
glory of, 359:1; 380:6
human terms used for, 341:9
immortal spirit, 375B:4
infinite riches of, 366:2
just, 341:9
mercy of, 354:9
mercy; sinners running from, 381:1
not of the dead, but of the living, 362:18
omnipotence, 361:18
patience, leading to repentance, 351:7,12
possession of = true wealth and happiness, 359A:14
power, 341:10
reached by humility, 351:1

G

saints in hidden place of God’s countenance, 362:3
surpassing all things, 384:1
to be followed, but he can’t be seen, 371:2
treats us as we treat beggars, 350B:1;
350C:1
we come to, by our desires, 344:1
with you on the road, 366:5
worth more than earth and heaven, 345:7
godlessness:
charity found in, 349:2
temporal goods, 350A:3
gods: pagan worship, 400:9
gold: love of, 368:4
golden rule: treatment of others, 353:2
good and evil, See goodness; Wickedness
Good example:
eulogy of a bishop, 396:2
exhortation re bad Christians, 376A:2
imitate martyrs, not bad clergy, 351:11
imitate the good, beware of the bad, 376A:5
young men; young women, 391:5,6
good times, 346C:2
good works:
Christians as empty vessels, 353:2
conceit over, 389:3
confirmation of Christian life, 358A:1
devil and, 389:4
grumbling and regret, 389:4
life after the resurrection, 362:28
mercy present in all, 358A:1
not needed in heaven, 358A:2
rising in, 362:23
showing yourself as example of, 355:1
goodness:
cry out to Christ with our behavior, 349:5
discipline (learning) of a good life, 399:1
encouragement from, 396:1
fruit of the Spirit, 376A:2
learning to die a good death, 399:13
seed reaching good soil, 399:14
gospel: depends on charity, 350A:1
grace:
before/behind us, through life, 366:7
boasting about things received, 351:4
dependence on, 365:5
Paul as chosen vessel, 364:2
prayer and, 348A:4

Volume III/10
sin and freedom; Pelagian thought, 348A:3
Susanna’s chastity, 343:1
grain: final harvest; end of the world, 361:10
granaries: places set apart, 362:3
See also Hoarding
blind person, 399:10
cupidity makes man old, 350A:1
depths hidden from our eyes, 399:10
desire to be repaid double, like Job, 398:10
devil tempts with, 346B:4
division of the inheritance, 359:3
happiness of the rich, 359A:6
insatiatable forever, 367:1
life lost on account of avarice, 344:7
old people, 391:2
poor man going into eternal fire, 346A:4,6
praising the Lord, 398:10
saying sharing means less for all, 399:6
suspicion of avarice, 351:5
grumbling, 346C:1

H

hair:
relative value of, 364:6
Samson, 400:8
happiness:
assurance, 346C:2
future life, 359A:6
implies not lacking anything, 359A:6
Lord, not money, confers bliss, 399:6
money does not bring bliss, 399:10
seeking, 346B:2
temporal: wealth, 359A:7,14
worldly, 359A:5
harlot, 349:3, 364:2,3,5
hate:
anger and, 387:2
brotherhood, 357:4
murderer, 387:2
healing: grateful to God for, 397:5
health:
lost by Job, 359A:6
of mind, 348:3
well-being in this world, 385:7,8
heart:
believing unto justice, 398:1
buried in earth (where treasure is), 345:5
contrite repentance, 351:12
faces look upward; hearts downward, 399:5
humility, 357:5
humbled; fear and trembling, 347:3
Jesus in hearts of believers, 362:9
lie, without charity, 365:1
lifted up = love God with whole heart, 399:5
prosperity corrupts, 359A:17
purified by faith, 346:2
tears of repentance, 347:2
where your treasure is. . ., 345:5; 389:4
heaven:
alms; store treasures in heaven, 390:1-2
banking treasure in, 345:3
blessed are the poor in spirit, 346A:6
blessed: persecuted on account of justice, 347:3
burden of wealth, and access to, 367:3
conditions for entering, 346A:4
contemplation of the truth, 362:30,31
eternal satiety, 400:1
everlasting blessedness, 366:8
everything is “on the right,” 398:11
eye has not seen. . ., 384:1
granary, 390:1
home country, 378:1
Jerusalem (heavenly), 346B:1
little ones, in spirit, 353:1
live so we can say: pay what you promised, 395:2
longing for, 344:4
man perfected in every respect, 362:31
never satisfied satisfaction, 362:29
parable of the seine, 362:3
pledge of eternal life, 378:1
poor transfer our gifts to, 389:4
rich man entering, 346A:4,6
surpasses world’s promises, 346B:4
trader found one precious pearl, 399:2
treasure found in a field, 399:2
treasure in, where no thief can get, 359A:14
tru riches, 345:5
virginal daughters in, 354:9
wages; reward in, 382:1
what the kingdom can be bought for, 359A:12
works of mercy not needed in, 358A:2
Sermons 341-400

worth more than any patrimony, 345:5
heavens: glory of God, 359:1
heifer, 364:3
hell:
chaff in, 376A:2
earthly pains compared with, 397:4
fear fire of gehenna, 349:7
gate of; beginning of sin, 346B:3
harlot’s house, 364:5
sins will perish with you, 388:2
Heraclius (deacon), 356:7
Hercules and Juno, 400:9
heresy (-ses; -etics):
catching foxes, 364:4
devil and poison of, 348A:5
devil’s work, 346B:4; 400:10
emerged from Church, 398:14
foretold, 346B:3
hate peace, 357:3
Samson, 364:4
slander the Church, 357:4
Herod, King, 373:2,3; 374:2; 375:1
hidden places: saints in God’s countenance,
362:3
Hippo, deacon of, 356:6
hoarding:
family duty as excuse for, 399:8
old people, 391:2
holiness:
clerical commitment, 355:6
fear of losing, by pride, 354:4
Holy Innocents, 373:3; 375:1
Holy Spirit, 350A:3; 351:12; 352:2; 359:1;
361:8, 14; 362:16; 365:3; 366:6;
371:2; 372:2; 375C:7
baptism in, 379:7
comfort in difficulties, 363:2
earnest of eternal life, 378:1
effect of presence of, 378:1
God, 398:13
John the Baptist, 379:1
life given to mortal bodies, 362:24
promised, 365:4
temple of, 398:13
honor: let man diminish, God increase,
380:8
hope:
accursed are those who hope in man,
344:1
Christian, 359A:1
consolation, 396:1
creator of heaven and earth, 358:3
faith supported by, 359A:4
for perishable things, 391:3
place in Christ, not in man, 379:7
resurrection of the dead, 361:2
sluggishness and, 358A:2
thing hoped for, 395:1
hospitality: bishops, 355:2
house: two meanings, 342:3
human beings:
animals compared with, 341A:2
consolation in, 396:1
dominion over other creatures, 398:1
faces looking upward, 399:5
four ways of fashioning, 370:1
image of earthly/heavenly man, 362:17
price of the Lord’s incarnation, 371:4
refusal to acknowledge status as, 341A:2
human body:
See also Body and soul
animated by the soul, 348:3
authority over, 392:3
constant renewal and refreshment, 362:11
created by God, 398:13
hating, 368:1
mortal body called flesh, 362:24
one member suffers, all suffer, 361:14
parts in agreement, 400:8
perishing, weighs down the soul, 351:3
strength and energy, 362:11
subject to decay, 362:17
human condition:
afflictions and distress, 346C:1
Christ the healer not to be blamed for,
346A:8
earthly; heavenly, 362:15
fight: love of God vs love of the world,
344:1
Jesus as remedy for, 380:2
men fell among thieves, 341A:1; 366:2
painful healing, 346A:8
struggle with flesh, devil, world, 344:1
well-being in this world, 385:7,8
human nature:
goodness; understanding, 365:2,3
humankind; or Humans, See Human beings.
humility:
See also Conceit; Pride
beggar receiving gift, 389:3
birth and death of Christ, 398:6
confessing before the Church, 351:12
exaltation not in temporal goods, 351:1

Volume III/10
Volume III/10

exhortation to, 354:5
fasting of the heart, 357:5
God reached by, 351:1
human being made into beast, 341A:2
imitation of Christ, 341A:1
Incarnation, 371:3
Jesus seeking little ones, 370:3
man humble in infirmity, 380:7
married persons vs chaste and proud, 354:4
no wishing people evil, 353:1
overcoming the devil, 351:6
practically the only Christian discipline, 351:4
refusal to be humbled, 351:7
run away, to God, 341A:3
sins erased by, 383:1
such is the kingdom of heaven, 353:1
thinking of others as excelling, 354:5
vale of tears, 347:2
what have you that you have not received, 380:6; 391:5
whoever exalts himself... 351:1
hunger:
bodily renewal, 362:11
justice as life’s business, 400:1
husband and wife:
See also Marriage
good example re chastity, 392:4,5
jealousy, 392:3
love, 385:6,8
Paul’s instructions to wives, 392:3
sexual desires, 361:19
two in one flesh; the Church, 341:12
virtue; reputation, 343:5
hypocrites: common life, 356:14

I
ideas: perception, 341:2
idolatry, 362:23
image of God:
gold compared with, 368:4
mind cannot be comprehended, 398:2
imitation:
exhortation to the newly baptized, 376A:2
morals of bad clergy, 351:11
immortality:
hope for, 362:12
mortal thing puts on, 362:21
promise of, 359:9
imperishability, 363:3
incarnation:
came to earth, lifted earth to heaven, 395:2
Christ came to save the lost, 382:2
emptied himself, 341:4
form of a servant, 341:4,6; 344:3; 359:9;
361:16,17; 362:16; 371:1;
375B:5,6; 375C:4; 377:1; 380:3,4
God and man together, 341:11
God humbled for sake of man, 371:3
God’s purpose for mankind, 371:2
how God and man can be mixed together, 371:3
a human that human beings might follow, 380:2
humility of Christ, 341A:1-2
Jesus brought divinity, took on mortality, 361:16,17
likeness of the flesh of sin, 375C:7
making humans into gods, 344:1
obedient unto death, 372:1
one spirit with the Word, 375B:4
paradoxes, 371:1
Son is subject to the Father, 371:2
two nativities of Christ, 371:1; 372:1
Word did not cease to be God, 341:3
Word was made flesh, 342:1;5; 362:13;
369:2
Word of God, 375B:4
world did not know him, 342:3
infant:
exhortation to, 353:1-2
temptation, 391:1,3
infidelity, 392:3
inheritance:
coveting, 355:4
division of, 358:2; 359:3,4
everly; lawsuits, 400:13
Lord is my portion; no litigation, 359:4
Lord’s is not to be divided, 400:13
sharing with Donatists, 358:5
iniquity, See Wickedness; Wrongdoing
injustice: insatiable greed, 367:1
innocence:
boasting of good practices, 351:4
model of holy infancy, 353:1
interest rate, 390:2
Isaiah: gifts of the Spirit, 347:2

Sermons 341-400
Sermons 341-400

J

Jacob, 361:16
Januarius (priest), 355:3; 356:1,11
jars: places set apart, 362:3
jealousy: love, 357:1
Jerusalem:
  Christ the foundation, 362:8
earthly/eternal, 363:3
  home country, 346B:1
  mother of us all, 346B:1
spiritual mountain, 347:2
Jesus:
  See also Arians; Incarnation; Son of God; Son of Man; Word of God
  alms given to Christ, 359A:11
  ascension, See Ascension
  bridegroom and giant, 372:2
  choosing his apostles, 381:1
  Christ as doctor; healing may be painful, 346A:8
  Christ as God; our home country, 375C:5
  church and, See Church
  commands; promises, 382:1
  creed says all that has to be said, 398:12
  crucifixion, See below: Jesus:
    Crucifixion
  death taken from us, he gave us life, 375B:5
  descended into hell, 364:5
  everlasting innocence, 375A:1
  first place in our hearts, 362:9
  fraternal concord in, 359:9
  from his fullness we have all received, 380:7
  God and man, at the same time, 341:3;
    371:2,3; 379:2,3
  grew, while John the Baptist diminished, 380:8
  healer, Samaritan, 365:3
  healing may be painful, 346A:8
  heavenly man (no sin), 362:16
  his own people did not receive him,
    342:4
  humble in glory, 380:7
  humility, 341A:1-3; 375A:1
  I will exalt you, Lord, 380:6
  Jews and Christians contrasted, 375:1
  John and, See John, Saint, Apostle; John the Baptist
  life-saver in torrent of our lives, 372:3
  light of the mind, 366:5
  light which enlightens every man. . ., 380:7
  loved more than our dear ones, 349:7
  loving and blessing him, 365:1
  manna and Christ, 352:3,4
  mediator and head of the Church,
    341:1,4
  mediator between God and humanity,
    361:16
  model: his death and resurrection, 344:7
  mortality assumed to give us immortality, 361:16
  name; every knee should bow, 380:5
  obedient unto death, 354:9
  one who descended also ascended, 362:16
  only (!) Son of God, 398:3
  parable of the seine, 362:3
  parable: rich man and Lazarus, 367:1-3
  parable: unjust steward, 359A:9-10,16
  passing by, stopping, standing still, 349:6
  passion, See below: Jesus; Passion and death
  pastor and provider, 366:3
  Paul: God and man, 341:4
  physician, 374:3
  poor, to make us rich, 375B:1
  poor people and, See Poor
  praised, to make Christians despair, 361:15
  presence in beauty and divinity, 361:7
  pre-Adam; pre-Abraham, 375C:7
  pre-eminence of, 380:6
  Red Sea: baptism/blood of Christ, 353:2
  resurrection, See Resurrection of Christ
  rock rose, and became mountain, 352:5
  rock was Christ (Paul), 352:3
  Sadducees and, 362:18
  Samaritan; guardian, 366:2
  Samson’s deeds compared with, 364:5
  seeking little ones, 370:3
  sent as savior, 354:1
  shepherd, 366:3
  soul; heresies, 375B:7
  stone of offense (Isaias), 352:5
  sufferings endured by, 397:9
  teaching his disciples, 362:5
  touched by faith, 375C:6
  true God and true man, 375A:2; 375C:7
  true light, 379:5,6

Volume III/10
two births: one eternal, one in time, 380:2
understanding Christ in scripture, 341:1-13
unlawful to kill Christ, 364:6
whole Christ: Word, soul, flesh, 375B:6
woman touched hem of his garment, 375C:6
worldwide fame, 380:6
Jesus: crucifixion:
See also Jesus: passion and death
Christ’s work to be done, 398:9
contrasts on the cross, 382:2
creed, 398:7
power of the nails, 365:5
priest is the victim, 342:1
rock struck by Moses; figurative meaning, 352:4
veil of temple torn, 352:6
Jesus: divinity:
emptied himself..., 361:16
equal to the Father, 341:4,6,7,12; 371:2; 398:3
first nativity, from the Father, 372:1
foretelling his own coming, 379:2
God: coequal and eternal, 341:1
growing in divinity, 380:6
heavenly Jerusalem, 362:8
hidden manner, 398:8
life events still present in the Word, 349:6
prophecies concerning, 346A:2
seated at Father’s right hand, 398:11
transfiguration, 362:12; 371:2
wisdom of God, 347:3
Word equal to the Father, 341:12
Jesus: humanity:
beauty and strength, 372:2
birth and death, 398:6
body and soul, 375B:7
child recognized by Simeon, 370:3
our brother, 359:2
Photinus: only a man, 375C:5
testimony of the Word, 362:13
Word remains forever, 362:7
Jesus: nativity:
See also Incarnation
all ages rejoice in, 370:2
all ages witness to, 370:4
awaited by the prophets, 370:3
eternal begetting of the Word, 369:2
eternal born in time, 369:1
exult for joy, 370:4
fulfilled the prophets, 371:1
fullness of time, 398:8
humble and sublime, 398:6
marvelous birth, 372:1
ox and ass, 375:1
pagans and prophecy, 373:4; 374:2
praise, love, and worship for, 369:3
shepherds and angels, 373:1
testimonies to birth, 369:1
two natures, 371:1
Jesus: passion and death:
Christ suffered and died, 399:15
creed, 398:7
death of Christ: meaninglessness, 365:4
death swallowed up by, 362:22
deliver us from death, 361:14
events in life of Christ, 349:6
fruit of, 350:1
Gethsemane: feelings and fears, 344:3
how the Word could die, 375B:4
humiliation of, 398:2
I myself went to sleep..., 375B:2
imitate Christ praying: forgive them..., 382:5
Jesus died, and came back to life, 361:16
Jesus slew death by his death, 359:2
Jesus speaking as human, as divine, 375B:3
Jesus, sign of alien sins, 361:16
Jews killed Christ, 398:15
Jews’ part in, 375B:2
John the Baptist’s death and, 380:8
lamb (enduring), lion (devouring death), 375A:1
martyrs and, 375B:1
people who carried it out, 391:4
salvation for those who wish it so, 344:4
table of delight, 366:6
triumph over death, 375B:8
weigh whole earth’s suffering against Christ’s, 397:9
will of the Father, 361:16
willing to die; power not to die, 362:12
Jesus: types
camel as a type of, 346A:5
Moses as type of, 363:2
Samson as type of, 364:3
Solomon as figure of, 358:3
typified by obedience of Moses, 352:6
Jesus: Words of:
because I was hungry..., 389:5,6; 394:1
Sermons 341-400

behold, I am with you. . ., 395:2
blessed are the peacemakers, 358:6
come, blessed of my Father, 394:1
Father, forgive them. . ., 382:2,5; 386:2
Father is greater than I, 341:6; 371:2
I am the bread of life, 389:6
I am the living bread, 352:3; 364:3
I and the Father are one, 399:15
I have the power to lay down my life. . .,
362:12; 375B:2,3
I will be with you. . ., 366:5
I will make you fishers of men, 400:11
it is not the healthy. . ., 351:10
let this cup pass. . ., 344:3; 375B:3
my God, my God, why. . ., 398:10
my soul is sorrowful. . ., 375B:3
new commandment I give you. . .,
350:1; 358:4
not everyone who says to me. . ., 351:9
Peter, do you love me. . ., 352:5
someone touched me, 375C:6
take up your pallet. . ., 362:14
to everyone who asks, give, 350B:1;
350C:1; 359:3
way, truth, and life, 346:1,2
what do you wish done for you. . .,
349:5
whatever the Father does. . ., 398:5
whatever you did for one of the least. . .,
389:4,6; 390:1
whoever eats this bread. . ., 389:2
whoever exalts himself. . ., 351:1
whoever loves father or mother. . .,
349:7
Jesus Nave (Auses), 352:4; 382:1
Jews:
ceremonies for the dead, 361:6
Christ not defeated by, 375B:2
conquered by Romans, 374:2
fasting, 400:7
first invited to wedding feast, 372:2
killed the performer of miracles, 370:3
milestones, 373:4
reject Christ, 342:4
repentance enjoined upon, 351:2
sabbath, 362:28
salvation from, 375:1
Job:
example of, 343:10; 359A:6
merits of martyrs and, 397:4
patience, 397:3,4; 398:10
poor man’s patrimony, 359A:6
received double what he had lost, 398:10
represents good, married people, 397:1
say something against God, and die,
397:3,4
suffering as test, not punishment, 397:4
sufferers of, 397:3
this life as a trial, 351:3,4
tribulations accounted to him as justice,
397:3
victorious on his dunghill, 359A:6
wife of, another Eve, 397:3
woman of, 398:10
worship God for nothing, 385:5
John, Saint, Apostle:
wisdom of, 388:2
John the Baptist, Saint:
among those born of women. . .,
379:1,3,6
baptism by, 379:7
birth preceded that of Jesus, 380:1
birthday, 380:1-8
bridegroom’s friend, 379:3,7; 380:6
burning and shining lamp, 379:6
Christ compared with, 342:2
death of, compared with Christ’s death,
380:8
difference between light and lamp, 379:5
garment of camel’s hair, 346A:5
he is coming after me, 380:3,5
he was made before me, 380:5,6
his father deprived of speech, 379:1
I am not worthy. . ., 379:6; 380:1,6
Jesus; testimony about each other, 379:3
Jesus took precedence over, in honor,
380:5
John was, and was not, light, 379:6
lamp, burning and shining, 380:7
lamp; not the true light, 380:7
light shining in darkness, 379:5
mountain, 379:7
mystery of, 379:1
necessary for him to grow. . ., 380:6
passed people on to Christ, 379:7
repentance, 351:2
speaking in role of human race, 380:6
thought to be the Christ, 342:2
witness to the light, 342:2; 379:2,5;
380:7
Jonah, 361:20
Joseph of Egypt, 343:6,8; 359:3
Joseph, Saint: suspicions about Mary, 343:3
Joshua, 382:1

Volume III/10
Judas: despair, 352:8
judgment Day:
accountability; the unjust steward, 359A:11
charity the subject of, 388:1
Church as saving ark, 346A:3,4
come, blessed of my Father, 351:8;
354:2; 398:12
conversion before, 346A:7
everything will be judged, 388:1
generosity to the poor, 389:5
go into eternal fire. . ., 389:5; 398:12
John’s testimony, 362:25
judged for treatment of the poor, 345:4
kindhearted father as judge, 359A:11
last trumpet, 362:20
punishment reserved for the wicked, 397:2
receive the kingdom. . ., 346:1
restitution from the second death, 344:4
resurrection of life; of judgment, 389:5
we shall be changed, 362:19
when you failed to do it for one of least, 399:8
with the measure you mete out. . ., 367:2
just man:
Abraham deals with God to spare the
city, 397:2,5
human standards, 397:5
praying standing up, 366:2
justice:
attribute of God, 341:9
courage; hunger and thirst for justice, 347:3
devil and youth, 391:3
Epicurean philosophy, 348:3
fasting and, 400:7
filled with (in heaven), 400:1
God seeking those with divine standards, 397:2
heaven for those persecuted for justice’s
sake, 347:3
hunger and thirst for, 400:1
idea of, 341:2
observe, if wisdom is desired, 347:1
paths; Christian life, 366:4
ransom from the second death, 344:4
resurrection according to the spirit, 362:24
kindred: love of, 385:2
kingdom of God:
always being bought; always for sale, 359A:12
entering; salvation, 351:8
flesh and blood will not possess, 351:8
Paul on those who will not possess, 351:8
same for married and virginal chastity, 343:4
kingdom of heaven, See Heaven
knowledge:
gift of the Spirit, 347:3
puffed up, 354:6
unable to express, 362:4
laity: daily sin and repentance, 351:5
lamp: putting it under a bushel, 379:6
last day, See Judgment day.
laughter, 351:5
law (Mosaic; O.T.):
charity, the fullness of, 350:1
depends on the two great
commandments, 350A:1
fulfillment in charity, 399:5
why the law was given, 351:1
lawsuits and litigation, 351:5; 400:13
Lazarus and the rich man (parable), 367:1-3
Lazarus (brother of Martha and Mary):
loosed; raised up, 352:8
rose and died, 398:9,17
leaders: Noah represents, 397:1
leaves, 361:11
legacies:
Augustine’s policy, 355:4
Boniface (case), 355:5
wrangling over, 355:3
leisure: heavenly man, 362:31
Leptorius (priest), 356:10
lethargy: old man in, 400:12
life:
See also Christian life
all in this world passes, 359:9
being born; born again, 376A:1
cycles, 361:10
desires matter more than living well, 345:7
Sermons 341-400

eat/drink; this life is the only one, 361:1,4,5,7,8,14,18,21
efforts to live a few more days, 344:5; 345:2
exile from the Lord, 362:4
finding, in order to lose, 344:6
four ways for humans to come to exist,
370:1
gathering and sowing (analogy), 344:6
hunger and thirst for justice in, 400:1
journey through, 346B:1-4; 363:3
longing to see good days, 346C:2
losing, in order to find, 344:6,7
loving death more than life, 399:13
short; long, 396:1
strangers in this world, 359A:2
temporal, valued so highly, 345:2
this life is death, compared to eternal life, 346:1
torrent; Christ as life-saver, 372:3
trial and temptation (Job), 359A:6
walking by faith, 351:3
whoever loses, . ., 344:7
light:
darkness (sinner) does not comprehend,
342:1,2
John the Baptist, 342:2
money and, 399:10
you were once darkness. . ., 380:7
Lord's Prayer:
See also Forgiveness of sin forgive us our debts, ... 382:7; 383:1
Our Father = brotherhood, 357:4
pray sincerely; forgive me as I forgive,
386:1
love:
See also charity anger and, 387:2
animals, 385:2
bad way: neglecting God, 344:2
beautiful, 365:1
blessedness and, 399:6
bringing Catholics and Donatists together, 358:4
charity the subject of last judgment,
388:1
Church more than parent, 344:2
covers grave sins, with change of behavior, 388:2
covers multitude of sins, 387:3
creatures; tear your heart from, 385:5
desire or sight, 359A:2
each page of scripture tells of, 350A:1.3
efforts for longer earthly life, 344:5; 345:2
eliminating pain of death, 344:3
fine appearance is dead without love,
365:1
God first; then self; then neighbor, 368:5
grace of charity, 349:1
growth; perfection, 368:4
human love can be bad or good, 385:1
iniquity: hating one’s own soul, 368:5
jealousy, 357:1
kindles hope, 359A:4
lawful human kinds of, 349:2,4
lawful; various grades, 385:2
looks to stop sins being committed,
383:1
love me, and you have me, 357:3
love people on account of God, 385:4
many souls made into one; early church,
398:4
motives, 368:4
multiple roles of, 350:3
mutual love is not enough, 386:1
new commandment, 350:1; 358:4; 400:8
new covenant, 350A:2
objects lower than the person, 368:4
old man, 385:4
peace, 357:2
perfect charity casts out fear, 348:1-2; 385:1
perfected by contemplation, 359A:4
possesses length and breadth of scripture, 350:2
poured out in our hearts, 358:4; 378:1
reaching the perfection of, 368:5
right kind must drive out wrong kind, 368:3
right order; progress, 368:4
road of Christian life, 346B:2
something which you can’t see, 385:4
summary and shortened word:
commandments, 399:3
three sorts of charity, 349:1
two greatest commandments, 350A:1
two paths; one road, 366:4
unlawful human love, 349:3
unlawful; incompatible with divine love,
349:4

Volume III/10
whoever loves his soul. . ., 368:1-5
whole scripture teaching in one word, 350:1
wish to love? love wisdom, 391:5
wishing object to be safe and well, 385:6
love of God:
bringing love of harlot into your heart
with, 349:4
Christ to be loved more than our dear
ones, 349:7
divine charity, 349:4
exhortation to love Christ, 349:5
fear of God and, 348:1-4
fight: love of God vs love of the world,
344:1
forsake creator for creature is adultery,
385:6
freely is God to be loved, 385:4,6
God to be loved more than parents,
344:2
love me as much as you love money,
399:11
love one I cannot see, 385:4
only God is loved in other human
beings, 385:3
pray for this love to be given, 349:5
reward as motive, 385:5
whoever loves father or mother. . .,
344:2
whole heart, soul, and mind, 348:2
love of neighbor:
begin with self, 368:4
concord with Donatists, 359:9
correct your love, or eschew all
company, 399:4
enough for fulfillment of the law, 399:5
envy and, 399:7
hating your brother; not loving yourself,
387:2
if I speak with the tongues . . ., 350:3
life for one’s friend, 385:8
love of self and, 348:2
love one another, 385:1-9
two wings of charity, 352:7
understanding of term neighbor, 399:3
upright kind of love, 348:2
your neighbor as yourself, 385:1; 387:2;
399:3-5
Lucifer, 394:1
lust, 343:7; 365:5
husbands, 392:5
John the Baptist, 380:8
trample on; desire eternal life, 346B:4

M
Magi, 373:1-5; 374:1-3; 375:1
Mammon of iniquity, 359A:10-11,13,15
man, See human; temple of God
Mami, 364:4
Manichees, 375C:3; 400:4
manna:
figure of Christ, 352:3,4
unable to free from death, 352:3
marriage:
See also Husband and wife
chastity in, 343:4
conjugal rights, 354A:1
continence, 354:4
lawful love, 385:2
married couples, 392:1-6
moderation in sexual relations, 351:5
post-resurrection, 362:18
time is short; world is passing, 346A:6
married people: Job represents, 397:1
married women:
rejoice, Elizabeth, 370:2
Susanna’s example, 434:3,5
martyrs:
confession of faith, 394:1
death by wild beasts, 399:13
follow behavior of, 351:11
holy innocents, 373:3; 375:1
holy innocents, 373:3; 375:1
indifference to temporal things, 345:1
love of their souls, 368:3
merits; Job, 397:4
Perpetua and Felicity, 394:1
precious in eyes of the Lord, 399:13
repaid Christ’s dying for them, 375B:1,2
unless the Lord had been in us. . .
375B:1
women at Thuburbo, 345:1,6
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Christ took flesh from, 375B:5
descended from Adam, 362:16
example for women, 391:6
saved from false suspicions, 343:3
Mary Magdalen: Mary, Rabboni, 375C:1,3
Maximian (Donatist convert), 360:1
medicine: well-being in this world, 385:7
meek: beatitude, 347:3
meekness: dealing with Donatists, 357:4
men: chastity, 343:7

Sermons 341-400
mercy:
beatitude, 347:3
before/behind us, through life, 366:7
blessed are the merciful, 389:5
God spared city of Rome, 397:6
judgment and mercy, 359A:11
offering a sacrifice and, 386:1
paths of justice, 366:4
rich man and Lazarus, 367:2
share in others’ sorrows, 358A:1
siners running from mercy of God, 381:1
staff of, 366:6
value of, 358A:1-2
merit:
conceit over, 366:2
works of mercy, 389:6
Messiah:
miracles, 380:2
necessary that his coming be foretold, 380:2
metropolis (the word), 346B:1
mind:
corruption, 341:5
food for, 400:2
miracles: messiah, 380:2
misericordia (the word), 358A:1
moderation, 400:6
monastery: established by Augustine (bishop), 355:2
monastic life: God as common estate of, 355:2
money:
See also Wealth
dishonestly made, 359A:15
happiness and, 399:6,10
love of, 389:4; 399:11
moneylender to God, 350B:1; 350C:1; 390:2
moon, 361:10
moral conditions:
bad conversations as corrupting, 399:9
superfluous luxuries; pleasures, 346A:7
mortality:
See also Death
evil condition of, 347:3
human body, 375B:7
liability to perish, 351:3
sin as origin of, 361:17
skins used by Adam and Eve, 362:11
Moses:
burning bush, 362:18

Christ typified by obedience of, 352:6
dies on the mountain; figurative meaning, 352:5
doubting re water from rock, 352:4
exodus, 363:4
old covenant, 350A:2
praying with arms outstretched, 352:6;
363:3; 382:1
servant of God, 352:3
spoke through veil, 352:6
type of Christ, 363:2
mountain:
Moses dying; Christ (rock) rising, 352:5
mourning: beatitude, 347:3
mystical Body:
bride and bridegroom, 341:11
Christ the head, 341:1,4
head ascended; body will follow, 395:2
holy people, royal priesthood, 351:7

N
nature: examples of resurrection in,
361:9-11
Nebuchadnezzar, King, 343:2; 389:3
needle: camel going through eye of, 346A:5
new covenant: foretold in figures or symbols, 350A:2
New Testament: charity prefigured in the
Old, 350A:2
Nineveh, 346A:3; 351:12; 361:20
Noah: represents good leaders, 397:1
Noah’s ark, 346A:3; 361:19,21; 373:4
Novatus, 400:11

O
obedience: Christ’s work and reward, 398:9
old age: temptations in, 391:2
old man:
lethargy, 400:12
love of, 385:4
Old Testament:
N.T. charity prefigured in, 350A:2
original sin:
See also Adam and Eve
contracted from parents, 362:16
effects, 398:2
lust against the flesh, 400:5
remission of, 351:2

Volume III/10
seeds of death, 391:1
Our Father, See Lord’s Prayer.
overeating, 351:5
P
pagans:
devil and, 400:10
fasting, 400:7
resurrection and, 361:14
scoff at resurrection idea, 361:4
sin and Christians, 352:9
unity, 400:9
pain:
decay and, 362:23
free of, 348:3
temporal and eternal, 397:4
parable:
man clothed in purple and fine linen, 345:1
paradise, See house of the Lord, 366:8
parents:
angry with children, 387:2
begetting children, 369:2
God to be loved more than, 344:2
passion of Christ, See Jesus: Passion and death
passions: perishable things, 391:3
patience:
enduring earthly happiness, 359A:7
gaining possession of our souls, 359A:7
imitation of Christ, 353:2
Job, 397:3; 398:10
necessity of, 359A:2
perfect work, 397:9
sermon at Tuneba, 359A:1-17
tolerating the present, 359A:17
Paul, Saint, Apostle:
conversion of, 360:1
expenses, 351:5
friend of the bridegroom, 379:7
on hope, 395:1
I am the last/least. . . , 400:1
interpretation of scripture, 363:1
not yet perfect, 400:1,2
Pelagian thought and, 348A:3
persecutor made into preacher, 381:1
previously (Saul) a blasphemer, 380:7
Stoics and, 348:3
sure of his reward, 359:9
vessel of election, 382:4
peace:
beatitude; wisdom, 347:3
blessed are the peacemakers, 358:6
dealing with slander, etc., 357:4
drawing others to, 357:3
everlasting; children of God, 347:3
Jesus as author, sower, and lover of, 358:6
love it is to have it, 357:2
lovers and haters of, 357:1
people of good will, 359A:12
praise of, 357:1-5
sharing, 357:2
Pelagians, 348A:1-5
Pelagius, 348A:5
penance:
changing one’s life, 393:1
during time of good health, 393:1
life before and after, 393:1
public, 351:9
reconciled at last moment, 393:1
sexual sins, 392:2
penitents:
change your behavior, 392:6
unworthy communions, 352:8
Pentecost:
apostles after, 365:4
earnest of eternal life, 378:1
fasting after, 357:5
Peter, the apostles, 352:2
people of God:
overcome all things, 363:3
perfection:
if you wish to be perfect. . . , 346A:4
not one just man to be found, 397:5
Paul’s striving for, 400:1,2
Perpetua, Saint, 394:1
Peter, Saint, Apostle:
buying the kingdom, 359A:12
courage from risen Christ, 352:5
doubt re Christ crucified, 352:4
I have prayed that your faith fail not, 348A:2
preaching, after Pentecost, 352:2
repentance, 351:12
when you get old. . . , 344:3
you are the Christ. . . , 375C:5
Peter and Paul, Saints: birthday of, 381:1
comparisons, 381:1
did not suffer on same day, 381:1
peace:  
beatitude; wisdom, 347:3
blessed are the peacemakers, 358:6
dealing with slander, etc., 357:4
drawing others to, 357:3
everlasting; children of God, 347:3
Jesus as author, sower, and lover of, 358:6
love it is to have it, 357:2
lovers and haters of, 357:1
people of good will, 359A:12
praise of, 357:1-5
sharing, 357:2
Pelagians, 348A:1-5
Pelagius, 348A:5
penance:
changing one’s life, 393:1
during time of good health, 393:1
life before and after, 393:1
public, 351:9
reconciled at last moment, 393:1
sexual sins, 392:2
penitents:
change your behavior, 392:6
unworthy communions, 352:8
Pentecost:
apostles after, 365:4
earnest of eternal life, 378:1
fasting after, 357:5
Peter, the apostles, 352:2
people of God:
overcome all things, 363:3
perfection:
if you wish to be perfect. . . , 346A:4
not one just man to be found, 397:5
Paul’s striving for, 400:1,2
Perpetua, Saint, 394:1
Peter, Saint, Apostle:
buying the kingdom, 359A:12
courage from risen Christ, 352:5
doubt re Christ crucified, 352:4
I have prayed that your faith fail not, 348A:2
preaching, after Pentecost, 352:2
repentance, 351:12
when you get old. . . , 344:3
you are the Christ. . . , 375C:5
Peter and Paul, Saints: birthday of, 381:1
comparisons, 381:1
did not suffer on same day, 381:1

philosophers: know all, but God, 365:2
Phocas, Saint, 375B:6
Photinas, 375C:5; 400:11
piety: gift of the Spirit, 347:3
pity: Stoics, 348:3
places set apart; hidden, 362:3
pleasure:
earthly delights, 400:2
justice and, 348:3
love of, 348:3
moderate and temperate, 400:6
pledge (the word), 378:1
plowland: examples of resurrection in, 361:9
poor:
See also Alms; Rich
Augustine’s clergy, 355:6
bishops and so many needy, 355:5
buying the kingdom of heaven, 359A:12
Christ begs in the poor man, 345:2
conceit, 346A:6
doing ourselves a favor by helping, 389:3
find Christ on earth in the poor, 345:4
Job: poor man’s patrimony, 359A:6
judgment on generosity to, 389:5
Lord, when did we see you hungry,..., 345:4
losing for giving to the poor, 376A:3
many are on fire with greed, 346A:4,6
porters to transfer our wealth to heaven, 389:4
poverty is no guarantee of heaven, 346A:6
praises of the rich, 345:1
true riches, 345:5
poor in spirit:
blessed, 346A:6
gifts of the Spirit and, 347:3
possessions:
See also Property; Wealth
have nothing that is superfluous, 350A:4
hold on to what you can’t leave behind, 359:2
love of, 357:2
praise of God:
Alleluia, 362:29
contemplation; heaven, 362:30
eternal life, 362:31
insincere, 365:1
mouth, not from the heart, 365:1
my guide, my protection, 366:2
patience, not avarice, as ground of, 398:10
prayer:
almsgiving = prayers heard more readily, 357:5
asking for what God himself commends, 354:7
cry out to the Lord, 351:12
doing nothing; leaving all to God, 348A:4
granted for what God thinks is important, 354:7
helping bishops, 358:6
Jesus prays in and for us now, 382:2
knocking on the Lord’s door, 389:2
Pelagian heresy, 348A:1
role of grace in, 348A:4
standing up; kneeling (St Stephen), 386:2
presence of God:
living in, 396:1
pride:
beggar receiving gift, 389:3
beginning of every sin, 346B:3
diabolical vice, 399:7
effects, 353:1
envy and, 353:1; 354:5,6
fall of angels; and of religious, 354:9
fear of losing holiness, 354:4
healing, 380:2
high things: cannot hide, 351:1
reluctance to confess sins, 351:6
salutary examples, 381:1
thinking highly of one’s self, 348:2
treatment of others and, 353:2
virginity and holiness, 354:9
wishing people well, 399:7
priests: Augustine’s community, 356:9
See also Common life
promised land:
Moses would not lead to, 352:4,5
symbolic, 352:4,5
property:
litigation, 358:2
private property, 355:6; 356:4,5,7,10,11
prophets:
depend on the two great commandments, 350A:1
many were killed, 397:2
salvation as purpose of, 371:2
Word of God speaking through, 346A:2
prosperity:
enjoy, 399:7
heart corrupted by, 359A:17
prostitute, 349:2
providence:
  confidence in God’s protection, 366:2
  good things received; endure bad things, 398:10
  good things, bad things, from the Lord, 397:3
prudence: parable: unjust steward, 359A:10
public penance: major sins, 392:2; 398:15
purehearted:
  blessed, 346:2
  gift of understanding, 347:3
quarreling among Christians, 400:10
ransom: first/second deaths, 344:4
rebuke: wise man or fool, 392:5
reconciliation: fasting and, 400:7
Red Sea:
  baptism of Christ; his blood, 353:2
  crossing, followed by long journey, 352:6
  Egyptians, 363:2
type of baptism, 352:3; 363:2
redemption:
  Esau and Jacob (analogy), 361:16
  God so loved the world. . ., 375B:6
  innocent blood, price of our souls, 341A:1
means of dying taken from man, 375B:5
ransom from the second death, 344:4
Samson’s death as type of, 364:6
regret, See Repentance
religion: people must not follow another human being, 380:2
religious life:
  See also Common life
  continence; chastity, 354:3
criticisms by the world, 354:3
good that a proud religious fall, 354:9
    humble/proud religious, 354:8
repentance:
    contrite and humble heart, 351:12
daily practice, 351:4; 352:7
daily sins, 351:5,6
deaddly sins, 352:8
deeds of charity as fruits of, 389:6
died, and come back to life, 388:2
distress of sorrow, 352:2
hearts crushed, 347:2
I have sinned. . ., 393:1
necessary approach to baptism, 352:2
Ninevites, 361:20
patience of God leading to, 351:7,12
penance for grave sins, 351:7
produce fruits proper to, 389:6
Psalm 51, 352:1
regret for perishable life, 351:3
sacraments of the faithful, 351:2
sorrow and, 351:1
three kinds, 351:2
ture penance, 393:1
value of, 351:1-12; 352:1-9
wrath of God appeased, 361:19
reproving self and others, 387:1,2
reputation:
  conscience and neglect of, 355:1
  protection of, 356:1
responsibility:
  one to whom more is entrusted, 359A:11
resurrection of Christ:
  Christ rose and ascended, 362:10
  Christ rose in his human body, 361:17; 362:10,14
  Christ the lion, devouring death, 375A:1
  hope for our resurrection, 362:17
  model for his body, the Church, 361:3
  objections on the dead returning, 361:8
  readiness to be a human being, 375B:4
  reward of Christ’s work, 398:9
  without death, 398:9
resurrection of Christ: appearances after:
  Christ entered room through closed doors, 376:1
  Christ was handled/felt by disciples, 359A:3; 361:8
do not touch me. . ., 375C:1,4,5
doubting Thomas, 361:13
feel and see. . ., 362:14
reality of the body, 362:12
seeing Christ eating, with your vision, 362:11
Thomas’ touching, 375C:1,2,4
thought they were seeing a spirit, 375C:3
touch and see. . ., 375C:2
touch me as I ascend, 375C:4
we have seen the Lord. . ., 375C:1
why are thoughts coming up. . ., 375C:3
wounds, 375C:2
resurrection of the body (- of the dead):
against the claim: only spiritual, 362:22
bestowal of honor and glory, 344:1
blessed are those who believe, 361:13
creed, 398:17
death hearing voice of Son of God,
362:26
denied by nonchristians, 361:3
eating/drinking not needed, 362:12
Egyptian belief in, 361:12
end of the world, 362:25
ensure the way you rise again, 344:4
equal to the angels, 341:11
examples from nature, 361:9-11
faith in, 362:6
flesh and spirit, 362:24-25
flesh in same form in which Christ
appeared, 362:27
flesh will be carried by soul, 362:14
future life, 361:2
head and members, 362:27
heavenly body, 362:21
hope for, 362:10,26
idea that only Christ can rise again,
361:14,17
imperishability, 362:18,19,22,24
individual differences, 343:4
Jewish belief in, 362:18
John’s gospel, 362:25-26
kind of life to which the dead rise,
361:2,3,19
let us fast and pray, 361:21
life of the angels, 362:27,28
life of the just after, 362:1
many think only the soul will rise, 362:6
marriage and, 362:18
nature of the change, 362:21
not all shall be changed, 362:19,21
objection: flesh and blood shall not
gain. . . 362:13-21,24
omnipotence of God, 361:18
Paul on life after, 362:19,24
peace and quiet, 362:28
perfect health, 348:3
previously risen in spirit, through faith,
362:23
promised to all, 361:17
promised to Christians, 362:10
punishment of the wicked, 362:23
relation of flesh to soul, 362:14
Sadducees, 362:18
spiritual and bodily, 362:24
time; twinkling of an eye, 362:20
truth of the doctrine, 361:2,4
what sort of bodies. . . 362:7
what will not be in life of, 362:28
wicked and the good, 362:23
resurrection according to the spirit,
362:24-25
rich and poor:
See also Poor
gaining rich through another’s poverty,
359:2
meeting on road of life, 350B:1
mutual need, 367:3
one overloaded; one traveling light,
399:8
walking road of life together, 399:7
Rich people:
conceit, 346A:6
despair: camel and eye of needle,
346A:5
entering the kingdom of heaven,
346A:4,6
find riches and lose repose, 345:5
happiness; greed, 359A:6
hoping in this world, 350A:4
lay hold of true life (Paul), 346:1
parable of man clothed in fine linen,
345:1
parable: Lazarus and the rich man,
367:1-3
parable: many crops; build new barns,
359:3
Paul’s letter to Timothy, 345:1
possess nothing, without God, 350B:1;
350C:1
security lacking, 359A:6
rich young man:
sell; give all to the poor, 389:4
riches, See Wealth
right hand of God, 398:11
rock: water from; Moses’ doubting; figure,
352:4
Rome:
chastised rather than destroyed, 397:8
city spared in saints who died there,
397:6
correction by inspiring terror, 397:8
sack of city, 397:1-9
rule of faith: called the symbol, 398:1

Volume III/10
Sermons 341-400

security: rich people lacking in, 359A:6
self:
  love self first; then neighbor as yourself, 399:5
  rightly loving one’s self, 348:2
self-control, 348A:4
God-given, 365:3
self-indulgence, 365:5; 391:4
self-love: bad bandit as example, 348:2
senses, 341:5
serpent, See Devil
servant:
  authority over, 400:5
  parable of unjust steward, 359A:9-10,16
service of God: prepare for trials and temptations, 397:3
Severus, Bishop, 356:3
Severus (deacon), 356:5
sex:
  earthly desire, 362:16
  moderation: married people, 351:5
  unlawful relations, 392:2
shame: love of money, 399:11
shepherd: giving life for his sheep, 366:3
shipwreck: fund to insure against, 355:5
Sicca Venerea, 348A:1
sight and faith, 346:2
silence: God praised by, 341:9
Simeon, 370:2,3,4
sin:
  beginning: gate of hell; pride, 346B:3
  boasting of felled body, 351:4
  cannot be without, 386:1
  carelessness in avoiding, 351:6
  charity and future sins, 383:1
  children of God do not sin, 351:6
  confessed even by a just man, 397:5
  correct self before judgment day, 346A:7
  covered by almsgiving, 389:5
  daily repentance, 351:5,6
  daily wash of light sins, 388:2
  deserves death, 361:16
  despair, 352:9
  devil and the baptized, 363:2
  disgraceful for Christians to sin, 371:4
  earthly desires, 362:16
  engulfed in sins, 365:5
  fear of eternal death, 399:13
  fighting for the devil, 363:2
  forgiving, See Forgiveness of sin.

S
sabbath, 362:28
sacraments of the faithful, 351:2
sacrifice: mercy and, 386:1
Sadducees, 362:18,27
sadness: comfort, 354:9
saints:
  freedom from perishable decay, 362:23
  you will hide them, . . , 362:3
salvation:
  Christ as doctor; healing may be painful, 346A:8
  Christ as helper and protector for, 363:2
  Christ building his Church (ark), 361:21
  Church as ark, 346A:3,4,6
  cup of martyrdom, 375B:2
  entering the kingdom of God, 351:8
  Jesus the savior, 370:3
  persevering in iniquity, 351:8
  purpose of law, prophets, incarnation, 371:2
Samaritan: Jesus as guardian, 366:2
Samson:
  blinding, 364:6
  Christ represented by, 364:3
  Christ’s deeds compared with, 364:5
  heretics represented by companion, 364:4
  image of the cross, 364:6
  mystery revealed by Christ, 364:6
  prophetic, 364:2
  riddle: just man, 364:2,3
  strength in his hair, 364:2,6
Saul:
  See also Paul, Saint; Stephen, Saint
cruel persecutor of the Church, 345:4
  raised up as Paul, 382:4
  stoning of Stephen, 382:4
  why are you persecuting me. . . , 341:12; 345:4; 361:14; 362:18; 382:4;
  395:2
scandal:
  gift of counsel, 347:3
  persevere through, 346C:1
  public penance, 351:9
schism, 346B:3,4; 358:4; 400:9
scripture, See Bible.
Scylla, 365:5
seasons:
  life cycles, 361:10
  spiritual life, 350A:3
grace and power to avoid; Pelagian, 348A:3
grateful for God’s healing, 397:5
grave sins covered by charity; with change, 388:2
guard against, 359:9
if we say we have no sin... 388:2
in iniquity was I conceived, 391:1
knowledge of evil of past sins, 347:3
love covers multitude of, 387:3
no dread for past sins, 353:2
no one is clean in God’s sight, 351:2
not allowed in gehenna, 388:2
pagan calumny against the Church, 352:9
redeemed by almsgiving, 350B:1; 350C:1
repentance for grave sins, 351:7; 352:8
Samson and, 364:3
sealed as in a bag (Job), 397:4
shadow of death, 366:5
slavery in Egypt, 352:6; 353:2
soul turned from God by, 366:4
soul without sin, 397:5
venial; life cannot be free of, 398:15
war on God, 365:1
works of the flesh, 351:9
sinners:
  Christ came to save, 381:1
darkness does not comprehend light, 342:1
  running away from God’s mercy, 381:1
  suffering; blaming God, 341A:3
  threatened, 352:9
skins: suggest death, 362:11
slander: enduring, 357:4
slave(s):
  Augustine’s community, 356:3,7
  entrusting gold to, 345:3
  masters and, 361:21
  valued and chastised, 400:5
sleeping; death, 361:10
snakes, 385:2
Sodom: destruction of, 397:2,6,8
Solomon, King, 398:13
  figure of Christ, 358:3
Son of God:
  coeternal with the Father, 398:8
  died and was buried, 375B:6
  Father begot what he himself is, 398:3
  form of a servant, 362:16
  omnipotent, 398:5
  Son of Man:
    authority to judge, 362:26
    domicile remains in heaven, 362:16
    less than the Father, 341:6
sons of God, See Children of God.
sorrow:
  repentance and, 351:1
  share in, by mercy, 358A:1
soul:
  See also Body and soul
  alive when animated by God, 348:3
  beauty of, 348:3
  fear of losing, 368:1
  hating, 368:1
  thinking as giving birth, 369:2
  whoever loves his soul will lose it, 368:1-5
  wrong kind of love for, 368:2
sowing: reward, 358A:2
sparrow finds a house, 343:1
sparrows, 385:2
Spirit:
  death according to the, 362:23
  flesh and (Manichee), 400:4
  marriage with flesh, 400:5
  resurrection according to the, 362:23
spiritual life:
  See also Christian life; gifts of the Holy Spirit; grace; geart; love; prayer
  analogy of seasons, 350A:3
  analogy: seed and harvest, 362:2
  bread for our souls, 389:1
delight in higher life, 400:2
  gifts of the Holy Spirit, 347:2
  giving up evil = a kind of death, 362:23
  living in God’s presence, 396:1
  put to death by deeds of the flesh, 362:14
  role of fear of God in, 348:1
  trials in service of God, 397:3
  when the unclean spirit goes out... 385:9
starvation, 362:11
Stephen, Saint, 375B:6
  do not hold this against them... 382:3; 386:2
  example of, 382:3
  first martyr, 382:1-5
  forgiveness by, 386:2
  prayer won Paul’s conversion, 382:4
  Solomon built... 398:13
Stoics, 348:3
strength:
arms of God’s servant Moses, 352:6
Samson, 364:2,6
seat of; loins, 365:5
stretch: remove wrinkles, 341:13
suffering:
afflictions and distresses of world, 346C:1-2
blaming God, 341A:2
complaints; blaming Christ/Christians, 346A:8
corrected by, 397:4
hard times, 346C:1
let patience have a perfect work, 397:9
poor man at rich man’s gate, 397:5
sharing the afflictions of Christ, 341:12
temporal reward, 398:10
trials and temptations, 343:9
undeserved; just person, 397:9
unwilling to be cured (by Christ), 346A:8
what have I done to you [God], 341A:2,3
what we suffer; how we suffer, 397:3
sun: analogy of the Trinity, 384:2
sunlight: money and, 399:10
Susanna:
chastity and fidelity, 343:1-2; 359:3
example for married women, 343:5;
391:6
suspicions: evil- right-minded, 343:3
symbol (rule of faith), 398:1

T
Tartarus, 367:1
tax-collector: humility, 351:1
temple of God:
charity dwelling in, 350:1
holy, 363:3
Holy Spirit in the baptized, 398:13
wrongdoing; effects, 353:2
temporal goods:
See also Rich people; Wealth
concord between brothers, 359:2
Daniel’s example, 391:5
exaltation of the humble, 351:1
happiness, 359A:5
hopes on fleeting things, 345:7
martyrs and contempt of, 345:1-7
more danger than distinction, 354:2
pray for, in moderation, 354:7
prosperity of godless people, 350A:3
reluctance to part with a ruined world, 345:7
renouncing the world, 368:3
road of Christian living, 346B:4
stop loving earthly prosperity, 346A:8
wealth; abundance, 359A:14
why people go to school, 399:12
temporal life, See Life
temptation:
beyond what one is able to bear, 397:9
cure of the cross, 353:2
devil uses fear or greed, 346B:4
lead bad lives now, 341:6
no age free from, 391:1,3
Pelagian heresy, 348A:1
watch and pray. . ., 348A:2
why devil tempts us, 385:5
terror: God spared city of Constantinople,
397:7
theft; resort to, for giving alms, 359A:13
Theodosius, Emperor, 392:2
Thomas, Saint, Apostle, 361:13; 375C:1,2,4
threshing floor, 364:3; 397:9; 400:10
Thuburbo, women martyred at, 345:1,6
time:
coeternal; coeval, 398:8
divisions, 362:20
IBUTES: unjust steward, 359A:16
tolerance: necessity of, 359A:5
tombs; dead persons’ ashes, 361:12
treach:
found in a field, 399:2
where your heart is, 389:4
tree:
every tree that does not bear. . ., 389:6
full of leaves; full of fruit, 342:4
life cycles, 361:11
wild olive, 342:4
trials: prepare your soul for, 397:3
Trinity:
See also God
Arian heresy, 384:1-3
Christ in, 375C:7
divine unity is three, 384:1
equality in all qualities, 341:8,10
Father and Son glorified, 380:7
inexpressible and boundless, 384:1
procession of Father and Son, 369:2
scriptural texts supporting, 384:3

Sermons 341-400
Son equal to the Father, 341:10
Word in, 375A:2
truth:

enmity from proclaiming, 392:3
finding fault with, 387:1
food in heaven, 362:30
paths of justice, 366:4
victory of, is charity, 358:1
Word of God, 346A:2
turtle-dove finds a nest, 343:1
twelve: totality, 351:8

U
unbelief:
blind Samson, 364:6
darkness is unbelievers, 342:1
death as, 344:6
imitating fathers who ate manna and
died, 352:3
night seeking night (Thomas), 375C:2
resurrection to judgment, 362:26
understanding:
bless the Lord, 365:2,3
commanded to understand, 348A:4
from nature = heresy, 365:2
gift from nature, 365:4,5
gift of grace, 365:2
gift of the Holy Spirit, 365:4
hearts cleansed of false values, 347:3
learning the commandments, 348A:4
seeking and obtaining, 365:5
wisdom reached from, 347:2
ungodliness: conversion, 346A:3
union with Christ: ascension, 395:2
unity:
body of Christ, 400:8
bringing Catholics and Donatists
together, 358:4
brothers in the inheritance, 358:4
early church, 398:4
evangelization and, 400:10
joy in its coming, 357:3
litigation with Donatists, 359:4
pagans and schismatics, 400:9
property; concord between brothers,
359:2
unjust steward (parable), 359A:9-10,16
urbanus, Bishop, 348A:1
usury: mammon of iniquity, 359A:15

V
vale of tears, 347:2
Valerius, 355:2
values:
See also greed; temporal goods; Wealth
all flesh is grass, 341A:1
inner prosperity, 354:2
inwardly rich, 359A:6
learn to go for true riches, 345:5
love of self, 368:4
turn thoughts from earth to heaven,
350A:4
vanity: improper love, 348:2
vice: chain of effects, 353:1
victoriana, farm at, 356:15
virgin birth:
derived event, 370:3
Eve’s sin and, 369:3
sublimity of, 398:6
virginity:
mind and body, 341:5
pride and holiness of, 354:9
virgins, dedicated, 355:6
virtue:
good wives, 343:5
splendor of, 343:9
vows: holy commitment, 355:6
Vulcan and Mars, 400:9

W
waking up, 361:10
war: horrors, 346C:1
water: rock struck by Moses; figurative
meaning, 352:4
wealth:
See also Greed; Money; Rich
burying in earth; depositing in heaven,
345:3
entrusting gold to slave (God), 345:3
exclusion from heaven, 346A:6
expended to live longer, 344:5
hard labor for love of money, 399:11
heart is where treasure is, 345:5
mammon means gold, 359A:13
overloaded rich man, 399:8
Psalm 144: true/false riches, 359A:14
rich man and Lazarus, 367:2; 399:13
rich will not take it with him, 359:3
riches sought for sake of life, 345:2

Volume III/10
true wealth vs mammon of iniquity, 359A:13
truly rich = rich inwardly, 359A:6
uncertainty of riches (Paul), 345:1
wickedness:
bad conversations corrupt morality, 399:9
blinded by, 391:4
Christians become devil’s angels, 376A:3
duty of correction, 387:1
loving iniquity = hating yourself, 399:4
loving your soul in iniquity, 368:2
widow:
two coins bought the whole kingdom, 359A:12
rejoice; Anna, 370:2
wife, See Husband and wife
will:
Christ could be tempted, 344:3
freedom of choice, 348A:3,4
wisdom:
blessed are the peacemakers, 347:3
choose instruction, and keep finding.. ., 391:6
disposes all things sweetly, 370:3
fear of God, 347:1
found by those who love her, 399:4
love of; by young men, 391:5
observe justice, 347:1
preference for, 343:9
self-control, 365:3
unfailing light of the mind, 347:2
witness-bearing:
confessing from and in the truth, 362:7
I will exalt you, Lord, 380:6
we are proof that gospel is true, 346B:3
witnesses, See False witnesses
women:
examples for young women, 391:6
martryed at Thuburbo, 345:1,6
Susanna, See Susanna
Word of God (second person of the Trinity):
abides forever, 341A:1; 391:6
agreement with, while in this life, 387:1
all things were made through him, 379:4,7
Arians; not created, 380:3
everywhere, 341:2
found truthful in all things, 346A:2
in the beginning, 341:2,3,4,7; 341A:1;
371:1; 375A:2; 375B:4,5; 379:4;
380:2; 380:3,4,5,6; 388:2
iniquity as enemy of, 387:1
leader of Christian pilgrims, 346A:1-8
life events of Jesus and, 349:6
no death, no blood, in the Word, 375B:4
opponent of the wicked, 387:1
praised by all, 377:1
suffering, 375B:6
wholly in the Father; in the womb, 341:2
word of God (the bible):
abides forever, 366:3
words:
all reaching all listeners, 341:2
God’s shortened words on earth, 399:2,3
work:
commanded, 382:1
food that does not perish, 366:3
works of mercy:
barren of, 389:6
life after the resurrection, 362:28
not needed in heaven, 358A:2
sorrow and, 358A:1
world:
criticisms of religious life, 354:3
despised by martyrs, 345:7
friendship with = enmity with God, 385:6
love of, 354:2
two ways of understanding, 342:3
well-being in, 385:7,8
worm will not die. . ., 362:23
worship: challenge: worship God for
nothing, 385:5
wrinkles, 341:13
wrongdoing: cheating their own souls, 353:2

Y
youths, 391:1-6
characteristics, 391:3
Daniel’s example for young men, 391:5
despair, 391:3
perversity, 391:3

Z
Zacchaeus, 359A:12,16
Zechariah, 370:4
Translation and notes by Edmund Hill, OP, introduction and editorial consultant François Dolbeau, John E. Rotelle, editor

Volume 11 contains 30 Sermons discovered since 1990.

Includes:

Dolbeau Sermons
(Sermones (Dolbeau))

Volume III/11
Homilies/Sermons

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-103-9, 6 x 9 in., 452 pp., 1997

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# INDEX OF SCRIPTURE

(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the particular sermon and its section)

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Volume III/11 Sermons - Newly Discovered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-31</td>
<td>110A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>198, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>159B, 5; 159B, 6; 198, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-28</td>
<td>90A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>72, 18; 359B, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>110A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>359B, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>341, 13; 359B, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>159A, 9; 341, 20; 341, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>359B, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>341, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>360B, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:11-7:23</td>
<td>114B, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>114B, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:18-19</td>
<td>198, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>114B, 6; 159B, 16; 299A, 9; 341, 23; 360B, 2; 360A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>341, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:29</td>
<td>341, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:37</td>
<td>341, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:9</td>
<td>218, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>162C, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-16</td>
<td>341, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>159A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:13-17</td>
<td>159B, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>130A, 11; 283, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:24</td>
<td>110A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:20</td>
<td>359B, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:23-24</td>
<td>360A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:11-14</td>
<td>360A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leviticus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:20</td>
<td>110A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deuteronomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>159A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:13</td>
<td>159A, 8; 198, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>198, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>341, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>29, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:9</td>
<td>341, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:9</td>
<td>159A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Judges</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:38</td>
<td>360A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:39</td>
<td>360A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Samuel</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:6</td>
<td>198, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tobit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>130A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>198, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>114B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psalms</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>198, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>218, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>218, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>20B, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>72, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>72, 12; 198, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>72, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5-6</td>
<td>72, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>72, 9; 72, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sermons - Newly Discovered
## Volume III/11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>119:71</td>
<td>159B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:73</td>
<td>159B, 13; 159B, 2; 159B, 3; 159B, 4; 159B, 8; 23B, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120:7</td>
<td>348A, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132.9.16</td>
<td>198, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133:1</td>
<td>162C, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140:8</td>
<td>360C, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143:2</td>
<td>299A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144:15</td>
<td>162C, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:5</td>
<td>72, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146:6</td>
<td>114B, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110A, 5; 198, 13; 198, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23:1-2 LXX</td>
<td>28A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>28A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:4</td>
<td>28A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:5</td>
<td>28A, 7; 28A, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ecclesiastes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>354A, 11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Song of Songs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>198, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>374, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>374, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>352A, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Wisdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>162C, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-6</td>
<td>198, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>198, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>198, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>29, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>28A, 8; 348A, 14; 354A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>159B, 8; 159B, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td>159B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>198, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td>299A, 7; 360A, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11-13</td>
<td>360A, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sirach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>23B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>23B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:28</td>
<td>306E, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>352A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>198, 33; 360B, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13.12</td>
<td>159B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:15-16</td>
<td>306E, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>341, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16-18</td>
<td>359B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>348A, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ezekiel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18:21</td>
<td>352A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:21-22</td>
<td>352A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:32</td>
<td>352A, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:17-18</td>
<td>306E, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Joel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>348A, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sermons - Newly Discovered

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td>3:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>114B, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td>360A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>4:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>198, 43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>1:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>299A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>374, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:3-5</td>
<td></td>
<td>374, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>374, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>114B, 11; 114B, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>114B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>23B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>360B, 13; 360B, 15; 360B, 20; 374, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>283, 6; 359B, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>341, 18; 360A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>72, 9; 198, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>359B, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:23-24</td>
<td></td>
<td>359B, 21; 359B, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:30</td>
<td></td>
<td>159A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:35</td>
<td></td>
<td>341, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:37</td>
<td></td>
<td>354A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>110A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:44</td>
<td></td>
<td>110A, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:45</td>
<td></td>
<td>198, 43; 348A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:46</td>
<td></td>
<td>159B, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>72, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:9-12-13</td>
<td></td>
<td>348A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>110A, 8; 198, 56; 354A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:32-33</td>
<td></td>
<td>72, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7</td>
<td></td>
<td>114B, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>130A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:12-11</td>
<td></td>
<td>218, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:29</td>
<td></td>
<td>130A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>159B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>299A, 3; 299A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>114B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:40</td>
<td></td>
<td>359B, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>293A, 3; 293A, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>23B, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>198, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:29-30</td>
<td></td>
<td>142, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>293A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>130A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>130A, 2; 130A, 5; 348A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:17-18</td>
<td></td>
<td>130A, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>159A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>341, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:32</td>
<td></td>
<td>159B, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:4-5</td>
<td></td>
<td>354A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>159A, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:5-6</td>
<td></td>
<td>341, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>354A, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>354A, 7; 354A, 11; 354A, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>72, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:19-19</td>
<td></td>
<td>130A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:23-28</td>
<td></td>
<td>341, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20:22</td>
<td></td>
<td>28A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:2-3</td>
<td></td>
<td>359B, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21:43</td>
<td></td>
<td>218, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>198, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:36</td>
<td></td>
<td>90A, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:37</td>
<td></td>
<td>90A, 4; 90A, 9; 90A, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:37-40</td>
<td></td>
<td>90A, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:39</td>
<td></td>
<td>90A, 4; 90A, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:40</td>
<td></td>
<td>90A, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>341; 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:35</td>
<td></td>
<td>341, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>198; 15; 198, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:21-23</td>
<td></td>
<td>72, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:34-41</td>
<td></td>
<td>198, 4; 341, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:41</td>
<td></td>
<td>23B, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:41-44</td>
<td></td>
<td>360B, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>159A, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Mark   | 1:15    |       | 352A, 1; 352A, 2; 352A, 3; 352A, 4; 352A, 5 |
|        | 1:24    |       | 14A, 3; 130A, 2 |
|        | 1:25    |       | 130A, 2    |
|        | 1:31    |       | 20B, 6     |
|        | 2:17    |       | 198, 50    |
|        | 3:11    |       | 130A, 2    |
|        | 3:34-35 |       | 359B, 9    |
|        | 4:25    |       | 283, 8     |
|        | 6:38    |       | 198, 51    |
|        | 8:7     |       | 198, 51    |
|        | 8:8     |       | 198, 51    |
|        | 8:34    |       | 218, 2     |
|        | 10:9    |       | 159A, 7; 159A, 8 |
|        | 10:19   |       | 306E, 11   |
|        | 10:30   |       | 341, 3     |
|        | 10:43-44|       | 359B, 9    |
|        | 10:44-45|       | 359B, 9    |
|        | 10:45   |       | 359B, 10   |
|        | 12:7    |       | 341, 24    |
|        | 12:7-8  |       | 360A, 3    |
|        | 12:10   |       | 306E, 3    |
|        | 12:14-17|       | 71, 12     |
|        | 13:31   |       | 110A, 5    |
|        | 14:12   |       | 359B, 10   |
|        | 14:38   |       | 348A, 12   |

Volume III/11
### Volume III/11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luke</th>
<th>1:5</th>
<th>198, 50</th>
<th>1:10</th>
<th>198, 40; 341, 10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>341, 25</td>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>341, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:36</td>
<td>198, 50</td>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>110A, 1; 130A, 10; 159B, 9; 198, 51; 293A, 3; 341, 19; 341, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>114B, 11; 306E, 6</td>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>341, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td>28A, 3; 293A, 2</td>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>72, 17; 341, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:51</td>
<td>359B, 9</td>
<td>1:32</td>
<td>218, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:52</td>
<td>306E, 1</td>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>341, 18; 360B, 6; 360B, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>23B, 7; 110A, 5; 354A, 11</td>
<td>1:34</td>
<td>114B, 5; 198, 44; 198, 61; 293A, 5; 341, 10; 341, 11; 341, 20; 374, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-34</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
<td>1:35</td>
<td>348A, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>159A, 8; 198, 46</td>
<td>1:36</td>
<td>198, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9-11</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
<td>1:37</td>
<td>130A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>159A, 8</td>
<td>1:38</td>
<td>359B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:34</td>
<td>130A, 2; 130A, 5</td>
<td>1:39</td>
<td>130A, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td>360C, 4</td>
<td>1:40</td>
<td>130A, 10; 159B, 10; 198, 39; 341, 13; 359B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>359B, 9</td>
<td>1:41</td>
<td>198, 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>360A, 10</td>
<td>1:42</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>29B, 2</td>
<td>1:43</td>
<td>359B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25-28</td>
<td>130A, 4</td>
<td>1:44</td>
<td>130A, 7; 130A, 12; 360C, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9</td>
<td>360B, 12</td>
<td>1:45</td>
<td>130A, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23</td>
<td>359B, 22</td>
<td>1:46</td>
<td>159B, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:41</td>
<td>198, 2</td>
<td>1:47</td>
<td>28A, 2; 360A, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:52</td>
<td>341, 24</td>
<td>1:48</td>
<td>130A, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1-5</td>
<td>110A, 2</td>
<td>1:49</td>
<td>198, 38; 198, 63; 306E, 10; 354A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5</td>
<td>110A, 4</td>
<td>1:50</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14-15</td>
<td>110A, 5</td>
<td>1:51</td>
<td>359B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26</td>
<td>159A, 6; 159A, 8</td>
<td>1:52</td>
<td>14A, 4; 72, 10; 90A, 14; 198, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:26-27</td>
<td>159A, 2</td>
<td>1:53</td>
<td>159B, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:12</td>
<td>90A, 10</td>
<td>1:54</td>
<td>14A, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:17-18</td>
<td>90A, 10</td>
<td>1:55</td>
<td>198, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:10</td>
<td>359B, 6</td>
<td>1:56</td>
<td>341, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>142, 3</td>
<td>1:57</td>
<td>159B, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:20-27</td>
<td>114B, 1</td>
<td>1:58</td>
<td>198, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26-27</td>
<td>114B, 8</td>
<td>1:59</td>
<td>28A, 2; 360A, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27</td>
<td>114B, 13</td>
<td>1:60</td>
<td>130A, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10-14</td>
<td>29B, 3</td>
<td>1:61</td>
<td>198, 38; 198, 63; 306E, 10; 354A, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:18-25</td>
<td>114B, 9</td>
<td>1:62</td>
<td>198, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:19</td>
<td>72, 18</td>
<td>1:63</td>
<td>159B, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:22</td>
<td>114B, 8</td>
<td>1:64</td>
<td>198, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:26</td>
<td>114B, 9; 114B, 10</td>
<td>1:65</td>
<td>198, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:27</td>
<td>114B, 30</td>
<td>1:66</td>
<td>28A, 8; 341, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>110A, 1</td>
<td>1:67</td>
<td>159B, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10-12</td>
<td>110A, 1; 159B, 15; 198, 15; 341, 19</td>
<td>1:68</td>
<td>198, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:34</td>
<td>198, 9</td>
<td>1:69</td>
<td>198, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:24</td>
<td>360C, 4</td>
<td>1:70</td>
<td>28A, 8; 341, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:32</td>
<td>348A, 12</td>
<td>1:71</td>
<td>110A, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:33</td>
<td>359B, 10</td>
<td>1:72</td>
<td>359B, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>198, 56; 218, 11; 360B, 18</td>
<td>1:73</td>
<td>218, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:46</td>
<td>359B, 19</td>
<td>1:74</td>
<td>218, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:47</td>
<td>359B, 21</td>
<td>1:75</td>
<td>218, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>198, 44; 198, 55; 293A, 3; 293A, 10; 341, 11; 341, 13; 341, 14; 341, 5; 348A, 3; 359B, 8</td>
<td>1:76</td>
<td>19:23-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>293A, 5; 341, 5</td>
<td>1:77</td>
<td>159B, 18; 318, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Sermons - Newly Discovered
21:15-16 299A, 2
21:15-17 299A, 3
21:17 299A, 2

Acts of the Apostles
2:11 110A, 1
2:37 360B, 18
2:37-38 352A, 4
2:38 360B, 18
3:12-13 198, 13
3:17 299A, 2
4:22-25 348A, 10
7:24-25 198, 36
7:25 348A, 1; 348A, 8
8:3 110A, 7
8:6 20B, 11; 198, 46; 341, 14
8:17 198, 42; 23B, 10
8:23 341, 18
8:24-23 198, 44; 198, 53
8:26 20B, 1
8:31 159A, 1
8:32 159B, 9; 159B, 15; 348A, 3
8:34 72, 8; 198, 54
8:35 130A, 5; 159A, 7
8:35-36 159A, 1
8:37 159A, 5
8:38-39 159A, 5; 159A, 10
10:4 141A, 2
10:13 130A, 12; 348A, 5
11:1 218, 6; 341, 24
11:2 198, 7
11:18 218, 6
11:32 159B, 1; 159B, 2; 159B, 5;
159B, 13; 159B, 14
11:33-36 159B, 1
14:24-35 352A, 5
14:56 198, 59; 293A, 8
12:12 360A, 9
13:1 359B, 13
13:8 90A, 4
13:9 90A, 13
13:9-10 90A, 4
13:10 90A, 13; 130A, 5
15:8-9 218, 6
15:12 360A, 2
15:27 218, 6; 341, 24

Romans
1:3 198, 50; 198, 60
1:8 198, 38
1:18 198, 30
1:18-20 198, 32
1:19-20 198, 30
1:20 198, 38
1:21 198, 58
1:21-22 198, 32
1:21-23 198, 33
1:23 198, 34; 198, 37
1:23-24 198, 35
1:24-25 20B, 6
1:24-25 198, 34
1:25 198, 35
1:26 29, 1
2:3-6 29, 1
2:4 29, 1
2:4 20B, 6
2:24 198, 56
3:4 28A, 2
3:23 374, 22
3:26 130A, 3
4:5 130A, 3
4:15 159B, 14
4:25 198, 53; 360B, 19
5:3-5 72, 9
5:5 130A, 8; 130A, 11; 218, 9;
283, 2
5:8-9 348A, 1
5:9 348A, 4
5:14 218, 14
5:20 159B, 14; 374, 23
6:9 198, 49
7:7 130A, 11; 283, 2; 283, 3
7:9 283, 2
7:12-13 159B, 14
7:22-25 348A, 10
7:24-25 198, 36
7:25 348A, 1; 348A, 8
8:3 110A, 7
8:6 20B, 11; 198, 46; 341, 14
8:17 198, 42; 23B, 10
8:23 341, 18
8:24-23 198, 44; 198, 53
8:26 20B, 1
8:31 159A, 1
8:32 159B, 9; 159B, 15; 348A, 3
8:34 72, 8; 198, 54
8:35 130A, 5; 159A, 7
8:35-36 159A, 1
8:37 159A, 5
8:38-39 159A, 5; 159A, 10
10:4 141A, 2
10:13 130A, 12; 348A, 5
11:1 218, 6; 341, 24
11:2 198, 7
11:18 218, 6
11:32 159B, 1; 159B, 2; 159B, 5;
159B, 13; 159B, 14
11:33-36 159B, 1
14:24-35 352A, 5
14:56 198, 59; 293A, 8
12:12 360A, 9
13:1 359B, 13
13:8 90A, 4
13:9 90A, 13
13:9-10 90A, 4
13:10 90A, 13; 130A, 5
15:8-9 218, 6
15:12 360A, 2
15:27 218, 6; 341, 24

1 Corinthians
1:12 360B, 4
1:13 130A, 3; 198, 15; 198, 52
1:20 341, 24
1:24 360A, 10
1:27 341, 24
1:27-28 198, 59; 341, 4; 360B, 24
1:31 299A, 2
2:8 341, 24
2:9 198, 27; 20B, 9; 20B, 10;
72, 15; 283, 5; 341, 5; 360B, 2;
360B, 3; 360B, 4; 360B, 6;
360B, 11; 360B, 15; 374, 1
2:12 283, 8
2:12 218, 14-15 23B, 6
2:13 110A, 3
2:15 110A, 3
3:3 360B, 5
3:4 360B, 4
## Sermons - Newly Discovered

| 3:9 | 130A, 10; 130A, 12 |
| 4:9 | 159A, 13 |

### Colossians
- 1:18 341, 19
- 1:24 341, 20
- 2:3, 10 198, 62
- 2:8 198, 21
- 2:8-10 198, 10
- 2:10 341, 19
- 3:1 110A, 6
- 3:1-2 110A, 3
- 3:17 198, 56
- 4:3 198, 57

### 1 Thessalonians
- 2:7 341, 22
- 4:17 198, 53

### 2 Thessalonians
- 2:9 198, 62

### 1 Timothy
- 1:5 359B, 16
- 1:13 299A, 6
- 1:15 348A, 1
- 1:16 352A, 8
- 2:5 198, 44; 198, 52
- 3:2 162C, 2
- 3:16 29, 12
- 5:22 348A, 14
- 6:10 159A, 3; 198/33
- 6:16 198, 39; 360B, 3
- 6:17 114B, 12
- 6:18-19 114B, 13

### 2 Timothy
- 2:20 198, 12
- 2:21 360B, 28
- 3:5 359B, 17
- 3:8-2 299A, 4
- 4:2 90A, 11
- 4:6 299A, 4; 299A, 6
- 4:6-7 299A, 4
- 4:7-8 299A, 6
- 4:8 159B, 2; 299A, 9

### Titus
- 1:12 198, 34
- 1:15 159B, 13
- 1:16 306E, 11
- 3:5 341, 21

### Hebrews
- 1:14 198, 48
- 5:6 198, 43
- 7:25 198, 53
- 12:4 306E, 2; 306E, 6

### James
- 1:5 348A, 14
- 2:13 90A, 14
- 2:19 130A, 2
- 4:3 110A, 3

### 1 Peter
- 2:3 360C, 3
- 2:5 360E, 4
- 2:7-8 14A, 2
- 2:9 198, 49
- 2:24 198, 5
- 5:5 159B, 13
- 5:8 359B, 15

### 1 John
- 1:5 28A, 2
- 1:8 198, 55
- 2:1-2 198, 55
- 2:2 198, 43; 198, 56; 198, 57
- 2:16 72, 15
- 3:16 28A, 3; 28A, 4; 198, 6; 359B, 19
- 4:16 90A, 12
- 4:17-18 198, 4
- 4:18 130A, 5; 360B, 1
- 4:20 90A, 5

### Revelation
- 1:4 198, 51
- 18:6 299A, 8
- 19:10 198, 16; 198, 24
- 20:14 306E, 9
- 21:17 293A, 3
- 22:9 198, 16; 198, 24

---

**Volume III/11**
INDEX

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

A
Aaron, 198:50; 374:19
abandonment: fear of, 130A:5,7
Abel, 341:19
Abraham, 114B:6; 130A:10; 218:7; 360A:3,4
Christ revealed to, 198:32
In your seed. . . , 159B:16
parable of Lazarus, 142(appendix):3
accidents:
temptations (Pelagian view)), 348A:11
actions:
words and, 306E:11
Adam and Eve, 114B:12; 198:38,43
disobedience learned from, 359B:7
do not touch . . . test of obedience,
earthly; heavenly, 159B:2
Eve and the serpent, 341:12
Eve as serpent’s agent, 159A:7
Eve fashioned from side of Adam,
Eve’s creation (terminology), 162C:6
fleshly desire, 360B:4
tempted, 159A:7
adoption (theology), 162C:6
children of God, 341:18
defilement of man, 23B:2
redemption of our bodies, 198:44
adultery, 90A:13; 283:7
conjugal rights, 354A:6
affection, 159A:2,7,13
fast hold on humans, 198:62
if anyone does not hate . . . ,
159A:2,6,7,13
limit the claims of, 159A:13
affliction:
close, 159A:4
deliverance from, 306E:10
prayer for relief from, 20B:9
sin and, 306E:1
aging: passing of time, 360B:5
air: 374:2
Juno, 198:21,22
parts, 341:8
ruler of the power of, 198:26
transcended, 198:27
vain powers, 198:37,62
airy spirits, 198:38
almsgiving, 198:56; 360B:21
fasting and prayer, 198:8
good luck presents and, 198:2,4
Amen (the word), 348A:13
amputation, 159A:7
angels, 90A:5; 110A:6; 130A:3,10;
142(appendix):3; 162C:15;
198:24,25,44; 293A:12; 306E:8;
341:5,14,19
abiding in the South (Apocalypse),
198:14,16,46
association with, 23B:9
birth of Christ, 374:13
Christ tempted by devil, 159A:8
demanding special worship, 198:48
fellow slave, 198:16
godliness and, 360B:21
holy, as sons, 198:15
humans will become like, 159B:15
imitating the life of, 360B:21
intellectual life, 198:26
messengers; attendants, 198:48
models for humble, or proud, people,
right way of honoring, 198:46
see what man does not see, 360B:15
singing Alleluia, 159B:15
veneration of, 198:47
wish God to be loved, not selves,
animals, 374:9

Sermons - Newly Discovered
body and soul; creation, 29:7
compared with human beings, 374:3-4,6
love in, 90A:6
physically superior to man, 360B:9; 374:6
providence, 29:9
sacrifice of, 374:20
sharing; created goods, 374:2
souls of, 198:25; 360B:9; 374:6
taming of beasts, 360B:9
treatment of their offspring, 159B:4
anointing:
  bishops and the faithful have in common, 162C:2
  early customs, 198:50,53
Apocalypse:
  angel abiding in the South, 198:14,46,48
  John writes to seven churches, 198:51
apostles:
  See also disciples
  asked people to pray for them, 198:57
  believing in, 130A:3
  crucifiers sought advice of, 360B:18
  fishermen, 341:4; 360B:24
  Israelites, 341:24
  mediators, 198:57
  poor men chosen to be, 341:3
  sovereign grace of, 218:6
  speaking in all languages, 352A:4
  unlettered men chosen for, 341:4; 360B:24
appetite, 130A:1,7
Arians: seduction by, 341:12
Ark, See Noah’s ark,
aristokrat(-y; -ers), 352A:7; 198:41,42,58; 360A:7
  afraid of signs in heavens, 360A:10
  Christian seeking day of conversion, 360B:27
  folly for Christians to consult, 360B:22
  obstacle to conversion, 374:12
  atheism: fool says in his heart . . . , 374:9
Athenians, 198:29
atonement, 198:57
Augustine, Saint:
  critics of his books, 162C:15
  detained in Hippo, 360C:2
  disturbance in church where he was to preach, 359B:3,6
  fragile health, 20B:11
  illness, 20B:1
  loved by Aurelius, bishop of Carthage, 359B:1
  reciting biblical texts, 374:19
  slave of Christ, 359B:1
  urged to write letters against Pelagius, 348A:5
Aurelius (bishop of Carthage), 359B:1,2,4
authority:
  books of the bible, 374:10
  crucifixion of Christ, 159B:9,10
  God is over all authorities, 359B:13
  right order of, 359B:13
  slave and master, 159B:7
  authors, 23B:14
  avarice, See greed.
avoid: God’s promises, 299A:7
Babylon:
  Babylonian captivity, 114B:6
  repaid double by Jerusalem, 299A:7,8
  baptism, 90A:14; 130A:7
  See also catechumens
  Donatists, 198:45
  drunkard as minister, 293A:16
  heretic as minister, 293A:16
  heretics and rebaptism, 293A:13-15
  John’s and Christ’s compared, 293A:11
  minister: apostles; John’s disciples, 293A:15
  validity in relation to minister, 293A:14
  way of repentance, 352A:4
Barnabas: called “Jupiter”, 198:13
  basin with water, 360A:3
  beasts, See animals.
beatitude: God’s promises, 360B:13
beauty:
  finding God, 360B:8,9
  ordered nature, 29:4,6
  seek the creator, 198:31
bee, 29:10
belching, 341:5
belief:
  See also faith; unbelief; unbelievers
  believing him / believing in him, 130A:5
  Gentile vs Christian, 198:3,4
  learned and unlearned believers, 360B:25
  lying, 28A:2

Volume III/11
repent and believe; mercy, 352A:1
sight and, 360B:20
believe me (expression), 130A:3
believing:
 sentience of the soul, 198:2
Bethlehem, 198:60; 374:14
village, 341:4; 348A:7
bible:
 authority of authors of books, 374:10
canonical scriptures and other
 authors, 162C:15
deception in canonical scriptures, 162C:14
divine testimonials, 360A:4
Donatist betrayal of, 360A:4
hidden meanings locked up in, 341:22
promises in, as autograph, 299A:7
sacramental meanings in, 341:22
scriptures open to the public, 198:20
statements whose meaning is closed, 341:22
treat like God speaking, 162C:15
understanding Christ in Scripture; 3
ways, 341:1-26
birds, 90A:6
bishops:
 authority, 359B:12
benefits conferred by God through, 359B:5
burden of solicitude, 359B:12
called priests, 198:49
challenge of being Christians, 162C:2
criticism, 162C:3
deciet; pretence, 162C:4
just lives, 162C:1
love and obedience, 359B:23
mediators (Donatism), 198:52,55
members of body of Christ, 198:53
obedience to, 359B:9
 overseers, 162C:2
 serving as slave, 359B:10
slaves serving in love of Christ, 359B:1
blessings: Pelagian emptiness, 348A:13
blindness, 23B:8; 360B:14
bliss, 72:10
blood: sacrifice, 374:20
bodies:
color, 341:15
equal in one thing, less in another, 341:14
body and soul:
 See also flesh; heart; human body;
mind; spirit
body:
 looking for divinity in, 198:27
spirit and, 198:25
time and space, 198:28
trunk without a head, 341:19
Christ the savior (doctor) of, 348A:4
doubting about the soul, 374:9
God and greatness of soul, 360B:9
lose soul here; find it in eternal life, 159A:12
loving iniquity = hating soul, 90A:8,12
order, 29:10
perception: bodily eyes and spirit, 374:6,7
perishing, body wears down the soul, 159B:15
soul:
in command, 29:4
just lives, 162C:1
love and obedience, 359B:23
mediators: (Donatism), 198:52,55
members of body of Christ, 198:53
obedience to, 359B:9
 overseers, 162C:2
 serving as slave, 359B:10
slaves serving in love of Christ, 359B:1
reality, 341:4
regard, 341:1
reason, 341:1
repent: of, 130A:3
sight and, 360B:20
believe me (expression), 130A:3
believing:
 sentience of the soul, 198:2
Bethlehem, 198:60; 374:14
village, 341:4; 348A:7
bible:
 authority of authors of books, 374:10
canonical scriptures and other
 authors, 162C:15
deception in canonical scriptures, 162C:14
divine testimonials, 360A:4
Donatist betrayal of, 360A:4
hidden meanings locked up in, 341:22
promises in, as autograph, 299A:7
sacramental meanings in, 341:22
scriptures open to the public, 198:20
statements whose meaning is closed, 341:22
treat like God speaking, 162C:15
understanding Christ in Scripture; 3
ways, 341:1-26
birds, 90A:6
bishops:
 authority, 359B:12
benefits conferred by God through, 359B:5
burden of solicitude, 359B:12
called priests, 198:49
challenge of being Christians, 162C:2
criticism, 162C:3
deciet; pretence, 162C:4
just lives, 162C:1
love and obedience, 359B:23
mediators: (Donatism), 198:52,55
members of body of Christ, 198:53
obedience to, 359B:9
 overseers, 162C:2
 serving as slave, 359B:10
slaves serving in love of Christ, 359B:1
blessings: Pelagian emptiness, 348A:13
blindness, 23B:8; 360B:14
bliss, 72:10
blood: sacrifice, 374:20
bodies:
color, 341:15
equal in one thing, less in another, 341:14
body and soul:
 See also flesh; heart; human body;

Sermons - Newly Discovered

caring:
  service to the sick and the weak, 359B:23

*caritas* and *caro*, 360C:1
*caro* and *caritas*, 360C:1

Carthage, 359B:1

catechumens:
  burial discipline, 142(appendix):1
  hurry to be baptized, 142(appendix):2,4
  putting off day of baptism, 198:12
  repentance, 352A:3
  womb of mother Church, 352A:3

Catholic Church, 359B:16
  unity; division, 159B:18
  cause: suffering for, 283:6

Chaldeans, 198:58

change, 72:15; 198:27
  body and spirit, 198:25
  delay in conversion, 352A:5
  seeking the unchangeable, 360B:12

character, 198:7

charioteer, 90A:8,9

charity, 352A:3; 359B:2,23; 374:23
  See also love

asking for, 90A:14
  become strangers to fervor of, 198:15
  believes all things, 162C:4
  embracing what is absent and longed for, 198B:15

fear as servant of, 198:4
  fear in the heart, 360B:1
  grows, as fear decreases, 198:4
  heart, conscience, faith, 359B:16
  heart expanded, 360C:1
  highest place, 360C:4
  losing the soul of, 299A:3
  mother of obedience, 359B:17
  obedience and, 359B:12
  son in (vs slave), 198:12

Spirit of God, 283:8
  what we love with is charity, 90A:12
  who will separate us from . . . , 159A:1-2,7

Zacchaeus and the poor widow, 114B:11

charms, 306E:7

chastisement:
  companions of Daniel, 306E:9
  chastity, 159A:10
  Church as bride of Christ, 360A:11
  pardon for infirmity (in marriage), 354A:7

reforms of bishop Aurelius, 359B:5
  think of Mary’s virginity, 159B:13

children:
  loved by parents, 159B:4

children of God:
  adoption, 341:18
  right to become, 360B:6,15

choice:
  See also will
  implied by commands to do good, 348A:14
  power of, 348A:10,13
  sufficiency of free choice (no grace), 348A:13

*chrism*: anointed with, 198:51

Christ, See Jesus Christ.

Christian life:
  apostolic life; common life, 198:48
  association with Christ, 23B:10
  carrying the cross, 218:2
  great happenings after the crucifixion, 360B:18
  hearts of the faithful, 114B:8
  obedience of a servant of God, 359B:12
  Son of Man came to serve, 359B:10
  worthy of our head and bridegroom, 341:21

Christianity:
  human race converging on, 360B:25
  pagan literature, architecture, etc . . , 23B:13-14

Christians:
  anointed with chrism, 198:51
  blamed for hard times, 114B:15
  Christ’s suffering for, 198:5
  fasting for conversion of the bad, 198:9
  hold on to Father and Church, 198:42
  living stones, 306E:4
  names being written in heaven, 360A:7
  pagan converts, 299A:8
  repent and believe, 352A:3
  slaves to each other, 359B:8-9
  soldiers for God, 283:4
  suffering for Christ, 159A:5
  values of Gentiles and demons and, 198:3
  winnowing the good and bad, 299A:9
  worldwide, 159B:17

Church:
  ark, 114B:2

Volume III/11
blood and water from side of Christ, 218:14
blood of the martyrs, 299A:7; 360B:19
boat pitching in storm, 198:54
body of Christ and its members, 198:51, 52, 55; 341:19
body of the one priest, Christ, 198:49
bride, preserve your chastity, 360A:11
bridegroom and bride, 341:20
Christ the head of, 159B:13; 198:43,44
Christ, head of the corner, 306E:3
Christ and: two in one flesh, 341:20
city of the great king, 341:19
compassion for non-christians, 198:8
completeness of a perfect man, 341:2
cornerstone, 306E:3
discord in; be reconciled . . ., 359B:21
established on rock, 341:12
filling the whole world, 198:51
fulness: head and body, 341:2
great sacrament: Christ in the Church, 198:43
head intercedes for members, 198:57
holy people, royal priesthood, 198:49
incarnation and, 198:43
Jesus, the mediator, as head of, 341:10,11
live worthy of our head and bridegroom, 341:21
martyrs shed blood in and for, 359B:19
maternal solicitude of, 360C:6
members: Abel to the end of time, 341:19
mother, 198:42
no stain or wrinkle, 341:21
outside the holy of holies, 198:54
persecuted, 359B:15
persecution foretold, 114B:6
pilgrimage; heavenly Church, 341:19
promise of universality, 299A:7,8,9; 360A:5
promised by God, 159B:16
Psalm 45:10, 360A:1
reckoned as pile of sand, 306E:6
saints made into body of Christ, 360B:19
secular advantages in, 198:12
serpent would seduce from paradise of, 341:13
suffering in the body, 341:20
supreme reign promised, 299A:7
temple of God, 198:48
two sorts of people (re idols), 360A:8
unity, 198:42
unity of Christ, 159B:17
unity: hear and see, 360A:3,4
universality foretold, 299A:7,8,9; 360A:5
whole Christ, head and body, 341:19
worldwide, 360B:21
Cicero, 218:7
Circumcellions, 198:45; 299A:3
circumcision, 162C:6; 218:6; 306E:3; 374:15
salvation and (Paul vs Peter), 162C:7-14
Timothy and Titus, 162C:10-11
pagan vs christian times, 23B:13-15
clergy:
ulterior motives; hired servants, 198:12
clouds:
heavens dripped from face of God, 130A:8
color:
in bodies, 341:15
many colors of the queen’s gown, 360A:2
columns in a church, 198:10
commandment(-s):
bearing false witness, 306E:11
distinguish occasions or situations, 159A:6
imposed so God may be served, 359B:7
inquiry re the great commandment, 90A:1
just and holy and good, 159B:14
keeping, 130A:11
loving badly, 90A:13
one is sufficient: love your neighbor, 90A:12-13
rich man told by Christ, to keep, 130A:4
suited to situations, 159A:6
common life, 198:48
compassion:
Church and non-christians, 198:8
Crucifixion of Christ, 159B:9
divine, 360B:17
Sermons - Newly Discovered

concept, 293A:6

confession:
  boasting of iniquity, 283:7
  mercy of God, 29B:7
  place yourself before yourself, 29B:5
  praise of God, 29B:2, 2.6
  self-punishment, 29B:1, 3, 4
  two meanings of, 29B:1ff

confirmation, 198:51

congregation:
  of gods, 23B:2
  quiet and orderly, 198:11

conjugal rights, See husband and wife.

conscience, 114B:12; 162C:3; 283:7;
  306E:2; 360A:2
  charity, 359B:16
  humiliation for sin, 159B:3

Constantine, council at, 359B:2

Constantine, emperor, 359B:22

contemplation:
  longing to dwell in house of the Lord,
  360B:12
  continence, 283:1
  last days, 14B:13

conversion:
  Christian consulting astrologer on,
  360B:27
  emperor gained through fisherman,
  360B:24
  Jews and pagans, 374:15
  leading good lives, 360B:28.
  Magi “returned in another way”,
  374:23
  praying for pagans, 198:8
  putting off the day of, 360B:27
  worldwide, 360B:25

conversion of life:
  God as healer, 130A:7, 9
  repent and believe, 352A:2, 7
  temptation to delay, 352A:5, 7
  turning to God, 130A:12
  urgent appeal for, 114B:3
  cornerstone, 14A:2
  rejected, 360E:3

covenant, 159A:6
  proof from Jeremiah, 374:17
  why God changed, 374:22

covetousness: Jews, 159B:14
  See also greed

creation:
  all created things are body or spirit, 198:25
  all things are good through God,
  72:18
  creature(-s), 159A:10; 360B:21
  everything made seen as very good,
  359B:7
  foremost place in, 341:18
  God’s power and wisdom, 360A:10
  good things in are not enough, 374:2
  heavenly bodies, 360B:8
  images standing for creatures, 198:34
  maker; worker; creature, 159B:5, 7
  man and beast; one God, 29:7
  not God; this is the work of God,
  360B:8
  omniscient Wisdom, 29:7
  one prohibition: God as master,
  359B:7
  order has upward/downward limits,
  374:2
  order in, 374:9, 11
  order of natures in; 159B:7
  seek the creator, 198:31
  six days, 110A:5
  transcending; see the creator,
  198:37, 61
  vexing God by making idols, 360A:6
  whole range of, found in humans,
  198:44
  wonderful words (Jn 1:1-5), 341:3
  wonderful works of God, 374:11

creator:
  all things were made through him
  . . , 341:19
  forms and enlightens, 198:25
  idolatry; forgotten creator, 198:17
  letting go of, for creatures, 198:35
  maker of man, made man, 23B:1
  as master: do not touch this tree,
  359B:7
  religious service paid to, 198:21
  seeking the, 198:31
  seeking throughout life, 341:7
  simply spirit, 198:25
  time and space, 198:28

Cretans, 198:34

cross:
  clinging to, for sake of life, 348A:4
  death through, 159A:5
  drawn to, 159A:5
  following Christ, 218:2
  led by the one who hung on it, 341:25
  nations conquered by, 360B:26
  signing with, 110A:4
  stretch yourself on, 341:21

Volume III/11
tower of Siloam, 110A:4
venerated by kings, 360B:24
crown, See eternal life; salvation.
crow’s caw, 360B:27
crucifixion: savagery, 159A:5
cupidity, See greed.
cures, 283:6; 348A:4
cup of suffering, 299A:5
doctor and patient, 374:8,16
magic, 306E:7
curiosity, 198:37; 360B:16
Cyprian, Saint, 198:60; 359B:16
orator, 341:4
shrine of, 359B:5

finding reward in, 283:4
first sin as cause of, 359B:7
handed over to, 306E:9
inheritance and, 90A:6
liberation from, 198:44
origin; the serpent, 159B:10
parents pass on mortality, 198:42
precious in the eyes of the Lord . . . ,
28A:4; 359B:16
punishment for sin, 198:40; 348A:2
rejoicing in God’s presence, 20B:10
sin and, 110A:7
soul as garment, 159A:4
sting of, 20B:10
uncertain day of, 352A:9
we must lay down our lives for our brethren, 359B:19
delight, 360B:9
brothers dwelling in unity, 360C:4,5
deluge:
day of judgment and, 114B:1
demons, 198:8,13,33,37,63; 299A:7;
360B:22
See also devil
belief in God, 130A:2,5
faith of, 14A:3
fallen angels, 198:26
gentile sacrifice to, 198:34
honoring, 374:18
Magi and, 374:13
nations believe in, 198:2
pleasures taken by, 198:3
Roman gods, 198:34
seeking the society of, 23B:11
worship of idols, 23B:8,9
desire, 90A:14; 360B:14; 374:1
See also greed
bad, 110A:3
earthly, 360B:7
evil, 130A:11
giving up what one hankers after,
341:3
God as unsatisfying, 198:33
handed over to sinner by, 299A:3
Holy Spirit and, 341:7
indecent desires, 20B:6
knocking at our door, 159A:3
longing to dwell in house of the Lord,
360B:12
satisfied with good things, 130A:12
seeking non-good things, 72:16
soul bowed down by, 110A:6
despair, 198:44; 20B:8; 23B:7

Delight, 360B:9
brothers dwelling in unity, 360C:4,5
Deluge:
day of judgment and, 114B:1
demons, 198:8,13,33,37,63; 299A:7;
360B:22
See also devil
belief in God, 130A:2,5
faith of, 14A:3
fallen angels, 198:26
gentile sacrifice to, 198:34
honoring, 374:18
Magi and, 374:13
nations believe in, 198:2
pleasures taken by, 198:3
Roman gods, 198:34
seeking the society of, 23B:11
worship of idols, 23B:8,9
desire, 90A:14; 360B:14; 374:1
See also greed
bad, 110A:3
earthly, 360B:7
evil, 130A:11
giving up what one hankers after,
341:3
God as unsatisfying, 198:33
handed over to sinner by, 299A:3
Holy Spirit and, 341:7
indecent desires, 20B:6
knocking at our door, 159A:3
longing to dwell in house of the Lord,
360B:12
satisfied with good things, 130A:12
seeking non-good things, 72:16
soul bowed down by, 110A:6
despair, 198:44; 20B:8; 23B:7
danger of, 352A:8,9
perishing out of, 352A:6
sinners, 352A:6
weeping for pagans, 198:8
devil, 142(appendix):2; 198:4,37;
359B:11,13,17,21; 360A:1; 360B:21
blaming, for my sin, 29B:7
boasting: better than Christ, 198:41
domination of, 110A:6,7
fallen angel, 198:26
false martyrs and, 359B:16
false mediator,
198:38,40,44,46,56,58,61
feared as serpent or as lion, 359B:15
feminine cunning, 159A:7
forsaking, 374:21
getting people thrown out of Church,
348A:15
iniquity of, not abhorred, 198:41
judgment day, 341:6
martyrs wrestling with, 306E:2,8
pride, 198:28,29; 360B:5,6
redemption and, 299A:2
renouncing, 352A:2
request granted, re Job, 20B:7,8
sacrilegious rites and, 198:47
spurning, 198:42
temptation of Christ, 159A:8
thron in the North, 198:14
tries to cast us out of Church,
341:12,13
unjust and immortal, 198:39
wish to be worshipped, 198:22
works in sons of unbelief, 23B:10
worship, 198:24
you will not die the death . . . , 341:13
devoion, 198:46
more fervent when opposed, 198:7
orderly congregation, 198:11
dignity, 29B:6; 360A:1
disagreements, 360C:1
discernment:
canonical scriptures, 162C:15
God and the gods, 23B:6
good and evil, 23B:15
power to make, 23B:9
disciples:
argument: who is the greater . . . ,
360C:4
common people, 198:60; 360B:24
uneducated, lowly chosen for,
360B:24
untlying the foal on which Jesus rides,
359B:11
you are the light . . . , 341:18
discipline:
end to which we are directed, 14A:1
law, 14A:2
of the secret, 360A:3
disease: cured with its contrary, 341:4
disgrace, 159A:4
disobedience:
poison that slew the first man,
359B:23
divination, 360A:7; 374:12
diviners, 23B:1,10
divinization:
desire for, 23B:3
incarnation and, 23B:1
doctor and patient:
blindness, 374:8
frantic patients, 360B:18
prescription of medicines, 374:16
dog(-s):
children’s bread thrown to, 218:6
dog-heads, 198:34
Donatists, 159B:17; 198:52,55; 359B:4;
360C:1,5
appeal for reconciliation, 359B:21
as martyrs, 198:45
betrayal of the scriptures, 360A:4
circumcellions, 299A:3
misinterpretations of, 293A:13
testimonies of scripture against,
360A:1-11
Donatus:
baptism in name of, 293A:16
loved before Christ, 198:45,55; 283:7
dragon, 359B:13,14
drinkards, 198:9
heretics and; salvation, 293A:16
drunkenness, 360B:16
persistence in, 293A:16
E
early Church:
preachers were all Jews, 341:23
ears:
hearing and the mind, 159B:6
earth:
created goods, 374:2
seek the creator, 198:31
Tellus: Mother Earth, 198:19
transcended, 198:27
eating, 14A:1

Volume III/11
Egypt, 114B:6
idolatry, 198:33
monstrous gods, 198:34
elements: idolatry, 198:21,23,63
Elijah, 130A:3
Elizabeth (cousin of Mary), 198:50
elegance, 374:4
emperor(-s), 359B:13,15; 360B:24
conversion of, 341:4; 360B:24
insulting the image of, 23B:7
pride in their temples (Rome), 360B:26
end:
directed toward; discipline, 14A:1
reaching, 14A:3
end of the world, 114B:14
Paul on marriage, 354A:3
Paul’s advice to the unmarried, 354A:10
enlightenment:
Christ as true light, 341:18
pagan, 341:26
Epiphany, 374:23
annual celebration, 374:1
equality, 341:14,17
Esau, 341:23
eternal life:
See also heaven; salvation
belief in the Son of God, 14A:5
cross-eyed faith, 159A:12
enduring pain; martyrs, 283:3
eye has not seen . . . , 20B:9
God’s cure, and the attaining of, 348A:4
God’s promise, 360B:1
heaven you are and to heaven . . . , 360B:7
longing to dwell in house of the Lord, 360B:12
prayers of petition, 20B:3
promise of, 299A:7
reward for believing, 130A:4
reward for following Christ, 341:3
seeing and believing, 14A:5
spiritual crown, 299A:1
work for bread that does not perish, 130A:1
eternal punishment, 360B:1
association with demons, 23B:9
everlasting fire, 198:4
eternity:
immune to decay (ark), 306E:3
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
evil, See good and evil.
example:
entering a church, 198:11
good lives and conversions, 360B:28
good works, 162C:1
exile, 159A:4
existence:
real things perceived by spirit only, 374:7
elegance, 114B:14
eye(-s), 198:31
cleansing, 360B:3,4,6
curing in order to see (belief), 360B:14
if you fix your eye on him . . . , 28A:7
light of the body, 360B:10
of a needle, 114B:9-10; 341:3
shutting; darkness, 306E:5
sight and the mind, 159B:6
spirit sees what eyes cannot see, 374:6,7
faith, 90A:1; 218:9; 341:5,26; 360B:21
See also belief
backed by works, 28A:5
believing, you obtain what Christ
commands, 130A:11
believing what is not seen, 159B:15;
360B:16
blessed are those who do not see . . . , 341:3
blessed to believe on hearing, 360B:20
counted as justice, 130A:3,12
cure for blindness of spirit, 374:8
demons and Christians, 14A:3
eternal life, 14A:5
fear re keeping, 299A:4
fulfillment of ancient prophecies, 360B:20
fulfillment; God’s gifts (N.T.), 360A:1-2
God’s promises (O.T.), 360A:1-2,4
good works follow, 352A:2
grace to believe, 28A:3
heart cleansed by, 360B:7,13,15,19,27
Jesus, king of the Gentiles, 218:7
Jesus prayed that Peter not fail, 348A:12
Jesus revealed in the O.T . , 198:38
Jews of the Old Testament, 198:32
justice begins with, 374:1
love obtained by, 90A:14
loving one we cannot see, 360B:11
loving the reward of, 374:3
must not waver from God’s promises, 159B:16
openly manifest, 360A:3
painful to live by, 360B:16
price for, is God himself, 72:17
reaching the end; believing, 14A:3
rejected, but protected by God, 360A:5
senses: hearing and sight, 360A:1,2
sight follows after, 360B:15
unfeigned, 359B:16
viper of faithlessness, 218:11
wish to see before believing, 360B:14
word celebrated in public, 360A:3
work of God: believing, 14A:3,5; 130A:1-4
faithful, the, 198:53
challenge of being Christians, 162C:2
false evidence, 306E:11
falsehood, 28A:2
farmers, 198:19,21
fasting, 198:56
attitudes towards, 198:7
becoming more like Christ, 198:5
conversion of bad Christians, 198:9
January the first, 198:6
joy and, 198:9
not difficult, 198:6
pagan festive days, 341:26
prayer and almsgiving, 198:8
soul humbled with, 198:5
suffering for Gentiles, 198:6
fate, 29B:6
father and son: son in evil ways, 159B:4
fear, 306E:11
crushed by, 360A:8
knoth, ocking at our door, 159A:3
last days, 114B:13
law: divine laws, 360A:8
love and, 130A:5,11
perfect charity and, 198:4
Peter’s denial of Christ, 299A:2
servant of charity, 198:4
slave in, 198:12
fear of God, 360B:1
chaste; not servile, 130A:5,11
flood (Noah), 114B:1
feast days:
drunk celebration of, 198:9
fey, 306E:7
fig tree:
barren (parable), 110A:2
fire, 23B:12
Vulcan (god), 198:23
fish:
seasoning with oil, 198:51
flattery, 162C:1
flesh, 198:27,49,62; 283:1
caritas and caro, 360C:1
Christ crucified, 159B:10
closeness to the soul, 159A:4
conflict with, 348A:10
feebleness of, 159A:4
fleshly desires, 360B:4
ideas according to, is death, 341:14
soul as leader, 159A:13
soul craves to stick to, 159A:12
trampled on, 299A:5
wellbeing, 299A:3
foal:
animal on which no one had ever sat, 359B:11
Jesus riding, into Jerusalem, 359B:11
food:
asking God to swallow it for us, 348A:14
dividing; partaking, 341:9
fools, 198:32
there is no God . . . , 374:9
forgiveness, 198:56
encouragement to sin, 352A:6
eye for an eye, 110A:8
your brother has something against . . . , 359B:21-23
furness of sin, 29:11
See also confession
daily remedy, 110A:8
he forgave while we were sinners, 360A:2
hope; despair, 352A:8
passion of Christ, 218:3
promised by God, 352A:7
temptation to go on sinning, 374:23
fornication, 159A:10; 354A:5
idolatry as, 360A:6
fountains, 28A:1
free choice, See choice.
freedom:
secure, 159A:4
temporal goods, 159A:3
tid’s road, 341:21

Volume III/11
fullness of the times, 352A:2,3,4
funerals, 142(appendix):2
future:
prophetic prediction, 374:12
future life:
desire created for, 341:21
striving for, 360B:5

G

Gabriel (angel), 198:47,48
Gassus, 348A:7
Gehenna, 198:4
gentiles:
beasts of the fields (metaphor),
374:21
beliefs, hopes, loves, 198:3,4
fasting for, 198:6
gathered from among the nations,
198:2,7
pleasures taken by, 198:3
pride, 159B:14
sacrifice to demons, 198:34
sacrilegious rites, 374:14
ungodliness, 198:30
Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3
gifts:
created goods, 374:2
God pays back good things for bad
things, 28A:1
good luck presents, 198:2,4
repaying God, 28A:8
ungrateful to God, 283:8
what do you have that is not received
. . . , 306E:5
wisdom: knowing the source of,
283:8
gladiators, 352A:6
God, 283:4,5
do all for glory of God, 198:56
God alone, 198:47
seeking one’s own, 299A:2
goats: sackcloth, 198:5
godless(-ness), 72:18; 348A:12; 374:14
Babylon, 299A:8
conversion, 352A:8
fasting from, 198:5
justification, 130A:3; 360B:21
redemption and, 352A:1
godliness:
angels and, 360B:21
merit; God’s words, 341:6
power of, 359B:17
God:
See also divinization; image of God;
Jesus Christ; love for God; Son
of God; Trinity
anger with, and pity for, us, 159B:4; 198:22
attributes; equality in each Person,
341:15,17
authority over all authorities,
359B:13
belief in one God, 130A:2
blessed are the heart-pure,
360B:3,15,12,20; 374:1
changeable goods contrasted with,
360B:12
creator, See creation; creator,
difference re those made into gods,
238:2
displeasure of the perverse, 352A:9
dividing up, by qualities, 341:14,15
dwelling in us, 306E:4
effort for a soul, 198:3
existence known through actions,
374:9
eyes of, and human conscience,
162C:3
faithful, 198:63
Father, 198:42
glory of, 72:9
glory to be given to, 198:14
good for himself, by himself, 72:18
good of all goods, 72:18
good that makes us good, 374:5
human attributes applied to, 341:16
humankind not needed by, 306E:4
if you fix your eye on him . . . , 28A:7
jealousy, 360A:11
justice, 341:16
knowledge of, and salvation, 198:29;
360B:11
light of minds, 360B:3
love and fear of, 360B:1
love for humankind, 23B:1
love for man, his creature, 29:12
love inseparable, 130A:5
made debtor by his promises, 352A:5
manifest, 198:32
master; beneficial to us, not to him,
359B:7
maternal solicitude of, 360C:6
mercy, 198:30
mercy: not granting some prayers,
20B:1,3
my Father and your Father . . . ,
341:18
name is holy, 348A:11
nature and mercy of, 341:17
nearness to us, in Christ, 198:62
no need for his creatures, 359B:7
no need for sacrifices, 374:20
not enclosed in material shape,
159B:5
nothing can be said worthy of God,
341:16
notion of God’s consisting of parts,
341:14
one: three Persons, 198:48
only God can show himself, 374:8
our goodness not needed by, 341:19
pagan attitude toward God’s
promises, 360A:5
patience, 20B:6
pays back good things for bad things,
28A:1
perception of the omnipresent,
348A:3
pity for those locked under sin,
159B:1,2,5,13
power and justice identical in, 341:17
power and mercy, 341:6
price of faith; love, 72:17
promises and their fulfillment,
159B:16; 299A:7
promises and threats, 360B:1
promises: true to his word, 374:1.3
promises: what eye has not seen . . . ,
360B:11; 374:1
qualities absent in, 341:17
refuge in days of evil, 360A:9
repenting (metaphor), 341:16
satisfaction only from God, 90A:14
seeking, 374:4,8
created things are not God, 360B:10
learn to be ignorant of God, 360B:11
seen through his works, 374:9
show us the Father, 14A:4
single good thing, 72:18
sinners humbled by, 159B:2
soul’s greatness and, 360B:9
substance of, 341:17
suffering; possibility, 348A:3
supreme authority, 198:63
sweet when he is believed in,
159B:15
thinking of, in material terms, 341:8,9
time and space, 198:28
total excellence, 341:16
truthfulness, 28A:2
unchangeable, 159B:6; 360B:12
understanding: recapitulation, 341:20
unfinding: unknowing, 360B:7-8
wisdom and knowledge, 159B:1
word conceived in the mind, 293A:8
See worship.
wrath of, 198:30,32
gods, 23B:1
See also idolatry; paganism
asking, what they really are, 23B:4
blind, 23B:8
caricature, 23B:3
claiming to make, 23B:3
creature made, 360A:6
demons masquerading as, 198:3
discernment by God, 23B:6
Egypt: monstrous gods, 198:34
fallacy: calling them the powers of
God, 198:47
false gods; soul as adulteress, 360A:6
foolish of worshiping, 360B:23
gifts of the Magi, 374:13
humans as better than, 23B:5
Jacob and false gods, 360A:10
lying, 23B:5
miracles worked by apostles, 198:13
ordered to offer sacrifices to, 359B:13
pagans hiding their gods, 299A:8
personal cults; sacrilege, 198:47
Roman; demons, 198:34
vanishing from face of the earth,
360A:10
gold, 23B:8,11,12; 72:10,17; 90A:8,14;
360A:10; 374:5,7
goldsmith, 23B:11,12
good and evil:
Christ suffered for all, 29:11
discernment, 23B:15
disobedience as root of evil, 359B:8
drawing back from evil, 72:9
eternal fire; eternal God, 72:18
evils in Christian times, 23B:13-15
final reward, 29:11
gifts given to all people, 374:4
hidden punishment; unreal success,
29:8
highest good found in heart, 72:13
human race as one huge invalid,
114B:15-16
indiscriminate lot, 29:8

Volume III/11
loving iniquity means not loving self, 90A:7,8,12
motive: enjoyment, 130A:7
northern/southern spirits, 198:14
obedience and disobedience, 359B:7
pain and iniquity, 283:7
pleasure in iniquity, 29B:5
pride as root of all evils, 159B:11
providence and, 29:1,2
tree of the knowledge of, 359B:7
whoever loves iniquity . . . , 198:8
winnowing; threshing floor, 299A:9
good fortune, 360B:22
Good Friday, 218:1-15
good luck presents, 198:2,4
good things:
God has prepared for those who love him, 360B:2,3,4
good will, 130A:8
good works, 341:26; 359B:18
believing without, 352A:2
credit given to self, not God, 198:56
example, 162C:1
fervor in, 198:56
intention: glory of God, 72:9
praise God for, 29B:6
promised reward, 72:11
rest without end, 110A:5
rich people, 114B:13
sacrifice of justice, 72:9,10,11
seeking, with my hands, 72:9
serving the weak, 360C:4
goodness:
See also temporal goods
be what you hope for, 352A:5
God's goodness and ours, 341:19
God: good by which we become good, 374:5
gospels:
bond: God in debt, 352A:5
last days, 114B:14
grace, 28A:1,3,6,8; 29:12; 29B:7; 130A:9,11; 198:36; 218:9; 283:2; 360A:3; 360B:5,24
commendation of, 374:23
denial of need of (by Pelagius), 348A:5,8,10
forgiveness of sin, 374:22
free will (Pelagian view), 348A:9
more abounding than wrongdoing, 159B:14
repentance, 110A:7
sinners and, 352A:3
sufficient, 20B:2
temptations and free choice, 348A:13
third period of time, 110A:5
grapes: marvelous growth, 374:11
gravity: weight of love, 283:5
greed, 23B:15; 159A:3; 114B:10; 306E:11; 374:1
banquets of the Lord, 28A:5,6
desire for more than enough, 198:33
Judas, 159B:9
no end to cupidity, 114B:14
poor people, 114B:11
root of all evil, 198:33
Greek language, 218:6
Greek "voice", 293A:7,8
grief, 142(appendix):1,2
guilt, 198:61
I have sinned . . . , 29B:7
punishment for sin is our due, 159B:3

H
habit: struggle with bad habits, 348A:10
Hadrian, temple of, 360B:26
hair, 360B:5
hands, 29:5
happiness:
earthly, 114B:16
last days, 114B:13
hard times, 114B:14
head, 29:5
healing, 90A:14; 130A:7; 299A:3; 360B:16
conversion as, 130A:7,9,12
cup of suffering, 299A:5
heavenly bread, 130A:12
self-healing, 306E:5
sin; God's work, 348A:2
health, 29:5,6; 72:18; 374:5
everlasting, 20B:9
human; false salvation, 20B:9
lust for, 283:3
petitions for, 20B:9
restoration of, 360B:17
resurrection of the body, 20B:3
hearing, 23B:5
heart, 90A:12; 130A:11; 162C:14; 198:58
abominations done away with, 360A:8
attachment to law of God, 29B:3
charity, 359B:16; 360B:11
cleansed by faith, 360B:7,13,15,19,27
cleansing the inner eye of, 360B:3,4,6
conversion, 130A:12
devotion; burning, 198:7
earth yielding its fruit, 130A:8
expanded by charity, 360C:1
fear and love in, 360B:1,11
fire of love, 198:8
grown cold, 198:27
haughty rich, 114B:12
highest good found in, 72:13
humble, 198:33
iniquity in eye of, 360B:17
Jesus: gentle and humble . . . , 142(appendix):4
lift up your hearts, 159B:18
lifted up, 110A:6
purification of, 360B:13,15,19,27
raised, 299A:5
sacrifice, 114B:2
silence as voice of, 341:16
temple of prayer, 198:11
unclean desires of, 198:33,34
weighed down, 198:9
where God’s spirit rests, 198:11
heaven, 110A:6; 198:26,53; 283:1
See also eternal life
come, you blessed of my Father . . . , 341:6
drunks and heretics in the kingdom, 293A:16
eye of a needle . . . , 114B:9,10; 341:3
heavenly bodies, 360B:8
people written in, 360A:10
reward must be worked for on earth, 374:3
rich people entering, 114B:9-10; 341:3
shut against the proud and greedy, 114B:11
suffering in, 341:20
throne, 360B:7
Hebrew language, 218:6
hell, 283:1
Hera (Juno), 198:21
heresy:
foretold, 360B:21,22
persistence in, 293A:16
Son is less than the Father, 341:13
spreads, when ignored, 348A:8
heretics, 198:15
entering heaven, 293A:16
savaging the sheep, 299A:3
seeing, they fail to believe, 360A:5
universal Church and, 299A:9
Herod, King, 110A:2,3; 374:14
Hippocrates, 360B:17
Hiro, 348A:7; 360C:2
hired servants (in Church), 198:12
holiness, 359B:5
grace from God, 162C:1
loving God’s glory, 198:15
holy of holies, 198:53
Holy Spirit, 352A:4,5; 110A:7; 360B:18
bishops; obedience, 359B:12
buying, for money (Simon), 198:15
canonical scriptures, 162C:15
council at Jerusalem, 162C:9
desires hearts of lovers, 341:7
figure: seven loaves, 198:51
human discernment; judging, 23B:6
love poured into our hearts, 130A:8,11; 283:2
received from God, 283:8
rod of the plane tree (Jacob’s), 341:25
seven operations (gifts) of, 198:51
Spirit gives life; letter kills, 283:2
home country, 198:59,61
honor, 159A:4
private, personal honor (pride), 198:46
risk to the one doing the honors, 198:15
Honorius, Emperor, 360B:26
hope, 72:9,10,11; 198:53; 283:5; 348A:4; 360A:3,9
belief and, 130A:3
Donatists, 198:45
dwelling singly in, 72:16,18
Gentile vs Christian, 198:3,4
God’s promises, 159B:16
goodness, 352A:5
humility; hope in God, 198:44
last days, 114B:14
misplaced; danger, 352A:7
perishing out of, 352A:6
riches, 114B:12
salvation, 360B:16
sentiment of the soul, 198:2
strength and firmness of purpose, 159A:12
wrong way, 352A:9
hospitality:
sharing Christ’s suffering, 28A:4
human acts:
we too have a part to do, 348A:14

Volume III/11
human beings (humans; humankind):  
*See also* image of God  
angels to be, 159B:15  
animals compared with, 374:3-4,6  
better than the gods made by, 23B:5  
creating; resuscitating, 374:11  
discernment; gift of the Spirit, 23B:6  
fashioned and shaped by God,  
159B:15  
invalid: Christ the doctor, 114B:15  
man/woman not created evil,  
159B:10  
parts and powers (God’s work), 29:7  
pride of place, in creation, 29:7  
providence and, 29:7  
sort of people we ought to be, 29:3  
speech-making capacity, 374:4  
Spirit of God and, 23B:6  
taming by God, 360B:9  

human body:  
*See also* body and soul  
beauty of, 29:6  
greatness of God shown in, 90A:2  
pairs in, 29:6  
private parts, 29:6  
proper self-love, 90A:7  
skin covering, 29:6  
slave of the mind, 159B:7,8  

wonderful order in, 29:5-6  

human condition:  
*See also* death; incarnation; life;  
mortality  
being men; being gods, 360B:5,6  
born for distress, 299A:1  
earth you are . . . , 360B:7  
enduring trials and suffering, 23B:11  
fleshly minded, 360B:4  
God comes with ‘mercy and  
compassion’, 360B:17  
lesson of the oil press, 23B:15  
nec for God, our supreme good,  
359B:7  
totally lacking in health, 348A:4  
whole man is weak, sick, wounded,  
348A:3  

humility, 20B:8; 28A:4; 29B:3; 114B:13;  
159A:5; 198:32,56; 218:6;  
360B:16,17,21,24,26  
Adam acknowledges his sin, 159B:2  
Christ as cure for evils of pride,  
159B:11,13,15  
Christ purifies/saves the humble,  
198:38  
cup of, rids swelling of pride,  
159B:13  
fasting and, 198:5  
godfearing, 360B:7  
God’s throne, 360B:7  
holding on to, 198:15  
Holy Spirit and those who sincerely  
love God, 341:7  
home country, 198:59,61  
hope in God, not in man, 198:44  
human status of Christ, 198:60  
imitation of Christ, 360B:17  
incarnation and, 341:4  
John the Baptist, 293A:3,4  
mortality and, 360B:5  
pagans ashamed to learn, 198:13  
persevering in, 198:38  
rejecting personal honoring, 198:46  
self-sufficiency, 198:36  
treated as of no account, 198:60  
way to the heights, 360C:4  
hunger,  
praising God, 159B:15  
husband and wife:  
betrothed to one husband, 359B:15  
decision-making, 354A:4  
do not defraud one another . . . ,  
354A:6  
man should leave father and mother  
. . . , 159A:9  
pardon for lack of sexual restraint,  
354A:7  
Paul on conjugal rights, 354A:4-5  
sex for sake of begetting children,  
354A:9,12  
sin in conjugal rights, 354A:8  
two in one flesh, 341:20,22  
wife, 72:17  
wives’ rights re sexual abstinence,  
354A:5  
hypocrisy, 28A:6  
hyssop, 218:11  

I  
idea, 293A:7  
idolatry (idols), 162C:6,8  
*See also* gods; paganism  
banishing the name of, 360A:7  
Church has two sorts of people,  
360A:8  
defender/worshiper of, 360A:9,10  
destruction foretold, 114B:6  

**Sermons - Newly Discovered**
Egypt, 198:33
Exodus on dealing with, 360A:11
false explanation, 198:16
fathers gain possession of lies, 360A:9
gods made by man, 23B:3
gold and silver, 360A:9
humans become like dumb gods, 23B:5
human-shaped, 198:34
images, 198:17
Jews, 159B:14
mockery of idols, 23B:9
notice will be taken of idols, 360A:6
numina of idols, 23B:8
origin, 198:27
pagan priests, 198:16
promise re idols of the nations, 299A:7
prophecy:
end of, 360B:21
idols to be done away with, 360A:5
sensible view of good pagans, 198:10
sign for thing signified, 198:17
silver and gold, 23B:8
temptation and, 23B:10
vanity of worshipping, 198:35
Vincent (martyr) refuses to offer incense to, 359B:13,20
wooden gods, 23B:4
worship of false gods, 360B:6
worshippers converted, 360A:8
worshipping gods represented by idols, 23B:8
ignorance, 198:13
false knowledge of God, 360B:11
illiterate persons, 110A:1
illness, See sickness
image of God, 374:6
created goods and, 374:2
disparaging self as sacrilege, 23B:7
eye has not seen . . . , 72:15
his light stamped in us, 72:12
human mind, 159B:5,6; 360B:9
idols and, 360A:6
love; conformed to the creator, 90A:6
vast difference: human mind, 360B:9
images (idols):
idolatry, 198:17,34
invisible realities, 198:17
sacrilegious, 198:28
worship, 198:35
imagination, 90A:12; 159B:5
imitation:
servants of God, 20B:8
immortality, 29:2; 360A:1; 354A:1; 359B:9; 360B:23
God and Church as parents of, 198:42
obedience as root of, 359B:8
original justice, 359B:7
impatience, 283:7
impiety, 198:33; 360A:4,8
impurity:
desires of the heart, 198:33,34
incarnation:
began to be man; did not cease to be God, 341:10
bodily/spiritual creation, 198:61
Christ came to die for us, 348A:3
concealed (O.T.), 341:24
form of a slave, 159A:5; 359B:8
God’s love for humankind, 29:12
human nature received from a human nature, 341:10
humility of Christ, 159B:9; 198:60
Jacob’s three rods, 341:25
made shareholders in immortality, 114B:15
purpose: deification of man, 23B:1
savior/mediator took on flesh, 198:43
virgin (terminology), 162C:6
Word became flesh, 198:44; 293A:5
incense:
coming to Christ with, 374:19
gift of the Magi, 374:18
sacrifice (Isaiah), 374:21
infidelity: destructive, 114B:2
inheritance, 90A:6; 159A:7
iniquity: denying God, 306E:11
injustice: denying Christ, 306E:10
intellectual life:
angels and humanity, 198:26
intelligence, 23B:5; 374:5
gift, 283:8
irreligion:
falling away from God, 90A:10; 198:9,46
Isaiah: abolition of old ways, 374:20
Isis: temple of, 198:33
Israel, 374:13

J
Jacob: 218:12
Christ prefigured by, 341:23
Esau and, 341:23

Volume III/11
false gods and, 360A:10
inheritance of, 360A:10
seed of Abraham, 159B:16
Jacob's rods, 341:23-24
Jerome, Saint: Pelagius and, 348A:6
Jerusalem, 110A:6; 198:48; 348A:7
Babylon repaid double by, 299A:8
council: apostles and Jewish sacraments, 162C:8-9
godliness, 299A:8
Jesus Christ:
See also redemption
ark still being constructed by, 114B:7
atonement, 198:57
before his mother was created . . . , 130A:10
before the prophets who foretold him, 293A:2
belief in, from the beginning of the world, 360B:19
believing in, 14A:3; 130A:2ff
believing in, is loving him, 130A:5-6
See also faith.
birth date; day increasing, 293A:12
birth, death, resurrection, 29:11
birth of John the Baptist compared with, 293A:2
blaming, for bad times, 114B:14
both our way and our destination, 130A:6
bread (he called himself), 130A:1
bread; peace, 360C:5
bridegroom, 198:52; 341:19,20
burning desire for, 198:7
camel as figure or type, 114B:10
Christ (the name) comes from chrism, 198:51
church and, See Church.
conception and birth, 341:25
confession (praise) to the Father, 29B:2
Crucifixion, 159B:9
Father handed over the Son, 159B:15
two others crucified with, 218:4
cup of our salvation, 28A:3
devil compares himself with, 198:41
dining at his table, 28A:4
displeasing to our pride, 360B:17
divine and human generation of, 359B:9
divine and human natures, 341:2
divinity, 341:5
Catholic faith, 359B:8
divinity and humanity, 341:10-18
humanity; Mary, 218:10
parable of tenants and vineyard, 341:24
doctor administers cup of suffering, 299A:5
doctor for the human race, 114B:15
end of the law, 14A:2
entering secret places of heaven, 198:53
equal to God . . . , 341:11,18
equal to the Father, 198:49; 341:20
Father is greater than I . . . , 341:13
flesh; mother, 159B:10
foretold (the Word) his own future, 114B:6
form of a servant, 341:11,13,17,20
form of a slave, 29:11; 198:5,40,44
fulness of the godhead, 198:10
God's promises (prophecies), 299A:7
head of the body, 341:19
heretical view: his manhood simulated, 159B:12
high priest, 198:43
himself the doctor and the medicine, 374:23
himself the priest and the sacrifice, 374:23
his lot is his inheritance, 159B:18
holy of holies, 198:53,54,57
human affection, 218:10
humanity; whole man, 198:44
humiliated, 360B:26
humility, 159B:11.13; 198:38
assuming human nature, 159B:9
base-born things of the world, 198:60
hold on to, 159B:15
remedy for our pride, 360B:17
I am the way . . . , 306E:10
I and the Father are one, 28A:8
See incarnation.
interceding for us in holy of holies, 198:53
kingship, 360A:2
law-maker and gospel sower, 159A:6
learn from me: my yoke is sweet . . . , 142(appendix):4
less/greater than John the Baptist, 293A:3
living bread, 360C:3
long-suffering, 352A:8
Lord of the feasting, 341:5
lowliness chosen by, 341:4

Sermons - Newly Discovered
lowliness, to ease our imitating him, 360B:17
made himself a slave, 360C:4
Mary at Cana: my hour . . . , 218:10
mediator, 198:36,38; 198:52,57;
341:20
death shared with humans, 198:39,40
healing the proud, 198:41
priesthood, 198:49,57
trustworthy, 198:40
wonderful change effected by, 198:39
mercy, 90A:2
miracles, 198:62
Cana, 374:11
visible words, 110A:1
mother of, 359B:9
my Father and your Father . . . ,
341:18
my God and your God, 341:18
my teaching is not mine . . . ,
130A:10
nations for his heritage . . . , 218:6
nativity:
born of a virgin, 341:25
happenings foretold, 374:15
Herod and the Magi, 374:14
See also Magi
nearness to us, 198:62
necessary to suffer, die and rise again,
359B:19
no one prays for, 198:54
no prayers needed by, 198:54
nobility conferred on place by, 341:4
obedience, 359B:8
obedience to his Father, 359B:9
obedient unto death, 359B:8
our bread, our peace, 360C:3
our way, our goal, 360C:4
pagans and heretics disgusted by,
159B:12
parents of, 198:60
passion and death:
blood and water from side of, 218:14
blood by which our debt is cancelled,
374:20
broken legs of the two thieves, 218:13
carrying his cross, 218:2
for Christians, before Christians, 198:5
death with bowed head, 218:12
Father, forgive them . . . , 218:11;
360B:18
garments divided, 218:8
Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3
handed over to sinners, 299A:3
he did not deserve to die, 198:40
humble, 218:12
I thirst, 218:11
increased by dying, 218:15
inscription in three languages
It is accomplished . . . , 218:12
king of the Gentiles, 218:7
king of the Jews, 218:5,6,7
Mary entrusted to John, 218:10
meaning of, 218:1
model for his followers, 359B:19
myth as sign of, 374:18
power and authority, 218:12
price paid for whole earth, 159B:17
psalm 22; gospel, 159B:17
side pierced with a lance, 198:5
tunic without seam, 218:9
tunic woven from the top, 159B:18
undeserving of death, 110A:7
vinegar on a sponge, 218:11,12
patience of the true doctor, 360B:18
poor, for our sake, 114B:7
prefigured by Jacob, 341:23
prefigured by king and priest, 198:50
presence called on, as witness,
359B:1
priesthood and kingship, 198:51
priesthood prefigured in O.T . . ,
198:53
proof of love and caring, 29:11
prophecy: all kings and nations will
serve him, 299A:7
propitiation for our sins, 198:55
proud abhor mortality of, 198:40
psalm 22 referring to, 341:1
purpose in his coming; the lowly,
198:59
questioned re putting away one’s
wife, 354A:2
reconciles us to the Father, 198:38,48
See also redemption
resurrection:
fear of death and, 360B:19
his own power, 159B:10
revealed in prophecy, 198:32
revealed in the Old Testament,
198:38
riding donkey’s foal into Jerusalem,
359B:11
seed of David, 198:50
separation from, by cajolery or
savagery, 159A:2
serve one another (example), 359B:9
serves by giving orders, 359B:10
sinless; without blemish, 198:49
slave of the Father, 359B:9
slave to us, 359B:9
See Son of Man; Son of God
suffered by his own will and
authority, 159B:10
suffering not deserved, 159B:10
suffering, of his own free will, 218:1
tempted by the devil, 159A:8
ture light, 341:18
truth, 114B:6; 159B:12
understanding Christ in Scripture; 3
ways, 341:1-26
1st way, 341:3-9
2nd way: as God and man, 341:10-18
3rd way: whole Christ, head and
body, 341:19ff
identification of the 3 ways, 341:2
viewed as a liar, 159B:12
washed his disciples’ feet, 360A:3
whole Christ, head and body, 341:19
women and, 159B:10
Word before/after John the voice,
293A:10
See Word of God.
Word of the Father, 130A:10
Jews:
claim to be just, 374:22
conquered by Romans, 374:15
conversion to Christ, 374:15
converts to Christianity, 162C:6-9
denial of Christ, 218:7
Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3
nonbelief, 14A:5
pride; sunk in iniquity, 159B:14
propagation of the race, as duty,
354A:11
sacraments of, 162C:6
saved (O.T.) by faith in Christ,
198:32
wrath of God, 198:30
Job, 198:38,63; 20B:7
John, apostle and evangelist:
angel of the Apocalypse, 198:14,16
gave up all to follow Christ, 341:3
leaning on Christ’s breast, 341:5
ever claimed to be mediator, 198:55
uneducated, 341:5
John the Baptist, 114B:10
among those born of woman . . . ,
293A:3,14
baptism as transitory, 293A:11
baptisms: voice before Word,
293A:15
baptizing in water for repentance,
293A:4
birth of, 293A:1-15
birth of Jesus compared with, 293A:2
diminished; beheaded, 293A:12
friend of the bridegroom, 293A:4
He must grow . . . , 293A:12
I am the voice . . . , 293A:5
light, 341:18
measure of a man, 293A:3
mistaken for the Christ, 293A:4
not asked to deny Christ, 306E:10
purpose of his coming, 293A:3
re-baptism, 293A:13-15
superiority over other prophets,
293A:2
unique merit: he saw the Christ,
293A:2
Word before/after the “voice”,
293A:10
Joseph, Saint, 198:50
Joseph of Arimethaea, 218:15
joy, 29:2; 72:10; 159B:15; 162C:1;
299A:1; 359B:23
fasting and, 198:9
Judah, 218:12
Judas, 293A:15
greed, 159B:9
handing Christ over . . . , 159B:9
judgment:
discernment, 23B:6
eating and drinking unworthily,
110A:4
judgment day, 20B:6
ark is still being built, 114B:1
Christ and his killers, 218:15
day of wrath, 29:1
each according to his works, 341:11
flood (Noah) and, 114B:1
herald and judge, 293A:16
readiness for, 114B:8
suitable words: come; go . . . , 341:6
Juno (image), 198:20-21,63; 360B:23
just people:
temptation allowed, 20B:8; 198:63
justice, 198:38
attributed to God, 341:16
color of, 341:14
distinguished by the mind, 159B:6
doing good as sacrifice of, 72:9,10,11
faith counted as, 130A:3
faith, the beginning of, 374:1
fornication and, 159A:10
law and, 130A:10,11
law; faith, 130A:12
love lacking, 130A:11
love of, 90A:12; 306E:1
not having my own . . . , 130A:10,11
perception of, 374:7
persecution for the sake of, 359B:17
providence and, 29:8
something to be put on, 162C:1
whole perceived by more than one, 341:9
whole product of our lives, 374:1
justification:
Christ the justifier, 130A:3,6
free will as cause, 348A:8,9
help from God not needed, 348A:9
humiliation for sin, 159B:2
I am, I am the one . . . , 374:23
learning of, 159B:8,10,13
not by our own powers and merits, 348A:4
progress in, 159B:15
purification, 198:41

K
killing: body and soul, 299A:3
kingdom of God:
repent and believe, 352A:2
seek justice first, 72:16
kings:
all on earth shall worship Christ, 299A:7
submission to Christ, 360B:24
knocking, 28A:5; 114B:9; 159A:3
ask and you shall receive . . . , 360B:12

L
languages:
different voices (sounds), 293A:7-8
God (the word) in four languages, 293A:8
many colors of the queen’s gown, 360A:2
work of the soul, 360B:9
last day, See judgment day.
last times, See end of the world.
Latin language, 218:6
Latin “voice”, 293A:7,8
law:
Christ as the end of, 14A:2
discipline, 14A:2
eye for an eye, 110A:8
fear of damnation, 130A:11
figure: five barley loaves, 198:51
holy, 159B:14
jealous teachers of, 341:24
justice from, 130A:10
love of God and neighbor, 90A:2,4
nursemaid, 283:2
periods of, 110A:5
salvation and Mosaic law, 162C:9
truth and, 198:30
used to tempt, 159A:7
wrongdoing abounding, 159B:14
leadership:
soul and the flesh, 159A:13
learning:
unteachable pagans, 198:13
leisure, 283:4
letter kills, 283:2
levity, 283:5
life:
See also conversion of life
infested by highwaymen, 114B:3
lust for, 283:3
presumption re sudden death, 142(appendix):2
safety in time, 299A:3
shortness and uncertainty of, 360B:6
way pointed out by Christ, 114B:5
light, 28A:2; 198:28; 360B:14
daystar, 341:18
image of God stamped in us, 72:12
neither has eye seen . . . , 360B:7
relative perception of, 341:6
spiritual, 159B:5,6
lion, 218:12; 359B:13,14,15
literature: pagan authors, 23B:14
liturgy:
prayers addressed to the Father, 198:49
loaves and fish, 198:51
Lord’s Prayer:
forgive us our debts, 110A:8;
348A:11
Pelagian view of petitions, 348A:11
Lot: in Sodom, 306E:1
love, 198:53; 218:9
ardor’s effects, 90A:9

Volume III/11
being incorporated, 130A:6
believing in . . . , 130A:5
charity, 90A:12,13
charity eliminates weakness, 299A:2
commandments: fulfilling one fulfills other also, 90A:12
compendium of the whole law, 90A:2
conversion of sinners, 299A:3
driven by, 114B:16
faith obtains what the law commands, 90A:14
father and son; inheritance, 90A:6
fear and, 130A:5,11
fear and perfect charity, 198:4
fruit of the Spirit, 130A:8
fullness of the law, 130A:5
Gentile vs Christian, 198:3,4
genuine; chaste, 198:3
genuine only if both God and neighbor are included, 90A:13
going into Christ, 130A:6
gravity; weight, 283:5
great commandment: God and neighbor, 90A:1ff
heart on fire, 198:8
lay down our lives for our brethren, 359B:19
maternal, 360C:6
mutual, 299A:3
obedience to bishops, 359B:23
paying the marriage debt, 354A:13
poured out in our hearts, 283:2
pray for conversions, 198:8
sentiment of the soul, 198:2
love for God:
angels and, 359B:16
believing before we see, 360B:11
great commandment, 90A:1-4
Holy Spirit and the humble, 341:7
limitless, 90A:9
must be free, 72:17
reward: eye has not seen . . . , 360B:2,3; 374:1
testing by the Lord, 341:7
trueness of self, 90A:7
whole heart, mind and soul, 90A:9,11
love of neighbor:
first commandment fulfilled by, 90A:4
loving badly, 90A:13
natural love, 90A:6
presupposes love of self, 90A:7
preventing wrongdoing, 90A:12,13
start from, to arrive at God, 90A:5
ten commandments, 90A:4
Lucre, 360A:9
lust, 20B:6; 23B:15; 72:15; 352A:6;
110A:6; 159B:14; 198:9,27; 283:2,3;
360B:7
conquerer of, 354A:10
paying the marriage debt, 354A:13
lying:
claiming credit, 28A:5,6
decetful life, 28A:6
false evidence is denying Christ, 306E:11
God repays good for evil, 28A:2
idolatry, 360A:9
man-made gods, 23B:5
panic: every man is a liar, 28A:2,6

M

Maccabees:
companions of Daniel and, 306E:9
Magi:
conversion: they returned in another way . . . , 374:23
gifts: gold, frankincense, and myrrh, 374:13,18
gifts offered to false gods, 374:13
incense as gift, 374:18
knowing that the star was Christ's, 374:13
led by power of Christ, 374:12
need to ask where Christ was born, 374:14
magic, 198:36,41,63
curing by, 306E:7
Pharaoh's magicians, 198:38
public/private rites, 198:28
man (the word), 348A:8
Manichees:
humility of Christ and, 159B:12
Mappalia, 359B:5
marriage:
See also husband and wife
better to marry than to burn, 354A:12
divine institution, 354A:3
foregoing, 354A:2
good of, 354A:1-13
kinship obligation (O.T.), 354A:11
last times; sexual abstinence, 114B:13; 354A:3
Paul on, 162C:14
question re putting away one's wife, 354A:2

Sermons - Newly Discovered
sexual abstinence (O.T.), 354A:11
sinfulness question, 354A:8
spiritual, 159A:10
unrestrained sexual desire in,
354A:9,12
what God has joined . . . , 159A:8
wife’s case against in-laws, 159A:9
martyrdom:
cause, not the penalty, 359B:17,18
husband fears wife as Eve, 159A:13
put to death all the day long, 159A:1
seeking one’s own glory, 299A:2
tests of obedience, 359B:13
wife fears husband as serpent,
159A:13
martyr(-s):
born for a crown, 299A:1
Christ’s disciples, 360B:19
commemorated in mysteries, 198:12
commend ourselves to their prayers,
306E:1
confession of faith, 299A:8
denying Christ, 306E:10
devil makes false martyrs, 359B:16
false and true, 359B:16,17,18
God listens to, 198:11
good will, 306E:6
hidden; peace, 306E:6
hired servants and, 198:12
honoring, 198:46; 299A:1
improper celebrations of, 198:9
king [Herod] fell by having just man
killed, 306E:10
loved as exemplar, 198:3
lust for life, 283:3;
memorial shrine, 198:47
patience, 283:1,4
persecutions foretold, 360B:24
persecutor promises, 20B:10
precious in the eyes of the Lord . . . ,
359B:16
promised victory, 299A:7
psalm 118: like a pile of sand . . . ,
306E:1,2,6,11
renown of, 306E:1
shed blood in and for the Church,
359B:19
solemn feast days, 306E:8
tempted by family, 159A:7
threat of financial ruin, 159A:4
ture and false compared, 359B:20
veneration of, 198:12
victorious over pleasure and pain,
306E:1
wit, 198:24
women, 159A:11
worship of (accusation), 198:47
wrestling; shedding blood, 306E:2,6,9
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
entrusted to John, on Calvary, 218:10
faithful chastity; undefiled virginity,
341:25
honor of the female sex, 159B:10
Jesus, before his conception, 130A:10
royal/priestly line, 198:50
seed of Abraham, 159B:16
virgin birth; and birth of John the
Baptist, 293A:2
virginty:
chaste mind, 159B:13
Jacob’s balsam tree, 341:25
Word of God in womb of, 341:8
material bodies (in creation), 159B:5
materialism, 90A:12
Maximinus, Bishop:
conversion of, 360C:2
meal: paying back, 28A:7
mediator(-s), 198:57
devil as, See devil.
necessity, 198:37
ture and false, 198:38
medicine, 374:16
application of contraries, 341:4
meek: blessed, 114B:11
Melchizedek, 198:38; 374:19
memory, 360B:9
gift, 283:8
Mercury (god), 198:24,63; 299A:8;
360B:23
mercy, 90A:5,14; 198:45; 218:6; 360B:17
Christ’s will that no one perish,
352A:1
God’s blessing on his people, 20B:9
judgment day, 341:6
punishment for sin, 159B:3
rich man entering heaven, 341:3
sinners and, 352A:6
washing of rebirth, 341:21
merit, 360A:3
apostles Peter and Paul, 299A:4
earning by our prayers, 348A:4
God’s words to godly and ungodly,
341:6
Peter and Paul, 299A:1,6
suitable words on judgment day,
341:6

Volume III/11
Messiah:
- cornerstone rejected, 306E:3
- demons’ belief in, 130A:2,5
- recognized, Jews would not have killed him, 341:24
- scriptures fulfilled in Jesus, 374:15
- Michael (angel), 198:47
- migraine, 23B:10
- military service, 283:4
- mind, 23B:5; 29:5,7; 198:28
- body as slave of, 159B:7,8
- changeable, 159B:6
- genuine conception of, 360B:10
- God’s light, 360B:3
- great good, 374:5
- hearts raised up, 198:27
- image of God, 360B:9
- inner eye; inner light, 360B:10
- members fighting against law of, 348A:10
- senses and, 159B:6
- senses of, corrupted, 341:12
- spiritual, 159B:5,6
- surpasses all bodily things, 360B:12
- word conceived in, 293A:11
- worship, 198:17

miracles:
- Christ’s, as visible words, 110A:1
- Christ’s disciples, 360B:19
- daily, in nature, 374:11
- either done or spoken, 374:12
- nature’s obedience to Christ, 359B:9
- Paul, Barnabas, and Peter, 198:13
- prophetic prediction as, 374:12
- woman bent double for eighteen years, 110A:1-8
- miser, 360B:21
- misfortune, 130A:7
- money:
  - love of, 159A:3,4
  - money-grubbers, 360A:9
  - monster, 198:53
  - moon, 374:9
  - temple to, 198:17
  - worship, 198:17
- moral conditions:
  - non-christian values, 198:3
- morality:
  - Gentile vs Christian, 198:3
- mortality, 23B:1
  - See also death; immortality
- end is coming, 354A:1
- healing of, 360B:20
- humility and, 360B:5,6
- Moses, 130A:10; 162C:6; 198:38; 341:22
- covenant, 374:17
- five books of, 198:51
- Mother Earth, 198:19
- mothers:
  - lacking love for children, 341:22
  - mountain of pride, 198:59,61
- mourning, 360C:6
- murderers, 359B:17
- music, 360B:2
- myrrh, 374:18
- mysteries:
  - Christian; not secret, 198:20
- mystical body, 130A:1

N

nations:
- begotten through the gospels, 341:23
- festival (New Year), 198:1
  (i.e. Gentiles), See Gentiles
- inheritance of Christ, 341:24
- parable: tenants of the vineyard, 341:24
- subjection to Christ, 218:6
- tied in devil’s chains, 359B:11
- varieties of; Jacob’s sheep, 341:23-25
- wilderness as metaphor for, 374:21

nature:
- God’s providence, 29:9
- miracles performed constantly, 29:10; 374:11
- obedience, 359B:9
- orders in (spiritual/material), 159B:5,7
- seek the creator, 198:31

Neptune:
- cult of, 198:18,21,35,63; 360B:23
- new covenant, See covenant

New Year:
- pagan celebration, 198:1,6,43
- Nicodemus:
  - name: victory and people, 218:15
  - Niniveh, 114B:2
- nipples (in males), 29:6
- Noah, 114B:1-2,8
- christian life, now, 114B:7,8
- Church as, 114B:2
- crow and dove, 360B:27
- squared timbers, 306E:3

North:

Sermons - Newly Discovered
cold and darkened spirits, 198:14,27
dominion of the devil, 198:27
numbers:
five loaves, two fish, 198:51
seven loaves, 198:51
three, six, eighteen, 110A:5
Numidia, Primate of, 359B:2
numina of idols, 23B:8
nursemaid, 283:2
nut(-s):
Jacob’s rod, 341:25
weighing, 341:22

O
obduracy, 283:7
obedience, 359B:1-11
be the foal carrying the Lord,
359B:11
command to do an evil thing,
359B:13
daughter of charity, 359B:12
distinguished from disobedience,
359B:7
eexample of Christ, 359B:8
faithful in small matters, 359B:6
martyrdom, 359B:13
mind and body, 159B:8
reforms in Carthage, 359B:5
right order of, 359B:13
slaves of the foal while leading the
foal, 359B:11
oil press, 23B:15
old age: passage of time, 360B:5
olive tree, 23B:15
oppression, 23B:15
Optatus: baptism of, 293A:14
orators:
fishermen (apostles) and, 341:4
order,
examples in creation, 374:9,11
finding God, 360B:9
human reason; divine Wisdom, 29:10
limits in created order, 374:2
providence and, 29:2-3
organ music, 360B:2
original sin:
suffering and, 23B:11; 159B:11
Orosius (priest), 348A:6
oxen, 29:9

P
pagan(-s; -ism):
See also gods; idolatry
better educated; idols, 198:16
converts to Christianity, 162C:6-9
disbelief in prophecies, 360A:5
evil in Christian times, 23B:13-15
false gods, 23B:3
fast and pray for, 341:26
festival days; pleasures, 198:8
good and bad pagans, 198:10
grieve over; pray for, 198:8
New Year celebration, 198:1
origins, 198:27
re miracles worked by Paul and
Barnabas, 198:13
sacrilegious rites, 198:36,41,47
struggle against, 198:58
testimonies of scripture against,
360A:1-11
withdrawn from way of God, 198:46
pain, 159A:4; 283:1,3
enduring for a bad cause, 283:6
evils, 283:7
patience, and, 283:8
salutary, 360B:14
victory over affliction, 360E:10
Palatinus (deacon), 348A:7
parables: barren fig tree, 110A:2
paradise, 114B:15; 341:13; 359B:7;
360B:3
parents:
apparent conflict in commandments,
159A:6
God as Father; Church as mother,
360C:6
honor father and mother . . . , 159A:6
if anyone comes, and does not hate
. . . , 159A:6
natural and supernatural, 198:42
punishing children they love, 159B:4
Parmenian (Donatist), 198:52
parts and whole, 341:8-9
Passover:
disciples preparing for, 359B:10
lamb’s bones not to be broken,
218:13
pastors: just lives, 162C:1
patience, 352A:6
Christ’s example, 218:1
definition, 283:7
love of, 283:8
martyrs, 283:4
pain, 283:1
religion refined by, 29:8
Volume III/11

rewarded, 360B:1
source, 283:6
tribulation, 72:9
Paul, Apostle, Saint:
See also Peter and Paul
affection, 341:22
baptisms of John and, 293A:13,15
believing in, 130A:3,6
called “Mercury”, 198:13
commends himself to be prayed for, 198:57
on conjugal rights, 354A:4-5
crown, reward for God’s own gifts, 299A:6
crown of justice, 299A:9
dead of, 359B:16
father’s love; mother’s love, 341:22
fill up what is lacking . . . , 341:20
holiness of, 354A:4
hope in God, not in himself, 198:44
I am already being immolated . . . , 299A:4
I have completed the course . . . , 299A:6
I have fought the good fight . . . , 299A:4
letter to the Hebrews, 306E:2
letters to seven Churches, 198:51
on marriage, 162C:14
merits of, 299A:4
nurse caressing her children, 341:22
possibility of lying, 162C:13-14
praise of, 20B:2
prayer re goad in his flesh, 20B:2,3,7; 130A:9
rebuke of Peter called deceit, 162C:4.5,13-14
rejects being worshipped instead of
Christ, 198:15
vision of, 159B:1
wanted God in him to be loved, 198:53
watch against the dragon, 359B:15
withstood Peter to his face, 162C:3-14
Paul (previously Saul):
acts against Christians, 299A:6
I obtained mercy . . . , 299A:6
laid low by voice from heaven, 299A:6
persecutor made into preacher, 299A:6,8
why are you persecuting me . . . , 341:20
Peace, 072:8; 198:45; 306E:6; 359B:20,21
bond of, 306E:3
good will, 114B:11
hunger for, 360C:3
preaching, 299A:3,4
reward of good works, 72:9
seeking, on earth, 72:10
Pelagianism:
blessings empty of meaning, 348A:13
Pelagius, 348A:1
absolved by bishops of Palestine, 348A:6,7,15
denial of need of grace, 348A:5,8,10
Penteteuch, 198:51
perfection: 14A:1; 130A:12; 306E:1,2
charity vs fear, 198:4
nothing to be taken to task for, 162C:3
sell all that you have . . . , 114B:9
perishing, 90A:9
Perpetua and Felicity (martyrs), 159A:11
persecution, 159A:12; 198:26
beatitude, 283:6
Catholic emperors, 359B:15
Christians confessing Christ, 299A:8
foretold, 360B:24
martyrs, 306E:7
not for sake of justice, 283:6
persecutors:
giving in to, 299A:3
promises to martyrs, 20B:10
perseverance, 23B:11; 198:61
Peter, Apostle, Saint:
belief in Son of God, 130A:2,5
Church prayed for P. in chains, 198:57
death of, 359B:16
emperor at tomb of, 360B:26
fisherman, 198:60
forcing gentle Christians to judaize, 162C:7-14
honored by emperors, 360B:26
humility in accepting Paul’s rebuke, 162C:3
inner infirmity, 299A:5
Israelite, 341:24
Jesus prayed that his faith not fail, 348A:12
miracle worked by, glorified Christ, 198:13
Paul “withstood him to his face”, 162C:3,4
rebuke by Paul called deceit, 162C:4,5,13
threefold confession of love, 299A:2
tomb in Rome, 341:4
warning about the lion, 359B:15
you are the Christ . . . , 348A:3
Peter and Paul (feast of):
birthday of, 299A:1-9
merits; equal value of their suffering, 299A:1
same date; different year, 299A:1
petitions, See prayer Philosophers, 23B:14
self-sufficiency, 198:36
philosophy:
led astray by, 198:10,21,29
piety, 29:3
pigs, 198:33
pity, 359B:13
divine; for those locked under sin, 159B:1,2,5,13
punishment and, 159B:4
Plato, 198:59; 218:7
pleasure:
allurement of, 306E:1
bad Christians, 198:9
continence, 283:1.3
demons and Gentiles, 198:3
despair and, 352A:8
law and, 283:2
pagan festival days, 198:8
seeking, 72:16
self-control, 283:8
temptations, 283:7
poor and rich, See rich and poor
poverty: voluntary; virtue, 341:3
power: yours is the power . . . , 341:6
praise, 130A:7; 283:1
confession as, 29B:2,6
seeking, 72:9
prayer(-s), 360C:2
angels present them to God, 198:48
ask and you will receive, 360B:12
clean place (heart; church) where you pray, 198:11
delivery from affliction, 306E:10
earthly petitions, 110A:3
fasting and almsgiving, 198:8
goad in Paul’s flesh, 20B:2,7; 130A:9
God listens even if he appears not to, 20B:1,3
inner room (heart), 198:11
leisure for (by the married), 354A:6
need for grace, 348A:14
Pelagians abolish need of, 348A:9
petitions against our best interests, 20B:1,6
petitions for material goods, 348A:9
request for, 299A:3
seek the things that are above, 110A:3
sincerity, 198:56
preaching:
perseverance in, 299A:3
in season, out of season, 299A:4
precious objects, 374:7
presumption, 198:44,52
pride, 114B:7,11; 198:37,41,62; 360B:16,17,24,26; 374:22
beginning of every sin, 360B:17
calling themselves wise . . . , 198:38
children and parents, 159B:4
Christ concealed himself from the proud, 198:32,33
cured by humility of God, 341:4
delight in being honored, 198:46
devil, 198:22,28,29; 360B:5,6
fallen angel, 198:14
falsely claiming to be wise, 198:32,33
first of all sins, 159B:5
fountainhead of all diseases, 159B:13
home country; mountain of pride, 198:59
lowliness repugnant to, 159B:12,13
mind flogged by its slave, the body, 159B:7
overthrowing, 341:4
praise self, accuse God, 29B:6
rich people and, 114B:12
root of all evils, 159B:11,13,15; 198:33
slave and master, 159B:7
spirit of this world, 283:8
swollen with, 159B:13
vanity of, 198:43
worship desired by the proud, 198:44,46
would outstrip Christ, 198:44
priest(-s; -hood):
bodily blemish, 198:49
in charge of Churches, 198:53
Christ prefigured in O.T . , 198:53
commended himself for prayers (O.T.), 198:54
order of Aaron; of Melchizedek, 374:19
preregistration, 352A:5,7; 360B:27

Volume III/11
prodigal son:
returning to himself . . ., 90A:10
promises, 374:3
See also God: promises
fulfillment, 299A:7
tempting, 283:7
vast list of, 299A:7
propagation (Old Testament), 354A:11
properties:
fear of losing, 299A:2
prophec(-y; -ies):
all has its end in Christ, 374:20
Christ revealed in, 198:32
examples of fulfillment, 360A:5
fulfillment related to faith, 360B:20
heaven thunders in, 360A:8
little remains to be fulfilled, 114B:3
one true sacrifice, 374:16
pagan disbelief in, 360A:5
prediction as miracle, 374:12
vast list of God’s promises, 299A:7
prophets:
believing in, 130A:3
Christ revealed through, 198:38
desire to see the Messiah, 293A:2
knowledge of God, 198:29
last days, 114B:15
redeemed by Christ, 293A:2
spoke of near/distant future, 114B:6
Word of God speaks through, 114B:5
prosperity, 110A:6; 114B:14
proud, See pride.
providence:
animals; God cares, 29:9
denial of, 29:1,2,12.
disordered human affairs, 29:3
faith in, 29:11
good and evil people, 29:1,2
governing human beings, 29:7
justice and, 29:8
order in nature/creation, 29:2,3,10
scriptural assertion, 29:9
prudence, 20B:11
proper season (preaching), 299A:4
Psalm 22:
modeled on person of Christ, 341:1
Punish “voice”, 293A:7,8
punishment, 90A:14; 130A:8
confession of sins, 29B:1
mercy and pity in, 159B:4
penalty for all sins, 198:33
some sins are also punishments, 198:33
purification of soul, 198:27,28
purification, 198:49,58
See also justification
Church and, 198:42
devil and, 198:38,44
mediators, 198:37,44
philosophers and, 198:36
purity:
blessed are the heart-pure, 360B:13,15,20; 374:1
Pythagoras, 198:36,59

Q
Quadratus:
foursquare, 306E:8
martyr and saint, 306E:1
meaning of his name, 306E:3
questioning:
teaching by, 299A:2

R
race (athletic): end stone, 14A:2
rain; voluntary rain, 130A:8,9,11
reason, 29:4,10
reconciliation: forgiveness, 359B:21-23
redemption, 90A:14
See also heaven; Jesus Christ;
Messiah; salvation
blood given as price of, 299A:2
blood of the Just One, 110A:7
Christ came to save sinners, 348A:1
Christ died for us, 198:2; 28A:4;
348A:2
flesh of sin, 110A:7
fullness of the times, 352A:2
God did not spare his own Son,
352A:1; 348A:3
mercy and judgment, 352A:1
reforms:
bishop Aurelius in Carthage, 359B:5
repentence, 359B:23
baptism and, 352A:4
catechumens, 352A:3
fullness of the times, 352A:4
God’s patience leading to, 20B:6;
29:1
John the Baptist, 293A:4
mercy and judgment, 352A:1
perish without, 110A:2,3,4
produce fruits worthy of, 110A:5
said of God metaphorically, 341:16
self-punishment, 29B:1
sinners drawn to, 352A:6
taking religion seriously, 352A:3
whole human race exhorted to, 110A:7
research, 162C:15
resurrection of the body: 90A:14; 198:53
heavenly bodies, 159B:15
hope for, 159B:9
perfect as angels, 198:15
perfect health, 20B:3
resuscitation, 374:11
retirement, 283:4
reward:
everlasting life, 341:3
good and evil, 29:11
hidden punishment, 29:8
leaving all and following Christ, 341:3
seeing God face to face, 374:1
tempting pleasures, 283:7
work of God (believing), 130A:4
rich and poor, 23B:15; 28A:6,7
See also almsgiving.
both good and bad people may have riches, 374:4
burial custom, 142(appendix):1
difficult for rich to enter heaven, 114B:9-10
good works by the rich, 114B:13
parable of Lazarus, 142(appendix):3
poor in spirit, 114B:11,12
pride, 114B:12
rich man sad re giving up all, 341:3
salvation; damnation, 114B:11
sell all you have . . . , 114B:12
Rome (Romans), 218:6; 348A:11; 360B:25,26
emperors, Peter, 341:4; 360B:26
gods, 198:34
Jews conquered by, 374:15
root of Jesse, 360A:2
roots: plant growth, 374:11

S
sabbath, 162C:6
curing on, 110A:5
sacking (or sackcloth), 198:5
sacrament(-s), 198:42
burial of catechumens, 142(appendix):1
celebrated in secret, 360A:3
figure: Christ’s divided garments, 218:8,9
initiation; power to change way of life, 374:19
pierced side of Christ, 218:14
symbolic; locked up meanings, 341:23
sacrifice: 306E:7
blood, 374:20
body of Christ, 374:19
contrite heart as, 114B:2
convicting, not purifying (O.T.), 374:22
doing good; justice, 72:9,10,11
God displeased with animal victims, 374:21
incense, 374:18,21
Isaiah on new ways of, 374:20
just blood to be shed (Isaiah), 374:21
nor have I craved the fat . . . , 374:22
old gives way to one true sacrifice, 374:16
pagan, 162C:6
practiced (O.T.) but not understood, 374:20
prayer, 110A:3
total change (from O.T.), 374:16,19
why God changed, 374:22
sacrilege, 198:28,36,41,47; 306E:7
insulting God’s image, 23B:7
safety: time and eternity, 299A:3
saints, 198:53
precious in the eyes of the Lord . . . , 359B:16
sufferings of, 359B:15
veneration; grounds, 359B:16
winnowing, 299A:9
wit, 198:24
salvation, 198:58,63; 359B:11
See also eternal life; heaven;
judgment day; redemption
Christ came for all people, 360B:24
circumcision and (Paul vs Peter), 162C:7-14
crown of justice, 299A:6,8
drunks and heretics, 293A:16
eternal safety, 299A:3
everlasting health, 20B:9
every age called to, 360B:25
faith in Christ (O.T. & N.T.), 198:32
health and, 20B:9
hope, 360B:16
knowledge of God and, 198:29
Magi and, 374:13

Volume III/11
need of God’s mercy, 198:30
observance of Mosaic law, 162C:9
our own powers and merits, 348A:2
repent and believe, 352A:2
Sarah (wife of Abraham), 114B:6
savagery, 159A:2,5
scandal, 14A:2
foretold, 114B:6
schism, 198:15,42
beginning of evil of, 360B:4
foretold, 360B:21,22
scripture, See bible.
seasons: seek the creator, 198:31
sea:
cult of Neptune, 198:18,35
parts, 341:8
seek the creator, 198:31
transcended, 198:27
second coming:
flood (Noah) and, 114B:1
senses:
in your seed shall all the nations . . . , 360A:4
wonder of, 374:11
self-control, 348A:14
pleasures and, 283:8
self-esteem:
spirit of this world, 283:8
self-image:
disparaging self as sacrilege, 23B:7
self-love, 90A:4
commandment, 90A:7
self-sufficiency, 198:36; 348A:10
senses, 72:15
created spirit and, 198:25
deceived, 198:62
faith and, 360A:1
immaterial mind and, 159B:6
inner self, 23B:5
lookout for body’s health, 29:5
material bodies, 159B:5
mind and body, 341:12
mind gives orders to body, 159B:8
prayer; inner room, 198:11
thought and, 360B:7
useless if spirit is missing, 374:6
serpent:
devil as, 359B:15
Eve and, 341:12
senses of mind corrupted by, 341:12
service:
care of the sick and the weak, 359B:23
serving, 359B:9
seven (number), 198:51
sex:
See also husband and wife
abstinence as punishment, 354A:12
abstinence in the last times, 354A:3
master of movements of the flesh, 354A:10
paying the marriage debt, 354A:13
shade: Jacob’s plane tree, 341:23
chanties: singing, 198:11
sharing, 114B:13; 198:11
sheep and shepherd:
recognizing voice of shepherd, 299A:2
sheep (metaphor for people)
bought and plundered, 299A:2
feed my sheep . . . , 299A:3
holocausts, 374:21
Jacob’s rods, 341:23-25
sickness (the sick):
care of, 359B:23
Church’s care for, 360C:6
diagnosis, 360B:17
illness, 130A:7,12
ministering to, 360C:5
patient and doctor, 299A:5
patient with variety of disorders, 159B:11
sight:
earned by faith, 360B:20
eyes and heart, 360B:3,11
eyes of the mind and, 374:6
faith and, 159B:15
faith first, then sight, 360B:15
sense of, 198:27
sign(-s):
Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3
gifts of the Magi, 374:18
idolatry, 198:17,21
silence:
motive: desire for this life, 299A:3
voice of the heart, 341:16
words in the mind, 293A:7
Siloam, tower of (18 men killed),
110A:2,4,7  
Simon:  
my eyes have seen . . . , 293A:2  
would exalt himself by miracles, 198:15  
simplicity:  
dwelling singly in hope, 72:16,18  
sin:  
anger with oneself, 72:9,10  
bars the way to God, 198:40  
cannot go unpunished, 29B:3  
captive to the law of, 348A:10  
carelessness and negligence, 352A:6  
Christ (not John) is our advocate, 198:55  
confession, 29B:2; 198:36  
daily remedy, 110A:8  
death and, 110A:7  
denying Christ, 306E:10  
despair, 352A:6  
drawn to; driven to, 283:1  
energetic avoidance of, 198:56  
forgiveness as encouragement to, 352A:6  
See also forgiveness of sin  
God says: I have kept quiet . . . , 29B:5  
grace and, 374:22  
grace ignored, 352A:3  
hate of, 29B:3  
human work, 29B:6  
I clothed myself in sacking . . . , 198:5  
left to myself, I fall, 306E:2  
lifelong, 360B:20  
locked under; God’s pity, 159B:1  
look at; overlook, 29B:4  
loving to continue in, 352A:3  
never not able to, 348A:4  
power not to sin, 348A:13  
providence and, 29:11  
punishment for, 114B:15  
responsibility for, 29B:7  
separates from God, 198:39  
some sins are also punishments, 198:33  
struggle against, 306E:11  
surrender to, 306E:10  
wanting God to turn his face from, 29B:4  
ways of falling into, 306E:1  
wrestling against, 306E:6,9  
Sinai, Mount, 374:17  
singing: feelings; ear of God, 198:1  
sinner(-s), 28A:6  
before I was humbled . . . , 159B:2,3  
Christ ran the way of, 198:43  
God’s justice and mercy, 159B:3  
handed over to, by desire, 299A:3  
suffering, 20B:1  
size: scale; perception, 360B:3  
sky:  
parts, 341:8  
seek the creator, 198:31  
transcended, 198:27  
slave(-s), 114B:12; 306E:4  
body as slave of mind, 159B:7,8  
Christians as, 359B:8-9  
earning freedom, 198:4  
good slave made into son, 198:12  
punishment by good masters, 159B:4,8  
serves for master’s benefit, 374:20  
serving out of love, 198:12  
slaves themselves having their own slaves, 159B:5,7  
smell, sense of, 23B:5; 159B:6  
Sodom, 306E:1,6  
soldiers: reward, 283:4  
Son of God:  
became son of man, 23B:1  
begotten, one with the Father, 28A:8  
demons’ belief in, 130A:2  
equal, or less, in attributes, 341:15,17,18  
equal to the Father, 359B:8  
form of a servant, 14A:4  
God with God, 198:44  
identity with the Word, 341:6  
present in our minds, 293A:6  
work of God: believing, 14A:3,5  
Son of Man:  
came to serve, 359B:10  
Father is greater than I . . . , 341:13  
service: laying down his life, 359B:10  
soothsayers, 23B:10; 360B:22; 374:12  
soul:  
dispositions of souls, 341:15  
purgation needed, 198:27,28  
rational or irrational, 198:25  
seeing, 198:31  
sentiments: believing, hoping, loving,
storm: Church as boat in, 198:54
straw, 23B:12
stubbornness: patience and, 283:7
stumbling, 14A:2
suffering, 198:65
cause (motive) and, 283:6
cup curing diseases of spirit, 299A:5
fitting for sinners, 20B:1
glory of, 359B:17
God; possibility, 348A:3
greed: giving more than you are, 28:5
human condition, 23B:11
justly, 20B:6
Paul and the afflictions of Christ, 341:20
pride the root cause of all, 159B:11
punishment for the first sin, 159B:7
returning Christ’s hospitality, 28A:4
right/left side of Christ crucified, 218:4
sun, 360B:8; 374:9
image of, 198:17
worship, 198:17, 35
superfluitutes, 114B:16
superstition, 359B:11
pagan view of Christians, 198:10
synagogue of gods, 23B:2

talents, 374:4
tax collector, 29B:3
Tellus:
cult of Mother Earth, 198:19, 21, 63
temples:
God has no need of, 306E:4
Roman emperors, 360B:26
temporal goods, 90A:14
earthly desires, 360B:7
earthly happiness, 114B:16
flesh and blood petitions, 110A:3
folly to worship pagan gods, 360B:23
good fortune, 360B:22
good with which we can do good, 374:5
judgment day, 29:11
keeping silence for sake of, 299A:3
looking for, 72:12, 14
pauperly, compared with promised reward, 374:1
pleasant life, 299A:5
possessed by both good and bad people, 374:4
Sermons - Newly Discovered

prayers of petition, 20B:3
praying for, 348A:9
soul overloaded by desire for, 110A:6
worldliness, 159B:18
temptation:
allowed by God, 20B:8
by angel, 198:48
beyond what one can bear, 198:63
consent, 306E:1
dealing with (squared off), 306E:3
denying Christ, 306E:10
devil speaks from human shape, 23B:10
falling into, 306E:2
Job and the devil, 20B:7; 198:63
leading us not into . . . (Pelagius), 348A:11
power to overcome, by will alone, 348A:11
procrastination, 352A:5
watch and pray . . . , 348A:12
Thagaste, 359B:2; 360C:2
thanksgiving: gratitude, 348A:14
theaters, 198:3, 9; 359B:23; 360B:16; 374:5
Thomas, Apostle, Saint, 14A:5
I will not believe . . . , 159B:12
threshing floor, 299A:9
Gideon’s fleece, 360A:3, 7
thrones:
be heaven: carry God’s throne, 360B:7
time, 283:4
aging; old age, 360B:5
body and spirit, 198:28
now is the day of salvation, 360A:7
six (the number), 110A:5
three periods of, 110A:5
Timothy: circumcised by Paul, 162C:10-11, 12
Titus: circumcision, 162C:10-11, 12
treachery, compassion and, 159B:9
treasure chest, 72:13
trials:
arena; weakness, 306E:7
endure all for Christ’s sake, 159A:1
tribulation, 20B:9, 11; 72:9
Trinity:
contemplation of, 341:7
God is the end, 14A:4
Jacob’s three rods as sign, 341:24
love of, 341:7
persons of, 341:7
trust:
his yoke is sweet . . . , 142(appendix):4
temple of God, 306E:4
truth, 110A:3; 114B:3, 6, 12; 162C:14, 15;
198:25, 53; 198:53; 23B:13; 29:12;
341:5, 19; 374:23
See also lying
believing in him, 130A:5
God called to witness (Paul), 162C:5
holding down, in iniquity, 198:30, 32, 35
holding God’s truth in a lie, 198:36, 38
hope in God, 198:44
keeping quiet, 360C:5
law and, 198:30
soul turned away from God, 198:27
straying from way of, 198:43
Tunics, woven from the top, 159B:18; 218:9

U
unbelief, 218:7
damnation-worthy, 360B:20
deil and, 198:26
deil at work in sons of, 23B:10
locked up under sin of, 159B:1, 2, 5, 13, 14
pagans and heretics, 360A:5
providence and, 29:8
time when none will remain in, 360B:28
unbelievers, 29:12
darkness, 198:26
deserting faith and Church, 198:42
mercy and judgment, 352A:2
miracles and, 374:12
speaking, 28A:1
uncleanness:
self-purification, 198:36
understanding:
commanded to have, 348A:14
great minds, brief statements, 90A:3
inner light, 360B:10
unlike horse and mule . . . , 348A:14
ungodliness, 341:6; 359B:20; 374:5
devil’s gang, 360A:1
wrath of God, 198:30, 32
unity, 360C:2, 3, 5
Donatists, 360C:5
forced into, 360C:1, 5
goodness of, 360C:5

Volume III/11
praised as a good thing, 360C:5
tunic, woven from the top, 159B:18; 218:9
Urbanus, bishop of Sicca, 348A:11

V
vanities, 23B:13; 114B:15; 198:2,8,13,43
veterans (military), 283:4
vice, 29:3,4; 283:6
vigils:
reforms of bishop Aurelius, 359B:5
Vincent, Saint
death of, 359B:16
obedience tested, 359B:13,20
ordered to offer incense to idols, 359B:13,20
true martyr, 359B:13,20
vocation:
weak/foolish chosen to disconcert . . . , 341:4
voice, 341:9
human words and voices, 293A:6-9
word and (John and Jesus), 293A:5
Vulcan (god), 198:23

W
walking, 159B:8
water: torrents, 198:43
weakness:
charity eliminates, 299A:2
martyrs and, 306:E:2
need for slaves, 306:E:4
perfected by God, 130A:8-9,12
power perfected in, 20B:2; 130A:12
wealth, possessed by, 114B:10
weaving, 14A:1
wedding garment, 198:52; 359B:19
weight, 283:5
whole and parts, 341:8-9
wickedness, 23B:15
widow, 159A:10
wife, See husband and wife.
wild olive, 218:7
will:
of God, 110A:6
insufficient, without grace, 348A:13
making self just, 348A:8,9
wings of eagle, 28A:8
wisdom:
color of, 341:14
depth of God’s riches, 159B:1
enjoined to have, 348A:14
foolishness of worldly wisdom, 341:24
hearts raised up, 198:27
knowing where one’s gifts are from, 283:8
light of, 198:61
proper season (preaching), 299A:4
proud calling themselves wise, 198:38
wit, 198:28
witnessing: actions and words, 306:E:11
wit:
enlightenment, 198:24
worship of, 198:17,24
woman (women):
disturbance in church, 359B:3
honored through the virgin Mary, 159B:10
role in Christ’s life, 159B:10
subordinate to man; equal in sex, 354A:4,5
weaker flesh, 354A:5
wood: gold and, 23B:8
Word of God, 130A:10; 159B:9
abides forever, 293A:12
abides; voice passes away, 293A:11
attempting to divide, 341:9
begotten, 341:5
both with the Father and in Mary’s womb, 341:8,9
breathes with the Holy Spirit, 341:7
emptied himself, 341:11,13; 359B:8
equal to the Father, 341:20
grasping, 293A:6
identity with the Son, 341:6
in the beginning . . . , 198:55;
293A:3,5; 341:3,5,10,11; 348A:3
nature of, 341:5
speaks through patriarchs and prophets, 114B:5
words:
denying Christ, 306:E:11
receiving, as food, 341:9
conceiving, 293A:6,7
human words and voices, 293A:6-9
voice and (John and Jesus), 293A:5
words of God (prophecy; scripture; etc.):
pleasure in, 360B:28
work, 283:4
heavenly reward, 374:3
six days of creation, 110A:5
work of God (believing). See faith.
works of mercy, 90A:14
paying the marriage debt, 354A:13
stretching out your hand, 28A:5
world:
base-born things of, 198:60
threshing floor, 360A:3
village over against the disciples,
359B:11
worldliness:
spirit of this world, 283:8
worship:
See also idolatry
due to God alone, 198:22
false gods; true God, 23B:3
God specifies how to, 374:10
many gods; praise, 360A:6
one true God, 359B:16
pagan seduction, 198:46
praying/singing together in church,
198:11
sacrifice, 374:16
spirit and truth, 198:11
ungrateful to God for his gifts, 283:8
wooden gods, 23B:5
worshiping all that clings to God,
198:46
wrestling:
darkness; devil, 306E:8
wrinkle, 341:21
wrongdoing, 159B:3

X
Xanthippus, Primate of Numidia, 359B:2

Y
yoke: sweet; burden light,
142(appendix):4

Z
Zacchaeus, 114B:11; 198:20
Zachary, 198:50
Zion, 341:19
Translation, notes and introduction by Boniface Ramsey (series editor), Daniel E. Doyle, OSA and Thomas Martin, OSA, editors.

Saint Augustine's ten homilies on the *First Epistle of John* are among his greatest and most influential works. John and Augustine both develop the same central theme of love exploring its meaning and implications.

**Volume III/14**  
**Homilies**

**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-289-0, 6 x 9 in., 173 pp., 2008  
**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-288-3, 6 x 9 in., 176 pp., 2008

**Includes:**

**Tractates on the First Letter of John**  
(*In epistulam Johannis ad Parthos tractatus*)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
**Volume III/14**

*Index of Scripture*

(prepared by Michael T. Dolan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>X, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>IV, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>III, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3-4</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>X, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>X, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:2</td>
<td>VIII, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:4</td>
<td>III, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:3</td>
<td>II, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4</td>
<td>II, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:4-5</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td>IX, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:27</td>
<td>II, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:9</td>
<td>IV, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:11-12</td>
<td>IX, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:7</td>
<td>VI, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:9</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:2</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:5</td>
<td>I, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:16</td>
<td>IX, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:1</td>
<td>VII, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2</td>
<td>IX, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:3</td>
<td>I, 6; IX, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:9</td>
<td>I, 6; IX, 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:4</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:4, 11</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:27</td>
<td>IX, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73:28</td>
<td>IX, 10; X, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78:25</td>
<td>I, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:6</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:1-2</td>
<td>IX, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102:27</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110:3</td>
<td>II, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:12</td>
<td>V, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116:13</td>
<td>V, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:85</td>
<td>X, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:96</td>
<td>X, 5; X, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119:165</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121:6</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132:6</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:7</td>
<td>VI, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139:8</td>
<td>VI, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:7</td>
<td>IV, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16-17</td>
<td>VII, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:18 LXX</td>
<td>VI, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22</td>
<td>VI, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>IX, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>I, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>IX, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:5</td>
<td>IV, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Homilies On The First Epistle Of John**
### Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

#### New Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>II, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>VIII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>IV, 5; VII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>I, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>VIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>VI, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>I, 11; IX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>IX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:46</td>
<td>VIII, 4; IX, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:48</td>
<td>I, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>VI, 3; VIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>VI, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:14-15</td>
<td>VII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:29</td>
<td>II, 8; X, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>VIII, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:41-42</td>
<td>V, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:34</td>
<td>III, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:14-18</td>
<td>X, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>X, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19:6</td>
<td>I, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:33-39</td>
<td>X, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>X, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>VI, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23:8-9</td>
<td>III, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24:23</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>III, 11; IV, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>III, 11; IV, 2; IV, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Luke       | 8:8       | VII, 10 |
|            | 10:20     | II, 13  |
|            | 19:8      | V, 5    |
|            | 20:18     | III, 6  |
|            | 23:34     | I, 9; V, 4; VII, 3; VIII, 10 |
|            | 24:27     | III, 7  |
|            | 24:46     | X, 8    |
|            | 24:46-47  | III, 7  |
|            | 24:47     | II, 2; X, 8 |
|            | 24:49     | II, 3   |

| John       | 1:1       | I, 1; III, 1; IV, 5; VI, 13; IX, 9 |
|            | 1:3       | I, 2; II, 5  |
|            | 1:10      | V, 9       |
|            | 1:14      | I, 1; X, 8 |
|            | 1:33      | VII, 11   |
|            | 6:53      | I, 12     |
|            | 6:60      | I, 12     |
|            | 6:67      | I, 12     |
|            | 6:88      | I, 12     |
|            | 7:37-38   | VI, 11    |
|            | 7:39      | VI, 11    |
|            | 8:32      | IV, 2     |
|            | 8:44      | VI, 7     |
|            | 8:58      | II, 5     |
|            | 12:31     | IV, 1     |
|            | 13:34     | I, 9; V, 2; VI, 4; IX, 11; X, 3 |
|            | 14:6      | III, 6; VII, 3; X, 1 |
|            | 14:9      | III, 2   |
|            | 15:13     | V, 12; VI, 1; VI, 13; VII, 2 |
|            | 15:22     | VI, 5    |
|            | 19:37     | IV, 5    |
|            | 20:17     | III, 2   |
|            | 20:25     | I, 3     |
|            | 20:27     | III, 2   |
|            | 20:28     | I, 3     |
|            | 20:29     | I, 3     |
|            | 21:15     | V, 4; V, 5|
|            | 21:15-17  | VII, 9   |
|            | 21:17     | V, 5; VIII, 5|
|            | 21:18-19  | V, 11    |


**Volume III/14**
**Volume III/14**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Chapters/Sections</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romans</td>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>VI, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>II, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>VI, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>I, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>VI, 8; VII, 6; VIII, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>IX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>VIII, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>IV, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:26-27</td>
<td>VI, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>VII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>IX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>V, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>V, 7; X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>II, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>IV, 5; VII, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:6-7</td>
<td>III, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>VI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>V, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>VIII, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>II, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>VII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>III, 4; X, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>X, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>V, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>VII, 2; VIII, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>V, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:8</td>
<td>IX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>VIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Corinthians</td>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>VI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:14-12</td>
<td>VI, 5; X, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:7-9</td>
<td>VI, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>V, 4; VI, 2; VI, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians</td>
<td>1:22-24</td>
<td>VIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>VII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>X, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>I, 12; X, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>VI, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>VIII, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>II, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>I, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td>1:21-24</td>
<td>V, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>IV, 5; IX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>IX, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:12-13</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>IV, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>IX, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>I, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>I, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>IX, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>X, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>VIII, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>III, 8; VI, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>VIII, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>VIII, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>X, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>IX, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>I, 6; V, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Abel, V,8
Abraham, I,13; II,5; III,6; IV,10
actions, See deeds
Adam, II,5; IV,3, 11; V,2; VIII,6
adultery, II,9; IX,6–7
advocate: Christ as, I,7–8
Africa, I,2, 8, 12–13; II,3; X,8
See also Donatist schism
age, I,5; III,1; IX,9
the Alleluia, V,7; VIII,1
ambition, II,10–14
amor/amare, VIII,5
See also love
angels, I,1–3; II,14; III,9; IV,5; V,5; VI,13;
IX,10; X,2
of the devil, I,5; III,11; IV,2; VI,6
Hagar and, X,10
righteousness of, IV,3, 9
anger, VIII,10–11; X,7
See also enemies; hatred
animals, II,11; III,11; VII,2; VIII,14; IX,1
See also specific animals, e.g., swine
man’s power over, VIII,6–8
anointing, III,5–6, 12–13; IV,1–2, 6, 12
See also baptism
antichrists, III,3–10; VI,12–14; VII,2–3, 6
apostles, I,6; II,13; VIII,2
See also disciples; Paul: individual
taboo: specific topics
the eleven, II,1
the twelve, I,12
Arians, II,5; VI,12
arrogance, I,6; VII,2
See also pride
ascension of Christ. See under Jesus Christ:
ascension of
authority: of God, X,9

See also power
avarice, V,5; VIII,6; X,4–5, 9; IX,2
baptism, I,5; II,9; III,1; IV,8, 11–12; V,6–7;
VI,10–11; VII,6
See also anointing: sacraments
rebaptism, VII,7
beasts. See animals
beauty, I,4; II,11–12; IV,5; IX,9; X,7
love and, IX,9
believers. See Christians
betrayers: the Father vs. Judas as, VII,7
tradiiores, X,10
birth, new. See rebirth
blasphemy, III,9; X,8
blindness, I,13; II,3; V,7
blood, IV,3
See also eucharist
cleansing, of the Son, I,5, 8–9; II,10;
III,7; V,4; V,5, 12
body, human, III,11; IV,9; V,6; X,5, 9
bodily age, III,1; IX,9
body of Christ (Church as), I,1–2; III,4;
VI,10–11, 13; X,3, 8–9
See also Church
body of Christ (eucharist). See eucharist
bread. Prologue: I,1; III,1; VIII,9
See also eucharist
breaking of, II,1–2
Man does not live by bread alone,
II,14
breasts, III,1; IX,1
bride and bridegroom, I,2; II,12; 11; III,7;
IX,2, 11
See also marriage
bride of Christ, II,2; IX,11
brotherly love, I,12; V,3, 7–10 passim; VI,2, 4; VIII,3–4, 12; X,3–8
See also fellowship; heart; love and love for enemies, VIII,4, 10; X,7

Cain, V,8
caritas. See charity
Cataphrygians, VI,12
Catholic Church, VII,11; X,7
See also Christians; Church; unity; specific topics
Catholic Christians, II,3
and Christ’s inheritance, III,7
Donatists and, I,12–13; II,3; III,5, 7; VII,11
universality of, I,8, 12–13; II,2–3; III,7; VI,10; VII,11; X,8, 10
chaff, III,5, 10; V,13; VI,11
charity (caritas). See love
charity (helping the poor), VI,1; VII,10; VIII,5
See also deeds; mercy; works
chastity, VIII,1; IX,9
chaste fear, IX,5–9, 11
the chaste soul, IX,2
children, II,4, 7, 12; III,1, 3; VIII,10; IX,1
correcting, VII,11
God’s, IV,5; V,7, 12
choice. See will
Christ, III,6; X,1
See also Jesus Christ
Christians, II,1, 14; IV,4; VII,2
See also brotherly love; Church; faith; fellowship; specific topics, e.g., equality
Catholic, III,3
as co-heirs of Christ, II,9; VIII,14; X,3
faith of, VII,3; X,1–2
living a Christian life, IV,4, 6; V,7, 12; VIII,8, 14; X,1
in name only, IV,4; V,12; VII,6
sinful, I,11; III,9; VII,6
sons of God, II,14; IV,4; IX,3; X,3–4
Church, I,2; V,3; VI,14; VII,10; VIII,2; X,3, 10
See also body of Christ; Catholic Church; Christians; schism; unity beginning of, II,3
as bride of Christ, II,2; IX,11
love for, X,6
as mother, III,1

Upon this rock I shall build my Church, X,1
wicked members leaving, III,4
commandments, I,9–10; V,8; VI,4–5, 8, 14; X,3–4, 7
See also law
the new commandment, I,9–12 passim; V,2–3; VI,4, 9; VIII,4; IX,11; X,1–8 passim
community. See brotherly love; fellowship
concupiscence, II,14; IV,3, 11; VII,10; X,6
See also desire of the flesh/eyes
confession of faith, I,3; II,3; III,10; IV,3; VI,12–13; VIII,9; IX,10
demons and, II,8; X,1–2
Donatists and, III,7–8
Peter and, V,4–5
in words vs. deeds, VIII,14
confession of sin, I,6; IV,3; VI,3; VIII,2
confidence; love and, VI,4; IX,2–4
congratulations, I,11; III,6
See also flattery; praise
conscience, III,10; VI,2–3, 6; VIII,9; IX,2, 4; X,5
correction. See discipline
creation, I,4; II,5, 11
See also world
the creator, I,2; II,11–12; VIII,6, 10
See also God
creature: creator and, II,11–12
death, III,4; IX,2; X,5
from death to life, I,9; VII,3
curiosity, II,13
David, VII,6; IX,5; X,5
darkness, I,4–5, 10–13; II,3, 7; V,7; VIII,14
See also hatred; sin
death, III,12; IX,2; X,5–6, 9
of an enemy, I,9
of from death to life, I,9; IV,11; V,10
lack of love as, V,10
resurrection of the dead, III,4; VI,13
swallowed up in victory, IV,3
deeds, III,8–9; V,12; VI,1–3, 13–14; VII,7–8; X,1
See also works
evil, II,13; V,8
faith and, VIII,14
demons, I,11, 13; II,8, 13; VI,7; X,1–2, 7
See also angels of the devil
faith of, II,8; X,1–2
prayer of, VI,7
derial of Christ. See under Jesus Christ: denial of
desire, holy, IV,6
desire of the flesh/eyes, II,10, 12–14; VII,10
devil, I,5; II,6–7, 11, 14; IV,1–3; V,8; VII,2
See also angels of the devil; demons; eternal fire; evil; serpent; sin
Cain as from, V,8
children of, V,7–8
as the enemy, II,14; IV,3
imitation of, IV,10
and Job, VI,7
sacraments of, II,13
sin and, IV,10–12; V,2; VI,7
dilectio/diligere, VIII,5
See also love
disciples, I,3; II,1–3; III,2; IV,2; V,4–5; VII,7; VII,10; X,9
See also apostles; individual names; specific topics
discipline, VII,5, 11; VIII,9; X,7, 10
discourse: praise for, X,5
disease. See sickness
dissolving, VI,14
division in the Church. See schism
doctors. See physicians
Donatist schism, I,8, 12; II,3–4, 8; VI,10;
VII,11; X,10
See also schism
and betrayers (traditores), X,10
as breach of charity, VII,11
as geographically limited, I,8, 12–13;
II,2–3; III,7; X,8, 10
ideals of, I,8
and martyrdom, VI,2
rebirth, VII,11
and the sacraments, II,3; III,5; VII,11
Donatus, II,3–4
See also Donatist schism, above
dove, VII,11
drunkenness, II,11; III,9; IV,4
ears, I,13; IV,9; VI,12; VIII,2
earth. See creation; world
Easter week, Prologue; I,13; II,1–2; IV,4; IX,2
the Eleven, II,1
See also apostles
Elijah, V,5; X,1
“end,” the term, X,5–6
enemies
See also hatred
as false friends, X,7
love for, I,9–11; VIII,4, 10–11; IX,3, 9; X,7
prayer for, I,9; IX,3
sins as, IX,2
souls of, healing, VIII,11
wishing good for, I,9; VIII,10
enemy, Satan as, II,14; IV,3
enjoyment. See joy; pleasure
enlightenment, I,4, 6; IV,8, X,6
envy, V,8, 10; VIII,8
equality
See also under Son: as equal to the
Father among people, VII,5, 8
error, II,1; VII,4, 11
See also heresy; schism; sin
eternal fire, III,11–12; IV,2, 5; IX,5; X,9
See also hell
eternal life, I,3, 5, 12; II,11–12; V,3;
VIII,14
See also heaven; immortality
and answering of prayer, VI,6
enemies and, V,10; VIII,10–11
wishing for others, VIII,5, 10
eternity, II,5, 10
See also under God: as eternal
eucharist, I,2, 9, 12; II,1; III,5; VII,6;
VIII,10
See also sacraments
the wicked and, VII,6
Eunomians, VI,12
Eve, IV,3
evil, I,7, 12; VI,7; IX,2, 5; X,6
See also devil; sin; specific topics,
e.g., lies
charity and, II,8
deeds, II,13
desires, VIII,6
The face of the Lord is over those who
do evil, IX,7
greatness of, VIII,14
left hand, VI,3
love of the world as, II,9
returning evil for, VIII, 11
root of, VIII, 6
will, III, 8
evil humors, III, 4–5
eyes, I, 1–4; IV, 5, 9; VI, 2, 10; VII, 10; VIII, 1; IX, 10
See also blindness
desire of, II, 10, 12–14; VII, 10
Enlighten my eyes, X, 6
of flesh, X, 5
faith, II, 1; IX, 2; X, 1, 5, 10
See also confession of faith
of Christians vs. demons, X, 1–2
of heretics, X, 1–2
and love, X, 1–2
and purity, IV, 9
and righteousness, IV, 8
and salvation, VIII, 13
the Father, VII, 6; X, 5
See also God; specific topics
Judas, comparison to, VII, 7
fathers; fatherhood, II, 5–7
disciplinary love of, VII, 11
fear, IX, 4–9
avarice and, X, 4
of being seen, VIII, 2
beneficial, I, 7
chaste, IX, 5–9, 11
and judgment day, IX, 2, 6
of the Lord, IX, 2
love and, IX, 2, 4–8; X, 2
of punishment, IX, 5; X, 2
and righteousness, IX, 4
doctrine and, IX, 10
two fears, IX, 6
wickedness and, II, 8; IX, 6–8
and wisdom, IX, 2
feast days, IX, 1
fellowship, I, 3, 5, 9
See also brotherly love
fire, eternal. See eternal fire; hell
flattery, III, 6; VII, 8; 11; VIII, 9; X, 7
See also congratulations; praise
flesh
See also body, human; mortality; Word of God
of Christ, I, 12; II, 2–3
desire of, II, 10, 12–14
love, fleshly, VIII, 5; IX, 1
struggle with, IV, 3
forgiveness:
Father, forgive them, I, 9; V, 4; VII, 3, 10
love and, VII, 1
of others, VII, 1, 3; VIII, 10–11
of sin, I, 5–7; II, 4–5, 8, 10; V, 6; IX, 7
fornication, IX, 10
free will. See will
friendship, VIII, 5; IX, 9; X, 7
fruit, I, 4; III, 8, 11, 13; IV, 1; V, 8, 10; X, 7
firstfruits, II, 2
good, VI, 4, 6
fulfillment:
the end of, X, 5–6
doctrine and, V, 7
of works, X, 4
Gehenna. See eternal fire
gentiles, VIII, 2
gift of the Holy Spirit, IX, 11
glory; glorification, III, 4; V, 10–11; VI, 2; VII, 7; VIII, 2
doctrine and, VI, 14; X, 3
God; IV, 6; IX, 1
See also creator; Father; Holy Spirit;
love; Son; specific topics, e.g.,
truth
abiding in us, V, 4, 12; VI, 1; VIII, 12, 14; IX, 1
authority of, X, 9
as complete, VIII, 14
as eternal, II, 5, 10, 14; IV, 5, 9
as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, VII, 6;
X, 5
image of, IV, 9; VIII, 6; IX, 3
as invisible, VII, 10
as light, I, 4–5
power of, II, 6
as reality, VII, 10
worship of, III, 10
gods: I have said that you are gods, I, 14
gold, II, 11; III, 11; IV, 5–6; X, 4
See also riches
good deeds. See deeds; works
goodness; good people, I, 12
See also under Christians: living a
Christian life; righteousness
love and, X, 7
the wicked as scoffing at, IV, 4
gospel, II, 3; IV, 2; V, 2; 7; VI, 10; X, 10
See also preaching; specific topics,
e.g., love

Homilies On The First Epistle Of John
grace, VI,5–7; VIII,14; IX,9
grain, I,6; III,5, 10; VI,13; VI,11
greed. See avarice
Greek language, I,2
growth, I,13; II,8–9; III,13; IV,1

Hagar, X,10
hand:
 imposition of, VI,10
 right vs. left, VI,3
hated, V,3–4, 7–8; VII,1; IX,10–11
 See also enemies
 as darkness, I,3, 13; V,7
 Do not be surprised ... if the world hates us, V,9–10
 and faith, X,2
 and flattery, X,7
 as murder, V,10; IX,11
health, IX,10; X,5
 See also physicians; sickness: healing of Christ’s body, III,4
 physical, VI,5; VII,8; VIII,10–11; IX,4; X,5
 spiritual, VIII,13–14
heart, Prologue; II,8; III,13; V,6–7; VI,13; VIII,1, 11; IX,5
 See also love
 Christ in, III,13
 desires of, III,8
 the devil and, IV,1
 ears of, I,13; VI,12; VIII,2
 eyes of, I,1
 fear and, IX,4
 healing of, I,1
 love in, V,10, 12–13; VI,1–5, 8–10; VII,1; VIII,12; IX,2
 Love the Lord ... from your whole heart, X,7
 our heart has been enlarged, X,6–7
 pure (clean), III,1–2; IV,5–6; X,5
 seeking God with, VII,10
 strengthening of, II,1
 teacher of, III,13
 they oppressed my heart, III,4
 heaven, VI,3, 14; VIII,11; X,10
 See also creation; eternal life;
 immortality; Jesus Christ:
 ascension of
 Christ in, I,3; II,3
 heavenly members, IX,2
 keys to the kingdom, X,10
 one head in, VI,10
 your names are written in heaven,
 II,13–14
 hell, III,11–12; IV,2, 5; VI,3; IX,5; X,9
 See also eternal fire
 heresy; heretics, II,1–2; III,4, 7; VI,2, 11–13; 12; X,1
 See also schism
 how heresies come about, I,8
 holiness, IV,3; VIII,1
 Donatists and, I,8
 holy desire, IV,6
 holy days, Prologue; IV,4
 Holy Spirit, II,9; III,13; VII,6; X,5, 9
 See also Pentecost; specific topics,
 e.g., rebirth
 charity in our hearts through, VI,8–11;
 VII,6; VIII,1, 12; X,8
 as dove, VII,11
 gift of, IX,11
 as God, VII,6; X,5
 as living water, VI,11; VII,6
 power of, III,12; IV,10; X,9
 hope, I,5–7; II,10; IV,2–7 passim; VI,1, 13;
 VIII,11–13 passim; X,5, 9
 and Christian life, IV,4
 faith, love and, IX,2
 and purity, IV,7
 and reality, IV,2; VIII,13
 horse and mule, VIII,6
 humility, Prologue; I,6; 8; II,7; III,6; VII,2;
 VIII,2
 of John, I,8
 humors, III,4–5; VII,11
 husbands. See bride and bridegroom;
 marriage
 idols; idolatry, I,11, 13
 illness. See sickness
 image of God, IV,9; VIII,6; IX,3
 immortality, II,10; IV,3; VIII,17, 13
 See also eternal life; heaven
 infants, I,5; III,1; IV,11–12; VI,10
 intercourse, sexual. See sexual intercourse
 Israel, III,6; VII,1; X,9
 See also Jews
 Jerusalem, III,7; VIII,5; X,2–8; 10 passim
 Church referred to as, II,2–3
Jesus Christ

See also faith; savior; Son; Word of God; specific topics, e.g., forgiveness of sin and Adam, IV,11 as advocate, I,7–8 ascension of, II,1–2, 10; III,2; V,5; VIII,10; IX,1; X,3, 9 beauty of, IX,9 belief in, X,1, 10 denial of, III,6–8, 10; V,4; VI,12–14; VII,2–3 as Jewish, I,13 killing of, I,9; II,1, 3; VII,3; VIII,10 Old Testament as predicting, II,1; X,8 power of, I,9, 13; VII,3; VIII,6 as propitiator, V,9; 1,7–8 reason for, IV,11–12 risen, II,1–2; III,2; V,4 as stone, I,13; III,6 temptation of, II,14 as truth, III,6; VII,3; X,1 Jews, I,13; II,3, 6; IV,10; VI,5 See also Israel Job, IV,3; VI,7 John:

as “beloved disciple,” I,8 humility of, I,8 joy, I,3, 5; VIII,2; IX,4; X,8 Judas, VII,7 judgment day, II,1; III,3; 5; IV,5; VI,3; VII,6; IX,2–4 fear of, IX,2, 6 keys to the kingdom of heaven, X,10 killing (murder), V,8; IX,10 See also under Jesus Christ: killing of; martyrdom hatred and, V,10; IX,11 kingdom of heaven. See heaven knowledge, II,8 languages, II,3. See also tongues; specific languages, e.g., Latin the last hour, III,1, 3–4 Latin language, I,2; II,3; VIII,5 See also specific words and topics, e.g., antichrists law, I,12; II,2; V,7; IX,11; X,4–7 See also commandments; Old Testament fulfillment of, V,7 left hand, VI,3 lies; lying, I,5–6, 9; III,6–8; IV,2–3, 12; V,1; IX,10 life, I,1, 9 See also eternal life; rebirth from death to life, I,9; IV,11; V,1, 10 font of, VI,11; VII,6 He who does not eat the flesh of the Son ... shall not have life, I,12 love and, V,10–12; VI,1–3, 13; VII,2, 7 new, I,5; II,5 sin and, I,6–7 temporal, VII,1; VIII,10; IX,2 Word of, I,1, 4 light, I,2 See also enlightenment darkness and, I,4–5; 10–13; VIII,14 God as, I,4–5 He who says he is in the light, I,11 truth and, I,6; VI,10 likeness of God. See image of God lions, VIII,7 Lord’s Prayer, VII,1 love (charity), Prologue; V,12; VIII,5, 12; IX,2; X,3–8 See also brotherly love; commandments: the new commandment; God; heart; specific topics, e.g., deedsand beauty, IX,9 for the Church, X,3 and confidence, IX,2–4 and discipline, VII,11 Donatist schism and, VII,11 Do you love me?, V,4–5, 11; VII,9 for enemies, I,9–11; VIII,4, 10 envy vs., V,8 and equality, VIII,5, 8 and evil, II,8 and faith, X,1–2 and fear, IX,2, 4–8; X,2 fleshly, VIII,5 forgiveness and, VII,1 genuine, VI,4 goal and manner of, V,12 for God, I,9; II,8–9, 14; VII,7, 9; IX,5, 10; X,3–8 God as, VII,4–5, 7, 10; VIII,14; IX,1–2, 10; X,5
of God for us, VII, 7, 9; VIII, 10; IX, 9–10
as God (“love is God”), VII, 6; IX, 10
the greatest, V, 11–12; VI, 1–2, 13; VII, 2, 7
as harsh, VII, 8, 11; X, 7
Holy Spirit and, VI, 8–11; VII, 6; VIII, 1, 12; X, 8
and judgment day, IX, 2–4
and knowledge, II, 8
lack of, V, 10
and the law, V, 7; X, 4–7
and life vs. death, V, 10
for love, IX, 10
love, and do what you want, VII, 8
maintaining, VII, 11
for neighbor, V, 7; VII, 11; X, 7
perfect, I, 9; V, 4–6, 11–12; VI, 1–3, 13; VII, 2, 7; VII, 10; 12; IX, 4
scripture and, V, 13; VII, 4–5
and sin, I, 6; V, 2–3
and tolerance, I, 12
two loves, II, 8–14 passim
and unity, I, 12
wicked people and, VII, 6
and works, VIII, 9; X, 4
for the world, II, 8–14; V, 9; VII, 3; IX, 10
lust. See concupiscence; desire of the flesh.

Maccabees, VIII, 7
Macedonians, VI, 12
magic, II, 13
man. See specific topics, e.g., animals:
man’s power over
man-man and man-God, IV, 11
mark, V, 6
marriage, I, 2; II, 2; III, 7
See also bride and bridegroom
wives, adulterous vs. chaste, IX, 6–7
martyrdom, I, 2; V, 4–5, 11; VIII, 7, 9
the Donatists and, VI, 2
Mary, the Virgin, I, 1–2, 13; II, 5
Mary Magdalene, III, 2
men, II, 6–7; III, 2
mercy, I, 9; II, 10; V, 12; VIII, 1, 5, 9–11
See also works
works of, VIII, I, 5
milk, III, 1; IX, 1
miracles, II, 13–14; VI, 10; VIII, 10
moderation, II, 12
moon, I, 4, 12–13; II, 11; IV, 5
morality: Donatists and, I, 8
mortality, II, 10; III, 11; IV, 3; V, 5; VIII, 7; 13; IX, 9; X, 5
See also flesh
Moses, II, 1–2, 5–6
mother:
charity as, I, 11; II, 4; IX, 1
Church as, III, 1
mother of Jesus, II, 5
mountain; mountains, I, 8, 13; II, 2; III, 6; X, 5
mule, horse and, VIII, 6
murder. See killing
mystery. See sacrament (mystery)
neighbor, love for, V, 7; VII, 11; X, 7
See also brotherly love
new life, I, 5; II, 5
the “new man,” I, 10
New Testament, V, 3
See also gospel; scripture, sacred;
specific names, topics, and events
nonbelievers, X, 7
North Africa. See under Donatist schism:
as limited to North Africa
Novatians, VI, 12
numbers, II, 3
offering, V, 5, 8–9; VII, 9
“old man” and “new man,” I, 10
Old Testament, II, 1; VI, 7
See also law; scripture, sacred;
specific names, topics, and events
as predicting Christ, II, 1; X, 8
paganism, I, 11; II, 13; V, 12
particular sin. See under sin: particular
the Pasch, I, 5
patience, IV, 7; VII, 7; IX, 2
Paul, II, 4; VI, 2, 5–10 passim; VIII, 2
See also specific topics
transformation from Saul, VIII, 2; X, 3, 9
peace. Prologue, I, 12–13; VI, 10; VIII, 5;
IX, 8; X, 4, 10
pearl, V, 7
penance; penitence, II, 2; III, 7; X, 8, 10
Pentecost, II, 3; VI, 10–11; VIII, 10
perfection. See under specific topics, e.g.,
love; righteousness

Volume III/14
persecution, II,6; III,2; VIII,10; IX,3–4; X,10
See also martyrdom
Do not be surprised ... if the world hates us, V,9–10
by Saul (Paul), VIII,2; X,3
Peter, I,12; II,4; V,4–5; 11; VII,9; VIII,5; IX,4
crusade of, X,1
Do you love me?, V,4–5; 11; VII,9
physicians, VI,8; VIII,11; IX,4
See also health; sickness
Christ as, II,1; IV,4; V,5; VI,5; VIII,2; 10, 13; XI, pipes, two, IX,5, 8, 9
pleasure
See also joy
in God, IX,5; 10; X,6
sin and, IV,4; IX,6–7
worldly, II,11–12; X,4, 6
the poor. See poverty
poverty, V,5; VI,1; VII,10; VIII,5
power, II,13; IV,3, 9
of Christ, I,9; 13; VII,3; VIII,6
of God, II,6
of the Holy Spirit, III,12; IV,10; X,9
of man over beasts, VIII,6–8
of the sacrament, III,12; IV,10
praise, III,9; VIII,1; 6, 9; IX,1; X,5–6
See also congratulations; flattery
“Allelujah,” VIII,1
human, VI,2–3; VII,2; VIII,2; 9; X,5, 7
prayer, I,9; II,13–14; V,2; VI,6–8; VII,1; IX,3
of demons, VI,7
for enemies, I,9; IX,3
preaching, II,2–3; III,7; IV,2; V,2; VIII,10, 14; X,8, 10
pride, I,6; II,13–14; IV,3, 10; VII,2; VIII, 6–9; X,10
knowledge and, II,8
princes of darkness, I,5
prophecy, gift of, VII,6
prophets, II,1; V,5; X,1
false, II,13; VI,12
King Saul as, VII,6
law and, II,1–2; X,7
propitiation, I,7–8; V,9
prudence, VIII,6, 8
psalms, I,1–2; IX,5; X,5
Punic language, II,3
punishment, VI,1; IX,5; X,2
See also discipline; eternal fire
purity, III,2; IV,7; 9; VI,3; X,5
Donatists and, I,8
“the pure victim,” VII,9
reality, IV,2; VIII,13
God as, VII,10
reason; the rational mind, VIII,6
rebaptism, VII,11
rebirth, II,5; 9; III,1; IV,11–12; V,1–8; 12; VI,5; 9; VII,4
regeneration, I,5
remission of sins, II,2; III,7; X,8; 10
resurrection of Christ, III,2; V,4; VI,13
resurrection of the dead, III,4; VI,13
riches, II,13; V,5; VIII,10
See also gold
righteousness, I,8; IV,3; VIII,6; IX,3–4; 9–10
of angels, IV,3
Beware of practicing your righteousness in the presence of men, VI,3; VIII,2
confession of sin and, I,6, 8; IV,3; V,1–2
faith and, IV,8
fear and, IX,4
of God, I,6–8; IV,3, 9, 11; IX,9; X,5
He who receives a righteous person, V,5
human, I,9; II,1; 12; IV,3, 8–9; V,7; 8; VI,7
perfect, IV,3; IX,4
the unrighteous, IX,9–10; X,4, 6
right hand, VI,3
risen Christ, II,1–2; III,2; V,4
root; rootedness, II,3; 9; III,12; V,10; VI,2; 4, 6, 8; IX,8
deeds and, VII,8–9; X,7
running, X,1
sacrament (mystery), III,7, 13; V,13; VI,6
sacraments, III,5; IV,12; V,6, 13; VI,10–11; VII,6
See also baptism; eucharist
Christ as, III,6
of the devil, II,13
Donatists and, II,3; III,5; VII,11
power of, III,12; IV,10

Homilies On The First Epistle Of John
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

sacred scripture. See scripture, sacred sacrifice, V, 8–9
"the pure victim," VII, 9
saints, I, 8; VI, 6, 8
salvation, II, 9; III, 1, 9; IV, 2, 7; V, 2–5
passim; VI, 3–8 passim; VIII, 13; X, 1
and fellowship with God, I, 5
and sacred scripture, II, 1
seeking our brother’s, VI, 4
sanctification, I, 8
Sarah, X, 10
Satan. See devil
Saul, King, VII, 6; VIII, 2
Saul (Paul), VIII, 2; X, 3, 9
See also Paul
savior, Christ as, VIII, 13
See also Jesus Christ; Son
scandal, I, 12; VII, 5; IX, 11
schism, I, 12–13; II, 1–4; III, 4, 7, 9; VI, 2, 11–14
See also Donatist schism; error; heresy
scripture, sacred, II, 1–2; III, 1; V, 2
See also New Testament; Old Testament; specific topics
love in, V, 13; VII, 4–5
and salvation, II, 1
seducers, VII, 11
seed, I, 13; II, 9; V, 13
of God, V, 2, 7
serpent, III, 2; VI, 7
seventy men, I, 12
sexual intercourse, I, 13; II, 12
sickness, V, 5; VI, 5, 8, 11, 13; VIII, 2, 5, 9
See also health; physicians
healing, II, 14; VI, 5; VII, 7; VIII, 11, 13; IX, 10; X, 8
signs, II, 13; IV, 2; VI, 10
sin, I, 5–8; V, 3; VIII, 6
See also confession of sin; darkness; evil; forgiveness; wickedness; specific topics, e.g., envy; hatred; pride
beginning of every, VIII, 6
in the Church, III, 9
definition of, V, 3
doctrine and, IV, 10–12; V, 2; VI, 7
Everyone who has been born from God does not sin, V, 2, 7
freedom from, IV, 11–12
God’s love for sinners, VIII, 10
If I had not come, they would not have
sin, VI, 5
love and, I, 6; V, 2–3
particular, V, 2–3; VI, 5
pride and, VIII, 6
propitiation for, I, 7–8; V, 9
and rebirth, V, 1
remission of, II, 2; III, 7; X, 8, 10
root of, V, 2
wickedness and, IV, 8
slaves; slavery, VII, 11; VIII, 14
blood of Christ and, I, 5
Christ in form of, IV, 5; IX, 9
slave dealer, VII, 7
sluggish people, IX, 1
sobriety, IV, 4; VIII, 1
the Son, I, 3–5; IV, 9, 11; V, 2; VII, 2, 7, 9;
VIII, 14
See also God; Jesus Christ; savior;
specific topics, e.g., eucharist
abiding in, III, 11
as alive forever, I, 1
coeheirs of, II, 9; VIII, 14; X, 3
commandments and, VI, 9
confession of, III, 10; VIII, 14; X, 1
demons confessing, II, 8; X, 1
denial of, III, 10
as equal to the Father, II, 1, 5; III, 2;
IV, 5, 9; VI, 12; IX, 9
eternal origin of, II, 5
Peter confessing, X, 1
sons, II, 5–6
of God, II, 14; IV, 4; IX, 5; X, 3–4
soul, V, 3–4; VI, 2, 5, 11; IX, 2, 4, 6, 9; X, 7
of angels, IV, 3
beauty of, IX, 9
chaste, IX, 2
at death, X, 9
healing of enemy’s, VIII, 11
and mortality, III, 11
stretching of, IV, 6
and temporal wellbeing, I, 9
speech. See discourse; words
Spirit, Holy. See Holy Spirit
spirits:
breath, IX, 5
Do not believe every spirit, VI, 11–14
prophetic, VII, 6
of truth and error, VII, 4
stealing, VI, 14; VII, 10

Volume III/14
Stephen, V, 4
stone: Christ as, I, 13; III, 6
strangers, VII, 6
suffering, X, 9
of Christ, I, 4; II, 1–2; X, 8
if one member suffers, III, 4; X, 3
sun, I, 2, 12; II, 3, 11; III, 12; IV, 5; IX, 3
swine, VI, 7
teacher:
envious, VIII, 8
inner, III, 13
temptation, II, 13–14; IV, 1; VI, 7; VIII, 7
of Christ, II, 14
theater, II, 13
threats, III, 11–12; VI, 3
time, II, 5, 10
See also eternity
last times, III, 10
tolerance, I, 12
tongues, speaking in, II, 3; VI, 10
tongues, two, IX, 5
traidores, X, 10
Trinity, VII, 6; X, 5
See also Father; God; Holy Spirit; Son
truth, I, 5
Christ as, III, 6; VII, 3; X, 1
God alone as truthful, I, 6
and light, I, 6; VI, 10
the rational mind and, VIII, 6
spirit of, VII, 4
the twelve, I, 12
See also apostles
ugliness, IX, 9
unbelievers, X, 7
uncleanness, I, 8; IV, 4; IX, 2, 6
unity, I, 3; II, 3–4; III, 7; VI, 10; VIII, 1; IX, 11;
X, 7–8
and division, VI, 2, 13
love and, I, 12
universality. See under Catholic Church: univer
samity: “the pure victim,” VII, 9
virgin, chaste soul as, IX, 2
the Virgin Mary. See Mary, the Virgin
virtues, VIII, 1
vision. See eyes
water, III, 13; V, 5; VI, 8, 11; VII, 6
See also baptism
the term, VI, 11
weakness, II, 6; IV, 4; VI, 6–7
wealth. See gold; riches
wickedness, I, 5–7; II, 12; III, 5; IV, 10; V, 1,
2; VII, 7–8; IX, 9
See also evil; sin
Church, wicked members leaving,
III, 4
fear and, II, 8; IX, 6–8
prayer and, VI, 8
and sin, IV, 8; V, 2
spiritual qualities of, IX, 2
will (free choice), III, 1, 5, 8–9; IV, 7; VII, 2,
7; VIII, 1; IX, 2
Adam and, IV, 3
will of God, II, 10, 14; VIII, 7; IX, 2
winnowing, III, 5, 10
wisdom, I, 4; IX, 2, 4
witnesses, I, 2–3; VIII, 12–13; X, 9
wives, IX, 6–7
See also bride and bridegroom; marriage
women, III, 2
adulterous vs. chaste, IX, 6–7
wood, VIII, 10
Word of God, III, 1–2; 9; IV, 3
See also Jesus Christ; scripture, sacred
made flesh, I, 1–4; 7–9; II, 5; IV, 3–5;
V, 5; VI, 12–14; VII, 2–3; IX, 9;
X, 3, 8
scripture, V, 2
things contrary to, III, 9
words: and deeds, VI, 1–3, 13–14; VIII, 14;
X, 1
works, VI, 3; VIII, 9; X, 4
See also deeds; mercy
concealing, VIII, 2, 9
fulfillment of, X, 4
heavenly members and, IX, 2
in keeping with the time, VIII, 3
love and, VIII, 9; X, 4
past, X, 1
root of, VII, 8–9; X, 7
world, II, 12; IV, 4; V, 9
See also concupiscence; creation
Do not be surprised ... if the world
hates us, V, 9–10

Homilies On The First Epistle Of John
Homilies On The First Epistle Of John

love for, II,8–14; V,9; VII,3; IX,10
pleasures of, II,10–12; X,4, 6
temporal things, II,10
the term, II,12; V,9

worship: of God and not Christ, III,10
“Your Charity,” I,3; III,7; IV,5, 12; V,6, 8;
VI,6; VIII,10, 11; IX,1, 5
“Your Holiness,” Prologue; IX,1
Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor,
Introduction by Michael Fiedrowicz

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/15 Homilies/Expositions

Paperback: 978-1-56548-140-4, 6 x 9 in., 466 pp., 2000
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-126-8, 6 x 9 in., 462 pp., 2000

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms
(Enarrationes in Psalmos)
**Index of Scripture**

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the psalm)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Testament</th>
<th>Job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>1:9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4-5</td>
<td>II, 29, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>II, 29, 15; II, 29, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>II, 30, 7; III, 32, 3; II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>III, 32, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 29, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>II, 29, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>II, 31, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>III, 30, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16-18</td>
<td>III, 30, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:19</td>
<td>7, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leviticus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:15</td>
<td>2:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deuteronomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>2:7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>5, 1; 7, 6; II, 32, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Samuel</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>5:5(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:33</td>
<td>5:7(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Kings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10,18</td>
<td>6:3(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Psalms        |     |
| 2:1           | 2:1 |
| 2:2           | 28, 6 |
| 2:7-8         | II, 21, 30 |
| 2:8           | 5, 1; 7, 6; II, 26, 8; III, 30, 8; |
| 2:11          | III, 32, 11 |
| 3:4(3)        | 3:1 |
| 3:6           | 6, 1 |
| 3:7           | 3:18 |
| 3:9(8)        | II, 31, 18 |
| 4:7           | 7, 11 |
| 4:7(6)        | 8, 10 |
| 5:2(1)        | III, 32, 22 |
| 5:5(3)        | 6, 7; II, 26, 8 |
| 5:7(6)        | III, 32, 24 |
| 6:3(2)        | 7, 10 |
| 6:5(4)        | 7, 8 |
| 7:13(12)      | 9, 8 |
| 7:15-17(14-16)| 5, 10 |
| 8:5(4)        | 5, 8 |
| 9:17(16)      | 7, 17 |
| 9:20-21(19-20)| 9, 29 |
| 10:3(11:2)    | 8, 9 |
| 11:5(12:4)    | 8, 13 |
| 11:9(12:8)    | III, 30, 11 |
| 13:5(14:4)    | IV, 30, 4 |
| 15(16):5      | 5, 1; III, 32, 17 |
| 15(16):5.6    | 1, 4 |
| 15(16):7      | 1, 2 |
### Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse/Reference</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15(16):7-8</td>
<td>7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15(16):9</td>
<td>7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16(17):13-14</td>
<td>7, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:10(18:9)</td>
<td>8, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:11-12(18:10-11)</td>
<td>7, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:29(18:28)</td>
<td>7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2(5:19-1-4)</td>
<td>III, 32, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7(19:6)</td>
<td>II, 25, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28(22:27)</td>
<td>III, 30, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22(23):5</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24(25):9</td>
<td>II, 31, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24(25):15</td>
<td>II, 31, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):9</td>
<td>III, 32, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26(27):14</td>
<td>II, 29, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:21(31:20)</td>
<td>9, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31(32):9</td>
<td>II, 29, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:9(34:8)</td>
<td>5, 15; IV, 30, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:19(34:18)</td>
<td>6, 10; II, 31, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):3</td>
<td>III, 32, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):13</td>
<td>II, 29, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35(43:6)</td>
<td>III, 31, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35(37):6</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12(36:11)</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):4</td>
<td>4, 18, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):22</td>
<td>II, 31, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):34</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37(10:38-9)</td>
<td>III, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:6(40:5)</td>
<td>III, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5(41:4)</td>
<td>II, 31, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42(43):1</td>
<td>II, 25, 6; IV, 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43(44):22</td>
<td>19, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8(45:7)</td>
<td>II, 29, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:7(51:5)</td>
<td>II, 31, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:11(51:9)</td>
<td>II, 26, 16; II, 31, 9; III, 32, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:15(51:17)</td>
<td>III, 32, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:6(53:5)</td>
<td>4, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:6(53:4)</td>
<td>7, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53(46:12)</td>
<td>IV, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55(56):5</td>
<td>II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56(57):7</td>
<td>4, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:11(59:10)</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:9(63:8)</td>
<td>3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:10(65:9)</td>
<td>1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:10(69:9)</td>
<td>III, 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1-11.2</td>
<td>II, 31, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):7</td>
<td>II, 31, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):8</td>
<td>5, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):28</td>
<td>8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:3(80:2)</td>
<td>5, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82(14:83-13)</td>
<td>III, 30, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:5(84:4)</td>
<td>II, 26, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:8(84:7)</td>
<td>II, 26, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88:16(89:15)</td>
<td>18, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:2:92:1</td>
<td>II, 31, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93(94):18</td>
<td>IV, 30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):5</td>
<td>18, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:26-27(102:25-26)</td>
<td>18, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:28(102:27)</td>
<td>II, 26, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111(112):10</td>
<td>III, 32, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112(113):1.3</td>
<td>II, 21, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B:1(115:1)</td>
<td>18, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117(118):13</td>
<td>III, 30, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):53,158</td>
<td>III, 30, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):133</td>
<td>18, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):155</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):3-4</td>
<td>7, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):5</td>
<td>III, 32, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):7-8</td>
<td>II, 30, 8; II, 32, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140(141):4</td>
<td>II, 31, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:6(142:5)</td>
<td>5, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proverbs

1:2-3 | 4, 3

### Song of Songs

1:2 | IV, 30, 9
2:4-5, LXX | 7, 14
4:2 | 3, 7
6:5 | 3, 7

### Wisdom

1:1 | 4, 9
1:11 | 5, 7; I, 26, 13; III, 32, 24
4:20 | II, 30, 5
5:1,3,5,4 | IV, 30, 5
5:1,3,8,9,5 | II, 29, 8
5:3,8,9 | II, 32, 10
5:3-9 | 6, 12
9:15 | 4, 9
12:18 | 2, 4; 6, 3
12:25,26 | 9, 1

### Sirach

2:16 | II, 26, 23
10:9-10 | 1, 4
10:15,14 | 7, 4; 18, 15
39:19-21 | 7, 19

### Isaiah

7:9, LXX | 8, 6
14:13-14 | 1, 4
26:13, LXX | III, 32, 18
29:13 | 4, 6

### Ecclesiastes

1:2-3 | 4, 3
Volume III/15

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

34:4 8, 7
40:6-8 1, 3; II, 30, 12
53:1 9, 13
58:10 7, 19
61:10 II, 30, 4
66:5, LXX III, 32, 29

Jeremiah
9:1 II, 21, 1
33:2 9, 11

Ezekiel
18:25 17, 27

Hosea
6:3, LXX 6, 5

Amos
5:8 9, 11

Zephaniah
2:11 III, 32, 3

Zechariah
1:3 6, 5

New Testament

Matthew
3:11 1, 3
4:3 8, 13
4:3.9.6 II, 30, 10
4:10 9, 4
5:3 9, 27, 11, 6
5:3-9 11, 7
5:4 1, 4, 5, 1
5:7 II, 32, 11
5:8 II, 26, 15
5:14 18, 4
5:16 3, 7
5:37 5, 7; 14, 5
5:45 5, 10
5:48,45 7, 3
6:3 7, 1
6:10 7, 8
6:31 II, 31, 21
7:2 II, 32, 11
7:16 10, 5
7:23 1, 6
7:29 11, 6; 11, 7
9:15 3, 1
9:37 11, 6
10:3 III, 32, 8
10:16 II, 21, 15
10:19-20 III, 32, 8
10:22 7, 7
10:33 IV, 30, 7
11:25 7, 19; 8, 6
11:28-30 7, 16
11:28-30 13, 4
12:34 5, 12
12:48 9, 31
13:9 II, 25, 11
15:8 4, 6
15:11 10, 10
19:5-5 II, 30, 4
19:21 9, 4
20:30 9, 35
21:16 8, 5
21:38,40-42.39 II, 30, 10
22:21 4, 8
22:40 3, 7; II, 32, 6
22:43-44 9, 35
23:9 9, 31
23:23 II, 32, 12
23:27 II, 31, 9
24:12 7, 7; III, 30, 2
24:13 III, 30, 2; III, 32, 26
25:21.23 5, 14, 6, 8
25:21.30 5, 14
25:35 II, 29, 22; II, 32, II, 32, 2; 11
25:41.42 II, 30, 5
25:42 4, 2
26:8-10.13 II, 21, 2
26:38,39 II, 31, 26
26:39 II, 21, 4; II, 32, 2
26:68 II, 29, 4
27:29 16, 9
27:42 3, 2; II, 29, 4
27:46 II, 21, 3

Mark
1:35.37.38 II, 29, 1
7:6 4, 6
13:32 6, 1

Luke
1:32 9, 35
2:30 11, 6
3:6 II, 29, 1
3:17 8, 1
4:13 8, 13; II, 30, 10
6:37-38 II, 32, 11
8:23 II, 25, 4
8:24 II, 25, 4
9:26 6, 12
10:3 II, 21, 15
10:9 17, 16
10:30-35 II, 30, 8
12:49 II, 25, 7
13:5 17, 16
15:24-32 II, 31, 11
15:32 II, 31, 11
18:28 7, 8
19:23 III, 32, 2
22:31-32 II, 26, 5
23:46 II, 29, 3
24:46-47 III, 32, 7

John
1:1 II, 21, 7
1:1-5 II, 21, 3
1:14 II, 21, 3
1:10 6, 5
1:14 3, 9; 18, 2; II, 29, 1
1:15 9, 4
1:47 II, 31, 9
1:48 II, 31, 9; III, 32, 19
2:9 II, 25, 3
3:2 27, 3
3:18 9, 1
4:10 1, 3
5:22 7, 8
5:24 9, 1
5:35 7, 8
6:27 5, 15
6:51 5, 15
7:37 1, 3
7:39 7, 6
8:15 III, 32, 2
8:34 7, 18
8:36 9, 1
8:44 16, 11; 17, 46; II, 26, 18
8:56 1, 2
9:24 II, 26, 21
9:28 I, 21, 7
12:31 9, 8
13:14 1, 3
10:17-18 III, 32, 2
11:48 3, 1
11:50 3, 1
12:27 4, 8; 5, 3; II, 26, 20; II, 31, 18
14:6 10, 6; 20, 3; 28, 11
14:27 II, 30, 4; III, 32, 18
15:5.1 5, 9; 7, 1
15:15 5, 7
16:12 23, 7
16:33 19, 2
17:1 17, 48; I, 21, 14; II, 21, 14
18:9-10 II, 29, 7
19:11 9, 6; II, 29, 7; III, 32, 12
19:23 II, 21, 19
19:30 II, 30, 11
20:17 7, 1
20:25-27-29 II, 21, 17
20:29 8, 6
21:18-19 II, 30, 3

Acts of the Apostles
1:7 6, 1
1:25 III, 30, 13
1:26 III, 30, 13
4:32 4, 10
7:60 7, 5
8:20-21 III, 30, 14
9:4 II, 26, 11; II, 30, 3; II, 32, 2
10:13 13, 4; III, 30, 5

Romans
1:17 II, 32, 4
1:24 II, 26, 7
1:28 6, 6; 6, 8
2:5 6, 3
2:9 11, 4
2:15,16 5, 13
3:23 II, 30, 6; II, 31, 7
3:25 II, 31, 6
3:28 II, 31, 2
4:1-2 II, 31, 2
4:3 II, 31, 7
4:4 II, 31, 7
4:5 II, 30, 6; II, 31, 6; II, 31, 7
4:5-6 II, 31, 7
5:3 9, 2
5:3-5 4, 2; II, 31, 25
5:10 5, 17
5:14 6, 2
6:12 9, 8
6:21 6, 13; II, 30, 5
7:22-25 II, 30, 6
7:24 II, 31, 17
7:24-25 3, 8; II, 30, 13
7:25 3, 10; 6, 7
8:23-25 II, 31, 20
8:25 4, 2; 4, 9; 9, 33
8:29 7, 1
8:33-31,32 5, 17
8:34 2, 7; II, 29, 1
8:35,36-39 7, 14
10:2 II, 30, 6
10:3 27, 8; II, 30, 6; II, 30, 13
10:4 4, 1; 12, 1; 13, 1; II, 30, 1
11:3-4 II, 25, 5; III, 30, 7
11:25 7, 6
11:26 13, 8
11:33-34 7, 1
11:36 5, 3

Value III/15
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>III, 32, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>II, 31, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:4</td>
<td>III, 32, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:9-10</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>II, 31, 513:12 7, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>III, 32, 29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>III, 30, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>7, 4; II, 31, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>8, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>8, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-3</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>II, 21, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11-12</td>
<td>II, 29, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>II, 29, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-15</td>
<td>1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>II, 29, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>5, 8; 9, 12; 10, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>3, 3; II, 25, 11; II, 31, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8</td>
<td>III, 32, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>II, 31, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>III, 32, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>1, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>II, 32, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>3, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:19</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>II, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:26</td>
<td>III, 30, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:27</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29-30, 8-9</td>
<td>III, 32, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:2</td>
<td>II, 31, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:13</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:27</td>
<td>8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:44</td>
<td>II, 26, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:54-55</td>
<td>II, 29, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>18, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14-15</td>
<td>II, 21, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:46</td>
<td>10, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:18</td>
<td>2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1-4</td>
<td>II, 30, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II, 26, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13-14</td>
<td>II, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>II, 31, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>II, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-9</td>
<td>II, 26, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9</td>
<td>II, 21, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:8-9</td>
<td>II, 31, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10</td>
<td>II, 31, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>3, 6; 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>7, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Galatians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:20</td>
<td>9, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4-5</td>
<td>II, 31, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>II, 31, 5; II, 31, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:4</td>
<td>II, 25, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>9, 31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ephesians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>III, 30, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16-17</td>
<td>9, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>9, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15-16</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>II, 25, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>6, 8; II, 25, 3; III, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26-28</td>
<td>II, 25, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, 25, 11; II, 26, 20; IV, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>II, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>10, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>II, 29, 1; IV, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:19</td>
<td>II, 31, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Philippians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>II, 21, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>III, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-7</td>
<td>II, 30, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Colossians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>II, 26, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Thessalonians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:8</td>
<td>III, 30, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>6, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>3, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Thessalonians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>9, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>9, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>II, 31, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-8</td>
<td>6, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Book and Chapter(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>II, 32, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12-13</td>
<td>II, 29, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>II, 31, 26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>商家</th>
<th>书目</th>
<th>页码</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>II, 32, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>II, 29, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>II, 21, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>9, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>6, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>II, 29, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>II, 31, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>7, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td>2:20-21</td>
<td>III, 30, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>III, 30, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>II, 26, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>7, 19; III, 30, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>II, 25, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revelation</td>
<td>22:11</td>
<td>7, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volue III/15
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the psalm number.
More than one “Exposition” is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2)
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

abandonment:
by father and mother, 26(2):18
by the world, 26(1):10
Abel, 8:13
Abessalon, 9:1
called “a father’s peace”, 3:1
figure of Christ, 3:1
Judas and, 7:1
Abraham:
children of, 19:9
Church prophesied in sacrifice of, 30(3):9
embrace of, 25(2):10
faith; Paul’s teaching, 31(2):2,3
father, because we imitate his faith, 30(3):9
justification, 31(2):5
pride before God, 31(2):2
seed (prophecy), 30(3):9
son offered as sacrifice, 31(2):3
Absalom, See Abessalon.
accusation:
bad Christians, 30(3):11
false, 26(2):21
actor, 32(2):1
Adam and Eve, 6:1,2; 8:10; 21(1):4,7; 25(2):2
banished from paradise, 29(2):15
devil and, 29(2):7,17
earthly man, 9:4
Eve deceived by serpent, 18(2):2
fall of, 18(2):13
imitation of, 30(1):20
Job and his wife, 29(2):7
no joy in presence of God, 29(2):16
old man, 2:8
as the “one lost sheep”, 8:12
seeds of immortality in, 29(2):7
time since, 30(2):8
type of Christ, 29(2):8
adoption, 31(2):20
by God, 26(1):10
right of inheritance, 32(2):4
adultery, 30(2):7; 31(2):2; 32(2):6
adversity, 32(2):5
affections: purging, 17:38; 25(1):3; 25(2):7,9
Africa, 21(2):2,24,26,28
age of the age, 9:7
Ahithophel, 7:1
allegory, 8:13
alms: motives, 32(3):22
altar, 25(2):10
altogether (the word), 18(2):10
altruism: living for the sake of others, 30(3):5
ambition, 8:13; 20:13
Amen, 32(2):4
and: biblical usage, 4:4
angels, 8:13; 23:10; 25(2):3; 32(3):20
equality with, 32(3):16
food from heaven, 30(2):9
holy souls, 8:12
oxen as metaphor for, 8:12
praise of, 26(2):12
Principalties and Powers, 8:12
wish to be like, re death, 30(2):13
of wrath, 7:12
anger, 6:8; 7:3,12; 9:25; 20:10; 24:7; 26(2):16; 30(1):10
See also God: anger
blinded by, 30(3):4
churned up by storm of, 9:30
emotion, 2:4
fury and, 6:3
gift of life and, 29(2):15
God omnipresent, 30(2):8
God turning his face away, 26(1):9
hatred and, 30(3):4
positive use of, 4:6
provoked, 29(1):6
rise up in, 7:7
sun set on your wrath, 25(2):3,4
anguish, 21(1):12
animals: souls, 29(2):2

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
animosity, 32(3):29
anointing, 26(1):1
    proper to all Christians, 26(2):2
Antichrist, 9:19,22,23,27,28
anxiety, 31(2):6,21
Apollinarian heresy, 29(2):2
apostasy: last sin lying in wait, 18(1):14
apostles, 1:3; 7:15; 28:2; 32(3):20
arrows, 7:14
    casting lots to replace Judas, 30(3):13
    filled with the Spirit, 18(2):5
heavens, 32(3):6,7
Holy Spirit sent to, 9:7
martyrs, 29(2):5
message, 18(2):4
money and, 30(3):14
persecuted, 32(3):9
spoken in languages of all peoples, 32(3):7
words go to ends of earth, 18(2):2
arise (the word): meaning: become inaccessible, 7:7
ark: Church as, 28:10
arm (the word): meaning: power, 9:32
arrogance, 19:7
arrow:
    divine love, 7:14
    instrument of death, 7:15
art, 9:7; 26(2):12
awk: fool says in his heart..., 31(2):25
attachment: temporal goods, 29(2):9
Aurelius (bishop), 21(2):31
awe: holiness and, 2:9
Babylon, 26(2):18,19
Bagai, 21(2):26,31
banquet: table prepared for, 22:5
baptism:
    all baptized are Christ’s property, 21(2):31
    Donatists, 10:5
foretaste of future blessing, 26(2):2
mercy of God, 18(2):2
rebaptism, 10:5
regenerating water, 22:1,2
unity, 30(4):3
water of, 31(2):18
battle, 17:35
beasts of the field, 8:13
beauties, 11:7
beauty, 7:19; 32(3):25
Church as God’s house, 25(2):12
creature and Creator, 14:4
eye of the heart, 32(2):6
God the source of, 29(2):18
house (Church), 25(1):8
old, bent person, 32(2):6
praise for created things, 26(2):12
righteousness, 32(2):6
risen from the dead, 20:6
strength added to, 29(1):8
wisdom of God, 32(2):7
bed: psalmist usage, 6:7
behavior:
    blessing God, 25(2):14
    rule of, 8:2
unhappiness and, 30(2):13
being: God’s knowledge, 1:6
believer, 32(2):4
one mind and one heart, 4:10
shame for past sins, 30(2):5
belly: as inner life, 30(3):4
Bible:
    See also words of God
    authority of, 10:2
    both Testaments called “heavens”, 8:7
    bow and arrows, 7:14
cloud, 10:10
    eyelids of God, 10:8
heavens as metaphor for scriptures, 8:9
investigating and understanding, 8:7,8
mysteries of scriptures revealed, 28:9
pervasive understanding of, 7:15
scripture as God’s speaking, 3:6
understanding by the weak, 21(2):15
unity foretold in, 30(3):8
    variety of interpretations, 18(2):4
birds, 18(2):1
    metaphor for the proud, 8:13
    bishops: Donatist, 21(2):31
bitterness, 30(3):12; 31(1):4; 32(3):10
    blackbirds, 18(2):1
blasphemy, 10:11; 30(4):4; 31(1):3
blessedness, 2:9,11; 31(2):7
    deeds and words, 25(2):14
God indwelling, 5:17
    praise God, 32(2):3
    Gentiles, 7:6
    habitual sin, 5:6
    Israel, 13:8
bloodthirsty person, 5:8
boasting, 7:3,4; 8:13; 11:4; 23:10; 25(2):11;
    31(1):11; 31(2):2,6,8,11,25,26
body and soul:
    See also human body; soul
    better part is the soul, 32(3):16
    body wears down the soul, 4:9; 11:9
    single unit, many members, 30(2):4
bones, 30(1):11
    grown old, 31(2):13
    strength, 6:4
    strong churches, 30(3):5
born again, 4:8
bow: holy scriptures as, 7:14
bread, 13:5; 32(3):29  
come down from heaven, 5:15  
brethren: as Christians, 32(3):29  
 bribe, 14:5  
 bribe a judge, 25(2):13  
 praise as, 25(2):13  
 Bridgroom, 18(2):2  
 Church’s love of, 18(1):10  
 virgin’s womb, 18(1):6; 18(2):6  
 brigands, 14:3  
 brokenhearted, 31(2):11  
 brother: fraternal love, 18(2):6  
 building:  
 gold, silver and precious stones, 29(2):9  
 wood, hay and straw, 29(2):9  
 bull-calves, 21(1):13; 21(2):13  
 Caecilian, 10:5,6; 30(3):12  
 Caesar: render to…, 4:8  
 calm seas, 9:29  
 carnal desire, 7:11  
 carnality, 32(3):29  
 Carthage: basilica, 31(2):1  
 Catholic Church, 10:4; 29(2):3  
 remains whole, 21(2):19  
 sinners in, 10:5  
 Catholic faith, 5:3; 10:3  
 Catholics: scriptures and, 7:15  
 cattle, 8:1,10,12,13  
 cursing, 30(1):14  
 certainty, 8:6; 10:5  
 chaff, 25(2):5,6,12  
 chains, 2:2  
 evil thoughts as, 9:21  
 chalice, 22:5  
 chance, 9:2; 31(2):18  
 change, 9:7  
 charity, 30(1):8,9; 30(2):2; 32(3):21,28,29  
 See also love  
 fullness of the law, 31(2):5  
 refraining from doing harm, 31(2):5  
 self possessions; give to the poor, 6:12  
 ten commandments, 32(2):6  
 tile of Christ, 21(2):19; 30(3):13  
 unity and glory, 30(3):1  
 chastisement: hidden judgment, 9:1  
 chastity, 18(2):2  
 children:  
 milk and solid food, 8:5  
 salvation, 10:3  
 sin, 16:13  
 spiritual life, 22:4  
 things not revealed to the wise, 18(1):8  
 tribulation; goodness, 9:20  
 understanding of eternal things, 8:8  
 children of God, 6:12; 10:6; 11:8-9; 18(2):3;  
 29(2):8; 30(3):1; 30(4):5  
 See also adoption  
 choice, 30(3):13  
 chosen, 17:27  
 Christian life, 13:1  
 bad Christians, 30(3):6  
 being straight, 32(2):3  
 directions for the way, 26(1):11  
 living among vices, 6:9  
 living as Christ taught, 32(2):2  
 prosperity and, 25(2):4  
 see Christ reflected in self, 32(2):2  
 straight and narrow ways, 26(1):11  
 teach me your ways, 24:4  
 witnessing, 30(4):7  
 Christian name: high dignity of, 7:9  
 Christianity: rejection of, 2:2  
 Christians:  
 See also Christian life; persecution  
 accusations against, 30(3):11  
 called ‘brethren’, 32(3):29  
 fear of tyrants, 18(2):14  
 fragrance of Christ, 7:15  
 grace and, 31(2):2  
 living evil lives, 25(2):14  
 raw recruits, 26(1):1  
 sheep, 21(2):31  
 slander against name of, 10:4  
 unity forms one person, 29(2):5  
 Church, 6:10; 10:12; 15:5; 16:1; 17:17; 19:3;  
 21(1):15,23,26; 25(1):1; 27:5  
 See also Mystical Body; persecution;  
 temple  
 ark, 28:10  
 attacks and slanders on, 10:4  
 beauty of God’s house, 25(1):9; 25(2):12  
 body of Christ, 21(2):28  
 bones, 30(3):5  
 bribes and, 25(2):13  
 bridegroom’s tent, 18(2):6  
 Christ as Head and body, 18(2):10  
 Christ as shepherd of, 22:1-2  
 Christ rules over Zion, 2:5  
 Christ speaks in person of, 24:1-3; 30(2):4  
 Christ the spouse of, 9:6  
 comprehensiveness of, 8:13  
 critics of, 30(3):11  
 dedication of the house, 29(2):6  
 Donatist teaching, 10:1  
 each member praises God for gift(s)  
 received, 28:9  
 ecclesiastical court, 25(2):13  
 endurance, 20:5  
 enemies of, 24:19; 29(2):11  
 establishment, 8:3  
 everyone as neighbor, 25(2):2  
 fear of condemnation, 6:3  
 foreshadowed (Peter’s dish), 30(3):5  
 glory dwells in, 25(1):8  
 God hears, 5:4  
 God’s indwelling, 9:12  
 good and bad people in, 25(2):6
great assembly, 21(2):26
harmed by bad Christians, 30(2):10
Head and body: whole Church, 9:14; 17:2
heard by God, 5:17
inner cry of, 5:2
joy in receiving mercy, 5:8
judge seated on throne, 9:6
laboring and humble, 24:16-18
light of, 10:2
love growing to perfection, 16:5
love of the Bridegroom, 18(1):10
many members, one body, 30(2):4
many see, and flee from, 30(3):8
moon and stars, 8:12
nets full of good/bad fish, 10:5
oppressors of, 29(1):2
our mother, 26(2):18
passion of Christ and, 21(2):4
people leading bad lives, 30(3):6
Peter’s dish full of living creatures, 30(3):5
pilgrimage, 26(2):18
pre-eminence from the Head, 3:9; 29(2):2
present wherever God is praised, 21(2):24
proclaimed, 30(3):9
prophecies regarding, 30(3):8
Abraham’s sacrifice, 30(3):9
found among all nations, 30(4):9
renewing the body of, 29(1):1
sacrifice in his tabernacle, 26(2):12
sadness turned to joy, 29(1):12
saved in hope, 9:15
slaughter and eat…, 30(3):5
souls driven out of, 30(3):11
spiritual torments, 29(2):8
spread throughout the world, 30(3):8
stormy sea, 9:29
strains toward heaven, 29(2):10
clouds: as prophets, 10:10
clemency, 32(2):12
clothed: first robe, 29(1):12
city, 30(4):9
collusion, 25(2):9; 30(1):14
commandment(-s), 6:9; 12; 7:5; 8; 10:12;
all must submit to, 8:5
charity toward God and neighbor, 32(2):6
finishing the, 31(2):15
hatted, 7:9
keeping, 18(1):12-13; 25(2):3
observing, 32(1):2
perfection, 31(2):5
pсалtery (ten strings), 32(2):6
soul and life, 25(1):9
sweetness tested, 18(2):12
ten, 32(2):6
commiseration, 31(2):9
complacency, 32(3):10
compliance, 25(2):9
compunction: for sin, 29(2):22
concupiscence, 9:15; 17:33; 32(1):16
condemnation, 9:24
Church’s fear of, 6:3
confession, 29(1):5; 30(1):12; 30(4):10;
31(2):18
drawing near to God, 31(1):6
faith and justification, 30(4):7
for ever, 29(2):22
heard before it is spoken, 31(1):5
praising God, 7:19
refusing, 31(1):10; 31(2):13
of sin or praise, 29(2):19
understanding and, 31(1):8
what God has done for you, 29(2):22
wholehearted, 9:2
conjunction: biblical usage, 4:4
conscience, 5:11; 7:4; 9:9,23; 10:3,5;
30(4):4,8; 31(1):2; 31(2):1,11,12
gaze of God on, 18(1):15
good; must both believe and work, 31(2):5
hope and, 31(2):5
narrow gate, 30(4):8
no fleeing from, 30(2):8
self-accusing, 5:13
constancy, 32(3):23
contemplation, 26(2):8
cracy and, 30(2):2
glory of God, 2:5
joy of the Lord, 26(2):16
safety, 26(2):9
uncaring about temporal things, 30(2):2
unchangeable good, 26(2):8

conversion (moral):
all the ends of the earth, 21(2):30
apostasy, the last sin, 18(1):14
changing for the better, 26(1):2
difficulties in way of, 6:6
discipline, 9:1
God ready and waiting, 6:5
King of glory will enter, 23:7
lay aside the old self, 25(2):1
mercies of God and, 32(2):10
pride in, 18(1):15
prodigal heretic, 18(2):6
repentance, 4:7
shamed into, 30(2):5
spiritual regeneration, 8:10
subdue the servile and brutish, 2:8
turning to God, 4:4

converts:
all ends of the earth, 21(1):28
Church “eats” them, 30(3):5
corruption, 29(1):11
counsel: adverse circumstances, 12:2
courage, 26(1):14
deceived by, 32(1):17
court: ecclesiastical, 25(2):13
 coveting, 32(2):6; 32(3):16
creation:
all holy, spiritual creation subject to
Christ, 8:12
beauty of, 7:19
good works, 18(2):3
he spoke and they were made, 32(1):9;
32(3):12
image and likeness of God, 18(2):3
subject to God, 2:4; 32(3):12
varied beauties of, 26(2):12
wonders of, 26(2):12
word and wisdom of God, 18(2):3
Word of God and, 32(3):16
Creator:
material and spiritual universes, 32(1):6-9
creature(-s):
Creator and, 13:7; 29(2):4; 31(2):6;
32(2):2; 32(3):5
crippled, 17:46

cross:
enemies of, 8:8
sign, 32(3):13
turned to resurrection-joy, 19:4

isaac as prefiguring, 30(3):9

cry: inner cry of the Church, 5:2
cup: lovely portion, 10:11
curse, 9:25; 31(2):9; 32(2):3
solemn oath, 7:3
teeth, 3:7
Cyprian, 32(3):1,9

damnation, 9:1; 18(2):2; 21(2):5; 29(2):8; 31(2):5
32(2):1,2,4,6
danger: temptations, 26(2):22
Daniel, 21(2):6
darkness, 9:20; 15:7; 16:8; 17:9,29; 18(2):13;
31(2):18
blindness of mind, 6:8
God’s hiding place, 17:12
hating one’s brother, 30(3):4
nature: non-existence, 7:19
providential order, 7:19
sin; night, 5:4
unbelievers, 30(4):2
David, King, 7:1; 9:1; 17:51; 25(1):1; 26(1):1;
26(2):2; 32(2):1
Christ as Lord of, 9:35
figure of Christ, 3:1
meaning of “David”, 17:1
psaltery, 4:1
day:
joyfulness, 1:2
message to succeeding day, 18(2):4
dead: come back to life…, 32(3):29
death, 4:9; 8:13; 15:7; 17:15; 19:6; 20:12;
32(3):25
See also immortality; incorruptibility;
mortality
arrows as instruments of, 7:15
blasphemy and, 10:11
Christ and fear of, 30(2):3
Christ’s battle with, 23:8
Christ’s fear not in himself but in us,
30(2):3
defeat of, 29(2):11
devil and, 30(2):14
dying: fearing, 30(2):12
fear of, 21(2):4; 27:6-7; 29(1):12
first the soul, then the body, 30(2):12
gates of, 9:14
health, and fear of, 6:3
human constraint, 30(2):13
I long to die and be with Christ…, 30(3):5
mindful of, 6:6
parents: natural and divine, 26(2):18
pierced no more, 29(2):22
preferable to pain, 30(1):11
reign of, 6:2
rescue from, 26(2):22
sin as, 6:6
sleep, 3:5; 12:3-5
snares of, 17:5
sorrows of, 17:5
sword as metaphor for, 21(2):21
wage due to sin, 31(2):7
walk in shadow of, 22:4
wayward desires, 9:14
**where is your sting…**, 29(2):12
deceit, 9:25,27; 11:2,14; 16:2; 23:4
definition, 5:8
pure, 11:7
saying evil things, 5:12
dedication: of the foundation, 29(2):11
deer, 28:9
defeat, 26(2):5
deliberation: words of God, 11:7
delight, 7:9; 9:17; 15:10; 26(2):8,9
art and the artist, 26(2):12
empty, 22:5
food of truth, 5:15
good and bad, 9:15
heart’s desire, 32(2):6
inappropriate objects of, 7:11
objects of, 4:8
deliverance, 17:51
prayer for, 21(1):20-22
demons, 21(2):5
See also devil
gifts related to worship, 26(2):19
desert: world as, 28:8
32(3):10
bodily subdued, 6:13
carnal longings, 6:7; 26(1):2
inward promptings, 7:11
law of sin, 3:10
longings tearing the soul apart, 6:5
loving what God wants us to love, 26(2):7
rich ravaged by, 29(2):17
self-indulgent, 9:8
sevenfold cycle of days, 11:9
temporal goods, 4:9
will of God and, 32(2):2
despair, 4:8; 5:17; 26(1):14; 31(2):5; 32(2):4
devil, 7:2,3; 8:13; 10:6; 12:3-5; 16:11; 17:46;
29(2):8,11; 30(1):9; 31(2):17,26;
32(1):16; 32(3):12
Adam and, 29(2):17
ancient enemy, 30(2):14
anger of God against, 7:5
battle with, 14:1
Church at war against, 28:1
dominion over the poor, 9:28
everny; envy, 30(4):2
envy and heaven, 30(4):2
fall of, 18(2):13
father according to this world, 26(2):18
God’s permission needed, 26(2):5
Job and, 21(2):5,8; 29(2):6; 32(3):12
Job’s wife and, 30(4):12
killed Job’s children, 29(2):7
lion, 21(2):22
persecutes the soul, 7:4
power as God permits, 32(3):12
power given to called “God’s hand”,
29(2):7
praying against, 7:5
predestination, 3:10
ruler of the ungodly, 26(2):20
rules in cities, 9:8
testing us by bodily pain, 21(2):5
trap, 30(2):10
turning back the enemy, 9:4
devotion, 11:7
diapsalma, 4:4; 9:20
dignity, 31(1):11
disapproval, 25(2):8
disciples, 20:4
call to perfection, 9:4
called sons or brothers, 7:1
death of, 21(2):28
filled by Holy Spirit, 8:3
orphans, 9:31
sheep among wolves, 32(3):8
tested, 10:12
32(3):10
moral conversion and, 9:1
disease, 1:6
distress, 30(1):10; 30(2):16; 30(3):1,2;
31(2):19,23
deliverance from, 24:22
refuge in, 31(1):7
sorrow and, 30(3):3
tested by, 16:3
Dives and Lazarus, 6:6
doctrine: one, 31(2):18
dogs, 9:14; 21(1):17,21; 21(2):21
dominion: terror, 9:28
Donatists, 10:1; 10:6; 18(2):5;
21(2):24,28,29,32; 30(3):8;
32(3):28,29
bishops, 21(2):31
claim to preserve scriptures, 21(2):30

**Value III/15**
See also devil
Christ raised above, 26(2):13
Christ the judge of, 20:9
of the Church, 29(2):6
deliverance from, 16:12-13
false allegations, 26(1):12
given ability, but not will, to do harm, 29(2):6
Head raised above, 26(2):11
human, 30(4):2
living among vices, 6:9
persecution of Christians, 29(2):8
pray for rescue from, 30(4):2
praying for, 6:13
scorn, 30(1):12
sinners or pagans as, 9:4
swords of, 9:8
tents and, 26(2):6
torture by, 30(1):11
two kinds of, 30(4):2
envy, 17:6
devils and heaven, 30(4):2
equity: face of God looked on, 10:11
error, 9:24; 18(2):11
grace and, 30(2):10
escape/usage: the mind, 3:1
establish (the word), 32(3):5
eternal goods, 30(4):6
eternal days, 26(2):7
everlasting gates, 23:7
hope, 9:11
mortal search for, 26(1):9
eternal punishment, 20:10
Depart from me..., 30(2):5
good not sorted out, 25(2):6
eternity, 9:7,24; 16:5; 20:5; 23:4; 30(1):14
eighth day, 11:1,9
love of, 4:10; 30(3):11
mercy from, 24:6
past and future, 2:6
shame, 30(2):5
eucharist:
Amen, 32(2):4
Judas and, 10:6
evangelists, 17:15; 18(1):2,4-5
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
evening, 29(2):16
evil: See good and evil; goodness; iniquity;
wickedness
example: deterrent effect, 30(3):6
existence, 30(2):1
experience: faith and, 8:6
eye:
beam or splinter in, 30(3):4
blinded by anger, 30(3):4
eyelids, 10:12
heart, 26(2):15
inner and outer, 21(1):4
lift eyes to God, 31(2):21
face of God, 31(2):9
sinner not wanting to see, 29(2):16
belief in God's promises, 32(2):9
children, 10:6
Christ's name upon us, 32(1):21
merit and, 32(1):4
heart and, 22:4
Holy Spirit and, 32(1):6
intention directed by, 32(1):4
joy in God's protection, 26(1):5,6
merit and, 32(1):4
my light and my salvation, 26(2):4
possibility of, 18:1:3
righteousness and, 31(2):2,3,24
rooted in history, 8:8
rule of, 9:6
sacraments, 9:14
sacrifice of Abraham, 31(2):3
things beyond experience, 8:6
understanding and believing (Isaiah), 8:6
unity and truth, 26(1):4
value of works done in, 32(1):4
weakening of, 7:7
When Son of Man comes..., 31(2):11
whole world, 26(2):13
will to love and, 31(2):5,6
works by choosing to love, 17:25;
31(2):5,6; 32(2):9
works done in, 32(3):2
false allegations, 26(1):12
falsehood, 4:8; 24:5; 25(2):1,3
See also lie
love of, 4:4
repayment for, 27:4
temporal world, 18(1):6
fame, 9:24
famine, 32(1):19; 32(3):2
present life as, 32(3):25
free will and, 31(2):16
stars and, 31(2):16
favoritism, 32(2):12
30(1):8,9,12,13,23; 30(3):6,7
abiding for ever in love, 18(1):10
beginning of wisdom, 24:12
being beside oneself, 30(2):2
Christians and, 18(2):14
death and, 22:4
devil and, 30(2):10
ecclesiasticity of, 30(2):3
Holy Spirit, 18(2):10
inner dread, 30(4):10
judgment day, 6:8
loss of temporal goods, 13:6
love and, as motive, 32(2):6
obedience and, 32(2):6
perfection casts out, 5:17
Peter walking on water, 30(4):10
purity and, 18(1):10
reverent, 32(3):11
security of heart, 26(2):6
snare, 31(2):21
suffering and, 30(2):3
terror and, 30(2):10
beginning of wisdom, 14:4
every region of the earth, 32(3):12
God's electives love, 32(1):18
humiliation, 30(4):12
inheritance, 24:13
nothing else, 32(3):10
presence of the Church, 21(2):24
pure, not servile, 18(2):10
salvation and, 5:9
strong divine support, 24:14
sweetness, 30(1):20; 30(4):6
feet, 17:34
guided into open spaces..., 30(3):15;
30(3):1,2
fidelity: becoming a faithful person, 32(2):9
fig tree: no fruit on, 31(2):9
finished (the word), 31(2):5
fire, 6:3; 17:3; 18(1):11; 20:10; 21(1):15;
29(2):10
come to set fire on the earth, 25(2):7
Holy Spirit, 18(2):7
purging, 25(1):3; 25(2):7
saved by, 29(2):9
silver tried by, 11:7
testing the heart, 16:3
trials, 21(2):5
firmament, 18(2):3
tells works of God's hands, 18(2):3
fame, 9:24
famine, 32(1):19; 32(3):2
present life as, 32(3):25
free will and, 31(2):16
stars and, 31(2):16
favoritism, 32(2):12
30(1):8,9,12,13,23; 30(3):6,7
abiding for ever in love, 18(1):10
beginning of wisdom, 24:12
being beside oneself, 30(2):2
Christians and, 18(2):14
death and, 22:4
devil and, 30(2):10
ecclesiasticity of, 30(2):3
Holy Spirit, 18(2):10
inner dread, 30(4):10
judgment day, 6:8
loss of temporal goods, 13:6
love and, as motive, 32(2):6
obedience and, 32(2):6
perfection casts out, 5:17
Peter walking on water, 30(4):10
purity and, 18(1):10
reverent, 32(3):11
security of heart, 26(2):6
snare, 31(2):21
suffering and, 30(2):3
terror and, 30(2):10
beginning of wisdom, 14:4
every region of the earth, 32(3):12
God's electives love, 32(1):18
humiliation, 30(4):12
inheritance, 24:13
nothing else, 32(3):10
presence of the Church, 21(2):24
pure, not servile, 18(2):10
salvation and, 5:9
strong divine support, 24:14
sweetness, 30(1):20; 30(4):6
feet, 17:34
guided into open spaces..., 30(3):15;
30(3):1,2
fidelity: becoming a faithful person, 32(2):9
fig tree: no fruit on, 31(2):9
finished (the word), 31(2):5
fire, 6:3; 17:3; 18(1):11; 20:10; 21(1):15;
29(2):10
come to set fire on the earth, 25(2):7
Holy Spirit, 18(2):7
purging, 25(1):3; 25(2):7
saved by, 29(2):9
silver tried by, 11:7
testing the heart, 16:3
trials, 21(2):5
firmament, 18(2):3
tells works of God's hands, 18(2):3
the word, 32(3):7
first robe, 29(1):12
fish:
  both good and bad in nets, 8:13
  numerous; weighing down the boats, 30(2):10
fishermen: catch bursting the nets, 30(3):2
flattery, 13:4; 24:3
bribe, 25(2):13
lie, 5:12
flesh, 17:20, 37, 40, 47; 18(2):4; 26(2):21;
  31(2):9; 32(1):16; 32(2):4
carnal sensibilities, 26(2):4
corruptible, 29(1):4
delight; weakness, 6:7
devil and, 12:3-5
eternal life, 29(2):19
giving in to, 7:9
glass, 30(2):12
hope, 15:9
indulgence, 8:13
law of sin, 6:7
parents, 26(2):18
pleasure, 8:13
salvation of all flesh, 29(2):1
sorrows of, 17:5
flight, 3:1
flood(-s), 28:10
keep us from God, 31(2):18
flood-waters, 31(2):18, 19
food, 30(3):12
  adult, 22:5
distinguishing, 10:10
fool, 25(1):5; 25(2):9
foot, 30(2):3
footprints, 17:37
forbearance, 7:3
forbidden tree, 9:14
forgiveness:
  Christ as example of, 7:3
  prayer for, 18(2):13
  forgiveness of sin, 24:10, 11, 18; 29(2):22;
  31(2):7, 8; 10:21; 32(1):5
  confession needed, 7:19
  glory of God proclaimed in, 18(2):2
God forgives before confession is out, 31(2):15
grace and, 31(1):1-2
mercy, 32(2):11
praying for, 31(2):17
preached in name of Christ, 32(3):7
secret sins, 18(2):1
forgotten, 30(1):13
fornication, 18(1):10
fortitude, 11:7; 30(1):4
foundation, 29(2):10
dedication of, 29(2):11
four (number): human body, 6:2
free will, See will.
freedom, 30(1):8
  real enemy, 30(2):14
  spacious, 4:2
friend: life given for, 19:5
fruit, 20:11; 30(3):6
fruit-bearing, 8:3
winepress, 8:1
fury: anger and, 6:3
future goods: eye has not seen…, 9:14
future life:
  doubts or despair, 4:8
  names in scripture, 30(4):8
games, 30(2):6
gates: everlasting, 23:7, 9
gem, 18(1):11; 18(2):11
generations, 7:9
human and divine, 9:24
gentiles, 7:1, 6; 9:1; 13:3, 8; 17:13, 17, 45, 50;
  49:5; 30(3):5; 30(4):9; 32(3):3
mortality, 21(1):28
gentle ones, 31(2):23
giant, 32(1):16; 32(3):23
gift(-s):
  demon worship and, 26(2):19
  faith and, 10:6
  mark of God’s mercy, 32(2):11
  offer refused, 32(3):2
  spiritual, not taken away, 26(2):5
  temporal, taken away, 26(2):5
  thank God for, 31(2):10
to those who ask, 9:14
  varied, in members of Christ’s body, 32(3):21
gladdness: singing, 32(2):8
glory, 1:1; 7:4; 8:8; 9:29; 15:5, 10; 17:4; 19:8;
  28:2; 29(1):12; 30(3):1
Church as dwelling place, 25(1):8
confessing God’s name, 19:6
God indwelling, 5:17
God’s dwelling place, 25(2):12
Head of the body, 30(1):6
heavens; saints, 18(2):2
need of, 30(2):6
resurrection, 20:6
revealed in Christ, 16:14
singing, 29(2):22
suffering, 31(2):25
to God’s name, 18(2):2
work of God’s hands, 18(2):3
gluttony, 10:10; 13:4
goats, 8:13; 9:9; 29(2):21
God:
  almighty, 32(2):2
  always before my eyes, 15:8
  anger and long-suffering, 7:12
  anger, 2:4, 10, 11; 6:3; 9:22, 30; 26(2):19
loving wrongfully, 26(2):7
praying for, 7:5
turning his face away, 26(1):9
arrows of divine love, 7:14
beauty of wisdom, 32(2):7
being of, 18(2):3
better than the soul, 32(3):16
blessing, in the churches, 25(2):14
cannot be defeated, 26(2):5
cannot deny himself, 32(2):9
caressing or beating, 32(2):3
charged with injustice, 31(2):25
concern for human affairs, 9:29
contemplation, See contemplation.
declaration against, 31(2):16
denying, 13:2
devil’s power and, 26(2):5
divine plans; enduring from age to age,
32(3):14
don’t turn your face from me, 26(2):16
ear = power by which God hears, 9:33
effects in us, 3:6
evading: run to Christ, 30(2):8
everywhere in his totality, 18(2):3
existence denied, 31(2):25
eyes of, 10:8
eyes of, 31(2):21
face turned away, 9:29; 12:1
face-to-face knowledge of, 12:2
father creator, 26(2):18
father to orphans, 9:31
fidelity, 32(1):4; 32(2):9
filled with the fullness of, 17:34
flight to, not from, 30(2):8
foreknowledge of our neighbor, 25(2):2
forgetting, 9:17; 16:13
foundation, 17:19
fullfills promises, 32(3):26
gifts of all that is good, 32(2):9
gives and takes away, 32(3):12
 glorified by our deeds, 28:2
glory, 1:2; 8:3; 18(2):3; 25(2):12; 32(3):20
enjoyment of, 5:16
forgiveness of sin, 18(2):2
need of, 30(2):6
God is the Church, 5:1
good from which all good derives, 26(2):8
goodness of, 8:10; 10:5; 24:7; 26(2):14
Goodness-Itself, 26(2):8
greed of, 5:7
hears the Church, 5:4
hears voice of my heart, 17:7
heart seeking the face of, 26(2):15,16
heavens proclaim glory of, 18(2):5
help and protector, 32(1):20; 32(3):26
hidden, 17:11; 30(4):8,10,12
hidden/open judgments, 9:1
higher gifts of, 32(2):6
holy and blameless, 17:26-30
honored by name of, 19:6
horn of salvation, 17:3
human resources and, 32(3):23
I AM WHO I AM, 1:6; 9:11
impure souls and knowledge of, 12:1
incomprehensible to human thought, 17:11
indwelling, 17:7
inheritance, 32(2):3
invoking, 30(4):4
judge seated on throne, 9:6
judgments, 9:23; 18(2):11
just teacher, 24:9
justice, 7:12; 10:11; 19:9; 30(2):6
confession of, 7:19
ignorance of, 30(2):6
knowledge, 31(2):25
and being, 1:6
of individual actions, 32(3):19,22
knowledge of hope and, 9:11
liberator, 30(2):6
light of, 4:8; 17:29; 26(2):15
longing for vision of, 26(1):4
lordship now and hereafter, 27:9
magnificence, 8:8
manifold mercy, 32(2):5
mercy, 8:10; 24:8; 32(1):5
mercy and judgment, 24:10; 31(2):1,11; 32(3):2
mercy now and for ever, 22:6
mighty in battle, 23:8
mother nourishes us, 26(2):18
name:
joy in, 19:8
knowledge of, 9:11
poured out like ointment, 30(4):9
nature: non-existence and, 9:11
not the same to everyone, 32(3):17
omnipresence, 30(2):8; 32(2):5
opposition to, 32(2):1
our inheritance and our possession, 32(3):17
our mother, 30(2):9
plea heard, 16:6
pleasing to oneself, 32(2):1
pleasure in, 32(2):6
possesses and is possessed, 7:32; 32(3):18
power(s) of, 9:7; 29; 32
praise and thanksgiving to, 17:48
presence of, 5:2; 8:10
protector, 26(1):5; 27:8; 30(1):3,5; 30(2):8
pure way to, 17:31
refuge for the poor, 9:10
remembering, 9:13
reserving himself for us, 32(3):16
secret plans, 7:5
seeing face-to-face, 15:10

Volue III/15
choosing love and, 31(2):9
faith the root of, 31(2):6
fruit of, 31(2):9
godless sinner, 31(2):7
hope and, 31(2):6
justification and, 31(2):3,6
pleasing, 18(2):16
precedence of faith, 31(2):4
goodness:
born again, 4:8
delight in, 26(2):8
enjoyment of the good, 4:8
gifts of God, 32(2):9
God, source of all good things, 29(1):12
God, the Good of all good, 26(2):8
leading a good life, 31(2):2
no one who does anything good..., 13:2,4
pleasing God rather than humans, 18(2):16
seek what is better than self or soul, 32(3):5;16
think not that one alone is good, 25(2):5
tribulation of little ones, 9:20
unchangeable: contemplation, 26(2):8
goods:
temporal, seen; eternal, not seen, 9:14
worthy of love, 4:8
goodwill: lying and, 5:7
gospel: preached in every language, 18(1):4-5
grace, 21(2):4; 23:2; 30(2):6; 30(3):14;
31(2):9
deliverance from death-ridden body,
30(2):13
faith, earning, works, 31(2):6
forgiveness and, 31(1):1
free gift, 18(2):2; 30(2):6; 30(3):14;
31(2):7
free will and, 26(2):17
good works and, 31(2):9
humility and, 18(2):15
lottery, 30(3):13
mercy and, 31(2):1
merit and, 24:8; 30(2):6
My grace is sufficient..., 31(2):10
perfected in the end, 26(2):2
perfection and the world, 30(3):5
prevenient, 5:17
salvation, 18(2):3; 30(3):13
sufficient, 26(2):7
world history, 29(2):16

grain, 8:1
grape: metaphor, 8:1,2,13
grapeskins, 8:2,13

gratitude, 30(2):2
greedy, 7:17; 9:15,25; 11:9; 16:9; 19:9;
21(1):14; 23:2; 30(1):9; 30(4):4;
32(3):16
greed: throat an open grave, 5:12

grace, 30(3):5

grain, 8:1

grape: metaphor, 8:1,2,13
grapeskins, 8:2,13

gratitude, 30(2):2
gaping throat, 13:4
love of the world, 31(2):5
temptation, 30(2):10
grief, 9:25; 12:2; 26(2):1
groaning, 26(2):1, 14, 22, 23; 29(2):18; 
31(2):19, 20; 32(2):10
guardian: Samaritan (the word), 30(2):8
guidance:
  path of righteousness, 22:3
  staff, 22:5
guile, 11:4; 31(2):9
persecutions, 9:27
poison, 13:4
guilt, 32(3):2
conscience of, 31(1):3-4
desire and, 29(2):6
law and, 30(2):6; 31(2):17
habit:
  overcoming bad habits, 30(2):13
  sinning and blindness, 5:6
hair-shirt, 29(2):21
hairstyle, 32(2):7
hands:
  embracing truths, 25(1):6
  eternal power, 16:13
hand-washing, 25(2):10
  32(1):10; 32(2):3; 32(3):4
  behavior and unhappiness, 30(2):13
desire something other than self, 32(3):16
desired by all, 32(3):15
first robe, 29(1):12
having (or not having) what is loved, 26(2):7
home in heavenly city, 32(1):12
justice and, 32(3):15
material things and, 32(3):16
possessing God, 32(3):18
possessing being possessed; God, 32(3):15
seek in your own soul, 32(3):16
submission to God, 32(1):11
worldly; false, 30(1):7
harm:
  charity and, 31(2):5
  evil person has will to do, 29(2):6
  malice, 32(3):12
  harmlessness, 7:8
harp, 12:6
harvest: great; workers few, 11:6
haste: prayer for, 30(2):8
hate, 17:41; 24:19; 25(2):3; 30(4):2; 32(3):12
anger and, 30(3):4
darkness, 7:19
hay, 29(2):9
head: pre-eminence over other members, 29(2):2
healing, 6:4; 29(1):3-4; 30(2):8; 31(2):12,13
Christ prays for, in our name, 29(2):12
illness leading to, 15:4
health, 1:6; 6:4; 7:10; 32(2):5; 32(3):21
fear of death and, 6:3
keeping the commandments, 18(2):12
hearing:
  presence of God, 5:2
  understanding, 25(2):11
heart, 4:4; 10:12; 16:2, 14; 18(1):11; 20:14;
  32(2):4; 32(3):27
affections of, 9:17
agreement of, 24:21
always in God’s sight, 18(1):15
aspirations in, 16:10
believing in, 26(1):5
bitterness, 32(3):10
broadening, 4:6
bruised, 31(2):11
circumcision, 6:2
clean of, and seeing God, 26(2):15
confession heard, 31(1):5
contrition, 28:5
court of the Lord, 28:2
crooked and twisted, 31(2):25
crying to God in, 30(4):10
delight in, 7:11; 32(2):6
denying God, 13:2
desire, 19:5
empty, 5:11, 12
enlarged, 26(2):8
enlargement: God poured into heart, 4:2
enlivened by fire of love, 17:13
evil master, 18(2):14
evil thoughts, 18(2):13
eyes of, 12:3-5
eyes of, seeking God’s face, 26(2):15, 16
faith in God indwelling, 9:12
fear, 26(1):3; 26(2):5
firmness of, 18(2):3
flee to God in, 30(4):8
forgotten in, 30(1):13
fruitful, 10:10
full of riches, 21(2):27
gaining insight in seeing, 30(2):13
God and preparation of, 9:33
God enlarges, 4:2
God hears voice of, 31(2):15
God lives in, 17:7
God saves the upright, 7:11
God speaks to, 26(2):15
guileless, 31(2):9
heavy-hearted, 4:3
hiding hope in, 30(4):7
holiness, 10:5
home for God, 30(4):8
impiety forgiven, 31(2):15, 16
individually fashioned, 32(1):15; 32(3):21
inner cry of, 5:2
inner riches, 30(4):12
inner sight, 18(2):9
intentions: good or evil, 8:1
invoking God into, 30(4):4
inward parts, 7:9
judgment, 9:9
learn of me..., 13:4
life of faith, 22:4
like melting wax, 21(1):15; 21(2):15
meditation of, 18(2):16
oblivion, 30(3):10
prayer from, 4:5,6
praying silently in, 3:4
praying within, 4:8
pure heart sees God, 5:5; 23:4
purging fire, 25(1):3; 25(2):7
purity of, 17:21
rejoice in God, 32(1):21
right of, 32(2):2
righteousness of, 31(1):11; 31(2):25
sacring of, 26(1):14
simplicity, 4:9
singing in, 12:6
song of the, 32(2):8
speaking evil in, 27:3
speaking truth in, 14:3
storm; Christ asleep in, 25(2):4
strengthened, 30(2):1; 30(4):13
stretched by affliction, 32(3):10
sudden enlarging, 4:2
taste for good things, 30(4):6
testying by night and fire, 16:3
thoughts of God’s, 32(3):14
tribulations, 24:17
widened and sanctified, 28:2
will not fear, 26(2):3
will of God in, 32(2):4
heaven, 9:9;25; 10:12; 19:9; 23:7;9;
31(2):7,21
Church strains towards, 29(2):10
entering, 18(2):5
everly of devils, 30(4):2
everlasting home, 30(2):13
faith of loss, 13:6
firmament, 18(2):3
for ever with our Head, 26(2):11
interpretations, 18(2):4
love for kingdom of, 7:14
reigning with Christ, 21(2):31
reward, 26(1):12
tent-living as preparation for, 30(4):8
treasure of the heart, 7:9; 32(3):11
wish to reach without dying, 30(2):13
word understood as just person, 10:7
heavens (sky, stars, etc.), 18(1):2
established by word of God, 32(3):4,5,8
highest; unknowable, 32(3):6
metaphor for both Testaments, 8:7
proclaim glory of God, 18(2):5
righteous represented by, 32(1):6
rolled up like scroll, 8:7
saints, 18(2):3
scriptures, 8:9
tell out the glory of God, 32(3):20
understood as books, 8:8
weak humans become, 32(3):8
work of God, 8:7,8; 18(2):3
heavy-hearted, 4:8
hell, 15:10; 17:6; 30(4):4
fear of, 32(2):6
punishments in, 6:6
punishments: bellies of cattle, 8:1
help: prayer for, 21(2):20-22
heresy, 24:16; 29(2):2; 30(3):8; 30(4):8
heretics, 10;4; 18(2):5,6,12; 21(2):24,29;
31(2):11
common aspects of, 10:6
confess Christ, 18(2):11
enemies of faith, 8:6
enemy-cum-defender, 8:6
false prophets, 7:7
God and the poor, 10:8
persecutions, 9:27
providence and, 9:20
hidden things, 8:6; 9:2,3,4,9,35; 14:35;
18(1):8
hind, 30(4):8,10,12
high priest, 26(2):10
history, 8:5,8
holiness, 10:5; 17:26; 29(1):5
awe, 2:9
confession of impiety, 31(1):6
nowhere to be found, 11:2
holocaust, 19:4
holy souls, 8:13
Holy Spirit, 1:3; 4:2; 5:7; 18(1):3; 18(2):5,9;
26(2):1; 30(2):2; 31(2):18,25
altogether (the word), 18(2):10
apostles and, 9:7
Christ glorified, 7:6
converts the soul, 18(2):8
disciples filled with, 8:3; 30(4):9
faith stabilized by, 32(1):6
fear granted by, 18(2):10
finger of God, 8:7
gifts received from, 28:9
godhead, 5:3
mind consumed by, 4:7
purging fire, 25(2):7
scriptures and, 8:8
sending of, 18(2):7
speaking in tongues, 18(2):10; 30(3):14
tongues like fire, 18(2):7
trust in, 18(1):2
work one with that of the Son, 32(3):5
home: tent and, 26(2):6; 30(4):8
honesty: accomplice to dishonesty, 32(2):12
honeycomb, 18(1):11
backward to faith; forward to charity,
31(2):5
Church in stormy seas, 9:29
conscience and, 31(2):5
death and, 3:10
do not hide your hope, 30(4):7
eternal things, 19:8
fear and, 30(2):3
good things as object of, 4:8
good works, 31(2):6
human, 30(3):12
humanity of Christ and, 3:10
morning, 29(2):16
patience, 4:2
salvation, 9:15
security of heart, 26(2):6
sinner and, 26(2):10
sinners, 24:6
sweetness, 32(3):17
temporal goods, 17:8
that which is seen, 5:4
this world, 30(4):12
horn of salvation, 17:2
horoscope, 31(2):18
horse, 31(1):9; 31(2):22,23
breaking in, 31(2):23
salvation and, 32(1):17; 32(3):24
worldly distinction (figure), 32(3):24
house:
component parts, 29(2):10
dedication of, 29(2):6,8,9
desire to dwell in, 26(2):8
dwelling in God's house for ever, 26(2):17
earthly dwellings, 26(2):8
living for ever in house of the Lord, 26(1):4; 26(2):8
name-plate, 21(2):31
human acts:
God's knowledge of, 32(3):19
human being(-s):
body and soul, 29(2):2
called oxen, 8:12
God's temple, 5:8
hope in, 10:5; 30(3):12
image of earthly man, 8:10
image of God, 29(2):2; 32(2):4
made by word of God, 18(2):3
one with Son of Man, 32(3):19
persons as gold, 18(1):11
trust in, 25(2):12
human body:
become better by the soul, 32(3):16
living sacrifice, 32(1):2
members individually formed, 32(3):21
movements of, 32(3):22
number four: qualities, 6:2
organs do different jobs, 32(3):21
parts attributed to God, 9:33
sown as animal; risen as spiritual, 26(2):4
human condition, 25(2):2; 26(2):1
constraints; limitations, 30(2):13
plenty, 29(2):17
temptations, 29(2):8
weak become strong, 32(3):8
human race:
churches and, 8:5
fallen, 26(2):8
humankind:
noblest work of God, 18(2):3
old and new, 8:10
vaunting itself, 9:34
humiliation, 31(2):25
humility, 7:5; 6:13; 15:10; 18(2):3;
Christ came because of pride, 18(2):15
giving up iniquity, 31(2):14
gives pleasure in secret, 18(2):16
grace to the humble, 18(1):8
horns of unicorns and, 21(2):22
judge for the humble, 9:34
no one who exalts himself... 31(2):11
rich people, 21(1):30
hunger, 32(3):27
Hushai (friend of King David), 7:1,3
hymn: highest heavens, 32(3):6
hypocrites, 11:5
idols, 30(1):18
ignorance, 24:7
denying God, 13:2
hearts of others, 30(2):13
image of God, 32(2):4
degrading, 29(2):2
elements of, 29(2):2
mercy of God and, 32(2):11
soul as, 32(3):16
Word of God and, 32(3):16
imitation, 30(3):12
imitation of Christ, 21(1):30
poor people, 21(2):27
immortality, 4:9; 26(1):4; 27:6-7,8; 29(1):1;
30(2):10
Church, 23:2
earthly satisfactions, 26(2):16
temporal goods and, 23:4
impious, 9:8; 20:10; 31(2):9,17,25
confessed, 31(1):6
heart, 31(2):16
impious person, 31(2):6,24

Volue III/15
justified, 30(2):6
Apollinarian heresy, 29(2):2
body, but no soul (heresy), 29(2):3
Christ born without intercourse, 21(2):7
divine Word in human form, 8:2
God bowed the heavens, 17:10
God humbling himself in time, 26(1):6
humility, 7:13
mortality and, 18(1):7
prepared dwelling for, 32(1):14
Son of God; Son of Man, 30(3):1
taking on of manhood, 3:3
virgin’s womb, 18(2):6
wisdom of God, 30(2):9
incorruption, 4:9; 26(2):4,9; 32(3):16
death swallowed up in victory, 26(2):14
increase: plenty or poverty, 4:9
individual differences, 30(3):1; 32(1):15
chosen by God, 32(3):18
Christ and the nations, 24:14
fear of God, 24:15
God as, 5:1
rights of children, 32(2):4
Church shaken by its members, 30(3):5
confessing, 31(2):14
evil as punishment, 5:10
harmful, 7:17
injustice, 7:16
lie to itself, 26(2):21; 32(2):9
mind prospering in, 9:29
inner life, 1:4
belly as, 30(3):4
innocence, 7:8; 8:12; 17:26; 23:4; 24:21; 25(1):2,11-12; 25(2):6
killing the innocent, 9:26
loss of, 7:12
inquisitiveness, 8:13
instruction: understanding and accepting, 2:10
intention: collusion with oppressors, 26(2):21
God knows our intentions, 32(3):22
God knows the human heart, 7:9
good actions and, 31(2):4
good or evil separated by, 8:1
repaying evil for evil, 5:10
reparation for, 27:4
invocation: calling God into, 30(4):4
irreligious, See ungodly.
Isaac: Abraham’s sacrifice, 30(3):9
prefigured Son of God, 30(3):9
Isaiah, 13:8
Israel, 8:2; 9:1; 21(1):25,26; 21(2):6
blindness, 13:8; 19:9
salvation, 19:5
Israels (cudgels), 10:5
Jacob, 13:8; 19:2; 21(2):24
James, Apostle, 21(2):27; 31(2):3
Jemini, 7:1
Jerusalem:
city where Christ suffered, 30(4):9
heavenly, 15:3; 17:30; 25(2):10; 26(2):18
image of the Church, 9:12
Jesus Christ, 9:35; 17:1; 18(1):1; 20:1-4; 25(1):1; 28:3; 29(2):8,10
See also Christians; Church; Incarnation; Messiah; Mystical Body; Redemption; Salvation; Son of God; Son of Man; Word of God
adulterous woman and, 30(2):6,7
all spiritual creation subject to, 8:12
all things under his feet, 8:12
anointed one saved, 19:7
anointing the body of, 26(2):2; 29(2):2
appropriateness of psalm 30, 30(2):4
ascended into heaven, 29(2):14
avenged, 30(4):12
belief in, 32(2):4
Bend your ear toward me…, 30(2):7
bones = strong supporters, 21(2):12
bridgroom and bride, 18(2):2; 30(2):4
cross and resurrection, 19:4
crucifixion, 21(1):17-19
See also passion and death (below)
abandonment to savagery, 21(2):12-14
I stretch out my hands…, 27:2
Let him come down from the cross, 29(2):4
poured out like water, 21(2):15
raging mob, 21(1):14
royal title, 15:1
veil of the temple torn, 21(2):15
David’s son, 9:35
dead, See passion and death [below]
disciples tested by his death, 10:12
divinity, 15:3; 18(1):7
God praying, 29(2):1
donkey and, 31(2):23
emptied himself..., 28:6; 30(2):2
der; the law, 13:1; 30(2):3
endurance, 29(2):7
exaltation, 7:7
example of forgiveness, 7:3
fallen human race and, 26(2):8
fear and, 30(2):3
figures of: David and Abessalon, 3:1
foundations, 29(2):10
glorification, 4:4; 7:6; 8:11; 23:1,8
glory and beauty, 18(1):2; 20:6
godhead, 29(2):2
good Samaritan, 30(2):8
head and body, 17:51; 18(2):10
heart: wisdom in scriptures, 21(2):15
heart: I am the vine, 32(3):18
heavenly man, 9:4
hid from his persecutors, 29(2):21
high priest in God’s tabernacle, 26(2):10
hope, 21(1):10
humanity, 3:10; 8:5; 18(2):6; 27:2
Apollinarian heresy, 29(2):2
evidence of his body, 29(2):3
fear of death, 30(2):3
human soul denied, 29(2):3
hunger and thirst, 29(2):3
integrity of his nature, 29(2):2
like a lens, 16:8
like real actions of the soul, 29(2):3
unique, 29(2):2
will, 32(2):2
humiliation and exaltation, 7:6; 8:11;
21(1):7
humidity, 9:1; 20:8; 31(2):18; 29(2):7
I am the vine…, 32(3):18
I am the way…, 31(2):18
I was hungry…, 29(2):22; 32(2):11
inheritance, 15:5,6
intercedes for us, 21(2):3; 23:9
Jerusalem, 30(4):9
Judas and, 3:1
judge of his enemies, 20:9
king, 15:1; 21(1):29; 21(2):30,32
king and priest prefigured, 26(2):2
king of all powers, 23:10
knowledge of glory, 23:10
knowledge of day of judgment, 6:1
law: way, truth, and life, 26(2):20
light and salvation, 26(2):3
Lord-Man, 15:4; 4:1; 7:20
lost sheep and, 8:12
love for: cling to Christ, 30(2):14
love surpassing all knowledge, 8:5
made himself as staff for us, 32(3):17
magnificence, 8:4
mediator between Father and humankind, 29(2):1
mediator, 27:1; 30(1):2
message to apostles, 18(2):4
miracles: disbelief, 27:1
mountain, 3:4; 10:1
mountain-like greatness of love, 14:1
name acknowledged among the nations, 2:3
name of, 6:12
name: wonderful in whole earth, 8:4,13
nativities: born without intercourse, 21(2):7
nativities: star, 18(2):2
noble birth and humility, 28:6
non-recognition as punishment, 27:5
not what I will…, 31(2):26
obedience, 20:8
obedient unto death, 31(2):18
our anger and, 25(2):3
our foundation, 29(2):9
passion and death:
abandonment, 21(1):2
annual commemoration of, 21(2):1
believers and mockers, 21(2):1
oxcellence of the Word of God, 3:3
expedient that one should die, 20:12
Father, if it is possible…, 31(2):26
fear and, 30(2):3
fruit of the, 21(2):23
garments as his sacraments, 21(2):19
garments divided, 21(2):19
gloating of his enemies, 29(2):4
hanging on the cross, 21(1):1
hostility to, 21(2):8
humiliation, 8:11; 21(2):8
Into your hands…, 30(2):11
Jews and, 10:12
let this cup pass from me…, 21(2):4
mockery, 21(1):8-9; 21(2):9
psalm 21, 21(2):2
saddened by, 31(2):26
scorned before; honored after, 21(2):16
silence about, 7:1
sorrowful to point of death, 30(2):3
stabbled on the cross, 29(2):22
they numbered all my bones, 21(2):18;
30(2):11
weakness, 29(2):4
why have you forsaken me…, 21(1):2;
21(2):3,8; 30(2):11
wickedness, 7:9
willing sleep of death, 3:5
Passover celebrated annually, 21(2):1
patience, 3:1; 7:12
pity on his people, 11:6
possessions held in common with,
21(2):31
power, 9:32
prays for his creatures, 19:7; 29(2):4
prays for his healing, 29(2):12
preachers as tongue of, 21(2):16
presence of our Head with us, 26(2):11
priest and sacrifice, 26(2):2
priesthood: established in heaven, 19:10
prophecy: Abraham’s sacrifice, 30(3):9
prophet addresses, 19:1
raging against, 2:1
ram as symbol of, 30(3):9

Volue III/15
rebuked by the heathen, 9:7
reconciling world to himself, 9:6
redemption, See redemption.
relief of the destitute, 11:6
resurrection, 32(3):7
Christ intercedes for us, 29(2):1
flesh healed by, 29(2):12
Head and members, 29(2):14
human Christ and prospect of, 30(2):3
morning, 29(2):16
prayer for, 20:5; 29(1):9-10
rejoicing and gladness, 29(1):6
resurrected body, 32(3):7
Thomas and, 21(2):17
returning on high, 7:7,8
revelation in glory, 16:14
righteousness, 25(2):3; 30(4):5
rock, 26(2):13
run to, to evade God, 30(2):8
sacrifice, 2:7; 19:10
salvation, 9:15
scorn for, 30(1):19
scorned (Head and members), 30(4):5
separation from love of, 23:10
shepherd, 22:1-2
silence of, 7:1
sinlessness, 18(1):8; 29(2):1; 30(2):6
son of man, 9:35
speaking in the psalms, 30(2):11
speaking within Paul, 4:8
speaks in person of the Church, 24:1-3
spiritual understanding of, 12:1
spiritual way, 1:1
stone rejected by the builders..., 30(2):10
strength, 20:14
suffering of, 21(2):8,28,29; 30(4):12
taunted, 30(4):7
teaches how to live, 32(2):2
temporal, riches renounced by, 30(4):5
temptation of, 8:13; 9:4, 23:10; 30(2):10
testimonies of prophets and evangelists, 24:10
to the end..., 30(2):1
tunic woven from the top..., 21(2):19;
30(3):13
two comings of, 9:1
united to eternal Word, 27:2
voice cuts through frenzy of the people, 28:7
voice has splendid results, 28:4
voice humbles the proud, 28:5
weakness of others carried by, 31(2):26
who is my mother..., 9:31
whole, See Mystical Body
wicked attack on, 16:9-12
will give knowledge of himself, 26(1):1
wills what Father wills, 32(2):2
wisdom of God, 12:6; 18:2(3); 29(2):2
without me you can do nothing..., 30(2):4
woman and the ointment, 21(2):2
word in desert of the world, 28:8
you would have no power over me..., 32(3):12
Jews, 8:2; 13:8; 17:48,49; 29(2):11; 30(4):9;
crucifixion of Christ and, 21(2):1
king sought by, 17:1
passion of Christ and, 10:12
perfect justice, 30(2):6
righteousness, 30(2):13
second coming and, 9:1
sons of men, 13:3
temporal goods, 19:9
Job, 12:3-5
devil and, 21(2):5,8; 32(3):12
devil given power to test, 29(2):7
humiliation, 30(4):12
inner richness, 30(4):12
tested, 29(2):6
type of Christ, 29(2):8
wife of, 30(4):12
John, Apostle, 21(2):27
John the Baptist, Saint, 7:8; 29(2):2
joking: as lie, 5:7
journey, 16:5
free will and, 26(2):17
spiritual, 5:11
joy, 6:11; 7:9,11,19; 17:37; 18(1):6,12;
31(1):7,11; 31(2):19,20,24,26;
confess praise to God, 29(2):19
contemplation, 26(2):8,9
dance and, 32(2):1,2
eternal, 26(2):7
faith in God’s protection, 26(1):5,6
fear and, 32(3):11
future rejoicing, 9:3
glory of God, 5:16; 30(1):6
good and bad rejoicing, 19:8
heart, 18(1):9
inexpressible, 26(2):13
inner source, 30(4):12
meaning of “by day”, 1:2
mercy and, 5:8
morning, 29(2):16
present, 26(2):14
rejoicing in suffering, 4:2
resurrection of Christ, 29(1):6
sacrifice of, 26(1):6; 26(2):12
sadness turned to, 29(1):12
seeing face of God, 15:10
shout of, 32(2):8
silence and, 26(2):12
Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

song, 4:1
sought within, 4:8
jubilation: singing to God, 32(2):8
Judas, 25(2):13; 30(3):13
Abessalon and, 7:1
betrayal by, 3:2
foreshadowed by Abessalon, 3:1
night speaking to night, 18(2):4
received eucharist, 10:6
wisdom deserted mind of, 3:1
woman and the ointment, 21(2):2
Judea, 17:13; 30(4):9
judge:
  bribing, 25(2):13
  keeping God in mind, 25(2):13
  seated: three possible interpretations, 9:6
  judgment (-s; judgment day), 6:10; 9:1; 13:5; 16:2; 20:9; 25(1):2
  anger, 6:8
  contravention of truth, 25(2):13
  darkness: fear, 6:8
  delayed, 9:20
  divine, 16:8
  double-edged sword, 7:13
  dread of, 29(1):12
  earth: spiritual persons, 2:8
  eighth day, 6:2; 11:1
  entrusted to the Son, 7:8
  final: preparation, 9:2
  goats separated from sheep, 30(2):5
  God does not err, 25(2):12
  God judges in tranquillity, 6:3
  God loves, 32(1):5; 32(3):2
  God’s gift of righteousness, 7:8
  God’s sweet judgment, 18(1):11
  good separated from wicked, 25(2):6
  hidden and open, 9:1
  I was hungry ..., 32(2):11
  justice and equity, 9:9
  life is short, 6:13
  love and long for, 18(1):11
  making God’s our own, 9:5
  martyrs and, 9:13
  mercy and, 32(2):10:11
  nations in God’s sight, 9:19
  no one knows ..., 6:1
  proper recompense for each, 29(2):8
  repaying evil for evil, 7:8
  rich claimant, 32(2):12
  seat prepared, 9:9
  second coming of Christ, 6:1; 24:10
  secret; here and now, 9:1
  sword brandished openly, 9:8
  thief in the night, 6:1
  two hinted at in scripture, 9:1
  unfair, 32(2):12
  ungodly, 1:5
  unity and, 18(2):10
  unjust; taking bribes, 25(2):13
  word that I have spoken ..., 32(3):2
  Juno, 26(2):19
just: constancy, 29(2):8
justice, 2:10; 3:4; 9:8; 16:14; 17:9; 32(2):4
anger and, 2:4
conniving with injustice, 32(2):12
God cannot act unjustly, 31(2):25
good and bad people, 25(2):4
happiness and, 32(3):15
judgment and, 9:9
let the unjust be confounded, 24:4
perfect, Jews, 30(2):6
plural usage, 10:11
repaying evil by, 5:10
sacrifice of, 4:7
would-be kindness to a poor person, 32(2):12
justification, 5:17; 7:5; 9:7
Abraham and faith, 31(2):5
Christ’s blood, 18(2):2
confessing faith, 30(4):7
faith, 19:9
God’s work, 30(2):6
good works and, 31(2):2,3,8
Kadesh, 28:8
killing, 9:26
kindness, 5:17
kindness: punishment and, 18(2):2
king (-s), 9:23
  anointed, 26(2):2
  faith of, 32(3):13
  humble, 20:8
  power, 32(3):23
  understanding of, 2:9
kingdom of God: within, 4:9
knock, 9:14
  expedient, 6:1
  God tests to make us know, 6:1
  promise of, 8:6
  sorrow and, 29(2):8
  zeal and, 30(2):6
lamentation, 29(2):16
lamp, 7:8; 17:29
land of the living, 26(1):13; 26(2):22
languages:
  all people in unity, 18(2):10
  apostles heard in all, 32(3):7
last judgment, See judgment.
  law, 17:46; 24:12; 31(2):23
  blessing and commandment, 26(2):20
  charity as fullness of, 31(2):5
  Christ the end of, 13:1
  daring request, 26(2):20
  discerned or imposed, 1:2
  freedom from guilt, 30(2):6
  love as fulfillment of, 17:11

Volue III/15
members and mind in conflict, 30(2):6,13
mercy and Christ, 26(2):20
mind and flesh, 6:7
of God; of sin, 4:6
oppressed by, 31(2):17
righteousness, 31(2):1
ritual observances, 6:2
sin; rebellion, 26(1):6
suit, 25(2):13
undefined, 18(2):8
undefined: the Lord himself, 18(1):8
way to God, 26(1):11
world history, 29(2):16
written by finger of God, 8:7

Lazarus:
and Dives, 6:6
Paul’s conversion and, 9:2
leaves, 1:3; 31(2):9
left hand, 19:7
Levites, 15:6
liberty, 30(1):9
concealing the truth, 5:7
destructive, 5:7
duplicity of heart, 5:7
estranged sons, 17:46
fear of dying and, 30(2):12
flattering, 5:12
helpfulness as motive, 5:7
motivation, 5:7
nonbeing, 5:7
silence about the truth, 5:7
types with no great blame, 5:7
life, 17:15
given for friend, 19:5
given to us sinners, 29(2):15
long, 30(2):8
shortness of, 6:13
sweetness of, 9:20
temporal; preservation, 5:7
will of God, 29(2):15
light, 7:8; 8:10; 9:3; 20; 16:8; 25(2):14
See also enlightenment

countenance of God, 4:8
creation of, 7:19
discernment, 30(4):3
humankind, 29(2):1
mind and truth, 5:6
moon and Church, 10:3
withdrawn, 29(1):8
lightning, 17:13
lions, 16:11; 21(1):22; 21(2):14
devil, 21(2):22
violence and deceit, 9:27
lips, 11:4; 30(4):5
listening: words of God; hard work, 32(3):1
long-suffering, 9:18
Lord’s Prayer:
Deliver us from evil, 26(2):10
thy kingdom come, 7:8
lots: casting, 30(1):16; 30(3):13
lottery, 30(3):13
See also charity
actions prompted by, 31(2):5
beginning to do good, 31(2):9
burning with, 26(2):7
care for what you choose to love, 31(2):5,6
choose the Lord for, 30(4):11
duty to love a bad person, 30(4):2
emptiness and falsehood, 4:4
empty pleasure, 9:15
faith and the will, 31(2):5
faith and works, 32(2):9
faith works through, 17:25
fear, 30(4):11
fear and separation, 18(2):10
fear and, as motive, 32(2):6
fear that abides for ever, 18(1):10
foot of the soul, 9:15
for good things alone, 4:8
fraternal, 18(2):6
fruitful delight, 9:15
goods worthy of, 4:8
greatness of Christ’s love, 14:1
grown cold, 30(3):2
heart brought to life by, 17:13
longing, 32(3):17
means of coming to God, 17:11
obedience and, 32(2):6
object God wants us to love, 26(2):7
object worthy of, 26(2):7
perfect, 17:34
perfecrion of Church’s love, 16:5
praizeworthy, 32(2):6
progress in love of God, 5:4
repentance and, 17:9
rightly ordered, 9:15
root, 9:15
safety: remains whole, 21(2):19
seeking God’s face, 26(1):8; 26(2):16
separation from love of Christ, 23:10
tested, 5:4
things unworthy of, 30(4):11
things we work for, 7:16
threefold way, 6:2
trust, 32(3):28
Turn away from evil…, 31(2):6
two commandments, 32(2):6
unhappiness, 26(2):7
unity, 18(2):13
unwilling to serve God, 18(2):15
whole body builds itself up, 10:7

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

Volume III/15

long-suffering, 9:18
Lord’s Prayer:
Deliver us from evil, 26(2):10
thy kingdom come, 7:8
lots: casting, 30(1):16; 30(3):13
lottery, 30(3):13
love, 3:7; 6:9; 17:33,37; 18(1):9; 23:9; 24:17;
25(1):11-12; 26(1):9
See also charity
actions prompted by, 31(2):5
beginning to do good, 31(2):9
burning with, 26(2):7
care for what you choose to love, 31(2):5,6
choose the Lord for, 30(4):11
duty to love a bad person, 30(4):2
emptiness and falsehood, 4:4
empty pleasure, 9:15
faith and the will, 31(2):5
faith and works, 32(2):9
faith works through, 17:25
fear, 30(4):11
fear and separation, 18(2):10
fear and, as motive, 32(2):6
fear that abides for ever, 18(1):10
foot of the soul, 9:15
for good things alone, 4:8
fraternal, 18(2):6
fruitful delight, 9:15
goods worthy of, 4:8
greatness of Christ’s love, 14:1
grown cold, 30(3):2
heart brought to life by, 17:13
longing, 32(3):17
means of coming to God, 17:11
obedience and, 32(2):6
object God wants us to love, 26(2):7
object worthy of, 26(2):7
perfect, 17:34
perfection of Church’s love, 16:5
praizeworthy, 32(2):6
progress in love of God, 5:4
repentance and, 17:9
rightly ordered, 9:15
root, 9:15
safety: remains whole, 21(2):19
seeking God’s face, 26(1):8; 26(2):16
separation from love of Christ, 23:10
tested, 5:4
things unworthy of, 30(4):11
things we work for, 7:16
threefold way, 6:2
trust, 32(3):28
Turn away from evil…, 31(2):6
two commandments, 32(2):6
unhappiness, 26(2):7
unity, 18(2):13
unwilling to serve God, 18(2):15
whole body builds itself up, 10:7

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32
willing service, 32(1):2
worldliness, 8:1
wrong; God refuses to give, 26(2):7
lovers, 26(2):8
delivered to, 26(2):7
for power, 30(3):14
love of the world, 31(2):5
submitting to, 30(2):14
luxuries, 9:14; 29(2):13
lying, See lie (lying).
lying down, 5:5
lyre: description, 32(2):5
Macarian era, 10:5
Macarius, 10:5,6
magic, 9:24
magicians, 30(4):12
malice, 17:10
desire to do harm, 32(3):12
misery and, 32(3):15
man:
biblical: man and son of man, 8:10
earthly, 8:10
man (term): both genders in, 26(2):23
manful action, 30(4):13
marriage, 32(3):29
two in one flesh, 30(2):4
Mars, 31(2):16
martyrs, 3:9
crowned in secret, 29(2):6
death likened to eclipse, 10:4
done to death all the day long, 9:13
carey Church, 10:4
gloating over, 29(2):5
handed over to persecutors, 26(2):21
judgment day, 9:13
love as motive, 32(2):6
memorials of, 32(3):9
worth proved, 29(2):9
Mary, Blessed Virgin:
Word of God in womb of, 21(2):10-11
material things: happiness and, 32(3):16
materially-minded, 32(3):29
Matthew, Apostle, 21(2):27; 30(3):13
Maximianists, 21(2):31
medicine: two functions, 7:10
meditation, 18(1):15
meek: God as teacher, 24:9
memory:
mind’s “stomach,” 30(1):10
winepress, 8:2
mercy, 5:17; 6:7; 7:8,10; 12:6; 17:21,43,51; 18(2):2; 21(2):5; 23:5; 24:5,6;
30(1):8,10,22; 30(2):7,16; 30(4):9,10;
31(1):10; 31(2):9,16,18,23; 32(1):14;
32(3):2,19,24,28,29
Blessed are the merciful…, 32(2):11
Church’s joy in receiving, 5:8
divine, 16:6-7
earth is full of…, 32(3):3,4,7,8
fear and, 30(2):3
God and my day of troubles, 26(2):10
God and the brokenhearted, 6:10
God remembers man, 8:10
grace and, 31(2):1
inner cry, 26(1):7
judgment and, 32(2):10,11
law and Christ, 26(2):20
motherly, 30(2):9
now and for ever, 22:6
present time as season of, 32(2):10
presumption and, 31(2):1
sin and, 24:11
sins forgiven, 32(3):7
taking counsel, 12:2
trust in, 32(1):18,22
faith and, 32(1):4
grace and, 24:8; 30(2):6; 31(2):1
holiness of saints, 31(1):6
judging, 24:10
judgment day, 6:2
mercy and, 25(1):3
shouting about, 31(2):13
unworthiness, 18(2):3
Mesopotamia, 10:5
message: day to succeeding day, 18(2):4
Messiah: human being expected, 9:35
milk, 8:10; 22:5; 30(3):12
nursing mother, 30(2):9
solid food and, 8:5,10
milksop, 30(3):12
mind, 3:3; 9:29; 26(2):21
blindness, 6:8
escape (usage), 3:1
habit of, 8:2
Holy Spirit and, 4:7
law of God, 6:7
law of sin and, 4:6
light of truth and, 5:6
light seen with, 4:8
love as its place, 6:9
obedient to law of God, 26(1):6
three (number), 6:2
miracles, 17:15; 30(3):14
mirror, 10:11; 11:2
miser: invoking God, 30(4):4
miseries, 4:9; 32(3):4,15
misfortune, 31(2):20
right-hearted people, 31(2):26
mockery, 2:3, 6:12; 24:3
model: human, 30(3):12

Value III/15
pain: tortured by enemy, 30(1):11
pantomime, 30(4):11
paradise, 24:5
shut out from, 29(2):18
parent(-s): procreation, 26(2):18
parrots, 18(2):1
Passover, 20:3
path: lover finds it wide, 30(2):15
patience, 4:2; 7:3; 31(2):20; 32(1):20; 32(3):26
Paul:
Christ spoke within him, 4:8
conversion contrasted with raising of Lazarus, 9:2
denied what he prayed for, 26(2):7
Donatus and, 30(3):12
eccstasy: carried off to third heaven, 30(2):2
on faith of Abraham, 31(2):2
I live my own life no longer…, 9:5
prisoner of law of sin, 31(2):17
represents the Church, 21(2):2
suffering, 31(2):26
warning against enemies, 30(4):2
would die and be with Christ, 21(2):4
peace, 3:1; 4:8; 9:14; 15:4; 30(3):1
divine tranquillity, 6:3
everlasting: temple, 29(1):1
My peace I give to you …, 10:6; 28:11
not promised in this world, 28:11
path to, 16:5
promised to self, 30(2):10
silence, 9:8
Pentecost, 30(4):9
perdition, 17:43
perfection, 7:4; 5:3; 32(2):4
advance toward, 5:9
Christ’s disciples called to, 9:4
Church’s love, 16:5
churches; praise, 8:5; 6:8
contemplation, 26(2):9
devil and the soul, 7:2
as “end,” 4:3; 30(2):1
fear and, 5:17
grace, 26(2):2
keeping the commandments, 31(2):5
living in the world, 30(3):5
not repaying evil for evil, 7:3
qualities, 14:5
walking unstained, 14:4
perish:
because of sin, 9:32
for ever, 26(2):4
unknown to God, 1:6
all those devoted to God, 29(2):8
apostles, 32(3):9
Body of Christ, 3:9
Christians living bad lives, 30(4):3
escape from, 7:9
phases, 9:27
resisted by love alone, 9:15
teeth of sinners, 3:9
appear to triumph, 29(2):6
perseverance, 17:22; 25:4; 24:17; 30(3):2; 32(3):26,27
faith, 7:7
grace and free will, 26(2):17
hold out for the Lord, 26(2):23
holding out courageously, 26(1):14
perversity, 17:27; 31(2):25
pessimism, 4:8
pestilence, 1:1
Peter, Apostle, Saint, 3:7; Peter, 13:4; 21(2):27
dish full of living creatures, 30(3):5
future passion foretold, 30(2):3
prayer that his faith not fail, 26(2):5
walking on water; fear, 30(4):10
Pharaoh, 5:7
Pharisees, 31(2):9,10,12,14
philosophers:
denying God, 13:2
enemies of faith, 8:6
lovers of wisdom, 8:6
physical things:
seeking their own place, 29(2):10
piety: mercenary, 25(1):10
pigs, 9:14; 21(2):5
Pilate, 32(3):12
power to put to death, 29(2):7
pilgrimage: Church, holy Jerusalem, 26(2):18
pilot, 31(2):4
pit:
earth-bound desires, 7:17
going down into, 29(2):13
pity, 29(2):20; 32(3):19
place: mind and body, 6:9
pleasing: human approbation, 25(2):8
pleasure, 8:13; 9:10,14; 18:5; 26(2):8
beasts of, 8:13
earthly, 5:5; 17:19
empty, 9:15
evil; inward parts, 7:11
follows thought, 7:11
in God, 32(2):6
God knows the heart, 7:9
God’s purging fire, 25(2):7
immortality and, 26(2):16
transgressions, 18(1):13
vanity, 30(2):12
worldly, 6:7
plenty: human condition, 29(2):17
poison, 7:15; 13:4
poor:
banquet of, 21(1):27
beatitude, 9:27
blessed are the poor in spirit, 11:6
Christ, relief of the destitute, 11:6
cry of, 9:14
cry of, not forgotten, 9:13,14
forgotten by God, 9:29
God has heard, 9:33
God helps, 11:6
God looks upon, 10:8
imitation of Christ, 21(2):27
long-suffering, 9:18
praise God, 21(2):27
prayer of the, 21(1):25; 21(2):25
riches that last forever, 21(2):27
satisfied, 21(2):27
spiritual orphans, 9:31
woman and the ointment, 21(2):2
possessions:
common unity with Christ, 21(2):31
happiness and, 32(3):15
work and, 7:16
posterity: heirs, 21(1):31-32
potsherd, 21(1):16
poverty:
spiritual goods lacking, 11:6
power, 1:1; 5:13; 9:24
Christ and Pilate, 29(2):7; 32(3):12
eternal, 16:13
lust for, 30(3):14
wicked over the good, 32(3):11
praise, 7:19; 9:12,14; 10:6;
21(1):4,23,24,26,27; 21(2):5,28; 25(1):7;
beauty of created things, 26(2):12
befits the upright, 32(2):4
bless the Lord always, 32(2):3
bribes, 25(2):13
confession of, 7:19; 29(2):19,22
dance for joy, 32(2):1
directed to God, 21(2):26
ductile trumpets, 32(3):10
for ever and ever, 26(2):7
from mouths of infants, 8:5,6,8
name of the Lord, 21(2):31
presence of the Church, 21(2):24
rich and poor, 21(2):27
uniting will to God’s will, 32(2):1
when things go wrong, 32(2):3
with lyre and psaltery, 32(2):5
prayer, 32(3):29
behind closed doors, 3:4; 4:6
Christ intercedes for us, 19:7
Christ who is God, 29(2):1
cry inside yourself: God hears, 30(4):10
crying to God for wrong thing, 21(1):3
for forgiveness, 18(2):13
God hears voice of my weeping, 6:11
God’s listening, 4:5
heart, 4:6
for help, 21(2):20-22
I will look for your face..., 26(1):8
inner cry, 26(1):7,8
invoking God, 30(4):4
make haste..., 30(2):8
need; will pass away, 26(2):14
poor people praying, 21(1):25
promise of understanding and protection, 31(2):22
saints in Body of Christ, 3:9
silent shouting, 3:4
Therefore you heard..., 30(1):23
preacher(-s; -ing), 32(3):20
apostles; highest heavens, 32(3):6
filled with the Holy Spirit, 7:6
motivation, 11:7
never stops, 32(3):7
profitless, 30(3):5
seeing no good coming to his people, 30(3):5
thunderous, 28:3
tongue of Christ, 21(2):16
precious stones, 18(1):11; 20:4
predestination, 30(1):16; 32(3):14
devil and his angels, 3:10
present time: season of mercy, 32(2):10
presses, See winepress.
presumption, 6:1; 31(2):1,13
relying on self, 25(2):11; 31(2):10
trust in one’s own strength, 32(1):16,18
pride, 2:9; 3:10; 6:12; 8:8,13; 9:4,34; 11:2,4;
30(3):7,14; 30(4):3,5,10,12,13;
31(2):1,2,10,12,19,22,24; 32(2):10;
32(2):4
Abraham before God, 31(2):2
birds (metaphor), 8:13
Christ came in humility, 18(2):15
despising others, 31(2):11
giant, 32(3):23
great transgression, 18(2):15
inner man, 1:4
kingdom of, 1:1
pleasing the public, 18(2):16
punishment, 18(2):2
rebellion against God, 7:4; 18(2):15
unicorns, 21(2):22
you will be like gods, 7:5
priest: anointed, 26(2):2
prodigal son, 18(2):3; 24:5
progress, 25(2):5
property:
baptized persons belong to Christ, 21(2):31
prophecy:
Church in the future, 30(4):9
future mixed with the past, 3:5
martyrs and, 32(3):9
marvelous deeds of God, 9:3
prophetic statements, 5:13
secrecy, 7:1
works done in faith, 32(3):7
prophets:
clouds, 10:10
obscure teaching, 17:12
revelation, 17:16
speak more of the Church than of Christ, 30(3):8
Christian life and, 25(2):4
protection, 16:8; 17:3, 31, 36; 26(2):4, 31(2):22
temple of God, 26(2):9, 14
under God’s wings, 8:10
providence, 7:19; 8:6; 9:7; 31(2):18
ability to do harm, 29(2):6
chance and, 9:2
doubts about, 9:2
enduring bad things, 29(2):7
God sees me on my day of troubles, 26(2):10
God’s secret plans, 7:5
guided my feet into open spaces…, 30(2):15; 30(3):1
heretics and, 9:20
ordered pattern of our labors, 9:29
pressure from God’s hand, 18(1):11
punishment and, 10:11; 30(4):12
sacrifices and, 32(2):10
salvation, 7:1
secret economy of, 29(2):6
sinners and, 7:15; 10:11
temporal gifts and, 26(2):5
things given and withdrawn, 32(2):5
psalms, 17:50
Christ speaking in, 30(2):1, 4; 30(2):3; 30(3):1
good things of God seen inwardly, 30(4):6
join in thrust of verses, 30(4):1
our voice and God’s, 26(2):1
shift from second to third person in, 31(2):18
songs, 4:1
psaltery, 4:1, 4
sounding-board, 32(2):5
ten commandments and, 32(2):6
psychology:
sense of freedom in Mystical Body, 30(3):1
abandonment to evil as, 5:10
anger of God, 7:5
emotion in the soul, 6:3
fear of, 18(2):10
final, 9:29
God’s justice and power, 2:4
harm as, 29(2):6
hell, 6:6
kindness and, 18(2):2
power given to devil, 26(2):5
powerful people, 18(2):2
repentance as, 4:6
unable to recognize Christ, 27:5
purification: hidden judgment, 9:1
purity, 17:25; 23:4, 9; 25(1):6
racecourse, 18(1):6
rain:
blessed in common, 32(3):16
falls on good and bad alike, 10:10
ram: Abraham’s sacrifice, 30(3):9
reason, 29(2):2; 31(2):2
rebuke, 32(2):7
recompense, 31(2):7
rectitude, 31(2):25
judgments, 25(2):13
God bent down to earth, 30(2):7
joyful in glory of God, 30(1):6
thankfulness for, 30(1):1
refuge, 30(1):4; 30(2):8
sins besetting the heart, 31(1):7
rein, 31(2):22, 23
rejoice, See joy.
reverence, 2:9
reputation, 9:24; 17:6; 30(3):14
responsibility, 31(2):18
rest, 4:9
resting: dying, 3:5, 4:5
resurrection of the body, 3:10; 10:3; 15:9; 27:6-7
flesh and eternal life, 30(2):19
hope for, 26(2):4
retribution: timing, 30(4):12
revenge, 9:30; 30(4):12
reverence, 2:9
endurance and, 32(3):26-27

Value III/15
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Judgment day, 9:9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rich:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all have eaten and worshiped, 21(1):30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not hungry, not satisfied, 21(2):27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plenty, 29(2):17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise themselves, 21(2):27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satan lies in ambush, 9:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right hand, 7:1; 19:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beatitudes, 11:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beauty in, 32(2):6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faith and, 31(2):2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gift of God, 7:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good works and, 31(2):3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance on path of, 22:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavens and, 32(1):6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jews, 30(2):13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judgment according to, 7:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Love of, 32(2):6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presumption and, 31(2):1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvation and, 30(1):24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under pressure, 12:3-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unrighteousness confessed, 31(1):5; 32(1):15,16,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Way of, 2:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock, 26(2):11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rogues, 25(1):5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans, 19:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulers, 32(1):10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running, 8:5; 31(2):4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbath, 6:1; 32(2):6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material observance of, 21(1):10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabellius, 5:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sackcloth, 29(2):21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacraments, 16:5; 25(2):10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garments of Christ crucified, 21(2):19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gates of Zion, 9:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insecurity and, 10:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mystery, 17:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validity; Donatists, 10:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacrifice, 2:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abraham and Isaac, 30(3):9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Providence, 32(2):10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repentance, 4:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vows, 21(2):28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wordless cries of rejoicing, 26(2):12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sadness, 31(1):7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repentance of sins, 7:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turned to joy, 29(1):12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety: flee to God for, 30(2):8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sailors, 9:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saints, 2:3; 7:18; 8:2,8; 9:12,14; 11:1; 13:3; 15:3,5; 29(1):5; 30(3):2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose the Lord as your love…, 30(1):24; 30(4):11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecstasy, 30(2):2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavens proclaims glory of, 18(2):2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merits and holiness, 31(1):6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message, 18(2):4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prayer; Body of Christ, 3:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scorned, 9:28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing lot of, 30(3):13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortage of, 11:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing to the Lord…, 29(2):14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singleness of mind, 4:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffering, 30(2):3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrible things done to, 9:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All flesh, 29(2):1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All nations, 2:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnal, 8:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children, 10:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ and, 11:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confession (witnessing), 30(4):7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Despair, 5:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fear of God, 5:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Christ alone, 3:8,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God’s saving design, 32(1):10-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grace, 18(2):3; 30(3):13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gratis, 30(2):6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hate for message of, 26(1):2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse and, 32(1):17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human resources, 32(1):16-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humanity of Christ and, 8:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel, 19:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men and women and beasts, 8:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercy for all who want to be reborn, 32(1):13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only God saves, 32(3):24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Providence, 7:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rejoice in, 19:6,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Righteousness and, 30(1):24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save me in your mercy, 30(4):3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sin and, 21(1):2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victory, 19:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Works while asleep, 32(3):3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samaritan: the word, 30(2):8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanctuary: high priest only one to enter, 26(2):10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah (wife of Abraham), 30(3):9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satan, 8:13; 9:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also devil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saul, King:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of “Saul”, 17:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why are you persecuting me…, 32(2):2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scandal, 29(2):8; 30(2):6; 30(3):7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schism, 25(2):6; 30(3):8; 30(4):8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scorn, 30(1):12; 30(3):6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
scourge, 31(2):26
scripture, See Bible.
sea, 18(2):3
paths of, 8:13
waters confined, 32(3):11
waters gathered, 32(1):7; 32(3):10
seasons: four, 6:2
second coming of Christ, 6:1
known to no one, 9:35
sword, 7:13
secrecy, 7:1,3
secret:
  God sees into, 9:29
  understanding, 32(3):22
seed: dying, 19:5
seekers: shown what is sought, 9:14
seeking God, 21(1):27
seeking: living in house of the Lord, 26(1):4
self:
  accusation, 5:13
  conversion: the old self, 25(2):1
  examination, 31(2):12
  image: trashing yourself, 32(2):4
  indulgence, 29(2):9
  knowledge: insight into the heart, 30(2):13
reliance: presumption, 25(2):11
senses:
  head and members, 29(2):2
  rejoicing in sensations, 9:3
  gates of death, 9:14
sensuality, 29(2):13
Sermon on the Mount, 11:6
serpent, 1:1
  Eve deceived by, 18(2):2
  fear only God, 32(3):12
  servant, 30(2):2
  let face of God shine over, 30(1):17
  spare from faults of others, 18(2):13
serving: refusal to serve, 18(2):15
seven (number), 6:2
sex, 7:9
shade, 32(3):25
shame, 6:12; 13; 24:2; 20; 30(1):18; 30(2):3
  calling on God, 30(4):4
Christian living, 30(4):7
eternal, 30(2):5
fear of, 30(4):4
temporary: profitable, 30(2):5
trust in God, 30(2):6,10
sheep, 3:7; 8:13; 9:9
  Adam as the "one lost", 8:12
  among wolves, 32(3):8
Christ’s property, 21(2):31
Christians as, 21(2):31
metaphor for angels, 8:12
slain martyrs, 32(3):9
shepherd: Christ as, 22:1-2
shining, 30(4):3
shipwreck, 31(2):4
shouting, 31(2):13
prayer as, 3:4
sickness, 7:10
silence, 7:3; 7:9; 9:25; 31(2):15
  confession and, 31(1):5
  crying in the heart, 30(4):10
  My bones grew old…, 31(1):3; 31(2):13
  peace, 9:8
  prayer in the heart, 3:4
  rejoicing remains, 26(2):12
  sense of wonder, 7:1
silver: tried by fire, 11:7
similes, 8:1
Simon (Magus; the magician), 9:24; 30(3):14
simplicity, 4:9
See also conversion: repentance; sinner
alien nature as cause, 7:19
angry because of, 30(3):3
blindness, and habit of, 5:6
body dead because of, 26(1):6
children, 16:13
Christ made our sins his own, 21(2):3
Church’s sinfulness, 10:1
compunction, 29(1):12
confession of, 29(2):19
covered, 31(2):13,15
darkness, 5:4; 6:13; 7:19
Donatists, 10:5
elements of, 8:13
ensnared by other people’s, 18(1):14
Father, forgive them, 18(2):13
fear and refraining from, 32(2):6
God turning his face away from, 26(2):16;
  29(1):8
good and evil in, 25(2):11
impunity, 31(2):1,8
inheritance, 4:6
law of, in my members, 30(2):6
love of, 5:6
mercy, 24:11
pleasurable myopia, 12:3-5
poison, 20:4
pride as starting-point, 7:4
punishment for, 7:15,16
put to death, 32(1):7
rebellion against God, 7:16
refusing to confess, 31(2):10
responsibility for, 7:19
salvation and, 21(1):2
saved from death of, 3:8
set free from, 6:13
silence about, 31(2):13
slave of, 32(2):6
source of, 18(1):14
sting of death, 6:6
Turn your face away from..., 31(2):9,12; 32(3):19
twofold liability, 18(2):13
unpunished, 31(2):23
wall, 17:30
who is free from..., 31(2):12
singing, 32(1):3; 32(2):4
diapalma, 4:4
happiness, 29(2):16
joy, 7:19
jubilation, 32(2):8
mind and voice, 18(2):1
not confined to words, 32(3):2
Sing him a new song..., 32(2):8
singleness and multiplicity, 4:10
See also conversion
bows bent, 10:2
breaking the arm of, 9:32
Christ died for us, 7:10
church members, 30(3):2
consummated, 7:9
daring to hope, 26(2):10
darkened moon, 10:4
darkness, 26(2):20
deserves to die, 29(2):21
disgusted by, 30(3):3
down into the pit, 29(2):13
earth (the word), 10:7
enraged at the sight..., 32(3):9
flattered and deceived, 9:21
good works and, 31(2):7
hope, 24:6
judged for sin, 9:32
light and, 25(2):11
meaning of "nations", 9:32
mixed in with the good and holy, 8:13
negative example, 9:20
prosperity, 19:7
providence, 7:15; 10:11
provoke the Lord, 9:22
punishment deserved by, 29(2):15
punishment meted out secretly, 9:1
punishment reserved for, 9:15
scourge for refusing to confess, 31(1):10
self-recognition, 31(2):9
slave of sin, 7:18
snakes rained on, 10:10,12
teeth of, 3:7,9
torture of, 9:16
transgression of law, 2:4
trapped, 9:15
truth as bitter to, 5:15
turned toward hell, 9:17
types of, 8:13
ungodly and, 1:5
will be weakened and perish, 9:5
sitting down: as compliance, 25(2):9
sky, 32(3):16
shander, 10:4; 14:3
sleep, 4:9
death, 3:5
salvation at work, 32(3):3
snakes: poison, 13:4
snare, 9:28; 10:10; 24:15; 31(2):21
soldiers: tent-companions, 14:1
soldiers: tents, 30(4):8
Son of God:
See also Jesus Christ; Word of God
coming in humility, 13:7
eternal generation of, 2:6
eternally born of the Father, 18(1):7
hidden things/judgments of, 9:1,3,4,9,14,35
Holy Spirit as breath of his mouth, 32(3):5
judge seated on throne, 9:6
judgment entrusted to; 7:8; 18(1):11
king, 5:3
light, 10:3
nations as heritage of, 21(2):30
power and wisdom, 8:6
revelation of the Father, 18(1):8
set above the angels, 8:11
today I have begotten you, 21(2):30
two comings of, 24:10
visible things on, 9:35
Son of Man, 9:19
children of men as one with, 32(3):19
glorified, 17:8
Word in his holy temple, 10:12
song, 32(1):3
psalms, 4:1
sons of men:
image of heavenly man, 8:10
the Jews, 13:3
sorrow, 4:2
distress and, 30(3):3
knowledge and, 29(2):8
life imperiled by, 30(3):5
soul, 7:8; 26(2):21
See also body and soul; spiritual life
abandoned by light of truth, 9:23
anger and, 30(4):10
animal and human, 29(2):2
apparently dying, 21(1):31
constraints, 30(2):13
destroying, with the ungodly, 25(1):9
devil persecutes, 7:4
driven out of Church, 30(3):11
dwelling place, 9:15
emotion, 6:3
enemy of the perfect soul, 7:2
foot of: love, 9:15
God rescues, 6:5
guard from enemies of, 24:20
hating one’s own, 10:9
image of God, 32(3):16
intensity of desire, 6:13
light, 7:8
lingering in good things, 24:13
longings; suffering, 6:5
loved when squalid, 26(2):10
rendered to God, 4:8
seek happiness in your own, 32(3):16
support; strength, 6:4
weeping of, 6:7
sound: went forth throughout the world..., 18(2):5; 32(3):7
sovereignty, 21(1):29
sparrow, 10:1,4,5,6,12
speech:
  insufficient for praise, 26(2):12
  none goes unheard, 18(1):4-5
  speaking, 16:4
spirit, 18(2):4; 26(2):4
  See also angel; Holy Spirit; soul
  angelic creations, 8:12
  Christ and our spirit, 3:10
  entrusted to power of God, 30(1):6
  grief of, 12:2
  slave and free in, 1:2
  spiritual beings, 23:10
  troubled, 24:11
spiritual goods, 12:6
  blessing with eternal gifts, 26(2):19
  eternal, 13:6
  lacking in, 11:6
  land of the living, 26(2):22
  love of, 4:8
spiritual life:
  accepting instruction, 2:10
  carnal still, 8:10
  eyes not yet pure, 12:1
  inner and outer eyes, 21(1):4
  inner life, 1:4
  journey, 5:11
  marvellous things happen invisibly, 9:2
  opposite dangers, 31(2):1
  seeking face of God, 23:6
  soul wrestling with diseases, 6:4
  temporal goods and, 23:4
  turning away from the world, 9:10
  winning God’s favor, 32(2):10
  wisdom of God, 18(1):3
spirituality: judges of earth, 2:8
spite, 14:4-5
springs of water, 17:16
stability, 14:5
state:
  birth of Christ, 18(2):2
  fate and, 31(2):16
  human conduct and, 31(2):16
  individual churches as, 8:9
  state: evil characteristics, 9:8
stealing, 32(2):6
Stephen, Saint, 7:5
storm:
  Church in, 9:29
  temptations, 25(2):4
straw, 29(2):9
strength, 18(1):6; 19:7; 20:2; 21(1):16; 24:5;
  added to beauty, 29(1):8
  bones, 6:4
  for war, 17:40
  from the breath of his mouth..., 32(3):4,5
  girded with, 17:33
  God the source of, 29(2):18
  suffering and, 21(2):16
  weak humans become heavens, 32(3):8
suffering, 27:6-7; 30(1):12
  See also tribulation; trouble
  bearing manfully, 29(2):8
  Christ glorified by, 32(3):9
  Christ’s sacrifice, 19:10
  divine dispensation, 29(2):6
  fruit of passion of Christ, 21(2):23
  glory in, 31(2):25
  heart stretched by, 32(3):10
  improvement by, 21(2):5
  passage from death to life, 9:1
  Paul on, 31(2):26
  profitable, 19:5
  rejoicing in, 4:2
  stronger by, 21(2):16
  triumphant cheerfulness in, 31(2):26
  undeserved, 31(2):25
sun, 9:15
  bestowed in common, 32(3):16
  Christ called, 10:3
  light of the moon, 10:3
  righteousness, 29(2):16
  rises on good and bad, 32(2):5
  tent pitched in, 18(2):6
  wisdom of God, 6:8
Susanna, 3:4; 21(2):6
sweetness, 30(4):6
  fear of God, 30(1):20
sword:
  metaphor for death, 21(2):21
  misguided opinions, 9:8
  second coming of Christ, 7:13
sycophants, 9:21
sympsalma, 4:4
synagogue, 21(1):10,11
  moon as, 10:12
tabernacle:
  hidden recesses of, 26(2):11
  sanctuary, 26(2):10
table: banquet, 22:5
tares, 29(2):8
taste: palate of the heart, 30(4):6
tax collector, 31(2):10-12,14
teachings: variegated, 31(2):18
tears:
drenching, 6:7
evening, 29(2):16
sowing; reaping, 6:11
teeth:
biblical usage, 3:7
shorn sheep, 3:7
temperance, 12:6
temple:
dedication; everlasting peace, 29(1):1
holy, 9:12; 10:7
many members, one structure, 10:7
protection in, 26(2):9,14
temple of God, 7:5; 26(1):4; 27:2
Word-in-man in, 10:12
worship in, 5:9
temporal goods, 4:9; 17:25; 21(1):3; 30(3):11
attachments, 29(2):9
Christ’s renunciation of, 30(4):5
consolation from God, 26(2):19
despised by the poor, 9:31
eternal goods and, 30(4):6
eternal life and, 18(1):11
eternity and, 23:4
gifts of this world, 9:26; 26(2):5
given by God, 26(2):19; 32(2):5.
God gives; God takes away, 32(2):5
good and bad joy in, 19:8
greed for, 11:9
holy poverty, 9:10
hope in, 17:8
love of, 9:11
metaphor: pathways of the sea, 8:13
pleasure, 7:11
riches, 9:3
seeking what is inferior to you, 32(3):15
turning people away from God, 11:9
unhappiness re loss of, 30(4):12
vain things, 30(2):12
will of God and, 32(2):2
worship and, 26(2):19
all human life on earth, 29(2):8
danger, 26(2):22
deliverance, 17:30
fire of, 29(2):9
providence and, 32(2):9
storm: Jesus is asleep, 25(2):4
test, 17:23-24
whole body of Christ, 30(2):10
tent, 14:1; 26(1):5; 29(1):1; 30(1):21
bridegroom’s, 18(2):6
hidden sanctuary, 26(2):10
home and, 26(2):6; 30(4):8
terror: dominion, 9:28
test, 10:8
by night and by fire, 16:3
God tests to make us know, 6:1
harm as, 29(2):6
power given to devil, 26(2):5
suffering as, 21(2):5
temptation, 17:23-24
Thamugadi, 21(2):26
thanking:
always on our lips, 21(2):5
for redemption, 30(1):1
sacrifice of, 26(2):12
song of the soul, 12:6
thanksgiving:
thought:
evil; chains, 9:21
God not understood by, 17:11
pleasure follows, 7:11
three (number): mind, 6:2
threshing-floor, 8:1,13; 9:17; 25(2):5,6,12;
30(4):3
threshing-time, 30(3):3
thrust, open grave, 5:12
triumph: judge seated on, 9:6
thunderstorms, 17:13
time, 30(1):14
changeableness, 6:2
cycles of, 9:7
cyclic, 30(3):11
fullness of, 31(2):17
seasons for mercy and judgment, 32(2):10
stretches seem long, 30(2):8
today and eternity, 2:6
to-day and eternity: when time is righteousness, 31(2):18
timidity, 18(2):3
today: eternity and, 2:6
toil, 9:25,30; 24:18; 26(2):1
tolerance, 25(2):5
tongue, 9:25; 11:4; 30(2):3
Holy Spirit, 18(2):10
wrangling, 30(4):8
torment, 9:27; 30(1):12
torture: persecution, 32(3):13
touch, 29(2):2
tranquility: God judges in, 6:3
transgression(-s)
See also sin
memory of, 24:6
understanding, 18(2):13
trap, 30(1):5; 30(2):10
treasure-house: hidden recesses of God,
32(3):11
tribulation, 17:31; 26(2):22; 31(2):25
See also trouble
confession of sins, 29(2):19
fire of, 29(2):9
helper in, 9:10
holding out for God in, 29(2):8
impurities refined by, 30(4):12
meaning of “by night”, 1:2
Tricliae, 32(3):29
Trinity, 29(2):1
See also Son of God
hints at (in Paul), 5:3
no disparity of will in, 32(2):2
one God, 5:3
witness of the Lord, 18(1):8
worship of, 32(3):1
See also suffering: tribulation
God as cause, 9:20
God’s correcting hand, 32(2):3
hidden in God’s tent, 26(2):10,11
rejoicing in, 31(2):26
trust:
failing; earthly goods, 30(2):12
Holy Spirit, 18(1):2
in fellow humans, 10:5,9; 25(2):12
love, 32(3):28
in one’s own strength, 31(2):1
in self, 26(2):17
shame and, 30(2):5
you are my God…, 32(3):17
bitter to sinners, 5:15
blessedness, 4:3
characteristics, 30(2):6,7
concealing, 5:7
embracing, 25(1):8
faith in the Lord, 26(1):4
forest of the world, 30(4):9
heretics and, 9:20
incorrupt, 24:10
judging in contravention of, 25(2):13
light and the mind, 5:6
philosophers as enemies of, 8:6
preachers of word of, 32(3):6
proclaiming of hard work, 32(3):1
professed outwardly, 14:5
repetition, 18(2):2
rule of, 30(4):8
silence about, 5:7
soul abandoned, 9:23
speaking in the heart, 14:3
spoken unwittingly, 14:3
vanished, 11:2
turmoil, 32(1):8
twins, 3:7
unbelievers, 32(2):1
darkness, 26(2):20
fear, 32(3):10
understanding, 15:7; 18(1):13; 31(2):9,13,21,22
believing and (Isaiah), 8:6
confession and, 31(1):8
devoid of, 31(1):9
good will and, 31(2):8
hearing as, 25(2):11
praise of, 26(2):12
singing with, 18(2):1
sound of praise, 25(2):11
subjection to giver of, 2:9
vision of something secret, 32(3):22
words of God, 11:7
underworld, 15:10
darkness, 30(4):2
destroying my soul, 25(1):9
devil as ruler of, 26(2):20
dust, 29(1):10
judgment, 1:5
punishment, 5:17
unhappiness, 30(4):12
unicorns, 21(1):22
donatists and, 21(2):31
established in, 4:10
faith in the Lord, 26(1):4
foretold in scripture, 30(3):8
judgments and, 18(2):10
language of, 18(2):10
love of, 4:10; 18(2):13
one sign, one baptism…, 30(4):3
Tunic of Christ, 21(2):19
violation of God’s temple, 10:7
universe:
material and spiritual; Creator, 32(1):6-9
usury, 14:5
values: emptiness or truth, 4:3

Volue III/15
vanity, 4:3; 7:3,4; 9:3; 30(2):12
title regard for, 30(2):12
human help, 19:7
Venus, 31(2):16
verbs: tenses, 3:5; 14:5
vice, 3:10; 7:4; 9:8
living among enemies, 6:9
victory, 32(2):4
Church praises God, 26(2):13
over death, 26(2):14
vigils, 32(2):5
vine, 30(3):6
vinegar, 8:2
violence, 9:27,28
virgins, 31(2):17
virtue:
bones as, 31(2):13
presumption and, 31(2):1
trust in, 32(3):24
vomit, 30(3):6
vows:
sacrifice to God, 21(2):27
suffering, 21(2):28
wages: grace and, 31(2):7
walkers, 31(2):4
walking: grace and free will, 26(2):17
war, 14:1
washing: drenching and, 6:7
waste, 21(2):2
watching, 9:12
water, 29(2):10
Book of Revelations, 1:3
channel of truth, 31(2):18
poured out like, 21(1):15
regenerating (baptism), 22:1-2
tree by running waters, 1:3
weakness, 19:7; 24:2,18; 25(2):3; 30(2):3;
30(4):10; 31(1):3; 31(2):10; 32(2):2;
32(3):8
borne by Christ, 7:20
heart, 26(2):8
humanity of Christ, 29(2):1
sufficient grace, 26(2):7
wealth, 6:12; 18(1):11; 29(2):8; 32(2):5
hope in riches, 9:11
truly poor, 21(2):27
wedding-feast, 19:3
weeping, 26(2):14; 29(1):6
evening, 29(2):16
weights: two kinds of, 29(2):10
wheat, 4:9; 25(2):6
whip, 31(2):23
wicked, 17:23-24,42; 29(2):13
as bad animals, 32(3):24
devouring God’s people, 13:5
groaning over their pride, 29(2):8
hate for the commandments, 7:9
repayment for, 27:4
will to do harm, 29(2):6
will:
attached to evil deed, 32(2):6
faith, love and work, 31(2):6
fate and free will, 31(2):16
fit to will of God, 31(2):26
follow the path: seek peace, 26(2):17
free, 18(2):15
grace and free will, 26(2):17
sinful, 25(2):11
strength of, 31(2):1
willing what God wills, 32(2):2
will of God:
casting lots, 30(3):13
repentance, 5:17
strength and beauty from, 29(2):18
subjection to, 32(2):2
united with, 32(2):1
will (in law), 21(2):30
wind: discernment, 25(2):12
wine: matures with age, 8:2
winepress, 8:13
churches and, 8:1
fermentation of the word of God, 8:2
martyrdom, 8:3
winnowing, 10:4
winnowing-time, 25(2):5
wisdom, 4:2; 8:8; 9:7, 16:14; 21(1):3;
26(1):11
abides for ever, 32(1):11
beauty of God, 32(2):7
children and the Holy Spirit, 18(2):8
Christ the human, 1:3
fear as beginning of, 24:12
fear of God, 14:4; 30(4):6
God: hidden things, 9:2
heart of Jesus, 21(2):15
Holy Spirit, 18(1):3
Incarnation, 30(2):9
law, 26(2):20
light of, 29(1):6
lower realities and, 32(2):5
matters hidden from the wise, 8:6; 18(1):8
safe to lean on…, 32(3):17
secret places of, 9:16
sun as, 6:8
tree of life…, 32(3):17
words of God, 11:7
witnesses: unjust, 26(2):21
witnessing:
confess your hope…, 30(4):7
denying God by conduct, 30(3):3
wizards, 30(4):12
wolves, 32(3):8
woman: term for married and virgins,
31(2):17
womb:
Jewish people, 21(1):10
maternal, 21(1):10,11
wonder: silence, 7:1
Word of God, 18(1):3
  Christ united with, 27:2
equal to the Father, 29(2):2
grape (metaphor), 8:2
humility of the Passion, 3:3
  in the beginning…, 9:35; 21(2):3,7; 29(2):1
Incarnation, 29(2):2
pause in thought of, 32(3):14
souls watered by, 10:10
womb of Mary, 21(2):10-11
world(-s) of God, 1:3
  See also Bible
listening as hard work, 32(3):1
never pass away, 25(2):13
purified seven times, 11:7
straight, 32(1):4
unwilling to hear, 32(3):2
words: pleasing to God, 18(1):15
work, 32(3):23
cycle of toil, 7:16
  In the sweat of your face…, 32(3):1
profitless, 30(3):5
revealed by fire, 29(2):9
travail with injustice, 7:16
works, 30(3):13
boasting about, 31(2):2
evil, 10:11
led astray by, 20:11
of mercy: food refused to the hungry
  Christ, 30(2):5
Paul’s teaching on, 31(2):6
performed in faith, 32(2):9
valued if done within faith, 32(1):4
  without me you can do nothing…, 30(2):4
world, 21(1):22
abandoned by, 26(1):10
desert, 28:8
faith of, taken stock, 26(2):13
foundations, 17:16
great assembly, 21(2):26
dominion of Babylon, 26(2):18
light of truth in, 30(4):9
living in, by the perfect, 30(3):5
love of the world, 13:2,7; 18(2):3; 31(2):5
luxury and wickedness, 29(2):13
renunciation of, 23:7
struggle against rulers of, 30(4):2
three ages of, 29(2):16
war on falsehoods of, 18(1):6
whole world is God’s Church, 23:2
world history:
time of the law; time of grace, 29(2):16
worldliness, 6:12; 29(2):9; 30(4):2
crucified to the world, 9:31
good people sifted out, 8:1
horse as figure of, 32(3):24
love and ostentation, 30(4):11
love of, 8:13
turned away from God, 9:10
worm: I am a worm…, 21(2):7
worship, 25(2):2; 26(2):16; 32(3):18
heart widened and sanctified, 28:2
one God, 32(3):5
rich people, 21(1):30
temporal gifts and, 26(2):19
wound, 31(2):12
wrongdoing, 1:3; 5:14; 6:3; 17:23-24
refusal to withdraw from, 9:15
yoke, 24:9
youths: rebuke, 32(2):7
zeal, 17:35
  informed by knowledge, 30(2):6
Zion, 13:8
  Church, 2:5
gates of, 9:14
image of the Church, 9:12

Expositions Of The Psalms 1-32

Volue III/15
As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:20</td>
<td>49,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:26</td>
<td>38,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 2:17</td>
<td>37,5; 37,26; 41,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 2:24</td>
<td>II,34,1; 37,6; 40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:5</td>
<td>35,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 3:19</td>
<td>40,6; 41,14; 46,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 4:10</td>
<td>39,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 4:15</td>
<td>39,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 22:12</td>
<td>I,36,1; 43,19-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 24:2-3</td>
<td>44,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 25:23</td>
<td>40,14; 46,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 25:27</td>
<td>44,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 32:28</td>
<td>49,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 49:10</td>
<td>44,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 3:14</td>
<td>38,7; 38,22; 49,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 12:46</td>
<td>II,33,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus 23:7, LXX</td>
<td>II,36,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 13:3</td>
<td>I,36,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 25:5</td>
<td>44,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 32:39</td>
<td>50,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel 21:11</td>
<td>I,33,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel 21:12-15</td>
<td>I,33,2; II,33,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel 12:1-4</td>
<td>50,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel 12:13</td>
<td>50,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Samuel 16:10</td>
<td>50,15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1 Kings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Kings 19:8</td>
<td>49,9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2 Kings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Kings 2:23</td>
<td>46,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Tobit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tobit 4:16</td>
<td>35,1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:11</td>
<td>I,34,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:21</td>
<td>II,33,4; II,36,10; 37,24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 2:10</td>
<td>I,34,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 9:24</td>
<td>III,36,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 14:4-5, LXX</td>
<td>50,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 15:26</td>
<td>45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 37:22, LXX</td>
<td>47,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scripture</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:1</td>
<td>35,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:1-2</td>
<td>39,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:2</td>
<td>III,36,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:4</td>
<td>I,34,9; 43,23-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:6</td>
<td>I,36,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:6-9</td>
<td>47,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:9</td>
<td>44,18; 47,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:10-11</td>
<td>47,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 2:11</td>
<td>50,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 3:1</td>
<td>I,33,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 3:2-3(1-2)</td>
<td>I,34,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 3:5(4)</td>
<td>42,4; 44,33; 47,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 3:6(5)</td>
<td>40,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 5:13(12)</td>
<td>I,34,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 6:8(7)</td>
<td>39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 8:4(4)</td>
<td>35,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 10:2(11:1)</td>
<td>35,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 12:5(13:4)</td>
<td>37,22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Volume III/16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14(15):5</td>
<td>III,36,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15(16):2</td>
<td>I,34,12; 49,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15(16):5</td>
<td>I,34,12; 13,36,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16(17):13-14</td>
<td>I,34,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4(18:3)</td>
<td>39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26-27</td>
<td>44,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18(19-26)</td>
<td>44,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:45</td>
<td>44,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:44-48</td>
<td>45,6; 47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5(19,1-4)</td>
<td>49,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5(19-4)</td>
<td>39,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6(19-5)</td>
<td>44,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7(19-6)</td>
<td>45,13; 50,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13-14</td>
<td>35,17; 37,16; 39,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:15(19,14)</td>
<td>I,34,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2(22:1)</td>
<td>II,34,5; 37,6; 37,27; 40,6; 41,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2(22:1-2)</td>
<td>43,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:5(22:4-6)</td>
<td>43,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:8(22:7)</td>
<td>43,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:14(22:13)</td>
<td>40,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-19</td>
<td>(22:16-18) I,34,6; 43,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:19(22:18)</td>
<td>37,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23(22:22)</td>
<td>44,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:27(22:26)</td>
<td>48,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:28(22:27)</td>
<td>47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:30(22:29)</td>
<td>48,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23(3)</td>
<td>35,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:6(3,5)</td>
<td>43,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24(3-4)</td>
<td>47,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24(7,9)</td>
<td>47,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:5(1)</td>
<td>41,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25(7)</td>
<td>35,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25(9)</td>
<td>II,36,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26(9)</td>
<td>47,11; 49,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27(4)</td>
<td>38,6; 41,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27(9)</td>
<td>44,10; 50,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27(10)</td>
<td>45,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27(12)</td>
<td>40,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27(14)</td>
<td>II,36,4; 41,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:23(32:22)</td>
<td>II,34,6; 37,12; 41,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31(32:3)</td>
<td>35,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:3(4:1)</td>
<td>35,16; II,48,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:16(34:15)</td>
<td>39,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:17(34:16)</td>
<td>39,2; 50,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35:3)</td>
<td>38,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:36(6)</td>
<td>41,13; 41,14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:10(36:9)</td>
<td>41,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12(36:11)</td>
<td>38,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37:2)</td>
<td>II,48,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37:23)</td>
<td>49,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37:37)</td>
<td>I,36,12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:7(39:5-6)</td>
<td>II,48,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:5(40:4)</td>
<td>38,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:18(40:17)</td>
<td>40,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:5(41:4)</td>
<td>42,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:4(33:1)</td>
<td>49,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:4(33:5)</td>
<td>II,33,19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:7(44:6)</td>
<td>45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43(44:23)</td>
<td>I,34,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43:3(45:2)</td>
<td>43,16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:11(45:10)</td>
<td>47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:2(46:1)</td>
<td>49,22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:50(51:6)</td>
<td>II,36,20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:50(51:21)</td>
<td>III,41,12; 39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:50(52:3)</td>
<td>39,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:5(51:3)</td>
<td>44,18; 49,28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:10(51:8)</td>
<td>38,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:11(51:9)</td>
<td>44,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:18-21</td>
<td>(51:16-19) 49,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:19(51:17)</td>
<td>41,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51:4(52:2)</td>
<td>I,34,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:7(55:6)</td>
<td>38,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:23(55:22)</td>
<td>39,27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55:5(56:12)</td>
<td>49,21; 50,21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:7(57:6)</td>
<td>50,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60:3(61:2)</td>
<td>39,28; 49,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:12(62:1)</td>
<td>44,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63:7(64:6)</td>
<td>41,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2(67:1-2)</td>
<td>39,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69:6(70:5)</td>
<td>49,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):11</td>
<td>45,10; 47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1</td>
<td>44,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):16-17</td>
<td>41,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):26</td>
<td>I,34,12; I,36,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):28</td>
<td>43,25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76:3(77:2)</td>
<td>II,48,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77(78):24-25</td>
<td>I,33,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79:17(80:16)</td>
<td>38,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):1</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):6-7</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:11(84:10)</td>
<td>I,48,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:5(84:4)</td>
<td>41,11; 42,4; 43,9; 50,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:9(85:8)</td>
<td>38,16; 49,23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:18(85:7)</td>
<td>39,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86(87):4</td>
<td>44,33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90(91):13</td>
<td>39,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91:15(92:14)</td>
<td>III,36,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93(94):20</td>
<td>38,17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):2</td>
<td>44,10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):4-5</td>
<td>49,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95(96):5</td>
<td>47,15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100(101):5</td>
<td>II,34,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:38</td>
<td>(102:27) 38,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107(6):108:5</td>
<td>47,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109(110):4</td>
<td>I,33,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111(112):7</td>
<td>35,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B(115):8</td>
<td>46,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):3-4</td>
<td>45,4; 49,22; 50,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):6</td>
<td>38,317</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>115(116):10</td>
<td>39.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):12</td>
<td>39.16; II.36.8, 44.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):13</td>
<td>39.16; 40.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117(118):22</td>
<td>39.1; 44.20; 47.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):57</td>
<td>I.34.12; I.36.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):71</td>
<td>38.17; 42.342.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):2-5</td>
<td>44.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):1</td>
<td>35.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):2</td>
<td>39.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):3</td>
<td>39.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):4</td>
<td>47.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123(124):1.3</td>
<td>II.34.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125(126):6</td>
<td>III.36.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129(130):1</td>
<td>39.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129(130):3</td>
<td>42.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):8</td>
<td>49.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138(139):16</td>
<td>43.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139(140):8</td>
<td>III.36.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141(142):4</td>
<td>37.18; 39.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141(142):6</td>
<td>I.34.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141(142):5</td>
<td>II.36.14; III.36.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142(143):2</td>
<td>42.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143(144):8</td>
<td>37.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143(144):15</td>
<td>37.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:15</td>
<td>44.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>III.36.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11-12</td>
<td>37.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:26, LXX</td>
<td>II.48.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:6, LXX</td>
<td>I.48.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>35.10; 39.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:17</td>
<td>III.36.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:20</td>
<td>III.36.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>37.9; 44.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>47.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5, LXX</td>
<td>37.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8 LXX</td>
<td>I.33.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9,5</td>
<td>44.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:6</td>
<td>47.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>III.36.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:20,18</td>
<td>I.48.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>50.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:34</td>
<td>II.48.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>III.36.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>35.1; 37.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>37.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>47.2; 49.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:26</td>
<td>41.16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Isaiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>50.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>45.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>45.12; 47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>49.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>46.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4,7</td>
<td>35.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>35.8; 45.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>49.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:13-14</td>
<td>47.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:1, LXX</td>
<td>47.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:13</td>
<td>39.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:18</td>
<td>47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:13</td>
<td>III.36.12; 39.17; 39.18; 45.6; II.48.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:14, LXX</td>
<td>II.34.12; 49.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:22</td>
<td>38.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:5</td>
<td>II.34.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:15</td>
<td>47.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>43.16; 44.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7</td>
<td>37.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:7,5</td>
<td>40.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:9</td>
<td>37.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:5</td>
<td>46.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16-17</td>
<td>42.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:1</td>
<td>46.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>42.8; 49.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:9,10,7</td>
<td>42.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:24</td>
<td>42.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jeremiah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>50.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29</td>
<td>42.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:1</td>
<td>38.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>47.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:16</td>
<td>III.36.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:24</td>
<td>39.27; 49.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:33</td>
<td>45.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Baruch**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:38</td>
<td>47.15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ezekiel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36:20</td>
<td>II.34.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Daniel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:35</td>
<td>45.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hosea**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td>44.27; 49.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jonah**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse Reference</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>50.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Micah
4:1 45,6
4:2 45,12; 47,5

New Testament
Matthew
3:7-9 46,11
3:14 36,5
5:5 II,34,7
5:6 II,33,15; 35,14; II,48,8
5:8 35,15; I,36,5; 39,21; 42,4; 44,25
5:10 II,34,13; 43,1
5:14 44,33
5:16 44,29
5:35 39,5
5:44 II,36,1
5:48-45 39,4; 49,28
6:1 44,29
6:1,2 49,12
6:6 II,33,8; 35,5
6:19-21 44,27
6:20 38,12
6:21 II,48,2
6:24 40,3
7:7 I,33,1
7:13-14 43,18
7:23 II,34,2
8:2 39,23
8:8 38,18
8:10 38,18
8:11 46,12
8:11-12 38,18
8:12 I,36,11; 46,12
9:12 38,18
9:13 44,27; 49,12
10:22 41,11; 42,3
10:24-25 40,8
10:28 II,36,3; III,36,13; 40,2
10:30 III,36,13
10:34 44,11
11:10 49,11
11:15 II,33,16; I,48,2
12:7 44,27
12:48 44,12
13:28 40,4
14:28 39,9
15:8 45,6
15:22 44,27
15:26 37,1
15:28 44,27
16:16 49,2
16:16-23 II,34,6

16:18 39,25
16:22 39,25
16:22,23 I,34,8
16:23 39,25
17:19 45,6
18:3 44,1
18:10 43,16
19:4-6 37,6
19:6 44,3
19:14 46,2
19:17 44,3
19:21 43,25
19:21-28 49,8
19:28 44,23
20:22 II,36,8; 37,16; 39,16
21:9 II,33,5
21:38 40,1; 40,10
22:16 37,17
22:16-17 II,34,11
22:18 II,36,11; 37,17
22:29-30 43,16
22:42-46 I,33,6
23:2-3 III,36,20
23:3 39,15; I,48,5; 49,23
23:13 37,20
24:12 37,14; 39,1
24:13 I,36,7; 39,1; 39,3; 41,11; 42,3
24:19 39,28
24:22 39,28
24:23 39,1; 49,3
24:35 III,36,11
24:40 I,36,2
25:21 38,5
25:26-27,30 38,5
25:34 35,5; I,36,10; III,36,9; 44,24; I,48,6; II,48,4
25:34,35 49,13
25:34-1 39,19
25:34,46 III,36,6
25:34-35,40,49,11 44,27
25:34-38 44,27
25:35 I,36,2; 49,11; 49,20
25:35-36 40,2
25:35-37,40 III,36,6
25:40 38,12; 40,11; I,48,16
25:41 35,5; I,36,11; 37,3; 44,24; I,48,6; II,48,4
25:41,34,46 I,48,5
25:42 I,36,2; 37,3
25:42-43 37,6
25:44-45 37,6
26:26 I,33,10
26:28 II,34,11; 40,6; 42,7
27:37 46,4
27:42 II,34,11; 44,1
27:46 II,34,5; 37,6; 37,27; 41,17; 49,5
28:10 44,23
| Mark | 28:13 | II,36,17; 37,19 |
|      | 28:20 | II,34,12; 46,7; 47,14 |
|      | 1:2   | 49,11 |
|      | 1:7   | 35,9 |
|      | 2:11  | 40,5 |
|      | 3:33  | 44,12 |
|      | 8:38  | 39,16 |
|      | 10:18 | 44,4 |
|      | 13:21 | 47,7 |
|      | 14:34 | 42,7 |
|      | 15:26 | 46,4 |
|      | 15:34 | 49,5 |
| Luke | 1:32  | I,33,6 |
|      | 1:35  | 50,10 |
|      | 2:30  | I,34,12; 39,18 |
|      | 5:21  | III,36,3 |
|      | 7:27  | 49,11 |
|      | 7:6-9 | 46,12 |
|      | 8:25  | 45,5 |
|      | 10:27-29, 30,34-37 | I,48,14 |
|      | 11:26 | II,48,1 |
|      | 11:41 | 44,27 |
|      | 12:20 | II,48,1; II,48,7 |
|      | 12:33 | III,36,8; I,48,9 |
|      | 12:49 | 45,13 |
|      | 12:52-53 | 44,11 |
|      | 14:11 | 41,12 |
|      | 15:24-32 | 44,9 |
|      | 16:2.3 | I,48,12 |
|      | 16:9  | I,48,9; I,48,12 |
|      | 16:24 | 38,22 |
|      | 16:28 | I,48,14; 49,9 |
|      | 18:11,13 | 39,27 |
|      | 18:13 | 49,30 |
|      | 18:14 | 41,12 |
|      | 20:18 | 45,12 |
|      | 20:35-36 | 43,16 |
|      | 20:36 | 43,16 |
|      | 23:21 | II,34,11; 40,12 |
|      | 23:28-31 | 40,12 |
|      | 23:34 | 39,25; 44,14 |
|      | 23:38 | 46,4 |
|      | 23:42 | 39,15 |
|      | 23:43 | II,33,24; I,34,14; 39,15 |
|      | 24:18-21 | II,34,4 |
|      | 24:46-47 | 49,4 |
| John | 1:1   | I,33,6; 35,1; 44,3; 49,1 |
|      | 1:1-3 | 46,8 |
|      | 1:1.14 | 44,20 |
|      | 1:3-4 | 44,5 |
|      | 1:5   | I,34,4 |
|      | 1:10  | I,34,4 |
|      | 1:11  | I,48,5 |
|      | 1:12  | 49,2 |
|      | 1:14  | I,33,6; 44,3; 49,5 |
|      | 1:16,9 | 35,9 |
|      | 1:17  | 44,7 |
|      | 1:20  | 35,9 |
|      | 1:47  | 44,20 |
|      | 1:47-51 | 44,20 |
|      | 2:19,21 | 40,12 |
|      | 3:29  | 35,9; 50,13 |
|      | 4:7   | II,34,4 |
|      | 4:24  | 50,17 |
|      | 5:22-27 | I,34,11; 40,12 |
|      | 6:41  | II,33,15; II,48,8 |
|      | 6:53  | I,33,8; II,33,12 |
|      | 6:54  | II,33,8 |
|      | 6:54-56 | 40,11 |
|      | 7:37-38 | 45,8 |
|      | 7:39  | 45,8 |
|      | 8:4-5 | 50,8 |
|      | 8:7-10-11 | 50,8 |
|      | 8:12  | 42,4 |
|      | 8:33  | 46,11 |
|      | 8:34  | 40,6 |
|      | 8:39  | 46,11 |
|      | 8:44  | 44,12 |
|      | 8:48  | 35,17; II,36,17; II,48,4 |
|      | 9:27-28 | 39,26 |
|      | 10:18 | II,33,7; 40,10; 42,7 |
|      | 10:20-21 | II,48,4 |
|      | 10:30 | 49,5 |
|      | 11:25 | III,36,15 |
|      | 11:48-50 | 40,1 |
|      | 11:51 | 40,1 |
|      | 12:19 | 40,1 |
|      | 14:6  | 39,18; 42,4; I,48,6 |
|      | 14:8  | 37,11; 38,6 |
|      | 14:8-9 | 45,1 |
|      | 14:9  | 37,11; 44,3 |
|      | 14:10 | II,34,5 |
|      | 14:21 | 37,11; 37,15; 43,16; I,48,5 |
|      | 14:30,31 | 50,9 |
|      | 15:20 | 40,8 |
|      | 16:12 | I,36,1; 38,3 |
|      | 17:20 | 47,14 |
|      | 18:36 | 47,5 |
|      | 19:6  | 40,12 |
|      | 19:11 | 49,5 |
|      | 19:19 | 46,4 |
|      | 19:28 | II,34,4 |
|      | 20:17 | I,48,8 |
|      | 20:28 | 49,5 |
|      | 21:29 | II,48,5; 49,5 |
|      | 21:15-17 | 37,17 |
|      | 21:17 | II,36,8 |
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volume III/16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11:27 II,33,17; III,36,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:9-10 45,13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:10 38,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11 III,36,18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15 II,36,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Galatians**
- 2:4 40,8
- 2:20 49,31
- 3:13 37,26
- 4:14 49,11
- 4:19 49,27
- 4:24 I,33,3
- 5:17 I,36,6
- 6:1 37,22
- 6:2 41,4
- 6:9-10 III,36,7
- 6:14 44,3

**Ephesians**
- 2:3 37,5
- 2:14 47,3
- 4:17-18 41,2
- 5:8 I,34,4
- 5:14 45,12; II,48,4
- 5:28-29 I,48,6
- 5:30 37,6
- 5:31 II,34,1; 40,1
- 5:32 37,6; 44,12
- 6:12 I,34,4

**Philippians**
- 1:18 49,23
- 1:23-24 44,32
- 2:6-7 44,12
- 2:6-8 I,33,6
- 2:7 40,1
- 3:12-13 39,3
- 3:12,14 39,8
- 3:12-14 38,6; 38,14
- 3:13-14 39,3
- 3:15 38,14
- 3:20 II,48,2
- 4:5-6 46,7
- 4:17-10 49,11

**Colossians**
- 2:3 40,2
- 3:1-3 39,28
- 3:3-4 I,36,3; 43,5; II,48,3
- 3:4 I,36,7
- 3:5 39,8

**1 Thessalonians**
- 2:7 49,27
- 5:17 37,14

**2 Thessalonians**
- 3:6 II,36,20

**1 Timothy**
- 1:13 39,3; 50,6
- 1:13,16 45,13
- 1:15 49,31
- 3:15 47,1
- 4:8 40,3
- 4:12 III,36,20; 39,6
- 6:17 I,48,3
- 6:17-19 44,28; I,48,9

**2 Timothy**
- 2:12-13 39,1
- 3:2 44,9
- 3:5 47,8
- 3:8 II,36,12
- 3:9 II,36,42
- 4:7 39,3
- 4:8 39,3

**Titus**
- 2:8 I,34,4

**Hebrews**
- 12:5-6 37,23
- 12:6 II,36,4
- 8:10 45,6

**1 Peter**
- 2:4 44,20
- 5:8 49,29
- 21:23 37,26

**2 Peter**
- 2:20 II,48,1

**1 John**
- 1:8 38,14
- 2:1-2 II,36,20
- 3:1-2 49,2
- 3:2 I,33,10; II,36,8; 37,15; 43,5
- 5:19 I,34,4

**Revelation**
- 5:5 49,29
- 10:10 43,25
- 19:16 44,23

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2).
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.

Aaron, 33(1):5,6,7; 33(2):2
abandon (-ed; -ment)
Abessalon, 33(1):2; 50:15
Abimelech, 33(1):3,4,6,7; 33(2):2,2
his children imitate his faith, 46:11
Lazarus and the rich man, 48(1):10; 48(2):1
promised offspring, 46:11
self-knowledge, 43:19-20
tested by God, 36(1):1
two sons (=covenants), 33(1):3
Absalom, See Abessalon.
abyss, 35:10,18; 41:15
source of joy, 43:16
those who fear God and, 33(2):11
Why stand here gazing up . . .?, 49:5
anger, 33(2):5; 36(1):9; 36(2):2; 37:7
animals (-s), 46:1
all belong to God, 49:17
gentle, 33(2):5
good things given to by God, 35:13
privileges of human beings and, 35:12
sacrifice prefigured the one s., 50:21
salvation, 35:11,12
subject to human beings, 48(1):16
anointing: kings and priests, locality, 44:19
oil poured on stone by Jacob, 44:20
your God has anointed you, O God, 44:19
ants, 36(2):11
industry: summer and winter, 41:16; 48(1):12
anxiety, 36(3):12; 37:3; 41:12; 45:3; 50:18
Apocalypse, 49:9
apostasy, 50:18
apostles, 35:8; 36(2):20; 44:32; 45:4,7,8; 46:4; 47:14
Christ shouted through, 48(1):2
Christ’s neighbors, 37:17
churches begotten by, 44:23
fearful at Christ’s passion, 37:17
first Christian community, 44:28
friends of the Bridegroom, 35:9
Lord, show us the Father, 38:6
raised offspring for Christ, 44:23
their sound went forth throughout . . ., 39:10
twelve thrones, 39:10
Arius, 35:9
armies, 43:10

Volume III/16
Volume III/16

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

armor: spiritual and invisible, 34(1):2
arrogance, 45:13
arrow(-s), 37:5; 39:16; 44:16
art: lapses of taste, 34(2):2
as if (usage) , 48(2):5
astrology, 40:3
Athenians, 45:7
attitude: called “foot”, 35:18
Augustine, Saint: confesses his bad life, 36(3):19
slander against, 36(3):19
avarice, 36(3):11; 38:12
Babylon, 44:25
baby-talk, 33(1):11
Bagai, 36(2):20,22
bald man, 44:1
baptism, 36(3):19; 41:1; 43:15; 44:23; 47:8
forgiveness of sins, 41:12; 45:4; 50:10
life after, 50:1
repentance of, 36(2):23; 39:1; 44:11
sins after, 48(2):1
Barnabas, 33(2):19
Batheisha, 50:2
battle, 35:6
beard: saliva dribbling down, 33(1):11
strength, 33(1):11; 33(2):4
beatific vision: face-to-face clarity, 43:5
beauty, 36(2):13; 39:8; 49:4
inner face: conscience, 44:29
justice as supreme b., 44:3
of creation, 41:7
of justice, 41:7; 44:14
Word made flesh, 44:3
heeding, 40:5
beggars, 36(3):1,2,5; 42:8; 48(1):3; 48(2):5
being:
I AM WHO AM, 38:7,22
non-being and, 38:22
when to say something “is”, 38:7
believer, 41:5
God knows my heart, 39:17
Lord, who is like you, 34(1):14
righteous, 39:6
belly, 43:23-24,25
Bible:
opening roofed-over texts, 36(3):3
ruminating on, 36(3):5
sudden changes of speakers in, 44:8
two Testaments in agreement, 49:4
words laden with mystery, 46:1
birds:
born from water at God’s command, 49:18
knowledge about all birds, 49:18
bishops: successors of apostles, 44:32
blasphemy, 34(2):2; 36(1):9; 36(3):3; 44:9;
50:15
blessed: on earth and in heaven, 40:3
blessing, 48(1):17
good will, 36(2):14
harvest, 36(3):7
temporal goods, 48(2):8
blind(-ness), 36(1):5; 36(2):8; 40:9; 43:14
carnally-minded persons and, 38:3
healed man cursed by Jews, 39:26
spiritual: eyes clogged by many sins, 39:21
blood: Cain, 39:13
plural usage (Greek), 50:19
shedding, 44:27
boasting, 38:18; 43:9; 49:31
What have you that you did not receive, 47:4
body and soul:
See also human body; soul
ruled and ruler, 41:7
whole human person, 37:11
body of Christ, See Church.
bones, 37:6; 41:18
hamstrung bones will dance for joy, 50:13,14
Lord, who is like you, 34(1):13,14
safeguarded, 33(2):24
term = the righteous of the Lord’s body, 34(1):14
bow (as ambush), 45:13
bow: broken to pieces, 36(2):3
bread, 48(2):10
righteousness, 48(2):8
word of God, 36(3):5
breast, 33(1):6; 38:3; 49:27
praying and, 34(2):5
symbol of secrecy, 34(2):5
bride:
beauty (Song of Songs), 44:26
Queen has taken her place . . . , 44:24
Bridegroom:
beauty of, 44:3
children of Korah, 41:2; 46:2
friend of, 50:13
synagogue as mother of, 44:12
Word of God, 44:7
brother: slandering his brother, 49:27
bruses, 37:9
building:
inspection of trees used for, 45:3
plan, 44:4
business, 35:5; 36(1):2; 38:3
Caecilian, 36(2):19,21,22
Caifaphas, 40:1
Cain, 40:14; 48:2:11
cursed and banished from earth, 39:13
calf, golden, 34(2):15
Calvary, 46:2,3
Korah, 41:2; 43:1; 44:1; 45:1
calves, sacrifice of, 50:23
Canaanite woman, 37:1; 44:27
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Carthage, 36(2):19,20; 44:23; 47:6
cataracts, 41:13,14
catechumens, 41:1
coronation, 41:9; 43:13

- asks Christ to heal his servant, 46:12
- I am not worthy, 38:18
- certainty: prophets and future events, 43:8
- human condition beset with uncertainties, 38:19
- change, 38:22; 41:12; 44:2
- charioteer, 33(2):6; 39:9,11
- always still owing, 36(3):18
- Bear one another’s burdens, 41:4
- chilling; blazing, 37:14

- Christ receives when given to the poor, 36(3):6
- help for least of Christ’s brothers, 37:6; 48(1):16
- I was hungry and you fed me, 44:27
- law and growing cold, 38:5
- running to Christ with, 33(2):10
- chastening, 37:3
- chastisement, 38:17,18
- chastity, 33(2):6; 50:5
- cheating, 49:26
- making friends from sinful mammon, 48(1):12

- childlikeness, 44:1; 46:2
- children:
  - follow parents’ example, 48(1):14
  - growing up in faith, 30:24
  - heirs, 48(1):14
  - mourning over death of, 37:24
  - storing up wealth for, 38:12
  - inheritance of, 36(2):8
  - key: God as lovable, 49:2
  - whips used by God on, 36(3):9; 40:6
  - choice: ceases on judgment day, 36(1):1
  - churum, 44:20
  - Christ (the word)
  - meaning = anointed, 44:19

- Christian life:
  - brothers of Christ, 48(1):8
  - Christ, the end of our journey, 45:1
  - Christ’s way, 36(2):16
  - falling occurs in the heart, 44:16
  - hidden with Christ in God, 36(1):3; 39:28; 48(2):3
  - I live my own life no longer, 49:31
  - love and fear as guides, 39:20
  - made new by imitating his passion, 37:27
  - narrow path, 43:17
  - not I, but Christ lives in me, 39:27

- obey the commandments, 36(1):8
- ourselves as weapons in, 34(1):2
- paths of the unprofitable, 36(2):7
- proclaim; suffer; glorify, 39:15
- seeking: imitate Christ’s sufferings, 37:18
- sell all you possess . . ., 49:8
- sufferings of Christ and, 36(2):16,17
- traveler and lodger, 38:21
- Wait for the Lord, 36(3):14

- Christians, 45:7,8; 47:8
- begotten children, 44:23
- children of Korah, 41:2
- elder shall serve the younger, 46:6
- enemies of Christianity, 43:6-7
- fear of proclaiming aloud, 39:16
- Gentile origin, 44:12
- good seed, 42:2
- persecuted, 34(2):8
- subordinate to apostles, 46:5
- taunted, 43:10
- See also Catholic Church; persecution

- almsgiving, 44:28
- apostles and, 44:32
- ascension of Christ and, 49:5
- betrothed to one husband, 49:9
- beware the foot of pride, 35:18
- bones = the righteous, 34(1):14
- bride: I am wounded with love, 37:5
- Christ speaks in person of his body, 37:6; 40:1
- Christ: Head and body, 34(2):1
- Christ’s voice in his members, 34(1):1; 39:5; 40:6
- city founded upon a mountain, 44:33
- creation: the second day, 47:1
- cursing, 48(2):10
- daughters of Tyre, 44:28
- earth where blood has been received, 39:13
- enemies ask: When will his name disappear, 40:1,7
- Eve, mother of the living, 40:10
- everyone magnify the Lord, 33(2):6
- gleaming white robe of Transfiguration, 50:12
- good and evil mingled in, 34(1):10
- growing/filling the entire world, 47:2
- holy milk at breast of, 38:3
- integrity, 49:9
- Jacob’s ladder and, 44:20
- land of the Lord, 36(1):4
- leaders, 39:6
- lesson learned from its Head, 44:15
- love the unity of, 33(2):6
- lying witnesses against, 36(2):18

Volume III/16
members, hold fast to the Head, 40:8
members: all the righteous since world
began, 36(3):4
mourn and belly, 42:25
one body, one voice: Christ, 34(2):1
persecuted, 34(1):14
saints as garments of, 44:22
Saul, why are you persecuting me, 37:6
single voice with Christ, 37:6
sins of Christ’s body, 37:6
sleek old age, 36(3):4
sound gone forth through all the earth, 39:15
speaker, as a single body, 41:1
spread through the nations, 36(3):4; 44:30
suffering in Head and body, 37:16
suffering of Christ as example for, 34(2):1
suffers what Christ suffered, 40:8
temple of the King, 44:31
temptations, 41:19
tent, 41:9
two in one flesh (with Christ), 37:6; 40:1; 44:12
voice of Christ’s body, 34(1):1
weakness of Christ’s body, 37:22
widespread through all the nations, 36(3):4
creation, 33(1):3
circumcision, 33(1):7; 44:12; 47:3,11
city of God, 45:10; 47:2,3,4,7
cleanliness, 33(2):8
clothing: sweet scents, 44:22
cloud, 35:8,12; 36(2):12; 45:15
God thundered from, 45:10,13
come (the word): meaning: believe, 45:12
commandment, 39:21; 40:4; 41:3; 45:6; 47:9; 49:6,9
earthly promises, 34(1):7
harmony with, 42:5
pain as God’s precept, 38:17
compassion, 33(1):9; 49:22
complacency, 50:4
compunction, 50:11
correction, 48(2):9; 49:30
covenant:
Abraham’s two sons, 33(1):3
new, 45:6,10
Old and New, 35:12
covert, 39:7,28; 41:3; 48(1):3
cross:
boasting of, 44:3
instrument of healing, 43:14
insults to, 46:2
new sacrifice, 33(1):6
tree of salvation, 39:15
crowds: not to be imitated, 39:7
fulfillment:
See also under Jesus Christ
abolished as human punishment, 36(2):4
abomination, 37:26
drummed, 33(1):9
legs of the two thieves broken, 33(2):7
old nature crucified with Christ, 40:6
three men on crosses, 34(2):1
criminal: mothers; doctors, 33(2):20
crucifixion:
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
damnation, 43:18; 48(1):6,7; 50:5
dance, 47:11
Daniel (prophet), 42:4; 44:33; 45:12; 47:2
darkness, 33(2):10; 36(1):6; 47:1; 48(2):4
David, King, 33(1):2,4,6; 33(2):2; 33(2):2;
34(1):1,4,9; 37:2; 46:8; 50:2,3,6
See also Saul, King
Against you alone have I sinned, 50:9
animal sacrifices, 50:21
conceived in iniquity, 50:10
cursed, 50:15
feigned insanity, 33(1):2,3,8; 33(2):4,12
just punishment of, 50:15
Nathan’s parable, 50:8
type of the Church, 50:22
Your sin is forgiven, 50:11,15,18
day(-light), 47:1
as prosperity, 41:6,16
dead:
- bodily concerns, 48(2):7
- sleeper, rise from the dead, 45:12
- spirits; grave-cults, 48(1):15
- fear of speaking, 38:4
- humiliated, 38:4
50:19
bowed down to the very end, 37:10
called ‘sin’, 34(2):3
certainty of, 38:19
corporeal and spiritual, 48(2):2
curse inflicted on first parents, 37:26
day of, is hidden, 34(1):14
devil, lord of, 50:9
Earth you are . . . , 46:13
fear of, 48(1):6
making-alive is promised us, 40:3
mortal body carried with us, 37:5
nearness of your own last day, 36(1):10
pain: sinners and the righteous, 33(2):25,26
punishment due to flesh, 50:10
shepherd of unbelievers, 48(2):2,3,4
soul troubled by imminence of, 42:7
temporal goods left behind, 48(2):7
untimely extinction, 48(1):11
when he sees the wise dying, 48(1):11
when you die, you will not be dead, 36(3):15
You fool . . . this very night . . . , 48(2):1,7
debt: anxiety, 45:3
condign punishment for debtor, 45:3
decade, 50:24
deceit, 39:26
deer:
- longs for springs of water, 41:1,10
- rest their heads on each other, 41:4
- snakes killed by, 41:3
delight, 36(1):4,12; 39:3; 41:3,10; 50:13
deliverance, 48(2):5
Christ accused of having, 48(2):4
gods of the heathen, 49:2,6
You are the Son of God, 49:2
depth (the word), 41:13
36(3):13; 38:6; 39:3; 41:3,5,6; 42:2
all is before God, 37:14
earthly, 50:15
eternal, not temporal, goods, 43:2
for incorruption, 50:19
humans and animals, 35:12
Make known to me my end, 38:10
despair, 36(2):11; 50:5,7
36(1):5,13,15; 37:3; 38:15,18,21,22;
39:3; 40:9; 41:10,18; 44:1,25; 45:7;
47:3,9; 50:4
See also demon, Satan, serpent
children of, 44:12
corrupting the mind, 39:1
death and, 48(2):2
deceivings by praising Christ, 40:4
earthly needs and, 40:4
human enemy, 40:4
lord of death, 50:9
persecutions of the Church, 40:1
roaring lion, 49:29
ruler of this world, 34(1):4
temporal prosperity and, 40:4
worship in present life, 40:3
Diana, 45:7
Dido, 47:6
dignity, 48(1):16
Head and body of the Church, 37:6
disciples:
crucifixion and loss of hope, 46:7
man whose sight was restored, 39:26
discipline, 49:24; 50:24
disease, 47:4
dishonesty, 33(2):14
dissimilarity, 34(2):6
distress, 36(2):16; 37:13
divinization, 35:14
doctor, See physician,
Donatists, 33(2):7,19,22; 36(3):18,19,20
Donatus, 33(2):7; 35:9; 36(2):22,23
donkey: gentleness, 33(2):5
dream, 48(2):5,7
drum: crucifixion, 33(1):9; 33(2):2
drunkenness, 35:14
dust, 34(1):9; 43:25
dwelling, 48(1):2
ears: Let anyone . . . listen, 48(1):2
earth, 45:15
- hands of the ungodly, 36(3):13
earthlings, 48(1):3
- he has summoned all the earth, 49:3
land of the dying, 36(3):11
trembled with rising of Christ, 36(2):17
righteous will possess, 36(3):11
trembled with rising of Christ, 36(2):17
eternity, 33(2):6; 37:12
Egypt, 43:2; 46:6
elect: numerous, 47:9
Elijah, 33(2):17
Elisha: children jeered at, 44:1; 46:2
emptiness, 38:10,11
end of the world: Woe betide those . . ., 39:28
endurance, 33(2):24; 39:28; 42:3,5; 43:1,17; 45:1
people who hate, 36(2):1
suffering and, 36(2):6
enemies, 40:13; 41:18; 42:4; 43:10,11,13; 44:16; 49:26
commanded to love, 39:21
confounded and awed, 34(1):8
curse, 43:14
empty accusations by, 37:25
enjoined to pray for, 34(1):8; 37:4
gloating, 37:22,23
God will toss them like straw, 43:6-7
hatred without reason, 37:25
invisible warfare, 34(1):4
Let them be thrust back . . ., 39:26
loving to limit of strength, 39:4
prayer of praise to God for, 39:4
some flatter, some insult, 39:26
enlightenment:
Arise, sleeper, rise from the dead, 48(2):4
Enlightenment:
Arise, sleeper, rise from the dead, 48(2):4
earnest endeavors, 39:9
envy, 49:30
of the prosperous, 36(1):9
secret, 36(1):9
wicked people, 36(1):3
Esau, 46:6
eternal fire
threats of, 49:7
beatitude, 36(2):4
kingdom we are to receive, 36(3):6
One thing I have begged . . ., 41:5
promise: May the Lord keep him safe, 40:3
eternal punishment:
weeping and gnashing of teeth, 36(1):11
eucharist:
bread of angels, 33(1):6
How can this man give his flesh to eat, 33(2):12
humility; salvation, 33(1):6,10
scandal, 33(1):8
Eve, 40:10; 47:9; 48(1):6
See also Adam and Eve
evil-doer: does harm to self, 34(1):11
example:
children and parents, 48(1):14
ns of the great, 50:3,5
preachers, 36(3):20
existence: true being, 38:7
extinction: death seen as, 48(1):11
eye, 41:7
disease, 39:21
sight, 36(3):15
wanton glances, 50:3
36(2):3; 36(3):8,14; 37:15; 38:9,18;
39:9,15; 41:5,13; 43:16; 44:13; 49:7
anger and, 36(1):9
believing we shall come to see, 44:25
brought to life by, 49:5
centurion’s trust, 46:12
children growing up in, 50:24
children of Abraham, 46:11
Christ dwells in heart through, 45:5
cleansing the heart, 44:25
diversity of languages, 44:24
embarrassed to proclaim in public, 39:16
forgetting: Christ goes to sleep, 34(1):3
heading for a fall, 38:14
healing, before Christ, 36(3):4
made new by, 39:18
moving mountains, 45:6
righteousness and, 36(1):6; 39:27, 50:18
seeing good in others, 33(2):15
Show us the Father, 37:11
spiritual armor, 34(1):2
support for the heart, 33(2):24
united with God, 33(2):9
wavering: too difficult, 40:4
you see if you believe, 45:12
faithful, the:
God’s tent on earth, 41:9
living stones, 44:31
numbers beyond reckoning, 39:10
sons of men, 48(1):3
false accusations, 40:8
by enemies, 37:25
made against Christ, 36(2):17; 37:19
family: oppositions in household, 44:11
famine, 33(2):17
fantasizes, 37:11
fasting, 43:16
almsgiving related to, 42:8
lunching on prayers, 42:8

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
tempation of Christ, 34(2):3
fate, 40:6
father:
  household opposition, 44:11
  son and, 50:24
fear, 41:14,18; 47:6; 50:13
  chaste, 38:10
  face of God, 50:16
  justice; guide, 39:20
  of proclaiming, 39:16
  of saying something bad, 38:4
  Peter’s heart, 39:23
righteous will fear and be afraid, 39:6
  source of sin, 38:2
suffering, 36(2):17
  those who kill body, not the soul, 36(3):13
  fear of God:
    Christ teaches, 33(2):18
  lacking in sinners, 35:2
  Lord’s angel will deliver, 33(2):11
  nothing lacking to those who fear, 33(2):14
feast day, 41:9
feet, 38:2
charity, 33(2):10
Felician of Musti, 36(2):20,22
finished (the word), 45:1
fire, 34(1):11; 37:3; 40:12; 49:7
I have come to set fire . . ., 45:13
firmament
  children of, 47:1
  people worthy to be named, 47:1,8
first-born: rights of, 46:6
fish: one hundred and fifty-three, 49:9
flattery, 39:26; 49:1,26
fleece, 45:10
flesh:
  cravings of, 36(1):5
  infirmity, 40:5
  no power to speak, 42:6
  persecutors, 36(3):13
  thigh as, 44:13
Two in one flesh (Church), 40:1
Florentius of Hadrumetum, 36(2):20
food, 50:19
foolishness, 33(2):4; 39:8
foot of pride, 35:17,18
forbearance, 38(2):1
forgiveness: cool refreshment, 38:22
  forgiveness of sin, 41:12
  bad conscience, 45:3
catechumens, 41:1
Christ as blasphemer, 36(3):3
  hidden; unseen, 50:11
  hope, 50:5
  praise God for, 39:26
  trust in God, 33(2):26
fortitude, 42:3
Fortunatus, 36(2):20
fountain of life, 41:2
freedom, 34(1):15
frog, 45:10
fruit(-s), 48(2):4
funeral: grandiose, for rich man, 48(1):13; 48(2):1
furnace, 36(3):9
the three young men in, 33(2):22
future:
  all things are present with God, 49:18
  certainty of outcomes, 43:10
  meaning of in store, 36(3):15
  prophets refer to as if past, 43:8
  prudent provision for, 48(1):12
  speaker sees as present, 49:12
future life:
  See also eternal life; heaven
  bodily needs in, 50:19
  face-to-face with God, 43:5
  glory; inheritance, 36(2):8
  God correcting a person in this life, 50:15
  God’s promise, 40:3
  reward, 36(2):16
Gaius Seius, 33(2):13
generations: ancestors and children, 48(1):15
generosity, 36(2):13
gentiles, 33(1):7; 33(2):2,10; 35:8; 43:12;
  44:16,25; 45:6,8,10,15; 46:3,5,9;
  47:3,6,14
companions of the north, 47:3
  first to understand the prophets, 47:7
  Tyre as symbol of, 44:27
gentle people, 36(1):12
gentleness, 33(2):5; 44:15
gifts:
  from Christ, 36(2):14
  God has given what you are to return to him, 44:9
  God the author of all, 45:15
temporal and eternal, 35:7
  treasures in heaven, 44:27
  what was not received from God, 44:7
  withdrawn by God, 34(1):6
  future; inheritance, 36(2):8
  hope, 37:5
  sufferings, 36(2):9
  way of Christ’s lowliness, 37:16
  gluttony: Esau, 46:6
goal: future life, 38:6
God:
  See also Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ;
  Trinity; ungodly
  acknowledged in her houses, 47:4
  all things past and future are with God,
  49:18
  anger, 37:3,5
  armor of, 34(1):2
  attributes, 34(1):7; 35:13

Volume III/16
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Volume III/16

author of all his gifts, 45:15
avenger, 49:28
Be still and see that I am God, 45:14
cares for all equally, 45:9
coming near to, 34(2):6
connexion for temporal, 45:9
everything found in Him, 36(1):12
face of, 50:16
faithful in his promises, 39:3
finding fault with, 44:17
finding God, 41:7
forgetting, 49:29
glory, 39:4
God's anointing of God, 44:19
goodness of, 41:12
gracious countenance, 45:9
hearts far from, 48(2):1
his speaking is eternal, 44:5
hunger, 49:19
invisible realities of, 41:2,8
judgment(-s), 47:11
just, 36(3):9
justice and mercy, 35:10; 44:18
justice of his wrath, 37:7
unerring judgment, 34(1):9
within abyss, 41:14
king has desired your beauty, 44:26,27
king you are marrying, 44:26
knowledge:
knows us; yet he tests us, 36(1):1
of things before they were created, 49:18
secret and supreme, 49:18
light and spring, 41:7
love for us, 34(1):12
I will show myself to him, 37:11
loyalty required by, 49:15
mercy, See mercy.
miraculous interventions, 43:4
no beginning; new for us, 39:4
nothing comparable to, 34(1):13
our food and drink, 50:19
petition for temporal goods, 43:2
possessed for our enrichment, 34(1):12
possession; possessed, 36(1):4
power manifested, 45:9; 49:18
praising God by doing all things well, 34(2):16
prayer to, See prayer.
promises deferred, 39:2
refuge and strength, 45:2-3,4,7,13
renown over all nations, 46:10
seeking a reality above the soul, 41:8
seeking Him in material creatures, 41:8
seen by the pure of heart, 42:4
seen only with the mind, 41:7
silence of, 34(2):12
soul athirst for, 41:5
spoken only one Word, 44:5
strikes and heals, 50:11
supporter, 45:11,13,15
taunt: Where is your God, 41:6,10,19
testimony: I am your God, 49:14
the true "is", 38:7
thinking of, as depraved, 44:17
throne in human hearts, 45:9; 46:10
tongue and scribe's pen, 44:6,10
united with, in faith, 33(2):9
watching the wicked, 33(2):21; 35:3
godless, 47:3
persecution of the righteous, 34(1):14
seed will perish, 36(3):10
gods, 46:9,13
distinction among them, 49:2
God as maker of: 49:1
God as source of terror to, 49:2
shall die as mortals die, 49:2
stone, 41:6
gold, 36(1):12; 44:24
refined from straw, 36(1):11
Goliath, 33(1):2,3,4,10
good and evil:
See also sin; wickedness
fear of finding one's own iniquity, 35:3
found in all worldly activities, 36(1):2
God's bounty shared by all people, 42:2
innocence of evil, 46:2
intention related to, 39:26
mingled in the Church, 34(1):10
paths: broad or narrow, 39:7
people: just and unjust, 36(2):1
restrain tongue from evil, 33(2):18
threshing-floor, 47:9
turn from evil: do good, 33(2):19; 36(3):8
good example: good lives, 50:1
good fortune: praise God for, 48(2):9; 50:15
good thief, 34(1):14; 39:15
good will, 35:1
ladders and wings, 38:2
treasure of the poor, 36(2):13
good works, 36(1):8; 41:9; 46:10; 48(1):9,16; 48(2):3; 49:22,31
All nations, clap your hands, 46:3
Do good, and live in the land, 36(1):4
honor of God; in public, 44:29
pride, 44:29
rich in, 44:28
weary of doing, 36(3):2,7
works of the godless will perish, 36(3):10
goodness
fallen silent even for good words, 38:4
imitation of the good, 39:6
thank God for, 49:30
gospel: beauty of, 49:4

governing: lowly status as subject to, 48(1):2

grace, 35:10; 36(1):3; 38:2; 42:7; 43:26; 44:17; 45:10,11,13; 47:3,4,8; 49:9,31; 50:18

bedews your lips, 44:7,8,10,17

confessing weakness, 38:18

guile, 49:26,27

given gratis, 49:31

gratuitous worship, 43:15,16

heaven = the concern of, 44:8

punishment as, 38:17

grass, 48(2):3

gratitude, 36(2):13; 39:3

grave-cults, 48(1):15

greatness, 38:8; 39:6

guilt, 36(2):3,22; 44:18; 50:13

hair, 38:12

hands: Clap your hands, . . . 46:3,9,12

earthly; non-worshippers, 48(1):1

earthly; true, 36(3):14

everlasting confession, 44:33

God went up amid shouts of joy, 46:7

love of good days, 33(2):17

petitions of, 36(1):5

precious jewels of virtue in, 33(2):15

proclaiming with the lips only, 39:15

rumination in, 46:1

secrets of, 43:19-20,21

word = 'peoples', 49:11

heavens, 41:7

proclaiming justice, 49:13

word = 'peoples', 49:11


treasure in, never fails, 36(3):8; 44:27

heavens, 41:7
holocaust, 49:15,16; 50:21,23

definition, 49:15

sacrifices done away with, 39:12,13


miracles and, 45:4

sevenfold gifts of, 49:9

homes: tents and, 48(1):15

honor, 48(2):11


children of God, 49:2

disconcerted in bad times, 36(2):9

for what we do not see, 38:13

future happenings, 43:15

pregnant woman as symbol of, 39:28

present and future, 40:3

simply ask for God himself, 39:7

illusion, 36(2):9

lodged in God, 36(2):9

set in human beings, 36(3):20

shelter of God’s wings, 35:13

uncertainty, 38:19

horse, 33(2):5

house: Distribute its houses, 47:14

household: oppositions within, 44:11

human being(-es):

becoming like foolish beasts, 48(2):11

called “gods” (deified), 49:2

called angels, 49:11

Christ as only a human, 40:1

conceived in iniquity, 50:10

deep abyss, 41:13

duty: live according to God’s will, 48(1):1

gifts given to, 36(2):13

humility re gifts, 38:18

live on word of God, 36(3):5

nature; sin, 44:18

nothing compared with HIM WHO IS, 38:9

privileges, and animals, 35:12

two-types: Adam and Christ, 35:12

human body:

endued with health, 37:11

dead because of sin, 39:20; 42:7; 50:10

redemption of, 37:5

human condition, 42:2

displeasing things as self-made, 44:9

living in uncertainty, 38:19

suffering; strength from the Lord, 36(2):17

humiliation, 42:3

belly sticking to the ground, 43:23-24,25

both punishment and grace, 38:17

defa, 38:4

fallen silent, 38:4

humility, 36(2):1; 41:12; 46:2,13; 48(1):3; 50:13

blessing the Lord, 33(2):3,4

Christ slays the devil (Goliath), 33(1):4

Christian’s business to be lowly, 33(2):23

confessing one’s sins, 34(2):3

disciplined by, 38:18

God comes down to the humble, 33(2):23; 39:20; 50:21

hearing with, 44:25

holding fast to Christ, 33(1):10

meekness, 33(2):5

unwilling to be praised, 33(2):5

wholeness, 35:17

hunger, 33(2):19; 42:1; 49:19

hymn, 43:13

good word from the heart, 44:9

song of praise, 39:4


hyssop, 50:12

identity: discover who we are, 46:2

Idithun, 38:12,3,4,6,10,11,13,17,18,22


idol(x), 34(1):13; 35:13; 39:28; 40:1; 44:2; 45:10


bad will, 35:4

pardoned and, 35:3

sin/mercy, 50:6

illiteracy: book of the world, 45:7

illusions, 37:11

image of God, 38:11

coming close to God, 34(2):6

humans and animals, 48(1):16

mind or reason, 42:6

not neglected on earth, 40:3

sons of men, 55:12

within; spiritual, 48(2):11

imitation:

crowds on broad road, 39:7

Do what they tell you . . . , 49:23

immortality, 33(2):8,9,19; 35:6; 37:5,11; 40:1; 44:15, 44:21, 47:1; 48(2):2; 49:19; 50:19,22,23

impiety: David’s sin, 50:18

war against God, 45:13

imposters, 36(1):2

Incarnation:

flesh from Abraham’s stock, 47:15

flesh to die for us, 39:5

future; accomplished, 50:17

God with flesh, 46:8

God-Man, human for our sake, 36(2):15

likeness of sinful flesh, 49:5

Son leaving Father, 44:12

Word united with flesh, 44:3

inest, 36(2):20

incurruption, 50:19

infant baptism, 50:10

infinity, 36(2):16

inheritance: coheirs, 49:2
kingdom prepared for you, 36(3):14
inheritance, 36(2):8; 46:6; 48(2):9
iniquity, 39:1, 20; 40:8; 42:3; 44:18; 48(1):6
attachment to, 35:1
blood (usage of term), 50:19
blot out my iniquity, 50:6, 14
derived from Adam, 50:10
eating, 48(2):8
self-destroying, 34(1):11
insanity, 33(1):8
instruction: hated, 49:24
insult, 34(2):8, 9, 11; 39:26; 43:15; 48(1):11
integrity, 36(1):2
intention:
good works, 44:29
liability for punishment, 40:9
morality of spoken words and, 39:26
people not good, but with good intentions, 39:26
preparing self to sin, 50:3
interest on loans, 36(3):6; 38:5
interpretation, 36(1):2
invisibility, 38:10
invoke (the word), 41:13
is (the word), 38:7
Isaac, 36(1):1; 36(3):1; 46:13
Israel, 33(2):6; 36(3):12; 46:3; 49:11, 14, 19
crippling of, 44:20
God’s plan for, 43:2
god poured to, 34(1):7
one who guards, 43:22
ivory palaces, 44:23
Jacob, 43:5; 46:13; 49:14
elder shall serve the younger, 43:6
man without guile, 44:20
name changed to Israel, 44:20
oil poured on stone by, 44:20
thigh, 44:20
Jacob’s ladder, 38:2, 44:20
jealousy, 33(1):2; 33(2):6; 44:22
beauty of Christ’s gospel, 49:4
Let the walls be rebuilt, 50:22
Vision of Peace, 50:22
witnesses to Christ in, 49:5
Jesus Christ, 34(1):1; 35:9, 12; 38:9; 42:5; 44:10, 18; 48(1):2
See also Bridegroom; Christian life;
Church; Incarnation; Second Coming; Son of God; Son of Man; Word of God
accept the needy and poor man, 40:1, 2
all nations are his subjects, 44:14
Angel of Great Counsel, 33(2):11
Anyone who knows himself to be without sin, 50:8
apostles and, 35:9
Arise, Lord, help us, 43:26
ascension, 45:1; 46:7, 10
Church entrusted to us, 49:5
asleep; arise, 43:22; 45:5
beautiful [fifteen descriptors], 44:3
beauty of, 43:16; 49:5
came to save sinners, 49:31
carried in his own hands . . . ., 33(2):2
centuration and, 38:18
chrism (the word), 44:19
Church and, See Church.
claims all sin as his own, 37:16
Come, children, and hear me, 33(2):16
compassion; affection, 33(1):9
confessing the name of, 43:21
cornerstone, 47:3
crucifixion, 33(2):24; 39:15
bones not broken, 34(1):14
come down from the cross, 49:5
Jews and, 48(1):5
Jews did not recognize Christ, 49:5
King of the Jews, 46:4
mocking the cross, 46:2, 7; 48(1):11
scandal to the Jews, 44:3
why have you forsaken me, 49:5
David prefigured, 33(1):4
David’s Lord, 33(1):6
death. See below: passion and death
deeceful praise by devil, 40:4
Destroy this temple . . . ., 40:12
divine deliverer, 40:2
divinity:
contemplation of, 40:2
godhead lies hidden in, 40:1
hidden God of gods, 49:5
same as the Father, 44:15
Do not weep over me, 40:12
drawing near to the light, 33(2):10
dwells in hearts through faith, 45:5
empty accusations against him, 37:19
enemies ask: When will his name disappear, 40:17
enemies plan killing him, 40:10
enemy seeking his life, 39:24
ennobled in God’s presence, 49:4
Father, forgive them . . . ., 39:25
feigned friends of, 37:17
following Christ, 39:6
foremost place in the book, 39:14
foundation, 47:4
fount of life, 35:15
future judge subjected to judgment, 50:9
Gentiles and, 33(1):7
gifts to humans, 36(2):14
God and man, 44:19
God born from the human race, 44:13
God of gods, 49:1
God of the whole earth, 46:9

Volume III/16
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

Volume III/16

gods, if any, were made through, 49:1

**Good Teacher**, 44:4

He [Moses] wrote about me, 47:1

Head of all the righteous of all time, 36(3):4

**headstone of the corner**, 39:1

hold fast to his body and blood, 39:13

**Hosanna, Son of David**, 33(2):5

humanity:
- death and, 34(2):3
- his death was no sham, 37:26
- ignorance of Christ, 34(2):2
- praying as proper to, 34(2):5
- raised the human up to heaven, 40:2
- seed of David, 46:8
- surpassing all other humans, 44:7
- true flesh inherited from Adam, 37:27

humility, 33(2):7; 50:12

obedience unto death, 33(1):9

this is my body, 33(1):10; 33(2):2

hunger and thirst, 34(2):4

hungry for our sake, 49:19

I am needy and poor, 39:27

I am the light, 42:4

I am the living bread, 33(2):15

I am the truth, 39:18

I am thirsty, 34(2):4

I am with you throughout all days, 46:7; 47:14

I announced the news . . . 39:10,11

immolated as our passover, 39:13

innocence, 40:14

jeered at, 46:8

judge, 44:29

King of glory, 47:1

kingship not of this world, 47:5;15

knowledge of last day, 36(1):1

Korah, 41:2

lawgiver, 50:8

leader and his followers, 39:25

leaving his mother, the Jewish race, 44:12

led like a sheep to slaughter, 44:15

life through, 48(2):2

lion, 49:29

**Lord most high and terrible**, 46:4

mediator between God and man, 36(2):20

members in him: **My God, my God, why . . .**, 40:6

miracles, 39:15; 47:5

mountain in prophecy, 45:6

name: Anointed God, 44:21

new Adam; life-giving Spirit, 37:15

not put to shame, 33(2):10

our eternal life with, 48(1):10

passion and death
- bones not broken, 33(2):24

Christ’s ‘ignorance’ of, 34(2):2

come down from the cross, 34(2):11; 40:13; 44:1

crucified in weakness, 37:27

disciples lose hope, 46:7

**Father, forgive them . . .**, 44:15

glory of martyrs, 40:1

godhead did not die, 40:2

green wood, 40:12

guards claim disciples removed his body, 36(2):17

Head and his body, 37:6

imitation of, 48(1):3

Jews and, 37:11

led like sheep to slaughter, 38:3

My God, my God, why . . . 34(2):5; 37:6; 27

**My soul is sorrowful**, 40:6

Peter’s denial, 37:17

proof: he is only human, 40:1

psalm 37, and gospel accounts, 37:6

scourged, 40:6

silence at his trial, 37:20

Peoples will fall under your assault, 44:16

power and wisdom of God, 46:10

power of, 40:13

to come down from cross, 34(2):11

to lay down his life, 33(2):7

to raise his own flesh, 40:12

to take up life again, 40:10

Whom do you seek . . . 34(2):3

praying, 34(2):5

present in his members, 40:11

priest, 36(2):20

proclaims, suffers, is glorified, 39:15

promises kept by, 44:15; 47:7

prophecies made by, 39:1

propitiation for our sins, 33(2):26

psalms = voice of Christ, 37:6

resurrection, 40:12; 43:26; 47:1

earth trembled, 36(2):17

flesh arose, 49:5

soldiers guarding his tomb, 37:19

risen among the pagans, 43:22

robe gleaming white like snow, 50:12

rock, 39:3

sackcloth; fasting, 34(2):3

salvation comes from the Jews, 47:11

seen today as only a man, 40:1

sharing in his suffering, 36(1):9

sheep voiceless before its shearer, 37:20

silence of, 49:6


- 43:2; 44:7; 50:9

sinner and, 48(2):1

sleeps when faith is forgotten, 34(1):3

speaking in person of his body (Church), 37:6
See also heaven, kingdoms, 45:10,13
knock(-ing), 33(1):1,4,7; 39:27
knowledge:
ability to bear, 36(1):1
divine and human, 49:18
tests: God causes us to know, 36(1):1
Korah:
children of, 41:2;
43:12,6-7,10,16,17,19-20; 44:1;
45:1,4,7; 46:2,7; 47:1
the name, 46:2
ladder, 38:2
angels ascending and descending, 44:20
land:
Church as Lord’s land, 36(1):4
eternal, 36(3):11
inheritance of the gentle, 36(1):12
Jewish people, 44:8
language(-s), 50:19
tongues express one faith, 44:24
last day, See judgment day.
law, 38:10; 40:14
charity growing cold, 38:5
Christ brings law to perfection, 45:1
experience the sweetness of, 38:6
mind vs. members, 44:7
promised land and, 44:8
put into hearts, 45:6
reflecting night and day, 36(3):5
Word of God and, 50:8
Lazarus and the rich man, 33(2):25; 38:22;
48(1):10; 48(2):1,7
leaping across, 38:1; 23,5,6
learning: learner is humble, 50:13
leaven, 39:13
leisure, 36(1):2
lentils, 46:6
letter and spirit, 33(1):7
life:
Christ’s power over death, 40:10
daily pleasures, 48(1):10
human = just a few days, 36(2):16
longing for good days, 33(2):17
make known to me the number of my days, 38:5-7,9,10,22
promised in present and in future, 40:3,5
shortness of, 35:13; 36(3):1
successive stages of, 38:9
travel; no settling down, 34(1):6
37:12,15; 38:6; 41:2
creation of, 47:1
drawing near to Christ, 33(2):10
one reality with truth, 42:4
lily, 47:8
lion, 39:1,21; 40:4; 44:6; 49:29
listen(-ing), 33(1):1,4; 33(2):16; 48(1):2,3,5;
49:14,23; 50:5
delight and gladness, 50:13
hear first, then see, 44:25
only when you are God’s people, 49:14
rumination in the heart, 46:1
loans: interest on, 36(3):6
righteous persons, 36(3):6
lodger, 38:21
longing, 38:6
As a deer longs . . . , 41:1,10
contemplation of the Lord forever, 41:5
for invisible realities of God, 44:8
Lord’s Prayer:
brothers to Christ, 48(1):8
Forgive us our debts, 38:14
Lot (and wife), 33(1):5; 36(3):14
love, 37:11; 39:20; 44:26
appropriate, 39:28
bride of Christ wounded with, 37:5
Carnal jealousy, 35(2):6
Creator in the creature, 39:8
debased, 33(2):6
enemies, 39:1
God’s saving help postponed, 34(2):9
grown cold = silence of the heart, 37:14;
39:1
holocaust = wholly on fire, 49:15
I am wounded by love, 44:16
paired commandments: God and
neighbor, 33(2):10
runners’ course, 39:11
strong as death, 47:13
within, 44:29
loyalty: all that God requires of us, 49:15
Lucilla, 36(2):19
lung: as pride, 50:12
lust, 33(2):6; 35:10; 39:3; 41:3; 50:3,5,24
lying, 38:4
lyre: and psaltery, 42:5
Maccabees, 33(2):22; 36(3):9
Majorinus, 36(2):19
malevolence, 39:26
malice, 34(1):11; 49:26
man, 33(1):3
manure, 49:7
Maratius, 36(2):20
marriage, 35:5; 44:1
martyrdom: motive or pain, 34(2):13
37:3; 39:1; 40:4; 41:19; 43:1; 47:13
celebrate birthdays of, 39:16
confessing the name of Christ, 43:21
falling asleep they arouse Christ, 43:22
growth of the Church, 40:1
mighty gentleness, 44:15
number of, 49:9
passion of Christ and, 40:1
soul does not die, 40:2
swallowed up alive, 34(2):15
unconquered souls, 36(3):13
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 34(2):3; 47:15; 50:10
Massa Candida, 49:9
material goods: longing for, 35:13
materialist, things of the spirit and, 38:3
Matthias, Apostle, 49:9
Maximian (-ists), 35:9; 36(2):19,22,23
condemnation of, 36(2):20,21,22
council proceedings against, 36(2):20
medicine, 37:5
meditation, 36(3):5
meekness, 33(2):5
Melchizedek, 33(1):5,6,7; 33(2):2
Christ’s wounded members, 39:20
Do not sit in judgment . . ., 42:7
God postpones the last day, 36(1):1
God’s justice in this world, 36(1):2
God’s manifold mercies, 35:11
heaven and earth, 35:7,8
immense, 50:14
love God for his mercy, 44:18
recipient of, as neighbor, 48(1):14
sacrifice and, 44:27
sinning knowingly and, 50:6
merit, 36(3):6; 48(2):3; 49:9,31
Messiah, 35:13; 44:3; 50:13
metaphor: tongue and pen of a scribe, 44:6,10
midday, 36(1):7
milk, 33(1):6; 38:3
millstone, 36(1):2
mind, 44:6; 49:28
childish cast of, 46:2
development, 39:1
fixed on God alone, 48(2):4
gift, 36(2):13
governs body, 41:7
image of God, 42:6; 48(2):11
understanding and, 42:6
miracles, 35:8; 43:4; 45:4,15
missen, 38:1
misery, 39:5
misfortune, 41:6,9; 49:22
mockery, 46:2,7; 48(1):11; 48:2:4
money, 48(2):4
See also wealth
good use = lending to Christ, 48(1):9
keeping it safe, 48(1):12
money-lenders, 36(3):6; 38:11
moral standards, 50:24
mortality, 37:5; 42:2; 50:10
Moses, 36(2):12; 36(3):20; 40:13,14; 47:1; 48(1):5; 49:9,14; 50:8
mother:
apparent cruelty of, 33(2):20
breast milk, 33(1):6
giving babies to nurses, 49:27
oppositions in household, 44:11,12
motives, 43:21
mountain (-s), 42:4
abyss and, 35:10
authorities of this world, 45:7
city of God on, 47:2,3
clouds as, 45:10
Come, let us go up, 45:12
friend of the Bridegroom, 35:9
metaphor, 35:10
my voice heard from, 47:2
people called clouds, 35:9
people who are great, 39:6
shifted out to sea, 45:6,7,10
stone grown to be mighty, 45:12
mourn: beatitude, 34(2):6,7; 37:2
mousetrap, 34(1):10
mule, 33(2):5
murder, 50:2,10
murmuring, 36(3):8
money, 48(2):4
Music, 41:10
mustard seed, 45:6
mystery, 46:1
invisible sacramental oil, 44:19
queenly apparel, 44:24
touching God, 33(2):23
mystical body of Christ:
I was hungry and you fed me, 39:5
single person asking God’s help, 39:28
Why are you persecuting me, 39:5
name(-s):
meanings of personal names, 33(1):4
mysterious change of, 33(1):2-3; 33(2):2
Nathan, 50:2,5,8
Nathanael, 44:20
nation(-s), 48(2):4
he summoned all the earth, 49:4
Hear these things . . ., 48(1):2
Jesus as king of, 46:9
subjected peoples, 46:5
neighbor, 37:7
Good Samaritan, 48(1):14
person to whom we show mercy, 48(1):14
net: one hundred and fifty-three fish, 49:9
New Covenant, 38:9; 49:16
New Testament:
elder (O.T.) will serve the new, 40:14
promise: kingdom of heaven, 34(1):7
night, 41:6,16; 47:1; 48(2):3,4
Nineveh, 49:28; 50:11
noise, 45:14
numbers, 39:10
five (senses) , 49:9
one hundred and fifty-three, 49:9
representing crowds, 49:9
ten plus seven, 49:9
Numidia (-ns), 36(2):19,20
nurse fostering her children, 49:27

Volume III/16
obedience, 41:9; 49:23
occasions of sin, 50:3
oil: visible and invisible, 44:19
old age, 36(2):16; 36(3):1,9
Old Covenant, 38:9
Old Testament:
earthly blessings desired in, 35:13
promise re temporal goods, 34(1):7
prophecies, 40:14
olive, 46:13
original sin: forbidden fruit, 47:9
Through one man sin entered . . . , 50:10
overcoming: two kinds of people, 34(1):8
ownership: God as owner, 49:18
greed, 39:7
pagans, 39:16; 40:1,14; 41:2,6; 43:12,22; 48(2):1
pain, 34(2):13; 37:4; 42:5
body’s distress, 42:6
corrective, 40:6
God’s precept, 38:17
keeping silent from good words, 38:4
love and, 37:5
relief on bed of, 40:5
scourging, 37:24
silence from good words, 38:4
Pancratius of Badias, 36(2):20
parable, 48(1):5
paradise: today you will be with me, 39:15
paralytic: inner person, 56(3):3
pardon, 55:3; 50:8
party, 41:9
passions: control, 39:9
pastimes, 40:5
path: narrow or broad, 39:6,7; 43:17
Paul, apostle, Saint, 35:8,9; 39:3; 43:1,2; 44:20,22; 48(1):3
Barnabas and, 53(2):19
bound in Jerusalem, 36(2):6
glorious in his preaching, 44:22
good days, 33(2):17
slandered, 49:27
taken up to lần the heaven, 37:12
throttle on judgment day, 49:9
bedrothion of the heart, 35:2
delight in abundance of, 36(1):12
everlasting, 33(2):23
husband and wife, 37:6
seek; pursue, 33(2):19
sin and, 45:3
Why do you disquiet me, 33(2):19
peculators, 36(3):16
penance: ashamed of, 50:8
penitent, 47:5; 50:15
penitential psalm, 44:18
Pentecost, 45:8; 49:4

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

perfection:
being: I AM WHO AM, 38:22
knowing one cannot be perfect, 38:14
like your Father in heaven, 49:28
not reached in this life, 38:13,14
perish, 44:22; 48(1):12,13; 48(2):4
unjust will perish entirely, 36(3):16
works of the godless, 36(3):10
Perpetua, Passion of, 47:13
being heard in time of, 33(2):22
bones not broken, 34(1):14
cause of right, 43:1
cause of the right, 34(2):13
Church: Head and body, 34(2):8
conversion and, 34(1):8
devil and the Church, 40:1
God as our ally, 34(1):4
God’s help is slow in coming, 34(2):9
God’s love and, 34(2):9
guilt, 36(2):3
never ceases, 39:1
on going, 34(2):8
persecutors, 36(3):13
swallowed up by, 34(2):15
perseverance, 36(1):7; 39:1,11; 44:25; 50:19
Perseverantius of Theveste, 36(2):20
personification, 43:19-20
perversity, 48(1):1
Do you love me, 37:17
fear in his heart, 39:23
fear; denial of Christ, 37:17
hidden weakness, 41:13
rescue by angel, 33(2):22
walking on water, 39:9
would run ahead of Christ, 39:25
petition: carnal, 36(1):5
for temporal goods, 43:2
Pharaoh, 33(1):3
Pharisees, 39:20,27; 48(1):5; 49:30
apparent cruelty of, 33(2):20
does what he sees is necessary, 34(2):13
love for the sick person, 47:4
piety, 46:13
pilgrimage, 38:21; 41:9,10; 42:2; 49:22
pit of misery, 39:3
piety, 50:6
plan (building), 44:4
planter (Paul), 35:9
Pomponius of Macri, 36(2):20
poor:
animal sacrifice and, 49:20
generosity of the, 36(2):13
prayers (borrowed money), 36(3):6
shall eat and be satisfied, 48(1):3
sons of men, 48(1):3
possessions, 48(2):5
choosing God = having all, 34(1):12
content with the necessary, 39:28
Go and sell all you possess, 43:25
master of or mastered by, 48(1):2
pain of not possessing, 37:5
potter, 38:17
poverty: bless the Lord, 33(2):3
happiness, when heard, 49:23
profit to us, not to God, 39:4
seeking things extraneous from God, 33(2):9
temptation and, 34(2):3
two wings: fasting and almsdeeds, 42:8
waited and waited for the Lord, 39:2
within me, 33(2):8; 34(2):5; 41:17
prachtri; -ing, 35:8
begetting children by, 44:23
example to the faithful, 36(3):20
pregnancy: symbol of hope, 39:28
prelates: workers in the field, 36(1):2
presence: of Abimelech, 33(1):7
of God: keeping guard over conduct, 38:3
priest(-hood) Jewish, 39:13
Levitical, 36(2):20
order of Melchizedek, 33(1):5
Primian, 36(2):10; 21,23
profit, 38:6,8,14; 39:11
profit (money-lenders, 36(3):6
profit to us, not to God, 39:4
seeking things extraneous from God, 33(2):9
vice and, 34(2):3
two wings: fasting and almsdeeds, 42:8
waited and waited for the Lord, 39:2
within me, 33(2):8; 34(2):5; 41:17
prachtri; -ing, 35:8
begetting children by, 44:23
example to the faithful, 36(3):20
pregnancy: symbol of hope, 39:28
prelates: workers in the field, 36(1):2
presence: of Abimelech, 33(1):7
of God: keeping guard over conduct, 38:3
priest(-hood) Jewish, 39:13
Levitical, 36(2):20
order of Melchizedek, 33(1):5
Primian, 36(2):10; 21,23
profit, 38:6,8,14; 39:11
profit (money-lenders, 36(3):6
profit to us, not to God, 39:4
seeking things extraneous from God, 33(2):9
vice and, 34(2):3
two wings: fasting and almsdeeds, 42:8
waited and waited for the Lord, 39:2
within me, 33(2):8; 34(2):5; 41:17
prachtri; -ing, 35:8
begetting children by, 44:23
example to the faithful, 36(3):20
pregnancy: symbol of hope, 39:28
prelates: workers in the field, 36(1):2
presence: of Abimelech, 33(1):7
of God: keeping guard over conduct, 38:3
priest(-hood) Jewish, 39:13
Levitical, 36(2):20
order of Melchizedek, 33(1):5
Primian, 36(2):10; 21,23
profit, 38:6,8,14; 39:11
profit (money-lenders, 36(3):6
profit to us, not to God, 39:4
seeking things extraneous from God, 33(2):9
vice and, 34(2):3
two wings: fasting and almsdeeds, 42:8
waited and waited for the Lord, 39:2
within me, 33(2):8; 34(2):5; 41:17
prachtri; -ing, 35:8
begetting children by, 44:23
example to the faithful, 36(3):20
pregnancy: symbol of hope, 39:28
prelates: workers in the field, 36(1):2
presence: of Abimelech, 33(1):7
of God: keeping guard over conduct, 38:3
priest(-hood) Jewish, 39:13
Levitical, 36(2):20
order of Melchizedek, 33(1):5
Primian, 36(2):10; 21,23
profit, 38:6,8,14; 39:11
profit (money-lenders, 36(3):6
profit to us, not to God, 39:4
seeking things extraneous from God, 33(2):9
vice and, 34(2):3
two wings: fasting and almsdeeds, 42:8
waited and waited for the Lord, 39:2
within me, 33(2):8; 34(2):5; 41:17
prachtri; -ing, 35:8
begetting children by, 44:23
example to the faithful, 36(3):20
pregnancy: symbol of hope, 39:28
prelates: workers in the field, 36(1):2
presence: of Abimelech, 33(1):7
of God: keeping guard over conduct, 38:3

blessed in this life, 48(2):8  
death and Lazarus, 33(2):25  
earthlings, 48(1):3  
grandiose funerals for, 48(1):13; 48(2):1  
poor and rich neighbors, 39:28  
poor man who lay at rich man’s gate, 36(2):7  
truly needy, 33(2):15  
trust in God, not wealth, 44:28  
believers, 39:6  
bread as, 48(2):8  
child of righteous parents, 36(3):12  
Christ the Head of all since world began, 36(3):4  
dominion over the wicked, 48(2):11  
faith and, 36(1):6; 39:7; 50:18  
heart, 35:16; 39:15  
hunger and thirst for, 48(2):8  
invisible enemies, 34(1):5  
judgment day, 36(2):2  
measure of, 33(2):26  
nothing derogatory in our lives, 34(1):4  
pain of losing, 37:24  
painful death, 33(2):25  
persecuted, 34(1):14  
person as God’s sword, 34(1):2  
praise God always, 34(2):16  
sacrifice, 50:23  
scepter of righteous rule, 44:18  
similarity of, 49:30  
spirit is life through, 40:3  
spiritual goods and receiving, 47:8  
usury, 36(3):6  
vindication, 34(2):14  
will possess the earth, 36(3):11  
wisdom, 36(3):12  
river: joy to God’s city, 45:8  
rock, 39:9,25; 44:6  
Roman law, 39:13  
Rome, 44:23  
Romulus, 44:23  
root, 48(2):4  
ruin(-s), 44:17  
running, 33(2):10; 38:6,8; 39:11; 41:2,3  
Sabbath, 37:2,5,10  
ever ceasing to pray, 37:14  
remembering, 37:5,9,10,12,13,15  
sackcloth, 34(2):3,45  
sacraments, 33(1):8  
flowing from Christ asleep on the cross, 40:10  
good lives and receiving, 47:8  
sacred scriptures, See Bible.
sacrifice, 39:12,13; 50:7
Aaron (animals); 33(1):5
animal as symbolic, 50:21
Christ (his body and blood), 33(1):5
cross, 33(1):6
good things are within (spiritual), 50:21
inner; within me, 41:17
mercy and covenant, 44:27; 49:12
myself as victim to immolate, 49:21
New Covenant, 49:16
no fault found with, 49:15
of praise, 49:21,22,23,30,31
old superseded by the new, 39:13
prefigured in Old Covenant, 49:16
sacrifice animals for the poor, 49:20
troubled spirit, 49:15
Sadducees, 43:16
sadness, 39:2; 41:18; 48(2):5
sin as cause, 42:3
wicked people and, 36(1):3
saint(-s), 36(3):9,11; 47:10; 49:11
Church of Christ, 47:1
garments of the Church, 44:22
God speaks through, 44:5
heaven: word = all saints, 49:11
mocked, 48(2):4
tabernacles of God, 44:23
Your right hand will conduct you . . . , 44:15
Salem (later Jerusalem), 33(1):5
saliva, 33(1):11; 33(2):4; 38:3
animals, 35:11,12
body and blood of Christ, 33(1):6
certain as if already accomplished, 43:8
confession of the Good Thief, 34(1):14
given birth to spirit of, 39:28
gladness of, 50:17
good person is pitted against evil, 36(2):1
heaven and, 41:11
Jacob, 43:5
prophets, 39:26
repentant, 33(1):7
Samaritan: man who fell among robbers, 48(1):14
sanctification, 45:8
Satan: the word, 39:25
Saul, King, 33(1):2; 33(2):2; 50:4
Saul (later Paul) , 36(2):2,5; 50:11,12
arrow (word) turned him into Paul, 44:16
Why are you persecuting me, 44:20
scandal, 33(2):14
schism(-atic), 40:9; 49:9
scourging, 37:23,24
sea, 45:6,15
seasons: changing, 41:16
second coming of Christ, 45:12
Christ will not come in silence, 49:28
Our God will come openly, 49:6,11
seed: good seed, 42:2
sowing, 36(3):7,14
seeking, 39:24,26
self: soul is troubled when turned to, 41:12
self-control, 50:3
self-indulgence, 38:5
self-love, 44:9
senses, 36(2):13; 38:16; 41:7; 49:9
sensuality, 34(1):9
serpent, 47:9; 48(1):1
servant: parable of lazy steward, 38:5
serving fellow-servants, 38:4
sexual intercourse, 50:10
shame, 38(2):10,11; 43:10
doing penance, 50:8
face to face with yourself, 49:28
sheep, 48(2):2,3; 50:8
shield, 34(1):2; 45:13
shows (entertainment), 30:9,10
Christian martyrs, 39:16
sick, 50:1
disarranged all his bedding, 40:5
time passes slowly for, 36(1):10
sign: miraculous, 45:12
Peter walking on water, 39:9
silence, 33(2):8; 49:6,26
fear of committing sin, 38:4
God will come openly, 49:6
quiet re something I should have said, 38:4
sins with the tongue, 38:3
soft sound from above, 42:7
vaccination, 38:5
Simeon, 39:18
similarity, 34(2):6
sin(-s), 35:10; 37:1,9,10; 41:18
See also confession; conversion; forgiveness of sin; repentance; sinner
acting in ignorance, 50:6,7
affection for, 35:1
all spring from greed or fear, 38:2
attachment to, 36(1):1
bodily members at disposal of, 41:9
chastisement for, 38:17
choosing to be bitten by snake, 41:3
Christ seems to take all as his own, 37:16
concur simply by approving, 49:25
consent, 50:3
corruption a result of, 50:19
death and, 34(2):3; 50:10
deceivin ourselves, 38:14
deep calls to deep, 41:14
defending, 35:10
despair, 50:5
doing wrong knowingly; great mercy, 50:6
enslaved for law of sin, 35:6
falling; rising again, 50:3
fear of committing; silence, 38:4

Volume III/16
God turning toward = punishment, 50:14
God’s absence from conscience, 45:3
great sins guarded against, 39:22
grieving for, 37:24
harm to self, not to God, 50:15
hatred for, 35:6; 50:2
human nature, 44:18
humble confession of, 34(2):3
intention, 50:3
Jesus and propitiation for, 33(2):26
Jesus asked to judge adulteress, 50:8
lesser folk and the great, 50:3,5
many bloods (plural), 50:19
more numerous than hairs of my head, 39:22
myself punishing my sin, 50:7
Nathan’s parable, 50:8
no peace in my bones, 37:6
occasions of, 50:3
only thing not received from God, 44:7
patron saint for, 50:3
peace and, 45:3
perseverance in, 35:6
pleasing to unclean spirit, 50:16
punishment by God, 44:18
sadness caused by, 42:3
secret, 35:17
self-justification, 50:13
slaves to, 40:6
spiritual blindness, 39:21
suffering for, 40:6
take serious thought for, 37:24
Turn your face away . . ., 44:18; 50:16
unconcern about small sins, 39:22
unwitting; small mercy, 50:6
Wash me more and more . . ., 50:7
weighed down by number of, 39:20
whip = medicine against, 37:24
with open eyes, 50:1
sincerity, 39:13,16
sinners(-s), 34(1):11; 35:1; 36(1):10;
36(3):20; 39:3,20; 47:2
arms crushed, 36(2):4
borrowers of interest, 36(2):13
commended; supported, 49:25
conscience; cure, 45:3
determination to do wrong, 35:2
earthlings, 48(1):3
elder shall serve the younger, 46:6
fallen; foot of pride, 35:18
fear of being rebuked, 35:2
God foresees judgment day, 36(2):2
God strikes and heals, 50:11
God will blot out their memory from earth, 50:14
I will make you as white as snow, 50:12
imitation of, 35:18
perishing, 36(3):14
praise in mouth of, 49:29
proud head held high, 37:8
receives praise, 39:26
seeks to kill the just, 36(3):12,13
strangers to God, 47:8
sword piercing their own heart, 36(2):3
taking stand against God, 38:3
teaching, by ex-sinner, 50:18
tents of, 48(1):2
tolerating, 36(3):17
unaware of God watching, 35:3
uses in present world, 36(1):11
washed white as snow, 44:26
will perish, 36(2):10
wretched death of, 33(2):25,26
sky, 47:1
slander, 36(3):19; 49:27
slave: property of master, 49:17
ugly but faithful, 33(2):15
sleep, 40:10
smoke, 36(2):12; 36(3):14
snake, 39:1; 40:4; 41:3
snow, 50:12
sojourning, 38:21
son; severed from father, 44:12
Son of God: See also Jesus Christ; Word of God
begetting of, 44:5
equal to the Father, 35:1
Nathanael’s confession, 44:20
once rich, became poor, 39:28
one nature with the Father, 49:2
Word and, 44:5
Son of Man: body is on earth, 44:20
judgment through, 48(1):5
our immortality and, 44:21
sons of men belong to, 48(1):3
song: epiphalamia, 44:3
new hymn to our God, 39:13
Songs of Ascents, 38:2
sons of men (biblical usage), 35:12; 48(1):3
soothsayers, 40:1
sorrow: pain of the soul, 42:3,6
song: See also body and soul; spiritual life
blessed during lifetime, 48(2):8
caring for, 34(1):6
disquiet in, 33(2):19
God’s weapon, 34(1):2
king’s daughters, 44:23
made by God, does not die, 40:2
My soul is sorrowful . . ., 42:7
poured out above myself, 41:8,10
power to kill one’s own soul, 36(2):3
price of redemption, 48(1):9,13
rewards and punishments, 37:11
righteous; chair for Wisdom, 46:10
salvation, 48(2):5
seeking Christ’s life (good way; bad way), 37:18

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50

separation from God = death, 48(2):2
servant of God, 46:10
sorrowful, 41:10,19
sword to defeat the devil, 34(1):7
troubled when it turns on self, 41:12
Why are you sorrowful, 42:6,7
sounding-chamber, 42:5
sour grapes, 48(2):8
sovereignty, 44:17; 48(1):2
speak(-er; -ing), 48(1):5
changes in sacred scripture, 44:8
fallen silent because of fear, 38:4
mouth to speak with, 38:16
wait to hear from God before s., 38:4
spectacle (shows), 39:9
speech:
  sound; fading away, 44:6
tongue, 50:19
spider, 38:18
spirit:
carnally-minded persons and, 38:3
existing, but not material, 50:17
good things of the, 33(2):15
heat; ardent in s., 50:23
new and upright, 50:15
spiritual wealth, 33(2):15
troubled, 41:17; 49:15; 50:21
spiritual life:
ascetical practices, 41:9
beginning to live for God, 48(2):4
danger in prosperity, 50:4
inner thirst, 41:2
inward paralysis, 36(3):3
nourishment for the soul, 35:1; 38:3
running, 38:9
soul close to God, 34(2):6
weary of well-doing, 36(3):2
springs, 41:5
stealing, 36(1):12
steps. directed by the Lord, 36(2):15
Songs of Ascents, 38:2
steward: parable: entrusted with master’s money, 38:5
still: Be still and see that I am God, 45:14
stone (-s), 39:1
anyone who trips over, 45:12
 grew to be a mighty mountain, 45:12
pagan god, 41:6
worship of, 46:9,11
storm, 45:5; 49:13
strangers: children of wicked people, 48(1):14
leave their wealth to strangers, 48(1):14
parents and children, 48(1):14
straw: gold refined from, 36(1):11
strength, 37:15
beard as symbol of, 33(1):11; 33(2):4
from God or self, 45:3
refusal to be strong, 38:18
relying on one’s own, 34(1):15; 48(1):7,8,9; 49:22
vicious, 38:18
stumbling-block, 49:27
suffering, 36(1):6; 39:16; 42:5; 44:15
acceptance of, 42:8
call upon God in, 49:22
Christ came to suffer, 49:5
Christ’s life; Christian life, 36(2):16,17
Church suffers what Christ suffers, 40:8
done to death all the day long, 43:1
drinking the bitter cup of, 48(1):11
glory in, 36(2):9
Head and body, the Church, 37:16
imitating sufferings of Christ, 37:18
inflicted by Saul (later Paul), 36(2):5
inner person, 37:15,16
inward from self; outward from others, 37:16
motive of martyr, 34(2):13
must will Christ’s suffering to be ours, 37:16
promised share with Christ, 36(1):9
renown as motive for, 43:21
sin/corrective pain, 40:6
temporal, 36(2):16; 48(2):9
voluntary, 34(2):1
summer, 41:16
Susanna: prayer by, 34(2):5
swallowing, 34(2):15
swiftly (the word), 44:6
sword, 36(2):3
God loosening his sword, 34(1):4
made from servant’s soul, 34(1):7
word as, 44:11
syllable: holding on to, 38:7
synagogue: as mother of Christ, 44:12
tabernacle, 41:9
Tarshish (Tarsus), 47:6
taste (in art), 34(2):2
tax, 49:29
tax-collector, 39:20,27; 49:31
teacher, 36(1):1; 50:13
tears: daily diet, 41:7
delicious, 41:6
temple: living stones, 44:31
one stone formed from many, 39:1
vegetable as blessings, 45:1
veil rent asunder, 45:1
volontary, 34(2):1
as blessings, 48(2):9
temporary goods, 36(1):17; 48(2):9
as blessings, 48(2):8
bless the Lord, 33(2):3
creaving for, 36(3):13
death and, 48(2):7
desire for blessings (O.T.), 35:13
desire for gains, 38:3
timeless, 34(2):2
food that will perish, 48(2):2
gifts of God, 55:7

Volume III/16
Number of my days, 38:7,9,10,22

prayer in, 34(2):3

prophets and future events, 43:9

problem: trust in God, 37:21
defense: trust in God, 37:21
deliverance by God, 43:3
human agents, 35:9
in God, not self, 41:12
in Truth, 35:13
in wealth or in God, 48(1):9

truth, 33(2):6; 34(2):6; 35:14; 37:11; 38:3; 39:13,18; 40:8; 41:3,18,42:2; 44:15,19; 45:13; 50:11
Christ speaks through us, 34(2):12
enemies of, 36(2):12
god and, 49:2
must hear before speaking, 38:4
one reality with light, 42:4
promised, given, 39:12
soundness of mind, 39:8
trust in, 35:13
unutterable reality, 35:14
witness to, and child of, 38:3

Tyre: daughters of, as Church, 44:28
symbol of Gentiles, 44:27

Tyrian maidens, 44:27,28

ugliness, 44:3

unbelief (-ievers), 47:3
children of the devil, 44:12
prophecies of Christ and, 39:1
understanding, 41:2,9,13,18; 47:7; 48(1):16; 49:22
children of Korah, 35:2,6-7,10,16,17,19-20
failure; refusing, 35:1,4
image of God, 48(2):11
like a horse or mule, 42:6; 48(1):16
meditation of my heart, 48(1):4
Sing psalms with, 46:9
spirtual, 33(1):7,8

Whoever sees me sees the Father, 44:3
union with God:
mixery: not yet one with God, 49:22
body of Christ as one single person, 39:28
charity and, 33(2):19
cornerstone, 47:5
gown as symbol of, 44:24
Head and body (Church), 40:1
King’s temple, 44:31

God and temporal needs, 34(1):7
happiness, 48(2):1
petitioning God for, 35:12; 43:2
uncertainty of wealth, 45:2
wallowing in, 34(1):12
wicked people flourishing, 36(1):3
worship and, 43:16

devil’s evil suggestions, 48(1):6
Get behind me, Satan, 34(1):8
God as disinterested in us, 48(2):6
law too hard to keep, 40:4

prayer in, 34(2):3

tense (verbs):
prophets and future events, 43:9
tent (-s), 41:9,10,17; 42:4; 44:3; 45:10; 48(1):2,15
test (-s):
coming to know oneself, 44:19-20
disinterested worship, 43:15
God tests in order that we know, 36(1):1
sinners used to test the just, 36(1):11
testifying: praise as, 44:9; 49:21

thigh, 44:13,20

thirst, 41:6

Thomas, Apostle:
Because you have seen . . ., 49:5
My Lord and my God, 48(2):5; 49:5

thorns, 44:17,20

threat, 41:15

threshing-floor, 34(1):10; 36(3):19; 45:10; 47:8,9,14; 49:8

threshold, 33(1):10; 33(2):2

thron: of Wisdom, 46:10
stands for ever and ever, 44:17
time:
holding on: today; yesterday, 38:7
number of my days, 38:7,9,10,22
present days as true being, 38:7
quick passage of, 44:10
slow passage of, 36(1):10

Timothy: advice against pride, 48(1):9
title, 33(1):2

Tobit, 41:7

tolerance, 50:24

Tomb, 48(1):15,16

tongue:
My tongue is the pen of a scribe, 44:6,10
restrain from evil, 33(2):18
sinning with, 38:3
words, 34(2):3; 50:19

torrent, 35:14,15
tortuousness, 44:17
torture, 49:16; 49:7
bones remain unbroken, 33(2):24
trap, 34(1):11; 50:8

treasure: heart and, 48(2):2

storing in heaven, 38:12
tree, 34(2):2; 36(3):9; 48(2):3,4; 49:11
tribulation, 34(1):1; 39:28; 41:16; 45:3,4; 49:22; 50:4

Trinity, 35:1; 49:1,2; 50:17
trouble (-s), 33(2):23; 36(3):17; 42:5; 43:2,3,17; 49:22

trust, 48(1):3,8
blessed trust, 33(2):13
defense: trust in God, 37:21
deliverance by God, 43:3
human agents, 35:9
in God, not self, 41:12
in Truth, 35:13
in wealth or in God, 48(1):9

truth, 33(2):6; 34(2):6; 35:14; 37:11; 38:3; 39:13,18; 40:8; 41:13,18,42:2; 44:15,19; 45:13; 50:11
Christ speaks through us, 34(2):12
enemies of, 36(2):12
good and, 49:2
must hear before speaking, 38:4
one reality with light, 42:4
promised, given, 39:12
soundness of mind, 39:8
trust in, 35:13
unutterable reality, 35:14
witness to, and child of, 38:3

Tyre: daughters of, as Church, 44:28
symbol of Gentiles, 44:27

tyrian maidens, 44:27,28

ugliness, 44:3

unbelief (-ievers), 47:3
children of the devil, 44:12
prophecies of Christ and, 39:1
understanding, 41:2,9,13,18; 47:7; 48(1):16; 49:22
children of Korah, 43:2,6-7,10,16,17,19-20
failure; refusing, 35:1,4
image of God, 48(2):11
like a horse or mule, 42:6; 48(1):16
meditation of my heart, 48(1):4
Sing psalms with, 46:9
spiritual, 33(1):7,8

Whoever sees me sees the Father, 44:3
union with God:
mixery: not yet one with God, 49:22
body of Christ as one single person, 39:28
charity and, 33(2):19
cornerstone, 47:5
gown as symbol of, 44:24
Head and body (Church), 40:1
King’s temple, 44:31

Expositions Of The Psalms 33-50
one in saying My God, my God . . . 40:6

promote: magnify the Lord, 33(2):7

two Testaments in agreement, 49:4

Unto the end (term), 45:1

usury, 36(3):6

values, 48(2):11

earthly, 36(3):9

false, 48(1):13

vice, 41:3

Victorinus of Leptis Magna, 36(2):20

Victorinus of Munatiana, 36(2):20

vindication, 34(2):13,14

vinedyard, 35:8; 36(1):8; 37:28; 46:13

virgins:

five wise, five foolish, 49:9

innumerable, 49:9

long to please the king, 44:30

pleasing the Bridegroom, 44:32

virtue, 41:9

power of charity, 47:13

Set your hearts on, 47:13-14

vision: face-to-face, 48(1):5

wages, 35:13

parable of vineyard, 37:28

war, 42:4; 45:13

warped beam, 44:17

warriors, 43:4; 44:13

waste: of God’s gifts, 44:9

water:

longing for a drop from Lazarus, 48(1):10

rivers of living water, 45:8

way: salvation among the nations, 39:18

weakness, 33(2):4; 48:18; 41:13; 45:13; 49:5; 50:3

body of Christ, 37:22

donkey of the Lord, 33(2):5

wealth, 33(2):14; 48(1):7,8,9

despite riches in Christ’s name, 48(1):17

give away: claim eternal interest, 36(3):6

leave their wealth to strangers, 48(1):14,15

riches taken away as test, 34(1):6

sinfulness and, 48(1):12

spiritual, 33(2):15

storing up; for children, 38:12

weapons, 38:15; 45:13,14

evangelical, 45:13

ourselves as, 34(1):2

wedding: clothes, 44:1,23

invited guests as the bride, 44:3

weeds, 42:3

weeping, 38:20

well-spring: fountain of life, 41:2

wheat, 34(2):10

whips, 36(3):9; 37:24; 40:6

wicked (-ness), 42:2

ancestors, 48(2):11

following behind, 34(1):8

good fortune, 41:9

happy: flourishing, 36(1):3

hate for, 35:6

seen as prospering, 48(2):6

will: human affections and, 44:23

will of God:

Christ’s example, 39:14

cling to God, 43:25

conformity with, 35:16; 44:17

discerning, 36(3):2

duty of humans is to obey, 48(1):1

just persons, 36(3):5

living and dying, 34(1):14

peoples seek to bend to their own lusts, 44:17

power of the enemy and, 36(2):4

rightly directed, 36(1):12

wills (law): testator and adjudicator, 39(3):18

wind, 34(1):9

wings like a dove’s, 38:2

winter, 41:16

day of tribulation, 48(1):12

present time as, 36(1):3

wisdom, 41:3,15; 44:25; 50:23

Christ as Wisdom of the Father, 36(1):1

divine, 33(2):6

God’s throne, 34(1):2

Let those who are perfect be wise . . . , 38:14

My mouth shall speak wisdom, 48(1):4

righteous person as throne of, 46:10

righteous will muse on, 36(3):12

soul as weapon, 34(1):2

unseen, hidden secrets of, 50:11

when he sees the wise dying, 48(1):11

wives: cross-grained, 33(2):8

woman: bent over for eighteen years, 37:10

wondrous feats, 39:9

Word of God:

all of past, present, future are in Word, 44:5

all works of God are in the Word, 44:5

Bridegroom, 44:7

creation and, 49:18

In the beginning . . . , 33(1):6; 44:3,20; 46:8; 49:1; 50:17

never ceases to be spoken, 44:5

seeing face to face, 33(1):10

words:

arrows sharp and very powerful, 44:16

blunting or belching, 44:9

good words by one leading bad life, 49:30

morality related to intent, 39:26

You have thrown my words behind you, 49:24

words of God (scripture):

arrows, 37:5

bread as, 36(3):5

effective in conversion of life, 49:1

in the heart, 36(3):12
Volume III/16

works: praise offered to God, 44:9
works of mercy: justice and, 49:12
world (-liness), 40:5
active involvement in, 36(1):2
as meaning ‘sinners’, 34(1):4
chosen way, 48(2):4
illiterate can read book of, 45:7
swallowing, 34(2):15
universality, 36(2):19
worship, 43:15,16; 45:10; 48(1):1,3; 50:18
idols and the world’s Creator, 34(1):13
put right in matter of, 46:9
reward for, 35:7; 43:16
wound: love and pain, 37:5
writing, 34(2):3
written word: abiding, 44:6
wrongdoer(-s; -ing), 49:26
enslaved to, 33(2):14
failure to understand, 35:1,4
God sees what he must reproach, 42:7
wound themselves, 36(2):3
years, 38:7
youth: symbol of newness, 42:5
Zacchaeus, 49:13,21
zeal, 47:2
Zion, 47:3,6,7,12,13; 49:4; 50:22
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 51-72

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the *Expositions of the Psalms* can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/17 Homilies/Expositions

**Paperback:** 978-1-56548-155-8, 6 x 9 in., 518 pp., 2001  
**Hardcover:** 978-1-56548-156-5, 6 x 9 in., 518 pp., 2001

**Includes:**

*Expositions of the Psalms*  
(Enarrationes in Psalmos)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
### Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

**Old Testament**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>I, 70, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>67, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>66, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26</td>
<td>II, 70, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>66, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>52, 4; II, 68, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>II, 68, 1; 71, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>52, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>I, 68, 9; II, 70, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>71, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>54, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:7</td>
<td>67, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:12</td>
<td>I, 58, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>71, 19; 72, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:2</td>
<td>72, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>57, 5; 61, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:4</td>
<td>54, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49:8</td>
<td>59, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:3</td>
<td>52, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:23</td>
<td>II, 58, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Samuel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:19</td>
<td>53, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Kings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:29</td>
<td>I, 70, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tobit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>57, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Job**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>55, 20; 71, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>72, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>53, 3, 55, 19; II, 68, 15;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>I, 70, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>I, 70, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>55, 20; I, 70, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:24</td>
<td>I, 68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:30</td>
<td>51, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Psalms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>64, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>53, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>57, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>71, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6-9</td>
<td>I, 58, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>60, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>60, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>51, 13; 65, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6(5)</td>
<td>56, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9(8)</td>
<td>69, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3(2)</td>
<td>61, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-7</td>
<td>53, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5(3)</td>
<td>II, 58, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13(12)</td>
<td>67, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8(7)</td>
<td>54, 5; 54, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9(8)</td>
<td>I, 70, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6(11:5)</td>
<td>61, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:7(12:6)</td>
<td>54, 22; 67, 17: 67, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4(13:3)</td>
<td>62, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5(14:4-5)</td>
<td>55, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13(14):6</td>
<td>52, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15(16):2</td>
<td>65, 19; 69, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:4(16:3)</td>
<td>II, 58, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16(17):8</td>
<td>67, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17(18):1</td>
<td>51, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26-27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18:25-26)</td>
<td>72, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:29(18:28)</td>
<td>52, 5; 65, 19; 66, 4; 69, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

Volume III

17:30(18:29) 72, 22
17:45(18:43-44) 71, 9
18:2(19:1) 67; 11; 71, 2
19:1(18:18) 67, 10
18:7(19:6) 67; 25; 1, 5, 10; 65, 17
18:13-14 1, 70, 6
19:8(20:7) 65; 5
19:9(20:8) 65; 5
21:2(22:1) 58, 2; 1; 68, 7; II, 68, 11; I, 70, 12
21:2-3(22:1-2) 63, 5
21:13(22:12) II, 58, 4
21:16(22:15) 69; 5
21:17-18 (22:16) 63, 15
21:29(22:28) 57, 3
22:23(3) 64, 14
22:23(4) 60; 8
24(25):10 60, 9
24(25):17 67; 8
25(26):8 67, 16
25(26):9 71, 7
26(27):4 67; 20
26(27):10 58, 18; 67, 6
26(27):12 63, 15; 65, 7
28(29):1 72, 4
29(30):5(3) 58, 10
30(31):20 52, 8; 18; 1, 70, 3
31(32):4-5 57, 20
31(32):9 54, 3
33(34):1 54, 2
33:2(34:1) I, 70, 16
33:6(34:5) I, 58, 18; 1, 70, 3
33:9(34:8) 51, 18; 54, 15
34(35):16 57, 20
34(35):18 67, 39
35:4(36:3-4) 51, 10
35:7(36:6) 67, 23
35:9(36:8) 62, 5
35:10(36:9) 61, 21
35:12(36:11) 61, 2
36:4(37:5-6) 53, 11
37:5(38:14) 1, 68, 7
38:13(39:12) 60, 4
39:3(40:2) 61; 9
40(41):5 61, 4
40:4(41:6) 55, 9
40:8(41:7) 54, 11
40:11(41:10) 67, 30
41:4(42:3-4) 61, 14
42(43):1 53, 4; 71, 3; 71, 7
45:11(46:10) 1, 70, 18
48(49):12 54; 3
49:3(50:2-3) 67, 42
49:50; 18-21 52, 7
49(50):23 53, 10
49:50; 23.14 II, 68, 16
50:20-21 (50:18-19) 64, 4
51(52):7 I, 58, 6
51:9(52:8) 53, 2; 61, 16
53:3(54:1) 67; 69
53:8(54:6) I, 70, 2; II, 70, 1
54:20(55:19) 61, 9
55(56):12 I, 70, 2
56(57):1 55, 2
56:5(57:4) 63, 4
56:7(57:6) 63, 8
58(59):15 59; 12
58:15(59:14-15) 67, 32
60(61):2 54; 17
60:4(61:3) 61, 3
61:11(62:10) 53, 3
63:8(64:7) 56, 13
65(66):6 64, 11
65(66):7 II, 68, 14
67:31(68:30) 58, 22
70(71):20 67, 31
71(72):11 I, 58, 5; 61, 10
72(73):1-3 57, 17
72(73):1-3; 16-17 53, 3
72(73):16-17 57, 17
72(73):28 II, 70, 6
75:12(76:11) 67, 10; 67, 23
75:12(76:11) 64, 4
75:14(77:13) 59, 8
76(77):19 59, 12
78(79):10 59, 13
83:8(84:6) 67, 12
84:9(85:8) 61, 18
84:11(85:10) 71, 6
84:13(85:12) 67, 13
85:14(86:11) II, 70, 3
86:4(87:3) 61, 7
86(87):5 61, 23
87(88):11 I, 70, 18
90(91):4 67, 18
90(91):7 II, 68, 13
91:6-8(92:5-7) 53, 3
91:14(92:13) 53, 4
94(95):2 I, 58, 13; 67, 40
95(96):1 66, 6; 67, 26
101:28(102:27) 60, 8
103(104):16 71, 18
103(104):18 I, 70, 5
104(105):18 61, 5
107(108):5 71, 12
109(110):1 67, 23
109(110):7 57, 16
111(112):10 61, 5; 69, 4
113:13.4(115:13) 71, 5
114:4.1 71, 5
115(116):16 57, 4; I, 58, 6; 67, 8

Volume III
Volume III/17

117(118):22 II, 58, 7
118(119):53 54, 8
120(121):1-2 67, 10; 67, 23
120(121):8 69, 5
122(123):4 67, 13
123(124):2-3 II, 68, 7
123(124):3 63, 2
123(124):6 I, 58, 6
123(124):7 I, 58, 6
129(130):1 67, 31
129(130):1-2 I, 68, 19
133(134):2 71, 10
136(137):5 61, 7
138(139):7 67, 2
140(141):2 64, 6
140(141):10 59, 10
141:1-2 69, 3
142(143):6 65, 11; 66, 1; 67, 31
143(144):11-14 51, 15
143(144):11-15 53, 6; 55, 16
143(144):15 51, 15
145:2-3(146:3) 69, 6
145(146):4 72, 15
145(146):7-9 69, 7
148:4-5 67, 42

Proverbs
1:1-2 71, 3
1:24, 26, LXX 51, 13
1:33 67, 20
5:22 57, 4
6:27 57, 17
8:10 71, 17
18:3 67, 8, I, 68, 19
18:21 72, 30
27:21 69, 5

Song of Songs
1:7 66, 4
4:8, LXX 67, 41
6:8 67, 17

Wisdom
1:9 57, 1; 61, 22
1:13, 14, 16 51, 2
2:1 52, 3
2:8-10 52, 3
2:20, 18 56, 4
2:20, 19, 18 63, 3
2:21 56, 4
3:6 69, 5
5:3 57, 20
5:6, 9 57, 19
5:8 52, 7
5:8-9 53, 3
5:9 67, 21
9:15 II, 68, 18

12:12 I, 70, 1
12:18 57, 20

Sirach
2:1 59, 5
3:22 61, 21
10:14.15 57, 18
11:30 67, 20
15:9 64, 3
17:26 67, 8, I, 68, 19
24:6 61, 18
32:6 71, 10
35:26 II, 68, 1

Isaiah
1:16-18 61, 22
1:18 67, 17; 67, 21
2:2 62, 22; 71, 18
3:14 67, 43
5:6 56, 17; 67, 2
5:18 57, 4
11:1 72, 1
26:12, LXX 71, 1
40:5 56, 5
40:6 53, 11; 61, 9
40:6.8 53, 2; 71, 18
46:8 57, 1; 57, 3
52:7 51, 9; 59, 11
53:1 I, 58, 16
53:2 I, 68, 3
53:7 67, 42; I, 68, 7
54:1-5 1, 58, 11
54:4 59, 9
54:5 71, 20
57:18-19, LXX 71, 1
58:7 61, 22

Jeremiah
1:13 59, 10
2:21 55, 3
2:27 65, 21
16:19 64, 6
17:16 67, 20

Zechariah
1:3 67, 31

Malachi
1:2-3 57, 5
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

**New Testament**

Matthew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td>57, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>59, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>71, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>64, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>71, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3.5</td>
<td>Ⅱ, 68, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>62, 3; 64, 8; 67, 31; 69, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>54, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>59, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>67, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>65, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>67, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>69, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44-45</td>
<td>Ⅱ, 70, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>54, 4; 62, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1</td>
<td>65, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2</td>
<td>51, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:2.1</td>
<td>65, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9-12</td>
<td>54, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14-15</td>
<td>54, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>54, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>51, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td>57, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>61, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 58, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 58, 7; 61, 13; Ⅰ, 70, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:5-6</td>
<td>71, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>57, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:23</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 68, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25</td>
<td>51, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>51, 9; 54, 6; 54, 7; 59, 10; 63, 2; 64, 13; Ⅰ, 68, 3; 69, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>59, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-29</td>
<td>54, 13; Ⅰ, 70, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>59, 8; 67, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:4</td>
<td>58, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 58, 6; 67, 16; Ⅰ, 68, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:34-33</td>
<td>57, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:37</td>
<td>72, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td>65, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:29-30</td>
<td>64, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:43</td>
<td>60, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:47-50</td>
<td>64, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td>54, 5; 54, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td>71, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24-28</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 58, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:27-28</td>
<td>67, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16-19:22-23</td>
<td>55, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>54, 5; 60, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22-17</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 68, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22-17:23</td>
<td>69, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:22-23</td>
<td>62, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td>51, 9; 64, 13; 72, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:7</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 68, 7; 69, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>61, 18; 67, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>Ⅰ, 68, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>64, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td>61, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>Ⅱ, 68, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:49</td>
<td>59, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28-29</td>
<td>57, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>57, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>Ⅱ, 70, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volume III17
Volume III/17

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

Luke

1:33
1:35
2:29-30
3:6
3:22
5:10
5:32
6:23
6:27,35
7:39
7:41-42
7:46
9:26
9:62
10:7
12:5
12:19
12:20
12:45
12:49
13:27
13:32
14:11
16:24
17:32
18:1
18:4-8
18:11-14
18:12-13
18:13-14
18:14
20:33
20:36
21:18
23:21
23:28
23:34
23:38
24:18-21
24:29
24:44
24:46-47

John

1:1-3
1:14
1:9
1:10

1:12
1:14
1:17
1:41
1:46
1:47
1:48
2:18
2:19-21
2:25
3:29
3:36
4:7
4:13-14
4:35
4:38
5:22
5:39
5:46
6:61
6:61-68,69
6:71
7:24
7:37-38
7:45-46,48-49
8:34-36
8:59
9:29
9:39
9:40-41
10:16
10:18
10:18,17
10:27
10:30
10:32
10:38
11:25
11:43
11:48
12:24,25
13:1
14:1
14:2
14:6
14:8-11
14:10
14:28
14:30
14:30-31
15:5
15:12
16:12
16:18
17:2

51, 10
67, 30
55, 6
65, 7
51, 61, 13; I, 70, 1
61, 8
67, 23
67, 26
61, 10
I, 68, 12
65, 22
I, 70, 17
63, 2
I, 58, 6
53, 7
67, 42
59, 2, 59, 3
61, 8
62, 19
II, 70, 9
57, 17; 57, 22
69, 9
65, 24
65, 24
I, 70, 4
I, 58, 7
I, 58, 15
67, 30
64, 2
65, 1
65, 1
64, 13
63, 4
II, 68, 5
54, 5; 54, 12; I, 68, 14; II, 68, 5; 69, 3
59, 2
I, 68, 8
69, 6
71, 18
57, 6
69, 6
57, 6
64, 7; II, 70, 10
54, 3
67, 23
54, 4
72, 30
56, 5; II, 70, 10
I, 70, 19
65, 4
65, 4
65, 4; 67, 12
52, 9
65, 7
56, 8
65, 7
57, 3; 63, 6
61, 19
57, 20
I, 68, 14
67, 35
64, 17
64, 17
71, 2
II, 68, 13
64, 6
I, 68, 7
54, 23
58, 9
71, 4
64, 14
55, 9
II, 68, 21
I, 68, 13
65, 5
65, 5
71, 9
65, 7
56, 11
69, 6
62, 11; 63, 13; 65, 5
63, 3
65, 6
56, 14
II, 70, 3
II, 70, 17; 57, 11; 62, 18; 64, 1; II, 68, 10
I, 68, 10
I, 68, 2
I, 68, 11
60, 6
55, 20; 56, 10; 65, 15; 66, 5
I, 58, 10
67, 23
55, 17
71, 1
63, 13
I, 68, 12
II, 68, 12
I, 68, 9
67, 23
56, 1
61, 19
I, 68, 7
56, 5
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

17:10 67, 15
17:23 67, 23
17:24 67, 41
18:31 56, 12; 63, 4
18:36 53, 3; 59, 2
19:6 56; 12; 57; 3; 67, 3
19:15 55, 2; 62, 19; 63, 8
19:21 56, 3
19:21-22 I, 58, 1
19:22 55, 2
19:28 61, 9; I, 68, 14
20:17 I, 58, 10
20:25 63, 17
20:28 56, 10; 63, 17
20:29 63, 17
21:18 I, 68, 3

Acts
1:20 67, 1
2:37 63, 15
2:38 I, 58, 15
7:51 I, 70, 14
7:57 57, 8
7:59 I, 70, 14
7:60 I, 70, 14
9:4 52, 1; 54, 3; 55, 3; 67, 25;
67, 56; 69, 3
9:6-5 57, 16
10:13 I, 58, 16
14:21 67, 24

Romans
1:3 55, 1; 56, 3
1:3-4 67, 15
1:16 II, 68, 4
1:21 57, 18
1:22 57, 18
1:24 57, 18
1:24-28-29 57, 18
1:32 57, 18
2:12 I, 70, 6
2:21-22 24 I, 70, 19
2:25 I, 70, 19
3:12 II, 58, 7
3:28-29 67, 41
4:5 51, 17; 67, 41
4:15 I, 70, 6
5:5 56, 15; 57, 22; 59, 10; 60, 4;
I, 70, 7
5:5 67, 11; 67, 24; I, 70, 20
5:8 67, 37
5:19 61, 7; 71, 6
5:20 II, 58, 6; 67, 11; 67, 24;
67, 31
6:6 62, 2; I, 70, 11
6:9 71, 17
6:12 63, 9
6:21 57, 10; 69, 4; I, 70, 3
7:12 67, 24
7:22-25 I, 70, 2
7:23 69, 7; II, 70, 1
7:24 57, 4
7:24-25 I, 70, 6
8:3 67, 11
8:4 67, 11
8:10-11 II, 70, 10
8:23-25 II, 70, 10
8:24 64, 0
8:24-25 60, 4
8:25 61, 13
8:30 61, 13
8:31 61, 14
8:32 64, 22; 65, 7; 67, 37;
I, 68, 10; II, 70, 10
8:35 62, 18
9:4-5 61, 4
9:6 67, 48
9:8 67, 43; 71, 19
9:13 57, 5
9:14 II, 68, 12
9:21-23 I, 58, 20
9:22 61, 20
9:23 I, 58, 6
9:24 II, 58, 7
9:25 67, 36
10:2 I, 70, 1
10:3 I, 70, 1; I, 70, 4; I, 70, 19
10:4 54, 1; 55, 1; 59, 2; 60, 1;
64, 6; 65, 1; 67, 23
10:15 51, 9; 59, 11; 67, 33
11:2.1 72, 4
11:6 67, 12
11:18 65, 5
11:19-21 65, 5
11:20 67, 12
11:21 72, 2
11:22-23 72, 2
11:23 65, 5
11:24-18 72, 2
11:24-18-20 72, 2
11:25 65, 1; 65, 5
11:33-34 53, 10
12:11 65, 17
12:12 57, 22; 67, 24
13:1 61, 21
13:10 67, 11; 67, 24; I, 70, 20
13:13 62, 15
15:4 II, 68, 13
15:8-9 71, 9

1 Corinthians
1:12 71, 5
1:12-13 69, 5
1:13 54, 24; 71, 5

Volume III17
| 1:25  | 59, 9; I, 68, 10 |
| 1:26-28 | 65, 4 |
| 1:29  | 65, 4 |
| 1:31  | 51, 7; 67, 23 |
| 2:6   | 64, 15 |
| 2:8   | 65, 5 |
| 2:10  | 52, 5 |
| 2:12  | 52, 5; 71, 3 |
| 3:1-4 | 51, 15 |
| 3:6-7 | 66, 1 |
| 3:9   | 66, 1 |
| 3:17  | 67, 33 |
| 4:4   | 55, 9 |
| 4:7   | 51, 17; 55, 7; II, 58, 11; 67, 21; 69, 5; I, 70, 1; I, 70, 4; I, 70, 20 |
| 8:2   | 69, 8 |
| 9:9   | 65, 20 |
| 9:25  | 57, 7 |
| 9:26  | 57, 7 |
| 10:4  | 55, 1; 60, 3 |
| 10:11 | 61, 8; 64, 1 |
| 10:12 | 51, 13 |
| 10:13 | 61, 20; 69, 5 |
| 10:17 | II, 68, 6 |
| 10:18 | 67, 43 |
| 11:1  | 71, 5 |
| 11:3  | 57, 10; 64, 7 |
| 11:19 | 54, 22; 67, 39 |
| 12:2  | 65, 21 |
| 12:27 | II, 58, 2; 67, 25 |
| 12:29-30.11 | 67, 21 |
| 12:31 | 71, 18 |
| 13:1-3 | 54, 19 |
| 13:3  | 59, 9; 74, 3 |
| 13:4  | 71, 3 |
| 15:9  | I, 70, 1 |
| 15:9-10 | 67, 12; 72, 4 |
| 15:10 | 66, 1; 67, 23; 72, 30 |
| 15:19 | 57, 10 |
| 15:21-22 | II, 68, 2 |
| 15:22 | 61, 7; I, 70, 2; 71, 1 |
| 15:23-24 | 67, 24 |
| 15:26 | 64, 4; 67, 44; 71, 1; 71, 10 |
| 15:32 | 52, 3; I, 70, 9 |
| 15:43 | 67, 44 |
| 15:46 | 61, 7; II, 70, 1 |
| 15:47-49 | I, 70, 2 |
| 15:51 | 57, 20 |
| 15:51-55 | 64, 4 |
| 15:54 | 65, 18 |
| 15:55 | 51, 1 |
| 2 Corinthians | 1:9 | 64, 10 |
| 1:12 | 53, 8 |
| 1:20 | 71, 18 |
| 2:6 | I, 70, 19 |
| 3:6 | 64, 6 |
| 3:7 | 64, 6 |
| 3:15 | 64, 6 |
| 3:16 | 57, 10 |
| 3:18 | I, 68, 3 |
| 3:19 | 64, 1 |
| 3:20 | 55, 14 |
| 3:21 | 66, 6 |
| 5:17 | 71, 6 |
| 5:19 | 59, 8; 67, 23 |
| 5:20 | 67, 40 |
| 5:21 | 67, 23 |
| 6:10 | 67, 24 |
| 7:5 | 55, 6 |
| 8:9 | I, 68, 4 |
| 10:3 | 62, 14 |
| 11:26 | 64, 3 |
| 11:29 | 59, 8; 55, 6; 69, 2 |
| 12:7-10 | II, 58, 5 |
| 12:8-9 | 53, 5 |
| 12:9 | 57, 16; 67, 12 |
| 12:10 | 57, 16; I, 58, 7; I, 70, 11; I, 70, 14 |
| 13:4 | 53, 4; 65, 6; 66, 5 |

Galatians

| 1:8 | 71, 5 |
| 2:20 | 65, 7; I, 68, 10 |
| 3:13 | II, 58, 5 |
| 3:15-16 | 54, 21 |
| 3:16 | 71, 19 |
| 3:21 | I, 70, 19 |
| 3:21-22 | I, 70, 19 |
| 4:4 | 72, 16 |
| 4:9 | 62, 9 |
| 4:19 | 52, 1; 57, 5 |
| 4:24 | 67, 11 |
| 4:29 | 67, 12 |
| 5:6 | 67, 41 |
| 5:22 | 71, 18 |
| 6:1 | 51, 13 |
| 6:14 | 67, 23; II, 68, 4; I, 70, 19 |
| 6:16 | 67, 12; 67, 43 |
| 6:17 | 54, 8 |

Ephesians

<p>| 2:2-3 | 67, 27 |
| 2:3 | 57, 20 |
| 2:6 | 55, 3 |
| 2:9-10 | I, 70, 19 |
| 2:14-15.17 | 71, 1 |
| 3:14.17.18-19 | 51, 12 |
| 3:20 | 69, 8 |
| 4:7-10 | 67, 25 |
| 4:10 | 67, 42 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4:11-12</th>
<th>67, 21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>64, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>57, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>54, 4; I, 58, 6; 59, 2; 61, 7; 65, 15;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>62, 4; II, 70, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:19</td>
<td>64, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31</td>
<td>II, 68, 1; 71, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td>54, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6-7</td>
<td>I, 70, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>54, 4; 61, 13; I, 70, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:15</td>
<td>59, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>I, 58, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Philippians**

| 1:17-19 | 51, 4 |
| 1:23    | 54, 8 |
| 1:23-24 | 54, 8 |
| 2:6     | I, 68, 4 |
| 2:6-7   | 63, 13; I, 68, 9 |
| 2:6-8   | I, 58, 10 |
| 2:7-8   | I, 68, 4 |
| 2:8-9   | 56, 8 |
| 2:12    | 51, 13 |
| 2:12,13 | 65, 5 |
| 2:13    | 67, 24 |
| 2:21    | 55, 14 |
| 3:5     | 67, 36 |
| 3:9-10  | 65, 6 |
| 3:10    | 67, 44 |
| 3:12    | 69, 8 |
| 3:13    | 57, 10; 65, 22; 69, 8 |
| 3:13-14 | 69, 8; 72, 5 |
| 3:20    | 64, 3 |

**Colossians**

| 1:24    | 64, 4 |
| 2:9     | 67, 23 |
| 2:16-17 | 67, 21 |
| 2:20    | 62, 2 |
| 3:1-2   | 62, 2; II, 70, 10 |
| 3:3-4   | 53, 2 |
| 3:4     | 51, 13 |
| 3:5     | 59, 2 |
| 3:9-10  | 57, 10; 61, 7 |

**1 Thessalonians**

| 5:5     | 62, 15 |
| 5:7-8   | 62, 15 |

**2 Thessalonians**

| 3:14, 15 | 54, 9 |

**1 Timothy**

| 1:8     | 59, 10 |
| 1:13    | 51, 17; 55, 12; 55, 14; I, 58, 12; 72, 4; 72, 30 |
| 1:13-15 | I, 70, 1 |
| 1:17    | 67, 15 |
| 2:5     | 67, 23 |
| 2:8     | 62, 13 |
| 6:17    | 61, 16; 72, 26 |
| 6:17-18 | 51, 15 |
| 6:18-19 | 72, 26 |

**2 Timothy**

| 3:6-7   | 67, 39 |
| 3:9     | 54, 27 |
| 3:12    | 54, 8; 55, 4; 69, 2 |
| 3:13    | 54, 27; II, 68, 12 |
| 4:8     | 69, 9 |

**Titus**

| 1:9     | 67, 39 |

**Hebrews**

| 1:1     | 61, 18 |
| 12:6    | II, 58, 6 |

**James**

| 1:18    | 67, 12 |
| 3:2     | 55, 10 |
| 4:6     | 67, 12 |

**1 Peter**

| 2:13-14 | 61, 8 |
| 2:20    | I, 68, 12 |
| 4:17    | II, 70, 10 |
| 4:17-18 | 59, 6 |
| 5:5     | 67, 12 |

**2 Peter**

| 1:19    | 51, 13 |

**1 John**

| 3:2     | 67, 44 |
| 3:16    | 51, 9 |
| 4:18    | 67, 36 |

**Revelation**

| 13:8    | II, 68, 13 |

---

**Volume III**

---

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

---

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number. More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2). The number after the colon is a paragraph number. Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semi-colon. Biblical texts/words are in italics.

abandon, 70(1):12
Abel, 64:2
abortion, 57:5,6
above (after leaping), 61:1
Abimelech, 51:5; 59:1
Adam and Eve, 55:20; 56:11; 58(1):2,14; 60:8; 68(1):2,9; 68(2):11; 70(1):2,3,5,12; 70(2):1,6,7,10; 71:1,6
adoption, 66:9; 70(2):10
adultery, 57:17
affection, 54:8; 56:6
again (word usage), 70(2):10
Ahimelech (priest), 51:3,5
aliens, 55:9
alive, 54:16
allophyli, 55:1,3; 59:11
alone, 70(1):20
always, 70(1):8
ambassadors, 67:40; 71:6
angel(-s), 51:16,14; 56:10,17; 61:21; 62:6; 65:31,67:43; 70(2):5,12
anger, 54:7,16,21,22; 55:13; 58(2):6; 59:3,6
animal, 54:3; 58(1):16
ant, 66:5
Antichrist, 68(2):13
Antiochus, 68(2):3
antithomasia, 67:15
apostles, 54:11; 55:5,9; 56:1; 63:16; 64:5,12; 66:8; 67:34,40
offspring of rams, 64:18; 72:4
Arabia, 71:17
Arians, 52:4; 54:22; 67:39
ark, 54:13
arrogance, 65:5
arrow, 56:12; 59:6; 63:6,14,15
Asaph, 72:4,16
asp, 57:8,9,10,14
astrology, 57:4; 61:23; 72:22
athletic events, 57:7
authority, 67:17
autonomy, 70(2):7
avarice, 51:14; 57:2
baby, 64:15
Babylon, 51:6; 54:12; 61:6,7,8,10; 64:1,2,3,4,6,8
back: permanently bent, 68(2):8
Bagai, Council of, 57:15
baptism, 57:5,12; 61:9; 65:17; 72:5
repeating, 54:16,22,26
burn, 63:19
Bashan, 67:31
basilicas, 57:15
beatitude, 62:6
beauty, 55:20; 58(1):18; 64:8
bed, 62:15
Beelzebub, 55:8; 68(1):12
beggar: stealing, 72:12,13
being: gift of, 58(2):11
believers, 61:5; 62:1; 68(1):2
Beloved, 67:16
Bible:
agreement of the two Testaments, 67:19
authority of, 67:17
discernment, 54:22
letters from God, 64:2
meanings lie hidden in, 67:39
parallelism and repetition in, 71:2,3
property of the Jews, 56:9
summation up in power and mercy, 61:20
use of similes, 57:7
wild animals distorting the scriptures, 67:38
birth, 52:1; 65:12
bitterness, 54:8
blessedness, 51:15
blessing(-s), 55:16; 67:12; 72:4
Bless the Lord in the churches, 67:35
growing by, 66:1
May God bless us, 66:9
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

- power to proliferate, 66:9
- temporal, 66:2-4
- blind, 65:5,10
- blood money, 63:11
- blotted out, 68(2):13
- body and soul, 68(1):3
- See also human body, soul
- deliverance: manifest or hidden, 68(2):3
- fear not those who kill the body, 69:1
- fragility, 62:4
- soul dies if God leaves, 70(2):3
- thirst for God, 62:7,8
- whole man one with the Word, 56:5
- body of Christ, See Church; Mystical Body of Christ.
- books: Jews as slaves for Christians, 56:9
- bow, 59:6; 63:6
- hramble, 57:20
- bread, 68(2):16,17
- Bread of the Presence, 51:3
- breast: treasure in, 55:19
- bribe, 63:15; 64:13
- Bridgroom, 55:3; 61:19; 72:33
- brotherhood, 54:16
- burden, 61:3; 67:18
- byword, 68(1):15
- Caesar, 55:2; 57:3,11
- Caiphas, 68(2):10
- Cain, 58(1):21; 61:6,7; 64:2; 71:18
- calf's head (and Moses), 61:9
- Calvary, 51:9; 68(1):9
- camel, 51:14
- Canaanite woman, 58(1):15; 67:32
- canticles, 67:1
- captiv(ity), 64:1,2,8; 67:25-28; 70(1):2,5; 70(2):1.2.6
- carnality, See flesh.
- catechumenate, 65:17
- cave, 56:4
- chaff, 58(1):11
- change, 59:2; 68(1):2
- chariot, 67:24,33; 72:34
- charity, 54:3,10; 55:3,19; 56:1; 57:22; 59:9,10; 62:5,17; 64:2,4; 67:11,18; 70(2):3
- exceeds all other virtues, 54:19
- fruit of the Spirit, 71:18
- lacking, it profits me nothing, 71:3
- observance of law, 67:24; 71:15
- pride in good works, 71:3
- root, 51:12
- charms, 57:7
- chastisement, 70(2):10
- chastity, 57:22
- childbirth, 61:4
- childhood, 62:6
- children, 64:15
- growing; span of life, 65:12
- inheritance, 60:7
- obedience, 70(1):2
- procrastination, 70(2):6
- children of God, 67:23
- gift of the Spirit, 52:5
- transformed children of men, 52:6,7,9
- choice: power of, 53:2
- chosen, 67:16; 68(2):2
- many are invited, few are chosen, 61:6
- one chosen and taken up, 64:7
- will dwell in your courts, 64:8
- Christian life, 54:8; 69:4
- See also spiritual life
- building on rock, 57:23
- guarding against loss, 58(2):1
- He established my soul in life, 65:15
- I strain to what lies ahead, 57:10
- incorporation into Christ, 60:3
- keeping Christ in mind, 54:10
- no one to seek my soul…, 69:3
- old self destroyed, new built, 61:7
- proclaim your life, 55:14
- share in divinity of Christ, 58(1):7
- taste for things above, 70(2):10
- Christianity:
- books belonging to Jews, 58(1):22
- of all nations, 58(1):17
- Christians:
- See also Church; Gentiles; persecution
- charge brought against, 68(2):4
- hated for no reason, 68(1):9
- held in honor, 61:5
- incorporated into one, 61:6
- insulting openly, 69:2
- Jews and the increase of, 58(2):2
- life promised to Christ, 62:20
- motivation, 62:6
- name held in honor, 71:16
- whole Christ, 58(1):5
- will abide till end of time, 70(2):4
- Church, 59:1,2,9; 67:20; 68(1):1; 68(2):3; 69:6,9; 70(1):6; 70(2):12; 71:10
- See also persecution
- abide till end of the world, 70(2):4
- beautiful house, 67:16
- body contemplating the head, 55:4
- body in its entirety, 68(1):11
- body: past, present, future members, 62:2
- built on Peter, the rock, 54:5
- Christ as both head and body, 54:3; 56:1; 58(1):2; 63:1; 65:1; 68(1):1
- Christ as voice of his body, 57:3
- Christ suffering here, 52:1
- city set on mountain, 57:9
- comes up washed white, 67:17
- conscience, 54:12
- crying from the ends of the earth, 60:3

Volume III17
Expositions Of The Psalms

Do you know yourself? 66:4
do, 67:20-21
fellowship in, 54:8
God’s chariot, 67:24
God’s power and mercy, 61:20
good and bad in, 61:8
head and body undivided, 55:8; 62:2
here until the end of time, 60:6
holy and faithful members, 67:25
I am needy and poor, 69:7
I am poor and sorrowful, 68(2):14
I will that where I am…, 67:41
impostors in, 55:9
Isaiah addresses, 58(1):11
joy, 52:9
Lazarus as type of, 69:7
members form one person in Christ, 60:1,4; 69:1
members: all who believe, 56:1
mountains and hills (figures), 71:5
mystery: two in one flesh, 71:17
one body under one head, 63:17
One only is my dove, 67:17
participates in Truth, 57:6
persecuted, 67:24
presence of Christ through, 67:2
resurrection and, 71:10
service: building up body of Christ, 67:21
suffering birthpangs, 52:4
suffering: head and body, 62:2
sufferings of Christ in, 61:4
thirst, 61:10
truth abides in, 57:6
unity, 56:13; 60:2; 64:7,14; 67:11
universal, 65:2; 71:12
voice of Christ’s body, 68(1):8
whole person: head and body, 69:3
why are you persecuting me, 67:25,36
will abide with the sun, 71:8,10
will rule from sea to sea, 71:11
you know my folly, 68(1):10
young maidens, 67:34
your right hand upholds me, 62:17
Circumcellions, 54:26; 57:15
circumcision, 58(1):21; 67:19
citizen, 51:6; 61:8; 64:2
built by Cain, 61:7; 71:18
unrest, 54:12
Cleopas, 68(1):8
clergy: the word: chosen by lot, 67:19
clouds, 56:17; 64:14; 67:33,43,44
Come and see, 65:4
command(-ment), 58(2):2,7; 59:4; 68(1):13
Do not touch…, 70(2):7
holy; help from God, 67:24
love of Christ, 55:17
love one another, 56:1
two loves, 67:18
commerce, 70(1):17
common life, 67:7
compunction, 57:20; 67:7
concupiscence, 64:4
condenmation, 58(2):6; 61:22
conduct, 58(2):1; 62:13,15; 67:7,8,19
Do not do to another, 57:1,2
exploiting others, 64:9
judgment and, 57:2
right reason, 72:21
Bend down your ear to me, 70(1):4
Let the peoples confess, 66:6
made in faith, 67:36
May the Lord be magnified, 69:6,7
sad before, 66:7
secret: beneath my tongue, 65:21
sing a new song, 66:6-7
confusion, 59:9; 64:2,67:31
consent, 64:4; 68(1):18,19; 68(2):7; 70(1):6
consolation, 54:10; 67:6; 68(2):5
consummate, 56:2; 58(2):5,6,7
contemplation, 64:3; 68(2):19; 71:13
confess: present life as, 61:13
conversion, 55:15; 58(2):2; 59:5; 61:23; 67:31,32,40; 70(2):2,3
correct your heart, 63:19
good city continuously being formed, 61:7
in the evening, 58(1):15; 58(2):7
narrow way, 57:10,11
stripping off old self, 53:3; 57:10; 61:7
convert(-s), 64:6; 65:14; 67:5
zeal of, 58(1):16
cold relief, 65:17
corner-Church, 58(2):10
cornerstone, 58(2):7
corrumpibility, 62:6
corruption, 52:3,4,5; 54:25; 68(2):3
counsel, 54:15
covenant, 54:21; 67:19
coveting, 62:5
cows, 54:22; 67:39
crawling things, 68(1):5
creation, 61:18; 62:1; 68(1):5; 70(1):15; 70(2):6,71:8
contemplation of, 68(2):19
God’s blessing, 66:9
goodness of, 70(2):6
Creator, 57:3
creature, 67:13
criminal, 66:7
crop:
God grants the increase, 66:1
multiply its growth, 64:15
cross, 54:12; 59:9; 67:23,32; 68(2):4
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

crossed over, 72:13
crown, 64:16
crucifixion, See under Jesus Christ
customs, 64:6
damnation, 61:20; 64:5; 72:26
Daniel, 51:4
darkness, 51:10,13; 54:4,8,25; 55:20; 62:15;
63:12; 64:13; 65:15; 66:4,5
David, King, 51:1-3; 53:1,2,3; 54:1,3; 55:3;
56:34,11; 58(1):3; 59:1,3; 60:1; 61:4;
62:1; 67:19
son of Jesse, 72:1,3
day, 70(1):16
height of the day, 55:5
daybreak, 62:15
deaf asp, 57:7,8,9,10,11
deceit, 54:14,26; 55:9; 57:5,6; 61:15,16
deliverance, 68(2):3
hidden or manifest, 68(2):3,10
three young men in fiery furnace, 68(2):3
demon, 62:7; 72:6
derision: Where is your God?, 61:14
desert, 54:12,13; 62:3,8,9; 64:17; 67:9,12; 72:5
inner place of the soul, 54:9,10
desert fathers, 54:9
desire, 54:8,16; 57:10; 58(2):1; 59:11; 61:16;
62:5,14,16,17; 64:2,3,8; 67:20;
72:11,29,31,32,33
carnal, 64:4
evil cravings, 57:17,18,19,20
rich and poor, 51:14
despair, 55:20; 70(1):1
despair, 51:7
59:10; 60:5; 61:6,8,20,23; 62:17; 63:1;
64:2,16; 67:16,27; 68(1):9; 69:4; 70(2):2;
72:5
accuser, 71:8,14,15
human as tools of, 55:4
humans tempted by, 60:3
as lion; as dragon, 69:2
power, 61:21
strong, 58(1):6
discernment, 52:5; 54:22; 65:19
distinguish my cause, 53:4
two cities, 64:2
disciple(-s), 59:2; 71:9
Christ’s choice of, 65:4
crucifixion of Christ and, 63:17
sorrow for the crucifixion, 68(2):5
disobedience, 70(1):2
distress, 59:2; 68(2):1; 69:2,5
disturbance, 56:11
divinity: sharing in, 52:6
doctor, 70(1):18; 70(2):1
documents, 57:6
Doeg, 51:3-4,9,11,12,13,15,16,17,53:2
dogs, 58(1):15; 58(2):7; 67:32
Donatists, 54:22; 57:15; 67:39
Donatus, 54:17,20,21; 69:5
dove, 54:8,9; 67:17,19,20
body of Christ, 67:21
dream-wealth, 72:26
drought, 67:31
drunkenness, 57:22,68(1):16
duress, 53:10
duty, 54:8,61:8
ear: how asp shuts its ears, 57:10
earth, 71:9,11
inebriated, 64:14
earthquake, 67:11
cruzzy, 67:36
Edom, 59:1,2,3,11,13; 62:3,5,6,8,13
Edomite (the word), 51:4
Egypt, 64:2; 67:9; 67:40; 69:9; 72:3
Elisha, 70(1):9
embarrassment, 70(1):14
Emmaus, 63:17; 68(1):8
emperors, 65:4
end (the word), 54:1
end of the world, 64:9,17; 70(1):6;
70(2):4,12; 71:11
ends of the earth, 60:2,3,7
endurance, 54:4,8; 59:2,11; 60:4; 61:11;
67:36; 68(1):12
enemy, 54:4-6; 55:13; 56:14; 57:10,19;
58(1):4,20; 59:2,15; 60:5; 61:6,16;
62:17; 63:2,16; 64:2,13,16; 65:6,9;
67:32; 68(1):9,10; 68(2):4,14; 69:3;
70(1):6,14; 70(2):12; 71:12
confuting by other enemies, 58(1):22
deliverance from, 68(2):3
Do not kill them, 58(2):2
fear of, 54:6
God’s gifts to, 66:3
let them be confused, 69:3
praying for, 58(1):21
temporal goods, 72:6
two: one to love; one to shun, 54:6
wishing well, 70(2):6
evy, 53:3; 58(2):5; 63:18; 72:9
Ephraim, 59:9
episcopacy, 67:39

Volume III17
Volume III/17

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

God it is who helps me, 61:13
In God we shall fight bravely, 59:15
finished, 56:2
tire, 57:17,19,20; 59:2; 61:11; 63:19; 64:4; 65:16,18; 69:5
firmament, 71:18
flattery, 61:2; 69:5; 72:12
fleece, 71:9
adath for God, 62:6,7,9
fragile, 62:10
material supports of, 62:10
means “human being”, 56:5
promise of resurrection, 62:6
sackcloth, 68(1):15
They will be two in one flesh, 68(2):1
to you all flesh will come, 64:5
flood, 68(1):3
flourishing, 53:2,3,4
folly, 68(1):10
food, 51:10; 53:1; 54:15,24; 64:14
foot, 67:31
foreigners, 53:6,7; 55:16,20
foresight, 53:2
forgiveness:
Judgment Day, 52:4
refusal to forgive, 54:14
fortified place, 70(1):5
fortitude, 63:12; 64:11; 67:8,9,36
foxes, 62:19,20
fraud, 72:24
freak, 70(1):9
free will:
sacrifice of praise, 53:10,11; 70(2):1
serving God willingly, 70(1):2
freedom, 67:36; 72:11
friend, 59:8
fruit: earth has yielded its fruit, 66:8
fruitfulness, 59:9
fullness of time, 72:16
furrows, 64:15
future life, 71:21
immortality, 65:1
Galatia, 66:6
gall, 68(2):6
gate, 68(1):16
Gath, 55:3
generation, 60:8
Gentiles, 51:5; 56:17; 57:14; 58(1):10; 58(1):11,15; 58(2):7,8,10; 59:8,10,12; 60:3; 64:6,14,17; 65:1,4,10,14,15; 67:9,10,12,26,40,41; 68(2):20; 71:17; 71:9; 72:2,6
Gideon, 67:32; 71:9
gift(s), 58(2):11; 63:18; 67:38; 72:3
bestedowed on us by God, 71:3
Christ receives what his members receive, 67:25
of God, 55:7,16; 67:21
good and bad received from God, 62:14
lead, 71:13
sacrificial, 55:19
what creature does, God himself does, 52:5
Gilead, 59:9
gladiator, 70(1):1
glory, 56:13; 56:17; 61:12,13; 65:3,4,14; 67:23; 70(1):18
glue, 62:17,18
goats, 65:20
God:
See also
Jesus Christ; Son of God; Trinity;
Word of God
anger, 55:13; 57:20
attributes, 59:8
awesome works of, 65:5
concern for human affairs, 72:21,22
countenance, 68(2):15
covered by the shade of your wings, 60:6,7
denying existence of, 52:2,3
discontented with, 70(1):14
everything, 54:4
Father = most sublime reality, 58(1):10
Father as king, 67:15
fidelity, 55:14
foreknowledge, 68(2):13
forgetting God, 62:4,15
fortified place, 70(1):5
goodness of, 65:5; 70(2):8; 71:19
He alone works wonders, 71:20
heard by? be poor, 68(2):18
heart; anger, 54:22
hants dropped by; understanding, 72:1
hold fast; possess; worship, 55:16
I know that you are my God, 55:16,17
injustice of, 70(1):14
invisible works of, 67:9
judgment, 57:20
knowledge questioned, 72:17-18,20,21
mercy, 67:12; 70(2):1
milk a symbol of, 67:22
my mercy, 58(2):11
name held in honor, 71:16
not knowing everything, 52:5
omnipotence, 72:2
omnipresence, 67:7
Only once God has spoken, 61:17,18,19
pervasive imitator of, 70(2):6
presence. See presence of God.
promises, 64:13
protector, 70(1):5,7
provider. See providence.
Show us your face, 66:4
steadfast love and truth, 60:9
stronghold and refuge, 61:3; 70(1):5
substance, 68(1):5
surrendering to, 61:2,11
two things heard: power and mercy, 61:17
wanting authority over, 70(2):
Who is like you, 70(2):6,7
Who will see them, 63:12
you will not march..., 59:13
godhead, 52:6; 56:4
godlessness, 54:4; 56:7,14; 57:21; 61:9; 67:21; 72:20
gold, 61:11
honesty and, 57:2
wisdom as, 71:17
good and evil, 51:6,8
See also iniquity; malice; sin; wickedness
Adam’s experimentation with evil, 70(2):1
gifts of God, 55:16
God can contrive good from evil, 61:22
God gives goods to all, 66:3
paradise tree, 70(2):7
two cities: Jerusalem and Babylon, 61:8
weeds among the wheat, 64:16
Good Thief, 68(1):9
good things: from house of God, 64:8
boasting about, 65:12
hiding; self-glorification, 65:3
Let your deeds shine, 65:3
love, not fear, as motive, 67:13
motive, 65:3
of godless persons, 67:41
puffed up by, 71:3
rich in, 72:26
visibility of, 67:1
goodness, 65:22
all derives from God, 70(2):6
cause as commendable, 68(1):9
gift from whom all goods derive, 52:5
good things and gifts, 58(2):11; 62:14
held within the heart, 53:3
holding fast to God, 72:34
power to behave well, 52:6
praise God’s name, 53:10
progress in, 54:9
tested by bad people, 54:4,9
gospel, 59:11; 66:10; 67:11; 68(2):4
grace, 57:4; 58(2):6,617; 62:3,12; 65:5,14;
66:1; 67:8,9,10,17,21,25,29;
68(1):2,17; 68(2):3;
70(1):1,2,5,6,15,18,20; 70(2):4,5
abounding more than sin, 67:11
angels and, 70(2):5
gratuitous, 67:12; 70(1):1; 70(2):1,2
milk a symbol of, 67:22
returning to God, 70(2):1
grafting (wild olive), 72:2
grain, 63:19; 69:1
grapes, 55:3,4,7,9

Volume III17
grass, 51:12; 53:2,3,4,9,11; 71:18
gratis (the word), 53:10
heed, 51:17; 62:18; 67:20
healing, 68(2):5
guardian, 68(2):11
guide: 
Lead me in your way , 70(2):3
guilt, 61:6; 71:18

eartly, 61:6
God is my portion , 72:32
Old Testament promise, 67:20
present world, 55:16
temporal, 53:7

hard sayings, 54:24
harmony, 54:11,15; 72:21
hate, 54:5,7; 61:5; 68(1):9
healing, 57:8,9,10,11; 58(2):11; 59:4; 63:18
heal, 61:13; 70(2):1
hearing: not hearing the words of God, 57:7
heart, 52:5,6,8,11; 53:8,10; 54:22; 55:19;
63:11; 65:2; 70(1):19; 70(2):1; 72:7
darkened, 57:18,19
distance of, 55:2
ears shut, 57:8
Father and Son, 63:18
God as cause of ideas in, 52:5
image of God in, 57:3
iniquity in one’s own, 65:22
justified, 72:19,20
law written in, 57:1,2; 58(2):2
Lift up your hearts, 68(2):8
private, inner place, 51:10
Serve not only where it shows, 70(1):2
shut against other hearts, 55:9
sin committed in, 57:4
song in, 64:3
straightforward, 72:8
suffering and, 56:15
Treasure in, 53:3,10
upright of, commended, 63:19
heaven, 51:6,9,16; 53:2; 54:3; 55:6; 59:7; 60:6;
61:6,11,12; 62:2; 64:3; 67:42; 72:31
citizen’s rights in, 52:5
dragnet cast into the sea, 64:9
kingdom of, 51:4
mercy and truth from, 56:10
rich getting in to, 51:14
heavens, 56:17; 67:10,11,21; 70(2):6
Hebrew language, 59:2
heel, 55:10
height of the day, 55:5
hell, 57:21; 68(1):3; 70(2):2
help: rise up and come to meet me, 58(1):9

hen, 58(1):10; 62:16
herb, 71:18
heresy(-etics), 52:4; 54:19,20,22; 56:13;
57:6,15; 59:2; 60:5; 65:2,5; 67:39;
68(1):11; 68(2):6
Herod, King, 62:19
hidden life, 53:3,5; 53:4
hiddenness, 55:9
hills, 64:17; 71:5,6,7
holocaust, 64:4; 65:18,19
Holy of Holies, 64:6
holly people: God’s chariot, 67:24
holly place, 67:7,24,33
desire, 62:11
I appeared before you, 62:9
58(2):4; 59:10; 60:4; 62:1,8; 63:15;
64:14; 67:24,25; 68(2):7; 71:3,15
Annunciation, 67:21
baptism of Christ, 71:11
cause of our searching, 52:5
diverse manifestations of, 67:17
gift of charity, 67:18
knowledge of God’s gifts, 52:5
law fulfilled through, 67:11
overshadowing, 67:21
homeland, 61:7; 62:14
honesty, 57:2; 70(1):17; 72:18,24
honey, 51:18
honor, 61:13; 71:10
Father and Son, 68(1):13
hooves, 68(2):16
hope, 54:3,13; 55:3,7,9,19,20; 57:22; 59:10;
60:4; 60:5; 61:13,14,16; 62:1,6; 64:3;
65:12; 67:6,20,29; 68(2):8,21;
70(1):1,7,8; 70(2):3,11,12
all placed in God, 72:34
all the ends of the earth, 64:9
consolation, 65:1
disciples lose, at death of Christ, 68(1):8
My eyes grew weary, 68(1):8
temporal happiness, 53:7
horns, 68(2):16
house, 55:1; 60:6; 67:7
human beings, 68(1):5
earthly/heavenly man, 70(1):2
animals and, 54:3
bounds crossed over, 72:13
fields, hills, and desert, 64:17
flesh as, 56:5
kingly and priestly body, 51:3
led as gifts, 71:13
trials to others, 55:4
human body:
decomposed: whole in God’s sight, 62:6
fragility of, 62:6
God dwelling in, 66:1, 66:1
human condition, 54:3; 61:3,18; 67:29; 72:26
earth you are..., 71:12
misery and mercy, 56:17
rich or poor, 72:13

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72
humankind: separation from, 54:9
hunger, 58(1):15; 70(2):6
hymn, 60:1; 64:3,18; 72:6

three elements required, 72:1
hypocrisy, 57:3,11
Idithun, 61:1,11,14,16,17,18
image of God, 54:3; 57:1; 59:2; 66:4; 70(2):6
idolatry, 62:1,4; 65:21
imitation, 55:20; 60:9; 67:36
craftiness of snakes, 57:10
leaders, 71:5
immorality, 51:14; 55:6; 60:8; 64:4; 68(1):3; 71:8

reconciliation and, 71:1
imperfections, 54:8
impiety, 64:6; 65:4; 71:1

incense, 65:20
incest, 59:10
incorruptibility, 62:10; 64:4; 65:18
inferiority, 54:6
infirmities, 58(2):8
inheritance, 60:7; 62:10; 67:31
allotted portions, 67:20
in the middle, 67:19

Testaments as, 67:19
depths = pit, 68(2):1
entirely enveloped in, 72:11
folds of fat, 72:12
heap further iniquity upon, 68(2):12
injustice, 51:10; 54:13; 58(1):21; 61:21
innocence, 61:22
insensitivity, 55:6
insult, 68(1):12,13; 68(2):4
integrity, 78:24,25
intelligence, 67:1
invoking, 52:8
Israel, 51:5; 68(1):5
Isaiah, 67:32
Israel, 52:9; 54:16; 64:17; 65:10; 67:12,40,43; 71:9
Israelites, See Jews.
Jacob, 52:9; 59:8
javelins, 54:24
jawbones of the lions, 57:14,15
Jebus, 61:7
Jeremiah, 64:1,2
Jericho, 54:13; 60:8

Jerusalem, 51:7,9; 61:7,9; 62:16; 64:1,2,8; 66:9,12; 72:3
See also Zion
Babylon versus, 61:6,7
festivals, 61:10
heavenly city, 61:4; 62:6; 64:1
Jews' loss of the city, 68(2):10
sign or figure, 61:7
Jesse, 72:1,3
Jesus Christ:
advent foretold, 61:4
angels minister to, 56:10
antonomasia (usage) in O.T., 67:15
arm of the Lord, 70(2):4,5
ascended on high; took captivity captive, 67:25-27
ascended to his Father, 58(1):10; 70(2):10
baptism of, 58(1):7; 71:11
blessed in name of, 66:9
bride made for him on cross, 56:11
buried (covered himself with a cave), 56:4
called "David", 55:1
came so those who see may become blind, 65:5
Come to me, all you who labor..., 54:13
come to set fire to earth, 59:3
coming as judge, 52:4
crucified as man, not God, 56:4
crucified by human beings, 56:12
crucifixion, 55:5; 65:6
see also passion below
fear as cause, 52:9
his blood be upon us, 58(1):5
robbers on sides of, 68(1):9
third or sixth hour, 63:5
'this is not God,' 52:3
David as, 55:3
death, See below: passion and death
Destroy this temple, 56:8; 65:7
devil and, 68(1):9; 71:14,15
divinity, 56:3; 63:10; 67:39
denied, 52:3,4,9
godhead hidden, 65:5
humanity and, 58(1):2,10
Do not cling to me..., 58(1):10
driving traders from the temple, 70(1):18
end of all our striving, 56:2
end of the law, 54:1; 55:1; 56:2; 64:6; 65:1; 67:1,23
exalted to the heavens, 56:13
example, 56:2; 63:3; 67:30
false evidence against him, 65:7
fasting, 68(1):14,16
Father is greater than I, 63:13
Father, forgive them..., 54:12
figures: Solomon as 'peacemaker', 71:1
first-born from the dead, 71:8
foretold his future suffering, 68(2):5
forgiveness, See forgiveness of sin.
form of a servant, 63:13
fullness of the Godhead, 67:23
future coming of, 67:42
glorified after death, 57:16
glorified through weakness, 53:4
glory and power, 62:11; 71:12
God's equal, 58(1):10
godhead hidden in heart of, 63:13
He will drink from the torrent, 57:16
head of every man, 57:10
heart of, 63:18
how he is our hope, 60:4
human and divine, 56:1
human heart, 63:14
humanity, 62:11; 64:7; 70(2):10
suffering, 55:15
temple of the godhead, 65:7
united to the Word, 67:23
used for miracles and sufferings, 56:16
I am the way..., 66:6
I am thirsty, 61:9
I and the Father are one, 62:11
I have the power..., 65:7
If anyone is ashamed of me, 68(1):12
Jewish ritual purity, 57:13
justice reigns in, 71:7
keeping gaze fixed on, 54:9
kingship, 55:2,3; 57:3; 59:2; 60:8; 61:6; 64:4; 67:15; 71:2
light of the prophets, 58(2):2
light of the world, 54:25
likens himself to a hen, 58(1):10; 62:16
Lo, I am with you: 69:1; 70(2):4
love = keeping his commandments, 55:17
lying witnesses against, 55:9
martyrs' exemplar, 63:3
May the Lord be magnified, 69:6,7
mercy and truth, 56:10
mocked, 54:12; 56:4; 59:9; 63:16; 65:7; 68:30; 70(1):11
mountain, 57:9; 67:23
My peace I give to you, 71:1
My soul is glued to you, 62:17
My soul is sorrowful, 55:6; 63:18
My yoke is kindly..., 59:8
obedience, 71:6
pasch, 68(1):2
passion and death, 54:10,18; 56:2; 58(1):3; 59:9; 62:17; 63:1,7-14,16; 65:7; 68(1):3,6,7; 69:1
Christ speaking in the psalm, 68(1):1,2
Crucify him!, 58(2):3
death's dominion defeated, 51:1,2; 71:8,17
disciples lose hope, 68(1):8
divinity hidden in, 56:4
Father, forgive them..., 54:12; 68(2):5; 69:3
foretold in the psalms, 58(1):2
free choice, 67:30
gall and vinegar, 68(2):6
God praying to God, 56:5
God's plan, 61:22
guards posted at grave, 63:15; 65:8
hands lifted up on cross, 62:13
I lay down to sleep, 56:12
King of the Jews, 55:2; 56:3; 57:3; 58(1):1; 59:2; 62:19,20
mockery, 67:3
My God! My God..., 58(1):2
Petr's fear, 55:15
sacraments from side of Christ, 56:11
temple veil torn, 64:6; 70(2):9
Weep not for me..., 68(2):5
why have you forsaken me, 68(1):7; 68(2):11; 70(1):12
winepress, 55:4
perfection of the law, 70(1):20
power and wisdom of God, 67:37
power to lay down my life, 56:11
prefigured by David, 53:1; 54:3; 59:1,3
priest and victim, 64:6
prophecies about, 58(1):22; 62:1; 72:1
resurrection, 56:4,8,10; 58(2):4,10; 63:15; 67:2,5; 68(2):5; 70(2):1
arise, psaltery and lyre, 56:16
death's slayer, 51:1,2
lies about, 58(1):3
savior of his body (the Church), 55:3
second coming, See second coming of Christ.
sacraments from side of Christ, 56:11
savior of his body (the Church), 55:3
second coming, See second coming of Christ.
sacraments from side of Christ, 56:11
secret heart of, 63:13
seed of Abraham, 71:19
set fire to the earth, 59:2
sinful woman washes his feet, 66:8
sinner, 58(1):8; 63:6; 68(1):10
sovereign over all, 61:4
speaking through the prophets, 56:13
storm at sea; Christ asleep, 54:10
sufferings, 61:4; 64:13
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

suppressing the name of, 58(1):3
tempted by the devil, 60:3
This is a hard saying…, 54:23
to you all flesh will come, 64:9
tower, 60:5,15
truth, 57:6
universal passion of, 61:4
unknown by contemporaries, 68(1):13
walking on water, 54:5
way, 62:8
way, truth, life, 55:20; 66:5; 70(2):3; 72:16
who touched me?, 61:10
whole Christ: head and body, 58(1):2,5
Without me you can do nothing, 67:23
You are my beloved Son, 67:23
Jews, 52:4,9; 55:9; 56:3,17; 58(1):5,7,15;
58(2):2,7,10; 63:15; 64:5,6; 65:1,4,5;
67:2; 68(1):7; 68(2):21; 70(1):1,2; 71:7
Are we blind?, 65:5
Babylonian captivity, 64:1; 70(1):2
blindness of, 68(2):10
Christians and the O.T., 72:5
crucifixion of Christ and, 55:2; 56:4,12;
58(1):1,10,15; 58(2):4,5,7; 63:14,13;
64:1; 65:2,5; 68(2):6; 70(1):12
Do not kill them, 58(2):2,3
Egyptian domination: figure, 72:5
fear of temporal losses, 62:18
Jerusalem empty of, 68(2):10
nation as fleece, 71:9
prophecies about Christ and, 58(1):22
punished; homeland lost, 64:1
remnants, 58(1):21
Romans and, 58(1):21; 58(2):2
scattered throughout all nations, 56:9
self-satisfaction, 65:2
survival of, 56:9; 58(2):2
temporal deliverance (from Egypt), 72:3
true wheat, 64:17
ungrateful, 63:3
Josh, 59:1,2
Joh, 55:19,20; 68(2):15; 70(1):14,16; 71:3;
72:10
John the Baptist, 57:12; 61:4; 67:23
Jonadah, 70(1):2; 70(2):1
Jonah: sign, 65:6,7
Jonathan, 67:19
Jordan river, 71:11
Joseph in Egypt, 51:4; 61:5
Joshua, 72:3
joy, 53:8; 54:2; 57:22; 58(2):10; 59:1; 62:1;
63:17,18; 64:13,17,18; 65:2,12; 66:10;
66:7; 67:6,24; 72:7
Judah, 59:10; 67:36
Judas, 51:3; 55:9; 61:22; 63:11; 65:7; 68(2):11
Judea, 64:17; 65:2; 68(2):20
judgment, 71:7
actions and words, 57:2
entrusted to the Son, 71:2,3
justice and, 71:4,7
64:2; 67:3,4; 66:7,10; 67:43; 70(2):12
come, you who are blessed, 63:19
forgiveness for everyone, 52:4
judge cannot be hoodwinked, 58(2):5
just person, 61:13; 64:17; 69:3
sadness and the crucifixion, 63:17,18
special privileges, 66:4
justice, 57:1; 58(1):13; 63:11; 61:16,22;
70(1):4,16; 71:2,3,4,7
actions and words, 57:2
if you truly speak…, 57:2,3,4,9,11
judge on judgment day, 58(2):5
peace and, 71:5,6
standards, 61:21
thirst for, 62:6
widow and unjust judge, 65:24
justification, 64:13; 65:2; 67:41
kidneys, 72:27
killing, 61:22; 69:3
See also death; murder
kindness, 51:10,13; 57:1
kingdom: earthly and heavenly, 51:4; 72:3
laws, 56:3; 67:21,38; 69:4; 71:13,14
bad, in Jerusalem, 61:8
earthly; heavenly, 55:2
knowledge: of something before it is created,
61:18
Korah, 51:9
languages, 54:11
laughter, 51:13
law, 58(2):7; 65:14
attitudes toward, 58(2):2
charity and observance of, 67:24
Christ and perfection of, 70(1):20
forgetting, is to be killed, 58(1):21
fulfillment, 57:9; 71:15
judged by, 70(1):6
let them never forget, 58(1):21
letter alone, 70(1):19
masculine character of, 59:10
material reward for keeping, 65:1,2
Maximianists, 57:15
memory and conduct, 58(2):2
mercy and judgment, 71:4
Mount Sinai, 67:11
perfecting the, 67:11
poor with five porticos, 70(1):19
weakening, 67:11
well versed in, 65:4
written in the heart, 57:1,2
Lazarus (brother of Martha and Mary), 67:8;
70(2):3
Lazarus (parable of rich man), 51:14; 69:7;
72:13

Volume III17
leaders: imitation; obedience, 71:5
leisure: holy, 70(1):18
Levi, 67:19
licentiousness, 52:4
lie, 58(1):3; 65:6,7,8
life, 62:12,13
See also Christian life
days are short, 60:8
fatigue, weariness, decay, 62:6
I have made my life known, 55:14
motivation, 55:14
precarious, 72:15
span of, 65:12
successive stages of, 62:6
time of travel, 55:9
who will give me wings…, 54:8
lion-cubs, 56:10
lions, 57:13
lips, 58(2):3,4; 70(2):12
listening, 53:5; 58(2):1; 61:1; 65:21
literature, 70(1):19
lodger, 60:6
lodgings, 54:16
looking back, 69:9
Lord’s Prayer: Deliver us from evil, 54:3
Forgive us our debts, 54:14; 66:7
Give us today our daily bread, 55:7
Thy kingdom come, 66:10; 71:17
loss, 66:3
Lot, daughters of, 59:10
Lot’s wife, 69:9
love, 54:9; 55:2; 56:1; 61:4,3; 65:20; 67:41
chaste, 52:8; 72:32,33
command to love enemies, 54:4,5,6
dove a symbol of, 54:8
favorable glance, 65:22
God’s steadfast love, 60:9
Jerusalem vs. Babylon, 64:2
love for God, 70(1):1,7; 72:34
love of many will grow cold, 52:1; 69:2
lover, 54:8; 72:1
Luciferians, 67:39
hush, 67:22
lust, 57:18,22; 62:18; 70(2):1; 72:27
lyre, 56:16; 70(2):11
Maccabean brothers, 68(2):3
Macedonians, 67:39
Maelith, 52:1
magician, 57:4
malice, 51:7,8,10,13; 56:6,4,14; 63:3; 68(2):11,12; 70(1):1
Mammon, 53:2
Manasseh, 59:9
Mani, 67:39
manna, 67:9
marriage: true love in, 55:17
marrow, 65:20
Marsians, 57:7
Christ as exemplar, 63:3; 69:1,2
deliver my soul from fear, 63:2
God working within them, 59:13
imitation of, 69:4
martyrdom, 67:31
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 56:3; 57:5; 58(1):2; 62:1; 67:21, 70(2):10
Mary Magdalen, Saint, 58(1):10, 68(2):5
material goods, See temporal goods
Matthias, Apostle, 67:19
maturity, 64:15
Maximians, 57:15
medicine, 57:15; 57:8,9,10
members of Christ, See Church.
God pleading to God for, 56:5
head spoken by God, 61:17,20
persevere in prayer, 65:24
sweetness of, 68(2):1
trust in God, 51:16,17
withholding from the unjust, 58(1):21
merit, 51:17; 55:17; 58(2):2; 65:4,22; 67:10,21,41; 70(2):1,2,5
Mesopotamia, 59:1,2,3
Messiah, 54:3; 57:12; 65:4; 72:3
midday, 54:18
middle (Scriptural use), 67:19
milk: symbol of grace, 67:22
mind: law of members opposes, 69:7; 70(1):2; 70(2):1
miracle, 65:6
Elisha and dead child, 70(1):19
humanity of Jesus, 56:16
raising of Lazarus, 70(2):3
mire, 68(1):18
misery, 68(2):5
misfortune, 55:19; 65:17
Moa, 59:10
mockery, 65:5
money, 51:14,15; 52:9; 53:2,10; 57:2; 64:13
moneymaking, 54:14
monothelism, 59:12; 62:1
moon, 60:8; 71:8,10,11
morning, 54:18; 64:13
morality, 68:1; 67:1,7; 65:12,13; 68(2):18; 71:10
Moses, 61:9,18; 64:6; 65:6; 67:9,15; 70(1):19; 72:5
mother, 58(1):10
mountain(-s), 71:5,6,18
For there the Lord will dwell to the end, 67:23
Symposium Of The Psalms 51-72

lush, 67:22
poor as, 64:10
preachers as, 64:10
Sina, 67:11
strength, 64:10
mouth, 58(2):3,4

God smashed their teeth, 57:11,15
mud, 68(1):4-5
murder, 57:4; 69:3; 71:16
musical instrument, 56:16
mustard seed, 68(1):1,3
mutability: moon as image of, 60:8
mystery(-ries), 70(2):9
Mystical Body of Christ, 67:16
members before Christ's advent, 61:4
one person comprises many, 64:9

Naphthali, 67:36
Nathanael, 65:4
nations:
all on god’s way, 66:5,6
all will be Christian, 58(1):17

guided, 67:7
troubled, 64:12
nature, 68(1):5
Nazareth, 65:4
Nebuchadnezzar, 61:8; 68(2):3
necessity, 61:16
need, 68(2):17; 72:12
filled; withdrawn, 62:10
needly, See poor.

negotiation, 70(1):18
negotium, 70(1):18
neighbor: commandment to love, 51:10
net, 64:9

New Covenant, 67:36; 72:1,6,30
New Testament, 67:20; 338
right, 62:15; 64:13; 70(1):16
Noah, 67:19; 68(1):1
north, 59:10
Novationists, 54:22

obedience, 63:16; 70(2):1,7
Adam and Christ, 71:6
to leaders, 71:5
occupations, 62:12
ocean, 21:11
old age, 65:12; 70(1):11; 70(2):4
Old Covenant, 72:3,6,30
old man: beauty in righteousness, 64:8
Old Testament: earthly happiness and, 67:20
olive tree, 51:16; 78(1):21; 65:5
grafting the wild olive, 72:2
original sin, 57:2,18; 61:7; 68(2):11; 70(1):6,15
children of wrath, 57:20
death came through Adam, 68(1):2
orphans, 67:7

otum, 70(1):19
oven, 65:20

pagans, 52:4; 54:11; 56:9,14; 62:1; 64:6; 65:21; 69:2; 70(1):6
pain, 55:6; 60:3; 62:2; 63:18
parable, 57:7
killing the heir, 70(2):1
rich man and Lazarus, 72:13
widow and unjust judge, 65:24
paradise, 70(2):7
parallelism, 71:2,3
pardon, 64:6
parents and children, 54:7; 62:14
partridge, 54:27
parturition, 52:1
Pascha, 68(1):2
Passover, 59:10; 68(1):2,3
pax, 57:10
patience, 61:11; 67:20; 29; 70(1):6,7
patrarchs, 61:4; 65:5; 68(1):1,72:2
Paul, Saint, 67:12,36; 68(2):4; 70(1):1

See also Saul (later Paul)
birthpangs: pregnant with charity, 52:1
conversion, 58(1):12
distressed by trials, 54:8
God’s mercy to, 58(1):12
I am the least…, 72:4
persecutor converted, 55:12,14
dying of the flesh, 53:5; 58(2):5
sufferings, 56:15
peace, 54:19; 64:2,3,4; 71:1,10,11
enjoyed by sinners, 53:3; 72:10
justice and, 71:5,6
Pelagius, 58(1):19
people of God: mixture, 71:7
perfection, 54:1; 55:20; 56:2; 69:8

consummation, 58(2):5
perjury, 70(1):17
persecution, 52:7; 54:8; 55:4; 59:5,6;
62:17,18; 63:1; 64:11,12; 65:16; 67:12;
68(1):1,4,9; 68(2):11; 69:2,3,4
Christians more numerous after, 62:20
flattery and, 69:5
men of blood, 58(1):5
persecutors defeated, 61:5
perseverance, 52:1; 54:9; 56:6; 59:10; 60:6;
64:4; 65:15; 67:6

giving thanks, 60:10
holding out, 60:4
prayer and mercy, 65:24
called “Satan”, 55:15; 69:4
carnal affection for Christ, 62:17
walking on water, 54:5
Pharisees, 57:11,13; 61:13; 70(1):4
Philip, Apostle, 58(1):10
Phelimus, Bishop of Sirmium, 67:39
physician, 58(1):7

pilgrim, 64:1

pillar of cloud, 67:9
pit (iniquity), 68(2):1
pity, 51:9; 52:5
pleasure, 57:4, 10, 19, 21; 68(1):3
Pontius Pilate, 53:3; 55:2; 56:1, 3, 12; 58(1):1; 62:19; 63:4, 5, 8, 15
pool: movement of the water, 70(1):19
poor(-)s, 51:14; 61:16; 68(2):18; 72:13
leaders reigning with, 71:5
righteous judgment, 71:7
possessions, 51:14
pot, 59:10
pottery, 65:17
power, 58(1):18; 61:17, 20, 21, 22; 65:6; 67:14; 70(1):20; 70(2):5; 72:30
proliferation (as blessing), 66:9
promise, 64:13; 72:3, 5
promised land, 67:9; 72:5
property: resources held in common, 66:9
prophecy, 51:13; 62:1; 69:4
punishment and, 66:2
providence, 58(2):2; 63:19; 65:16; 67:22
rain, 62:14; 63:19; 66:8; 67:9, 10; 71:9
raindrops sprinkling, 71:9
reading, 66:3
reality, 62:14
reconciliation: 
immortality and, 71:1
ministry of, 71:6
Red Sea, 72:5
reformation, 55:15; 56:5; 62:20; 64:2;
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

68(1):2; 70(2):1,12
blood of a just man, 61:22
souls of the poor, 71:16
reed, 67:38
refuge, 58(2):11
remorse, 53:3; 68(2):4
repetitions (biblical style), 71:2,3
reproof, 68(1):13,17
rest, 54:8; 62:15
restitution, 68(1):9
resurrection, 51:5; 55:3; 56:5; 57:20; 64:4; 65:1,14,24; 66:10; 67:43; 70(1):11; 70(2):10; 71:10; 72:30
humans made equal to angels, 56:17
promise to the flesh, 62:6
promised to every believer, 65:6
resuscitation, 70(2):3
retribution, 68(2):7,11,12
reverence, 68(1):19
reward, 56:2; 57:22; 64:13
calling upon God, 55:17
for good life, 72:19
loving God, 55:20
rich persons, 71:3; 72:26
riches, 51:14,15; 53:2,3; 68(1):4; 68(2):15
See also: money; prosperity; temporal goods; wealth
fear of losing, 52:9
overflowing, 61:16
praying for, 53:5
right hand, 59:7
righteousness, 57:4,22; 58(1):7; 61:13; 63:18; 64:11,17; 65:6,14,22; 67:4,8,24; 69:9; 70(1):1,4,18,19,20; 70(2):1,2,5,10; 71:10,11,15; 72:18
hunger and thirst for, 66:8
temple of God, 64:8
river, 71:11
crossing on foot, 65:11,12
people as God’s river, 64:14
robbery, 61:10; 66:6; 68(1):9
Roman Empire, 58(1):21
Romania, 58(2):2; 62:18
root, 51:12; 53:3; 72:1,2
rule: devil as, 54:4
ruling, 58(1):9
Sabbath, 68(2):8
Sabelius, 67:39
sackcloth, 68(1):15
sacraments, 65:7,17
pierced side of Christ, 56:11
sacrifice, 55:19; 64:4; 65:18
free will, 53:10; 70(1):2; 70(2):1
of praise, 68(2):16
Sadducees, 65:1
sadness, 54:18; 64:13; 68(2):5
saint(-s) 55:2,4,5,7,8,9,20; 67:2,20,33
God’s mountains, 67:23
helped within, 53:8
hidden deliverance of, 68(2):3
hopes withheld from world, 53:7
reign eternally, 60:8
saltiness, 59:2
salt-pits, 58(2):5
gratis, 70(2):1
proclaiming all day long, 70(1):16,17
You will save them for nothing, 55:12
Samaritan, 61:9; 68(2):11
sandal, 59:11
satisfaction, 64:8
Saul (later Paul):
conversion, 58(1):15; 72:4
persecutor of Christ, 52:1; 67:36; 69:3; 70(1):4
Saul, King, 51:1-3; 53:1; 56:3,4; 58(1):3; 59:1
savagey., 58:14
scales, 61:16
scandal, 59:10; 60:6; 68(2):6
a thousand shall fall, 68(2):13
Woe to the world…, 69:2
shame, 54:16,19,20; 64:9; 71:12
scourging, 72:10,13
sea-treasures, 66:9
stir up the depth, 64:11
symbol of this world, 64:9
turbulent, 64:12
turns into dry land, 64:11; 65:11
Second Coming of Christ, 62:1; 63:15; 69:9
sects, 71:12
security, 70(2):3
seed, 59:9; 64:17; 68(1):3
seeking God, 52:5; 53:11; 69:3,6
Seius, Gaius, 70(1):14
self-congratulation, 69:8
self-exaltation, 61:2
self-knowledge, 58:1,3
self-refutation, 57:11
self-reliance, 58(1):18
self-seeking, 54:19
sensuality, 69:2
separation, 54:9,16
Septuagint, 67:16
sermon: long, 72:34
servant, 68(2):21
command: Do not touch…, 70(2):7
serve two masters, 65:3
service, 67:21
shackles, 68(2):18
shadow, 67:21
shame, 52:9; 58(1):11; 68(2):4; 70(1):14
let me not be ashamed for ever, 70(1):3
shamelessness, 68(1):12
Shechem, 59:8
sheep, 69:6; 70(1):5
shepherd, 69:6
ship: at anchor, 64:3
shoulders, 59:8; 67:18
shout, 64:18; 65:2; 68(1):7
Jerusalem as, 61:7
seeking, 65:6
silence, 66:6
silver, 54:22
silversmiths, 67:39
Simeon, 66:5
similes, 57:7; 66:10
simplicity, 66:3
sin, 59:5; 63:9; 65:5,16,22; 68(1):18; 71:14
See also conversion; iniquity; wickedness abounding, 67:11
chains of, 57:4
defending as injustice, 58(1):14; 68(1):19
devil gains control through, 72:5
God’s patience with, 63:19
habitual; no shame, 52:2
hardship because of, 68(1):12
holding God responsible for, 58(1):14
punishment, 58(1):13
restraining for sake of riches, 72:18
responsibility for, 58(1):19
springs from another sin, 57:4
struggle against, 67:8
thrown into confusion by, 59:4
unjust dealing, 58(1):12
wounds, 68(2):11
Sinai, Mount, 67:11,24,26
singing, 64:3
confession, 66:6-7
hymn element, 72:1
living for God, 67:5
unending ages, 60:10
sinner(s), 53:3-9; 54:5; 55:9; 58(2):1,8; 61:2,5,13; 63:18; 64:6,8; 67:3,8,31,37; 70(1):1,4,18,19; 70(2):3
alternated from the womb, 57:5,6
confessing sinfulness, 68(2):1
death of soul, 58(1):6
enraged, 57:17; 72:9,10
eye of the heart lost, 57:18
falling into hands of, 68(1):19
forgiving, 55:10
God is judging now, 57:22
prosperity, 72:23
rescue me from hand of, 70(1):6
righteous will wash their hands, 57:21
say in heart: God does not exist, 52:7
wealth of, 72:18
You will save them for nothing, 55:12
sin of their mouths, 59(2):3,4
sky, 66:9; 67:42
slave, 55:9; 69:7
Jews as book-bearers, 56:9
Serve not only where it shows, 70(1):2
sleep, 56:11; 62:4; 67:17
middle: Old and New Testaments, 67:20
sling, 54:26
snake, 68(1):5
fury like venom of, 57:7,8,11
imitate craftiness of, 57:10
snare, 56:14
Sodomites, 69:2
solidarity: head and body, 62:2
soil, 54:8,9,10,15
Solomon, King, 67:23; 71:3,17
name = 'peacemaker', 71:1
Son of God, 63:3
crucified, 68(2):12
death foretold in Book of Wisdom, 56:4
emptied himself, 58(1):10; 68(1):9
Father saved him from the dead, 56:8
form of a servant, 65:5,10; 68(1):4
powers; king, 67:15
radiance of the Father, 71:8
Son of Man, 52:6; 63:3
song, 64:2; 66:6
psalms, 67:1
sorrow, 55:3; 63:17
soul:
See also body and soul
thirst for God, 62:5-6,9
beauty in power and wisdom, 58(1):18
Bless the Lord..., 66:1
death and, 54:7
established in life, 65:15
filled; feast, 62:14
great things God has done for, 65:21
killing by leading astray, 54:26
life of the body, 70(2):3
my soul stood fast, 55:11
nourished with wisdom, 62:14
proper food of, 62:7
provoking, 70(1):14
raised to life, 70(2):3
redeemed, 70(2):12
sleep and, 62:4
supports of, 62:10
spirit, 64:6
represented by psaltery, 70(2):11
spiritual life:
See also presence of God
ascending; making progress, 58(1):10
blessing, 66:1
fear as flight from, 67:2
God who is at work in you, 67:24
invisible works of God, 67:9
Seek the Lord, and your soul will live, 68(2):17
yield to heart of God, 63:18
spirituality:
animal body comes first, 61:7; 70(2):1
inner riches, 55:19,20

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72
risen in faith, hope, charity, 70(2):10
spoils, 67:16
state: earthly, will perish, 61:8
Stephen, Saint, 57:8; 58(1):5; 69:3; 70(1):4,14
steward, 53:2
storm, 54:5,10,13
stranger, 57:13
straw, 61:11
streams, 64:14
61:11; 63:2; 65:13; 67:42,44; 69:5;
70(1):1,11,19

guarding as God’s, 58(1):18,19
preparing mountains, 64:10
study, 67:39
stumbling-block, 68(2):7
stupidity, 51:16; 53:2
substance, 68(1):4-5
suffering, 54:4,6,10; 56:5; 57:21,22; 59:9,10;
60:5; 63:1; 65:16; 67:36; 69:5; 70(1):14
He did not allow my feet to slip, 65:16
keeping the commandments, 68(1):12
lacking in sufferings of Christ, 61:4
my heart is ready, 56:15
pagan view of, 56:14
right-hearted people, 63:18
solidarity: we in Christ; Christ in us, 62:2
willing, 68(1):3
summer, 66:3
sun, 57:19; 62:14; 66:4; 70(2):6; 71:8,19

rises on good and wicked, 54:4; 55:16
sunlight, 72:7
superiority, 55:5
surrender to God, 61:2,11
name of God, 51:18
swindling, 72:18
sword, 56:12; 63:4
two-edged, 58(1):16
synagogue, 72:4,29
temporal values, 72:6
Syria, 59:8
tail, 57:10
taken up, 71:10
tambourines, 67:34,35
tares, 68:16,17
taste: sweetness of God, 51:18
teaching, 59:2
teeth, 63:4
God smashed their teeth, 57:11,15
temple, 67:38

Christ’s body, 65:7
fashioned from orphans and widows, 67:7
good things of, 64:8
Jerusalem, 64:1
veil torn at death of Christ, 64:6; 70(2):9
we are God’s temple, 64:8
temporal goods, 51:9,16; 53:5,7; 57:10; 64:8;
68(2):10;
71:18; 72:31,33

beast-like craving for, 72:29
blessings: God alone gives them, 66:2-4
carnally-minded, 61:15
despising earthly things, 72:20
fear regarding, 63:16
gifts of God, 53:10
invoking God for, 52:8; 72:23
mortal advantages, 58(2):5
praise of God for, 72:4
randomly distributed, 66:3
reward for keeping the law, 65:1
worship for the sake of, 72:6

temptation, 55:11; 58(1):4; 60:3,6,7;
61:20,22; 62:17; 63:1; 64:13; 68(1):1;
69:5; 70(1):5; 72:5
test, 65:16; 67:39; 69:5
Testaments (inheritances), 67:19
testimony, 60:10
thief, 72:12
thigh, 72:1
thirst, 61:9; 62:3,6,8,14; 66:1; 67:35;
68(1):14
Thomas, Apostle, Saint, 63:17; 68(1):8
thorns, 57:20
thoughts, 67:1
threshing-floor, 54:19; 71:9
time, 71:8,19
titles, 67:19
toadstool, 51:7
Tobit, 57:21; 70(1):14
today, 60:8
tongue, 63:4; 64:6; 67:32,38; 70(2):12; 72:30
exalt God with, 65:21
offending with, 55:10
reduced to weakness, 63:15
torture, 66:7
tower, 60:5; 61:3
tower of Babel, 54:11,15
trade (commerce), 70(1):17,19
transfiguration: our bodies, 67:44
trap, 64:13; 68(2):7
treachery, 63:5
treasure, 54:6; 55:19
treatment of others: Do not do to another,
57:1,2
tree: paradise, 70(2):7
trial, 55:2,20; 69:9
humans as tools of devil, 55:4
tribulation, 53:11; 54:2,4,10; 55:4,9,13;
59:5,6,7,10; 63:18; 65:16,20; 67:24;
68(2):1
tribute to Caesar, 57:11
Trinity, 54:22; 59:2; 67:15,39; 68(1):5
trouble, 55:13; 59:6,14; 62:10; 64:13; 65:16;
68(1):1; 68(2):2,18; 70(1):14; 70(2):9
trust, 63:17; 64:10; 69:6
cast your care upon the Lord, 54:24
human resources, 54:27
truth, 56:1; 56:10,17; 57:1.5,6,10,20,21;
58(1):15; 60:9; 61:16; 64:6,14,15;
67:12; 68(1):17; 70(1):20

Volume III17
Volume III/17

Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

building on rock, 57:23
heard in the heart, 57:2
twelve thousand, 59:9
twelve, 59:2

unanimity: tower of Babel and, 54:11
unbelief, 70(2):10; 72:2
unite: twelves, 63:2; 64:5; 67:16,27; 71:13
understanding, 53:7; 54:3
image of God, 54:3
refused, 51:10
underworld, 54:16; 68(2):7
all one soul in charity, 62:5
many churches, one Church, 64:14
one chosen and taken up, 64:7
one flock and one shepherd, 71:9
schism and, 54:19
Unto the end, 54:1; 55:1; 56:2; 65:1
usury, 54:14; 71:16
utterance of their lips, 58(2):3,4

Valley of Shelters, 59:8
Valley of the Salt-Pits, 59:2,7
values, 53:3; 62:14,18; 71:17
veil, 64:6; 70(2):9
vengeance, 57:22
vessels: wrath and mercy, 58(1):20; 58(2):2
vice, 68(1):5; 70(1):9
vigil, 62:4
vindication, 58(2):6
wine: turns sour, 55:3
vigor, 68(1):14; 68(2):6
vocation, 52:5; 59:2
vows, 55:19; 62:20; 64:4; 65:19

wakefulness, 62:4
warning: many invited, few are chosen, 61:6
watchfulness, 62:4; 64:3
water, 65:17
let anyone who is thirsty, 64:14
streams of living water, 64:14
wawering, 61:23
wax, 57:17,19
weakness, 54:8; 56:1; 58(2):6; 67:12; 70(1):5,11
ostentation use of, 72:26
sinners, 72:18
wedding feast, 58(1):11; 61:6
weeds, 64:16
wheat, 71:18
wheel, 59:12
wickedness, 54:11,16; 55:9; 67:8; 70(1):6
enduring wicked people, 54:9
God’s allowing evils, 61:22
prosperity, 53:3
widow, 67:7
parable of the unjust judge, 65:24
wife: love, 53:10

wind: four winds, 59:2
wine, 55:7
wine-drinkers, 68(1):16
winepress, 55:3
wings, 54:8; 67:17
winnowing, 51:6,12
winter, 66:3
wisdom, 53:5; 58(1):18; 64:15; 66:4; 67:18
fear of losing, 52:9
gold, 71:17
knowing oneself as nothing, 70(1):1
soul nourished by, 62:14
thirst for, 62:6
witness, 59:9,13
witnessing: swallowed alive, 63:2
woman: childless; seven husbands, 65:1
woman: alienated from, 57:5,6
Word of God, 58(2):10; 65:7; 66:5
God was in Christ, 67:23
in the beginning, 54:9, 64:7; 70(2):10
Only once God has spoken, 61:17,18,19
riches of wisdom and knowledge, 61:19
words, 57:6
seeking praise for, 55:7
treated with loathing, 55:8
words of God:
The Lord will give his word, 67:14
work:
good workers, 70(1):19
preaching with power, 67:14
works of mercy, 51:9,13
works, 70(1):18
world, 59:2; 63:9,16; 68(1):9
athirst, 65:11
city, 58(1):15
Edom as, 62:3
every, 54:6
good things in, 51:18; 62:14
love of Babylon, 64:2
lovers of darkness, 54:4
sea as symbol of, 64:9
two kinds of people in, 51:6
unstable beings in, 65:11
worldliness, 64:7
worldly distinction, 53:3
worldly-minded, 51:15
worship, 58(2):7; 64:6; 65:20
fall prostrate before him, 71:12
freely offered, 55:20
gratia, 52:8; 71:7
reward for, 55:17
wounds, 68(2):11
wrath, 68(2):9
vessel of, 58(1):20
written texts, 70(1):19

year, end of the, 64:16
years: God’s time, 60:8
yoke, 67:26
youth, 70(2):3
renewal of, 66:10; 70(1):11
Expositions Of The Psalms 51-72

Zachariah, 61:4
Zalmon, Mount, 67:17,21,22
zeal, 54:16,19; 68(1):13; 70(1):1
Zebulun, 67:36

Zion, 61:4; 68(2):20; 71:7; 72:34
watching-post, 64:3
Ziphites, 53:1-8,11
Zobah, 59:1,2,3

Volume III17
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 73-98

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/18 Homilies/Expositions

Paperback: 978-1-56548-166-4, 6 x 9 in., 510 pp., 2002
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-167-1, 6 x 9 in., 510 pp., 2002

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms
(Enarrationes in Psalms)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
Index of Scripture

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

Old Testament

Genesis
1:20 80, 2
2:2 92, 1
2:7 89, 3
3:19 81, 5; 82, 14; 84, 14
3:22 73, 17
21:12 77, 44
25:23 78, 10
25:33 II, 88, 6
32:26 79, 3
48:5.6 75, 1
49:9 II, 88, 7
49:10 75, 1

Exodus
3:14 82, 14; 89, 3
4:6 73, 13
4:7 73, 13
19:8 77, 10; 77, 33
20:3 77, 34
32:10 77, 22
33:23 73, 5

Leviticus
19:2 85, 4

Deuteronomy
6:13 98, 9

2 Samuel
6:16 II, 90, 7
8:3 II, 90, 6
21:23 87, 7
32:49 98, 12
32:52 98, 12
34:4 98, 12

2 Kings
2:23-24 83, 2

Tobit
4:7.11 96, 18

Job
1:16.21 77, 28
1:21 76, 2; 93, 19; 96, 17; 97, 6
2:9 93, 19
2:9-10 I, 90, 2
2:10 93, 19
7:1 74, 1; 76, 4

Psalms

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:6(5)</td>
<td>II, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9(8)</td>
<td>87, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3(2)</td>
<td>81, 3; II, 88, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-4(2-3)</td>
<td>76, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4(3)</td>
<td>II, 88, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6.5(4.5)</td>
<td>74, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7(6)</td>
<td>89, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3(3)</td>
<td>83, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:3(2)</td>
<td>78, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4(3)</td>
<td>I, 88, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9B:10(10:10)</td>
<td>93, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10(9)</td>
<td>83, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3(11:2)</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6(11:5)</td>
<td>93, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:6(12:5)</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:13:1</td>
<td>89, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14:1</td>
<td>73, 25; 74, 9; 87, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:5(14:4-5)</td>
<td>76, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:15:1</td>
<td>73, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16:1</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16:6</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16:10</td>
<td>85, 17; II, 88, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:16:11</td>
<td>85, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17:2</td>
<td>77, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:17:15</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:42(18:41)</td>
<td>76, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2(19:1)</td>
<td>95, 6; 96, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2.4.5(19:1.3.4)</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:2.5(19:1.4)</td>
<td>81, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3(19:2)</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:5(19:4)</td>
<td>78, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6(19:4-5)</td>
<td>II, 90, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:6(19:5)</td>
<td>87, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:2(22:1)</td>
<td>85, 1; 87, 14; II, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:14(22:13)</td>
<td>95, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:17-19</td>
<td>(22:16-18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:23:5</td>
<td>84, 3; II, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:24:4</td>
<td>72, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25:9</td>
<td>96, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:25:10</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27:4</td>
<td>77, 42; 85, 8; 85, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27:9</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:27:14</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:28:5</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:32:4</td>
<td>73, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:32:5</td>
<td>73, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:6(34:5)</td>
<td>75, 1; 91, 6; 94, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13(34:12)</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:15(34:14)</td>
<td>84, 12; 98, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:19(34:18)</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34(35):5</td>
<td>89, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:5(36:4)</td>
<td>74, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:9(36:8)</td>
<td>73, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:9-10(36:8-9)</td>
<td>93, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:11(36:10)</td>
<td>86, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):4</td>
<td>74, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):24</td>
<td>86, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36(37):25</td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:5-6(39:4-5)</td>
<td>89, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:3(40:2)</td>
<td>87, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:13(40:12)</td>
<td>85, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6(41:5)</td>
<td>II, 88, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4.11(42:3.10)</td>
<td>73, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:8(42:7)</td>
<td>87, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:11(42:10)</td>
<td>77, 5; 77, 39; 85, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:4(45:3)</td>
<td>78, 13; 92, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:4-5(45:3-4)</td>
<td>78, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:7(8)(45:6-7)</td>
<td>82, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:8(45:7)</td>
<td>I, 88, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44:11-12</td>
<td>(45:10-11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:5(46:4)</td>
<td>92, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:12(85:11)</td>
<td>98, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:13.21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49(50):3</td>
<td>82, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49(50):21</td>
<td>74, 9; 93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49(50):23</td>
<td>94, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:4.12(51:2.10)</td>
<td>78, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:5(51:3)</td>
<td>75, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:11(51:9)</td>
<td>74, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:18.19</td>
<td>(51:16.17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52(53):1</td>
<td>73, 25; 74, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:6(53:4)</td>
<td>85, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:2(57:1)</td>
<td>85, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:5(57:4)</td>
<td>85, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:7(57:6)</td>
<td>87, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:8(57:7)</td>
<td>74, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:11(58:10)</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:1-12(59:10)</td>
<td>87, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10(62:9)</td>
<td>80, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62:11(63:10)</td>
<td>II, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65(66):7</td>
<td>75, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65(66):13-14</td>
<td>94, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2-3(67:1-2)</td>
<td>76, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:22(69:21)</td>
<td>78, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68:24(69:23)</td>
<td>73, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):8</td>
<td>77, 26; 79, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):9</td>
<td>82, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):11</td>
<td>73, 6; 76, 17; 94, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71(72):18</td>
<td>1, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):1-3</td>
<td>73, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):7</td>
<td>77, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):12-13</td>
<td>73, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):18</td>
<td>93, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:23(73:22)</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72:23(73:22-23)</td>
<td>73, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

72:24(73:23-24) 73, 19
73(74):6 79, 10
77(78):8 77, 1; 79, 14
77(78):51-54 77, 23
78(79):6 86, 6
79:6(80:5) 78, 8
81(82):1 94, 6
81(82):6 83, 11; 84, 9; 85, 12
81(82):6.1 96, 14
83:5(84:4) 85, 23; 86, 9; 93, 24
85(86):9 94, 9
93(94):3.4 75, 11
93(94):14 78, 2
95(96):1 97, 1
95(96):5 76, 15; 85, 12; 94, 6
95(96):12 79, 11
100(101):1 74, 5
101(102):7 83, 7
101:27-28 (102:26-27) 89, 3
101:28(102:27) 76, 8; 77, 19; I, 88, 29; 89, 15
102(103):14 75, 18
103(104):26 1, 88, 11
103(104):29-30 75, 18
105(106):1 74, 3
105(106):47 77, 3
106(107):1 74, 3
107(108):1 74, 3
110(111):10 77, 7
111(112):7 95, 15
111(112):6-7 91, 12
113(114):4 93, 4
113B(115):1.2 1, 88, 13
113B(115):4 80, 13
114(116):3-4 83, 5
114(116):8-9 85, 23
115(116):11 91, 6
117(118):18 78, 8; 96, 12
117(118):19 85, 5
117(118):22 78, 3; 94, 8; 98, 14
118(119):18 89, 17
118(119):34 77, 45
118(119):53 76, 5
118(119):133 77, 13
120(121):1 75, 7
120(121):2 75, 7
125(126):6 83, 10
128(129):1 87, 15
129(130):3 78, 12
131(132):6 95, 5
131(132):11 II, 88, 6
137(138):6 74, 2
138(139):7 1, 88, 24
138(139):7-8 94, 2
138(139):8 81, 2
142(143):2 78, 12
144(145):3 9, 88, 8
146(147):7 75, 3
148:5 89, 3

Proverbs
1:28 85, 8
2:19 77, 24
4:17 77, 13
11:31 93, 23; 93, 24
12:23, LXX 96, 5; 98, 3
14:28 85, 14
16:32, LXX 92, 4
22:17 77, 3

Ecclesiastes
1:18 98, 12

Song of Songs
1:3 II, 90, 13
1:4 73, 16
2:15 80, 14
4:2 77, 44; 94, 11
6:5 94, 11
8:5, LXX 73, 16

Wisdom
1:7-8 74, 9
1:11 79, 13; 80, 21
3:1 87, 5
5:3 75, 11
5:3-5.8 85, 23
5:3-8.9 74, 1
5:6 75, 11; 80, 14; 96, 18
5:6-8.9 75, 11
5:8-9 85, 23
7:24 75, 17
12:18 78, 8

Sirach
2:1 79, 5; 83, 1
2:15 77, 10
6:25 78, 15; 89, 13
10:9 82, 14
10:15 73, 16
17:26 87, 10
24:29 85, 23

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
# Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

## Volume III/18

### Isaiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>81, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>77, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>87, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>80, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>76, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6.7</td>
<td>1, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:7</td>
<td>79, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>87, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>94, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:11</td>
<td>96, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:13, LXX</td>
<td>78, 3; 85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>94, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:4</td>
<td>93, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6</td>
<td>96, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6.7</td>
<td>77, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6-8</td>
<td>91, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:14</td>
<td>82, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:14, LXX</td>
<td>93, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:22, LXX</td>
<td>86, 9; 96, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>87, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>77, 32; 85, 15; 89, 12; 97, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>83, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:5</td>
<td>78, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:10</td>
<td>81, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:1</td>
<td>81, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16.17</td>
<td>76, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:16-18</td>
<td>76, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:21, LXX</td>
<td>96, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:1</td>
<td>80, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:7</td>
<td>83, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61:10</td>
<td>74, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:5.6</td>
<td>77, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:2</td>
<td>78, 2; 87, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1</td>
<td>II, 90, 8; 98, 3; 98, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:2</td>
<td>73, 24; 92, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:24</td>
<td>80, 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Micah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>87, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New Testament

**Matthew**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:35</td>
<td>98, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5.7</td>
<td>91, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>73, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>84, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>II, 88, 4; II, 90, 6; 94, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-15</td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>II, 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>98, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3,10-12</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>73, 25; 83, 11; 84, 9; 85, 21; 97, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>I, 88, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:44</td>
<td>78, 14; 93, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45</td>
<td>77, 22; 78, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:45.48</td>
<td>94, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:1.2.4</td>
<td>76, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:5</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>93, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>74, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td>87, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:28-29</td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>II, 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>93, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td>95, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>83, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:25.24</td>
<td>85, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>79, 13; 87, 2; 96, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td>96, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:12</td>
<td>86, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>78, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28</td>
<td>80, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:28.29</td>
<td>93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>81, 3; I, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:28</td>
<td>II, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:29</td>
<td>73, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:39-40</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:40</td>
<td>87, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Jeremiah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>I, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>98, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>94, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31-32</td>
<td>73, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50:23</td>
<td>97, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Daniel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:35</td>
<td>98, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5.7</td>
<td>91, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>73, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:35</td>
<td>98, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5.7</td>
<td>91, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>73, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:35</td>
<td>98, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5.7</td>
<td>91, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>73, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>96, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:20-21.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>93, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 3; 78, 2; 78, 3; 81, 2; 84, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>87, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>79, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>74, 4; II, 90, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>80, 1; I, 90, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:27-28</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 90, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>74, 5; 85, 22; 86, 4; 93, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:16</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:21-22</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:26-27</td>
<td></td>
<td>85, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:30</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>78, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:31</td>
<td></td>
<td>86, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>81, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:38-39</td>
<td></td>
<td>79, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18-20-21</td>
<td></td>
<td>94, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:13-15</td>
<td></td>
<td>93, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:27-28</td>
<td></td>
<td>87, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 90, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37-38</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 88, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>96, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:42</td>
<td></td>
<td>95, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26.27</td>
<td></td>
<td>75, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:32-33</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 90, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:32.34.41</td>
<td></td>
<td>80, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td></td>
<td>79, 13; I, 90, 10; 98, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-35.41</td>
<td></td>
<td>95, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34.41.46</td>
<td></td>
<td>85, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 90, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.34.41</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 90, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.37.40</td>
<td></td>
<td>86, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:35.38.40</td>
<td></td>
<td>75, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:40</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td></td>
<td>79, 13; 85, 21; I, 90, 11; 91, 12; 93, 25; 96, 6; 98, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:37</td>
<td></td>
<td>87, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>87, 2; 93, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td></td>
<td>93, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:64</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 88, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40.42</td>
<td></td>
<td>92, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:42-43</td>
<td></td>
<td>87, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>94, 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13:17-13:27

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>96, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>97, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21-22</td>
<td></td>
<td>95, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>95, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:33</td>
<td></td>
<td>95, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:71</td>
<td></td>
<td>92, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>85, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>92, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td></td>
<td>96, 1; 97, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>92, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 90, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>98, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:31-32</td>
<td></td>
<td>94, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>97, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:58</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 90, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17-20</td>
<td></td>
<td>91, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>94, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>84, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 90, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:47</td>
<td></td>
<td>98, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48.47</td>
<td></td>
<td>78, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td></td>
<td>79, 13; 96, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>79, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:32</td>
<td></td>
<td>II, 88, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>83, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>75, 8; 82, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:18</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:24-26</td>
<td></td>
<td>85, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:32</td>
<td></td>
<td>75, 16; 83, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:10-14</td>
<td></td>
<td>74, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:11</td>
<td></td>
<td>85, 2; 93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>73, 17; 84, 14; 93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>84, 14; I, 90, 6; 93, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>75, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>75, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>77, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>95, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:34</td>
<td></td>
<td>85, 20; 87, 4; 93, 8; 96, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:18-21</td>
<td></td>
<td>96, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verses</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>73, 19; 85, 21; II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td></td>
<td>85, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>75, 1; I, 90, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>I, 88, 13; 93, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>76, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>73, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>73, 2; 98, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98**
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

Acts of the Apostles
1:7 89, 5
1:11 85, 21
2:3 96, 7
2:14 92, 7
2:29-27 85, 21
2:37-38 73, 22; 93, 8
2:38 98, 14
4:11 92, 7
4:19-20 92, 7
4:24 92, 7
7:49 92, 7
8:21 77, 10
9:4 75, 14; 86, 3; 87, 15; II, 88, 3;
II, 90, 5; I, 90, 9; 91, 11
9:5-6 75, 14
10:13 73, 16
10:34 96, 13
10:35 96, 13
11:1-18 96, 13
11:3 96, 13
11:18 96, 13
13:46 I, 88, 7
14:13-14 96, 12
15:9 84, 9; II, 88, 7
17:18 79, 7

Romans
1:14 73, 19
1:24 77, 30; 80, 17
2:3-4, 5-6 93, 9
2:9 82, 7
2:29 75, 1
3:4 91, 6
3:21 77, 7
4:5 98, 8
4:15 85, 19
4:25 II, 90, 8
5:5 77, 7; 86, 1
Volume III/18

1 Corinthians
1:12-13 75, 8
1:20 82, 9; 87, 10
1:23-24 76, 16
2:6:13 73, 19
2:9 83, 10; 85, 12; 86, 1
3:1 73, 19; 77, 17
3:1-2 97, 7
3:3-6 97, 7
3:6-7 75, 8
3:10-15 80, 20
3:11 79, 12; 81, 5; 86, 3; 92, 1
3:17 78, 4; 82, 10; 94, 6
4:5 I, 88, 7
4:7 85, 4; 87, 13; 91, 6; 95, 15
4:13 II, 88, 12
4:14-15 77, 11
4:21 II, 88, 2
6:3 85, 22; 86, 4; I, 90, 9
6:7 80, 21
6:11 85, 4
6:17 77, 8
7:29-32 95, 14
7:40 75, 16
8:4 96, 11
8:5-6 94, 6
9:11 80, 4
9:26-27 75, 18
10:1-2 80, 8
10:1-4 77, 2
10:4 80, 22; 93, 4
10:5 77, 2
10:5-11 77, 3
10:11 89, 1
10:13 79, 6; 93, 27; 94, 9
10:18 82, 5
10:20 95, 5; 96, 11
12:8-10 83, 11
12:11 77, 32
12:17.19.20.21.16 87, 8
12:27 73, 16; 87, 8
13:9-10 93, 6
13:12 II, 90, 13; 93, 23
15:10 83, 16
15:46-49 73, 2
15:53 96, 17
15:53-55 84, 10
15:58 92, 1
## Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

| 2 Corinthians | 3:17 | I, 90, 8 |
| 1:20 | 77, 7 |
| 2:14-16 | 92, 2 |
| 2:15 | 80, 14 |
| 2:16 | 77, 30; 93, 28 |
| 3:16 | 77, 7 |
| 4:7 | 93, 23 |
| 4:17 | 93, 24 |
| 4:17-18 | 93, 23 |
| 5:6 | 83, 5 |
| 5:10 | 93, 13 |
| 5:17 | 80, 6 |
| 5:20 | 95, 14 |
| 6:7-8 | 93, 28 |
| 6:7-8-110 | 92, 2 |
| 6:10 | 78, 16 |
| 9:7 | 91, 5 |
| 10:3 | 97, 7 |
| 11:2-3 | II, 90, 9 |
| 11:28 | 98, 13 |
| 11:29 | 98, 13 |
| 12:7-9 | 85, 9; II, 90, 6; 98, 13 |
| 12:7-10 | 97, 6 |
| 12:10 | 92, 6 |
| 13:3 | 74, 6; 77, 5; 86, 3 |

| Galatians | 1:22-24 | 77, 44 |
| 1:22-24 | 77, 44 |
| 2:9 | 74, 6 |
| 2:29 | 73, 1 |
| 3:13 | 87, 7 |
| 3:16 | I, 88, 5 |
| 3:21-22 | 83, 10 |
| 3:27 | 85, 4; 95, 2 |
| 3:29 | 77, 44; I, 88, 5 |
| 4:6 | 78, 3 |
| 4:26 | 86, 2 |
| 4:26-27 | 78, 4 |
| 5:15 | 73, 16 |
| 5:21 | 80, 20; II, 88, 4 |

| Ephesians | 2:8-9 | 73, 19 |
| 2:8-9 | 73, 19 |
| 28-10 | 77, 10 |
| 2:10 | 73, 19; 91, 6 |
| 2:14 | 94, 8 |
| 2:14-16 | 78, 3 |
| 2:17 | 84, 10 |
| 2:19-20 | 86, 2 |
| 2:19-22 | 81, 5 |
| 2:20 | 86, 2 |

| Philippians | 1:23-24 | 93, 19 |
| 1:23-24 | 93, 19 |
| 2:6-7 | 74, 5 |
| 2:8 | 87, 7 |
| 2:12-13 | 85, 15 |
| 2:14-16 | 93, 3 |
| 3:1 | II, 90, 1 |
| 3:5 | 77, 23 |
| 3:13-14 | 83, 4 |
| 3:20 | 93, 5; 93, 6 |
| 4:15 | 80, 4 |

| Colossians | 1:13 | 77, 30 |
| 1:24 | 77, 30 |
| 3:1 | 77, 8 |
| 3:1-2 | 96, 10; 97, 7 |
| 3:3 | 77, 31 |
| 3:9-10 | 83, 1 |

| 1 Thessalonians | 5:19 | 76, 4 |
| 5:20 | 76, 4 |

| 1 Timothy | 1:9 | 77, 7 |
| 1:13 | 75, 14; 83, 16 |
| 1:13-16 | 83, 16 |
| 1:20 | 97, 6 |
| 2:14 | 83, 7 |
| 2:15 | 83, 7 |
| 5:12 | 75, 16 |
| 6:17 | 83, 3; 85, 3 |

| 2 Timothy | 2:8 | 75, 1; 75, 14 |
| 2:8-9 | 77, 43 |
| 2:17-19-22 | 92, 5 |
| 2:19 | II, 90, 2 |

---

**Volume III/18**
### Volume III/18

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:19-21</td>
<td>80, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>85, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>83, 16; 93, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:14</td>
<td>87, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>II, 90, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>77, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>93, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6-7</td>
<td>93, 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:5-6</td>
<td>77, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>78, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>91, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9</td>
<td>85, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Peter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>87, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>86, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>77, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>78, 14; 92, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>93, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>93, 24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Peter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>76, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:22</td>
<td>83, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>84, 14; II, 88, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>84, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>83, 8; 84, 9; 86, 9; 97, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>78, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>87, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>79, 2; 98, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>77, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:16</td>
<td>II, 90, 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Revelation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>93, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>78, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:15</td>
<td>80, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:10</td>
<td>96, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:11</td>
<td>80, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2)
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.
Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semi-colon.
Biblical texts/words are in italics.

Aaron, 76:22
punishment of, 98:10,12
Abba, 78:3
Abel, 77:9
Abraham, 73:1,5; 75:9; 77:44; 78:2; 79:3,12; 81:1; 82:5; 85:1; 88(1):5; 92:6
children of the promise, 84:4
humble amid his riches, 85:3
promised inheritance, 88(1):29
rich man and Lazarus, 85:3,18
acquaintances, 87:8
actions: seeking God by, 76:4
activities: necessity, 83:8
Adam, 73:18,25; 75:1; 83:7; 85:1; 92:6; 93:19; 97:1,6
death and, 84:7; 89:9
initial letters, 95:18
adultery, 75:16; 83:4
affliction: prayer in time of, 80:10
Africa, 85:14
Ahab, King, 77:28
Allâhu, 83:8
almsgiving, 76:4; 96:18
Go and sell all..., 80:1
altars, 83:7
Amalek, 82:7
Ammon, 82:7
ancestors, 77:11
angel(-s), 76:4; 77:5; 78:1; 79:3; 85:12,24; 88(1):3; 88(2):9; 89:3; 90(1):12; 90(2):7,8; 95:7; 96:12
See also cherubim; devil
anger, 73:4; 75:4,10,11; 76:10,11; 77:1,16, 17,18,22,30,37; 78:8,9,11,14, 79:5; 80:19; 82:12; 84:5,7; 87:7,15; 89:9,11,14; 92:4; 94:15; 96:6; 98:3,4
anguish, 83:5,6
animals, 81:1
Anna, 78:2
Apollinarians, 85:4
apostasy, 90(1):8,9
apostles, 79:9; 86:4; 81:5; 86:2,3; 87:8; 88(1):7; 90(1):9; 90(2):8; 92:7; 93:18; 94:7; 95:14; 96:8
as mountains, 75:7,8
pillars, 74:6
twelve, 86:4
words to the ends of the earth, 88(1):3
Arians, 80:13
ark of the covenant, 77:35,36
arrogance, 73:6; 74:2; 80:1; 93:15
arrow, 76:20; 77:9; 90(1):8
Asaph, 73:1,11,14,21,22,23; 76:1,16; 77:2,3,4; 78:3; 79:1,4,7,9; 80:2; 81:1; 82:1
Assyria(-ns), 79:1,10; 82:8
asterisks, 89:17
attachment, See temporal goods
authority, 85:21
avarice, 96:15
awe, 75:17; 77:12
babbling, 76:6,7,9,11,13,14,16
Babylon, 78:3; 86:6,7,8; 92:5
baldness, 83:2; 84:2
baptism, 75:15; 77:2,13; 80:8; 85:4; 86:4; 90(2):6; 96:13
creation: fifth day, 80:2
putting on Christ, 95:2
Barabbas, 81:5; 96:12
basilisk, 90(2):9

Volume III/18
baskets, 80:9
battle, 77:10
beasts, 73:12; 22
beatitude, 86:9
beauty, 84:9; 91:13; 92:2; 96:19

Benjamin, tribe of, 77:41; 78:2; 79:3
biblical, See New Testament; Old Testament.
birds, 90(1):5
biting, 73:16
bitterness, 85:7
black people, 73:16
blasphemy, 80:1; 88(2):14; 91:10; 93:7; 96:9
blessedness, 83:8
blessing, 88(2):14
blindfold, 89:17
blindness, 73:13; 80:7; 81:2,5; 88(2):8
boar, 79:11
body and soul
See also flesh; resurrection of the body;
soul
body weighs heavily on soul, 78:15; 83:9
pain, 87:3
bow and arrow, 77:9,34
Bread: living on bread alone, 90(2):6
breakers (disasters), 87:7,15; 92:7,8
bronze serpent, 73:5
building, 95:2
burial, 78:6
Caesar, 94:2
Cain, 77:22
calf’s head (idol), 73:16
Calvary, 83:2; 84:2; 87:1
Canaan, 73:2
cantor, 87:1
captivity
law of sin in my members, 84:4
spiritual liberation, 84:5
carnally-minded, 73:19; 97:7
Carthage, 98:14
catechumen, 90(2):6
Catholic Church, 83:15; 95:10; 98:14
cedar on Lebanon, 91:13,14
cedars, 79:9
change, 76:12; 79:1
charity, 77:10; 81:7; 83:8; 87:1; 91:1; 93:29;
95:5,15; 96:20
See also love
fullness of the law, 98:3
good works = one work, 89:17
root of all goodness, 90(1):8

tolerating sinners, 98:12,13
chastisement, 79:5; 91:8; 93:16,24; 98:13
fathers and children, 93:17
mercy and, 88(2):2
chastity, 75:16
cheer, 91:5; 94:1
cherubim, 79:2; 98:3,4
chirubim, 83:7
children, 73:2

carressing; punishing, 98:14
chastising when there is hope, 93:17
children of God, 81:1,6; 84:9; 88(1):7
choir, 87:1
choosing: now is the time for, 74:14
chosen people, 77:18
Christian life
See also pilgrimage; spiritual life;
temporal goods
beauty and strength, 92:2
behave like other people? 93:20
Christ as foundation of, 80:21
Christ enshrined in us, 88(1):5
Christ’s second coming and, 97:9
desire to live better, 90(1):4
fasting in, 98:5
God as Father, Church as Mother,
88(2):14
hardships in, 91:8
hen gathers her chicks, 88(2):14
imitating Christ, 90(1):1
labor as lot of, 93:23-24
leading us in Christ, 85:15
leaping over temporalities, 76:1
Make known your Christ, 89:12
my people did not listen, 80:16
proclaiming Christ, 96:10
progress in, 98:13
squared stone (model), 86:3
water of contradiction, 80:11
Christian warfare, See spiritual warfare
Christians
See also persecution
authentic Jews, 75:1
David’s children, 88(2):2
early community, 93:8
enduring reproaches, 88(2):12
fools, 75:11
Church, 73:5,16; 77:3,17,32,41; 78:3,4,
7,13,17; 80:11; 81:1; 82:1; 85:14,22;
86:4,6; 88(2):12; 92:7; 93:8,18,22;
94:14; 95:14
black people in, 73:16
body of Christ, 73:16; 83:5
Christ as head and body, 79:1; 90(2):1
time for choosing, 74:14
Christ speaking in body of, 87:13; 91:10
three kinds: praising and groaning, 94:4
disgraceful living in, 85:19
wrongdoing; good works, 91:3
established forever, 77:42
congregation, 73:1,5; 76:1; 77:3,4; 80:2; 82:1
head and members, 87:3; 88(1):5; 90(1):9
conscience, 73:23; 76:18; 80:10; 83:3; 91:2; 96:16
living stones, 86:3
members are Christ’s throne, 88(2):5
God’s city, 98:4
Mother, 88(2):14
Christ as olive press, 80:1,2
as olive press, 80:1,2
one head and one body, 74:4
passion; blood of martyrs, 85:1
real Jewry, 75:1
true Judah, 75:1
truly poor, 87:15
unity, 75:8; 83:7
two kinds: praising and groaning, 94:4
two kinds: praising and groaning, 94:4
two kinds: praising and groaning, 94:4
wine presses in, 83:1
youth/old age of, 91:11
Zion, 75:3
churches: called islands, 96:4
civilians, 90(1):10
City: beloved Zion, 86:1
ten plagues and, 77:33; 88(1):28; 88(2):4; 89:2
circumcision, 74:12; 75:1
See also Jerusalem; Zion; etc.
conscience, 73:23; 76:18; 80:10; 83:3; 91:2; 96:16
comfort, 76:6
commandments, 74:12; 75:16; 77:8,12; 83:10; 84:9; 85:21; 91:5,7
good life, 93:30
Old and New Covenants, 73:2
ten plagues and, 77:27
creation, 73:19,20; 79:14; 85:1,12; 88(1):12; 89:3; 90(1):1
courts: one day within…, 83:14
Covenant, 77:10,33; 88(1):28; 88(2):4; 89:2
see also New Covenant
image of God, 73:2
material promises, 73:1
of life, 84:15; 88(1):16; 89:4; 94:9
Lord, show us your face, 79:14
conversion, 73:25; 75:15; 84:8
God’s anger and, 79:5
Let your face shine, 79:4
overturned; Jewish losses, 88(2):7
promises, 73:23
sacred signs, 73:2
first-fourth days of, 93:3
six days, 89:5
sixth day, 92:1
crime, 80:1; 83:8
cross, 73:6; 75:10; 87:1; 95:2,10
glory; inscription, 80:11
crucifixion, 87:7
see also Jesus Christ: passion; also under Jews
creation
cup: in the Lord’s hand, 74:11,12
cup: in the Lord’s hand, 74:11,12
Cyprian, Saint, 80:4,23; 85:24
Daniel, 91:4
darkness, 73:16,23; 76:4; 77:31; 80:14; 85:4; 87:6,12; 93:6; 96:5,18
darkness, 73:16,23; 76:4; 77:31; 80:14; 85:4; 87:6,12; 93:6; 96:5,18
David, King, 75:1,15; 77:9,41,44; 78:1; 85:1; 88(2):7,9; 96:2
David, King, 75:1,15; 77:9,41,44; 78:1; 85:1; 88(2):7,9; 96:2
Christ and, 88(2):6
seed shall abide forever, 88(2):5
day, 76:4; 87:2,9; 89:15; 90(1):7
day, 76:4; 87:2,9; 89:15; 90(1):7
See also creation
day, 76:4; 87:2,9; 89:15; 90(1):7
fourth day of week, 93:3
fourth day of week, 93:3
fourth day of week, 93:3
See also creation
fourth day of week, 93:3
See also creation
See also creation
See also creation
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

- spiritual persons, 73:19
- daystar, 92:6
- death, 77:3; 78:15; 81:4; 82:9; 87:5; 89:6,7
- work your wonders for, 87:10,11
- earthly desires, 79:14
- faith and, 96:17
- fear of, 74:6; 90(2):4
- none will never see death, 88(2):10,11
- physical excess and, 84:10
- serpent and, 73:5,25
- Who will deliver me..., 84:4
- debtor, 85:18
- deceit, 90(2):7
- deity, See God; gods
- delight, 74:1; 75:5; 76:6,7; 84:15; 85:6,7; 98:5
- delinquencies, 74:6
- demons, 73:8,15,16; 74:12; 80:18; 90(2):8; 94:6; 95:5,6; 96:11,12,14
- desert, 77:14; 94:13
- desire, 75:5; 83:3,5,6,8,9,14; 84:9; 89:15
carnal, 83:1,7; 97:7
- harm in evil, 93:1
- running, 83:4
- source of sin, 79:13
despair, 83:16
detachment, 95:14
devil, 73:16,22; 75:4; 76:7; 77:28; 81:6; 82:8; 84:10,11; 85:9; 88(1):11,12; 90(1):1,2,3,4,12; 90(2):3,6,9; 93:3,19,20,28; 96:6,11
- See also demons; Satan
- battle against, 97:7
- consumed, 73:16
- effects ascribed to, 77:30
- evil angels, 77:28; 82:8
- fault; desires; sin, 80:18
- hammer of the whole earth, 97:6
- pagans and, 73:16
- dignity, 74:14
- disasters, 87:7
- disciples, 90(2):6
- coveting distinction, 90(2):7
- death of Christ and, 73:5
- fear of death, 74:6
- miracles, 91:3
- rivers flowing from, 92:7
- discussion, 83:8
- disgrace, 78:16
- disgust, 76:5,7
displeasure, 87:7
distress, 93:24
doctor, 85:9,18; 87:10
- Donatists, 85:16; 88(2):14; 95:2,10
- Donatus, 75:7; 85:14
door, 95:3
dragon, 73:15,16; 88(1):11
drags, 80:12
drum, 80:4
drunkenness, 98:5
earth, 89:3; 92:1,2,8
called a “sea” , 76:20
- flesh as, 84:13
- footstool, 98:9
- foundations of, 81:5
- human pride, 82:14
- melted by sin, 74:6
- sweetness from God, 84:15
- will not be shaken, 92:5,8
- earthly goods, See temporal goods
- Edomites, 82:7
- Egypt, 73:5; 77:11,23
- plagues, 77:25-30
- symbol of this world, 77:12
- election, 77:24
- Eli (priest) , 77:35
- Elijah, 90(1):1; 90(2):6
- Elisha, 83:2; 84:2
- embarrassment, 76:6
- Emmaus, 96:2
- emphasis, 74:3
- end: cancel it at the end, 74:1
- end of the world, 73:5; 78:17; 82:12; 87:15
even to the end, 73:4,12
- Will you be angry to the very end, 78:8
- enmity(-ies), 76:7; 78:9,14; 79:5; 80:19; 82:7,8,9,10,12,13,14; 88(1):23,24; 88(2):13,14; 91:10,11,12; 93:19,28,29; 96:6,17
- consorting with, 96:15
- eliminated by prayer, 98:5
- loved by God’s holy ones, 78:14
- punishment of, 73:9,10
- sacraments fed to, 80:22
- enigmas, 77:1,3,4,5,7,26
- entertainments, 80:23
- Ephraim, 77:9,41; 79:3
- Epicurus, 73:25
- Esau, 77:9; 78:10; 88(2):6
- established, 77:7
- eternal life, 85:21; 93:17
- labor for, 93:23-24
- length of days, 90(2):12

Volume III/18

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
eternal punishment, 77:22; 80:20
eternity, 76:8,13; 89:3; 91:8,10; 92:6
all days present at once, 89:15
eternal day, 83:14
generation to generation, 88(1):5
heavenly days, 88(1):29
thousand years like yesterday, 89:5
Etham, 73:18
Ethan the Israelite, 88(1):1,5
Ethiopians, 73:16; 86:6
evildoers, See sinner(-s)
ewes, 77:44
exaltation, 88(1):17,18,20
excess: as cause of death, 84:10
Exodus, 77:26
eyes, 87:8
face, 82:11; 83:13
faith, 73:17,21; 74:1; 75:1.2; 77:1.2.8,
9.10.13,21,45; 80:11; 88(1):24; 89:12;
90(1):10.11; 90(2):9.11; 91:1; 93:29;
96:1.7
all day long I spread out my hands..., 87:10
believe in one we do not see, 97:3
Christ sleeping, 93:25
cleansing hearts by, 88(2):7,14
creatures born anew in, 84:7
death and, 96:17
eyes of the heart, 90(2):13
kinship with Abraham, 84:4
one heart, 74:4
prayer and, 77:15
sole work comprising all other, 89:17
unclean heart and, 73:25
faithfulness (or fidelity), 87:11.12.13;
88(1):2.3.9.10.15.25; 97:3
See also promise(-s)
fasting, 86:9.98:5
Fate: blame for our sins, 91:3
father: call no one your father, 77:11
chastising children, 93:17
fear, 76:2; 77:7,10; 82:3; 87:15; 90(2):8; 93:1;
96:18
 gladness and, 85:16
noontime demon, 90(1):7
of human criticism, 90(1):4
source of sin, 79:13
feet, 73:1; 90(2):8
washing, 92:3
finger of God, 90(2):8
fire, 77:17,27; 79:13; 80:21; 82:12; 96:6,7
lightning, 96:8
sword and, 96:7
firmament, 93:6
flesh, 78:15; 83:7; 84:7
as “clouds,” 88(1):7
earth as, 84:13
God’s tent, 90(2):5
horn and, 97:7
law of sin, 75:4,5
moon and, 88(2):5
Unless you eat my flesh..., 98:9
flute-player, 96:10
foolish hearts, 75:9
fools: Christians as, 75:11
footsteps will leave no trace, 76:21
footstool: worship, 98:9,10,14
forest, 82:12,13
forgiveness of sin, 74:5; 83:16; 84:5; 89:14
propitious God, 98:11
fornication, 83:4
fortitude, 83:11
forty (number), 94:14
foundation, 81:5
Zion, on mountains, 86:2
fountains, 73:17
foxes, 80:14; 90(2):7
freedom, 96:11
frost, 77:27
fury, 87:7
future, 78:1; 84:3,6; 93:12
future life, 85:24
See also eternity; heaven; hell; Judgment Day
Gebel, 82:7
Gentiles, 73:5,6,13,14,16,25; 74:12; 75:1;
76:17,21; 77:17,22,32,33; 78:2,3,4,13;
79:3,8,10,11; 80:11; 81:5; 84:1,11;
86:2,6; 88(1):3.8,10,26; 88(2):7,8;
94:8,13; 96:2.9,13
gentleness, 89:10; 93:16; 96:5
giants, 87:10
gifts, 73:3; 75:17
spiritual/carnal benefits, 80:4
what have you not received, 81:2; 85:4;
87:13
girdle/girding, 92:3,4
gladness, 76:13; 85:16; 86:9; 96:19
glory, 82:2; 83:16; 85:14; 93:24; 95:3,6,8,9;
96:12,17
God always at work, always at rest, 92:1
anger, See anger.
asleep, 77:39
beyond all utterance, 85:12
blame for our sins, 91:3
can say only what he is not, 85:12
care for human affairs, 74:8
desire for; longing for, 83:3; 85:8
eternal, 89:3
everywhere secret, out in the open, 74:9
fear, 84:11
flesh as tent for, 90(2):5
forgetfulness, 87:5
Gentiles’ ignorance of, 75:1
goodness of, 74:3; 78:14; 83:17
great and terrible, 88(1):8
greater than the mountains, 75:7
hand of, as power, 74:11
I AM WHO AM, 80:15; 89:3
invoked, he comes, 74:2
jealous wrath, 78:8
joy in him alone, 76:13,14
judge, 74:9
justice, 77:28
king, 73:14
long-suffering, 91:10
love for us: caressing or threatening, 91:1
mercy, See mercy.
nor no favoritism in, 96:13
no injustice in, 91:14
omnipresence, 75:17; 81:2; 86:3; 94:2
omniscience, 98:3
our common possession, 84:10
patience, 80:19; 93:9,19
physician, 85:9
power to punish, 89:11
praise for, in this world, 78:17
presence of, 74:9
promises made by, 88(2):1-2,4,6,8; 90(1):7; 90(2):10; 94:15; 96:1; 97:3
propitious, 98:11
providence, See providence.
punishment, See punishment
put to the test..., 77:15
refuge, 83:3; 89:3; 90(1):10; 93:27
right hand of, 89:12
seeking him, or seeking through him, 76:2,3,4
silent re sinful acts, 93:9
swears an oath, 88(1):4
sworn in my holiness..., 88(2):6
terrible among the kings of earth, 75:18
thoughts of, 93:14
throne of
his people, 88(2):5
all who preach gospel, 96:10
his saints, 92:6
unchangeable substance, 89:3
vengeance, 93:7
why have you cast us off?, 73:4
works wonders of body and soul, 76:16
worship, See worship
yearning for, 76:4
godless, 96:5,17
gods, 80:13,14; 81:1,2,6; 84:9; 85:12; 90(1):3;
94:6; 95:5,6; 96:12,14; 98:2
gold, 76:9; 93:24
good and evil, 77:10
See also devil; sin; sinner; temporal
goods
conquer evil with good, 78:14
God’s awareness of our acts, 93:9,11
good use made of bad creatures, 77:28
hearts pure or wicked, 73:23
judgment and justice, 98:7
love and hate, 96:15,16
malice as scourge of good people, 93:25
people, round earth (metaphor), 92:5
repay no one evil for evil, 78:14
shame re being good, 93:21
soul filled with evils, 87:3
good fortune, 74:8
See also temporal goods
praise God’s mercy, 91:4
good works, 77:8,45; 83:7; 87:9,10; 92:2; 97:5
clothing the naked, 92:1
created for, 91:6
God at work in us, 89:16; 91:3
one work: charity, 92:1
rest, 92:1
goodness
living by the commandments, 93:30
opportunity to act wrongly, 93:1
righteous people, 93:28
shame and, 93:21
gospels: four, 96:13
grace, 73:2,20; 75:14; 77:2,11; 81:1,2;
83:9,16; 84:4; 85:4; 87:3,10,12;
88(1):16,17; 93:15
ascent in the heart, 83:10
conversion and, 77:24; 84:8
powers conferred through, 83:11
grapes, 83:1,6
grass, 89:6; 91:8,9,14
greatness, 95:4,6
greed, 79:13; 90(2):12
guilt, 84:7; 90(2):8; 98:12
habit, 75:4

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
Hagar's people, 82:7
hail, 77:26
hair, 96:17
hands, 77:45
  hands outstretched, 76:4
happiness, 73:2; 89:6; 93:25; 94:3; 96:20
hate, 78:14; 82:3; 84:15; 92:12
healing, 75:15; 83:10; 84:1; 85:9; 93:2; 97:4
  trust: healed for God, 97:1
heart, 77:4,10,15,21,22; 79:10; 80:8,21; 83:7; 84:9,10; 85:7,9; 87:10; 90(2):13; 91:6; 93:2,6,16,18,29,30; 96:10
  ascents in the heart, 83:10
awaken Christ in, 93:25
bedroom, 74:9
blessed are the pure, 84:9
  circumcision of, 74:12; 75:1
  desires of, 80:17
do not harden your hearts, 94:12-13
foolish, dismayed, 75:9
gladdness seen by eye of, 96:19
heart-bruised persons, 74:2
innocence of, 77:45
many confess; one belief, 74:2
meditating in, 76:9
pure or wicked, 73:23,25
raised by love and will, 85:6,7
rebukes; hardness, 75:10
rectitude of, 93:19
  Sabbath in, 91:2,7
singularity, 83:4
  speak sinfully against God, 74:9
straight with God, 77:40
  straightforward, 96:18,19
heaven, 74:12,14; 77:17,33,40; 78:17; 80:20; 83:7; 85:9,17; 86:9; 90(2):8,13; 93:6; 98:3
  foundations of, 81:5
  praises/love for ever, 83:8
price of, 93:24
  spiritual city, 86:5
heavens, 95:3,5,12,29; 96:10
  apostles as, 88(1):3
  confess God’s wonderful works, 88(1):6
hell, 85:17,18; 88(2):10; 93:20,21
Heman, 87:1
hen gathers her chicks, 88(2):14; 90(1):5
heretics, 80:14; 83:7; 90(2):9; 98:14
Hermon (mountain), 88(1):13,17
Herod, King, 75:1
Holiness: right to say I am holy, 85:4
Holy Spirit, 73:5; 75:18; 77:8,11,39; 84:2; 92:7; 95:2,6; 96:1,13,20; 97:8
  finger of God, 90(2):8
  fullness of love, 90(2):8
  sword of the Lord, 92:3
tongues of fire, 96:7
home, 83:7
honey, 80:22
honor, 95:7
hope, 73:5; 74:1; 77:12,31,45; 83:6,7,9; 84:9; 85:4; 88(1):1; 89:15; 90(1):7,12; 90(2):2,3,4; 91:1,2; 92:1; 93:27
horn, 74:14; 97:7
house: blessed those who dwell in, 83:8
  constructed for the Lord, 95:1,2,3,5,9,10,13
human beings, 89:3; 96:12
  created as servants, 89:16
  not created in vain, 88(2):9
human condition, 85:7; 96:6
  See also life
  distress in this world, 96:20
  land of the dead, 85:24
humility, 74:1; 75:13; 77:3,12,28; 79:13; 80:7; 84:14; 85:1,2,3; 87:7; 90(2):7; 92:6; 95:9,10
  children of God, 81:6
  confession and, 93:22
  God will stoop down..., 93:16
  Lord, be merciful..., 74:10
  poor in spirit, 73:24
  pride in good deeds, 93:15
  refusal: mounted horses, 75:10
  showing itself, 93:16
  strength, 92:3
hunger, 85:24
hurry, 83:3
hypocrisy: whitedashed wall, 95:3
Idithun (leaper), 76:1,4,5
idol (-atry), 73:16; 76:15; 77:34,40; 80:13,14,15; 88(1):3; 88(2):14; 96:11,14; 98:2
image of God, 73:2; 75:3; 92:1
immortality, 78:15; 83:8; 84:7,10; 96:17
Incarnation, 84:9; 98:3,9
  Christ emptied himself, 90(2):2
  He emptied himself..., 74:5
  humility in becoming human, 93:15
  nature of a slave, 82:2
  one man, one God, 90(2):5
  sixth age of this world, 92:6
  Son of God; Son of Man, 85:1
Word made flesh, 90(1):5
inheritance (God’s people), 78:2,3,10,11; 79:10; 81:7; 85:14; 96:15
iniquity, 84:5; 89:8; 92:5; 93:1,20; 98:12
injustice: damage to author of, 96:6
innocence, 77:45; 93:1
possessions of good things and, 83:17
insult, 88(2):12; 92:4
intelligence, 77:45
invoking God, 85:8
irreligion: far away from God, 94:2
Isaiah, 96:19
Ishmaelites, 82:7
islands: churches as, 96:4
Israel, 75:2,3; 76:17; 77:1,2,7,33,35,44; 78:3; 79:9; 80:18; 81:1; 82:5,9; 83:12; 84:3; 86:5; 88(1):3,7; 88(2):7; 97:3
Israelites, 73:1,16; 76:22; 77:3,10,12; 81:1; 83:3; 87:3
belief in Christ, 78:2
two: no guile, 75:2
Jabin, 82:9
Jacob, 77:7,9,41,44; 78:10; 80:3; 82:6; 83:12; 84:4; 86:5; 97:3
See also Esau; Israel
thigh, 76:22; 79:3
twelve sons of, 75:1
Jericho, 86:6; 88(2):5
Jerusalem, 73:7,8; 85:14; 78:4,6,7; 83:8; 84:4; 86:6,7; 90(1):5; 93:6
destruction of, 78:2
heavenly, 86:2
twelve gates, 86:4
Jesus Christ, 73:2,6,16; 77:8,9,13,26,41,43; 83:13; 84:9; 86:4,8
See also Incarnation; Second Coming of Christ; Son of God; Word of God
accused of sin, 73:21
ascension: hands of angels, 90(2):8
baptized, 90(2):6
beauty and strength = his raiment, 92:2
Before Abraham came…, 92:6
bridegroom, 84:2; 90(2):5,13
burial: three days and nights, 87:9
Church and, See Church.
confess to your great name, 98:6
cornerstone, 86:2,3,5; 94:8; 96:2; 98:14
covenant and, 88(1):28
crucified: Stir up your power, 79:3
Crucifixion; belief, 90(2):13
David and, 75:1; 85:1; 88(2):6
death of, See below: passion and death.
destroy this temple…, 85:22
divinity hidden, 87:8
divinity; humility, 85:1
door; shepherd, 86:3,4; 90(1):1; 95:3
def of the law, 76:1; 77:7; 79:1; 84:2
enemies enumerated, 82:7
feet of the Lord, 90(2):8
figures of
bald man, 83:2; 84:2
Rahab, 86:6
Samson, 80:11,14
food to be consumed, 73:16
footprints not recognized by Jews, 76:22
gentle and humble of heart, 90(1):1; 93:15
Giant of giants, 87:9
gifts to the poor and, 75:9
God dispelling his mercy from, 88(2):3
God of gods, 83:11
God’s arm, and right hand, 97:1,2
God’s inheritance, 78:3; 79:10; 81:7; 85:14; 88(2):3
God’s Way found in, 76:15
good works “all day long,” 87:9
handmaiden’s son, 85:22
harsh words spoken against, 90(1):4
hen gathers her chicks, 88(2):14; 90(1):5
humanity, 88(1):22; 90(2):1
two flesh, 93:19
humility, 81:6; 88(1):11
I am the light of the world, 84:8
I am the living bread, 84:9; 90(2):6
I and the Father are one, 76:1
I have come to set fire…, 96:7
I was hungry…, 86:5
I will show myself…, 89:15
Israelite belief in, 78:2
Joseph of Egypt and, 76:17; 80:7
judge, 81:7; 85:21; 93:8
judgment, 80:7
justice of God, 97:2
king of kings, 88(1):27
King of the Jews, 80:11
kingship, 96:4
leader in song and suffering, 87:1
Learn of me…, 81:3
light of the world, 88(1):13
mediator, 90(2):1
miracles, 90(2):6
Young man, arise…, 97:1
My soul is sorrowful…, 87:3
Old Testament goods and, 77:7
our king and our God, 75:1
our root, ascended, 91:13
See also
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

Volume III/18

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

passion and death, 84:13; 87:8,9; 89:7; 90(2):1; 93:8; 96:6
Come down from the cross, 92:4
Crucify him, 85:19
Father, forgive them..., 85:20; 87:4; 93:8; 96:2
Father, if it is possible..., 93:19
his death as pledge, 96:17
It is accomplished, 86:5
My God, my God, why..., 85:1
prophecy, 78:1; 87:1,7
time on the cross, 87:9
weakness prefigured, 93:19
physician, 74:7; 77:23; 84:1
pledge of the bridegroom, 90(2):13
power and wisdom of God, 76:16; 83:11
power to lay down my life..., 88(2):10,11
praise to the Father, 94:4
prays for/in us, 85:1
prefigured in rock, 77:2
promises made by God, 88(2):1-2,6; 92:8; 96:16
reign, after the resurrection, 98:2
resurrection, 85:22; 89:10; 90(2):4,8; 91:8; 96:3
savior of his body, the Church, 88(1):5
seated upon the cherubim, 98:3
seeking, 98:9,10
servant of the circumcised, 78:3; 88(1):3
sign of contradiction, 88(1):10
silent when charged by Pilate, 82:2
snake as symbol of death of, 73:5
soul filled with evils, 87:3
speaks as head and in his body, 74:4; 87:13
stone or rock, 77:13
sufferings lacking in, 86:5; 87:15
sun, 93:4
teaching with authority, 93:7
tempted, 90(1):1,2,3,12; 90(2):1,6
testimonies, 92:8
This is the heir, 79:10; 81:4
transformed to eternal life, 88(2):13,14
Truth has sprung up..., 84:13,14
underworld, 85:17
Unless you eat my flesh..., 98:9
washing disciples’ feet, 92:3
Way, Truth, Life, 79:9; 84:2; 85:15; 90(1):4
when his land was restored, 96:2,3
Who do people say I am, 88(1):7,8
Who will be like you..., 82:2
Whoever sees me..., 81:2; 84:9; 85:21
why are you persecuting me, 75:14; 86:3,5; 87:15; 88(2):3; 90(1):1; 90(2):5; 91:11
will come as judge, 73:11
worthy of praise, 95:4,6
Jews, 73:8,13,15; 74:12; 75:1; 77:3; 79:9; 81:6; 88(1):7; 94:7; 97:3
See also covenant; law; Old Testament
begging for land, 84:11
blessings taken away from, 73:2,3
captivities, 84:4
Christ and the law, 85:19
Christians as, 75:1
contempt for Christ, 82:2
corrections, 78:2; 93:8; 94:7; 96:2
crucifixion of Christ and, 75:1; 77:44
forty years in desert, 94:13
kingdom taken away, 75:1
porticoes of Solomon, 83:10
right to be called “Jews”, 75:1
righteousness, 73:18
Saubia, 91:2
twelve tribes, 75:1
Job, 77:28; 90(1):2; 93:19; 96:12; 97:6
John the Baptist, 78:2; 80:14
Jordan river, 79:9
Joseph, Saint, 78:2
Joseph of Egypt, 74:3; 75:1; 76:17; 77:41; 79:2; 80:7,9
joy, 75:5; 76:6,13; 80:3,22; 83:6,7,12; 84:8; 86:9; 88(1):16,17; 93:24; 94:2,3; 95:13,14; 96:1
sensuous, 96:19
shout for, 94:5,6; 97:4
Judah (tribe of Israel), 75:1,3,10; 77:41,42
Judas, 73:8; 79:9; 93:28
Judea, 77:44; 78:2; 96:2,13
judgment, 96:5
God’s anger and jealous wrath, 78:8
God’s impartiality, 96:13
good and evil, 98:7
righteous, 74:5,7
justice, 74:5; 77:27; 78:14; 81:3; 83:11,16; 93:18,29; 95:7; 96:5; 97:2
confession of sins, 84:16
good and evil, 98:7
pathway for God, 84:16
justice and peace have kissed, 84:12
justification, 84:15
kingdom of God, 80:20

Volume III/18
kings, 73:6; 75:18
tribe of Judah, 75:1
Kishon, 82:9
kiss; justice and peace, 84:12
knock, 74:11; 93:1
knowledge: fullness of, 79:2; 98:3
Korah, 83:2,5; 84:2; 87:1

Laban, 82:6
lamp, 76:4
land of oblivion, 87:12
language, 76:8
last judgment, See Judgment Day
law (O.T.) , 74:12; 77:2,3,7,10; 80:16; 81:3;
89:17; 90(2):8
Christ and the Jews, 85:19
firmament for us, 93:6
of members opposes law of mind, 83:9,10;
84:4
porticoes of Solomon, 83:10
stumbling over; guilt, 90(2):8
Lazarus: rich man (parable), 83:18
leap(-er; -ing), 76:1,9,11,12,13,16; 83:7
leprosy, 73:13
Levi, 75:1; 77:41
lie, 91:6; 93:5
life, 96:17
brevity and wretchedness, 89:9
conversion and, 84:8
estimated as nothing, 89:6
knowing one is alive, 73:25
span: 70/80 years, 89:9,10
temptation, 76:4
weariness, 76:10
light, 75:7; 88(1):13,19; 91:6; 96:18,19; 98:4
lightning, 76:20; 77:27; 96:8
lion, 90(2):9; 93:4
listening, 98:15
bend your ear..., 77:3
hearken to my law..., 77:5
lords, 82:14
Lot, 82:7,8
Lot's wife, 75:16; 83:3,4
love, 77:6; 79:13,14; 83:3; 86:1; 88(2):14;
90(2):5,8; 93:28; 96:15,16
ascents in the heart, 83:10
desire to love God, 85:8
faith working through, 89:17
fullness of knowledge, 79:2
hearts seeking God, 77:21
justice and peace, 84:12
new song, 95:2
one's life for one's friend, 90(2):13
raise up your hearts, 85:6
lust, 95:2
lyre, 80:5; 91:5
Maccabees, 78:3,8; 90(2):11
magnificence, 95:7
malevolence, 96:11,12,17
malice, 93:28
Manasseh, 79:3
Manichees, 80:13,14
manna, 77:17,21
marriage, 75:16
martyr(-s; -dom), 74:12; 78:2,3,4,6,8,14; 79:7;
80:21; 85:1,24; 87:1; 88(1):10,27;
88(2):11; 89:14; 90(1):8,10; 90(2):9;
93:19,29; 96:18; 98:2
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 75:1; 78:2; 84:11,13;
86:7; 88(1):5; 88(2):9
Matthias, 90(1):9
Maximian, 75:7
meditation, 76:14; 93:6
molech, 87:1
memory, 75:15
mercy, 74:5; 76:11,15; 77:22; 78:11; 83:16;
84:1,7,8,9,12; 88(1):1,3,9; 89:17; 91:11;
93:9; 94:4; 95:15; 97:3; 98:6,15
body of Christ cries for all day long, 85:5
chastisement and, 88(2):2
faithfulness and, 87:11,12,13; 88(1):9,15
proclaim in the morning, 91:4
merit, 85:2
Messiah, 84:11
metaphor, 90(1):6; 93:4
middle: truth in, 75:17,18
Midian, 82:9
mind: intention, 77:34
miracles, 76:20; 90(1):1
in body and in soul, 76:16
preaching the risen Christ, 79:7
temptation, 90(2):7
misery, 87:6
misfortune, 77:29; 83:5; 91:7; 93:2; 96:11
Moab, 82:7
mockery, 78:7; 90(1):4; 90(2):2
money, 84:8
moon, 73:19; 80:6; 93:5
symbol of mortality, 88(2):5
morning, 91:4
mortality, 84:7
moon as symbol of, 88(2):5

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
plural nouns, 78:10
poor: desire for wealth, 83:3
  gifts to, as to Christ, 75:9
  God as refuge for, 83:3
  poor in spirit, 73:24
poor in spirit, 73:24
porticoes of Solomon, 83:10
possessions: attachment to, 80:21
potter, 93:23
poverty (virtue) , 85:3
power(-s), 77:28; 83:11; 93:1; 95:7
  arm of the Lord, 76:17
  hand of the Lord, 74:11,12
praise, 73:24; 78:17; 83:8; 86:9; 88(1):6; 91:4; 94:1; 95:4; 96:1
eternal life, 85:24
tongue’s noblest function, 94:4
prayer, 89:4
  Bend down your ear..., 85:2,3
  body of Christ cries for mercy all day long, 85:5
day and night, 87:2
enduring, 83:6
entreaty, 89:14
fix my prayer in your ears, 85:10
hands outstretched, 76:3
for health and salvation, 85:9
I lifted up my soul, 85:7
Look into the face..., 83:13
motive in calling upon God, 85:8
must ask in faith, 77:15
not hearing, not granting, 87:15
Son and God not separated in, 85:1
telling God what he already knows, 78:1
time of affliction, 80:10
Turn back, O Lord..., 89:14
voice directed to God, or to things, 76:2,3
  why have you rejected..., 87:14
preach (-er; -ing), 74:5; 75:7; 76:19; 80:5; 88(1):5,6,7; 95:3; 12; 96:8,10
predestination, 81:5,6; 84:3; 88(2):4
pregnant women, 95:14
presence of God, 81:2
present time, 76:8
presumption, 80:20; 85:3
pride, 73:24; 74:1; 75:18; 77:3; 79:10; 82:14; 84:8; 85:3; 87:10; 88(1):11,17; 90(2):7; 93:8,15,21; 94:7; 95:10; 96:8
earthly happiness, 81:6
in moral life, 77:27
sinners raise selves skyward, 93:16
virginity, 75:16
priest: Moses, Aaron, Samuel, 98:10,11
princes, 86:8
procreation of children, 80:21
Prodigal Son, 77:24
promise(-s), 73:2,3,5; 74:1,13; 75:5; 81:1; 88(2):1-2,4,6
faith in, 73:25
Old Testament , 72:22
promised land, 74:12; 75:1; 77:3,16,22,23,30,33; 79:8; 84:4; 98:12
property, 80:21
  goods held in common, 83:4
prophecy, 73:17; 75:1; 77:9; 78:1,9,14; 80:11; 82:9,12; 84:2,3,6; 85:1; 89:6,15; 96:1
prophets, 77:2,26; 79:9; 81:3,5; 84:10; 86:2,3,4; 88(1):7,20; 88(2):6; 89:2; 94:7; 98:1
proselyte, 93:10
prosperity, 73:1,2; 74:1; 83:5; 85:16; 91:7,8; 93:16,24,27
See also temporal goods
protection: security under his wings, 90(1):5; 90(2):2
providence, 84:3
deep designs, 91:8,9
God’s use of bad people, 73:8; 77:28; 93:25,27
Where is your God, 77:39
prudence, 73:25; 83:11
psalms, 78:1,9,17
discern Christ’s presence in, 98:1
fifteen “Songs of Ascents,” 89:10
psalm-players, 91:5
references to Christ, 90(2):1
superscriptions, 87:1
psaltery, 80:5; 91:3,5
punishment, 74:8; 75:4; 77:29,40; 78:13
See also chastisement
caring and, 98:13
disinheritance as, 88(2):2
fire, 96:6
God’s power, 89:11,12
putting up with wicked people, 98:12
sevenfold (number) , 78:16
whipped as God’s children, 88(2):7; 91:8; 93:28
purification, 88(2):7
purity, 77:27
blessed are the pure of heart, 85:21
rain, 76:20; 80:1; 88(1):12; 98:14,15
raised up, 77:7
reading, 85:7; 90(2):1; 93:6
Red Sea, 80:8,15
redemption, 76:17; 93:28; 95:5
reflection: confession and, 75:14
religious condition: God is as we are, 74:9
remnant, 73:1; 77:23; 78:2
repentance, 73:22; 78:4,14; 80:20; 93:8,9,15; 98:6
repetition, 74:3; 87:2; 94:5
rest, 83:3; 92:1; 93:23,24,29; 94:15
resurrection of the body, 84:7; 87:5; 88:1:5; 88:2:5; 89:10; 90:1:8; 96:17; 98:2
body (flesh) will be made perfect, 88:2:5
philosophers' denial of, 88:2:5
sign of, 85:23
revenge, see vengeance
reward: eternal, 89:12
hope for future, 93:12
rich man and Lazarus, 85:3,18
rich people, 75:9; 85:3
righteousness, 73:18,24; 77:8,10; 83:16;
84:13,14,15; 88:1:15,17; 93:2,19; 96:18
river(-s), 73:17; 88:1:26
clap their hands, 97:8
speaking, 92:7
rock, 80:22; 92:3
Rome, 86:8
ruler, 75:18
running: desire as, 83:4

Sabbath, 80:2
quiescence, 91:14
within our hearts, 91:2,7
sacraments, 73:2; 77:2; 80:20
fed to the Lord's enemies, 80:22
sacrifice, 74:12; 95:9
daily renewal, 78:15
most pleasing oblations, 95:15
sadness, 76:7; 85:24; 91:5; 93:19
saints, 74:1; 75:10; 78:15; 85:22; 86:3; 87:15;
88:1:6,7; 97:8
feet of the Lord, 90:2:8
God's throne, 92:6
metaphors for, 93:4
prayer of, 97:14
splendor, 92:6
salvation, 73:2,14,25; 79:9; 84:1,9; 85:9;
87:10,13,15; 93:28; 95:3; 96:2; 97:2
fire, 96:6,7
near to those who fear him, 84:11
poverty in need of, 78:12
Samson, 80:11,14; 88:1:10
foxes' tails, 80:14
Samuel: punishment of, 98:10,12
Satan, 73:16; 84:4; 96:12
blame for our sins, 91:3
Saul, King, 77:41
Saul (later Paul), 75:14
schism, 75:8
courge, 90:2:5
scriptures, 90:2:1
sea, 77:13; 88:1:10,11; 91:8; 92:7; 94:9;
95:12; 97:8
earth as, 76:20
your way is in the sea, 76:21,22
Second Coming of Christ, 82:2; 95:14
See also Judgment Day
seeking, 76:2,3
God for his own sake, 77:21
hands outstretched, 83:3
senses: God's messages sent through, 77:5
Septuagint, 87:10
serpent, 73:25
servants, 78:9; 79:5; 89:16
serving God, 73:1
seven (number), 78:16
Severus, 95:1
shame, 85:23
sheep, 76:22; 77:3,24,44; 94:11
one flock and one shepherd, 78:3
shield, 90:1:6
Shiloh, 77:35
shout for joy, 97:4
signs, 74:12
Moses, 73:13
no prophet now, 73:11
Old Covenant, 73:2,16
soothsayers, 73:8
will of God made known by, 77:5
silence, 76:8,9,10
speaking against God, in the heart, 74:9
Simeon, 78:2; 96:1; 97:2
Simon the Magician, 90:2:7
sin, 73:16; 77:7; 78:12; 83:10; 85:18; 92:5
See also confession; forgiveness; good
and evil; iniquity; pride
anger = punishment for, 78:8
blaming Satan, fate, God for, 91:3
burnt up and dug out, 79:13
consciousness of, 83:3
considered "tiny," 93:9
corversion from, 88:2:4
covered, 84:5
earth melted by, 74:6
every sin is a lie, 91:6
fault; devil, 80:18
God's silence, 93:9
ignorance and, 90:1:7; 90:2:2
motive for refraining from, 93:2
ownership of, 84:15
punishment for, 78:11
as pursuing Egyptians, 80:8
reigning in the body, 75:5
renouncing, 80:19
slave of, 87:5
two sources: desire and fear, 79:13
sing (-er; -ing)
body of Christ, 83:5,6,7
precentor and succentor, 87:1
to sing is to build, 95:2
sinner(-s), 73:1,19; 74:2,12,14; 75:14,15; 76:7; 77:7,24; 83:16; 85:9; 88(2):3; 88(2):7; 89:11; 90(1):11; 90(2):2; 91:7,9; 93:5,23,27; 95:7
attitude towards God and sin, 93:11
evil doers, 93:7,11
gloat: God ignores our sins, 93:9,11
God holds back vengeance, 74:9
God wants to spare the wicked, 93:18
Lord, be merciful to me..., 90(1):6
no joy for the wicked, 96:19
pit is dug for, 93:15,16,17,29
prosperity, See temporal goods.
pride, 93:15
putting up with, as punishment, 98:12
toleration; pity, 98:12,13
wrongdoers, 93:7,15
Sisera, 82:9
skin: whiteness, 73:13
snake, 90(2):9
death and, 73:5
healed by gazing at, 73:5
staff turned into, 73:5
Sodom, 77:29; 83:3
soldiers, 90(1):10
Solomon, 77:26; 83:10; 88(2):6; 95:1
Son of God, 84:13
form of a servant, 77:43; 85:1,4; 87:2
hidden in the crucified Christ, 79:4
omnipresence, 75:17
time and, 74:5
unique, 88(1):7
Son of Man, 79:12
song, 94:3
Sing a new song..., 97:1
song of ascents, 83:10
sorrow, 76:6
sharing, 93:9
soul: See also body and soul
dead, 87:11
filled with evils, 87:3
God contained in peaceful soul, 92:6
harmed by iniquity, 93:1
lie in the mouth kills, 79:13
sower, 90(1):8
sparrow, 83:7
speaking in tongues, 96:13
spirit, 77:10; 79:14
gives life, 98:9
searching one’s own, 76:9,13,14
spiritual life
See also Christian life; grace; heart change wrought in me, 76:12,13
likeness to God, 94:2
looking back, 83:4
miracles wrought in souls, 76:16
prepare self for trials, 83:1
weapons; flesh, 97:7
weariness, 91:1
spiritual warfare, 75:4; 76:7; 80:11; 83:9; 84:10
squabs, 83:7
staff: turned into snake, 73:5,16
stars, 93:3,5,6,29
Stephen, Saint, 78:2
stories, 95:2; 96:11
storm, 80:11
straw, 96:7
strength, 73:18; 89:10; 92:2,3,4,6
suffering, 83:6; 85:19; 86:5; 87:3; 89:11,14; 92:8,19
God accused of being unjust, 74:8
as test, 77:29
summer, 73:20
sun, 73:19; 77:22; 80:14; 88(2):5; 90(1):8; 93:4,5; 98:14
sunlight, 96:18,19
sweetness, 84:15; 85:11,24; 85:7
sword: fire and, 96:7
syllables, 76:8
symbols, 77:3,26,27
synagogue, 73:1; 77:2,3; 81:1,2; 82:1
Tabor (mountain), 88(1):13,17
talking, 76:7
tares and wheat, 98:12
tax collector, 74:10,12; 85:2
Lord, be merciful to me..., 84:14; 93:15
teaching, 93:13
tears, 83:10
teeth, 77:44
temperance, 83:11
temple, 73:11; 74:2; 78:4,10; 82:10; 92:6; 95:1,2

Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98
Expositions Of The Psalms 73-98

temporal goods, 73:2,14,22,23; 75:9; 77:20; 85:9,11; 89:13; 91:7,8
See also prosperity; rich; wealth
attachment to, 73:3; 80:21; 83:3; 86:9
bitterness in, 85:7
coveting, 89:4
crying out to God, 76:2,3
earth swollen with pride, 81:7
deearthly desires, 79:14
evildoers prosper, 93:1
good fortune of wicked people, 80:19; 91:14
hardships of good people, 93:2
innocence and, 83:17
number seventy, 89:10
sinners flourish; the just struggle, 93:16
triumph; wicked exult, 93:9
wicked flourish; successes, 93:12
worldly happiness, 91:1
temptation, 82:11; 83:3,5; 84:10; 85:16; 89:4; 90:1,7,8; 93:21,27; 94:9
due measure of, 79:6
forty days (symbol), 94:14
life as, 76:4
Tent of the Testimony, 77:7
testamentum, 82:6
testimony, 77:7
thanksgiving, 91:1
theatre, 80:23
thief, 86:6
thigh, 92:3
thoughts, 76:8
God’s thoughts; our thoughts, 93:14
threshing-floor, 92:5; 93:20
throne
members of Christ’s body as, 88(2):5
soul of a just person, 98:3
thunder, 76:20
time, 89:3,5; 91:8
confession, 74:14
days and years, 89:15
mystery of, 76:8
night watch, 89:5
six ages of, 92:1,6
Son of God; Son of Man, 74:5,7
Titus (Roman emperor), 78:2
Tobit, 96:18

today, 76:8
toleration: tares (wicked) and wheat, 98:12
tombs, 87:11
torrents (words of God), 73:17
torture, 90(1):8,10; 90(2):2
tranquillity, 91:14

trap, 90(1):4; 90(2):2; 93:26
treaty, 82:6
trials: ignominy, 92:2
tribulation, 82:7; 90(2):11; 93:3,27; 97:6
Trinity, 81:2; 84:9; 85:21; 86:4
God who works his wonders alone, 76:16
trouble, 85:11
day of, 76:3
cry to God, 91:4
Trumpet, 80:6
trumpets, ductile, 97:6
trust: healed for God, 97:6
truth, 75:7; 84:12; 88(1):9,25; 90(1):6,10; 91:6; 95:15
belongs to all, 75:17,18
proclaim in the night, 91:4
Truth has sprung up..., 84:13,14,15
turtledove, 83:7
twelve (number), 86:4
Tyre, 82:7; 86:6
unbelief/unbelievers, 73:21; 76:4; 77:14,19; 30; 78:2; 81:7; 87:6,10,13; 88(1):15,24; 90(2):11; 96:7,9
understanding, 73:1,11,13,14
understanding hands, 77:45
underworld, 85:17; 87:3,4; 88(2):10
unicorns, 77:42; 91:11
unity, 91:11; 95:2

valley of weeping, 83:10,11,12,15
vanities, 77:40
vengeance, 78:13,14,16
victory, 88(1):23
vine brought out of Egypt, 79:8-9
vineyard, 88(1):7; 93:12
violence, 86:6
virgin birth, 73:25; 98:14
virginity, 75:16; 90(2):9
virtue: four essential virtues, 83:11
voice, 76:2
vows, 75:16; 83:4

wall, 79:10
whitewashed, 95:3
watchfulness, 76:7
water of contradiction, 80:11
waters: nations, 76:18
peoples, 80:11
waves (sufferings), 87:7; 92:7; 96:4

Volume III/18
weakness, 97:6; 98:13
prefigured by Christ, 93:19
wealth, 81:5; 85:3,11
trust in; desire for, 83:3
villainous possession of, 83:17
weeds, 98:12
weeping: ascents in the heart, 83:10
wheat: fed on richest wheat, 80:22
tares (parable), 98:12
wheel, 76:20; 82:11
whipping, 88(2):7; 91:8,14; 93:17,28
wicked, See sinner(-s)
wind, 82:11
four winds, 86:4
wine, 83:3
both pure and mixed, 74:11,12
wine press, 83:1,2,3,5,6,7,8,9,11,15,17; 85:5
wings, 88(2):14; 90(1):5,6
wisdom, 89:13,14; 90(2):2; 93:12; 96:5
honey from the rock, 80:22
you will be hungry again, 85:24
wolf, 93:1
Word of God, 93:6
See also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Son of God
all things made through, 73:19
bread of angels, 77:17
in the beginning… 73:19; 80:13; 85:1
words of God, 73:17
metaphors: arrow; rain, 76:20
work, 77:4; 80:9; 85:24; 92:1; 93:12,23,24; 98:14
works of mercy, 85:24
world, 83:5; 88(1):26; 93:25; 94:2
A.D.A.M: four quarters, 95:15; 96:13
Egypt as symbol of, 77:12
evil: loving and fearing, 79:13
foundations moved, 81:5
four quarters, 86:4; 96:13
I have overcome…, 92:8
joy in, 93:24
night as, 76:4
sixth age of, 92:6
worldliness, 91:10; 96:19
world-rulers (devil), 76,7
worship, 76:15; 77:20; 93:4; 94:10; 96:12
See also idol
by all nations, 85:13,14
footstool, 98:9,14
wrongdoers, See sinner(-s)
year, 89:15
Zacchaeus, 75:9
Zalimutha, 82:9
zeal, 88(1):17
Zebah, 82:9
Zeeb, 82:9
Zion, Mount, 73:5; 83:12; 86:5; 96:13; 98:4
Church as, 75:3
contemplation, 75:5; 77:41
foundations on mountains, 86:2
my mother, 86:7,8
Zoan, 77:12,28
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 99-120

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor

As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/19 Homilies/Expositions

Paperback: 978-1-56548-196-1, 6 x 9 in., 558 pp., 2003
Hardcover: 978-1-56548-197-8, 6 x 9 in., 552 pp., 2003

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms
(Enarrationes in Psalmos)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

(prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

## Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 1:1</td>
<td>III, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>I, 103, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6.26</td>
<td>II, 101, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:14</td>
<td>109, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:31</td>
<td>102, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>I, 103, 13; XVIII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>II, 103, 11; IX, 118, 4; XI, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>IX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>IV, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>IV, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>IV, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19.18</td>
<td>102, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:3</td>
<td>104, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:10</td>
<td>III, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:4</td>
<td>I, 113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21:10</td>
<td>119, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:16-18</td>
<td>109, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>I, 113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>I, 113, 2; XXVIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45:7</td>
<td>II, 101, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus 22:4-6</td>
<td>119, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy 19:21</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>102, 12; III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:35</td>
<td>102, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:39</td>
<td>I, 101, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:49</td>
<td>I, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Job 1:8, LXX</td>
<td>100, 12; IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9</td>
<td>104, 40; XI, 118, 6; XXVI, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:11</td>
<td>120, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>IV, 103, 7; 120, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:33, LXX</td>
<td>IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4-5, LXX</td>
<td>IV, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:24-25, LXX</td>
<td>IV, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42:7</td>
<td>IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Exodus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>II, 101, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>I, 103, 3; 104, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14.15</td>
<td>II, 101, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>104, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>105, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:5</td>
<td>108, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:12</td>
<td>120, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:17</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:31-32</td>
<td>105, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:17, LXX</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms 1:1</td>
<td>109, 20; V, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>I, 101, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-4</td>
<td>109, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>109, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>109, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>109, 9; 119, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>109, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>IV, 103, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11-12</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4(3)</td>
<td>105, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

Voulume III/19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72(73):27</td>
<td>99, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):28</td>
<td>X, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72(73):38</td>
<td>XVI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73(74):9</td>
<td>106, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74(2:75):1</td>
<td>104, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74(3:75):2</td>
<td>105, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74:8(75:5-6)</td>
<td>102, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78(79):11</td>
<td>99, 7, II, 101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81(82):6</td>
<td>115, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82:14(83:13)</td>
<td>104, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83(84:2)</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83(4:84:3)</td>
<td>I, 101, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:5(84:4)</td>
<td>105, 37, 110, 1; XI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:6-7(84:5-6)</td>
<td>119, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83:8(84:7)</td>
<td>III, 103, 3; V, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:7(85:6)</td>
<td>V, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:12(85:11)</td>
<td>99, 17, 102, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84:13(85:12)</td>
<td>105, 5; XVII, 118, 3; XXVI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88:16(89:15)</td>
<td>99, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89:90:8</td>
<td>108, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:91:13</td>
<td>III, 103, 22; IV, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90:91:16</td>
<td>120, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93(94):15</td>
<td>105, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):1</td>
<td>102, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):2</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94(95):5</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:96:1-5</td>
<td>105, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95:96:2</td>
<td>105, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96(97):2</td>
<td>105, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99(100):1</td>
<td>102, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100(101):1</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 6; XXVI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101(1):7</td>
<td>102, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:9-10:28</td>
<td>108, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101:26(102:25)</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102(103):4</td>
<td>VII, 118, 2; XXIX, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102(103):5</td>
<td>III, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102(103):14</td>
<td>I, 101, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103(104):20-21</td>
<td>100, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104(105):3</td>
<td>105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104(105):4</td>
<td>XI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104(105):9</td>
<td>105, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104(105):34</td>
<td>108, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107(2:108:1)</td>
<td>107, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:5(108:4)</td>
<td>107, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:8(108:7)</td>
<td>107, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:9(108:8)</td>
<td>107, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107:14(108:13)</td>
<td>107, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109(110):4</td>
<td>106, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110(111):10</td>
<td>II, 101, 2; 119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112(113):3</td>
<td>106, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113(115):3</td>
<td>117, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113(115):14</td>
<td>117, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B(115):1</td>
<td>XV, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113B(115):17-18</td>
<td>114, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114(116):2</td>
<td>117, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):12</td>
<td>102, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):13</td>
<td>102, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):16</td>
<td>I, 101, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115(116):16-17</td>
<td>II, 101, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117:118:19</td>
<td>99, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):37</td>
<td>XVI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118(119):142</td>
<td>XI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119(120):5:7</td>
<td>117, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):1</td>
<td>II, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120(121):4</td>
<td>102, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123(124):2-3</td>
<td>XV, 118, 3; XXX, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123(124):8</td>
<td>XV, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125(126):6</td>
<td>120, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125(126):8</td>
<td>I, 103, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125(126):9-10</td>
<td>I, 103, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128(139):7-10</td>
<td>I, 103, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128(139):16</td>
<td>III, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140(141):10</td>
<td>III, 103, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:6(142:5)</td>
<td>IV, 103, 4; 120, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141:8(142:7)</td>
<td>114, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142(143):6</td>
<td>I, 103, 17; XVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142(143):7</td>
<td>IV, 103, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142(143):10</td>
<td>XVII, 118, 3; XXVII, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143(144):11</td>
<td>108, 8; 120, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143(144):14-15</td>
<td>120, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145(146):8</td>
<td>108, 8; 120, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145(146):9</td>
<td>105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146(147):7</td>
<td>99, 16; I, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147(148:2-3)</td>
<td>III, 103, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:15</td>
<td>I, 103, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147:19-20</td>
<td>104, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:4-5</td>
<td>I, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148:5</td>
<td>I, 103, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28, LXX</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28-29, LXX</td>
<td>I, 118, 2; III, 103, 21; XXIX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:33, LXX</td>
<td>106, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>XXIV, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16, LXX</td>
<td>120, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>X, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:16-17</td>
<td>I, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:10</td>
<td>119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:32</td>
<td>108, 5; 111, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:3</td>
<td>II, 113, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:21</td>
<td>120, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20:9, LXX</td>
<td>99, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:16, LXX</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1; XII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Songs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>I, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>Chapter(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:16-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:9, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26:10, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40:6:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45:11, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>49:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31:31-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31:31-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>18:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>33:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>8:15-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>4:5, LXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>2:32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micah</td>
<td>7:15-19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Habakkuk
- 2:4 109, 8
- 3:2 XXVII, 118, 1

### Haggai
- 2:8 XX, 118, 1

### Zechariah
- 12:1 XVIII, 118, 2
- 12:10 109, 12

### Malachi
- 1:10-11 106, 13

### New Testament
#### Matthew
- 1:1 109, 4
- 1:23 109, 6
- 2:2 108, 18
- 2:20 108, 22
- 3:2 I, 101, 2
- 5:3 IV, 103, 14
- 5:5 114, 4
- 5:6 100, 9; I, 101, 5; II, 103, 11; II, 103, 14; III, 103, 15
- 5:7 102, 11
- 5:8 99, 5; I, 103, 4; 109, 8; 109, 12
- 5:10.6 I, 118, 3
- 5:11 102, 14
- 5:14 XXXIII, 118, 1
- 5:14-16 XXXIII, 118, 1
- 5:16 105, 3; XII, 118, 2
- 5:17 XXVI, 118, 7
- 5:32 III, 103, 4
- 5:44 102, 11; 108, 4; VII, 118, 4
- 5:45 99, 5; III, 103, 21; 120, 12
- 5:46 108, 4
- 5:48.44-45 100, 1
- 6:1 II, 118, 2
- 6:1.19.24 II, 118, 4
- 6:2 I, 103, 14
- 6:3 XXVI, 118, 2; 120, 7; 120, 10
- 6:9 I, 103, 3
- 6:10 III, 118, 2
- 6:12 I, 103, 19; III, 103, 18; III, 118, 2; XIX, 118, 7
- 6:13 III, 118, 2; XIII, 118, 3
- 6:22-23 XII, 118, 2
- 6:25 II, 101, 14; 105, 15; XIII, 118, 4
- 7:1 XII, 118, 4
- 7:2 100, 3
- 7:6 100, 10
- 7:7 XIV, 118, 2; XXIX, 118, 1
- 7:11 XXIV, 118, 1
- 7:22.23 100, 7; I, 103, 9
- 7:23 III, 103, 21; XXXI, 118, 8
- 8:11 104, 7
- 8:12 108, 18
- 8:22 114, 7; VII, 118, 1
- 9:11-12 I, 101, 9
- 10:10.20 109, 12
- 10:20 IV, 103, 14; 115, 4
- 10:25 XIII, 118, 2
- 10:27 I, 101, 7
- 10:28 120, 13
- 10:39 102, 3
- 10:41 102, 12
- 10:41-42 102, 13; XIII, 103, 10
- 11:11 120, 4
- 11:23 99, 16; 104, 1; IV, 118, 4
- 11:28 I, 113, 6
- 11:29 114, 6
- 12:29 XXXI, 118, 2
- 12:37 120, 11
- 13:12 115, 1
- 13:17 IV, 103, 8
- 13:26 119, 6
- 13:41-43 109, 15
- 15:2 XXXII, 118, 4
- 15:3 XXXII, 118, 4
- 15:10 XXXII, 118, 4
- 15:12 XXXII, 118, 4
- 15:13 III, 103, 15
- 15:15-18 XXXII, 118, 4
- 15:24 108, 18
- 16:19 108, 1
- 16:25 102, 3
- 18:18 II, 101, 3
- 19:3.4.6 III, 103, 3
- 19:10.11 III, 103, 4
- 19:16 I, 118, 2
- 19:16-17 117, 2
- 19:17 XIX, 118, 4
- 19:21 111, 4; 119, 4
- 19:24-26 110, 6
- 19:28 100, 10
- 20:22 102, 4; 115, 5; 119, 1
- 20:27 III, 103, 9
- 20:30 III, 103, 9
- 20:32-33 109, 5
- 21:38 115, 4
- 22:21 115, 8; XXXI, 118, 1
### Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22:40</td>
<td>I, 103, 10; XII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:42</td>
<td>109, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:43-45</td>
<td>109, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:3</td>
<td>100, 10; 115, 1; I, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:23</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:31:35</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:37</td>
<td>I, 101, 8; 108, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:38:37</td>
<td>II, 101, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:14</td>
<td>II, 101, 9; II, 101, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:17</td>
<td>I, 101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:35</td>
<td>I, 103, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:37:39</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:40-41</td>
<td>99, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24:43</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21</td>
<td>I, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21.23</td>
<td>115, I, 115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:21:30</td>
<td>108, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26</td>
<td>99, 10; 115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:26:27</td>
<td>I, 101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34</td>
<td>I09, 15; 111, 5; I, 113, 9; 120, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34:41</td>
<td>VI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>111, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:45</td>
<td>108, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:46</td>
<td>109, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38</td>
<td>100, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:38:39</td>
<td>III, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>100, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:25</td>
<td>108, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40</td>
<td>I, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:40:42</td>
<td>100, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:19</td>
<td>III, 103, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>99, 17; II, 101, 8; I, 113, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mark

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>109, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23</td>
<td>VII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>112, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td>102, 8; 117, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:21</td>
<td>III, 103, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:28</td>
<td>III, 103, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:21</td>
<td>120, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:34</td>
<td>100, 6; 108, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:69</td>
<td>III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Luke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:33</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>111, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29-30</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>105, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:34-35</td>
<td>104, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td>I, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### John

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>I, 103, 8; III, 103, 20; XXIII, 118, 1; 119, 1; 120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-3</td>
<td>I, 101, 1; 119, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:10</td>
<td>III, 103, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-11</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12</td>
<td>XXIV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:17</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28-29</td>
<td>I, 113, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3</td>
<td>II, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>108, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>XXVII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20-21</td>
<td>XXVIII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:21</td>
<td>XXVIII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22-24</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:24</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:27</td>
<td>X, 118, 5;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>II, 4; 110, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>III, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:9-12</td>
<td>I, 113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13-16</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>102, 15; XXIV, 118, 7;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>104, 11; XIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td>117, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>I, 103, 9; I, 103, 10;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>I, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td>IV, 103, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>102, 15; 106, 10;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>102, 10; 120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12-13</td>
<td>III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:20-22</td>
<td>115, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:9-10</td>
<td>VII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15-17</td>
<td>II, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:16</td>
<td>III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:17</td>
<td>III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td>102, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td>106, 6; 106, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>114, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>114, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8-11</td>
<td>114, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>106, 1; XII, 118, 3;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:20</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-25</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>114, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td>109, 8; II, 113, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td>104, 3; XV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:32</td>
<td>114, 2; VI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33</td>
<td>117, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6-7.7</td>
<td>II, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7-8</td>
<td>X, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>XXVIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:14-18</td>
<td>110, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:16</td>
<td>105, 36; VII, 118, 2;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>110, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:29</td>
<td>II, 113, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:30-32</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>XV, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>XII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9-10</td>
<td>120, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:10</td>
<td>108, 12; 109, 4; VI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>114, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14-15</td>
<td>114, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:16</td>
<td>115, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>XXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:20</td>
<td>II, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25-26</td>
<td>109, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33</td>
<td>VI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:2</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 3; XIX, 118,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>I, 103, 16; 104, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:14</td>
<td>IV, 103, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:16</td>
<td>II, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:17</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>102, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:20</td>
<td>102, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td>IV, 103, 9; XXXI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:7-8</td>
<td>XXXI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>XIII, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:14</td>
<td>XX, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1</td>
<td>I, 101, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td>II, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:8-9</td>
<td>III, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:18</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Corinthians

| 1:10  | II, 103, 11 |
| 1:12  | III, 103, 5 |
| 1:13  | 119, 9 |
| 1:20  | IV, 118, 1 |
| 1:21  | I, 103, 8 |
| 1:23-24 | III, 103, 25 |
| 1:30-31 | XII, 118, 5; XIII, 118, 1; |
| 1:31  | 110, 3; XV, 118, 7 |
| 2:2   | 119, 2 |
| 2:6   | 120, 12 |
| 2:8   | 109, 3 |
| 2:9   | 119, 1 |

Voulume III/19
Volume III/19

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

2:13 120, 12
2:15 I, 103, 16
3:1 I, 103, 16; III, 103, 5; 119, 2
3:2 119, 2
3:3 III, 103, 5
3:6 II, 113, 12
3:6.9 99, 13
3:9-11 I, 101, 14
3:10-11 XXV, 118, 3
3:11 I, 103, 17; II, 103, 5; XXI, 118, 2; XXIX, 118, 9
3:12 III, 103, 5
3:15 III, 103, 5; XXV, 118, 3
3:17 111, 1
4:1 I, 103, 16
4:5 100, 12; 109, 15; XIV, 118, 7
4:7 IV, 103, 12; 106, 11; 110, 3; XXX, 118, 3
4:14 I, 113, 8
4:15 I, 101, 8; I, 113, 8
4:16 II, 113, 10
6:3 100, 10
6:20 II, 101, 14
7:25 VII, 118, 2
7:27 III, 103, 4
9:7 I, 103, 11; III, 103, 9
9:9 102, 12; III, 103, 9
9:9-10 III, 103, 9
9:11 II, 103, 9; 112, 6
9:14 III, 103, 9
9:15 III, 103, 9
9:19 III, 103, 9
10:1-6 I, 113, 3
10:4 III, 103, 6; I, 113, 12
10:5 104, 34; II, 113, 9
10:11 106, 3; I, 113, 1
10:12 106, 14; XIX, 118, 3
10:13 XV, 118, 2; XIII, 118, 11; 120, 14
10:19-20 II, 113, 3
10:31 102, 2
11:19 106, 14
11:34-32 XXIX, 118, 6
12:7 III, 103, 13
12:11 XVIII, 118, 1
12:31 XIV, 118, 4
12:31-13:1 I, 103, 9
13:2 I, 103, 9
13:3 XXI, 118, 8; XXX, 118, 7
13:8-10 III, 103, 3
13:9 VI, 118, 1
14:20 112, 1
15:9 112, 6
15:10 102, 7; II, 103, 10; IV, 103, 14; XIII, 118, 1
15:11 II, 103, 11
15:26.54 102, 8
15:28 II, 101, 10
15:46 V, 118, 2
15:47 102, 21
15:52.44 II, 101, 14
15:57 VII, 118, 2

2 Corinthians

1:8 106, 12
1:9 106, 12
1:20 107, 2
2:18 II, 118, 2
4:5 III, 103, 9
4:7 III, 103, 12
4:16 II, 101, 14
5:6 II, 118, 2; VIII, 118, 1
5:6-7 114, 8
5:13 III, 103, 7; 119, 2
5:13-14 117, 21
5:14 III, 103, 7
5:17 IV, 103, 3
5:17-18 I, 101, 19; III, 103, 26
5:19 IV, 118, 5
5:21 X, 118, 3; XVII, 118, 9
6:2 I, 101, 14; 114, 3;
6:10 XXVI, 118, 7
6:11 I, 103, 16; XIV, 118, 2
6:16 X, 118, 6
6:17 119, 9
8:9 I, 101, 1
8:9 111, 3
10:3-4 112, 4
10:12 XII, 118, 4
10:17 XXV, 118, 6
11:2 XXVIII, 118, 2
11:2-3 XXVIII, 118, 2
11:29 I, 101, 4; 120, 12
12:4 III, 103, 7; 119, 2
13:4 120, 6

Galatians

1:8-9 106, 14
1:9 III, 103, 6; 115, 1
1:9.8 II, 103, 11
2:19-20 XXV, 118, 6
3:8 100, 3
3:10 100, 3
3:13 108, 27
3:20 IV, 103, 8
3:21 XXVII, 118, 2
3:22 XXVII, 118, 3

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:29</td>
<td>100, 3; 104, 5; I, 113, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>I, 101, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>XIV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>I, 101, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:21-22.24</td>
<td>119, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:24</td>
<td>I, 103, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:25</td>
<td>110, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>110, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:27</td>
<td>II, 101, 6; II, 101, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>III, 103, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:13</td>
<td>99, 7; III, 103, 9; 115, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:15</td>
<td>100, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:17</td>
<td>106, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:24</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>106, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td>111, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>XXV, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>III, 103, 23; 105, 36; 117, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3</td>
<td>I, 101, 11; 102, 17; I, 103, 6; 112, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-10</td>
<td>112, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>110, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>IV, 103, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:14</td>
<td>119, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15-16</td>
<td>117, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19-22</td>
<td>111, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14-19</td>
<td>I, 103, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>120, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>XIV, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>XIX, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2-3</td>
<td>99, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:13</td>
<td>I, 101, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:23</td>
<td>XVIII, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:26</td>
<td>III, 103, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>I, 103, 6; II, 103, 2; 112, 6; 120, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:25-24</td>
<td>III, 103, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:27</td>
<td>I, 103, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:32</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>117, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:18</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23</td>
<td>100, 6; 114, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>112, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:6</td>
<td>I, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7</td>
<td>IV, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:7-8</td>
<td>I, 103, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-11</td>
<td>109, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>109, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:12-13</td>
<td>102, 29; IV, 103, 16; XXXI, 118, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>105, 3; XV, 118, 9; XVI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td>115, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13-14</td>
<td>II, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:16</td>
<td>II, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>112, 4; 114, 8; X, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>102, 12; 106, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colossians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>105, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2</td>
<td>IV, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3-3</td>
<td>XII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>XXVI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16-17</td>
<td>I, 103, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-5</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>120, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Thessalonians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:3-4.8-12</td>
<td>105, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>115, 1; VIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14.15</td>
<td>100, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:5</td>
<td>102, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:7</td>
<td>XXII, 118, 4; 119, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-11</td>
<td>XI, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>I, 103, 6; 112, 6; VII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:13.16</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>109, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5</td>
<td>IV, 103, 8; 104, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>102, 12; III, 103, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>110, 8; XI, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:16</td>
<td>VI, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Timothy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td>109, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>115, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>104, 34; 106, 13; 106, 14; 120, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:26</td>
<td>105, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td>106, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>XI, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vouluem III/19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Volume III/19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6-8</td>
<td>100, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>II, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7-8</td>
<td>100, 6; 102, 7; VII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>XX, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td>XXIX, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17-18</td>
<td>XVI, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>106, 8; XV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>III, 103, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>I, 103, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-5</td>
<td>112, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5</td>
<td>VII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:19</td>
<td>XXIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-7</td>
<td>II, 101, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrews</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11.14</td>
<td>XVI, 118, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:13-16</td>
<td>VIII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>XVII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11</td>
<td>XVII, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td>IV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-25</td>
<td>IV, 118, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:6</td>
<td>106, 8; XV, 118, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>I, 118, 3; II, 118, 1; III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:8-9</td>
<td>II, 118, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:18</td>
<td>I, 113, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:19</td>
<td>106, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:23</td>
<td>108, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>104, 3; 109, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:4</td>
<td>I, 118, 3; II, 118, 1; II, 118, 2; II, 118, 3; III, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:18</td>
<td>XVII, 118, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:19</td>
<td>114, 2; XXVII, 118, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4-6</td>
<td>111, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>108, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>III, 103, 20; III, 103, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>I, 103, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:15</td>
<td>106, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:15</td>
<td>117, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

Index
(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
More than one Exposition is cited by the number in parentheses, for example (2)
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.
Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semi-colon.
Biblical texts/words are in italics.

Aaron, 104:18,20; 109:17; 113(2):8,9
abandonment: forsaken by God, 118(4):5
Abba! Father! 106:1; 118(14):2
Abraham (includes “faith” of; “seed” of, etc.): 100:3; 101(2):14; 103(3)5; 104:5,6,7, 8,9,33,34,36; 105:5,28; 109:17; 112:8; 113(1):2,5,10; 118(10):3; 118(29):4; 119:7
accountability, 103(1):19
acedia, 106:6
admiration, 118(12):2
adoption, 118(12):1
adulterous woman (gospel), 102:11
adversaries, 118(26):2
Africa, 120:13
Alas, 119:7
aliens, 118(8):1
allegory, 103(3)13
alleluia, 104:1; 110:1; 113(1):5; 117:2,23
duplication of, 105:1; 106:1
alms, 102:12; 103(3)10
alphabet, 118(32):8
always, 118(13):4
Ananias, 108:17
anger, 101(1):11; 102:16,17; 103(3)19; 104:20; 105:2,32; 108:5; 109:18; 111:4
animals, 101(1):11; 102:3,8; 103(3):3,4,18; 103(4)2
figures of all nations, 103(3):2
speech and, 113(2):2
anointing, 104:10; 108:26
angoity, 118(12):4
apostles, 101(2):15; 103(2):7,8; 103(3)5,12,16; 113(1):3; 117:3
bones of Christ’s body, 101(1):4
rants, 118(1):8
twelve (the number), 103(3):2
appetite: mind and body, 118(8):4
arrogance, 100:11; 118(2):1
avertice, 110:8; 118(1):1; 118(11):6
avenger. See revenge
Baal, 105:25
baptism, 113(1):4
figure: Red Sea crossing, 106:3
prefigured, 105:10
sins washed away by, 118(3):2
barrenness, 112:8
beatitudes, 118(1):3
beauty, 118(31):3
confession and, 103(1):4,6
willing to become beautiful, 103(1):4
bees, 117:7
beggar, 106:14
Beginning, 109:13,14
belching, 102:8
Bible: charity’s role in, 103(1):10
God’s use of mortal things, 103(1):8
signed copy of God’s promises, 109:1
single Word heard in all scriptures, 103(4)1
sky = holy scripture, 103(1):9
See also words of God
birds, 101(1):7,8; 103(3)5
bishops, 103(3)12
blasphemy, 103(4)8
blessing, 108:30; 111:6; 117:2
name of the Lord, 117:21,22
why the soul should bless the Lord, 102:1-3,29
blind (-ness), 99:5; 109:5,11
boasting, 118(25):6; 118(32):3
body and soul: body as “floor,” 118(10):2

Voulmee III/19
creation of, 118(18):1,2
flesh vs. spirit, 114:8
soul as alien, 118(8):1
See also flesh; soul
bones, 101(1):4
booty, 118(31):2
boredom, 106:6
bosom, 109:16
brazier, 103(3):5
bread, 103(4):13,14
breath, 103(4):13,14
bulls, 106:14
Caesar, 115:8
camel, 110:6
Canaan, 104:6,7,8,9
Catholic Church, 99:12; 119:9
cattle, 103(3):9
cedars of Lebanon, 103(1):18; 103(3):15,17
enduring faults of bad people, 99:12
enlarged heart, 118(11):1
exceedingly wide, 118(21):8
higher regions of the scriptures, 103(1):9; 103(2):3
lover’s meditation, 118(19):4
spacious freedom, 118(22):1
walked continually in... 118(14):2
works as assets, 102:12
cheerfulness, 118(19):3
childlikeness, 112:1-2
children of God, 118(27):4; 120:11,12
children’s children, 102:25
Christ, Jesus Christ
Christian life: build on rock, not on sand, 102:28
duty to imitate the Father, 100:1
eyearly church, 101(1):15
flesh crucified, 118(25):6
meet to form one perfect man, 105:36
serving Christ, 100:10
taste for things that are above, 103(4):11
See also commandments; spiritual life
Christianity, 119:4
Christians, 109:10
bad mixed with the good, 99:12
called together from whole world, 106:9
false accusations against, 118(27):7
name “Israel” not alien to, 113(1):2,5
seed of Abraham, 100:3
your servant, son of your handmaid, 115:6,7,9
Church, 100:3; 101(1):8; 101(2):7; 103(3):25; 104:5; 106:8,13,14; 108:32; 110:1; 118(13):3; 118(19):2,7; 118(20):1,7; 118(27):7; 118(31):1; 118(32):5,6; 119:7; 120:8,12
arrayed in light as in a garment, 103(1):7; 103(2):2
beauty, 103(1):6
Christ and the body of, 100:3; 111:1
Christ as foundation of, 103(1):17; 103(2):5
earth as figure of, 103(1):17
end of the world, 101(2):9
figure: Noah’s ark (animals as nations), 103(3):2
gifts conferred on, 103(1):9
hidden with Christ in God, 118(19):1
holy fear in, 118(19):3
humiliations, 118(15):2
judgments of God, 118(6):2
left hand; right hand, 120:9
made white, 103(1):8
moon and, 103(3):9; 120:12
one person: Christ and Church, 101(1):2; 118(29):9
one soul, one heart, 103(1):4
persecutions in the future, 103(2):7
power to overcome evils, 117:6
present from the beginning, 118(29):9
prophecy: head or body, 118(22):3
ships as churches, 103(4):5
unity, 101(1):18; 101(2):8; 106:14
vineyard, 103(1):11
watch-tower, 101(2):4
will continue until judgment day, 118(20):4
Zion, 101(2):4
See also Mystical Body of Christ;
persecution
circumcision, 103(3):7; 113(1):2
clergy, 99:12,13
clouds, 103(1):11,19
coals, 119:5
believing in, 118(17):4
chatter about, 118(6):4
grace and fulfillment of, 118(27):3,4
guarded, 118(31):7
guarding your words..., 118(5):1,4; 118(7):1
hearer and doer, 118(4):3
I understood better than elders, 118(22):4
love God by keeping, 118(8):2,3; 118(16):3,4,6

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
love of, 118(14):4; 118(26):8; 118(27):3; 118(31):6
love: exceedingly wide, 118(22):1
most earnestly ordained..., 118(4):1,2,5
praise and, 105:3
proud people turn from, 118(9):1
running with hearts enlarged, 118(10):6; 118(11):1,2,5; 118(14):4
thoroughly explore, 118(24):3
understanding, 118(22):8
walked continually in wide freedom, 118(14):2
will and, 118(4):2; 118(11):5
common good, 105:34
compassion, 102:20; 111:4; 114:5
conceit, 118(2):1
concupiscence, 106:5; 118(8):3; 118(10):2
condemnation, 118(28):1
conduct of life, 102:28
accountability, 103(1):19
act according to learning, 118(27):8
excess and deficiency in, 118(4):1
justice and judgment, 105:4
quiet vs. clamor, 99:16
coney, 103(3):18
confession (of sin and/or of praise), 101(2):7; 103(4):18; 104:1; 105:2; 110:2,3,6; 117:1-2,14; 118(2)-1; 118(4):4; 118(10):3; 118(16):5
beauty and, 103(1):4,6
Enter his gates..., 99:16
made with the lips, 118(6):1; 118(13):2; 118(32):6
sweetness of the Lord, 106:2
conscience, 100:4
consent, 118(3):1
contemplation, 119:2
ccontrition: conversation with God, 103(4):18
conversion (of moral life): 106:6; 109:2; 111:3; 119:5
humility: reconstruction, 109:19
Jordan: river as symbol, 113(1):7
youthful before God, 118(5):2
converts: pagans incorporated as “eaten,” 103(3):2
coots, 103(1):18; 103(3):16,17,18
correction, 118(26):9
covention (old and new interrelated), 104:6-7,36; 105:28; 105:35,36; 110:5; 118(1):1
allegory: old and new, 119:7
generation to generation, 101(1):19
grace hidden in, 118(26):8
younger sons (Abel, etc.), 118(5):3
See also New Covenant
covetousness, 103(3):16; 118(8):3; 118(11):6
cowardice, 115:4
cows, 106:14
creation, 101(2):12
effortless operation, 103(1):7
exceedingly good, 102:8
God’s “hands,” 118(18):1
He made us..., 99:15
human body and soul, 118(18):1,2
magnificence of, 103(3):25; 103(4):2
pointers to God, 103(1):1
shout for joy over, 99:5,6
spiritual meaning of the material, 103(3):2
subject to creator, 115:6
temporal changes in, 105:35
visible and invisible, 118(27):1,2
Crispina, Saint, 120:13
cross, 103(1):14; 118(26):4
crown, 102:7,8
cup of salvation, 102:4,6
curse, 108:20,21
damnation, 105:2
darkness, 99:5; 100:12; 117:4; 119:7
daughters: like a lily..., 99:8,12
David, King, 103(1):9; 104:10; 107:2; 109:3-7,16; 118(22):3
daylight, 118(21):3
days: dwindled like smoke, 101(1):4
dead; awareness of the living, 108:17
unbelievers as, 118(7):1
death, 109:20; 118(5):3; 118(9):3; 118(10):2
Christ’s victory over, 102:10
fear of, 100:6
last enemy, 102:8
like a thief in the night, 120:3
My soul is sorrowful..., 100:6
perish without God’s creative power, 118(18):3
provision for relatives, 108:17
soul delivered from, 114:6,7
uncertainty, 101(1):10
decit: guileful tongue, 119:4,5
defilement, 118(1):1,2
delight, 118(17):3
deriverance, 118(32):2
demons, 103(3):2; 105:37; 113(2):3
denarius, 110:4
desire, 102:6,8,9,10; 118(3):1,2; 118(8):3,4,5; 118(9):1; 118(20):2; 118(25):7; 118(29):1
See also longing: yearning
devil, 100:12; 103(2):11; 103(4):6,7,8,9,10,11; 105:36; 106:14; 108:8,18; 111:5; 115:3; 117:4; 118(11):6; 118(12):4; 118(16):4; 118(26):4; 119:5; 120:8,11
See also demons
discernment: religious vocation, 99:11-12
discipline, 102:14; 105:26,33; 118(17):2,3,4
disease, 102:5
disgust, 106:11
dishloyalty, 100:5
divinization, 109:1; 118(16):1,6
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

gates, 99:16; 117:15
generation, 99:17; 118(21):2
generation of generations, 101(2):10,11,12
104:33; 108:18; 109:11; 110:6;
113(1):4;10; 117:3; 118(22):1; 118(25):2
gentleness, 114:6
gifts, 104:34; 118(14):2; 118(17):2; 118(27):4;
120:3
benefits received, 118(10):6
bless the Lord for all his gifts, 102:1,3,4,5;
103(1):2,3
every good gift comes from the Father…,
118(4):2
God rewards his own gifts, 118(7):3
motives for, 102:13
recompense, 115:4
See also providence
dwells in high places …, 112:7
eternity as substance of, 101(2):10
forgetfulness, 118(15):1
gifts common to the good and the bad,
103(1):9
goodness of, 117:2,3,5; 118(27):2
greatness of love for us, 103(1):13
holy, 103(1):3
inexpressible, 99:6
inscrutable ways, 118(6):1
knowledge of, 103(1):3
long-suffering, 102:16
magnificent works of, 103(1):3; 103(3):25;
103(4):2
most high above all nations, 112:3
mouth (= word), 118(6):2
mysterious acts of power, 105:9-11
omnipresence, 99:5; 102:28
omniscience, 100:7
patience; forbearance, 100:2,13; 102:16
power as “hands,” 118(18):1
remember his wonderful deeds, 110:4
rests in his holy ones [the humble], 112:4
right hand has proved its might, 117:11
rock melted into pools of water, 113(1):11
seen with the heart, 99:5
servants of, 103(1):15,16
sin: forgetting his wonderful works,
105:6,7,13,20
substance of, 109:12
sun, 120:12
supreme good, 102:8
swearing: As I live…, 109:17
testimonies, 118(1):2; 118(11):6;
118(22):3; 118(27):2; 118(28):1;
118(29):2
See also covenant; law; promise;
testimonies
transcendence, 113(1):14
unchanging in his eternity, 113(1):14
voice of, 99:1
world failed to recognize…, 103(1):8
See also commandments; justice; law;
love; mercy; providence; Son of
God; Trinity; will of God; etc.
godless, 118(1):3; 118(21):3; 120:3
God, 113(2):1
gold, 113(2):5
good and evil, 99:5; 119:9
choice, 102:8
Christians, 99:12
eye for an eye, 108:4
falling away from good, 118(20):1
God makes good out of evil, 104:17
God’s patience with evil, 100:2,13
good news from bad person, 100:10
happiness desired by all, 118(1):1
if you turn your face away…,
103(4):12-13
love repaid with hatred, 108:6
one will be taken, the other left, 99:13
repayment for God’s gifts, 102:3,5
responses (six), 108:4
returning good for evil, 115:4;
118(7):1,2,4
sun rises over all, 120:12
supreme good: keeping God’s law,
104:34; 105:5
sweetness, 118(17):1
temptations, 99:11
See also sin; temptation
good works, 103(1):14,19; 103(3):13; 104:2;
111:3; 118(12):2,4; 118(24):2; 120:2
grace, 102:15,19,20,23,24; 103(1):6;
103(2):10; 103(3):5,8,13; 104:7;
105:28,36; 109:2; 118(4):2,3; 118(5):4;
118(10):5; 118(11):4; 118(13):1;
118(15):2; 118(16):6; 118(17):2,4;
118(19):7; 118(25):1,2,6; 118(26):1,7;
118(27):3,9
gloss, 101(1):5,12; 102:9,22; 103(3):9,10,12;
104:26; 105:19
greed, 118(11):6
Greek language, 118(14):2
grief, 101(1):6
groaning, 101(1):2; 101(2):1,2; 103(3):12
guardian, 120:6,7,12,14
Haggai, 111:1
hail (plague), 104:23
Ham, land of, 104:15
hand[s], 108:29; 118(18):1

Voume III/19
filled with goodness, 103(4)12
hand of your right hand, 120:7
left hand; right hand, 120:8,9,10,11,12,13
power, 120:11
happiness, 105:34; 117:10; 118(14):5; 120:8,9
hope for, 118(1):3
seeking God with whole heart, 118(1):2
unified in the way, 118(1):1,2
harts (deer), 103(3)18
hate, 104:17; 108:6,7; 118(29):1
healing, 102:6,15; 105:37; 106:11; 109:3; 118(18):4
health, 100:12,13; 103(3)13,14; 104:17; 106:12; 108:32; 111:3; 113(1):5,6; 118(1):2,3; 118(2):1; 118(5):4; 118(6):1; 118(11):6; 118(19):7; 119:2,5,9
ascents in, 119:1,8; 120:1,3
Blessed are the pure of heart, 103(1):4
cry, in prayer, 118(29):1
depraved, 100:6
enlarged; running, 118(10):6; 118(11):2,5; 118(14):4
God is seen with, 99:5
guests in, 100:11
hardness of, 118(17):8
insatiable, 100:9
interior house, 100:4
laws written upon, 118(11):1
straight; bent, 100:6
straightforwardness of, 118(4):5
heaven, 102:26; 103(3):3; 111:3; 112:4,5; 113(2):11,12; 118(1):3; 118(21):1
God's promises, 109:1,2
God's words without reading, 119:6
heavenly seeds; harvest, 112:6
people in, called "lowly," 118(10):6; 118(11):1,2,5; 118(14):4
God's promises, 109:1,2
iniquity, 100:4,9,13; 118(3):3; 118(24):1,6; 118(26):9; 118(27):6
innocence: stainless path, 100:4
intolerance, 99-9
intoxication, 103(3)13
Isaac, 104:7,8,9,36; 112:8; 119:7
Ishmael, 119:2
Israel, 104:5,15; 118(22):1; 120:6
Jacob, 101(2):15; 104:5,8,9,36
vision of ladders, 119:2
jealousy, 118(12):5; 118(28):2
Jesus Christ, 103(4)10; 107:1; 111:6; 118(12):1,5; 118(28):2; 120:6
I AM WHO AM, 101(2):10,12,14; 103(1):3; 104:4
idolatry, 105:21,25,26,30; 113(2):1,2,3,4,6,7
image of God, 101(1):11,15; 102:3; 103(4)2
immortality, 99:8; 101(2):14; 114:8
inheritance, 105:5,33,34; 117:13; 118(23):7; 119:7
hunger, 104:11,38; 106:4,6,9
hymns, 99:16; 102:2,28
hypocrisy, 99:13; 118(2):1

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
are you able to drink the cup..., 119:1
Ascension clouds used as chariot, 103(1):11
why stand here gazing..., 109:12
asleep (dies) on the cross, 102:10
beauty; ugliness, 103(1):5
Before Abraham came to be ..., 104:10
birth of, 109:16; 118(21):2
bridegroom and bride, 101(1):2
charity beyond knowing, 103(1):14
child and elders in temple, 118(22):3, 4
Church and, See Church
confessing, 117:1
cornerstone, 105:36; 111:1; 117:1-18.22
crucified, 100:9; 101(1):8; 101(2):7;
103(3):25.2; 118(3):2; 119:2
See also below: passion and death
David's son, and lord, 109:3, 4, 5, 6, 7
dismantle this temple ..., 111:1
disturbed the people, 102:15
do not turn your face away..., 101(1):3
dominion in midst of foes, 109:11
disturbed the people, 102:15
do not turn your face away..., 101(1):3
dominion in midst of foes, 109:11
enemies of, 101(1):9-10; 108:4, 5, 18 fair of
form beyond all..., 103(1):5
Father, forgive them..., 108:5
good rendered for evil, 108:4
hand of God, 108:29; 118(32):5
Have pity, son of David, 109:5
heavenly, 100:3
high fortune; low abasement, 101(1):1
humanity, 119:2
I am not alone, 109:13
I am the light..., 118(23):1
I am the living bread..., 101(1):5; 102:10;
103(3):14
I am the way..., 103(4):6
I am with you ..., 101(2):9; 113(1):10
Jewish, 108:18
King of ages, 109:10
knees weakened from fasting, 108:26
Know that the Lord is God, 99:15
life of, 101(1):1
love, or hate, him gratis, 108:3
lowliness and glory, 109:18
mediator, 103(4):8; 109:2; 118(15):4;
118(23):1
money; funds, 103(3):1
mountain of ascent, 119:1
Name:
every knee should bow..., 109:20
name from “chrism”, 103(3):13
one, true, anointed king, 104:10
passion and death, 118(26):4; 120:13
cup of salvation, 115:5
disgrace; curse, 108:27
do not leave me, 118(29):7
Father, if it is possible..., 100:6
let him come down from the cross,
103(1):5
like a lengthening shadow..., 108:25
my soul is sorrowful..., 103(3):11;
108:24
no fair form or seemliness..., 103(1):5
patient suffering, 108:5
prophecy, 113(1):4
salvation of all peoples, 105:37
sacred, 108:21-22
peace, 119:9
persecutors like bees, 117:7
poverty, 101(1):1; 103(3):11
power of God, 109:14
praise pretended, really cursing, 108:3
priesthood, 109:17, 18
prophecy re betrayal by Judas, 108:1
render to Caesar, 118(31):1
resurrection, 101(2):7; 103(3):23, 24;
120:6
rock, 102:9; 103(3):5, 6, 17; 113(1):12
salvation of God, 118(13):1
Savior, 118(32):5
sceptre of power, 109:13
seated at Father's right hand,
109:7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 18
servile status, 118(22):5
share in our mortality, 118(16):6;
118(19):6
sinful woman approached his feet, 100:8
sinlessness, 118(17):9; 118(22):5
solid food, 119:2
storm calmed by, 108:5; 120:7
stream of life, 109:20
suffering and exaltation, 104:40; 117:18;
120:1
suffering and the divine nature, 101(1):2
transient acts performed by, 109:5
two natures, one person, 101(1):2
understanding God’s testimonies,
118(6):3
victory over the world, 102:7
what do you think of Christ..., 109:6
whoever has seen me..., 109:14
You would have no power over me..., 103(3):22
See also Christian life; Church;
Incarnation; Son of God; Word of
God
Enos or Jacob, 113(1):2
forty years in desert, 101(2):15 his blood be upon us, 108:20
Judas and, 108:20
persecution by, 108:19
priesthood of Aaron, 109:17
rivers turned into desert, 106:13
Job, 100:12; 103(3):22; 103(4):7-9; 118(11):6; 118(12):4; 118(23):7; 118(25):7; 120:2
judgment day, 101(1):17; 110:7; 111:5; 118(6):2; 118(29):6; 118(30):2,4,8; 118(32):3
judgment(s), 100:1,2,3,12,13; 102:14; 105:4,5; 109:19; 110:7; 111:2; 118(6):1; 118(12):4; 118(15):5; 118(16):5; 118(22):6; 118(26):1,2; 118(29):6; 118(32):6
judgment day, 101(1):17; 109:12; 111:5; 118(20):4; 118(29):6
come, take possession of the kingdom, 113(1):9; 118(6):2; 120:11
Where is their God…, 113(1):13
Juno, 113(2):4
just person: reward or gifts to, 102:12,13,14
forming right judgment, 105:4,5
give me life, 118(12):5
God’s wonders, 119(10):4
meditating on, 118(6):4,5
passionately wanted, 118(8):5; 119(9):1
teach me your ways…, 118(5):4
Kedar, 119:7,8
kingdom (of God), 102:26, 109:15; 118(29):9
kings: anointing, 104:10; 109:18
knowledge, 118(11):3; 118(17):3,4
profitable, 118(17):2
refusing to know someone, 100:7
ladders (Jacob’s vision), 119:2
laity, 99:13
lamb, 103(3):22; 108:26
lamentation, 101(1):6
lamp, 118(23):1,3
land: slain by bloodshed, 105:31
lapsed Catholics, 106:14
all day long I ponder, 118(22):1
consciousness of sin, 118(25):5
duties of God’s people, 104:35
eternal law of God, 103(4):9
faith; works, 118(10):5
flagrant violations, 118(25):5
great person into little one, 118(27):3
keeping, 118(46):1
meditation on, 118(19):4; 118(32):5
remembering but not loving, 118(11):2
sin = breaking God’s law, 118(1):3; 118(2):1,2,3; 118(3):1,3
sin abounding, 118(25):1
supreme good: keeping God’s law, 104:34
unwilling obedience, 118(11):1
where there is no law…, 118(24):7; 118(25):1,4
written on stone; on earth, 102:11
See also commandments
Lebanon (mountain), 103(3):15
Lent, 110:1
lie: every human being is a liar, 115:3,4
life, 118(19):4; 118(21):5
according to your word, 118(10):3
freeness of my days, 101(2):8,9,12
length of days [eternity] , 120:10
My days have slipped away…, 101(1):12
narrow path, 118(11):5
redeemed from corruption, 102:6
repayment for God’s gifts, 102:3,5,7
reward asked for, 118(30):7
See also Christian life; conduct of life
light, 103(2):6; 104:3; 118(12):2; 118(18):4; 118(23):1,3; 120:4,5
lion, 103(3):22; 103(4):6; 108:26
lion cubs, 100:12; 103(3):22,23
litigation, 118(24):3
lodgers, 104:25; 108:25
longing, 118(4):2; 118(8):3; 118(10):2;
Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120

118(15):1; 118(20):1,2; 118(28):3

See also desire

Lord’s Prayer, 104:1
do not bring us into temptation, 118(15):2
forgive us our debts, 103(1):19; 118(3):2;
118(19):7

hallowed be thy name, 103(1):3

love, 100:12; 103(1):1,14; 104:1,3; 108:4;
117:12,23; 118(3):3; 118(22):1; 118(23):8;
118(27):3; 118(28):2,3; 118(31):3; 119:5

bear with one another,..., 117:23; 118(27):5
because he will hear my pleading, 114:1
enemies and persecutors, 118(9):3
first must learn to love self, 118(8):2
fullness of the law, 118(26):8
God; self; neighbor, 118(11):6; 118(27):6
good works and, 103(1):19
heart set on something, 100:5
holy vs. carnal, 103(1):13
loving love itself, 118(8):3,4
mercy and, 102:11

midnight, 118(16):5
midway (the word), 103(2):11
milk, 119:2
mind, 101(1):1; 118(8):4; 118(18):4;
118(26):1
ministers, 109:1
mirror, 103(1):4; 118(4):3
Mishnah, 118(20):5
monastery, 99:11,12
money, 103(3):12; 118(11):6; 118(12):2
moon, 102:9; 120:12,13

Church within time, 103(3):19

morning star, 109:16

mortality, 103(4):10; 109:20

skin as symbol of, 103(1):8

Moses, 101(2):10,15; 102:15; 103(1):8;
104:20; 105:21,28; 110:1; 113(1):11;
118(21):2; 118(26):4,8; 118(31):8;
120:6

motivation; false preachers, 115:1

mountains, 103(2):7,9,10,11; 103(3):5,7,18;
103(4):16; 113(1):1; 119:1; 120:4
mouth, 113(2):2,3; 118(6):2; 118(23):4; 120:8
mysteries, 103(2):1

veiled in Old Testament, 113(1):4

Mystical Body of Christ, 101(1):3;
118(19):1.7, 118(20):4

mysteries veiled in Old Testament, 113(1):4

trees of the plains, 103(3):2

natural law, 118(25):4

nature: witness to the creator, 118(27):1,2

need(y), 101(1):5; 102:6,12,13; 103(3):10;
108:24; 113(1):14

neighbor, 118(8):2

Neptune, 113(2):4,5

neuter pronouns, 118(15):9

New Covenant, 110:8; 118(11):1

night, 100:12,13; 118(15):7,8; 118(29):3,4;
120:3,12

nimis, 108:32; 118(4):1

Noah, 101(2):11; 120:3

Noah’s ark: animals as figures of all nations,
103(3):2

onagers, 103(3):4

original sin, 101(1):5,11; 102:17; 103(2):11;
103(4):6; 118(9):1; 118(11):6; 118(15):4;
118(17):5,7; 118(22):8; 118(25):5

see also Abrahamic; prophets; psalms; etc.
onagers, 103(3):4

See also subhead figures under Jesus Christ

Voulume III/19
orphans, 108:11
owl, 101(1):7,8
oxen, 103(3)9
pagans, 105:29; 118(9):3
pain, 102:5
parable: wheat and tares, 119:6
pardoning, 111:4
parents, 108:15; 118(18):3
pastors: ruling a church, 106:7
path, 118(16):2; 118(23):1,3
patience, 105:34; 108:5
Paul, Saint, 103(2):11; 103(3)7,9; 112:6; 118(31):4
both father and mother, 101(1):8
charity of, 103(1):16
experience of God’s mercy, 100:2
fees, 103(3)11
See also Saul (later Paul)
pelican, 101(1):7,8
people of God: God’s house, 115:9
God’s temple is yourselves, 111:1
peoples: individual persons, 106:3
waters (the word) as, 106:12
Poor, 105:25
perfection, 102:8,9; 105:36
perjury, 109:17
blazed like a fire amid thorns, 117:7
Church’s victory over, 117:12
future; foretold in psalms, 103(2):7
Lord held me up, 117:8
unwavering perfection, 118(21):8
Peter, Saint, 103(3)16; 108:26; 118(13):3
Church and, 108:17
denied Christ, 115:3
rock, 103(3)7
unclean food as figure of Gentile nations, 103(3)2
Pharisées, 100:8; 118(1):2
Phineas, 105:26,27
Pilate, 108:18
pilgrimage, 114:8; 118(8):1; 118(10):2; 118(15):7,8; 119:6,7,8,9
plagues of Egypt, 104:19-27,39
pleasure, 102:9; 110:1,9; 118(8):4; 118(25):7
pool: disturbance; healing, 102:15
poor person, 101(1):1; 103(3)10; 106:14; 111:7
potter’s vessels, 120:14
poverty, 101(1):2; 103(3)10; 108:19
blessed are the poor…, 103(4)14
power, 109:14; 120:11
praise, 99:2,6; 101(1):9; 101(2):5,6; 102:2,4,9; 103(4)17; 104:2; 105:3,12,37; 108:2,32; 110:9; 110:1; 112:1; 116; 117:23; 118(11):3; 118(23):4
from now on and for ever, 112:2
insincere, 119:4
Let them exalt him…, 106:13
sevenfold, 118(31):4
winning; vanity, 118(12):2
you have burst my bonds, 115:7
See also confession
prayer, 106:6; 108:5; 118(5):3; 118(16):2; 118(32):1
accord with Lord’s Prayer, 103(1):19
accounted sinful, 108:9,18
ask, seek, knock, 118(14):2; 118(22):1,2; 118(27):4
bend my heart…, 118(11):6
cry of the heart, 118(29):1
Hear me quickly, 118(1):3
heard, 118(14):1
idols and, 113(2):5
in my days I called upon the Lord, 114:3,4
mode of all preceding verses, 118(14):1
regard for the humble, 101(1):18
sin effaced by, 108:9
thanksgiving and petition, 103(1):3
three conditions for, 103(1):19
preachers, 103(1):19; 103(3)9,10; 103(13):2
clouds representing, 103(1):11
false motives, 115:1
mountains a figure of, 103(2):11
preaching, 100:10; 103(2):11
 foolishness of, 103(1):8
presence of God, 104:3; 113(1):10; 113(2):1; 118(32):2
pride, 100:9; 102:21; 103(4)16; 106:10,13; 112:1,2; 118(2):1; 118(9):1; 118(15):8; 118(26):4; 120:3,5
priesthood, 109:17
Prodigal Son, 118(5):2; 118(8):2; 118(9):2; 118(23):5
progress, 118(11):3; 118(20):1; 119:3; 120:8
property, 108:13,17,18
prophecy: future foretold by past events, 113(1):1
gift of, 103(1):9
prophets, 103(1):8; 103(3)5; 104:10; 106:13; 118(19):6; 118(29):5

Expositions Of The Psalms 99-120
era of promises, 109:1
reward due to, 103(3):10
stones in Zion, 101(1):15
symbolic meaning for Christians, 113(1):4
welcoming, 102:13
protection, 120:12,13
providence, 104:11,28,37,39,40
Psalm 56 (59 and 107), 107:1-2
Psalm 118:
letters of Hebrew alphabet, 118(32):8
profundity of, 118 (page 342)
stanzas of eight, 118(21):2
head/body of Church in, 118(22):3
interconnected, 113(2):1
mysteries revealed in, 113(1):1
titles of, 105:1
understanding: stainless path, 100:4
punishment, 118(25):7
purity, 103(1):3
blessed are the pure of heart…, 109:8
blessedness of, 109:8

Psalm 116:
sacraments, 103(1):9,14
reparation, 102:3-5,7
repentance, 102:16; 108:19; 118(27):9
rest, turn round, my soul…, 114:6
resurrection of the body, 101(2):14; 102:7,9; 103(1):11
retribution, 118(7):1
revenge, 102:11
reward, 118(22):2; 118(23):8
God rewards his own gifts, 118(7):3
sought for good works, 111:3; 118(14):5
winning praise, 118(12):2
right hand, 108:33
righteousness, 99:5; 100:2,4,9; 103(3)14,19; 103(4)14; 105:27; 106:10; 109:8; 111:3,7; 117:15; 118(10):6; 118(11):1; 118(15):7,8; 118(22):1.2; 118(25):5,6; 118(27):2,9; 118(28):5
ritual vessels, 113(2):6
rock, 102:9; 103(3)5,6,17,18,22
roof, 101(1):7
sacraments, 103(1):9,14
sacrifice, 103(4):3; 106:13; 117:22
free-will offerings of mouth, 118(23):4
self-dedication, 115:8
God carried in bodies of, 101(2):14
God looks on them, still on earth, 112:5
happiness of, 117:10
heavens as, 101(2):14
power of intercession, 105:21
sin and, 118(2):1; 118(3):1
splendor of, 109:15
salvation, 104:40; 105:36,37; 110:2,6; 115:5,8,9; 117:9,16,19–20,23; 118(13):1,2; 118(20):1; 118(21):6; 118(24):4; 118(31):6,8; 119:3; 120:6
Sarah, 101(1):2; 112:8
Saul, King, 103(1):9; 104:10
Saul (later Paul), 108:19; 109:18; 118(7):2
scandal, 118(3):5; 119:6; 120:12,13
schism, 103(3):5; 105:17; 106:14
scandal, 118(31):5; 119:6; 120:12,13
self-dedication, 115:8
self-control, 110:1
self-knowledge, 118(8):2; 118(17):2
self-seeking, 105:34
servants, 99:10; 101(2):15; 102:28; 103(3):10; 104:17; 109:12; 115:1,2
service, 103(39):10; 104:40
seven (number), 118(31):4
seventy (number), 111:1
Simeon, 107:1
sheep, 118(32):7
shepherd, 99:15
ship: church as, 106:7,13
figure of church buildings, 103(4):5
storm peril, 106:12
Shout with joy, 99:3–4,5,6,8; 102:8
sin, 104:13; 105:5; 118(20):1
Simon Magus, 103(1):9
simplicity, 106:13
sin, 104:17; 118(24):4
abounding, 102:15; 118(26):7
admonitiones, 105:31

Voulume III/19
consciousness of, 118(27):3; 118(28):5

deletion of, 108:15

disbelieving, 109:8

giving, See forgiveness of sin.

If we say we have no sin

outside the law, 118(25):1,2,3

prayer effaces, 108:9

sin that dwells in me, 118(2):2,3; 118(3):1

we sinned with our fathers, 105:6

will to, lives on, 118(25):7

See also commandments; confession; forgiveness; law; temptation

Sinai (Mount), 118(11):1

sinners, 100:2,3,4,12; 101(1):9,10; 101(2):3; 102:1,11,16,28; 103(3)18; 105:2,18; 118(15):6; 118(16):6; 118(25):1,2,3; 118(29):6; 119:5; 120:5

curse: may sinners disappear... , 103(4)19

do not give to a sinner, 102:13

future retribution, 108:7

God wills to pardon, 110:2

heaven promised to, 109:2

justification of, 110:3

remorse, 111:8

ropes of, 118(16):4

salvation, 118(30):3

unjust thoughts, 118(24):6

violators of the law, 118(24):7; 118(25):1,4

skin, 103(1):8

sky, 103(1):18

Bible’s higher regions, 103(1):9; 103(2):3

higher regions covered with water, 103(1):9,10

as protector, 102:18,19

rolled up like a scroll, 103(1):8

stretched out like a skin, 103(1):7,8; 103(2):2

slandering, 118(26):3,4; 118(27):7

slave(-s; -ry), 99:7; 103(3)9; 115:6; 118(17):1; 118(21):2

sleep, 120:6,7

smoke, 101(1):4; 103(4)16

snake: church to watch for head, 103(4)6

sojourner, 104:15

soldiers, 118(31):1

solitary places, 101(1):7

solitude, 99:9

Solomon, 118(22):3

Son of God:

form of servant/slave, 101(1):1,2; 103(1):5,6; 103(4)8; 109:12,14

fulfilling God’s promises, 109:3

taught/begotten by Father, 118(22):3

See also Jesus Christ; Word of God

Song of Ascents, 119:1,7; 120:1

soul:

corporeal body weighs down, 102:6,9,10

filled to satisfaction, 105:15

inward powers, 102:2

pilgrimage, 119:8,9

saved from persecutors, 108:33

stuck to the hard floor, 118(10):1

wind as allegorical representation, 103(1):13

See also body and soul; spirit

sparrow, 101(1):7,8; 103(1):8; 103(3)16,17

speaking:

do not wonder what you are to say, 115:4

mouths spoke empty words, 120:8

See also mouth; tongue

spines (suggest sinners), 103(3)18

spirit(s), 99:5; 103(1):5,16; 103(2):4; 118(17):1; 118(22):1

spiritual life:

ascent, 119:3

birds as symbol, 103(3)5

cleansing the heart, 99:5

four temptations, 106:4-12

hold fast to God, 118(10):2

holy love vs. carnal love, 103(1):13

make me whole, 118(29):2

rest: soul’s activity, 114:6

solid food, 119:2

soul constantly in your hands, 118(23):5,6

temporal vs. eternal goods, 120:10

See also Christian life; flesh; heart; soul

spirital warfare, 112:5

springs, 103(3)2; 118(27):9

star, 109:16

Stephen, Saint, 103(1):16; 108:4,19

steward: three duties (figure), 101(1):7

stones, 101(1):15,16,17,18; 102:11

storm, 106:12,15

straightforwardness, 111:3

streams, 103(2):11; 103(3):3; 109:20

strength, 101(2):6,7; 103(4)14; 104:3,29; 107:1; 109:12,14,15; 115:3,5; 117:9; 118(4):5; 118(10):4,6; 118(23):7; 118(26):2; 118(27):3; 118(31):8

suffering, 101(1):4; 118(17):2; 118(30):7

sun, 103(3)19,20,21-22; 113(2):5; 120:12,13

suspicion, 118(12):4,5; 118(13):4

swearing, 109:17

sweetness, 118(17):1,2,3,6,7; 118(19):2; 118(22):7; 118(23):4

sword, 104:13

symbols: future/past/present, 113(1):3,4

undivided state of birds, 103(3)5
tales, 118(20):5
talkativeness, 118(6):4
teaching, 118(17):3; 118(27):8
tears, 118(27):9; 118(28):1
Tellus (goddess), 113(2):4
temperance, 110:1
temple: holy; people of God, 111:1
restoration (prophecy), 111:1
temporal goods, 102:10; 103(3)9; 104:37; 105:7,22; 111:6,7; 114:4; 118(11):6; 118(12):2; 119:7
faith and, 120:9
left hand as symbol of, 120:8,9
sticking fast to earthly things, 118(10):1-2
use for God’s sake, 104:40
temptation, 99:11; 100:12,13; 102:5; 103(3)22; 103(4):4,6,8; 118(8):1; 118(10):2; 118(15):2; 118(26):2; 120:11,13,14
error and hunger, 106:4
four (significant number), 106:4-12
pastors ruling a church, 106:7
thirst, 103(1):17; 118(27):5
thorns, 99:8; 102:17
thoughts, 118(24):6
thousand (perfect number), 104:7
threshing-floor, 100:12; 119:9
throne: established in heaven, 102:26
fullness of time, 101(1):14; 118(26):7; 118(29):4
morning star, 109:16
tithes, 105:6
tongue: life and death in hands of, 120:11
treasure, 111:7
trees, 104:24
tribulation, 100:12
Trinity, 101(2):13; 120:12
analogy: man begs for three loaves, 102:10
Beginning, 109:13
See also God; Son of God; Word of God
trouble, 101(1):3
turtle-dove, 101(1):8
twelve (number), 103(3):2; 108:10
ugliness, 103(1):4,5,6
unbelief, 112; 118(7):1; 118(8):18; 114:7
refusal to believe, 118(3):3
unbelievers outnumber others, 115:1
understanding, 100:11; 106:15; 110:9; 118(17):3; 118(18):3,4; 118(19):1; 118(22):3,4,8; 118(26):6; 118(32):1,2
give, and I shall live, 118(28):7
given to “little ones,” 118(27):3
law of God and, 118(11):4
ungodly, 101(1):15
unity, 102:15; 106:14; 113(2):10; 118(13):3; 118(16):6; 118(22):3; 119:7,9
unrighteousness, 102:13
vainglory, 118(29):1
valley of weeping, 119:1; 120:1,2
valleys, 103(2):10
vanity, 118(12):1,2,3; 118(16):2
Venus, 113(2):4
vice, 106:6
vineyard, 103(1):11
virgin birth, 101(1):1,8; 109:6,16
virginity, 99:13
virtues, 103(1):13; 109:14
vocation: spiritual way of life, 103(3)16
Vulcan, 113(2):4
wandering, 106:9; 108:12
washing of hands, 118(22):4
water(s):
charity of the Spirit, 103(1):9
leaping spring; eternal life, 113(1):11
mountainous waves, 103(2):9
peoples as, 106:12
rivers of living water, 103(1):10;
118(10):6
They shall flee before your rebuke, 103(2):8
will overtop the mountains, 103(2):7
way, 118(31):8
duties of God’s people, 104:35
God led them astray, 106:14
law of the Lord, 118(1):1; 118(2):1,2,3;
118(3):1,3
straightening one’s paths, 118(5):4
waywardness, 118(1):1
wealth, 101(1):1; 103(3):17
whip(-ping), 102:20; 114:5; 118(13):3;
118(31):3
whitewashed wall, 103(1):6
wicked(-ness):
communicating with charity, 103(1):9
hate wisdom, 118(29):1
malevolent persons, 118(24):3
wife, 118(12):3
will (of God), 100:6; 101(1):11; 102:6;
105:34,35
act created by God, 118(11):6
freedom can override, 110:2
keeping the commandments, 118(11):5
preferring one’s own, 111:4
wills (testaments), 108:17
wind, 102:23; 103(1):12,13

Voumle III/19
wine, 103(3):13,14
wine skin, 118(20):3
wings of the winds, 103(1):12,13; 103(2):2
winnowing, 119:7
wisdom, 101(2):2; 101(2):2; 103(1):8; 103(4):2;
104:14; 112:2; 118(1):2; 118(22):2,7,8;
118(29):1; 120:10
wise persons, 106:15
witness-bearing, 118(9):2; 118(23):7;
118(30):5,6
failure to speak, 115:1
I believed, therefore I spoke, 115:2
womb, 109:16
word games, 118(20):5
Word of God:
  everywhere, 103(1):8
In the beginning…, 101(1):1; 103(3):3;
109:6; 118(13):2; 119:1,2; 120:6
light, 118(23):1
reigning as God with God, 109:10
See also Incarnation; Jesus Christ; Son of
God
word(s), 104:19
initial letters, 103(3):22
words of God (holy scripture):
  bread for the soul, 101(1):5
  exulting over, 118(31):3
  fear of, 118(31):1,2
  healing, 106:11
  lamp for my feet, 118(23):1
  sharp arrows…, 119:5
  work, 103(3):24
  works: faith and, 118(22):1
  law of, 118(10):5
  of mercy, 111:4,5; 112:6,8
  world: abandonment by God, 118(4):5
  carnal servitude, 113(1):6
  renouncing, 113(1):3
  worship, 113(2):1,5; 118(11):6
  wrongdoing: difficulty in right action, 106:5
yearning, 118(4):2; 118(20):1,2
youth (person), 102:9,10; 118(5):2
Zachaeus, 103(3):11
zeal, 118(22):2; 118(30):6
Zechariah, 111:1
Zion, 101(1):14,15,17,18; 103(3):3;
109:10,11
  meaning: “Look-out Post”, 101(2):4
Index from

Expositions of the Psalms 121-150

Translation and notes by Maria Boulding, OSB, John E. Rotelle, OSA, editor
As the psalms are a microcosm of the Old Testament, so the Expositions of the Psalms can be seen as a microcosm of Augustinian thought.

Volume III/20 Homilies/Expositions

Hardcover: 978-1-56548-211-1, 6 x 9 in., 536 pp., 2004
Paperback: 978-1-56548-210-4, 6 x 9 in., 536 pp., 2004

Includes:

Expositions of the Psalms
(Enarrationes in Psalms)

All indexes are as they appear in the original New City Press publication. Future editions of this compendium will improve both the look and usefulness of each index. Reader feedback would be much appreciated and valued.
# Index of Scripture

(Prepared by Michael Dolan)

(The numbers after the scriptural reference refer to the section of the work)

## Old Testament

**Genesis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:8</td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:9-10</td>
<td>135, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:22</td>
<td>127, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>137, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:24</td>
<td>138, 2; 140, 3; 142, 3; 150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:19</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>126, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:3</td>
<td>145, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:6</td>
<td>148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18:27</td>
<td>147, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:18</td>
<td>147, 16; 147, 17; 147, 18; 147, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:23</td>
<td>134, 8; 136, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exodus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>137, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:13</td>
<td>121, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>121, 5; 127, 15; 130, 12; 134, 4; 134, 6; 143, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:15</td>
<td>121, 5; 134, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>135, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:13</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:20,22-23</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Deuteronomy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25:4</td>
<td>145, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32:35</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Judges**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:37</td>
<td>137, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1 Samuel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15:20</td>
<td>131, 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Job

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:21</td>
<td>138, 17; 144, 4; 144, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9-10</td>
<td>133, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:10</td>
<td>144, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:1</td>
<td>122, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:2, LXX</td>
<td>142, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:28</td>
<td>135, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:19</td>
<td>147, 24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Psalms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>123, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1-2</td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:4</td>
<td>142, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:6</td>
<td>141, 6; 141, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:1-2</td>
<td>144, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8</td>
<td>122, 2; 126, 8; 126, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6(5)</td>
<td>131, 15; 138, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9(8)</td>
<td>145, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3(2)</td>
<td>139, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:4-5(3)</td>
<td>142, 14; 143, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6(5)</td>
<td>138, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:8(7)</td>
<td>149, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:4-5(3-4)</td>
<td>130, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15(14)</td>
<td>139, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9B(10):13</td>
<td>123, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2(11:1)</td>
<td>124, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:6(11:5)</td>
<td>134, 16; 140, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:9(12:8)</td>
<td>139, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5(13:4)</td>
<td>139, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14(15):5</td>
<td>128, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

Volume III/20
72(73):1 146, 7
72(73):1-3 124, 2
72(73):11-13 124, 1
72(73):20 131, 8; 147, 7
74:4(75:3) 140, 25
74:7-8(75:6-7) 141, 4
75:5(76:4) 131, 8
75:7(76:6) 131, 8
75:12(76:11) 132, 2
76:3(77:2) 137, 18; 142, 15; 143, 11
77(78):25 143, 10
79:8(7) 127, 9
80:2(81:1) 143, 6
80(81):7 134, 9
81(82):2 135, 2
82:19(83:18) 143, 12
83:3(84:2) 126, 12
83:5(84:4) 121, 3; 131, 10; 133, 1;
141, 19; 144, 8; 145, 7;
147, 3; 148, 17
83:6(84:5) 126, 6
83:6(84:5) 126, 6
83(84):10 143, 19
84:13(85:12) 142, 11
86:4(87:3) 142, 3
86(87):5 142, 3
87:5(88:4-5) 142, 8
95(96):1 149, 2; 149, 3
95(96):4-5 135, 3
100(101):1-2 150, 3
101:27-28 121, 6; 138, 8; 146, 11
101(102):27 143, 18
102(103):14 142, 12
103(104):24 135, 7; 142, 12
103(104):30 142, 42
109(110):4 131, 18
109(110):7 123, 7
111(112):10 137, 14
111(112):13 149, 7
112(113):7-8 140, 21
113(114):1 142, 18
113(114):17 144, 5
114(116):3-4 136, 5; 137, 12
115(116):15 140, 21
118(119):67 147, 27
118(119):71 147, 27
119(120):2 123, 6
119(120):3-4 139, 14
119(120):4 143, 13
120(121):1 124, 4
120(121):1-2 124, 4
120(121):2 150, 2
120(121):4 126, 3
121(122):2 123, 4; 124, 3; 136, 4
121(122):3 124, 3; 146, 11
122(123):4 131, 24
125(126):4 147, 26
125(126):6 127, 10
126(127):2 127, 10; 138, 4
126(127):4 127, 2; 132, 2
129(130):3 128, 9
132(133):1 133, 3
132(133):3 133, 2
138(139):2 126, 5
138(139):7-10 142, 16
139(140:5) 141, 9
140(141:10) 141, 19
141(142:5) 145, 7; 145, 11
142:142:6 148, 10
143(144):11-14 136, 16
143(144):15 136, 16
148:4-5 150, 2

Proverbs
1:28 144, 22
3:16, LXX 143, 18
5:22 130, 2; 139, 9
8:3, LXX 126, 13
8:27-28, LXX 137, 4
8:30, LXX 137, 4
9:8 142, 10
12:23, LXX 121, 9
17:6, LXX 143, 18
18:3 129, 1; 142, 13
20:9, LXX 149, 11
21:20, LXX 141, 1
27:2 141, 1; 144, 7

Ecclesiastes
1:2-3 141, 17
1:18 122, 6
6:9 141, 17

Song of Songs
2:5, LXX 139, 14; 143, 13
2:6 143, 18
4:8, LXX 134, 18
6:8 141, 7
8:6 121, 12

Wisdom
1:5 138, 26
1:9 134, 16
5:3 122, 9
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page References</th>
<th>Volume III/20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td>122, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>142, 3, 148, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-8</td>
<td>122, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:9</td>
<td>142, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td>147, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td>141, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:1</td>
<td>141, 4, 141, 15, 147, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:15</td>
<td>127, 16, 141, 19, 145, 6, 147, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:21</td>
<td>146, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>125, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:20</td>
<td>130, 7, 130, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:22</td>
<td>130, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:36</td>
<td>147, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td>144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30, LXX</td>
<td>149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20</td>
<td>141, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:30</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td>134, 2, 146, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:30</td>
<td>143, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:26</td>
<td>138, 26, 142, 13, 144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23:25</td>
<td>138, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:5</td>
<td>132, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:15-16(20-21)</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>126, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:14</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>138, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>130, 2, 139, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:22</td>
<td>131, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2-3</td>
<td>150, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:13</td>
<td>128, 4, 128, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:13, LXX</td>
<td>131, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:13</td>
<td>148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40:6</td>
<td>131, 28, 146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48:22, LXX</td>
<td>137, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:7</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52:15</td>
<td>132, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:1</td>
<td>135, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53:2</td>
<td>127, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:1</td>
<td>134, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54:13</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56:7</td>
<td>130, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57:21, LXX</td>
<td>137, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:3</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58:9, LXX</td>
<td>137, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64:4</td>
<td>127, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65:24</td>
<td>137, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66:1-2</td>
<td>131, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:29</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:14</td>
<td>147, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td>139, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:19</td>
<td>136, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:16</td>
<td>137, 17, 140, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:17.14.16</td>
<td>132, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33:11</td>
<td>144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:5-90</td>
<td>144, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11.19</td>
<td>132, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:10</td>
<td>146, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:32</td>
<td>140, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:4</td>
<td>124, 4, 131, 16, 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:11</td>
<td>134, 24, 144, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>149, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td>144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:2-3</td>
<td>126, 8, 136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:7</td>
<td>142, 13, 144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2</td>
<td>148, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume III/20

New Testament

Matthew

3:2 137, 6
3:7-9 131, 13
3:12 128, 7
4:17 150, 3
5:3 141, 5
5:5 122, 6
5:6 122, 12; 125, 6; 131, 14; 139, 17; 144, 22; 145, 17; 147, 20; 148, 10
5:8 123, 2; 130, 8; 139, 18
5:9 124, 10; 127, 13
5:10 145, 16
5:20 146, 17
5:22 129, 5; 140, 18
5:25 128, 4
5:44 132, 8; 132, 13; 138, 27
6:1 142, 15
6:3 136, 15
6:5-6 141, 3
6:9 142, 6
6:10 147, 1
6:12 129, 3; 129, 9; 140, 18; 142, 6; 147, 13
6:25 145, 14
6:33 143, 18
7:1 139, 17
7:13 145, 19
7:16 149, 2
7:21 128, 13
7:22 146, 10
7:23 138, 26; 141, 6; 146, 10
8:11-12 134, 7
8:29 130, 1
9:15 129, 12; 142, 2
10:16.28 140, 20
10:19-20 141, 5
10:22 141, 6
10:23 139, 16; 141, 11
10:24 126, 4
10:28 130, 10; 141, 4; 141, 13
10:29.31 145, 14
10:30 145, 14
10:32 141, 4
10:33 141, 9
10:34 143, 17; 149, 12
10:42 125, 12; 140, 8
11:11 140, 26
11:12 147, 27
11:15 134, 24
11:17 128, 1
11:21 147, 24

11:25 137, 2; 141, 19; 144, 13
11:28 139, 13
11:30 125, 6
12:48 127, 12
12:48-50 127, 12
13:12 146, 10
13:24-25.27-28 149, 3
13:25.26-27 139, 4
13:26 128, 8
13:30 147, 19; 149, 3
13:34 149, 3
13:36-37-38 149, 3
13:39 128, 7; 128, 12; 128, 13
15:10-11 125, 6
15:11 125, 7
15:19-20 125, 7
16:16-17 135, 22
16:22 125, 13; 138, 22
16:23 125, 13; 138, 22
16:24 149, 8
17:23-26 137, 16
19:6 138, 2; 140, 3; 149, 15
19:10 145, 15
19:11-12 149, 15
19:16 136, 13
19:16-21 146, 16
19:17 136, 13; 144, 3
19:20 136, 13
19:21 136, 13; 149, 14
19:23 146, 16
19:24 132, 4
19:26 146, 16
19:28 121, 9; 126, 5; 144, 6
20:22 123, 7; 126, 4
20:22-23 126, 5
20:27 146, 16
20:28 137, 4
21:13 130, 2; 139, 15
22:40 125, 15; 140, 2
23:3 128, 6
23:9 127, 12
23:26 125, 5
23:37 121, 3
24:12 131, 13; 138, 14; 141, 16; 147, 9
24:12.13 139, 11
24:13 131, 13; 138, 14
24:14 134, 17
24:23-24 147, 18
24:35 122, 4
24:40 132, 12
24:40-41 132, 4
25:8 147, 11
25:9 147, 11
25:10 147, 11
25:11 147, 13

Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150
## Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25:21-23</td>
<td>139, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:30</td>
<td>139, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:34-35-37-40</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41</td>
<td>138, 17; 140, 10; 144, 12; 148, 11; 149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25:41-43</td>
<td>139, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:34</td>
<td>138, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26:39</td>
<td>144, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27:4-40-42</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28:20</td>
<td>125, 2; 140, 7; 147, 18; 148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29:18</td>
<td>141, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:20</td>
<td>148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:21</td>
<td>134, 3; 134, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:26-27</td>
<td>136, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30:30</td>
<td>143, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:17</td>
<td>130, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:20</td>
<td>140, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31:31</td>
<td>140, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34:34</td>
<td>142, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:1</td>
<td>125, 11; 134, 11; 139, 8; 149, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:32</td>
<td>147, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:36-37-38</td>
<td>143, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:38-39</td>
<td>143, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:45</td>
<td>134, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:48-49</td>
<td>125, 5; 140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:47-48</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:9-10</td>
<td>141, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:17</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:30</td>
<td>130, 8; 146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:30-31</td>
<td>130, 8; 146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:33</td>
<td>125, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:35-36</td>
<td>125, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:41-43</td>
<td>125, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:44</td>
<td>142, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:32</td>
<td>150, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:11-12</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:12-13</td>
<td>123, 9; 131, 12; 138, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:18</td>
<td>138, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35:20</td>
<td>138, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:9</td>
<td>121, 9; 146, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:10-12</td>
<td>136, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:19</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:24-28</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:26</td>
<td>145, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:29-31</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36:31</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37:34</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:3</td>
<td>131, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:4-5</td>
<td>131, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:11</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:12</td>
<td>146, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:13</td>
<td>128, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:14</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38:27</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:35-36</td>
<td>144, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39:37-38</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:18</td>
<td>141, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:22-23</td>
<td>138, 21; 138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:24-24</td>
<td>140, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:26-27</td>
<td>138, 21; 140, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:28-28</td>
<td>124, 7; 132, 8; 134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:23-24</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:24-25</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:29-29</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:24-25</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:28-29</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:31-31</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:32-32</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:33-33</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:34-34</td>
<td>147, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:35-35</td>
<td>123, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:36-36</td>
<td>123, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:37-37</td>
<td>131, 14; 133, 1; 139, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:38-38</td>
<td>132, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:4-4</td>
<td>126, 5; 135, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:5-5</td>
<td>132, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:6-6</td>
<td>131, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:7-7</td>
<td>131, 24; 143, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41:8-8</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

## Volume III/20
### Volume III/20

**Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:45</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:56</td>
<td></td>
<td>135, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td></td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:33</td>
<td></td>
<td>148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:34</td>
<td></td>
<td>142, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:39</td>
<td></td>
<td>131, 20; 148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:44</td>
<td></td>
<td>121, 3; 131, 14; 133, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48</td>
<td></td>
<td>136, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:48.49</td>
<td></td>
<td>125, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:49</td>
<td></td>
<td>136, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:50</td>
<td></td>
<td>137, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:39</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>126, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td>141, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:18</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 3; 142, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34-35</td>
<td></td>
<td>135, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:24-25</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td></td>
<td>147, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:35</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 8; 140, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:36</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>123, 2; 138, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>127, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>139, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 3; 142, 8; 147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:30.31</td>
<td></td>
<td>137, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:31</td>
<td></td>
<td>142, 8; 147, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:1.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>145, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>130, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:15</td>
<td></td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:32</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:33</td>
<td></td>
<td>123, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>126, 4; 148, 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acts of the Apostles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:20</td>
<td></td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>139, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:37</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:38</td>
<td></td>
<td>131, 17; 138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:45</td>
<td></td>
<td>132, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:32</td>
<td></td>
<td>131, 5; 132, 2; 132, 6; 132, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:42</td>
<td></td>
<td>150, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:49</td>
<td></td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:51</td>
<td></td>
<td>132, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:60</td>
<td></td>
<td>132, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>122, 1; 123, 1; 138, 2; 140, 3; 140, 7; 141, 11; 142, 3; 147, 26; 148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>123, 5; 149, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>143, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:27-28</td>
<td></td>
<td>137, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Romans**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:1</td>
<td></td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>139, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>124, 4; 131, 16; 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:5-6</td>
<td></td>
<td>144, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>133, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td>137, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>148, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:17</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>136, 5; 138, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:3-5</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 20; 139, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>133, 3; 143, 2; 147, 14; 150, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>146, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>138, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:6</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 5; 140, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:9</td>
<td></td>
<td>126, 7; 130, 4; 131, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21</td>
<td></td>
<td>125, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:14</td>
<td></td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:22-23</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 15; 141, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-24</td>
<td></td>
<td>147, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:23-25</td>
<td></td>
<td>139, 11; 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 12; 140, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:24-25</td>
<td></td>
<td>140, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 12; 147, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10</td>
<td></td>
<td>143, 6; 145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td>127, 16; 134, 3; 146, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:22-20</td>
<td></td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 18; 140, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-24</td>
<td></td>
<td>125, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23-25</td>
<td></td>
<td>145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td></td>
<td>122, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24-25</td>
<td></td>
<td>125, 2; 127, 5; 129, 10; 144, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:25</td>
<td></td>
<td>142, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:26</td>
<td></td>
<td>146, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:28</td>
<td></td>
<td>124, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30</td>
<td></td>
<td>147, 24; 147, 26; 150, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-32</td>
<td></td>
<td>143, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:5</td>
<td></td>
<td>144, 2; 145, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td></td>
<td>134, 8; 136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:13</td>
<td></td>
<td>126, 8; 136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:27</td>
<td></td>
<td>131, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:2</td>
<td></td>
<td>142, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td></td>
<td>124, 6; 142, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td></td>
<td>139, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:8</td>
<td></td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:13</td>
<td>140, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15</td>
<td>140, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2:1</td>
<td>134, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:17-18</td>
<td>134, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25</td>
<td>147, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:25-26</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:32</td>
<td>138, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:33-36</td>
<td>138, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:5</td>
<td>147, 7; 147, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>127, 5; 127, 10; 131, 16; 145, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:19</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:10</td>
<td>140, 2; 143, 2; 143, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:8</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:9</td>
<td>144, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:13</td>
<td>124, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:23-24</td>
<td>122, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:25</td>
<td>126, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:26-28</td>
<td>149, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:28</td>
<td>140, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:2</td>
<td>130, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:9</td>
<td>127, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13-14</td>
<td>127, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>130, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:6</td>
<td>124, 6; 132, 4; 134, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9</td>
<td>145, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:9-10</td>
<td>134, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:11</td>
<td>121, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:17</td>
<td>121, 4; 122, 4; 126, 3; 130, 1; 137, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>147, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3-4</td>
<td>141, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>148, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>147, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7</td>
<td>145, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:3</td>
<td>121, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:7</td>
<td>121, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>121, 10; 149, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:29-32</td>
<td>147, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:31-32</td>
<td>132, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:2</td>
<td>147, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>135, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:5-6</td>
<td>134, 9; 135, 3; 135, 9; 145, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:7</td>
<td>134, 16; 146, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9</td>
<td>145, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:9-10</td>
<td>126, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:11</td>
<td>121, 9; 146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:26-27</td>
<td>140, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:4</td>
<td>136, 21; 140, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:11</td>
<td>134, 21; 143, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:17</td>
<td>147, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>135, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:31</td>
<td>146, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:32</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:33</td>
<td>121, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:34</td>
<td>121, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:35</td>
<td>147, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:36-38</td>
<td>135, 8; 146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:39</td>
<td>143, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:12</td>
<td>142, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:21</td>
<td>130, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:22</td>
<td>127, 3; 138, 2; 140, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:23</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:31</td>
<td>146, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32-34</td>
<td>128, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:41-42</td>
<td>150, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:43</td>
<td>136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:44-45</td>
<td>136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:46</td>
<td>136, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:47</td>
<td>126, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:48</td>
<td>140, 16; 145, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:49</td>
<td>123, 4; 125, 14; 127, 16; 143, 9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Corinthians

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:12</td>
<td>140, 13; 149, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:13</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:15</td>
<td>134, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:16</td>
<td>139, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:5</td>
<td>146, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:7</td>
<td>141, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:16</td>
<td>131, 1; 134, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>121, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>148, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6-7</td>
<td>123, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:21</td>
<td>150, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:10</td>
<td>127, 5; 138, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:5</td>
<td>142, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>121, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:6</td>
<td>125, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:3</td>
<td>141, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:2</td>
<td>147, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:3</td>
<td>126, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:14</td>
<td>134, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:29</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

12 144, 19
12:7 130, 7
12:7-9 130, 7
12:8-9 146, 1
13:4 150, 4

Galatians
1:10 121, 12
1:15-16 138, 18
1:22-24 141, 7
2:10 142, 3; 149, 13
3:6 148, 17
3:16 142, 3; 147, 28
3:21 129, 3
3:21-22 143, 2
3:27 131, 27; 142, 3
3:29 134, 7; 142, 3
4:7 122, 5
4:10-11 126, 2
4:19 126, 8; 147, 14
4:27 134, 26
5:17 134, 12; 140, 16; 143, 5;
143, 6; 147, 20
5:18 143, 6
5:19-21 143, 6
6:1 129, 4
6:2 129, 4; 132, 9
6:4 140, 13; 147, 11
6:9-10 125, 11
6:14 121, 12; 149, 18

Ephesians
2:1-3 136, 8
2:2 141, 14; 148, 9
2:8 142, 10; 144, 10
2:8-10 137, 18
2:9 142, 10; 144, 10
2:10 142, 10; 144, 10
2:14 124, 10; 126, 2
3:17 122, 4
3:20 147, 22
4:2-3 143, 2
4:27 141, 3
5:8 136, 8; 139, 4; 139, 14;
139, 18; 141, 14; 142, 16;
143, 4
5:14 131, 8
5:27 132, 9; 147, 23
5:29 140, 16
5:30 127, 3
5:31-32 138, 2
5:32 142, 3
6:5 124, 7

6:5-6 124, 7
6:12 136, 8; 139, 4; 141, 14;
142, 16; 143, 4; 143, 18

Philippians
1:21 121, 13
1:23 121, 13; 141, 18; 147, 17
1:23-24 145, 17
1:24 141, 18
2:6 121, 5; 126, 5; 130, 9;
138, 3
2:7 138, 3
2:7-9 126, 5
2:12 142, 10
2:13 142, 10
2:15-16 146, 9
3:5 147, 25
3:6 147, 25
3:9 124, 6; 142, 5
3:10 150, 4
3:12 142, 6
3:13-14 149, 8
3:13 130, 14
3:13-14 130, 14
3:15 130, 14
3:19 145, 12
3:20 141, 15; 142, 7
4:7 131, 10

Colossians
1:24 142, 3
2:3 135, 8
3:1-3 121, 1; 142, 7
3:3 121, 12; 122, 8; 139, 17;
141, 15; 141, 17
3:3-4 148, 16
3:4 122, 9
4:2-4 140, 1

1 Thessalonians
4:16 143, 14
4:16-17 143, 9
5:6-7 131, 8

2 Thessalonians
3:2 139, 1

1 Timothy
1:5 140, 2
1:13 147, 26
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1:16</th>
<th>4:6</th>
<th>4:6</th>
<th>1 Peter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>147, 26</td>
<td>130, 14</td>
<td>143, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:4</td>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>1 Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125, 6; 141, 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>144, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:8</td>
<td>141, 7</td>
<td>146, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131, 23</td>
<td>121, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:5</td>
<td>131, 23</td>
<td>127, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:6</td>
<td>145, 13</td>
<td>137, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136, 14</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:18</td>
<td>145, 13</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:7-10</td>
<td>132, 4; 136, 13</td>
<td>147, 27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17</td>
<td>131, 26; 132, 4</td>
<td>5:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:17-19</td>
<td>136, 13</td>
<td>130, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:18-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Timothy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2:19</th>
<th>3:12</th>
<th>4:7</th>
<th>4:8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>123, 5; 126, 3</td>
<td>127, 16</td>
<td>132, 6</td>
<td>141, 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Titus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1:15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>125, 6; 141, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hebrews

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5:12</th>
<th>12:6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>130, 12</td>
<td>122, 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

James

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1:19</th>
<th>2:13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>139, 15</td>
<td>143, 7; 143, 8; 147, 12; 147, 13; 147, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Revelation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>18:6</th>
<th>22:15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>149, 13</td>
<td>147, 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

(prepared by Joseph Sprug)

The first number in the Index is the Psalm number.
The number after the colon is a paragraph number.
Different expositions in the same heading are separated by a semicolon.
Biblical texts/words are in italics.

Aaron, 132:7
Abel, 128:2; 142:3
Abraham, 121:5; 128:2; 131:13; 131:14; 134:6,7,25; 137:6; 139:3; 142:3; 143:18; 147:16,17,28; 148:17
Absalom, 142:2
actions, See human acts.
Adam and Eve, 122:6; 125:15; 126:7; 133:2; 132:10; 137:13; 142:6,16
Christ and his Church, 127:11
Christ foreshadowed by Adam, 138:2
Church prefigured by Eve, 126:8; 138:2
Eve: curse God, and die, 133:2
adoption, 136:1; 137:13
advice as gift, 125:13
affections, 121:11; 123:1; 138:18; 134:18,19; 145:15
affluence, See wealth.
agonistic, 132:6
Alleluia, 148:2; 149:2
almsgiving, 128:5,12,13; 136:13; 146:17; 147:13
Amorites, 134:20; 135:9
amphitheatre, 147:21
angels, 122:4; 126:3; 128:12,13; 130:9; 134:5,8; 135:3; 137:3,4; 141:14; 146:2; 148:10
anguish, I have found anguish..., 137:12
animals, 144:13; 145:13; 148:3
anthropomorphism, 130:12
Antichrist, 128:13
apocrypha, 130:7
apostasy: persecutions and, 140:23
apostles, 121:9; 122:4; 126:2,9,10,11,12; 132:2; 138:20; 142:6; 143:18; 144:2
born from the prophets, 126:11; 127:2
bridegroom’s children, 142:2
Church and, 127:12
friends become exceedingly honorable, 138:23
heavens, 143:12
powers; miracles, 130:5
Aristotle, 140:19
Arius, 124:5; 149:4
ark, 127:13; 128:2; 130:1; 131:15; 147:4
arrows, 126:9,13; 127:2; 139:14
ashes, 147:24
ass: symbol of God’s people, 126:11
astrology, 128:9; 140:9
authority, 124:7
avarice, 128:4,5; 136:9; 143:5
baby(-ies), 130:9,13
Babylon, 121:4; 125:3; 136:1-14,20,21,22; 138:18; 147:5,7,26; 148:4; 149:13
baptism, 131:14,27,28; 134:21; 135:8,9; 138:8; 142:3; 145:9,16
barren woman, 127:2
Bashan, 134:20
Bathsheba, 126:2
beard, 132:7,8,9,12
beasts, 134:18
beatific vision, 147:5,24
beatitude, 135:1; 139:2; 150:8
beauty, 138:29; 144:13,15; 148:15
bed, 132:4
beggars, 125:12; 140:12
being: absolute, 121:6
Being-Itself, 121:5; 134:4
bellows, 150:7
Bible: all books as one book, 150:2
double-edged sword, 143:17
letters from home, 149:5
obscure passages in, 146:12,13
two testaments (number 15), 150:1
See also psalms; words of God
birds, 127:15
bishops, 126:3; 128:4
blessing, 128:13; 132:1,2; 133:3
brothers who live in unity, 132:13
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

Come now ..., 133:1
blindness, 145:17
body and soul, 141:19; 145:3,4,5
See also human body; soul
bone: not hidden from you [God], 138:20,21
strength, 138:20
bread: nourishment from milk, 130:9,11
bread of sorrow, 127:10
breadcrums, 147:25
brood of vipers, 131:13
brothers: dwell together in unity, 132:1,5,7,10; 133:3
like oil flowing down upon the beard,
132:7,9
burden: law to bear one another's burdens,
129:4,5; 132:9

Caecilian, 149:4
Cain, 142:3
calling, 150:3
Canaan, 134:20
captivity, 125:10; 147:5; 148:4
carnally-minded, 136:18
cartwheel, 132:12
Catholic Church, 130:9; 145:16; 149:3
cattle, 146:18
cave, 141:17
centurion, faith of, 134:7
chaff, 121:8; 130:13
change, 121:6; 131:18
charity, 121:10,12,13; 125:12; 127:13; 128:13;
131:13,26; 132:12,13; 138:14; 140:2; 141:18;
142:5; 143:7; 147:13,14,23; 149:2,11
blessing God, 133:1
dwell together in unity, 132:1,2
fullness of the law, 140:2; 141:7; 143:2,16
if I have no love ..., 146:10
law: bear one another's burdens, 129:4;
132:9
one with Christ, 140:3
unconquered, 132:8
See also love
chastity, 147:4
children, 127:15; 131:19
children's children, 127:16
increase and multiply, 137:8
inheritance of the Lord, 126:9
of God, 135:8; 139:18; 147:14,23; 150:1
choir, 149:7; 150:7
chrism, 149:6
Christian life, 121:12
contempt, 122:8
daily closer to Christ, 138:21
eyearly Church: common ownership, 131:5
focus on gifts entrusted to you, 130:13
hear Christ speaking in our voices, 140:3
I live my own life no longer ..., 142:3
lead me in the eternal way, 138:30
long for Christ's friendship, 131:6
nailed to cross with Christ, 140:5
pilgrimage, 122:2
rise before the light, 126:4,5
sadness and, 138:20
show me the way ..., 142:15
sides of your house, 127:11
straining to what lies ahead, 130:14
temptation: trial, 122:7
union with the Word, 130:10
worldy happiness and, 126:7
See also Church; spiritual life
Christians, 134:18; 136:17; 149:6
Christ's mother, 127:12
confession of Christ's name, 140:26
Jews as elders, 136:18
Church, 121:5; 122:4,5; 123:5; 125:9;
131:15,21; 132:12,13; 136:20; 137:1;
146:19; 147:16,18,20; 149:3,4; 150:2
body joined to Christ the head, 139:2
body, temple, house, city, 131:3
born from side of Christ, 126:7
both below and on high, 137:4
bride and bridegroom, 147:18
choice: member or enemy, 139:2
Christ builds his own house, 126:2
Christ prays when members pray, 140:7
Christ the head of, 132:7
Christ's apparel, 147:23
Christ's body is holy, 138:2
Christ's brothers, sisters, mother, 127:12
commingling of the wicked and the good,
128:8
eve as type of, 126:8
God's house, 131:10,13
heart of the, 140:7
Jesus, head of his body, 142:3
labor pains for her children, 126:8
members as feminine, 147:10
members of his body, 127:3
mixture of good and bad members,
138:29,31
mother of heretics, 130:11
numbers beyond reckoning, 128:2
persons from O.T. and, 128:2
rulers, 132:4
sinners in the midst of, 138:26
symbol: priestly garments, 132:9
tongues of every nation, 147:19
two in one flesh, 138:2
two types in, 134:16
two will be in the field, 132:4
unity, 121:9,13; 141:7
unity: tearing apart bond of, 138:26,27
very often have they attacked me,
128:2,3,6,7
whole personified, 134:7

Volume III/20
widowed state, 131:23; 145:18
wife and children as identical, 127:12
wife of Christ, 127:11
Zion, 128:10

Church year, 148:1
Circumcellions (Circellions), 132:3,6
city, 121:4,12; 126:13; 138:26
clouds, 134:13,17; 146:15
cold, 125:10; 147:22,26
comfort, 125:4
commandments, 146:16
God’s paths, 139:9; 141:6,7
love in keeping, 139:18
reward for keeping, 131:19
ten-stringed psaltery, 143:16
common life, 131:5
common of saints, 126:3; 147:10
compassion, 121:11; 122:1
conduct of life, 122:9; 133:2
confession, 121:8; 138:26; 140:9; 142:12; 146:14
door to restrain my lips, 140:6
fills earth and heaven, 148:15
God’s mercy and truth, 135:4
not made by dead person, 143:13
sins or praise, 135:1; 137:2; 139:9; 141:19; 144:13
works of the Lord, 144:13
conscience, 125:8; 129:2; 147:11,12; 149:11
consolation, 125:4
constancy, 138:20; 139:14
contempt, 122:8,10; 125:1
continence, 149:15
conversion of life, 125:2; 139:10,14; 144:11
from evil to good, 124:10
converts, 134:22,23; 149:13,14
cords: symbol of sin, 130:2; 139:9
conversion, 140:13,14,17; 149:13
couches, 149:11
courage, 137:12; 138:21
covenant, 131:20
old and new, 149:1,12
converting, 147:10
craftsman, 149:13
creation, 134:13,14,15; 140:10; 142:10; 144:6,7,8; 145:12,14; 148:7,8; 149:4,6; 150:2
correction: goodness of God, 135:4
do not despise works of your hands, 137:18
everything is good, 125:6
everything made through him, 139:3
exceedingly good, 134:3
God alone does wonderful deeds, 135:4,5
groaning in travail, 125:2
he made whatever he wanted, 134:10
heavens made by God’s intelligence, 135:6,8
intricate: supremely ordered, 144:13
love God’s work; hate sinful work of men, 139:2
praising God, 128:5
works of the Lord, 144:13
creatures, 125:5; 145:13; 148:9,13
minute, 148:10
real existence, 134:4
sing hymns of praise, 144:13
Crispina, Saint, 137:3,7,14,17

See also under Jesus Christ.
curia, 121:7
curse, 132:13; 133:2
cymbals, 150:8
dance: refusing to, 128:1
Daniel, 132:5
darkness, 136:8; 138:15,16,17,18; 139:4; 140:10,11; 141:14; 142:8,16; 143:4
David, King, 128:13; 131:2–3,6; 142:2,16; 143:1,2; 144:19; 148:13,14
Davidic dynasty, 123:6
Deo gratias, 132:6
depth, 129:1; 148:9
desire, 121:1; 122:1,4,12; 134:12; 137:9; 143:6; 146:1; 147:10
devil’s door, 141:4
death, 125:4,13; 129:2; 147:11
dead, 138:26
demon, 130:7; 131:3,14; 132:6; 133:1; 134:3; 135:9; 136:7,8,9,10; 139:4,7,8,11,12; 140:20; 141:3,4,14,15; 142:7,16; 143:2,4,5; 144:19; 148:2,9; 149:6,10; 150:3
dew of Hermon, 132:11

despair, 144:11,24
detachment, 138:18
devil, 121:8; 125:2; 126:2; 127:16; 128:13; 130:7; 131:3,14; 132:6; 133:1; 134:20; 135:9; 136:7,8,9,10; 139:4,7,8,11,12; 140:20; 141:3,4,14,15; 142:7,16; 143:2,4,5; 144:19; 148:2,9; 149:6,10; 150:3
dew of the earth, 129:1

devil, 121:8; 125:2; 126:2; 127:16; 128:13; 130:7; 131:3,14; 132:6; 133:1; 134:20; 135:9; 136:7,8,9,10; 139:4,7,8,11,12; 140:20; 141:3,4,14,15; 142:7,16; 143:2,4,5; 144:19; 148:2,9; 149:6,10; 150:3
dew of the earth, 129:1
disappointment: God’s special love, 127:1
disasters, 136:7
disciples, 149:8
  multitude of, 138:24
  terrified during Christ’s passion, 138:22
discipline, 124:7; 140:16; 148:11
disgrace, 122:9,10
divinization, 130:10
divorce, 149:15
Donatists, 131:14; 145:16; 147:18
Donatus, 124:5; 132:6; 149:4
dove, 127:13; 130:5; 138:15
drachma, 138:14
dragons, 148:9
draught-horses, 132:12
drum, 149:8; 150:7
dust, 142:12
duty: vicarious fulfillment of, 121:10
dwelling, 122:4
ear, 130:6
early Church, 131:5
  unity, 132:2,12
earth, 144:13; 147:22; 148:9
  established upon the waters, 135:7
  waterless, 142:11
Easter: time before and after, 148:1
eating, 125:7; 146:2
Edom, 136:18,19
Egypt, 134:14,18,19; 135:8
Egyptians, 123:6; 128:2
elect, 140:8,9,10,12,24
Elijah, 129:9
Elisha, 129:9
embarrassment, 141:9
Emmaus, 147:17
emotions, 135:3
emperor, 148:2
emptiness, 143:11
encouragement, 121:2
end of the world, 142:14; 147:3,4
endurance, 136:20; 139:14
enemy(-ies), 133:1,13; 137:14; 139:7,10;
  141:14; 142:4,16; 143:5
  body of Christ (Church), 139:2
charity not conquered by, 132:8
  God’s hand is worse than anger of, 137:13
  love them; hate their sins, 138:27,28
Enoch, 128:2
evry, 124:2; 139:8
Ephrathah, 131:11
episcopus, 126:3
Esaü, 136:18
escape, 123:3,4,8
eternal life, 121:11; 122:8; 123:4; 127:7,15;
  129:6; 130:1,15; 134:6; 136:9,15; 138:30;
  143:18; 149:1; 150:3
desire for Jerusalem, 136:22
present life given precedence, 140:24
seeing God face to face, 130:14
sell all you possess…, 136:13
See also heaven
eternal punishment, 138:7; 141:4
eternity, 121:6; 137:16; 143:18; 144:2;
  145:20; 148:8; 149:12
Eucharist: Christ as nourishment, 130:11
Eve, See Adam and Eve.
  example, harmful, 139:4
Exodus, 135:9
eye, 130:6,8
eye of a needle, 132:4
faith, 122:4; 124:2,4; 136:10; 139:1; 144:10;
  145:19; 146:6; 149:4,11
asleep, 147:3
believing in Jesus means loving, 130:1
  guarded; growth, 138:18
health in Christ’s body, 130:8
  hearts cleansed by, 123:2
milkier of, 130:11
riches for a believer, 143:18
salvation/grace, 137:18
false accusation, 128:4; 138:26
fathers, 127:12
fear, 129:3; 135:3; 141:4; 147:4
  charity casts out fear, 127:7; 149:15
  devil’s door, 141:4
  motivated by, 127:7
second coming of Christ, 147:1
fear of God, 127:1,8-9,15; 138:19; 144:23;
  146:20; 150:1
feet, 140:8
Felix (martyr), 127:6
fidelity: may I be struck dumb…, 136:17
  finger, 143:3,6,9
fire, 128:8; 148:10,11,12
focus, 146:17
fish (153 caught), 150:1
fishing, 138:27
flattery, 140:13,17; 147:11
flautist, 121:8
flea, 148:10
flesh: versus spirit, See under law
food, 145:17
fool, 122:3,8; 129:5
forbearance, 144:11
forgiveness, 143:7; 147:13
forgiveness of sin, 129:3,6,12; 136:1; 144:24;
  147:18
woman drying Christ’s feet, 140:8
fortune, illusory, 129:1
foundation, 121:4
fraud, 143:5
free will, 134:11
fruit of the womb, 126:8

Volume III/20
fruit: eat the labors of, 127:4,10
fullers, 132:9
future: God and, 125:10
future life, 147:4, 148:1
See also heaven; hell; immortality
garment, 147:23
gate: Christ as, 126:13
barry steepered, 147:9, 20
generation, 144:6
generosity, 125:12
gentiles, 126:11; 134:8, 22, 24; 145:18
Gethseman, 148:10; 149:3
Gideon, 137:9
gifts, 130:8; 144:22, 146:10
giving: motivation, 125:11-12
gladiator, 147:3; 149:10
glorification, 150:3
glory, 131:28; 138:20; 142:18; 146:19; 149:10, 11
gnat, 148:10
God: abiding in himself, 122:4
abundance of your sweetness, 144:9, 10
all-powerful, 134:12
alone does wonderful deeds, 135:4, 5
being of, 121:5, 6, 12
blamed; praised, 128:5
 caring, 145:13, 14
change and, 131:18
cursed by one’s life, 133:2
death of, 148:8
disciplinary scourge of, 138:15
discipline as “face” of, 138:8
earthly kin, 127:12
fleeing from, 138:12, 13
forbearing toward sinners, 144:11
future acts and, 125:10
glory, 137:6, 10
God of gods, 135:2, 9
goodness, 134:3, 5, 144:3, 5, 6, 8
greatness of, 120:4
human sin riches in, 124:2
I AM WHO AM, 121:5, 127:15, 130:12; 134:6, 143:11
joy: prospect of seeing God, 130:8
justice, 144:21
keep faith for ever, 145:15
knowledge of, 141:6
knowledge too wonderful for me, 138:9
lovable and terrible, 144:8
love shown in Christ’s death, 146:4
Manichee teaching, 140:10
master and mistress, 122:5
Moses and, 138:8
my mercy, 143:7
my rest for ever and ever, 131:22
my support and deliverer, 143:9
name of, 121:5
omnipresence, 138:10-13; 142:16
peace, 124:10
personal, 139:10
possession, 145:11
power of, 144:8, 146:11
promises, 148:8
repenting, 131:18
seeing Him Who is, 121:8
speaks in his own substance, 138:8
speaks through his scriptures, 127:9
submission to, 143:6
taunt, where is your God, 127:10; 130:12
understanding cannot be reckoned, 146:11, 13
wonderful and terrible, 138:19
works of, 144:7, 9; 147:2
you have stretched out your hand…, 137:13
See also creation; Holy Spirit; Jesus Christ; Trinity
godless, 142:5; 145:10
godliness, 143:18
gods, 134:9, 135:2, 144:17, 145:12
gold, 123:9, 10; 145:4
Goliath, 143:1, 2
good and evil, 121:14; 134:16; 142:4, 10; 145:19; 148:2
conversion of life, 124:10
good cannot separate from the wicked, 138:26, 27, 31
members of the Church, 128:8
rejoicing over evil, 139:12
roots of all evils, 139:1
unrighteous persons, 139:4
good example, 123:6
good people: luminaries in this world, 146:9
good Samaritan, 136:7
good works, 123:13; 131:20; 132:4; 142:10, 15; 143:9, 11; 146:2, 147:6
children’s children as, 127:16
credit God for, 137:18
rich in, 136:13
grace, 130:14; 132:10; 133:2; 140:15; 143:9, 11; 146:2, 147:6; 147:26; 150:1
new song, 143:16
pride in gifts from God, 130:7
saved through faith, 137:18
grass, 128:11, 12; 146:16
greed, 123:10; 131:26; 136:9; 147:12
groaning, 131:10
guardian: bishop as, 126:3
guile, 121:8; 123:6; 138:6
gyration, 139:13
Haggai, 147:5; 148:4; 149:12
har, 148:10, 11, 12
handicapped, 125:12
hands, 143:3, 6, 9
good works, 142:15

Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150
left and right, 136:15,16,17; 137:14; 143:18
power, 149:12
happiness, 122:2,8; 126:7; 127:9; 136:5,16,22; 137:14; 143:18; 147:4
harmony (music), 150:7
harps, 136:6,10
harvests, 149:3
harvesters: angels, 128:12,13
hate, 139:2; 140:14
men of blood, 138:26
perfect hatred, 138:28
healing, 144:22; 146:7,8
health, 122:3; 126:6
coordinate all members, 130:6
seeking, in body of Christ, 130:8
hearers (parable of the seed), 128:1
heart, 123:9; 128:1; 129:2; 130:2; 131:4; 132:6; 134:4,16; 138:18; 139:15; 142:9; 143:18; 145:1; 148:17; 149:11; 150:8
ascents in, 122:3; 126:6
bruised, 146:5,6,7,8
crooked; perverted, 146:7
cursing in, 132:13
inner mouth, 125:5,7,8
lift up your hearts, 132:13; 141:15
purified by faith, 130:8
spiritual holocaust, 137:2
straightforward hearts, 124:2,9,10
striking (bruising) our breasts, 146:7
test me, O God, 138:29
unrighteous thoughts, 139:5
virgin at heart, 147:10
wrung with pain, 122:2
heat, 147:22
heaven, 121:3,4; 122:1,3,4,6; 124:3; 130:8; 132:13; 136:9; 141:4; 142:7,12; 147:27; 149:5
praising/loving God, 147:3
see, love, and praise God, 147:8
heavens, 135:5; 143:3,5; 150:2
apostles as, 143:12
just persons, 121:9
saints, 135:3
hell, 123:12; 127:3,15
heresies, 124:5; 130:9,10; 138:26; 141:9; 145:16
Hermon, Mount, 132:11
hills, 124:4,10; 126:6
holiness, 130:13; 131:28; 144:10
holocaust, 130:4; 137:2
holy of holies, 132:7
Holy Spirit, 125:10; 126:2; 127:8; 130:5; 132:7,8; 135:3; 139:14; 141:5; 142:18; 143:7; 144:1; 146:6
gifts of, 143:3
helper, 143:6
new creation, 142:12
seven-fold action, 150:1
home, 141:17
honesty, 123:9
honor, 123:9
hope, 122:1; 123:2,3,10; 124:4,6; 125:2,4; 126:7; 127:5,10; 129:2,3,6,8,9,10,11,12; 130:15; 131:16,19,24; 138:12,20; 139:14; 141:12; 142:14; 146:11,19,23; 145:2,3,7,9; 146:20; 147:3; 148:1; 149:11
horn: symbol of exaltation, 131:27
horse, 145:4; 146:19
hospitality, 140:8
house, 141:15
house of the Lord, 121:3,14; 126:3,13
human acts: by their fruits..., 149:2
God's eyes are upon the righteous, 137:11
human beings
benefits conferred by Christ, 136:9
bodies as servants, 145:5
both foolish and wise, 147:11
do not despise works of your hands, 137:18
God's care for, 148:8
goodness of humankind, 134:4
value of, 143:10
human body, 121:6; 147:23
animal; spiritual, 136:18
corruptibility, 141:18
flesh is from earth, 146:13
See also immortality; resurrection of the body; soul
human condition, 122:6,11,12; 125:3; 129:1; 138:16; 140:15; 146:8; 148:4
emptiness, 143:11
fashioned by God in the womb, 138:7
humiliation, 134:20; 138:4; 141:13; 146:14; 147:27
humility, 121:8; 123:13; 126:4,5; 130:7; 137:10
bruised hearts, 146:5
false, re learning, 130:12,14
God looks on the lowly, 137:11
pursuit of wisdom, 130:12
rise after sitting down, 127:10; 138:4
sacrifice; heart, 130:4
ture perfection, 130:14
truly poor, 131:24
hunger: Blessed are those who hunger..., 131:24; 145:17
husband and wife, 143:6; 149:15
chaste fear, 127:8
hymn, 148:17
hypostatic union, 130:10
I AM WHO AM, 121:5; 127:15; 130:12; 134:4,6; 143:11
ice, 147:2,25,26; 148:10,11,12
idipsum, 121:5
idolatry, 123:5
idols, 134:23,24; 135:3
image of God, 129:1; 147:7
immortality, 122:1; 127:16; 140:16; 146:6; 148:8
imperfection: beheld by God, 138:21,23
Incarnation: Word made flesh, 130:9
incorruptibility, 141:18; 147:20
increase: kinds and modes, 137:8
iniquity, 124:10; 147:8
increasing mightily, 138:14
love of, 140:2
night as, 131:8
See also good and evil; sin
injury, 145:15,16
innocence, 125:8; 139:4
insult, 122:9,10
intelligence, 148:3
intention, 125:5,7
interior life: affection of heart, 141:2
enter within, 139:15
irreligion, 136:6,15
Israel, 126:3; 128:2,3; 129:12; 134:7,22,25; 137:6; 138:22; 139:4; 145:11; 146:4; 147:28; 148:17; 149:4,6
meaning of the word, 124:10
name, 121:8
testimony to, 121:8
tribes of, 121:7,8
Jacob, 126:8; 134:6,7,8,9,22; 136:18; 137:6; 143:18; 145:11; 146:4; 147:27,28
Jeremiah, 147:5
Jerusalem, 121:2,3,4,9,11; 122:4; 124:3; 125:1,3,9; 126:3; 127:3,15; 134:26; 136:1,7,12,15,19,20,21; 138:18,29; 142:3; 146:4,8,9,11; 147:6,7,8,9,15,18,20,22, 26,28; 148:4; 149:5
built like a city, 124:5
goal of ascent, 121:7
meaning: vision of peace, 124:10; 127:16
restoration in prophecy, 147:5
Jesus Christ, 125:4,5,6; 126:3,11; 129:1,2,3; 130:2,7; 132:9; 134:4; 135:9; 136:22; 137:9; 139:2,7; 141:4; 143:1,12; 144:5; 145:9; 146:17; 147:3,13; 148:7,16; 149:4,10,14
Abraham’s seed, 148:17
anointed, 131:28; 149:6
beautiful, 127:8
believing in, means loving, 130:1
bread for us to eat, 138:1
bride and bridegroom, 122:5
called to mind days of old, 142:10
cornerstone, 126:2
crucifixion, 121:8; 130:7; 131:17; 134:22; 138:8; 140:5,6; 141:9; 148:8
David and, 143:2, 144:2
died as man; rose as God, 130:10
disciples: he is only a man, 138:22
divinity, 138:2,3
divinity invisible to human eyes, 138:8
end of the law, 139:3
equal to the Father, 126:5
eternal way, 138:30
Father, forgive them…, 124:7; 132:8
feet (place of worship), 131:13,14
figures (Solomon’s temple), 126:2
firmament of his strength, 150:4
form of God, 121:5
foundation stone, 121:4
gate, 126:13
get behind me, Satan, 126:4; 138:22
God is Father and Lord, 138:3
humanity, 134:5; 139:18
I confess to you, Father…, 141:19; 144:13
I was hungry, and you fed me, 140:7
I will that where I am…, 124:6
left hand; right hand, 143:18,19
light, 132:11
living bread come down from heaven, 131:24
master and slave, 124:7
mediator, 134:5
My grace is sufficient for you, 130:7
not peace but a sword, 143:17
one with the Father, 142:3
passion, 126:4; 129:7; 138:4; 146:4; 147:16; 148:8; 150:3
agony in the garden, 140:4
disciples terrified by, 138:22
doing my Father’s will, 142:8
I am all alone…, 140:25,26
let this cup pass from me, 144:19
my soul is sorrowful…, 142:9
peace, 124:10
post-resurrection appearances, 138:8,25; 147:17
power to lay down my life, 138:21
prays in the Church, 140:7
prefigured by David, 142:2
priest and victim, 130:4; 132:7; 149:6
prophesied about (psalm 1), 150:2
psalms: his words in all, 131:2
resurrection, 129:6,7,9; 131:15; 138:4,21,23,25; 140:25; 147:17,18; 148:1; 150:4
rock, 140:19
Samaritan, 125:15
sanctifying power, 131:28
Saul, why are you persecuting me? 122:1; 130:6; 138:2; 140:3; 141:11; 142:3; 148:17
second coming, 143:14; 147:1,3
sinless, 137:16; 140:3
Son of God; son of man, 138:22
spiritual generation of, 139:3
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

suffering still, in the Church, 142:3
transfiguration, 147:23
victim, 149:6
washing of his feet, 125:5
way, truth, and life, 123:2; 125:4; 141:9
Who is my mother..., 127:12
wisdom’s lamp, 138:14
Without me you can do nothing, 130:6
woman drying his feet, 140:8
world did not know him, 141:15
See also Christian life; Church; Mystical Body of Christ; Son of Man; Word of God

Jews, 134:7,22; 138:18; 148:17
blinded for their pride, 138:8
book-bearers for Christians, 136:18
captivity; exile, 125:3; 136:1,4
remnant saved, 131:17
See also Israel

Job, 132:5; 133:2; 138:17; 144:18,19
John, Apostle, Saint, 144:9
John the Baptist, 131:14,27; 132:11; 139:15; 140:26

joy, 121:3; 123:3; 125:5,6,11,14; 127:5,10; 130:8; 136:17; 139:18; 145:2; 149:4
judgment, 134:22; 142:6; 150:3
merciless, 143:8; 147:12
sitting in, 121:9,10
judgment day, 121:9; 128:7; 129:10; 134:20; 135:1; 138:26,27,29; 139:2; 141:4,10; 144:17; 147:1,3,13; 148:1; 149:15
Julian, emperor, 124:7
justice, 124:6; 139:18;140:14; 142:5,18; 143:17; 145:15,16; 150:3
justification, 144:10; 150:3

kindness, 125:15
kindom (of God), 144:15,16; 147:10
kings, 149:14
knowledge: wisdom and, 135:8
laitly, 132:4
 lamb, 141:1
land, 150:2
languages, multiplicity of, 147:19
Latin language, 123:8
laetitia, 135:5
law, 123:14; 147:16; 150:1
bear one another’s burdens, 129:4
charity, fear, mercy, 129:3
flesh opposes law of mind, 140:16; 143:5,6,9; 146:6; 147:26
just, 145:15
mysteries; significance, 143:2
lawgiver, 129:3
Lazarus, 126:7; 129:9
lead, 145:4
learning: false humility, 130:12
lies; lying: root of every bad action, 139:13
life, 143:11
anguish, 137:12
confusion, 125:3
hours, days, years, 121:6
shouting, 148:2
sojourner on earth, 148:11
sought by persecutors or by lovers, 141:11
stages, 127:15
temporal and eternal, 136:15
light, 124:4,5; 126:4,7; 138:16,17; 139:4,14; 141:11,14; 149:4,11; 144:3
lightning, 134:43; 143:13
listening, 139:15
longing, 123:2; 126:1,12; 136:2,22; 143:19; 145:1,18; 147:4,17; 148:1
Lord’s Prayer
Forgive us our debts [trespasses]..., 129:3,4,5,12; 140:18,19; 142:6; 143:7
Thy kingdom come, 147:1
Lot, 128:2
love, 123:2; 124:6; 134:11; 136:2; 137:2; 141:15; 144:1; 145:5,20; 147:3,15; 148:15; 149:5
ascending / descending, 122:1
believing in Jesus means loving, 130:1
charity casts out fear, 127:7,149:15
city’s strength, 121:12
commandments and, 139:18
commanding God to you, 149:4
death suggests power of, 121:12
disappointments and, 127:1
experience of anguish, 137:12
fear and, 149:15
God is charity, 149:4
holy / impure, 121:1
interior life, 139:15
powerful; duty, 121:10
suffering for, 141:7
true and false, 140:2
two commandments, 121:1; 125:15; 140:2
See also charity
lust, 134:12
lyre, 146:14; 150:6
Maccabees, 137:14; 148:11
maid: God our mistress, 122:5
Manichees, 123:14; 140:10,12; 146:13
manna, 130:9

Volume III/20
marriage, 127:1; 138:2
martyrs, 123:3,7,13; 125:2; 127:2,5,16; 129:11; 132:9; 134:24; 137:14,17; 139:12,16; 140:20,21; 141:4,5; 147:27; 148:11
precious in sight of the Lord, 140:21
prophets as, 140:26
rich crop (early martyrs), 140:21
Mary, Blessed Virgin, 131:15; 148:17
city of God, 142:3
Massa Candida, 144:17
master: slave and, 124:7,8
Maximianus, 124:5
meek, 146:12
melt, 147:26
mercy, 125:14; 129:12; 134:21; 137:5,16,17; 139:18; 140:13; 143:7; 144:4,11,12; 147:12; 150:3
corporal / spiritual works of, 121:9, 10
eternal; every verse in this psalm, 135:1
God’s law, 129:3
merit and, 123:14
motive for confession, 135:4,9
peace and, 125:11
supreme over judgment, 143:8
works of mercy, 125:11; 130:13; 147:12,13
merit, 123:14; 134:8; 139:18
milk, 130:9,11,13,14; 143:2
mind, 121:6; 145:5
miracles, 130:5,6; 143:13
pride in, 130:8
raising the dead, 130:6
misery: blame God, 128:5
misfortune : God strengthens all who are falling, 144:18
mist, 147:24,25,26
mockery, 145:19; 147:11
monasteries: brothers dwell together in unity, 132:2
money, 131:25; 146:17
moneylenders, 128:6; 140:12
monks: agonisti, 132:6
Circumcellions, 132:5
spurious, bogus, 132:4
moon, 135:8; 142:3
morning, 142:14,15
mortality, 145:17
Moses, 121:5; 123:14; 128:2,6; 134:14; 138:8; 147:16,17,18,25
See also law; Pentateuch
mother: baby in arms of, 130:13
mountains, 124:4-5; 143:12; 146:17
love; hope, 124:6
represent great persons, 124:5; 132:12; 146:16
mouth, 149:11
defiled by what comes from, 125:7
filled with joy, 125:6
heart, 125:5,7,8; 137:2
murder, 125:7
murmuring, 144:19
musical instruments, 150:5-8
mysteries, 126:2; 147:2
Christ and the Church, 142:3
in holy scripture, 140:1
Mystical Body of Christ, 122:1; 123:1; 125:13; 127:3; 130:1,3; 140:3; 142:3; 148:17
faith and health of, 130:8
gifts given to each member, 130:6
perfect man, 138:2
two speak with one voice, 138:21
unity, 147:25
See also Church
names, 130:8; 146:10; 148:14
Nathaniel, 121:8
nations, 147:28
need, 125:13; 141:19; 147:12
New Covenant, 123:14; 138:28; 143:16; 150:1
night, 131:8; 138:14,16,17,19; 142:15; 143:11
Noah, 128:2; 132:5; 147:1
nonbelievers, 134:16
numbers (symbolism)
3, 4, 7, 10, 15, 40, 50, 150, 153, 150:1
5, 147:10
70, 147:5
Numidia, 149:3
Og, king of Bashan, 135:9
oil, 127:13; 132:7,8; 140:13; 147:11,13
Old Testament: hidden meanings in, 143:1
oleaster, 134:7; 147:28
olive, 127:13
olive-press, 136:9
olive tree, 134:7,8
one alone (monos), 132:6
organ, 150:7
original sin, 132:10
orphans, 145:18
ossium, 138:20
ownership: common; early Christians, 131:5
ox(-en), 126:11; 145:13,14
pagans: killed by conversion, 149:13
pain, 122:6
parables (of sown seed), 128:1; 139:4; 149:3
pardon, 144:11
parents: children and, 136:21
Pasch, 138:8; 140:25
past, 125:10
patience, 138:27
patients, 147:2
Paul, Saint, apostle, 126:2; 140:21; 142:6; 147:14,25; 149:8,13
greatness of, 124:6
inner strength, 138:20
livelihood, 146:16
manual labor, 125:15
mysteries revealed to, 130:14
shipwrecked, 123:9
shipwrecked, 123:9
sins of the flesh, 130:7; 144:19; 146:1
physician as mother of, 138:18
weak and on fire, 141:19
peace, 121:11,12,13; 124:5,10; 126:2; 127:16;
130:14; 134:26; 136:2; 143:9,18; 147:15,20,28; 149:2
blessed are the peacemakers, 127:13
mercy and, 125:11
work of, 147:16
Pentateuch: five stones, 143:2
Pentecost, 132:2; 138:8; 147:19
people of God, 147:10
perdition, 139:16; 145:19
perfection, 130:14; 132:9
persecution, 123:5,7; 127:16; 128:2,3; 132:7,8; 136:19; 137:14; 138:20,27; 139:16; 140:22-24; 141:5,6,11,14,16; 142:7; 145:16
persecution, 131:13; 133:1; 134:2; 138:14; 139:11; 141:6
Peter, Saint, apostle, 126:4; 130:6; 138:8,21,22; 140:21,24,26; 141:8
Pharaoh, 134:18; 136:17
Pharisees, 140:8
Phinehas, 124:5
physician, 144:22
physician, 144:22
pig(-s), 130:1; 141:1
pleased, 124:10; 126:12; 127:16; 131:8; 136:6; 138:15; 147:4; 148:15
pledge, 122:5; 127:8; 146:6,11
poor person[s], 121:1; 125:13; 136:14; 146:17
humility: the truly poor, 131:24
justice for, 139:17
pride and, 131:26; 132:4
rebuking God, 124:2
possessions, 122:8; 123:9; 131:6; 145:18; 147:4,12
poverty, 121:11
powers in the night, 135:8
praise, 128:5; 131:10; 134:5,6,8,9,11; 139:2; 140:11; 142:6; 144:1-7,10; 22,25; 145:2,4,5,6,7,8; 146:1,2,3,4; 147:3,6-9; 13,15; 148:1,5,5-10,12,17; 149:11; 150:3,4,7,8
beneficial for us, not for God, 134:1,2,4,5
bless God at all times, 138:16
bless God at all times, 138:16
during every single day, 144:3
generation after generation, 144:6
whole of yourselves, 148:2
prayer, 147:7
all one in Christ, 122:2
call upon him in truth, 144:22
Church’s prayer, 139:2
concluding prayer, 150:8
God’s ears are open to, 137:11
good and right things asked for, 144:19
hear me quickly, 137:8,12
I have cried to you …, 140:4
let your ears be open, 142:5
out of the depths…, 129:1,2
pour out, before him, 141:3
rise like incense before you, 140:5
secret, 141:3
soon to be very popular, 140:18,19,20
supplication, 141:2
temple, 130:13
to you I have stretched out my hands, 142:11
whole life is entreaty, 139:10,11
with outstretched hands…, 143:11
You know my paths, 141:8
preachers: clouds as, 134:17
preaching, 134:16
preaching at the gate, 126:13
predestination, 136:21; 147:23; 150:3
presumption, 138:21; 144:11
pretense, 121:8
pride, 121:3,11; 122:3,9,10; 128:9,11; 130:5,8,12,14; 131:14; 136:13; 137:11; 138:19,27; 139:15; 140:18; 141:9; 142:6; 146:19; 147:26
do not turn your face away, 142:13
gifts from God, 130:7
private ownership and, 131:7
rich and poor, 131:26
Starting point of every sin, 139:13
temptation re wisdom, 130:12
priests, 130:4
prison: lead my soul out…, 141:17,18,19
Procullian, 149:4
Prodigal Son, 123:9; 131:12; 138:5,7,9
promises: God is faithful in all his words, 144:17
temporal and eternal, 149:12
property (ownership), 131:3,5,7
prophecy: future as though it were past, 125:10
speaking in tongues, 130:5
prophets, 147:16,17,18
apostles born from, 126:11; 127:2
Christ speaks through, 138:2
full of Christ, 142:2
martyrs, 140:26
propitiation, 129:3
prophecy, 138:16
Prouse, 131:4; 138:1; 142:13; 145:14; 148:12
all creatures do God’s bidding, 148:10
submission to, 124:2
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

Volume III/20

Volume III/20
prudence: avoiding evil, 135:8

seek not what is above you..., 130:13

psalms, 134:5,8; 145:8; 146:1,2; 147:2; 148:2

150 (symbolism), 150:1

find Christ and self in, 142:3

five books, 150:2

hear Christ’s words in, 131:2

sets of fifty, 150:3

See also Song(-s) of Ascents

psaltery, 146:2,14; 149:8; 150:6

punishment, 141:18

fear of, 127:8; 149:15

purity, 125:5

blessed are the pure of heart, 130:8; 139:18

commandment of charity, 140:2

rain, 132:10; 134:17; 146:16; 148:10

ravens, 146:18

Rebecca, 126:8

Red Sea, 135:9

redemption, 125:1,2; 129:12; 134:18; 136:7; 138:2; 143:17; 147:16,18,24; 149:9

reincarnation, 146:18

repentance, 136:3; 147:24; 150:3

reproof, 149:13

respect, 124:7; 136:3

resurrection of the body, 125:14; 126:7; 129:6,7,9; 131:16; 141:13

retribution: bargaining with God, 130:9,13

See also martyrs

salvation, 124:5; 131:27; 136:13; 144:23; 145:9; 149:9

fear and trembling, 142:10

grace, through faith, 144:10

name written in heaven, 130:8

temporal and eternal, 137:14

Samaritan, 125:15

Satan, 130:7,14

Saul, 131:2,18

Saul (later Paul), 149:13

scandals, 147:9

schism, 124:10; 138:29,31

scourging, 122:10

sea, 135:7; 138:12

nonbelievers represented by, 134:16

seats sat in judgment, 121:9

seeds, 125:11,14; 128:17; 143:11

rich, difficult to get into heaven, 146:16

humility and, 131:26; 132:4

sell all you possess..., 136:13

rich and poor, 125:13; 127:16; 131:7,24; 136:14; 139:17; 147:5; 147:12,17

See also poor; rich; wealth

righteousness, 121:8; 122:11,12; 124:6; 125:8; 129:2; 139:8,17; 140:18; 142:3,5,13; 144:22; 146:17; 147:20; 148:16; 150:3,4

rivers, 125:10

robber, 128:6,8; 130:3; 146:20

roots, 139:4

rughrs, 124:7

ruminating, 141:1

running, 121:2; 130:14

Sabbath, 150:1

sacraments, 127:11

sacrifice, 134:11; 140:14; 146:5; 147:12,17; 149:6

humility of heart, 130:4

sadness, 136:3; 138:20

saints, 122:4; 123:3; 124:5; 134:11; 135:3; 144:14,15,18; 147:14; 148:17; 149:3,4,10-12,16; 150:4,5,8

See also confession; repentance; sinners

singing, 123:2; 146:2; 147:5; 148:17

love for this world, 136:17

presence of angels, 137:3
Expositions Of The Psalms 121-150

sinners, 124:2,8; 127:11; 128:7,8; 129:1; 139:4; 140:9,13,14,18; 144:11; 145:19; 146:3,12,18; 147:7,26
add sins to sins, 139:9
break the necks of..., 128:9
confessing, 145:18
death of this world, 142:8
God will destroy all, 144:24
loss of will to confess, 142:13
presumption or despair, 144:11
scourged by their own sins, 130:2
slain: alienated from God, 138:26
sitting, 126:5; 138:4
sky, 146:15
slave: master and, 124:7,8
sleep, 131:8,9
snake, 139:6
snow, 147:2,23,24,25,26; 148:10,11,12
Sodomites, 128:2
soldiers, 131:10; 136:3
monks as, 132:6
Solomon, 126:1-2
Son of Man, 145:9; 149:3
song(s), 136:8,11; 137:10
new song, 149:1,2,3
singing in a foreign land, 136:13
Song[s] of Ascents (or Steps) (psalms), 121:2; 122:1; 123:1; 124:1,3; 125:1,15; 126:1,6; 129:1; 131:1; 150:1
Song of Songs, 143:18
sons: hope for the future, 131:19,20
sorrow, 126:6; 127:10
soul, 146:18
bird escaped from net, 123:12
inner strength, 138:20
mind counsels, 145:5
persecutors and, 141:11,14; 142:7
suffering when flesh is killed, 130:10
thirsts for the living God, 142:11,12
transcend self to reach God, 130:12
unspiritual persons and the Spirit of God, 127:1
spiritual warfare, 127:16; 136:8; 139:5,11,14; 143:3,4,5,9,10,18; 147:20
standing, 134:2
stars (heavenly bodies), 121:6; 135:8; 146:9,10
stealing, 125:7
Stephen, Saint, 132:8; 147:25
stones, 121:4
strength, 144:18; 148:16
substance, 123:9
suffering, 140:25; 149:27,28
fill up what is lacking..., 142:3
fruits of, 138:20; 139:14
life hidden with Christ, 139:17
summer, 148:16
sun, 135:6; 142:3; 144:3; 148:16
Sunday, 150:1
superfluities, 147:12
Susanna, 125:8; 137:2
swallowed alive, 123:5,6
sword: baleful, 149:12
double-edged, 149:12
synagogue, 127:12
tabernacle: Church as, 131:10,12
talkative person, 139:15
taxes, 149:3
teaching, 139:15
tears: bread to me day and night, 127:10
temperance, 146:2
temple: buyers and sellers in, 130:2,5
Christ prefigured (Solomon’s temple), 126:2
early Church, 131:5
God’s temple is yourselves, 126:3; 130:1; 137:4
holy: yourselves as, 122:4; 137:4
living stones, 121:4
protected by God, 127:9
temporal goods, 123:5; 124:1; 127:1,2,9,15; 16; 129:8,11; 131:24,26; 136:3,5,9,16; 138:18; 140:24; 142:7; 143:18,19; 146:19; 147:3; 149:1,12
temptation, 124:1; 129:4; 134:20; 136:21,22; 141:17; 143:6,11
weakness of soul, 122:6
tents (tabernaculum), 131:10
thanksgiving, 134:2
teacher, 147:8
thief, 125:7

Volume III/20